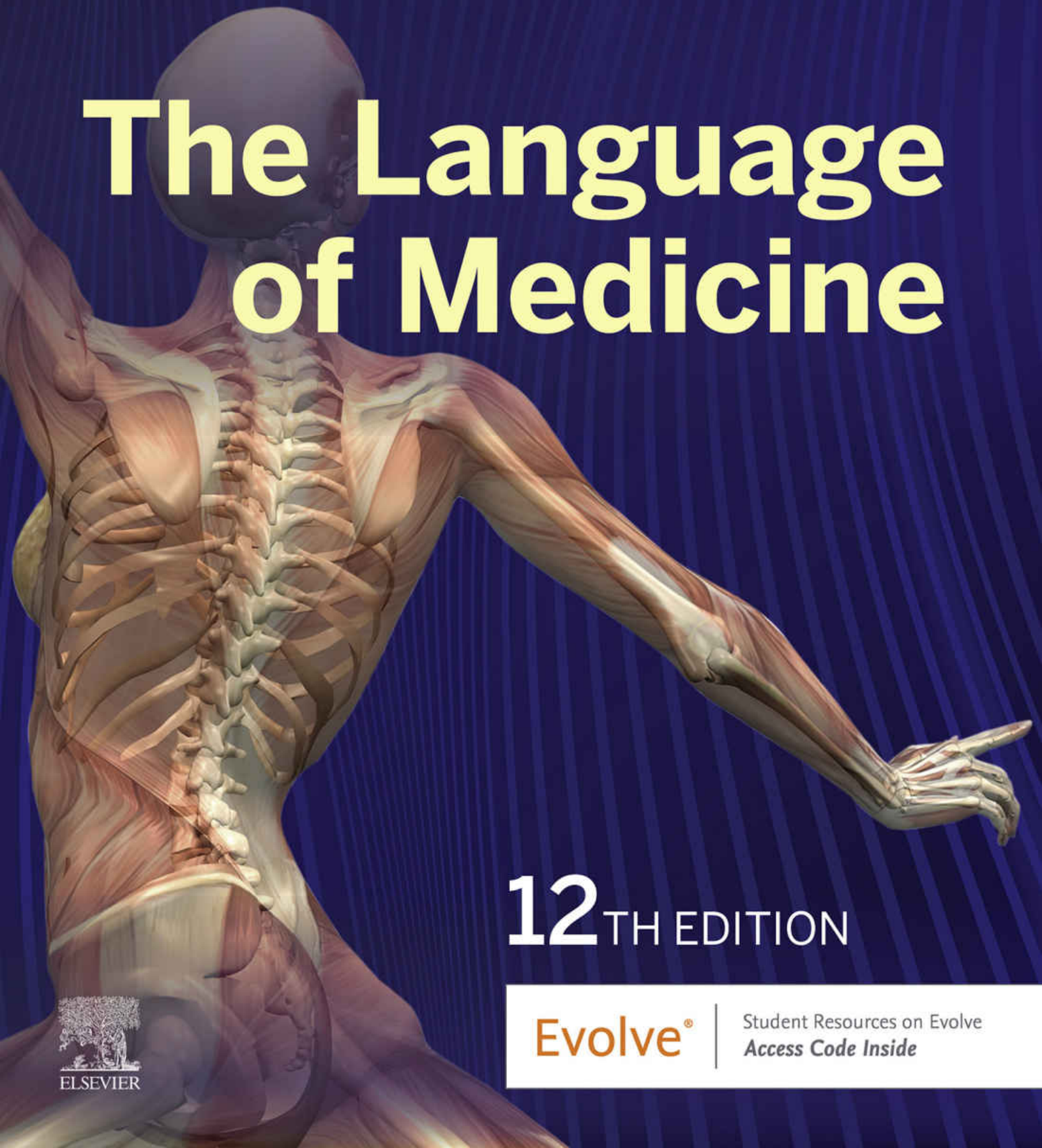
Davi-Ellen Chabner

The Language of Medicine



12TH EDITION

Evolve® | Student Resources on Evolve
Access Code Inside

ELSEVIER

The Language of Medicine

TWELFTH EDITION

Davi-Ellen Chabner BA, MAT

Table of Contents

Instructions for online access

Cover image

Title Page

Copyright

Dedication

Preface

- WELCOME TO THE 12TH EDITION OF THE LANGUAGE OF MEDICINE
- NEW TO THE 12TH EDITION
- HOW TO USE THE BOOK
- ALSO AVAILABLE

Acknowledgments

Reviewers

Chapter 1 Basic Word Structure

Objectives in Studying the Medical Language

Word Analysis

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 2 Terms Pertaining to the Body as a Whole

Structural Organization of the Body

Abdominopelvic Regions and Quadrants

Divisions of the Back (Spinal Column)

Positional and Directional Terms

Planes of the Body

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 3 Suffixes

Introduction

A Closer Look

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 4 Prefixes

Introduction

A Closer Look

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 5 Digestive System

Introduction

Anatomy and Physiology

Pathology of the Digestive System

Pathologic Conditions

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 6 Additional Suffixes and Digestive System Terminology

Introduction

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 7 Urinary System

Introduction

Anatomy of the Major Organs

Physiology: How the Kidneys Produce Urine

Urinalysis

Pathologic Terminology: Kidney, Bladder, and Associated Conditions

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 8 Female Reproductive System

Introduction

Organs of the Female Reproductive System

Menstruation and Pregnancy

Pathology: Gynecologic, Breast, Pregnancy, and Neonatal

Clinical Tests and Procedures

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 9 Male Reproductive System

Introduction

Anatomy

Pathologic Conditions; Sexually Transmitted Infections

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 10 Nervous System

Introduction

General Structure of the Nervous System

Neurons, Nerves, and Glial Cells

The Brain

The Spinal Cord and Meninges

Pathology

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 11 Cardiovascular System

Introduction

Blood Vessels and the Circulation of Blood

Anatomy of the Heart

Physiology of the Heart

Blood Pressure

Pathology: the Heart and Blood Vessels

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 12 Respiratory System

Introduction

Anatomy and Physiology of Respiration

Pathology

Clinical Procedures

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 13 Blood System

Introduction

Composition and Formation of Blood

Blood Types

Blood Clotting

Pathology

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 14 Lymphatic and Immune Systems

- Introduction
- Lymphatic System
- Immune System
- Pathologic Conditions
- Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures
- Exercises
- Answers to Exercises

Chapter 15 Musculoskeletal System

- Introduction
- Bones
- Pathology—Bones
- Joints
- Pathology—Joints
- Muscles
- Pathology—Muscles
- Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures
- Exercises
- Answers to Exercises

Chapter 16 Skin

Introduction

Anatomy of the Skin

Accessory Structures of the Skin

Pathology

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 17 Sense Organs

Introduction

The Eye

Errors of Refraction

Pathology—the Eye

Clinical Procedures—the Eye

The Ear

Pathology—the Ear

Clinical Procedures—the Ear

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 18 Endocrine System

- Introduction
- Thyroid Gland
- Parathyroid Glands
- Adrenal Glands
- Pancreas
- Pituitary Gland
- Ovaries
- Testes
- Pathology
- Laboratory Tests
- Clinical Procedures
- Exercises
- Answers to Exercises

Chapter 19 Cancer Medicine (Oncology)

- Introduction
- Characteristics of Tumors
- Carcinogenesis
- Classification of Cancerous Tumors
- Pathologic Descriptions

Grading and Staging Systems

Cancer Treatment

Laboratory Tests

Clinical Procedures

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 20 Radiology and Nuclear Medicine

Introduction

Radiology

Nuclear Medicine

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 21 Pharmacology

Introduction

Drug Names, Standards, and References

Administration of Drugs

Drug Actions and Interactions

Drug Toxicity

Classes of Drugs

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Chapter 22 Psychiatry

Introduction

Psychiatric Clinical Symptoms

Psychiatric Disorders

Therapeutic Modalities

Exercises

Answers to Exercises

Mini-Dictionary

A

B

C

D

E

F

G

H

I

J

K

L

M

N

O

P

Q

R

S

T

U

V

W

X

Y

Z

Glossary

Appendix I Plurals

Appendix II Abbreviations, Acronyms, Eponyms, and Symbols

- Abbreviations
- Acronyms
- Eponyms
- Symbols

Appendix III Normal Hematologic Reference Values and Implications of Abnormal Results

Appendix IV Drugs

Illustrations Credits

Index

Chabner makes medical terminology MEMORABLE…

- Students…
- Instructors…
- Order Now!

Copyright

THE LANGUAGE OF MEDICINE, TWELFTH EDITION ISBN: 978-0-323-55147-2
Copyright © 2021, Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher. Details on how to seek permission, further information about the Publisher's permissions policies and our arrangements with organizations such as the Copyright Clearance Center and the Copyright Licensing Agency, can be found at our website: www.elsevier.com/permissions.

This book and the individual contributions contained in it are protected under copyright by the Publisher (other than as may be noted herein).

Notice
Practitioners and researchers must always rely on their own experience and knowledge in evaluating and using any information, methods, compounds or experiments described herein. Because of rapid advances in the medical sciences, in particular, independent verification of diagnoses and drug dosages should be made. To the fullest extent of the law, no responsibility is assumed by Elsevier, authors, editors or contributors for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or

otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions, or ideas contained in the material herein.

Previous editions copyrighted 2017, 2014, 2011, 2007, 2004, 2001, 1996, 1991, 1985, 1981, and 1976.

Library of Congress Control Number: 2020932476

Senior Content Strategist: Linda Woodard
Senior Content Development Manager: Luke Held
Publishing Services Manager: Julie Eddy
Senior Project Manager: Abigail Bradberry
Design Direction: Amy Buxton

Printed in Canada

Last digit is the print number: 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

Dedication

For Gus, Amari, Solomon, Bebe, Ben, and Louisa

You make it all worthwhile.

MIMI'S HEAVEN
B

Preface

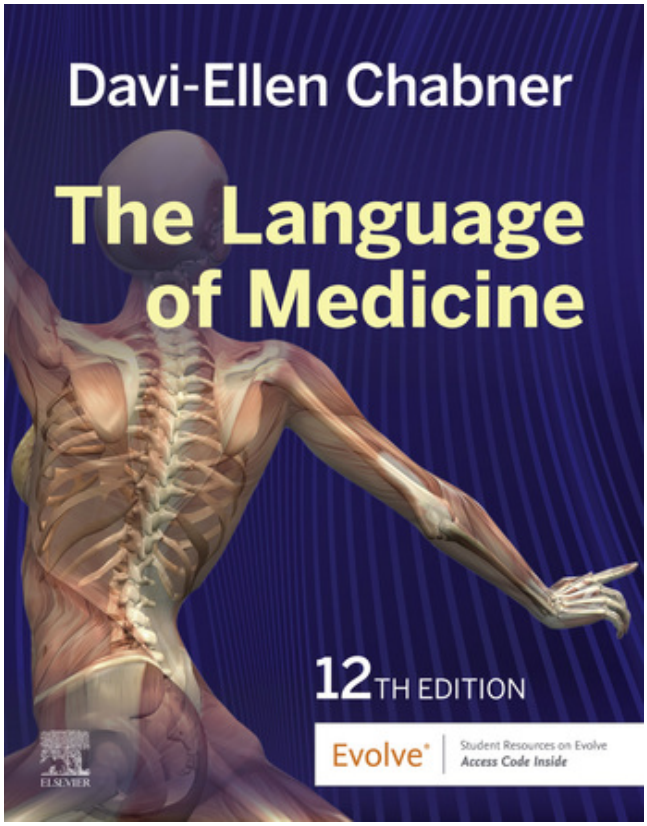
WELCOME TO THE 12TH EDITION OF THE LANGUAGE OF MEDICINE

The continuing focus of this new edition is its cutting-edge relevance to real-life medical practice. Drawing on the newest technology, state-of-the-art medical procedures, and treatments, *The Language of Medicine* brings medical terminology to life. The newly-drawn dynamic images and up-to-date photography plus compelling patient stories further illustrate medical terminology in action.

I am honored that this text continues to be the book instructors return to, year after year, because their students tell them that it works! As a student, you will find that *The Language of Medicine* speaks to you no matter what your background or level of education. It is written in simple, non-technical language that creates an exceptionally accessible pathway to learning. Since it is a workbook-text combination, you engage and interact on practically every page through writing and reviewing terms, labeling diagrams, and answering questions. Terminology is explained so that you understand medical terms in their proper context, which is the structure and function of the human body in health and disease.

Throughout the process of writing this text over its 12 editions, I have listened to hundreds of students and instructors and incorporated their insightful suggestions. Expert medical reviewers have once again helped me to ensure that the terminology included reflects cutting edge clinical practice. New information and illustrations throughout are the result of recommendations from all those who have so generously provided feedback. My continuing goal in writing *The Language of Medicine* is to help you not only learn medical terminology but also to enjoy learning! You will find that medical terminology comes alive and stays with you when you use my interactive, logical, and easy-to-follow method. Undeniably, the study of this language requires commitment and hard work, but the

benefits are great. Knowledge of medical terminology will give you a strong start in your career.



NEW TO THE 12TH EDITION

The biggest bonus for students and instructors is the brand new MINI-DICTIONARY at the end of the book. This is a complete list of all medical terms in the text with easy to understand explanations. My thought was to provide an immediate, convenient way for finding definitions, seeing pronunciations, and checking answers to all terminology sections. It also will be a useful reference, not only during your coursework, but as you begin your new medical career!

MINI-DICTIONARY

A

Abdomen (AB-do-men): Space in the body below the chest containing organs such as the liver, stomach, gallbladder and intestines; abdominal cavity.

Abdominal cavity (ab-DOM-i-nal KAV-ih-te): Space in the body below the chest containing organs such as the liver, stomach, gallbladder and intestines; abdomen.

Abdominal ultrasonography (ab-DOM-in-al ul-trah-so-NOG-rah-fe): Sound waves are beamed into the abdomen and produce an image of abdominal organs.

Abdominocentesis (ab-dom-in-o-sen-TE-sis): Puncture to remove fluid from the abdomen.

Abdominoplasty (ab-DOM-in-o-plas-te): Surgical repair of the abdomen.

Abduction (ab-DUK-shun): Movement away from the midline of the body.

Abductor (ab-DUK-tor): Muscle that draws a limb away from the body.

Abnormal (ab-NOR-mal): Pertaining to away from the rule or order.

Abortion (ah-BOR-shun): Termination of pregnancy before the embryo or fetus can exist on its own.

Abruptio placentae (ah-BRUP-se-o plah-SEN-te): Premature separation of the normally implanted placenta.

Abscess (AB-ses): Cavity containing pus surrounded by inflamed tissue; usually the result of localized infection.

Absence seizure (AB-sens SE-zhur): Minor form of seizure, consisting of momentary clouding of consciousness and loss of awareness.

Absorption (ab-SORP-shun): Passage of materials through the walls of the small intestine into the bloodstream.

Accommodation (ah-kom-o-DA-shun): Normal adjustment of the eye to focus on objects from far to near.

ACE inhibitor (ACE in-HIB-ih-tor): Drug that lowers blood pressure by dilating blood vessels (antihypertensive).

Acetabular (ah-seh-TAB-u-lar): Pertaining to the acetabulum.

Acetabulum (ah-seh-TAB-u-lum): Rounded depression, or socket, in the pelvis that joins the femur, forming the hip joint.

Acetone (AS-eh-tohn): A type of ketone body formed when fatty acids are broken down in the liver.

Acetylcholine (a-se-til-KO-leen): Neurotransmitter chemical released at the ends of nerve cells.

Achalasia (ak-ah-LA-jah): Failure of the lower esophageal sphincter muscle (LES) to relax.

Achlorhydria (a-chlor-HI-dre-ah): Absence of hydrochloric acid from the gastric juice.

Achondroplasia (a-kon-dro-PLA-ze-ah): Inherited disorder in which the bones of the arms and legs fail to grow to normal size; achondroplastic dwarfism.

Acne (AK-ne): Chronic papular and pustular eruption of the skin with increased production of sebum.

Acoustic (ah-KOOS-tik): Pertaining to hearing.

Acoustic neuroma (ah-KOOS-tik nu-RO-mah): Benign tumor arising from the acoustic nerve.

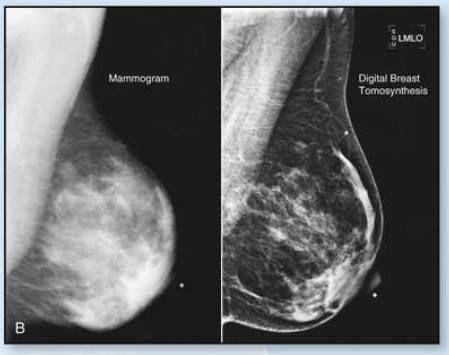
While the essential elements of *The Language of Medicine* remain in place, the new 12th edition is even more relevant to real-life medical situations.

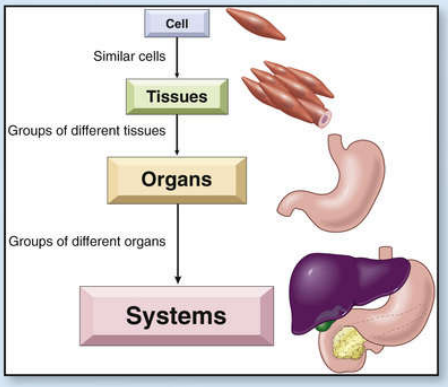
The 12th edition includes helpful hints to point out important facts and make things clear. There are also new, first-hand stories of medical

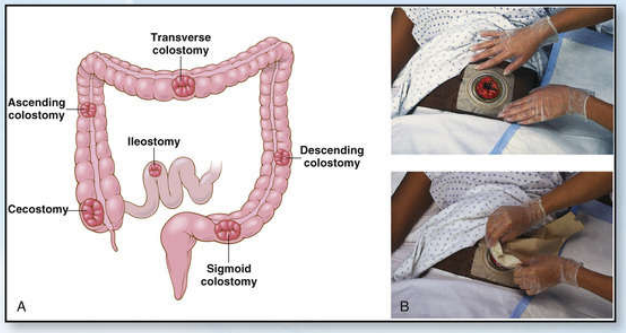
conditions and procedures. These personal accounts make medical terminology more understandable and relevant.

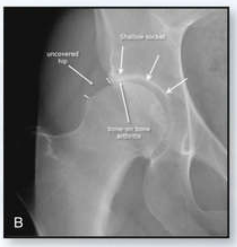
IN PERSON: DIABETES INSIPIDUS
Prior a diagnosis of diabetes insipidus, I was drinking what seemed like gallons of water a day. I first thought it was great to always want water because I was aware the daily recommendations. But it quickly became apparent that I couldn't go for more than 30 minutes without drinking at least 8 ounces or more. If I didn't have water every 20-30 minutes, I would produce a foam-like substance in my mouth feel the urge urinate. In fact, as I was drinking so much water I was also producing clear urine very frequently. I was unable to sleep throughout the night awoke with my heart racing, feeling extremely thirsty.
When I went to my physician, she drew blood and the results showed low levels of a hormone called vasopressin or antidiuretic hormone. I was diagnosed with diabetes insipidus and started taking a medication called desmopressin (commonly know
gland. An MRI showed that I had a pituitary adenoma,
secretion. Three months later I had the transsphenoidal
Remnants of the tumor were removed through my nasal
continue to take desmopressin as needed.
IN PERSON: TOTAL HIP ARTHROPLASTY
I was born with a right congenital hip dysplasia and put into iron braces until I could walk normally. At 11 months, the braces were removed and I was deemed healthy, but my right foot, always turned outward. It never got in my way and held up for over 100 marathons, until 2012 when I developed a deep aching pain in my groin, a telltale sign of hip pathology and my running became more difficult. In the spring of 2016, at the advice of my chiropractor, I had an x-ray of my pelvis with a views of my right hip. The diagnosis was right hip severe osteoarthritis, bone on bone. (Figure 15-40A and B)
The prognosis for this sort of condition can be variable. Some people can avoid joint replacement for years, with limited activity, but I was having pain with any flexion of my hip. In December of 2016, I had a corticosteroid injection into the joint space with the goal of reducing some of the inflammation resulting from the femoral head rubbing against the acetabulum. My only painless motion was lateral, where my hip could rotate without osteophytes and bone spurs limiting motion. Over the years I had worn down my femoral head so that it was no longer round but rather flat from bone rubbing on bone. (See Figure 15-40C.) Although I took NSAID's for pain, when the pain continued all night, I decided to look into hip replacement.
I selected a surgeon who operated with an anterior approach and used a special Hana table, to position my leg for optimal placement of the femoral stem prosthesis. Artificial hips are comprised of 3 components: the titanium femoral stem, the femoral head either chromium cobalt or ceramic, and the acetabular portion which can be metal with a polyethylene liner. See Figure 15-34 on page 584. Because I wanted an approach that did not cut through any muscle and with the lowest dislocation risk, I decided upon an anterior approach. The entire procedure took about 60 minutes (see post operative x-ray below in Figure 15-40D) and within 6 hours they had me up and walking on my new hip.
The most challenging part of the post-op period was extreme nausea resulting from the anesthesia and narcotics used to curb my postoperative pain. I decided to discontinue the narcotics. Because I was laying in bed for hours on end, in between my PT, I wore compression hose and special boots that inflated and deflated on schedule to move blood through my legs. This prevented deep vein thromboses. I also was put on a blood thinner (anticoagulant) to prevent the dangerous clots which could easily migrate to my lungs (pulmonary emboli).
Over a period of a week, I gradually grew stronger. I progressed from a walker to using a cane in my left hand. I practiced using my stronger left leg first going up stairs and my weaker right leg-cane combination first when going down stairs. I took it slowly. I iced my hip constantly, never going any where or lying down without ice packs to reduce the inflammation, pain and swelling.
Increasing my walking and adding daily PT helped me feel stable on my feet within a few weeks. My surgeon hypothesized that by 6 weeks, I would feel like my new hip was my own and take aerobic exercise gradually from there. I can't wait.
HINT: Lying supine is on your spine
HINT: Don't confuse a sprain with a strain, which is an injury involving the overstretching of muscle
HINTS make things clear and point out important facts.
HINT: Azoospermia is semen without sperm, while aspermia is no semen at all.

Clinical photographs and drawings dynamically illustrate new medical terminology, abnormal conditions, and treatments









HOW TO USE THE BOOK

The Language of Medicine makes learning easy. The book guides and coaches you step by step through the learning experience. Don't get overwhelmed! Approach learning systematically, step by step. I've helped you study each chapter by organizing the information in small pieces. Icons are provided to help you navigate the sections of the text.

VOCABULARY

arteriole	Small artery.
calciferol	Active form of vitamin D, secreted by the kidney.
calyx *or* calix (*plural*: calyces or calices)	Cup-like collecting region of the renal pelvis. The term comes from Greek, *kalux* meaning a cup or case surrounding a flower bud.
catheter	Tube for injecting or removing fluids. A bladder catheter drains urine from the bladder.
cortex	Outer region of an organ; the renal cortex is the outer region of the kidney (**cortical** means pertaining to the cortex).
creatinine	Nitrogenous waste excreted in urine. Creatinine is a product of muscle metabolism. **Creatinine clearance** is a measure of the efficiency of the kidneys in removing (clearing) creatinine from the blood.
electrolyte	Chemical element that carries an el water. Electrolytes are necessary for The kidneys maintain the proper ba blood. Potassium (K^+) and sodium (
erythropoietin (EPO)	Hormone secreted by the kidney to

After basic material in the chapter is introduced, the key terms you need to learn are presented in Vocabulary lists. These lists help you study and stay focused.

TERMINOLOGY

Divide each term into its component parts, and write its meaning in the space provided.

COMBINING FORMS

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
abdomin/o	abdomen	abdominal *The abdomen is the region below the chest containing internal organs (such as the liver, intestines, stomach, and gallbladder).*	
adip/o	fat	adipose *The suffix -ose means pertaining to or full of. Another combining form meaning fat is lip/o. Lipids are fats.*	
anter/o	front	anterior *The suffix -ior means pertaining to.*	
cervic/o	neck (of the body or of the uterus)	cervical *The **cervix** is the neck of the uterus. See Figure 2-19.*	
chondr/o	cartilage (type of connective tissue)	chondroma *This is a benign tumor.* chondrosarcoma *This is a malignant tumor. The root sarc indicates that the malignant tumor arises from a type of flesh or connective tissue.*	
chrom/o	color	chromosomes *These nuclear structures absorb the color of dyes used to stain the cell. The suffix -somes means bodies. Literally, this term means "bodies of color," because this is how they appeared to researchers who first saw them under the microscope.*	

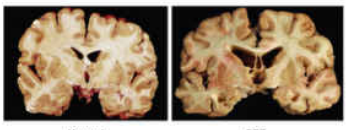
You cannot get lost using *The Language of Medicine*. You learn and engage in small incremental steps. In Terminology sections, terms are explained with information that comes from my own classroom teaching experience.

Opioid

An opioid is a drug derived from the opium poppy plant. Opioids, also known as narcotics (narc/o means stupor or sleep), include heroin, fentanyl, oxycodone (OxyContin), hydrocodone (Vicodin), codeine and morphrine. These drugs act on brain receptors to alleviate pain. Misuse of opioids increases the risk of addiction, overdose, and death. A medication called buprenorphrine treats opioid addiction. While reducing acute and chronic pain, it minimizes withdrawal symptoms. Narcan (naloxone) is a medication to counter the affects of life-threatening opioid overdose.

What is Chronic Traumatic Encephalopathy?

Chronic (pertaining to over a long period of time) **traumatic encephalopathy (CTE)** is a serious brain injury associated with high-impact head trauma (as may be found in football and boxing). The autopsy images below show a normal brain and a brain affected by CTE.



Throughout the text, Spotlights enhance the relevance of medical terms.

PRACTICAL APPLICATIONS

DOS AND DON'TS OF TAKING MEDICINES

Check the DO or DON'T box for the following scenarios.

1. If your medicine prescription label says: 1 tab PO a.c., you take it before meals. DO ☐ DON'T ☐
   Answer: DO (a.c. means *ante cibum* "before meals". Some medications are better absorbed on an empty stomach, such as 1 hour before eating or 2 hours after eating. READ labels carefully!)
2. If your medicine prescription label says: 1 PO qPM prn pain, you take it every morning. DO ☐ DON'T ☐
   Answer: DON'T (qPM means "every evening" and PRN means "when needed.")
3. If you feel 100% better, skip the last few doses of antibiotic medication. DO ☐ DON'T ☐
   Answer: DON'T (Antibiotics work best when an optimal blood level of the drug is reached and then maintained for a period of time. If you stop your course of treatment early, you may prevent complete eradication of infection. Finish your entire course of medication and call your doctor if you are not feeling better.)
4. Lend a friend your pills if she has the same condition
   medication.
   Answer: DON'T (People take different doses of medica
   reasons. NEVER SHARE. Any mistake could have s
5. You may take your cholesterol-lowering statin pill wi
   Answer: DON'T (Grapefruit juice increases blood leve
   lead to toxic side effects such as liver and muscle
6. It's a good idea to take your ACE inhibitor (blood pre
   with bananas.

In Practical Applications sections throughout the book, medical terminology is also connected to real life through case studies and practical clinical information.

PRACTICAL APPLICATIONS

CASE STUDY: TARGETED THERAPY FOR LUNG CANCER

In 2008, Sarah Broom was a 35-year-old literature instructor and poet living in New Zealand. Married with two young sons, she was pregnant with her third child when she noticed shortness of breath accompanied by a persistent cough. An x-ray of her lungs during her 7th month of pregnancy showed a large mass in one lung. After a cesarean section (her daughter was born safely), she had a biopsy and other tests, which revealed NSCLC-advanced lung cancer. Sarah was a nonsmoker.

The doctors in New Zealand told her that her care would be palliative and that she had only a few months to live.

Sarah was desperate to explore every option, and through a personal connection, she sent her biopsy slides to the MGH Cancer Center in Boston. The slides were analyzed using cutting edge technology, and her tumor was found to have a mutation called EML4-ALK, which occurs in only 5% of lung cancers. The doctors at MGH knew of a new drug called crizotinib that was being evaluated to treat lung cancers with this specific mutation. Finding a specific mutation in a tumor and targeting that mutation with particular drug is a cutting edge approach to cancer treatment.

Sarah was given the new drug—and her tumors shrunk! She was in remission for over 2 years. In 2010, the tumors returned, and Sarah traveled back to Boston for further drug treatment, which was not successful. She developed brain metastases.

Study sections organize information and help you learn.

STUDY SECTION 1

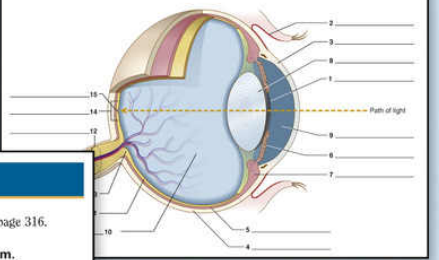
Practice spelling each term, and know its meaning.

anabolism	Process of building up large proteins from small protein pieces called amino acids. Ana- means up, bol means to cast, and -ism is a process.
catabolism	Process whereby complex nutrients are broken down to simpler substances and energy is released. Cata- means down, bol means to cast, and -ism is a process.
cell membrane	Structure surrounding and protecting the cell. It determines what enters and leaves the cell.
chromosomes	Rod-shaped structures in the nucleus that contain regions of DNA called genes. There are 46 chromosomes (23 pairs) in every cell except for the egg and sperm cells, which contain only 23 individual, unpaired chromosomes.
cytoplasm	All of the material that is outside the nucleus and yet contained within the cell membrane.
DNA	Chemical found within each chromosome. Arranged like a sequence of recipes in code, it directs the activities of the cell.
endoplasmic reticulum	Network of canals within the cytoplasm of the cell. Here, large proteins are made from smaller protein pieces.
genes	Regions of DNA within each chromosome.
karyotype	Picture (classification) of chromosomes in the nucleus of a cell. The chromosomes are arranged in numerical order to determine their number and structure.
metabolism	Total of the chemical processes in a cell. It includes catabolism and anabolism. Meta- means change, bol means to cast, and -ism means a process.

As you study with *The Language of Medicine*, you are engaged in each step of the learning process. On nearly every page, you are actively involved in labeling diagrams, dividing words into component parts, writing meanings to terms, testing, reviewing, and evaluating your learning.

J **Label the drawing of the eye using the list of terms provided.**

anterior chamber
choroid
ciliary body
conjunctiva
cornea
fovea centralis
iris
lens
macula
optic disc
optic nerve
pupil
retina
sclera
vitreous humor

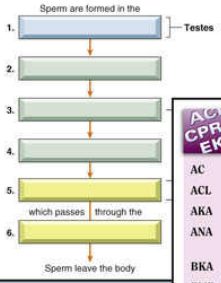


EXERCISES

Remember to check your answers carefully with those given in the Answers to Exercises, page 316.

A **Using the terms below, fill in the flow chart showing the passage of sperm.**

epididymis
ejaculatory duct
penis
seminiferous tubules
urethra
vas deferens



Abbreviations are listed and explained in each body system chapter.

ABBREVIATIONS

AC	acromioclavicular (joint)	**MCL**	medial collateral ligament of the knee
ACL	anterior cruciate ligament of the knee	**NSAID**	nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug—often prescribed to treat musculoskeletal disorders
AKA	above knee amputation	**OA**	osteoarthritis
ANA	antinuclear antibody—indicator of systemic lupus erythematosus	**ORIF**	open reduction (of fracture)/internal fixation
BKA	below-knee amputation	**ortho**	orthopedics (*or* orthopaedics)
BMD	bone mineral density	**OT**	occupational therapy—helps patients with impaired musculoskeletal
C1 to C7	cervical vertebrae		
Ca	calcium		

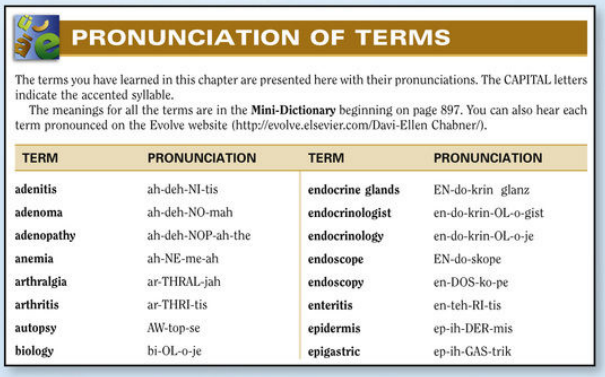
A Review Sheet at the end of each chapter helps you organize and test yourself on what you have learned!

REVIEW SHEET

Write the meanings of each word part in the space provided, and test yourself. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING	PREFIX	MEANING
a-, an-		dia-	
ab-		dys-	
ad-		ec-	
ana-		en-, endo-	
ante-		epi-	
anti-		eu-	
auto-		ex-	
bi-		hemi-	
brady-		hyper-	
cata-		hypo-	
con-		in-	
contra-		infra-	
de-		inter-	



PRONUNCIATION OF TERMS

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The CAPITAL letters indicate the accented syllable.

The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Davi-Ellen Chabner/).

TERM	PRONUNCIATION	TERM	PRONUNCIATION
adenitis	ah-deh-NI-tis	**endocrine glands**	EN-do-krin glanz
adenoma	ah-deh-NO-mah	**endocrinologist**	en-do-krin-OL-o-gist
adenopathy	ah-deh-NOP-ah-the	**endocrinology**	en-do-krin-OL-o-je
anemia	ah-NE-me-ah	**endoscope**	EN-do-skope
arthralgia	ar-THRAL-jah	**endoscopy**	en-DOS-ko-pe
arthritis	ar-THRI-tis	**enteritis**	en-teh-RI-tis
autopsy	AW-top-se	**epidermis**	ep-ih-DER-mis
biology	bi-OL-o-je	**epigastric**	ep-ih-GAS-trik

The Pronunciation of Terms section shows you how to pronounce each new term in the chapter. You can also hear these terms pronounced on the companion Evolve website. Meanings of all terms are included in the new **MINI-DICTIONARY** at the end of book.

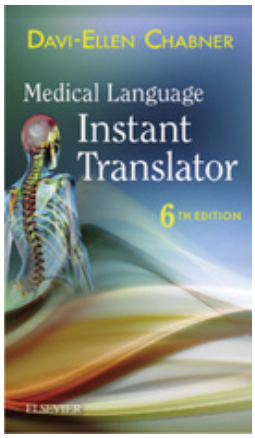
ALSO AVAILABLE

evolve Student Evolve Resources (complimentary access included with purchase of this text)

The student website accompanying this new edition is packed with activities, games, additional information, and video clips to expand your understanding and test your knowledge. Additionally, on the website, you can hear the terms corresponding to the Pronunciation of Terms section in each chapter (more than 3,000 terms in all). Access your resources at: http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language.

MEDICAL LANGUAGE INSTANT TRANSLATOR (for sale separately)

The Medical Language Instant Translator is a uniquely useful resource for all allied health professionals and students of medical terminology. It is a pocket-sized medical terminology reference with convenient information at your fingertips!



INSTRUCTOR'S RESOURCE MANUAL

The Language of Medicine Instructor's Resource Manual (includes instructor's manual, ExamView test bank, PowerPoints, and an image collection) is available with even more new quizzes, teaching suggestions, crossword puzzles, medical reports, and reference material. The image collection contains all figures and photos from the 12th edition. The instructor materials plus a test bank can be accessed online at http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language.

The fundamental features you have come to trust in learning and teaching medical terminology remain strong in this new edition. These are:

- Simple, nontechnical explanations of medical terms.
- Workbook format with ample space to write answers.
- Explanations of clinical procedures, laboratory tests, and abbreviations related to each body system.
- Pronunciation of Terms sections with phonetic spellings and spaces to write meanings of terms.
- Practical Applications sections with case reports, operative and diagnostic tests, and laboratory and x-ray reports.
- Exercises that test your understanding of terminology as you work through the text step by step

(answers are included).
• Review Sheets that pull together terminology to help you study.
• Comprehensive glossaries and appendices for reference in class and on the job.

Each student and teacher who selects *The Language of Medicine* becomes my partner in the exciting adventure of learning medical terms. Continuity is crucial. Continue to communicate with me through email (daviellenchabner@gmail.com) with your suggestions and comments so that future printings and editions may benefit. A website connected to *The Language of Medicine* and dedicated to helping students and teachers is located at http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language. I hope you will tell me about additional resources you would like to see on that website so that we can make it an even more useful part of the learning process. You should know that I still experience the thrill and joy of teaching new students. I love being in a classroom and feel privileged to continue to write this text. I hope that my enthusiasm and passion for the medical language are transmitted to you through these pages.

Work hard, but have fun with *The Language of Medicine!*

DAVI-ELLEN CHABNER

Acknowledgments

Maureen Pfeifer has been my extraordinary and indispensable editorial partner for the last 22 years. Her phenomenal expertise in all facets of communication, coordination, production, editing, updating, and management is amazing. She has the unique ability to "make things happen" and "make things right." Both personally and professionally, I am grateful for her unique insight and capabilities. She is intelligent, calm, and upbeat in the face of any issue affecting The Language of Medicine and its ancillaries. Most of all, I rely on her loyalty and her confidence that we are creating an eminently useful and valuable textbook and resource for both students and instructors. Thank you, Maureen, for everything you do for me, especially when you take things "off my plate."

Bruce A. Chabner, MD, and Elizabeth Chabner Thompson, MD, MPH, continue to be amazing resources to me for expert and up-to-date medical advice. Their contributions were essential in reviewing and editing all chapters and glossaries. My devoted friend, Dan Longo, MD, never turned me down for valuable medical advice and editing of chapters. He was also a wonderful resource for helping identify expert reviewers.

Jim Perkins, Assistant Professor of Medical Illustration, Rochester Institute of Technology, has been associated with *The Language of Medicine* since its 6th edition. He has worked with me to create drawings that are not only attractive but also essential in making the terminology more understandable. I have come to rely on his unique talent for clarity, accuracy, and detail.

I am indebted to the many medical reviewers listed on pages xv-xvi who offered essential advice and comments on specific chapters.

Their insights and expertise make this 12th edition reflect what is current, accurate, and cutting edge in medicine today.

The classroom instructors listed on pages xvi-xvii extensively and carefully reviewed the text, and I have listened to their comments, which are integrated into this new edition. Many other instructors contacted me personally through email with helpful suggestions.

I am always pleased to hear from students who comment on the book and ask important questions. I try to answer each as quickly and accurately as possible. Thanks to Shulamit Izen, Vashine Kamesan, Stephanie Kitchingham, Alfred Kyrollos, Rachel Recolcolin, Megan Peterson, Christina Sastre, Julia Sjoquist, Victoria Swanson, and Lan Wang.

The In Person stories throughout the text are first-hand personal accounts of individuals dealing with illness and medical procedures. The writers of these stories are extraordinarily generous to share their insights and reactions so that we all benefit. A very special thank you to: Stan Ber, Nancy J. Brandwein, Mary Braun, Bruce A. Chabner, Lenore Estrada, Sidra DeKoven Ezrahi, Elizabeth F. Fideler, Tanzie Johnson, Kevin Mahoney, Frank McGinnis, Brenda Melson, John Melson, John Murphy, Laura Claridge Oppenheimer, Carolyn Peter, Bob Rowe, Ruthellen Sheldon, Elizabeth Chabner Thompson, Cathy Ward, and Kemisha White.

The superb staff at Elsevier Health Sciences continues to be vital to the success of *The Language of Medicine*. Luke Held, Content Development Manager, is always responsive, available, and effective in managing the many details of the project. I appreciate Linda Woodard, Senior Content Strategist, for her expert management and steadfast support of my books.

I am grateful to Annie Martin, Director, Book Production, Jeff Patterson, Book Production Manager, and Julie Eddy, Publishing Services Manager, for their superb production efforts. Abbie Bradberry, Book Production Specialist, tirelessly and effectively handled the day-to-day aspects of the production process. Thank you, Abbie! Kim Denando and Amy Buxton, created and directed

the design for this edition. I appreciate their expertise and responsiveness.

I continue to be impressed by the talents of the entire marketing team, especially Julie Burchett, Senior Director of Product Portfolio Marketing and Samantha Page, Marketing Manager, Product Portfolio Marketing. They do a phenomenal job keeping *The Language of Medicine* in-step with the needs of instructors and students.

Thanks to Manju Thirumalaivasan, Senior Multimedia Producer and Prakash Kannan, Multimedia Team Lead, for their work on the electronic products associated with this new edition.

A very special note of gratitude to the extraordinary and devoted sales team at Elsevier Health Sciences, which is beyond compare! Led by Bryan Gripka, Vice President of Sales, this dedicated team works tirelessly to bring my books and learning system to the marketplace. You are the best!!!

My family and friends continue to be my greatest comfort and support. The kids, Noonie, Brandon, and Marla, are always "in my corner." The grandkids, Bebe, Solomon, Ben, Gus, Louisa, and Amari make me feel "on top of the world." Juliana DoCarmo, by managing so many day-to-day responsibilities, allows me the luxury of being able to work and concentrate. I am grateful for Bob Williams, photographic specialist, who continues to provide expert advice on images throughout the book. My husband, Bruce, has always encouraged my passion for teaching and writing, and given me the space and time to enjoy both. I rely on his calm reassurance and his willingness to answer all questions medical or otherwise. Lastly, our canine kids, Ginger and Fred, remain the love of our lives, providing countless hours of excitement and enjoyment.

Reviewers

The following persons reviewed the text and/or the ancillaries:

MEDICAL REVIEWERS

Elizabeth Chabner Thompson MD, MPH
CEO/Founder of Masthead
Scarsdale, New York

Bruce A. Chabner MD
Clinical Director, Emeritus
Allen Distinguished Investigator
Massachusetts General Hospital Cancer Center
Professor of Medicine
Harvard Medical School
Boston, Massachusetts

Lisa Caulley MD, MPH
Otolaryngology/Head & Neck Surgery
The Ottawa Hospital
Ottawa, Canada

Michael J. Curtin MD
Medical Director, St. Luke's Sports Medicine
Orthopedic Surgery and Sports Medicine
St. Luke's Clinic
Boise, Idaho

Morris A. Fisher MD
Attending Neurologist
Edward Hines Jr. Veterans Hospital

Hines, Illinois
Professor of Neurology Loyola University
Chicago Stritch School of Medicine
Maywood, Illinois

Carlos A. Jamis-Dow M.D.
Radiologist
Sutter Medical Group
Sacramento, California

Jay Loeffler MD
Chief of Radiation Oncology
Massachusetts General Hospital Cancer Center
Herman and Joan Suit Professor
Harvard Medical School
Boston, Massachusetts

Dan L. Longo MD
Deputy Editor
New England Journal of Medicine
Professor of Medicine
Harvard Medical School
Boston, Massachusetts

Neera R. Nathan MD, MSHS
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

Tomas G. Neilan MD, MPH
Division of Cardiology
Department of Medicine
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

Aparna Parikh MD
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

Mihir Parikh MD
Beth Israel Deaconess Medical Center
Boston, Massachusetts

Cliff Rosen MD
Rosen Laboratory
Scarborough, Maine

James L. Rosenzweig MD
Endocrinology, Diabetes and Metabolism
Hebrew Rehabilitation Center
Roslindale, MA

Henry E. Schniewind MD, Boston, Massachusetts

Sydney Schoensee PT, DPT, FAAOMPT
St. Luke's Rehabilitation
McCall, Idaho

Noëlle S. Sherber MD, FAAD
Dermatologist
Co-Founder, Sherber+Rad
Washington, DC

Leigh H. Simmons MD
Assistant Professor of Medicine
Harvard Medical School
Division of General Internal Medicine
Massachusetts General Hospital
Boston, Massachusetts

Daniel I. Simon MD
President, University Hospitals Case Medical Center
President, Harrington Heart & Vascular Institute
Chief, Division of Cardiovascular Medicine
University Hospitals Health System
Herman K. Hellerstein Chair of Cardiovascular Research and
Professor of Medicine

Case Western Reserve University School of Medicine
Cleveland, Ohio

Jill Smith MD
Chief of Ophthalmology
Newton-Wellesley Hospital
Newton, Massachusetts

Daniel Talmasov MD
Harvard Longwood Psychiatry
Boston, Massachusetts

Beatrix Thompson, New Haven, Connecticut

Cornelia L. Trimble MD
Professor
Departments of Gynecology and Obstetrics, Oncology, and Pathology
The Johns Hopkins Medical Institutions
Baltimore, Maryland

INSTRUCTOR REVIEWERS

Teresa S. Boyer MSN, APN-BC, PMHNP
Associate Professor of Nursing
Motlow College
Lynchburg, Tennessee

Cheryl Christopher RHIA
Adjunct
Borough of Manhattan Community College
New York, New York

Mary Jane Durksen Medical Office Administrator Diploma
Lead Virtual Instructor/Courseware Developer
AOLC
Ontario, Canada

Shelba Durston MSN, RN, CCRN, SAFE

Professor of Nursing
San Joaquin Delta College
Stockton, California

Erin J. Fitzgerald RN, BSN, MBA
Norwalk Community College
Norwalk, Connecticut

Rosalie Griffith RN, MSN, MA.Ed
Nursing Success Coordinator
Chesapeake College
Wye Mills, Maryland

Shawn McGowan
Manager, Healthcare Division
AOLC
Ontario, Canada

Angela J. Moore RN, MSN Ed.
Assistant Director of Nurses
Career Care Institute
Lancaster, California

José L. Mosqueda
Healthcare Lead Instructor
Erie Neighborhood House
Chicago, Illinois

Mary Prorok RN, MSN
Instructor
South Hills School of Business & Technology
Altoona, Pennsylvania

Danielle Robel MBA
Professor, Health Sciences
AAMA, Milwaukee Area Technical College
Milwaukee Wisconsin

Deb Stockberger MSN, RN
Health Division Instructor
North Iowa Area Community College
Mason City, Iowa

Donna J. Wilde MPA, RHIA
Professor, Health Informatics and Information Management
Shoreline Community College
Seattle, Washington

Charles K. Williston BA, MS, CPC
Instructor
Traviss Career Center
Lakeland, Florida

Lynda Wilson Masters in the Art of Teaching, EMT-Paramedic
Professor of Medical Terminology
Valencia College
Orlando, Florida

Mindy Wray MA, CMA (AAMA), RMA
Program Director, Medical Assisting
ECPI University
Greensboro, North Carolina

Carole Zeglin MSEd, BSMT, RMA
Associate Professor/Director Medical Laboratory Technology,
Medical Assisting, and Phlebotomy/Specimen Processing Programs
Westmoreland County Community College
Youngwood, Pennsylvania

CHAPTER 1

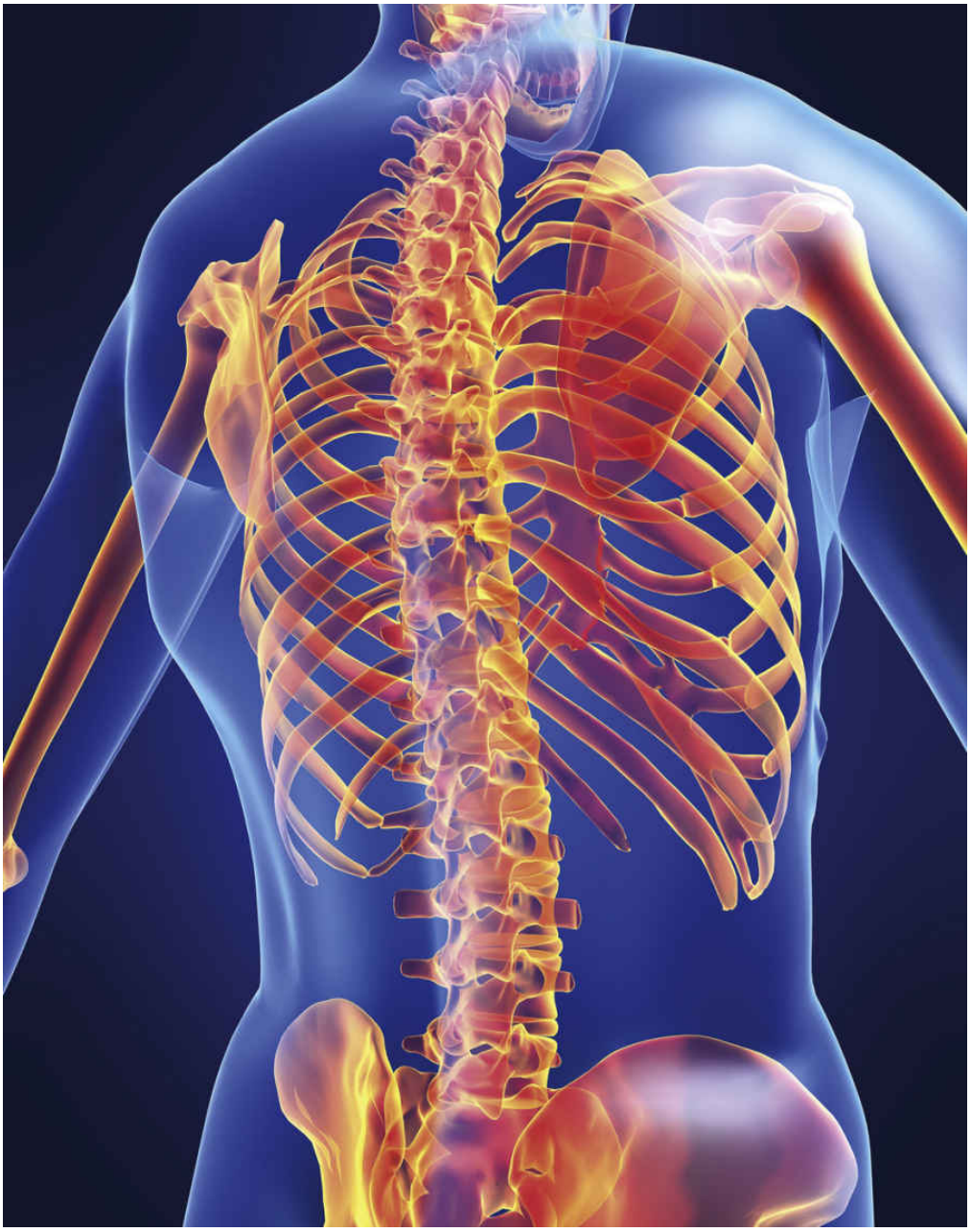
Basic Word Structure

CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Objectives in Studying the Medical Language 2
Word Analysis 3
Terminology 6
Practical Applications 16
Exercises 17
Answers to Exercises 24
Pronunciation of Terms 27
Review Sheet 29

CHAPTER GOALS

- Identify basic objectives to guide your study of the medical language.
- Divide medical words into their component parts.
- Learn the meanings of basic combining forms, suffixes, and prefixes of the medical language.
- Use these combining forms, suffixes, and prefixes to build medical words.



Objectives in Studying the Medical Language

There are three objectives to keep in mind as you study medical terminology:

- **Analyze words by dividing them into component parts.** Your goal is to learn the *tools* of word analysis that will make understanding complex terminology easier. Do

not simply memorize terms; think about dividing terms into their component parts—the building blocks of terminology. This book shows how to separate both complicated and simple terms into understandable word elements. Medical terms are much like jigsaw puzzles in that they are constructed of small pieces that make each word unique, with one major difference: The pieces can be shuffled up and used in lots of combinations to make other words as well. As you become familiar with word parts and learn what each means, you will be able to recognize those word parts in totally new combinations in other terms.

- **Relate the medical terms to the structure and function of the human body.**

  Memorization of terms, although essential to retention of the language, should not become the primary objective of your study. A major focus of this book is to *explain* terms in the context of how the body works in health and disease. Medical terms explained in their proper context also will be easier to remember. Thus, the term **hepatitis,** meaning inflammation (**-itis**) of the liver (**hepat**), is better understood when you know where the liver is and how it functions. No previous knowledge of biology, anatomy, or physiology is needed for this study. Explanations in this book are straightforward and basic.

- **Be aware of spelling and pronunciation problems.**

  Some medical terms are pronounced alike but are spelled differently, which accounts for their different meanings. For example, **ilium** and **ileum** have identical pronunciations, but the first term, **ilium,** means a part of the hip bone, whereas the second term, **ileum,** refers to a part of the small intestine (Figure 1-1). Even when terms are spelled correctly, they can be misunderstood because of incorrect pronunciation. For

example, the **urethra** (u-RE-thrah) is the tube leading from the urinary bladder to the outside of the body, whereas a **ureter** (U-reh-ter) is one of two tubes, each leading from a single kidney and inserting into the urinary bladder. Figure 1-2 illustrates the different anatomy of the urethra and the ureters.

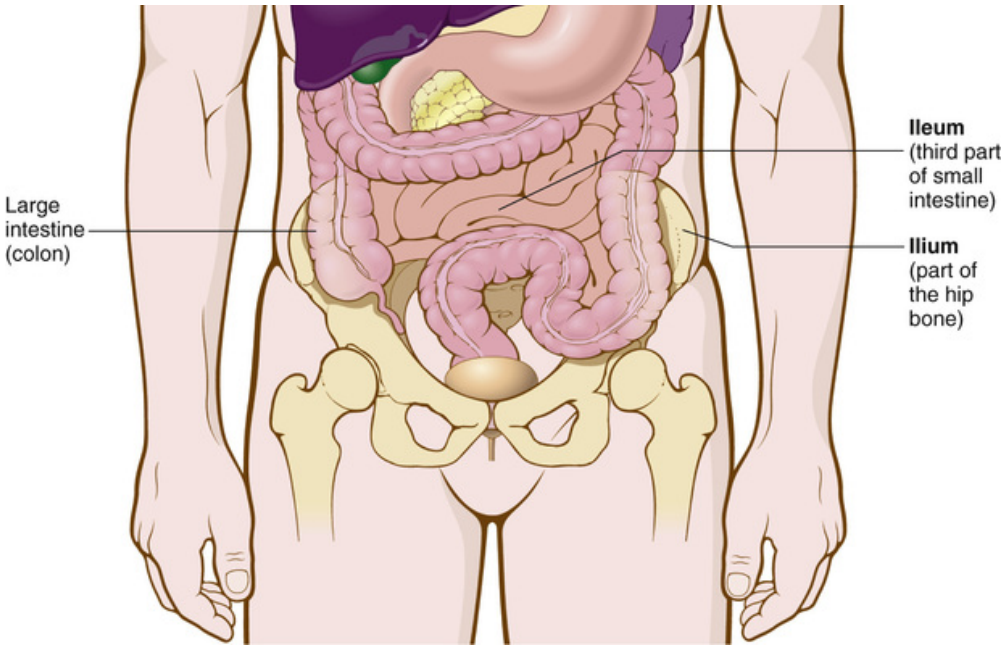


FIGURE 1-1 The terms **ileum** and **ilium** can be confusing because they are pronounced alike and refer to body parts located in the same general region of the body. **HINT:** The **ileum**, with an "**e,**" is part of the digestive tract, which has to do with **e**ating.

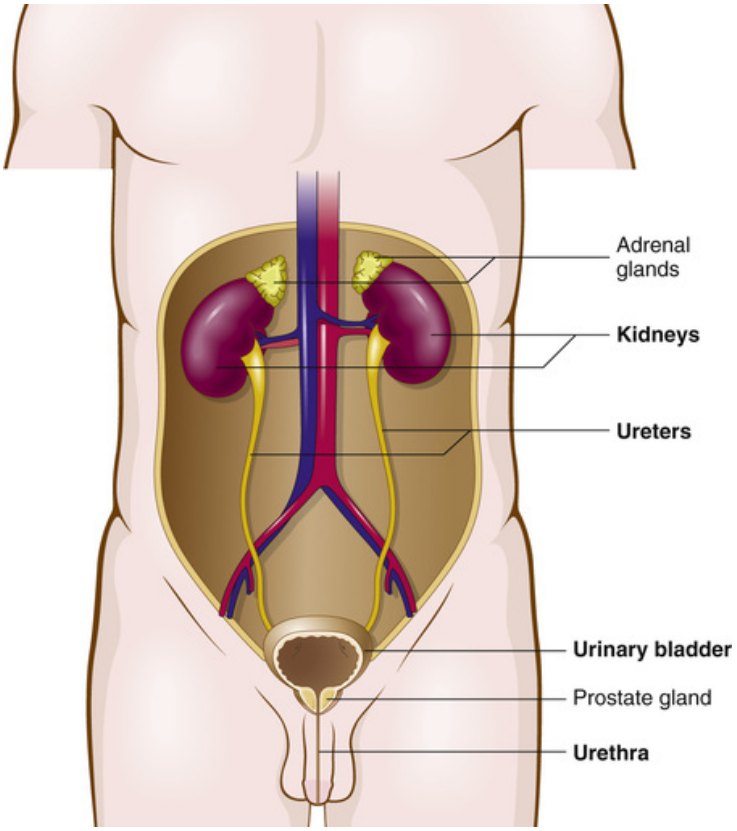
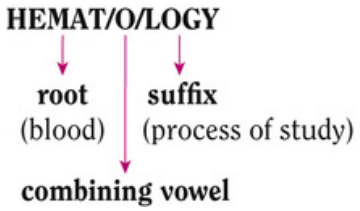


FIGURE 1-2 Male urinary tract. The terms **urethra** and **ureter** can be confusing because they are both tubes of the urinary system, but spellings and pronunciations are different. Notice their locations: **two ureters** between the kidneys and urinary bladder and **one urethra** between the urinary bladder and the outside of the body. **HINT:** Ur**e**t**e**r has two "e's" and ur**e**thra has just one "e."

Word Analysis

Studying medical terminology is very similar to learning a new language. At first, the words seem strange and complicated, although they may stand for commonly known disorders and terms. For example, **cephalgia** means "headache," and an **ophthalmologist** is an "eye doctor."

Your first job in learning the language of medicine is to understand how to divide words into their component parts. Logically, most terms, whether complex or simple, can be broken down into basic parts and then understood. For example, consider the following term, which is divided into three parts:



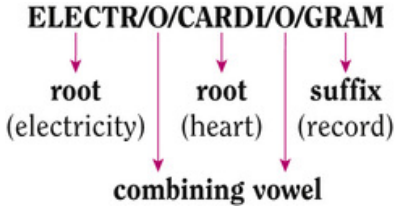
The **root** is the *foundation of the word*. All medical terms have one or more roots. For example, the root **hemat** means **blood.**

The **suffix** is the *word ending*. All medical terms have a suffix. The suffix **-logy** means **process of study.**

The **combining vowel**—usually **o**, as in this term—*links the root to the suffix or the root to another root.* A combining vowel has no meaning of its own; it joins one word part to another.

It is useful to read the meaning of medical terms *starting from the suffix and then going back to the beginning of the term.* Thus, the term **hematology** means **process of study of blood.**

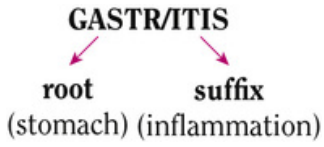
Here is another familiar medical term:



Electrocardiogram, reading from the suffix back to the beginning of the term, means **record of the electricity in the heart.**

Notice that there are two combining vowels—both **o**—in this term. The first o links the two roots **electr** and **cardi**; the second o links the root **cardi** and the suffix **-gram.**

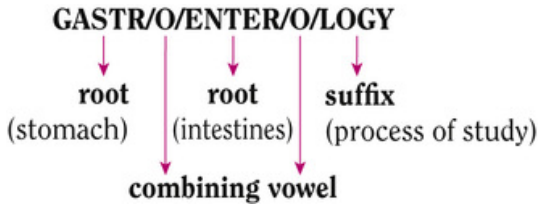
Try another term:



Gastritis, reading from the end of the term (suffix) to the beginning, means **inflammation of the stomach.**

Notice that the combining vowel, o, is missing in this term. This is because the suffix, **-itis,** begins with a vowel. The combining vowel is dropped before a suffix that begins with a vowel. It is retained, however, between two roots, even if the second root begins with a vowel.

Consider the following term:



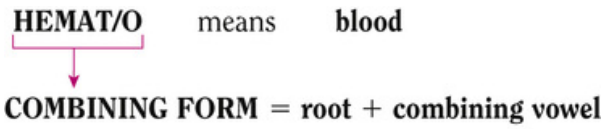
The entire term means **process of study of the stomach and intestines.**

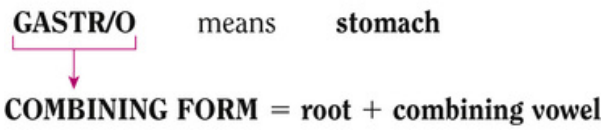
Notice that the combining vowel is retained between **gastr** and **enter,** even though the second root, **enter,** begins with a vowel. When a term contains two or more roots related to parts of the body, anatomic position often determines which root goes before the other. For example, the stomach receives food first, before the small intestine—so the word is formed as **gastroenterology,** not "enterogastrology."

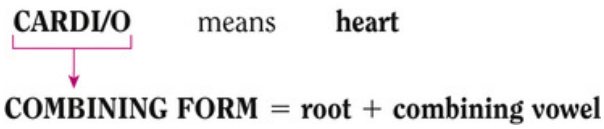
In summary, remember **three general rules:**

1. **READ** the meaning of medical terms from the suffix back to the beginning of the term and across.
2. **DROP** the combining vowel (usually o) before a suffix beginning with a vowel: **gastritis,** *not* "gastroitis."
3. **KEEP** the combining vowel between two roots: **gastroenterology,** *not* "gastrenterology."

In addition to the root, suffix, and combining vowel, two other word parts are commonly found in medical terms. These are the **combining form** and the **prefix.** The combining form is simply the root plus the combining vowel. For example, you already are familiar with the following combining forms and their meanings:

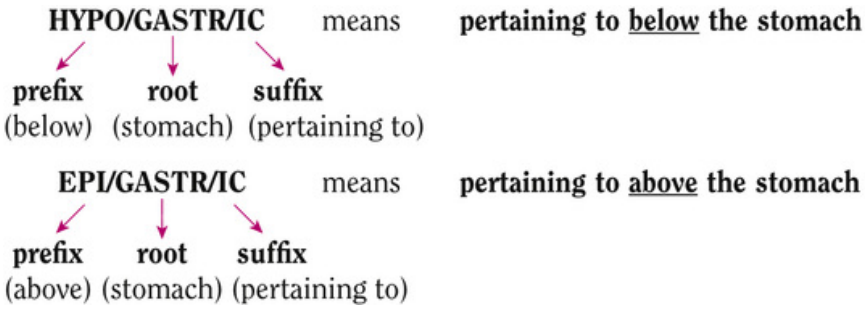






Combining forms are used with many different suffixes. Remembering the meaning of a combining form will help you understand unfamiliar medical terms.

The **prefix** is a small part attached to the *beginning* of a term. Not all medical terms contain prefixes, but the prefix can have an important influence on the meaning. Consider the following examples:


HYPO/GASTR/IC means pertaining to below the stomach
prefix root suffix
(below) (stomach) (pertaining to)
EPI/GASTR/IC means pertaining to above the stomach
prefix root suffix
(above) (stomach) (pertaining to)

In summary, the **important elements of medical terms** are the following:

1. **ROOT:** foundation of the term
2. **SUFFIX:** word ending
3. **PREFIX:** word beginning
4. **COMBINING VOWEL:** vowel (usually o) that links the root to the suffix or the root to another root
5. **COMBINING FORM:** combination of the root and the combining vowel

Terminology

In previous examples you have been introduced to the combining forms **gastr/o** (stomach), **hemat/o** (blood), and **cardi/o** (heart). This section of the chapter presents a list of additional combining forms, suffixes, and prefixes, with examples of medical words using those word parts. Similar lists are included for each chapter in the book. Write the *meaning* of the medical term in the space provided. Then check the correct pronunciation for each term with the Pronunciation of Terms list on pages 27 and 28. The **Mini-Dictionary**, beginning on page 897, includes definitions for all terms in this book. The Evolve website for *The Language of Medicine* also contains audio pronunciations for each term. **Use it!**

Most medical terms are derived from Greek and Latin roots. Greek, Roman, and Arabic physicians had developed medically useful concepts and associated vocabularies long before the 21st century. Greek and Latin origins for medical terms are presented for your interest on the Evolve website.

Chapter Study Guide

1. **Use slashes to divide each term** into component parts (*aden/oma*), and **write its meaning** (*tumor of a gland*) in the space provided. Although most medical terms are divided easily into component parts and understood, others defy simple explanation. Information in *italics* under a medical term helps you define and understand the term. You can check meanings using the **Mini-Dictionary** at the end of this book.
2. **Complete the Exercises,** pages 17 to 23, and **check your answers** on pages 24 to 26.
3. **Practice** your pronunciation of each term using **the Pronunciation of Terms list,** pages 27 and 28. Definitions of each term are in the Mini-Dictionary beginning on page 897.
4. **Complete the Review Sheet,** pages 29 and 30. **Check your answers** with the Glossary of Word Parts page 967. Then, **test yourself** by writing Review Sheet terms and meanings on a separate sheet of paper.
5. **Make your own flash cards.** Using the Review Sheet as a guide, create flash cards that can be transported wherever you study!
6. **Create your own book tabs** to have easy access to key concepts and frequently used sections—for example, the **Glossary of Word Parts,** beginning on page 967.
7. **Review terms** using the audio pronunciations found on the Evolve website.

Notice that you are actively engaging in the learning process by writing terms and their meanings and testing yourself repeatedly. Here is your study mantra: **READ, WRITE, RECITE,** and **REVIEW.** I guarantee success if you follow these simple steps. This is a proven method—it really works!

Combining Forms

Write the *meaning* of each medical term in the space provided.

Remember: You will find every term phonetically pronounced starting on page 27, and you can hear the pronunciations on the Evolve website.

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
aden/o	gland	adenoma tumor of a gland *The suffix -oma means tumor or mass.* adenitis *The suffix -itis means inflammation.*
arthr/o	joint	arthritis
bi/o	life	biology *The suffix -logy is composed of the root log (study) and the final suffix -y (process or condition).* biopsy *The suffix -opsy means process of viewing. Living tissue is removed from the body and viewed under a microscope.*
carcin/o	cancerous, cancer	carcinoma *A carcinoma is a cancerous tumor. Carcinomas grow from the epithelial (surface or skin) cells that cover the outside of the body and line organs, cavities, and tubes within the body (Figure 1-3A and B).*
cardi/o	heart	cardiology
cephal/o	head	cephalic (seh-FAL-ik) *The suffix -ic means pertaining to. A cephalic presentation describes a "head first" position for the delivery of an infant.*
cerebr/o	cerebrum (largest part of the brain)	cerebral *The suffix -al means pertaining to. Figure 1-4 shows the cerebrum and its many functional areas.*
cis/o	to cut	incision *The prefix in- means into, and the suffix -ion means process.* excision *The prefix ex- means out.*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
crin/o	to secrete (to form and give off)	endocrine glands _____ *The prefix endo- means within;* ***endocrine glands*** *(e.g., thyroid, pituitary, and adrenal glands) secrete hormones directly within (into) the bloodstream. Other glands, called* ***exocrine glands,*** *release their secretions (e.g., saliva, sweat, tears, milk) through tubes (ducts) to the outside of the body.*
cyst/o	urinary bladder; a sac or a cyst (sac containing fluid)	cystoscopy _____ (sis-TOS-ko-pe) *The suffix -scopy is a* ***complex suffix*** *that includes the root scop, meaning visual examination, and the final suffix -y, meaning process.*
cyt/o	cell	cytology _____ *See Figure 1-5 for examples of blood cells.*
derm/o	skin	dermatitis _____
dermat/o		hypodermic _____ *The prefix hypo- means under or below.*
electr/o	electricity	electrocardiogram _____ *The suffix -gram means record. Abbreviated ECG (or sometimes EKG).*
encephal/o	brain	electroencephalogram _____ *Abbreviated EEG.*
enter/o	intestines (usually the small intestine)	enteritis _____ *The small intestine is narrower but much longer than the large intestine (colon). See Figure 1-1 on page 2, which shows the small and large intestines.*
erythr/o	red	erythrocyte _____ *The suffix -cyte means cell. Erythrocytes carry oxygen in the blood.*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
gastr/o	stomach	gastrectomy _____ *The suffix -ectomy means excision or removal. All or, more commonly, part of the stomach is removed.* gastrotomy _____ *The suffix -tomy is another complex suffix, which contains the root tom, meaning to cut, and the final suffix -y, meaning process of.*
glyc/o	sugar	hyperglycemia _____ *The prefix hyper- means excessive, above, or more than normal. The suffix -emia means blood condition.*
gnos/o	knowledge	diagnosis _____ *The prefix dia- means complete. The suffix -sis means state or condition of. A diagnosis is made after sufficient information has been obtained about the patient's condition. Literally, it is a "state of complete knowledge."* prognosis _____ *The prefix pro- means before. Literally "knowledge before," a prognosis is a prediction about the outcome of an illness, but it is always given after the diagnosis has been determined.*
gynec/o	woman, female	gynecology _____
hemat/o **hem/o**	blood	hematology _____
		hematoma _____ *In this term, -oma means a mass or collection of blood, rather than a growth of cells (tumor). A hematoma forms when blood escapes from blood vessels and collects as a clot in a cavity or organ or under the skin. See Figure 1-6.* hemoglobin _____ *The suffix -globin means protein. Hemoglobin carries oxygen in red blood cells.*
hepat/o	liver	hepatitis _____

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
iatr/o	treatment, physician	iatrogenic _____ *The suffix -genic means pertaining to producing, produced by, or produced in. Iatrogenic conditions are adverse effects that result from treatment or intervention by a physician.*
leuk/o	white	leukocyte _____ *This blood cell helps the body fight disease.*
log/o	study of	dermatology _____
nephr/o	kidney	nephritis _____ nephrology _____
neur/o	nerve	neurology _____
onc/o	tumor (cancerous)	oncology _____ oncologist _____ *The suffix -ist means one who specializes in a field of medicine (or other profession).*
ophthalm/o	eye	ophthalmoscope _____ (of-THAL-mo-skope) *The suffix -scope means an instrument for visual examination.* **HINT:** *Pronunciation helps! The first syllable is "off" and here the "f" sound is spelled "ph."*
oste/o	bone	osteitis _____ osteoarthritis _____ *This condition of aging is actually a degeneration of bones and joints often accompanied by inflammation.*
path/o	disease	pathology _____ pathologist _____ *A pathologist examines biopsy samples microscopically and examines dead bodies to determine the cause of death.*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
ped/o	child	pediatric _____ *Notice that ped/o is also in the term orthopedist. Orthopedists once were doctors who straightened (orth/o means straight) children's bones and corrected deformities. Nowadays, orthopedists specialize in disorders of bones and muscles in people of all ages.*	
psych/o	mind	psychology _____ psychiatrist _____	
radi/o	x-rays	radiology _____ *Low-energy x-rays are used for diagnostic imaging.*	
ren/o	kidney	renal _____ *Ren/o (Latin) and nephr/o (Greek) both mean kidney. Ren/o is used with -al (Latin) to describe the kidney, whereas nephr/o is used with other suffixes such as -osis, -itis, and -ectomy (Greek) to describe abnormal conditions and operative procedures.*	
rhin/o	nose	rhinitis _____	
sarc/o	flesh	sarcoma _____ *This is a **cancerous (malignant) tumor.** A **sarcoma** (Figure 1-7) grows from cells of "fleshy" connective tissue such as muscle, bone, and fat, whereas a **carcinoma** (another type of **cancerous tumor**) grows from epithelial cells that line the outside of the body or the inside of organs in the body.*	
sect/o	to cut	resection _____ *The prefix re- means back. A resection is a cutting back in the sense of cutting out or removal (excision). A gastric resection is a gastrectomy, or excision of the stomach.*	
thromb/o	clot, clotting	thrombocyte _____ *Also known as platelets, these cells help clot blood. A **thrombus** is the actual clot that forms, and **thrombosis** (-osis means condition) is the condition of clot formation.*	
ur/o	urinary tract, urine	urologist _____	

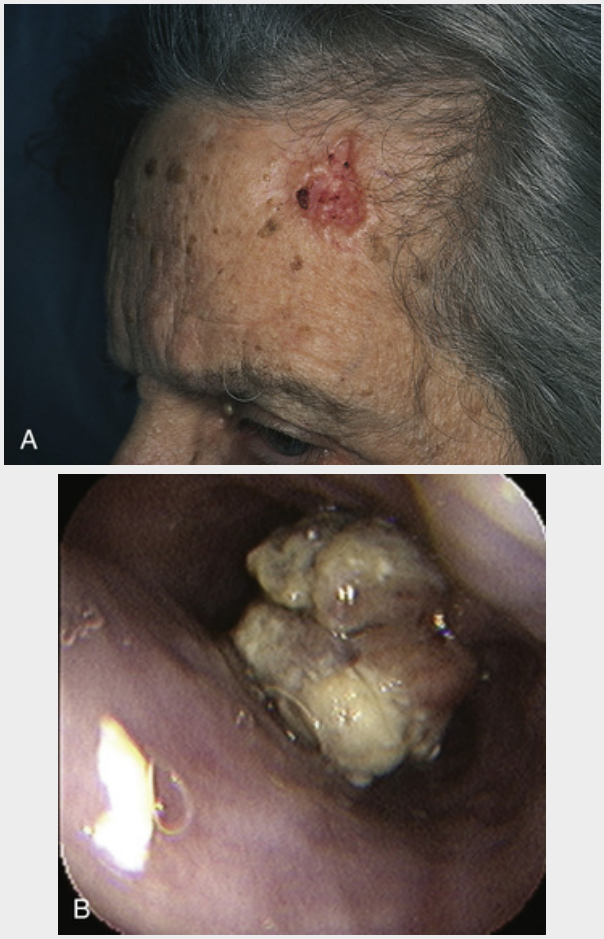


FIGURE 1-3 **A. Carcinoma** of the skin. This is a **basal cell carcinoma**, the most common form of skin cancer. It usually occurs on sun-damaged skin. *B. Esophageal carcinoma* is a cancerous tumor of the esophagus (tube leading from the throat to the stomach).

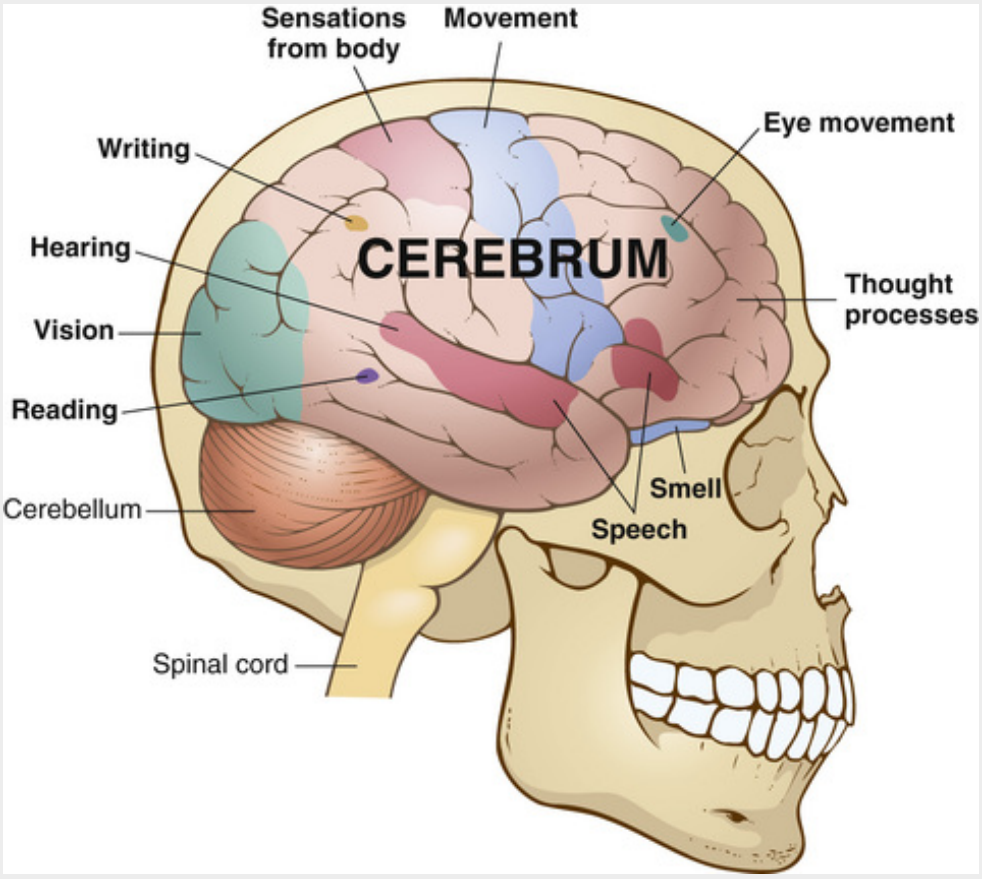


FIGURE 1-4 **Cerebrum** and the functions it controls. A **cerebrovascular accident** (**CVA**), or **stroke,** occurs when blood vessels (vascul/o means blood vessel) are damaged in the cerebrum and blood is prevented from reaching functional areas of the brain. Cells, deprived of oxygen and nutrients, are damaged, causing loss of movement or speech and other signs and symptoms of a CVA.

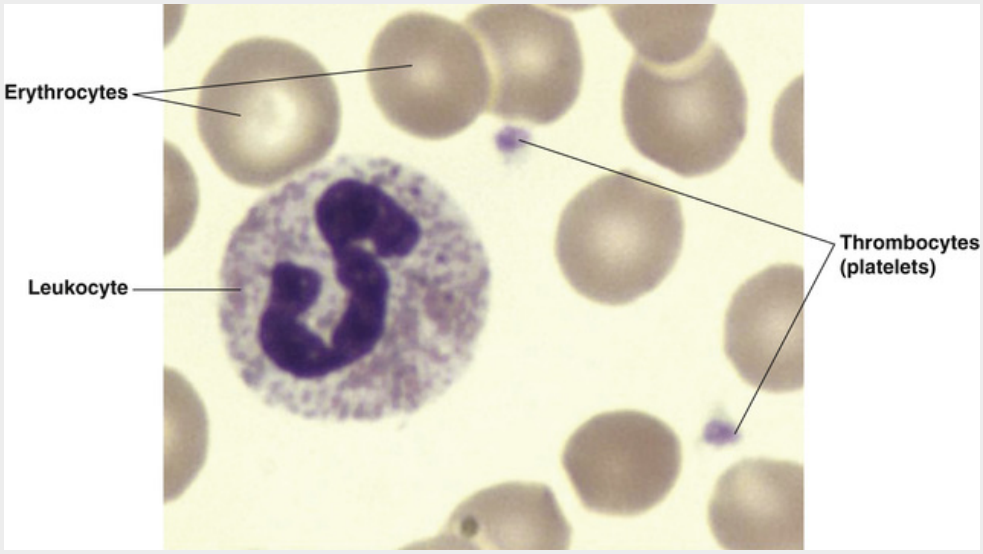


FIGURE 1-5 **Blood cells.** Notice red blood cells (erythrocytes), a white blood cell (leukocyte), and clotting cells (thrombocytes or platelets).

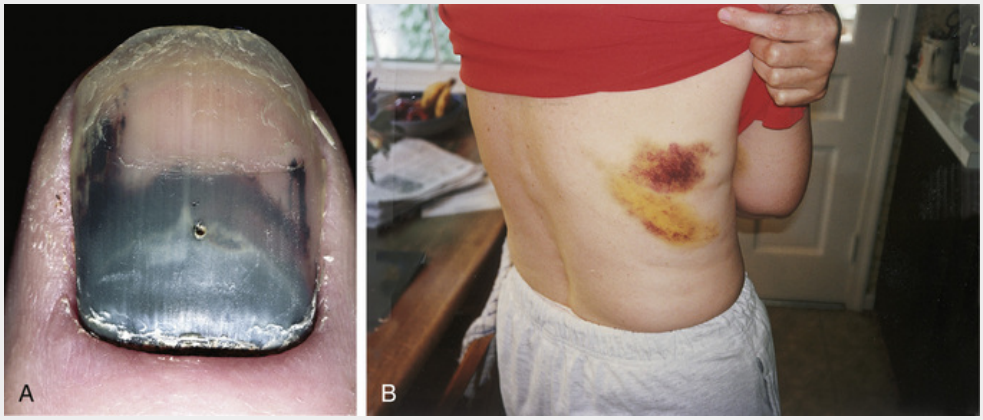


FIGURE 1-6 **A,** Notice the **hematoma** under the nail. **B, Hematoma** from broken ribs.

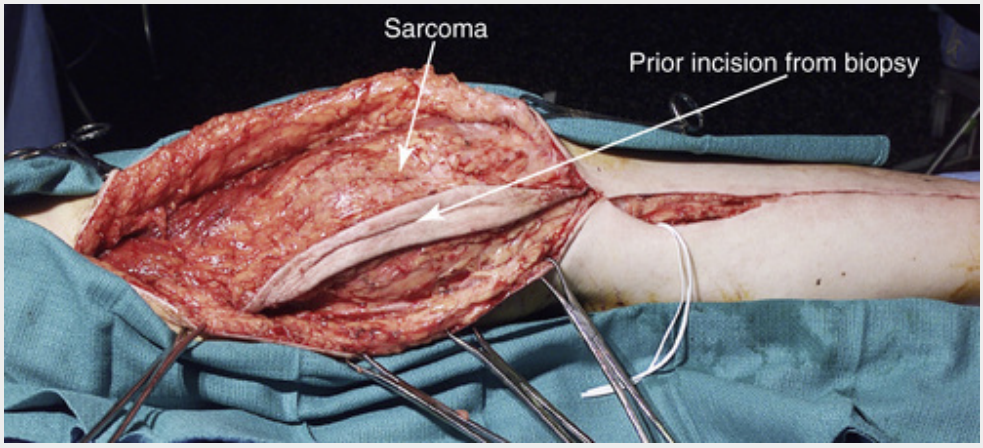


FIGURE 1-7 **Sarcoma of muscle** in the thigh. (Courtesy Dr. Sam Yoon, Sloan Kettering Hospital, New York City.)

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
-ac	pertaining to	cardiac _____
-al	pertaining to	neural _____
-algia	pain	arthralgia _____ neuralgia _____
-cyte	cell	erythrocyte _____
-ectomy	excision, removal	nephrectomy _____
-emia	blood condition	leukemia _____ *Literally, this term means "a blood condition of white (blood cells)." Actually, it is a condition of blood in which cancerous white blood cells proliferate (increase in number).*
-genic	pertaining to producing, produced by, or produced in	carcinogenic _____ *Cigarette smoke is carcinogenic.* pathogenic _____ *Many viruses and bacteria are pathogenic organisms.* osteogenic sarcoma _____ *This is a malignant tumor produced in bone.*
-globin	protein	hemoglobin _____
-gram	record	electroencephalogram _____
-ic, -ical	pertaining to	gastric _____ neurologic _____ *Log/o means study of.*
-ion	process	excision _____
-ist	specialist	ophthalmologist _____
-itis	inflammation	cystitis _____
-logy	process of study	endocrinology _____
-oma	tumor, mass, swelling	hepatoma _____ *A hepatoma* ***(hepatocellular carcinoma)*** *is a malignant tumor of the liver.*

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
-opsy	process of viewing	bi<u>opsy</u> _____ *Biopsy specimens are obtained and viewed under a microscope.*
-osis	condition, usually abnormal (slight increase in numbers when used with blood cells)	nephr<u>osis</u> _____ leukocyt<u>osis</u> _____ *This condition, a slight increase in normal white blood cells, occurs as white blood cells multiply to fight an infection. Don't confuse* ***leukocytosis*** *with* ***leukemia,*** *which is a cancerous (malignant) condition marked by high levels of abnormal, immature white blood cells.*
-pathy	disease condition	encephalo<u>pathy</u> _____ (en-sef-ah-LOP-ah-the) adenopathy _____ (ah-deh-NOP-ah-the) *Also known as lymphadenopathy, this condition refers to lymph nodes (collection of stationary cells along the path of lymph vessels) that are are enlarged due to infection or during the spread of malignant (cancerous) tumors.*
-scope	instrument to visually examine	endo<u>scope</u> _____ *Endo- means within. A cystoscope is a type of endoscope.* *A periscope is a nonmedical term meaning an instrument to visually examine an area around (peri-) an obstacle.*
-scopy	process of visually examining	endo<u>scopy</u> _____ (en-DOS-ko-pe) *Endoscopy is performed with an endoscope. A common endoscopic procedure is a* ***colonoscopy*** *(colon/o = colon or large intestine).*
-sis	state of; condition	progno<u>sis</u> _____
-tomy	process of cutting, incision	osteo<u>tomy</u> _____ (os-te-OT-o-me)
-y	process, condition	gastroenterology _____

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
a-, an-	no, not, without	anemia _____ *Anemia is a decreased number of erythrocytes or an abnormality of the hemoglobin (a chemical) within the red blood cells. This results in decreased delivery of oxygen to cells of the body. Anemic patients look so pale that early physicians thought they were literally "without blood."*
aut-, auto-	self, own	autopsy _____ *This term literally means "process of viewing by oneself." Hence, an autopsy is the examination of a dead body with one's own eyes to determine the cause of death and nature of disease.*
dia-	complete, through	diagnosis _____ *The plural of diagnosis is diagnoses.*
endo-	within	endocrinologist _____
epi-	above, upon	epigastric _____ epidermis _____ *This outermost layer of skin lies above the middle layer of skin, known as the dermis.*
ex-, exo-	out, outside of, outward	excision _____ exocrine glands _____
hyper-	excessive, above, more than normal	hyperthyroidism _____ *The suffix -ism means process or condition.*
hypo-	deficient, below, under, less than normal	hypogastric _____ *When hypo- is used with a part of the body, it means below.* hypoglycemia _____ *In this term, hypo- means deficient.*
in-	into, in	incision _____
peri-	surrounding, around	pericardium _____ *The suffix -um means a structure. The pericardium is the membrane that surrounds the heart.*
pro-	before, forward	prostate gland _____ *This exocrine gland "stands" (-state) before or in front of the male urinary bladder (see Figure 1-2). It produces semen, which contains fluid and sperm cells.*
re-	back, backward, again	resection _____ *This is an operation in which tissue is "cut back" or removed. The Latin* resectio *means a trimming or pruning.*
retro-	behind	retrocardiac _____
sub-	below, under	subhepatic _____
trans-	across, through	transhepatic _____

Complex Suffixes

Many suffixes, like **-scopy**, contain an embedded root word. Other examples are **-opsy** (ops is a root) and **-logy** (log is a root).

Hyperglycemia and Diabetes

Hyperglycemia (high blood sugar) most frequently is associated with **diabetes.** People with diabetes have high blood sugar levels because they **lack insulin** (in **type 1 diabetes**) or have **ineffective insulin** (in **type 2 diabetes**). Insulin is the hormone normally released by the pancreas (an endocrine gland near the stomach) to "escort" sugar from the bloodstream into cells. Sugar (glucose) is then broken down in cells to release energy. When insulin is not present, sugar cannot enter cells and builds up in the bloodstream (hyperglycemia).

Urologist and Nephrologist

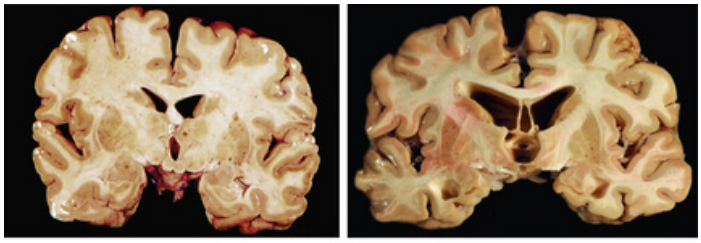
A **urologist** is a **surgeon** who operates on the urinary tract and the organs of the male reproductive system. A **nephrologist** is an **internal medicine specialist** (nonsurgical) who diagnoses and treats disorders of kidneys. Both urologists and nephrologists are medical doctors.

Ophthalmologist, Optometrist, Optician

An **ophthalmologist** is a **physician** who specializes in diagnosing and treating (surgically and medically) disorders of the eye. An **optometrist** is a **health care professional** who examines (metr/o = to measure) eyes and prescribes corrective lenses and may treat eye diseases. An **optician** grinds lenses and fits glasses but does *not* examine eyes, prescribe corrective lenses, or treat eye diseases.

What is Chronic Traumatic Encephalopathy?

Chronic (pertaining to over a long period of time) **traumatic encephalopathy (CTE)** is a serious brain injury associated with high-impact head trauma (as may be found in football and boxing). The autopsy images below show a normal brain and a brain affected by CTE.



Normal CTE

Plurals

Terms ending in **-is** (diagnosis, prognosis) form their plural by dropping the **-is** and adding **-es.** See Appendix I, page 989, for other rules on formation of plurals.

Understanding Hyperthyroidism

In **hyperthyroidism,** a **hyperactive thyroid gland** (an endocrine gland in the neck) secretes a greater than normal amount of **thyroxine** (thyroid hormone, or **T4**). Because thyroxine causes cells to burn fuel and release energy, signs and symptoms of hyperthyroidism are **increased energy level** and **nervousness, tachycardia** (increased heart rate), **weight loss,** and **exophthalmos** (bulging eyeballs).

Practical Applications

This section provides an opportunity for you to use your skill in understanding medical terms in this chapter and to increase your knowledge of new terms. Be sure to check your answers with the Answers to Practical Applications on page 27. You should find helpful explanations there.

Specialists

Match the **abnormal condition** in Column I with the **physician (specialist)** who treats it in Column II. Write the letter of the correct specialist in the space provided.

COLUMN I: Abnormal Conditions		COLUMN II: Physicians (Specialists)
1. heart attack	_____	A. gastroenterologist
2. ovarian cysts	_____	B. hematologist
3. bipolar (manic-depressive) disorder	_____	C. nephrologist
4. breast adenocarcinoma	_____	D. cardiologist
5. iron deficiency anemia	_____	E. oncologist
6. retinopathy	_____	F. gynecologist
7. cerebrovascular accident (stroke)	_____	G. urologist
8. renal failure	_____	H. ophthalmologist
9. inflammatory bowel disease	_____	I. neurologist
10. prostatic adenocarcinoma	_____	J. psychiatrist

Exercises

The exercises that follow are designed to help you learn the terms presented in the chapter. **Writing terms** over and over again is a good way to study this new language. You will find the answers to these exercises starting on page 24. This makes it easy to **check your work.** As you check each answer, you not only will reinforce your understanding of a term but often will gain additional information from the answer.

Each exercise is designed not as a test, but rather as an opportunity for you to learn the material.

A **Complete the following sentences.**

1. Word beginnings are called _____.
2. Word endings are called _____.
3. The foundation of a word is known as the _____.
4. A letter linking a suffix and a root, or linking two roots, in a term is the _____.
5. The combination of a root and a combining vowel is known as the _____.

B **Give the meanings of the following combining forms.**

1. cardi/o

_____

2. aden/o
_____
3. bi/o
_____
4. cerebr/o
_____
5. cephal/o
_____
6. arthr/o
_____
7. carcin/o
_____
8. cyst/o
_____
9. cyt/o
_____
10. derm/o or dermat/o
_____
11. encephal/o
_____
12. electr/o
_____

C **Give the meanings of the following suffixes.**

1. -oma
_____
2. -al
_____
3. -itis
_____
4. -logy
_____

5. -scopy

_____

6. -ic

_____

7. -gram

_____

8. -opsy

_____

D **Using slashes, divide the following terms into parts, and give the meaning of the entire term.**

1. cerebral

_____

2. biopsy

_____

3. adenitis

_____

4. cephalic

_____

5. carcinoma

_____

6. cystoscopy

_____

7. electrocardiogram

_____

8. cardiology

_____

9. electroencephalogram

_____

10. dermatitis

_____

11. arthroscopy

_____

12. cytology

_____

E **Give the meanings of the following combining forms.**

1. erythr/o

_____

2. enter/o

_____

3. gastr/o

_____

4. gnos/o

_____

5. hemat/o

_____

6. cis/o

_____

7. nephr/o

_____

8. leuk/o

_____

9. iatr/o

_____

10. hepat/o

_____

11. neur/o

_____

12. gynec/o

_____

F **Complete the medical term, based on its meaning as provided.**

1. white blood cell: _____cyte
2. inflammation of the stomach:
   gastr_____

3. pertaining to being produced by treatment: _____genic
4. study of kidneys: _____logy
5. red blood cell: _____cyte
6. mass of blood: _____oma
7. process of viewing living tissue (using a microscope): bi_____
8. pain of nerves: neur_____
9. process of visual examination of the eye: _____scopy
10. inflammation of the small intestine: _____itis

G **Select from the combining forms below to match the numbered English terms. Write the correct combining form in the space provided.**

onc/o
ophthalm/o
oste/o
path/o
psych/o
radi/o
ren/o
rhin/o
sarc/o
sect/o
thromb/o
ur/o

English Terms

1. kidney _____
2. disease _____

3. eye _____
4. to cut _____
5. nose _____
6. flesh _____
7. mind _____
8. urinary tract _____
9. bone _____
10. x-rays _____
11. clotting _____
12. tumor _____

H **<u>Underline</u> the suffix in each term, and then give the meaning of the term.**

1. ophthalmoscopy
   _____
   _____
2. ophthalmoscope
   _____
   _____
3. oncology
   _____
   _____
4. osteitis
   _____
   _____
5. psychosis
   _____
   _____
6. thrombocyte
   _____
   _____

7. renal

_____
_____

8. nephrectomy

_____
_____

9. osteotomy

_____
_____

10. resection

_____
_____

11. carcinogenic

_____
_____

12. sarcoma

_____
_____

I **Match the suffix in Column I with its meaning in Column II. Write the correct meaning in the space provided.**

COLUMN I	COLUMN II
Suffix	*Meaning*
1. -algia _____	condition, usually abnormal
2. -ion _____	blood condition
3. -emia _____	cell
4. -gram _____	disease condition
5. -scope _____	process of cutting, incision
6. -osis _____	inflammation
7. -ectomy _____	instrument to visually examine
8. -genic _____	pain
9. -pathy _____	pertaining to producing, produced by, or produced in
10. -tomy _____	process
11. -itis _____	protein
12. -cyte _____	record
13. -globin _____	excision, removal (resection)

J **Select from the listed terms to complete the sentences that follow.**

arthralgia

carcinogenic

cystitis

encephalopathy

endocrine

exocrine

hematoma

hepatoma (hepatocellular carcinoma)

iatrogenic

leukemia

leukocytosis

neuralgia

1. When Paul smoked cigarettes, he inhaled a _____ substance with each puff.
2. Sally's sore throat, fever, and chills made her doctor order a white blood cell count. The results, indicating infection, showed a slight increase in normal cells, a condition called _____.
3. Mr. Smith's liver enlarged, giving him abdominal pain. His radiologic tests and biopsy revealed a malignant tumor, or _____.
4. Mrs. Rose complained of pain in her hip joints, knees, and shoulders each morning. She was told that she had painful joints, or _____.
5. Dr. Black was trained to treat disorders of the pancreas, thyroid gland, adrenal glands, and pituitary gland. Thus, he was an expert in the _____ glands.
6. Ms. Walsh told her doctor she had pain when urinating. After tests, the doctor's diagnosis was inflammation of the urinary bladder, or _____.
7. Elizabeth's overhead tennis shot hit David in the thigh, producing a large _____. His skin looked bruised and the affected area was tender.
8. Mr. Bell's white blood cell count is 10 times higher than normal. Examination of his blood shows cancerous white blood cells. His diagnosis is _____.
9. Mr. Kay was resuscitated (revived from potential or apparent death) in the emergency department after experiencing a heart attack. Unfortunately, he suffered a broken rib as a result of the physician's chest compressions. This is an example of a/an _____ fracture.
10. After playing one season for a professional football team, Bill Smith decided to retire because he worried about the dangers

of concussions and head trauma—a condition called CTE, or chronic traumatic _____.

K **Give the meanings of the following prefixes.**

1. dia-
   _____
2. pro-
   _____
3. aut-, auto-
   _____
4. a-, an-
   _____
5. hyper-
   _____
6. hypo-
   _____
7. epi-
   _____
8. endo-
   _____
9. retro-
   _____
10. trans-
    _____
11. peri-
    _____
12. ex-, exo-
    _____
13. sub-
    _____
14. re-
    _____

L **<u>Underline</u> the prefix in the following terms, and then give the meaning of the entire term.**

1. diagnosis

   _____
   _____

2. prognosis

   _____
   _____

3. subhepatic

   _____
   _____

4. pericardium

   _____
   _____

5. hyperglycemia

   _____
   _____

6. hypodermic

   _____
   _____

7. epigastric

   _____
   _____

8. resection

   _____
   _____

9. hypoglycemia

   _____
   _____

10. anemia

    _____
    _____

M **Complete the following terms (describing areas of medicine), based on their meanings as given.**

1. study of the urinary tract: _____ logy
2. study of women and women's diseases: _____ logy
3. study of blood: _____ logy
4. study of tumors: _____ logy
5. study of the kidneys: _____ logy
6. study of nerves: _____ logy
7. treatment of children: _____ iatrics
8. study of x-rays in diagnostic imaging: _____ logy
9. study of the eyes: _____ logy
10. study of the stomach and intestines: _____ logy
11. study of glands that secrete hormones: _____ logy
12. treatment of the mind: _____ iatry
13. study of disease: _____ logy
14. study of the heart: _____ logy

N **Give the meaning of the <u>underlined</u> word part, and then define the term.**

1. <u>cerebr</u>ovascular accident
   _____
2. <u>encephal</u>itis
   _____
   ____
3. <u>cyst</u>oscope
   _____
   _____

4. transhepatic

_____

5. osteogenic sarcoma

_____

6. hypogastric

_____

7. endocrine glands

_____

8. nephrectomy

_____

9. exocrine glands

_____

10. neuralgia

_____

O **Select from the terms listed below to complete the sentences that follow.**

anemia
biopsy
diagnosis
leukemia
nephrologist
neuropathy
oncogenic
oncologist
osteoarthritis

pathogenic
prognosis
psychiatrist
psychologist
thrombocyte
thrombosis
urologist

1. Pamela Crick is 72 years old and suffers from a degenerative joint disease that is caused by the wearing away of tissue around her joints. This disease, which literally means "inflammation of bones and joints," is _____.
2. The _____ sample was removed during surgery and sent to a pathologist to be examined under a microscope for a proper diagnosis.
3. A/An _____ performed surgery to remove Mr. Simon's cancerous kidney.
4. Ms. Rose has suffered from diabetes with hyperglycemia for many years. This condition can lead to long-term complications, such as the disease of nerves called diabetic _____.
5. A virus or a bacterium produces disease and is therefore a/an _____ organism.
6. Jordan has a disease caused by abnormal hemoglobin in his erythrocytes. The erythrocytes change shape, collapsing to form sickle-shaped cells that can become clots and stop the flow of blood. His condition is called sickle cell _____.
7. Dr. Max Shelby is a physician who treats carcinomas and sarcomas. He is a/an _____.
8. Bill had difficulty stopping the bleeding from a cut on his face while shaving. He knew his medication caused him to have

decreased platelets, or a low _____ count, and that probably was the reason his blood was not clotting very well.

9. Dr. Susan Parker told Paul that his condition would improve with treatment in a few weeks. She said his _____ is excellent and he can expect total recovery.
10. After fleeing the World Trade Center on September 11, 2001, Mrs. Jones had many problems with her job, her husband, and her family relationships. She went to see a _____, who prescribed drugs to treat her depression.

P **Circle the correct term to complete each sentence.**

1. Ms. Brody had a cough and fever. Her doctor instructed her to go to the **(pathology, radiology, hematology)** department for a chest x-ray examination.
2. After she gave birth to her fourth child, Ms. Thompson had problems holding her urine (a condition known as urinary incontinence). She made an appointment with a **(gastroenterologist, pathologist, urologist)** to evaluate her condition.
3. Dr. Monroe told a new mother she had lost much blood during delivery of her child. She had **(anemia, leukocytosis, adenitis)** and needed a blood transfusion immediately.
4. Mr. Preston was having chest pain during his morning walks. He made an appointment to discuss his new symptom with a **(nephrologist, neurologist, cardiologist).**
5. After my skiing accident, Dr. Curtin suggested **(cystoscopy, biopsy, arthroscopy)** to visually examine my swollen, painful knee.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. prefixes
2. suffixes
3. root
4. combining vowel
5. combining form

B

1. heart
2. gland
3. life
4. cerebrum, largest part of the brain
5. head
6. joint
7. cancer, cancerous
8. urinary bladder
9. cell
10. skin
11. brain
12. electricity

C

1. tumor, mass, swelling
2. pertaining to
3. inflammation
4. process of study
5. process of visual examination

6. pertaining to
7. record (image)
8. process of viewing

D

1. cerebr/al—pertaining to the cerebrum, or largest part of the brain
2. bi/opsy—process of viewing life (removal of living tissue and viewing it under a microscope)
3. aden/itis—inflammation of a gland
4. cephal/ic—pertaining to the head
5. carcin/oma—tumor that is cancerous (cancerous tumor)
6. cyst/o/scopy—process of visually examining the urinary bladder
7. electr/o/cardi/o/gram—record of the electricity in the heart
8. cardi/o/logy—process of study of the heart
9. electr/o/encephal/o/gram—record of the electricity in the brain
10. dermat/itis—inflammation of the skin
11. arthr/o/scopy—process of visual examination of a joint
12. cyt/o/logy—process of study of cells

E

1. red
2. intestines (usually small intestine)
3. stomach
4. knowledge
5. blood
6. to cut

7. kidney
8. white
9. treatment, physician
10. liver
11. nerve
12. woman, female

F

1. leukocyte
2. gastritis
3. iatrogenic
4. nephrology
5. erythrocyte
6. hematoma
7. biopsy
8. neuralgia
9. ophthalmoscopy
10. enteritis

G

1. ren/o
2. path/o
3. ophthalm/o
4. sect/o
5. rhin/o
6. sarc/o

7. psych/o
8. ur/o
9. oste/o
10. radi/o
11. thromb/o
12. onc/o

H

1. ophthalmoscopy—process of visual examination of the eye
2. ophthalmoscope—instrument to visually examine the eye
3. oncology—study of tumors
4. osteitis—inflammation of bone
5. psychosis—abnormal condition of the mind
6. thrombocyte—clotting cell (platelet)
7. renal—pertaining to the kidney
8. nephrectomy—removal (excision or resection) of the kidney
9. osteotomy—incision of (process of cutting into) a bone
10. resection—process of cutting back (in the sense of "cutting out" or removal)
11. carcinogenic—pertaining to producing cancer
12. sarcoma–tumor of flesh tissue (cancerous tumor found in connective tissue such as bone, fat and muscle)

I

1. pain
2. process
3. blood condition

4. record (image)
5. instrument to visually examine
6. condition, usually abnormal
7. excision, removal (resection)
8. pertaining to producing, produced by, or produced in
9. disease condition
10. process of cutting, incision
11. inflammation
12. cell
13. protein

J

1. carcinogenic
2. leukocytosis
3. hepatoma (hepatocellular carcinoma)
4. arthralgia
5. endocrine
6. cystitis
7. hematoma
8. leukemia
9. iatrogenic
10. encephalopathy

K

1. complete, through
2. before

3. self, own
4. no, not, without
5. excessive, above, more than normal
6. deficient, below, less than normal
7. above, upon
8. within
9. behind
10. across, through
11. surrounding
12. out
13. below, under
14. back

L

1. diagnosis—complete knowledge; a decision about the nature of the patient's condition after the appropriate tests are done
2. prognosis—before knowledge; a prediction about the outcome of treatment, given after the diagnosis
3. subhepatic—pertaining to below the liver. A combining vowel is not needed between the prefix and the root.
4. pericardium—the membrane surrounding the heart
5. hyperglycemia—condition of excessive sugar in the blood
6. hypodermic—pertaining to under the skin
7. epigastric—pertaining to above the stomach
8. resection—process of cutting back (in the sense of cutting out)
9. hypoglycemia—condition of deficient (low) sugar in the blood

10. anemia—condition of low numbers of erythrocytes (red blood cells) or deficient hemoglobin in these cells. Notice that the root in this term is *em*, which is shortened from *hem*, meaning blood.

M

1. urology
2. gynecology
3. hematology
4. oncology
5. nephrology
6. neurology
7. pediatrics (combining vowel o has been dropped between *ped* and *iatr*)
8. radiology
9. ophthalmology
10. gastroenterology
11. endocrinology
12. psychiatry
13. pathology
14. cardiology

N

1. cerebrum (largest part of the brain). A cerebrovascular accident, or stroke, is damage to the blood vessels of the cerebrum, leading to death of brain cells.
2. brain. Encephalitis is inflammation of the brain.
3. urinary bladder. A cystoscope is an instrument used to visually examine the urinary bladder. The cystoscope is inserted into the

urethra and urinary bladder.

4. across, through. Transhepatic means pertaining to across or through the liver.
5. flesh. Osteogenic sarcoma is a malignant (cancerous) tumor originating in bone, which is considered a fleshy (connective) tissue of the body.
6. under, below, deficient. Hypogastric means pertaining to below the stomach.
7. within. Endocrine glands secrete hormones within the body. Examples of these are the pituitary, thyroid, and adrenal glands.
8. excision or resection. Nephrectomy is the removal of a kidney.
9. outside. Exocrine glands secrete chemicals to the outside of the body. Examples are the sweat, lacrimal or tear-producing, prostate, and salivary glands.
10. pain. Neuralgia is nerve pain.

O

1. osteoarthritis
2. biopsy
3. urologist (a nephrologist is a medical doctor who treats kidney disorders but does not operate on patients)
4. neuropathy
5. pathogenic
6. anemia
7. oncologist
8. thrombocyte
9. prognosis

10. psychiatrist (a psychologist can treat mentally ill patients but is not a medical doctor and cannot prescribe medications)

P

1. radiology
2. urologist
3. anemia
4. cardiologist
5. arthroscopy

Answers to Practical Applications

1. **D** A **cardiologist** is an internal medicine specialist who takes additional (fellowship) training in the diagnosis and treatment of heart disease.
2. **F** A **gynecologist** specializes in surgery and internal medicine to diagnose and treat disorders of the female reproductive system. Ovarian cysts are sacs of fluid that form on and in the ovaries (female organs that produce eggs and hormones).
3. **J** A **psychiatrist** is a specialist in diagnosing and treating mental illness. In bipolar disorder (manic-depressive illness), the mood switches periodically from excessive mania (excitability) to deep depression (sadness, despair, and discouragement).
4. **E** An **oncologist** is an internal medicine specialist who takes fellowship training in the diagnosis and medical (drug) treatment of cancer.
5. **B** A **hematologist** is an internal medicine specialist who takes fellowship training in the diagnosis and treatment of blood disorders such as anemia and clotting diseases.
6. **H** An **ophthalmologist** trains in both surgery and internal medicine in order to diagnose and treat disorders of the eye. The retina is a sensitive layer of light receptor cells in the back of

the eye. Retinopathy can occur as a secondary complication of chronic diabetes (from hyperglycemia).

7. **I** A **neurologist** is an internal medicine specialist who takes fellowship training in the diagnosis and treatment of disorders of nervous tissue (brain, spinal cord, and nerves). A **CVA** causes damage to areas of the brain, resulting in loss of function.
8. **C** A **nephrologist** is an internal medicine specialist who takes fellowship training in the diagnosis and medical treatment of kidney disease. A nephrologist does not perform surgery on the urinary tract, but treats kidney disease with drugs.
9. **A** A **gastroenterologist** is an internal medicine specialist who takes fellowship training in the diagnosis and treatment of disorders of the gastrointestinal tract. Examples of inflammatory bowel disease are ulcerative colitis (inflammation of the large intestine) and Crohn disease (inflammation of the last part of the small intestine).
10. **G** A **urologist** is a surgeon who operates on organs of the urinary tract and the male reproductive system (such as the prostate gland). Urologists also prescribe drugs for some conditions.

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The CAPITAL letters indicate the accented syllable.

The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
adenitis	ah-deh-NI-tis
adenoma	ah-deh-NO-mah
adenopathy	ah-deh-NOP-ah-the
anemia	ah-NE-me-ah
arthralgia	ar-THRAL-jah
arthritis	ar-THRI-tis
autopsy	AW-top-se
biology	bi-OL-o-je
biopsy	BI-op-se
carcinogenic	kar-sih-no-JEN-ik
carcinoma	kar-sih-NO-mah
cardiac	KAR-de-ak
cardiology	kar-de-OL-o-je
cephalic	seh-FAL-ik
cerebral	seh-RE-bral
cystitis	sis-TI-tis
cystoscopy	sis-TOS-ko-pe
cytology	si-TOL-o-je
dermatitis	der-mah-TI-tis
dermatology	der-mah-TOL-o-je
diagnosis	di-ag-NO-sis
electrocardiogram	eh-lek-tro-KAR-de-o-gram
electroencephalogram	eh-lek-tro-en-SEF-ah-lo-gram
encephalopathy	en-sef-ah-LOP-ah-the
endocrine glands	EN-do-krin glanz
endocrinologist	en-do-krin-OL-o-gist
endocrinology	en-do-krin-OL-o-je
endoscope	EN-do-skope
endoscopy	en-DOS-ko-pe
enteritis	en-teh-RI-tis
epidermis	ep-ih-DER-mis
epigastric	ep-ih-GAS-trik
erythrocyte	eh-RITH-ro-site
excision	ek-SIZH-un
exocrine glands	EK-so-krin glanz
gastrectomy	gas-TREK-to-me
gastric	GAS-trik
gastroenterology	gas-tro-en-teh-ROL-o-je
gastrotomy	gas-TROT-o-me
gynecologist	gi-neh-KOL-o-jist
gynecology	gi-neh-KOL-o-je
hematology	he-mah-TOL-o-je
hematoma	he-mah-TO-mah

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
hemoglobin	HE-mo-glo-bin
hepatitis	hep-ah-TI-tis
hepatoma	hep-ah-TO-mah
hyperglycemia	hi-per-gli-SE-me-ah
hyperthyroidism	hi-per-THI-royd-izm
hypodermic	hi-po-DER-mik
hypogastric	hi-po-GAS-trik
hypoglycemia	hi-po-gli-SE-me-ah
iatrogenic	i-ah-tro-JEN-ik
incision	in-SIZH-un
leukemia	lu-KE-me-ah
leukocyte	LU-ko-site
leukocytosis	lu-ko-si-TO-sis
nephrectomy	neh-FREK-to-me
nephritis	neh-FRI-tis
nephrology	neh-FROL-o-je
nephrosis	neh-FRO-sis
neural	NU-ral
neuralgia	nu-RAL-jah
neurologic	nu-ro-LOJ-ik
neurology	nu-ROL-o-je
oncologist	ong-KOL-o-jist
oncology	ong-KOL-o-ge
ophthalmologist	of-thal-MOL-o-jist
ophthalmoscope	of-THAL-mo-scope
osteitis	os-te-I-tis
osteoarthritis	os-te-o-ar-THRI-tis
osteogenic sarcoma	os-te-o-JEN-ic sar-KO-mah
osteotomy	os-te-OT-o-me
pathogenic	path-o-JEN-ik
pathologist	path-OL-o-jist
pathology	path-OL-o-je
pediatric	pe-de-AH-trik
pericardium	peh-rih-KAR-de-um
prognosis	prog-NO-sis
prostate gland	PROS-tayt gland
psychiatrist	si-KI-ah-trist
psychology	si-KOL-o-je
radiology	ra-de-OL-o-je
renal	RE-nal
resection	re-SEK-shun
retrocardiac	reh-tro-KAR-de-ac
rhinitis	ri-NI-tis

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
sarcoma	sar-KO-mah
subhepatic	sub-heh-PAT-ik
thrombocyte	THROM-bo-site
transhepatic	tranz-heh-PAT-ik
urologist	u-ROL-o-gist

Review Sheet

This Review Sheet and the others that follow each chapter are complete lists of the word elements contained in the chapter. They are designed to pull together the terminology and to reinforce your learning by giving you the opportunity to write the meanings of each word part in the spaces provided and to **test yourself.** Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book. It's a good idea to tab the Glossary so that you can easily locate it.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
aden/o	_____
arthr/o	_____
bi/o	_____
carcin/o	_____
cardi/o	_____
cephal/o	_____
cerebr/o	_____
cis/o	_____
crin/o	_____
cyst/o	_____
cyt/o	_____
derm/o, dermat/o	_____
electr/o	_____
encephal/o	_____
enter/o	_____
erythr/o	_____
gastr/o	_____
glyc/o	_____
gnos/o	_____
gynec/o	_____
hem/o, hemat/o	_____
hepat/o	_____
iatr/o	_____
leuk/o	_____
log/o	_____
nephr/o	_____
neur/o	_____
onc/o	_____
ophthalm/o	_____
oste/o	_____
path/o	_____
ped/o	_____
psych/o	_____
radi/o	_____
ren/o	_____
rhin/o	_____
sarc/o	_____
sect/o	_____
thromb/o	_____
ur/o	_____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-ac	_____
-al	_____
-algia	_____
-cyte	_____
-ectomy	_____
-emia	_____
-genic	_____
-globin	_____
-gram	_____
-ic, -ical	_____
-ion	_____
-ist	_____
-itis	_____
-logy	_____
-oma	_____
-opsy	_____
-osis	_____
-pathy	_____
-scope	_____
-scopy	_____
-sis	_____
-tomy	_____
-y	_____

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING
a-, an-	_____
aut-, auto-	_____
dia-	_____
endo-	_____
epi-	_____
ex-, exo-	_____
hyper-	_____
hypo-	_____
in-	_____
peri-	_____
pro-	_____
re-	_____
retro-	_____
sub-	_____
trans-	_____

Suffixes Meaning Pertaining To

There are many suffixes that mean "pertaining to." In this chapter, you have learned -ac, -al, -ic, and -ical. For a more comprehensive list, see the ***Glossary (English to Medical Word Parts),*** page 967.

CHAPTER 2

Terms Pertaining to the Body as a Whole

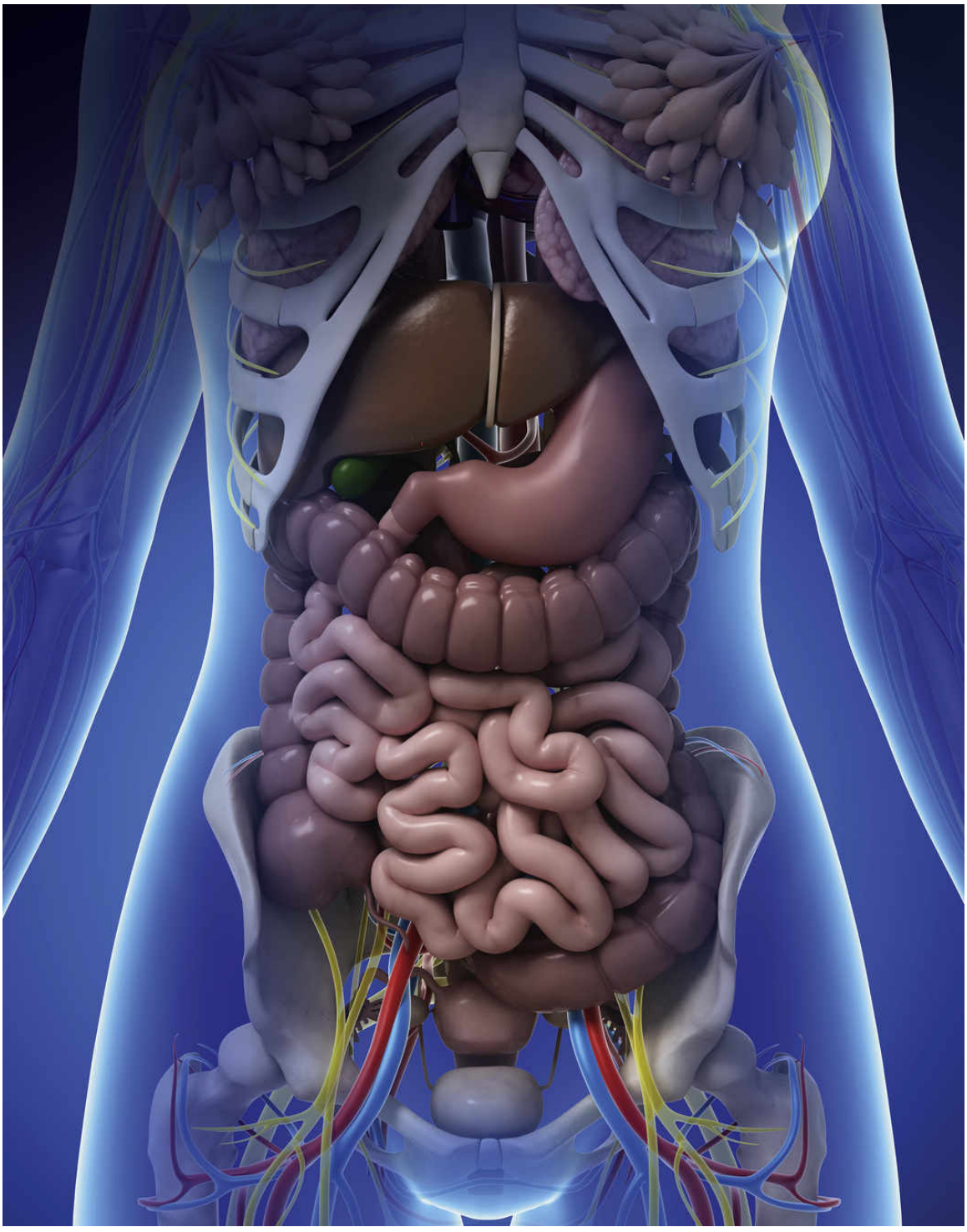
CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Structural Organization of the Body 32
Abdominopelvic Regions and Quadrants 46
Divisions of the Back (Spinal Column) 48
Positional and Directional Terms 50
Planes of the Body 52
Terminology 53
Practical Applications 57
Exercises 58
Answers to Exercises 63
Pronunciation of Terms 65
Review Sheet 67

CHAPTER GOALS

- Define terms that apply to the structural organization of the body.
- Identify the body cavities and recognize the organs contained within those cavities.
- Locate and identify the anatomic and clinical divisions of the abdomen.
- Locate and name the anatomic divisions of the back.

- Become acquainted with terms that describe positions, directions, and planes of the body.
- Identify the meanings for new word elements and use them to understand medical terms.



Structural Organization of the Body

This chapter provides you with an orientation to the body as a whole—cells, tissues, organs, and systems—along with terminology describing positions and directions within the body. We begin with the smallest living unit, the **cell**, and build to an understanding of complex body systems. In order to know how organs function in both health and disease, it is important to appreciate the workings of their individual cellular units.

Cells

The cell is the fundamental unit of all living things (animal or plant). Cells are everywhere in the human body—every tissue, every organ is made up of these individual units.

Similarity in Cells

All cells are similar in that they contain a gelatinous substance composed of water, protein, sugar, acids, fats, and various minerals. Several parts of a cell, described next, are pictured in Figure 2-1 as they might look when photographed with an electron microscope. Label the structures on Figure 2-1. Throughout the book, numbers or letters in brackets indicate that the boldface term preceding it is to be used in labeling.

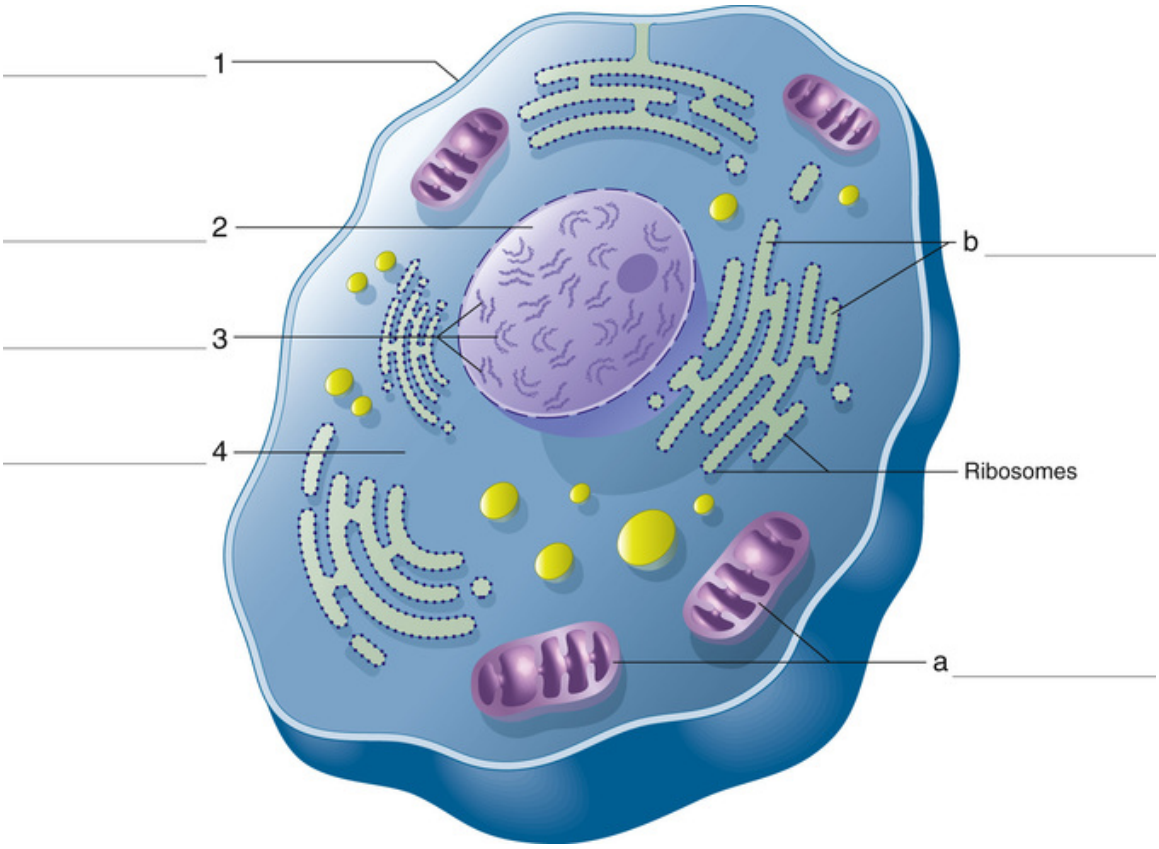


FIGURE 2-1 Major parts of a cell. Ribosomes (RI-bo-sohmz) are small granules that help the cell make proteins.

The **cell membrane** [1] not only surrounds and protects the cell but also regulates what passes into and out of the cell.

The **nucleus** [2] controls the operations of the cell. It directs cell division and determines the structure and function of the cell.

Chromosomes [3] are rod-like structures within the nucleus. All human body cells—except for the sex cells, the egg and the sperm (short for spermatozoon)—contain 23 pairs of chromosomes. Each sperm and each egg cell have only 23 unpaired chromosomes. After an egg and a sperm cell unite to form the embryo, each cell of the embryo then has 46 chromosomes (23 pairs) (Figure 2-2).

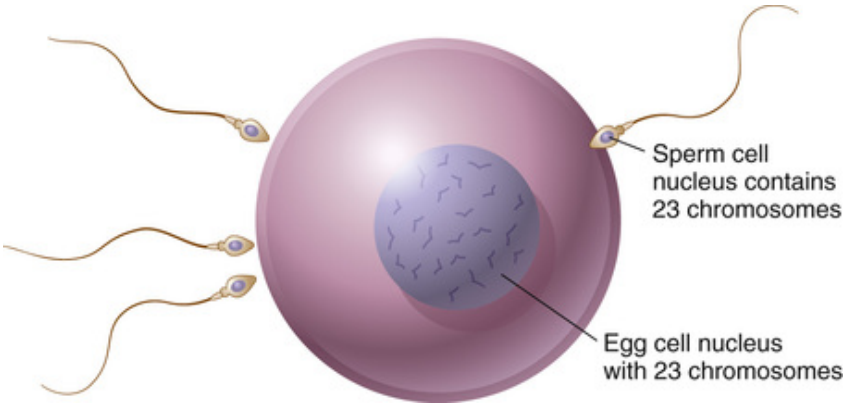


FIGURE 2-2 Egg and sperm cells, each containing 23 chromosomes.

Chromosomes contain regions called **genes.** There are several thousand genes, in an orderly sequence, on every chromosome. Each gene contains a chemical called **DNA** (deoxyribonucleic acid). DNA regulates the activities of the cell according to its sequence (arrangement into genes) on each chromosome. The DNA sequence resembles a series of recipes in code. This code, when passed out of the nucleus to the rest of the cell, directs the activities of the cell, such as cell division and synthesis of proteins.

A **karyotype** is a photograph of an individual's chromosomes, arranged by size, shape, and number (Figure 2-3). Karyotyping can determine whether chromosomes are normal. For example, an obstetrician may recommend amniocentesis (puncture of the sac around the fetus for removal of fluid and cells) for a pregnant woman so that the karyotype of the baby can be examined.

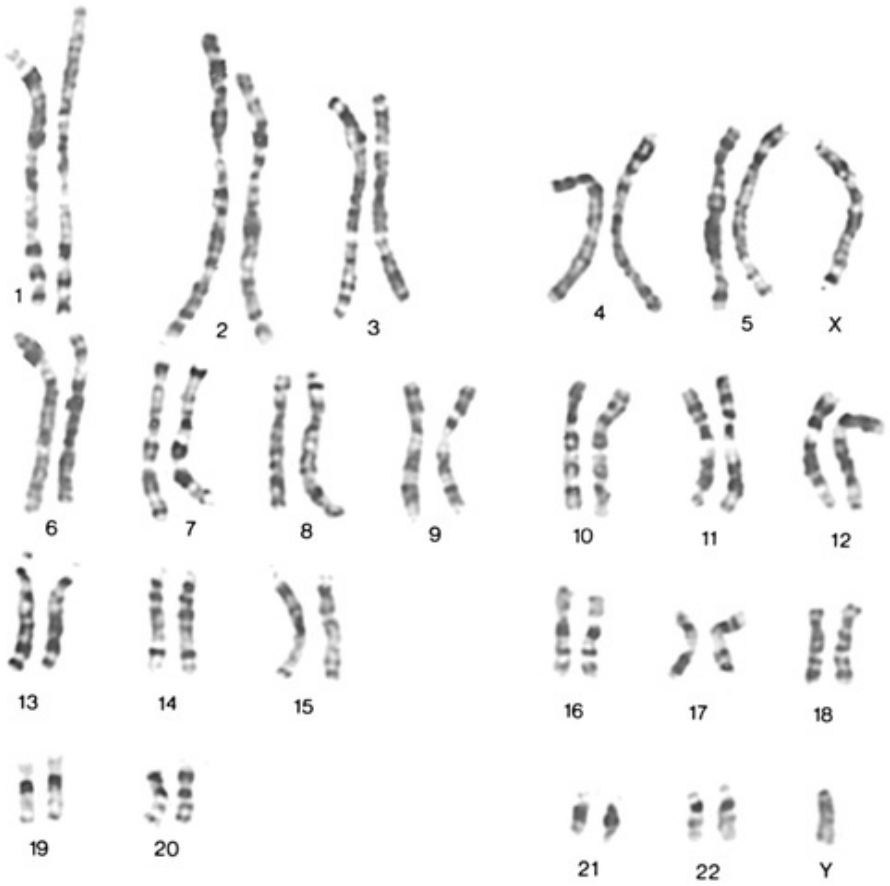


FIGURE 2-3 Karyotype of a normal male. Twenty-three pairs of chromosomes are shown. The 23rd pair is the XY pair present in normal males. In normal females, the 23rd pair is XX. For this karyotype, the chromosomes were treated with chemicals so that bands of light and dark areas are seen.

If a baby is born with a chromosomal abnormality, serious problems can result. In Down syndrome, the karyotype shows 47 chromosomes instead of the normal number, 46 (Figure 2-4). The extra chromosome 21 results in the development of a child with Down syndrome (also called trisomy 21 syndrome). Its incidence is about 1 in every 750 live births, but as the mother's age increases, the presence of the chromosomal abnormality increases.

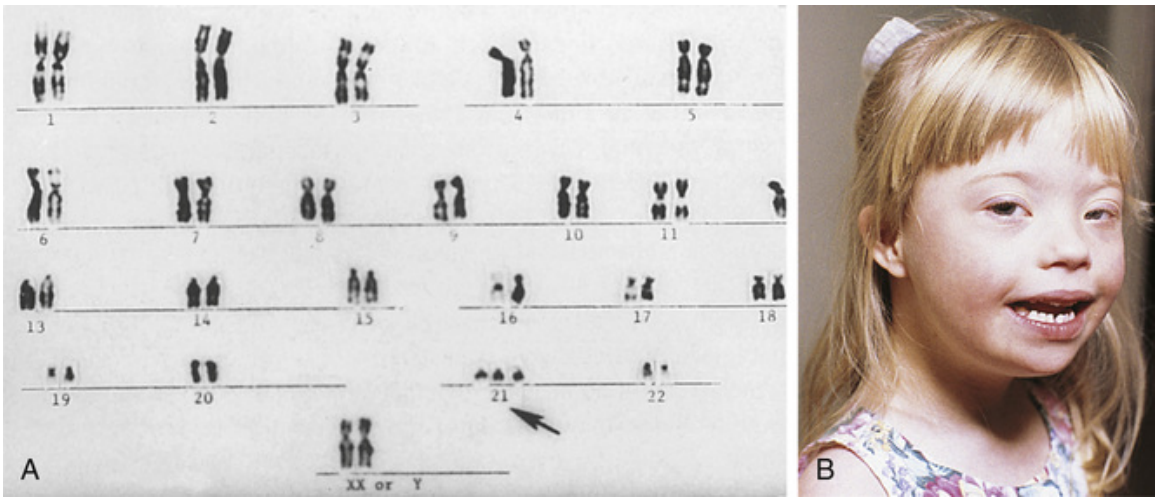


FIGURE 2-4 **A, Karyotype of a Down syndrome female** patient showing trisomy 21. There is an extra copy of chromosome 21, in addition to the usual pair, for a total of three (tri-). **B,** Photograph of a child with the typical facial appearance in Down syndrome. Features include a small, somewhat flat nose and upward slant of the eyes. Other characteristics of patients with Down syndrome are mental deficiency and heart defects.

Continue labeling Figure 2-1.

The **cytoplasm** [4] (cyt/o = cell, -plasm = formation) includes all of the material outside the nucleus and enclosed by the cell membrane. It carries on the work of the cell (e.g., in a muscle cell, it does the contracting; in a nerve cell, it transmits impulses). The cytoplasm contains specialized apparatus to supply the chemical needs of the cell.

Mitochondria [a] are small sausage-shaped bodies that provide the principal source of energy for the cell. They use nutrients and oxygen to release energy that is stored in food. During the chemical process called **catabolism,** complex foods such as sugar and fat are broken down (cata- means down) into simpler substances and energy is released by the mitochondria. Thus, catabolism provides the energy for cells to do the work of the body.

The **endoplasmic reticulum** [b] is a network (reticulum) of canals within the cell. These canals are cellular tunnel systems that manufacture proteins for the cell. Attached to the endoplasmic reticulum are **ribosomes,** which build long chains of proteins. **Anabolism,** occurring on the endoplasmic reticulum, is the process of building up (ana- means up) large proteins from small protein pieces called amino acids. Examples of important proteins for cell growth are hormones and enzymes.

Together, these two processes—**anabolism** and **catabolism**—make up the cell's **metabolism.** Metabolism, then, is the total of the chemical processes occurring in a cell. If a person has a "fast metabolism," foods such as sugar and fat are used up very quickly, and energy is released. If a person has a "slow metabolism," foods are burned slowly, and fat accumulates in cells.

Study Section 1

Practice spelling each term, and know its meaning.

anabolism	Process of building up large proteins from small protein pieces called amino acids. Ana- means up, bol means to cast, and -ism is a process.
catabolism	Process whereby complex nutrients are broken down to simpler substances and energy is released. Cata- means down, bol means to cast, and -ism is a process.
cell membrane	Structure surrounding and protecting the cell. It determines what enters and leaves the cell.
chromosomes	Rod-shaped structures in the nucleus that contain regions of DNA called genes. There are 46 chromosomes (23 pairs) in every cell except for the egg and sperm cells, which contain only 23 individual, unpaired chromosomes.
cytoplasm	All of the material that is outside the nucleus and yet contained within the cell membrane.
DNA	Chemical found within each chromosome. Arranged like a sequence of recipes in code, it directs the activities of the cell.
endoplasmic reticulum	Network of canals within the cytoplasm of the cell. Here, large proteins are made from smaller protein pieces.
genes	Regions of DNA within each chromosome.
karyotype	Picture (classification) of chromosomes in the nucleus of a cell. The chromosomes are arranged in numerical order to determine their number and structure.
metabolism	Total of the chemical processes in a cell. It includes catabolism and anabolism. Meta- means change, bol means to cast, and -ism means a process.
mitochondria	Rod-shaped structures in the cytoplasm that provide the principal source of energy (miniature "power plants") for the cell. **Catabolism** is the process that occurs in mitochondria. (From the Greek *mitos* meaning thread and *chondrion* meaning granule.) **HINT:** Think of "mighty" mitochondria!
nucleus	Control center of the cell. It contains chromosomes and directs the activities of the cell.

Anabolic Steroids

These drugs are similar to **androgens** (male hormones) in their effects on the body. They build up protein within cells.

Metabolism and the Thyroid Gland

The thyroid gland secretes thyroid hormone (thyroxine, or T4), which stimulates metabolism in cells. Increased levels of hormone speed up metabolism (increased energy and weight loss) and decreased levels of hormone slow down metabolism (sluggishness and weight gain).

Differences in Cells

While we have just seen how cells contain similar structures, as they develop in the embryo, cells change to form many different types. Cells are different, or specialized, throughout the body to carry out their individual functions. For example, a **muscle cell** is long and slender and contains fibers that aid in contracting and relaxing; an **epithelial cell** (a lining and skin cell) may be square and flat to provide protection; a **nerve cell** may be long and have various fibrous extensions that aid in its job of carrying impulses; a **fat cell** contains large, empty spaces for fat storage. These are only a few of the many types of cells in the body. Figure 2-5 illustrates the different sizes and shapes of muscle, epithelial, nerve, and fat cells. The term that describes this change in cells as they mature and specialize is **differentiation**.

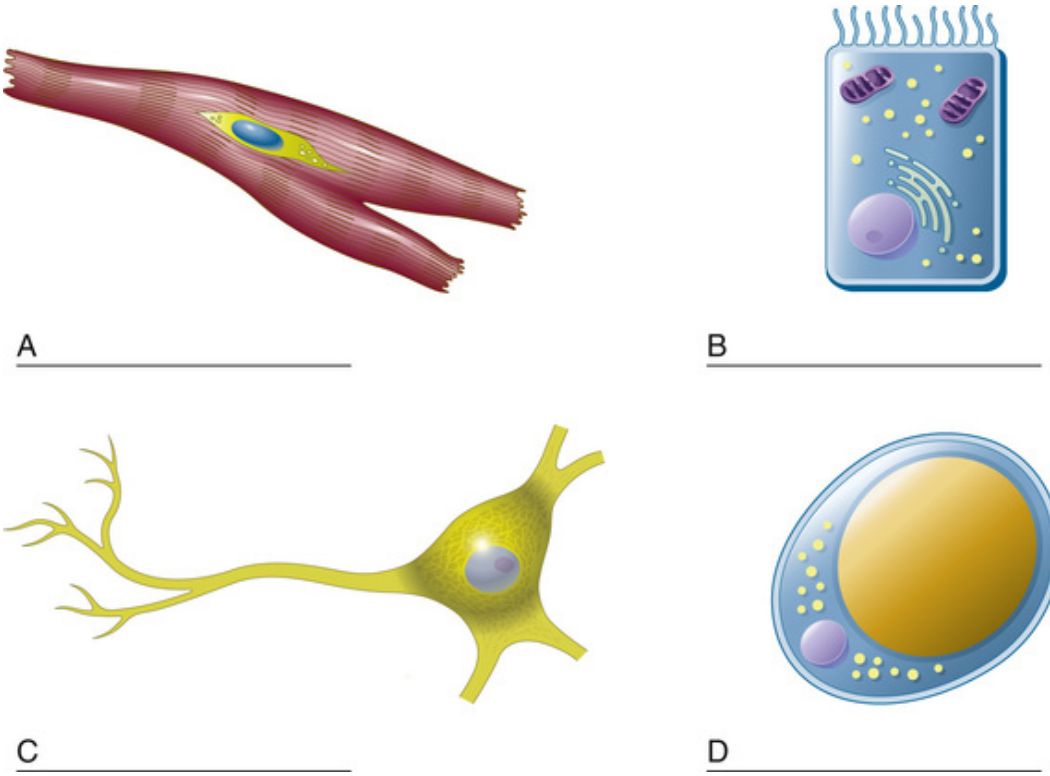


FIGURE 2-5 **Types of cells. A, muscle cell; B, epithelial cell; C, nerve cell;** and **D, fat cell.**

Differentiation

It's still a scientific mystery why cells with the same DNA change or specialize into different types of cells in the developing embryo. Factors are thought to influence genes (DNA), leading to differentiation of cells. If we can figure out what causes differentiation as they mature, we may be closer to understanding what happens to cells when they revert to a more primitive, unspecialized form, as in cancer cells.

Tissues

A tissue is a group of similar cells working together to do a specific job. A **histologist** (hist/o = tissue) is a scientist who specializes in the study of tissues. Several different types of tissue are recognized. Tissues of the same type may be located in various regions of the body. Figure 2-6 illustrates four types of tissues.

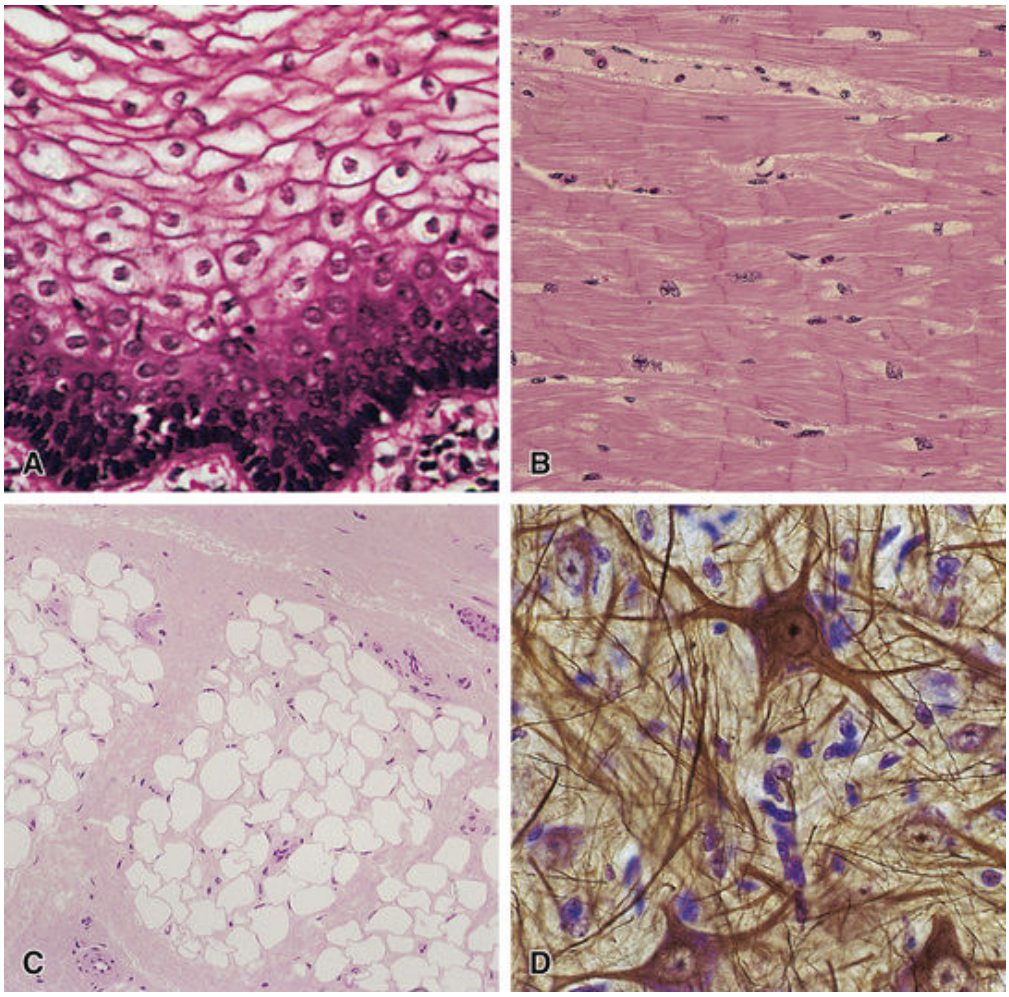


FIGURE 2-6 Types of tissues. A, Epithelial. B, Muscle. C, Connective tissue (Fat). D, Nerve.

Epithelial Tissue

Epithelial tissue, located all over the body, forms the linings of internal organs, and the outer surface of the skin covering the body. It also lines exocrine and endocrine glands and is responsible for the secretions that the glands produce. The term **epithelial** originally referred to the tissue on (epi-) the breast nipple (thel/o). Now it describes all tissue that covers the outside of the body and lines the inner surface of internal organs.

Muscle Tissue

Voluntary muscle is found in arms and legs and parts of the body where movement is under conscious control. Involuntary muscle, found in the

heart and digestive system, as well as other organs, allows movement that is not under conscious control. Cardiac muscle is a specialized type of muscle found only in the heart. Contractions of this muscle type can be seen as a beating heart in an ultrasound scan of a 6-week-old fetus.

Connective Tissue

Examples are **adipose** (fat) tissue, **cartilage** (elastic, fibrous tissue attached to bones), bone, and blood.

Nerve Tissue

Nerve tissue conducts impulses all over the body.

Organs

Different types of tissue combine to form an organ. For example, an organ such as the stomach is composed of muscle tissue, nerve tissue, and glandular epithelial tissue. The medical term for internal organs is **viscera** (singular: **viscus**). Examples of abdominal viscera (organs located in the abdomen) are the liver, stomach, intestines, pancreas, spleen, and gallbladder.

Systems

Systems are groups of organs working together to perform complex functions. For example, the mouth, esophagus, stomach, and small and large intestines are organs that do the work of the digestive system to digest food and absorb it into the bloodstream.

Figure 2-7 reviews the difference between cells, tissues, organs and systems.

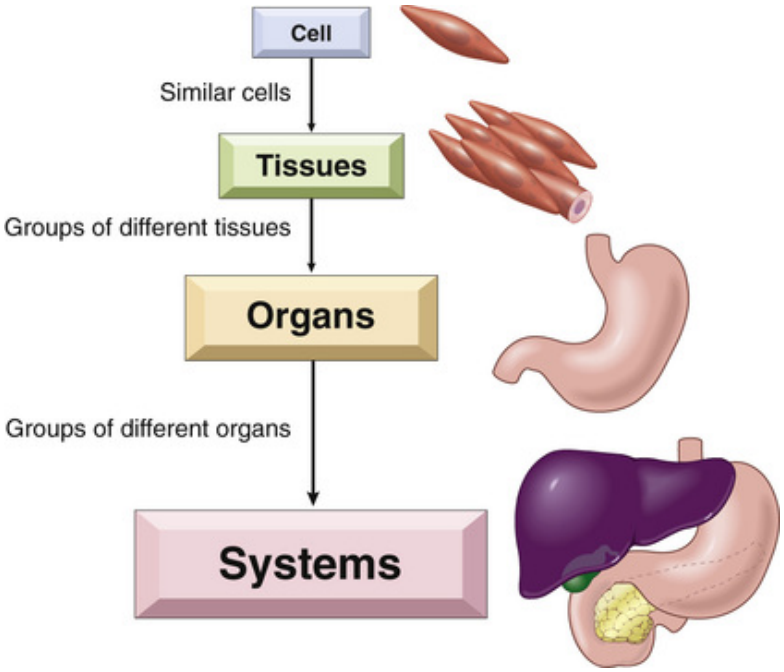


FIGURE 2-7 Cells, tissues, organs and systems.

The body systems with their individual organs are listed next. Learn to spell and identify the organs in **boldface.**

SYSTEM	ORGANS
Digestive	Mouth, **pharynx** (throat), esophagus (tube from the throat to the stomach), stomach, intestines (small and large), liver, gallbladder, pancreas
Urinary or excretory	Kidneys, **ureters** (tubes from the kidneys to the urinary bladder), urinary bladder, **urethra** (tube from the bladder to the outside of the body)
Respiratory	Nose, pharynx, **larynx** (voice box), **trachea** (windpipe), bronchial tubes, lungs (where the exchange of gases takes place)
Reproductive	*Female*: Ovaries, fallopian tubes, **uterus** (womb), vagina, mammary glands
	Male: Testes and associated tubes, urethra, penis, prostate gland
Endocrine	**Thyroid gland** (in the neck), **pituitary gland** (at the base of the brain), sex glands (ovaries and testes), adrenal glands, pancreas (islets of Langerhans), parathyroid glands
Nervous	Brain, spinal cord, nerves, and collections of nerves
Circulatory	Heart, blood vessels (arteries, veins, and capillaries), lymphatic vessels and nodes, spleen, thymus gland
Musculoskeletal	Muscles, bones, and joints
Skin and sense organs	Skin, hair, nails, sweat glands, and sebaceous (oil) glands; eye, ear, nose, and tongue

Study Section 2

Practice spelling each term, and know its meaning.

adipose tissue	Collection of fat cells.
cartilage	Flexible connective tissue often attached to bones at joints. Cartilage forms part of the external ear and the nose. Rings of cartilage surround the trachea.
epithelial cells	Skin cells that cover the outside of the body and line the internal surfaces of organs.
histologist	Specialist in the study of tissues.
larynx (LAH-RINKS)	Voice box; located above the trachea. • **HINT:** Think of the word **laryngitis,** which means inflammation of the voice box, and may result in losing your voice!
pharynx (FAH-RINKS)	Throat. The pharynx serves as the common passageway for food (from the mouth going to the esophagus) and air (from the nose to the trachea). • **HINT:** Note that "y" comes before "n" in both phar**yn**x and lar**yn**x.
pituitary gland	Endocrine gland at the base of the brain. • **HINT:** Be careful spelling pituitary; it contains 2 i's.
thyroid gland	Endocrine gland that surrounds the trachea in the neck.
trachea	Windpipe (tube leading from the throat and larynx to the bronchial tubes.)
ureter	One of two tubes, each leading from a single kidney to the urinary bladder. • **HINT:** *Spelling clue*: Ureter has two **e**'s, and there are two ureters.
urethra	Tube from the urinary bladder to the outside of the body. • **HINT:** *Spelling clue*: Urethra has one **e,** and there is only one urethra.
uterus	Womb; the organ that holds the embryo/fetus as it develops.
viscera	Internal organs in the main cavities of the body, especially in the abdomen.

Body Cavities

A body cavity is a space within the body that contains internal organs (viscera). Label Figure 2-8 as you learn the names of the body cavities.

Some of the important organs contained within those cavities are listed as well.

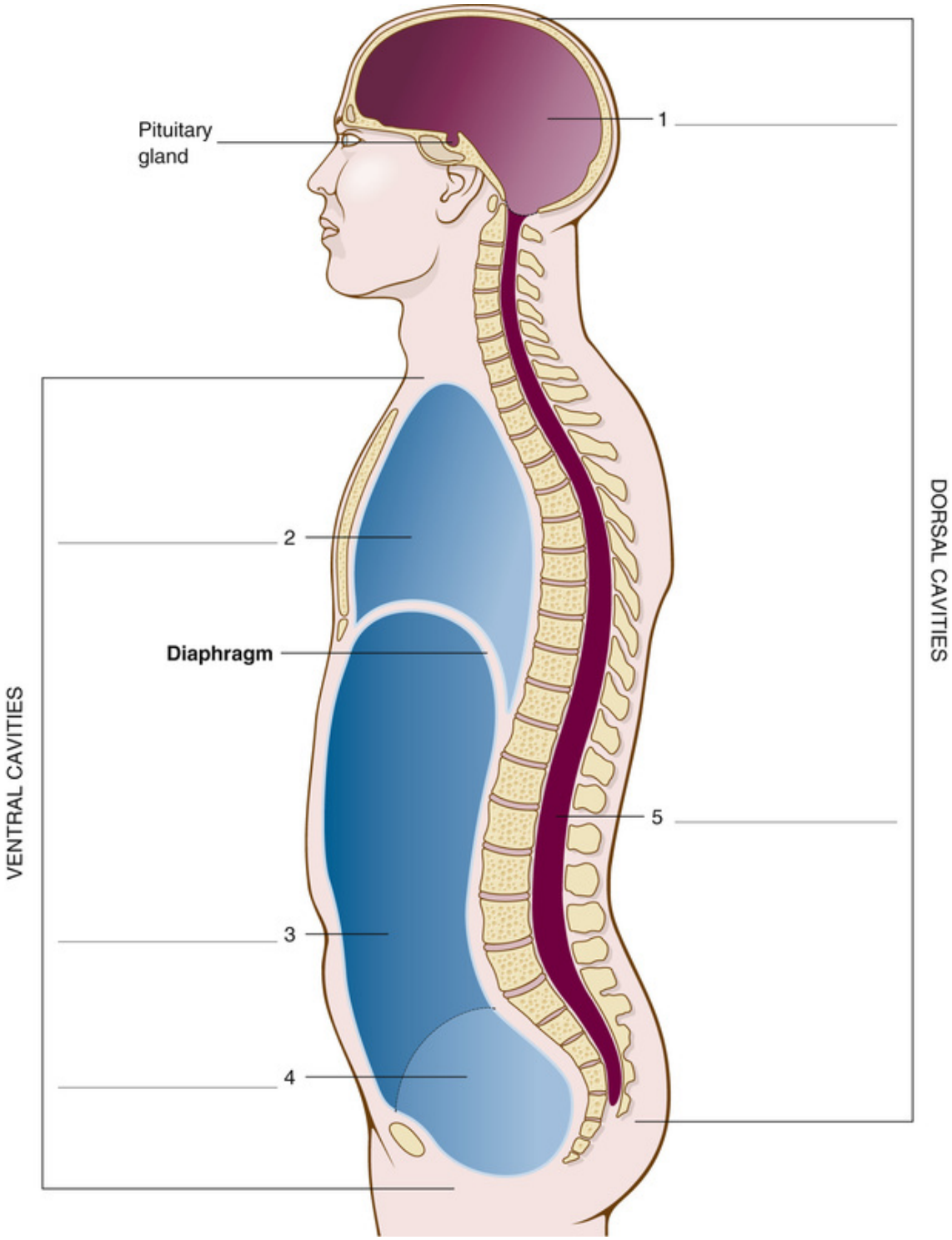


FIGURE 2-8 **Body cavities. Ventral** (anterior) cavities are in the front of the body (*blue*). **Dorsal** (posterior) cavities are in the back (*red*).

CAVITY	ORGANS
Cranial [1]	Brain, pituitary gland.
Thoracic [2]	Lungs, heart, esophagus, trachea, bronchial tubes, thymus gland, aorta (large artery).
	The thoracic cavity is divided into two smaller cavities (Figure 2-9): a. **Pleural cavity**—space surrounding each lung. The **pleura** is a double membrane that surrounds the lungs and protects them. If the **pleura** is inflamed (as in pleuritis or pleurisy), the pleural cavity may fill with fluid. This is called a **pleural effusion.** b. **Mediastinum**—centrally located space outside of and between the lungs. It contains the heart, aorta, trachea, esophagus, thymus gland, bronchial tubes, and many lymph nodes.
Continue labeling Figure 2-8.	
Abdominal [3]	The **peritoneum** is the double-folded membrane surrounding the abdominal cavity (Figure 2-10). It attaches the abdominal organs to the abdominal muscles and surrounds each organ to hold it in place. The kidneys are two bean-shaped organs situated behind the abdominal cavity (retroperitoneal area) on either side of the backbone (see Figures 2-10 and 2-12). The abdominal cavity also contains the stomach, small and large intestines, spleen, pancreas, liver, and gallbladder. The **diaphragm** (a muscular wall) divides the abdominal and thoracic cavities (see Figure 2-8).
Pelvic [4]	Portions of the small and large intestines, rectum, urinary bladder, urethra, and ureters; uterus and vagina in the female.
Spinal [5]	Nerves of the spinal cord.

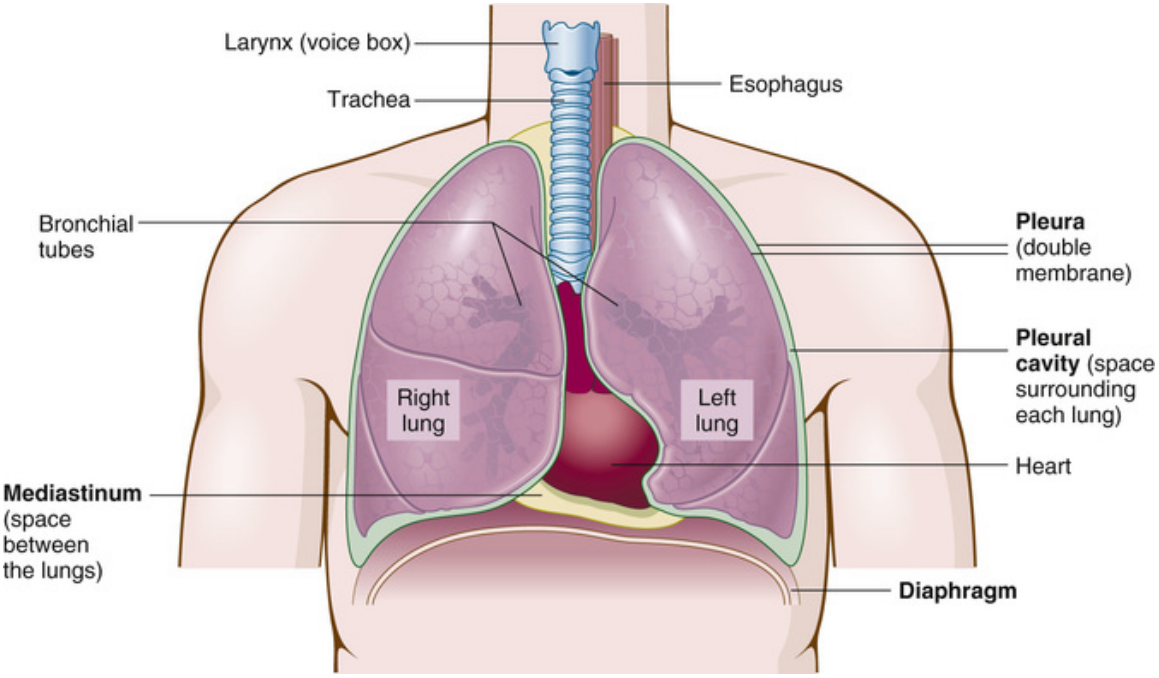


FIGURE 2-9 Thoracic Cavity.

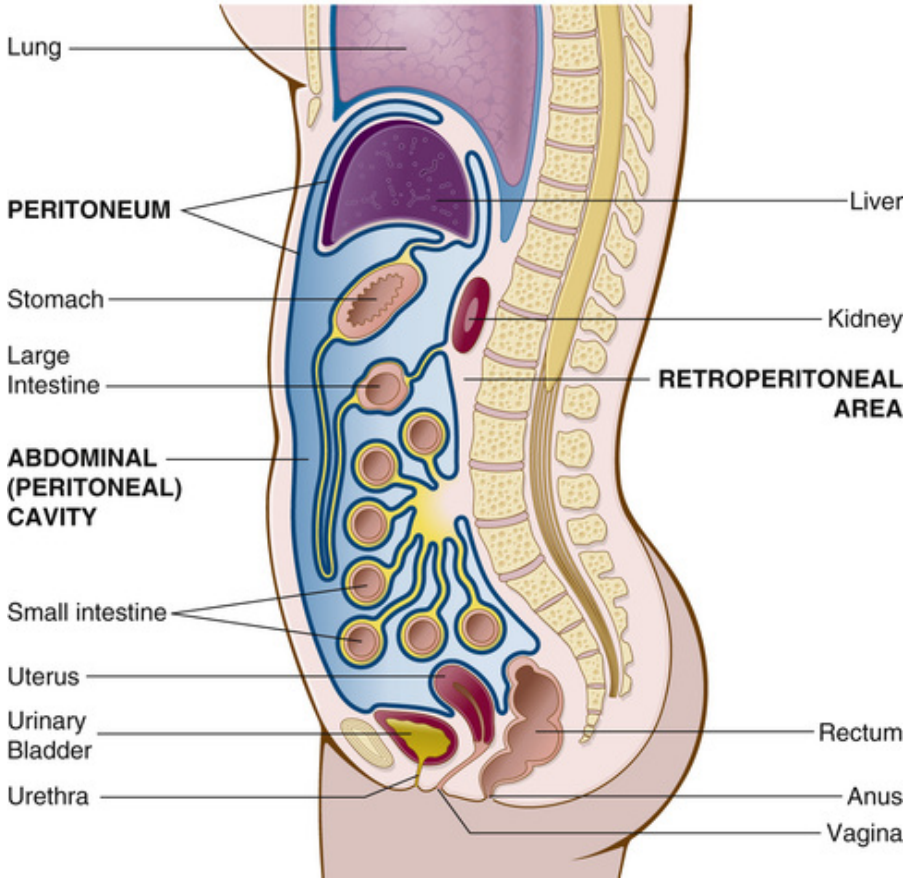


FIGURE 2-10 **Abdominal (peritoneal) cavity** (*side view* and in *light blue*). Notice the **peritoneum**, which is a membrane surrounding the organs in the abdominal cavity. If there is disease of the abdominal organs, fluid may accumulate in the peritoneal cavity. This fluid is called **ascites**. The **retroperitoneal area** is behind the peritoneum. The kidneys are in the retroperitoneal area.

The cranial and spinal cavities are the dorsal (dors/o = back) body cavities because of their location on the back or posterior portion of the body. The thoracic, abdominal, and pelvic cavities are ventral (ventr/o = belly) body cavities because they are on the front (anterior) portion of the body (see Figure 2-8).

While the thoracic and abdominal cavities are separated by a muscular wall called the **diaphragm,** the abdominal and pelvic cavities are not separated and are referred to together as the **abdominopelvic cavity.** Figures 2-11 and 2-12 show the abdominal and thoracic viscera from anterior (ventral) and posterior (dorsal) views.

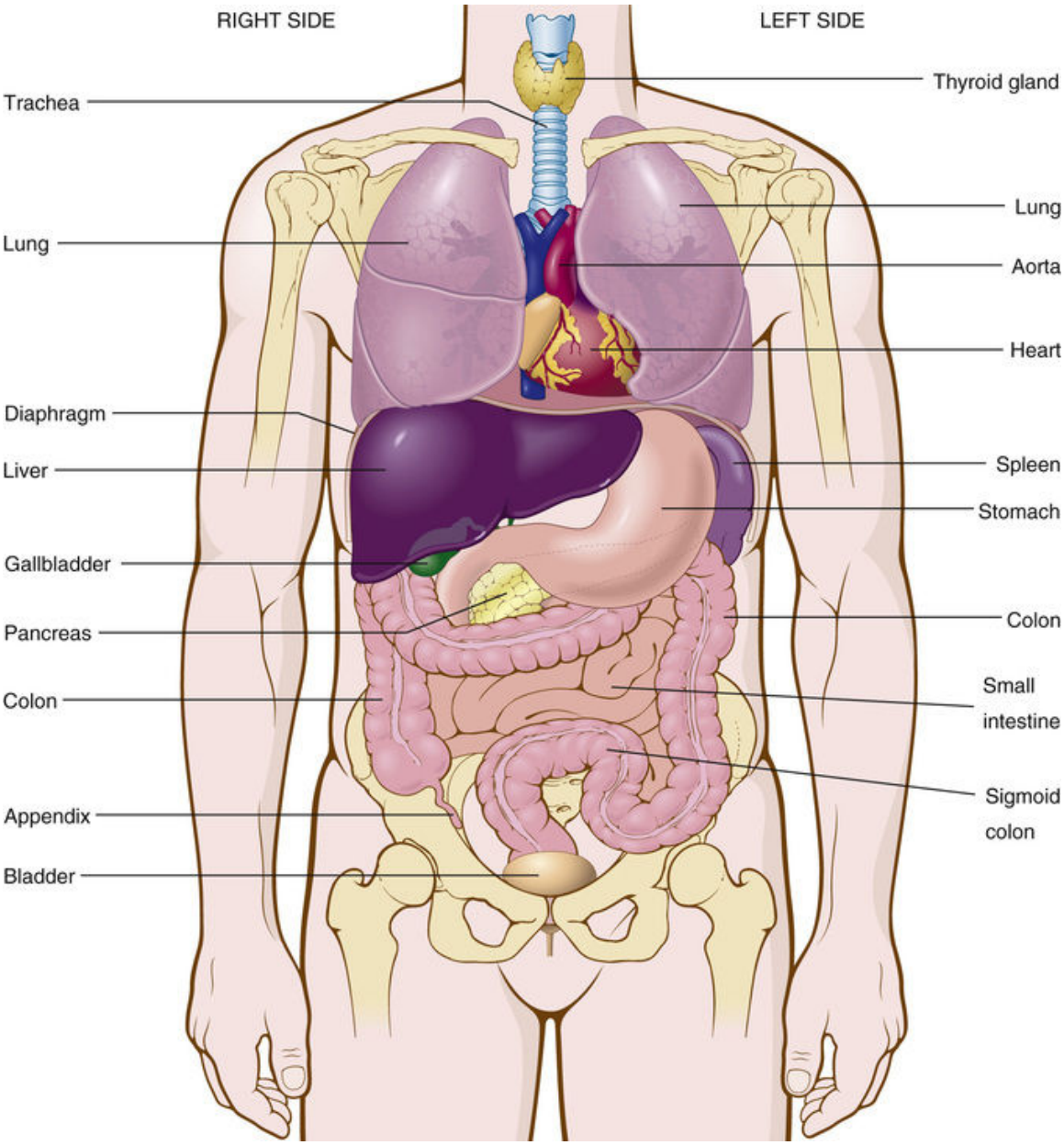


FIGURE 2-11 Organs of the abdominopelvic and thoracic cavities, anterior view.

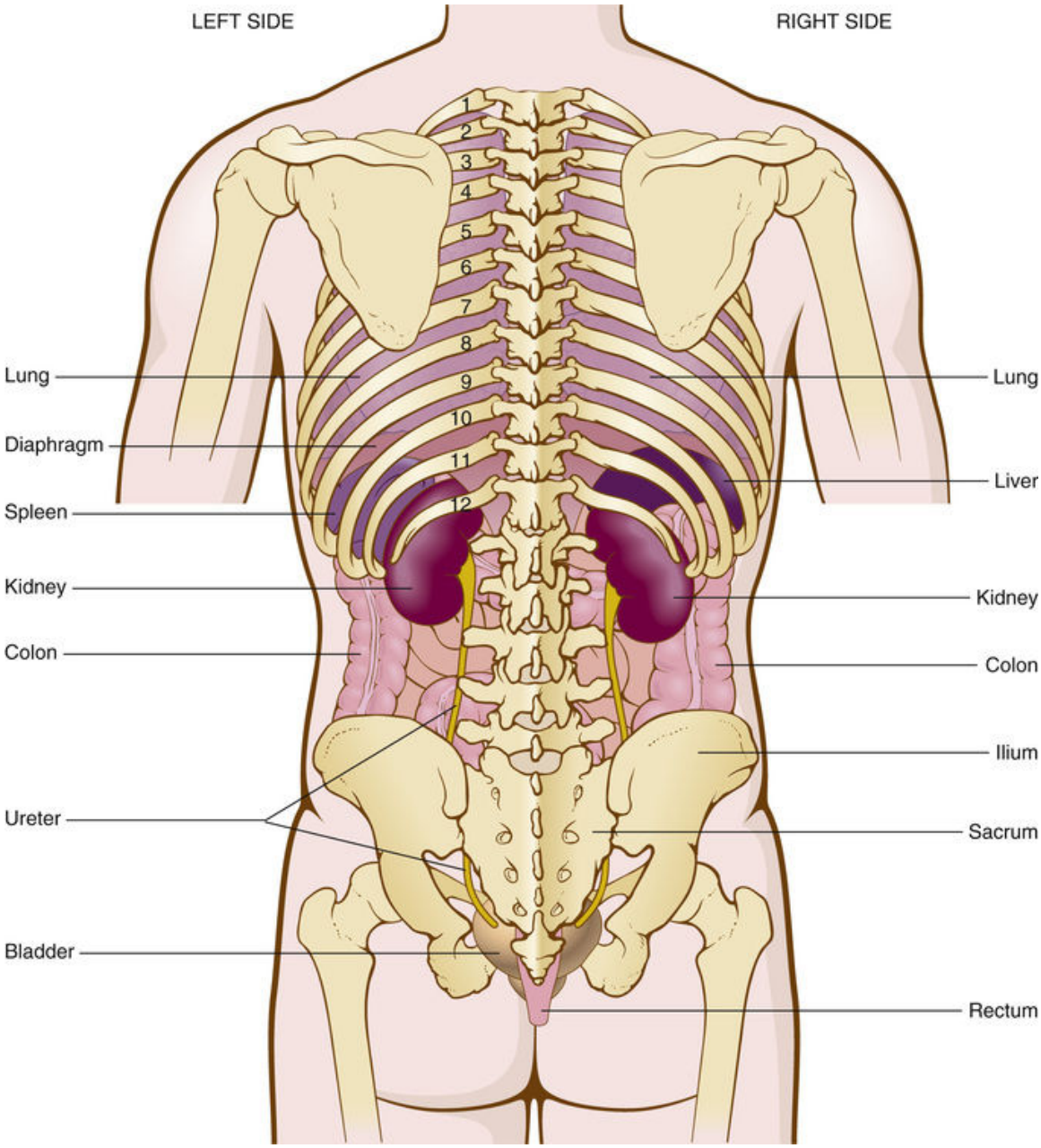


FIGURE 2-12 Organs of the abdominopelvic and thoracic cavities, posterior view.

Study Section 3

Practice spelling each term, and know its meaning.

abdominal cavity	Space below the chest containing organs such as the liver, stomach, gallbladder, and intestines; also called the **abdomen** or **peritoneal cavity.**
cranial cavity	Space in the head containing the brain and surrounded by the skull. **Cranial** means **pertaining to the skull.**
diaphragm	Muscle separating the abdominal and thoracic cavities. The diaphragm moves up and down and aids in breathing.
dorsal (posterior)	Pertaining to the back.
mediastinum	Centrally located space outside of and between the lungs.
pelvic cavity	Space below the abdomen containing portions of the intestines, rectum, urinary bladder, and reproductive organs. **Pelvic** means **pertaining to the pelvis,** composed of the hip bones surrounding the pelvic cavity.
peritoneum	Double-folded membrane surrounding the abdominal cavity. The peritoneum attaches abdominal viscera to muscles and functions as a protective membrane (containing blood vessels and nerves) around the organs.
pleura	Double-folded membrane surrounding each lung. Pleural means pertaining to the pleura. **HINT:** Don't confuse *pleural* with *plural,* which means more than one!
pleural cavity	Space between the pleural layers.
spinal cavity	Space within the spinal column (backbones) containing the spinal cord. See Figure 2-13.
thoracic cavity	Space in the chest containing the heart, lungs, bronchial tubes, trachea, esophagus, and other organs.
ventral (anterior)	Pertaining to the front.

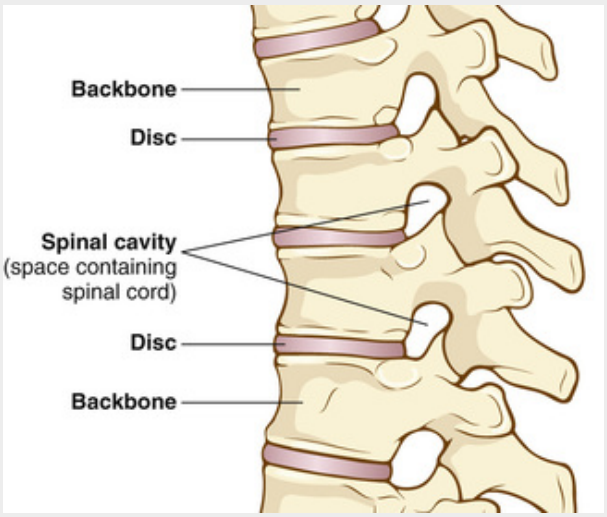


FIGURE 2-13 Spinal Cavity. A disc is a pad of cartilage that acts as a cushion between each backbone of the spinal column.

Peritoneum and Other Membranes

Many vital organs are covered and protected by membranes. The **peritoneum** surrounds abdominal viscera (liver, small and large intestines, stomach), and the **pleura** covers the lungs.

You can visualize the way organs are surrounded by a double membrane by imagining your fist pushing deep into a soft balloon. The balloon is then in two layers folded over your fist, just the way the pleura surrounds the lungs and the peritoneum surrounds the abdominal organs. Double wrapping around organs provides protection and cushioning, as well as a site for attachment to muscles. In the event of inflammation or disease of organs or membranes, fluid may collect in the space between the membranes surrounding the organs. This collection of fluid in the pleural cavity is called a **pleural effusion.** A collection of fluid in the peritoneal cavity is called **ascites.**

Abdominopelvic Regions and Quadrants

Regions

Doctors divide the abdominopelvic area into nine regions. Label these regions in Figure 2-14.

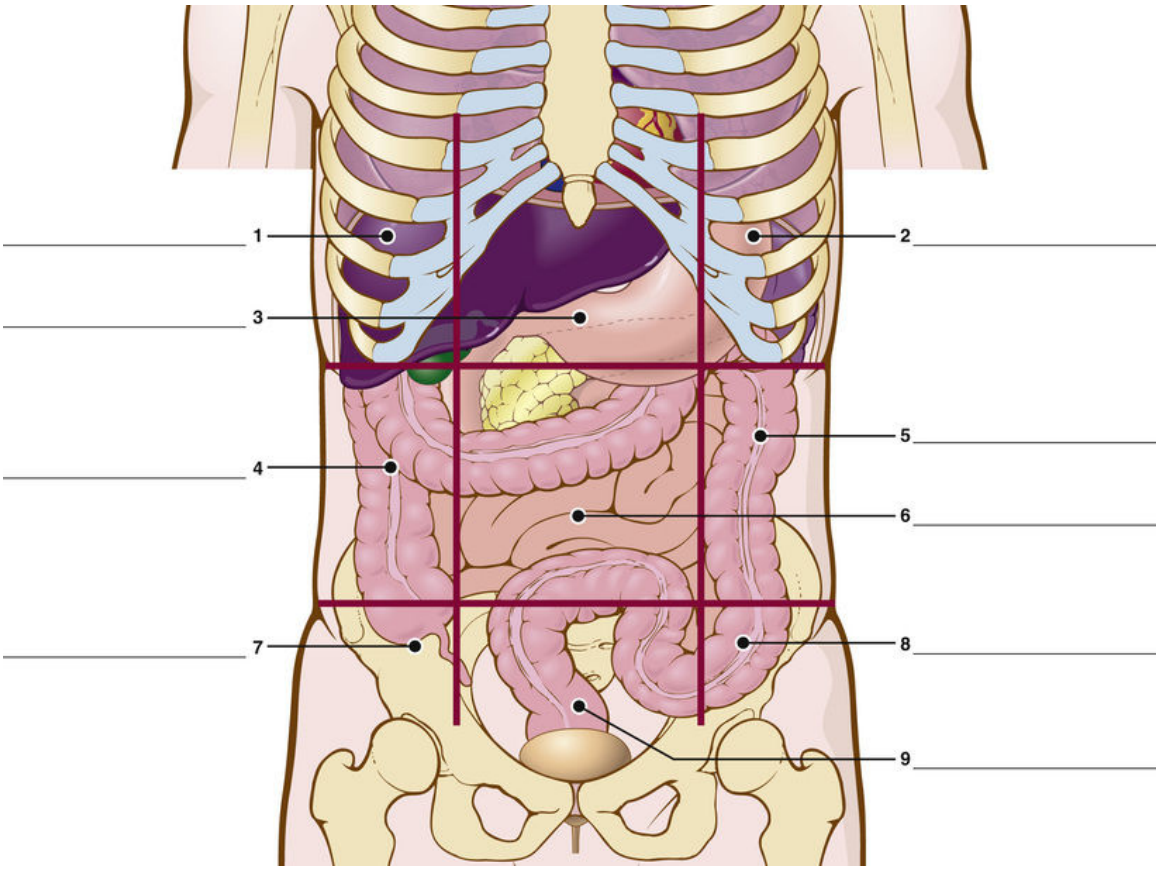


FIGURE 2-14 Abdominopelvic regions. These regions can be used clinically to locate internal organs.

Right hypochondriac region [1]: right upper region below (hypo-) the cartilage (chondr/o) of the ribs that extend over the abdomen
Left hypochondriac region [2]: left upper region below the rib cartilage
Epigastric region [3]: region above the stomach
Right lumbar region [4]: right middle region near the waist
Left lumbar region [5]: left middle region near the waist
Umbilical region [6]: region of the navel or umbilicus
Right inguinal region [7]: right lower region near the groin (inguin/o = groin), which is the area where the legs join the trunk of the body. This region also is known as the **right iliac region** because it lies near the ilium (the upper portion of the hip bone).
Left inguinal region [8]: left lower region near the groin. Also called the **left iliac region.**
Hypogastric region [9]: middle lower region below the umbilical region.

Quadrants

The abdominopelvic area can be divided into four quadrants by two imaginary lines—one horizontal and one vertical—that cross at the midsection of the body. Figure 2-15 shows the four abdominopelvic quadrants; add the proper abbreviation on the line under each label on the diagram.

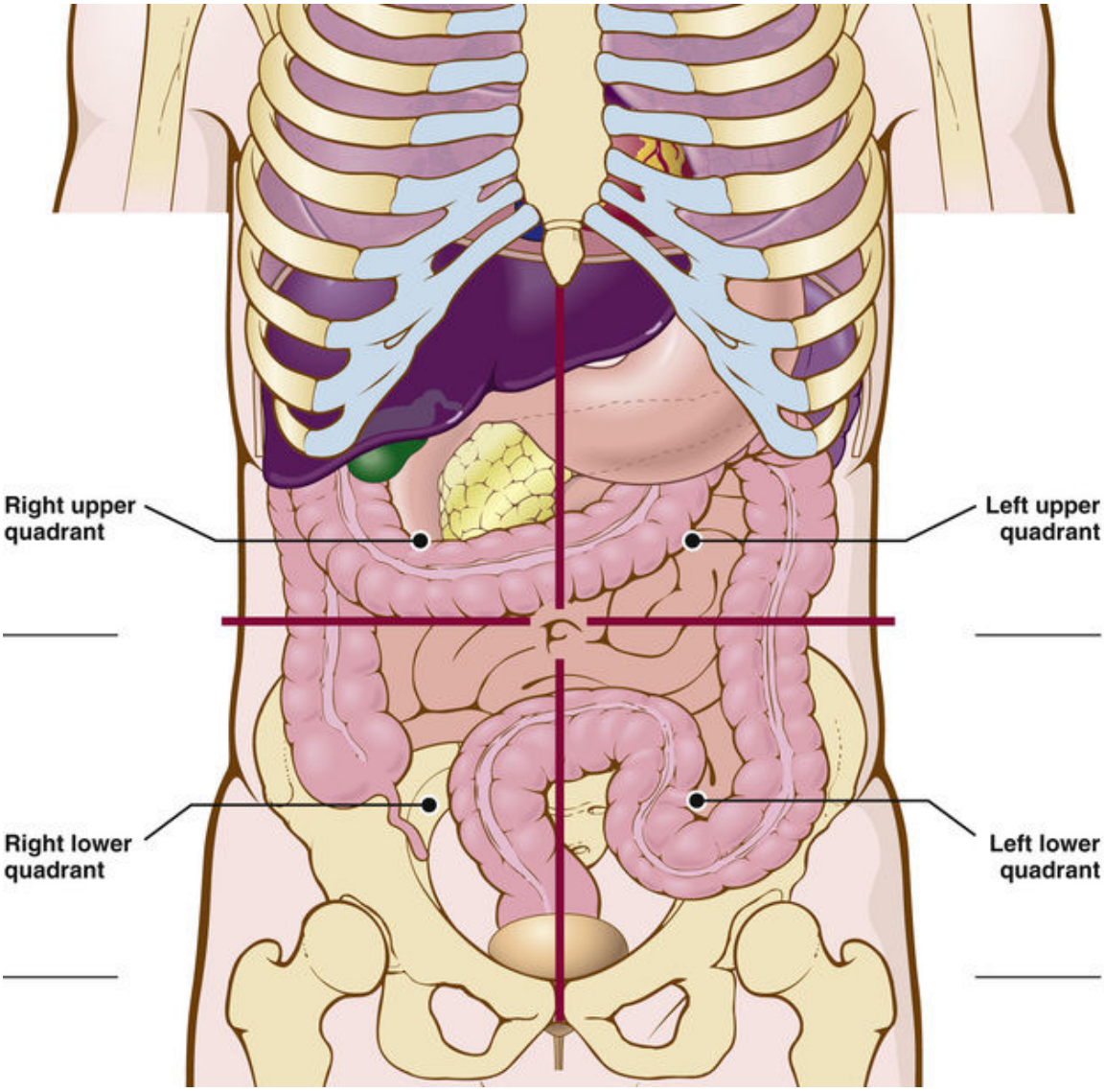


FIGURE 2-15 **Abdominopelvic quadrants.** Write the abbreviation for each quadrant on the line provided.

Right upper quadrant (RUQ)—contains the liver (right lobe), gallbladder, part of the pancreas, parts of the small and large intestines

Left upper quadrant (LUQ)—contains the liver (left lobe), stomach, spleen, part of the pancreas, parts of the small and large intestines

Right lower quadrant (RLQ)—contains parts of the small and large intestines, right ovary, right fallopian tube, appendix, right ureter

Left lower quadrant (LLQ)—contains parts of the small and large intestines, left ovary, left fallopian tube, left ureter

Divisions of the Back (Spinal Column)

The spinal column is composed of a series of bones that extend from the neck to the tailbone. Each bone is a **vertebra** (plural: **vertebrae**).

Label the divisions of the back on Figure 2-16A as you study the following:

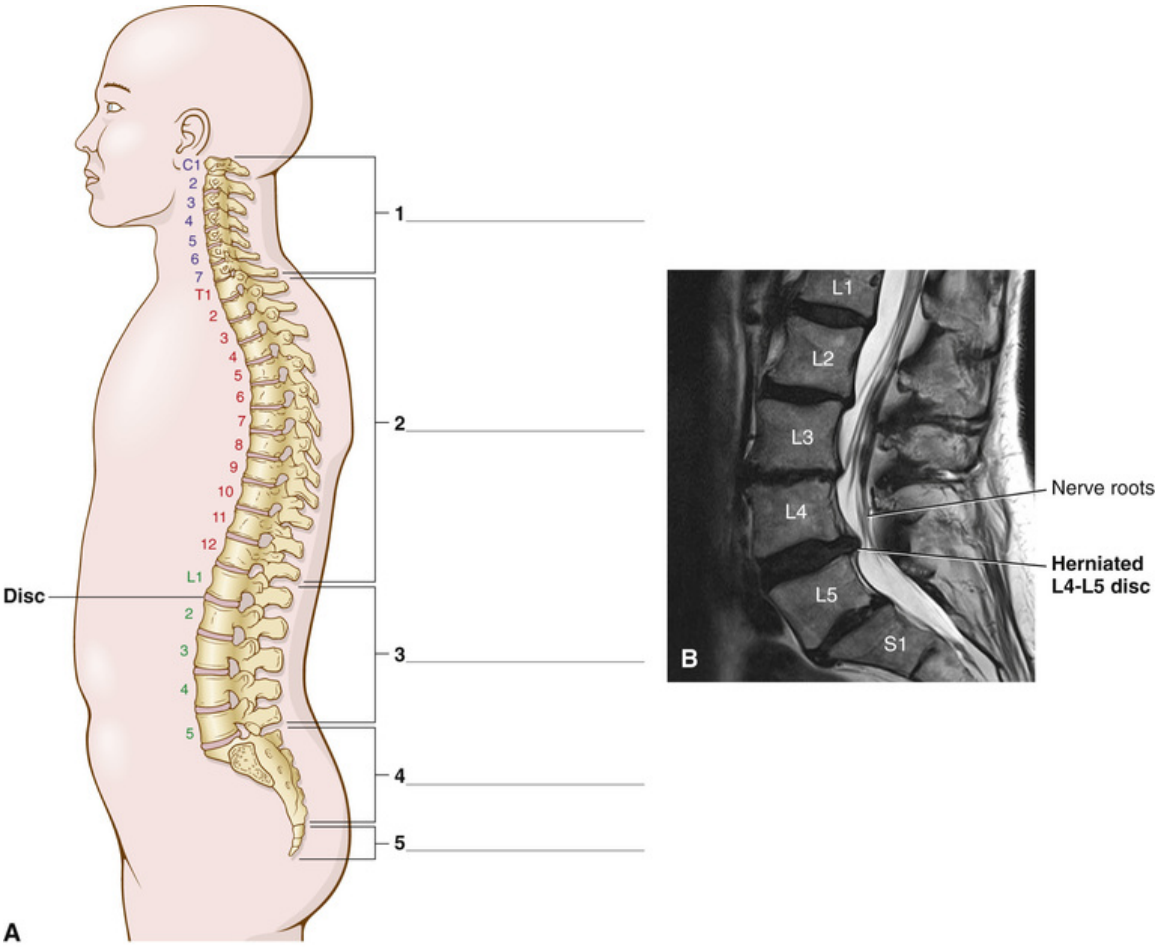


FIGURE 2-16 **A, Anatomic divisions of the back (spinal column).** A **disc** is a small pad of cartilage between each backbone. **B, MRI (magnetic resonance image)** of a **herniated disc** at the L4-L5 level of the spinal column.

DIVISION OF THE BACK	ABBREVIATION	LOCATION
Cervical [1]	C	Neck region. There are seven cervical vertebrae (C1 to C7).
Thoracic [2]	T	Chest region. There are 12 thoracic vertebrae (T1 to T12). Each bone is joined to a rib.
Lumbar [3]	L	Loin (waist) or flank region (between the ribs and the hipbone). There are five lumbar vertebrae (L1 to L5).
Sacral [4]	S	Five bones (S1 to S5) are fused to form one bone, the **sacrum**.
Coccygeal [5]		The **coccyx** (tailbone) is a small bone composed of four fused pieces.

Do not confuse the **spinal column** (backbones or vertebrae) with the **spinal cord** (nerves surrounded by the column). The **spinal column** is **bone tissue**, whereas the **spinal cord** is **nervous tissue**.

The spaces between the vertebrae (intervertebral spaces) are identified according to the two vertebrae between which they occur—for example, the L5–S1 space is between the fifth lumbar vertebra and the first sacral vertebra; T2–3 is between the second and third thoracic vertebrae. Within the space and between vertebrae is a small pad called a **disc.** The disc, composed of water and cartilage, is a shock absorber. Occasionally, a disc may move out of place (herniate) and put pressure on a nerve (see Figure 2-16B). This **"slipped disc"** can cause pain in an area of the body affected by the nerve.

Study Section 4

Practice spelling each term, and know its meaning.

Abdominopelvic Regions

hypochondriac	Right and left upper regions beneath the ribs.
epigastric	Middle upper region above the stomach.
lumbar	Right and left middle regions near the waist.
umbilical	Central region near the navel.
inguinal	Right and left lower regions near the groin. Also called iliac regions.
hypogastric	Middle lower region below the umbilical region.

Abdominopelvic Quadrants

RUQ	Right upper quadrant.
LUQ	Left upper quadrant.
RLQ	Right lower quadrant.
LLQ	Left lower quadrant.

Divisions of the Back

cervical	Neck region (C1 to C7).
thoracic	Chest region (T1 to T12).
lumbar	Loin (waist) region (L1 to L5).
sacral	Region of the sacrum (S1 to S5).
coccygeal	Region of the coccyx (tailbone).

Related Terms

vertebra	Single backbone. **HINT:** There are two e's in vertebra
vertebrae	Backbones. (VER-teh-bray)
spinal column	Bone tissue surrounding the spinal cavity.
spinal cord	Nervous tissue within the spinal cavity.
disc	Pad of cartilage between vertebrae.

Positional and Directional Terms

Label Figure 2-17 to identify the following positional and directional terms.

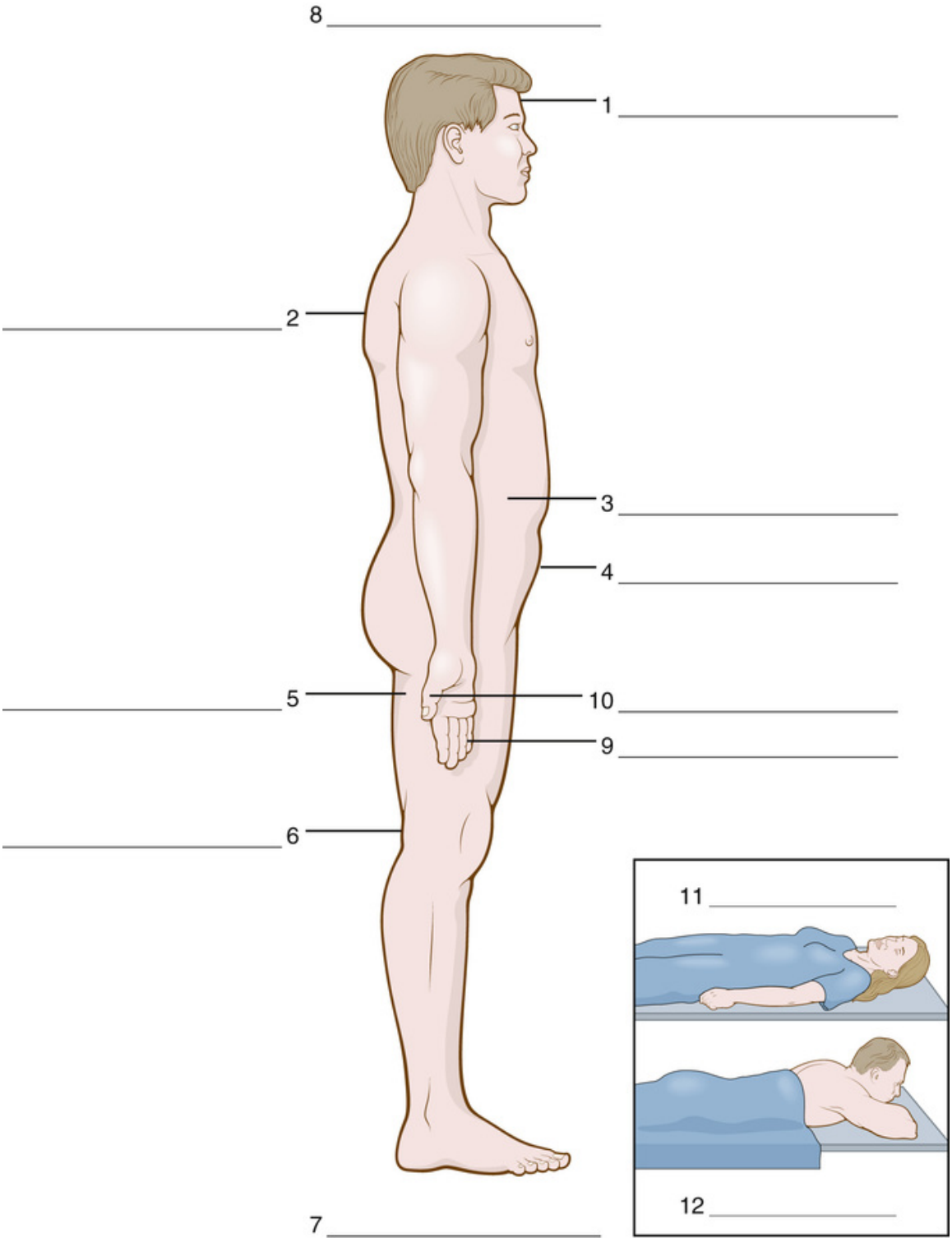


FIGURE 2-17 **Positional and directional terms.** Note that the standing figure is in the **anatomic position**, with the palms of the hands facing outward and the fifth (little) finger in a medial position (closer to the center of the body). The thumb is lateral.

LOCATION	RELATIONSHIP
Anterior (ventral) [1]	**Front side of the body.** *Example*: The forehead is on the anterior (ventral) side of the body.
Posterior (dorsal) [2]	**Back side of the body.** *Example*: The back of the head is posterior (dorsal) to the face.
Deep [3]	**Away from the surface.** *Example*: The stab wound penetrated deep into the abdomen.
Superficial [4]	**On the surface.** *Example*: Superficial veins can be viewed through the skin.
Proximal [5]	**Near the point of attachment to the trunk or near the beginning of a structure.** *Example*: The proximal end of the thigh bone (femur) joins with the hip socket.
Distal [6]	**Far from the point of attachment to the trunk or far from the beginning of a structure.** *Example*: At its distal end, the femur joins with the knee.
Inferior [7]	**Below another structure.** *Example*: The feet are at the inferior part of the body. They are inferior to the knees.
Superior [8]	**Above another structure.** *Example*: The head lies **superior** to the neck. **Cephalic** (pertaining to the head) also means above another structure.
Medial [9]	**Pertaining to the middle, or nearer the medial plane of the body.** *Example*: When in the anatomic position (palms of the hands facing outward), the fifth (little) finger is medial.
Lateral [10]	**Pertaining to the side.** *Example*: When in the anatomic position (palms of the hands facing outward), the thumb is lateral.
Supine [11]	**Lying on the back.** *Example*: The patient lies **supine** during an examination of the abdomen and, in females, during a pelvic (gynecologic) exam. See Figure 2-21 on page 62.
Prone [12]	**Lying on the belly.** *Example*: The backbones are examined with the patient in a **prone** position. A patient lies **on** his/her stomach in the pr**on**e position.

Planes of the Body

A **plane** is an imaginary flat surface. Label Figure 2-18 to identify the following planes of the body:

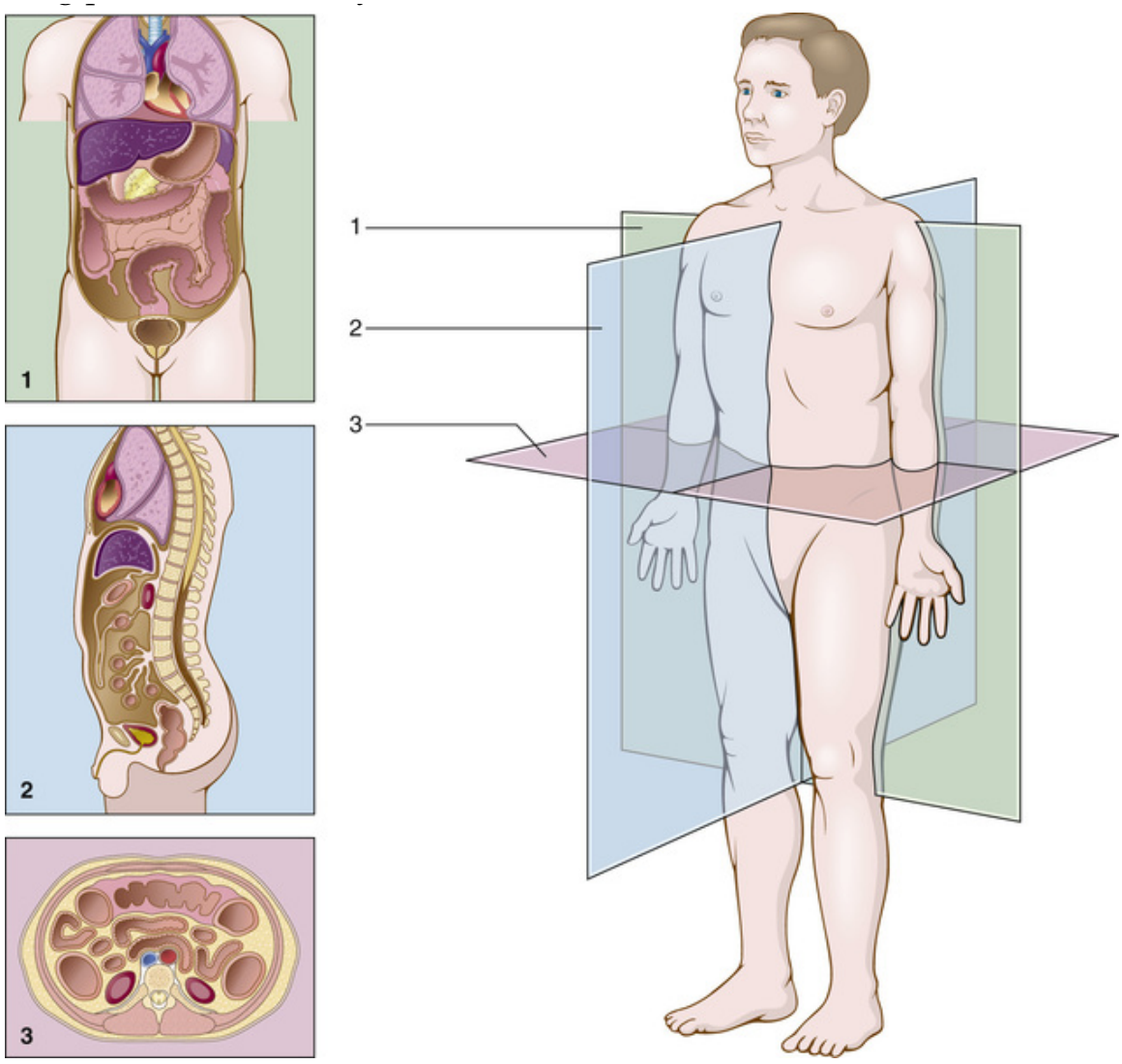


FIGURE 2-18 Planes of the body. The figure is in the **anatomic position.** Note the views of the body represented by each plane.

PLANE	LOCATION
Frontal (coronal) plane [1]	**Vertical plane dividing the body or structure into anterior and posterior portions.** A common chest x-ray view is a PA (posteroanterior—viewed from back to front) view, which is in the frontal (coronal) plane. See Figure 2-18.
Sagittal (lateral) plane [2]	**Lengthwise vertical plane dividing the body or structure into right and left sides.** The **midsagittal** plane divides the body into right and left halves. A lateral (side-to-side) chest x-ray film is taken in the sagittal plane.
Transverse (axial) plane [3]	**Horizontal (cross-sectional) plane running across the body parallel to the ground.** This cross-sectional plane divides the body or structure into upper and lower portions. A CT (computed tomography) scan is one of a series of x-ray pictures taken in the transverse (axial or cross-sectional) plane.

Study Section 5

Practice spelling each term, and know its meaning.

anterior (ventral)	Front surface of the body.
deep	Away from the surface.
distal	Far from the point of attachment to the trunk or far from the beginning of a structure.
frontal (coronal) plane	Vertical plane dividing the body or structure into anterior and posterior portions.
inferior	Below another structure; pertaining to the lower portion of the body.
lateral	Pertaining to the side.
medial	Pertaining to the middle or near the medial plane of the body.
posterior (dorsal)	Back surface of the body.
prone	Lying on the belly (face down, palms down).
proximal	Near the point of attachment to the trunk or near the beginning of a structure.
sagittal (lateral) plane	Lengthwise, vertical plane dividing the body or structure into right and left sides. From the Latin *sagitta*, meaning arrow. As an arrow is shot from a bow it enters the body in the sagittal plane, dividing right from left. The **midsagittal** plane divides the body into right and left halves.
superficial	On the surface.
superior (cephalic)	Above another structure; pertaining to the head.
supine	Lying on the back (face up, palms up). **HINT:** Lying supine is on your spine
transverse (axial) plane	Horizontal (cross-sectional) plane dividing the body into upper and lower portions.

Terminology

Divide each term into its component parts, and write its meaning in the space provided.

Combining Forms

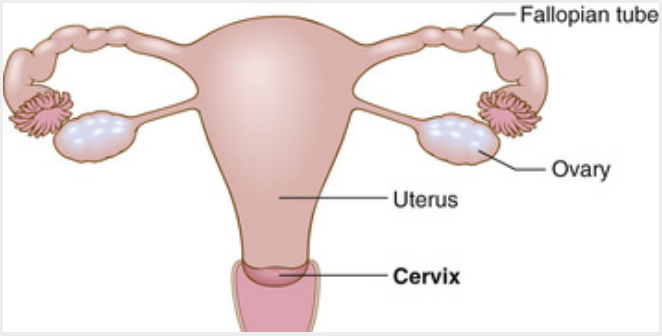


FIGURE 2-19 The **cervix** is the lower portion or neck of the uterus.

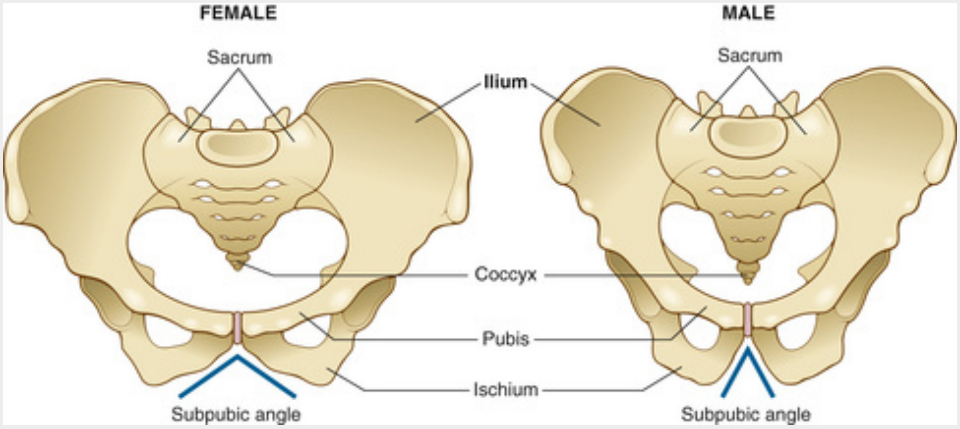


FIGURE 2-20

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
abdomin/o	abdomen	abdominal *The abdomen is the region below the chest containing internal organs (such as the liver, intestines, stomach, and gallbladder).*
adip/o	fat	adipose *The suffix -ose means pertaining to or full of. Another combining form meaning fat is lip/o. Lipids are fats.*
anter/o	front	anterior *The suffix -ior means pertaining to.*
cervic/o	neck (of the body or of the uterus)	cervical *The **cervix** is the neck of the uterus. See Figure 2-19.*
chondr/o	cartilage (type of connective tissue)	chondroma *This is a benign tumor.*
		chondrosarcoma *This is a malignant tumor. The root sarc indicates that the malignant tumor arises from a type of flesh or connective tissue.*
chrom/o	color	chromosomes *These nuclear structures absorb the color of dyes used to stain the cell. The suffix -somes means bodies. Literally, this term means "bodies of color," because this is how they appeared to researchers who first saw them under the microscope.*
coccyg/o	coccyx (tailbone)	coccygeal
crani/o	skull	craniotomy
cyt/o	cell	cytoplasm *The suffix -plasm means formation.*
dist/o	far, distant	distal
dors/o	back portion of the body	dorsal
hist/o	tissue	histology

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
ili/o	ilium (upper part of the hip bone)	iliac *See Figure 2-20 for a picture of the ilium.*	
inguin/o	groin	inguinal	
kary/o	nucleus	karyotype *The suffix -type means classification or picture.*	
later/o	side	lateral	
lumb/o	lower back	lumbosacral	
medi/o	middle	medial	
nucle/o	nucleus	nucleic	
pelv/i	pelvis	pelvic The pelvis includes all the bones that surround the pelvic cavity *(Figure 2-20).*	
pharyng/o	pharynx (throat)	pharyngeal *The pharynx (FAH-rinks) is the common passageway for food from the mouth and air from the nose.*	
poster/o	back, behind	posterior	
proxim/o	nearest	proximal	
sacr/o	sacrum	sacral	
sarc/o	flesh	sarcoma	
spin/o	spine, backbone	spinal	
thel/o, theli/o	nipple	epithelial cell *This cell, originally identified in the skin of the nipples, lies on body surfaces, externally (outside the body) and internally (lining cavities and organs).*	
thorac/o	chest	thoracic	
		thoracotomy	
trache/o	trachea, windpipe	tracheal	

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
umbilic/o	navel, umbilicus	umbilical	
ventr/o	belly side of the body	ventral	
vertebr/o	vertebra(e), backbone(s)	vertebral	
viscer/o	internal organs	visceral	

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
ana-	up	anabolism *In this cellular process, proteins are built **up** from simpler substances (amino acids).*	
cata-	down	catabolism *Complex nutrients are broken **down** into simpler substances and energy is released.*	
epi-	above	epinephrine *The suffix -ine means a substance. Epinephrine is a hormone secreted by the adrenal glands, located above (epi-) the kidneys (nephr/o). It is used as a treatment (as with an EpiPen®) for severe allergic reactions. It opens airways and increases heart rate in medical emergencies.*	
hypo-	below	hypochondriac region *The Greeks thought that organs (liver and spleen) in the hypochondriac region of the abdomen were the origin of imaginary illnesses—hence the term hypochondriac, a person with unusual anxiety about his or her health and with symptoms not attributable to any disease process.*	
inter-	between	intervertebral *A disc is an intervertebral structure.*	
intra-	within	intravenous *The abbreviation for intravenous is **IV.***	
meta-	change	metabolism *Literally, to cast (bol/o) a change (meta-), meaning the chemical changes (processes) that occur in a cell.*	

Suffixes

The following are some new suffixes introduced in this chapter. See the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book for additional suffixes meaning "pertaining to."

SUFFIX	MEANING
-eal	pertaining to
-iac	pertaining to
-ior	pertaining to
-ism	process, condition
-ose	pertaining to, full of
-plasm	formation
-somes	bodies
-type	picture, classification

Cervical

The term **cervical** can have two different meanings depending on where it is used. In a gynecologic report, cervical means the lower portion or neck of the uterus **(cervix).** In a spinal radiologic report about cervical vertebrae, cervical refers to the neck of the body.

Pelvis

Comparison of Female and Male

The female pelvis is wider and more massive than the male pelvis. The female pelvic opening is a larger, rounded, oval shape, whereas the male pelvic opening is deep, narrow, and funnel- or heart-shaped. Thus, the female pelvis can accommodate the fetus during pregnancy and its downward passage through the pelvic cavity in childbirth.

Epinephrine and Adrenaline

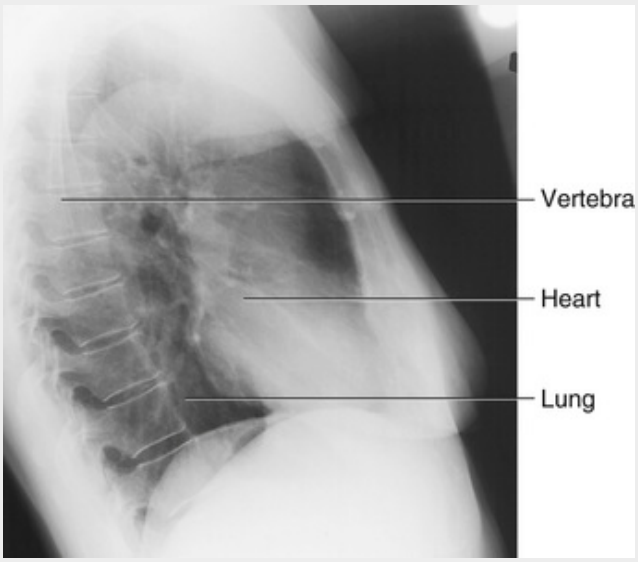
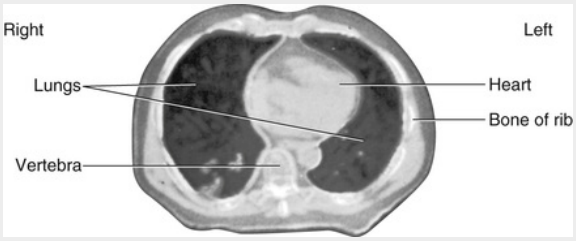
These are the SAME hormone! Two different names for the same substance secreted by the adrenal glands (above the kidneys).

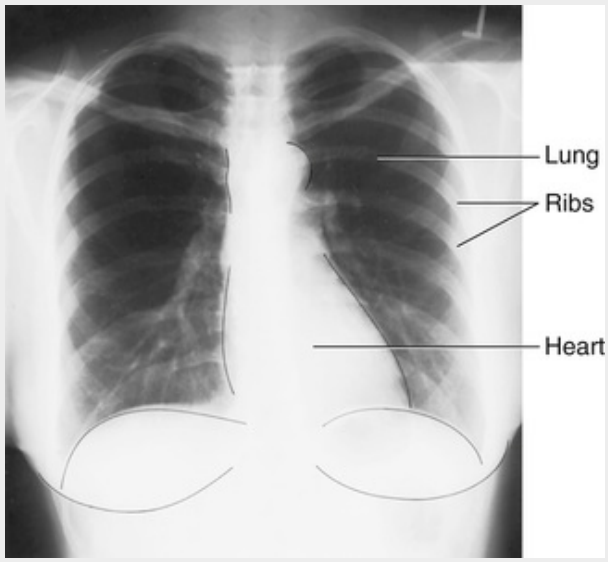
Practical Applications

Be sure to check your answers with the Answers to Practical Applications on page 64.

X-ray Views

Circle the correct answers in the following sentences related to each x-ray view of the chest.

FIGURE A  	1. This is a/an **(coronal, sagittal, axial)** view. The heart lies **(anterior, posterior, dorsal)** to the vertebrae.
FIGURE B  	2. This is a/an **(coronal, sagittal, axial)** view. It is a/an **(CT, traditional x-ray)** image.
FIGURE C	3. This is a/an **(coronal, sagittal, axial)** view. It is a/an **(lateral, transverse, anterior/posterior)** image.



Surgical Procedures

Match the surgical procedure in Column I with an indication for performing it in Column II. *Note:* You are not looking for the exact meaning of each surgical procedure, but rather why it would be performed.

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
Procedures		**Indications**
1. Craniotomy	_____	A. Emergency effort to remove foreign material from the windpipe
2. Thoracotomy	_____	B. Inspection and repair of torn cartilage in the knee
3. Discectomy	_____	C. Removal of a diseased or injured portion of the brain
4. Mediastinoscopy	_____	D. Inspection of lymph nodes* in the region between the lungs
5. Tracheotomy	_____	E. Removal of a squamous cell† carcinoma in the voice box
6. Laryngectomy	_____	F. Open heart surgery, or removal of lung tissue
7. Arthroscopy	_____	G. Inspection of abdominal organs (lapar/o means abdomen) and removal of diseased tissue
8. Laparoscopy (peritoneoscopy)	_____	H. Relief of symptoms from a bulging intervertebral disc

*Lymph nodes are collections of tissue containing white blood cells called lymphocytes.

†A squamous cell is a type of epithelial cell.

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, page 63.

A **The listed terms are parts of a cell. Match each term with its correct meaning.**

cell membrane

chromosomes

cytoplasm

DNA

endoplasmic reticulum

genes

mitochondria

nucleus

1. material of the cell located outside the nucleus and yet enclosed by the cell membrane _____ _____
2. regions of DNA within each chromosome _____
3. small sausage-shaped structures that are the principal source of energy for the cell _____ _____
4. network of canals within the cytoplasm; the site of protein synthesis _____
5. structure that surrounds and protects the cell _____
6. control center of the cell, containing chromosomes _____
7. chemical found within each chromosome _____
8. rod-shaped structures in the nucleus that contain regions called genes _____

B **Use medical terms or numbers to complete the following sentences.**

1. A picture of chromosomes in the nucleus of a cell is a/an _____.
2. The number of chromosomes in a normal male's muscle cell is _____.

3. The number of chromosomes in a female's egg cell is _____.
4. The process of building up proteins in a cell is _____.
5. Complex nutrients are broken down to similar substances and energy is released _____ _____.
6. The total of the chemical processes in a cell is _____.
7. A scientist who studies tissues is a/an _____ __.
8. The medical term for internal organs is _____ _.

C **Match the listed body parts or tissues with their correct descriptions that follow.**

adipose tissue
cartilage
epithelial tissue
larynx
pharynx
pituitary gland
pleura
thyroid gland
trachea

ureter

urethra

uterus

1. voice box
   _____
   _____
2. membrane surrounding the lungs
   _____
   _____
3. throat
   _____
   _____
4. tube from the kidney to the urinary bladder
   _____
5. collection of fat cells
   _____
   _____
6. endocrine organ located at the base of the brain
   _____
7. windpipe
   _____
   _____
8. flexible connective tissue attached to bones at joints
   _____
9. skin cells that cover the outside of the body and line internal organs _____
10. endocrine gland surrounding the windpipe in the neck _____

11. womb

_____
_____

12. tube leading from the urinary bladder to the outside of the body _____

D **Name the five cavities of the body.**

1. cavity surrounded by the skull

_____
_____

2. cavity in the chest surrounded by the ribs

_____

3. cavity below the chest containing the stomach, liver, and gallbladder _____
4. cavity surrounded by the hip bones

_____
_____

5. cavity surrounded by the bones of the back

_____

E **Select from the following to define the terms listed.**

space surrounding each lung

space between the lungs

muscle separating the abdominal and thoracic cavities

membrane surrounding the abdominal organs

area below the umbilicus (as well as below the stomach)

area above the stomach

area of the navel

areas near the groin
nervous tissue within the spinal cavity
bony tissue surrounding the spinal cavity
pad of cartilage between two adjoining vertebrae

1. hypogastric region
   _____
   _____
2. mediastinum
   _____
   _____
3. spinal cord
   _____
   _____
4. diaphragm
   _____
   _____
5. intervertebral disc
   _____
   _____
6. pleural cavity
   _____
   _____
7. spinal column
   _____
   _____
8. inguinal regions
   _____
   _____

9. peritoneum

_____
_____

10. umbilical region

_____
_____

11. epigastric region

_____
_____

F **Name the five divisions of the back.**

1. region of the neck

_____
_____

2. region of the chest

_____
_____

3. region of the waist

_____
_____

4. region of the sacrum

_____
_____

5. region of the tailbone

_____
_____

G **Give the meanings of the following abbreviations.**

1. LLQ

_____

_____

2. L5–S1

_____

_____

3. RUQ

_____

_____

4. C3–C4

_____

_____

5. RLQ

_____

_____

H **Give the opposites of the following terms.**

1. deep _____
2. proximal _____
3. supine _____
4. medial _____
5. dorsal _____
6. superior _____

I **Select from the following medical terms to complete the sentences below.**

distal

frontal (coronal)

inferior

lateral

midsagittal

proximal

superior (cephalic)

transverse (axial)

vertebra

vertebrae

1. The kidney lies to side of or _____ of the spinal cord.
2. The _____ end of the thigh bone (femur) joins with the kneecap (patella).
3. The _____ plane divides the body into an anterior and a posterior portion.
4. Each backbone is a/an _____ _____.
5. Several backbones are _____ _____.
6. The diaphragm lies _____ to the organs in the thoracic cavity.
7. The _____ plane divides the body into right and left halves.
8. The _____ end of the upper arm bone (humerus) is at the shoulder.
9. The _____ plane divides the body into upper and lower portions.
10. The pharynx is located _____ to the esophagus.

J **Give meanings for each of the following.**

1. craniotomy
   _____
   _____
2. cervical
   _____
   _____
3. chondroma
   _____
   _____
4. chondrosarcoma
   _____
   _____
5. nucleic
   _____
   _____
6. epinephrine
   _____
   _____
7. intravenous
   _____
   _____
8. pharyngeal
   _____
   _____
9. laryngitis
   _____
   _____

K **Give the medical term for the following definitions. Pay attention to spelling!**

1. space below chest containing liver, stomach, gallbladder, and intestines _____
2. flexible connective tissue attached to bones at joints _____
3. rod-shaped structures in the cell nucleus, containing regions of DNA _____
4. muscle separating the abdominal and thoracic cavities _____
5. voice box _____ _____
6. vertical plane dividing the body into right and left sides _____
7. pertaining to the neck _____ _____
8. tumor (benign) of cartilage _____ _____
9. control center of the cell; directs the activities of the cell _____
10. pertaining to the windpipe _____ _____

L **Complete each term based on the meaning provided.**

1. pertaining to internal organs: _____ al
2. tumor of flesh tissue (malignant): _____ oma
3. pertaining to the chest: _____ ic
4. picture of the chromosomes in the cell nucleus: _____ type
5. sausage-shaped cellular structures in which catabolism takes place: mito _____
6. space between the lungs: media _____
7. endocrine gland at the base of the brain: _____ ary gland
8. pertaining to skin (surface) cells: epi _____
9. pertaining to far from the beginning of a structure: _____ al
10. on the surface of the body: super _____

M **Circle the correct term to complete each sentence.**

1. Dr. Curnen said the (**inguinal, superior, superficial**) wound barely scratched the surface.
2. Because the liver and spleen are on opposite sides of the body, the liver is in the (**RUQ, LUQ, LLQ**) of the abdominopelvic cavity and the spleen is in the (**RUQ, LUQ, RLQ**).

3. When a gynecologist performs a pelvic examination, the patient lies on her back in the (**ventral, dorsal, medial**) lithotomy position (Figure 2-21).

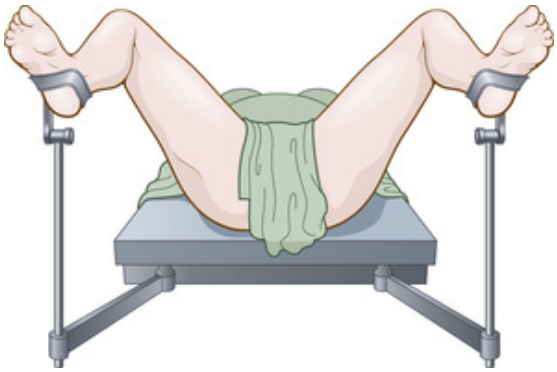


FIGURE 2-21 Dorsal lithotomy position. Lithotomy means incision to remove a stone (lith/o = stone). This supine position is used for pelvic (gynecologic) examinations and for removal of stones from the urinary tract.

4. Sally complained of pain in the area surrounding her navel. The doctor described the pain as (**periumbilical, epigastric, hypogastric**).
5. After sampling the fluid surrounding her 16-week-old fetus and reviewing the chromosomal picture, the doctor explained to Mrs. Jones that the fetus had trisomy 21. The diagnosis was made by analysis of an abnormal (**urine sample, x-ray film, karyotype**).
6. The (**spinal, sagittal, abdominal**) cavity contains digestive organs.
7. The emergency department physician suspected appendicitis when Brandon was admitted with sharp (**LLQ, RLQ, RUQ**) pain.
8. Susan had hiccups after rapidly eating spicy Indian food. Her physician explained that the hiccups were

involuntary contractions or spasms of the (**umbilicus, diaphragm, mediastinum**), resulting in uncontrolled breathing in of air.

9. Maria's coughing and sneezing were a result of an allergy to animal dander that affected her (**respiratory, cardiovascular, urinary**) system.
10. While ice skating, Natalie fell and landed on her buttocks. She had persistent (**cervical, thoracic, coccygeal**) pain for a few weeks but no broken bones on x-ray examination.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. cytoplasm
2. genes
3. mitochondria
4. endoplasmic reticulum
5. cell membrane
6. nucleus
7. DNA
8. chromosomes

B

1. karyotype
2. 46 (23 pairs)

3. 23
4. anabolism
5. catabolism
6. metabolism
7. histologist
8. viscera

C

1. larynx
2. pleura
3. pharynx
4. ureter
5. adipose tissue
6. pituitary gland
7. trachea
8. cartilage
9. epithelial tissue
10. thyroid gland
11. uterus
12. urethra

D

1. cranial

2. thoracic
3. abdominal
4. pelvic
5. spinal

E

1. area below the umbilicus
2. space between the lungs
3. nervous tissue within the spinal cavity
4. muscle separating the abdominal and thoracic cavities
5. pad of cartilage between two adjoining vertebrae
6. space surrounding each lung
7. bony tissue surrounding the spinal cavity
8. areas near the groin
9. membrane surrounding the abdominal organs
10. area of the navel
11. area above the stomach

F

1. cervical
2. thoracic
3. lumbar
4. sacral

5. coccygeal

G

1. left lower quadrant (of the abdominopelvic cavity)
2. between the fifth lumbar vertebra and the first sacral vertebra (a common place for a herniated disc)
3. right upper quadrant (of the abdominopelvic cavity)
4. between the third and fourth cervical vertebrae
5. right lower quadrant (of the abdominopelvic cavity)

H

1. superficial
2. distal
3. prone
4. lateral
5. ventral (anterior)
6. inferior

I

1. lateral
2. distal
3. frontal (coronal)
4. vertebra
5. vertebrae

6. inferior
7. midsagittal
8. proximal
9. transverse (axial)
10. superior (cephalic)

J

1. craniotomy—incision of the skull
2. cervical—pertaining to the neck of the body or the cervix of the uterus
3. chondroma—tumor of cartilage (benign or noncancerous tumor)
4. chondrosarcoma—flesh tumor of cartilage (cancerous, malignant tumor)
5. nucleic—pertaining to the nucleus
6. epinephrine—substance (hormone) secreted by the adrenal glands (epi- = above; nephr- = kidney)
7. intravenous—pertaining to within a vein
8. pharyngeal—pertaining to the pharynx (throat)
9. laryngitis—inflammation of the larynx (voice box)

K

1. abdomen or abdominal cavity
2. cartilage

3. chromosomes
4. diaphragm
5. larynx
6. sagittal—note spelling with two t's
7. cervical
8. chondroma
9. nucleus
10. tracheal

L

1. visceral
2. sarcoma
3. thoracic
4. karyotype
5. mitochondria—*memory tip*: **cat**abolism and **m**itochondria, **cat** and **m**ouse!
6. mediastinum
7. pituitary gland
8. epithelial
9. distal
10. superficial

M

1. superficial
2. RUQ; LUQ
3. dorsal; often called the dorsolithotomy position
4. periumbilical
5. karyotype
6. abdominal
7. RLQ
8. diaphragm
9. respiratory
10. coccygeal

Answers to Practical Applications

X-ray Views

1. sagittal, anterior
2. axial, CT
3. coronal, anterior/posterior

Surgical Procedures

1. **C** A trephine is a type of circular saw used for craniotomy.
2. **F**
3. **H** Endoscopic discectomy is performed through a small incision on the back, lateral to the spine. All or a portion of the disc is removed.

4. **D** A small incision is made above the breastbone and an endoscope is inserted to inspect the lymph nodes around the trachea.
5. **A**
6. **E**
7. **B**
8. **G** A small incision is made near the navel, and a laparoscope is inserted. Laparoscopy, or minimally invasive surgery, is used to examine organs and perform many surgical operations, such as removal of the gallbladder or appendix or tying off of the fallopian tubes. Laparoscopy is also called peritoneoscopy.

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The CAPITAL letters indicate the accented syllable.

The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
abdomen	AB-do-men
abdominal cavity	ab-DOM-ih-nal KAV-ih-te
adipose	AH-dih-pohs
anabolism	ah-NAB-o-liz-im
anterior	an-TE-re-or
cartilage	KAR-tih-lij
catabolism	kah-TAB-o-liz-im
cell membrane	sel MEM-brayn
cephalic	seh-FAL-ik
cervical	SER-vih-kul
chondroma	kon-DRO-mah
chondrosarcoma	kon-dro-sar-KO-mah
chromosome	KRO-mo-sohm
coccygeal	kok-sih-JE-al
coccyx	KOK-siks
cranial cavity	KRA-ne-al KAV-ih-te
craniotomy	kra-ne-OT-o-me
cytoplasm	SI-to-plaz-im
deep	deep
diaphragm	DI-ah-fram
disc	disk
distal	DIS-tal
dorsal	DOR-sal
endoplasmic reticulum	en-do-PLAZ-mik reh-TIK-u-lum
epigastric region	ep-ih-GAS-trik RE-jen
epinephrine	ep-ih-NEF-rin
epithelial cells	ep-ih-THE-le-al sels
frontal plane	FRUN-tal playn
genes	jeenz
histology	his-TOL-o-je
hypochondriac regions	hi-po-KON-dre-ak RE-jens
hypogastric region	hi-po-GAS-trik RE-jen
iliac	IL-e-ak
inferior	in-FE-re-or
inguinal regions	IN-gwih-nal RE-jens
intervertebral	in-ter-ver-TE-bral
intravenous	in-trah-VE-nus

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
karyotype	KAIR-e-o-type
laryngitis	lah-rin-JI-tis
larynx	LAH-rinks
lateral	LAT-er-al
lumbar regions	LUM-bar RE-jens
lumbar spine	LUM-bar spine
lumbosacral	lum-bo-SA-kral
medial	ME-de-al
mediastinum	me-de-ah-STI-num
metabolism	meh-TAB-o-lism
mitochondria	mi-to-KON-dre-ah
nucleic	nu-CLA-ik
nucleus	NU-cle-us
pelvic cavity	PEL-vik KAV-ih-te
peritoneum	per-eh-to-NE-um
pharyngeal	fah-ren-JE-al
pharynx	FAH-rinks
pituitary gland	pih-TU-ih-ter-e gland
pleura	PLUR-ah
pleural cavity	PLUR-al KAV-ih-te
posterior	pos-TE-re-or
prone	prohn
proximal	PROKS-ih-mal
sacral	SA-kral
sacrum	SA-krum
sagittal plane	SAJ-ih-tal playn
sarcoma	sar-KO-mah
spinal cavity	SPI-nal KAV-ih-te
spinal column	SPI-nal KOL-um
spinal cord	SPI-nal kord
superficial	su-per-FIH-shul
superior	su-PE-re-or
supine	su-PINE
thoracic cavity	thor-AH-sik KAV-ih-te
thoracotomy	thor-ah-KOT-o-me
thyroid gland	THI-royd gland
trachea	TRA-ke-ah

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
tracheal	TRA-ke-al
transverse plane	tranz-VERS playn
umbilical region	um-BIL-ih-kal RE-jen
ureter	U-reh-ter
urethra	u-RE-thrah
uterus	U-ter-us
ventral	VEN-tral
vertebra	VER-teh-brah
vertebrae	VER-teh-bray
vertebral	ver-TE-bral
viscera	VIS-er-ah
visceral	VIS-er-al

Review Sheet

Write the meaning of each combining form, prefix, or suffix in the space provided, and test yourself. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English),*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
abdomin/o	_____
adip/o	_____
anter/o	_____
cervic/o	_____
chondr/o	_____
chrom/o	_____
coccyg/o	_____
crani/o	_____
cyt/o	_____
dist/o	_____
dors/o	_____
hist/o	_____
ili/o	_____
inguin/o	_____
kary/o	_____
laryng/o	_____
later/o	_____
lumb/o	_____
medi/o	_____
nucle/o	_____
pelv/i	_____
pharyng/o	_____
poster/o	_____
proxim/o	_____
sacr/o	_____
sarc/o	_____
spin/o	_____
thel/o, theli/o	_____
thorac/o	_____
trache/o	_____
umbilic/o	_____
ventr/o	_____
vertebr/o	_____
viscer/o	_____

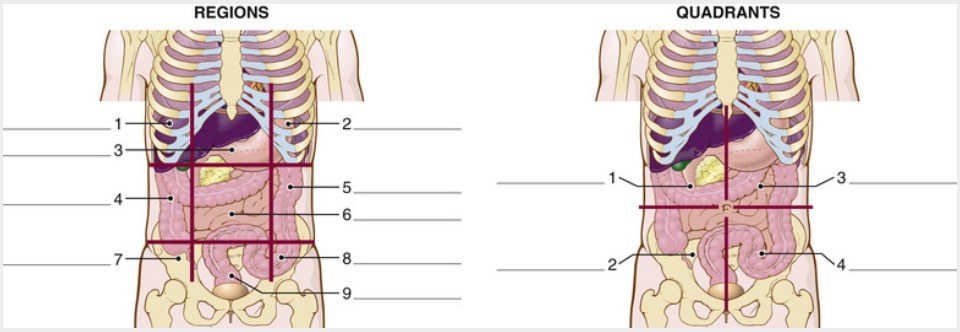
Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING
ana-	_____
cata-	_____
epi-	_____
hypo-	_____
inter-	_____
meta-	_____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-al	_____
-eal	_____
-ectomy	_____
-iac	_____
-ior	_____
-ism	_____
-oma	_____
-ose	_____
-plasm	_____
-somes	_____
-tomy	_____
-type	_____

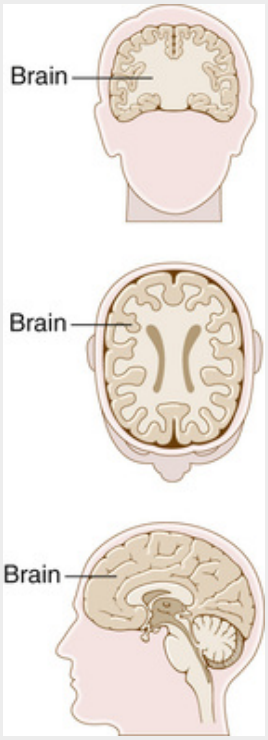
Label the regions and quadrants (use abbreviations) of the abdominopelvic cavity. Check your answers in the chapter, pages 46 and 47.



Name the divisions of the spinal column. Check your answers on page 48.

neck region (C1 to C7)
_____
_____
chest region (T1 to T12)
_____
_____
lower back (loin) region (L1 to L5)
_____
region of the sacrum (S1 to S5)
_____
_
tailbone region
_____
_____

Name the planes of the head as pictured below. Check your answers on page 52.



vertical plane that divides the body into anterior and posterior portions

_____

_____

horizontal plane that divides the body into upper and lower portions

_____

_____

vertical plane that divides the body into right and left portions

_____

_____

Name the positional and directional terms. Check your answers on pages 50-51.

front of the body

_____

_____

back of the body

_____

_____

away from the surface of the body

_____

on the surface of the body

_____

_____

far from the point of attachment to the trunk or far from the beginning of a structure

_____

_____

near the point of attachment to the trunk or near the beginning of a structure

_____

_____

below another structure

_____

_____

above another structure

_____

_____

pertaining to the side

_____

_____

pertaining to the middle

_____

_____

lying on the belly

_____

_____

lying on the back

_____

_____

Give the meanings of the following terms that pertain to the cell. Check your answers with Study Section 1, page 35.

chromosomes

_____

_____

mitochondria

_____

nucleus

_____

DNA

_____

endoplasmic reticulum

_____

cell membrane

_____

catabolism

_____

anabolism

_____

metabolism

_____

Give the term that suits the meaning provided. Check your answers with Study Section 3, page 45.

membrane surrounding the lungs

_____

membrane surrounding the abdominal viscera

_____

muscular wall separating the thoracic and abdominal cavities

_____

space between the lungs, containing the heart, windpipe, aorta

_____

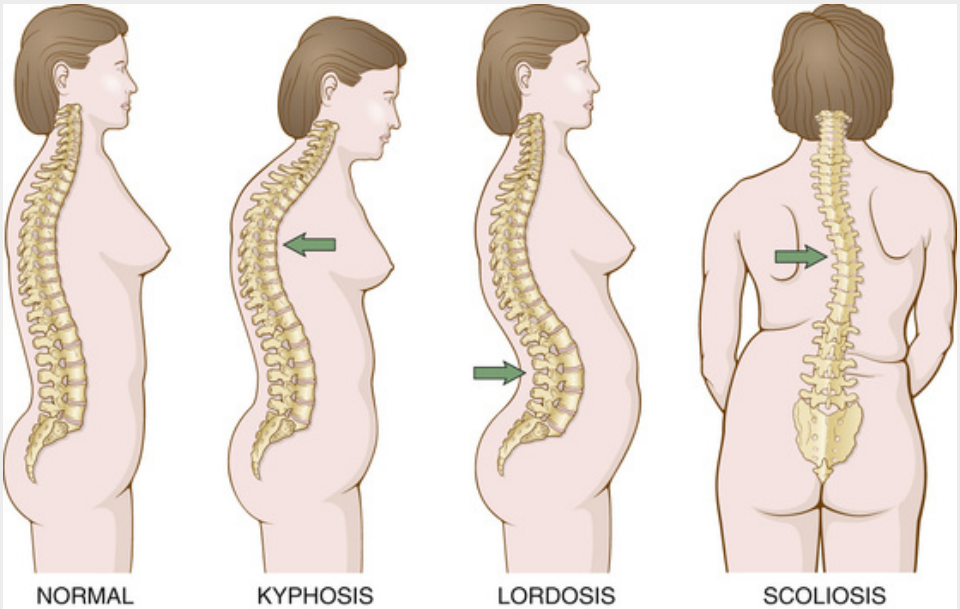
backbone

_____

pad of cartilage between each backbone and the next

_____

FYI: Here are common abnormalities of the spinal column.



CHAPTER 3

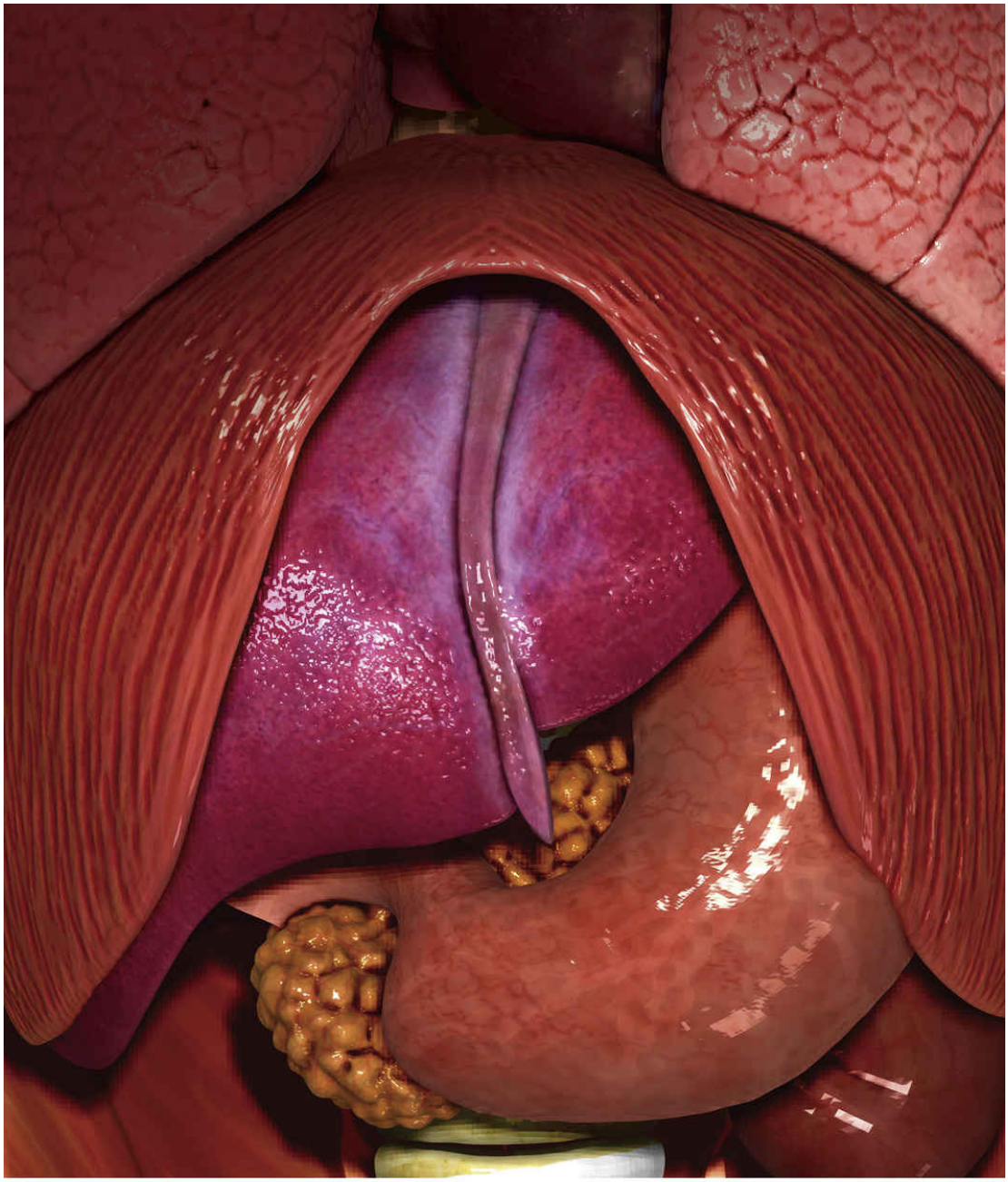
Suffixes

CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 72
Combining Forms 72
Suffixes and Terminology 74
A Closer Look 82
Practical Applications 88
Exercises 88
Answers to Exercises 96
Pronunciation of Terms 98
Review Sheet 100

CHAPTER GOALS

- Define new suffixes and review those presented in previous chapters.
- Gain practice in word analysis by using these suffixes with combining forms to build and understand terms.
- Identify the functions of the different types of blood cells in the body.



Introduction

In this chapter you will encounter many of the most common suffixes in the medical language. As you work through the entire book, these suffixes will appear often. An additional group of suffixes is presented in Chapter 6.

Additional combining forms are presented in this chapter to use in making words with suffixes. Your mastery of this material and your analysis of the words in the section on Suffixes and Terminology will increase your medical language vocabulary.

Combining Forms

Use the following list of combining forms as you write the meanings of terms starting on page 74.

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
abdomin/o	abdomen
acr/o	extremities, top, extreme point
acu/o	sharp, severe, sudden
aden/o	gland
adip/o	fat
amni/o	amnion (sac surrounding the embryo in the uterus)
angi/o	vessel
arteri/o	artery
arthr/o	joint
axill/o	armpit
bi/o	life
blephar/o	eyelid
bronch/o	bronchial tubes (two tubes, one right and one left, that branch from the trachea to enter the lungs)
carcin/o	cancer
cardi/o	heart
chem/o	drug, chemical
chondr/o	cartilage
chron/o	time
col/o	colon (large intestine)
cyst/o	urinary bladder
encephal/o	brain
erythr/o	red
hem/o	blood
hepat/o	liver
hydr/o	water, fluid
inguin/o	groin
isch/o	to hold back
lapar/o	abdomen, abdominal wall
laryng/o	larynx
leuk/o	white
lymph/o	lymph *Clear fluid that bathes tissue spaces and is contained in lymph vessels and nodes throughout the body.*
mamm/o	breast
mast/o	breast
morph/o	shape, form
muc/o	mucus

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
my/o	muscle
myel/o	spinal cord; bone marrow *Context of usage indicates the meaning intended.*
necr/o	death (of cells or whole body)
nephr/o	kidney
neur/o	nerve
neutr/o	neutrophil (a white blood cell)
nucle/o	nucleus
ophthalm/o	eye
opi/o	opium
oste/o	bone
ot/o	ear
path/o	disease
peritone/o	peritoneum
phag/o	to eat, swallow
phleb/o	vein
plas/o	formation, development
pleur/o	pleura (membrane surrounding lungs and adjacent to chest wall)
pneumon/o	lungs
pulmon/o	lungs
radi/o	x-rays
rect/o	rectum
ren/o	kidney
rhin/o	nose
sarc/o	flesh
splen/o	spleen
staphyl/o	clusters
strept/o	twisted chains
thorac/o	chest
thromb/o	clot
tonsill/o	tonsils
trache/o	trachea (windpipe)
ven/o	vein

Encephal/o, Cerebr/o, Cephal/o, Crani/o, and Psych/o

Don't confuse the meanings of these combining forms!

Encephal/o = brain
Cerebr/o = cerebrum (largest part of the brain)
Cephal/o = head
Crani/o = skull
Psych/o = mind

Larynx and Other Parts of the Body Ending in x

coccy**x** = tailbone
laryn**x** = voice box
pharyn**x** = throat
phalan**x** = finger or toe

To make combining forms for parts of the body that end in x, **substitute g for x:**

coccy**g**/o
laryn**g**/o
pharyn**g**/o
phalan**g**/o

Suffixes and Terminology

Noun Suffixes

After the meaning of each suffix, terminology illustrates the use of that suffix. Recall the basic rule for building a medical term: Use a combining vowel, such as o, to connect the root to the suffix. However, drop the combining vowel if the suffix begins with a vowel—for example, **gastr/itis,** *not* "gastr/o/itis."

Beginning on page 82, more detail is given about specific terms. This section, called **A Closer Look,** will give you a fuller understanding of the terminology.

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-algia	pain	arthralgia otalgia neuralgia myalgia ***Fibromyalgia*** *is a common chronic disorder that involves widespread pain in muscles and fibrous tissues around joints.*	
-cele	hernia (see ***A Closer Look: Hernia,*** page 82)	rectocele cystocele	
-centesis	puncture to remove fluid	thoracentesis *Notice that this term is shortened from* thoracocentesis. amniocentesis *The amnion is the sac (membrane) surrounding the embryo (fetus after the 8th week) in the uterus. Fluid accumulates within the amnion and may be withdrawn for analysis between the 12th and 18th weeks of pregnancy. See Figure 3-1.* abdominocentesis *This procedure is more commonly known as abdominal* ***paracentesis*** *(para- means beside or near). A tube is placed through an incision in the abdomen and fluid is removed from the peritoneal cavity (beside the abdominal organs).*	

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-coccus (*singular*) **-cocci** (*plural*)	berry-shaped bacterium (*plural*: bacteria)	streptococcus staphylococci (stah-fih-lo-KOK-si) *Microbiologists often refer to bacteria in clusters as "staph."* *See* ***A Closer Look: Streptococci, Staphylococci, and Other Bacteria,*** *page 83.*	
-cyte	cell	erythrocyte *See* ***A Closer Look: Blood Cells,*** *page 84.* leukocyte thrombocyte	
-dynia	pain	pleurodynia *Pain in the chest wall muscles that is aggravated by breathing.*	
-ectomy	excision, removal, resection	laryngectomy mastectomy	
-emia	blood condition	anemia ischemia *Literally, to hold back (isch/o) blood (-emia) from a part of the body or tissue. Because of a decrease in blood supply (blood clot in a vessel or narrowing and closing off of a vessel), tissue becomes* ***ischemic*** *and can even die if it is deprived of oxygen long enough.* ***HINT:*** *You may be familiar with a* ***TIA*** *(****transient ischemic attack****), which is a "****mini-stroke****" that occurs when blood is held back from tissue in the brain.*	

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-genesis	condition of producing, forming	carcinogenesis pathogenesis angiogenesis	
-gram	record	electroencephalogram mammogram	
-graph	instrument for recording	electroencephalograph	
-graphy	process of recording	electroencephalography angiography	
-itis	inflammation	bronchitis myelitis *Myel/o means spinal cord in this term.* tonsillitis *Tonsils (notice the spelling with one letter, whereas the combining form has a double letter) are lymphatic tissue in the back of the throat. See Figure 3-2.* thrombophlebitis *Also called phlebitis.*	
-logy	study of	ophthalmology morphology	
-lysis	breakdown, destruction, separation	hemolysis *Normal breakdown of red blood cells. Excessive destruction of red blood cells can lead to a type of anemia called **hemolytic anemia**.*	

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-malacia	softening	osteomalacia _____ chondromalacia _____	
-megaly	enlargement	acromegaly _____ *See **A Closer Look: Acromegaly,** page 86.* splenomegaly _____	
-oma	tumor, mass, collection of fluid	myoma _____ *A benign tumor.* myosarcoma _____ *A malignant tumor. Muscle is a type of flesh (sarc/o) tissue.* multiple myeloma _____ *Myel/o means bone marrow in this term. This malignant tumor occurs in bone marrow tissue throughout the body.* hematoma _____	
-opsy	to view	biopsy _____ necropsy _____ *This term is used in veterinary medicine. An autopsy is a necropsy performed on humans.*	
-osis	condition, usually abnormal	necrosis _____ hydronephrosis _____ leukocytosis _____	
-pathy	disease condition	cardiomyopathy _____ *Primary disease of the heart muscle in the absence of a known underlying etiology (cause).*	

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-penia	deficiency	erythropenia _____ neutropenia _____ *In this term, neutr/o indicates neutrophil (a type of white blood cell).* thrombocytopenia _____	
-phobia	fear	acrophobia _____ *Fear of heights. Acr/o means extremities, in the sense of extreme or far points.* ***HINT:*** *Think of* ***acrobats*** *who perform high-wire acts.* agoraphobia _____ *Agora means marketplace. This is an anxiety disorder marked by fear of being outside of home alone, being in open or enclosed places, or using public transportation.*	
-plasia	development, formation, growth	achondroplasia _____ *This is an inherited disorder or can be the result of a mutation (change) in a specific gene. Bones of the arms and legs do not grow to normal size because of a defect in cartilage and bone formation. Dwarfism results, marked by short limbs but normal-sized head and trunk and normal intelligence. See Figure 3-3.*	
-plasty	surgical repair	angioplasty _____ *An interventional cardiologist opens a narrowed blood vessel (artery) using a balloon that is inflated after insertion into the vessel. Stents, or slotted tubes, are then put in place to keep the artery open.*	
-ptosis	drooping, falling, prolapse	blepharoptosis _____ *Physicians use* **ptosis** (TO-sis) *alone to indicate drooping of the upper eyelids or the breasts. See Figure 3-4.*	

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
-rrhea	flow, discharge	rhinorrhea _____
-sclerosis	hardening	arteriosclerosis _____ *In **atherosclerosis** (a form of arteriosclerosis), deposits of fat (ather/o means fatty material) collect in an artery.*
-scope	instrument for visual examination	laparoscope _____
-scopy	process of visual examination (with an endoscope)	laparoscopy _____ *See Figure 3-5B below and **A Closer Look: Laparoscopy,** page 86.*
-stasis	controlling, stopping	metastasis _____ *Meta- means beyond. A metastasis is the spread of a malignant tumor beyond its original site to a secondary organ or location.* hemostasis _____ *Blood flow is stopped naturally by clotting or artificially by compression or suturing of a wound. A **hemostat** is a surgical clamp used in operating rooms to stop blood flow.*
-stomy	opening to form a mouth (stoma)	colostomy _____ tracheostomy _____
-therapy	treatment	hydrotherapy _____ chemotherapy _____ radiotherapy _____ *High-energy radiation is used to treat, not diagnose, illness.*

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-tomy	incision, cutting into	laparotomy _____ *Also referred to as a "lap," this procedure is creation of a large incision into the peritoneal cavity, often performed on an exploratory basis. Don't confuse laparotomy with laparoscopy. See Figure 3-5.* phlebotomy _____ tracheotomy _____ *See **A Closer Look: Tracheotomy,** page 87.*	
-trophy	development, nourishment	hypertrophy _____ (hy-PER-tro-fe) *Cells increase in size, not number. Muscles of weight lifters often hypertrophy.* atrophy _____ *Cells decrease in size. Muscles atrophy when immobilized in a cast and not in use.*	

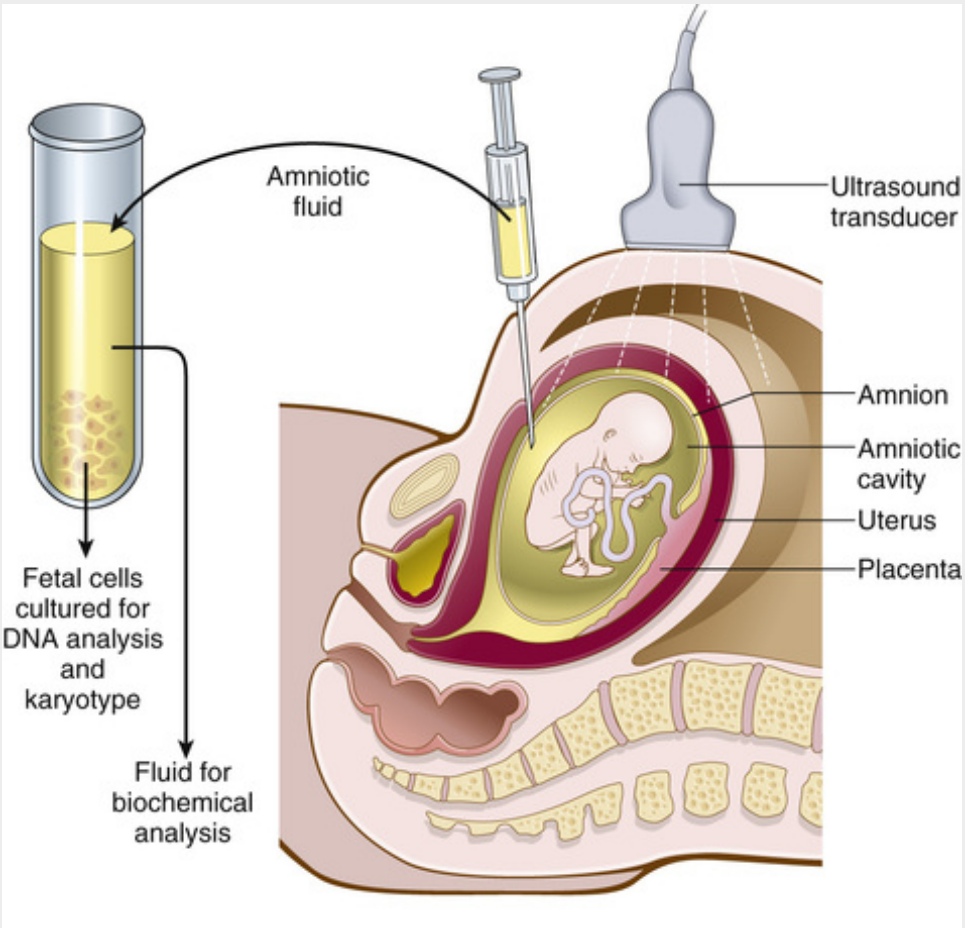


FIGURE 3-1 **Amniocentesis.** Under ultrasound guidance (imaging based on high-frequency sound waves), the physician inserts a needle through the uterine wall and amnion, into the amniotic cavity. Amniotic fluid, containing fetal cells, is withdrawn and grown (cultured) for microscopic analysis. A karyotype is made to study chromosomes. Fluid is examined for chemicals that indicate fetal defects.

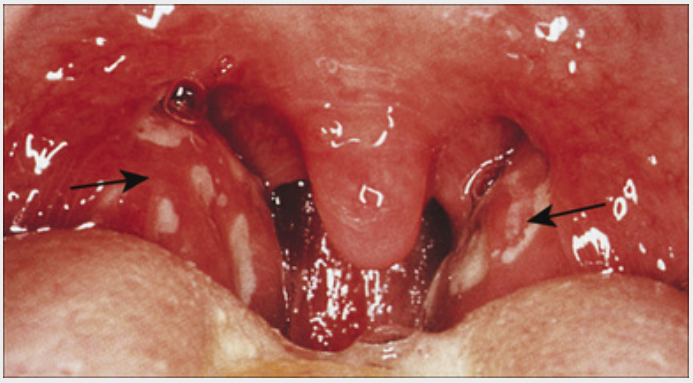


FIGURE 3-2 **Tonsillitis.** This shows streptococcal tonsillitis with intense erythema (redness) of the tonsils (see arrows) and a creamy-yellow exudate (pus containing leukocytes and bacteria). Normally, tonsils contain lymphocytes that fight bacteria. When they become infected and inflamed, **tonsillectomy** may be necessary.

FIGURE 3-3 **Achondroplasia.** A boy with achondroplasia. His abnormalities include short stature with normal length of the trunk, short limbs and fingers, bowed legs, prominent forehead, and depressed nasal bridge. (Courtesy A.E. Chudley, MD, Section of Genetics and Metabolism, Department of Pediatrics and Child Health, Children's Hospital, Winnipeg, Manitoba, Canada.)

FIGURE 3-4 Ptosis of the upper eyelid (blepharoptosis). This condition may be congenital (appear at birth), can occur with aging, or may be associated with stroke (cerebrovascular accident), cranial nerve damage, and other neurologic disorders. The eyelid droops because of muscle weakness.

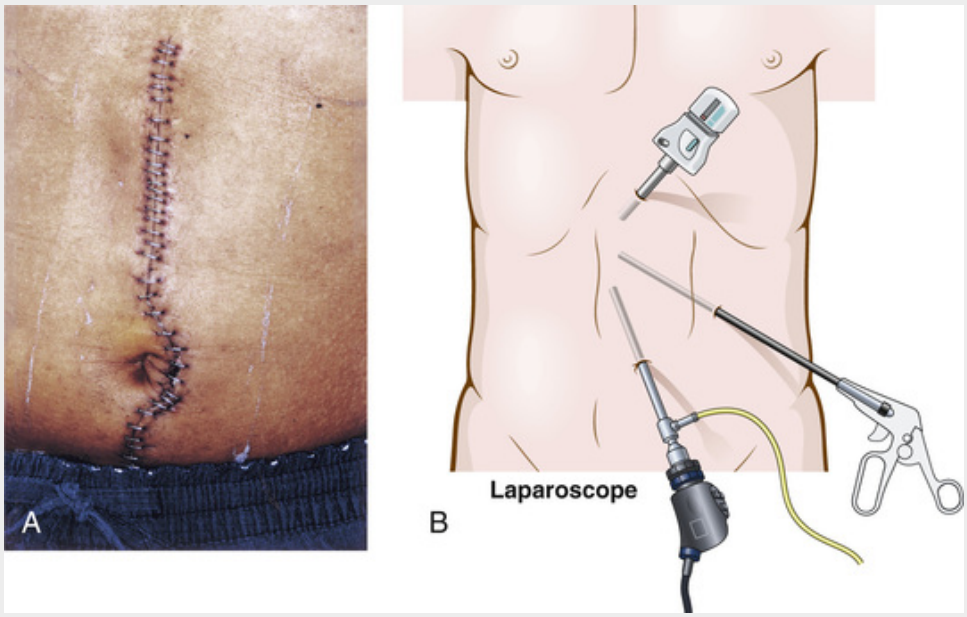


FIGURE 3-5 A. Laparotomy. This large incision was closed with surgical staples. **B. Laparoscopy.** The abdomen is examined making small incisions and using a **laparoscope.** This procedure is often used to examine and remove organs such as the appendix and gallbladder.

The following are shorter noun suffixes that usually are attached to roots in words.

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-er	one who	radiographer _____ *A technologist who assists in the making of diagnostic x-ray pictures.*	
-ia	condition	leukemia _____ *This is a group of cancers that begins in bone marrow and results in high numbers of abnormal, immature white blood cells.* pneumonia _____	
-ist	specialist	nephrologist _____	
-oid	resembling, derived from	opioid _____ adenoids _____ *See* ***A Closer Look: Adenoids,*** *page 87.*	
-ole	little, small	arteriole _____ *See Figure 3-6.*	
-ule	little, small	venule _____ *See Figure 3-6.*	
-um, -ium	structure, tissue	pericardium _____ *This membrane surrounds the heart.*	
-us	structure, substance	mucus _____ esophagus _____ *Eso- means within or inward.*	
-y	condition, process	nephropathy _____ (neh-FROP-ah-the)	

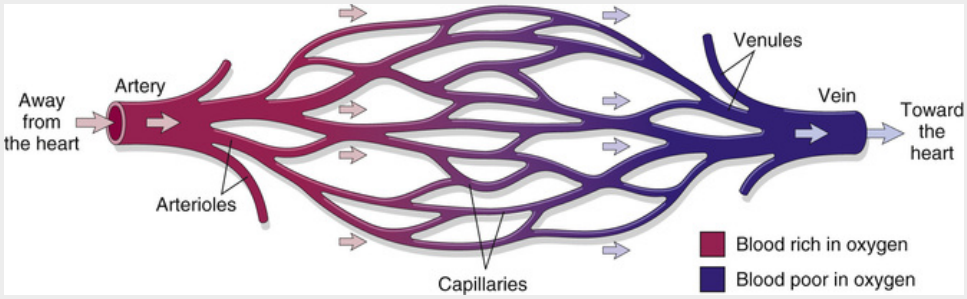


FIGURE 3-6 Relationship of blood vessels. An **artery** carries blood rich in oxygen from the heart to the organs of the body. In the organs, the artery narrows to form **arterioles** (small arteries) that branch into capillaries (the smallest blood vessels). Through the thin walls of capillaries, oxygen leaves the blood and enters cells. Thus, the capillaries branching into **venules** (small veins) carry blood low in oxygen. Venules lead to a vein that brings oxygen-poor blood back to the heart.

Adjective Suffixes

No simple rule will explain which suffix meaning "pertaining to" is used with a specific combining form. Concentrate on identifying the suffix in each term; then write the meaning of the term. For a list of suffixes meaning "pertaining to," see the **Glossary of Word Parts** beginning on page 967.

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
-ac, -iac	pertaining to	cardiac _____
-al	pertaining to	peritoneal _____ inguinal _____ myocardial _____ *A **myocardial infarction** (MI) is a heart attack. An infarction is an area of dead tissue (necrosis) resulting from **ischemia** (lack of blood supply to that tissue).*pleural _____
-ar	pertaining to	tonsillar _____
-ary	pertaining to	pulmonary _____ axillary _____ *Axillary lymph nodes are found in the armpit and are important in breast cancer.*
-eal	pertaining to	laryngeal _____
-genic	pertaining to producing, produced by or in	carcinogenic _____ osteogenic _____ *An osteogenic sarcoma is a malignant tumor produced in bone.*
-ic, -ical	pertaining to	chronic _____ **Acute** *is the opposite of chronic. It describes a disease that is of rapid onset and has severe symptoms and brief duration.* pathologic _____
-ose	pertaining to, full of	adipose _____
-ous	pertaining to	mucous membrane _____ **Mucous** *(an adjective)* ***membranes*** *produce the sticky secretion called* ***mucus*** *(a noun).*
-tic	pertaining to	necrotic _____

Formation of Plurals

Words ending in **-us** commonly form their plural by dropping **-us** and adding **-i**. Other examples of **-us** plural formation follow:

nucle**us** → nucle**i**
bronch**us** → bronch**i**
thromb**us** → thromb**i**

See Appendix I at the end of the book for additional information about plural formation.

Anemia

While anemia literally means "no blood," it is actually a condition marked by **reduction** in the number of erythrocytes or in the amount of hemoglobin in blood. Examples of types of anemias are:

- **iron deficiency anemia** (iron is needed to make hemoglobin)
- **sickle cell anemia** (erythrocytes assume an abnormal sickle shape and clog blood vessels)
- **aplastic anemia** (erythrocytes, leukocytes, and thrombocytes are not formed in bone marrow)

Splenomegaly

The spleen is an organ in left upper quadrant (LUQ) of the abdomen (below the diaphragm and to the side of the stomach). Composed of lymph tissue and blood vessels, it disposes of dying red blood cells and contains white blood cells to fight disease. **Splenomegaly** occurs with development of high blood pressure in hepatic veins and hemolytic blood diseases (anemias involving excessive destruction or lysis of red blood cells). If the spleen is removed (splenectomy), other organs carry out its functions.

Common Surgical Repair Procedures

Popular procedures include:

abdominoplasty—abdomen
mammoplasty—breast
blepharoplasty—eyelid

rhinoplasty—nose

Opioid

An opioid is a drug derived from the opium poppy plant. Opioids, also known as narcotics (narc/o means stupor or sleep), include heroin, fentanyl, oxycodone (OxyContin), hydrocodone (Vicodin), codeine, and morphine. These drugs act on brain receptors to alleviate pain. Misuse of opioids increases the risk of addiction, overdose, and death. A medication called buprenorphine treats opioid addiction. While reducing acute and chronic pain, it minimizes withdrawal symptoms. Narcan (naloxone) is a medication to counter the effects of life-threatening opioid overdose.

Axillary Lymph Nodes and Breast Cancer

Breast cancer cells often spread to axillary lymph nodes. When this occurs, the tumor found in the axillary lymph nodes is a breast cancer metastasis. The first lymph node to which cancer is most likely to spread is called the **sentinel axillary lymph node**. It is removed during mastectomy or lumpectomy and biopsied to determine if the cancer has spread beyond the breast (metastasized).

A Closer Look

Hernia

A **hernia** is protrusion of an organ or the muscular wall of an organ through the cavity that normally contains it. A **hiatal hernia** occurs when the stomach protrudes upward into the mediastinum through the esophageal opening in the diaphragm (Figure 3-7). An **inguinal hernia** occurs when part of the intestine protrudes downward into the groin region and commonly into the scrotal sac in the male. A **cystocele** occurs when part of the urinary bladder herniates through the vaginal wall as a result of weakness of the pelvic muscles (Figure 3-8). A **rectocele** is the protrusion of a portion of the rectum toward the vagina (Figure 3-8). An **omphalocele** (omphal/o = umbilicus, navel) is a herniation of the intestines through a weakness in the abdominal wall around the navel occurring in infants at birth. See Figure 3-9.

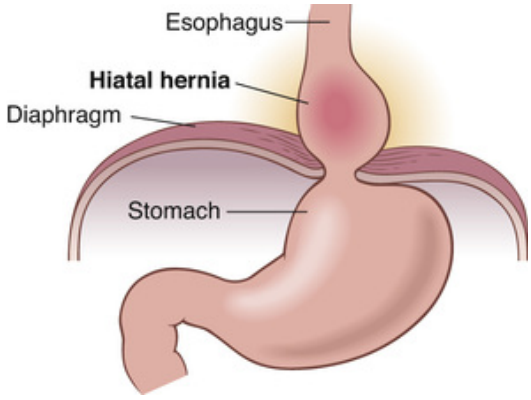


FIGURE 3-7 Hiatal hernia. Consequences of a hiatal hernia include reflux of gastric contents and acid into the esophagus, producing esophagitis. This inflammation causes chest pain commonly mistaken for a heart attack and known as “heartburn.”

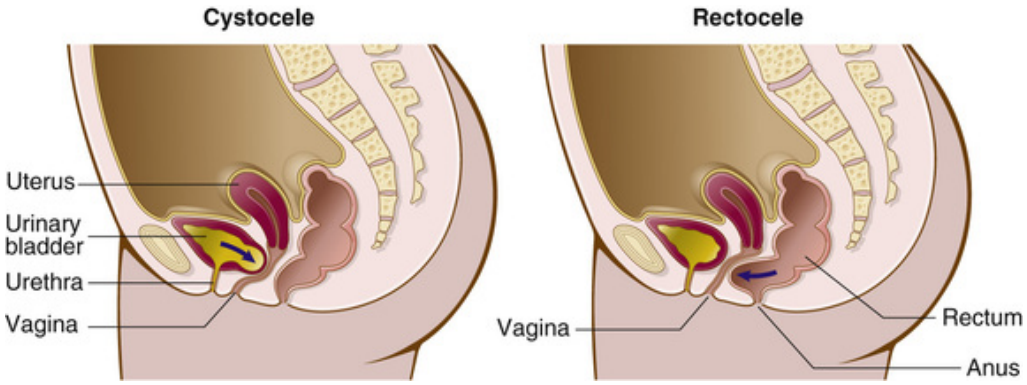


FIGURE 3-8 Hernias: cystocele and rectocele. *Arrows* point to the areas of herniation. In a cystocele, a portion of the urinary bladder herniates posteriorly toward the vagina. In a rectocele, a portion of the rectum herniates anteriorly toward the vagina.

FIGURE 3-9 Omphalocele. This baby was born with a large omphalocele containing intra-abdominal viscera. His parents were advised to wait and have surgery performed when his abdominal muscles had grown large enough to close over the hernia. Surgery was performed at 7.5 months to permanently repair the hernia.

Streptococci, Staphylococci, and Other Bacteria

Streptococcus, a berry-shaped bacterium, grows in twisted chains. One group of **streptococci** causes such conditions as "strep throat," tonsillitis, rheumatic fever, and certain kidney ailments, whereas another group causes infections in teeth, within the sinuses (cavities) of the nose and face, and in the valves of the heart.

Staphylococci, other berry-shaped bacteria, grow in small clusters like grapes. Staphylococcal lesions may be external (skin abscesses, boils, styes) or internal (abscesses in bone and kidney). An **abscess** is a collection of pus, white blood cells, and protein that is present at the site of infection. **MRSA** (methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*) is a serious staphylococcal condition that is difficult to treat with antibiotics. It can become an **antibiotic resistant infection** when the MRSA bacteria develop the ability to resist or defeat the drugs designed to kill them.

Examples of **diplococci** (berry-shaped bacteria organized in pairs; dipl/o = two) are **pneumococci** (pneum/o = lungs) and **gonococci** (gon/o = seed). Pneumococci cause bacterial pneumonia, and gonococci invade the reproductive organs, causing gonorrhea (a sexually transmitted infection). Figure 3-10 illustrates the different growth patterns of streptococci, staphylococci, and diplococci.

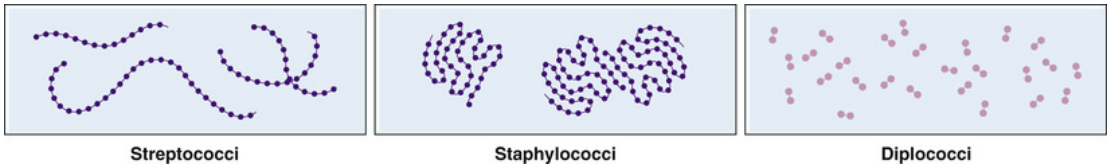


FIGURE 3-10 Types of coccal bacteria. Notice the berry or rounded shape of each bacterium. Streptococci and staphylococci are **gram-positive bacteria**, meaning that they retain the light purple color of the stain used in Gram's method (named for Hans C.J. Gram, Danish physician, 1853-1938.) **Gram-negative bacteria (such as diplococci) have the pink color of the counterstain (safranin) used in Gram's method**.

Another group of bacteria are not in a rounded shape, but in the shape of rods. An example is *clostridium difficile* bacteria. **C. difficile** infection, which causes inflammation of the colon and severe diarrheal disease, is common in patients who take antibiotics for long periods of time. This is because C. difficile bacteria can become resistant to those antibiotics. In order to restore normal bacteria in the digestive tract, a **fecal transplant** (bacteriotherapy) may be necessary. This is the transfer of stool containing normal bacteria from a healthy donor into the colon of the patient with chronic C. difficile infection.

Blood Cells

Refer to Figure 3-11 as you read the following to note the differences among the three different types of cells in the blood.

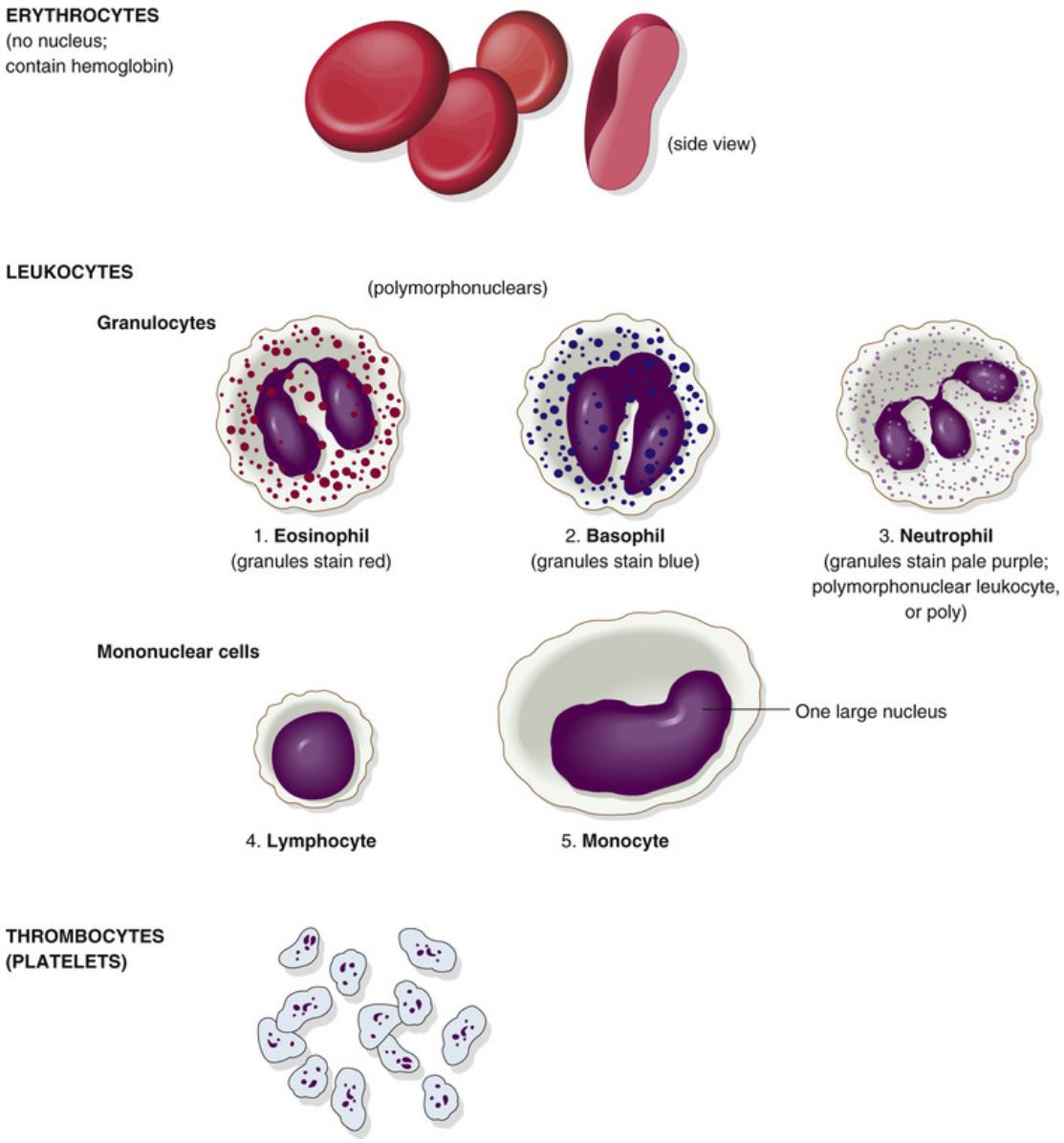


FIGURE 3-11 Types of blood cells. **HINT:** Here's an easy way to remember the names of the five leukocytes:

Never (neutrophil)
Let (lymphocyte)
Monkeys (monocyte)
Eat (eosinophil)
Bananas (basophil)

ERYTHROCYTES, or **red blood cells**, are the first type. These cells are made in the bone marrow (soft tissue in the center of certain bones). They carry oxygen from the lungs through the blood to all body cells. Body cells use oxygen to burn food and release energy (catabolism). **Hemoglobin** (globin

= protein), an important protein in erythrocytes, carries the oxygen through the bloodstream.

LEUKOCYTES, or **white blood cells**, are the second type. There are five different kinds of leukocytes: three granulocytes, or polymorphonuclear cells, and two mononuclear cells.

- **Granulocytes** contain dark-staining granules in their cytoplasm and have a multilobed nucleus. They are formed in the bone marrow. There are three types:
  1. **Eosinophils** (granules stain red [eosin/o = rosy] with acidic stain) are increased in number in allergic conditions such as asthma. About 3% of leukocytes are eosinophils.
  2. **Basophils** (granules stain blue with basic [bas/o = basic] stain). The function of basophils is not clear, but the number of these cells increases in the healing phase of inflammation. Less than 1% of leukocytes are basophils.
  3. **Neutrophils** (granules stain a pale purple with neutral stain) are the most important disease-fighting cells and the most numerous. About 50% to 60% of all leukocytes are neutrophils. They are **phagocytes** (phag/o = eating, swallowing)—engulfing and digesting bacteria like circulating "Pac-Men." Neutrophils are referred to as "polys," or **polymorphonuclear leukocytes** (poly = many, morph/o = shape), because of their multilobed nucleus.
- **Mononuclear cells** have one large nucleus (mononuclear) and only a few granules in their cytoplasm. They are produced in bone marrow, as well as in lymph nodes and the spleen. There are two types of mononuclear leukocytes (see Figure 3-11):

4. **Lymphocytes** (lymph cells) fight disease by producing antibodies, thereby destroying foreign cells. They also may attach directly to foreign cells and destroy them. Two types of lymphocytes are T cells and B cells. About 32% of white blood cells are lymphocytes. In AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome), patients have a serious depletion of T lymphocytes (T cells).
5. **Monocytes** (containing one [mon/o = one] very large nucleus) engulf and destroy cellular debris after neutrophils have attacked foreign cells. Monocytes leave the bloodstream and enter tissues (such as lung and liver) to become **macrophages,** which are large phagocytes. Monocytes make up about 4% of all leukocytes.

See Table 3-1 to review the five types of leukocytes. Each type fights infection in a specific manner. This is similar to the five branches of the armed forces (Navy, Army, Air Force, Marines, and Coast Guard), each of which is equipped with specialized skills and procedures.

TABLE 3-1

FIVE TYPES OF LEUKOCYTES (WHITE BLOOD CELLS)

THROMBOCYTES or **PLATELETS** (**clotting cells**) are the third type of blood cell. These are actually tiny fragments of cells formed in the bone marrow and are necessary for blood clotting.

Acromegaly

Acromegaly is an endocrine disorder. It occurs when the **pituitary gland,** attached to the base of the brain, produces an excessive amount of growth hormone *after* the completion of puberty. The excess growth hormone most often results from a benign tumor of the pituitary gland. A person with

acromegaly typically is of normal height because the long bones have stopped growth after puberty, but bones and soft tissue in the hands, feet, and face grow abnormally (Figure 3-12). Abraham Lincoln was believed to have features of acromegaly. See Chapter 18, Endocrine System, page 699.
Gigantism is the result of overproduction of pituitary growth hormone beginning in childhood.

FIGURE 3-12 Acromegaly. Notice the changes in facial features (widening of the nose and jaw) and enlargement of the hands of my grandmother, Bessie Brandwein.

Laparoscopy

Laparoscopy (a form of **minimally invasive surgery**) is visual examination of the abdominal cavity using a laparoscope. A surgeon inserts the laparoscope, a lighted telescopic instrument, through an incision in the abdomen near the navel. Then, gas (carbon dioxide) is infused into the peritoneal cavity, to separate and prevent injury to abdominal structures during surgery. Surgeons use laparoscopy to examine abdominal viscera for evidence of disease (performing biopsies) or for procedures such as removal of the appendix, gallbladder, adrenal gland, spleen, or ovary; resection of the colon; and repair of hernias. In tubal ligation, the laparoscope contains an instrument to clip and collapse the fallopian tubes, which prevents sperm cells from reaching eggs that leave the ovary (Figure 3-13).

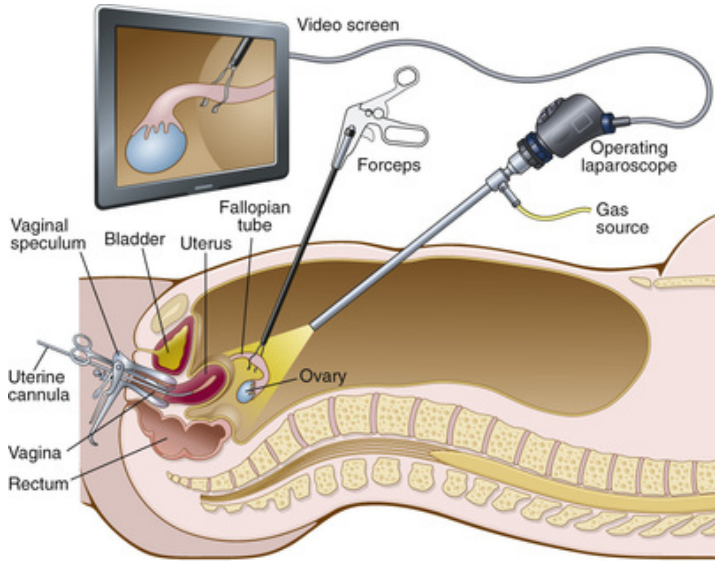


FIGURE 3-13 **Laparoscopy for tubal ligation** (interruption of the continuity of the fallopian tubes) as a means of preventing future pregnancy. The **vaginal speculum** keeps the vaginal cavity open. The **uterine cannula** is a tube placed into the uterus to manipulate the uterus during the procedure. **Forceps**, placed through the laparoscope, grasp or move tissue.

Tracheotomy

A **tracheotomy** is an incision into the trachea typically done to open it below a blockage. Tracheotomy may be performed to remove a foreign body or to obtain a biopsy specimen (Figure 3-14A).

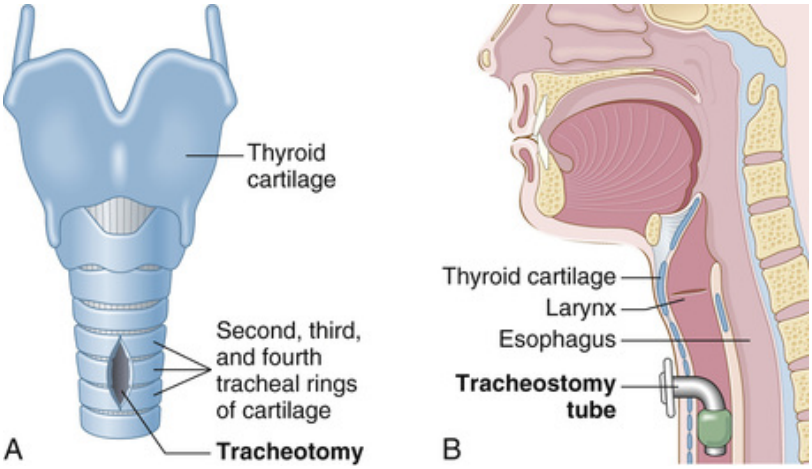


FIGURE 3-14 **A, Tracheotomy. B, Tracheostomy.**

A **tracheostomy** is an opening into the trachea through which an indwelling tube is inserted. The tube is required to allow air to flow into the lungs or to help remove secretions (mucus) from the bronchial tubes. When a temporary tracheostomy is performed, extreme care is used to insert the tracheostomy tube below the larynx so that the vocal cords are not damaged (Figure 3-14B).

Adenoids

The **adenoids** are small masses of lymphatic tissue in the part of the pharynx (throat) near the nose and nasal passages. The literal meaning, "resembling glands," is appropriate because they are neither endocrine nor exocrine glands. Enlargement of adenoids may cause blockage of the airway from the nose to the pharynx, and adenoidectomy may be advised. The **tonsils** also are lymphatic tissue, and their location as well as that of the adenoids is indicated in Figure 3-15.

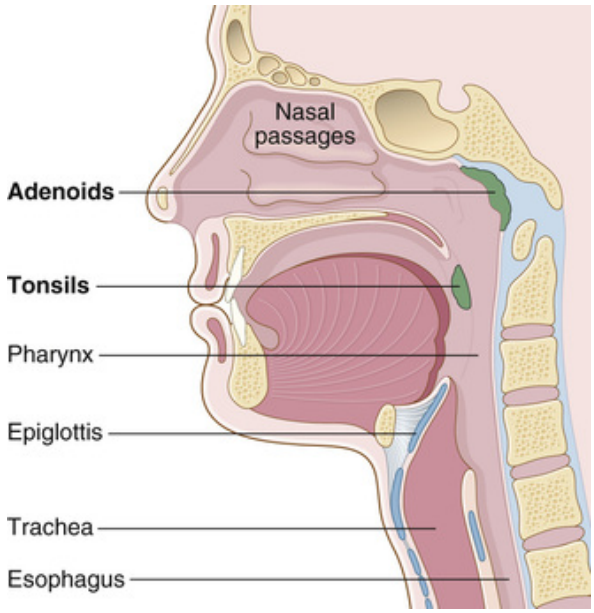


FIGURE 3-15 Adenoids and tonsils. The adenoids and tonsils are lymphatic tissue in the pharynx (throat).

Practical Applications

Procedures and Their Definitions

Choose the correct diagnostic or treatment procedure for each of the numbered definitions. Answers are on page 97.

amniocentesis
angiography
angioplasty
colostomy
laparoscopy
laparotomy
mastectomy
paracentesis (abdominocentesis)
thoracentesis
tonsillectomy

1. removal of abdominal fluid (ascites) from the peritoneal space
   _____
2. large abdominal incision to remove an ovarian adenocarcinoma
   _____
3. removal of the breast
   _____
4. a method used to determine the karyotype of a fetus
   _____
5. surgical procedure to remove pharyngeal lymphatic tissue
   _____
6. surgical procedure to open clogged coronary arteries
   _____
7. method of removing fluid from the chest (pleural effusion)
   _____
8. procedure to drain waste from the body after bowel resection
   _____
9. x-ray procedure used to examine blood vessels before surgery
   _____
10. minimally invasive surgery within the abdomen
    _____

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises on pages 96 and 97.

A **Give the meanings for the following suffixes.**

1. -cele

_____

2. -emia

_____

3. -coccus

_____

4. -gram

_____

5. -cyte

_____

6. -algia

_____

7. -ectomy

_____

8. -centesis

_____

9. -genesis

_____

10. -graph

_____

11. -itis

_____

12. -graphy

_____

B **Using the listed combining forms and your knowledge of suffixes, build medical terms for the definitions that follow.**

amni/o

angi/o

arthr/o
bronch/o
carcin/o
cyst/o
isch/o
laryng/o
mast/o
my/o
myel/o
rhin/o
staphyl/o
strept/o
thorac/o

1. hernia of the urinary bladder

_____

2. pain of muscle

_____

3. process of producing cancer

_____

4. inflammation of the spinal cord

_____

5. berry-shaped bacteria in twisted chains

_____

6. surgical puncture to remove fluid from the chest

_____

7. removal of the breast

_____

8. inflammation of the tubes leading from the windpipe to the lungs

_____

9. to hold back blood from cells

_____

10. process of recording (x-ray) blood vessels

_____

11. visual examination of joints

_____

12. berry-shaped bacteria in clusters

_____

13. resection of the voice box

_____

14. surgical procedure to remove fluid from the sac around a fetus

_____

15. discharge from the nose

_____

C **Match the listed terms, which describe blood cells, with the meanings that follow.**

basophil

eosinophil

erythrocyte

lymphocyte

monocyte

neutrophil

thrombocyte

1. granulocytic white blood cell (granules stain purple) that destroys foreign cells by engulfing and digesting them; also called a polymorphonuclear leukocyte

   _____

2. mononuclear white blood cell that destroys foreign cells by making antibodies

_____

   _____

3. clotting cell; also called a platelet

   _____

4. leukocyte with reddish-staining granules and numbers elevated in allergic reactions

_____

   _____

5. red blood cell

   _____

6. mononuclear white blood cell that engulfs and digests cellular debris; contains one large nucleus

_____

   _____

7. granulocytic white blood cell that increases during the healing phase of inflammation

_____

   _____

D **Give the meanings of the following suffixes.**

1. -logy _____
2. -lysis _____
3. -pathy _____
4. -penia _____

5. -malacia _____
6. -osis _____
7. -phobia _____
8. -megaly _____
9. -oma _____
10. -opsy _____
11. -plasia _____
12. -plasty _____
13. -sclerosis _____
14. -stasis _____

E **Using the combining forms below and your knowledge of suffixes, build medical terms for the following definitions.**

acr/o

arteri/o

bi/o

blephar/o

cardi/o

chondr/o

hem/o

hydr/o

morph/o

my/o

myel/o

phleb/o

rhin/o

sarc/o

splen/o

1. enlargement of the spleen

_____

2. study of the shape (of cells)

_____

3. softening of cartilage

_____

4. abnormal condition of water (fluid) in the kidney

_____

5. disease condition of heart muscle

_____

6. hardening of arteries

_____

7. tumor (benign) of muscle

_____

8. flesh tumor (malignant) of muscle

_____

9. surgical repair of the nose

_____

10. tumor of bone marrow

_____

11. fear of heights

_____

12. view of living tissue under a microscope

_____

13. stoppage of the flow of blood (by mechanical or natural means)

_____

14. inflammation of the eyelid

_____

15. incision of a vein

_____

F **Give the plural formations of the following terms:**

1. bacterium _____
2. metastasis _____
3. vertebra _____
4. streptococcus _____
5. nucleus _____
6. prognosis _____

G **Match the following terms with their meanings.**

achondroplasia
acromegaly
atrophy
chemotherapy
colostomy
hydrotherapy
hypertrophy
laparoscope
laparoscopy
metastasis
necrosis
osteomalacia

1. treatment using drugs

_____

2. condition of death (of cells)

_____

3. softening of bone

_____

4. opening of the large intestine to the outside of the body

_____

5. no development; shrinkage of cells

_____

6. beyond control; spread of a cancerous tumor to another organ

_____

7. instrument to visually examine the abdomen

_____

8. enlargement of extremities; an endocrine disorder that causes excess growth hormone to be produced by the pituitary gland after puberty

_____

9. condition of improper formation of cartilage in the embryo that leads to short bones and dwarfism

_____

10. process of viewing the peritoneal (abdominal) cavity

_____

11. treatment using water

_____

12. excessive development of cells (increase in size of individual cells)

_____

H **Give the meanings of the following suffixes.**

1. -ia _____

2. -trophy _____
3. -stasis _____
4. -stomy _____
5. -tomy _____
6. -ole _____
7. -um _____
8. -ule _____
9. -y _____
10. -oid _____
11. -genic _____
12. -ptosis _____

I **Using the lists of combining forms and suffixes below, build medical terms for the following definitions.**

COMBINING FORMS		**SUFFIXES**		
arteri/o	pleur/o	-dynia	-ole	-therapy
lapar/o	pneumon/o	-ectomy	-pathy	-tomy
mamm/o	radi/o	-gram	-plasty	-ule
nephr/o	ven/o	-ia	-scopy	

1. incision of the abdomen

   _____

2. process of visual examination of the abdomen

   _____

3. a small artery

   _____

4. condition of the lungs

   _____

5. treatment using x-rays

   _____

6. record (x-ray film) of the breast

_____

7. pain of the chest wall and the membranes surrounding the lungs

_____

8. a small vein

_____

9. disease condition of the kidney

_____

10. surgical repair of the breast

_____

J **<u>Underline</u> the suffix in the following terms, and give the meaning of the entire term.**

1. laryngeal

_____

2. inguinal

_____

3. chronic

_____

4. pulmonary

_____

5. adipose

_____

6. peritoneal

_____

7. axillary

_____

8. necrotic

_____

9. opioid

_____

10. mucous

_____

11. agoraphobia

_____

12. esophagus

_____

K **Select from the listed terms relating to blood and blood vessels to complete the sentences that follow.**

anemia
angioplasty
arterioles
hematoma
hemolysis
hemostasis
ischemia
leukemia
leukocytosis
multiple myeloma
myocardial
neutropenia
thrombocytopenia
venules

1. Billy was diagnosed with excessively high numbers of cancerous white blood cells, or _____. His doctor prescribed chemotherapy and expected an excellent prognosis.

2. Mr. Clark's angiogram showed that he had serious atherosclerosis of one of the arteries supplying blood to his heart. His doctor recommended that _____ would be helpful to open up his clogged artery by threading a catheter (tube) through his artery and opening a balloon at the end of the catheter to widen the artery.
3. Due to the shock of multiple foot strikes, long-distance runners can develop breakdown of red blood cells called _____. This condition, which leads to excessive loss of blood cells is known as runner's _____.
4. Doctors refused to operate on Joe because of his low platelet count, a condition called _____.
5. Blockage of an artery leading to Mr. Stein's brain led to the holding back of blood flow to nerve tissue in his brain. This condition, called _____, could lead to necrosis of tissue and a cerebrovascular accident.
6. Small arteries, or _____, were broken under Ms. Bein's scalp when she was struck on the head with a rock. She soon developed a mass of blood, a/an _____, under the skin in that region of her head.
7. Sarah Jones had a staphylococcal infection, causing elevation of her white blood cell count, known as _____. She was treated with antibiotics, and her blood count returned to normal.
8. Within the body, the bone marrow (soft tissue within bones) is the “factory” for making blood cells. Mr. Scott

developed _____, a malignant condition of the bone marrow cells in his hip, upper arm, and thigh bones.

9. During operations, surgeons use clamps to close off blood vessels and prevent blood loss. In this way, they maintain _____ and avoid blood transfusions.
10. Small vessels that carry blood toward the heart from capillaries and tissues are _____.
11. Chemotherapy causes destruction of rapidly dividing cancer cells as well as rapidly dividing normal white blood cells. This deficiency of white blood cells is a side effect of chemotherapy called _____.
12. An acute _____ infarction is the medical term for a heart attack.

L **Complete the medical term for the following definitions.**

DEFINITION	MEDICAL TERM
1. membrane surrounding the heart	peri _____
2. hardening of arteries	arterio _____
3. enlargement of the liver	hepato _____
4. new opening of the windpipe to the outside of the body	tracheo _____
5. inflammation of the tonsils	_____ itis
6. surgical puncture to remove fluid from the abdomen	abdomino _____
7. muscle pain	my _____
8. pertaining to the membranes surrounding the lungs	_____ al
9. study of the eye	_____ logy
10. berry-shaped (spheroidal) bacteria in clusters	_____ cocci
11. beyond control (spread of a cancerous tumor)	meta _____
12. pertaining to the voice box	_____ eal

M **Select from the meanings in Column II to match the suffixes in Column I. Write each meaning in the space provided.**

COLUMN I	COLUMN II
Suffixes: Conditions	**Meanings**
1. -algia or -dynia _____	blood condition
2. -cele _____	controlling; stopping
3. -megaly _____	deficiency
4. -oma _____	destruction; breakdown
5. -penia _____	development;
6. -phobia _____	nourishment
7. -plasia _____	falling; drooping;
8. -emia _____	prolapse
9. -itis _____	enlargement
10. -trophy _____	fear
11. -stasis _____	formation
12. -sclerosis _____	hardening
13. -lysis _____	hernia
14. -ptosis _____	inflammation
15. -malacia _____	pain
	softening
	tumor; mass

N **Select from the meanings in Column II to match the suffixes in Column I. Write each meaning in the space provided.**

COLUMN I	COLUMN II
Suffixes: Procedures	**Meanings**
1. -centesis _____	excision incision instrument to record instrument to visually examine new opening process of recording process of visual examination record puncture to remove fluid surgical repair to view treatment
2. -opsy _____	
3. -ectomy _____	
4. -tomy _____	
5. -stomy _____	
6. -therapy _____	
7. -plasty _____	
8. -scopy _____	
9. -scope _____	
10. -graphy _____	
11. -gram _____	
12. -graph _____	

O Circle the correct term to complete the following sentences.

1. Ms. Daley, who has nine children, visited her general practitioner because she was experiencing problems with urination. After examining her, the doctor found that her bladder was protruding into her vagina and told her she had a **(rectocele, cystocele, hiatal hernia**).
2. Susan coughed constantly for a week. Her physician told her that her chest x-ray examination showed evidence of pneumonia. Her sputum (material coughed up from the bronchial tubes) was found to contain (**ischemic, pleuritic, pneumococcal**) bacteria.

3. Mr. Manion went to see his family doctor because he couldn't keep his left upper eyelid from sagging. His doctor told him that he had a neurologic problem called Horner syndrome, characterized by (**necrosis, hydronephrosis, ptosis**) of his eyelid.
4. Jill broke her left arm in a fall while mountain biking. After 6 weeks in a cast to treat the fracture, her left arm was noticeably smaller and weaker than her right arm—the muscles had (**atrophied, hypertrophied, metastasized**). Her physician recommended physical therapy to strengthen the affected arm.
5. Ms. Brody was diagnosed with breast cancer. The first phase of her treatment included a (**nephrectomy, mastectomy, pulmonary resection**) to remove her breast and the tumor. After the surgery, her doctors recommended (**chemotherapy, radiotherapy, hydrotherapy**) using drugs such as doxorubicin (Adriamycin) and paclitaxel (Taxol).
6. At age 29, Kevin's facial features became coarser and his hands and tongue enlarged. After a head CT (computed tomography) scan, doctors diagnosed the cause of these changes as (**hyperglycemia, hyperthyroidism, acromegaly**), a slowly progressive endocrine condition involving the pituitary gland.
7. Each winter during "cold and flu season," Daisy developed (**chondromalacia, bronchitis, cardiomyopathy**). Her doctor prescribed antibiotics and respiratory therapy to help her recover.
8. After undergoing (**arthroscopy, laparotomy, radiotherapy**) on his knee, Alan noticed swelling and inflammation near the small incisions. Dr. Nicholas

assured him that this was a common side effect of the procedure that would resolve spontaneously.

9. Under the microscope, Dr. Vance could see grape-like clusters of bacteria called (**eosinophils, streptococci, staphylococci**). She made the diagnosis of (**staphylococcemia, eosinophilia, streptococcemia**), and the patient was started on antibiotic therapy.
10. David enjoyed weight lifting, but he recently noticed a bulge in his right groin region. He visited his doctor, who made the diagnosis of (**hiatal hernia, rectocele, inguinal hernia**) and recommended surgical repair.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. hernia
2. blood condition
3. berry-shaped bacterium
4. record
5. cell
6. pain
7. removal, excision, resection
8. puncture to remove fluid
9. process of producing, forming
10. instrument to record
11. inflammation
12. process of recording

B

1. cystocele
2. myalgia (“myodynia” is not used)
3. carcinogenesis
4. myelitis
5. streptococci (*bacteria* is a plural term)
6. thoracentesis or thoracocentesis
7. mastectomy
8. bronchitis
9. ischemia
10. angiography
11. arthroscopy
12. staphylococci
13. laryngectomy
14. amniocentesis
15. rhinorrhea

C

1. neutrophil
2. lymphocyte
3. thrombocyte
4. eosinophil
5. erythrocyte

6. monocyte
7. basophil

D

1. process of study
2. breakdown, separation, destruction
3. process of disease
4. deficiency, less than normal
5. softening
6. condition, abnormal condition
7. fear of
8. enlargement
9. tumor, mass
10. process of viewing
11. condition of formation, growth
12. surgical repair
13. hardening, to harden
14. to stop, control

E

1. splenomegaly
2. morphology
3. chondromalacia
4. hydronephrosis

5. cardiomyopathy
6. arteriosclerosis
7. myoma
8. myosarcoma
9. rhinoplasty
10. myeloma (called multiple myeloma)
11. acrophobia
12. biopsy
13. hemostasis
14. blepharitis
15. phlebotomy

F

1. bacteria
2. metastases
3. vertebrae
4. streptococci
5. nuclei
6. prognoses

G

1. chemotherapy
2. necrosis
3. osteomalacia

4. colostomy
5. atrophy
6. metastasis
7. laparoscope
8. acromegaly
9. achondroplasia
10. laparoscopy
11. hydrotherapy
12. hypertrophy

H

1. condition
2. development, nourishment
3. to stop, control
4. new opening
5. incision, cut into
6. small, little
7. structure
8. small, little
9. condition, process
10. resembling
11. pertaining to producing, produced by or in
12. falling, drooping, prolapse

I

1. laparotomy
2. laparoscopy
3. arteriole
4. pneumonia (this condition is actually *pneumonitis*)
5. radiotherapy
6. mammogram
7. pleurodynia
8. venule
9. nephropathy
10. mammoplasty

J

1. laryngeal—pertaining to the voice box
2. inguinal—pertaining to the groin
3. chronic—pertaining to time (over a long period of time); the opposite of chronic is acute
4. pulmonary—pertaining to the lung
5. adipose—pertaining to (or full of) fat
6. peritoneal—pertaining to the peritoneum (membrane around the abdominal organs)
7. axillary—pertaining to the armpit, under arm
8. necrotic—pertaining to death
9. opioid—substance derived from opium

10. mucous—pertaining to mucus
11. agoraphobia—fear of open spaces and being away from home alone (agora means marketplace)
12. esophagus—tube leading from the throat to the stomach

K

1. leukemia
2. angioplasty
3. hemolysis; anemia
4. thrombocytopenia
5. ischemia
6. arterioles; hematoma
7. leukocytosis
8. multiple myeloma
9. hemostasis
10. venules
11. neutropenia
12. myocardial

L

1. pericardium
2. arteriosclerosis
3. hepatomegaly
4. tracheostomy

5. tonsillitis
6. abdominocentesis (this procedure also is known as paracentesis)
7. myalgia
8. pleural
9. ophthalmology
10. staphylococci
11. metastasis
12. laryngeal

M

1. pain
2. hernia
3. enlargement
4. tumor; mass
5. deficiency
6. fear
7. formation
8. blood condition
9. inflammation
10. development; nourishment
11. controlling; stopping
12. hardening
13. destruction; breakdown

14. falling; drooping; prolapse
15. softening

N

1. puncture to remove fluid
2. to view
3. excision
4. incision
5. new opening
6. treatment
7. surgical repair
8. process of visual examination
9. instrument to visually examine
10. process of recording
11. record
12. instrument to record

O

1. cystocele
2. pneumococcal
3. ptosis
4. atrophied
5. mastectomy; chemotherapy
6. acromegaly

7. bronchitis

8. arthroscopy

9. staphylococci; staphylococcemia

10. inguinal hernia

Answers to Practical Applications

1. paracentesis (abdominocentesis)

2. laparotomy

3. mastectomy

4. amniocentesis

5. tonsillectomy

6. angioplasty

7. thoracentesis

8. colostomy

9. angiography

10. laparoscopy

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The CAPITAL letters indicate the accented syllable.

The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
abdominocentesis	ab-dom-in-o-sen-TE-sis
achondroplasia	a-kon-dro-PLAY-ze-ah
acromegaly	ak-ro-MEG-ah-le
acrophobia	ak-ro-FO-be-ah
acute	uh-KYOOT
adenoids	AH-deh-noydz
adipose	AH-dih-pohz
agoraphobia	ah-gor-ah-FO-be-ah
amniocentesis	am-ne-o-sen-TE-sis
anemia	ah-NE-me-ah
angiogenesis	an-je-o-JEN-ih-sis
angiography	an-je-OG-rah-fe
angioplasty	AN-je-o-plas-te
arteriole	ar-TE-re-ole
arteriosclerosis	ar-te-re-o-skleh-RO-sis
arthralgia	ar-THRAL-jah
atrophy	AT-ro-fe
axillary	AK-sil-ar-e
basophil	BA-so-fil
biopsy	BI-op-se
blepharoptosis	bleh-fah-rop-TO-sis
bronchitis	brong-KI-tis
carcinogenesis	kar-sih-no-JEN-eh-sis
carcinogenic	kar-sih-no-JEN-ik
cardiac	KAR-de-ak
cardiomyopathy	kar-de-o-mi-OP-ah-the
chemotherapy	ke-mo-THER-ah-pe
chondromalacia	kon-dro-mah-LA-shah
chronic	KRON-ik
colostomy	ko-LOS-to-me
cystocele	SIS-to-seel
electrocephalograph	eh-lek-tro-en-SEF-ah-lo-graf
electroencephalogram	eh-lek-tro-en-SEF-ah-lo-gram
electroencephalography	eh-lek-tro-en-sef-ah-LOG-rah-fe
eosinophil	e-o-SIH-no-fil
erythrocyte	eh-RITH-ro-site
erythropenia	eh-rith-ro-PE-ne-a
esophagus	eh-SOF-ah-gus
hematoma	he-mah-TO-mah

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
hemolysis	he-MOL-ih-sis
hemostasis	he-mo-STA-sis
hydronephrosis	hi-dro-neh-FRO-sis
hydrotherapy	hi-dro-THER-ah-pe
hypertrophy	hi-PER-tro-fe
inguinal	IN-gwih-nal
ischemia	is-KE-me-ah
laparoscope	LAP-ah-ro-skope
laparoscopy	lap-ah-ROS-ko-pe
laparotomy	lap-ah-ROT-o-me
laryngeal	lah-rin-JE-al
laryngectomy	lah-rin-JEK-to-me
leukemia	lu-KE-me-ah
leukocyte	LU-ko-site
leukocytosis	lu-ko-si-TO-sis
lymphocyte	LIM-fo-site
mammogram	MAM-o-gram
mastectomy	mas-TEK-to-me
metastasis	meh-TAS-tah-sis
monocyte	MON-o-site
morphology	mor-FOL-o-je
mucous membrane	MU-cus MEM-brayn
mucus	MU-cus
myalgia	mi-AL-jah
myelitis	mi-eh-LI-tis
myeloma	mi-eh-LO-mah
myoma	mi-O-mah
myocardial	mi-o-KAR-de-al
myosarcoma	mi-o-sar-KO-mah
necropsy	NEH-krop-se
necrosis	neh-KRO-sis
necrotic	neh-KROT-ik
nephrologist	neh-FROL-o-jist
nephropathy	neh-FROP-ah-the
neuralgia	nu-RAL-jah
neutropenia	nu-tro-PE-ne-ah
neutrophil	NU-tro-fil
ophthalmology	of-thal-MOL-o-je
opioid	O-pe-oyd

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
osteogenic	os-te-o-JEN-ik
osteomalacia	os-te-o-mah-LA-shah
otalgia	o-TAL-jah
paracentesis	par-ah-sen-TE-sis
pathogenesis	path-o-JEN-eh-sis
pathologic	path-o-LOJ-ik
pericardium	peh-rih-KAR-de-um
peritoneal	peh-rih-to-NE-al
phlebotomy	fleh-BOT-o-me
platelet	PLAYT-let
pleural	PLUR-al
pleurodynia	plur-o-DIN-e-ah
pneumonia	nu-MO-ne-ah
polymorphonuclear leukocyte	pol-e-morf-o-NU-kle-ar LU-ko-site
ptosis	TO-sis
pulmonary	PUL-mo-nar-e
radiographer	ra-de-OG-rah-fer
radiotherapy	ra-de-o-THER-ah-pe
rectocele	REK-to-seel
rhinorrhea	ri-no-RE-ah
splenomegaly	spleh-no-MEG-ah-le
staphylococci	staf-ih-lo-KOK-si
streptococcus	strep-to-KOK-sis
thoracentesis	thor-ah-cen-TE-sis
thrombocyte	THROM-bo-site
thrombocytopenia	throm-bo-site-o-PE-ne-ah
thrombophlebitis	throm-bo-fleh-BI-tis
tonsillar	TON-sih-lar
tonsillitis	ton-sih-LI-tis
tracheostomy	tra-ke-OS-to-me
tracheotomy	tra-ke-OT-o-me
venule	VEN-ule

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of each word part in the space provided and test yourself. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English),*** at the end of this book.

Noun Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-algia	_____
-cele	_____
-centesis	_____
-coccus (-cocci)	_____
-cyte	_____
-dynia	_____
-ectomy	_____
-emia	_____
-er	_____
-genesis	_____
-gram	_____
-graph	_____
-graphy	_____
-ia	_____
-ist	_____
-itis	_____
-logy	_____
-lysis	_____
-malacia	_____
-megaly	_____
-ole	_____
-oma	_____
-opsy	_____
-osis	_____
-pathy	_____
-penia	_____
-phobia	_____
-plasia	_____
-plasty	_____
-ptosis	_____
-rrhea	_____
-sclerosis	_____
-scope	_____
-scopy	_____
-stasis	_____
-stomy	_____
-therapy	_____
-tomy	_____
-trophy	_____

SUFFIX	MEANING
-ule	_____
-um, -ium	_____
-us	_____
-y	_____

Adjective Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-ac, -iac	_____
-al	_____
-ar	_____
-ary	_____
-eal	_____
-genic	_____
-ic, -ical	_____
-oid	_____
-ose	_____
-ous	_____
-tic	_____

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
abdomin/o	_____
acr/o	_____
acu/o	_____
aden/o	_____
adip/o	_____
amni/o	_____
angi/o	_____
arteri/o	_____
arthr/o	_____
axill/o	_____
bi/o	_____
blephar/o	_____
bronch/o	_____
carcin/o	_____
cardi/o	_____
chem/o	_____
chondr/o	_____
chron/o	_____
col/o	_____
cyst/o	_____
encephal/o	_____
erythr/o	_____
hem/o	_____
hepat/o	_____
hydr/o	_____
inguin/o	_____
isch/o	_____
lapar/o	_____
laryng/o	_____
leuk/o	_____
lymph/o	_____
mamm/o	_____
mast/o	_____
morph/o	_____
muc/o	_____
my/o	_____
myel/o	_____
necr/o	_____
nephr/o	_____

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
neur/o	_____
neutr/o	_____
nucle/o	_____
ophthalm/o	_____
opi/o	_____
oste/o	_____
ot/o	_____
path/o	_____
peritone/o	_____
phag/o	_____
phleb/o	_____
plas/o	_____
pleur/o	_____
pneumon/o	_____
pulmon/o	_____
radi/o	_____
rect/o	_____
ren/o	_____
rhin/o	_____
sarc/o	_____
splen/o	_____
staphyl/o	_____
strept/o	_____
thorac/o	_____
thromb/o	_____
tonsill/o	_____
trache/o	_____
ven/o	_____

Give the medical term for the following blood cells.

red blood cell _____
clotting cell _____
white blood cell _____

Name five different types of white blood cells (the first letter is given).

e _____
b _____
n _____

l _____
m _____

CHAPTER 4

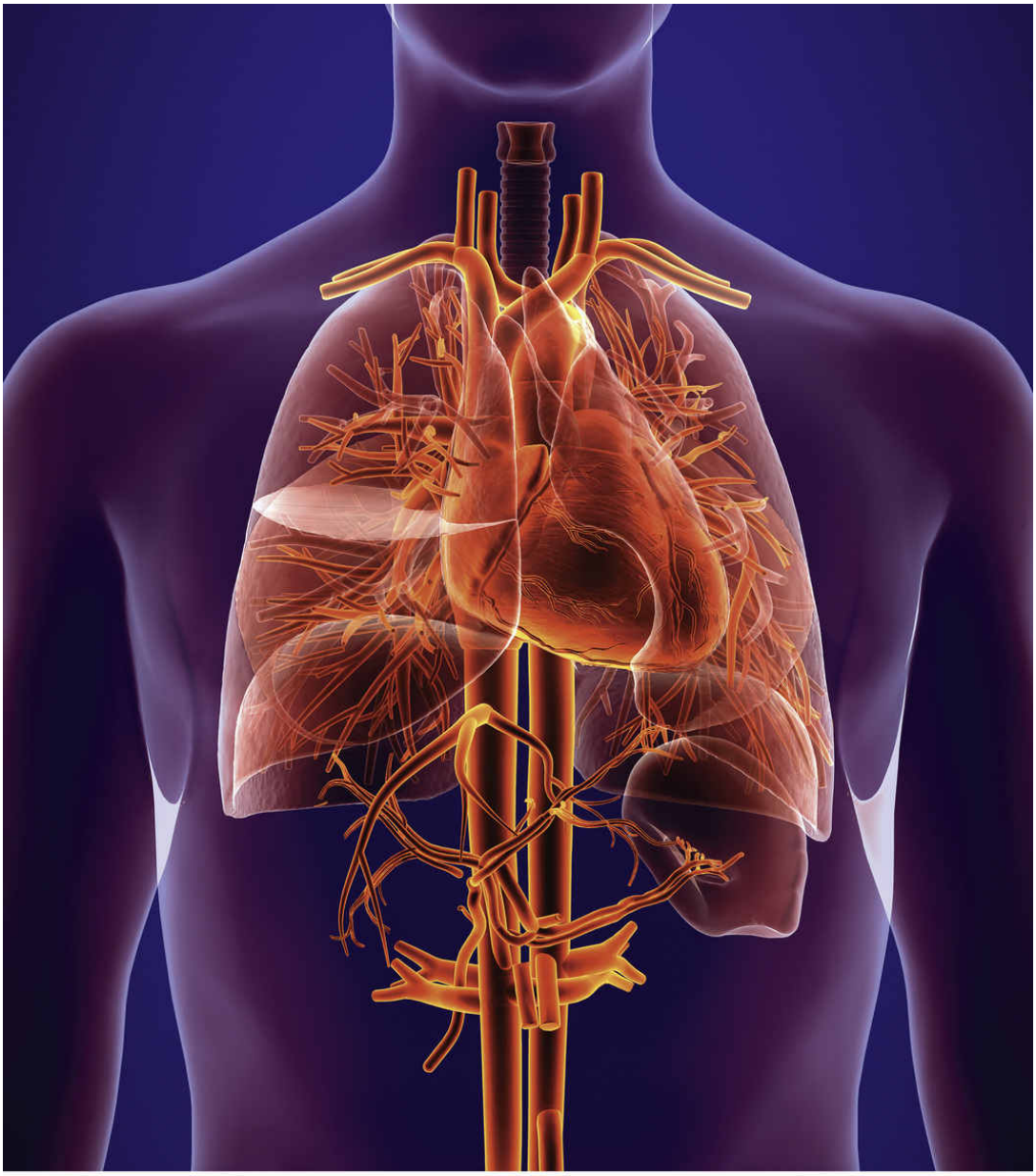
Prefixes

CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 104
Combining Forms and Suffixes 104
Prefixes and Terminology 105
A Closer Look 114
Practical Applications 119
Exercises 120
Answers to Exercises 125
Pronunciation of Terms 126
Review Sheet 128

CHAPTER GOALS

- Define basic prefixes used in the medical language.
- Analyze medical terms that combine prefixes and other word elements.
- Learn about the Rh condition as an example of an antigen-antibody reaction.



Introduction

This chapter on prefixes, like the preceding chapter on suffixes, gives you practice in word analysis and provides a foundation for the study of the terminology of body systems that follows.

The list of combining forms, suffixes, and meanings helps you analyze terminology in the rest of the chapter. To support a broader understanding, ***A Closer Look,*** beginning on page 114, contains more detailed explanations of new terms.

Combining Forms and Suffixes

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
carp/o	wrist bones
cis/o	cut
cost/o	rib
cutane/o	skin
dactyl/o	fingers, toes
duct/o	lead, carry
flex/o	bend
furc/o	branching
gloss/o	tongue
glyc/o	sugar
immun/o	protection
morph/o	shape, form
mort/o	death
nat/i	birth
norm/o	rule, order
ox/o	oxygen
pub/o	pubis (pubic bone); anterior portion of the pelvic or hipbone
seps/o	infection
somn/o	sleep
son/o	sound
tens/o	force, strain, stretch
the/o	put, place
thel/o, theli/o	nipple
thyr/o	thyroid gland; shield (the shape of the thyroid gland resembled [-oid] a shield to those who named it)
top/o	place, position, location
tox/o	poison
trache/o	windpipe, trachea
urethr/o	urethra

Suffixes

These suffixes are used in this chapter in combination with prefixes. Some are complex suffixes that contain roots. For example, the suffix -pnea contains a root pne, meaning breathing, and a final suffix **-a,** meaning condition.

SUFFIX	MEANING
-crine	secrete
-drome	run
-fusion	coming together; to pour
-gen	substance that produces
-lapse	slide, fall, sag
-lysis	breakdown, destruction, separation
-meter	measure
-mission	send
-or	one who
-oxia	oxygen
-partum	birth, labor
-phoria	bear, carry; feeling (mental state)
-physis	grow
-plasia	development, formation, growth
-plasm	structure or formation
-pnea	breathing
-ptom	happening, occurrence
-ptosis	falling, drooping, prolapse
-rrhea	flow, discharge
-stasis	stopping, controlling
-trophy	development, nourishment

Prefixes and Terminology

Write the meaning of the medical term in the space provided. Remember: the Evolve website provides the definition and audio pronunciation for each term.

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
a-, an-	no, not, without	apnea _____ anoxia _____	
ab-	away from	abnormal _____ abductor _____ *A muscle that draws a limb **away** from the body.* ***HINT:** Notice that in **ab**ductor, the **b** faces away from the **a**.*	
ad-	toward	adductor _____ *A muscle that draws a limb* **toward** the body. ***HINT:** Notice that in **ad**ductor, the **d** faces toward the **a**.* adrenal glands _____ *These glands actually lie on top of each kidney. See Figure 4-1.*	
ana-	up, apart	anabolism _____ analysis _____ **Urinalysis** *(urin/o + [an]/alysis) is a laboratory examination of urine that aids in the diagnosis of many medical conditions. In this term, -lysis means separation.*	
ante-	before, forward	ante cibum _____ *The word cibum means meals. The notation a.c., seen on prescription orders, means before meals. You can guess that p.c. means after (post) meals.* anteflexion _____ antepartum _____	

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
anti-	against	antibiotic _____ *Antibiotics destroy or inhibit the growth of microorganisms such as bacteria. Penicillin was the first antibiotic discovered and was in widespread use by the 1940s. Many penicillin-like antibiotics have been discovered since then and have shown valuable activity against penicillin-resistant organisms.* antibody _____ *Protein produced against an antigen (foreign body).* antigen _____ *In this term, anti- is short for antibody. An antigen (bacterium or virus) is a substance that stimulates the production of (-gen) an antibody.* *See **A Closer Look: Antigens and Antibodies,** page 114.* antisepsis _____ *An antiseptic (-sis changes to -tic to form an adjective) substance fights infection. **Septicemia** is a serious bacterial infection of the blood.* antitoxin _____ *This is an antibody, often from an animal (such as a horse), that acts against a toxin. An example is tetanus antitoxin given against tetanus, an acute bacterial infection of the nervous system.*
auto-	self, own	autoimmune disease _____
bi-	two	bifurcation _____ *Normal splitting into two branches, such as bifurcation of the trachea to form the bronchi. The root furc means branching.* bilateral _____

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
brady-	slow	bradycardia _____ *Usually, a pulse of less than 60; a slow heart rate. Tachycardia (tachy- means fast) is a pulse of more than 100 beats per minute.*	
cata-	down	catabolism _____	
con-	with, together	congenital anomaly *See **A Closer Look: Congenital Anomaly,** page 116.* connective _____ *The root nect means to tie or bind. Connective tissue supports and binds other body tissue and parts. Bone, cartilage, and fibrous tissue are connective tissues.*	
contra-	against, opposite	contraindication _____ *Contra- means against in this term.* contralateral _____ *Contra- means opposite in this term. A stroke affecting the right side of the brain may cause **contralateral** paralysis affecting the left arm and leg.*	
de-	down, lack of	dehydration _____	
dia-	through, complete	diameter _____ diarrhea _____ dialysis _____ *Literal meaning is complete (dia-) separation (-lysis). In **hemodialysis,** waste materials are separated from the blood via a machine (artificial kidney) when the kidneys no longer function. Another form of dialysis is peritoneal dialysis.*	

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
dys-	abnormal, bad difficult, painful	dyspnea _____ *Often caused by respiratory or cardiac conditions, strenuous exercise, or anxiety.* dysentery _____ dystrophy _____ ***Muscular dystrophy** includes many inherited diseases that cause muscular weakness and deterioration.* dysplasia _____	
ec-	out, ouside	ectopic pregnancy _____ *Ectopic means pertaining to out of place and modifies the noun "pregnancy." See Figure 4-2.*	
endo-	in, within	endocardium _____ endoscope _____ endotracheal _____ *An endotracheal tube, placed through the mouth into the trachea, is used for giving oxygen and in general anesthesia procedures.*	
epi-	upon, on, above	epithelium _____	
eu-	good, normal	euphoria _____ *Feeling of well-being.* euthyroid _____ *Normal thyroid function.*	
ex-	out, outside	exophthalmos _____ *Protrusion of the eyeball associated with enlargement and overactivity of the thyroid gland.*	
hemi-	half	hemiglossectomy _____	

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
hyper-	excessive, above	hyperglycemia _____ *This is a sign of diabetes mellitus. Lack of insulin (type 1 diabetes) or ineffective insulin (type 2 diabetes) causes high levels of sugar in the blood.* hyperplasia _____ *Increase in cell numbers. This is a characteristic of tumor growth.* hypertrophy _____ *Increase in size of individual cells. Muscle, cardiac, and renal cells exhibit hypertrophy when workload is increased. The opposite of hypertrophy is* ***atrophy*** *(cells shrink in size). See Figure 4-3.* hypertension _____ **High blood pressure** *occurs when the force of blood pushing against the walls of arteries is consistently too high.*
hypo-	deficient, under	hypodermic injection _____ hypoglycemia _____
in-	not	insomniac _____
in-	into, within	incision _____
infra-	beneath, under	infracostal _____
inter-	between	intercostal _____ *Intercostal muscles lie between adjacent ribs.*
intra-	in, within, into	intravenous _____
macro-	large	macrocephaly _____ *This is a congenital anomaly. Often macrocephaly is associated with excess fluid in the brain (hydrocephalus).*

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
mal-	bad	malaise _____ *(mal-AYZ) This is a French word meaning discomfort. It is a symptom of illness often marking the onset of a disease.* malignant _____ *From the Latin ignis, meaning fire.* ***Benign*** *(ben- = good) is noncancerous, whereas* ***malignant*** *means cancerous.*	
meta-	beyond, change	metacarpal bones _____ *The five hand bones lie* ***beyond*** *the wrist bones but before the finger bones (phalanges).* metamorphosis _____ *Meta- means* ***change*** *in this term. The change in development from the larval (caterpillar) stage to the adult (butterfly) is a form of metamorphosis. Embryonic (immature)* ***stem cells*** *spontaneously change (undergo metamorphosis) to form different types of mature cells.* metastasis _____ *Meta- =* ***beyond*** *and -stasis = controlling, stopping. A metastasis is a malignant tumor that has spread to a secondary location.*	
micro-	small	microscope _____ microcephaly _____ *Microcephaly is associated with a smaller, underdeveloped brain.* ***Zika virus infection*** *during pregnancy can cause microcephaly.*	
neo-	new	neonatal _____ *The neonatal period is the interval from birth to 28 days.* neoplasm _____ *A neoplasm may be benign or malignant.*	
pan-	all	pancytopenia _____ *Deficiency of erythrocytes, leukocytes, and thrombocytes.*	

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
para-	abnormal, beside, near	paralysis _____ *Abnormal disruption of the connection between nerve and muscle. Originally from the Greek paralusis, meaning separation or loosening on one side, describing the loss of movement on one side of the body (occurring in stroke patients).* parathyroid glands _____ *Para- means beside. The four parathyroid glands are located behind the thyroid gland. They secrete a hormone that regulates the calcium levels in blood and tissues.*
per-	through	percutaneous _____
peri-	surrounding	pericardium _____
poly-	many, much	polymorphonuclear _____ polyneuritis _____
post-	after, behind	postmortem _____ postpartum _____
pre-	before, in front of	precancerous _____ prenatal _____
pro-	before, forward	prodrome _____ **Prodromal** *signs and symptoms (rash, fever) appear before the actual illness (such as chickenpox) and signal its onset. Altered mood, fatigue, flashes of light, or stiff muscles may accompany the prodromal migraine aura that occurs before the actual headache.* prolapse _____ *The suffix -lapse means to slide, sag, or fall. See Figure 4-4. A prolapse of the eyelid is commonly called ptosis (blepharoptosis).*

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
pros-	before, forward	prosthesis _____ *An artificial limb is a prosthesis. Figure 4-5 shows Amy Palmiero-Winters running with a prosthetic leg.*	
re-	back, again	relapse _____ *A disease or its signs and symptoms return after an apparent recovery.* remission _____ *Signs and symptoms lessen and the patient feels better. Remission may be spontaneous or the result of treatment. In some cases, a permanent remission means the disease is cured.* recombinant DNA _____ *Genetic engineering uses recombinant DNA techniques. See **A Closer Look: Recombinant DNA,** page 116.*	
retro-	behind, backward	retroperitoneal _____ retroflexion _____ *An abnormal position of an organ, such as the uterus, bent or tilted backward.*	
sub-	under	subcutaneous _____	
supra-	above, upper	suprapubic _____ *The pubic bones form the anterior part of the hip bone as shown in Figure 4-6A. A **suprapubic catheter** is useful in draining the bladder above the pubic bone. See Figure 4-6B.*	

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
syn-, sym-	together, with	syndactyly _____ *See Figure 4-7.* synthesis _____ *In protein synthesis, complex proteins are built up from simpler amino acids.* syndrome _____ *See **A Closer Look: Syndromes,** page 117.* symbiosis _____ ***HINT:** Before the letters **b, m,** and **p, syn-** becomes **sym-.** The term symptom is an important example. Be careful about spelling! Don't forget the **p** in symptom.* symmetry _____ *Equality of parts on opposite sides of the body. What is asymmetry?* symphysis _____ *A symphysis is a joint in which the bony surfaces are firmly united by a layer of fibrocartilage. See Figure 4-6C.*
tachy-	fast	tachypnea _____ *(tah-KIP-ne-ah)*
trans-	across, through	transfusion _____ *Transfer of blood or blood parts from one person to another.* transurethral _____ *See **A Closer Look: Transurethral Resection of the Prostate Gland,** page 118.*
ultra-	beyond, excess	ultrasonography _____ *See **A Closer Look: Ultrasonography,** page 118.*
uni-	one	unilateral _____

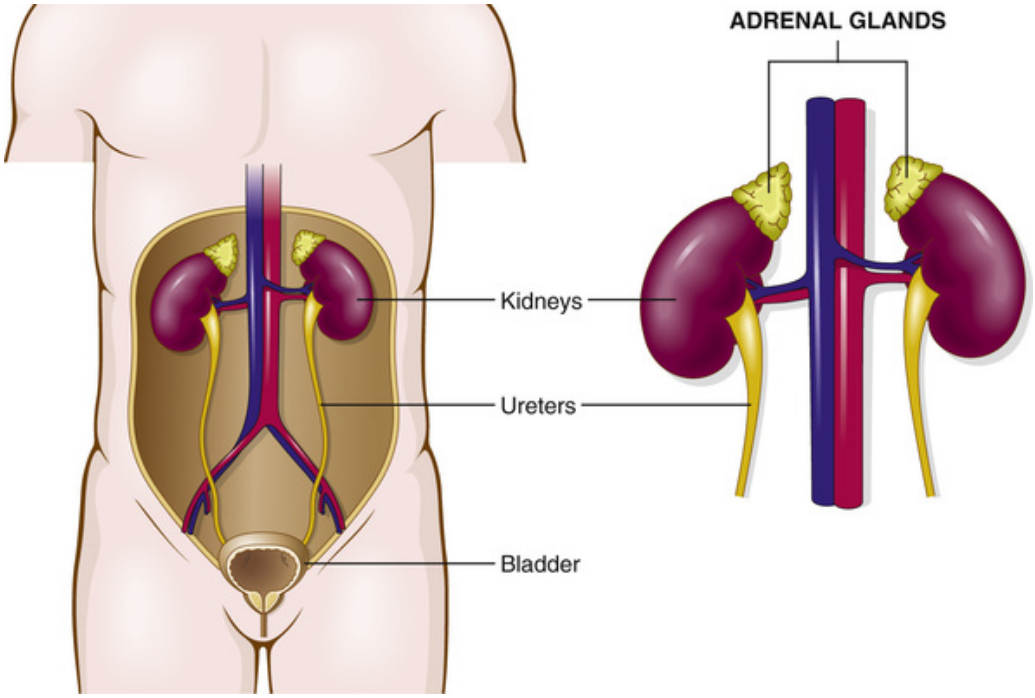


FIGURE 4-1 **Adrenal glands.** These are endocrine glands located above each kidney. One of the hormones they secrete is adrenaline (epinephrine). It causes bronchial tubes to widen, the heart to beat more rapidly and blood pressure to rise.

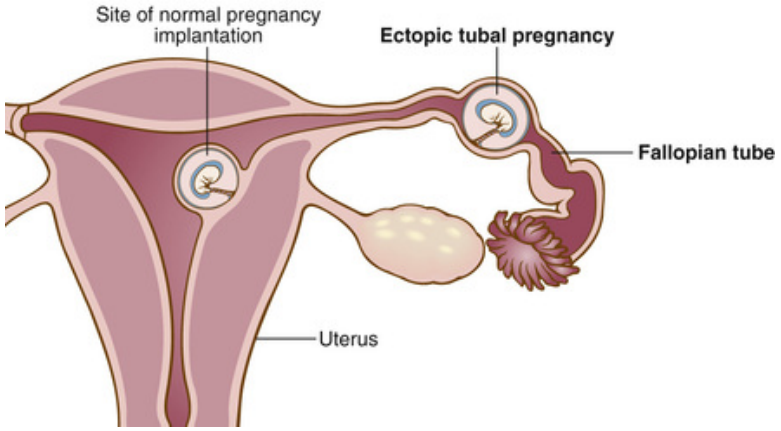


FIGURE 4-2 **Ectopic pregnancy.** Normal pregnancy implantation is in the upper portion of the uterus. Ectopic pregnancy occurs most commonly in a **fallopian tube** (i.e., tubal pregnancy). In this condition, the fetus is not viable. Surgery often is necessary to remove the ectopic tissue. Tubal surgery may damage a fallopian tube, and scar tissue can cause future pregnancy problems.

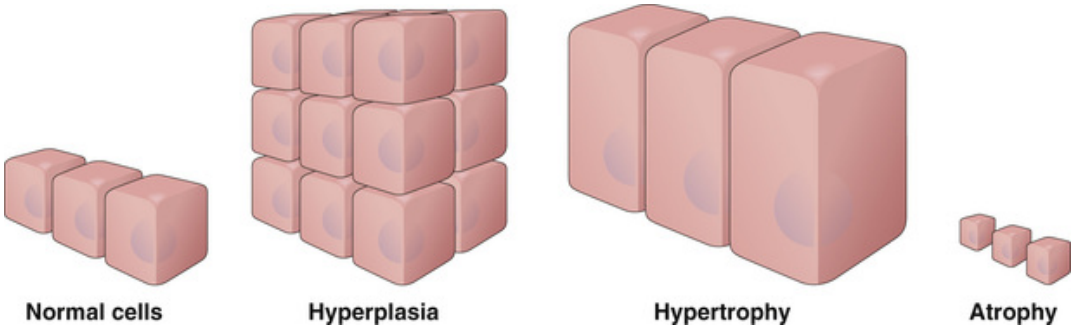


FIGURE 4-3 Differences between **normal cells, hyperplasia, hypertrophy,** and **atrophy.**

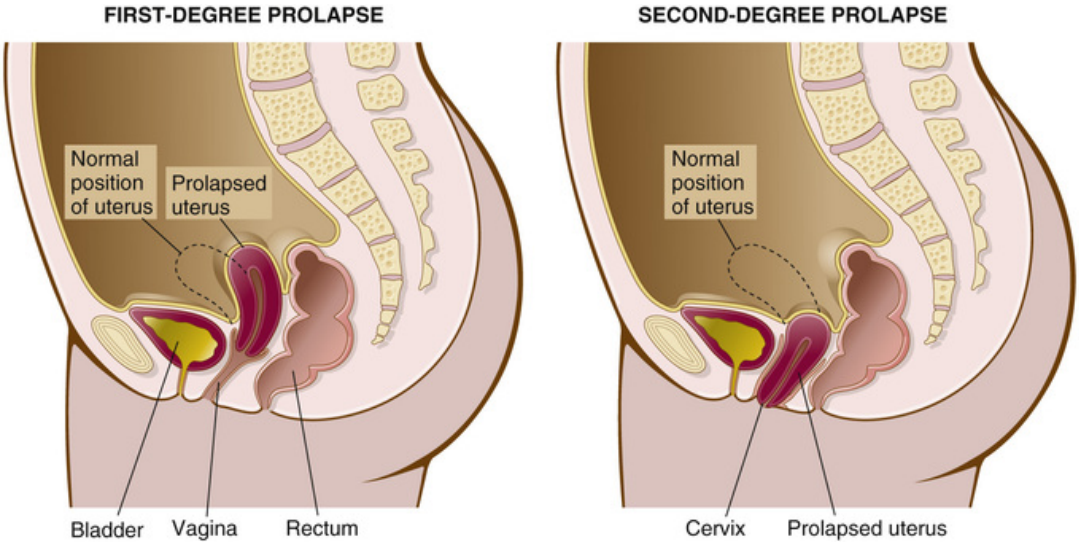


FIGURE 4-4 **Prolapse of the uterus**. In **first-degree prolapse,** the uterus descends into the vaginal canal. In **second-degree prolapse,** the body of the uterus is still within the vagina, but the cervix protrudes from the vaginal orifice (opening). In **third-degree prolapse** (*not pictured*), the entire uterus projects outside the orifice. As treatment, the uterus may be held in position by a plastic pessary (oval supporting object) that is inserted into the vagina. Some affected women may require hysterectomy (removal of the uterus).

FIGURE 4-5 **Prosthesis.** Amy Palmiero-Winters is the first female with a prosthetic leg to finish the Badwater 135, a 135-mile race from Badwater in Death Valley to Mount Whitney, California.

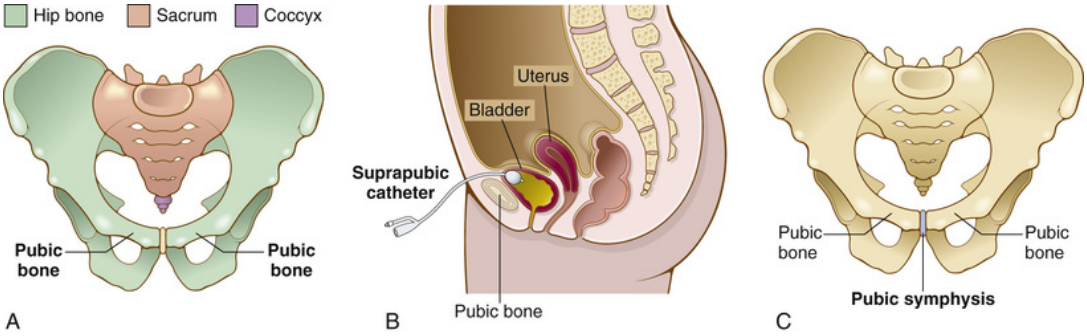


FIGURE 4-6 **A. Bones of the pelvic (hip) bone. B. Suprapubic catheter. C. Pubic symphysis**. This is the area in which the pubic bones have grown together.

FIGURE 4-7 Syndactyly. The foot on the left (*pale*) shows syndactyly (webbed toes). The foot on the right (*darker*) shows normal toes. Syndactyly is a hereditary, congenital anomaly of fingers or toes.

Sleep Apnea

Sleep apnea occurs when breathing suddenly stops during sleep. A CPAP (continuous positive airway pressure) machine is used to keep airways open.

Anti- and Ante-

Be careful not to confuse these prefixes. Pay close attention to their different pronunciations. **Anti-** is pronounced an-**tih**, and **ante-** is pronounced an-**te**.

Autoimmune Disease

In an **autoimmune disease,** the body makes antibodies against its own good cells and tissues, causing inflammation and injury. Examples of autoimmune disorders are **rheumatoid arthritis,** affecting joints; **celiac disease,** affecting the intestinal tract; and **Graves disease,** affecting the thyroid gland.

Peritoneal Dialysis

In peritoneal dialysis, a special fluid is inserted into the peritoneal cavity through a tube in the abdomen. Waste materials such as urea seep into the fluid from the blood during a period of time. The fluid and the wastes are then drained from the peritoneal cavity. See Figure 7-16 on page 223.

Signs and Symptoms

A **sign** is **an objective finding that is perceived by an examiner,** such as fever, rash, or hyperglycemia. A **symptom** (from Greek, *symptoma,* meaning that which happens) is **a subjective change in condition as perceived by the patient.** Examples of symptoms are loss of appetite, abdominal pain, and fatigue (tiredness). Both signs and symptoms are useful clues in the diagnosis of a disease, such as diabetes mellitus.

Intra-, Inter-, Infra-

Be careful not to confuse these prefixes: **intra-** means in, within, into; **inter-** means between; **infra-** means beneath, under.

Symbiosis

Symbiosis occurs when two organisms live together in close association, either for mutual benefit or not. Examples are:

- Bacteria in the intestines and the cells lining the intestines benefit each other.
- Parasites (tapeworms and fleas) live off another organism and are harmful to the host.

In psychiatry, symbiosis is a relationship between two people who are emotionally dependent on each other.

A Closer Look

Antigens and Antibodies; the Rh Condition

An **antigen**, usually a foreign substance (such as a poison, virus, or bacterium), stimulates the production of **antibodies.** Antibodies are protein substances made by white blood cells in response to the presence of foreign antigens. For example, the flu virus (antigen) enters the body, causing the production of antibodies in the bloodstream. These antibodies then bind to and mark for destruction the antigens (viruses) that produced them. The reaction between an antigen and an antibody is an **immune response** (immun/o means protection). See Figure 4-8. When you receive a **vaccine,** you actually are receiving dead or weakened antigens that stimulate white blood cells (lymphocytes) to make

antibodies. These antibodies remain in your blood to protect against those specific antigens when encountered in the future.

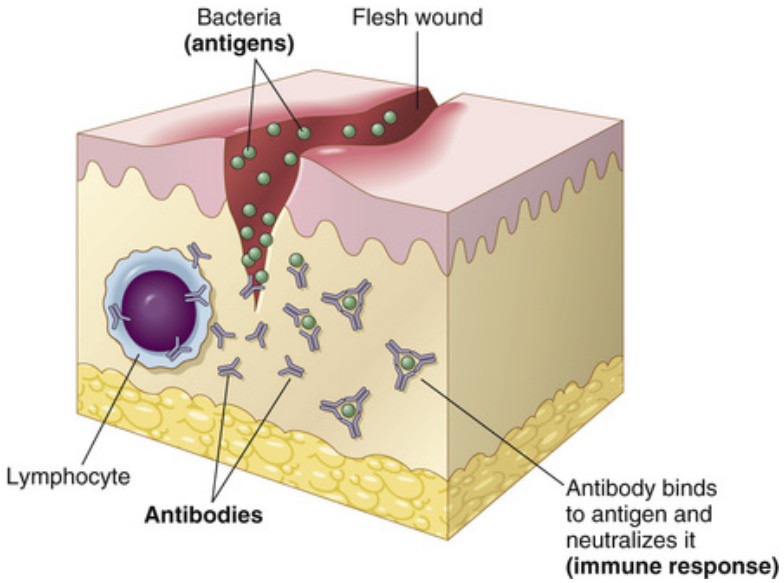


FIGURE 4-8 Immune response. When antigens (bacteria) enter the body through a flesh wound, antibodies are produced to destroy the antigens.

Another example of an antigen-antibody reaction is the **Rh condition.** A person who is Rh-positive (**Rh**$^+$) has a protein coating (antigen) on his or her red blood cells (RBCs). This specific antigen factor is something that the person is born with and is normal. People who are Rh-negative (**Rh**$^-$) have normal RBCs as well, but their red cells lack the Rh factor antigen.

If an Rh$^-$ woman and an Rh$^+$ man conceive an embryo, the embryo may be Rh$^-$ or Rh$^+$. A dangerous condition arises only when the embryo is Rh$^+$ (because this is different from the Rh$^-$ mother). During delivery of the first Rh$^+$ baby, some of the baby's blood cells containing Rh$^+$ antigens can escape into the mother's bloodstream. This sensitizes the mother so that she produces a low level of antibodies to the Rh$^+$ antigen. Because this occurs at delivery, the first baby is generally not affected and is normal at birth. Sensitization can also occur after a miscarriage, abortion, or blood transfusions (with Rh$^+$ blood).

Difficulties arise with the second Rh$^+$ pregnancy. If this embryo also is Rh$^+$, during pregnancy the mother's acquired antibodies (from the first pregnancy) enter the embryo's bloodstream. These antibodies attack and destroy the embryo's Rh$^+$ RBCs (hemolysis). The affected infant is born with **hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN).**

One of the clinical signs of HDN is **jaundice** (yellow skin pigmentation). Jaundice results from excessive destruction of RBCs. When RBCs break down, the hemoglobin within the cells produces **bilirubin** (a chemical pigment). High levels of bilirubin in the bloodstream (hyperbilirubinemia) cause jaundice. To prevent bilirubin from affecting the brain cells of the infant, newborns are treated with exposure to bright lights (phototherapy). The light decomposes the bilirubin, which is then excreted from the infant's body.

Physicians administer Rh immunoglobulin to an Rh^- woman within 72 hours after each Rh^+ delivery, abortion, or miscarriage. The globulin binds to Rh^+ cells that escape into the mother's circulation and prevents formation of Rh^+ antibodies. This protects future babies from developing HDN. Figure 4-9 reviews the Rh condition as an example of an antigen-antibody action.

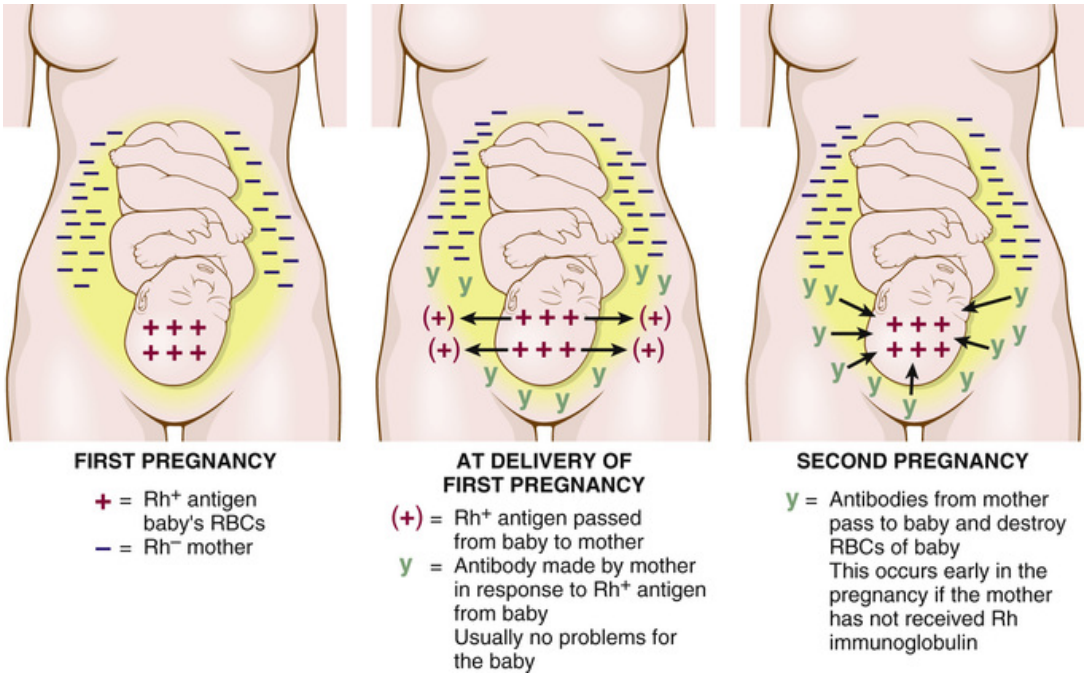

FIRST PREGNANCY
+ = Rh+ antigen baby's RBCs
– = Rh– mother
AT DELIVERY OF FIRST PREGNANCY
(+) = Rh+ antigen passed from baby to mother
y = Antibody made by mother in response to Rh+ antigen from baby
Usually no problems for the baby
SECOND PREGNANCY
y = Antibodies from mother pass to baby and destroy RBCs of baby
This occurs early in the pregnancy if the mother has not received Rh immunoglobulin

FIGURE 4-9 **Rh condition** as an example of an antigen-antibody reaction.

Congenital Anomaly

An anomaly is an irregularity in a structure or organ. Examples of **congenital anomalies** (those that an infant is born with) include webbed fingers or toes (syndactyly), heart defects, and clubbed feet. See Figure 4-10A. Some congenital anomalies are hereditary (passed to the infant through chromosomes from the father or mother, or both), whereas others are produced by factors present during pregnancy. For example, when a pregnant woman consumes high levels

of alcohol during pregnancy, there is often a pattern of physical and mental defects in her infant at birth. See Figure 4-10B.

FIGURE 4-10 **Congenital anomalies. A, Clubfoot** is a hereditary congenital anomaly. The "clubbing" may affect one or both feet. **B, Fetal alcohol syndrome (FAS)** is a congenital anomaly caused by environmental factors during pregnancy. Notice the facial features of FAS: skin folds in corners of eyes; long, smooth groove between the nose and upper lip; thin upper lip; and flat nasal bridge.

Recombinant DNA

Recombinant DNA technology is the process of taking a gene (a region of DNA) from one organism and inserting it into the DNA of another organism. For example, recombinant techniques are used to manufacture insulin outside the body. The gene that codes for insulin (i.e., contains the recipe for making insulin) is cut out of a human chromosome (using special enzymes) and transferred into a bacterium, such as *Escherichia coli* (*E. coli*). The bacterium then contains the gene for making human insulin and, because it multiplies very rapidly, can produce insulin in large quantities. Diabetic patients, unable to make their own insulin, can use this synthetic product (see Figure 4-11).
CRISPR is an acronym for new DNA editing tool that changes DNA sequences to turn off genes or to replace them with new versions. CRISPR means clustered regularly-interspaced short palindromic repeats!

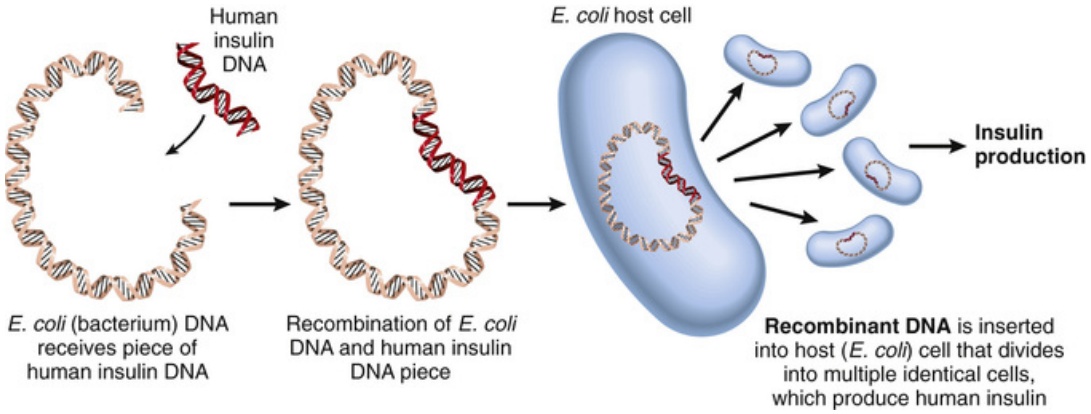

Human insulin DNA
E. coli host cell
Insulin production
E. coli (bacterium) DNA receives piece of human insulin DNA
Recombination of E. coli DNA and human insulin DNA piece
Recombinant DNA is inserted into host (E. coli) cell that divides into multiple identical cells, which produce human insulin

FIGURE 4-11 Recombinant DNA and insulin production.

Syndromes

A **syndrome** (from the Greek *dromos*, meaning a course for running) is a group of signs or symptoms that appear together to produce a typical clinical picture of a disease or inherited abnormality. For example, **Reye syndrome** is characterized by vomiting, swelling of the brain, increased intracranial pressure, hypoglycemia, and dysfunction of the liver. It may occur in children after a viral infection that has been treated with aspirin.

Marfan syndrome is an inherited connective tissue disorder marked by a tall, thin body type with long, "spidery" fingers and toes (arachnodactyly), elongated head, and heart, blood vessel, and ophthalmic abnormalities (see Figure 4-12).

FIGURE 4-12 **Marfan syndrome. A** and **B** show people with Marfan's. Note the unusually tall body type and long, spidery fingers. The Olympic swimmer Michael Phelps (not pictured) has Marfan syndrome. His height is 6′4″ and his arm span is 6′7″.

Transurethral Resection of the Prostate Gland

In **transurethral resection of the prostate gland** (**TURP**), a portion of the prostate gland is removed with an instrument (resectoscope) passed through (**trans-**) the urethra. The procedure is indicated when prostatic tissue increases (hyperplasia) and interferes with urination. This condition is called **benign prostatic hyperplasia** or BPH. Figure 4-13 shows a TURP procedure.

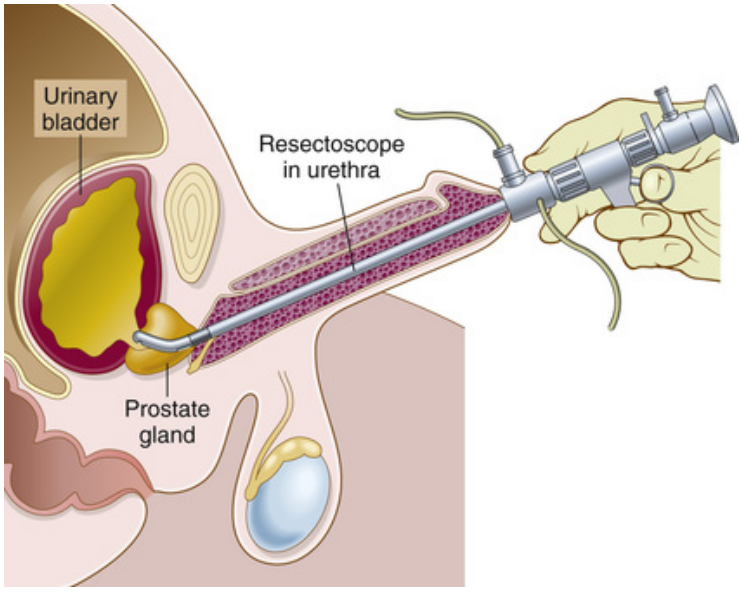


FIGURE 4-13 Transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP). The resectoscope contains a light, valves for controlling irrigated fluid, and an electrical loop that cuts tissue and seals blood vessels.

Ultrasonography

Ultrasonography is a diagnostic technique using ultrasound waves (inaudible sound waves) to produce an image of an organ or tissue. A machine records ultrasonic echoes as they pass through different types of tissue. X-rays are not used! **Echocardiograms** are ultrasound images of the heart. Figure 4-14 shows a fetal ultrasound image **(sonogram).**

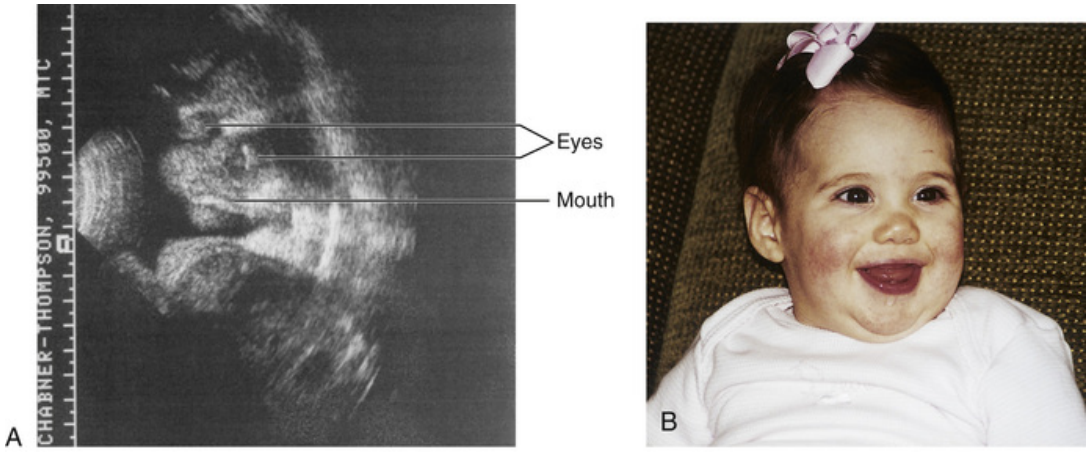


FIGURE 4-14 Ultrasonography. **A,** Notice the facial features of this beautiful 30-week-old fetus, in a (very) early "baby picture" of my granddaughter, Beatrix Bess Thompson! **B,** Bebe, smiling, at 3 months of age. (Courtesy Dr. Elizabeth Chabner Thompson.)

Practical Applications

Check your answers with the Answers to Practical Applications on page 126. You should find helpful explanations there.

A Useful Weapon Against Anemia

Anemia is a major problem for many patients who are in **chronic renal failure.** This is because as renal function decreases, the kidneys secrete less **erythropoietin**, a hormone that stimulates the production of red blood cells. Under normal conditions, when the body senses a decrease in red blood cells or a deficiency in the supply of oxygen, more erythropoietin is produced, thus increasing the number of **erythrocytes**.

Epoetin alfa (Epogen or Procrit) is a man-made form of human erythropoietin. It is genetically engineered through **recombinant DNA** technology and stimulates bone marrow to make and release red blood cells. As the **hematocrit** rises, patients experience increased energy, appetite, and greater stamina.

The FDA has approved Epogen for treating anemia in **dialysis** patients and in patients who are in chronic renal failure, but not on dialysis. It is also effective in counteracting the **myelosuppressive** effects of **chemotherapy**. Other **hematopoietic** drugs produced with recombinant DNA technology are Neupogen (filgrastim) for neutropenia and thrombopoietin (TPO) for thrombocytopenia.

1. Anemia is a major problem for patients in chronic renal failure because

a. the kidney overproduces erythropoietin
b. patients may go into heart failure and lose consciousness
c. patients produce less of a hormone that stimulates production of erythrocytes

2. The type of erythropoietin that is used for these patients is
   a. made in a laboratory by using pieces of DNA that code for the hormone
   b. made from the blood of other patients
   c. given by bone marrow transfusion
3. The hematocrit is
   a. a measurement of the volume of white and red blood cells
   b. the percentage of red blood cells in a volume of blood
   c. lower in people with greater stamina and energy levels
4. Patients go on dialysis when
   a. they are in chronic renal failure
   b. they have a low hematocrit
   c. they are undergoing chemotherapy
5. Side effects of myelosuppressiive chemotherapy may be treated by
   a. cytotoxic agents
   b. Epogen, Neupogen, and thrombopoietin
   c. hemodialysis or peritoneal dialysis

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, pages 125–126.

A **Give the meanings of the following prefixes.**

1. ante- _____
2. ab- _____
3. ana- _____
4. anti- _____
5. a-, an- _____
6. ad- _____
7. auto- _____
8. cata- _____

9. brady-
_____

10. contra-
_____

11. bi- _____

12. con- _____

B **Match the listed terms with the meanings that follow.**

adductor
adrenal
analysis
anoxia
anteflexion
antepartum
antisepsis
apnea
bilateral
bradycardia
congenital anomaly
contralateral

1. bending forward
_____
_____

2. muscle that carries the limb toward the body
_____
_____

3. before birth
_____
_____

4. slow heartbeat

_____

_____

5. gland located near (above) each kidney

_____

_____

6. absence of breathing

_____

_____

7. pertaining to the opposite side

_____

_____

8. against infection

_____

_____

9. to separate

_____

_____

10. pertaining to two (both) sides

_____

_____

11. condition of no oxygen in tissues

_____

_____

12. irregularity present at birth

_____

_____

C **Select from the listed terms to match the descriptions that follow.**

anabolism

antibiotic

antibody

antigen

antitoxin

autoimmune disease

catabolism

congenital anomaly

contraindication

1. chemical substance, such as erythromycin (-mycin = mold), made from molds and used against bacterial life

   _____
   _____

2. process of burning food (breaking it down) and releasing the energy stored in the food

   _____
   _____

3. reason that a doctor would advise against taking a specific medication

   _____
   _____

4. disorder in which the body's own leukocytes make antibodies that damage its own good tissue

   _____
   _____

5. a foreign agent (virus or bacterium) that causes production of antibodies

   _____
   _____

6. an antibody that acts against poisons that enter the body

   _____

_

7. process of building up proteins in cells by putting together small pieces of proteins called amino acids

_____
_____

8. protein made by lymphocytes in response to the presence in the blood of a specific antigen

_____
_____

D **Give the meanings of the following prefixes.**

1. ec- _____
2. dys- _____
3. de- _____
4. dia- _____
5. hemi- _____
6. hypo- _____
7. epi- _____
8. hyper-

_____

9. endo- _____
10. eu- _____
11. in- _____
12. inter-

_____

13. intra-

_____

14. infra-

_____

15. macro-
_____

16. micro-
_____

E **Complete the following terms, based on their meanings as given.**

1. normal thyroid function: _____ thyroid
2. painful breathing: _____ pnea
3. pregnancy that is out of place (outside the uterus): _____ topic
4. instrument to visually examine within the body: endo
_____
5. removal of half of the tongue: _____ glossectomy
6. good (exaggerated) feeling (of well-being): _____ phoria
7. pertaining to within the windpipe: endo
_____
8. blood condition of less than normal sugar: _____ glycemia
9. condition (congenital anomaly) of large head: _____ cephaly
10. pertaining to between the ribs: _____ costal
11. pertaining to within a vein: intra
_____
12. condition of abnormal formation (of cells): dys
_____

13. condition of excessive formation (numbers of cells): _____ plasia
14. structure (membrane) that forms the inner lining of the heart: endo _____
15. pertaining to below the ribs: infra _____
16. blood condition of excessive amount of sugar: hyper _____
17. A group of congenital disorders involving abnormal development of muscle mass and strength is: muscular _____
18. Zika virus infection during pregnancy can be a cause of decreased development of an infant's head and brain: _____ cephaly

F **Match the listed terms with the meanings that follow.**

dehydration
dialysis
diarrhea
exophthalmos (proptosis)
incision
insomnia
malaise
malignant
metamorphosis
metastasis
microscope
pancytopenia

1. vague feeling of bodily discomfort

_____

2. inability to sleep

_____

3. lack of water

_____

4. spread of a cancerous tumor to a secondary organ or tissue

_____

5. instrument used to view small objects

_____

6. a cut into an organ or tissue

_____

7. outward bulging of the eyeballs

_____

8. condition of change in shape or form

_____

9. watery discharge of wastes from the colon

_____

10. deficiency of all (blood) cells

_____

11. separation of wastes from the blood by using a machine that does the job of the kidney

_____

_____

12. harmful, cancerous

_____

_____

G **Give the meanings of the following prefixes.**

1. mal- _____
2. pan- _____
3. per- _____
4. meta- _____
5. para- _____
6. peri- _____
7. poly- _____
8. post- _____
9. pro- _____
10. pre- _____
11. sub- _____
12. supra-

_____

13. re- _____
14. retro-

_____

15. tachy-

_____

16. syn- _____
17. uni- _____

18. trans-
_____

19. neo- _____

20. epi- _____

H **<u>Underline</u> the prefix in the following terms, and give the meaning of the entire term.**

1. pericardium
_____
_____

2. percutaneous
_____
_____

3. retroperitoneal
_____
_____

4. suprapubic
_____
_____

5. polyneuritis
_____
_____

6. retroflexion
_____
_____

7. transurethral
_____
_____

8. subcutaneous
_____
_____

9. tachypnea

_____
_____

10. unilateral

_____
_____

11. prosthesis

_____
_____

12. bilateral

_____
_____

13. symptom

_____
_____

14. syndrome

_____
_____

I **Match the listed terms with the meanings that follow.**

adrenal
neoplasm
paralysis
parathyroid
prodrome
prolapse
recombinant DNA
relapse
remission
syndactyly

syndrome

ultrasonography

1. return of a disease or its symptoms

   _____
   _____

2. loss of movement in muscles

   _____
   _____

3. congenital anomaly in which fingers or toes are webbed (formed together)

   _____
   _____

4. four endocrine glands that are located near (behind) another endocrine gland in the neck

   _____
   _____

5. glands that are located above the kidneys

   _____
   _____

6. symptoms that come before the actual illness

   _____
   _____

7. technique of transferring genetic material from one organism into another

   _____
   _____

8. sliding, sagging downward or forward

   _____
   _____

9. new growth or tumor

   _____

_____

10. process of using sound waves to create an image of organs and structures in the body

_____

_____

11. group of signs and symptoms that occur together and indicate a particular disorder

_____

_____

12. symptoms lessen and a patient feels better

_____

_____

J **Complete the following terms, based on their meanings as given.**

1. pertaining to new birth: neo

_____

_____

2. after death: post

_____

_____

3. spread of a cancerous tumor: meta

_____

_____

4. branching into two: bi

_____

_____

5. increase in development (size of cells): hyper

_____

_____

6. pertaining to a chemical that works against bacterial life: _____ biotic
7. hand bones (beyond the wrist): _____ carpals
8. protein produced by leukocytes to fight foreign organisms: anti _____
9. group of symptoms that occur together: _____ drome
10. surface or skin tissue of the body: _____ thelium

K **Circle the correct** bold **term to complete the following sentences.**

1. Dr. Tate felt that Mrs. Snow's condition of thrombocytopenia was a clear **(analysis, contraindication, synthesis)** to performing elective surgery.
2. Medical science was revolutionized by the introduction of **(antigens, antibiotics, antibodies)** in the 1940s. Now some infections can be treated with only one dose.
3. Robert's 82-year-old grandfather complained of **(malaise, dialysis, insomnia)** despite taking the sleeping medication that his doctor prescribed.
4. During her pregnancy, Ms. Payne described pressure on her **(pituitary gland, parathyroid gland, pubic symphysis),** making it difficult for her to find a comfortable position, even when seated.
5. Many times, people with diabetes accidentally take too much insulin. This results in lowering their blood sugar so much that they may be admitted to the emergency

department with (**hyperplasia, hypoglycemia, hyperglycemia**).

6. Before his migraine headaches began, John noticed changes in his eyesight, such as bright spots, zigzag lines, and double vision. His physician told him that these were **(symbiotic, exophthalmic, prodromal)** symptoms.
7. After hiking in the Grand Canyon without an adequate water supply, Julie experienced **(hyperglycemia, dehydration, hypothyroidism).**
8. At 65 years of age, Paul Smith often felt fullness in his urinary bladder but had difficulty urinating. He visited his **(cardiologist, nephrologist, urologist),** who examined his prostate gland and diagnosed **(hyperplasia, atrophy, ischemia).** The doctor advised **(intracostal, transurethral, peritoneal)** resection of Paul's prostate.
9. After running the Boston Marathon, Elizabeth felt nauseated and dizzy. She realized that she was experiencing **(malaise, euphoria, hypoglycemia)** and drank a sports drink containing sugar, which made her feel better.
10. While she was taking an antibiotic that reacted with sunlight, Ruth's physician advised her that sunbathing was **(unilateral, contraindicated, contralateral)** and might cause a serious sunburn.
11. Puerperal (pertaining to childbirth) fever was an iatrogenic infection; it was carried from one woman to another by the doctor before the days of **(antigens, antibodies, antisepsis).**
12. Dysplastic nevi (abnormal pigmented lesions or moles) on a patient's skin may be a **(precancerous, metastatic,**

unilateral) sign of malignant skin cancer called melanoma.

13. Nerve cells of the brain may **(relapse, hypertrophy, atrophy)** in old age because of ischemia caused by restricted blood flow.
14. Changes in cell growth resulting in cells that differ in size, shape, and appearance are the result of chronic inflammation and irritation. When the condition occurs in the uterine cervix, it is known as cervical **(prolapse, paralysis, dysplasia).**

Answers to Exercises

A

1. before, forward
2. away from
3. up, apart
4. against
5. no, not, without
6. toward
7. self, own
8. down
9. slow
10. against, opposite
11. two
12. together, with

B

1. anteflexion
2. adductor
3. antepartum
4. bradycardia
5. adrenal
6. apnea
7. contralateral
8. antisepsis
9. analysis
10. bilateral
11. anoxia
12. congenital anomaly

C

1. antibiotic
2. catabolism
3. contraindication
4. autoimmune disease
5. antigen
6. antitoxin
7. anabolism
8. antibody

D

1. out, outside
2. abnormal, bad, difficult, painful. **HINT:** Think of the word dysfunctional.
3. down, lack of
4. through, complete
5. half
6. deficient, under
7. upon, on, above
8. excessive, above, beyond
9. in, within
10. good, well
11. in, not
12. between
13. within
14. below, inferior
15. large
16. small

E

1. euthyroid
2. dyspnea
3. ectopic
4. endoscope
5. hemiglossectomy

6. euphoria
7. endotracheal
8. hypoglycemia
9. macrocephaly
10. intercostal
11. intravenous
12. dysplasia
13. hyperplasia
14. endocardium
15. infracostal
16. hyperglycemia
17. dystrophy
18. microcephaly

F

1. malaise
2. insomnia
3. dehydration
4. metastasis
5. microscope
6. incision
7. exophthalmos (proptosis)
8. metamorphosis
9. diarrhea

10. pancytopenia
11. dialysis
12. malignant

G

1. bad
2. all
3. through
4. change, beyond
5. near, beside, abnormal
6. surrounding
7. many, much
8. after, behind
9. before, forward
10. before, in front of
11. under
12. above
13. back, again
14. behind, backward
15. fast
16. together, with
17. one
18. across, through
19. new

20. above, upon, on

H

1. pericardium—membrane surrounding the heart
2. percutaneous—pertaining to through the skin
3. retroperitoneal—pertaining to behind the peritoneum
4. suprapubic—above the pubic bone
5. polyneuritis—inflammation of many nerves
6. retroflexion—bending backward
7. transurethral—pertaining to through the urethra
8. subcutaneous—pertaining to below the skin
9. tachypnea—rapid, fast breathing
10. unilateral—pertaining to one side
11. prosthesis—artificial limb or part of the body (literally, to put or place forward)
12. bilateral—both sides
13. symptom—subjective change of condition as observed by a patient
14. syndrome—group of objective findings that characterize an abnormal condition

I

1. relapse
2. paralysis
3. syndactyly

4. parathyroid
5. adrenal
6. prodrome
7. recombinant DNA
8. prolapse
9. neoplasm
10. ultrasonography
11. syndrome
12. remission

J

1. neonatal
2. postmortem
3. metastasis
4. bifurcation
5. hypertrophy
6. antibiotic
7. metacarpals
8. antibody
9. syndrome
10. epithelium

K

1. contraindication

2. antibiotics

3. insomnia

4. pubic symphysis

5. hypoglycemia

6. prodromal

7. dehydration

8. urologist; hyperplasia; transurethral

9. hypoglycemia

10. contraindicated

11. antisepsis

12. precancerous

13. atrophy

14. dysplasia

Answers to Practical Applications

1. C

2. A

3. B

4. B

5. B

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The CAPITAL letters indicate the accented syllable.

The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website

(http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
abductor	ab-DUK-tor
abnormal	ab-NOR-mal
adductor	ah-DUK-tor
adrenal glands	ah-DRE-nal glanz
anabolism	ah-NAB-o-liz-im
analysis	ah-NAL-ih-sis
anoxia	ah-NOK-se-ah
ante cibum (a.c.)	AN-te SE-bum
anteflexion	an-te-FLEK-shun
antepartum	an-te-PAR-tum
antibiotic	an-tih-bi-OT-ik
antibody	AN-tih-bod-e
antigen	AN-tih-jen
antisepsis	an-tih-SEP-sus
antitoxin	an-tih-TOX-in
apnea	AP-ne-ah
autoimmune disease	aw-to-ih-MUNE dih-ZEEZ
benign	beh-NINE
bifurcation	bi-fur-KA-shun
bilateral	bi-LAT-er-al
bradycardia	bra-de-KAR-de-ah
catabolism	kah-TAB-o-liz-im
congenital anomaly	con-JEN-ih-al ah-NOM-ah-le
connective tissue	kon-NEK-tiv TIH-shu
contraindication	kon-trah-in-dih-KA-shun
contralateral	kon-trah-LAT-er-al
dehydration	de-hi-DRA-shun
dialysis	di-AL-ih-sis
diameter	di-AM-eh-ter
diarrhea	di-ah-RE-ah
dysentery	DIS-en-ter-e
dysplasia	dis-PLA-ze-ah
dyspnea	DISP-ne-ah
dystrophy	DIS-tro-fe
ectopic pregnancy	ek-TOP-ik PREG-nan-se
endocardium	en-do-KAR-de-um
endoscope	EN-do-skope
endotracheal	en-do-TRA-ke-al
epithelium	ep-ih-THE-le-um
euphoria	u-FOR-e-ah

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
euthyroid	u-THI-royd
exophthalmos	ek-sof-THAL-mos
hemiglossectomy	hem-e-glos-SEK-to-me
hyperglycemia	hi-per-gli-SE-me-ah
hyperplasia	hi-per-PLA-ze-ah
hypertension	hi-per-TEN-shun
hypertrophy	hi-PER-tro-fe
hypodermic injection	hi-po-DER-mik in-JEK-shun
hypoglycemia	hi-po-gli-SE-me-ah
incision	in-SIZH-un
infracostal	in-frah-KOS-tal
insomniac	in-SOM-ne-ak
intercostal	in-ter-KOS-tal
intravenous	in-trah-VE-nus
macrocephaly	mak-ro-SEH-fah-le
malaise	mal-AYZ
malignant	mah-LIG-nant
metacarpal bones	met-ah-KAR-pal bones
metamorphosis	met-ah-MOR-fuh-sis
metastasis	meh-TAS-tah-sis
microcephaly	mi-kro-SEH-fah-le
microscope	MI-kro-skope
neonatal	ne-o-NA-tal
neoplasm	NE-o-plazm
pancytopenia	pan-si-to-PE-ne-ah
paralysis	pah-RAL-ih-sis
parathyroid glands	par-ah-THI-royd glanz
percutaneous	per-ku-TA-ne-us
pericardium	peh-rih-KAR-de-um
polymorphonuclear	pol-e-mor-fo-NU-kle-ar
polyneuritis	pol-e-nu-RI-tis
postmortem	post-MOR-tem
postpartum	post-PAR-tum
precancerous	pre-KAN-ser-us
prenatal	pre-NA-tal
prodrome	PRO-drohm
prolapse	PRO-laps
prosthesis	pros-THE-sis
recombinant DNA	re-KOM-bih-nant DNA
relapse	RE-laps

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
remission	re-MIH-shun
retroflexion	reh-tro-FLEK-shun
retroperitoneal	reh-tro-peh-rih-to-NE-al
subcutaneous	sub-ku-TA-ne-us
suprapubic	su-prah-PU-bik
symbiosis	sim-be-O-sis
symmetry	SIM-met-re
symphysis	SIM-fih-sis
symptom	SIMP-tum
syndactyly	sin-DAK-tih-le
syndrome	SIN-drohm
synthesis	SIN-theh-sis
tachypnea	tah-KIP-ne-ah
transfusion	tranz-FU-zhun
transurethral	tranz-u-RE-thral
ultrasonography	ul-trah-so-NOG-rah-fe
unilateral	u-nih-LAT-er-al

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of each word part in the space provided, and test yourself. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING
a-, an-	_____
ab-	_____
ad-	_____
ana-	_____
ante-	_____
anti-	_____
auto-	_____
bi-	_____
brady-	_____
cata-	_____
con-	_____
contra-	_____
de-	_____
dia-	_____
dys-	_____
ec-	_____
en-, endo-	_____
epi-	_____
eu-	_____
ex-	_____
hemi-	_____
hyper-	_____
hypo-	_____
in-	_____
infra-	_____
inter-	_____
intra-	_____
macro-	_____
mal-	_____
meta-	_____
micro-	_____
neo-	_____
pan-	_____
para-	_____
per-	_____
peri-	_____
poly-	_____
post-	_____
pre-	_____
pro-	_____

PREFIX	MEANING
pros-	_____
re-	_____
retro-	_____
sub-	_____
supra-	_____
syn-, sym-	_____
tachy-	_____
trans-	_____
ultra-	_____
uni-	_____

Prefixes with Similar Meanings

PREFIX	MEANING
a-, an-, in-	_____
ante-, pre-, pro-	_____
anti-, contra-	_____
con-, syn-, sym-	_____
de-, cata-	_____
dia-, per-, trans-	_____
dys-, mal-	_____
ec-, ecto-, ex-	_____
endo-, in-, intra-	_____
epi-, hyper-, supra-	_____
hypo-, infra-, sub-	_____
re-, retro-, post-	_____
ultra-, meta-	_____

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
carp/o	_____
cost/o	_____
cutane/o	_____
dactyl/o	_____
duct/o	_____
flex/o	_____
gloss/o	_____
glyc/o	_____
immun/o	_____
later/o	_____
morph/o	_____
mort/o	_____
nat/i	_____
necr/o	_____
norm/o	_____
ophthalm/o	_____
ox/o	_____
pub/o	_____
ren/o	_____
seps/o	_____
somn/o	_____
son/o	_____
tens/o	_____
the/o	_____
thyr/o	_____
top/o	_____
tox/o	_____
trache/o	_____
urethr/o	_____
ven/o	_____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-crine	_____
-drome	_____
-fusion	_____
-gen	_____
-lapse	_____
-lysis	_____
-meter	_____
-mission	_____
-or	_____
-partum	_____
-phoria	_____
-physis	_____
-plasia	_____
-plasm	_____
-pnea	_____
-ptom	_____
-ptosis	_____
-rrhea	_____
-stasis	_____
-trophy	_____

CHAPTER 5

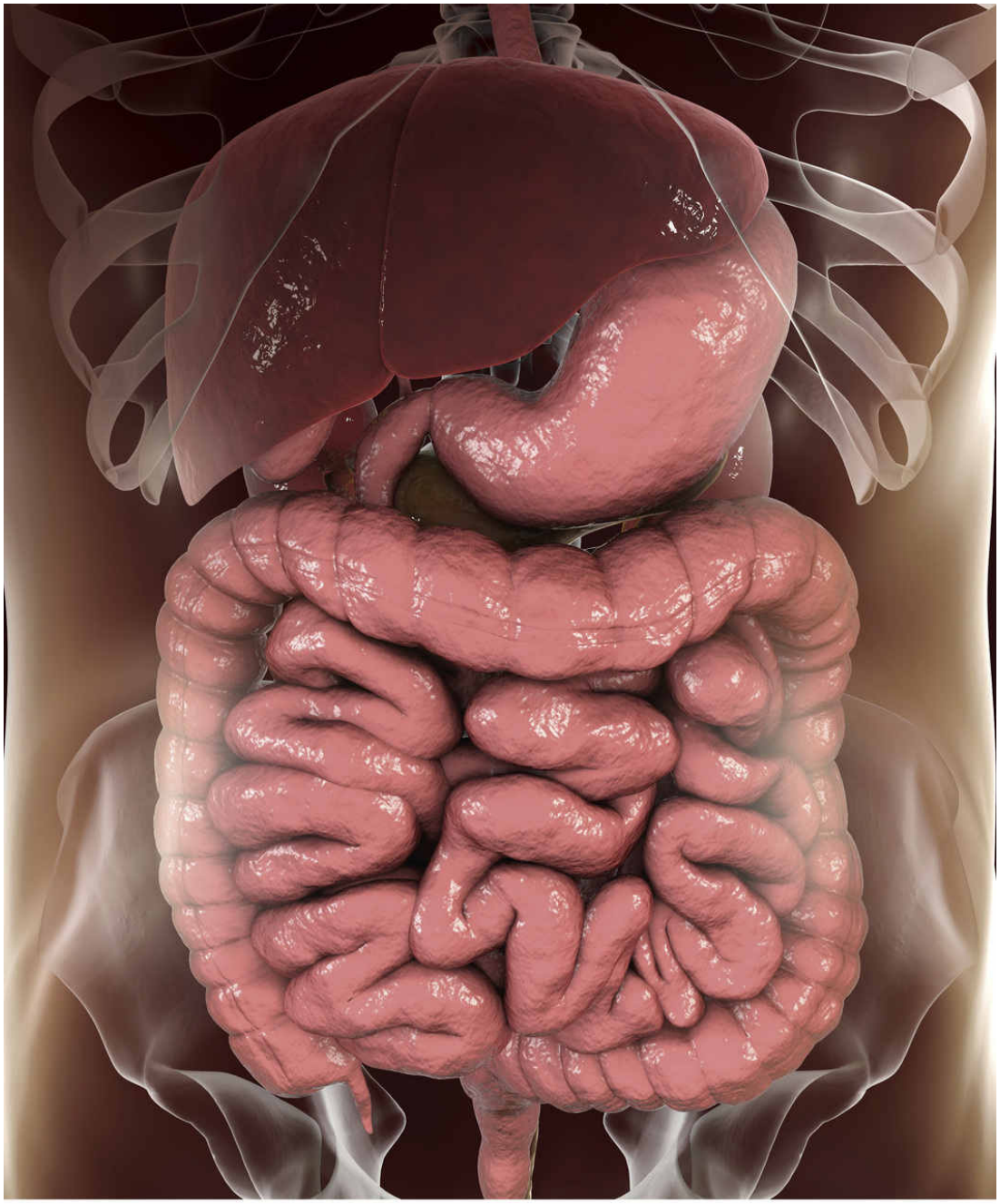
Digestive System

CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 132
Anatomy and Physiology 132
Vocabulary 142
Terminology 145
Pathology of the Digestive System 151
In Person: Living with Crohn's 162
Exercises 163
Answers to Exercises 171
Pronunciation of Terms 173

CHAPTER GOALS

- Name the organs of the digestive system and describe their locations and functions.
- Define combining forms for organs and know the meaning of related terminology.
- Describe signs, symptoms, and disease conditions affecting the digestive system.



Introduction

The digestive system is divided between Chapters 5 and 6. Chapter 5 covers the anatomy, physiology, pathology, and basic terminology of the system. Chapter 6 introduces additional terminology and a review of digestive system

terms, plus laboratory tests, clinical procedures, and abbreviations. My reason for not combining the chapters is that I did not want to overwhelm you with an extraordinarily long chapter so early in your study. In my own teaching, I find that my students are grateful for this separation, and especially for the breather and review of terminology in Chapter 6.

My choice to begin with the digestive system is based on a perception that this body system (resembling a long conveyor belt with the mouth at the entrance and anus at the exit) is one of the more straightforward and easiest to understand. Keep in mind, however, that the book is organized so that you may begin study of the body systems with any chapter to create the order that best reflects your interests.

The digestive or **gastrointestinal tract** begins with the mouth, where food enters, and ends with the anus, where solid waste material leaves the body. The four functions of the system are **ingestion, digestion, absorption,** and **elimination.**

First, complex food material taken into the mouth is **ingested**. Second, it is **digested,** or broken down, mechanically and chemically as it travels through the gastrointestinal tract. Digestive **enzymes** speed up chemical reactions and aid the breakdown (digestion) of complex nutrients. Complex proteins are digested to simpler **amino acids**; complicated sugars are reduced to simple sugars, such as **glucose**; and large fat molecules (**triglycerides**) are broken down to simpler substances such as **fatty acids.** Digestion occurs in the mouth, stomach, and small intestine.

Third, through **absorption,** nutrients from digested food pass through the lining cells or epithelium of the small intestine and into the bloodstream. Nutrients then travel to all cells of the body. Cells then break down nutrients in the presence of oxygen to release energy. Cells also use amino acid nutrients to build up large protein molecules needed for growth and development. In addition, fat molecules are absorbed into lymphatic vessels from the intestine.

The fourth function of the digestive system is **elimination** of the solid waste materials that cannot be absorbed into the bloodstream. The large intestine concentrates these solid wastes, called **feces,** and the wastes finally pass out of the body through the anus.

Anatomy and Physiology

Oral Cavity

The gastrointestinal tract begins with the **oral cavity.** Oral means pertaining to the mouth (or/o). Label Figure 5-1 as you learn the major parts of the oral cavity.

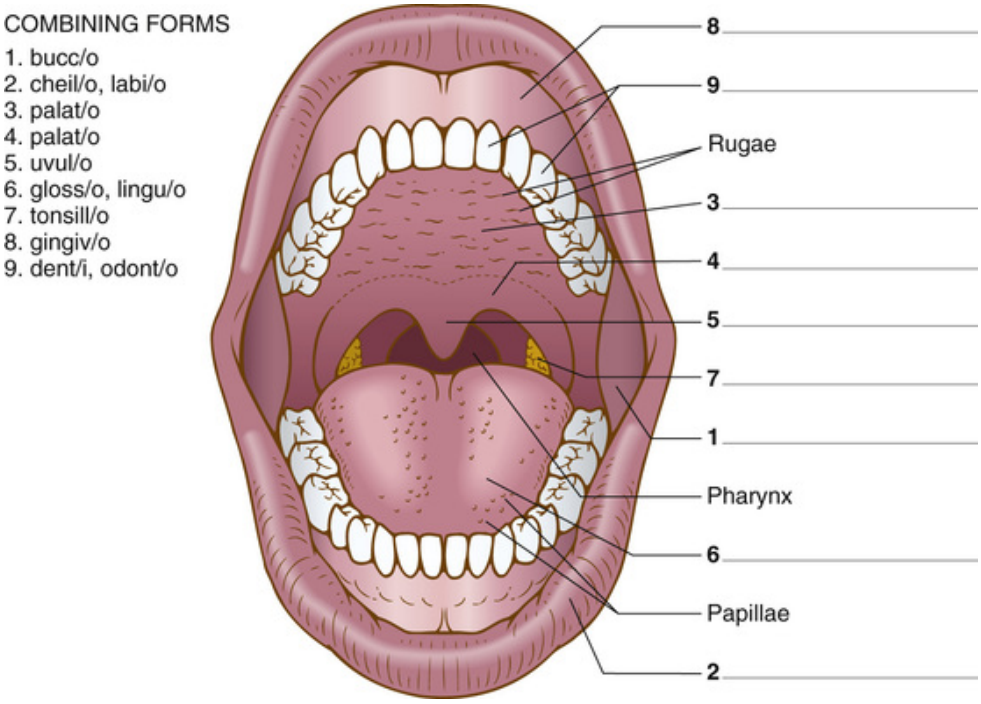


FIGURE 5-1 Oral cavity.

The **cheeks** [1] form the walls of the oval-shaped oral cavity, and the **lips** [2] surround the opening to the cavity.

The **hard palate** [3] forms the anterior portion of the roof of the mouth, and the muscular **soft palate** [4] lies posterior to it. **Rugae** are irregular ridges in the mucous membrane covering the anterior portion of the hard palate. The **uvula** [5], a small soft tissue projection, hangs from the soft palate. It aids production of sounds and speech.

The **tongue** [6] extends across the floor of the oral cavity, and muscles attach it to the lower jawbone. It moves food around during **mastication** (chewing) and **deglutition** (swallowing). **Papillae,** small raised areas on the tongue, contain taste buds that are sensitive to the chemical nature of foods and allow discrimination of different tastes as food moves across the tongue.

The **tonsils** [7], masses of lymphatic tissue located in depressions of the mucous membranes, lie on both sides of the oropharynx (part of the throat near the mouth). They are filters to protect the body from the invasion of microorganisms and produce lymphocytes, disease-fighting white blood cells.

The **gums** [8] are the fleshy tissue surrounding the sockets of the **teeth** [9]. Figure 5-2 shows a dental arch with 16 permanent teeth (there are 32 permanent teeth in the entire oral cavity). The names of the teeth are labeled in Figure 5-2.

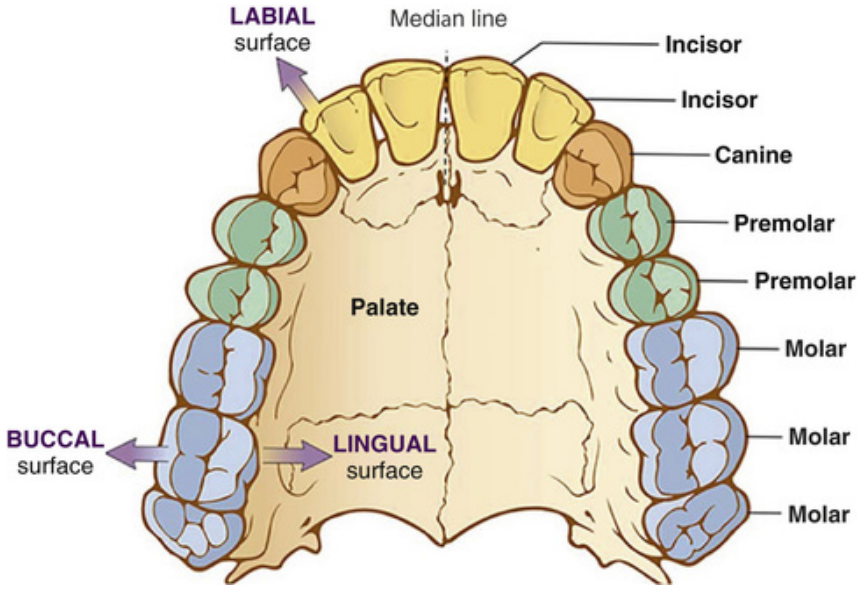


FIGURE 5-2 Upper permanent teeth within the dental arch. The **buccal** surface faces the cheek, whereas the **lingual** surface faces the tongue. The **labial** surface faces the lips. Dentists refer to the labial and buccal surfaces as the **facial** (faci/o = face) surface.

Figure 5-3 shows the inner anatomy of a tooth. Label it as you read the following description:

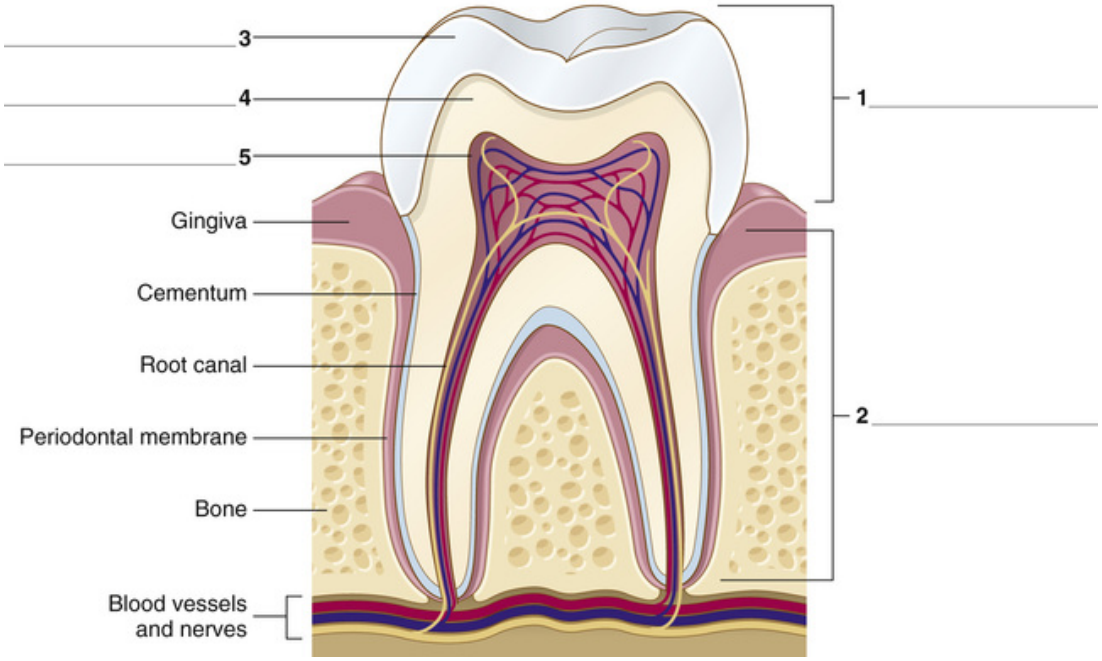


FIGURE 5-3 Anatomy of a tooth.

A tooth consists of a **crown** [1], which shows above the gum line, and a **root** [2], which lies within the bony tooth socket. The outermost layer of the crown, the **enamel** [3], protects the tooth. It is the hardest tissue in the human body. **Dentin** [4], the main substance of the tooth, lies beneath the enamel and extends throughout the crown. Dentin's color ranges from creamy white to yellow, and it affects the color of teeth because enamel is translucent. The **cementum** covers, protects, and supports the dentin in the root. A **periodontal membrane** surrounds the cementum and holds the tooth in place in the tooth socket.

The **pulp** [5] lies underneath the dentin. This soft and delicate tissue fills the center of the tooth. Blood vessels, nerve endings, connective tissue, and lymphatic vessels are within the pulp canal (also called the **root canal**). Root canal therapy often is necessary when disease or abscess (pus collection) occurs in the pulp canal. A dentist opens the tooth from above and cleans the canal of infected tissue, nerves, and blood vessels. The canal is then disinfected and filled with material to prevent the entrance of microorganisms that could cause decay.

Three pairs of **salivary glands** (Figure 5-4) surround and empty into the oral cavity. These exocrine glands produce **saliva,** which lubricates the mouth. Saliva contains important digestive **enzymes** as well as healing growth factors such as cytokines. Saliva is released from a **parotid gland** [1], **submandibular gland** [2], and **sublingual gland** [3] on both sides of the mouth. Narrow ducts carry saliva into the oral cavity. The glands produce about 1.5 liters of saliva daily.

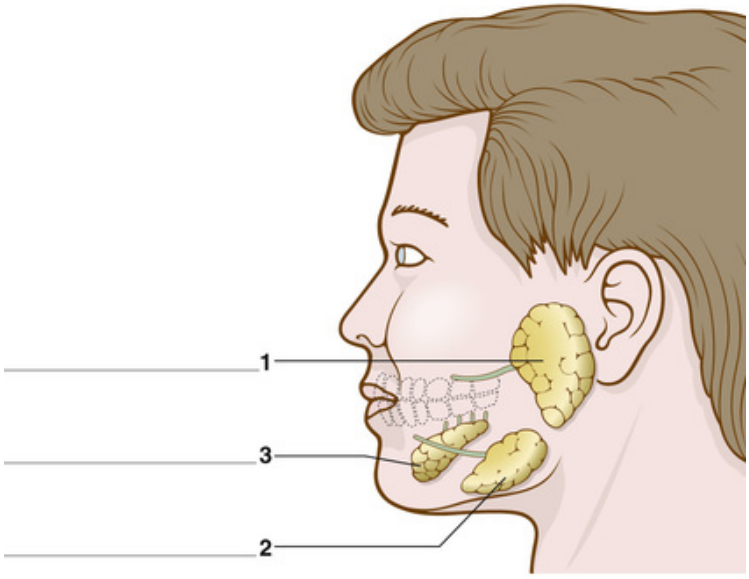


FIGURE 5-4 Salivary glands.

Pharynx

Refer to Figure 5-5. The **pharynx** or **throat** is a muscular tube, about 5 inches long, lined with a mucous membrane. It serves as a passageway both for air traveling from the nose (nasal cavity) to the windpipe (trachea) and for food traveling from the oral cavity to the **esophagus.** When swallowing (**deglutition**) occurs, a cartilaginous flap of tissue, the **epiglottis**, covers the trachea so that food cannot enter and become lodged there. See Figure 5-5A and B.

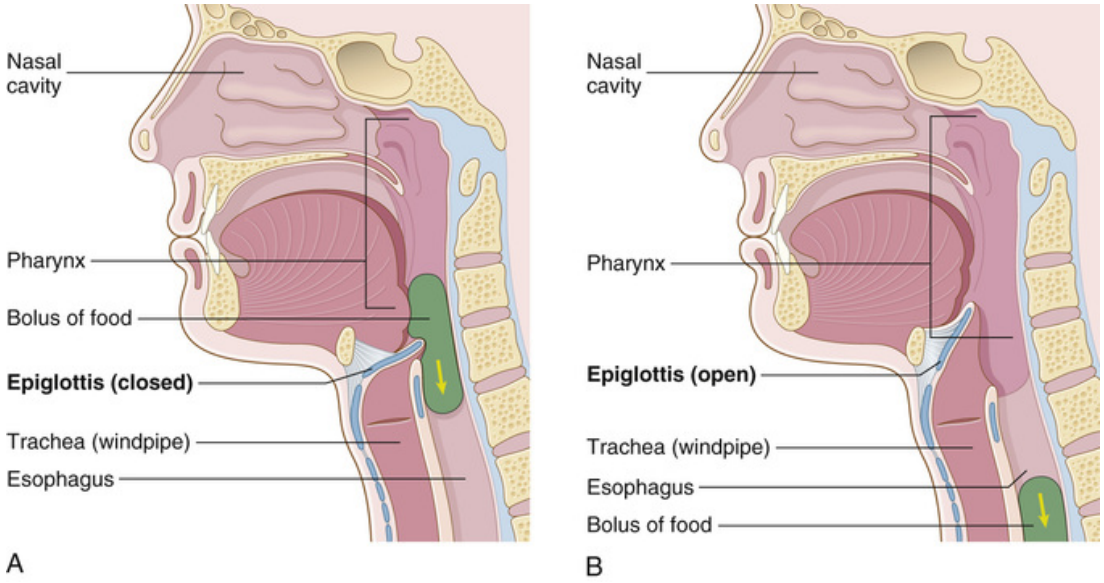


FIGURE 5-5 **Deglutition (swallowing). A, Epiglottis closes** over the trachea as the bolus of food passes down the pharynx toward the esophagus. **B, Epiglottis opens** as the bolus moves down the esophagus.

Your Mother Was Right! Don't Talk While You're Eating!

Talking while eating causes the epiglottis to open, so food can accidentally enter the trachea, causing you to choke.

Figure 5-6 shows the passageway for food as it travels from the esophagus through the gastrointestinal tract. Label it as you read the following paragraphs.

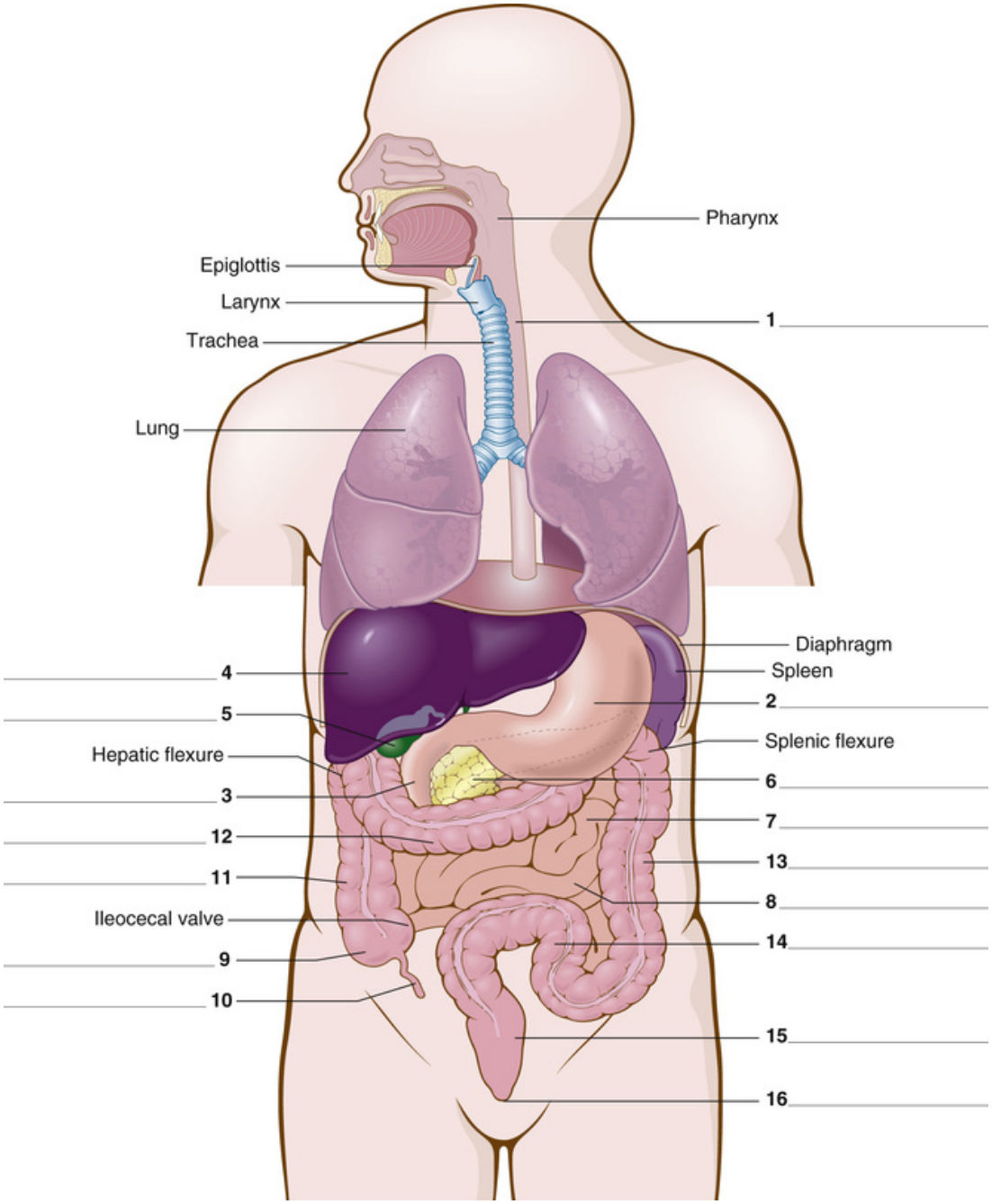


FIGURE 5-6 The gastrointestinal tract.

Esophagus

The **esophagus** [1] is a 9- to 10-inch fibromuscular tube extending from the pharynx to the stomach. **Peristalsis** is the involuntary, progressive, rhythmic contraction of muscles in the wall of the esophagus (and other gastrointestinal

organs), propelling a **bolus** (mass of food) down toward the stomach. The process is like squeezing a marble through a rubber tube.

Stomach

Food passes from the esophagus into the **stomach** [2]. The stomach (Figure 5-7) has three main parts: **fundus** (upper portion), **body** (middle section), and **antrum** (lower portion). Rings of muscle called **sphincters** control the openings into and leading out of the stomach. They prevent food from regurgitating (flowing backward from the normal direction). The **lower esophageal sphincter** (**LES**) relaxes and contracts to move food from the esophagus into the stomach. The **pyloric sphincter** allows food to leave the stomach and enter the small intestine when it is ready. Folds in the mucous membrane **(mucosa)** lining the stomach are called **rugae.** The rugae increase surface area for digestion and contain glands that produce the enzyme **pepsin** to begin digestion of proteins. **Hydrochloric acid** also is secreted to digest protein and kill any bacteria remaining in food.

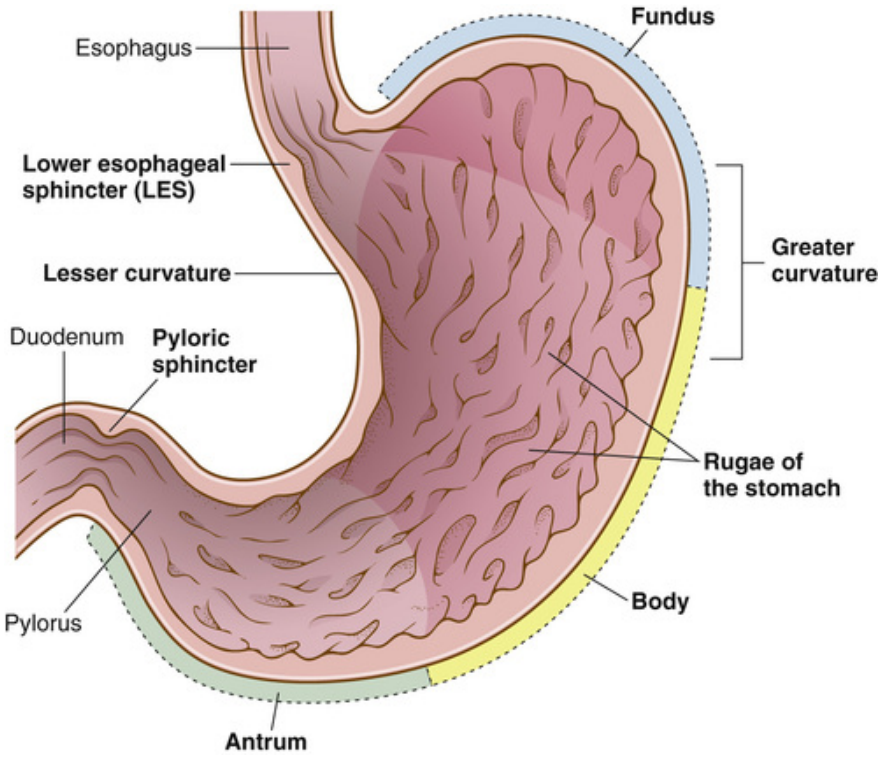


FIGURE 5-7 Parts of the stomach. The **fundus** and **body** (often referred to collectively as the fundus) are a reservoir for ingested food and an area for action by acid and pepsin (gastric enzyme). The **antrum** is a muscular grinding chamber that breaks up food and feeds it gradually into the duodenum.

The stomach prepares food for the small intestine, where further digestion and absorption into the bloodstream take place. Food leaves the stomach in 1 to 4 hours or longer, depending on the amount and type of food eaten.

Small Intestine (Small Bowel)

(Continue labeling Figure 5-6 on page 136.)

The **small intestine (small bowel)** extends for 20 feet from the pyloric sphincter to the first part of the large intestine. It has three parts. The first section, the **duodenum** [3], is only 1 foot long. It receives food from the stomach as well as **bile** from the **liver** [4] and **gallbladder** [5] and pancreatic juices from the **pancreas** [6]. Enzymes and bile help digest food before it passes into the second part of the small intestine, the **jejunum** [7], about 8 feet long. The jejunum connects with the third section, the **ileum** [8], about 11 feet long. The ileum attaches to the first part of the large intestine.

Millions of tiny, microscopic projections called **villi** line the walls of the small intestine. The tiny capillaries (microscopic blood vessels) in the villi

absorb the digested nutrients into the bloodstream and lymph vessels. Figure 5-8 shows several different views of villi in the lining of the small intestine.

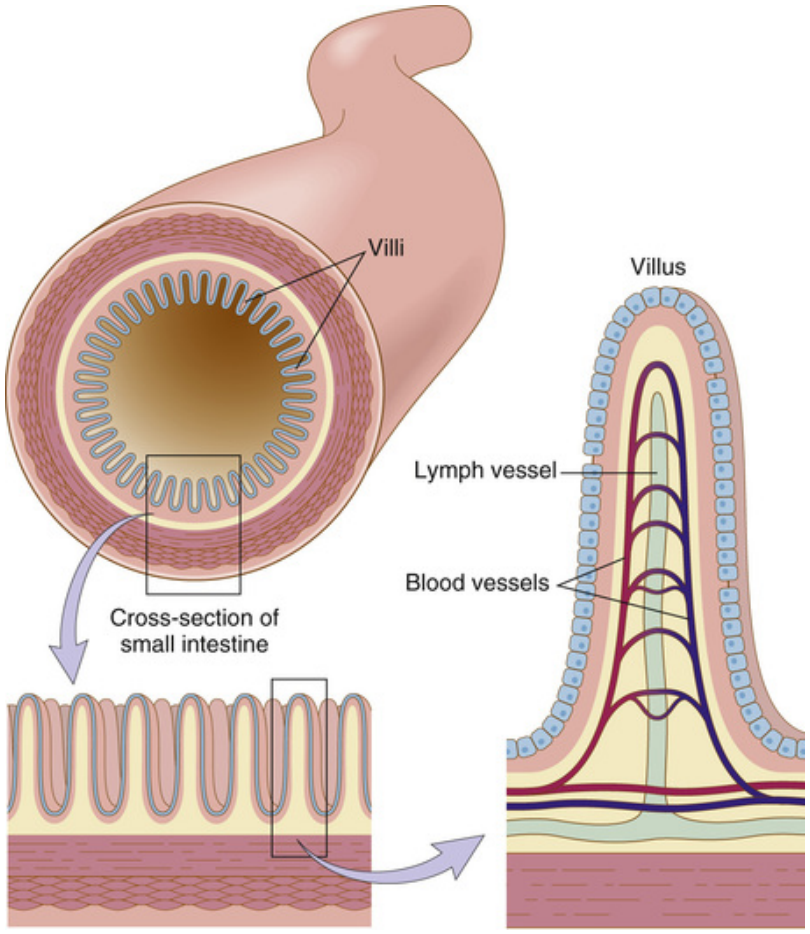


FIGURE 5-8 **Villi in the lining of the small intestine.** Villi increase the surface area for absorption of nutrients.

Large Intestine (Large Bowel)

(Continue labeling Figure 5-6 on page 136.)

The large intestine extends from the end of the ileum to the anus. It has three main components: the cecum, the colon, and the rectum. The **cecum** [9] is a pouch on the right side that connects to the ileum at the ileocecal valve (sphincter). The **appendix** [10] hangs from the cecum. The appendix has no clear function and can become inflamed and infected when clogged or blocked. The **colon**, about 5 feet long, has four named segments: ascending, descending, transverse, and sigmoid. The **ascending colon** [11] extends from the cecum to the undersurface of the liver, where it turns to the left (hepatic

flexure) to become the **transverse colon** [12]. The transverse colon passes horizontally to the left toward the spleen and then turns downward (splenic flexure) into the **descending colon** [13]. The **sigmoid colon** [14], shaped like an S (sigmoid means resembling the Greek letter sigma, which curves like the letter S), begins at the distal end of the descending colon and leads into the **rectum** [15]. The rectum terminates in the lower opening of the gastrointestinal tract, the **anus** [16].

The large intestine receives the fluid waste products of digestion (the material unable to pass into the bloodstream) and stores these wastes until they can be released from the body. Because the large intestine absorbs most of the water within the waste material, the body can expel solid **feces** (stools). **Defecation** is the expulsion or passage of feces from the body through the anus. Diarrhea, or passage of watery stools, results from reduced water absorption into the bloodstream through the walls of the large intestine.

Liver, Gallbladder, and Pancreas

Three important additional organs of the digestive system—the liver, gallbladder, and pancreas—play crucial roles in the proper digestion and absorption of nutrients. Label Figure 5-9 as you study the following:

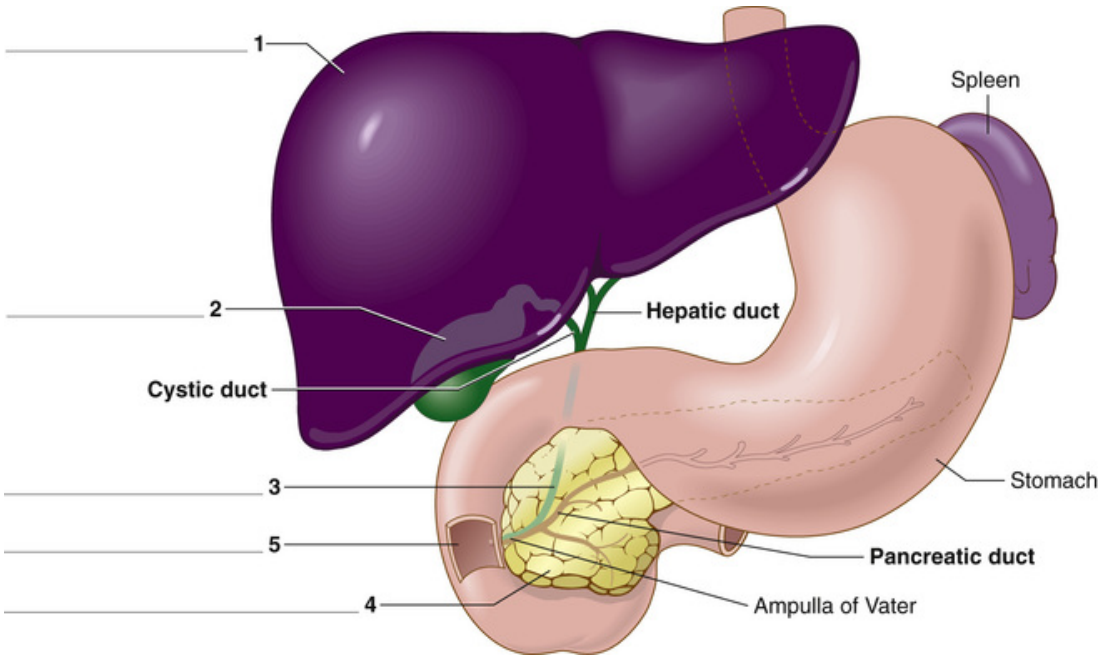


FIGURE 5-9 Liver, gallbladder, and pancreas. The **ampulla of Vater** is at the junction of the pancreatic duct and common bile duct entering the duodenum.

The **liver** [1], located in the right upper quadrant (RUQ) of the abdomen, manufactures a thick, orange-black, sometimes greenish, fluid called **bile.** Bile contains cholesterol (a fatty substance), bile acids, and several bile pigments. One of these pigments, **bilirubin,** is produced from the breakdown of hemoglobin during normal red blood cell destruction. Bilirubin travels via the bloodstream to the liver, where it is conjugated or converted into a water-soluble form. Conjugated bilirubin is then added to bile and enters the intestine (duodenum). Bacteria in the colon degrade bilirubin into a variety of pigments that give feces a brownish color. Bilirubin and bile leave the body in feces.

If the bile duct is blocked or the liver damaged and unable to excrete bilirubin into bile, the bilirubin remains in the bloodstream, causing **jaundice** (**hyperbilirubinemia**)—yellow discoloration of the skin, whites of the eyes, and mucous membranes. In addition, stools may turn lighter in color because of less bilirubin and bile excreted into the gastrointestinal tract. Figure 5-10 reviews the path of bilirubin from red blood cell destruction (hemolysis) to elimination with bile in the feces.

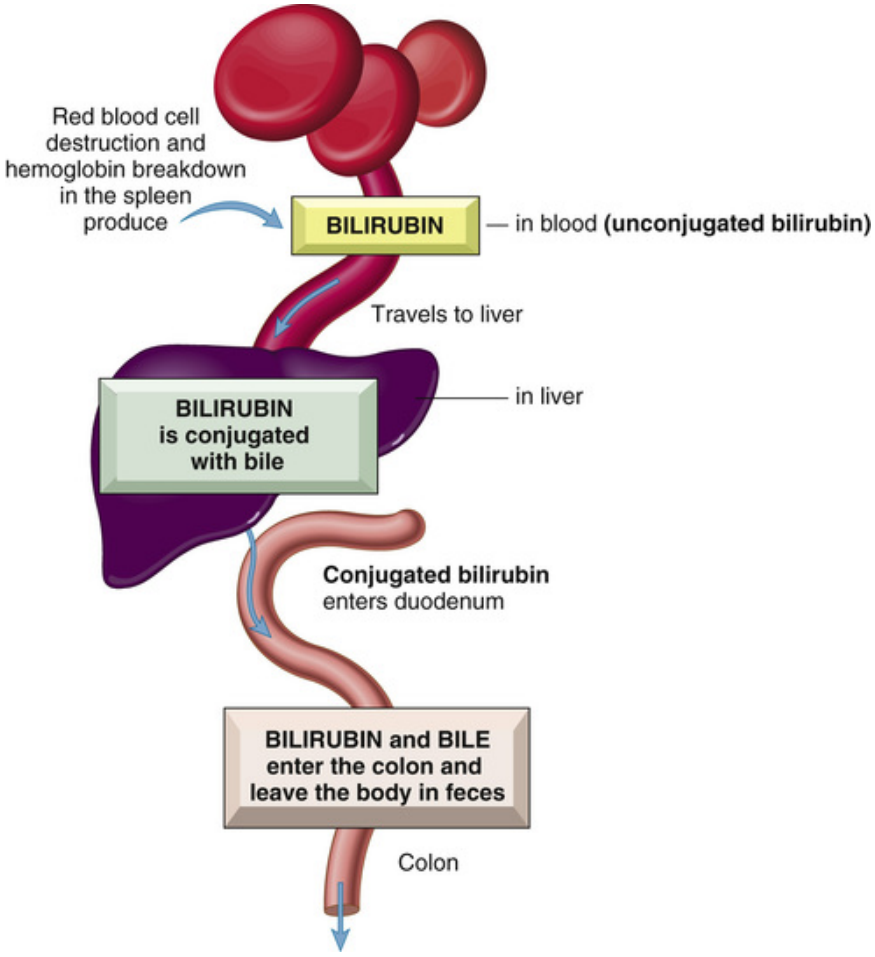

Red blood cell destruction and hemoglobin breakdown in the spleen produce
BILIRUBIN
in blood (unconjugated bilirubin)
Travels to liver
BILIRUBIN is conjugated with bile
in liver
Conjugated bilirubin enters duodenum
BILIRUBIN and BILE enter the colon and leave the body in feces
Colon

FIGURE 5-10 Bilirubin pathway from bloodstream to elimination in feces. Increased blood levels of unconjugated bilirubin indicate ongoing hemolysis (red blood cell destruction). Increased blood levels of conjugated bilirubin indicate obstruction of bile ducts. Both types of bilirubin are elevated in the blood of patients with liver disease.

(Continue labeling Figure 5-9.)

The liver continuously releases bile, which then travels through the **hepatic duct** and meets the **cystic duct.** The cystic duct leads to the **gallbladder** [2], a pear-shaped sac under the liver, which stores and concentrates the bile for later use. After meals, in response to the presence of food in the stomach and duodenum, the gallbladder contracts, forcing the bile out the cystic duct into the **common bile duct** [3]. Meanwhile, the **pancreas** [4] secretes pancreatic juices (enzymes) that are released into the **pancreatic duct**, which joins with the common bile duct just as it enters the **duodenum** [5]. The duodenum thus receives a mixture of bile and pancreatic juices.

Bile has a detergent-like effect on fats in the duodenum. In the process of **emulsification,** bile breaks apart large fat globules, creating more surface area

so that enzymes from the pancreas can digest the fats. Without bile, most of the fat taken into the body remains undigested, and stools may appear fatty.

Besides producing bile, the liver has several other vital and important functions:

- Maintaining normal blood **glucose** (sugar) levels. The liver removes excess glucose from the bloodstream and stores it as **glycogen** (starch) in liver cells. When the blood sugar level becomes dangerously low, the liver converts stored glycogen back into glucose via a process called **glycogenolysis.** In addition, when the body needs sugar, the liver can convert proteins and fats into glucose, by a process called **gluconeogenesis.**
- Manufacturing blood proteins, such as albumin and those necessary for blood clotting
- Releasing bilirubin, a pigment in bile
- Clearing drugs and poisons (toxins) from the blood

The **portal vein** brings blood to the liver from the intestines. Nutrients from digested foods pass into the portal vein directly after being absorbed into the capillaries of the small intestine, thus giving the liver the first chance to use the nutrients.

The **pancreas** (Figure 5-11) is both an **exocrine** and an **endocrine** organ. As an exocrine gland, it produces enzymes to digest starch, such as **amylase** (amyl/o = starch, -ase = enzyme); to digest fat, such as **lipase** (lip/o = fat); and to digest proteins, such as **protease** (prote/o = protein). These pass into the duodenum through the pancreatic duct.

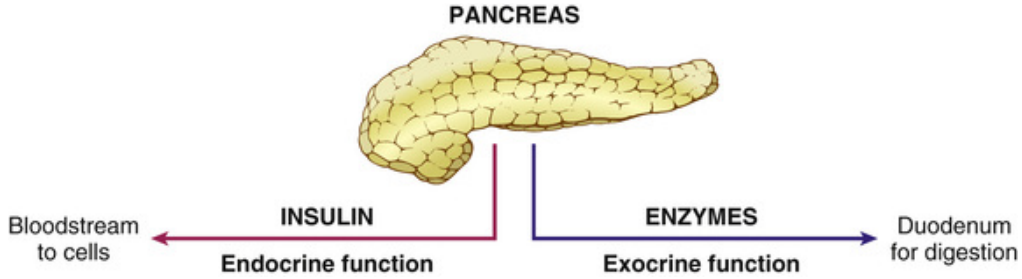


FIGURE 5-11 The pancreas and its functions.

As an endocrine gland (secreting into the bloodstream), the pancreas secretes **insulin.** This hormone, needed to help release sugar from the blood, acts as a carrier to bring glucose into cells of the body to be used for energy.

Figure 5-12 is a flow chart that traces the pathway of food through the gastrointestinal tract.

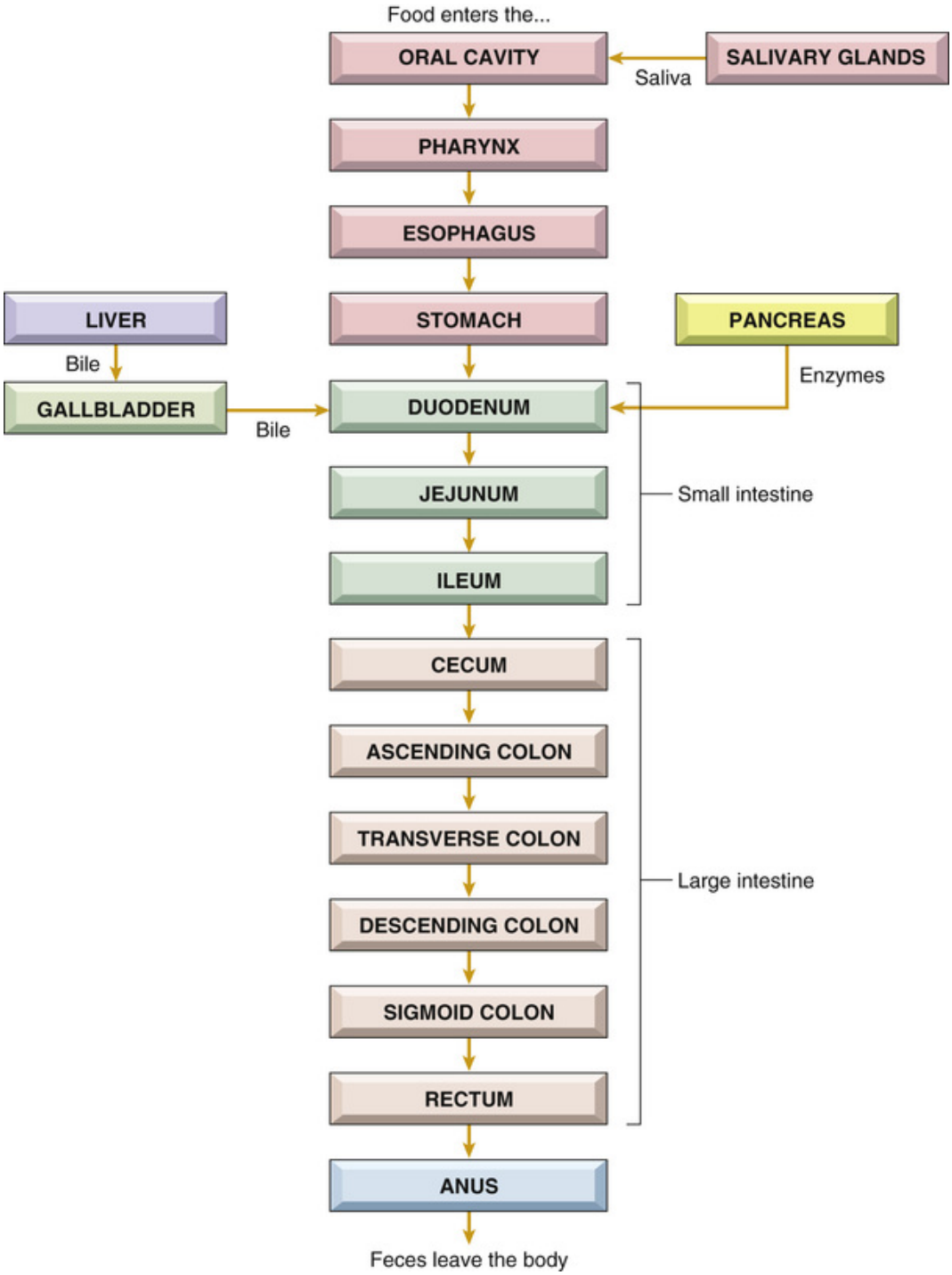


FIGURE 5-12 Pathway of food through the gastrointestinal tract.

Vocabulary

The following list reviews many of the terms introduced in this chapter. Short definitions and additional information reinforce your understanding of the terms. All of the terms are included in the Pronunciation of Terms section later in the chapter.

absorption	Passage of materials through the walls of the small intestine into the bloodstream.
amino acids	Small building blocks of proteins, released when proteins are digested.
amylase	Enzyme (-ase) secreted by the pancreas and salivary glands to digest starch (amyl/o).
anus	Terminal end or opening of the digestive tract to the outside of the body.
appendix	Blind pouch hanging from the cecum (in the right lower quadrant [RLQ]). It literally means hanging (pend/o) onto (ap-, which is a form of ad-).
bile	Digestive juice made in the liver and stored in the gallbladder. It breaks up (emulsifies) large fat globules. Bile originally was called gall (Latin *bilis*, meaning gall or anger), probably because it has a bitter taste. It is composed of bile pigments (colored materials), cholesterol, and bile salts.
bilirubin	Pigment released by the liver in bile.
bowel	Intestine.
canine teeth	Pointed, dog-like teeth (canine means pertaining to dog) next to the incisors. Also called cuspids or eyeteeth.
cecum	First part of the large intestine.
colon	Portion of the large intestine consisting of the ascending, transverse, descending, and sigmoid segments.
common bile duct	Carries bile from the liver and gallbladder to the duodenum. Also called the choledochus.
defecation	Elimination of feces from the digestive tract through the anus.
deglutition	Swallowing. **HINT:** pronunciation is de-glu-TISH-un.
dentin	Primary material found in teeth. It is covered by the enamel in the crown and a protective layer of cementum in the root.
digestion	Breakdown of complex foods to simpler forms.
duodenum	First part of the small intestine. Duo = 2, den = 10; the duodenum measures 12 inches long.
elimination	Removal of materials from the body; in the digestive system, the removal of indigestible materials as feces.
emulsification	Breaking up large fat globules into smaller globules. This increases the surface area that enzymes can use to digest the fat.
enamel	Hard, outermost layer of a tooth.
enzyme	Chemical that speeds up a reaction between substances. Digestive enzymes break down complex foods to simpler

	substances. Enzymes are given names that end in -ase.
esophagus	Tube connecting the throat to the stomach. Eso- means inward; phag/o means swallowing.
fatty acids	Substances produced when fats are digested.
feces	Solid wastes; stool. The term **fecal** means pertaining to feces.
gallbladder	Small sac under the liver; stores bile. **HINT:** gallbladder is one word!
glucose	Simple sugar.
glycogen	Starch; glucose is stored in the form of glycogen in liver cells.
hydrochloric acid	Substance (strong acid) produced in the stomach; aids digestion.
ileum	Third part of the small intestine from the Greek *eilos,* meaning twisted. When the abdomen was viewed at autopsy, the intestine appeared twisted, and the ileum often was an area of obstruction.
incisor	Any one of four front teeth in the dental arch.
insulin	Hormone produced by the endocrine cells of the pancreas. It helps transport sugar into body cells.
jejunum	Second part of the small intestine. The Latin *jejunus* means empty; this part of the intestine was always empty when a body was examined after death. **HINT:** pronunciation is jeh-JU-num.
lipase	Pancreatic enzyme necessary to digest fats.
liver	Large organ located in the RUQ of the abdomen. The liver secretes bile; stores sugar, iron, and vitamins; produces blood proteins; destroys worn-out red blood cells; and filters out toxins. The normal adult liver weighs about 2½ to 3 pounds.
lower esophageal sphincter (LES)	Ring of muscles between the esophagus and the stomach. Also called **cardiac sphincter.**
mastication	Chewing.
molar teeth	Three large, flat teeth at the back of the mouth, on either side of the dental arch. **Premolar teeth** are two teeth, before the molars.
palate	Roof of the mouth. The hard palate lies anterior to the soft palate and is supported by the upper jawbone (maxilla). The soft palate is the posterior fleshy part between the mouth and the throat.
pancreas	Organ behind the stomach; produces insulin (for transport of sugar into cells) and enzymes (for digestion of foods).

papillae	Small projections on the tongue. Taste buds (taste receptor cells) are located within the papillae (pap-IL-e).
parotid gland	Salivary gland within the cheek, just anterior to the ear. Note the literal meaning of parotid (par- = near; ot/o = ear).
peristalsis	Rhythmic contractions of the tubular organs. In the gastrointestinal tract, peristalsis moves the contents through at different rates: stomach, 0.5 to 2 hours; small intestine, 2 to 6 hours; and colon, 6 to 72 hours. Peri- means surrounding; -stalsis is constriction. **HINT:** pronunciation is peh-rih-STAL-sis.
pharynx	Throat, the common passageway for food from the mouth and for air from the nose.
portal vein	Large vein bringing blood to the liver from the intestines.
protease	Enzyme that digests protein.
pulp	Soft tissue within a tooth, containing nerves and blood vessels.
pyloric sphincter	Ring of muscle at the end of the stomach, near the duodenum. From the Greek *pyloros*, meaning gatekeeper. It is normally closed, but opens when a wave of peristalsis passes over it.
pylorus	Distal region of the stomach, opening to the duodenum.
rectum	Last section of the large intestine, connecting the end of the colon and the anus.
rugae	Ridges on the hard palate and the wall of the stomach. **HINT:** pronunciation is RU-guy.
saliva	Digestive juice produced by salivary glands. Saliva contains the enzyme amylase, which begins the digestion of starch to sugar.
salivary glands	Parotid, sublingual, and submandibular glands.
sigmoid colon	Lower, S-shaped segment of the colon, just before the rectum; empties into the rectum.
sphincter	Circular ring of muscle that constricts a passage or closes a natural opening.
stomach	Muscular organ that receives food from the esophagus. The stomach's parts are the fundus (proximal section), body (middle section), and antrum (distal section).
triglycerides	Fat molecules composed of three parts fatty acids and one part glycerol. Triglycerides (fats) are a subgroup of **lipids.** Another type of lipid is cholesterol.
uvula	Soft tissue hanging from the middle of the soft palate. The Latin *uva* means bunch of grapes.

villi (*singular*: villus)	Microscopic projections in the wall of the small intestine that absorb nutrients into the bloodstream.

Portal Vein

Notice the relationship of the **portal vein** (also called **hepatic portal vein**) between the intestines and the liver (Figure 5-13). This vein is not a true vein because it doesn't conduct blood directly to the heart as do other veins. In liver disease, blood backs up into the portal vein, causing **portal hypertension** (high blood pressure) and **esophageal varices.** See page 155.

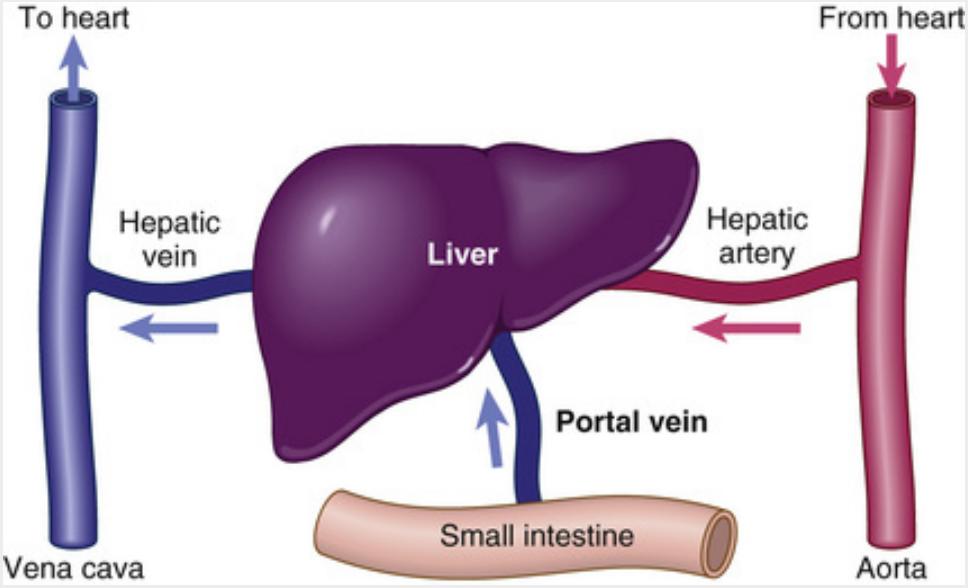


FIGURE 5-13 **Portal vein** and its relationship to the liver and small intestine.

Terminology

Write the meaning of the medical term in the space provided. Check the Pronunciation of Terms on pages 173–176 for any unfamiliar words.

Parts of the Body

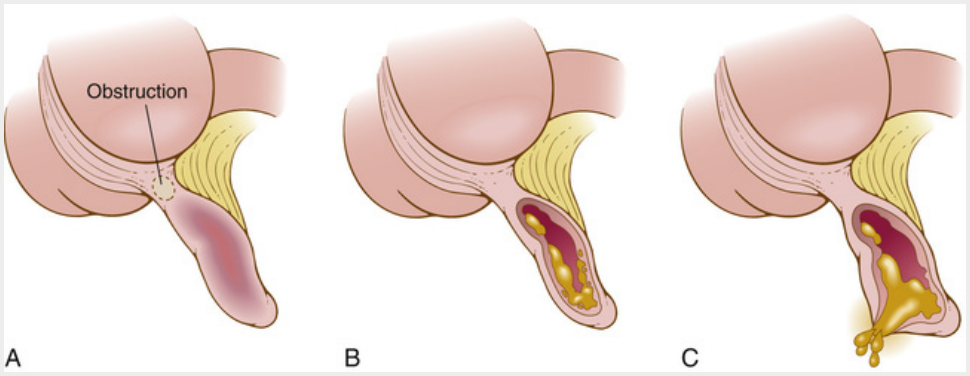


FIGURE 5-14 **Stages of appendicitis. A,** Obstruction and bacterial infection cause red, swollen, and inflamed appendix. **B,** Pus and bacteria invade the wall of the appendix. **C,** Pus perforates (ruptures through) the wall of the appendix into the abdomen, leading to peritonitis (inflammation of the peritoneum).

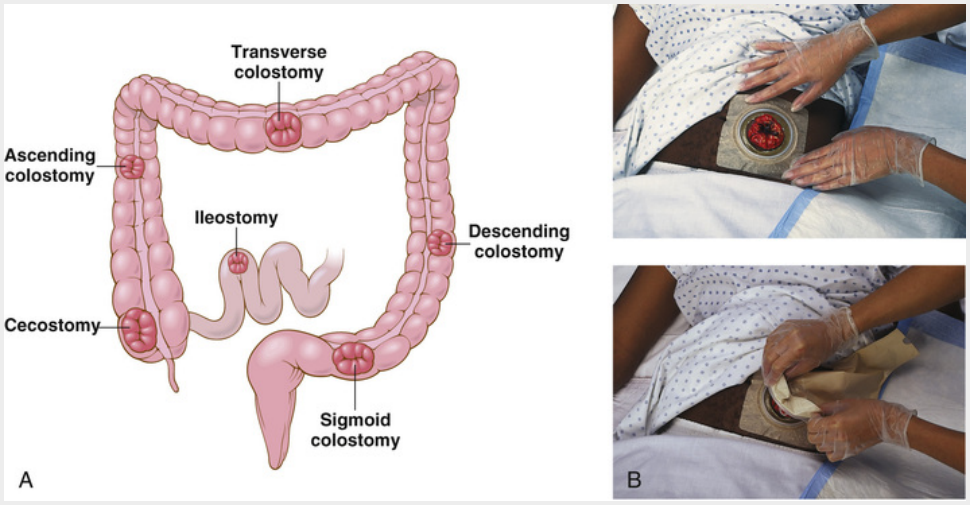


FIGURE 5-15 A. Locations of stomas in the ileum and colon. B. Colostomy care.

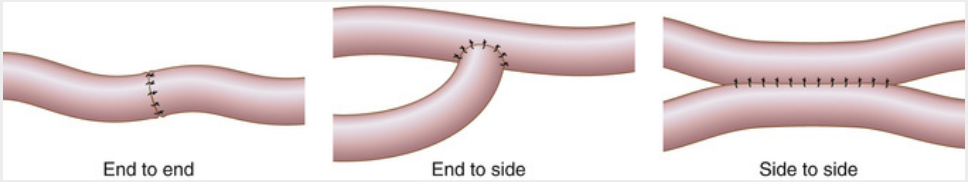


FIGURE 5-16 Three types of anastomoses. These are examples of an enteroenterostomy. The suffix -stomy, when used with two or more combining forms (enter/o and enter/o), indicates the surgical creation of a new opening between those parts of the body.

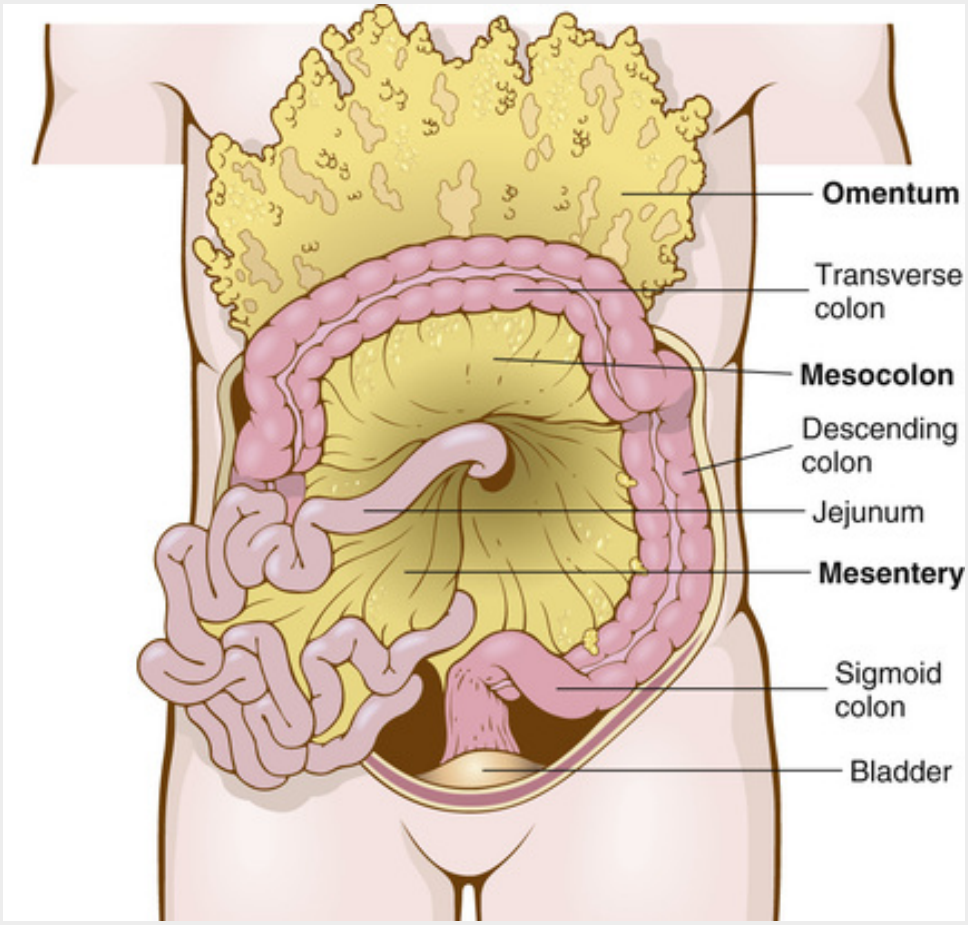


FIGURE 5-17 Mesentery. The **omentum** and **mesocolon** are parts of the mesentery. The omentum (raised in this figure) actually hangs down like an apron over the intestines. The mesentery contains blood and lymph vessels. The lymph nodes in the mesentery are important indicators in the spread of colon cancer (staging of colon cancer).

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
an/o	anus	perianal	
append/o	appendix	appendectomy	
appendic/o		appendicitis *See Figure 5-14.*	
bucc/o	cheek	buccal mucosa *A mucosa is a **mucous membrane** lining cavities or canals that open to the outside of the body.*	
cec/o	cecum	cecal	
celi/o	belly, abdomen	celiac *Abdomin/o and lapar/o also mean abdomen. **Celiac disease** is damage to the lining of the small intestine, occurring as a reaction to eating gluten.*	
cheil/o	lip	cheilosis *Labi/o also means lip.*	
cholecyst/o	gallbladder	cholecystectomy *Chol/e = gall, bile.*	
choledoch/o	common bile duct	choledochotomy	
col/o	colon	colostomy *The suffix -stomy, when used with a combining form for an organ, means an opening to the outside of the body. A **stoma** is an opening between an organ and the surface of the body (Figure 5-15A and B).*	
colon/o	colon	colonic colonoscopy	

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
dent/i	tooth	dentibuccal _____ *Odont/o also means tooth.*
duoden/o	duodenum	duodenal _____
enter/o	intestines, usually small intestine	enterocolitis _____ ***HINT:** When two combining forms for gastrointestinal organs are in a term, the one for the organ closer to the mouth appears first.*
		enteroenterostomy _____ *New opening between two previously unconnected parts of the small intestine. This is an **anastomosis,** which is any surgical connection between two parts, such as vessels, ducts, or bowel segments (ana = up, stom = opening, -sis = state of) (Figure 5-16).* mesentery _____ *Part of the double fold of peritoneum that stretches around the organs in the abdomen, the mesentery holds the organs in place. Literally, it lies in the middle (mes-) of the intestines, a membrane attaching the intestines to the muscle wall at the back of the abdomen (Figure 5-17).* parenteral _____ *Par (from para-) means apart from in this term. An intravenous line brings **parenteral nutrition** directly into the bloodstream, bypassing the intestinal tract (**enteral** nutrition). Parenteral injections may be subcutaneous or intramuscular as well.*
esophag/o	esophagus	esophageal _____ ***HINT:**Changing the suffix from -al to -eal softens the final g* (eh-sof-ah-JE-al).
faci/o	face	facial _____

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
gastr/o	stomach	gastrostomy _____
gingiv/o	gums	gingivitis _____
gloss/o	tongue	hypoglossal _____ *Lingu/o also means tongue.*
hepat/o	liver	hepatoma _____ *Also called **hepatocellular carcinoma.*** hepatomegaly _____
ile/o	ileum	ileocecal sphincter _____ *Also called the ileocecal valve.* ileitis _____ ileostomy _____ *See Figure 5-15A, page 146.*
jejun/o	jejunum	choledochojejunostomy _____ *An anastomosis.* gastrojejunostomy _____ *This is part of a **gastric bypass** procedure. See Figure 6-7B, page 187.*
labi/o	lip	labial _____
lapar/o	abdomen	laparoscopy _____ *A form of **minimally invasive surgery (MIS).** Examples are laparoscopic cholecystectomy (Figure 5-28, page 160) and laparoscopic appendectomy.*
lingu/o	tongue	sublingual _____
mandibul/o	lower jaw, mandible	submandibular _____

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
odont/o	tooth	orthodontist _____ *Orth/o means straight.* periodontist _____ endodontist _____ *Performs root canal therapy.*	
or/o	mouth	oral _____ *Stomat/o also means mouth.*	
palat/o	palate	palatoplasty _____ *Procedure to repair cleft palate and cleft lip; repair of a cleft palate.*	
pancreat/o	pancreas	pancreatitis _____	
peritone/o	peritoneum	peritonitis _____ *The e of the root has been dropped in this term.*	
pharyng/o	throat	pharyngeal _____ palatopharyngoplasty _____ *Used to treat cases of snoring or sleep apnea caused by obstructions in the throat or nose.*	
proct/o	anus and rectum	proctologist _____	
pylor/o	pyloric sphincter	pyloroplasty _____	
rect/o	rectum	rectocele _____	
sialaden/o	salivary gland	sialadenitis _____	
sigmoid/o	sigmoid colon	sigmoidoscopy _____	
stomat/o	mouth	stomatitis _____	
uvul/o	uvula	uvulectomy _____	

Substances

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
amyl/o	starch	amylase _____ *The suffix -ase means enzyme.*
bil/i	gall, bile	biliary _____ *The **biliary tract** includes the organs (liver and gallbladder) and ducts (hepatic, cystic, and common bile ducts) that secrete, store, and empty bile into the duodenum.*
bilirubin/o	bilirubin (bile pigment)	hyperbilirubinemia _____
chol/e	gall, bile	cholelithiasis _____ *Lith/o means stone or calculus; -iasis means abnormal condition.*
chlorhydr/o	hydrochloric acid	achlorhydria _____ *Absence of gastric juice is associated with gastric carcinoma.*
gluc/o	sugar	gluconeogenesis _____ *Liver cells make new sugar from fats and proteins.*
glyc/o	sugar	hyperglycemia _____
glycogen/o	glycogen, animal starch	glycogenolysis _____ *Liver cells change glycogen back to glucose when blood sugar levels drop.*
lip/o	fat, lipid	lipoma _____
lith/o	stone	lithogenesis _____
prote/o	protein	protease _____
py/o	pus	pyorrhea _____ *Periodontitis; an advanced stage of periodontal disease (gingivitis).*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
sial/o	saliva, salivary	sialolith _____	
steat/o	fat	steatorrhea _____ *Improperly digested (malabsorbed) fats will appear in the feces.*	

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-ase	enzyme	lipase _____ *Enzymes speed up chemical reactions. Lipase aids in the digestion of fats. In all types of liver disease, liver enzyme levels may be elevated, indicating damage to liver cells. Signs and symptoms include malaise, anorexia, hepatomegaly, jaundice, and abdominal pain.*	
-chezia	defecation, elimination of wastes	hematochezia _____ *(he-mat-o-KE-ze-ah) Bright red blood is found in the feces.*	
-iasis	abnormal condition	choledocholithiasis _____	
-prandial	meal	postprandial _____ **Post cibum (p.c.),** *seen on written prescriptions, also means after meals.*	

Cholecyst/o and Cyst/o

Don't confuse **cholecyst/o (gallbladder)** with **cyst/o**, which is the **urinary bladder.**

Ileum and Ilium

Don't confuse the **ileum,** which is the third part of the small intestine, with the **ilium,** uppermost and largest part of the pelvis (hip bone).

Chol/e and Col/o

Don't confuse **chol/e,** which means gall or bile, with **col/o,** which indicates the colon! The context of the term will help you determine the correct spelling.

Pyorrhea and Pyuria

Pyorrhea is discharge (-rrhea) of pus from gums, and **pyuria** is presence of pus in urine (sign of a urinary tract infection).

Pathology of the Digestive System

This section presents medical terms that describe **signs and symptoms** (clinical indications of illness) and pathologic conditions of the gastrointestinal tract. Sentences following each definition describe the **etiology** (eti/o = cause) of the illness and treatment. When the etiology (cause) is not understood, the condition is **idiopathic** (idi/o = unknown). You can find a list of drugs prescribed to treat gastrointestinal signs and symptoms and conditions in Chapter 21, Pharmacology.

Signs and Symptoms

A **sign** is an **objective** finding—such as an increase in body temperature, a rash, or a sound heard on listening to the chest—indicating the presence of disease as **perceived by an examiner.** By contrast, a **symptom** is a **subjective** sensation or change in health—such as itching, pain, fatigue, or nausea—as **experienced by the patient.** Clearly, the same feature may be noticed by both doctor and patient, which makes it at once both a sign and a symptom!

Signs and Symptoms

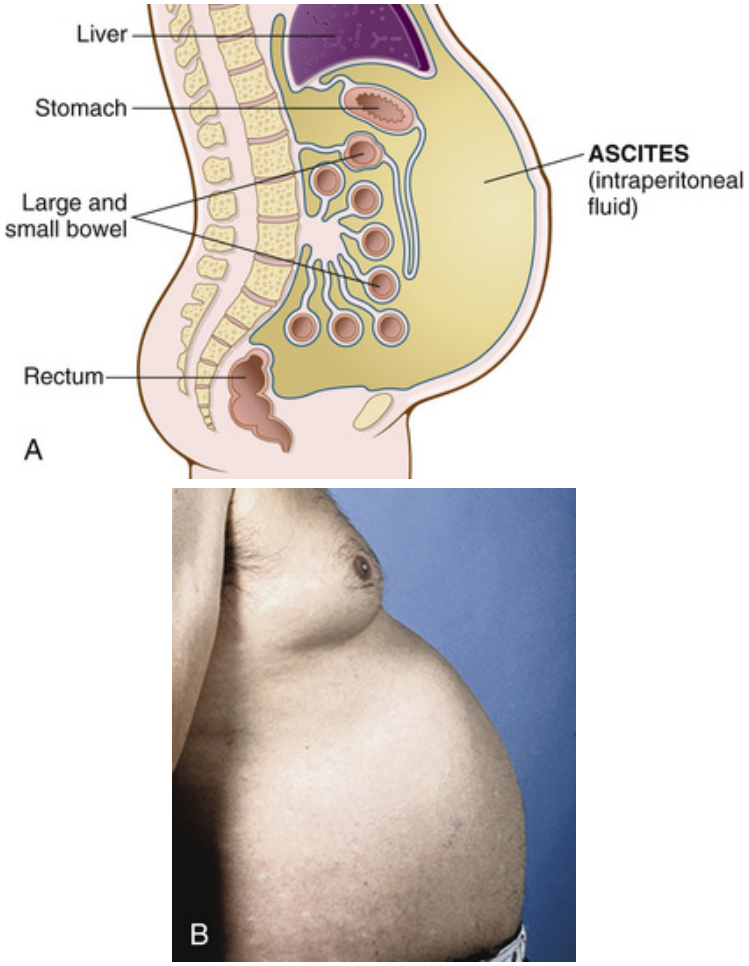


FIGURE 5-18 **A. Ascites,** or abnormal intraperitoneal fluid, can result from conditions such as liver disease, peritonitis, and ovarian cancer. **B. Ascites in a male patient.** The photograph was taken after **paracentesis** (puncture to remove fluid from the abdomen) was performed. Notice the gynecomastia (condition of female-type breasts) in this patient due to an excess of estrogen, which can accompany cirrhosis, especially in persons with alcoholism.

FIGURE 5-19 Jaundice due to liver disease.

anorexia	**Lack of appetite.** Anorexia (-orexia = appetite) often is a sign of malignancy or liver disease. **Anorexia nervosa** is loss of appetite associated with emotional problems such as anger, anxiety, and irrational fear of weight gain. It is an eating disorder and is discussed along with a similar eating disorder, bulimia nervosa, in Chapter 22.
ascites	**Abnormal accumulation of fluid in the abdomen** (Figure 5-18A and B)**.** This condition occurs when fluid passes from the bloodstream and collects in the peritoneal cavity. It can be a sign of neoplasm or inflammatory disorders in the abdomen, venous hypertension (high blood pressure) caused by liver disease (cirrhosis), or heart failure. Treatment for ascites includes administration of diuretic drugs and paracentesis to remove abdominal fluid.
borborygmi (*singular:* borborygmus)	**Rumbling or gurgling noises produced by the movement of gas, fluid, or both in the gastrointestinal tract.** Signs of hyperactive intestinal peristalsis, **borborygmi (bowel sounds)** often are present in cases of gastroenteritis and diarrhea.
constipation	**Difficulty in passing stools (feces).** When peristalsis is slow, stools are dry and hard. A diet with plentiful fruits, vegetables, and water is helpful. **Laxatives** and **cathartics** are medications to promote movement of stools. **Chronic idiopathic constipation (CIC)** is persistent constipation without an identifiable cause.
diarrhea	**Frequent passage of loose, watery stools.** Abrupt onset of diarrhea immediately after eating suggests acute infection or toxin in the gastrointestinal tract. Untreated, severe diarrhea may lead to dehydration. Antidiarrheal drugs are helpful.
dysphagia	**Difficulty in swallowing.** This sensation feels like a "lump in the throat" when a swallowed bolus fails to progress, either because of a physical obstruction (obstructive dysphagia) or because of a motor disorder in which esophageal peristalsis is not coordinated (motor dysphagia).
eructation	**Gas expelled from the stomach through the mouth.**

	Eructation produces a characteristic sound and also is called **belching** (burping).
flatus	**Gas expelled through the anus.** Flatulence is the presence of excessive gas in the stomach and the intestines. One sign of a bowel obstruction is the inability to pass flatus.
hematochezia	**Passage of fresh, bright red blood from the rectum.** The cause of hematochezia is usually hemorrhoids, but can also be colitis, ulcers, polyps, or cancer.
jaundice (icterus)	**Yellow-orange coloration of the skin and whites of the eyes caused by high levels of bilirubin in the blood (hyperbilirubinemia).** See Figure 5-19. Jaundice can occur when (1) excessive destruction of erythrocytes, as in **hemolysis,** causes excess bilirubin in the blood; (2) malfunction of liver cells (hepatocytes) due to **liver disease** prevents the liver from excreting bilirubin with bile; or (3) **obstruction of bile flow,** such as from choledocholithiasis or tumor, prevents bilirubin in bile from being excreted into the duodenum.
melena	**Black, tarry stools; feces containing digested blood.** This clinical sign usually reflects a condition in which blood has had time to be digested (acted on by intestinal juices) and results from bleeding in the upper gastrointestinal tract (duodenal ulcer). A positive result on **stool guaiac testing** (see page 183) indicates blood in the stool.
nausea	**Unpleasant sensation in the stomach with a tendency to vomit.** Common causes are motion sickness, early pregnancy, and viral gastroenteritis. Nausea and vomiting may be symptomatic of a perforation (hole in the wall) of an abdominal organ; obstruction of a bile duct, stomach, or intestine; or exposure to poisons.
steatorrhea	**Fat in the feces.** Steatorrhea is production of frothy, foul-smelling fecal matter that often floats in the toilet. Improper digestion or absorption of fat causes fat to remain in the intestine. This may occur with disease of the pancreas (pancreatitis) when pancreatic enzymes are not excreted. It also is a sign of intestinal disease that involves malabsorption of fat.

Pathologic Conditions

Oral Cavity and Teeth

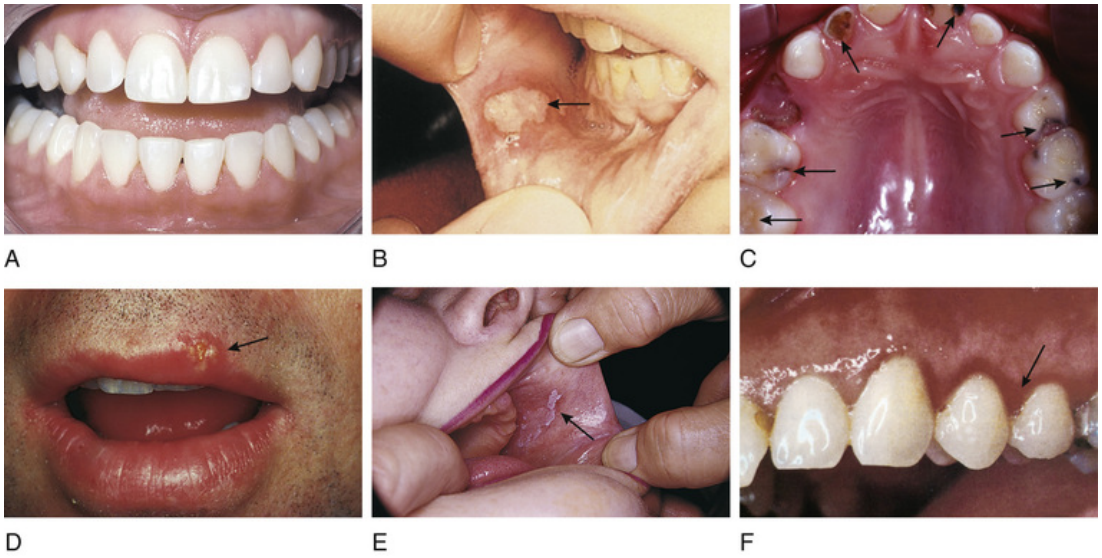


FIGURE 5-20 Normal teeth and gums and pathologic conditions. A, Normal teeth and gums. B, Aphthous stomatitis. C, Dental caries. D, Herpetic stomatitis. E, Oral leukoplakia. F, Gingivitis.

aphthous stomatitis	**Inflammation of the mouth with small, painful ulcers.** The ulcers associated with this condition are commonly called **canker** (KANK-er) **sores**; the cause is unknown (Figure 5-20B).
dental caries	**Tooth decay.** **Dental plaque** results from the accumulation of foods, proteins from saliva, and necrotic debris on the tooth enamel. Bacteria grow in the plaque and cause production of acid that dissolves the tooth enamel, resulting in a cavity (area of decay) (Figure 5-20C). If the bacterial infection reaches the pulp of the tooth, root canal therapy may be necessary.
herpetic stomatitis	**Inflammation of the mouth caused by infection with the herpesvirus.** Painful fluid-filled blisters on the lips, palate, gums, and tongue, commonly called **fever blisters** or **cold sores** (Figure 5-20D). It is caused by herpes simplex virus type 1 (HSV1). Herpes genitalis (due to HSV2) involves the reproductive organs. Both conditions are highly contagious.
oral leukoplakia	**White plaques or patches on the mucosa of the mouth.** This precancerous lesion (Figure 5-20E) can result from chronic tobacco use (pipe smoking or chewing tobacco). Malignant potential is assessed by microscopic study of biopsied tissue.
periodontal disease	**Inflammation and degeneration of gums, teeth, and surrounding bone.** **Gingivitis** (Figure 5-20F) occurs as a result of accumulation of **dental plaque** and **dental calculus** or **tartar** (a yellow-brown calcified deposit on teeth). In **gingivectomy**, the periodontist uses a metal instrument to scrape away plaque and tartar from teeth; any pockets of pus (pyorrhea) are then drained and removed to allow new tissue to form. Localized infections are treated with systemic antibiotics.

Upper Gastrointestinal Tract

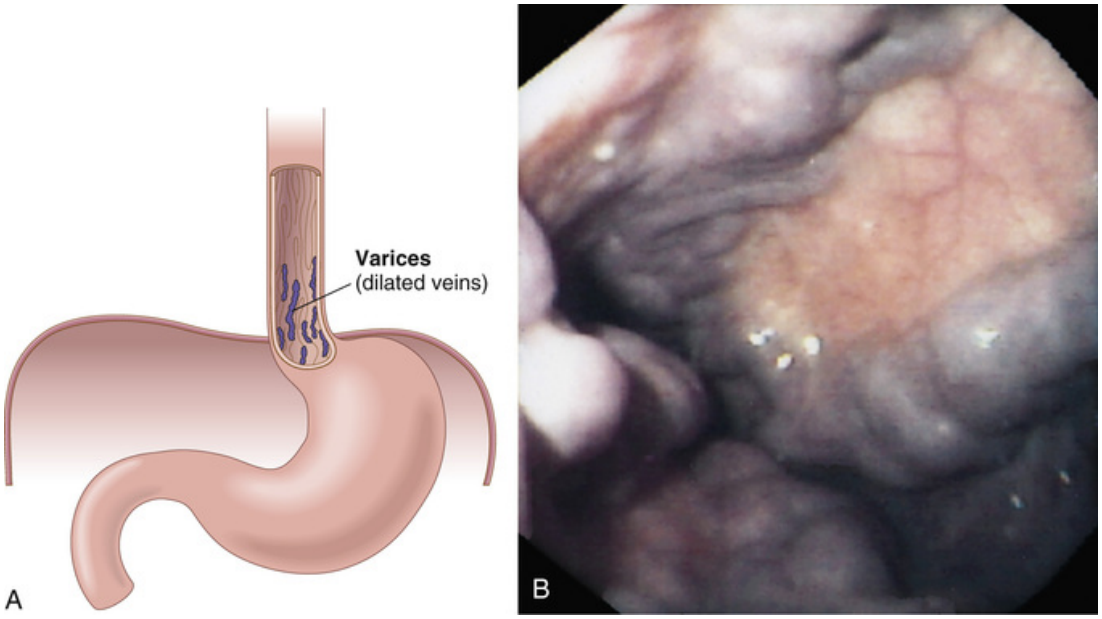


FIGURE 5-21 A, Esophageal varices. B, Endoscopic view of esophageal varices.

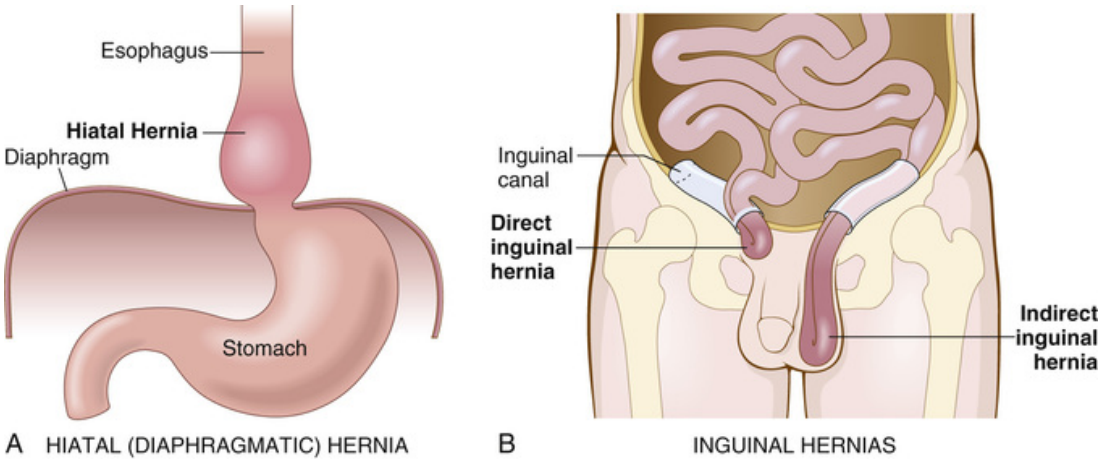


FIGURE 5-22 Hernias. A, Hiatal hernia. B, Inguinal hernias. A **direct inguinal hernia** occurs through the abdominal wall in an area of muscular weakness. An **indirect inguinal hernia** occurs through the inguinal canal (passageway in the lower abdomen), where the herniated tissue/bowel descends into the scrotal sac.

achalasia	**Failure of the lower esophagus sphincter (LES) muscle to relax.** Achalasia (-chalasia = relaxation) results from the loss of peristalsis so that food cannot pass easily through the esophagus. Both failure of the LES to relax and the loss of peristalsis cause dilatation (widening) of the esophagus above the constriction. Physicians recommend a bland diet low in bulk and mechanical stretching of the LES to relieve symptoms.
esophageal cancer	**Malignant tumor of the esophagus.** The most common symptom of esophageal cancer is difficulty swallowing (dysphagia). Smoking and chronic alcohol use are major risk factors. Long-term irritation of the esophagus caused by gastric reflux is a premalignant condition called **Barrett esophagus.** Surgery, radiation therapy, and chemotherapy are treatment options.
esophageal varices	**Swollen varicose veins at the lower end of the esophagus (**Figure 5-21**).** Liver disease (such as cirrhosis and chronic hepatitis) causes increased pressure in veins near and around the liver (**portal hypertension**). This leads to enlarged, tortuous esophageal veins with danger of hemorrhage (bleeding). Treatment may include banding (tying off the swollen esophageal veins) or sclerotherapy (injecting veins with a solution that closes them). Drug therapy to lower portal hypertension can be used to decrease the risk of variceal bleeding.
gastric cancer	**Malignant tumor of the stomach.** Smoking, alcohol use, and chronic gastritis associated with bacterial infection are major risk factors for gastric carcinoma. Gastric endoscopy and biopsy diagnose the condition. Cure depends on early detection and surgical removal.
gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD)	**Solids and fluids return to the mouth from the stomach.** **Heartburn** is a burning sensation caused by regurgitation of hydrochloric acid from the stomach to the esophagus. Chronic exposure of esophageal mucosa to gastric acid and pepsin (an enzyme that digests protein) leads to **reflux esophagitis.** Drug treatment for GERD includes antacid (acid-

	suppressive) agents and medication to increase the tone of the LES.
hernia	**Protrusion of an organ or part through the tissues and muscles normally containing it.** A **hiatal hernia** occurs when the upper part of the stomach protrudes upward through the diaphragm (Figure 5-22A). This condition can lead to GERD. An **inguinal hernia** occurs when a small loop of bowel protrudes through a weak lower abdominal wall tissue (fascia) surrounding muscles (Figure 5-22B). Surgical repair of inguinal hernias is known as herniorrhaphy (-rrhaphy means suture).
peptic ulcer	**Open sore in the lining of the stomach or duodenum.** A bacterium, *Helicobacter pylori* (*H. pylori*), is responsible for many cases of peptic ulcer disease. The combination of bacteria, hyperacidity, and gastric juice damages epithelial linings. Drug treatment includes antibiotics, antacids, and agents to protect the lining of the stomach and intestine.

Lower Gastrointestinal Tract (Small and Large Intestines)

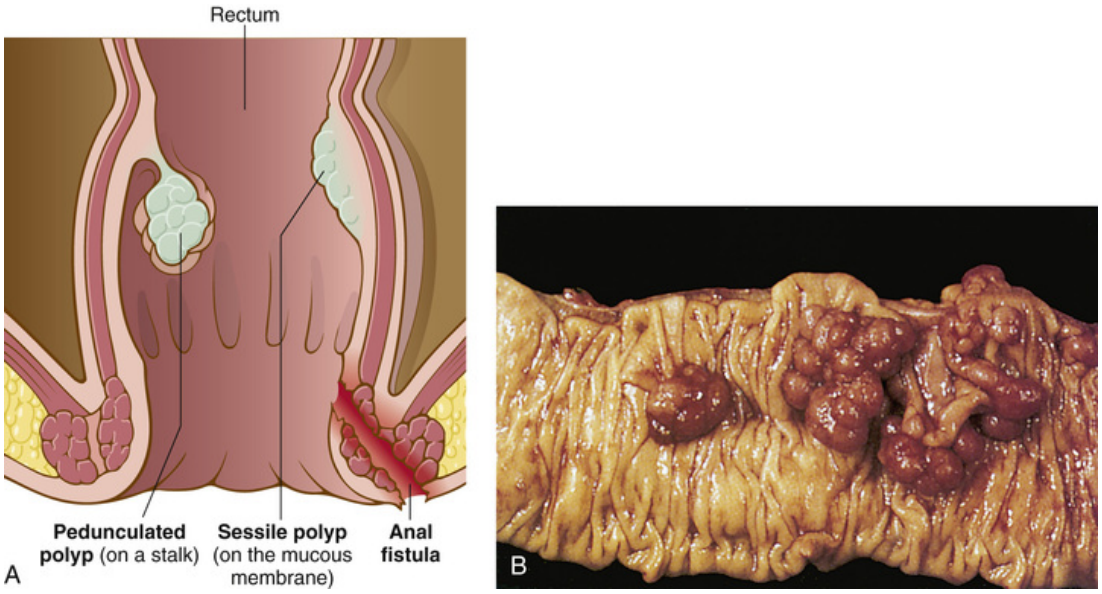


FIGURE 5-23 **Anal fistula and colonic polyps. A,** Anal fistula and two types of polyps. **B,** Multiple polyps of the colon.

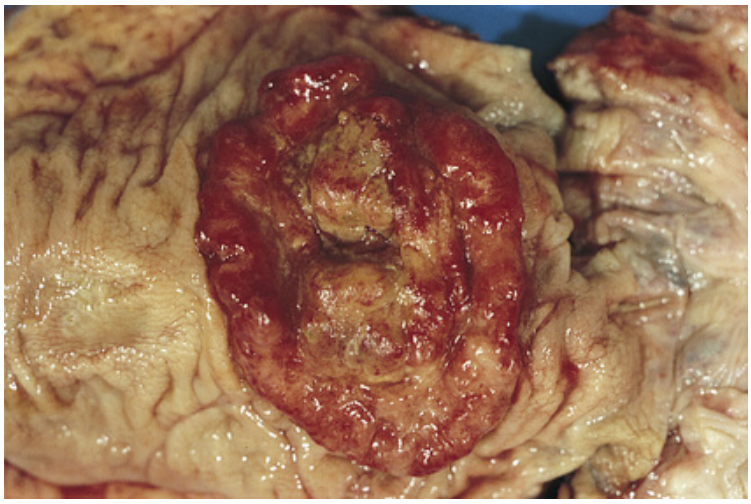


FIGURE 5-24 **Adenocarcinoma of the colon.** This tumor has "heaped-up" edges and an ulcerated central portion.

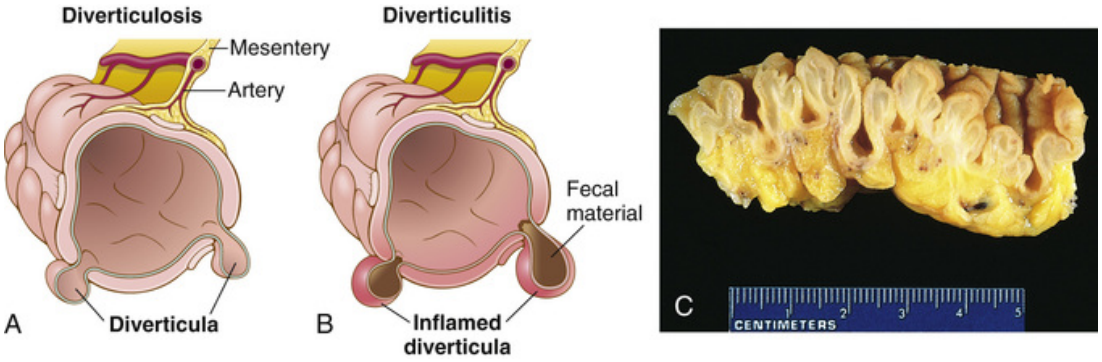


FIGURE 5-25 **A, Diverticula** (resulting in **diverticulosis**) form when the mucous membrane lining of the colon bulges through the weakened muscular wall. **B** and **C, Diverticulitis** can result when fecal material lodges in diverticula. Avoidance of foods with seeds and nuts decreases the risk of this condition.

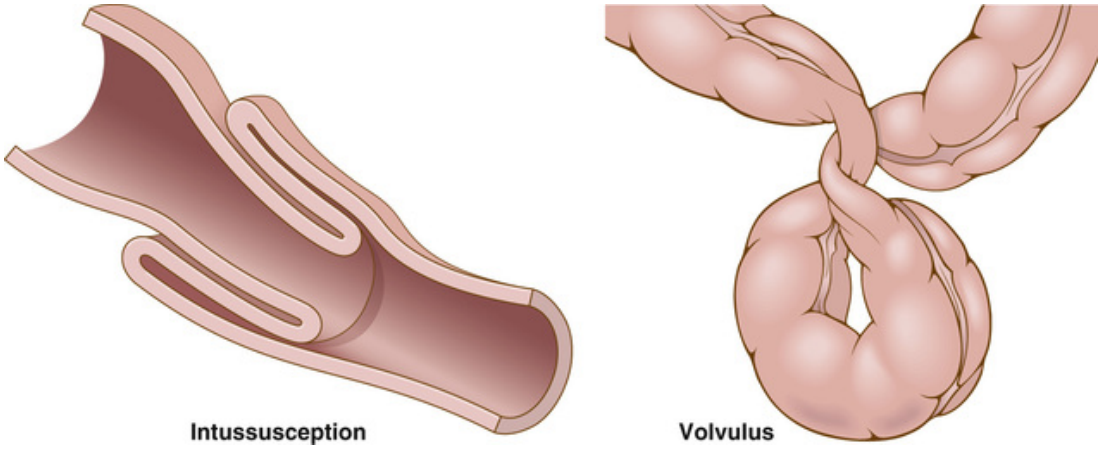


FIGURE 5-26 Intussusception and volvulus.

anal fistula	**Abnormal tube-like passageway near the anus.** The fistula often results from a break or **fissure** in the wall of the anus or rectum, or from an **abscess** (infected area) there (Figure 5-23A).
colonic polyps	**Polyps (benign growths) protrude from the mucous membrane of the colon.** Figure 5-23A illustrates two types of polyps: **pedunculated** (attached to the membrane by a stalk) and **sessile** (sitting directly on the mucous membrane). Figure 5-23B shows multiple polyps of the colon. Many polyps are premalignant (adenomatous polyps); these growths often are removed (polypectomy) as a preventative measure and for further examination (biopsy).
colorectal cancer	**Adenocarcinoma of the colon or rectum, or both.** Colorectal cancer (Figure 5-24) can arise from polyps in the colon or rectal region. Diagnosis is determined by detecting blood in stool and by colonoscopy. Prognosis depends on the stage (extent of spread) of the tumor, including size, depth of invasion, and involvement of lymph nodes. Surgical treatment may require excision of a major section of colon with rejoining of the cut ends (anastomosis). Chemotherapy and radiotherapy are administered as needed.
Crohn disease ("Crohn's")	**Chronic inflammation of the intestinal tract.** Crohn's can occur anywhere from mouth to anus but most commonly in the ileum (ileitis) and colon. Signs and symptoms include diarrhea, severe abdominal pain, fever, anorexia, weakness, and weight loss. Both Crohn disease and ulcerative colitis are forms of **inflammatory bowel disease (IBD).** Treatment is with drugs that control inflammation and other symptoms or by surgical removal of diseased portions of the intestine, with anastomosis of remaining parts. Read the ***In Person: Living with Crohn's*** story on page 162.
diverticulosis	**Abnormal outpouchings (diverticula) in the intestinal wall of the colon.** See Figure 5-25A. **Diverticulitis** is a complication of diverticulosis. When fecal matter becomes trapped in diverticula, diverticulitis can occur. Pain and rectal bleeding are symptoms. Figure 5-25B and C shows diverticulitis in a section through the sigmoid colon. Initial treatment for

	an attack of diverticulitis includes a liquid diet and oral antibiotics. In severe cases, the patient may need hospitalization, intravenous antibiotics, and surgery to remove the affected area of the colon with anastomosis of the cut ends.
dysentery	**Painful inflammation of the intestines commonly caused by bacterial infection.** Often occurring in the colon, dysentery results from ingestion of food or water containing bacteria (salmonellae or shigellae), amebae (one-celled organisms), or viruses. Symptoms are bloody stools, abdominal pain, and sometimes fever.
hemorrhoids	**Swollen, twisted varicose veins in the rectal region.** Varicose veins can be internal (within the rectum) or external (outside the anal sphincter). Pregnancy and chronic constipation, which put pressure on anal veins, often cause hemorrhoids.
ileus	**Loss of peristalsis with resulting obstruction of the intestines.** Surgery, trauma, or bacterial injury to the peritoneum can lead to a **paralytic ileus** (acute, transient loss of peristalsis).
inflammatory bowel disease (IBD)	**Inflammation of the colon and small intestine.** See **Crohn disease** and **ulcerative colitis.**
intussusception	**Telescoping of the intestines.** In this condition, one segment of the bowel collapses into the opening of another segment (Figure 5-26). It often occurs in children and at the ileocecal region. Intestinal obstruction with pain and vomiting can occur. A barium enema can diagnose and may successfully reduce the intussusception. Otherwise, surgery to remove the affected segment of bowel (followed by anastomosis) may be necessary.
irritable bowel syndrome (IBS)	**Group of GI symptoms (abdominal pain, bloating, diarrhea, constipation) without structural abnormalities in the intestines.** IBS may be associated with stress or occur after infection. Treatment includes a diet high in bran and fiber and laxatives plus antidiarrheals to establish regular bowel movements. Other names for IBS are **irritable colon** and **spastic colon.** IBS is a type of

	functional gastrointestinal disorder (FGID). These are disorders of how the gastrointestinal tract functions, but without structural or biochemical abnormalities. A diet low in FODMAPs (an acronym for carbohydrates that are poorly absorbed by the intestine) has been helpful in improving symptoms for many with IBS.
ulcerative colitis	**Chronic inflammation of the colon with presence of ulcers.** This idiopathic, chronic, recurrent diarrheal disease (an **inflammatory bowel disease**) manifests with rectal bleeding and pain. Often beginning in the colon, the inflammation spreads proximally, involving the entire colon. Drug treatment and careful attention to diet are recommended. Resection of diseased bowel with ileostomy may be necessary. In some cases it is cured by total colectomy. Patients with ulcerative colitis are at a higher risk for developing colon cancer.
volvulus	**Twisting of the intestine on itself.** Volvulus causes intestinal obstruction. Severe pain, nausea and vomiting, and absence of bowel sounds are clinical features. Surgical correction is necessary to prevent necrosis of the affected segment of the bowel (see Figure 5-26).

Irritable Bowel Syndrome (IBS) and Inflammatory Bowel Disease (IBD)

While **IBS** is a condition with no structural abnormalities of the intestines, **IBD** (**Crohn's** and **ulcerative colitis**) involves structural abnormalities.

Liver, Gallbladder, and Pancreas

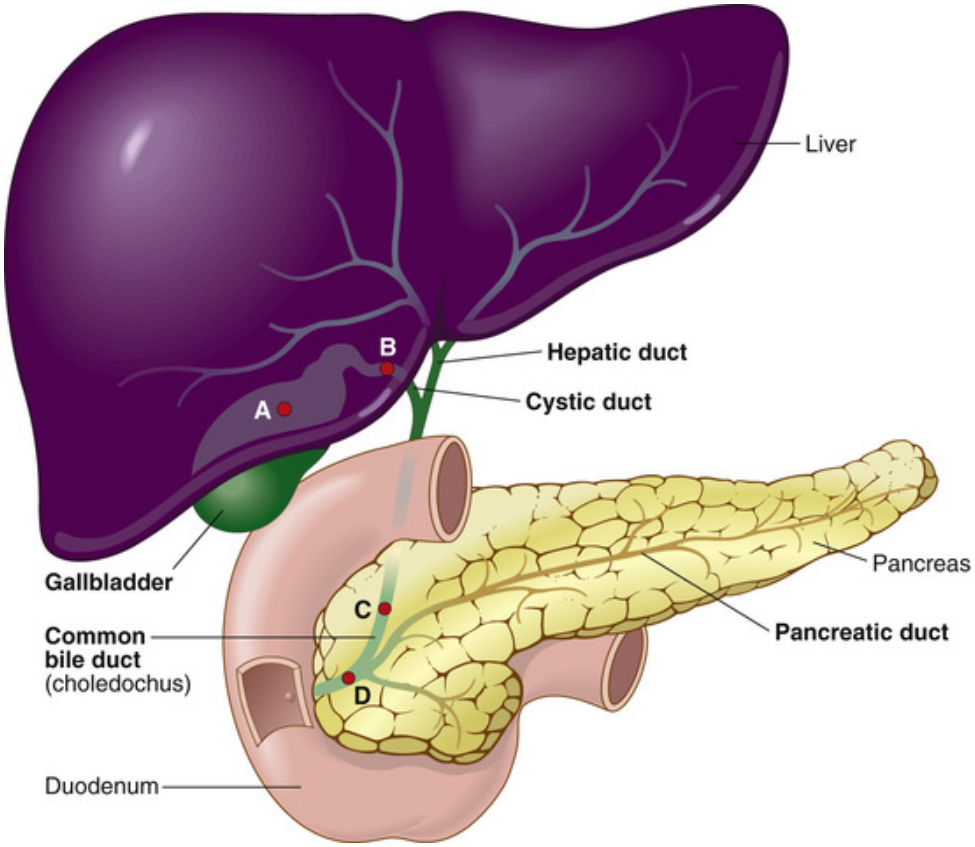


FIGURE 5-27 Gallstone positions in the gallbladder and bile ducts. **A,** Stone in the gallbladder causing mild or no symptoms. **B,** Stone obstructing the cystic duct, causing pain. **C,** Stone obstructing the common bile duct, causing pain and jaundice. **D,** Stone at the lower end of the common bile duct and pancreatic duct, causing pain, jaundice, and pancreatitis.

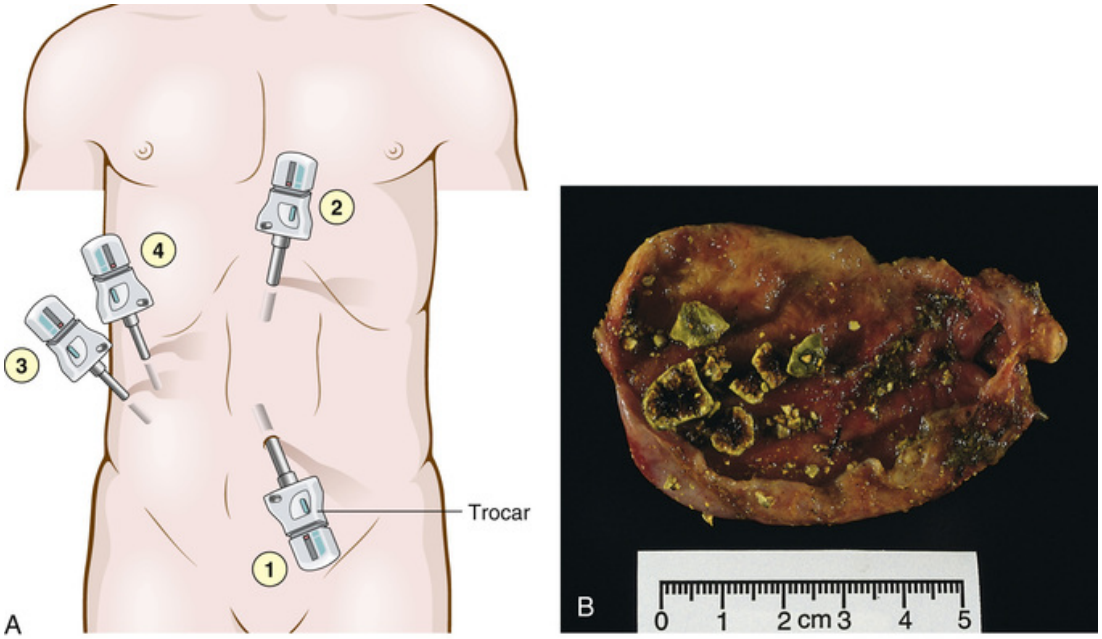


FIGURE 5-28 **A, Trocars in place for laparoscopic cholecystectomy.** Trocars are used to puncture and enter the abdomen. These devices are metal sleeves consisting of a hollow metal tube (cannula) into which fits an obturator (a solid, removable metal instrument with a sharp, three-cornered tip) used to puncture the wall. *Circled numbers* show common positions for trocar insertion: **1** is an umbilical 10/11-mm trocar (the largest trocar diameter is 15). **2** is a 10/11-mm trocar at the midline. **3** and **4** are 5-mm trocars placed in the right upper quadrant of the abdomen. **B, Gallstones.** Mechanical manipulation during laparoscopic cholecystectomy has caused fragmentation of several cholesterol gallstones, revealing interiors that are pigmented because of entrapped bile pigments. The gallbladder mucosa is reddened and irregular as a result.

FIGURE 5-29 A, Normal liver. B, Liver with alcoholic cirrhosis.

cholelithiasis	**Gallstones in the gallbladder.** **Calculi** (stones) prevent bile from leaving the gallbladder and bile ducts (Figure 5-27). Many patients remain asymptomatic and do not require treatment; symptoms related to gallbladder stones are either **biliary colic** (pain from blocked ducts) or **cholecystitis** (inflammation and infection of the gallbladder), both of which require treatment. Currently, **laparoscopic** or **minimally invasive surgery (laparoscopic cholecystectomy)** can be performed to remove the gallbladder and stones (Figure 5-28A and B).
cirrhosis	**Chronic degenerative disease of the liver.** Cirrhosis is commonly the result of chronic alcoholism, viral hepatitis, iron overload, or other causes. Lobes of the liver become scarred with fibrous tissue, hepatic cells degenerate, and the liver is infiltrated with fat. Cirrh/o means yellow-orange, which describes the liver's color caused by fat accumulation. Figure 5-29 shows a normal liver and a liver with alcoholic cirrhosis.
hepatocellular carcinoma (HCC)	**Liver cancer.** Cancer that starts in the liver is primary liver cancer (as opposed to secondary liver cancer, which starts in another organ and metastasizes to the liver). HCC is commonly associated with hepatitis B and C virus infections and cirrhosis due to chronic alcohol use. **Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH)** is fatty infiltration of the liver, which may progress to cirrhosis and HCC. Surgery, radiation, and chemotherapy are therapeutic options. Hepatocellular carcinomas produce **alpha-fetoprotein (AFP)**, a tumor marker that is often elevated in the blood in patients with this cancer. AFP is used as a screen for HCC in patients with cirrhosis. Liver cancers that begin in the bile ducts are called **cholangiocarcinomas**. Bile duct cancers also can arise from the gallbladder.
pancreatic cancer	**Malignant tumor of the pancreas.** It often occurs in the head of the pancreas (closer to the duodenum), where it can block ducts. Although the cause is unknown, pancreatic cancer is more common in smokers and people with diabetes and chronic pancreatitis. Symptoms and signs are abdominal or back pain, fatigue, jaundice, anorexia, diarrhea, and weight

	loss. The standard surgical treatment, if the tumor can be resected, is a **pancreatoduodenectomy** (**Whipple procedure**). Chemotherapy and radiation may also be used.
pancreatitis	**Inflammation of the pancreas.** Digestive enzymes attack pancreatic tissue and damage the gland. Other etiologic factors include chronic alcoholism, drug toxicity, gallstone obstruction of the common bile duct, and viral infections. Treatment includes medications to relieve epigastric pain, intravenous fluids, bowel rest, and subtotal pancreatectomy if necessary.
viral hepatitis	**Inflammation of the liver caused by a virus.** **Hepatitis A** is viral hepatitis caused by the hepatitis A virus (**HAV**). It is a disorder spread by contaminated food or water and characterized by slow onset of symptoms. **Hepatitis B** is caused by the hepatitis B virus (**HBV**) and is transmitted by sexual contact, blood transfusions, or the use of contaminated needles or may be acquired by maternal to fetal transmission. Severe infection can cause destruction of liver cells, cirrhosis, or death. A vaccine that provides immunity is available and recommended for persons at risk for exposure. **Hepatitis C** is caused by the hepatitis C virus (**HCV**) and is transmitted by blood transfusions or needle inoculation (such as among intravenous drug users sharing needles). The acute illness may progress to chronic hepatitis and hepatocellular carcinoma. Two drugs recently approved by the FDA for hepatitis C are Mavyret and Vosevi. In all types, liver enzyme levels may be elevated, indicating damage to liver cells. Signs and symptoms include malaise, anorexia, hepatomegaly, jaundice, and abdominal pain.

What's "in" Gallstones?

Gallstones are composed of cholesterol, bilirubin (pigment in bile), and calcium salts. They can vary in size and shape—ranging from as small as a grain of sand to as large as a golf ball!

Whipple Procedure for Pancreatic Cancer

This surgery consists of:

- removal of the distal half of the stomach (antrectomy)
- removal of gallbladder and common bile duct (cholecystectomy and choledochectomy)
- removal of part of the pancreas and duodenum (pancreatoduodenectomy)
- reconstruction consists of pancreatojejunostomy, hepaticojejunostomy, and gastrojejunostomy

Steve Jobs, cofounder of Apple Inc., and Luciano Pavarotti, opera singer, had this surgery.

In Person

Living with Crohn's

When a friend told me she was sick with the flu yesterday, I was jealous. To someone with a chronic illness, like me, having something acute always seems luxurious. Lie in bed, read glossy magazines, take over-the-counter meds, sleep it off, and in a matter of days you're okay. I have Crohn disease, a chronic inflammation of the small intestine, which is characterized by flare-ups and remission. During flare-ups, I've experienced fever, diarrhea, vomiting, pain, and intestinal obstruction. Even in remission I am never "okay."

Right now I have been in remission two years after a third surgery to remove yet another portion of my small bowel. This time internal bleeding, a rather rare symptom of Crohn's, necessitated the surgery. I was enduring weekly iron infusions, which turned into bimonthly blood transfusions, as my

hemoglobin plummeted to 6 (12 is normal). It was no way to live. After the surgery, the bleeding stopped, but I had bouts of urgent, watery diarrhea for a year. That was no way to live either, and unfortunately, as wonderful as my doctor is, I've found that few gastroenterologists want to address aftereffects of small bowel surgery. After visiting several doctors and by trial and error, I finally got these symptoms under control with codeine, Lomotil, and Metamucil, but I will never be able to absorb vitamin B_{12}, so I must inject it monthly for the rest of my life. In addition to taking medicine to cope with having less and less small bowel, I take medicine in the hopes of preventing the next flare-up. Every few weeks, I inject myself with a biologic medicine, Humira, but I must eventually be weaned off this drug because it has possible long-term side effects, the scariest of which is lymphoma. At 52 and with two school-age children, however, I have learned to think of valuing my present quality of life the most, over possible unknown dangers lurking in the future.

I do often think about the past. What would my life be like if our family doctor hadn't told my parents that my constant episodes of diarrhea—which occurred since I was a child—were caused by "nerves?" By the time I was 21, my weight had dropped below 100 pounds, and I was twisted in pain after every meal. My dad arranged for me to visit his own doctor, who gave me a small bowel series that showed I had Crohn's and that a portion of my small intestine was "as narrow as a pencil." By then it was too late for even prednisone (then the drug of choice despite side effects ranging from puffy face to psychosis) to open up the inflamed passage, and I had my first surgery just months after I was diagnosed. Thinking of those times—as well as all the other flare-up times—makes me flinch. While you can never relive pain, you can remember what it felt like. In my case, it was as if a large metal bike lock chain was being forced through my tender gut.

Before that first surgery, I was just out of college and longing to make my mark on the world, but I spent most of my evenings curled up in my small bedroom, listening to the soothing strains of "Make Believe Ballroom Hour" on the radio. Or, because vomiting and diarrhea usually accompanied the pain, I lay with my back pressed against the cold tiles of the bathroom floor. Later on, as a mom with two young children, I would lie on the couch watching life swirl around me, feeling guilty that I could not take part.

There was a silver lining to those flare-ups, and that is the tender affection of those around me: husband, family, and friends. When you have Crohn's, no one knows you have it until things get unbearable. It's not the kind of illness you discuss, but when you have pain and fever, you can kind of approximate those times of being felled by the flu. Yet you know that it will take more than a dose of Nyquil or a night's sleep to get "better." You know you'll face another course of medications—often untried ones—or that you will likely end up in the hospital undergoing yet another surgery.

Nancy J. Brandwein is a writer, editor, and food columnist.

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, pages 171–172.

A **Match the following digestive system structures with their meanings below.**

anus

cecum

colon

duodenum

esophagus

gallbladder

ileum

jejunum

liver

pancreas

pharynx

sigmoid colon

1. consists of ascending, transverse, descending, and sigmoid sections _____
2. small sac under the liver; stores bile _____
3. first part of the large intestine _____
4. end of the digestive tract opening to the outside of the body _____
5. second part of the small intestine _____
6. tube connecting the throat to the stomach _____

7. third part of the small intestine _____

8. large organ in the RUQ; secretes bile, stores sugar, produces blood proteins _____

9. throat _____

10. lowest part of the colon _____

11. first part of the small intestine _____

12. organ under the stomach; produces insulin and digestive enzymes _____

B **Label the following flow chart of the pathway of food through the gastrointestinal tract. The terms you will need are listed below:**

anus

ascending colon

cecum

descending colon

duodenum

esophagus

gallbladder

ileum

jejunum

liver

pancreas

pharynx

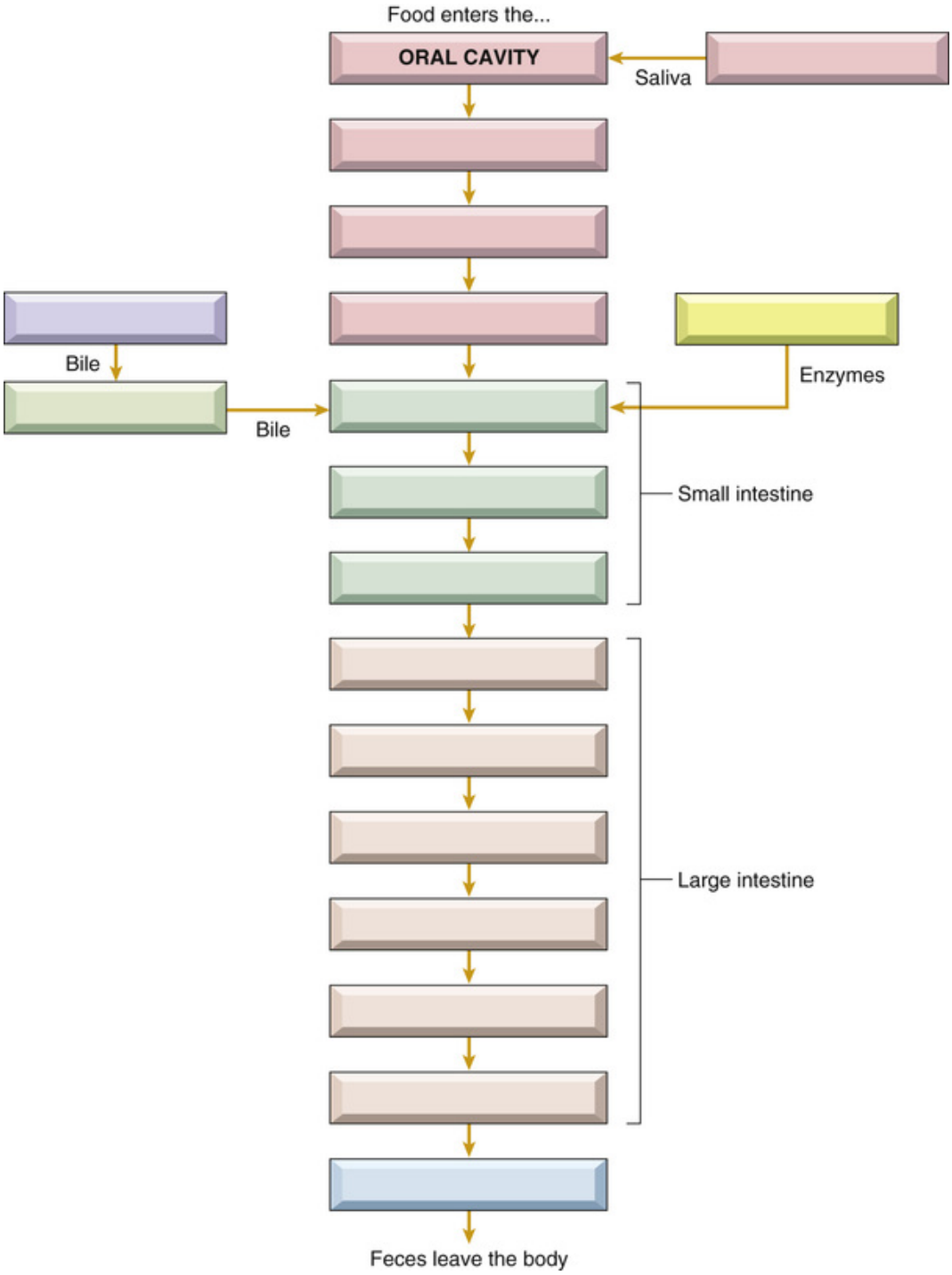
rectum

salivary glands

sigmoid colon

stomach

transverse colon



C **Circle the bold term that fits the given definition. You should be able to define the other terms as well!**

1. microscopic projections in the walls of the small intestine:

   papillae villi rugae

2. salivary gland near the ear:

   submandibular sublingual parotid

3. ring of muscle at the end of the stomach:

   pyloric sphincter uvula lower esophageal sphincter

4. soft, inner section of a tooth:

   dentin enamel pulp

5. chemical that speeds up reactions and helps digest foods:

   triglyceride amino acid enzyme

6. pigment released with bile:

   glycogen bilirubin melena

7. hormone produced by endocrine cells of the pancreas:

   insulin amylase lipase

8. rhythm-like contraction of the muscles in the walls of the gastrointestinal tract:

   deglutition mastication peristalsis

9. breakdown of large fat globules:

   absorption emulsification anabolism

10. pointed, dog-like tooth medial to premolars:

    incisor canine molar

D **Complete the following.**

1. Labi/o and cheil/o mean _____
2. Gloss/o and lingu/o mean _____
3. Or/o and stomat/o mean _____
4. Dent/i and odont/o mean _____
5. Lapar/o and celi/o mean _____
6. Gluc/o and glyc/o mean _____
7. Lip/o, steat/o, and adip/o mean _____
8. The suffixes -iasis and -osis mean _____
9. Chol/e and bil/i mean _____
10. Resection and -ectomy mean _____

E **Build medical terms based on the given definitions.**

1. removal of a salivary gland _____
2. pertaining to the throat _____
3. hernia of the rectum _____
4. enlargement of the liver _____
5. surgical repair of the roof of the mouth _____
6. after meals _____
7. visual examination of the anal and rectal region _____
8. study of the cause (of disease) _____
9. incision of the common bile duct _____
10. pertaining to teeth and cheek _____

11. disease condition of the small intestine _____
12. new opening between the common bile duct and the jejunum _____
13. pertaining to surrounding the anus _____
14. new opening from the colon to the outside of the body _____
15. under the lower jaw _____
16. pertaining to the face _____

F **Match the following doctors or dentists with their specialties.**

colorectal surgeon
endodontist
gastroenterologist
nephrologist
oral surgeon
orthodontist
periodontist
proctologist
urologist

1. treats disorders of the anus and rectum _____
2. operates on the organs of the urinary tract _____
3. straightens teeth _____
4. performs root canal therapy _____
5. operates on the mouth and teeth _____
6. treats kidney disorders _____

7. diagnoses and treats gastrointestinal disorders _____
8. treats gum disease _____
9. operates on the intestinal tract _____

G **Build medical terms to describe the following inflammations.**

1. inflammation of the appendix _____
2. inflammation of the large intestine _____
3. inflammation of the passageway from the throat to the stomach _____
4. inflammation of the membrane surrounding the abdomen _____
5. inflammation of the gallbladder _____
6. inflammation of the third part of the small intestine _____
7. inflammation of the pancreas _____
8. inflammation of the gums _____
9. inflammation of the liver _____
10. inflammation of the mouth _____
11. inflammation of the salivary gland _____
12. inflammation of the small and large intestines _____

H **Match the listed terms with the meanings that follow.**

anastomosis

biliary

defecation

cheilitis

gluconeogenesis
glycogenolysis
hyperbilirubinemia
hyperglycemia
mesentery
mucosa
parenteral
portal vein

1. high level of blood sugar _____
2. inflammation of the lip _____
3. pertaining to administration of medicines and fluid other than by mouth _____
4. mucous membrane _____
5. expulsion of feces from the body through the anus _____
6. breakdown (conversion) of starch to sugar _____
7. fan-like membrane that connects the small intestine to the abdominal wall _____
8. large vessel that takes blood to the liver from the intestines _____
9. new surgical connection between structures or organs _____
10. pertaining to bile ducts _____
11. process of forming new sugar from proteins and fats _____

12. high levels of a bile pigment in the bloodstream
_____

I **Give the names of the following gastrointestinal signs or symptoms based on their descriptions.**

1. passage of bright red blood from the rectum
_____
2. lack of appetite _____
3. fat in the feces _____
4. black, tarry stools; feces containing digested blood
_____
5. abnormal accumulation of fluid in the abdomen
_____
6. rumbling noises produced by gas in the gastrointestinal tract _____
7. gas expelled through the anus _____
8. an unpleasant sensation in the stomach and a tendency to vomit _____
9. loose, watery stools _____
10. difficulty in passing stools (feces) _____
11. difficulty in swallowing _____
12. gas expelled from the stomach through the mouth
_____

J **Write short answers for the following questions.**

1. What is jaundice?
_____
_____
2. List three ways in which a patient can become jaundiced:

a. _____

b. _____

c. _____

3. What does it mean when a disease is described as *idiopathic*? _____

K **Select from the list of pathologic conditions to make a diagnosis.**

achalasia

anal fistula

aphthous stomatitis

colonic polyps

colorectal cancer

Crohn disease (Crohn's)

dental caries

esophageal cancer

herpetic stomatitis

oral leukoplakia

pancreatic cancer

periodontal disease

1. Mr. Jones, a smoker and heavy drinker, complained of dysphagia in recent months. A longstanding condition of Barrett esophagus resulted in his malignant condition. Diagnosis:
   _____.
2. An abnormal tube-like passageway near his anus caused Mr. Rosen's proctalgia. His doctor performed surgery to close off the abnormality. Diagnosis:
   _____.

3. Carol's dentist informed her that the enamel of three teeth was damaged by bacteria-producing acid. Diagnosis: _____.
4. Paola's symptoms of chronic diarrhea, abdominal cramps, and fever led her doctor to suspect that she suffered from an inflammatory bowel disease affecting the distal portion of her ileum. The doctor prescribed steroid drugs to heal her condition. Diagnosis: _____.
5. Mr. Hart learned that his colonoscopy showed the presence of small benign growths protruding from the mucous membrane of his large intestine. Diagnosis: _____.
6. During a routine dental checkup, Dr. Friedman discovered white plaques on Mr. Longo's buccal mucosa. He advised Mr. Longo, who was a chronic smoker and heavy drinker, to have these precancerous lesions removed. Diagnosis: _____.
7. Every time Carl had a stressful time at work, he developed a fever blister (cold sore) on his lip, resulting from reactivation of a previous viral infection. His doctor told him that there was no treatment 100% effective in preventing the reappearance of these lesions. Diagnosis: _____.
8. Mr. Green had a biopsy of a neoplastic lesion in his descending colon. The pathology report indicated a malignancy. A partial colectomy was necessary. Diagnosis: _____.
9. Small ulcers (canker sores) appeared on Diane's gums. They were painful and annoying. Diagnosis:

_____.

10. Sharon's failure to floss her teeth and remove dental plaque regularly led to development of gingivitis and pyorrhea. Her dentist advised consulting a specialist who could treat her condition. Diagnosis: _____.
11. Imaging tests revealed a tumor in a section of Mr. Smith's pancreas. His physician told him that since it had not spread, he could hope for a cure with surgery. He had a pancreatoduodenectomy (Whipple procedure), which was successful. Diagnosis: _____.
12. Mr. Clark complained of pain during swallowing. His physician explained that the pain was caused by a failure of muscles in his lower esophagus to relax during swallowing. Diagnosis: _____.

L **Match the following pathologic diagnoses with their definitions.**

cholecystolithiasis (gallstones)

cirrhosis

diverticulosis

dysentery

esophageal varices

hemorrhoids

hiatal hernia

ileus

intussusception

irritable bowel syndrome

pancreatitis

peptic ulcer

ulcerative colitis

viral hepatitis

volvulus

1. protrusion of the upper part of the stomach through the diaphragm _____
2. painful, inflamed intestines caused by bacterial infection _____
3. swollen, twisted veins in the rectal region _____
4. open sore or lesion of the mucous membrane of the stomach or duodenum _____
5. loss of peristalsis _____
6. twisting of the intestine on itself _____
7. swollen, varicose veins on the surface of the distal portion of the esophagus _____
8. abnormal outpouchings in the intestinal wall _____
9. chronic inflammation of the colon with destruction of its inner surface _____
10. telescoping of the intestines _____
11. inflammation of the liver caused by type A, type B, or type C virus _____
12. inflammation of the pancreas _____
13. calculi in the sac that stores bile _____
14. chronic degenerative liver disease with scarring resulting from alcoholism or infectious hepatitis

_____

15. gastrointestinal symptoms (diarrhea or constipation, abdominal pain, bloating) with no evidence of structural abnormalities _____

M **Complete the following terms from their meanings given below.**

1. membrane (peritoneal fold) that holds the intestines together: mes _____
2. removal of the gallbladder: _____ ectomy
3. black or dark brown, tarry stools containing blood: mel _____
4. high levels of pigment in the blood (jaundice): hyper _____
5. pertaining to under the tongue: sub _____
6. twisting of the intestine on itself: vol _____
7. organ under the stomach that produces insulin and digestive enzymes: pan _____
8. lack of appetite: an _____
9. swollen, twisted veins in the rectal region: _____ oids
10. new connection between two previously unconnected tubes: ana _____
11. absence of acid in the stomach: a _____
12. return of solids and fluids to the mouth from the stomach: gastro re _____ disease

13. removal of soft tissue hanging from the roof of the mouth: _____ ectomy
14. formation of stones: _____ genesis.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. colon
2. gallbladder
3. cecum
4. anus
5. jejunum
6. esophagus
7. ileum
8. liver
9. pharynx
10. sigmoid colon
11. duodenum
12. pancreas

B

See Figure 5-12 on page 141.

C

1. Villi. Papillae are nipple-like projections in the tongue where taste buds are located, and rugae are folds in the mucous membrane of the stomach and hard palate.

2. Parotid. The submandibular gland is under the lower jaw, and the sublingual gland is under the tongue.
3. Pyloric sphincter. The uvula is soft tissue hanging from the soft palate, and the lower esophageal sphincter is a ring of muscle between the esophagus and stomach.
4. Pulp. Dentin is the hard part of the tooth directly under the enamel and in the root, and enamel is the hard, outermost part of the tooth composing the crown.
5. Enzyme. A triglyceride is a large fat molecule, and an amino acid is a substance produced when proteins are digested.
6. Bilirubin. Glycogen is animal starch that is produced in liver cells from sugar, and melena is dark, tarry stools.
7. Insulin. Amylase and lipase are digestive enzymes produced by the exocrine cells of the pancreas.
8. Peristalsis. Deglutition is swallowing, and mastication is chewing.
9. Emulsification. Absorption is the passage of materials through the walls of the small intestine into the bloodstream, and anabolism is the process of building up proteins in a cell (protein synthesis).
10. Canine. An incisor is one of the four front teeth in the dental arch (not pointed or like a dog's tooth), and a molar is any of three large teeth just behind (distal to) the two premolar teeth.

D

1. lip

2. tongue
3. mouth
4. tooth
5. abdomen
6. sugar
7. fat
8. abnormal condition
9. gall, bile
10. removal, excision

E

1. sialadenectomy
2. pharyngeal
3. rectocele
4. hepatomegaly
5. palatoplasty
6. postprandial (post cibum—cib/o refers to meals or feeding)
7. proctoscopy
8. etiology
9. choledochotomy
10. dentibuccal
11. enteropathy
12. choledochojejunostomy

13. perianal
14. colostomy
15. submandibular
16. facial

F

1. proctologist
2. urologist
3. orthodontist
4. endodontist
5. oral surgeon
6. nephrologist
7. gastroenterologist
8. periodontist
9. colorectal surgeon

G

1. appendicitis
2. colitis
3. esophagitis
4. peritonitis (note that the e is dropped)
5. cholecystitis
6. ileitis
7. pancreatitis

8. gingivitis
9. hepatitis
10. stomatitis
11. sialadenitis
12. enterocolitis (when two combining forms for gastrointestinal organs are in a term, use the one that is closest to the mouth first)

H

1. hyperglycemia
2. cheilitis
3. parenteral
4. mucosa
5. defecation
6. glycogenolysis
7. mesentery
8. portal vein
9. anastomosis
10. biliary
11. gluconeogenesis
12. hyperbilirubinemia

I

1. hematochezia
2. anorexia

3. steatorrhea
4. melena
5. ascites
6. borborygmi (bowel sounds)
7. flatus
8. nausea
9. diarrhea
10. constipation
11. dysphagia
12. eructation

J

1. yellow-orange coloration of the skin and other tissues (hyperbilirubinemia)
2. a. any liver disease (hepatopathy—such as cirrhosis, hepatoma, or hepatitis), so that bilirubin is not processed into bile and cannot be excreted in feces
   b. obstruction of bile flow, so that bile and bilirubin are not excreted and accumulate in the bloodstream
   c. excessive hemolysis leading to overproduction of bilirubin and high levels in the bloodstream
3. cause is not known

K

1. esophageal cancer
2. anal fistula

3. dental caries
4. Crohn disease (Crohn's)
5. colonic polyps
6. oral leukoplakia
7. herpetic stomatitis
8. colorectal cancer
9. aphthous stomatitis
10. periodontal disease
11. pancreatic cancer
12. achalasia

L

1. hiatal hernia
2. dysentery
3. hemorrhoids
4. peptic ulcer
5. ileus
6. volvulus
7. esophageal varices
8. diverticulosis
9. ulcerative colitis
10. intussusception
11. viral hepatitis

12. pancreatitis
13. cholecystolithiasis (gallstones)
14. cirrhosis
15. irritable bowel syndrome

M

1. mesentery
2. cholecystectomy
3. melena
4. hyperbilirubinemia
5. sublingual
6. volvulus
7. pancreas
8. anorexia
9. hemorrhoids
10. anastomosis
11. achlorhydria
12. gastroesophageal reflux
13. uvulectomy
14. lithogenesis

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary**

beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

Vocabulary and Terminology

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
absorption	ab-SORP-shun
achlorhydria	a-chlor-HI-dre-ah
amino acids	ah-ME-no AS-idz
amylase	AM-ih-layz
anastomosis	ah-nas-to-MO-sis
anus	A-nus
appendectomy	ah-pen-DEK-to-me
appendicitis	ah-pen-dih-SI-tis
appendixe	ah-PEN-diks
bile	bile
biliary	BIH-le-er-e
bilirubin	bih-le-RU-bin
bowel	BOW-el
buccal mucosa	BUK-al mu-KO-sah
canine teeth	KA-nine teeth
cecal	SE-kal
cecum	SE-kum
celiac	SE-le-ak
cheilosis	ki-LO-sis
cholecystectomy	ko-le-sis-TEK-to-me
choledochojejunostomy	ko-leh-do-ko-jeh-ju-NOS-to-me
choledocholithiasis	ko-leh-do-ko-lih-THI-ah-sis
choledochotomy	ko-leh-do-KOT-o-me
cholelithiasis	ko-le-lih-THI-ah-sis
colon	KO-lon
colonic	ko-LON-ik
colonoscopy	ko-lon-OS-ko-pe
colostomy	ko-LOS-to-me
common bile duct	KOM-on bile dukt
defecation	deh-feh-KA-shun
deglutition	de-glu-TIH-shun
dentibuccal	den-tih-BUK-al
dentin	DEN-tin
digestion	di-JEST-shun
duodenal	du-o-DE-nal
duodenum	do-o-DE-num
elimination	e-lim-ih-NA-shun
emulsification	e-mul-sih-fih-KA-shun
enamel	e-NAM-el

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
endodontist	en-do-DON-tist
enterocolitis	en-ter-o-ko-LI-tis
enteroenterostomy	en-ter-o-en-ter-OS-to-me
enzyme	EN-zime
esophageal	eh-sof-ah-JE-al
esophagus	eh-SOF-ah-gus
facial	FA-shul
fatty acids	FAH-te AS-idz
feces	FE-seez
gallbladder	GAWL-blah-der
gastrointestinal tract	gas-tro-in-TES-tih-nal trakt
gastrojejunostomy	gas-tro-jeh-ju-NOS-to-me
gastrostomy	gas-TROS-to-me
gingivitis	jin-jih-VI-tis
gluconeogenesis	glu-ko-ne-o-JEN-eh-sis
glucose	GLU-kohs
glycogen	GLI-ko-jen
glycogenolysis	gli-ko-je-NOL-ih-sis
hepatoma	hep-ah-TO-mah
hepatomegaly	hep-ah-to-MEG-ah-le
hydrochloric acid	hi-dro-KLOR-ik AS-id
hyperbilirubinemia	hi-per-bih-le-ru-bih-NE-me-ah
hyperglycemia	hi-per-gli-SE-me-ah
hypoglossal	hi-po-GLOS-al
ileitis	il-e-I-tis
ileocecal sphincter	il-e-o-SE-kal SFINK-ter
ileostomy	il-e-OS-to-me
ileum	IL-e-um
incisor	in-SI-zor
insulin	IN-su-lin
jejunum	je-JU-num
labial	LA-be-al
laparoscopy	lap-ah-ROS-ko-pe
lipase	LI-payz
lithogenesis	lith-o-JEN-eh-sis
liver	LIV-er
lower esophageal sphincter	LO-er eh-sof-ah-JE-al SFINK-ter
mastication	mas-tih-KA-shun
melena	MEL-en-ah

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
mesentery	MES-en-ter-e
molar teeth	MO-lar teeth
oral	OR-al
orthodontist	or-tho-DON-tist
palate	PAH-lat
palatopharyngoplasty	pah-lat-o-fah-RIN-go-plas-te
palatoplasty	pah-LAT-o-plas-te
pancreas	PAN-kre-as
pancreatitis	pan-kre-ah-TI-tis
papillae	pap-IL-e
parenteral	par-EN-ter-al
parotid gland	par-OT-id gland
perianal	peh-re-A-nal
periodontist	peh-re-o-DON-tist
peristalsis	peh-rih-STAL-sis
peritonitis	peh-rih-to-NI-tis
pharyngeal	fah-ran-JE-al
pharynx	FAH-rinks
portal vein	POR-tal vayn
postprandial	post-PRAN-de-al
premolar teeth	pre-MO-lar teeth
proctologist	prok-TOL-o-jist
protease	PRO-te-ayz
pulp	pulp
pyloric sphincter	pi-LOR-ik SFINK-ter
pyloroplasty	pi-LOR-o-plas-te
pylorus	pi-LOR-us
rectocele	REK-to-seel
rectum	REK-tum
rugae	RU-guy
saliva	sah-LI-vah
salivary glands	SAH-lih-vah-re glandz
sialadenitis	si-al-ah-deh-NI-tis
sialolith	si-AL-o-lith
sigmoid colon	SIG-moyd KO-lon
sigmoidoscopy	sig-moyd-OS-ko-pe
sphincter	SFINK-ter
steatorrhea	ste-at-o-RE-ah
stomach	STUM-ak

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
stomatitis	sto-mah-TI-tis
sublingual	sub-LING-wal
submandibular	sub-man-DIH-bu-lar
triglycerides	tri-GLIS-eh-ridez
uvula	U-vu-lah
uvulectomy	u-vu-LEK-to-me
villi	VIL-i

Pathologic Terminology

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
achalasia	ak-ah-LA-jah
anal fistula	A-nal FIS-tu-la
anorexia	an-or-EK-se-ah
aphthous stomatitis	AF-thus sto-mah-TI-tis
ascites	ah-SI-teez
borborygmi	bor-bor-IG-me
cholelithiasis	ko-le-lih-THI-ah-sis
cirrhosis	sih-RO-sis
colonic polyps	ko-LON-ik POL-ips
colorectal cancer	ko-lo-REK-tal KAN-ser
constipation	con-stih-PA-shun
Crohn disease	KROHN dih-ZEEZ
dental caries	DEN-tal KAH-reez
diarrhea	di-ah-RE-ah
diverticula	di-ver-TIH-ku-lah
diverticulosis	di-ver-tih-ku-LO-sis
dysentery	DIS-en-ter-e
dysphagia	dis-PHA-je-ah
eructation	e-ruk-TA-shun
esophageal cancer	eh-sof-ah-JE-al KAN-ser
esophageal varices	eh-sof-ah-JE-al VAR-ih-seez
etiology	e-te-OL-o-je
flatus	FLA-tus
gastric cancer	GAS-trik KAN-ser
gastroesophageal reflux disease	gas-tro-eh-sof-ah-JE-al RE-flux dih-ZEEZ
hematochezia	he-mah-to-KE-se-ah
hemorrhoids	HEH-mah-roydz
hepatocellular carcinoma	hep-at-o-SEL-u-lar kar-sih-NO-mah
herpetic stomatitis	her-PET-ik sto-mah-TI-tis
hiatal hernia	hi-A-tal HER-ne-ah
icterus	IK-ter-us
idiopathic	id-e-o-PATH-ik
ileus	IL-e-us
inflammatory bowel disease	in-FLAM-ah-tor-e BOW-el dih-ZEEZ
inguinal hernia	IN-gwih-nal HER-ne-ah
intussusception	in-tuh-suh-SEP-shun
irritable bowel syndrome	IR-it-ah-bel BOW-el SIN-drohm
jaundice	JAWN-dis
lipoma	li-PO-mah

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
melena	MEL-en-ah
nausea	NAW-ze-ah
oral leukoplakia	OR-al lu-ko-PLA-ke-ah
pancreatic cancer	pan-kre-AH-tik KAN-ser
pancreatitis	pan-kre-ah-TI-tis
peptic ulcer	PEP-tic UL-ser
periodontal disease	peh-re-o-DON-tal dih-ZEEZ
pyorrhea	pi-or-RE-ah
ulcerative colitis	UL-ser-ah-tiv ko-LI-tis
viral hepatitis	VI-ral hep-ah-TI-tis
volvulus	VOL-vu-lus

Note: A combination Review Sheet for this chapter and the next one is provided in Chapter 6 on page 201.

CHAPTER 6

Additional Suffixes and Digestive System Terminology

CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 178
Suffixes 178
Terminology 181
Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures 183
Abbreviations 190
In Person: Cholecystectomy 191
Practical Applications 192
Exercises 192
Answers to Exercises 198
Pronunciation of Terms 199
Review Sheet 201

CHAPTER GOALS

- Define new suffixes and use them to form terms related to the digestive system.
- List and explain laboratory tests, clinical procedures, and abbreviations relevant to the digestive system.
- Apply your new knowledge to understanding medical terms in their proper context, such as in medical reports and records and in personal vignettes.

Introduction

This chapter gives you practice in word building, while not introducing a large number of new terms. It uses many familiar terms from Chapter 5, which should give you a breather after your hard work.

Study the suffixes presented next and complete the meanings of the terms. Checking the meanings of the terms with a dictionary may prove helpful and add

another dimension to your understanding.

The information included under Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures and in the Abbreviations section relates to the gastrointestinal system and will be useful for work in clinical or laboratory medical settings.

The Practical Applications section gives you examples of medical language in context. Congratulate yourself as you decipher medical sentences, operative reports, and case studies.

Suffixes

Write the meaning of the medical term in the space provided.

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
-ectasis, -ectasia	dilation (dilatation), widening	cholangiectasis _____ *Cholangi/o means bile duct (vessel). Bile duct obstruction may cause cholangiectasis (ko-lan-je-EK-tah-sis).*
-emesis	vomiting	hematemesis _____ *Bright red blood is vomited, often associated with esophageal varices or peptic ulcer.*
-pepsia	digestion	dyspepsia _____
-phagia	eating, swallowing	polyphagia _____ *Excessive appetite and uncontrolled eating.* dysphagia _____
-plasty	surgical repair	abdominoplasty _____ *This is commonly referred to as a "tummy tuck." Other surgical repairs are rhinoplasty and blepharoplasty.*
-ptysis	spitting	hemoptysis _____ *(he-MOP-tih-sis) Spitting up blood from the respiratory tract and lungs.*
-rrhage, -rrhagia	bursting forth (of blood)	hemorrhage _____ *Loss of a large amount of blood in a short period.* gastrorrhagia _____
-rrhaphy	suture	herniorrhaphy _____ *(her-ne-OR-ah-fe) Repair (as in stitching or suturing) of a hernia. Hernioplasty is a synonym.*
-rrhea	flow, discharge	diarrhea _____ *The embedded root rrh means flow or discharge.*
-spasm	involuntary contraction of muscles	pylorospasm _____ bronchospasm _____ *A chief characteristic of bronchitis and asthma.*
-stasis	stopping, controlling	cholestasis _____ *Flow of bile from the liver to the duodenum is interrupted.*
-stenosis	narrowing, tightening	pyloric stenosis _____ *This is a congenital defect in newborns blocking the flow of food into the small intestine.*

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-tresia	opening	atresia _____ *Absence of a normal opening.* esophageal atresia _____ *A congenital anomaly in which the esophagus does not connect with the stomach. A tracheoesophageal fistula often accompanies this abnormality* (Figure 6-1). biliary atresia _____ *Congenital hypoplasia or nonformation of bile ducts causes neonatal cholestasis and jaundice.*	

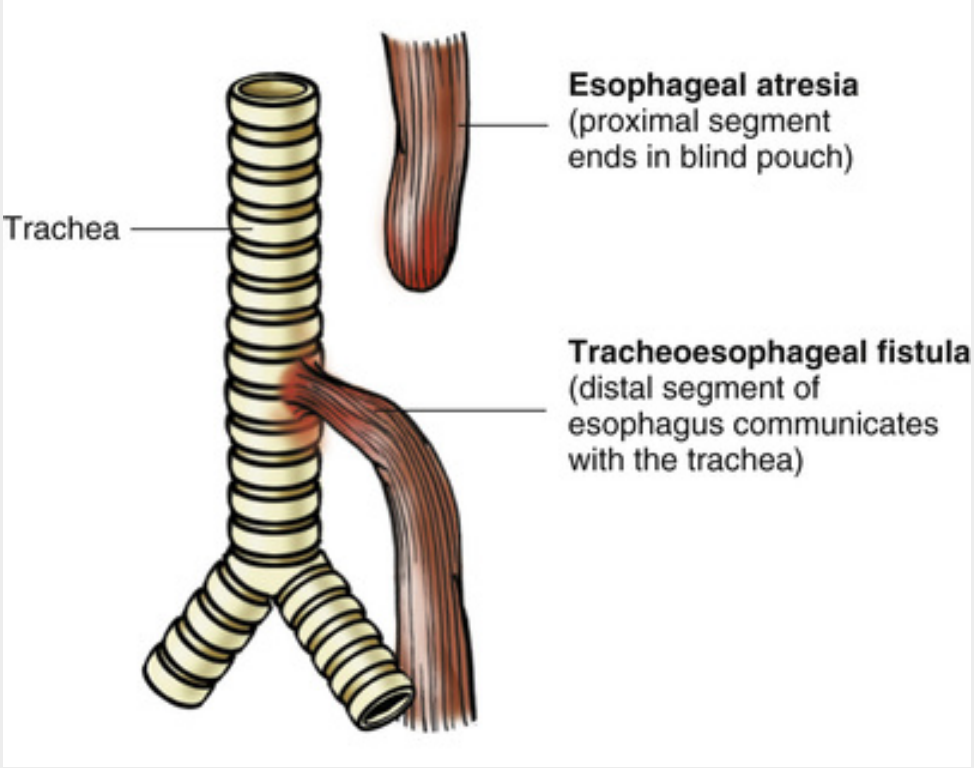


FIGURE 6-1 Esophageal atresia with tracheoesophageal fistula.

-ectasis, -ectasia

These suffixes are commonly used in respiratory system terminology in Chapter 12. Examples are bronchiectasis and atelectasis (a- = not, tel = complete), which is a collapsed lung.

Dysphagia/Dysplasia/Dysphasia

Don't confuse **dysphagia**, which is difficulty in swallowing, with **dysplasia,** which is abnormal formation (plas/o = formation), or **dysphasia**, which is abnormal speech (phas/o = speech).

Hemoptysis and Hematemesis

Hemoptysis is spitting up blood from the respiratory tract, a sign of bleeding and disease within the bronchial tubes and lungs. **Hematemesis** is vomiting blood, a sign of bleeding from the upper part of the gastrointestinal tract.

-rrhea

The suffix -rrhea is used to indicate flow or discharge of various substances:

- rhinorrhea-mucus from the nose
- menorrhea-menstrual (men/o) blood from the uterine lining
- leukorrhea-white, yellowish fluid from the vagina

Stenosis

Stenosis comes from the Greek meaning "narrowing." It is sometimes called a **stricture.** While this term is used in the gastrointestinal system to describe narrowing, as in bowel obstruction, biliary tract stenosis, and pyloric stenosis, there are other types of stenoses as well. These include:

- arterial stenosis
- heart valve stenosis
- spinal stenosis
- tracheal stenosis

Examples of suffixes that are used alone as separate terms are:

emesis (emetic)	An **emesis** basin is a kidney-shaped container positioned beside a hospital bed to collect vomit. If a child swallows poison, the physician may prescribe a drug to induce **emesis**. An **emetic** is a strong solution such as ipecac syrup administered to induce vomiting after a patient swallows poison.
spasm	Eating spicy foods can lead to **spasm** of gastric sphincters.
stasis	Overgrowth of bacteria within the small intestine can cause **stasis** of the intestinal contents.
stenosis	Projectile vomiting in an infant during feeding is a clinical sign of pyloric **stenosis.**

Terminology

Write the meaning of the terms in the spaces provided.

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
bucc/o	_____	buccal _____	
cec/o	_____	cecal volvulus _____	
celi/o	_____	celiac disease _____ *Damage to the lining of the small intestine occurring as a reaction to eating **gluten** (protein found in wheat, barley, and rye). Malabsorption and malnutrition result. Treatment consists of a lifelong gluten-free diet. It also is called **celiac sprue.***	
cheil/o	_____	cheilosis _____ *Characterized by scales and fissures on the lips and resulting from a deficiency of vitamin B_2 (thiamine) in the diet.*	
chol/e	_____	cholelithiasis _____	
cholangi/o	_____	cholangitis _____ *In this term, one i is dropped. The most common cause of this condition is bacterial infection.* cholangiocarcinoma _____	
cholecyst/o	_____	cholecystectomy _____	
choledoch/o	_____	choledochal _____ choledochectasia _____	
col/o	_____	colectomy _____ *Surgeons perform a **LAP (laparoscopic) colectomy** as an alternative to open colectomy to remove nonmetastatic colorectal carcinomas.*	
colon/o	_____	colonoscopy _____	
dent/i	_____	dentalgia _____	
duoden/o	_____	duodenal _____	

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
enter/o	_____	gastroenteritis	_____
esophag/o	_____	esophageal atresia _____ *This congenital anomaly must be corrected surgically.*	
gastr/o	_____	gastrojejunostomy _____ gastrostomy _____ *A gastrostomy is also called a **G tube** or "button." One type is a **PEG (percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy)** tube, which is inserted (laparoscopically) through the abdomen into the stomach to deliver food and liquids when swallowing is impossible.*	
gingiv/o	_____	gingivectomy	_____
gloss/o	_____	glossectomy	_____
gluc/o	_____	gluconeogenesis	_____
glyc/o	_____	glycogen _____ *A form of sugar stored in the liver.*	
hepat/o	_____	hepatomegaly	_____
herni/o	_____	herniorrhaphy	_____
ile/o	_____	ileostomy	_____
jejun/o	_____	cholecystojejunostomy	_____
labi/o	_____	labiodental	_____
lingu/o	_____	sublingual	_____
lip/o	_____	lipase	_____
lith/o	_____	cholecystolithiasis	_____

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
odont/o	_____	periodontal membrane _____	
or/o	_____	oropharynx _____ *The tonsils are located in the oropharynx.*	
palat/o	_____	palatoplasty _____ *Also called palatorrhaphy; this procedure corrects cleft (split) palate, a congenital anomaly.*	
pancreat/o	_____	pancreatic _____ pancreatoduodenectomy _____ *Sometimes called a pancreaticoduodenectomy. This is a **Whipple procedure,** a surgical treatment for pancreatic cancer. See page 192.*	
proct/o	_____	proctosigmoidoscopy _____	
pylor/o	_____	pyloric stenosis _____	
rect/o	_____	rectal carcinoma _____	
sialaden/o	_____	sialadenectomy _____	
splen/o	_____	splenic flexure _____ *The downward bend in the transverse colon near the spleen. The **hepatic flexure** is the bend in the transverse colon near the liver.*	
steat/o	_____	steatorrhea _____	
stomat/o	_____	aphthous stomatitis _____	

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Concentrate on learning the meanings in **bold** opposite the laboratory test or procedure. Additional information is provided to increase your understanding of terms.

Laboratory Tests

amylase and lipase tests	**Tests for the levels of amylase and lipase enzymes in the blood.** Increased levels are associated with pancreatitis.
liver function tests (LFTs)	**Tests for the presence of enzymes and bilirubin in blood.** LFTs are performed on blood serum (clear fluid that remains after blood has clotted). Examples of LFTs are tests for **ALT** (alanine transaminase) and **AST** (aspartate transaminase). ALT and AST are enzymes present in many tissues. **Levels are elevated in the serum of patients with liver disease.** High ALT and AST levels indicate damage to liver cells (as in hepatitis). **Alkaline phosphatase (alk phos)** is another enzyme that may be elevated in patients with liver, bone, and other diseases. **Serum bilirubin** levels are elevated in patients with liver disease and jaundice. A **direct bilirubin test** measures conjugated bilirubin. High levels indicate liver disease or biliary obstruction. An **indirect bilirubin test** measures unconjugated bilirubin. Increased levels suggest excessive hemolysis, as may occur in a newborn.
stool culture	**Test for microorganisms present in feces.** Feces are placed in a growth medium and examined microscopically. (Figure 6-2A).
stool guaiac test or Hemoccult test	**Test to detect occult (hidden) blood in feces.** This is an important screening test for colon cancer. **Guaiac** (GWĪ-ăk) is a chemical from the wood of trees. When added to a stool sample, it reacts with any blood present in the feces. See Figure 6-2B.

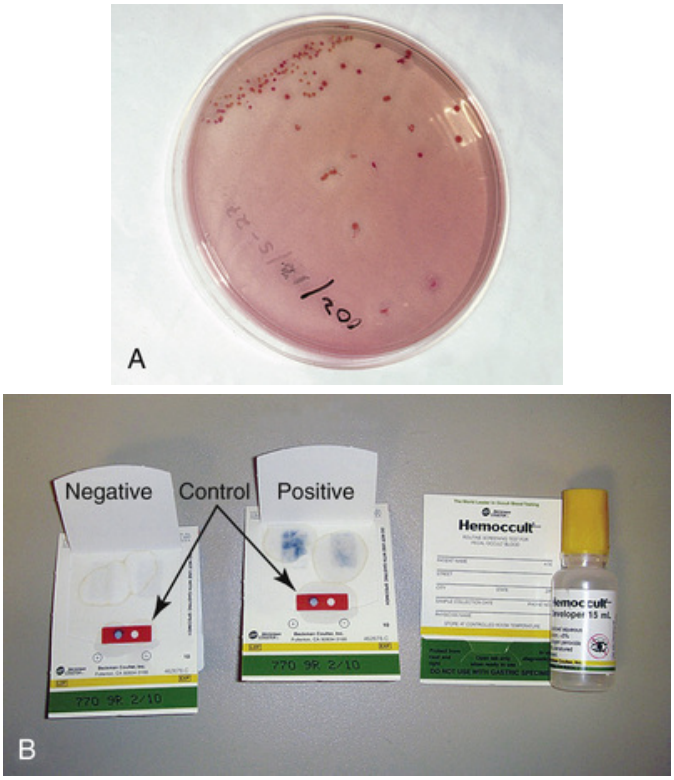


FIGURE 6-2 A, Stool culture. B, Stool guaiac test.

Clinical Procedures

X-Ray Tests

X-ray imaging is used in many ways to detect pathologic conditions. In dental practice, x-ray images are commonly used to locate cavities (caries). Many of the x-ray tests listed here use a **contrast medium** (substance that x-rays cannot penetrate) to visualize a specific area of the digestive system. The contrast, because of its increased density relative to body tissue, allows organs and parts to be distinguished from one another on the film or screen.

lower gastrointestinal series (barium enema)	**X-ray images of the colon and rectum obtained after injection of barium into the rectum.** Radiologists inject barium (a contrast medium) by enema into the rectum. Figure 6-3A shows a barium enema study of a colon with diverticulosis.
upper gastrointestinal series	**X-ray images of the esophagus, stomach, and small intestine obtained after administering barium by mouth.** Often performed immediately after an upper gastrointestinal series, a **small bowel follow-through** study shows sequential x-ray pictures of the small intestine as barium passes through (Figure 6-3B). A **barium swallow** is a study of the esophagus.
cholangiography	**X-ray examination of the biliary system performed after injection of contrast into the bile ducts.** In **percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography,** the contrast medium is injected using a needle placed through the abdominal wall into the biliary vessels of the liver. In **endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP)** (Figure 6-4A), contrast medium is administered through an oral catheter (tube) and then passes through the esophagus, stomach, and duodenum and into bile ducts. This procedure helps diagnose problems involving the bile ducts, gallbladder, and pancreas.
computed tomography (CT)	**A series of x-ray images are taken in multiple views (especially cross section).** A **CT scan** uses a circular array of x-ray beams to produce the cross-sectional image based on differences in tissue densities. Use of contrast material allows visualization of organs and blood vessels and highlights differences in blood flow between normal and diseased tissues (Figure 6-4B and Figure 6-5A and B). **Tomography** (tom/o means cutting) produces a series of x-ray pictures showing multiple views of an organ. An earlier name for a CT scan is "CAT scan" (computerized axial tomography scan).

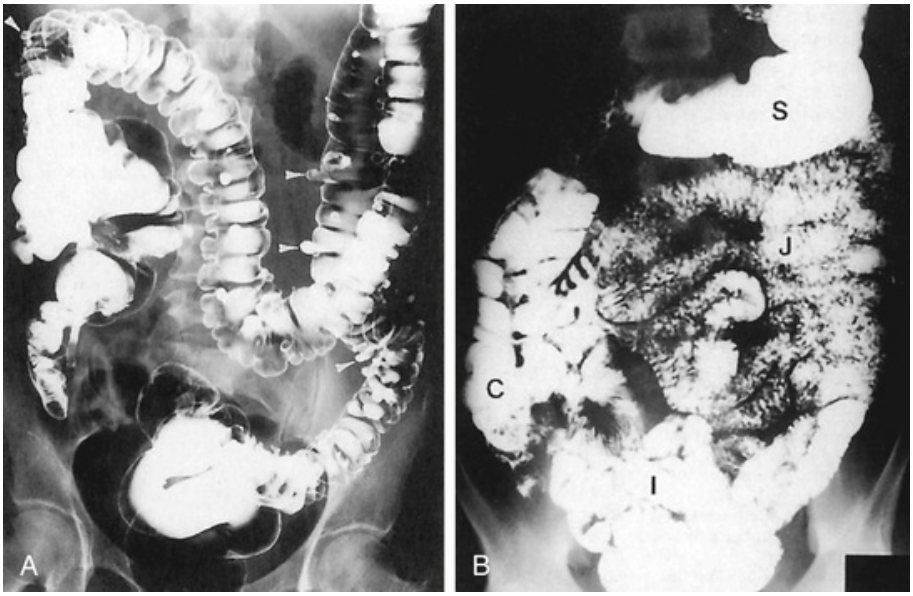


FIGURE 6-3 **A**, **Barium enema.** This x-ray image from a barium enema study demonstrates diverticulosis. The *arrowheads* point to the diverticula throughout the colon. Most patients with diverticula are asymptomatic, but complications (diverticulitis, perforated diverticulum, obstruction, or hemorrhage) may occur. **B**, An x-ray image of a **small bowel follow-through** study demonstrating the normal appearance of the jejunum (J) in the upper left abdomen and of the ileum (I) in the right lower abdomen. Notice the contrast material within the stomach (S) and cecum (C).

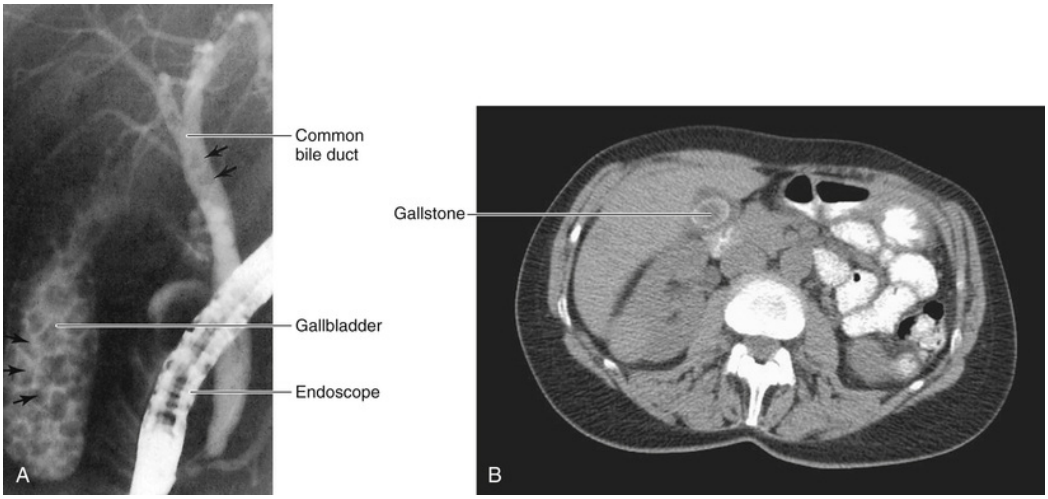


FIGURE 6-4 **A**, **Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP) showing choledocholithiasis** in a patient with biliary colic (pain). Multiple stones are visible in the gallbladder and common bile duct. The stones (*arrows*) are seen as filling defects in the contrast-opacified gallbladder and duct. This patient was treated with open (performed via laparotomy) cholecystectomy and choledocholithotomy. **B**, **Computed tomography scan** with contrast showing large "porcelain stone" in the gallbladder. The patient was asymptomatic, but a therapeutic option with this type of stone is removal of the gallbladder (*using laparoscopy*) to prevent any future problems (such as cholecystitis or carcinoma of the gallbladder). (**B,** Courtesy Radiology Department, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.)

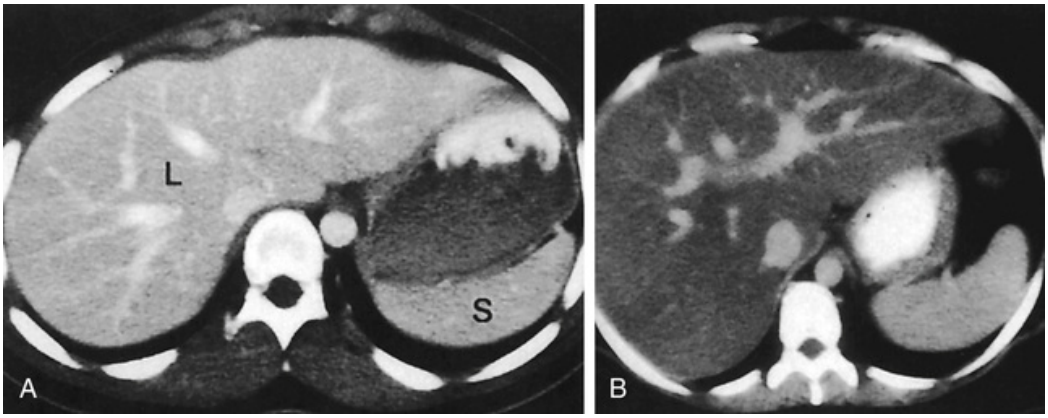


FIGURE 6-5 **Computed tomography (CT) images** of normal and diseased liver. **A, Normal liver**. Contrast material has been injected intravenously, making blood vessels appear bright. The liver (L) and spleen (S) are the same density on this CT image. **B, Fatty liver.** The radiodensity of the liver tissue is reduced because of the large volume of fat contained in the tissue, making it appear darker than normal. Excess fat can lead to inflammation of the liver and cirrhosis.

Ultrasound Examinations

abdominal ultrasonography	**Sound waves beamed into the abdomen produce an image of abdominal viscera.** Ultrasonography is especially useful for examination of fluid-filled structures such as the gallbladder.
endoscopic ultrasonography (EUS)	**Use of an endoscope combined with ultrasound to examine the organs of the gastrointestinal tract.** An endoscope is inserted through the mouth or rectum, and ultrasound images are obtained. This test is often used in assessing esophageal, pancreatic, and rectal cancer.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging

magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)	**Magnetic waves produce images of organs and tissues in all three planes of the body.** This technique does not use x-rays. It detects subtle differences in tissue composition, water content, and blood vessel density and can show sites of trauma, infection, or cancer. See Figure 6-6, which shows an MRI study of a patient with rectosigmoid carcinoma and polyps in the rectum. CT scanning would not have shown these lesions as clearly.

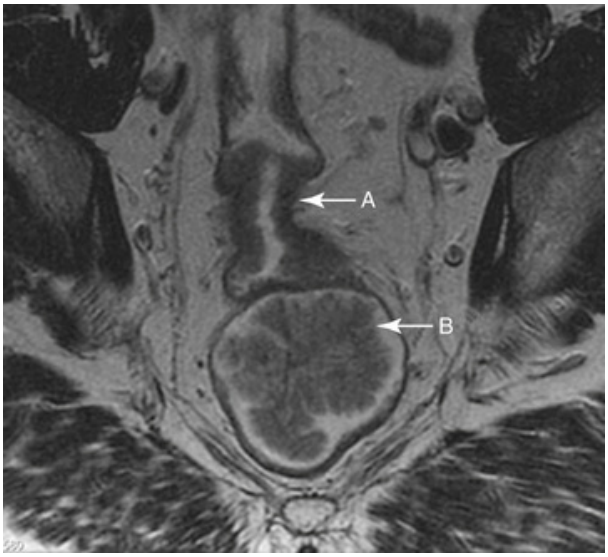


FIGURE 6-6 **Rectal (MRI)**. A 68-year-old man presented with rectal bleeding. MRI demonstrates (**A**) **colonic adenocarcinoma** in the rectosigmoid area as well as (**B**) **villous adenoma** in the rectum.

Nuclear Medicine Test

HIDA scan	**Radioactive imaging procedure that tracks the production and flow of bile from the liver and gallbladder to the intestine.** HIDA stands for **h**epatobiliary **i**mino**d**iacetic **a**cid. **Cholescintigraphy** is another name for this test, which determines if the gallbladder is functioning properly.

Other Procedures

fecal transplant	**Transfer of stool from a healthy donor into the gastrointestinal tract of a recipient.** Extensive antibiotic use can wipe out normal colonic bacteria and can lead to infection with **C. difficile** (harmful bacteria that cause diarrhea and colitis). A fecal transplant restores normal stool bacteria via colonoscopy.
bariatric surgery	**Procedures used to achieve weight loss in people with severe obesity.** One type of bariatric surgery is **bariatric** (bar/o = weight, iatr/o = treatment) **sleeve gastrectomy**, removal of a large portion of the stomach (Figure 6-7A). Another bariatric procedure is **gastric bypass**. This surgery reduces the size of the stomach to a volume of 2 tablespoons and bypasses much of the small intestine (Figure 6-7B).
gastrointestinal endoscopy	**Visual examination of the gastrointestinal tract using an endoscope.** A physician places a flexible fiberoptic tube through the mouth or the anus to view parts of the gastrointestinal tract. Examples are **esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD)** (Figure 6-8), **colonoscopy** (Figures 6-9 and 6-10), **sigmoidoscopy**, **proctoscopy**, and **anoscopy**. **Virtual colonoscopy** (CT colonography) combines CT scanning and computer technology to enable physicians to examine the entire length of the colon by x-ray imaging in just minutes. Patients with abnormal findings require conventional colonoscopy afterward for further assessment or treatment, such as with biopsy or polypectomy.
laparoscopy	**Visual (endoscopic) examination of the abdomen with a laparoscope inserted through small incisions in the abdomen.** Laparoscopic cholecystectomy (see Figure 5-28, page 160) and laparoscopic appendectomy are performed by gastrointestinal and general surgeons. See the ***In Person: Cholecystectomy*** story of a woman who underwent laparoscopic cholecystectomy (see page 191).
liver biopsy	**Removal of liver tissue for microscopic examination.** A physician inserts a needle through the skin to remove a small piece of tissue for microscopic examination. The average sample is less than 1 inch long. The procedure

	helps doctors diagnose cirrhosis, chronic hepatitis, and tumors of the liver.
nasogastric intubation	**Insertion of a tube through the nose into the stomach.** Physicians use a nasogastric (NG) tube to remove fluid from the stomach and intestines postoperatively (NG decompression). See Figure 6-11.
paracentesis (abdominocentesis)	**Puncture to remove fluid from the abdomen.** This procedure is necessary to drain fluid (accumulated in ascites) from the peritoneal (abdominal) cavity.

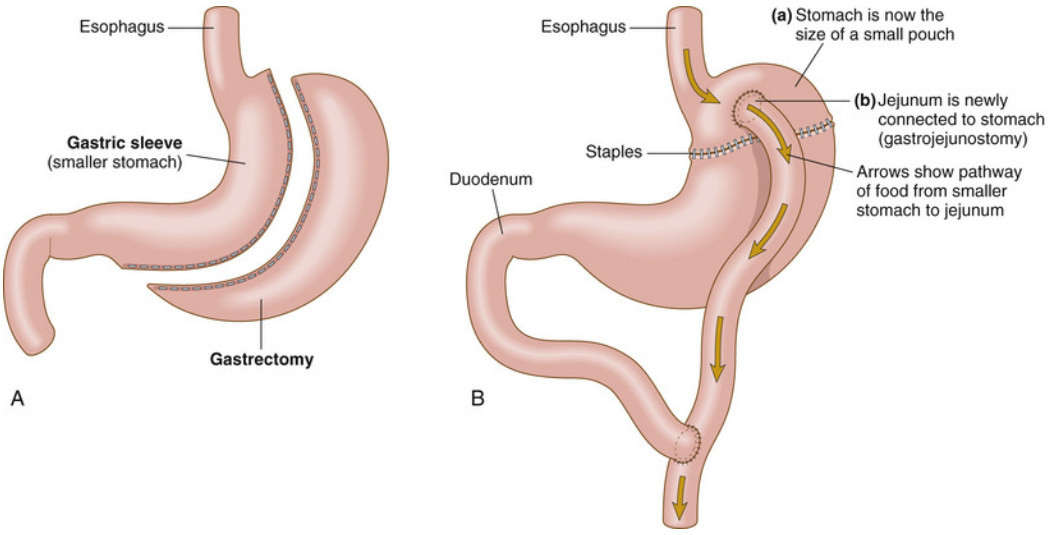


FIGURE 6-7 A. Sleeve gastrectomy. B. Gastric bypass. First (**a**) the stomach is stapled so that it is reduced in size to a small pouch. Next (**b**) a shortened jejunum is brought up to connect with the smaller stomach. This diverts food so that it has a shorter travel time through the intestine and less food is absorbed into the bloodstream.

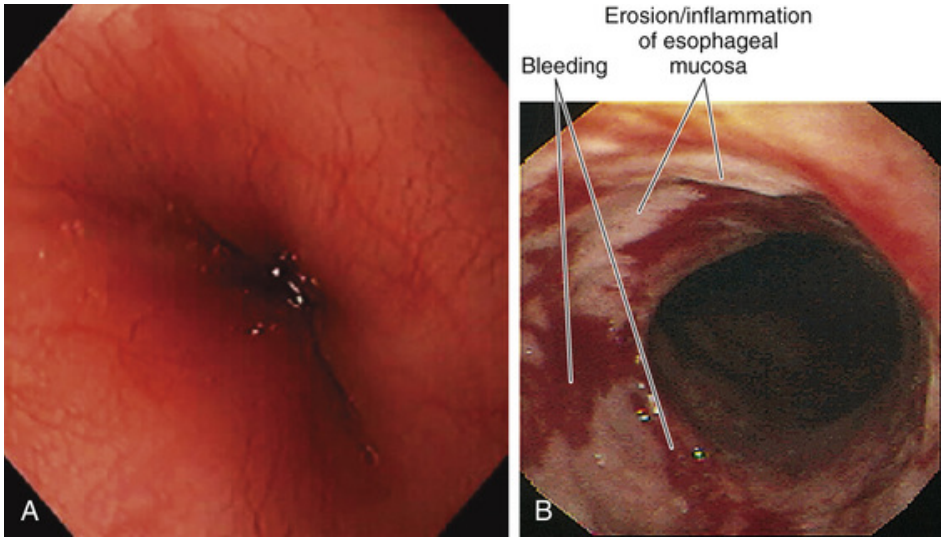


FIGURE 6-8 A, Normal endoscopy of the esophagus. B, Esophagogastroduodenoscopy. This endoscopic view shows severe esophagitis in a patient who had gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD).

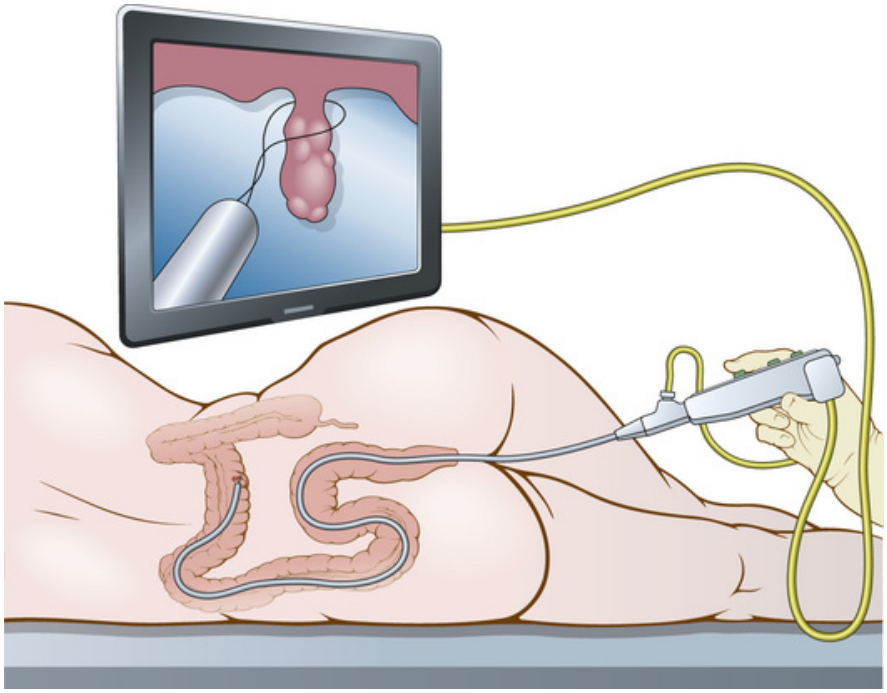


FIGURE 6-9 **Colonoscopy with polypectomy**. Before the procedure, the patient ingests agents to clean the bowel of feces. The patient is sedated, and the gastroenterologist advances the instrument in retrograde fashion, guided by images from a video camera on the tip of the colonoscope. When a polyp is located, a wire snare is passed through the endoscope and looped around the stalk. After the loop is gently tightened, an electrical current is applied to cut through the stalk. The polyp is removed (biopsy) for microscopic tissue examination.

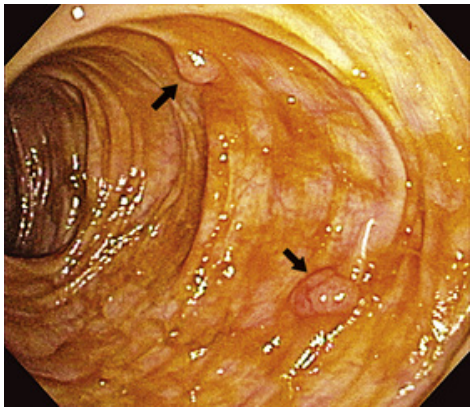


FIGURE 6-10 **Colonoscopy case report**. A 60-year-old man with a history of multiple and prominent colon adenomas (with some areas of high-grade dysplasia) underwent colonoscopy. The endoscope was passed through the anus and advanced to the cecum. Two pedunculated polyps (*arrows*) were found at the hepatic flexure. Polypectomy was performed using a hot snare. Resection and retrieval were complete.

FIGURE 6-11 **Nasogastric intubation.** The nasogastric tube is suctioning secretions from the patient's stomach and intestines. The patient had a twisted blocked intestine (ileus), and the suction relieved pressure so that the intestine unwound and decompressed without surgery.

Abbreviations

AFP	alpha-fetoprotein—tumor marker for liver cancer
alk phos	alkaline phosphatase
ALT, AST	alanine transaminase, aspartate transaminase—enzymes measured in blood to evaluate liver function
BE	barium enema
BM	bowel movement
BRBPR	bright red blood per rectum—hematochezia
CD	celiac disease
CIC	chronic idiopathic constipation
CT	computed tomography
EGD	esophagogastroduodenoscopy
EPI	exocrine pancreatic insufficiency
ERCP	endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography
ESLD	end-stage liver disease
EUS	endoscopic ultrasonography
FOBT	fecal occult blood test
G tube	gastrostomy tube—feeding tube
GAVE	gastric antral vascular ectasia—dilated small blood vessels in the antrum (the last part of the stomach)
GB	gallbladder
GERD	gastroesophageal reflux disease
GI	gastrointestinal
HBV	hepatitis B virus
IBD	inflammatory bowel disease (Crohn disease and ulcerative colitis)
J-tube	jejunostomy tube—feeding tube
LAC	laparoscopic-assisted colectomy
LAP	laparoscopic
LFTs	liver function tests—alk phos, bilirubin, AST, ALT
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
NASH	nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (fatty liver)
NG tube	nasogastric tube
NPO	nothing by mouth (Latin *nil per os*)
PEG tube	percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy tube—feeding tube
PEJ tube	percutaneous endoscopic jejunostomy tube—feeding tube
PTHC	percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography
PUD	peptic ulcer disease
TPN	total parenteral nutrition Intravenous solutions contain sugar, amino acids, electrolytes, and vitamins.

T-tube	special tube (shaped like the letter T) placed in the bile duct for drainage into a small pouch (bile bag) on the outside of the body

In Person

Cholecystectomy

This first-person narrative describes the symptoms and treatment of a woman with gallbladder stones.

Everyone enjoys a little dessert after dinner, but when the ice cream or a creamy tart leads to pain, most would avoid it. I loved sweets, and despite the revenge they took on my waistline, I still would not pass up an ice cream cone—until my gallbladder decided it had had enough. After several late nights spent doubled over in pain, I tried to steer clear of fatty foods but could not resist the temptation of frozen yogurt.

With one hand, I pushed my cart through the supermarket; with the other hand, I fed myself some delicious low-fat (not nonfat) frozen yogurt. I never dreamed that the attendant at the quick-service window actually gave me soft-serve ice cream. Within 10 minutes of eating the questionable yogurt, I broke out into a sweat; a wave of nausea took me, and a knifelike pain stabbed me in my right upper quadrant. It hurt even more when I pressed my hand on the area in an attempt to brace against the pain.

Several months earlier, after a similar painful episode, I had undergone an ultrasound of my gallbladder, and the surgeon then recommended cholecystectomy. The U/S showed multiple stones in my gallbladder. Most of the stones were just the right size to lodge in the common bile duct and cause blockage of the outflow of bile that occurs after a fatty meal. When I heard the ultrasound results, I swore off all fatty foods.

I just did not imagine that ice cream masquerading as “low-fat yogurt” would be the straw that broke the camel's back! Soon enough, I abandoned my shopping cart and apologized to the manager of the store for vomiting all over aisle 4. The unrelenting pain did not cease when I vomited—it only intensified. I have no idea

how I made it home and into bed, but my husband found me several hours later in a deep sweat. I managed to call my surgeon and arrange for "semi-emergent" surgery the next morning.

Dr. Fernandez and his team performed a laparoscopic cholecystectomy and relayed to me as I came out of anesthesia that I no longer had a "bag of marbles" for a gallbladder. I had a gassy, distended feeling in my abdomen over the two weeks after surgery (carbon dioxide gas was injected into the abdomen before surgery to allow space between abdominal organs). I felt "tight as a drum" for the first few days, and then day by day it went away. My four tiny incisions healed just fine, and in about 2 weeks I was feeling back to "normal." Now I can eat ice cream to my heart's content, only suffering the padding on my waistline, not the stabbing pain just above. Without missing a beat, my liver now delivers the bile into my small intestine right after I eat a fatty meal. The bile emulsifies (breaks down) the fat. I just don't have a storage bag to hold bile in reserve.

I've had an appendectomy, my wisdom teeth removed, and now I gave up my gallbladder! How many more "useless" body parts are there to go?

Elizabeth Chabner Thompson is the CEO/Founder of Masthead, a company devoted to bringing innovative products to patients with breast cancer. She is a physician, swimmer, cross country skier and the proud mother of four children ages 16-21.

Practical Applications

Answers to the questions about the case report are on page 199.

Case Report: Pancreatic Cancer and Whipple Procedure

A 62-year-old man came to the ED (emergency department) with complaints of fatigue, weight loss, jaundice, and anorexia. Diagnostic studies including abdominal CT with contrast, ERCP, and EUS were performed. The CT scan showed a resectable 4-cm mass at the head of the pancreas, and ERCP revealed evidence of bile duct obstruction; a stent was placed to open the duct. Examination of a tissue biopsy specimen obtained under U/S guidance confirmed an adenocarcinoma of the head of the pancreas.

Additional studies showed no evidence of hepatic or other metastases. Surgical treatment with a Whipple procedure was recommended. This procedure was performed and included pancreatoduodenectomy, choledochojejunostomy, and gastrojejunostomy. Lymph node removal and cholecystectomy were part of the operative procedure. During surgery, it was determined that the tumor was confined to the head of the pancreas. Despite removal of the tumor, the chance of recurrence is high, with a cure rate of only about 20%.

Questions about the Case Report

1. What caused the patient's jaundice?
    a. Excessive hemolysis

b. Viral hepatitis
c. Bile duct obstruction
d. Cholelithiasis

2. What test identified the mass as adenocarcinoma?
   a. Whipple procedure
   b. Biopsy with endoscopic ultrasonography
   c. CT scan with contrast
   d. ERCP
3. Which is included in a Whipple procedure?
   a. Removal of the pancreas (malignant area) and duodenum
   b. Removal of the gallbladder
   c. Removal of lymph nodes
   d. All of the above
4. What anastomosis was performed?
   a. Gallbladder and duodenum united.
   b. Common bile duct, pancreatic duct, and small intestine all connected together.
   c. Stomach and pancreas reconnected.
   d. Liver and pancreas connected to the stomach.

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, pages 198 and 199.

A **Give the meanings of the following suffixes.**

1. -pepsia

   _____
   _____

2. -ptysis

   _____
   _____

3. -emesis

   _____
   _____

4. -phagia

   _____
   _____

5. -rrhea

_____
_____

6. -rrhage, -rrhagia

_____
_____

7. -rrhaphy

_____
_____

8. -plasty

_____
_____

9. -ectasis, -ectasia

_____
_____

10. -stenosis

_____
_____

11. -stasis

_____
_____

12. -spasm

_____
_____

13. -tresia

_____
_____

B **Build medical terms for the definitions that follow. Use the listed combining forms as appropriate to create terms.**

chol/e

cholangi/o

choledoch/o
gastr/o
hemat/o
hem/o
herni/o
palat/o
pylor/o

1. stoppage of bile (flow)
   _____
2. suture of a hernia
   _____
3. dilation of bile ducts
   _____
4. spitting up blood (from the respiratory tract)
   _____
5. vomiting blood (from the digestive tract)
   _____
6. surgical repair of roof of the mouth
   _____
7. narrowing of the pyloric sphincter
   _____
8. bursting forth of blood from the stomach
   _____
9. sudden, involuntary contraction of muscles at the distal region of the stomach
   _____
10. bursting forth of blood
    _____
11. incision of the common bile duct
    _____

C **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. dysphagia

_____
_____

2. polyphagia

_____
_____

3. dyspepsia

_____
_____

4. biliary atresia

_____
_____

5. rhinorrhea

_____
_____

6. cholestasis

_____
_____

7. esophageal atresia

_____
_____

8. pyloroplasty

_____
_____

9. splenorrhagia

_____
_____

10. proctosigmoidoscopy

_____
_____

11. hemorrhage
_____
_____

12. cholangitis
_____
_____

D **Match the listed surgical procedures with the meanings that follow.**

abdominoplasty
cecostomy
cholecystectomy
cholecystojejunostomy
colectomy
gingivectomy
herniorrhaphy
ileostomy
palatoplasty
pancreatoduodenectomy
paracentesis
sphincterotomy

1. removal of the gallbladder _____
2. large bowel resection _____
3. suture of a weakened muscular wall (hernia)
_____
4. new opening of the first part of the colon to the outside of the body _____
5. surgical repair of the abdomen
_____

6. incision of a ring of muscles
_____
7. removal of the pancreas and duodenum
_____
8. opening of the third part of the small intestine to the outside of the body _____
9. removal of gum tissue _____
10. anastomosis between the gallbladder and second part of the small intestine _____
11. puncture of the abdomen for withdrawal of fluid
_____
12. surgical repair of the roof of the mouth
_____

E **Use the given meanings to complete the following terms.**

1. discharge of fat: steat _____
2. difficulty in swallowing: dys _____
3. abnormal condition of gallstones: chole
_____
4. pertaining to the cheek: _____ al
5. pertaining to lips and teeth: _____ dental
6. vomiting blood: hemat _____
7. enlargement of the liver: hepato _____
8. pertaining to under the tongue: sub
_____
9. removal of the gallbladder: _____ ectomy
10. pertaining to the common bile duct: chole
_____

11. hemorrhage from the stomach: gastro
_____

F **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. cecal volvulus
_____
_____
2. aphthous stomatitis
_____
_____
3. celiac disease
_____
_____
4. lipase
_____
_____
5. cheilosis
_____
_____
6. oropharynx
_____
_____
7. glycogen
_____
_____
8. glossectomy
_____
_____
9. sialadenectomy
_____
_____

10. periodontal membrane

_____

11. choledochectasia

_____

12. cholangiocarcinoma

_____

G **Match each listed laboratory test or clinical procedure with its description.**

- abdominal ultrasonography
- barium enema
- CT scan of the abdomen
- endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography
- endoscopic ultrasonography
- bariatric surgery/gastric bypass
- gastrostomy (G tube)
- HIDA scan
- laparoscopy
- liver biopsy
- nasogastric intubation
- percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography
- serum bilirubin
- small bowel follow-through
- stool culture
- stool guaiac (Hemoccult)

1. measurement of bile pigment in the blood

_____

2. placement of feces in a growth medium for bacterial analysis _____
3. x-ray examination of the lower gastrointestinal tract _____
4. imaging of abdominal viscera using sound waves _____
5. test to reveal hidden blood in feces _____
6. sequential x-ray images of the small intestine _____
7. injection of contrast material through the skin into the liver, to obtain x-ray images of bile vessels _____
8. insertion of a tube through the nose into the stomach _____
9. transverse x-ray pictures of the abdominal organs _____
10. injection of contrast material through an endoscope for x-ray imaging of the pancreas and bile ducts _____
11. reduction of stomach size and gastrojejunostomy _____
12. insertion of an endoscope and use of ultrasound imaging to visualize the organs of the gastrointestinal tract _____
13. percutaneous removal of liver tissue followed by microscopic examination _____
14. visual examination (endoscopic) of abdominal viscera through small abdominal incisions _____

15. new opening of the stomach to the outside of the body for feeding _____

16. radioactive imaging of the liver, gallbladder, and intestine _____

H **Give the meanings of the abbreviations in Column I. Then select the letter of the correct description from Column II.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. TPN _____	_____	A. Tests such as measurement of ALT, AST, alk phos, and serum bilirubin.
2. PUD _____	_____	B. Heartburn is a symptom of this condition.
3. EGD _____	_____	C. Includes Crohn disease and ulcerative colitis.
4. IBD _____	_____	D. *H. pylori* causes this condition.
5. BE _____	_____	E. Intravenous injection of nutrition.
6. BRBPR _____	_____	F. This is a lower gastrointestinal series.
7. LFTs _____	_____	G. X-ray procedure that produces a series of cross-sectional images.
8. GERD _____	_____	H. This infectious agent causes chronic inflammation of the liver.
9. HBV _____	_____	I. Hematochezia describes this gastrointestinal symptom.
10. CT _____	_____	J. Endoscopic visualization of the upper gastrointestinal tract.

I **Give the suffixes for the following terms.**

1. bursting forth (of blood) _____
2. flow, discharge _____
3. suture _____
4. dilation _____
5. narrowing (stricture) _____
6. vomiting _____
7. spitting _____
8. excision _____

9. digestion _____
10. eating, swallowing _____
11. hardening _____
12. stopping, controlling _____
13. surgical repair _____
14. opening _____
15. surgical puncture _____
16. involuntary contraction _____
17. new opening _____
18. incision _____

J **Explain what happens in a fecal transplant and why it is necessary.** _____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____
_____

K **Circle the correct bold term in parentheses to complete each sentence.**

1. When Mrs. Smith began to have diarrhea and crampy abdominal pain, she consulted a **(urologist, nephrologist, gastroenterologist)** and worried that the cause of her symptoms might be **(inflammatory bowel disease, esophageal varices, achalasia).**
2. After taking a careful history and performing a thorough physical examination, Dr. Blakemore diagnosed Mr. Bean, a longtime drinker, with **(hemorrhoids, pancreatitis, appendicitis).** Mr. Bean had complained of sharp midepigastric pain and a change in bowel habits.

3. Many pregnant women cannot lie flat after eating without experiencing a burning sensation in their chest and throat. The usual cause of this symptom is **(volvulus, dysentery, gastroesophageal reflux).**
4. Mr. and Mrs. Cho brought their infant son to the clinic after he had several bouts of projectile vomiting. The pediatric surgeon suspected a diagnosis of **(inguinal hernia, pyloric stenosis, ascites).**
5. Boris had terrible problems with his teeth. He needed not only a periodontist for his **(aphthous stomatitis, oral leukoplakia, gingivitis)** but also an **(endodontist, oral surgeon, orthodontist)** to straighten his teeth.
6. After 6 weeks of radiation therapy to her throat, Betty experienced severe esophageal irritation and inflammation. She complained to her doctor about her resulting **(dyspepsia, dysphagia, hematemesis).**
7. Steven, age 7 years, is brought to the clinic because of recurrent abdominal pain, occasional constipation and diarrhea, and weight loss. His pediatrician's diagnosis is **(lipase deficiency, dysentery, celiac disease)** and recommends a **(fat, gluten, sugar)**-free diet.
8. Chris had been a heavy alcohol drinker all of his adult life. His wife noticed worsening yellow discoloration of the whites of his eyes and skin. After a physical examination and blood tests, his family physician told him his **(colon, skin, liver)** was diseased. The yellow discoloration was **(jaundice, melena, flatus),** and his condition was **(cheilosis, cirrhosis, steatorrhea).**
9. When Carol was working as a phlebotomist, she accidentally cut her finger while drawing a patient's blood. Unfortunately the patient had **(pancreatitis, hemoptysis, hepatitis),** and HBV was transmitted to Carol. Blood tests and **(liver biopsy, gastrointestinal endoscopy, stool**

culture) confirmed Carol's unfortunate diagnosis. Her doctor told her that her condition was chronic and that she might be a candidate for a **(bone marrow, liver, kidney)** transplant procedure in the future.

10. Operation Smile is a rescue project that performs surgical repair including **(herniorrhaphy, oral gingivectomy, palatoplasty)** on children with a congenital cleft in the roof of the mouth.
11. After months of treatment with antibiotics, Anne developed abdominal pain and chronic severe diarrhea. Harmful bacteria C. difficile took over her **(stomach, colon, esophagus)**. To restore normal bacteria to the gut, she received a **(gastric bypass, laparoscopic sleeve gastrectomy, fecal transplant)**.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. digestion
2. spitting (from the respiratory tract)
3. vomiting
4. eating, swallowing
5. flow, discharge
6. bursting forth of blood
7. suture
8. surgical repair
9. dilation (dilatation), widening
10. narrowing, tightening
11. to stop; control

12. sudden, involuntary contraction of muscles
13. opening

B

1. cholestasis
2. herniorrhaphy
3. cholangiectasia
4. hemoptysis
5. hematemesis
6. palatoplasty
7. pyloric stenosis
8. gastrorrhagia
9. pylorospasm
10. hemorrhage
11. choledochotomy

C

1. difficulty in swallowing
2. excessive (much) eating
3. difficult digestion
4. biliary ducts are not open (congenital anomaly)
5. discharge of mucus from the nose
6. stoppage of flow of bile
7. esophagus is not open (closed off) at birth (congenital anomaly)
8. surgical repair of the pyloric sphincter

9. bursting forth of blood (hemorrhage) from the spleen
10. visual (endoscopic) examination of the rectum and sigmoid colon
11. bursting forth of blood
12. inflammation of bile duct (vessel)

D

1. cholecystectomy
2. colectomy
3. herniorrhaphy
4. cecostomy
5. abdominoplasty
6. sphincterotomy
7. pancreatoduodenectomy
8. ileostomy
9. gingivectomy
10. cholecystojejunostomy
11. paracentesis (abdominocentesis)
12. palatoplasty

E

1. steatorrhea
2. dysphagia
3. cholelithiasis
4. buccal
5. labiodental

6. hematemesis
7. hepatomegaly
8. sublingual
9. cholecystectomy
10. choledochal
11. gastrorrhagia

F

1. twisted intestine in the area of the cecum
2. inflammation of the mouth with small ulcers
3. autoimmune disorder in which villi in the lining of the small intestine are damaged, resulting from reaction to dietary glutens such as wheat, barley, and rye
4. enzyme to digest fat
5. abnormal condition of lips
6. the part of the throat near the mouth
7. storage form of sugar
8. removal of part or all of the tongue
9. removal of a salivary gland
10. membrane surrounding a tooth
11. dilation of the common bile duct
12. malignant tumor of bile vessels

G

1. serum bilirubin
2. stool culture

3. barium enema
4. abdominal ultrasonography
5. stool guaiac (Hemoccult)
6. small bowel follow-through
7. percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography (PTHC)
8. nasogastric intubation
9. CT scan of the abdomen
10. endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP)
11. bariatric surgery (gastric bypass)
12. endoscopic ultrasonography (EUS)
13. liver biopsy
14. laparoscopy (form of minimally invasive surgery)
15. gastrostomy (G tube)
16. HIDA scan

H

1. total parenteral nutrition: E
2. peptic ulcer disease: D
3. esophagoduodenoscopy: J
4. inflammatory bowel disease: C
5. barium enema: F
6. bright red blood per rectum: I
7. liver function tests: A
8. gastroesophageal reflux disease: B
9. hepatitis B virus: H

10. computed tomography: G

I

1. -rrhagia, -rrhage
2. -rrhea
3. -rrhaphy
4. -ectasis, -ectasia
5. -stenosis
6. -emesis
7. -ptysis
8. -ectomy
9. -pepsia
10. -phagia
11. -sclerosis
12. -stasis
13. -plasty
14. -tresia
15. -centesis
16. -spasm
17. -stomy
18. -tomy

J

In a fecal transplant, stool from a healthy donor, is transferred into the colon of a patient/recipient. This is necessary when the patient's colon contains harmful bacteria, such as C. difficile. After transplant, normal stool bacteria populate the colon of the patient.

K

1. gastroenterologist; inflammatory bowel disease
2. pancreatitis
3. gastroesophageal reflux
4. pyloric stenosis
5. gingivitis; orthodontist
6. dysphagia
7. celiac disease; gluten
8. liver; jaundice; cirrhosis
9. hepatitis; liver biopsy; liver
10. palatoplasty
11. colon; fecal transplant

Answers to Practical Applications

Case Report: Pancreatic Cancer and Whipple Procedure

1. c
2. b
3. d
4. b

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
abdominal ultrasonography	ab-DOM-in-al ul-trah-so-NOG-rah-fe
abdominoplasty	ab-DOM-in-o-plas-te
amylase and lipase tests	AM-ih-lays and LI-pays tests
aphthous stomatitis	AF-thus sto-mah-TI-tis
atresia	a-TRE-ze-ah
bariatric surgery	bah-re-AH-trk SUR-jeh-re
biliary atresia	BIH-le-ah-re a-TRE-ze-ah
bronchospasm	BRONG-ko-spasm
buccal	BUK-al
cecal volvulus	SE-kal VOL-vu-lus
celiac disease	SE-le-ak dih-ZEEZ
cheilosis	ki-LO-sis
cholangiectasis	ko-lan-je-EK-tah-sis
cholangiocarcinoma	ko-lan-je-o-kar-sih-NO-mah
cholangiography	ko-lan-je-OG-rah-fe
cholangiopancreatography	ko-lan-je-o-pan-kre-uh-TOG-rah-fe
cholangitis	ko-lan-JI-tis
cholecystectomy	ko-le-sis-TEK-to-me
cholecystojejunostomy	ko-le-sis-to-jeh-jun-NOS-to-me
cholecystolithiasis	ko-le-sis-to-lih-THI-ah-sis
choledochal	ko-le-DOK-al
choledochectasia	ko-le-do-kek-TA-se-ah
cholelithiasis	ko-le-lih-THI-ah-sis
cholestasis	ko-le-STA-sis
colectomy	ko-LEK-to-me
colonoscopy	ko-lon-OS-ko-pe
computed tomography	kom-PU-ted to-MOG-rah-fe
dentalgia	den-TAL-jah
diarrhea	di-ah-RE-ah
duodenal	du-o-DE-nal
dyspepsia	dis-PEP-se-ah
dysphagia	dis-FA-je-ah
endoscopic ultrasonography	en-do-SKOP-ikul-trah-so-NOG-rah-fe
esophageal atresia	eh-sof-ah-JE-al a-TRE-ze-ah
fecal transplant	fe-kal tranz-plant
gastroenteritis	gas-tro-en-teh-RI-tis
gastrointestinal endoscopy	gas-tro-in-TES-tih-nal en-DOS-ko-pe
gastrojejunostomy	gas-tro-jeh-ju-NOS-to-me
gastrorrhagia	gas-tro-RA-jah
gastrostomy	gas-TROS-to-me
gingivectomy	gin-gih-VEK-to-me
glossectomy	glos-EK-to-me

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
gluconeogenesis	glu-ko-ne-o-JEN-eh-sis
glycogen	GLI-ko-jen
hematemesis	he-mah-TEM-eh-sis
hemoptysis	he-MOP-tih-sis
hemorrhage	HEM-or-ij
hepatomegaly	hep-ah-to-MEG-ah-le
herniorrhaphy	her-ne-OR-ah-fe
HIDA scan	HIH-dah skan
ileostomy	il-e-OS-to-me
labiodental	la-be-o-DEN-tal
laparoscopy	lap-ah-ROS-ko-pe
lipase	LI-pays
liver biopsy	LIV-er bi-OP-se
liver function tests	LIV-er FUNK-shun tests
lower gastrointestinal series	LO-er gas-tro-in-TES-tin-al SE-reez
magnetic resonance imaging	mag-NET-ik REH-zo-nants IM-aj-ing
nasogastric intubation	na-zo-GAS-trik in-tu-BA-shun
oropharynx	or-o-FAH-rinks
palatoplasty	pah-LAT-o-plas-te
pancreatic	pan-kre-AH-tik
pancreatoduodenectomy	pan-kre-ah-to-du-o-deh-NEK-to me
paracentesis	par-ah-sen-TE-sis
periodontal membrane	peh-re-o-DON-tal MEM-brayn
polyphagia	pol-e-FA-je-ah
proctosigmoidoscopy	prok-to-sig-moyd-OS-ko-pe
pyloric stenosis	pi-LOR-ik steh-NO-sis
pylorospasm	pi-LOR-o-spasm
rectal carcinoma	REK-tal kar-sih-NO-mah
sialadenectomy	si-al-ah-deh-NEK-to-me
splenic flexure	SPLEN-ik FLEK-shur
steatorrhea	ste-ah-to-RE-ah
stool culture	stool KUL-chur
stool guaiac	stool GWI-ak
sublingual	sub-LING-wal
upper gastrointestinal series	UP-er gas-tro-in-TEST-in-al SER-eez

Review Sheet

Write meanings for combining forms and suffixes in the spaces provided. Check your answers with information in Chapter 5 and this chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of this book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
abdomin/o	_____
amyl/o	_____
an/o	_____
append/o, appendic/o	_____
bil/i	_____
bilirubin/o	_____
bucc/o	_____
cec/o	_____
celi/o	_____
cervic/o	_____
cheil/o	_____
chlorhydr/o	_____
chol/e	_____
cholangi/o	_____
cholecyst/o	_____
choledoch/o	_____
cib/o	_____
cirrh/o	_____
col/o, colon/o	_____
dent/i	_____
duoden/o	_____
enter/o	_____
esophag/o	_____
eti/o	_____
gastr/o	_____
gingiv/o	_____
gloss/o	_____
gluc/o, glyc/o	_____
glycogen/o	_____
hem/o, hemat/o	_____
hepat/o	_____
herni/o	_____
idi/o	_____
ile/o	_____
pancreat/o	_____
peritone/o	_____
pharyng/o	_____
proct/o	_____
prote/o	_____
py/o	_____
pylor/o	_____
rect/o	_____

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
sialaden/o	_____
splen/o	_____
steat/o	_____
stomat/o	_____
tonsill/o	_____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-ase	_____
-centesis	_____
-chezia	_____
-ectasia	_____
-ectasis	_____
-ectomy	_____
-emesis	_____
-emia	_____
-genesis	_____
-graphy	_____
-iasis	_____
-megaly	_____
-orexia	_____
-ptosis	_____
-rrhage	_____
-rrhagia	_____
-rrhaphy	_____
-rrhea	_____
-scopy	_____
-spasm	_____
-stasis	_____
-stenosis	_____
-stomy	_____
-tomy	_____
-tresia	_____

CHAPTER 7

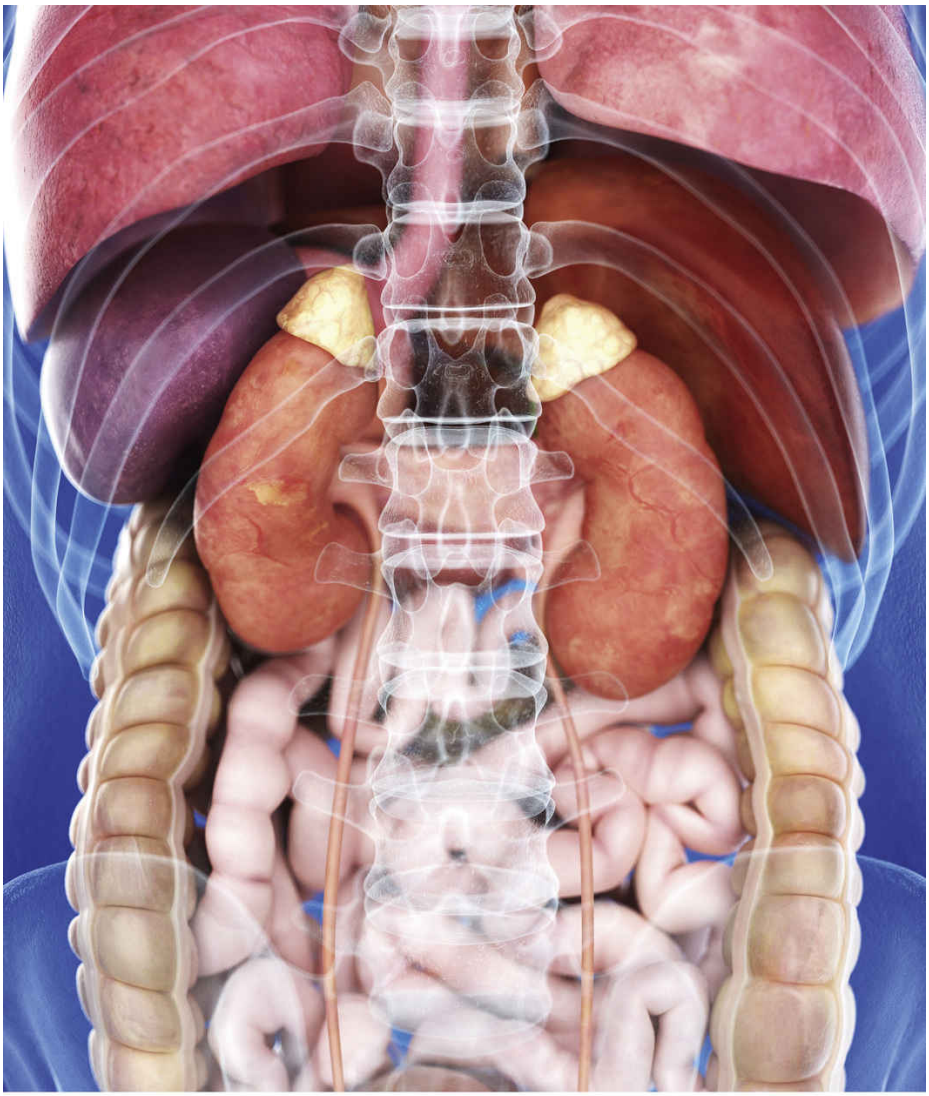
Urinary System

CHAPTER SECTIONS

Introduction 204
Anatomy of the Major Organs 204
Physiology: How the Kidneys Produce Urine 206
Vocabulary 209
Terminology: Structures, Substances, and Urinary Signs and Symptoms 211
Urinalysis 216
Pathologic Terminology: Kidney, Bladder, and Associated Conditions 217
Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures 220
Abbreviations 225
Practical Applications 226
In Person: Kidney Transplant 228
Exercises 229
Answers to Exercises 234
Pronunciation of Terms 236
Review Sheet 238

CHAPTER GOALS

- Name essential organs of the urinary system and describe their locations and functions.
- Identify common pathologic conditions affecting the urinary system.
- Recognize how urinalysis is used and interpreted as a diagnostic test.
- Define urinary system–related combining forms, prefixes, and suffixes.
- List and explain laboratory tests, clinical procedures, and abbreviations that pertain to the urinary system.
- Understand medical terms in their proper contexts, such as medical reports and records.



Introduction

When foods containing proteins are used by cells in the body, nitrogenous waste products **(urea, creatinine,** and **uric acid)** are released into the bloodstream. The urinary system removes these nitrogenous wastes from the blood so that they do not accumulate and become harmful. As blood passes through the kidneys, the kidneys filter nitrogenous wastes to form **urine** (composed of water, salts, and acids). Urine leaves the body through the ureters, urinary bladder, and urethra. Every day, the kidneys process about 200 quarts of blood to filter out 2 quarts of urine.

Besides removing urea and other nitrogenous wastes from the blood, the kidneys maintain the proper balance of water, electrolytes, and acids in body fluids. **Electrolytes** such as **sodium (Na^+)** and **potassium (K^+)** are small molecules that conduct an electrical charge. Electrolytes are necessary for proper functioning of muscle and nerve cells. The kidney

adjusts the amounts of water and electrolytes by secreting some substances into the urine and holding back others in the bloodstream for use in the body. This is an example of **homeostasis,** which is the body's ability to maintain an equilibrium within its internal environment. Home/o means sameness.

In addition to forming and excreting (eliminating) urine from the body, the kidneys secrete an enzyme called **renin** (RE-nin) and a hormone called **erythropoietin** (eh-rith-ro-POY-it-in). **Renin** raises blood pressure (to keep blood moving through the kidney). **Erythropoietin (EPO)** stimulates red blood cell production in the bone marrow.

The kidneys also secrete **calciferol,** an active form of vitamin D, necessary for the absorption of calcium from the intestine. In addition, the kidneys degrade and eliminate hormones such as insulin and parathyroid hormone from the bloodstream. Box 7-1 reviews the functions of the kidneys.

Box 7-1

Functions of The Kidneys

- **Remove nitrogenous wastes**: urea, creatinine, uric acid
- **Balance water and electrolytes** (sodium, potassium)
- **Release substances**: renin, erythropoietin, calciferol
- **Degrade and eliminate hormones** from bloodstream

Anatomy of the Major Organs

The following paragraphs describe the organs of the urinary system. Label Figure 7-1 as you identify each organ.

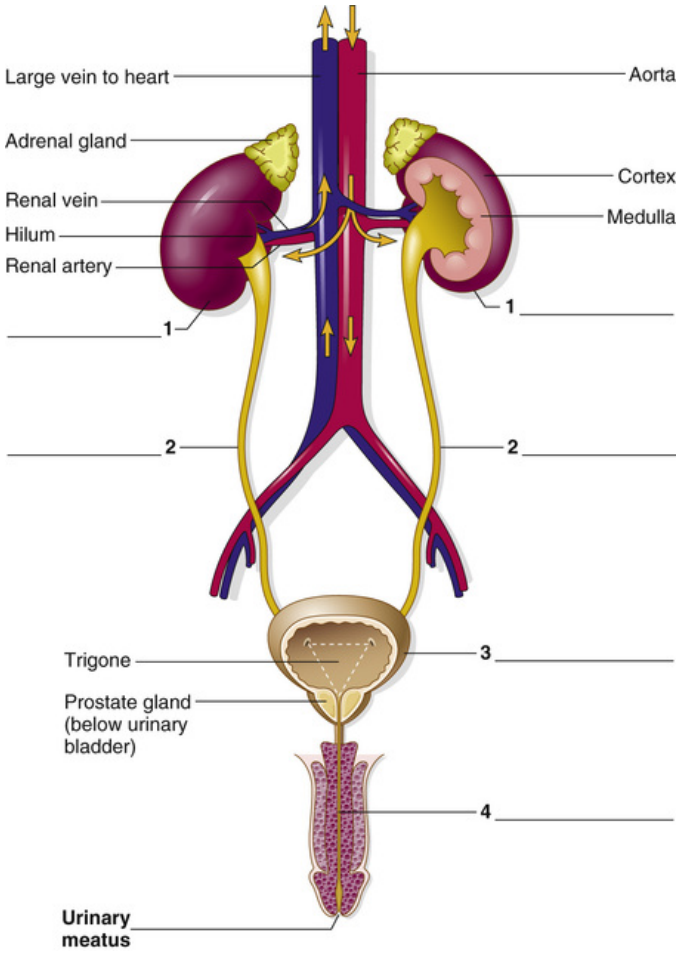


FIGURE 7-1 Male urinary system.

The **kidney** [1] is one of two bean-shaped organs behind the abdominal cavity (retroperitoneal) on either side of the spine in the lumbar region. A cushion of adipose (fatty) tissue and fibrous connective tissue surrounds each kidney for protection. Each kidney (about the size of a fist) weighs about 4 to 6 ounces.

The kidneys consist of an outer **cortex** region (cortex means bark, as the bark of a tree) and an inner **medulla** region (medulla means marrow). The **hilum** is a depression on the medial border of the kidney. Blood vessels and nerves pass through the hilum.

The **ureter** [2] is one of two muscular tubes (16 to 18 inches long) lined with mucous membrane. Ureters carry urine in peristaltic waves from the kidneys to the urinary bladder.

The **urinary bladder** [3], a hollow, muscular sac, is a temporary reservoir for urine. The **trigone** is a triangular region at the base of the bladder where the ureters enter and the urethra exits.

The **urethra** [4] is a tube that carries urine from the urinary bladder to the outside of the body. The process of expelling urine through the urethra is called **urination** or **voiding.** The external opening of the urethra is the **urinary meatus.** The male urethra, about 8 inches long, extends downward through the prostate gland to the urinary meatus, at the tip of the penis. In the female urinary system, the urethra, about 2 inches long, lies anterior to the vagina. See Figure 7-2A, which illustrates the female urinary system. When a patient can't empty his/her bladder, a tube called a **catheter** is often inserted through the urethra to drain urine from the bladder. See Figure 7-2B.

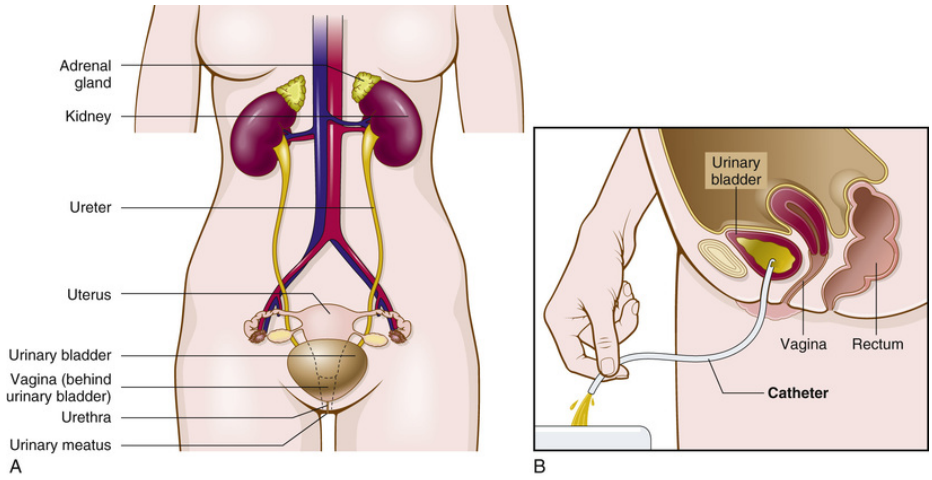


FIGURE 7-2 A. Female urinary system. B. Urinary catheter placement.

Physiology: How the Kidneys Produce Urine

Blood enters each kidney from the aorta by way of the right and left **renal arteries.** After the renal artery enters the kidney (at the hilum), it branches into smaller and smaller arteries. The smallest arteries are called **arterioles** (Figure 7-3A).

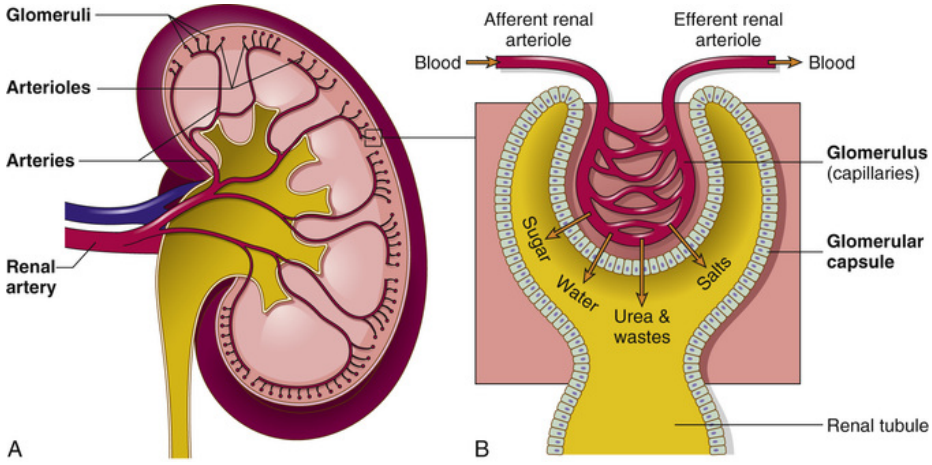


FIGURE 7-3 **A, Renal artery** branching to form smaller arteries and arterioles, and glomeruli. **B, Glomerulus** and **glomerular capsule.** Afferent arteriole carries blood toward (in this term, af- is a form of ad-) the glomerulus. Efferent arteriole carries blood away (ef- is a form of ex-) from the glomerulus.

Because the arterioles are small, blood passes through them slowly but constantly. Blood flow through the kidney is so essential that the kidneys have their own special device for maintaining blood flow. If blood pressure falls in the vessels of the kidney so that blood flow diminishes, the kidney produces **renin** and discharges it into the blood. Renin promotes the formation of a substance that stimulates the contraction of arterioles. This increases blood pressure and restores blood flow in the kidneys to normal.

Each arteriole in the cortex of the kidney leads into a mass of very tiny, coiled, and intertwined smaller blood vessels called **glomeruli** (see Figure 7-3A). Each **glomerulus** (singular) is a collection of tiny capillaries formed in the shape of a small ball. There are about 1 million glomeruli in the cortex region of each kidney.

The kidneys produce urine by **filtration.** As blood passes through the many glomeruli, the thin walls of each glomerulus (the filter) permit water, salts, sugar, and **urea** (with other nitrogenous wastes such as **creatinine** and **uric acid**) to leave the bloodstream. These materials collect in a tiny, cup-like structure, a **glomerular (Bowman) capsule,** that surrounds each glomerulus (Figure 7-3B). The walls of the glomeruli prevent large substances, such as proteins and blood cells, from filtering into the urine. These substances remain in the blood and normally do not appear in urine.

Attached to each glomerular capsule is a long, twisted tube called a **renal tubule** (Figure 7-3B; see also Figure 7-4). As water, sugar, salts, urea, and other wastes pass through the renal tubule, most of the water, all of the sugar, and almost all of the sodium return to the bloodstream through tiny capillaries surrounding each tubule. This active process of **reabsorption** ensures that the body retains essential substances such as sugar (glucose), water, and sodium while allowing waste products to be excreted in the urine. The final process in the formation of urine is **secretion** of some substances such as potassium, acids and drugs from the bloodstream into the renal tubule. Each renal tubule, now containing urine (95% water and 5% urea, creatinine, salts and acids) connects to a larger collecting tubule.

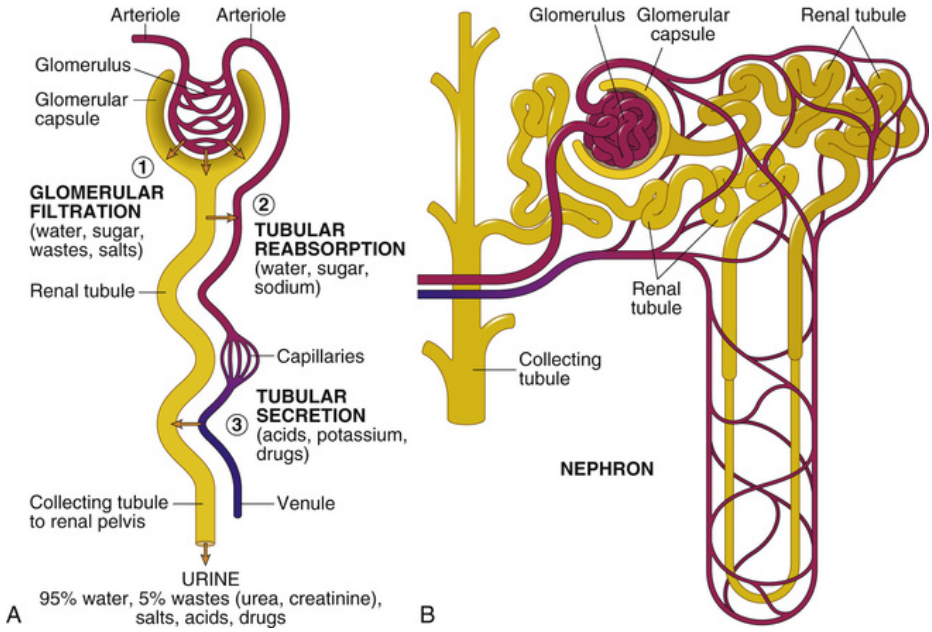


FIGURE 7-4 **A, Three steps in the formation of urine: (1) Glomerular filtration** of water, sugar, wastes (urea and creatinine), and sodium; **(2) Tubular reabsorption** of water, sugar, and sodium; and **(3) Tubular secretion** of acids, potassium, and drugs. **B,** A **nephron** is the combination of a glomerulus and a renal tubule.

See Figure 7-4A, which reviews the steps involved in urine formation. Note that waste products may accumulate in the body as a result of kidney failure and may interfere with the function of vital organs, including the brain and heart. The combination of a glomerulus and a renal tubule forms a unit called a **nephron** (Figure 7-4B). Each kidney contains about 1 million nephrons.

All collecting tubules lead to the **renal pelvis,** a basin-like area in the central part of the kidney. Small, cup-like regions of the renal pelvis are called **calyces** or **calices** (singular: **calyx** or **calix**). Figure 7-5 is an x-ray image of a kidney showing the renal pelvis, calyces, and ureter.

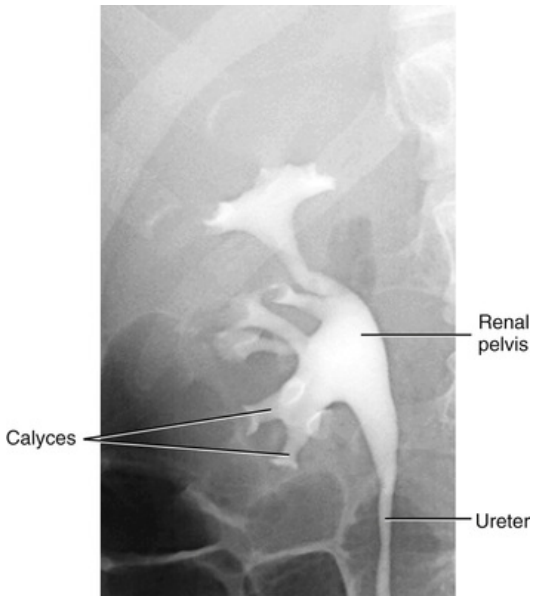


FIGURE 7-5 Renal pelvis, calyces, and ureter as seen on CT urogram (intravenous dye was used).

The renal pelvis narrows into the **ureter,** which carries the urine to the **urinary bladder.** The bladder, a muscular sac, temporarily stores urine. Sphincter muscles control the exit area of the bladder to the **urethra.** As the bladder fills and pressure increases at its base, an individual notices a need to urinate and voluntarily relaxes sphincter muscles.

Study the diagram in Figure 7-6 tracing the process of urine formation and excretion.

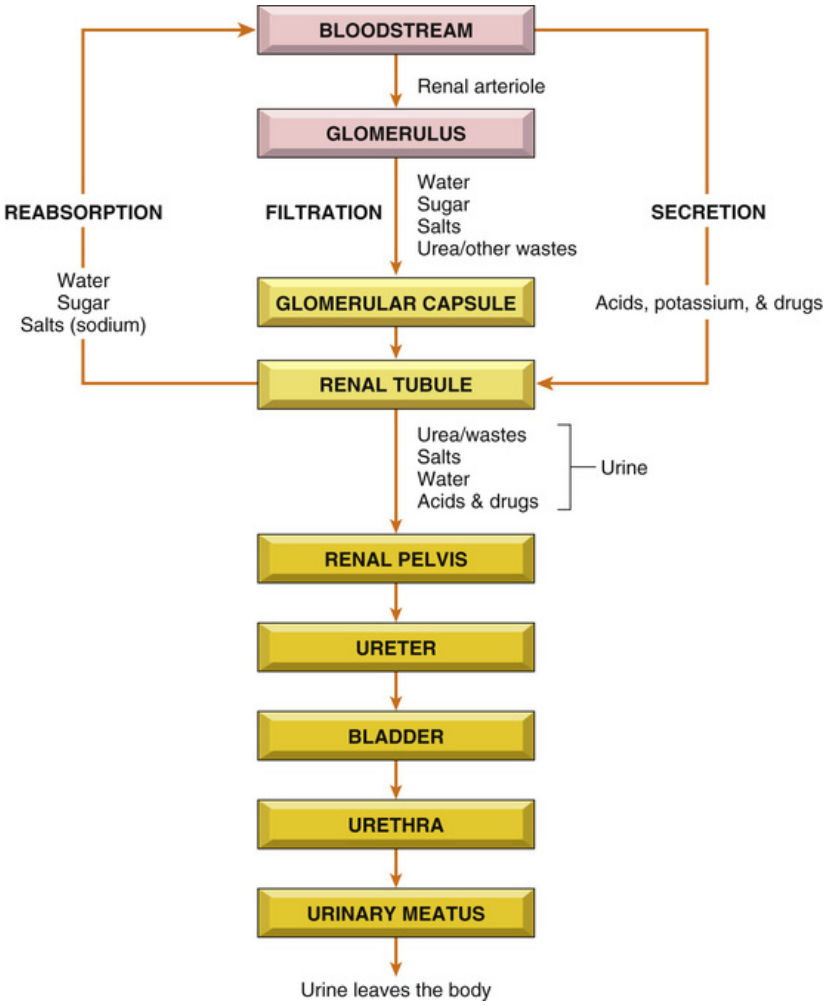


FIGURE 7-6 Flow diagram illustrating the process of forming and expelling urine.

Vocabulary

arteriole	Small artery.
calciferol	Active form of vitamin D, secreted by the kidney.
calyx *or* calix (*plural*: calyces or calices)	Cup-like collecting region of the renal pelvis. The term comes from Greek, *kalux* meaning a cup or case surrounding a flower bud.
catheter	Tube for injecting or removing fluids. A bladder catheter drains urine from the bladder.
cortex	Outer region of an organ; the renal cortex is the outer region of the kidney (**cortical** means pertaining to the cortex).
creatinine	Nitrogenous waste excreted in urine. Creatinine is a product of muscle metabolism. **Creatinine clearance** is a measure of the efficiency of the kidneys in removing (clearing) creatinine from the blood.
electrolyte	Chemical element that carries an electrical charge when dissolved in water. Electrolytes are necessary for functioning of muscles and nerves. The kidneys maintain the proper balance of electrolytes and water in the blood. Potassium (K^+) and sodium (Na^+) are electrolytes.
erythropoietin (EPO)	Hormone secreted by the kidney to stimulate the production of red blood cells. Poietin means a substance that forms. EPO stimulates red blood cell production by bone marrow and thus increases the amount of oxygen delivered to muscles. This enhances athletic endurance. However, use of EPO is a form of blood doping and is prohibited by the World Anti-Doping Authority (WADA).
filtration	Process whereby some substances, but not all, pass through a filter.
glomerular capsule	Enclosing structure surrounding each glomerulus. The glomerular capsule is also known as Bowman capsule and collects the material that is filtered from the blood through the walls of the glomerulus.
glomerulus (*plural*: glomeruli)	Tiny ball of capillaries (microscopic blood vessels) in the kidney.
hilum	Depression in the kidney where blood vessels and nerves enter and leave. Hilum comes from the Latin meaning a small thing. It is also used in the respiratory system to mark the depression in the lung where blood vessels, bronchus, and lymphatic vessels enter and leave.
kidney	One of two bean-shaped organs on either side of the backbone in the lumbar region. It filters nitrogenous wastes from the bloodstream to form urine.
meatus	Opening or canal.
medulla	Inner region of an organ. The **renal medulla** is the inner region of the kidney. **Medullary** means pertaining to the medulla. The term comes from the Latin *medulla*, meaning marrow (inner part).
nephron	Functional unit of the kidney. It is the combination of glomerulus and renal tubule where filtration, reabsorption, and secretion take place in the kidney. Each nephron is capable of forming urine by itself. There are about 1 million nephrons in a kidney.
nitrogenous waste	Substance containing nitrogen and excreted in urine. Examples of nitrogenous wastes are urea, uric acid, and creatinine.
potassium (K^+)	Electrolyte regulated by the kidney so that a proper concentration is maintained within the blood. Potassium is essential for allowing muscle contraction and conduction of nervous impulses.

reabsorption	Process whereby renal tubules return materials necessary to the body back into the bloodstream.
renal artery	Blood vessel that carries blood to the kidney.
renal pelvis	Central collecting region in the kidney.
renal tubule	Microscopic tube in the kidney where urine is formed after filtration.
renal vein	Blood vessel that carries blood away from the kidney and toward the heart.
renin	Enzyme secreted by the kidney. It raises blood pressure by influencing vasoconstriction (narrowing of blood vessels).
sodium (Na^+)	Electrolyte regulated in the blood and urine by the kidneys. It is needed for proper transmission of nerve impulses, heart activity, and other metabolic functions. A common form of sodium is sodium chloride (table salt).
trigone	Triangular area in the urinary bladder.
urea	Major nitrogenous waste excreted in urine.
ureter	One of the two tubes leading from the kidneys to the urinary bladder.
urethra	Tube leading from the urinary bladder to the outside of the body.
uric acid	Nitrogenous waste excreted in the urine.
urinary bladder	Hollow, muscular sac that holds and stores urine.
urination (voiding)	Process of expelling urine; also called micturition.

Filtration of Blood Through the Kidney

This process is maintained by output from the heart (25% of cardiac output goes to the kidneys) and adequate blood pressure to force blood through the glomerulus (filter). About 200 quarts (189 L) of fluid are filtered daily, but 98% to 99% of water and salts are returned to the blood. Only about 2 quarts (1500 mL) of urine are excreted daily.

Terminology

Structures, Substances, and Urinary Signs and Symptoms

Write the meanings of the medical terms in the spaces provided.

Structures

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
cali/o, calic/o	calyx (calix); cup-shaped	caliectasis _____ caliceal _____
cyst/o	urinary bladder	cystitis _____ *Bacterial infections often cause acute or chronic cystitis. In acute cystitis, the bladder contains blood as a result of mucosal hemorrhage (Figure 7-7).* cystectomy _____ cystostomy _____ *An opening is made into the urinary bladder from the outside of the body. A catheter is placed into the bladder for drainage.*
glomerul/o	glomerulus	glomerular capsule _____
meat/o	meatus	meatal stenosis _____
nephr/o	kidney	paranephric _____
		nephropathy _____ *(neh-FROP-ah-the)*
		nephroptosis _____ *Downward displacement or dropping of a kidney when its anatomic supports are weakened.* ***Nephropexy*** *(-pexy means fixation) is an operation to put a "floating" kidney in place.*
		nephrolithotomy _____ *Incision (percutaneous) into the kidney to remove a stone.*
		hydronephrosis _____ *Obstruction of urine flow may be caused by renal calculi (Figure 7-8), compression of the ureter by tumor, or hyperplasia of the prostate gland at the base of the bladder in males.*
		nephrostomy _____ *Surgical opening to the outside of the body (from the renal pelvis). This is necessary when a ureter becomes obstructed and the obstruction cannot be removed easily. The renal pelvis becomes distended with urine (hydronephrosis), making nephrostomy necessary.*
pyel/o	renal pelvis	pyelolithotomy _____ *Removal of a large calculus (stone) contributing to blockage of urine flow and development of infection. The renal pelvis is surgically opened.*
ren/o	kidney	renal ischemia _____ renal colic _____ **Colic** *is intermittent spasms of pain caused by inflammation and distention of an organ. In renal colic, pain results from calculi in the kidney or ureter.*
trigon/o	trigone (region of the bladder)	trigonitis _____

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
ureter/o	ureter	ureteroplasty _____ureteroileostomy _____ *After cystectomy, the urologic surgeon forms a pouch from a segment of the ileum, used in place of the bladder to carry urine from ureters out of the body (Figure 7-9). It is an* ***ileal conduit.***	
urethr/o	urethra	urethritis _____urethroplasty _____urethral stricture _____ *A* ***stricture*** *is an abnormal narrowing of an opening or passageway.*	
vesic/o	urinary bladder	intravesical _____ *Do not confuse the term* ***vesical*** *with the term* ***vesicle,*** *which is a small blister on the skin.*vesicoureteral reflux _____	

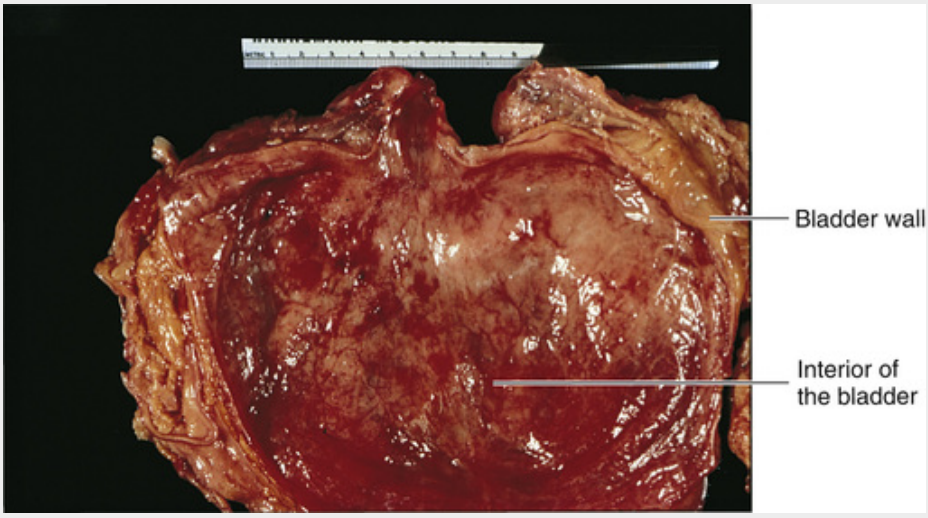


FIGURE 7-7 **Acute cystitis.** Notice that the mucosa of the bladder is red and swollen. Bladder and urinary tract infections are more common in women because of the shorter urethra, which allows easier bacterial colonization of the urinary bladder. They usually occur without a known cause but may be acquired during sexual intercourse ("honeymoon cystitis") or after surgical procedures and urinary catheterization.

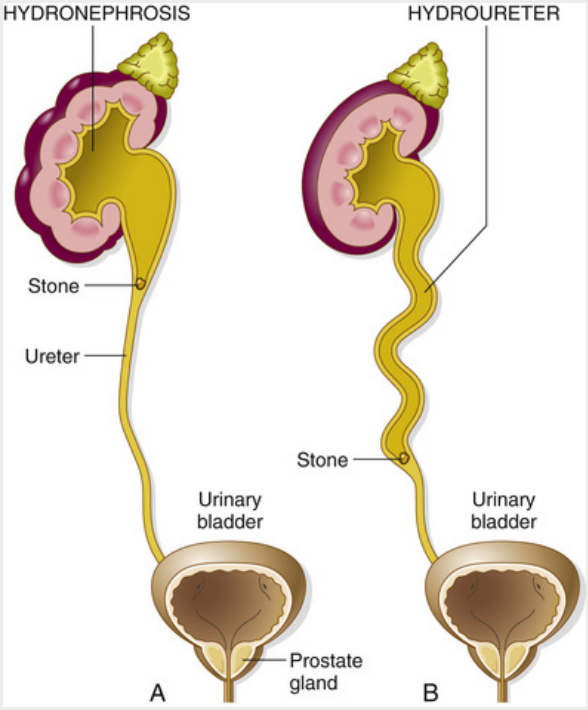


FIGURE 7-8 **A, Hydronephrosis** caused by a stone (obstruction) in the proximal part of a ureter. Notice the buildup of excess fluid in the kidney. **B, Hydroureter** with hydronephrosis caused by a stone in the distal part of the ureter.

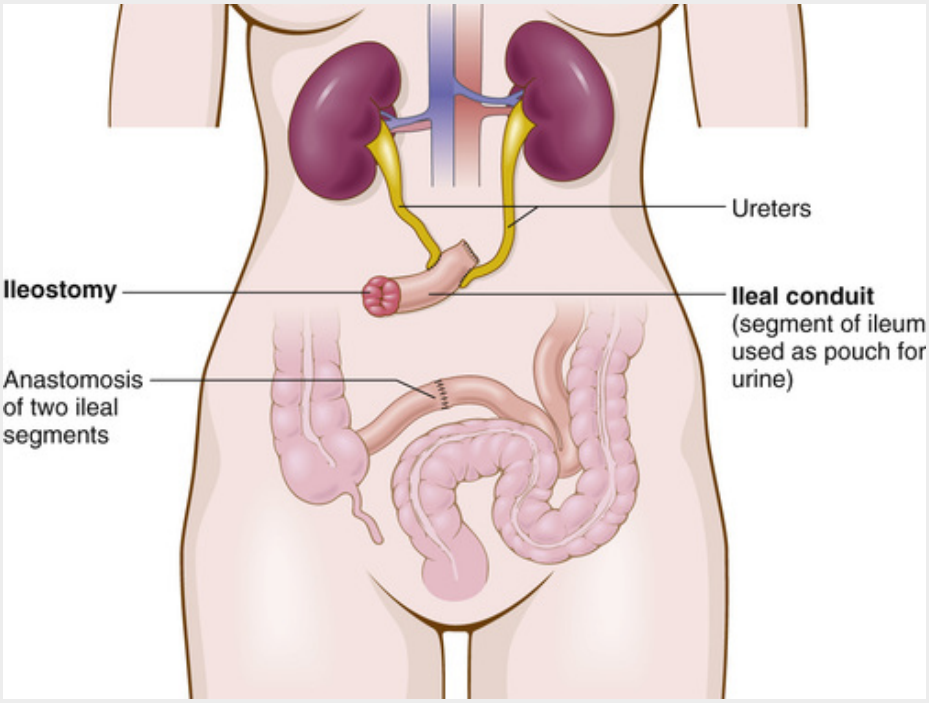


FIGURE 7-9 Ileostomy and ileal conduit after cystectomy.

Substances and Urinary Signs and Symptoms

COMBINING FORM OR SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
albumin/o	albumin (a protein in the blood)	albuminuria _____ *The suffix -uria means urine condition. This finding can indicate malfunction of the kidney as protein leaks out of damaged glomeruli.* ***Microalbuminuria*** *is leakage of very small amounts of albumin through the glomeruli.*	
azot/o	nitrogen	azotemia _____ *This toxic condition is characteristic of uremia. It is indicated by an elevated* ***BUN (blood urea nitrogen)*** *test.*	
bacteri/o	bacteria	bacteriuria _____ *Usually a sign of* ***urinary tract infection (UTI).*** *The bacteria in the urine are cultured (grown in a special nutrient environment) and then tested with antibiotics to determine which will inhibit growth. This is known as* ***culture and sensitivity testing (C&S).***	
dips/o	thirst	polydipsia _____ *Commonly, a sign of diabetes mellitus or diabetes insipidus. Polydipsia occurs when excessive urination (polyuria) signals the brain to cause thirst.*	
kal/i	potassium	hyperkalemia _____ *Because potassium (K+) normally is excreted by the kidneys, it accumulates in blood when the kidneys fail.*	
ket/o, keton/o	ketone bodies (ketoacids and acetone)	ketosis _____ *Often called* ***ketoacidosis,*** *because acids accumulate in the blood and tissues. The breath of a patient with ketosis has a sweet or "fruity" odor. This is produced by* ***acetone*** *(a ketone body) released from the blood in the lungs and exhaled through the mouth.*ketonuria _____	
lith/o	stone	nephrolithiasis _____	
natr/o	sodium	hyponatremia _____ *This condition can occur when water intake is excessive—primary polydipsia, or when athletes drink too much water in high-endurance events.*	
noct/o	night	nocturia _____ *Frequent, excessive urination at night.*	
olig/o	scanty	oliguria _____	
-poietin	substance that forms	erythropoietin _____	
py/o	pus	pyuria _____	
-tripsy	crushing	lithotripsy _____	

COMBINING FORM OR SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
ur/o	urine (urea)	uremia _____ *This toxic state results when nitrogenous waste accumulates abnormally in the blood.*enuresis _____ *Literally, a condition (-esis) of being "in urine"; bed-wetting.* diuresis _____ *Di- (from dia-) means complete. Caffeine and alcohol are well-known **diuretics**—they induce increased excretion of urine (diuresis).*antidiuretic hormone _____ *This hormone from the pituitary gland normally acts on the renal tubules to promote water reabsorption. It is also called **vasopressin** and is abbreviated **ADH.***	
urin/o	urine	urinary incontinence _____ *Incontinence literally means not (in-) able to hold (tin) together (con-). This is loss of control of the passage of urine from the bladder. **Stress incontinence** occurs with strain on the bladder opening during coughing or sneezing. **Urgency incontinence** occurs with the inability to hold back urination when feeling the urge to void.*urinary retention _____ *This symptom results when the outflow of urine from the bladder is blocked.*	
-uria	urination; urine condition	dysuria _____anuria _____ *Commonly caused by renal failure or urinary tract obstruction.*hematuria _____ **Microhematuria** *is hematuria that is visible only under a microscope, as opposed to **gross hematuria,** which can be seen with the naked eye.*glycosuria _____ *A sign of diabetes mellitus.*polyuria _____ *A symptom of both diabetes insipidus and diabetes mellitus.*	

Enuresis/Nocturia

Don't confuse enuresis, which is involuntary, with nocturia, which is voluntary, frequent urination at night.

Urinalysis

Urinalysis is an examination of urine to determine the presence of abnormal elements that may indicate various pathologic conditions. It is an inexpensive, noninvasive test that provides valuable information not only about the contents of urine, but about diseases affecting the body as a whole. Urinalysis may be done in an office setting with almost instant results. See Figure 7-10.

FIGURE 7-10 Dipstick testing and urinalysis.

The following are some of the tests included in a urinalysis:

1. **Color**—Normal urine color is yellow (amber) or straw-colored. A colorless, pale urine indicates a large amount of water in the urine, whereas a smoky-red or brown color of urine indicates the presence of large amounts of blood. Foods such as beets and certain drugs also can produce a red coloration of urine.
2. **Appearance**—Normally, urine should be clear. Cloudy or **turbid** urine indicates a urinary tract infection with **pus (pyuria)** and **bacteria (bacteriuria).**
3. **pH**—Determination of pH reveals the chemical nature of urine. It indicates to what degree a solution is **acid** or **alkaline (basic)** (Figure 7-11). Normal urine has a slightly acidic pH of 6.5. However, in some infections of the bladder, the urine pH may be alkaline, owing to the actions of bacteria in the urine that break down urea and release ammonia (an alkaline substance).

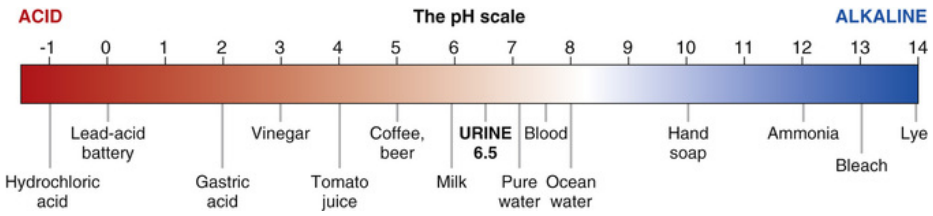


FIGURE 7-11 **The pH scale.** Pure water has a neutral pH.

4. **Protein**—Small amounts of protein are normally found in the urine but not in sufficient quantity to produce a positive result by ordinary methods of testing. When urinary tests for protein become positive, **albumin** is usually responsible. Albumin is the major protein in blood plasma. If it is detected in urine **(albuminuria),** it may

indicate a leak in the glomerular membrane, which allows albumin to enter the renal tubule and pass into the urine.
Through more sensitive testing, smaller abnormal amounts of albumin may be detected, revealing **microalbuminuria,** when ordinary tests are negative. Microalbuminuria is recognized as the earliest sign of renal involvement in diabetes mellitus.

5. **Glucose**—Sugar is not normally found in the urine. In most cases, when it does appear **(glycosuria),** it indicates **diabetes mellitus.** In diabetes mellitus, there is excess sugar in the bloodstream (hyperglycemia), which leads to the "spilling over" of sugar into the urine. The renal tubules cannot reabsorb all the sugar that filters out through the glomerular membrane.
6. **Specific gravity**—The specific gravity of urine reflects the amounts of wastes, minerals, and solids in the urine. It is a comparison of the density of urine with that of water. The urine of patients with diabetes mellitus has a higher-than-normal specific gravity because of the presence of sugar.
7. **Ketone bodies**—Ketones (or **acetones,** a type of ketone body) are formed when fatty acids are broken down in the liver. Ketones accumulate in blood and urine when the body breaks down fat, instead of sugar, for fuel. **Ketonuria** occurs in diabetes mellitus when cells deprived of sugar must use up their available fat for energy. In starvation, when sugar is not available, ketonuria and ketosis (ketones in the blood) occur as fat is catabolized abnormally.
Ketones in the blood are dangerous because they increase the acidity of the blood **(ketoacidosis).** If severe, this may lead to coma (unconsciousness) and death.
8. **Sediment and casts**—The presence of abnormal particles in the urine is a sign of a pathologic condition. Such particles, which may settle to the bottom of a urine sample as **sediment**, may include cells (epithelial, white, or red blood cells), bacteria, crystals, and **casts** (cylindrical structures of protein often containing cellular elements).
9. **Phenylketonuria (PKU)**—This is a rare condition in which a baby is born unable to break down an amino acid, phenylalanine. Resulting high blood levels of phenylalanine (phenylketones are detected in urine) can lead to mental retardation. Although the PKU test originally was performed on urine specimens, now it is done by pricking the newborn's heel to obtain a small blood sample. If phenylalanine is detected, the infant is fed a diet excluding phenylalanine. Affected children remain on this diet until adulthood.
10. **Bilirubin**—A small amount of this pigment substance is present in urine and gives its distinctive yellow color. Bilirubin is a product of red blood cell breakdown, and increased levels in urine (bilirubinuria) are present in patients with liver disease.

Pathologic Terminology: Kidney, Bladder, and Associated Conditions

Kidney

glomerulonephritis	**Inflammation of the glomeruli within the kidney.** This condition can follow a streptococcal infection or can be associated with an autoimmune disease. It results in leaky glomeruli, hematuria, red blood cell casts, albuminuria, and when severe, renal failure and uremia. Drugs may be useful to control inflammation, and dialysis or renal transplantation may be necessary if uremia occurs.
interstitial nephritis	**Inflammation of connective tissue that lies between the renal tubules.** Connective, supportive tissue lying between the renal tubules is made up of renal interstitial cells. **Interstitial cells** in any organ are found in addition to the essential, main functional cells, which make up the **parenchyma.** The parenchyma in the kidney consists of the glomeruli and the renal tubules (nephrons). Acute interstitial nephritis, an increasingly common disorder, may develop after use of NSAIDs (nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs, such as aspirin and ibuprofen) and other drugs. It may be marked by fever, skin rash, and eosinophils in the blood and urine.
nephrolithiasis	**Kidney stones (renal calculi).** Kidney stones usually are composed of uric acid or calcium salts. Stones often lodge in the ureter or bladder, as well as in the renal pelvis, and may require removal by **lithotripsy** (see page 222) or surgery.
nephrotic syndrome (nephrosis)	**Group of clinical signs and symptoms caused by excessive protein loss in urine.** Nephrotic syndrome may follow glomerulonephritis or exposure to toxins or certain drugs, immune diseases, and other pathologic conditions, such as diabetes mellitus and cancer. Two important signs of nephrotic syndrome are **edema** (swelling caused by fluid in tissue spaces) and **hypoalbuminemia.** Both of these changes are caused by massive leakage of protein into urine.
polycystic kidney disease (PKD)	**Multiple fluid-filled sacs (cysts) within and on the kidney.** There are two types of hereditary PKD. One type usually is **asymptomatic** (without symptoms) until middle age and then is marked by hematuria, urinary tract infections, nephrolithiasis, and renal failure. The other type of PKD occurs in infants or children and results in renal failure. Figure 7-12A shows polycystic kidney disease.
pyelonephritis	**Inflammation of the lining of the renal pelvis and renal parenchyma.** The **parenchyma** of an organ is its essential and distinctive tissue. Nephrons make up the renal parenchyma. Bacterial infection in the urinary tract causes collections of pus to form in the kidney, often associated with bacteria spilling into the bloodstream. Urinalysis reveals pyuria. Treatment consists of antibiotics and surgical correction of any obstruction to urine flow.
renal cell carcinoma	**Cancerous tumor of the kidney in adulthood.** This tumor (see Figure 7-12B) accounts for 2% of all cancers in adults. Hematuria is the primary abnormal finding, and the tumor

	often metastasizes to bones and lungs. Nephrectomy or partial nephrectomy is the primary treatment.
renal failure	**Decrease in excretion of wastes results from impaired filtration function.** A large number of conditions, including high blood pressure, infection, and diabetes, can lead to renal failure, which may be acute (ARF) or chronic (CRF), reversible or progressive, mild or severe. A newer classification of **chronic kidney disease (CKD)** classifies its severity by the level of creatinine clearance and glomerular filtration rate (GFR), ranging from normal (stage 1) to end-stage renal failure or ESRF (stage 5), See Spotlight on CKD stages on page 225.
renal hypertension	**High blood pressure resulting from kidney disease.** Renal hypertension is a type of **secondary hypertension** (high blood pressure caused by an abnormal condition such as glomerulonephritis). However, the most common type of high blood pressure is **essential hypertension,** or **primary hypertension.** In essential hypertension there is no obvious underlying medical condition. Chronic essential hypertension can damage blood vessels, potentially resulting in stroke, myocardial infarction (heart attack), heart failure, or renal failure.
Wilms tumor	**Malignant tumor of the kidney occurring in childhood.** This tumor may be treated with surgery, radiation therapy, and chemotherapy.

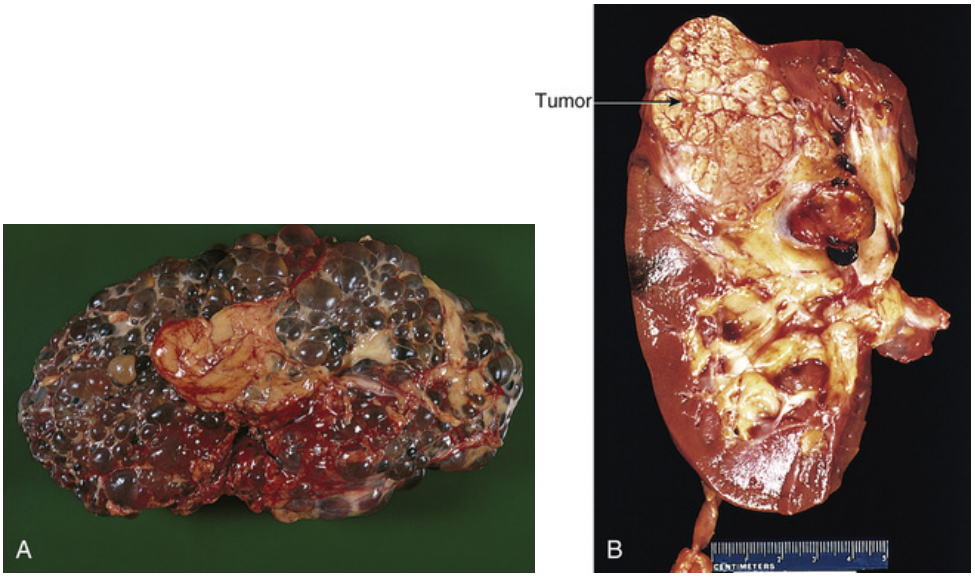


FIGURE 7-12 **A, Polycystic kidney disease.** The kidneys contain masses of cysts. Typically, polycystic kidneys weigh 20 times more than their usual weight (150 to 200 grams). **B, Renal cell carcinoma.**

Urinary Bladder

bladder cancer	**Malignant tumor of the urinary bladder.** Bladder cancer occurs more frequently in men (often smokers) and in persons older than 50 years of age, especially industrial workers exposed to dyes and leather-tanning agents. Signs and symptoms include gross (visible to the naked eye) or microscopic hematuria and dysuria. Cystoscopy with biopsy is the most common diagnostic procedure. Staging of the tumor is based on the depth to which the tumor invades the bladder wall and presence of metastasis. Superficial tumors are removed by electrocauterization (burning). Cystectomy, chemotherapy, and radiation therapy are treatments for disease that has spread deeply into the bladder wall, to regional lymph nodes, or to distant organs.

Associated Conditions

diabetes insipidus (DI)	**Antidiuretic hormone (ADH) is not secreted, or there is a resistance of the kidney to ADH.** In DI, the kidney produces large amounts of dilute urine (polyuria). Lack of ADH prevents water from being reabsorbed into the blood through the renal tubules. Insipidus means tasteless, reflecting very dilute and watery urine, not sweet as in diabetes mellitus. The term **diabetes** comes from the Greek *diabainein,* meaning to pass through. Both types of diabetes (insipidus and mellitus) are marked by polyuria and polydipsia.
diabetes mellitus (DM)	**Insulin is not secreted adequately or tissues are resistant to its effects.** The major signs and symptoms of diabetes mellitus are glycosuria, hyperglycemia, polyuria, and polydipsia. Without insulin, sugar cannot leave the bloodstream and is not available to body cells for energy. Sugar remains in the blood (hyperglycemia) and spills over into the urine (glycosuria). Mellitus means sweet, reflecting the content of the urine. The term diabetes, when used alone, refers to diabetes mellitus. See Chapter 18 for more information about diabetes mellitus.

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Laboratory Tests

BUN (blood urea nitrogen)	**Measurement of urea levels in blood.** Normally, the BUN (pronounced be-u-n) level is low because urea is excreted in the urine continuously. However, when the kidney is diseased or fails, the BUN may be very high. Urea accumulates in the blood (uremia), leading to unconsciousness and death.
creatinine clearance	**Measurement of the rate at which creatinine is cleared from the blood by the kidney.** This is an important test to assess the functioning of the kidney. A blood sample is drawn and the creatinine concentration in blood is compared with the amount of creatinine excreted in the urine during a fixed time period. If the kidney is not functioning well in its job of clearing creatinine from the blood, the amount of creatinine in the blood will be high relative to the amount in urine. Creatinine clearance is a useful indicator of the **glomerular filtration rate (GFR),** which normally is 90 to 120 mL/minute.

Clinical Procedures

X-Ray Studies

CT urography	**X-ray images obtained using computed tomography (CT) show multiple cross-sectional and other views of the kidney.** CT scanners show multiple views of the kidney, taken with or without contrast material. Two main indications are to detect kidney stones and to evaluate patients with hematuria (Figure 7-13A).
KUB (kidneys, ureters, and bladder)	**X-ray examination (without contrast) of the kidneys, ureters, and bladder.** A KUB (prounced k-u-be) study demonstrates the size and location of the kidneys in relation to other organs in the abdominopelvic region. It can also show kidney stones.
renal angiography	**X-ray examination (with contrast) of the blood vessels of the kidney.** This procedure helps diagnose obstruction or constriction of blood vessels leading to the kidney. The same changes can be seen on CT and MRI urography.
retrograde pyelogram (RP)	**X-ray image of the renal pelvis and ureters after injection of contrast through a urinary catheter into the ureters from the bladder.** This technique is useful in locating urinary stones and obstructions.
voiding cystourethrogram (VCUG)	**X-ray image (with contrast) of the urinary bladder and urethra obtained while the patient is voiding.** See Figure 7-13B. The bladder is filled with contrast material, followed by fluoroscopy (real-time x-ray imaging). Reflux of contrast into the ureters is abnormal and may occur with recurrent urinary tract infections.

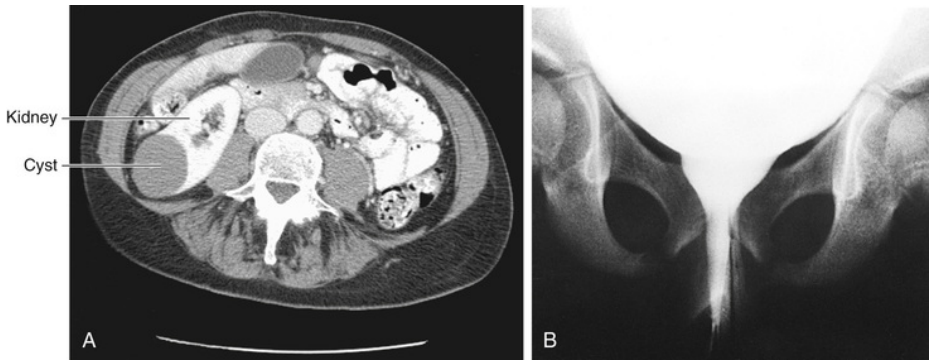


FIGURE 7-13 **A, CT urography with contrast** (axial view) shows a benign cyst on the kidney. It does not take up the contrast and is smooth and round. **B, Voiding cystourethrogram** showing a normal female urethra. (Courtesy William H. Bush, Jr., MD, University of Washington, Seattle.)

Ultrasound Examination

ultrasonography	**Imaging of urinary tract structures using high-frequency sound waves.** Kidney size, tumors, hydronephrosis, polycystic kidney disease, and ureteral and bladder obstruction can be diagnosed using ultrasound techniques.

Radioactive Study

radioisotope scan	**Image of the kidney obtained after injecting a radioactive substance (radioisotope) into the bloodstream.** Pictures show the size and shape of the kidney **(renal scan)** and its functioning **(renogram).** These studies can indicate narrowing of blood vessels, diagnose obstruction, and determine the individual functioning of each kidney.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging

MRI urography	**Changing magnetic field produces images of the kidney and surrounding structures in three planes of the body.** The patient lies within a cylindrical magnetic resonance machine, and images are made of the pelvic and retroperitoneal regions using magnetic waves. The test shows tumor invasion of blood vessels, lymph nodes, and adjacent tissues.

Other Procedures

cystoscopy	**Direct visualization of the urethra and urinary bladder with an endoscope (cystoscope).** The procedure can be performed in two ways. **Flexible cystoscopy** uses a thin fiberoptic cystoscope and is used for diagnosis and check-ups of the urinary bladder. **Rigid cystoscopy** uses a hollow metal tube, passed through the urethra and into the bladder. It is used to take biopsy samples, remove polyps, or perform laser treatments. Both these tests can be done in the office or operating room. See Figure 7-14A and B.
dialysis	**Process of separating nitrogenous waste materials from the blood.** Dialysis is used to treat acute or chronic renal failure and some cases of drug use. There are two methods: 1. **Hemodialysis (HD)** uses an artificial kidney machine that receives waste-filled blood from the patient's bloodstream, filters it through an artificial porous membrane (dialyzer), and returns the dialyzed blood to the patient's body (Figure 7-15A). An **arteriovenous fistula** (communication between an artery and a vein) is created surgically, often in the patient's arm, to provide easy access for hemodialysis (Figure 7-15B). 2. **Peritoneal dialysis (PD)** uses a **catheter** to introduce fluid into the peritoneal (abdominal) cavity. Waste materials, such as urea, in the capillaries of the peritoneum pass out of the bloodstream and into the fluid. The fluid (with wastes) is then removed by catheter. When used to treat patients with chronic kidney disease, PD may be performed continuously by the patient without mechanical support (CAPD—continuous ambulatory PD; Figure 7-16) or with the aid of a mechanical apparatus used at night during sleep.
lithotripsy	**Urinary tract stones are crushed.** The **extracorporeal method** uses shock waves directed toward the stone from the outside of the body (extra = outside, corpor/o = body). The patient receives light sedation or an anesthetic. Stones pass from the body in urine after the procedure. Abbreviation is **ESWL (extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy).**
renal angioplasty	**Dilation of narrowed areas in renal arteries.** A balloon attached to a catheter is inserted into the artery and then inflated to enlarge the vessel diameter. Afterward, stents (metal-mesh tubes) may be inserted to keep the vessel open. This procedure is used to treat renal hypertension and to preserve renal function.
renal biopsy	**Removal of kidney tissue for microscopic examination.** Biopsy may be performed at the time of surgery (open) or through the skin (percutaneous, or closed). When the latter technique is used, the patient lies in the prone position; then, after administration of local anesthesia to the overlying skin and muscles of the back, the physician inserts a biopsy needle down into the kidney. Several specimens are obtained for examination by a pathologist.
renal transplantation	**Surgical transfer of a kidney from a donor to a recipient.** Patients with renal failure may receive a kidney from a living donor, such as an identical twin (isograft) or other person (allograft), or from a patient at the time of death (cadaver transplant). Best results occur when the donor is closely related to the recipient—98% of transplanted

	kidneys survive for 1 year or longer (Figure 7-17). See the ***In Person: Kidney Transplant*** on page 228.
urinary catheterization	**Passage of a flexible, tubular instrument through the urethra into the urinary bladder.** Catheters are used primarily for short- or long-term drainage of urine. A **Foley catheter** is an indwelling (left in the bladder) catheter held in place by a balloon inflated with liquid (Figure 7-18).

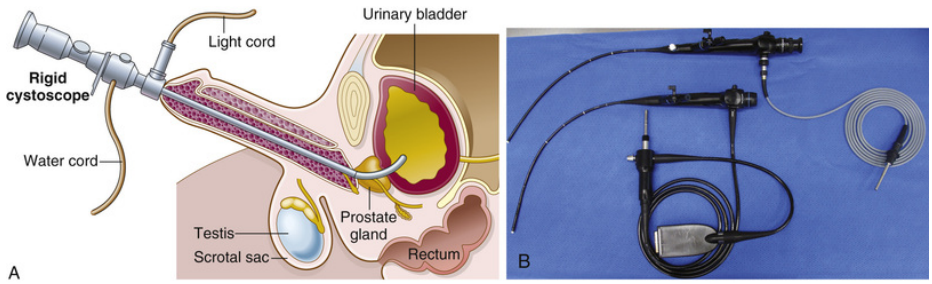


FIGURE 7-14 **Cystoscopy. A, Rigid cystoscope** in place within the urethra. **B, Flexible cystoscope.**

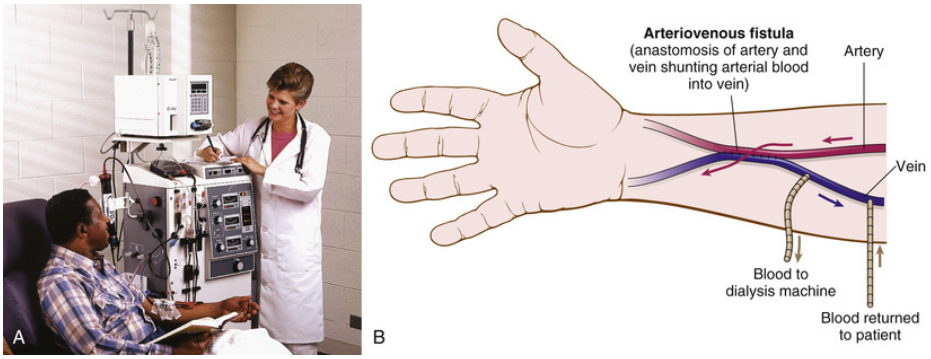


FIGURE 7-15 **Hemodialysis (HD). A,** Patient receiving HD. Conventional HD involves 3 to 4 hours of dialysis three times weekly. Newer alternative modalities include slower and longer dialysis, nocturnal HD, and daily short HD. **B, Arteriovenous fistula** for hemodialysis.

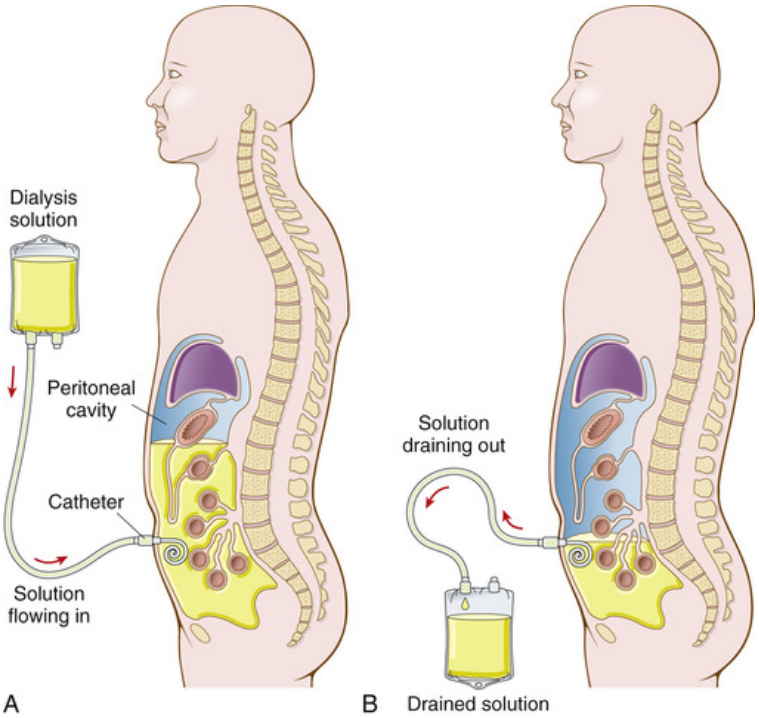


FIGURE 7-16 Continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis (CAPD). A, The dialysis solution (dialysate) flows from a collapsible plastic bag through a catheter (Tenckhoff peritoneal catheter) into the patient's peritoneal cavity. The empty bag is then folded and inserted into undergarments. **B,** After 4 to 8 hours, the bag is unfolded, and the fluid is allowed to drain into it by gravity. The full bag is discarded, and a new bag of fresh dialysate is attached.

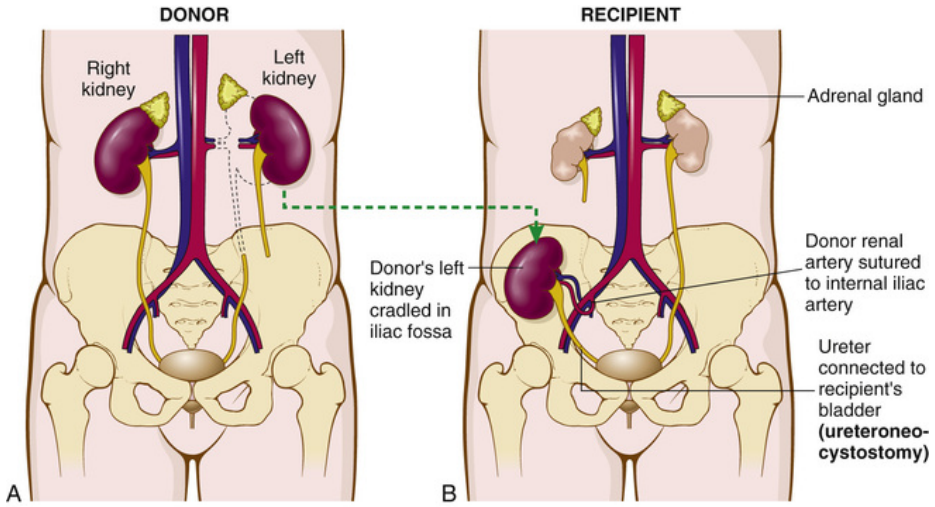


FIGURE 7-17 **Renal (kidney) transplantation. A,** Left kidney of donor is removed for transplantation. **B,** Kidney is transplanted to the right pelvis (iliac fossa) of the recipient. The renal artery and vein of the donor kidney are joined to the recipient kidney's artery and vein, and the end of the donor ureter is connected to the recipient's bladder **(ureteroneocystostomy)**. The health of the donor is not affected by losing one kidney. In fact, the remaining kidney is able to take over full function.

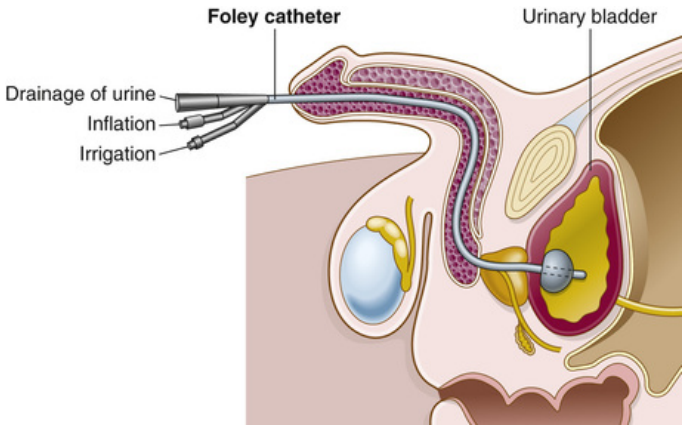


FIGURE 7-18 **Foley catheter** in place in the urinary bladder. The three-way catheter has three separate lumens: for drainage of urine, for inflation of balloons in the bladder, and for introduction of irrigating solutions into the bladder.

Abbreviations

ADH	antidiuretic hormone—vasopressin
AKI	acute kidney (renal) injury
BUN	blood urea nitrogen
CAPD	continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis
CKD	chronic kidney disease—a condition during which serum creatinine and BUN levels rise, which may result in impairment of all body systems
Cl^-	chloride—an electrolyte excreted by the kidney
CrCl	creatinine clearance
CRF	chronic renal failure—progressive loss of kidney function; same as CKD
C&S	culture and sensitivity testing—to determine antibiotic effectiveness against bacteria grown from a patient's urine specimen
cysto	cystoscopic examination
eGFR	estimated glomerular filtration rate
ESRD	end-stage renal disease
ESWL	extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy
HCO_3^-	bicarbonate—an electrolyte conserved by the kidney
HD	hemodialysis
IC	interstitial cystitis—chronic inflammation of the bladder wall; not caused by bacterial infection and not responsive to conventional antibiotic therapy
IVP	intravenous pyelogram
K^+	potassium—an electrolyte
KUB	kidney, ureters, and bladder
Na^+	sodium—an electrolyte
PD	peritoneal dialysis
pH	potential hydrogen; scale to indicate degree of acidity or alkalinity
PKD	polycystic kidney disease
PUL	percutaneous ultrasound lithotripsy
RP	retrograde pyelography
sp gr	specific gravity
UA	urinalysis
UTI	urinary tract infection
VCUG	voiding cystourethrogram

CKD Stages

The five stages of **CKD** reflect increasing severity of kidney disease:

Stage 1: eGFR >90
Stage 2: eGFR 60-90
Stage 3: eGFR 30-60
Stage 4: eGFR 15-30
Stage 5: eGFR <15

Practical Applications

Answers to the questions about the case report and the urinalysis findings are on page 236.

Urologic Case Report

The patient, a 50-year-old woman, presented to the clinic complaining of painless hematuria and clots in the urine. There had been no history of urolithiasis, pyuria, or previous hematuria. Nocturia had been present about 5 years earlier. Endoscopy revealed a carcinoma located about 2 cm from the left ureteral orifice. A metastatic workup was negative. Partial cystectomy was carried out and the lesion cleared. Bilateral pelvic lymphadenectomy revealed no positive nodes. No ileal conduit was necessary.

Questions about the Case Report

1. Urologic refers to which system of the body?
    a. Digestive
    b. Endocrine
    c. Excretory
2. What was the patient's reason for appearing at the clinic?
    a. Scanty urination
    b. Inability to urinate
    c. Blood in urine
3. Which of the following was a previous symptom?
    a. Excessive urination at night
    b. Blood in the urine
    c. Pus in the urine
4. What diagnostic procedure was carried out?
    a. Lithotripsy
    b. Cystoscopy
    c. Urinalysis
5. The patient's diagnosis was:
    a. Malignant tumor of the bladder
    b. Tumor in the proximal ureter
    c. Lymph nodes affected by tumor
6. Treatment was:
    a. Ureteroileostomy
    b. Removal of tumor and subtotal removal of the bladder
    c. Not necessary, because of negative lymph nodes

Urinalysis Findings

TEST	NORMAL	ABNORMAL
Color	Amber-yellow	Smoky-red (blood in urine): renal calculi; tumor; kidney disease; cystitis; urinary obstruction
Appearance	Clear	Cloudy (pyuria): urinary tract infection (UTI)
pH	4.6-8.0	Alkaline: UTI
Protein	None or small amount	Proteinuria: nephritis; renal failure
Glucose	None	Glycosuria: diabetes mellitus
Ketones	None	Ketonuria: diabetes mellitus
Bilirubin	None	Bilirubinuria: hepatitis or gallbladder disease
Specific gravity	1.003-1.030	High: renal calculi; diabetes mellitus Low: diabetes insipidus
Sediment	None	Casts: nephritis; renal disease

Name the appropriate test for detecting or evaluating each of the following.

1. Sugar in urine _____
2. Level of bile pigment in urine _____
3. Hematuria _____
4. Albumin in urine _____
5. Structures in the shape of renal tubules in urine _____
6. Chemical reaction of urine _____
7. Dilution or concentration of urine _____
8. Acetones in urine _____
9. Pus in urine _____

Urologic Case Study

A 22-year-old woman comes to the ED [emergency department] with a history of fever, dysuria, and shaking chills. Results of her UA [urinalysis], with normal findings for comparison, are as follows:

TEST	UA RESULTS	NORMAL FINDINGS
Color	amber-yellow	amber-yellow
Appearance	turbid	clear
Specific gravity	1.040	1.003-1.030
pH	8.4	6.5 (range, 4.6-8.0)
Protein	neg	neg
Glucose	neg	neg
Ketones	neg	neg
Bili	neg	neg
WBC count	>100	0
Bacteria	bacilli (rods)	0
Sediment	WBC casts	none

What's the probable diagnosis?

a. Diabetes mellitus with glycosuria
b. Glomerulonephritis with staphylococcal infection
c. Nephrotic syndrome with albuminuria
d. Urinary tract infection with pyelonephritis

In Person

Kidney Transplant

This first-person narrative was written by a kidney donor.

When my 64-year-old father-in-law announced to my wife and me that his kidney function was failing, it didn't really enter our minds that one of us might ultimately have a part to play in his survival. Five years later, dialysis was taking its toll on his organ systems, and there had been no success in obtaining a cadaveric kidney. Things had reached the point where he needed a kidney in short order, before his health deteriorated to the point where he would no longer be a candidate for transplantation.

My wife's blood type ruled out the possibility of her being a direct donor, so I volunteered to be tested. Turns out that her father and I were a match on 5 of the 7 key traits—a really good fit! The next round of testing—blood work and my kidney function—was able to be done locally. I remember carrying around a specimen container (on ice), having to provide a full liter of urine in 24 hours!

The results of those tests were favorable, and two weeks later I made the 3½-hour drive to the transplant center at the University of Virginia in Charlottesville. While a transplant is really a team of two—donor and recipient—the entire process at UVA was very much individualized. A transplant coordinator (an experienced RN) was assigned specifically to our case, and I had a team of doctors and support staff dedicated exclusively to me, the donor. Similarly, there was a team that dealt only with my father-in-law as the recipient.

My visit involved some more in-depth blood tests and cardiac studies largely to determine that I was healthy enough for major surgery. My transplant team and I spent an entire afternoon discussing the implications of being a donor—the inherent risk in any surgery, potential implications for me and my family, the likely recovery time, and the possibility that, despite all of the up-front testing, the transplant might not be successful. The discussions that afternoon only reaffirmed that I was making the right decision. I had an opportunity to have a positive impact on someone else's life, with relatively little risk to my own health.

The events around the surgery itself were pretty straightforward. The surgery is a more involved procedure for the donor than for the recipient, so I was taken back first. A nurse started an IV and injected a mild sedative. From that point, my only memory is of one last hug for my wife and children, and then being shifted from the stretcher onto the operating table.

When I woke up in recovery, the news was all good. My surgery had gone well—four laparoscopic incisions through which the surgeons did most all of their work, and a lateral incision in my lower abdomen through which the kidney was removed. Equally important, my father-in-law had come through his surgery well and the kidney had immediately begun to function! I was discharged from the hospital on Sunday, and cleared to return home the next Friday, 8 days post-op.

As is typical following a major surgery, it took about 6 weeks for me to feel "normal" again. During those 6 weeks, I had weekly blood tests to chart the progress of my kidney function. I went back to UVA for a routine follow-up visit at the 6-week mark. I was recovering as expected, and my remaining kidney was actually growing in size and capacity. Blood tests continued on a monthly basis until I was officially "discharged" from the transplant center's care 6 months after the surgery.

Now, 8 years after the transplant, both my father-in-law and I continue to do well. As my mother-in-law likes to say, I donated a "rock star" kidney that has allowed our family to enjoy many visits and create many cherished memories that will last a lifetime. My two children, now 20 and 17, have enjoyed their grandfather's love and guidance during some very important years in their lives. This is especially meaningful to me, as I lost my father before my wife and I started our family, and our children missed out on an opportunity to know and love a wonderful man.

John Melson lives in Greensboro, North Carolina. He is pictured with his father-in-law, Rod Beckwith.

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, pages 234 and 235.

A **Using the following terms, trace the path of urine from the renal arterioles (bloodstream) to the point at which urine leaves the body. The first answer is provided.**

glomerular capsule
glomerulus
renal pelvis
renal tubule
ureter
urethra
urinary bladder
urinary meatus

1. *glomerulus*_____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____

B **Match the term in Column I with its definition or a term of similar meaning in Column II. Write the correct letter in the spaces provided.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. voiding	_____	A. Hormone secreted by the kidney that stimulates formation of red blood cells
2. trigone	_____	B. Notch on the surface of the kidney where blood vessels and nerves enter
3. renal cortex	_____	C. Urination; micturition
4. renal medulla	_____	D. Nitrogenous waste
5. urea	_____	E. Cup-like collecting region of the renal pelvis
6. erythropoietin	_____	F. Small molecule that carries an electric charge in solution
7. renin	_____	G. Inner region of the kidney
8. electrolyte	_____	H. Enzyme made by the kidney; increases blood pressure
9. hilum	_____	I. Triangular area in the bladder
10. calyx (calix)	_____	J. Outer section of the kidney

C **Give the meanings of the following medical terms.**

1. caliceal

_____

2. uric acid

_____

3. urinary meatal stenosis

_____

4. cystocele

_____

5. pyelolithotomy

_____

6. trigonitis

_____

7. ureteroileostomy

_____

8. urethrostenosis

_____

9. vesicoureteral reflux

_____

10. creatinine

_____

_____

11. medullary

_____

_____

12. cortical

_____

_____

13. calciferol

_____

_____

D **The following terms all contain the suffix -uria, meaning urination. Write their meanings in the spaces provided.**

1. nocturia

_____

_____

2. dysuria

_____

_____

3. oliguria

_____

_____

4. polyuria

_____

_____

5. anuria

_____

_____

E **In the following terms, -uria means urine condition (substance in the urine). What's in the urine?**

1. pyuria _____
2. albuminuria _____

3. hematuria _____
4. glycosuria _____
5. ketonuria _____
6. bacteriuria _____

F **Give the meanings of the following terms that relate to urinary signs and symptoms.**

1. azotemia
_____
_____
2. polydipsia
_____
3. urinary incontinence
_____
4. enuresis
_____
5. urinary retention
_____
6. ketosis
_____

G **Give short answers for the following.**

1. What is the difference between hematuria and uremia?
_____
2. What is diuresis? _____
3. What is a diuretic? _____
4. What is antidiuretic hormone? _____
5. What is hyponatremia? _____
6. What is hyperkalemia? _____
7. What is PKU? _____

H **Match the listed terms, pertaining to urinalysis, with their meanings/descriptions that follow.**

albuminuria
bilirubinuria
glycosuria

hematuria
ketonuria
pH
pyuria
sediment
specific gravity

1. Abnormal particles present in the urine—cells, bacteria, casts, and crystals _____
2. Smoky-red color of urine caused by the presence of blood _____
3. Turbid (cloudy) urine caused by the presence of polymorphonuclear leukocytes and pus _____
4. Sugar in the urine; a sign of diabetes mellitus and a result of hyperglycemia _____
5. Urine test that reflects the acidity or alkalinity of the urine _____
6. High levels of acids and acetones accumulate in the urine as a result of abnormal fat breakdown _____
7. Dark pigment that accumulates in urine as a result of liver or gallbladder disease _____
8. Urine test that reflects the concentration of the urine _____
9. Leaky glomeruli can produce accumulation of protein in the urine _____

I **Describe the following abnormal conditions that affect the kidney.**

1. renal failure _____
2. polycystic kidney _____
3. interstitial nephritis _____
4. glomerulonephritis _____
5. nephrolithiasis _____
6. renal cell carcinoma _____
7. pyelonephritis _____
8. Wilms tumor _____

9. nephrotic syndrome _____

10. renal hypertension _____

J **Match the listed terms with their meanings/descriptions that follow.**

abscess

catheter

diabetes insipidus

diabetes mellitus

edema

essential hypertension

nephroptosis

renal colic

secondary hypertension

stricture

1. idiopathic high blood pressure _____

2. swelling, fluid in tissues _____

3. narrowed area in a tube

_____

4. collection of pus _____

5. inadequate secretion of insulin or improper utilization of insulin leads to this condition

_____

6. high blood pressure caused by kidney disease or another disease

_____

7. tube for withdrawing or giving fluid

_____

8. inadequate secretion or resistance of the kidney to the action of antidiuretic hormone

_____

9. prolapse of a kidney _____

10. severe pain resulting from a stone that is blocking a ureter or a kidney _____

K **Give the meanings of the abbreviations in Column I. Then select the letter of the sentence in Column II that is the best association for**

each.

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. CAPD _____	_____	A. Bacterial invasion leads to this condition; acute cystitis is an example.
2. BUN _____	_____	B. This electrolyte is secreted by renal tubules into the urine.
3. RP _____	_____	C. A machine removes nitrogenous wastes from the patient's blood.
4. cysto _____	_____	D. High levels measured on this test lead to the suspicion of renal disease.
5. UA _____	_____	E. This endoscopic procedure is used to examine the interior of the urinary bladder.
6. UTI _____	_____	F. Dialysate (fluid) is injected into the peritoneal cavity and then drained out.
7. CKD _____		G. Contrast is injected into the urinary bladder and ureters and x-ray pictures of the urinary tract are taken.
8. K^+ _____		H. X-ray pictures of the urinary bladder and urethra are taken while the patient urinates.
9. VCUG _____		I. Parts of this test include specific gravity, color, protein, glucose, and pH.
10. HD _____		J. This condition includes mild to severe kidney failure.

L **Match the listed procedures with their definitions/meanings that follow.**

cystectomy
cystoscopy
cystostomy
lithotripsy
nephrectomy
nephrolithotomy
nephrostomy
ureterolithotomy
urethroplasty
ureteroileostomy

1. Excision of a kidney _____
2. Surgical incision into the kidney to remove a stone _____
3. Visual examination of the urinary bladder via endoscope _____
4. Crushing of stones _____

5. New opening of the ureters to a segment of ileum (in place of the bladder) _____
6. Surgical repair of the urethra _____
7. Creation of an artificial opening into the kidney (via catheter) from the outside of the body _____
8. Surgical formation of an opening from the bladder to the outside of the body _____
9. Removal of the urinary bladder _____
10. Incision of a ureter to remove a stone _____

M **Circle the correct term to complete the following sentences.**

1. After diagnosis of renal cell carcinoma (made by renal biopsy), Dr. Davis advised Donna that **(nephrostomy, meatotomy, nephrectomy)** would be necessary.
2. Ever since Bill's condition of gout was diagnosed, he has been warned that uric acid crystals could accumulate in his blood and tissues, leading to **(pyuria, renal calculi, cystocele).**
3. The voiding cystourethrogram demonstrated blockage of urine flow from Jim's bladder and **(hydronephrosis, renal ischemia, azotemia).**
4. Narrowed arterioles in the kidney increase blood pressure, so **(urinary incontinence, urinary retention, nephrosclerosis)** is often associated with hypertension.
5. Eight-year-old Willy continually wet his bed at night while sleeping. His pediatrician instructed his mother to limit Willy's intake of fluids in the evening to discourage his **(nocturia, oliguria, enuresis).**
6. David's chronic type 1 diabetes eventually resulted in **(nephropathy, meatal stenosis, urolithiasis),** which led to renal failure.
7. After Sue's bilateral renal failure, her doctor advised dialysis and possible **(cystostomy, nephrolithotomy, renal transplantation).**

8. When Maria's left kidney stopped functioning, her contralateral kidney overdeveloped or **(metastasized, atrophied, hypertrophied)** to meet the increased workload.
9. A popular diet program recommends eating foods high in fats and protein. People on this diet check their urine for the presence of **(ketones, glucose, amino acids).**
10. Andrea's urinalysis revealed proteinuria, and her ankles began to swell, demonstrating pitting, a condition known as **(ascites, edema, stricture).** Her **(gastroenterologist, urologist, nephrologist)** diagnosed Andrea's condition as **(polycystic kidneys, nephrotic syndrome, bladder carcinoma)** and recommended drugs to heal leaky glomeruli and diuretics to reduce swelling.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. glomerulus
2. glomerular capsule
3. renal tubule
4. renal pelvis
5. ureter
6. urinary bladder
7. urethra
8. urinary meatus

B

1. C
2. I
3. J
4. G
5. D
6. A

7. H
8. F
9. B
10. E

C

1. pertaining to a calix (collecting cup of renal pelvis)
2. nitrogenous waste excreted in urine; high levels of uric acid in the blood are associated with gouty arthritis
3. narrowing of the urinary meatus
4. hernia of the urinary bladder
5. incision to remove a stone from the renal pelvis
6. inflammation of the trigone (triangular area in the bladder in which the ureters enter and urethra exits)
7. new opening between the ureter and the ileum (an anastomosis); urine then leaves the body through an ileostomy; this surgery (ileal conduit) is performed when the bladder has been removed
8. narrowing (narrowed portion) of the urethra
9. backflow of urine from the bladder into the ureter
10. nitrogenous waste produced as a result of muscle metabolism and excreted in the urine
11. pertaining to the inner, middle section (of the kidney)
12. pertaining to the outer section (of the kidney)
13. active form of vitamin D secreted by the kidneys

D

1. frequent urination at night
2. painful urination
3. scanty urination
4. excessive urination

5. no urination

E

1. pus
2. protein
3. blood
4. sugar
5. ketones or acetones
6. bacteria

F

1. excess nitrogenous waste in the bloodstream
2. condition of much thirst
3. inability to hold urine in the bladder
4. bedwetting
5. inability to release urine from the bladder
6. abnormal condition of ketone bodies (acids and acetones) in the blood and body tissues

G

1. Hematuria is the presence of blood in the urine, and uremia is a toxic condition of excess urea (nitrogenous waste) in the bloodstream. Hematuria is a symptomatic condition of the urine (-uria), and uremia is an abnormal condition of the blood (-emia).
2. Diuresis is the excessive production of urine (polyuria).
3. A diuretic is a drug or chemical (caffeine or alcohol) that causes diuresis to occur.
4. Antidiuretic hormone is a hormone produced by the pituitary gland that normally helps the renal tubules to reabsorb water back into the bloodstream. It works against diuresis to help retain water in the blood.
5. Hyponatremia is abnormally low levels of sodium in the bloodstream.

6. Hyperkalemia is abnormally high concentration of potassium in the blood. The major cause is chronic renal failure.
7. PKU is phenylketonuria. This occurs when there are high levels of phenylketones in urine and phenylalanine in the blood. The condition causes mental retardation in infants.

H

1. sediment
2. hematuria (blood in the urine)
3. pyuria (pus in the urine)
4. glycosuria (sugar in the urine)
5. pH
6. ketonuria (ketone bodies in the urine)
7. bilirubinuria (high levels of bilirubin in the urine)
8. specific gravity
9. albuminuria

I

1. kidney does not excrete wastes
2. multiple fluid-filled sacs form in and on the kidney
3. inflammation of the connective tissue (interstitium) lying between the renal tubules
4. inflammation of the glomerulus of the kidney (may be a complication after a streptococcal infection)
5. condition of kidney stones (renal calculi)
6. malignant tumor of the kidney in adults
7. inflammation of the renal pelvis and parenchyma of the kidney (caused by a bacterial infection, such as with *Escherichia coli,* that spreads to the urinary tract from the gastrointestinal tract)
8. malignant tumor of the kidney in children

9. group of symptoms (proteinuria, edema, hypoalbuminemia) that appears when the kidney is damaged by disease; also called nephrosis
10. high blood pressure caused by kidney disease

J

1. essential hypertension
2. edema
3. stricture
4. abscess
5. diabetes mellitus
6. secondary hypertension
7. catheter
8. diabetes insipidus
9. nephroptosis
10. renal colic

K

1. continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis: F
2. blood urea nitrogen: D
3. retrograde pyelogram: G
4. cystoscopy: E
5. urinalysis: I
6. urinary tract infection: A
7. chronic kidney disease: J
8. potassium: B
9. voiding cystourethrogram: H
10. hemodialysis: C

L

1. nephrectomy
2. nephrolithotomy
3. cystoscopy
4. lithotripsy
5. ureteroileostomy
6. urethroplasty
7. nephrostomy
8. cystostomy
9. cystectomy
10. ureterolithotomy

M

1. nephrectomy
2. renal calculi—don't confuse a calculus (stone) with dental calculus, which is an accumulation of dental plaque that has hardened
3. hydronephrosis
4. nephrosclerosis
5. enuresis
6. nephropathy
7. renal transplantation
8. hypertrophied
9. ketones
10. edema, nephrologist, nephrotic syndrome

Answers to Practical Applications

Urologic Case Report

1. c
2. c
3. a

4. b

5. a

6. b

Urinalysis Findings

1. glucose

2. bilirubin

3. color

4. protein

5. sediment

6. pH

7. specific gravity

8. ketones

9. appearance

Urologic Case Study

Correct diagnosis is d.

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
acetone	AS-eh-tohn
albuminuria	al-bu-min-U-re-ah
antidiuretic hormone	an-tih-di-u-RET-ik HOR-mohn
anuria	an-U-re-ah
arteriole	ar-TE-re-ohl
azotemia	az-o-TE-me-ah
bacteriuria	bak-te-re-U-re-ah
BUN	B-U-N
calciferol	kal-SIF-er-ol
caliceal	ka-lih-SE-al
caliectasis	ka-le-EK-tah-sis
calyx; *pl.* calyces	KA-liks; KA-lih-seez
catheter	KATH-et-er
cortex	KOR-teks
cortical	KOR-tik-al
creatinine	kre-AH-tih-neen
creatinine clearance	kre-AH-tih-neen KLE-ranz
CT urography	CT u-ROG-rah-fe
cystectomy	sis-TEK-to-me
cystitis	sis-TI-tis
cystoscopy	sis-TOS-ko-pe
cystostomy	sis-TOS-to-me
diabetes insipidus	di-ah-BE-teez in-SIP-ih-dus
diabetes mellitus	di-ah-BE-teez MEL-ih-tus
diuresis	di-u-RE-sis
dysuria	dis-U-re-a
edema	eh-DE-mah
electrolyte	eh-LEK-tro-lite
enuresis	en-u-RE-sis
erythropoietin	eh-rith-ro-PO-eh-tin
essential hypertension	e-SEN-shul hi-per-TEN-shun
filtration	fil-TRA-shun
glomerular capsule	glo-MER-u-lar KAP-sul
glomerulonephritis	glo-mer-u-lo-nef-RI-tis
glomerulus; *pl.* glomeruli	glo-MER-u-lus; glo-MER-u-li
glycosuria	gli-kohs-U-re-ah
hematuria	hem-ah-TU-re-ah
hemodialysis	he-mo-di-AL-ih-sis
hilum	HI-lum
hydronephrosis	hi-dro-neh-FRO-sis
hyperkalemia	hi-per-ka-LE-me-ah
hypernatremia	hi-per-na-TRE-me-ah
interstitial nephritis	in-ter-STIH-shul neh-FRI-tis
intravesical	in-trah-VES-ih-kal
ketonuria	ke-to-NU-re-ah
ketosis	ke-TO-sis
kidney	KID-ne

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
KUB	K-U-B
lithotripsy	LITH-o-trip-se
meatal stenosis	me-A-tal sten-O-sis
meatus	me-A-tus
medulla	meh-DU-lah
medullary	MED-u-lah-re
MRI urography	MRI u-ROG-raf-e
nephrolithiasis	neh-fro-lih-THI-ah-sis
nephrolithotomy	neh-fro-lih-THOT-o-me
nephron	NEH-fron
nephropathy	neh-FROP-ah-the
nephroptosis	neh-FROP-to-sis
nephrostomy	neh-FROS-to-me
nephrotic syndrome	neh-FROT-ik sin-drome
nitrogenous waste	ni-TROJ-en-us waste
nocturia	nok-TU-re-ah
oliguria	ol-ig-U-re-ah
paranephric	par-ah-NEF-rik
parenchyma	pah-RENK-ih-mah
peritoneal dialysis	per-it-o-NE-al di-AL-ih-sis
phenylketonuria	fe-nil-ke-to-NU-re-ah
polycystic kidney disease	pol-e-SIS-tik KID-ne dih-ZEEZ
polydipsia	pol-e-DIP-se-ah
polyuria	pol-e-U-re-ah
potassium	po-TAS-e-um
pyelolithotomy	pi-el-o-lith-OT-o-me
pyelonephritis	pi-el-o-neh-FRI-tis
pyuria	pi-U-re-ah
reabsorption	re-ab-SORP-shun
renal angiography	RE-nal an-je-OG-rah-fe
renal angioplasty	RE-nal AN-je-o-plas-te
renal artery	RE-nal AR-teh-re
renal calculi	RE-nal KAL-ku-li
renal cell carcinoma	RE-nal sel kar-sih-NO-mah
renal colic	RE-nal KOL-ik
renal failure	RE-nal FA-lyur
renal hypertension	RE-nal hi-per-TEN-shun
renal ischemia	RE-nal is-KE-me-ah
renal pelvis	RE-nal PEL-vis
renal transplantation	RE-nal trans-plan-TA-shun
renal tubule	RE-nal TU-bule
renal vein	RE-nal vayn
renin	RE-nin
retrograde pyelogram	RET-ro-grade PI-el-o-gram
secondary hypertension	SEK-on-dah-re hi-per-TEN-shun
sodium	SO-de-um
stricture	STRIK-shur

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
trigone	TRI-gohn
trigonitis	tri-go-NI-tis
urea	u-RE-ah
uremia	u-RE-me-ah
ureter	U-reh-ter
ureteroileostomy	u-re-ter-o-il-OS-to-me
ureteroneocystostomy	u-re-ter-o-ne-o-sis-TOS-to-me
ureteroplasty	u-re-ter-o-PLAS-te
urethra	u-RE-thrah
urethral stricture	u-RE-thral STRIK-shur
urethritis	u-re-THRI-tis
urethroplasty	u-re-thro-PLAS-te
uric acid	U-rik acid
urinalysis	u-rin-AL-ih-sis
urinary bladder	U-rin-ar-e BLAD-er
urinary catherization	U-rin-ar-e kath-et-er-ih-ZA-shun
urinary incontinence	U-rin-ar-e in-KON-tin-entz
urinary retention	U-rin-ar-e re-TEN-shun
urination	u-rin-A-shun
vesicoureteral reflux	ves-ik-o-u-RE-ter-al RE-fluks
voiding	VOY-ding
voiding cystourethrogram	VOY-ding sis-to-u-RE-thro-gram
Wilms tumor	wilmz TU-mur

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of the combining forms, suffixes, and prefixes in the spaces provided. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of this book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	COMBINING FORM	MEANING
albumin/o	_____	meat/o	_____
angi/o	_____	natr/o	_____
azot/o	_____	necr/o	_____
bacteri/o	_____	nephr/o	_____
cali/o	_____	noct/o	_____
calic/o	_____	olig/o	_____
cyst/o	_____	py/o	_____
dips/o	_____	pyel/o	_____
glomerul/o	_____	ren/o	_____
glycos/o	_____	trigon/o	_____
hydr/o	_____	ur/o	_____
isch/o	_____	ureter/o	_____
kal/i	_____	urethr/o	_____
ket/o	_____	urin/o	_____
keton/o	_____	vesic/o	_____
lith/o	_____		

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	SUFFIX	MEANING
-ectasis	_____	-pathy	_____
-ectomy	_____	-plasty	_____
-emia	_____	-poietin	_____
-esis	_____	-ptosis	_____
-gram	_____	-rrhea	_____
-lithiasis	_____	-sclerosis	_____
-lithotomy	_____	-stenosis	_____
-lysis	_____	-stomy	_____
-megaly	_____	-tomy	_____
-ole	_____	-tripsy	_____
-osis	_____	-uria	_____

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING	PREFIX	MEANING
a-, an-	_____	hypo-	_____
anti-	_____	peri-	_____
dia-	_____	poly-	_____
dys-	_____	retro-	_____
en-	_____		

Anatomic Terms

Match the locations/functions in Column I with the urinary system structures in Column II. Write the number of the correct structure in the blanks provided.

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
Tiny structure surrounding each glomerulus; receives filtered materials from blood.	_____	1. urethra 2. cortex 3. glomerular capsule 4. calices 5. renal pelvis 6. glomerulus 7. medulla 8. renal tubules 9. urinary bladder 10. ureters
Tubes carrying urine from kidney to urinary bladder.	_____	
Tubules leading from the glomerular capsule. Urine is formed there as water, sugar, and salts are reabsorbed into the bloodstream.	_____	
Inner (middle) region of the kidney.	_____	
Muscular sac that serves as a reservoir for urine.	_____	
Cup-like divisions of the renal pelvis that receive urine from the renal tubules.	_____	
Tube carrying urine from the bladder to the outside of the body.	_____	
Central urine-collecting basin in the kidney that narrows into the ureter.	_____	
Collection of capillaries through which materials from the blood are filtered into the glomerular capsule.	_____	
Outer region of the kidney.	_____	

Give the medical terms for the following conditions related to urine or substances in urine.

1. sugar in urine _____
2. protein in urine _____
3. painful urination _____
4. scanty urination _____
5. bacteria in urine _____
6. excessive urination _____
7. blood in urine _____
8. ketones in urine _____
9. absence of urination _____
10. pus in urine _____
11. excessive urination at night _____

CHAPTER 8

Female Reproductive System

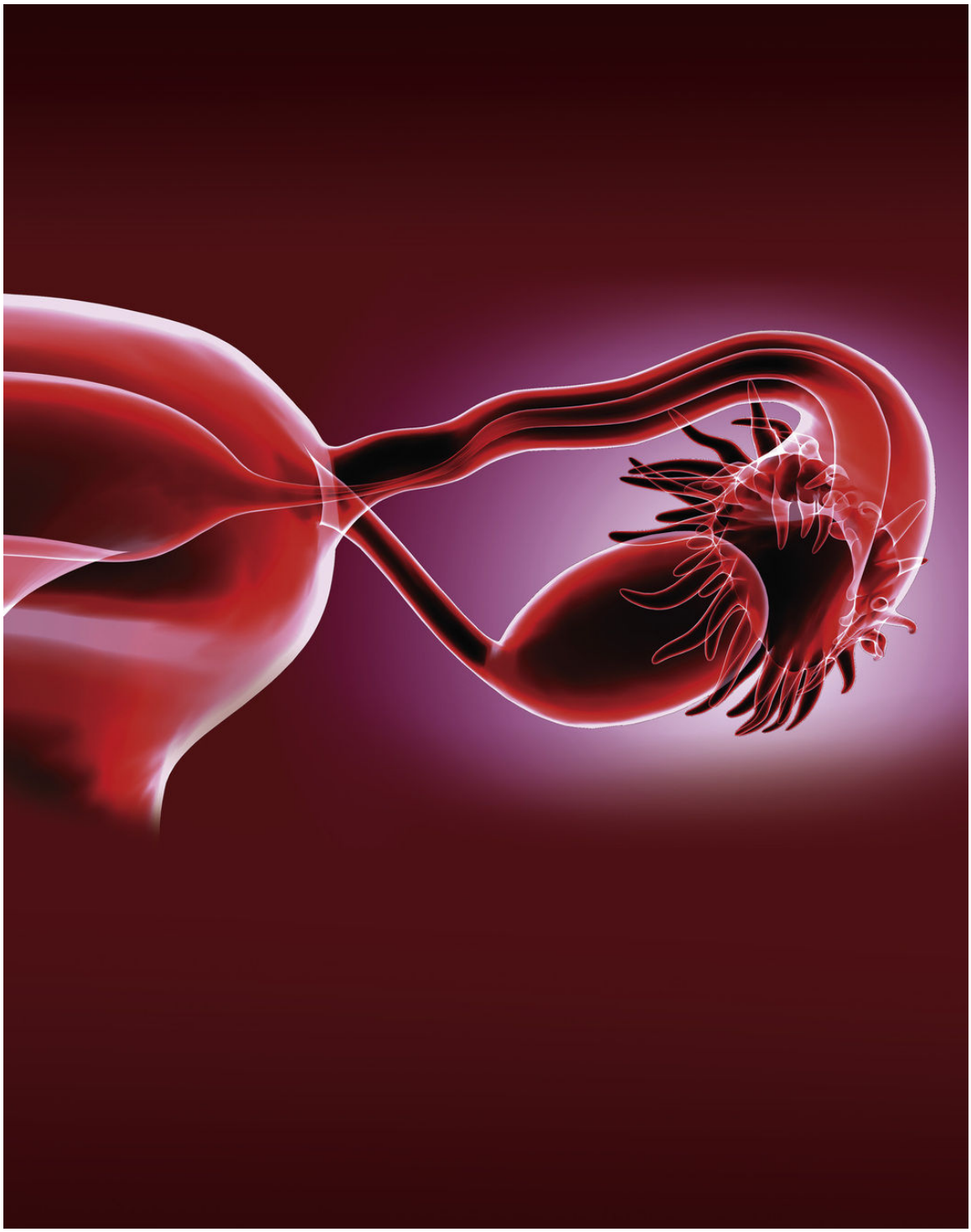
CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 242
Organs of the Female Reproductive System 242
Menstruation and Pregnancy 246
Vocabulary 250
Terminology 252
Pathology: Gynecologic, Breast, Pregnancy, and Neonatal 258
Clinical Tests and Procedures 266
Abbreviations 272
Practical Applications 273
In Person: Prophylactic Mastectomy 275
Exercises 276
Answers to Exercises 284
Pronunciation of Terms 286
Review Sheet 289

CHAPTER GOALS

- Name and locate female reproductive organs and learn their combining forms.

- Explain how these organs and their hormones function in the normal processes of ovulation, menstruation, and pregnancy.
- Identify abnormal conditions of the female reproductive system and of the newborn.
- Describe important laboratory tests and clinical procedures used in gynecology and obstetrics, and recognize related abbreviations.
- Apply your new knowledge to understanding medical terms in their proper contexts, such as medical reports and records.



Introduction

Sexual reproduction is the union of the **ovum** (female sex cell) and the **sperm** (male sex cell). Each sex cell, known as a **gamete,** has half the number of chromosomes needed to create a new organism. In **fertilization,** nuclei of the two gametes unite to form a single nucleus with half of the chromosomes and genetic code from each parent.

Special organs called **gonads** in males and females produce the egg and sperm cells. The female gonads are the **ovaries,** and the male gonads are the **testes.** After an ovum leaves the ovary during **ovulation**, it travels down one of two **fallopian tubes** leading to the **uterus** (womb). If **coitus** (copulation, sexual intercourse) has occurred, millions of sperm cells travel into the fallopian tubes, but only one sperm cell can penetrate the ovum. This is **fertilization.** The fertilized ovum is then known as a **zygote.** After many cell divisions, a ball of cells forms, and the zygote is called an **embryo** (2 to 8 weeks) and finally a **fetus** (8 to 38 or 40 weeks). The period of development within the uterus is **gestation,** or **pregnancy.**

The female reproductive system consists of organs that produce **ova** (singular; ovum) and provide a place for the growth of the embryo. In addition, the female reproductive organs supply important hormones that contribute to the development of female secondary sex characteristics (body hair, breast development, structural changes in bones and fat).

The eggs, or ova, are present from birth in the female ovary but begin to mature and are released from the ovary in a 21- to 28-day cycle when secondary sex characteristics develop. The occurrence of the first cycle is called **menarche.** Menstrual cycles continue until **menopause,** when all eggs have been released, hormone production diminishes, and menstruation ends. If fertilization occurs during the years between menarche and menopause, the fertilized egg may grow and develop within the uterus. A new, blood vessel–rich organ called a **placenta** (connected to the embryo by the umbilical cord) develops to nourish the embryo, which implants in the uterine lining. Various hormones are secreted from the ovary and from the placenta to stimulate the expansion of the placenta. If fertilization does not occur, hormonal changes result in the shedding of the uterine lining, and bleeding, or **menstruation,** occurs.

The hormones of the ovaries, **estrogen** and **progesterone,** play important roles in the processes of menstruation and pregnancy, and in the development of secondary sex characteristics. The **pituitary gland,** located at the base of the brain, secretes other hormones that govern the reproductive functions of the ovaries, breasts, and uterus.

Gynecology is the study of the female reproductive system (organs, hormones, and diseases); **obstetrics** (Latin *obstetrix* means midwife) is a

specialty concerned with pregnancy and the delivery of the fetus; and **neonatology** is the study of the care and treatment of the newborn.

Organs of the Female Reproductive System

Uterus, Ovaries, and Associated Organs

Label Figures 8-1 and 8-3 as you read the following description of the female reproductive system.

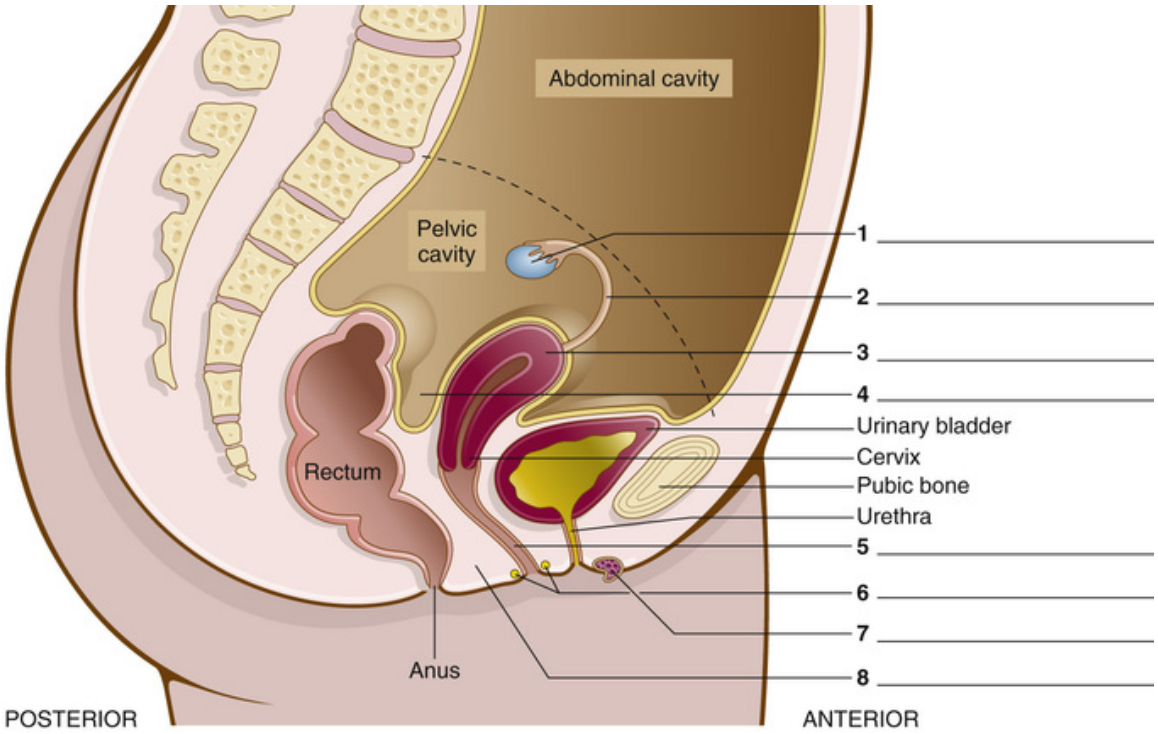


FIGURE 8-1 Organs of the female reproductive system, lateral view.

Figure 8-1 shows a side view of the female reproductive organs and their relationship to other organs in the pelvic cavity. The **ovaries** [1] (only one ovary is shown in this lateral view) are a pair of small almond-shaped organs located in the pelvis. The **fallopian tubes** [2] (only one is shown in this view) lead from each ovary to the **uterus** [3], which is a fibromuscular organ situated between the urinary bladder and the rectum. The uterus normally is the size and shape of a pear and is about 3 to 4 inches long in a

nonpregnant woman. Midway between the uterus and the rectum is a region in the abdominal cavity known as the **cul-de-sac** [4].

The **vagina** [5], a tubular structure, extends from the uterus to the exterior of the body. **Bartholin glands** [6] are two small, rounded glands on either side of the vaginal orifice. These glands produce a mucous secretion that lubricates the vagina. The **clitoris** [7] is an organ of sensitive, erectile tissue located anterior to the vaginal orifice (opening) and in front of the urethral orifice. The region between the vaginal orifice and the anus is the **perineum** [8].

The external genitalia of the female are collectively called the **vulva.** Figure 8-2 shows the various structures that are part of the vulva. The **labia majora,** the outer lips of the vagina, surround the smaller, inner lips, the **labia minora.** The **hymen,** a thin membrane partially covering the entrance to the vagina, is broken apart during the first episode of intercourse. The clitoris and Bartholin glands also are parts of the vulva.

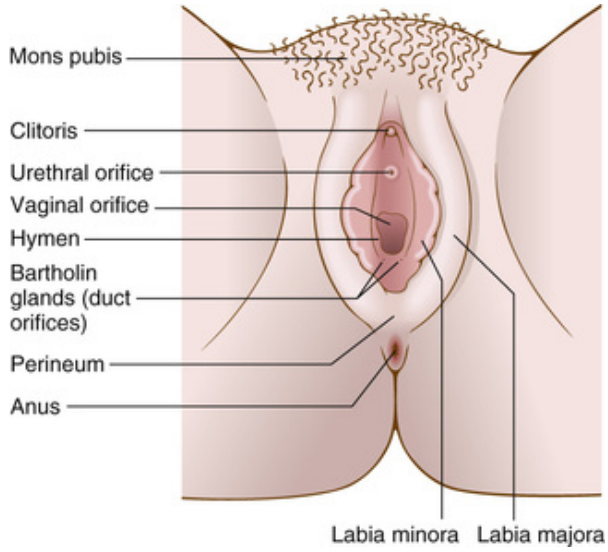


FIGURE 8-2 Female external genitalia (vulva). The mons pubis (Latin *mons*, mountain) is a pad of tissue overlying the pubic symphysis. After puberty it is covered with pubic hair.

Figure 8-3 shows an anterior view of the female reproductive system. Each **ovary** [1] is held in place on either side of the uterus by a **utero-ovarian ligament** [2].

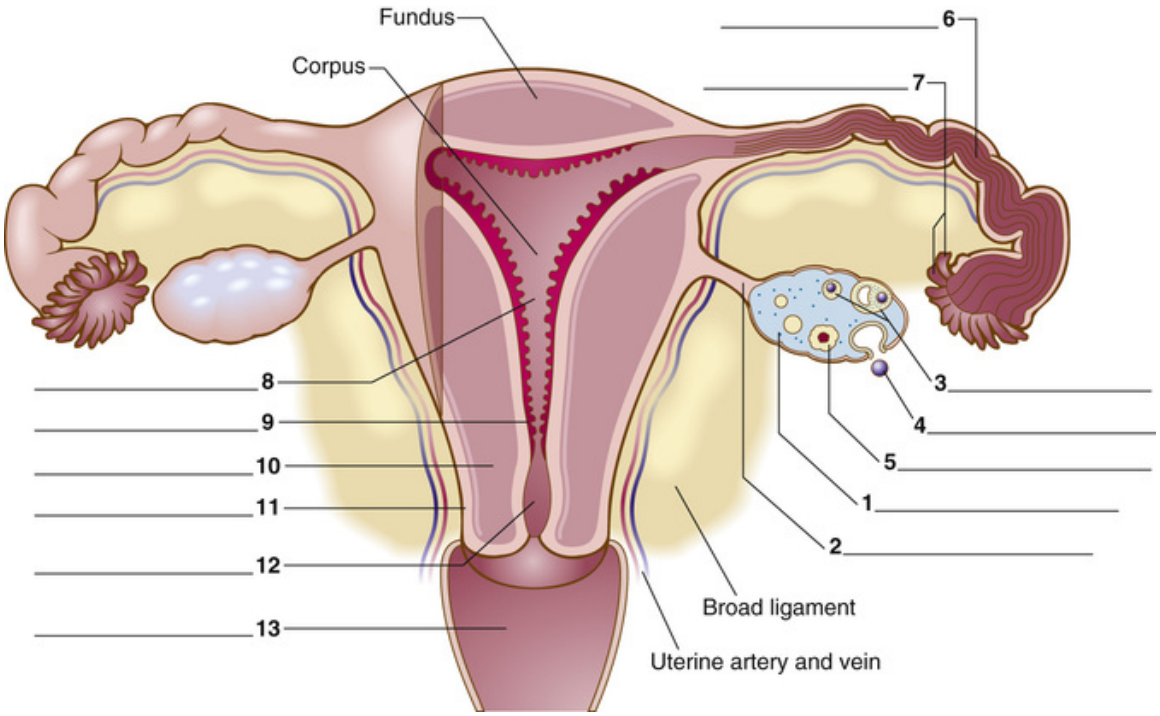


FIGURE 8-3 Organs of the female reproductive system, anterior view.

Within each ovary are thousands of small sacs—the **ovarian follicles** [3]. Each follicle contains an **ovum** [4]. During **ovulation**, an ovum matures; its follicle ruptures through the surface and releases the ovum from the ovary. A ruptured follicle fills with a yellow, fat-like material. It is then called the **corpus luteum** [5], meaning yellow body. The corpus luteum secretes hormones (both estrogen and progesterone) that maintain the very first stages of pregnancy.

A **fallopian tube** [6] is about $5\frac{1}{2}$ inches long and lies near each ovary. Collectively, the fallopian tubes, ovaries, and supporting ligaments are the **adnexa** (accessory structures) of the uterus. The finger-like ends of the fallopian tube are the **fimbriae** [7]. They catch the egg after its release from the ovary. **Cilia** (small hairs) line the fallopian tube and, through their motion, sweep the ovum toward the uterus. It usually takes the ovum about 2 to 3 days to pass through the fallopian tube.

If sperm cells are present in the fallopian tube, fertilization may occur (Figure 8-4). If sperm cells are not present, the ovum remains unfertilized and eventually disintegrates.

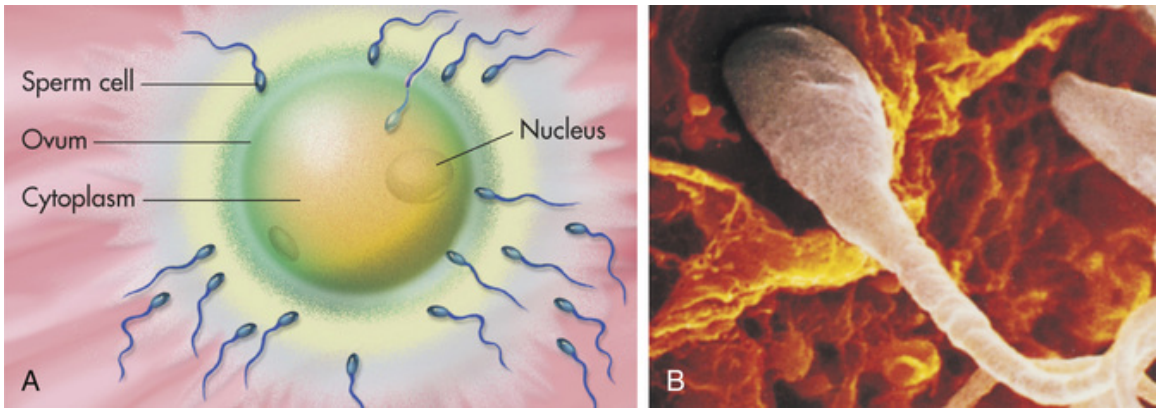


FIGURE 8-4 **Fertilization. A,** Once a single sperm cell has penetrated the ovum, others are prevented from entering. **B,** Electromicrograph showing a sperm cell penetrating an ovum.

The fallopian tubes, one on each side, lead into the **uterus** [8], a pear-shaped organ with muscular walls and a mucous membrane lining filled with a rich supply of blood vessels. The rounded upper portion of the uterus is the **fundus,** and the larger, central section is the **corpus** (body of the organ). The inner layer, a specialized epithelial mucosa of the uterus is the **endometrium** [9]; the middle, muscular layer of the uterine wall is the **myometrium** [10]; and the outer, membranous tissue layer is the **perimetrium (uterine serosa)** [11], a lining that produces a watery, serum-like secretion. The outermost layer of an organ in the abdomen or thorax is also known as a serosa.

The narrow, lowermost portion of the uterus is the **cervix** [12] (Latin *cervix* means neck). The cervical opening leads into a 3-inch-long muscular, mucosa-lined canal called the **vagina** [13], which opens to the outside of the body.

The Breast (Accessory Organ of Reproduction)

Label Figure 8-5 as you read the following description of breast structures.

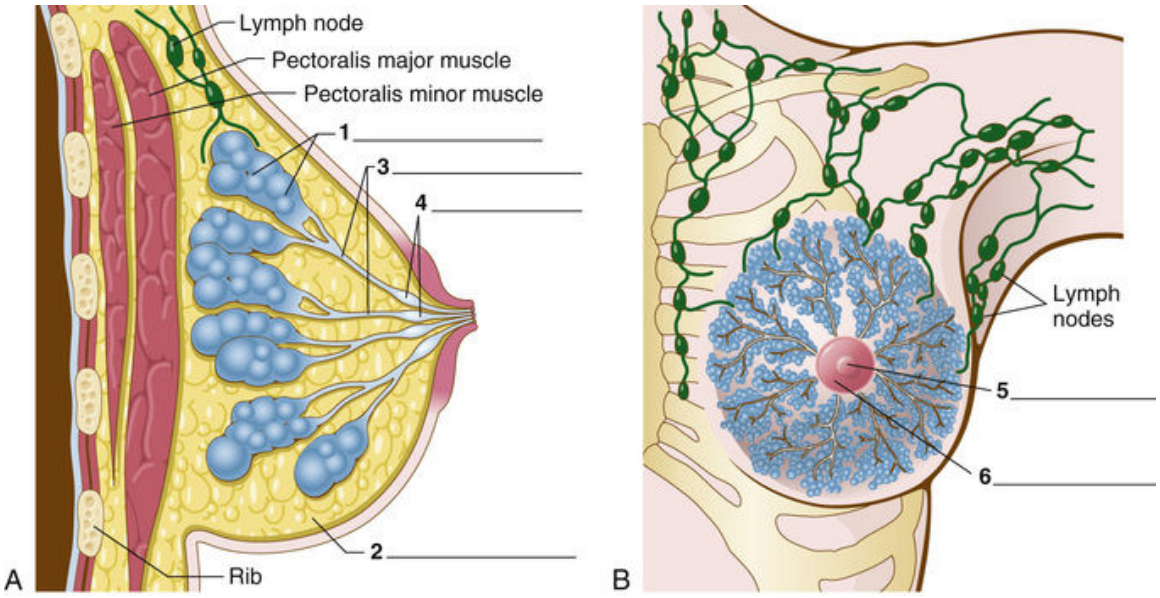


FIGURE 8-5 **Views of the breast. A,** Sagittal. **B,** Frontal. Notice the numerous lymph nodes.

The breasts, located on the upper anterior region of the chest, are composed mostly of **mammary glands.** The **glandular tissue** [1] contains milk glands that develop in response to hormones from the ovaries during puberty. The breasts also contain **fibrous** and **fatty tissue** [2], special **lactiferous** (milk-carrying) **ducts** [3], and **sinuses** (cavities) [4] that carry milk to the nipple, which has small openings for the ducts to release their milk. The breast nipple is the **mammary papilla** [5], and the dark pigmented area around the mammary papilla is the **areola** [6].

During pregnancy the hormones from the ovaries and the placenta stimulate glandular and other tissues in the breasts to their full development. After **parturition** (giving birth), hormones from the pituitary gland stimulate the normal secretion of milk **(lactation).**

Menstruation and Pregnancy

Menstrual Cycle (Figure 8-6)

Menarche, or onset of menstruation with the first menstrual cycle, occurs at the time of puberty. An average menstrual cycle lasts for 28 days but may be shorter or longer, and cycles may be irregular in length. These days can be divided into four time periods, useful in describing the events of the cycle. The approximate time periods are as follows:

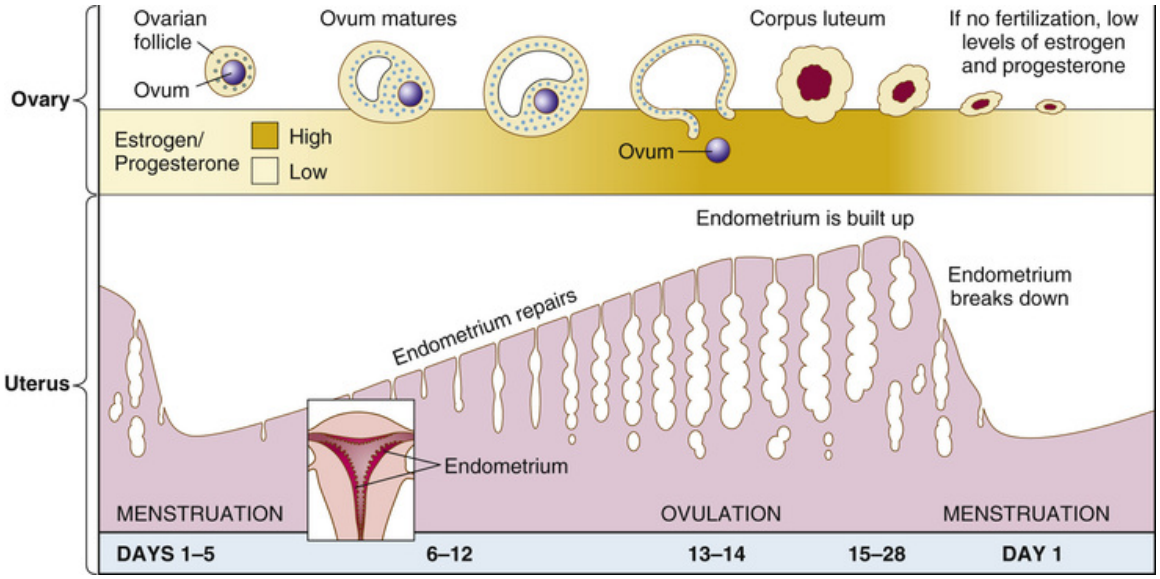


FIGURE 8-6 The menstrual cycle. *Tip*: Don't try to memorize this figure. Just get the big picture! In the **ovary,** as the ovum matures, hormone levels rise, culminating in ovulation (days 13 and 14). At the same time, in the **uterus,** the endometrium is building up in anticipation of pregnancy. If pregnancy does not occur, hormone levels drop and **menstruation** begins.

Days 1 to 5 (menstrual period)
Discharge of bloody fluid containing disintegrated endometrial cells, glandular secretions, and blood cells.

Days 6 to 12
After bleeding ceases, the endometrium begins to repair itself. The maturing follicle in the ovary releases **estrogen,** which aids in the repair. The ovum grows in the follicle during this period.

Days 13 and 14 (ovulatory period)
On about the 14th day of the cycle, the follicle ruptures and the egg leaves the ovary **(ovulation),** passing through the fallopian tube.

Days 15 to 28
The empty follicle that has just released the egg becomes a **corpus luteum** (Latin for yellow body because of its color). The corpus luteum functions as an endocrine organ, continuing to make estrogen and now secreting the hormone progesterone into the bloodstream. Progesterone stimulates the endometrial buildup in anticipation of fertilization of the egg and pregnancy.
If fertilization does *not* occur, the corpus luteum in the ovary stops producing progesterone and regresses. At this time, lowered levels

of progesterone and estrogen probably are responsible for some women's symptoms of depression, breast tenderness, and irritability before menstruation. The combination of these symptoms is known as **premenstrual syndrome (PMS).** After 2 days of decrease in hormones, the uterine endometrium breaks down, and the menstrual period begins (days 1 to 5).
Note: Cycles vary in length, ranging from 21 to 42 days or longer. Ovulation typically occurs 14 days before the end of the cycle. A woman with a 42-day cycle ovulates on day 28, whereas a woman with a 21-day cycle ovulates on day 7.

Pregnancy

If fertilization does occur in the fallopian tube, the fertilized egg travels to the uterus and implants in the uterine endometrium. The corpus luteum in the ovary continues to produce progesterone and estrogen. These hormones support the vascular and glandular development of the uterine lining.

The **placenta,** a vascular organ, now forms, attached to the uterine wall. The placenta is derived from maternal endometrium and from the **chorion,** the outermost membrane that surrounds the developing embryo. The **amnion,** the innermost of the embryonic membranes, holds the fetus suspended in an amniotic cavity surrounded by a fluid called the **amniotic fluid.** The amnion with its fluid also is known as the "bag of waters" or amniotic sac, which ruptures (breaks) during labor.

The maternal blood and the fetal blood never mix during pregnancy, but important nutrients, oxygen, and wastes are exchanged as the blood vessels of the fetus (coming from the umbilical cord) lie side by side with the mother's blood vessels in the placenta. Figure 8-7A and B shows implantation in the uterus and the embryo's relationship to the placenta and enveloping membranes (chorion and amnion).

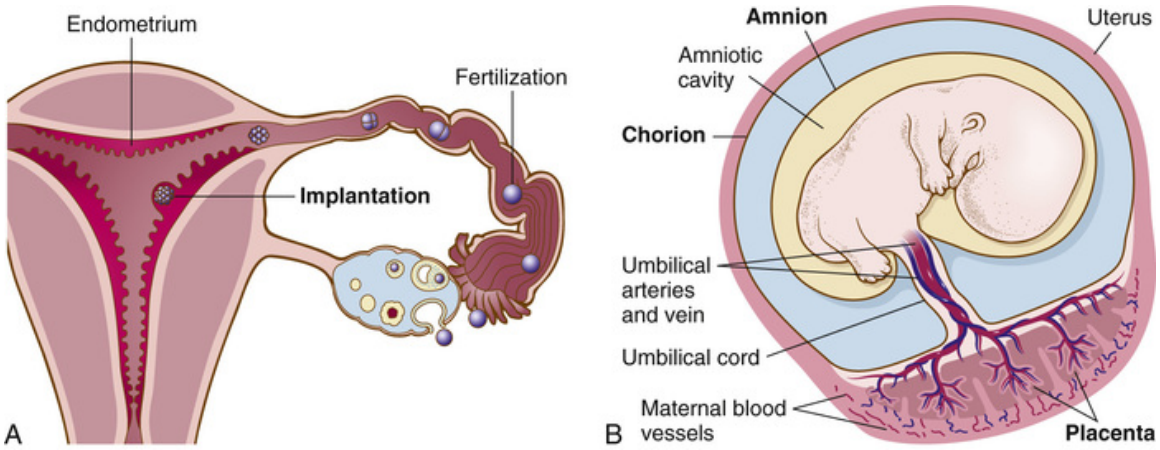


FIGURE 8-7 **A, Implantation of the embryo in the endometrium. B, The placenta, with chorion and amnion membranes.**

As the placenta develops, it produces its own hormone, **human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG).** When women test their urine with a **pregnancy test kit**, presence or absence of hCG confirms or rules out that they are pregnant. This hormone stimulates the corpus luteum to continue producing hormones until about the third month of pregnancy, when the placenta takes over the endocrine function and releases estrogen and progesterone. Progesterone maintains the development of the placenta. Low levels of progesterone can lead to spontaneous abortion in pregnant women and menstrual irregularities in nonpregnant women.

The uterus normally lies within the pelvis. During pregnancy the uterus expands as the fetus grows, and the superior part rises out of the pelvic cavity to become an abdominal organ. By about 28 to 30 weeks, it occupies a large part of the abdominopelvic cavity and reaches the epigastric region (Figure 8-8).

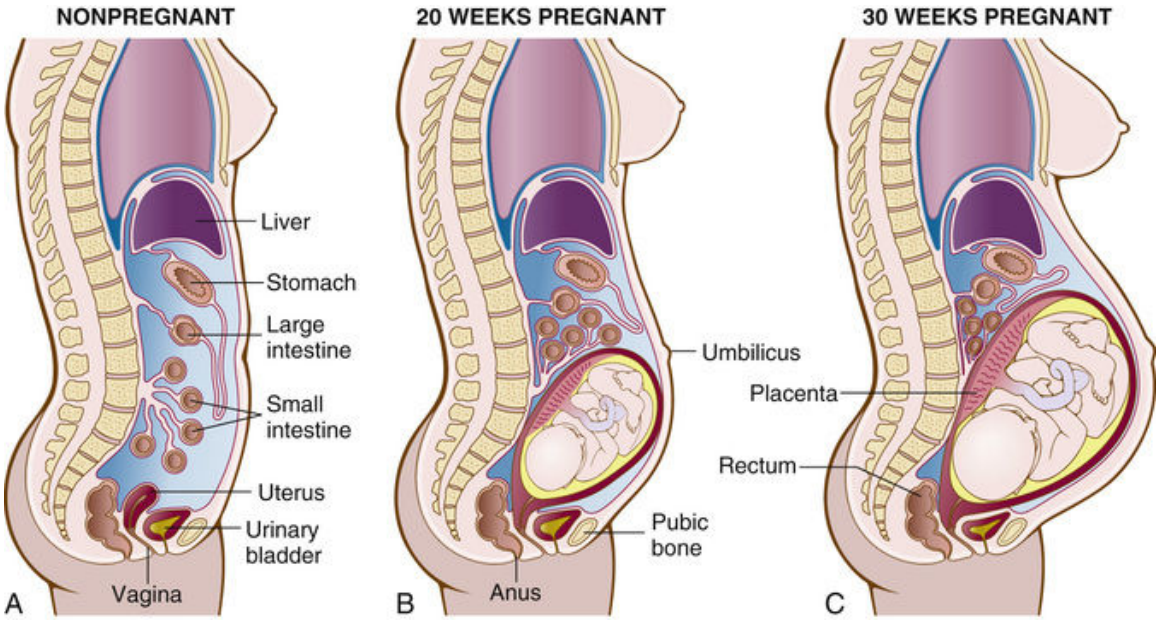


FIGURE 8-8 The growing uterus changes the pelvic anatomy during pregnancy, as shown here in sagittal section: **A,** nonpregnant woman, **B,** 20 weeks pregnant, **C,** 30 weeks pregnant.

The onset of true labor is marked by rhythmic contractions, dilation and thinning (effacement) of the cervix, and a discharge of bloody mucus from the cervix and vagina (the "show"). In a normal delivery position, the baby's head appears first (**cephalic presentation**). After vaginal delivery of the baby, the umbilical cord is cut and the placenta follows (Figure 8-9). Figure 8-10A and B shows photographs of a newborn and the placenta with attached cord, minutes after birth. The expelled placenta is the **afterbirth.**

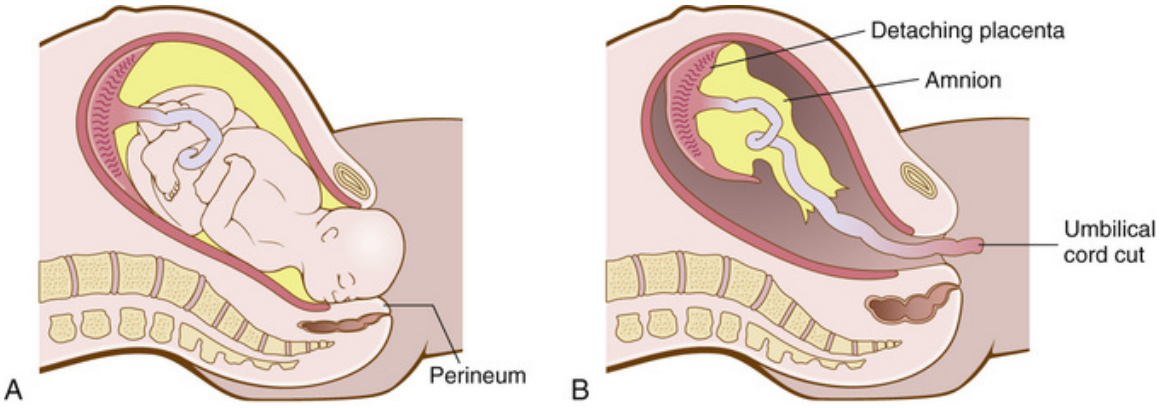


FIGURE 8-9 **A, Cephalic presentation** (“crowning”) of the fetus during delivery from the vaginal (birth) canal. **B,** Usually within 15 minutes after parturition (birth), the placenta separates from the uterine wall. Forceful contractions expel the placenta and attached membranes, now called the **afterbirth.** The three phases of labor are (1) dilation of the cervix, (2) expulsion or birth of the infant, and (3) delivery of the placenta.

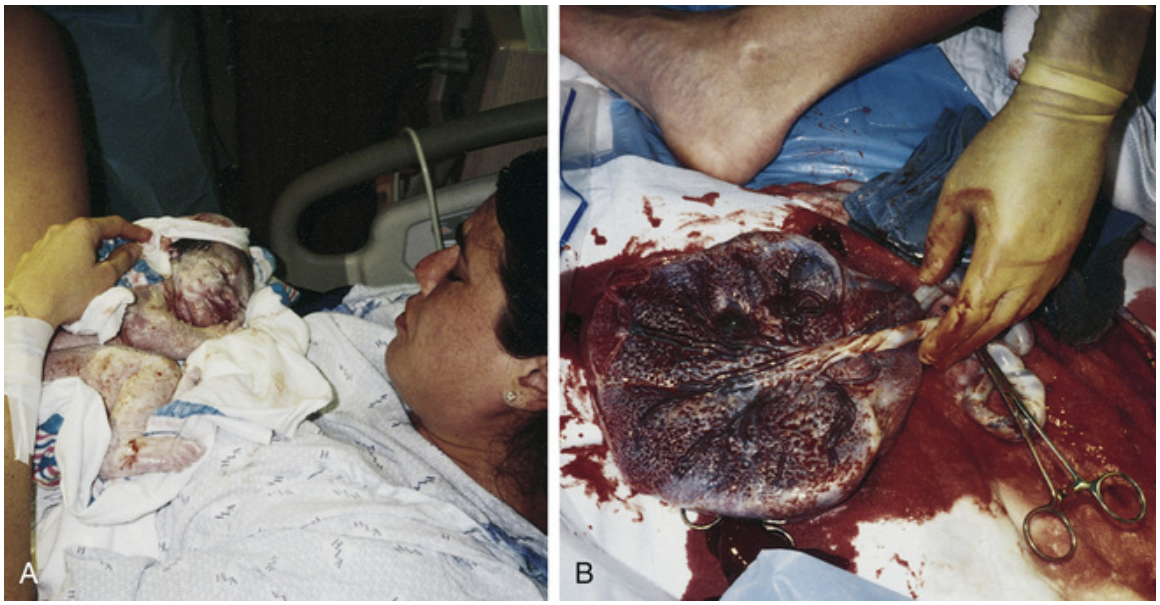


FIGURE 8-10 **A,** My newborn granddaughter, Beatrix Bess (Bebe) Thompson, and her mother, Dr. Elizabeth Chabner Thompson, minutes after Bebe's birth. Notice that Bebe's skin is covered with **vernix caseosa,** a mixture of a fatty secretion from fetal sebaceous (oil) glands and dead skin. The vernix protects the fetus's delicate skin from abrasions, chapping, and hardening as a result of being bathed in amniotic fluid. **B,** The **placenta and umbilical cord** just after expulsion from the uterus.

Hormonal Interactions

The events of menstruation and pregnancy depend on hormones not only from the ovaries (estrogen and progesterone) but also from the **pituitary gland.** The pituitary gland secretes **follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)** and **luteinizing hormone (LH)** after the onset of menstruation. As their levels rise in the bloodstream, FSH and LH stimulate maturation of the ovum and ovulation. The spike in LH levels is called the **LH surge.** This triggers ovulation and the development of the corpus luteum. The surge can last for a few hours or a few days, and ovulation usually occurs 24 hours after its onset. **Home ovulation kits** track LH levels in urine. After ovulation, LH influences the maintenance of the corpus luteum and its production of estrogen and progesterone.

During pregnancy, the high levels of estrogen and progesterone from the ovary and placenta cause the pituitary gland to stop producing FSH and LH. Therefore, while a woman is pregnant, additional eggs do not mature and ovulation cannot occur. Oral contraceptives (birth control pills) work in the same way.

Another female birth control method is an **IUD (intrauterine device).** A health care professional inserts the IUD, a small device designed to remain inside the uterus. It works by preventing implantation of the embryo. Birth control pills and an IUD do not protect a woman against sexually transmitted infections such as that caused by HIV. See page 274 for a table of contraceptive choices and their features.

How Do Birth Control Pills Work?

Birth control pills contain a combination of estrogen and progesterone or progesterone only. When taken as directed, they increase the levels of these hormones in the woman's bloodstream. High levels of estrogen and progesterone send a signal to the pituitary gland to shut down its secretion of follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH) and luteinizing hormone (LH). When these hormones are blocked, the ovaries will not release eggs, and pregnancy cannot occur. During pregnancy, levels of estrogen and progesterone also are high—and the ovaries will not release eggs then either! So birth control pills effectively fool the body into "thinking" that the woman is pregnant, and her ovaries stop producing eggs.

When all of the ova are released and secretion of estrogen from the ovaries lessens, **menopause** begins. Menopause signals the gradual ending of menstrual cycles. Premature menopause occurs before age 40, whereas delayed menopause occurs after age 55. Artificial menopause occurs if the ovaries are removed by surgery or made nonfunctional as a result of radiation therapy or some forms of chemotherapy.

During menopause, when estrogen levels fall, the most common signs and symptoms are hot flashes (temperature regulation in the brain is disturbed), insomnia, and vaginal atrophy (lining of the vagina dries and thins, predisposing the affected woman to irritation and discomfort during sexual intercourse). **Hormone replacement therapy (HRT),** given orally or as a transdermal patch or vaginal ring, relieves these symptoms of menopause and delays the development of weak bones (osteoporosis). HRT use may be associated with an increased risk of breast cancer,

endometrial cancer, stroke, or heart attack. This therapy should be used only after careful consideration of potential risks and benefits.

Table 8-1 reviews the various female hormones, including the sites where they are produced, their target organs, and their effect on the body.

TABLE 8-1
FEMALE HORMONES

HORMONE	PRODUCTION SITE(S)	TARGET ORGAN	EFFECT
FSH	Pituitary gland	Ovary	Stimulates maturation of the ovum
LH	Pituitary gland	Ovary	Stimulates ovulation
Estrogen	Ovary Placenta (during pregnancy)	Uterus	Builds up the endometrial lining
Progesterone	Ovary (corpus luteum) Placenta (during pregnancy)	Uterus	Sustains uterine lining and placenta during pregnancy
hCG	Placenta	Ovary (corpus luteum)	Sustains pregnancy

FSH, follicle-stimulating hormone; hCG, human chorionic gonadotropin; LH, luteinizing hormone.

Vocabulary

The following list reviews many of the new terms introduced in the text. Short definitions reinforce your understanding of the terms.

adnexa uteri	Fallopian tubes, ovaries, and supporting ligaments.
amnion	Innermost membrane surrounding the embryo and fetus.
areola	Dark-pigmented area surrounding the breast nipple.
Bartholin glands	Small mucus-secreting exocrine glands at the vaginal orifice (opening to outside of the body). Caspar Bartholin was a Danish anatomist who described the glands in 1637.
cervix	Lower, neck-like portion of the uterus.
chorion	Outermost membrane surrounding the embryo and fetus; it forms the fetal part of the placenta.
clitoris	Organ of sensitive erectile tissue anterior to the opening of the female urethra.
coitus	Sexual intercourse; copulation. Pronunciation is KO-ih-tus.
corpus luteum	Empty ovarian follicle that secretes progesterone after release of the egg cell; literally means yellow (luteum) body (corpus).
cul-de-sac	Region in the lower abdomen, midway between the rectum and the uterus.
embryo	Stage in prenatal development from 2 to 8 weeks.
endometrium	Inner, mucous membrane lining of the uterus.
estrogen	Hormone produced by the ovaries; promotes female secondary sex characteristics.
fallopian tube	One of a pair of ducts through which the ovum travels to the uterus; also called an **oviduct.** The tubes were named for Gabriello Fallopia, an Italian anatomist.
fertilization	Union of the sperm and ovum from which the embryo develops.
fetus	Stage in prenatal development from 8 weeks to birth.
fimbriae (*singular*: fimbria)	Finger- or fringe-like projections at the end of the fallopian tubes.
follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)	Secreted by the pituitary gland to stimulate maturation of the egg cell (ovum).
gamete	Male or female sexual reproductive cell; sperm cell or ovum.
genitalia	Reproductive organs; also called genitals.
gestation	Time period from fertilization of the ovum to birth;

	pregnancy.
gonad	Female or male reproductive organ that produces sex cells and hormones; ovary or testis.
gynecology	Study of the female reproductive organs, including the breasts.
human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG)	Hormone produced by the placenta to sustain pregnancy by stimulating (-tropin) the ovaries to produce estrogen and progesterone.
hymen	Mucous membrane partially or completely covering the opening to the vagina.
labia	Lips of the vagina; labia majora are the larger, outermost lips, and labia minora are the smaller, innermost lips.
lactiferous ducts	Tubes that carry milk from the mammary glands to the nipple.
luteinizing hormone (LH)	Secreted by the pituitary gland to promote ovulation.
mammary papilla	Nipple of the breast. A **papilla** is any small nipple-shaped projection.
menarche	Beginning of the first menstrual period and ability to reproduce.
menopause	Gradual ending of menstruation.
menstruation	Monthly shedding of the uterine lining. The flow of blood and tissue normally discharged during menstruation is called the **menses** (Latin *mensis* means month).
myometrium	Muscle layer of the uterus.
neonatology	Study of the medical care of the newborn (neonate).
obstetrics	Branch of medicine and surgery concerned with pregnancy and childbirth.
orifice	An opening.
ovarian follicle	Developing sac enclosing each ovum within the ovary. Only about 400 of these sacs mature in a woman's lifetime.
ovary	One of a pair of female organs (gonads) on each side of the pelvis. Ovaries are almond-shaped, about the size of large walnuts, and produce egg cells (ova) and hormones.
ovulation	Release of the ovum from the ovary.
ovum (*plural:*	Mature egg cell (female gamete). Ova develop from

ova)	immature egg cells called oocytes.
parturition	Act of giving birth.
perimetrium	Outermost layer of the uterus; uterine serosa.
perineum	In females, the area between the anus and the vagina.
pituitary gland	Endocrine gland at the base of the brain. It produces hormones that stimulate the ovaries. The pituitary gland also regulates other endocrine organs.
placenta	Vascular organ attached to the uterine wall during pregnancy. It permits the exchange of oxygen, nutrients, and fetal waste products between mother and fetus.
pregnancy	Gestation.
progesterone	Hormone produced by the corpus luteum in the ovary and the placenta of pregnant women.
puberty	Period of adolescent development at which secondary sex characteristics appear and gametes are produced.
uterus	Hollow, pear-shaped muscular female organ in which the embryo and fetus develop, and from which menstruation occurs. The upper portion is the fundus; the middle portion is the corpus; and the lowermost, neck-like portion is the cervix (see Figure 8-3, page 244).
vagina	Muscular, mucosa-lined canal extending from the uterus to the exterior of the body.
vulva	External female genitalia; includes the labia, hymen, clitoris, and vaginal orifice.
zygote	Stage in prenatal development from fertilization and implantation up to 2 weeks.

Terminology

Write the meanings of the medical terms in the spaces provided.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
amni/o	amnion	amniocentesis _____ amniotic fluid _____ *Produced by fetal membranes and the fetus.*
bartholin/o	Bartholin gland	bartholinitis _____ *A Bartholin cyst is a fluid-filled sac caused by blockage of a duct from the Bartholin gland. If bacterial infection occurs, an abscess may form.*
cervic/o	cervix, neck	endocervicitis _____
chori/o, chorion/o	chorion	chorionic _____
colp/o	vagina	colposcopy _____
culd/o	cul-de-sac	culdocentesis _____ *A needle is placed through the posterior wall of the vagina and fluid is withdrawn for diagnostic purposes.*
episi/o	vulva	episiotomy _____ *An incision through the skin of the perineum enlarges the vaginal orifice for delivery. The incision is repaired by* ***perineorrhaphy.***
galact/o	milk	galactorrhea _____ *Abnormal, persistent discharge of milk, commonly seen with pituitary gland tumors.*
gynec/o	woman, female	gynecomastia _____ *Enlargement of breasts in a male. It often occurs with puberty or aging, or the condition can be drug-related.*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
hyster/o	uterus, womb	hysterectomy _____ ***Total abdominal hysterectomy (TAH)*** *is removal of the entire uterus (including the cervix) through an abdominal incision (Figure 8-11).* ***Vaginal hysterectomy (VH)*** *is removal through the vagina.* ***Laparoscopic supracervical hysterectomy*** *(see Figure 8-11) is a partial hysterectomy that preserves the cervix.* hysteroscopy _____ *A gynecologist uses an endoscope (passed through the vagina and cervix) to view the uterine cavity.*	
lact/o	milk	lactation _____ *The normal secretion of milk.*	
mamm/o	breast	inframammary _____ *Infra- means below.* mammoplasty _____ *Includes reduction and augmentation (enlargement) operations.*	
mast/o	breast	mastitis _____ *Usually caused by streptococcal or staphylococcal infection.* mastectomy _____ *Mastectomy procedures are discussed under breast cancer (see page 262).*	

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
men/o	menses, menstruation	amenorrhea _____ *Absence of menses for 6 months or for more than three of the patient's normal menstrual cycles.* dysmenorrhea _____ oligomenorrhea _____ *Infrequent menstrual periods or scanty menses.* menorrhagia _____ *Abnormally heavy or long menstrual periods.* ***Fibroids*** *(see page 260) are a leading cause of menorrhagia.*	
metr/o, metri/o	uterus	metrorrhagia _____ *Bleeding between menses. Possible causes of metrorrhagia include ectopic pregnancy, cervical polyps, and ovarian and uterine tumors.* menometrorrhagia _____ *Excessive uterine bleeding during and between menstrual periods.*	
my/o, myom/o	muscle, muscle tumor	myometrium _____ myomectomy _____ *Removal of fibroids (myomas) from the uterus.*	
nat/i	birth	neonatal _____	
obstetr/o	pregnancy and childbirth	obstetrics _____ *From the Latin* obstetrix, *midwife.*	

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
o/o	egg	oogenesis _____ oocyte _____ *Immature ovum.*
oophor/o	ovary	oophorectomy _____ *Oophor/o means to bear (phor/o) eggs (o/o). In a bilateral oophorectomy, both ovaries are removed.*
ov/o	egg	ovum _____ *Mature egg cell.*
ovari/o	ovary	ovarian _____
ovul/o	egg	anovulatory _____
perine/o	perineum	perineorrhaphy _____
phor/o	to bear	oophoritis _____
salping/o	fallopian tubes	salpingectomy _____ *Figure 8-12 shows a total hysterectomy with bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy (BSO).*
uter/o	uterus	uterine prolapse _____
vagin/o	vagina	vaginal orifice _____ *An orifice is an opening.* vaginitis _____ *Bacteria and yeasts (usually* Candida*) commonly cause this infection. Use of antibiotic therapy may cause loss of normal vaginal bacteria, resulting in an environment allowing yeast to grow.*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
vulv/o	vulva	vulvovaginitis _____ vulvodynia _____	*Chronic pain (with no identifiable cause) that affects the vulvar area (labia, clitoris, and vaginal opening).*

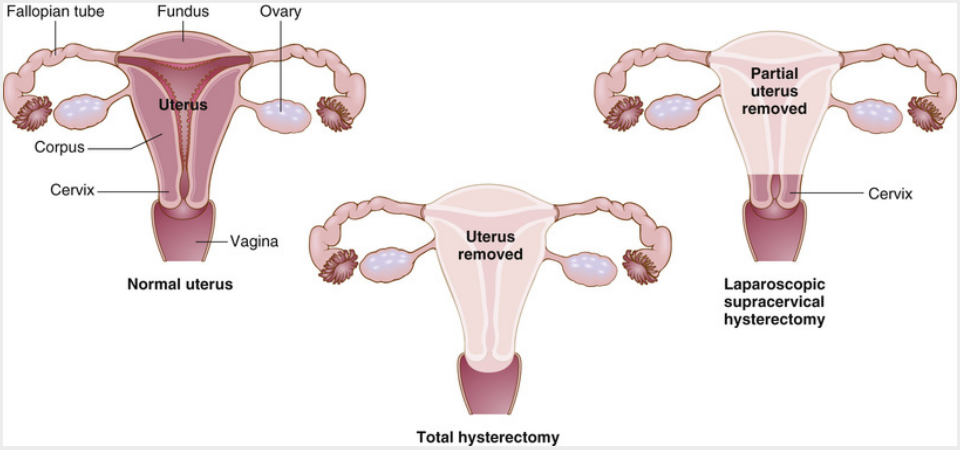


FIGURE 8-11 Normal uterus and hysterectomies. Total hysterectomy is removal of the entire uterus—fundus, corpus, and cervix. This may be performed via an abdominal incision or vaginally. **Laparoscopic supracervical hysterectomy** is removal of the top portion of the uterus (above the cervix), leaving the cervix intact. Three to five small incisions are made in the abdomen and the uterus is removed via laparoscope. **Robotic hysterectomy (da Vinci surgery)** is another option using small incisions, three-dimensional vision, and a magnified view of the surgical site.

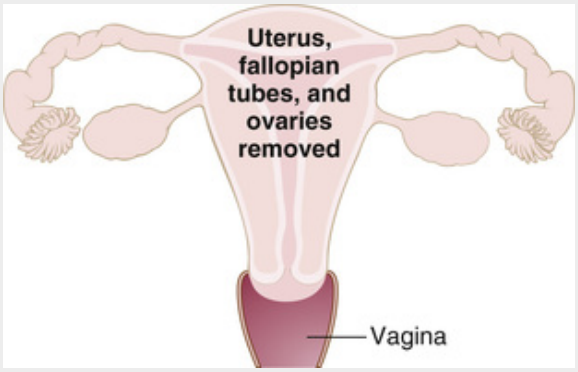


FIGURE 8-12 Total hysterectomy with bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy.

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-arche	beginning	men<u>arche</u> _____	
-cyesis	pregnancy	pseudo<u>cyesis</u> _____ *Pseudo- means false. No pregnancy exists, but physical changes such as weight gain and amenorrhea occur.*	
-gravida	pregnant	primi<u>gravida</u> _____ *A woman during her first pregnancy (primi- means first). Gravida also is used to designate a pregnant woman, often followed by a number to indicate the number of pregnancies (gravida 1, 2, 3).*	
-parous	bearing, bringing forth	primi<u>parous</u> _____ *An adjective describing a woman who has given birth to at least one child.* ***Para*** *also is used as a noun, often followed by a number to indicate the number of deliveries after the 20th week of gestation (para 1, para 2, para 3). When a woman arrives in the birthing facility, her gravidity and parity are important facts to include in the medical and surgical history. For example, G2P2 is medical shorthand for a woman who has had 2 pregnancies and 2 deliveries.*	
-rrhea	discharge	leuko<u>rrhea</u> _____ *This vaginal discharge is normal or becomes more yellow (purulent or pus-containing) as a sign of infection.* meno<u>rrhea</u> _____	
-salpinx	fallopian (uterine) tube	pyo<u>salpinx</u> _____	

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-tocia	labor, birth	dystocia _____ oxytocia _____ *Oxy- means sharp or quick. The pituitary gland releases **oxytocin,** which stimulates the pregnant uterus to contract (labor begins). It also stimulates milk secretion from mammary glands.*	
-version	act of turning	cephalic version _____ *The fetus turns so that the head is the body part closest to the cervix (version can occur spontaneously or can be performed by the obstetrician). **Fetal presentation** is the manner in which the fetus appears to the examiner during delivery. A **breech presentation** is buttocks first, or feet first in a footling breech; a **cephalic presentation** is head first.*	

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
dys-	painful	dyspareunia _____ (dis-pah-RU-ne-ah) *Pareunia means sexual intercourse.*	
endo-	within	endometritis _____ *Usually caused by a bacterial infection.*	
in-	in	involution of the uterus _____ *Vol- means to roll. The uterus returns to its normal nonpregnant size.*	
intra-	within	intrauterine device _____ *Figure 8-13A shows an IUD.*	
multi-	many	multipara _____ multigravida _____ *A woman who has been pregnant more than once.*	
nulli-	no, not, none	nulligravida _____ nullipara _____ *Para 0. Figure 8-13B shows the cervix of a nulliparous woman and the cervix of a parous woman (who has had a vaginal delivery).*	
pre-	before	prenatal _____	
primi-	first	primipara _____	
retro-	backward	retroversion _____ *The uterus is abnormally tilted backward. This occurs in 30% of women.*	

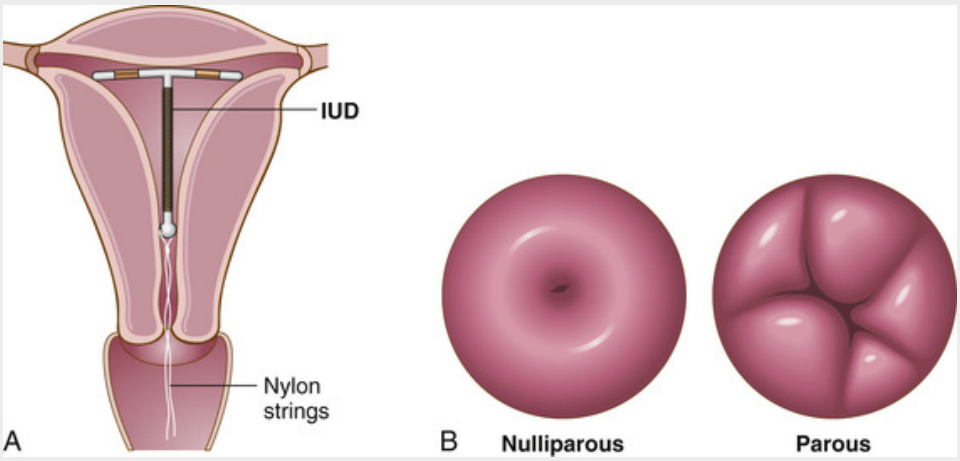


FIGURE 8-13 **A, Intrauterine device (IUD)** in place to prevent implantation of a fertilized egg. **B,** The cervix of a **nulliparous** woman (the os, or opening, is small and perfectly round) and the cervix of a **parous** woman (the os is wide and irregular). These views would be visible under **colposcopic examination**.

Pathology: Gynecologic, Breast, Pregnancy, and Neonatal

Gynecologic

Uterus

Cervical cancer (carcinoma of the cervix)	**Malignant cells within the cervix.** **Human papillomavirus (HPV)** is the cause and risk factor for developing cancer. Other factors that may act together with HPV to increase the risk of developing cervical cancer include cigarette smoking, having multiple sexual partners, and having a weakened immune system (e.g., patients with AIDS). Human papillomavirus is the most widespread sexually transmitted infection in the world. In countries with high rates of HPV infection, cervical cancer may become the most common cancer in adult women. There are over 200 types of HPV. Some cause **genital warts** (benign growths on the vulva, cervix, vagina, or anus), whereas others can cause cancer, most commonly of the cervix, vagina, vulva, anus, penis, or head and heck. Most HPV infections are cleared by a person's immune system. A persistent infection may lead to precancerous changes called **cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN).** See Figure 8-14 showing CIN progression. CIN is also known as cervical **dysplasia** (abnormal cell growth). **Carcinoma in situ (CIS)** is considered an early, localized, precancerous form of cervical cancer and local resection **(conization)** of CIS may be necessary to prevent development of invasive cancer. Figure 8-15 shows a normal cervix and one with cervical cancer. Surgical treatment for cervical cancer requires **radical hysterectomy,** in which the entire uterus with ligaments, supportive tissues, and the top one third of the vagina are removed. Radiation therapy and chemotherapy with cisplatin are used to treat disease that has spread beyond the cervix, into neighboring pelvic tissues, and to distant organs. Brachytherapy (radioactive seeds implanted into the cervix) may also be an effective treatment.

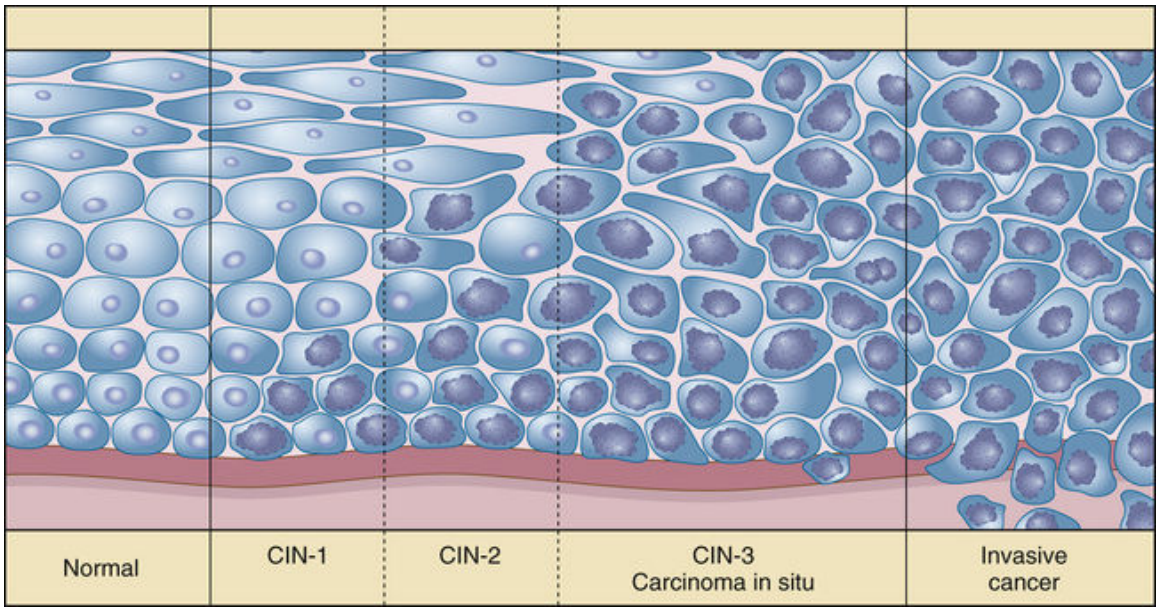


FIGURE 8-14 Precancerous neoplastic lesions are called **cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN).** Pathologists diagnose such lesions from a **Pap test** (microscopic examination of cells scraped from cervical epithelium) and grade them as CIN-1 to CIN-3. Cervical carcinoma in situ (CIS) is equivalent to CIN-3. These are precancerous lesions that have not yet invaded the substance of the cervix.

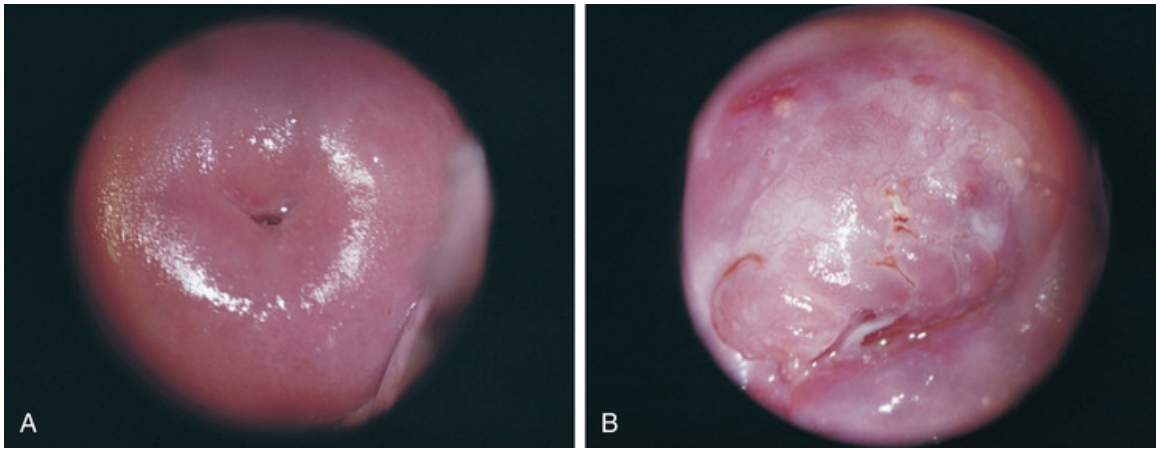


FIGURE 8-15 **Normal cervix** (**A**) and **cervix with cervical cancer** (**B**) as seen on **colposcopy.**

HPV Vaccine

HPV vaccines are given in a series of three shots over 6 months to protect females and males against HPV infections. Girls can get this vaccine to prevent cervical cancer, vulvar and vaginal cancer, and genital warts. Boys get the vaccine to prevent anal cancer and genital warts. The names of these vaccines are Cervarix, Gardasil, and Gardasil 9.

cervicitis	**Inflammation of the cervix.** Bacteria such as *Chlamydia trachomatis* and *Neisseria gonorrhoeae* commonly cause cervicitis. In acute cervicitis, the cervix is reddened and can have an exudate (discharge) or even ulcerations. After the presence of malignancy has been excluded (by Pap test or biopsy), **cryocauterization** (destroying tissue by freezing) of the diseased area and treatment with antibiotics may be indicated.
endometrial cancer (carcinoma of the endometrium)	**Malignant tumor of the uterine lining (adenocarcinoma).** The most common sign of endometrial cancer is postmenopausal bleeding. This malignancy occurs more often in women exposed to high levels of estrogen, either from estrogen replacement therapy, estrogen-producing tumors, or obesity (estrogen is produced by fat tissue). Physicians perform endometrial biopsy, hysteroscopy, and **dilation** (widening the cervical canal) and **curettage** (scraping the inner lining of the uterus) for diagnosis. When the cancer is confined to the uterus, surgery (hysterectomy and bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy) is curative. Radiation oncologists administer radiation therapy as additional treatment.
endometriosis	**Endometrial tissue located outside the uterus.** In endometriosis, endometrial tissue may be found in ovaries, fallopian tubes, supporting ligaments, or small intestine, causing inflammation and scar tissue. When the endometrium sheds and bleeds in its monthly cycle, it may cause dysmenorrhea or pelvic pain. Infertility (inability to become pregnant) and dyspareunia may also occur. Most cases are the result of growth of bits of menstrual endometrium that have passed backward through the **lumen** (opening) of the fallopian tube and into the peritoneal cavity. When endometriosis affects the ovaries, large cysts filled with menstrual blood ("**chocolate cysts**") develop. Symptoms may not correlate with the amount of the endometriosis. Women may have extensive disease but no

	symptoms, while others may have minimal endometriosis but severe symptoms. Treatment ranges from symptomatic relief of pain and hormonal drugs that suppress the menstrual cycle to surgical removal of ectopic endometrial tissue and hysterectomy.
fibroids	**Benign tumors in the uterus.** Fibroids, also called **leiomyomata** or **leiomyomas** (lei/o = smooth, my/o = muscle, and -oma = tumor), are composed of fibrous tissue and muscle. If fibroids grow and cause symptoms such as metrorrhagia (irregular periods), pelvic pain, or menorrhagia, (heavy periods), either a myomectomy or hysterectomy is indicated. Fibroid ablation (destruction) without surgery may be accomplished by **uterine artery embolization (UAE),** in which tiny pellets (acting as emboli) are injected into a uterine artery, blocking the blood supply to fibroids, causing them to shrink. Figure 8-16A and B shows the location of uterine fibroids.

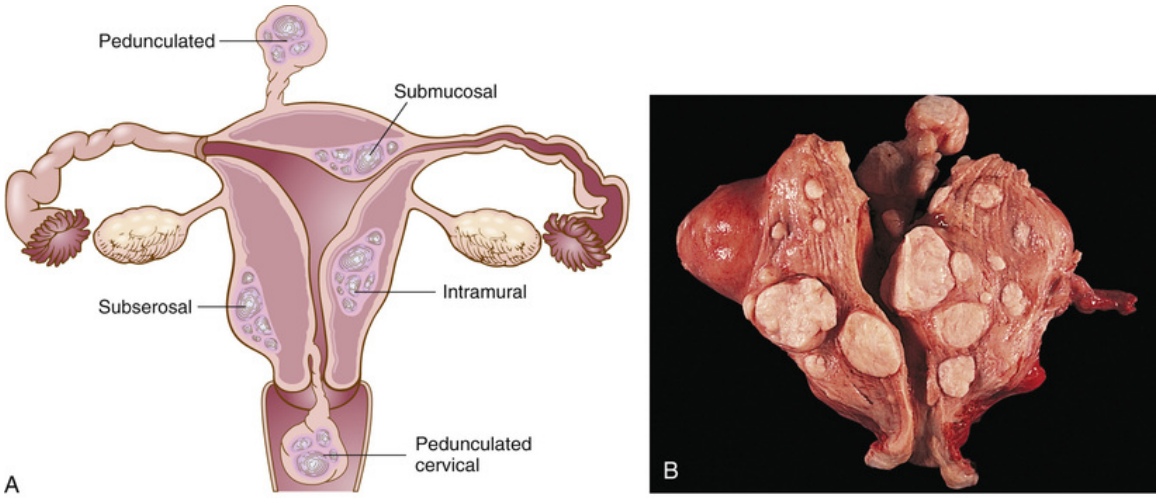


FIGURE 8-16 **A, Location of uterine fibroids (leiomyomas).** **Pedunculated** growths protrude on stalks. A **subserosal** mass lies under the serosal (outermost) layer of the uterus. A **submucosal** leiomyoma grows under the mucosal (innermost) layer. **Intramural** (mural means wall) masses arise within the muscular uterine wall. **B, Fibroids** shown after hysterectectomy.

Ovaries

ovarian cancer	**Malignant tumor of the ovary (adenocarcinoma).** Each year, about 22,000 women in the United States are diagnosed with ovarian cancer. Two types of ovarian cancer are most common: **serous** (clear fluid) and **mucinous** (thick, pasty fluid) **cystadenocarcinomas.** The tumor usually is discovered in an advanced stage as an abdominal mass and may produce few symptoms in its early stages. When the disease metastasizes beyond the ovary before diagnosis, **ascites** (accumulation of fluid in the abdominal cavity) is often present. Treatment consists of surgery to remove as much of the tumor as possible (tumor **debulking**). This may include hysterectomy, bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy, and removal of the omentum (fatty tissue that covers abdominal organs and often contains deposits of tumor). Surgery is followed by systemic drug therapy, which is dependent on the type of ovarian cancer. A protein marker produced by tumor cells, CA 125, can be measured in the bloodstream to assess effectiveness of treatment. Inherited mutations (changes) in genes greatly increase the risk of developing ovarian and breast cancer. These mutations are ***BRCA1*** and ***BRCA2*** (short for breast cancer 1 and breast cancer 2). Women with a strong family history of ovarian cancer (with multiple members of the family affected) may seek genetic counseling to determine if they should be tested for these inherited defects. **Prophylactic** (preventive) **oophorectomy** significantly reduces the odds of developing ovarian cancer if a woman is at high risk.
ovarian cysts	**Fluid-filled sacs within the ovary.** Some cysts are benign and lined with typical ovarian cells. These cysts originate in unruptured ovarian follicles (follicular cysts) or in follicles that have ruptured and have immediately been sealed (luteal cysts). Other cysts are malignant and lined with tumor cells (**cystadenocarcinomas**). Physicians decide to remove these cysts to distinguish between benign and malignant tumors. Other benign ovarian cysts are **dermoid cysts.** They contain a variety of cell types, including skin, hair, teeth, and cartilage, and arise from immature egg cells in the ovary. Because of the strange assortment of tissue types in the tumor (Figure 8-17), this tumor often is called a **benign**

	cystic teratoma (terat/o = monster) or a **mature teratoma.** Surgical removal of the cyst cures the condition.

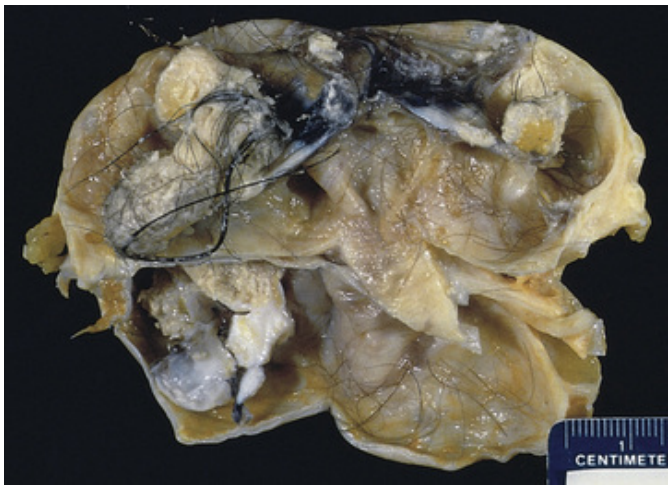


FIGURE 8-17 **Dermoid cyst of the ovary** with hair, skin, and teeth. (Courtesy Dr. Elizabeth Chabner Thompson.)

Fallopian Tubes

pelvic inflammatory disease (PID)	**Inflammation and infection of organs in the pelvis and abdomen; salpingitis, oophoritis, endometritis, endocervicitis.** PID is caused by **sexually transmitted infections.** Repetitive episodes of these infections lead to formation of adhesions and scarring within the fallopian tubes. After PID, women have an increased risk of ectopic pregnancy and infertility. Signs and symptoms include fever, vaginal discharge, abdominal pain in the left and right lower quadrants (LLQ and RLQ), and tenderness to **palpation** (examining by touch) of the cervix. Antibiotics treat PID.

Sexually Transmitted Infections (STIs)

Examples of bacterial and viral STIs in women are:

- **gonorrhea** (gonococcal bacteria)
- **chlamydia** (chlamydial bacteria)
- **syphilis** (spirochete bacteria)
- **genital herpes** (herpes simplex virus—HSV)
- **HPV infection and genital warts** (human papillomavirus)

More information on STIs in women and men is on page 302.

Breast

breast cancer	**Malignant tumor of the breast (arising from milk glands and ducts).** The most common type of breast cancer is **invasive ductal carcinoma (IDC).** Invasive means that the tumor has spread to surrounding breast tissue. Figure 8-18A shows the tumor on a mammogram. Figure 8-18B shows a cut section of an invasive ductal carcinoma. Other histopathologic (histo- means tissue) types are **lobular** and **medullary carcinoma** of the breast. **Ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS)** is non-invasive breast cancer. It starts in milk ducts and does not spread beyond its original location (in situ). DCIS can increase the risk of developing invasive breast cancer and is treated by lumpectomy. Breast cancer spreads first to lymph nodes in the axilla (armpit) nearest the affected breast and then to the skin and chest wall. From the lymph nodes it also may metastasize to other body organs, including bone, liver, lung, and brain. The diagnosis is first established by biopsy, either core needle aspiration or surgical removal of the specimen (solid mass or area of microcalcification). A **stereotactic core needle biopsy** is performed with the help of mammography for guidance. For small primary tumors, the lump with immediately surrounding tissue can be removed **(lumpectomy)**. To determine whether the tumor has spread to lymph nodes, a **sentinel node biopsy (SNB)** is performed. For this procedure, a blue dye or a radioisotope is injected into the tumor site and tracks to the axillary (underarm) lymph nodes. See Figure 8-19. After lumpectomy, radiation therapy to the breast and to any involved lymph nodes then follows, to kill remaining tumor cells. An alternative surgical procedure is **mastectomy** (Figure 8-20A), which is removal of the entire breast. After either lumpectomy or mastectomy if lymph nodes are involved, or if the primary tumor was large, **adjuvant** (aiding) chemotherapy is given to prevent recurrence of the tumor. Breast reconstruction is an option after mastectomy. See Figure 8-20B. In patients with large primary tumors, **neoadjuvant chemotherapy** (added

	prior to surgery) may be administered to reduce tumor bulk and allow for complete surgical removal of the tumor. After surgery, further treatment may be indicated to prevent recurrence. To determine which treatment is best, it is important to test the breast cancer tumor for the presence of **estrogen receptors (ERs).** Two thirds of breast cancers are ER-positive (ER+). These receptor proteins indicate that the tumor will respond to therapy that blocks the estrogen stimulation of estrogen. If metastases should subsequently develop, this information will be valuable in selecting further treatment. There are two types of drugs that block the effects of estrogen and thereby kill ER-positive breast cancer cells. Drugs of the first type directly block the ER reception. An example is **tamoxifen.** Drugs of the second type block the production of estrogen by inhibiting the enzyme aromatase. These **aromatase inhibitors** are particularly useful in treating postmenopausal women. Examples are anastrozole (Arimidex) and letrozole (Femara). A second receptor protein, **HER2,** is found in some breast cancers and signals a high risk of tumor recurrence. **Herceptin,** an antibody that binds to and blocks HER2, is effective in stopping growth when used with chemotherapy. A new drug, pertuzumab, also targets HER2 and, combined with Herceptin, is effective in treating HER2–positive advanced breast cancer. **Triple-negative tumors** lack estrogen, progesterone, and HER2 and are rapidly growing but respond well to chemotherapy. Testing for hereditary mutations ***BRCA1, BRCA2,*** and ***PALB2*** (partner and localizer of *BRCA1* and *BRCA2*) is advised for women with a strong family history of breast cancer. Some women who test positively for the breast cancer genes elect to have prophylactic (preventive) bilateral mastectomy with reconstruction to eliminate the risk of developing a new breast cancer. See the ***In Person: Prophylactic Mastectomy*** story on page 275.
fibrocystic	**Numerous small sacs of fluid surrounded by dense**

breast disease	**strands of fibrous tissue in the breast.** Women with this common benign condition notice a nodular (lumpy) consistency of the breast, often associated with premenstrual tenderness and fullness. Mammography and surgical biopsy are often indicated to differentiate fibrocystic changes from breast cancer.

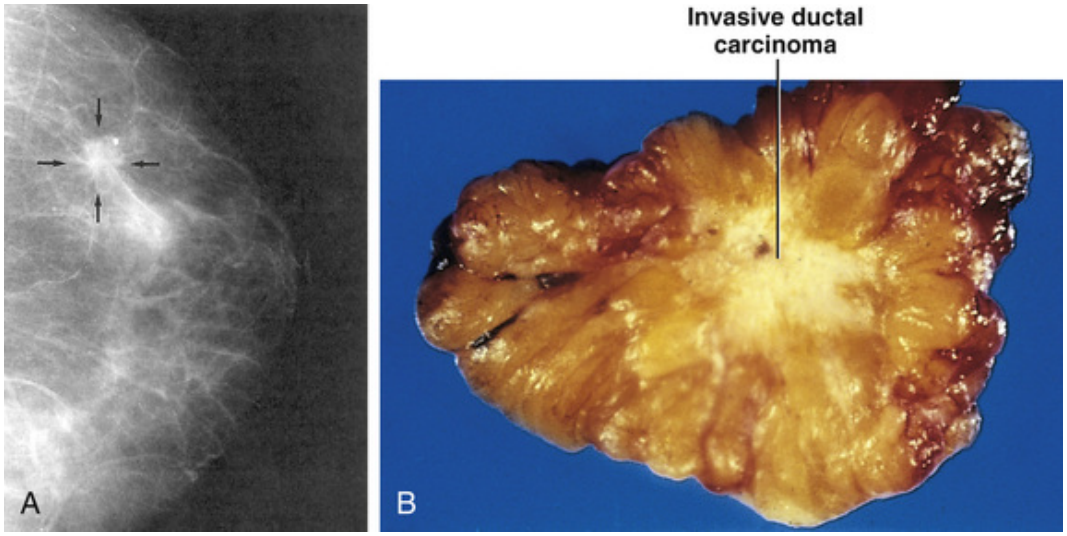


FIGURE 8-18 **A,** *Arrows* in **mammogram** point to invasive breast cancer. A dense white fragment of calcium is seen at 2 o'clock in the mass; calcifications like this frequently are a sign of cancer. **B,** Cut section of **invasive ductal carcinoma** of the breast.

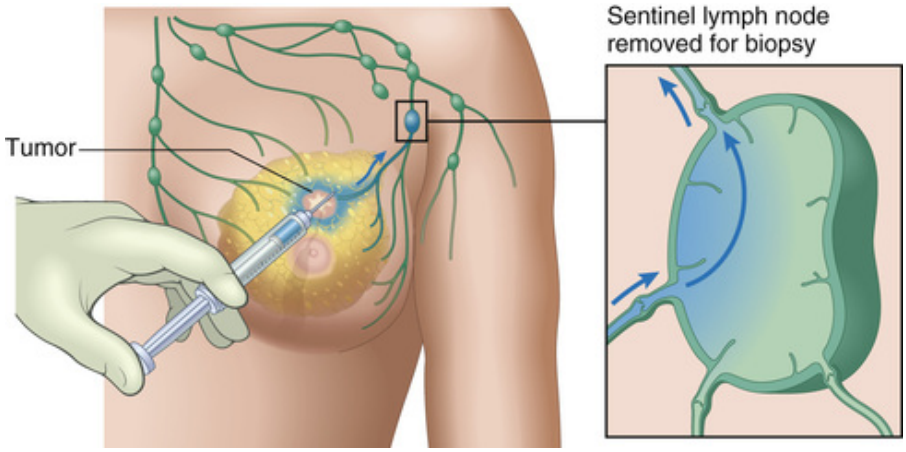


FIGURE 8-19 **Sentinel node biopsy.** After injection of dye or radioisotope, its path is visualized and the sentinel (first) lymph node is identified. It is the one most likely to contain a tumor if cells have left the breast. The sentinel node is removed and biopsied. If it is negative for tumor cells, the breast cancer has not spread.

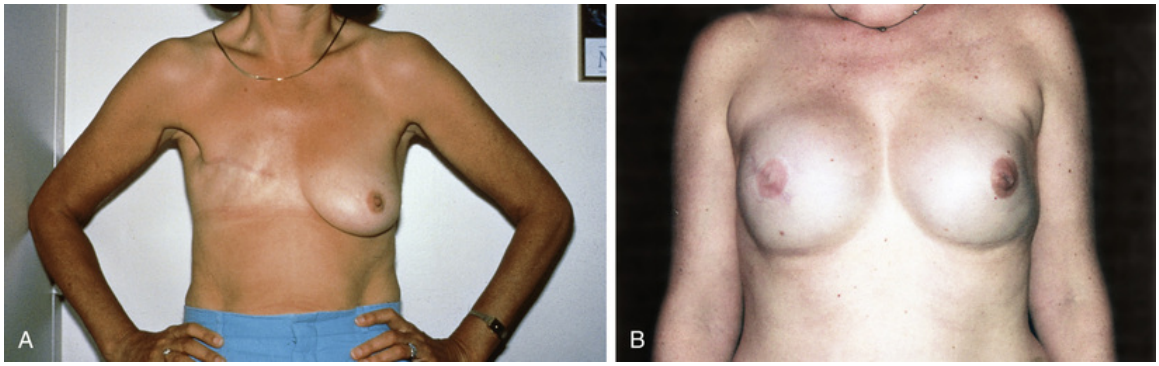


FIGURE 8-20 **A, Surgical scar, mastectomy,** right breast. A **modified radical mastectomy** removes the breast and axillary lymph nodes (usually 20 to 30 nodes). **B, Reconstruction of right breast after skin-sparing mastectomy.** A gel silicone implant was used. At a second operation, local tissue was manipulated to create the semblance of a nipple-areola complex. The procedure was completed by tattooing color around the nipple. In this patient, the right breast tissue was removed prophylactically and a silicone implant was inserted through an inframammary incision. (**A,** Courtesy Dr. Elizabeth Chabner Thompson.)

Pregnancy

abruptio placentae	**Premature separation of the normally implanted placenta.** Abruptio placentae (Latin *ab*, away from; *ruptus*, ruptured) occurs because of trauma, such as a fall, or may be secondary to vascular insufficiency resulting from hypertension or preeclampsia (see page 265). Signs and symptoms of acute abruption include sudden searing (burning) abdominal pain and bleeding. It is an obstetric emergency.
choriocarcinoma	**Malignant tumor of the placenta.** This extremely rare cancerous tumor comes from cells that were part of the placenta in a normal pregnancy. Treatment of metastatic choriocarcinoma may include chemotherapy and radiation therapy to distant sites of cancer.
ectopic pregnancy	**Implantation of the fertilized egg outside the uterus.** The condition occurs in 1-2% of all pregnancies, and most of these occur in the fallopian tubes (**tubal pregnancy**). Rupture of the ectopic implant within the fallopian tube can lead to massive abdominal bleeding and death. Surgeons can remove the implant, or treatment with medication (methotrexate) can destroy it, thereby preserving the fallopian tube before rupture occurs. Other sites of ectopic pregnancy include the ovaries and abdominal cavity; whatever the location, ectopic pregnancy often constitutes a surgical emergency.
multiple gestations	**Presence of more than one embryo developing in the uterus during pregnancy.** Multiple births are increasing in the United States. This is because of assisted reproductive technology (ART) such as ovulation induction followed by intrauterine insemination (IUI) or in vitro fertilization (IVF). These pregnancies are at higher risk for preterm delivery, fetal growth restriction, high blood pressure, and diabetes.
placenta previa	**Implantation of the placenta over the cervical opening or in the lower region of the uterus** (Figure 8-21)**.**

	Maternal signs and symptoms include painless bleeding, hemorrhage, and premature labor. Cesarean delivery usually is recommended.
preeclampsia	**Abnormal condition associated with pregnancy, marked by high blood pressure, proteinuria, edema, and headache.** Mild preeclampsia can be managed by bed rest and close monitoring of blood pressure. Women with severe preeclampsia need treatment with medications such as magnesium sulfate to prevent seizures, and the baby is delivered as quickly as possible. The Greek word *eklampein* means to shine forth, referring to the convulsions and hypertension—typically with visual symptoms of flashing lights—that accompany the condition. **Eclampsia** is the final and most severe phase of untreated preeclampsia. It often causes seizures and even death of the mother and baby.

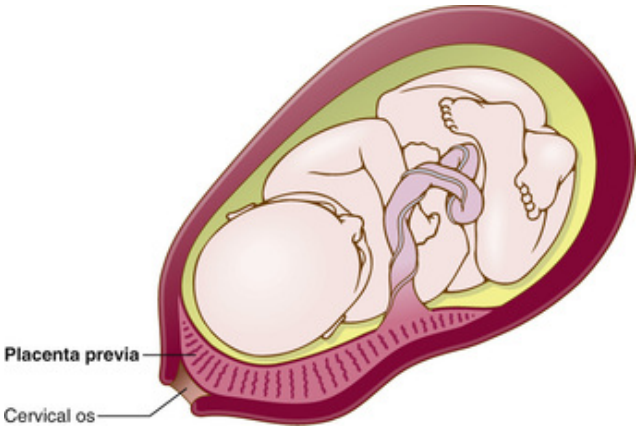


FIGURE 8-21 Placenta previa. Previa means before or in the front of. Three forms of this abnormal implantation of the placenta are: placenta accreta (on the wall but not in muscle), placenta increta (in uterine muscle), and placenta percreta (attaching to another organ).

Neonatal

The following terms describe conditions or symptoms that can affect the newborn. The **Apgar score** (Figure 8-22) is a system of scoring an infant's

physical condition at 1 minute and again at 5 minutes after birth. **Heart rate, respiration, color, muscle tone,** and **response to stimuli** each are rated 0, 1, or 2. The maximum total score is 10. Infants with Apgar scores below 7 require immediate medical attention such as suctioning of the airways or oxygen to help breathing.

SIGN	SCORE		
	0	1	2
Heart rate	Absent	Below 100	Over 100
Respiratory effort	Absent	Slow, irregular	Good, crying
Muscle tone	Limp	Some flexion of extremities	Active motion
Response to catheter in nostril (tested after oropharynx is clear)	No response	Grimace	Cough or sneeze
Color	Blue, pale	Body pink, extremities blue	Completely pink

FIGURE 8-22 Apgar scoring chart. This test is named for anesthesiologist Virginia Apgar (1909-1974), who devised it in 1953. Dr. Joseph Butterfield, in 1963, introduced an "APGAR" acronym as a mnemonic (memory device): Appearance (color), Pulse (heart rate), Grimace (response to catheter in nostril), Activity (muscle tone), and Respiration (respiratory effort).

Down syndrome	**Chromosomal abnormality (trisomy 21) results in mental retardation, retarded growth, and a flat face with a short nose, low-set ears, and slanted eyes.**
Hemolytic disease in the newborn (HDN)	**Destruction of red blood cells in the newborn caused by a blood group (Rh factor) incompatibility between the mother and the fetus.** See explanation in Chapter 4, page 115.
infant respiratory distress syndrome (IRDS)	**Acute lung disease commonly seen in the premature newborn.** This condition is caused by deficiency of **surfactant,** a protein necessary for proper lung function. Surfactant can be administered to the newborn to cure the condition. This condition was previously called hyaline membrane disease.
hydrocephalus	**Accumulation of fluid in the spaces of the brain.** In an infant with this condition, the entire head can enlarge because the bones of the skull do not completely fuse together at birth. Infants normally have a soft spot or **fontanelle** between the cranial bones that allows for some swelling during the birth of the baby. Hydrocephalus occurs because of a problem in the circulation of fluid within the brain and spinal cord, resulting in fluid accumulation.
meconium aspiration syndrome	**Abnormal inhalation of meconium produced by a fetus or newborn.** Meconium, a thick, sticky, greenish to black substance, is the first intestinal discharge (stools) from newborns. Intrauterine distress can cause its passage into amniotic fluid. Once the meconium has passed into the surrounding amniotic fluid, the fetus may breath meconium into its lungs. It can cause breathing problems due to inflammation in the baby's lungs after birth.
pyloric stenosis	**Narrowing of the opening of the stomach to the duodenum.** This condition may be present at birth and frequently is associated with Down syndrome. Surgical repair of the pyloric opening may be necessary.

Clinical Tests and Procedures

Clinical Tests

Pap test (Pap smear)	**Microscopic examination of stained cells removed from the vagina and cervix.** After inserting a vaginal **speculum** (instrument to hold apart the vaginal walls), the physician uses a small spatula to remove exfoliated (peeling and sloughing off) cells from the cervix and vagina (Figure 8-23). Microscopic analysis of the cell smear detects cervical or vaginal cellular abnormalities.
pregnancy test	**Blood or urine test to detect the presence of hCG.**

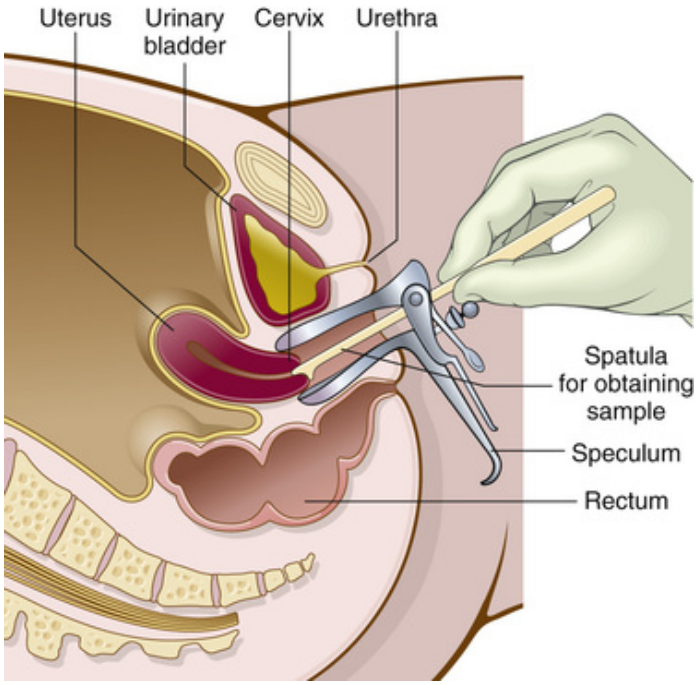
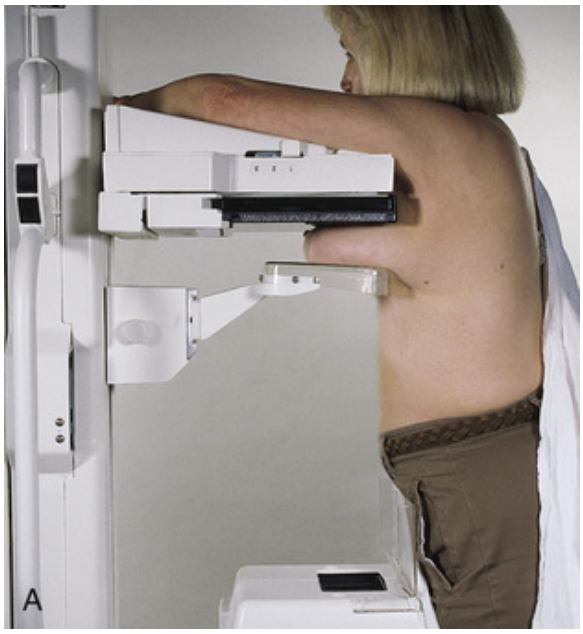


FIGURE 8-23 Method of obtaining a sample for a **Pap test.** The test is 95% accurate in diagnosing early cervical cancer. It was invented by and named for a Greek physician, Georgios Papanicolaou.

Procedures

X-Ray Studies

hysterosalpingography (HSG)	**X-ray imaging of the uterus and fallopian tubes after injection of contrast material.** This radiologic procedure is used to evaluate tubal patency (adequate opening) and uterine cavity abnormalities.
mammography	**X-ray imaging of the breast.** Women are advised to have a baseline mammogram at 40-44 years of age for later comparison if needed. The most recent method of mammography is **digital tomosynthesis.** See Figure 8-24. In this procedure, an x-ray tube moves in an arc around the breast as several images are taken. These images are sent to a computer and clear, highly focused three-dimensional pictures are produced. This procedure makes breast cancer easier to find in dense breast tissue; also called 3D mammography.



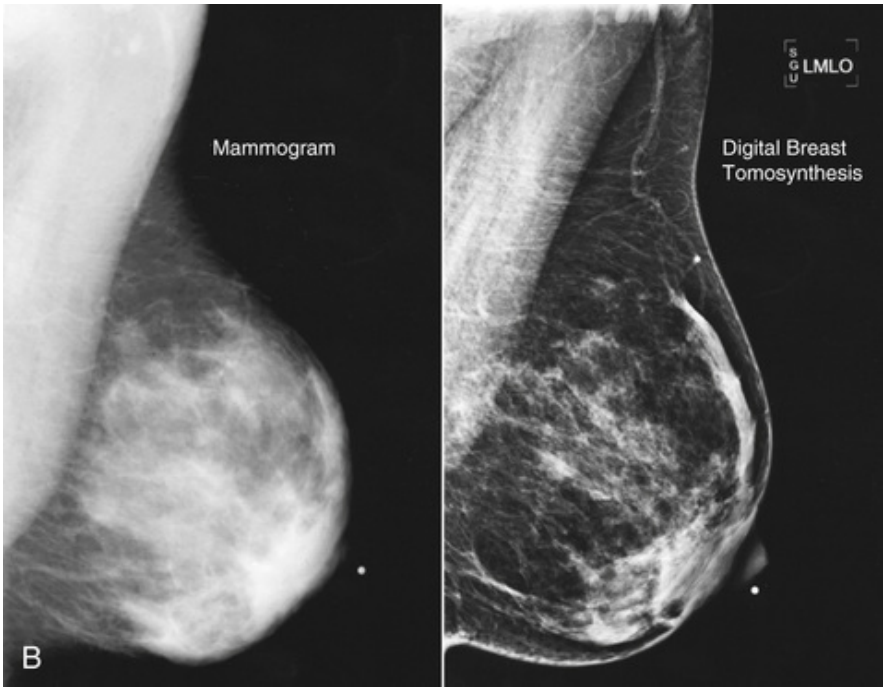


FIGURE 8-24 **A, Mammography.** The machine compresses the breast and x-ray pictures (*top to bottom* and *lateral*) are taken. **B, Comparison of mammogram and digital tomosynthesis images.**

Ultrasound Examination and Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)

breast ultrasound imaging and breast MRI	**Technologies using sound waves and a magnetic field to create images of breast tissue.** These imaging techniques confirm the presence of a mass and can distinguish a cystic from a solid mass. MRI is very useful in detecting masses in young women with dense breasts or in women with a strong family history of breast cancer and at high risk for this condition. Breast ultrasound imaging is useful to evaluate a specific area of cancer on a mammogram.
pelvic ultrasonography	**Recording images of sound waves as they bounce off organs in the pelvic region.** This technique can evaluate fetal size and anatomy, as well as fetal and placental position. Uterine tumors and other pelvic masses, including abscesses, also are diagnosed by ultrasonography. **Transvaginal ultrasound** allows the radiologist a closer, sharper look at organs within the pelvis. The sound probe is placed in the vagina instead of over the pelvis or abdomen; this method is best used to evaluate fluid-filled cysts.

Gynecologic Procedures

cauterization	**Destruction of tissue by burning.** Destruction of abnormal tissue with chemicals (silver nitrate) or an electrically heated instrument. Cauterization is used to treat cervical dysplasia or cervical erosion. The **loop electrocautery excision procedure (LEEP)** (see Figure 8-26A) is used to further assess and often treat abnormal cervical tissue.
colposcopy	**Visual examination of the vagina and cervix using a colposcope.** A colposcope is a lighted magnifying instrument resembling a small, mounted pair of binoculars. Gynecologists prefer colposcopy for pelvic examination when cervical dysplasia is present because it identifies the specific areas of abnormal cells. A biopsy specimen can then be taken for more accurate diagnosis (Figure 8-25).
conization	**Removal of a cone-shaped section (cone biopsy) of the cervix.** The physician resects the tissue using a **LEEP (loop electrocautery excision procedure),** or with a carbon dioxide laser or surgical knife (scalpel). Figure 8-26A shows conization with LEEP, and Figure 8-26B shows the cone biopsy specimen removed surgically.
cryosurgery	**Use of cold temperatures to destroy tissue.** A liquid nitrogen probe produces the freezing (cry/o means cold) temperature. Also called **cryocauterization.**
culdocentesis	**Needle aspiration of fluid from the cul-de-sac.** The physician inserts a needle through the vagina into the cul-de-sac. The presence of blood may indicate a ruptured ectopic pregnancy or ruptured ovarian cyst.
dilation (dilatation) and curettage (D&C)	**Widening the cervix and scraping off the endometrial lining of the uterus.** Dilation is accomplished by inserting a series of dilators of increasing diameter. A **curet** (metal loop at the end of a long, thin handle) is then used to sample the uterine lining. This procedure helps diagnose uterine disease and can temporarily halt prolonged or heavy uterine bleeding. When necessary, a D&C is

	used to remove the tissue during a spontaneous or therapeutic abortion (Figure 8-27).
exenteration	**Removal of internal organs within a cavity.** **Pelvic exenteration** is removal of the organs and adjacent structures of the pelvis.
fine needle aspiration	**Withdrawal of fluid or tissue from a cyst or solid mass by suction with a needle.** FNA is a valuable diagnostic technique in evaluating lumps of the breast.
laparoscopy	**Visual examination of the abdominal cavity using an endoscope (laparoscope).** In this procedure, a form of **minimally invasive surgery (MIS),** small incisions (5 to 10 mm long) are made near the woman's navel for introduction of the laparoscope and other instruments. Uses of laparoscopy include inspection and removal of ovaries and fallopian tubes, diagnosis and treatment of endometriosis, and removal of fibroids. Laparoscopy also is used to perform subtotal (cervix is left in place) and total hysterectomies (Figure 8-28). Morcellation (cutting up uterine tissue in the abdomen) is commonly performed when the uterus or fibroids are removed laparoscopically. It is contraindicated in situations of suspcious or pre-malignancy.
tubal ligation	**Blocking the fallopian tubes to prevent fertilization from occurring.** This **sterilization** procedure (making an individual incapable of reproduction) is performed using laparoscopy or through a hysteroscope inserted via the cervical os (opening). **Ligation** means tying off and does not pertain solely to the fallopian tubes—which may be “tied” using clips or bands, or by surgically cutting or burning through the tissue.

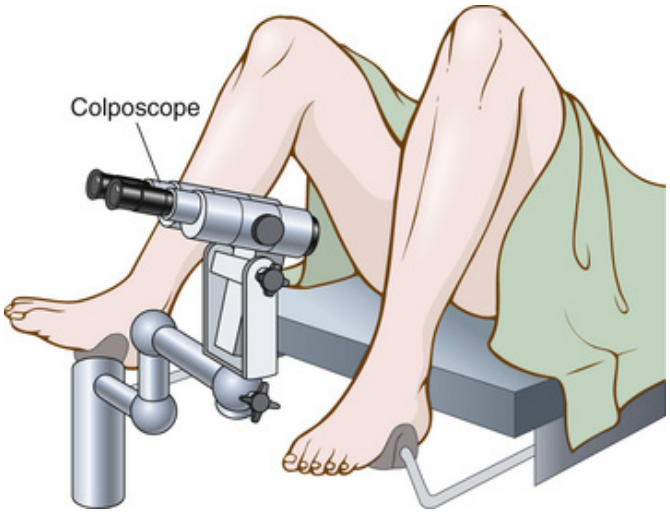


FIGURE 8-25 **Colposcopy** is used to evaluate a patient with an abnormal Pap test result. For this examination, the woman lies in the dorsal lithotomy position. This is the same position used to remove a urinary tract stone (lithotomy means incision to remove a stone).

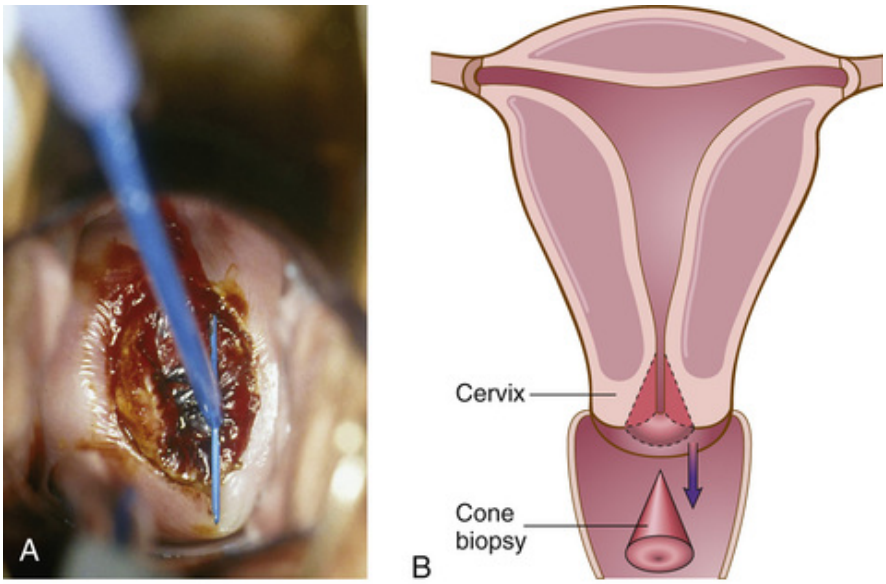


FIGURE 8-26 **A, Cervical loop electrocautery excision procedure (LEEP)** for cone biopsy. **B,** Surgical removal of **cone biopsy** specimen. (**A,** Courtesy Dr. A. K. Goodman, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.)

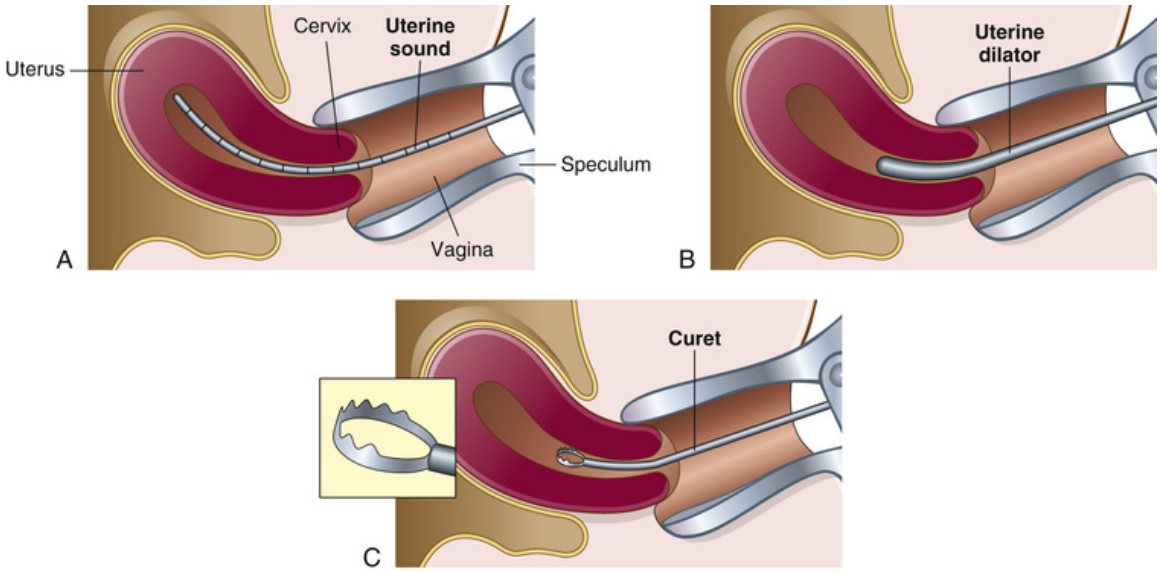


FIGURE 8-27 **Dilation and curettage (D&C) of the uterus. A,** The uterine cavity is explored with a **uterine sound** (a slender instrument used to measure the depth of the uterus) to prevent perforation during dilation. **B, Uterine dilators** (Hanks or Hagar) in graduated sizes are used to gradually dilate the cervix. **C,** The uterus is gently curetted and specimens are collected.

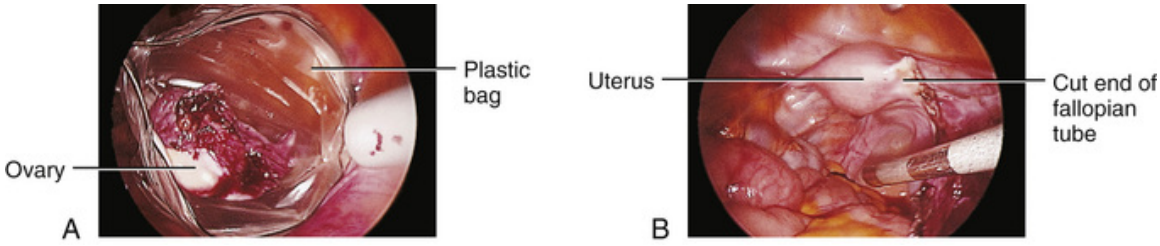


FIGURE 8-28 **Laparoscopic oophorectomy. A,** Notice the ovary placed in a plastic bag. The bag was inserted through the laparoscope and then opened, and the ovary was placed inside. **B,** Both are extracted through the laparoscope, leaving the uterus and the cut end of the fallopian tube. (Courtesy Dr. A. K. Goodman, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.)

Procedures Related to Pregnancy

abortion (AB)	**Termination of pregnancy before the embryo or fetus can exist on its own.** Abortions are **spontaneous** or **induced.** Spontaneous abortions, commonly called "miscarriages," occur without apparent cause. Induced abortions can be **therapeutic** or **elective.** A therapeutic abortion is performed when the health of the pregnant woman is endangered. An elective abortion is performed at the request of the woman. Major methods for abortion include vaginal evacuation by D&C or vacuum aspiration (suction) and stimulation of uterine contractions by injection of saline (salt solution) into the amniotic cavity (in second-trimester pregnancies).
amniocentesis	**Needle puncture of the amniotic sac to withdraw amniotic fluid for analysis** (Figure 8-29)**.** The cells of the fetus, found in the fluid, are cultured (grown), and cytologic and biochemical studies are performed to check fetal chromosomes, concentrations of proteins and bilirubin, and fetal maturation.
cesarean section	**Surgical incision of the abdominal wall and uterus to deliver a fetus.** Indications for cesarean section include cephalopelvic disproportion (the baby's head is too big for the mother's birth canal), abruptio placentae or placenta previa, fetal distress (fetal hypoxia), and breech or shoulder presentation. The name comes from a law during the time of Julius Caesar requiring removal of the fetus before a deceased pregnant woman could be buried.
chorionic villus sampling (CVS)	**Sampling of placental tissues (chorionic villi) for prenatal diagnosis.** The sample of tissue is removed with a catheter inserted into the uterus. The procedure can be performed earlier than amniocentesis, at 10 or more weeks of gestation.
fetal monitoring	**Continuous recording of the fetal heart rate and maternal uterine contractions to assess fetal status and the progress of labor.**

in vitro fertilization (IVF)	**Egg and sperm cells are combined outside the body in a laboratory dish (in vitro) to facilitate fertilization.** After an incubation period of 3 to 5 days, the fertilized ova are injected into the uterus through the cervix. (Latin *in vitro* means in glass, as used for laboratory containers.) From 30% to 50% of all IVF procedures are now associated with **intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI).** This is the direct injection of sperm into harvested ova.

FIGURE 8-29 Amniocentesis. The obstetrician places a long needle through the pregnant woman's abdominal wall into the amniotic cavity. Needle placement (avoiding the fetus and the placenta) is guided by concurrent ultrasound imaging, performed using the transducer in the radiologist's hand. The yellow amniotic fluid is aspirated into the syringe attached to the needle. This procedure took place in the 16th week of pregnancy. The indication for the amniocentesis was a low alpha-fetoprotein (AFP) level. This finding suggested a higher risk of Down syndrome in the baby. Karyotype analysis (received 10 days later) showed normal chromosome configuration.

Abbreviations

AB	abortion
AFP	alpha-fetoprotein—high levels in amniotic fluid of fetus or maternal serum indicate increased risk of neurologic birth defects in the infant.
ART	Assisted Reproductive Techniques including IVF and sperm donation
BRCA1 ***BRCA2***	breast cancer *1* and *2*—genetic mutations associated with increased risk for breast cancer
BSE	breast self-examination
CA-125	protein marker elevated in ovarian cancer
C-section, CS	cesarean section
CIN	cervical intraepithelial neoplasia
CIS	carcinoma in situ
CVS	chorionic villus sampling
Cx	cervix
D&C	dilation (dilatation) and curettage
DCIS	ductal carcinoma in situ; a precancerous breast lesion that indicates a higher risk for invasive ductal breast cancer
DUB	dysfunctional uterine bleeding
FHR	fetal heart rate
FNA	fine needle aspiration
FSH	follicle-stimulating hormone
G	gravida (pregnant)
GnRH	gonadotropin-releasing hormone—secreted by the hypothalamus to stimulate release of FSH and LH from the pituitary gland
GYN	gynecology
hCG ***or*** **HCG**	human chorionic gonadotropin
HDN	hemolytic disease of the newborn
HPV	human papillomavirus
HRT	hormone replacement therapy
HSG	hysterosalpingography
IUD	intrauterine device; contraceptive
IDC	invasive ductal carcinoma
IRDS	infant respiratory distress syndrome
IVF	in vitro fertilization

LEEP	loop electrocautery excision procedure
LH	luteinizing hormone
LMP	last menstrual period
multip	multipara; multiparous
OB	obstetrics
para 2-0-1-2	a woman's reproductive history: 2 full-term infants, 0 preterm, 1 abortion, and 2 living children
Pap test	test for cervical or vaginal cancer
PID	pelvic inflammatory disease
PMS	premenstrual syndrome
primip	primipara; primiparous
SLN biopsy *or* **SNB**	sentinel lymph node biopsy—blue dye or a radioisotope (or both) identifies the first lymph node draining the breast lymphatics
TAH-BSO	total abdominal hysterectomy with bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy
UAE	uterine artery embolization
VH	vaginal hysterectomy

Practical Applications

This section contains an actual operative report and brief excerpts from other medical records using words that you have studied in this and previous chapters. Explanations of more difficult terms are added in brackets.

Operative Report

Preoperative diagnosis: Menorrhagia, leiomyomata
Anesthetic: General
Material forwarded to laboratory for examination:
A. Endocervical curettings
B. Endometrial curettings
Operation performed: Dilation and curettage of the uterus

With the patient in the dorsal lithotomy position [legs are flexed on the thighs, thighs flexed on the abdomen and abducted] and sterilely prepped and draped, manual examination of the uterus revealed it to be 6- to 8-

week size, retroflexed; no adnexal masses noted. The anterior lip of the cervix was then grasped with a tenaculum [a hook-like surgical instrument for grasping and holding parts]. The cervix was dilated up to a #20 Hank's dilator. The uterus was sounded [depth measured] up to 4 inches. A sharp curettage of the endocervix showed only a scant amount of tissue. With a sharp curet, the uterus was curetted in a clockwise fashion with an irregularity noted in the posterior floor. A large amount of endometrial tissue was removed. The patient tolerated the procedure well.

Operative diagnosis: Leiomyomata uteri
Recommendation: Hysterectomy for myomectomy

Sentences Using Medical Terminology

1. *Mammogram report:* The breast parenchyma [essential tissue] is symmetric bilaterally. There are no abnormal masses or calcifications in either breast. The axillae are normal.
2. This is a 43-year-old gravida 3, para 2 with premature ovarian failure and now on HRT. She has history of endocervical atypia [cells are not normal or typical] secondary to chlamydial infection, which is now being treated.
3. The patient is a 40-year-old gravida 3, para 2 admitted for exploratory laparotomy to remove and evaluate a 10-cm left adnexal mass. Discharge diagnosis: (1) endometriosis, left ovary; (2) benign cystic teratoma [dermoid cyst], left ovary.
4. *History:* 51-year-old G3 P3; LMP early 40s; on HRT until age 49 when diagnosed with carcinoma of breast; treated with mastectomy and tamoxifen. Followed by ultrasounds showing slightly thickened 9-10 mm endometrium. No bleeding.
   Operative findings: office endometrial biopsy, scant tissue
   Clinical diagnosis: rule out hyperplasia

Operating Room Schedule

The operating room schedule for one day in a large general hospital listed six different gynecologic procedures. Match the surgical procedures in Column I with the indications for surgery in Column II. Write the letter of the indication in the blanks provided. Answers are on page 286.

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. Left oophorectomy	_____	A. LLQ pain; ovarian mass on pelvic ultrasound B. Fibroids C. Endometrial cancer D. Small invasive ductal carcinoma of the breast E. Suspected cervical cancer F. Uterine prolapse
2. Vaginal hysterectomy with colporrhaphy	_____	
3. TAH-BSO, pelvic and periaortic lymphadenectomy	_____	
4. Exploratory laparotomy for uterine myomectomy	_____	
5. Conization of the cervix	_____	
6. Lumpectomy with SLN biopsy	_____	

Contraceptive Choices

Review and compare the various birth control options available today.

METHOD	UNINTENDED PREGNANCY RATES: TYPICAL USE/PERFECT USE
1. Abstinence—no sexual intercourse	0% / 0%
2. Cervical cap—inserted by doctor or nurse	16% / 9%
3. Condom—male	15% / 2%
4. Condom—female	21% / 5%
5. Diaphragm (with spermicide)	16% / 6%
6. Film and foam (with spermicide)	29% / 18%
7. Implant—inserted into upper arm; releases hormones; effective for 3 years	0.05% / 0.05%
8. Injectable—Depo-Provera given every 3 months	3% / 3%
9. Intrauterine device (IUD)	less than 1%
10. Oral contraceptives (birth control pills)	8% / 3%
11. Patch—applied to skin weekly	8% / 3%
12. Ring—inserted in vagina; effective for 1 month	8% / less than 1%
13. Sponge—used by women who have never given birth	16% / 9%
14. Suppositories—inserted in vagina (with spermicide)	29% / 15%
15. Withdrawal	27% / 4%

In Person

Prophylactic Mastectomy

Whenever May rolls around, I think about my surgery and the decision I made many years ago to have prophylactic mastectomies. I grew up in a family of strong women. They were determined to work, play sports, and raise their families, except they all had breast cancer. It was a bump in the road for each one of them and, at age 36, I had 4 children, a wonderful career and a husband and abnormal mammograms. I had friends, holidays, and biopsies, and being a physician (radiation oncologist) and the daughter of a medical oncologist, I was worried about my own health.

When my mother tested negative for the BRCA gene, it did not relieve my anxiety. It just intensified it. What was causing the breast cancer in my family? Genetic counselors explained that only about 15% of breast cancer can be attributed to the BRCA genes; the rest are caused by other "faulty genes" or just changes in the breast cells.

I heard about a new procedure that physicians were pioneering—direct-to-implant breast reconstruction after mastectomy. One step and one surgery would drop my risk from 40% to close to 2% or 3%. I could preserve my anatomy and get rid of those breast cells that might kill me someday. It had a lot to do with my family and career. I did not want to have breast cancer.

So I decided, after much research and discussion, to have prophylactic mastectomies with reconstruction. On a Tuesday in the first week of May 2006, I had my surgery. My mother was there when I woke up from anesthesia, and I have never seen her so relieved. My husband took care of the kids, closed the car doors for me, and took over mowing the lawn for a while. I didn't discuss my surgery, especially not with the freedom that Angelina Jolie did in 2013. In 2006, no one had heard of my surgery; they

couldn't even pronounce the name of it. But I was convinced that it meant I might very well "dodge a bullet."

Nine years later, I smile when I see morning television shows talk about the "Angelina Effect"—implants and breast reconstruction, nipples, and risk reduction, all in the same story. It's wonderful that women can talk about their "faulty parts" without feeling shame. It's a great example for our daughters as well.

In March of 2015, Angelina wrote another op-ed, discussing her oophorectomy and salpingectomy surgery (removal of both ovaries and both fallopian tubes). Women with BRCA genes have an increased risk not only for breast cancer but also for ovarian cancer. And this was the disease that took Angelina's mother's life. Ovarian cancer, unlike breast cancer, is often diagnosed at a very late stage. A majority of breast cancers are diagnosed at stage 1 or 2 or even at a "pre-cancer" DCIS [ductal carcinoma in situ] stage. Ovarian cancer, on the other hand, often is diagnosed after the cancer has already spread. Angelina also discussed another "taboo" subject: Removing ovaries and the fallopian tubes in a premenopausal woman (Angelina was 39 years old at the time of her surgery) sends her into early menopause. Hot flashes, skin changes, dryness (you know where) are hard topics to discuss in public. She put it out there, front and center, to destigmatize the subject for all women.

There is no history of ovarian cancer in my family, and we are BRCA-negative, so my genetic counselor did not recommend removing my ovaries and fallopian tubes. Rather, I have a pelvic ultrasound once a year and a blood test (CA-125) to make sure that nothing is abnormal.

Because of my decision to undergo prophylactic mastectomies, I know that my life has changed for the better. I don't have the fear of getting breast cancer. I also have decided to devote my life work to helping women recover with comfort, dignity, and grace after being blindsided by the disease. Angelina Jolie says that knowledge is power! It behooves us to learn as much as we can to prevent disease and proactively take care of the fragile, precious thing we call our health.

Elizabeth Chabner Thompson is the CEO/Founder of Masthead, a company devoted to bringing innovative products to patients with breast cancer. She is a physician, swimmer, cross country skier and the proud mother of four children ages 16-21.

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, page 284.

A Match the following terms for structures or tissues with their meanings below.

amnion
areola
cervix
chorion
clitoris
endometrium
fallopian tubes
fimbriae
labia
mammary papilla
ovaries
perineum
placenta
perimetrium
vagina
vulva

1. inner lining of the uterus
   _____
2. area between the anus and the vagina in females
   _____
3. dark-pigmented area around the breast nipple
   _____

4. finger-like ends of the fallopian tube

_____

5. ducts through which the egg travels into the uterus from the ovary

_____

6. organ of sensitive erectile tissue in females; anterior to urethral orifice

_____

7. nipple of the breast

_____

8. vascular organ that attaches to the uterine wall during pregnancy _____

9. lower, neck-like portion of the uterus

_____

10. innermost membrane around the developing embryo _____

11. outermost layer of the membranes around the developing embryo and forming part of the placenta

_____

12. outermost layer surrounding the uterus

_____

13. lips of the vulva

_____

14. female gonads; producing ova and hormones

_____

15. includes the perineum, labia and clitoris, and hymen; external genitalia _____

16. muscular, mucosa-lined canal extending from the uterus to the exterior of the body_____

B **Identify the following terms.**

1. fetus
   _____
2. lactiferous ducts
   _____
3. gametes _____
4. gonads _____
5. adnexa uteri
   _____
6. cul-de-sac _____
7. genitalia _____
8. Bartholin glands
   _____
9. ovarian follicle
   _____
10. corpus luteum
    _____

C **Match the listed terms with the descriptions/definitions that follow.**

coitus

estrogen

fertilization

follicle-stimulating hormone

human chorionic gonadotropin

luteinizing hormone

menarche

myometrium

prenatal

progesterone

1. hormone produced by the ovaries; promotes female secondary sex characteristics_____
2. hormone secreted by the pituitary gland to stimulate maturation of the egg cell (ovum)_____
3. sexual intercourse _____
4. before birth _____
5. beginning of the first menstrual period _____
6. hormone produced by the placenta to sustain pregnancy by stimulating the ovaries to produce estrogen and progesterone _____
7. muscle layer of the uterus _____
8. hormone produced by the corpus luteum in the ovary and the placenta of a pregnant woman_____
9. hormone produced by the pituitary gland to promote ovulation _____

10. union of the sperm cell and ovum from which the embryo develops _____

D **Supply definitions to complete the following sentences.**

1. galact/o and lact/o both mean _____.
2. colp/o and vagin/o both mean _____.
3. mamm/o and mast/o both mean _____.
4. metr/o, uter/o, and hyster/o all mean _____.
5. oophor/o and ovari/o both mean _____.
6. o/o, ov/o, and ovul/o all mean _____.
7. in- and endo- both mean _____.
8. -cyesis and -gravida both mean _____.
9. salping/o and -salpinx both mean _____.
10. episi/o and vulv/o both mean _____.

E **Match the listed terms with the meanings/descriptions that follow.**

bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy

cervicitis
chorion
culdocentesis
lactation
neonatology
obstetrics
oxytocin
total hysterectomy
vulvovaginitis

1. study of the newborn
   _____
2. hormone that stimulates the pregnant uterus to contract _____
3. secretion of milk _____
4. removal of the entire uterus
   _____
5. inflammation of the neck of the uterus
   _____
6. branch of medicine concerned with pregnancy and childbirth _____
7. outermost membrane surrounding the fetus
   _____
8. removal of both fallopian tubes and both ovaries
   _____
9. inflammation of the external female genitalia and vagina _____

10. needle puncture to remove fluid from the cul-de-sac

_____

F **Give the meanings of the following signs and symptoms.**

1. amenorrhea

_____

_____

2. dysmenorrhea

_____

_____

3. leukorrhea

_____

_____

4. metrorrhagia

_____

_____

5. galactorrhea

_____

_____

6. menorrhagia

_____

_____

7. pyosalpinx

_____

_____

8. dyspareunia

_____

_____

9. menometrorrhagia

_____

10. oligomenorrhea

_____

G **State whether the following sentences are true or false, and explain your answers.**

1. After a total (complete) hysterectomy, a woman still has regular menstrual periods.

_____

2. After a total hysterectomy, a woman may still produce estrogen and progesterone.

_____

3. Birth control pills prevent pregnancy by keeping levels of estrogen and progesterone high.

_____

4. After a total hysterectomy with bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy, a doctor may advise hormone replacement therapy.

_____

5. Human papillomavirus can cause genital warts and ovarian cancer.

_____

6. A Pap test can detect cervical dysplasia.

_____

7. Human chorionic gonadotropin is produced by the ovaries during pregnancy.

_____
_____

8. Gynecomastia is a common condition in pregnant women.

_____
_____

9. Treatment for endometriosis is uterine myomectomy.

_____
_____

10. A gravida 3 para 2 is a woman who has given birth 3 times.

_____
_____

11. A nulligravida is a woman who has had several pregnancies.

_____
_____

12. Pseudocyesis is the same condition as a tubal pregnancy.

_____
_____

13. Fibrocystic changes in the breast are a malignant condition.

_____

_____

14. Cystadenomas occur in the ovaries.

_____

_____

15. FSH and LH are ovarian hormones.

_____

_____

H **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. parturition

_____

2. menopause

_____

3. menarche

_____

4. ovulation

_____

5. gestation

_____

6. anovulatory

_____

7. dilatation

_____

8. lactation

_____

9. nulliparous

_____

10. oophoritis

_____

11. bartholinitis

_____

12. vulvodynia

_____

I **Match the listed terms with the meanings/descriptions that follow.**

abruptio placentae

cervical cancer

cervicitis

cystadenocarcinoma

endometrial cancer

endometriosis

leiomyoma

multiple gestations

placenta previa

preeclampsia

1. malignant tumor of the ovary

_____

2. inflammation in the lower, neck-like portion of the uterus _____

3. condition during pregnancy or shortly thereafter, marked by hypertension, proteinuria, and edema

_____

4. uterine tissue located outside the uterus—for example, in the ovaries, cul-de-sac, fallopian tubes, or

peritoneum _____

5. premature separation of a normally implanted placenta _____
6. placenta implantation over the cervical opening _____
7. more than one fetus inside the uterus _____
8. malignant condition of the lower portion of the uterus _____
9. malignant condition of the inner lining of the uterus _____
10. benign muscle tumor in the uterus _____

J **Name the appropriate test or procedure for each of the following descriptions.**

1. Burning of abnormal tissue with chemicals or an electrically heated instrument: _____
2. Contrast material is injected into the uterus and fallopian tubes, and x-ray images are obtained:_____
3. Cold temperature is used to destroy tissue: _____
4. Visual examination of the vagina and cervix: _____
5. Widening the cervical opening and scraping the lining of the uterus:_____

6. Withdrawal of fluid or tissue from a cyst or solid mass by suction with a needle:_____
7. Process of recording x-ray images of the breast: _____
8. Removal of a cone-shaped section of the cervix for diagnosis or treatment of cervical dysplasia: _____
9. Surgical puncture to remove fluid from the cul-de-sac: _____
10. Echoes from sound waves create an image of structures in the pelvic region:_____
11. Blocking the fallopian tubes to prevent fertilization from occurring: _____
12. Visual examination of the abdominal cavity with an endoscope:_____
13. hCG is measured in the urine or blood: _____
14. Cells are scraped from the cervix or vagina for microscopic analysis:_____
15. Removal of internal gynecologic organs and adjacent structures in the pelvis:_____

K **Give medical terms for the following definitions. Pay careful attention to spelling.**

1. benign muscle tumors in the uterus
   _____
2. no menses _____
3. removal of an ovary
   _____
4. condition of female breasts (in a male)
   _____
5. ovarian hormone that sustains pregnancy
   _____
6. nipple-shaped elevation on the breast
   _____

L **Match the obstetric and neonatal terms with the descriptions that follow.**

- abortion
- Apgar score
- cephalic version
- cesarean section
- fetal monitoring
- fetal presentation
- fontanelle
- infant respiratory distress syndrome
- hemolytic disease of the newborn
- hydrocephalus
- in vitro fertilization
- meconium aspiration syndrome
- pyloric stenosis

1. Turning the fetus so that the head presents during birth _____
2. The soft spot between the newborn's cranial bones _____
3. The evaluation of the newborn's physical condition _____
4. Premature termination of pregnancy _____
5. Removal of the fetus by abdominal incision of the uterus _____
6. Acute lung disease in the premature newborn: surfactant deficiency _____
7. Use of a machine to electronically record fetal heart rate during labor _____
8. Narrowing of the opening of the stomach to the small intestine in the infant _____
9. Rh factor incompatibility between the mother and fetus _____
10. Accumulation of fluid in the spaces of a neonate's brain _____
11. Manner in which the fetus appears to the examiner during delivery _____
12. Thick, sticky green-black substance is discharged into the amniotic fluid, causing fetal lung problems _____
13. Union of the egg and sperm cell in a laboratory dish _____

M Give the meanings of the abbreviations in Column I. Then select the letter of the correct description from Column II.

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. CIS _____	_____	A. This woman has given birth to more than one infant.
2. FSH _____	_____	B. Egg and sperm cells are combined outside the body.
3. D&C _____	_____	C. This woman has given birth for the first time.
4. multip _____	_____	D. Secretion from the pituitary gland stimulates the ovaries.
5. C-section _____	_____	E. This procedure helps diagnose uterine disease.
6. IVF _____	_____	F. Localized cancer growth.
7. Cx _____		G. Surgical procedure to remove the uterus, fallopian tubes, and ovaries.
8. TAH-BSO _____		H. Surgical delivery of an infant through an abdominal incision.
9. primip _____		I. Branch of medicine dealing with pregnancy and delivery of infants.
10. OB _____		J. Lower, neck-like region of the uterus.

N Match the following abbreviations in Column I with the best description in Column II.

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. Pap test	_____	A. Precancerous lesion in the breast
2. HSG	_____	B. X-ray record of the uterus and fallopian tubes
3. AB	_____	C. Hormones given to menopausal women
4. HPV	_____	D. Diagnoses cervical and vaginal cancer
5. DCIS	_____	E. Termination of pregnancy; spontaneous or induced
6. HRT	_____	F. Cause of cervical cancer

O **Circle the term in parentheses that best completes the meaning of each sentence.**

1. Dr. Hanson felt that it was important to do a **(culdocentesis, Pap test, amniocentesis)** once yearly on each of her GYN patients to screen for abnormal cells.
2. When Doris missed her period, her doctor checked for the presence of **(LH, IUD, hCG)** in Doris's urine to see if she was pregnant.
3. Ellen was 34 weeks pregnant and experiencing bad headaches and blurry vision, with a 10-pound weight gain in 2 days. Dr. Murphy told her to go to the obstetric emergency department because she suspected **(preeclampsia, pelvic inflammatory disease, fibroids).**
4. Fifty-two-year-old Sally noticed increasing pain, fullness, and swelling in her abdomen. She had a history of ovarian cancer, so her physician recommended **(sentinel node biopsy, pelvic ultrasonography, colposcopy).**
5. Clara knew that she should not ignore her fevers and yellow vaginal discharge and the pain in her side. She had previous episodes of **(PMS, PID, HRT)** treated with IV antibiotics. She worried that she might have a recurrence.
6. After years of trying to become pregnant, Jill decided to speak to her **(hematologist, gynecologist, urologist)** about in vitro **(gestation, parturition, fertilization).**

7. To harvest her ova, Jill's physician prescribed hormones to stimulate egg maturation and **(coitus, lactation, ovulation).** Ova were surgically removed and fertilized with sperm cells in a Petri dish.
8. Next, multiple embryos were implanted into Jill's **(fallopian tube, vagina, uterus),** and she received hormones to ensure the survival of at least one embryo.
9. The IVF was successful and after **(abdominal CT, ultrasound examination),** Jill was told that she would have twins in $8\frac{1}{2}$ months.
10. At 37 weeks, Jill went into labor. Under continuous **(chorionic villus sampling, culdocentesis, fetal monitoring),** two healthy infants were delivered vaginally.
11. At age 41, Carol had a screening **(hysterosalpingogram, mammogram, conization)** of her breasts. The results showed tiny calcium deposits, or calcifications, behind her **(areola, chorion, adnexa uteri).** A core needle **(laparoscopy, colposcopy, biopsy)** was performed and showed cells that were an early sign of cancer called **(CIN, DCIS, DUB).** Her surgical oncologist recommended **(lumpectomy, TAH-BSO, chorionic villus sampling)** to remove the calcifications and surrounding tissue as treatment.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. endometrium
2. perineum
3. areola
4. fimbriae
5. fallopian tubes
6. clitoris
7. mammary papilla
8. placenta
9. cervix
10. amnion
11. chorion
12. perimetrium
13. labia
14. ovaries
15. vulva
16. vagina

B

1. embryo from the third month (after 8 weeks) to birth
2. tubes that carry milk within the breast
3. sex cells; the egg and sperm cells
4. organs (ovaries and testes) in the female and male that produce gametes

5. ovaries, fallopian tubes, and supporting ligaments (accessory parts of the uterus)
6. region of the abdomen between the rectum and the uterus
7. reproductive organs (genitals)
8. small exocrine glands at the vaginal orifice that secrete a lubricating fluid
9. developing sac in the ovary that encloses the ovum
10. empty follicle that secretes progesterone after ovulation

C

1. estrogen
2. follicle-stimulating hormone
3. coitus
4. prenatal
5. menarche
6. human chorionic gonadotropin
7. myometrium
8. progesterone
9. luteinizing hormone
10. fertilization

D

1. milk
2. vagina
3. breast
4. uterus
5. ovary
6. egg
7. in, within
8. pregnancy
9. fallopian tube
10. vulva (external female genitalia)

E

1. neonatology
2. oxytocin
3. lactation
4. total hysterectomy
5. cervicitis
6. obstetrics
7. chorion
8. bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy
9. vulvovaginitis
10. culdocentesis

F

1. no menstrual flow
2. painful menstrual flow
3. white discharge (normally from the vagina and also associated with cervicitis)
4. bleeding from the uterus at irregular intervals
5. abnormal discharge of milk from the breasts
6. profuse or prolonged menstrual periods occurring at regular intervals
7. pus in the fallopian (uterine) tubes
8. painful sexual intercourse
9. heavy bleeding at and between menstrual periods
10. scanty menstrual flow

G

1. False. Total hysterectomy means removal of the entire uterus so that menstruation does not occur.
2. True. Total hysterectomy does not mean that the ovaries have been removed.
3. True. Birth control pills contain estrogen and progesterone; high levels prevent ovulation and pregnancy.
4. True. This may be necessary to treat symptoms of estrogen loss (vaginal atrophy, hot flashes) and to prevent bone deterioration (osteoporosis).

5. False. HPV does produce genital warts but not ovarian cancer. In some cases, HPV infection may lead to cervical cancer.

6. True. A Pap test can detect abnormal changes in the cervix from cervical dysplasia to cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN) and CIS (carcinoma in situ).

7. False. The hormone hCG is produced by the *placenta* during pregnancy.

8. False. Gynecomastia is a condition of increased breast development in *males*.

9. False. Myomectomy means removal of muscle tumors (fibroids). Endometriosis is abnormal location of uterine tissue outside the uterine lining.

10. False. A gravida 3 para 2 is a woman who has had two children and three pregnancies.

11. False. A nulligravida has had no pregnancies. A multigravida has had many pregnancies.

12. False. A pseudocyesis is a false pregnancy (no pregnancy occurs), and a tubal pregnancy is an example of ectopic pregnancy (pregnancy occurs in the fallopian tube, not in the uterus).

13. False. Fibrocystic changes in the breast are a benign condition.

14. True. Cystadenomas are glandular sacs lined with tumor cells; they occur in the ovaries.

15. False. FSH and LH are pituitary gland hormones. Estrogen and progesterone are secreted by the ovaries.

H

1. act of giving birth
2. gradual ending of menstrual function
3. beginning of the first menstrual period at puberty
4. release of the ovum from the ovary
5. pregnancy
6. pertaining to no ovulation (egg is not released from the ovary)
7. widening
8. natural secretion of milk
9. a woman who has never given birth
10. inflammation of the ovaries
11. inflammation of Bartholin glands
12. pain in the vulva

I

1. cystadenocarcinoma
2. cervicitis
3. preeclampsia
4. endometriosis
5. abruptio placentae

6. placenta previa
7. multiple gestations
8. cervical cancer
9. endometrial cancer
10. leiomyoma

J

1. cauterization
2. hysterosalpingography
3. cryosurgery or cryocauterization
4. colposcopy
5. dilation (dilatation) and curettage
6. fine needle aspiration
7. mammography
8. conization
9. culdocentesis
10. pelvic ultrasonography
11. tubal ligation
12. laparoscopy
13. pregnancy test
14. Pap test
15. pelvic exenteration

K

1. fibroids or leiomyomata
2. amenorrhea
3. oophorectomy
4. gynecomastia
5. progesterone
6. mammary papilla

L

1. cephalic version
2. fontanelle
3. Apgar score
4. abortion
5. cesarean section
6. infant respiratory distress syndrome
7. fetal monitoring
8. pyloric stenosis
9. hemolytic disease of the newborn
10. hydrocephalus
11. fetal presentation
12. meconium aspiration syndrome
13. in vitro fertilization

M

1. carcinoma in situ: F
2. follicle-stimulating hormone: D
3. dilation (dilatation) and curettage: E
4. multipara: A
5. cesarean section: H
6. in vitro fertilization: B
7. cervix: J
8. total abdominal hysterectomy with bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy: G
9. primipara: C
10. obstetrics: I

N

1. D
2. B
3. E
4. F
5. A
6. C

O

1. Pap test

2. hCG

3. preeclampsia

4. pelvic ultrasonography

5. PID

6. gynecologist; fertilization

7. ovulation

8. uterus

9. ultrasound examination

10. fetal monitoring

11. mammogram; areola; biopsy; DCIS; lumpectomy

Answers to Practical Applications

Operating Room Schedule

1. A

2. F

3. C

4. B

5. E

6. D

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary**

beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

Vocabulary and Terminology

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
adnexa uteri	ad-NEK-sah U-ter-i
amenorrhea	a-men-o-RE-ah
amniocentesis	am-ne-o-sen-TE-sis
amnion	AM-ne-on
amniotic fluid	am-ne-OT-ik FLU-id
anovulatory	an-OV-u-lah-tor-e
areola	ah-re-O-lah
Bartholin glands	BAR-tho-lin glandz
bartholinitis	bar-tho-lih-NI-tis
cephalic version	seh-FAL-ik VER-zhun
cervix	SER-viks
chorion	KOR-e-on
chorionic	kor-e-ON-ik
clitoris	KLIH-tor-is
coitus	KO-it-us
colposcopy	kol-POS-ko-pe
corpus luteum	KOR-pus LU-te-um
cul-de-sac	KUL-deh-sak
culdocentesis	kul-do-sen-TE-sis
dysmenorrhea	dis-men-o-RE-ah
dyspareunia	dis-pah-RU-ne-ah
dystocia	dis-TO-se-ah
embryo	EM-bre-o
endocervicitis	en-do-ser-vih-SI-tis
endometritis	en-do-meh-TRI-tis
endometrium	en-do-ME-tre-um
episiotomy	eh-pe-ze-OT-o-me
estrogen	ES-tro-jen
fallopian tube	fah-LO-pe-an toob
fertilization	fer-tih-lih-ZA-shun
fetal presentation	FE-tal pres-en-TA-shun
fetus	FE-tus
fimbriae	FIM-bre-e
follicle-stimulating hormone	FOL-lik-il STIM-u-la-ting HOR-mone
galactorrhea	gah-lak-to-RE-ah
gamete	GAM-eet
genitalia	jeh-nih-TA-le-ah

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
gestation	jes-TA-shun
gonad	GO-nad
gynecology	gi-neh-KOL-o-je
gynecomastia	gi-neh-ko-MAS-te-ah
human chorionic gonadotropin	HU-man ko-re-ON- ik go-nad-o-TRO-pin
hymen	HI-men
hysterectomy	his-ter-EK-to-me
hysteroscopy	his-ter-OS-ko-pe
inframammary	in-frah-MAM-ar-e
intrauterine device	in-trah-U-ter-in de-VISE
involution	in-vo-LU-shun
labia	LA-be-ah
lactation	lak-TA-shun
lactiferous ducts	lak-TIH-fer-us dukts
leukorrhea	lu-ko-RE-ah
luteinizing hormone	LU-teh-ni-zing HOR-mone
mammary papilla	MAH-meh-re pah-PIL-ah
mammoplasty	MAH-mo-plas-te
mastectomy	mah-STEK-to-me
mastitis	mah-STI-tis
menarche	meh-NAR-ke
menometrorrhagia	meh-no-meh-tro-RA-jah
menopause	MEN-o-pawz
menorrhagia	men-o-RA-jah
menorrhea	men-o-RE-ah
menstruation	men-stru-A-shun
metrorrhagia	met-ro-RA-jah
multigravida	mul-tih-GRAV-ih-dah
multipara	mul-TIH-pah-rah
myomectomy	mi-o-MEK-to-me
myometrium	mi-o-ME-tre-um
neonatal	ne-o-NA-tal
neonatology	ne-o-na-TOL-o-je
nulligravida	nul-leh-GRAV-ih-dah
nullipara	nul-LIH-pah-rah
obstetrics	ob-STET-riks
oligomenorrhea	ol-ig-o-men-o-RE-ah

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
oocyte	o-o-SITE
oogenesis	o-o-JEN-eh-sis
oophorectomy	oo-fo-REK-to-me
oophoritis	oo-fo-RI-tis
orifice	OR-ih-fis
ovarian	o-VAH-re-an
ovarian follicle	o-VAH-re-an FOL-ih-kil
ovary	O-vah-re
ovulation	ov-u-LA-shun
ovum; *pl.* ova	O-vum; O-va
oxytocia	ox-e-TO-se-ah
oxytocin	ox-se-TO-sin
parturition	par-tu-RIH-shun
perimetrium	peh-rih-ME-tre-um
perineorrhaphy	peh-rih-ne-OR-ah-fe
perineum	peh-rih-NE-um
pituitary gland	pih-TU-ih-tah-re gland
placenta	plah-SEN-tah
pregnancy	PREG-nan-se
prenatal	pre-NA-tal
primigravida	prih-mih-GRAV-ih-dah
primipara	prih-MIP-ah-rah
primiparous	prih-MIP-pah-rus
progesterone	pro-JES-teh-rone
pseudocyesis	su-do-si-E-sis
puberty	PU-ber-te
pyosalpinx	pi-o-SAL-pinks
retroversion	re-tro-VER-zhun
salpingectomy	sal-pin-JEK-to-me
salpingitis	sal-pin-JI-tis
uterine prolapse	U-teh-rin PRO-laps
uterus	U-ter-us
vagina	vah-JI-nah
vaginal orifice	VAH-jih-nal OR-ih-fis
vaginitis	vah-jih-NI-tis
vulva	VUL-vah
vulvodynia	vul-vo-DIH-ne-ah

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
vulvovaginitis	vul-vo-vah-jih-NI-tis
zygote	ZI-gote

Pathologic Conditions, Clinical Tests, and Procedures

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
abortion	ah-BOR-shun
abruptio placentae	ah-BRUP-se-o plah-SEN-ta
Apgar score	AP-gar score
breast cancer	brest KAN-ser
carcinoma in situ	kar-sih-NO-mah in SI-tu
cauterization	kaw-ter-ih-ZA-shun
cesarean section	seh-ZAH-re-an SEK-shun
cervical cancer	SER-vih-kul KAN-ser
cervical dysplasia	SER-vih-kul dis-PLA-ze-ah
cervicitis	ser-vih-SI-tis
choriocarcinoma	ko-re-o-kar-sih-NO-mah
chorionic villus sampling	ko-re-ON-ik VIL-us SAMP-ling
colposcopy	kol-POS-ko-pe
conization	ko-nih-ZA-shun
cryosurgery	kri-o-SUR-jer-e
culdocentesis	kul-do-sen-TE-sis
dermoid cysts	DER-moyd sists
dilatation	dih-lah-TA-shun
dilation and curettage	di-LA-shun & kur-eh-TAZH
Down syndrome	Down SIN-drohm
ectopic preganancy	ek-TOP-ik PREG-nan-se
endometrial cancer	en-do-ME-tre-al KAN-ser
endometriosis	en-do-me-tre-O-sis
exenteration	eks-en-teh-RA-shun
fetal monitoring	FE-tal MON-it-or-ing
fibrocystic breast disease	fi-bro-SIS-tik brest dih-ZEEZ
fibroids	FI-broydz
fine needle aspiration	fine NE-dil as-pih-RA-shun
hemolytic disease of the newborn	he-mo-LIH-tic dih-ZEEZ of the nu-born
hydrocephalus	hi-dro-SEF-ah-lus
hysterosalpingography	his-ter-o-sal-ping-OG-rah-fe
in vitro fertilizaiton	in VE-tro fer-til-ih-ZA-shun
infant respiratory distress syndrome	IN-fant RES-pih-rah-tor-e dis-TRES SIN-drohm
laparoscopy	lap-ah-ROS-ko-pe
leiomyomas	li-o-mi-O-maz
mammography	mah-MOG-rah-fe

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
meconium aspiration syndrome	meh-KO-ne-um as-pih-RA-shun SIN-drohm
multiple gestation	MUL-tih-pel jes-TA-shun
ovarian cancer	o-VAH-re-an KAN-ser
ovarian cysts	o-VAH-re-an sists
palpation	pal-PA-shun
Pap test	pap test
pelvic inflammatory disease	PEL-vik in-FLAM-mah-tor-e dih-ZEEZ
pelvic ultrasonography	PEL-vic ul-trah-son-OG-rah-fe
placenta previa	plah-sen-tah PREH-ve-ah
preeclampsia	pre-e-KLAMP-se-ah
pregnancy test	PREG-nan-se test
pyloric stenosis	pi-LOR-ik steh-NO-sis
tubal ligation	TOOB-al li-GA-shun

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of the word parts in the spaces provided, and test yourself. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
amni/o	_____
bartholin/o	_____
cephal/o	_____
cervic/o	_____
chori/o, chorion/o	_____
colp/o	_____
culd/o	_____
episi/o	_____
galact/o	_____
gynec/o	_____
hyster/o	_____
lact/o	_____
mamm/o, mast/o	_____
men/o	_____
metr/o, metri/o	_____
my/o, myom/o	_____
nat/i	_____
obstetr/o	_____
olig/o	_____
o/o, ov/o, ovul/o	_____
oophor/o, ovari/o	_____
perine/o	_____
phor/o	_____
py/o	_____
salping/o	_____
uter/o	_____
vagin/o	_____
vulv/o	_____

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING
bi-	_____
dys-	_____
endo-	_____
in-	_____
intra-	_____
multi-	_____
nulli-	_____
oxy-	_____
peri-	_____
pre-	_____
primi-	_____
pseudo-	_____
retro-	_____
uni-	_____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-arche	_____
-cyesis	_____
-dynia	_____
-ectomy	_____
-flexion	_____
-genesis	_____
-gravida	_____
-itis	_____
-pareunia	_____
-parous	_____
-plasia	_____
-plasty	_____
-rrhagia	_____
-rrhaphy	_____
-rrhea	_____
-salpinx	_____
-scopy	_____
-stenosis	_____
-stomy	_____
-tocia, -tocin	_____
-tomy	_____
-version	_____

Diagnostic Procedures

Match the diagnostic procedures in Column I with their descriptions in Column II. Check your answers with the information in the chapter.

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. fine needle aspiration	_____	A. Uterus and fallopian tubes are imaged (x-ray procedure).
2. colposcopy	_____	B. hCG is measured.
3. culdocentesis	_____	C. X-ray images are taken of the breast.
4. hysterosalpingography	_____	D. Procedure to biopsy breast tissue.
5. mammography	_____	E. Removal of cervical and vaginal cells for analysis.
6. Pap test	_____	F. Fluid is obtained from the region between the rectum and the uterus.
7. pregnancy test	_____	G. Images of the region of the hip are obtained using sound waves.
8. pelvic ultrasonography	_____	H. Microscopic visual examination of the vagina and cervix.

CHAPTER 9

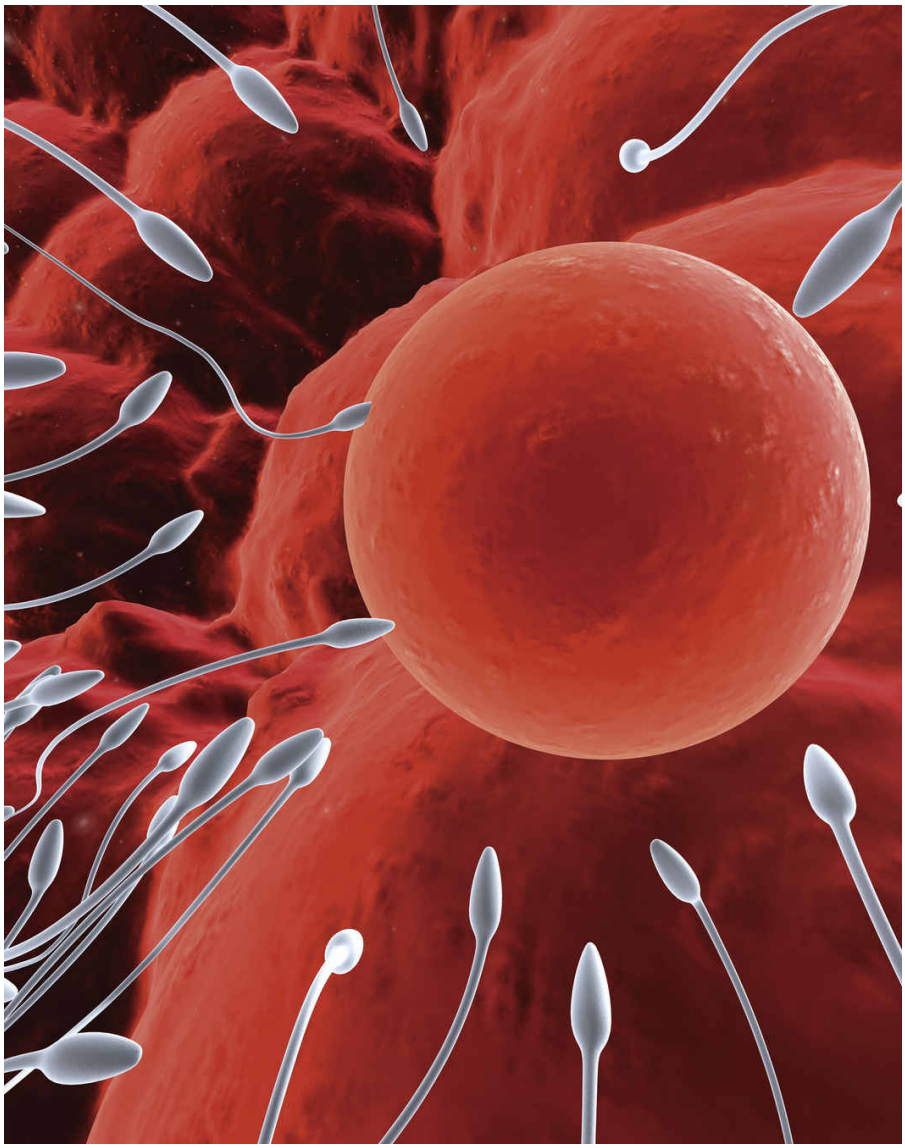
Male Reproductive System

CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 292
Anatomy 293
Vocabulary 295
Terminology 297
Pathologic Conditions; Sexually Transmitted Diseases 299
Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures 304
Abbreviations 306
Practical Applications 307
In Person: Prostate Cancer 309
Exercises 310
Answers to Exercises 316
Pronunciation of Terms 318
Review Sheet 320

CHAPTER GOALS

- Name, locate, and describe the functions of the organs of the male reproductive system.
- Define abnormal conditions and infectious diseases that affect the male reproductive system.
- Differentiate among several types of sexually transmitted infections.
- Define combining forms used to describe the structures of this system.
- Describe various laboratory tests and clinical procedures pertinent to disorders of the male reproductive system, and recognize related abbreviations.
- Apply your new knowledge to understanding medical terms in their proper contexts, such as medical reports and records.



Introduction

The male sex cell, the **spermatozoon** (sperm cell), is microscopic—in volume, only one third the size of a red blood cell and less than 1/100,000 the size of the female ovum. A relatively uncomplicated cell, the sperm is composed of a head region, containing nuclear hereditary material (chromosomes), and a tail region, consisting of a **flagellum** (hair-like process). The flagellum makes the sperm motile and makes it look somewhat like a tadpole. The spermatozoon cell contains relatively little food and cytoplasm, because it lives only long enough (3 to 5 days) to travel from its point of release from the male to where the egg cell lies within the female reproductive tract (fallopian tube). Only one spermatozoon out of approximately 300 million sperm cells released during a single **ejaculation** (ejection of sperm and fluid from the male urethra) can penetrate a single ovum and result in fertilization of the ovum. Figure 9-1 shows a diagram of a **sperm cell** and a photograph of **spermatozoa**.

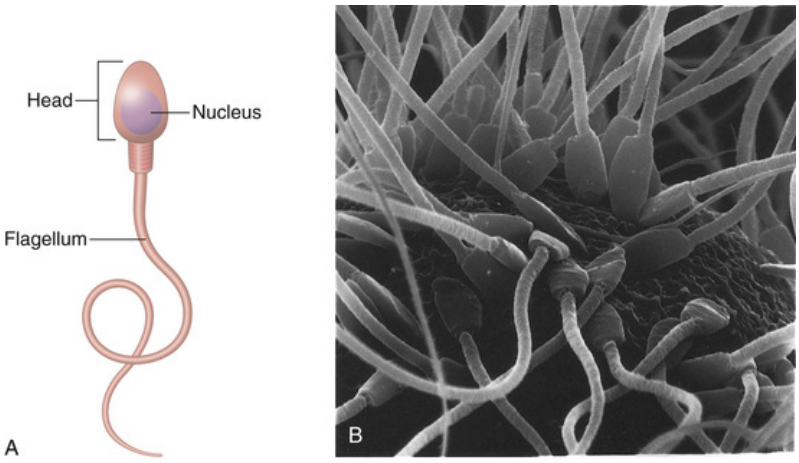


FIGURE 9-1 **A, Sperm cell. B,** Photograph of **spermatozoa.**

If more than one egg is passing down the fallopian tube when sperm are present, multiple fertilizations are possible, and twins, triplets, quadruplets, and so on may occur. Twins resulting from the fertilization of separate ova by separate sperm cells are called **fraternal twins.** Fraternal twins, developing with separate placentas, can be of the same sex or different sexes and resemble each other no more than ordinary brothers and sisters. Fraternal twinning is hereditary; the daughters of mothers of twins can carry the gene.

Identical twins result from fertilization of a single egg cell by a single sperm. As the fertilized egg cell divides and forms many cells, it somehow splits, and each part continues separately to undergo further division, each producing an embryo. The split usually occurs between the third and fifth days of embryonic development. Most identical twins have one placenta and two amniotic sacs. Identical twins have the same DNA and are, therefore, of the same sex and of very similar form and feature.

The organs of the male reproductive system are designed to produce and release billions of spermatozoa throughout the lifetime of a male from puberty onward. In addition, the male reproductive system secretes a hormone called **testosterone.** Testosterone is responsible for the production of the bodily characteristics of the male (such as beard, pubic hair, and deeper voice) and for the proper development of male gonads **(testes)** and accessory organs **(prostate gland** and **seminal vesicles)** that secrete fluids to ensure the lubrication and viability of sperm.

Anatomy

Label Figure 9-2 as you study the following description of the anatomy of the male reproductive system.

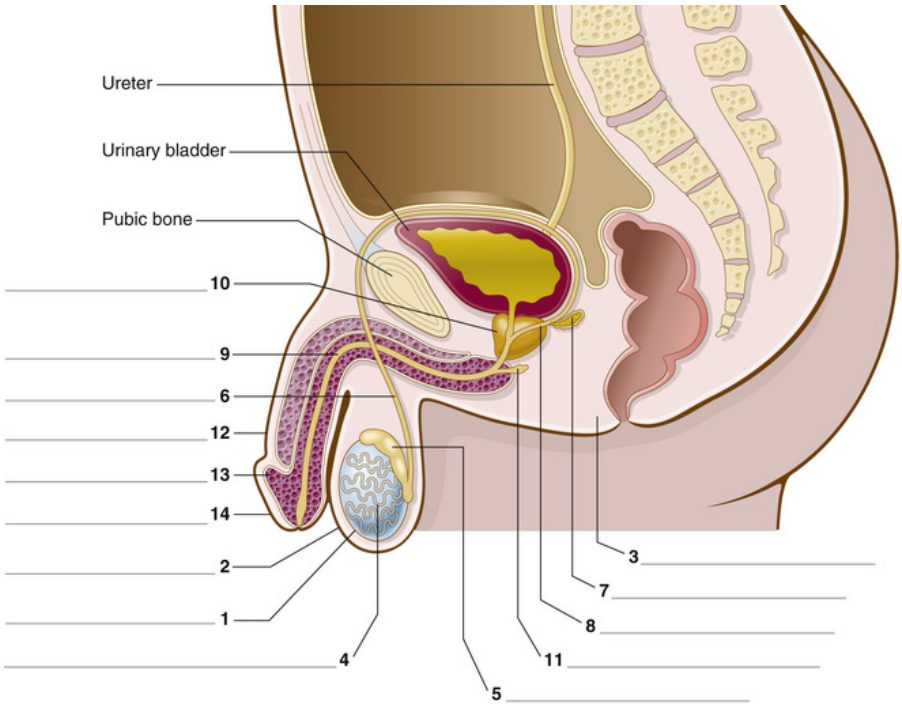


FIGURE 9-2 **Male reproductive system,** sagittal view.

Each male gonad is a **testis** [1]. There are two **testes** (plural) or **testicles** that develop in the abdomen at about the level of the kidneys before descending during embryonic development into the **scrotum** [2], a sac enclosing the testes on the outside of the body.

The scrotum, lying between the thighs, exposes the testes to a lower temperature than that of the rest of the body. This lower temperature is necessary for the adequate maturation and development of sperm **(spermatogenesis).** Located between the anus and the scrotum, at the floor of the pelvic cavity in the male, the **perineum** [3] is analogous to the perineal region in the female.

The interior of a testis is composed of a large mass of narrow, coiled tubules called the **seminiferous tubules** [4]. These tubules contain cells that manufacture spermatozoa. The seminiferous tubules are the **parenchymal tissue** of the testis, which means that they perform the essential work of the organ (formation of sperm). Other cells in the testis, lying adjacent to seminiferous tubules, are **interstitial cells.** They manufacture an important male hormone, **testosterone.**

All body organs contain **parenchyma**, which perform the essential functions of the organ. Organs also contain supportive, connective, and framework tissue, such as blood vessels, connective tissues, and sometimes muscle as well. This supportive tissue is called **stroma (stromal tissue).**

After formation, sperm cells move through the seminiferous tubules and collect in ducts that lead to a large tube, the **epididymis** [5], at the upper part of each testis. The spermatozoa mature, become motile in the epididymis, and are temporarily stored there. An epididymis runs down the length of each testicle (the coiled tube is about 16 feet long) and then turns upward again and becomes a narrow, straight tube called the **vas deferens** [6] or **ductus deferens.** Figure 9-3 shows the internal structure of a testis and the epididymis. The vas deferens is about 2 feet long and carries the sperm up into the pelvic region, at the level of the urinary bladder, merging with ducts from the **seminal vesicles** [7] to form the **ejaculatory duct** [8] leading toward the urethra. During a **vasectomy** or **sterilization** procedure, the urologist cuts and ties off each vas deferens by making an incision in the scrotum.

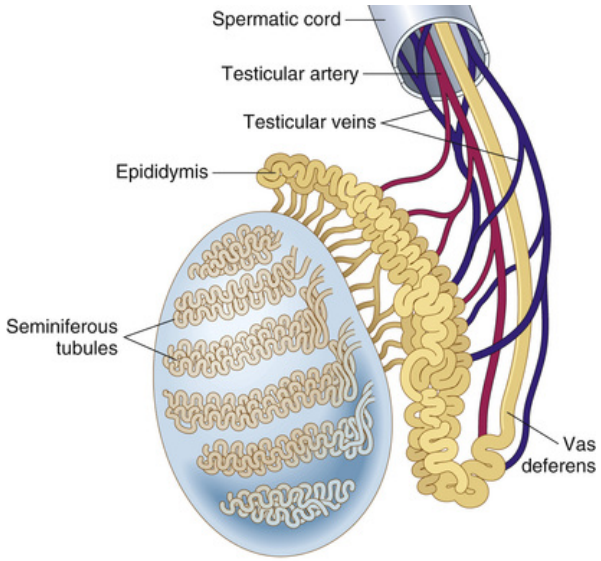


FIGURE 9-3 Internal structure of a testis and the epididymis.

The seminal vesicles, two glands (only one is shown in Figure 9-2) located at the base of the bladder, open into the ejaculatory duct as it joins the **urethra** [9]. They secrete a thick, sugary, yellowish substance that nourishes the sperm cells and forms a portion of ejaculated semen. **Semen,** a combination of fluid (seminal fluid) and spermatozoa (sperm cells account for less than 1% of the semen volume), is ejected from the body through the urethra. In the male, as opposed to that in the female, the genital orifice combines with the urinary (urethral) opening.

The **prostate gland** [10] lies at the region where the vas deferens enters the urethra, almost encircling the upper end of the urethra. It secretes a milky white fluid that is a mixture of sugars, enzymes, and alkaline chemicals. As part of semen, this fluid is nutritious for sperm cells, and after ejaculation into the vagina, the alkaline chemicals promote the survival of sperm in the acidic environment of the vagina. Muscular tissue of the prostate aids in the expulsion of fluid during ejaculation. **Bulbourethral glands** [11], lying below the prostate gland, also secrete fluid into the urethra during ejaculation.

The urethra passes through the **penis** [12] to the outside of the body. The penis is composed of erectile tissue and at its tip expands to form a soft, sensitive region called the **glans penis** [13]. Ordinarily, a fold of skin called the **prepuce,** or **foreskin** [14], covers the glans penis. The foreskin is attached to glans penis in uncircumcised babies. Between 2 and 10 years of age, the foreskin naturally detaches and can be pulled back from the head of the penis. If an infant is circumcised, the foreskin is removed, leaving the glans penis visible at all times.

Erectile dysfunction (impotence) is the inability of the adult male to achieve an erection. Viagra (sildenafil), Cialis (tadalafil), and Stendra (avanafil) are drugs that increase blood flow to the penis, enhancing ability to have an erection. **Male infertility** is any problem in a man that lowers the chances of his female partner getting pregnant.

The flow diagram in Figure 9-4 traces the path of spermatozoa from their formation in the seminiferous tubules of the testes to the outside of the body.

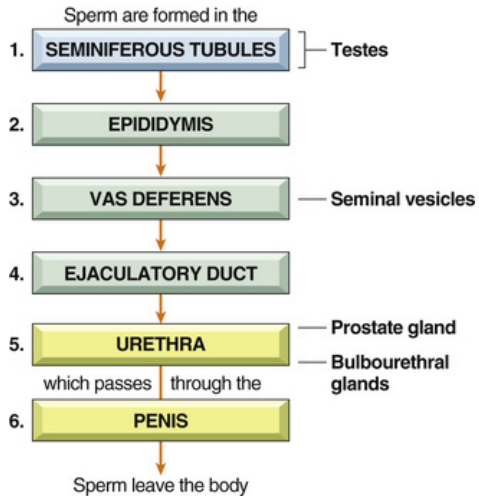


FIGURE 9-4 The **passage of sperm** from the seminiferous tubules in the testes to the outside of the body.

Vocabulary

This list reviews new terms introduced in the text. Short definitions reinforce your understanding.

bulbourethral glands	Pair of exocrine glands near the male urethra. They secrete fluid into the urethra. Also called **Cowper glands.**
circumcision	Removal of the prepuce (foreskin). It is a common elective procedure performed shortly after birth.
ejaculation	Ejection of sperm and fluid from the male urethra.
ejaculatory duct	Tube through which semen enters the male urethra.
epididymis (*plural:* epididymides)	One of a pair of long, tightly coiled tubes above each testis. It stores and carries sperm from seminiferous tubules to the vas deferens.
erectile dysfunction	Inability of an adult male to achieve an erection; impotence.
flagellum	Hair-like projection on a sperm cell that makes it motile (able to move).
foreskin	Fold of skin covering the head of the penis; prepuce.
fraternal twins	Two infants resulting from fertilization of two separate ova by two separate sperm cells (Figure 9-5).
glans penis	Sensitive tip of the penis; comparable to the clitoris in the female.
identical twins	Two infants resulting from division of one fertilized egg. Conjoined ("Siamese") twins are incompletely separated identical twins.
infertility	In a man, any problem that lowers the chances of his female partner getting pregnant.
interstitial cells of the testes	Specialized cells that lie adjacent to the seminiferous tubules in the testes. These cells produce testosterone and are also called **Leydig cells.**
parenchymal tissue	Essential distinctive cells of an organ. In the testis, the seminiferous tubules that produce sperm are parenchymal.
penis	Male external organ of reproduction.
perineum	External region between the anus and scrotum in the male.
prepuce	Foreskin; fold of skin covering the tip of the penis.
prostate gland	Exocrine gland at the base of the male urinary bladder. The prostate secretes fluid that contributes to semen during ejaculation. **HINT:** Don't confuse *prostate* with *prostrate,* which means lying down.
scrotum	External sac that contains the testes.
semen	Spermatozoa (sperm cells) and seminal fluid (prostatic and seminal vesicle secretions), discharged from the urethra during ejaculation.
seminal vesicles	Paired sac-like exocrine glands that secrete fluid (a major component of semen) into the vas deferens.
seminiferous tubules	Narrow, coiled tubules that produce sperm in the testes.
spermatozoon (*plural:* spermatozoa)	Sperm cell.
sterilization	Procedure that removes a person's ability to produce or release reproductive cells; removal of testicles, vasectomy, and oophorectomy are sterilization procedures.
stromal tissue	Supportive, connective tissue of an organ, as distinguished from its parenchyma. Also called **stroma.**
testis (*plural*: testes)	Male gonad **(testicle)** that produces spermatozoa and testosterone. *Remember*: Testis means one testicle, and testes are two testicles.
testosterone	Hormone secreted by the interstitial tissue of the testes; responsible for male sex characteristics.

vas deferens	Narrow tube (one on each side) carrying sperm from the epididymis toward the urethra. Also called **ductus deferens.**

FIGURE 9-5 **Fraternal twins. A,** Notice the 6-week-old embryos in two separate amniotic sacs. **B,** Twins Marcos and Matheus Do Carmo are 16 years old. (Courtesy Juliana Do Carmo.)

Perineum/Peritoneum

Don't confuse **perineum,** which is the area between the anus and scrotum in the male and the anus and vagina in females, with the **peritoneum,** which is the membrane surrounding the abdominal cavity!

Semen/Sperm

Don't confuse *semen* with *sperm. Semen* is the thick, whitish secretion discharged from the urethra during ejaculation. **Sperm (spermatozoa)** are cells that develop in the testes. Semen contains sperm.

Sterilization/Impotence

Don't confuse **sterilization,** which can be performed in men and women, with **impotence,** which is the inability of a male to sustain an erection or achieve ejaculation.

Terminology

Write the meanings of the medical terms in the spaces provided.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
andr/o	male	androgen _____ *Testosterone is an androgen. The testes in males and the adrenal glands in both men and women produce androgens.*	
balan/o	glans penis (Greek *balanos*, means acorn)	balanitis _____ *An inflammation usually caused by overgrowth of organisms (bacteria and yeast) (Figure 9-6A).*	
cry/o	cold	cryogenic surgery _____ *Technique for prostate cancer treatment using freezing temperatures to destroy cancer cells.*	
crypt/o	hidden	cryptorchidism _____ *In this congenital condition, one or both testicles do not descend, by the time of birth, into the scrotal sac from the abdominal cavity (Figure 9-6B).*	
epididym/o	epididymis	epididymitis _____ *This is an inflammation usually caused by bacteria. Signs and symptoms are fever, chills, pain in the groin, and tender, swollen epididymis.*	
gon/o	seed (Greek *gone*, seed)	gonorrhea _____ *See page 302.*	
hydr/o	water, fluid	hydrocele _____ *See page 300.*	
orch/o, orchi/o, orchid/o	testis, testicle	orchiectomy _____ *Castration in males. (Also called orchidectomy.)* orchitis _____ *Caused by injury or by the mumps virus, which also infects the salivary glands.*	
pen/o	penis	penile _____ *-ile means pertaining to.* penoscrotal _____	
prostat/o	prostate gland	prostatitis _____ *Bacterial (E. coli) prostatitis often is associated with urethritis and infection of the lower urinary tract.* prostatectomy _____ ***Robotic assisted laparoscopic prostatectomy (RALP)** is a treatment option for prostate removal.*	
semin/i	semen, seed	seminiferous tubules _____ *The suffix -ferous means pertaining to bearing, or bearing or carrying.*	
sperm/o, spermat/o	spermatozoa, semen	spermolytic _____ *Noun suffixes ending in -sis, such as -lysis, form adjectives by dropping the -sis and adding -tic.* oligospermia _____ aspermia _____ *Lack of semen (sperm and fluid). One cause of aspermia is retrograde ejaculation (sperm flows backward into the urinary bladder) as a result of prostate surgery.*	

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
terat/o	monster (Greek *teras*, monster)	teratoma _____ *This tumor occurs in the testes or ovaries and is composed of different types of tissue, such as bone, hair, cartilage, and skin cells. Teratomas in the testes are malignant.*	
test/o	testis, testicle	testicular _____ *The term testis originates from a Latin term meaning witness. In ancient times men would take an oath with one hand on their testes, swearing by their manhood to tell the truth.*	
varic/o	varicose veins	varicocele _____ *Collection of varicose (swollen, twisted) veins above the testis. See page 300.*	
vas/o	vessel, duct; vas deferens	vasectomy _____ *See page 306. Remember: In this term, vas/o refers to the vas deferens, and not to any other vessel or duct.*	
zo/o	animal life	azoospermia _____ *Lack of spermatozoa in the semen. Causes include testicular dysfunction, chemotherapy, blockage of the epididymis, and vasectomy.* **HINT: Azoospermia** is semen without sperm, while **aspermia** is no semen at all.	

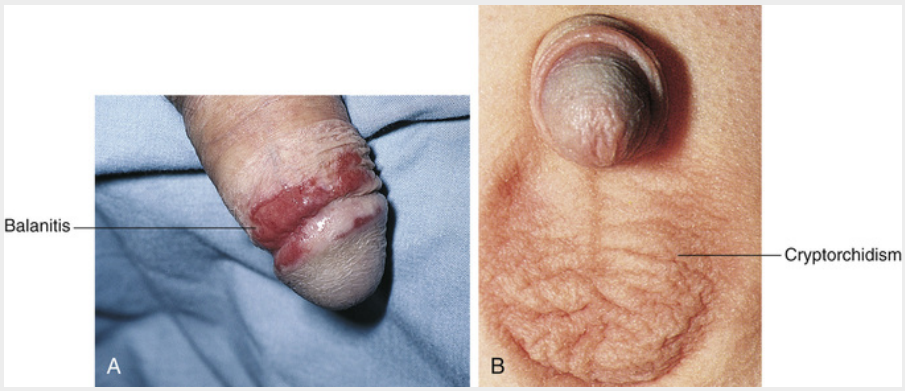


FIGURE 9-6 **A, Balanitis.** The **glans penis** (or **glans**) is the sensitive bulbous area at the distal end of the penis. **B, Cryptorchidism.**

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-genesis	formation	spermatogenesis	
-one	hormone	testosterone *Ster/o indicates that this is a type of steroid compound. Examples of other steroids are estrogen, cortisol, and progesterone.*	
-pexy	fixation, put in place	orchiopexy *A surgical procedure to correct cryptorchidism.*	
-stomy	new opening	vasovasostomy *Reversal of vasectomy; a urologist rejoins the cut ends of the vas deferens.*	

Derivation of orchid/o

This combining form is derived from the Greek word *orchis*, meaning testicle. The botanical name for orchid, the flower, is also derived from the same Greek word because of the fleshy tubers of the plant.

Azoospermia and Infertility

Male factor infertility is the cause of up to 40% of infertility issues. The most common causes of male infertility are azoospermia and **oligoasthenozoospermia** (low numbers and poor motility of sperm). The combining form asthen/o means lack of strength.

Pathologic Conditions; Sexually Transmitted Infections

Tumors and Anatomic/Structural Disorders

Testes

testicular cancer (carcinoma of the testes)	**Malignant tumor of the testicles.** Testicular tumors are rare except in the 15- to 35-year-old age group. The most common tumor, a **seminoma,** arises from embryonic cells in the testes (Figure 9-7A). Other tumors are **embryonal carcinoma** (Figure 9-7B), **teratoma, choriocarcinoma,** and **yolk sac tumor.** Teratomas contain a mixture of mature tissue such as bone, hair, cartilage, and skin cells (terat/o means monster).
	Testicular cancers are curable with surgery (orchiectomy), followed by chemotherapy. Seminomas are treated with radiotherapy and/or chemotherapy. Tumors produce the proteins **human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG)** and **alpha-fetoprotein (AFP).** Serum levels of these proteins are used as **tumor markers** to determine success of treatment.
cryptorchidism; cryptorchism	**Undescended testicles.** Orchiopexy is performed to bring the testes into the scrotum, if they do not descend on their own by the age of 1 or 2 years. Undescended testicles are associated with a high risk for sterility and increased risk of developing testicular cancer.
hydrocele	**Sac of clear fluid in the scrotum.** Hydroceles (Figure 9-8) may be congenital or occur as a response to infection or tumors. Often idiopathic, they can be differentiated from testicular masses by ultrasound imaging. If the hydrocele does not resolve on its own, the sac fluid is aspirated using a needle and syringe, or hydrocelectomy may be necessary. In this procedure, the sac is surgically removed through an incision in the scrotum.
testicular torsion	**Twisting of the spermatic cord** (see Figure 9-8)**.** The rotation of the spermatic cord cuts off blood supply to the testis. Torsion occurs most frequently in childhood. Surgical correction within hours of onset of symptoms can save the testis.
varicocele	**Enlarged, dilated veins near the testicle.** Varicocele (see Figure 9-8) may be associated with oligospermia and azoospermia. Oligospermic men with varicocele and scrotal pain should have a varicocelectomy. In this procedure, the internal spermatic vein is ligated (the affected segment is cut out and the ends are tied off). This procedure may increase fertility.

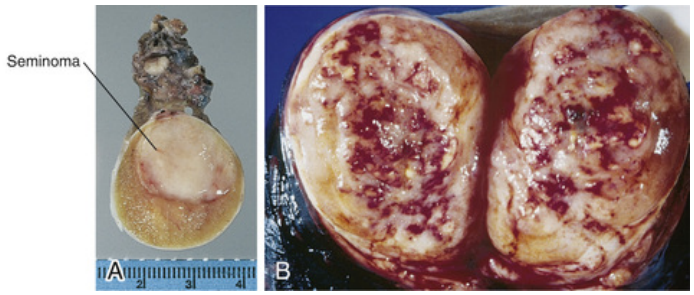


FIGURE 9-7 **A, Seminoma of a testis. B, Embryonal carcinoma** of a testis. In contrast with the seminoma, which is a pale, homogeneous mass, the embryonal carcinoma is a hemorrhagic mass.

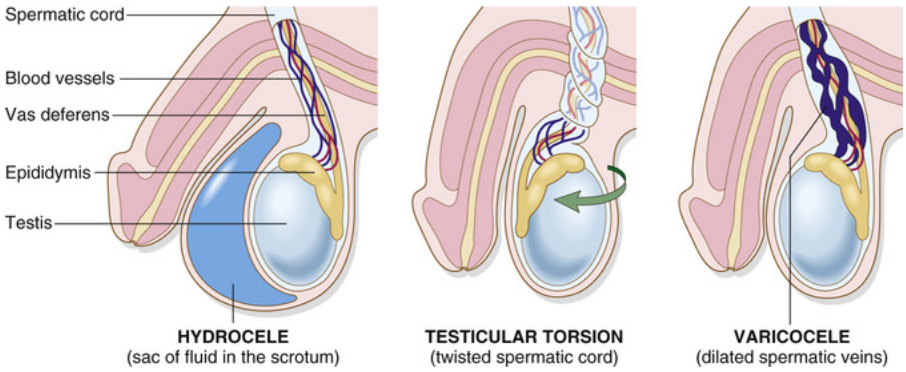


FIGURE 9-8 Hydrocele, testicular torsion, and varicocele.

Testicular Cancer Detection

There may be no signs or symptoms of testicular cancer. Regular testicular self-examinations, however, can help identify growths earlier, when the chance for successful treatment is highest. A man should see a doctor if he detects any mass, pain, or swelling in the scrotum.

Prostate Gland

benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH)	**Benign growth of cells within the prostate gland.** BPH is a common condition in men older than 60 years of age. Urinary obstruction and inability to empty the bladder completely are symptoms. Figure 9-9 shows the prostate gland with BPH and with carcinoma. Surgical treatment by **transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP)** relieves the obstruction, but overgrowth of cells may recur over several years. In this procedure, an endoscope (resectoscope) is inserted into the penis and through the urethra. Prostatic tissue is removed by an electrical hot loop attached to the resectoscope (see page 305). Several drugs to relieve BPH symptoms have been approved by the FDA. Finasteride (Proscar) inhibits production of a potent testosterone that promotes enlargement of the prostate. Other drugs, alpha blockers such as tamsulosin (Flomax), act by relaxing the smooth muscle of the prostate and the neck of the bladder. Lasers also may be used to destroy prostatic tissue and relieve obstruction. A **laser TURP** or **GreenLight PVP** procedure uses a green light laser at the end of an endoscope (see page 305).
prostate cancer (carcinoma of the prostate)	**Malignant tumor (adenocarcinoma) of the prostate gland.** This cancer commonly occurs in men older than 50 years. **Digital rectal examination (DRE)** (Figure 9-10) can detect the tumor at a later stage, but early detection depends on finding a high level of a **prostate-specific antigen (PSA)** in the blood. PSA is secreted into the bloodstream by tumor cells. The normal PSA level is 4.0 ng/mL or less.
	Diagnosis requires finding tumor in a needle biopsy of the prostate. Transrectal ultrasound (TRUS) guides the needle biopsy taken through the rectal wall. Multiple needle biopsy specimens are taken through the rectal wall. Computed tomography (CT) detects lymph node metastases. Treatment consists of surgery (prostatectomy) or radiation therapy for localized tumor. Hormonal therapy is used for locally advanced or metastatic disease. Because prostatic cells are stimulated to grow in the presence of androgens, antiandrogen drugs slow tumor growth. One such drug is Lupron, which reduces the level of androgens in the bloodstream. Tumor cells also can be destroyed by brachytherapy (brachy = near), which means that radioactive seeds are implanted directly into the prostate gland. See the ***In Person: Prostate Cancer*** story on page 309.

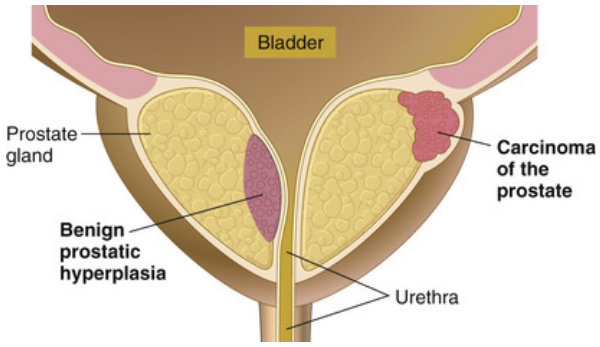


FIGURE 9-9 The prostate gland with carcinoma and benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH). Carcinoma usually arises around the sides of the gland, whereas BPH occurs in the center of the gland. Because prostate cancers are located more peripherally, they can be palpated on digital rectal exam (DRE).

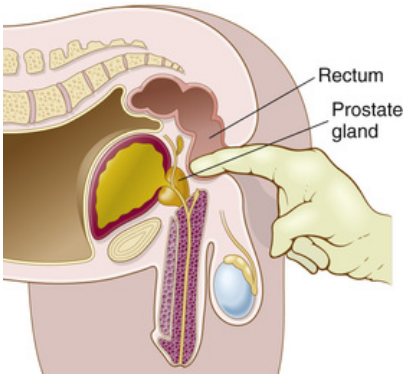


FIGURE 9-10 Digital rectal examination (DRE) of the prostate gland.

Penis

hypospadias	**Congenital abnormality in which the male urethral opening is on the undersurface of the penis, instead of at its tip.** Hypospadias (-spadias means the condition of tearing or cutting) occurs in 1 in every 300 live male births and can be corrected surgically (Figure 9-11A).
Peyronie disease	**Abnormal curvature of the penis** This condition is quite common and is caused by scar tissue in the connective tissue of the penis. Drug treatment can be effective by breaking down the buildup of fibrous tissue that causes penile curvature.
phimosis	**Narrowing (stricture) of the opening of the prepuce over the glans penis.** This abnormal condition (phim/o = muzzle) in adolescent and adult males can interfere with urination and cause secretions to accumulate under the prepuce, leading to infection. Treatment is by circumcision (cutting around the prepuce to remove it) (Figure 9-11B).

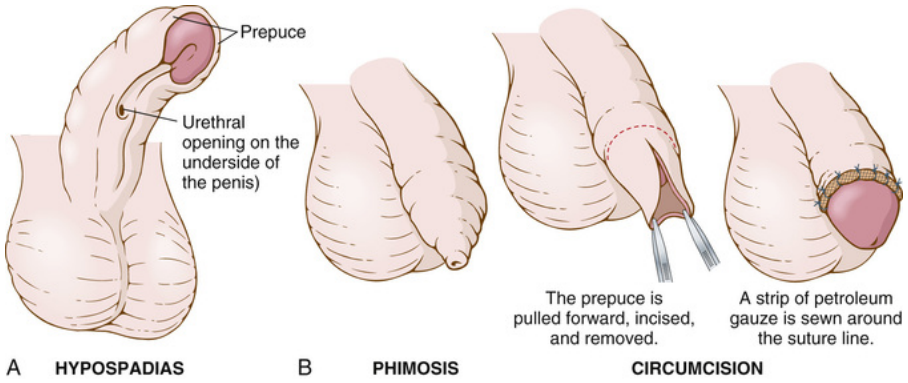

Prepuce
Urethral opening on the underside of the penis)
The prepuce is pulled forward, incised, and removed.
A strip of petroleum gauze is sewn around the suture line.
A HYPOSPADIAS
B PHIMOSIS
CIRCUMCISION

FIGURE 9-11 **A, Hypospadias.** Surgical repair involves elongating the urethra by using surrounding tissue or using a graft from tissue elsewhere in the body and bringing it to the exit at the tip of the penis. **B, Phimosis** and **circumcision** to correct the condition.

Sexually Transmitted Infections

Sexually transmitted infections (STIs) are infections transmitted by sexual or other genital contact. Also known as **sexually transmitted diseases (STDs)** or venereal diseases (from Latin *Venus*, the goddess of love), they occur in both men and women and are some of the most prevalent communicable diseases in the world.

chlamydia	**Bacterial infection (by *Chlamydia trachomatis*) of the urethra and reproductive tract.** Within 3 weeks after becoming infected, men may experience a burning sensation on urination and notice a white or clear discharge from the penis. Infected women may notice a yellowish vaginal discharge (from the endocervix), but often the disease is asymptomatic. Antibiotics cure the infection, but if untreated, this STI can cause salpingitis (pelvic inflammatory disease [PID]) and infertility in women.
gonorrhea	**Inflammation of the genital tract mucosa, caused by infection with gonococci (berry-shaped bacteria).** Other areas of the body, such as the eye, oral mucosa, rectum, and joints, may be affected as well. Signs and symptoms include dysuria and a yellow, mucopurulent (**purulent** means pus-filled) discharge from the male urethra (Figure 9-12A). The ancient Greeks mistakenly thought that this discharge was a leakage of semen, so they named the condition gonorrhea, meaning discharge of seed (gon/o = seed). Many women carry the disease asymptomatically, whereas others have pain, vaginal and urethral discharge, and salpingitis (PID). As a result of sexual activity, men and women can acquire anorectal and pharyngeal gonococcal infections as well. Chlamydia and gonorrhea often occur together. When treating these infections, doctors give antibiotics for both and treat both partners.
herpes genitalis	**Infection of skin and genital mucosa, caused by the herpes simplex virus (HSV).** Most cases of herpes genitalis are caused by HSV type 2 (although some are caused by HSV type 1, which commonly is associated with oral infections such as cold sores or fever blisters). The usual clinical presentation is reddening of skin with formation of small, **fluid-filled blisters** and ulcers (Figure 9-12B). Initial episodes also may involve inguinal lymphadenopathy, fever, headache, and malaise. Remissions and relapse periods occur; no drug is known to be effective as a cure. Neonatal herpes affects infants born to women with active infection near the time of delivery. Gynecologists may deliver infants by cesarean section to prevent infection of these babies by HSV. Studies suggest that women with herpes genitalis are at a higher risk for developing vulvar and cervical cancer.
human papillomavirus (HPV) infection	**Infection of the skin and mucous membranes in the anogenital region by the human papillomavirus.** Some types of HPV cause **genital warts** (see Figure 9-13A) and lead to cancer of the cervix as well as cancer in men. A vaccine is available for young girls and boys that protects against nine types of HPV.
syphilis	**Chronic STI caused by a spirochete (spiral-shaped bacterium).** A chancre (hard ulcer or sore) usually appears on the external genitalia a few weeks after bacterial infection (Figure 9-13B). Two to six months after the chancre disappears, secondary syphilis begins. Tertiary syphilis includes damage to the brain, spinal cord, and heart, which may appear years after the earlier symptoms disappear. Syphilis (which was so often fatal in early times that it was known as the "great pox"—versus the more familiar smallpox) can be congenital in the fetus if it is transmitted from the mother during pregnancy. Penicillin is effective for treatment in most cases.

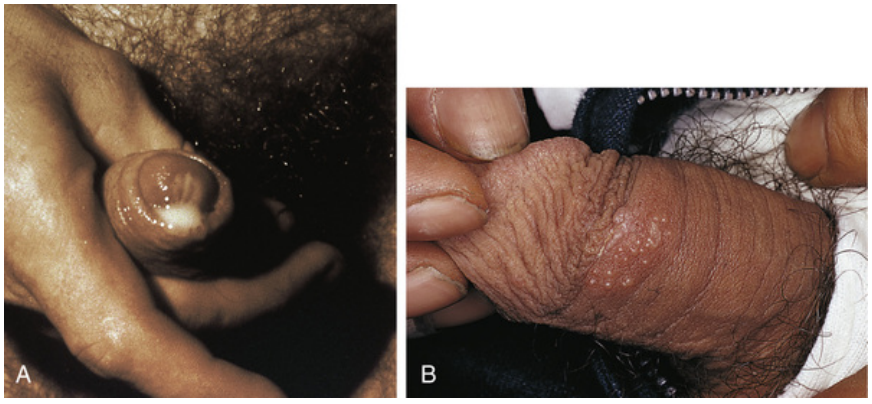


FIGURE 9-12 **A, Gonorrhea.** Discharge from the penis can be seen. **B, Herpes genitalis.** The classic blisters (vesicles) are evident.

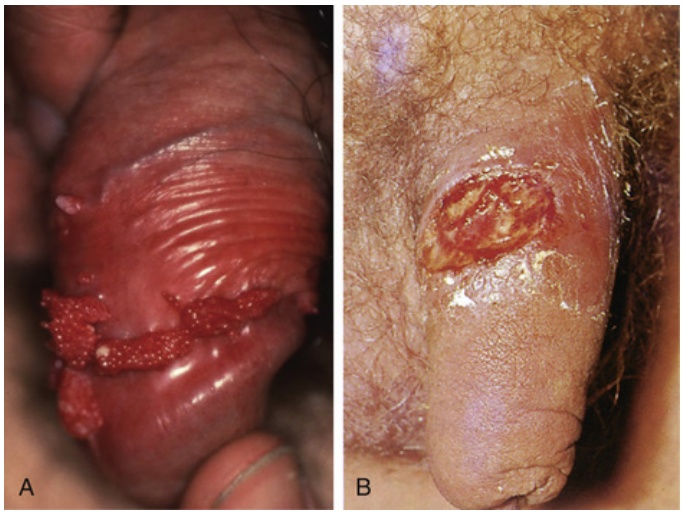


FIGURE 9-13 A, Genital warts. B, Primary syphilis with chancre on penis.

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Laboratory Tests

PSA test	**Measurement of levels of prostate-specific antigen (PSA) in the blood.** PSA is produced by cells within the prostate gland. Elevated levels of PSA are associated with enlargement of the prostate gland and may be a sign of prostate cancer.
semen analysis	**Microscopic examination of ejaculated fluid.** Sperm cells are counted and examined for motility and shape. The test is part of fertility studies and is required to establish the effectiveness of vasectomy. Men with sperm counts of less than 20 million/mL of semen usually are sterile (not fertile). Sterility can result in an adult male who becomes ill with mumps, an infectious disease affecting the testes (inflammation leads to deterioration of spermatozoa).

Clinical Procedures

castration	**Surgical excision of testicles or ovaries.** Castration may be performed to reduce production and secretion of hormones that stimulate growth of malignant cells (in breast cancer and prostate cancer). When a boy is castrated before puberty, he becomes a eunuch (Greek, *eune,* couch; *echein,* to guard). Male secondary sex characteristics fail to develop.
circumcision	**Surgical procedure to remove the prepuce (foreskin) of the penis.** See Figure 9-11B, page 303.
digital rectal examination (DRE)	**Finger palpation through the anal canal and rectum to examine the prostate gland.** See Figure 9-10, page 301.
photoselective vaporization of the prostate (GreenLight PVP)	**Removal of tissue to treat benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) using a green light laser ("laser TURP").** This minimally invasive procedure in selected cases replaces TURP for treatment of BPH.
transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP)	**Removal of portions of prostate gland through the urethra.** This procedure treats benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH). An electrical hot loop cuts the prostatic tissue; the bits of tissue (chips) are removed through the resectoscope (Figure 9-14).
vasectomy	**Bilateral surgical removal of a part of the vas deferens.** A urologist cuts the vas deferens, removes a piece, and performs a **ligation** (tying and binding off) of the free ends with sutures (Figure 9-15); this is repeated on the opposite side. The procedure is performed using local anesthesia and through an incision in the scrotal sac. Because spermatozoa cannot leave the body, the vasectomized man is sterile, but not castrated. Normal hormone secretion, sex drive, and potency (ability to have an erection) are intact. The body reabsorbs unexpelled sperm. In some cases, a vasovasostomy can successfully reverse vasectomy.

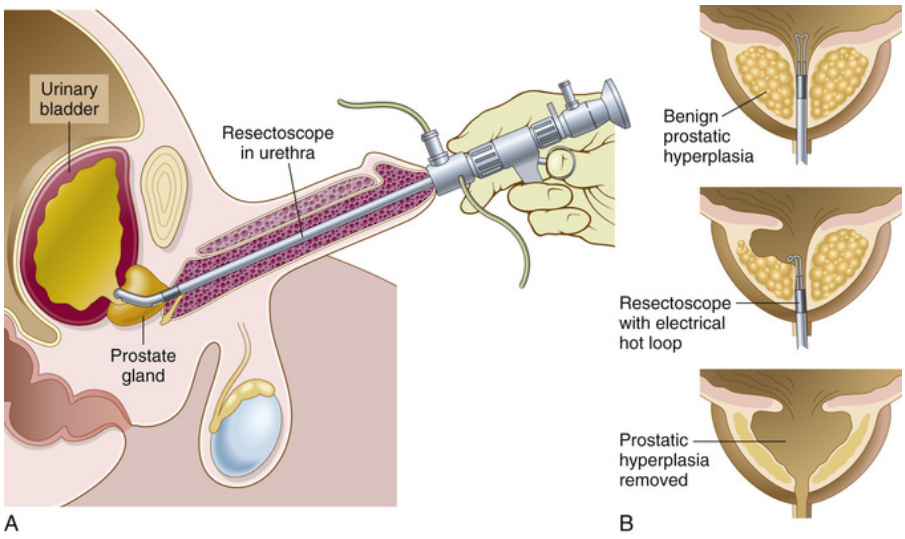


FIGURE 9-14 **Transurethral resection of the prostate (TURP). A,** The resectoscope contains a light, valves for controlling irrigating fluid, and an electrical loop that cuts tissue and seals blood vessels. **B,** The urologist uses a wire loop through the resectoscope to remove obstructing tissue one piece at a time. The pieces are carried by the fluid into the bladder and flushed out at the end of the operation.

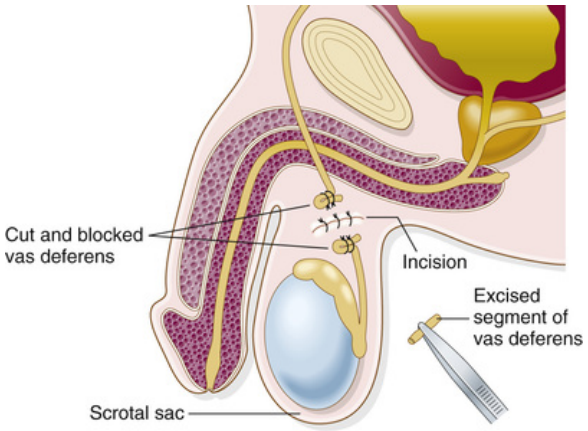


FIGURE 9-15 Vasectomy.

Abbreviations

BPH	benign prostatic hyperplasia
DRE	digital rectal examination
ED	erectile dysfunction
GU	genitourinary
HPV	human papillomavirus
HSV	herpes simplex virus
NSU	nonspecific urethritis (not due to gonorrhea or chlamydia)
PID	pelvic inflammatory disease
PIN	prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia; a precursor of prostate cancer
PSA	prostate-specific antigen
PVP	photoselective vaporization of the prostate; GreenLight PVP
RALP	robotic assisted laparoscopic prostatectomy
RPR	rapid plasma reagin [test]; a test for syphilis
STD	sexually transmitted disease
STI	sexually transmitted infection
TRUS	transrectal ultrasound [examination]; test to assess the prostate and guide precise placement of a biopsy needle
TUIP	transurethral incision of the prostate; successful in less enlarged prostates and less invasive than TURP
TUMT	transurethral microwave thermotherapy
TUNA	transurethral needle ablation; radiofrequency energy destroys prostate tissue
TURP	transurethral resection of the prostate

Practical Applications

Reproduced here from actual medical records is a case report on a patient with post-TURP complaints. Background data and explanations of more difficult terms are added in brackets. Answers to the questions are on page 317.

Also presented for your review is an actual surgical pathology report for a man diagnosed with prostate cancer, as well as a summary of current knowledge on anabolic steroids.

Case Report: A Man with Post-Turp Complaints

The patient is a 70-year-old man who underwent a TURP for BPH 5 years ago and now has severe obstructive urinary symptoms with a large postvoid residual.

On DRE, his prostate was found to be large, bulky, and nodular, with palpable extension to the left seminal vesicle. His PSA level was 15 ng/mL [normal is 0 to 4 ng/mL] and a bone scan was negative. A CT scan revealed bilateral external iliac adenopathy with lymph nodes measuring 1.5 cm on average [normal lymph node size is less than 1 cm]. A prostatic biopsy revealed a poorly differentiated adenocarcinoma.

This patient most likely has at least stage T3 N+ disease [extension into seminal vesicles and nodal metastases]. Recommendation is anti-testosterone hormonal drug treatment.

Questions about the Case Report

1. Five years previously, the patient had which type of surgery?
    a. Removal of testicles
    b. Perineal prostatectomy
    c. Partial prostatectomy (transurethral)
2. What was the reason for the surgery then?
    a. Cryptorchidism

b. Benign overgrowth of the prostate gland
c. Testicular cancer

3. What symptom does he have now?
   a. Burning pain on urination
   b. Urinary retention
   c. Premature ejaculation
4. What examination allowed the physician to feel the tumor?
   a. Palpation by a finger inserted into the rectum
   b. CT scan
   c. Prostate-specific antigen test
5. Where had the tumor spread?
   a. Testes
   b. Pelvic lymph nodes and left seminal vesicle
   c. Pelvic bone
6. What is likely to stimulate prostatic adenocarcinoma growth?
   a. Hormonal drug treatment
   b. Prostatic biopsy
   c. Testosterone secretion
7. Stage T3 N+ means that the tumor
   a. Is localized to the hip area
   b. Is confined to the prostate gland
   c. Has spread locally and beyond lymph nodes
8. Why is staging of tumors important?
   a. To classify the extent of spread of the tumor and to plan treatment
   b. To make the initial diagnosis
   c. To make an adequate biopsy of the tumor

Surgical Pathology Report: Prostate Cancer/Hyperplasia

Patient name: Bill Scott
DOB: 9/14/1942 (Age 78)
Gender: M
Clinical Data: ?Nodule, right side of prostate; PSA 7.1
Specimen(s):
A. Right side prostate biopsy
B. Left side prostate biopsy
FINAL PATHOLOGIC DIAGNOSIS
A. Needle biopsy of right side prostate gland (six cores)
ADENOCARCINOMA, MODERATELY TO POORLY DIFFERENTIATED
Gleason score 4 + 3 = 7
Estimated tumor load, 10% of prostatic tissue
Represented in both specimens A and B
B. Needle biopsy of left side prostate gland
BENIGN HYPERPLASIA

About Anabolic Steroids

Anabolic steroids are male hormones (androgens) that increase body weight and muscle size and may be used by doctors to increase growth in boys who do not mature physically as expected for their age. Steroids also may be used by athletes in an effort to increase strength and

enhance performance; however, significant detrimental side effects of these drugs have been recognized:

- High levels of anabolic steroids cause acne, hepatic tumors, and sterility (testicular atrophy and oligospermia).
- In women, the androgenic effect of anabolic steroids leads to male hair distribution, deepening of the voice, amenorrhea, and clitoral enlargement.
- Anabolic steroid use also causes hypercholesterolemia, hypertension, jaundice (liver abnormalities), and salt and water retention (edema).

Gleason Score

The **Gleason score** (named after Dr. Donald Gleason, a pathologist who developed it in the 1960s) is based on the microscopic appearance of the prostate biopsy specimen. Cancers with a higher Gleason score are more aggressive and carry a worse prognosis. The pathologist assigns a grade (number) to the most common tumor cells and another to the next most common tumor cells. Adding these numbers together gives the Gleason score. The score is based on a scale from 1 to 5. More well-differentiated (closer to normal) cells are given a lower grade, and poorly differentiated (malignant) cells are given a higher grade.

In Person

Prostate Cancer

This is a first-person narrative of a man diagnosed with prostate cancer.

As with many men in their late 50s, the PSA prostate-related lab test was the first item I would always look at when having my annual physical. Over a few years, the PSA had been going up gradually, but nothing that seemed to indicate anything unusual. So it was a bit of a surprise when my primary care doctor suggested that it might be time to have a further medical review of the slowly increasing results. The PSA was 4.37 ng/mL (4.0 or less is considered normal).

Being in good overall health, I expected the follow-up prostate exam and biopsy to be of a routine nature. It was with great surprise that the prostate biopsy showed that 3 of 12 samples were positive for cancerous cells. My Gleason score was 6 (3 + 3). This situation was described to

me as favorable, an early-stage cancer. Nevertheless, I had no idea of the treatment options available.

I decided that the best way to reach a decision for a treatment plan was to get together with the doctors at the Mass General Cancer Center genitourinary clinic, where my situation would be reviewed, and to learn more about my options. I realized that the possibilities ranged widely, including watchful waiting, external radiation, internal radiation, and prostate surgery (prostatectomy). In the end, the decision becomes your own in early-stage prostate cancer, and that, in itself, can leave you second-guessing the choice.

After careful thought and review of the information with my physicians and family, I decided to pursue the internal radiation option, or brachytherapy, often referred to as implantation of radiation seeds. Even up to the time of the procedure, the question remained with me as to whether I was making the right choice. Should I wait a while and just see how things go? Would there be any of the side effects that are noted for this procedure, such as bowel or bladder irritation? I had the internal radiation done at MGH. The entire medical team there made the process from start to completion as easy an event as one could hope for. The best news was that after the procedure, as tumor disappeared, my PSA began to drop.

Now a year has passed, and I am happy to see that the PSA has continued downward. The long-term side effects of the brachytherapy procedure were related to urination and erectile dysfunction. While urination post-procedure was painful, discomfort dissipated within a week or so. Long term, managing the control of urination was an issue, but after a year it has definitely improved. Erectile dysfunction after any type of prostate procedure is an issue. I found it to be a major effect early on, but less as time progressed. There is still the required PSA testing to see that the tumor has not returned. But taking warning signs seriously, educating yourself, and making an informed decision with the help of the best medical team possible will make you feel good about your choices.

Kevin Mahoney is a U.S. veteran, now working as a program manager. He enjoys spending time with his family, including his wife, children, and grandchildren.

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with those given in the Answers to Exercises, page 316.

A **Using the terms below, fill in the flow chart showing the passage of sperm.**

epididymis

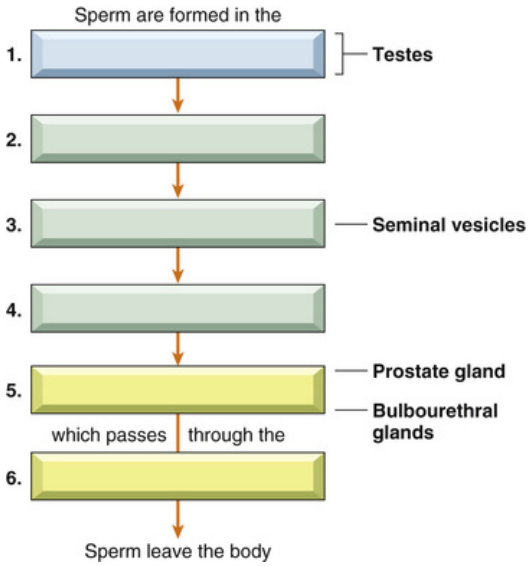
ejaculatory duct

penis

seminiferous tubules

urethra

vas deferens



B **Select from the list of terms to match the descriptions that follow.**

bulbourethral glands
epididymis
prepuce
prostate gland
scrotum
seminal vesicles
seminiferous tubules
spermatozoon
testis
vas deferens

1. one of a pair of long, tightly coiled tubes above each testis; carries and stores sperm _____
2. exocrine gland at the base of the male urinary bladder _____
3. narrow coiled tubules that produce sperm in the testes _____
4. sperm cell _____
5. foreskin _____

_____

6. male gonad; produces testosterone and sperm cells
_____
7. paired sac-like exocrine glands that secrete fluid into the vas deferens
_____
8. external sac that contains the testes
_____
9. narrow tube carrying sperm from the epididymis toward the urethra
_____
10. pair of exocrine glands near the male urethra; Cowper glands
_____

C **Select from the list of terms to match the descriptions that follow.**

ejaculation
ejaculatory duct
erectile dysfunction
flagellum
fraternal twins
glans penis
identical twins
interstitial cells
parenchymal tissue
perineum

1. hair-like projection on a sperm cell that makes it motile
_____
2. sensitive tip of the penis
_____
3. tube through which semen enters the urethra
_____
4. two infants resulting from division of one fertilized egg into separate embryos _____
5. external region between the anus and scrotum
_____
6. essential distinctive cells of an organ
_____

7. two infants resulting from fertilization of two ova by two sperm cells _____
8. inability of an adult male to achieve erection; impotence _____
9. specialized cells that lie adjacent to the seminiferous tubules _____
10. ejection of sperm and fluid from the urethra _____

D **Match the listed terms with the descriptions that follow.**

aspermia
azoospermia
impotence
oligospermia
penis
semen
sterilization
stromal tissue
testicle
testosterone

1. male external organ of reproduction _____
2. sperm cells and seminal fluid _____
3. hormone secreted by interstitial cells of the testes _____
4. supportive connective tissue of an organ _____
5. lack of semen _____
6. lack of sperm cells in semen _____
7. procedure that removes a person's ability to produce or release reproductive cells _____
8. semen with a low concentration of sperm _____

9. male gonad
_____
_
10. inability of a male to sustain or achieve an erection
_____

E **Build medical terms for the following definitions. Parts of the words are given.**

1. inflammation of the testes: _____itis
2. inflammation of the tube that carries the spermatozoa to the vas deferens: _____itis
3. resection of the prostate gland: _____ectomy
4. inflammation of the prostate gland: _____itis
5. process of producing (the formation of) sperm cells: _____genesis
6. fixation of undescended testicle: orchio_____
7. inflammation of the glans penis: _____itis
8. condition of scanty sperm: _____spermia
9. lack of semen: a_____
10. pertaining to a testicle: _____ar

F **Answer true or false:**

1. _____ Cryogenic surgery uses cold temperatures to destroy tissue.
2. _____ Estrogen is an example of an androgen.
3. _____ Castration (orchiectomy or oophorectomy) is an example of sterilization.
4. _____ A teratoma is a benign tumor of the prostate gland.
5. _____ Spermolytic means formation of sperm.
6. _____ Balanitis is inflammation of a testicle.
7. _____ Azoospermia causes infertility.
8. _____ Aspermia can result from retrograde ejaculation.
9. _____ Seminiferous tubules are the interstitial cells of the testes.
10. _____ Testosterone is produced by the parenchymal tissue of the testes.
11. _____ Vasectomy produces impotence.

12. _____ Vasovasostomy is an anastomosis that can restore fertility (ability to reproduce offspring).

G **Match the term in Column I with its meaning in Column II. Write the correct letter in the space provided.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. castration	_____	A. To tie off or bind
2. semen analysis	_____	B. Removal of a piece of the vas deferens
3. ejaculation	_____	C. Orchiectomy
4. purulent	_____	D. Removal of the prepuce
5. vasectomy	_____	E. Destruction of tissue by freezing
6. circumcision	_____	F. Pus-filled
7. ligation	_____	G. Test of fertility (reproductive ability)
8. cryosurgery	_____	H. Ejection of sperm and fluid from the urethra
9. seminoma	_____	I. Narrowing (stricture) of the opening of the prepuce over the glans penis
10. phimosis	_____	J. Malignant tumor of the testis

H **Select from the listed terms to fit the descriptions that follow.**

adenocarcinoma of the prostate
benign prostatic hyperplasia
cryptorchidism
gonorrhea
herpes genitalis
HPV infection
hydrocele
hypospadias
syphilis
varicocele

1. prostatic enlargement, nonmalignant
   _____
2. opening of the urethra on the undersurface of the penis
   _____
3. infection of skin and genital mucosa with HSV
   _____
4. malignant tumor of the prostate gland
   _____
5. enlarged, swollen veins near the testes
   _____

6. sexually transmitted disease with primary stage marked by formation of a chancre _____
7. infection of the skin and mucous membranes in the anogenital region by human papillomavirus
   _____
8. STI caused by berry-shaped bacteria and marked by inflammation of genital mucosa and mucopurulent discharge
   _____
9. undescended testicles
   _____
10. sac of clear fluid in the scrotum
    _____

I **Spell out the abbreviations in Column I. Then match each abbreviation with its correct meaning from Column II.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. PSA _____	_____	A. Manual diagnostic procedure to examine the prostate gland
2. BPH _____	_____	B. Removal of portions of prostate gland through the urethra
3. TURP _____	_____	C. Etiologic agent of a sexually transmitted disease characterized by blister formation
4. TRUS _____	_____	D. Noncancerous enlargement of the prostate gland
5. DRE _____	_____	E. Chlamydia, gonorrhea, and syphilis are examples of this general category of infections
6. HSV _____	_____	F. Helpful procedure in guiding a prostatic biopsy needle
7. STI _____	_____	G. High serum levels of this protein indicate prostatic carcinoma
8. RALP _____	_____	H. Assisted laparoscopic surgery to remove the prostate gland

J Give the meanings of the following word parts.

1. -one _____
2. -stomy _____
3. semin/i _____
4. -cele _____
5. -pexy _____

6. -genesis _____
7. -plasia _____
8. prostat/o _____
9. orch/o _____
10. terat/o _____
11. gon/o _____
12. hydr/o _____
13. pen/o _____
14. balan/o _____
15. varic/o _____
16. vas/o _____
17. test/o _____
18. zo/o _____
19. crypt/o _____
20. andr/o _____

K **Match the listed surgical procedures with the following reasons for performing them.**

circumcision
hydrocelectomy
orchiectomy
orchiopexy
photoselective vaporization of the prostate
radical (complete) prostatectomy
varicocelectomy
vasectomy
vasovasostomy

1. prostate cancer _____
2. cryptorchidism _____
3. sterilization (hormones remain and potency is not impaired) _____
4. benign prostatic hyperplasia _____
5. abnormal collection of fluid in a scrotal sac _____

6. reversal of sterilization procedure _____
7. embryonal carcinoma of the testes _____
8. phimosis _____
9. ligation of swollen, twisted veins above the testes _____

L **Use the given definitions to complete the terms. Check your answers carefully.**

1. gland at the base of the urinary bladder in males: pro _____ gland
2. coiled tube on top of each testis: epi _____
3. essential tissue of an organ: par _____ tissue
4. foreskin: pre _____
5. bacterial infection that invades the urethra and reproductive tract of men and women and is the major cause of nonspecific urethritis in males and cervicitis in females: ch _____
6. ulcer that forms on genital organs after infection with syphilis: ch _____
7. androgen produced by the interstitial cells of the testis: test _____
8. fluid secreted by male reproductive glands and ejaculated with sperm: se _____
9. malignant tumor of the testis: sem _____
10. pertaining to the penis: pen _____

M **Circle the correct term(s) to complete the following sentences.**

1. When Fred was a newborn infant, his doctors could feel only one testicle within the scrotum and suggested close monitoring of his condition of **(gonorrhea, cryptorchidism, benign prostatic hyperplasia).**
2. Bob had many sexual partners, one of whom had been diagnosed with **(testosterone, phimosis, chlamydia)**, a highly communicable STI.
3. At age 65, Mike had some difficulty with urgency and discomfort when urinating. His doctor did a digital rectal examination to examine his **(prostate gland, urinary bladder, vas deferens).**
4. Just after Nick's birth, his parents had a difficult time deciding whether to have their infant son undergo **(TURP, castration,**

circumcision).

5. Ted noticed a hard ulcer on his penis and made an appointment with his doctor, a **(gastroenterologist, gynecologist, urologist)**. The doctor viewed a specimen of the ulcer under the microscope and did a blood test, which revealed that Ted had contracted **(gonorrhea, herpes genitalis, syphilis)**, so the ulcer was a **(blister, chancre, seminoma).**
6. After his fifth child was born, Art decided to have a **(vasovasostomy, hydrocelectomy, vasectomy)** to prevent conception of another child. A/an **(nephrologist, urologist, abdominal surgeon)** performed the procedure to cut and ligate the **(urethra, epididymis, vas deferens)**.
7. Twenty-six-year-old Lance noticed a hard testicular mass. His physician prescribed a brief trial with **(antibodies, antibiotics, pain killers)** to rule out **(epididymitis, testicular cancer, varicocele)**. The mass remained and Lance underwent **(epididymectomy, orchiectomy, prostatectomy).** The mass was a **(seminoma, prostate cancer, hydrocele).**
8. Sarah and Steve had been trying to conceive a child for 7 years. Steve had a **(digital rectal examination, TURP, semen analysis),** which revealed 25% normal sperm count with 10% motility. He was told he had **(phimosis, azoospermia, oligospermia).**
9. To boost his sperm count, Steve was given **(estrogen, testosterone, progesterone)**. As a side effect, this **(androgen, progestin, enzyme)** gave him a case of acne lasting several months.
10. Sarah eventually became pregnant. An ultrasound examination showed two embryos with two separate placentas and in separate **(peritoneal, scrotal, amniotic)** sacs. Sarah gave birth to two healthy **(identical, fraternal, perineal)** twin girls.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. seminiferous tubules
2. epididymis
3. vas deferens
4. ejaculatory duct
5. urethra

6. penis

B

1. epididymis
2. prostate gland
3. seminiferous tubules
4. spermatozoon
5. prepuce
6. testis
7. seminal vesicles
8. scrotum
9. vas deferens
10. bulbourethral (Cowper) glands

C

1. flagellum
2. glans penis
3. ejaculatory duct
4. identical twins
5. perineum
6. parenchymal tissue
7. fraternal twins
8. erectile dysfunction
9. interstitial cells
10. ejaculation

D

1. penis
2. semen
3. testosterone

4. stromal tissue
5. aspermia
6. azoospermia
7. sterilization
8. oligospermia
9. testicle
10. impotence

E

1. orchitis
2. epididymitis
3. prostatectomy
4. prostatitis
5. spermatogenesis
6. orchiopexy
7. balanitis
8. oligospermia
9. aspermia
10. testicular

F

1. True.
2. False. Estrogen is a female hormone. Androgens are male hormones. Testosterone is an androgen.
3. True.
4. False. Teratoma is a malignant tumor in the testis.
5. False. Spermolytic is destruction of sperm. Spermatogenesis is formation of sperm.
6. False. Balanitis is inflammation of the glans penis. Orchitis is inflammation of a testicle.

7. True.
8. True. Semen is discharged backward into the urinary bladder and not ejaculated.
9. False. Seminiferous tubules are the parenchymal tissue of the testes. The interstitial cells of the testis are the Leydig cells that secrete testosterone.
10. False. Testosterone is produced by the interstitial cells of the testis.
11. False. Vasectomy results in the inability of sperm to leave the body in semen. It does not affect erectile dysfunction and does not produce impotence.
12. True.

G

1. C
2. G
3. H
4. F
5. B
6. D
7. A
8. E
9. J
10. I

H

1. benign prostatic hyperplasia
2. hypospadias
3. herpes genitalis
4. adenocarcinoma of the prostate (prostate cancer)
5. varicocele
6. syphilis

7. HPV infection
8. gonorrhea
9. cryptorchidism
10. hydrocele

I

1. prostate-specific antigen: G
2. benign prostatic hyperplasia: D
3. transurethral resection of the prostate: B
4. transrectal ultrasound: F
5. digital rectal examination: A
6. herpes simplex virus: C
7. sexually transmitted infection: E
8. robotic assisted laparoscopic prostatectomy: H

J

1. hormone
2. opening
3. semen, seed
4. hernia, swelling
5. fixation
6. formation
7. formation
8. prostate gland
9. testis
10. monster
11. seed
12. water
13. penis

14. glans penis
15. varicose veins
16. vessel, duct, vas deferens
17. testis, testicle
18. animal life
19. hidden
20. male

K

1. radical (complete) prostatectomy
2. orchiopexy
3. vasectomy
4. photoselective vaporization of the prostate
5. hydrocelectomy
6. vasovasostomy
7. orchiectomy
8. circumcision
9. varicocelectomy

L

1. prostate
2. epididymis
3. parenchymal
4. prepuce
5. chlamydia
6. chancre
7. testosterone
8. semen or seminal fluid
9. seminoma

10. penile

M

1. cryptorchidism
2. chlamydia
3. prostate gland
4. circumcision
5. urologist; syphilis; chancre
6. vasectomy; urologist; vas deferens
7. antibiotics; epididymitis; orchiectomy; seminoma
8. semen analysis; oligospermia
9. testosterone; androgen
10. amniotic; fraternal

Answers to Practical Applications

Case Report: A Man with Post-TURP Complaints

1. c
2. b
3. b
4. a
5. b
6. c
7. c
8. a

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
androgen	AN-dro-jen
aspermia	a-SPER-me-ah
azoospermia	a-zo-o-SPER-me-ah
balanitis	bal-ah-NI-tis
benign prostatic hyperplasia	be-NINE pros-TAH-tik hi-per-PLA-ze-ah
bulbourethral glands	bul-bo-u-RE-thral glandz
castration	kah-STRA-shun
chancre	SHANK-er
chlamydia	klah-MID-e-ah
circumcision	sir-kum-SIZH-un
cryogenic surgery	kri-o-GEN-ik SUR-jer-e
cryptorchidism	kript-OR-kid-izm
digital rectal exam	DIH-jeh-tal REK-tal ek-ZAM
ejaculation	eh-jak-u-LA-shun
ejaculatory duct	eh-JAK-u-lah-tor-e dukt
embryonal carcinoma	em-bre-ON-al kar-sih-NO-mah
epididymis	ep-ih-did-ih-mis
epididymitis	ep-ih-did-ih-MI-tis
erectile dysfunction	e-REK-tile dis-FUNK-shun
flagellum	fla-JEL-um
fraternal twins	frah-TER-nal twinz
glans penis	glanz PE-nis
gonorrhea	gon-o-RE-ah
herpes genitalis	HER-peez jen-ih-TAL-is
human papillomavirus	HU-man pap-ih-LO-mah-vi-rus
hydrocele	HI-dro-seel
hypospadias	hi-po-SPA-de-as
identical twins	i-DEN-tih-kal twinz
impotence	IM-po-tents
infertility	in-fer-TIL-ih-te
interstitial cells of the testes	in-ter-STIH-shul selz of the TES-tis
ligation	li-GA-shun
oligospermia	ol-ih-go-SPER-me-ah
orchiectomy	or-ke-EK-to-me
orchiopexy	or-ke-o-PEK-se
orchitis	or-KI-tis
parenchymal tissue	pah-RENK-ih-mal TIH-shu
penile	PE-nile
penis	PE-nis
penoscrotal	pe-no-SKRO-tal
perineum	peh-rih-NE-um
Peyronie disease	pah-RO-ne dih-zeez
phimosis	fih-MO-sis
photoselective vaporization of the prostate	fo-to-seh-LEK-tiv va-por-ih-ZA-shun of the PROS-tayt
prepuce	PRE-pus
prostate cancer	PROS-tayt KAN-ser
prostate gland	PROS-tayt gland
prostatectomy	pros-tah-TEK-to-me

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
prostatitis	pros-tah-TI-tis
purulent	PU-ru-lent
scrotum	SKRO-tum
semen	SE-men
semen analysis	SE-men ah-NAH-lih-sis
seminal vesicles	SEH-mih-nal VES-ih-kils
seminiferous tubules	seh-mih-NIF-er-us TOOB-ules
seminoma	seh-mih-NO-mah
spermatogenesis	sper-mah-to-JEN-eh-sis
spermatozoa	sper-mah-to-ZO-ah
spermatozoon	sper-mah-to-ZO-en
spermolytic	sper-mo-LIH-rik
sterilization	ster-ih-lih-ZA-shun
stromal tissue	STRO-mal TIH-shu
syphilis	SIF-ih-lis
teratoma	ter-ah-TO-mah
testicular	tes-TIH-ku-lar
testicular cancer	tes-TIH-ku-lar KAN-ser
testicular torsion	tes-TIH-ku-lar TOR-shun
testis	TES-tis
testosterone	tes-TOS-teh-rone
transurethral resection of the prostate	tranz-u-RE-thral re-SEK-shun of the PROS-tayt
varicocele	VAR-ih-ko-seel
vas deferens	vas DEF-er-enz
vasectomy	vas-EK-to-me
vasovasostomy	vas-o-vas-OS-to-me

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of the word parts in the spaces provided. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
andr/o	_____
balan/o	_____
cry/o	_____
crypt/o	_____
epididym/o	_____
gon/o	_____
hydr/o	_____
orch/o	_____
orchi/o	_____
orchid/o	_____
pen/o	_____
prostat/o	_____
semin/i	_____
sperm/o	_____
spermat/o	_____
terat/o	_____
test/o	_____
varic/o	_____
vas/o	_____
zo/o	_____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-cele	_____
-ectomy	_____
-gen	_____
-genesis	_____
-genic	_____
-lysis	_____
-lytic	_____
-one	_____
-pexy	_____
-plasia	_____
-rrhea	_____
-stomy	_____
-tomy	_____
-trophy	_____

CHAPTER 10

Nervous System

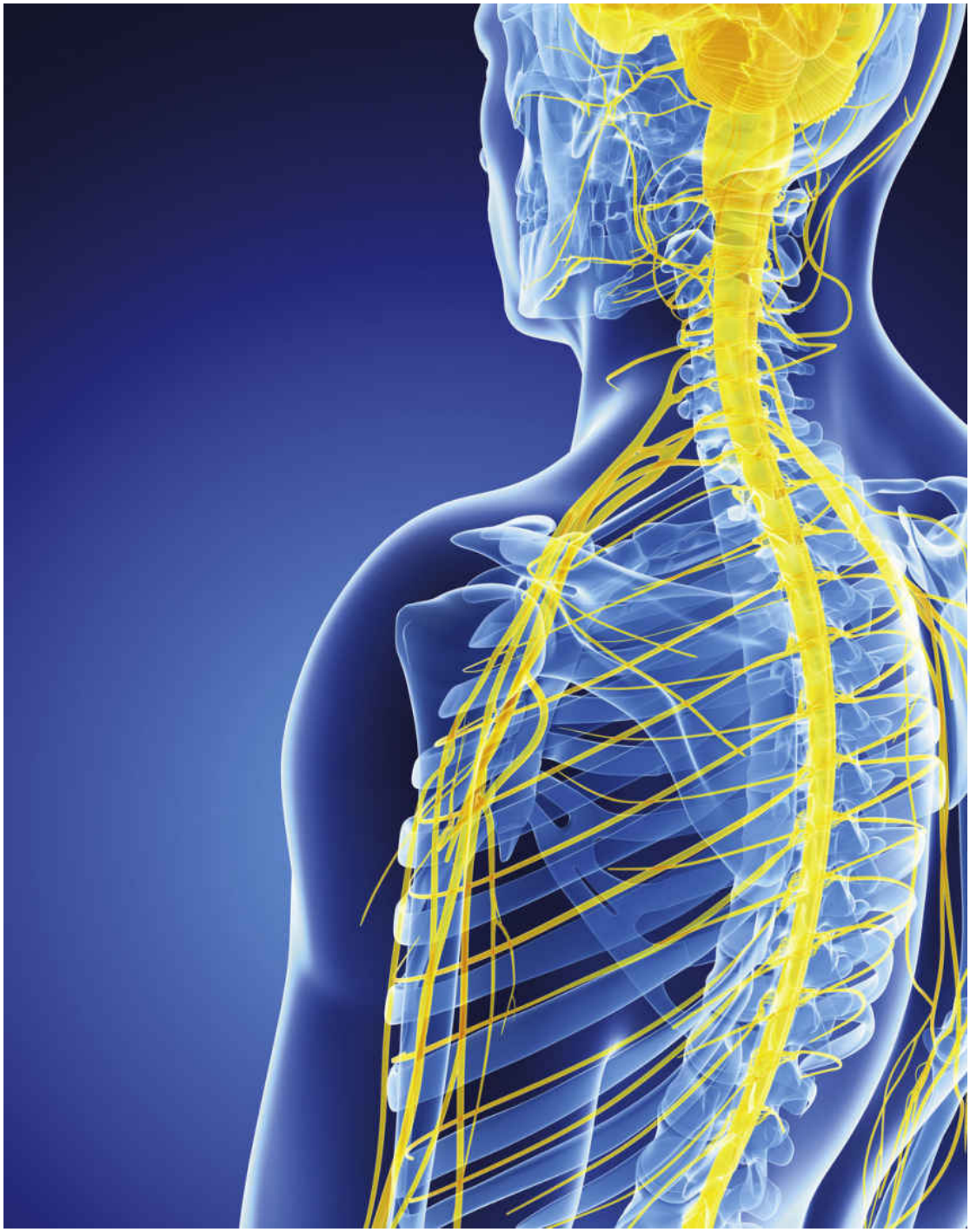
CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 322
General Structure of the Nervous System 322
Neurons, Nerves, and Glial Cells 326
The Brain 328
The Spinal Cord and Meninges 331
Vocabulary 333
Terminology 335
Pathology 340
Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures 349
Abbreviations 352
Practical Applications 352
In Person: Sciatica 356
Exercises 357
Answers to Exercises 364
Pronunciation of Terms 367
Review Sheet 370

CHAPTER GOALS

- Name, locate, and describe the major organs of the nervous system and their functions.

- Learn nervous system combining forms and use them with suffixes and prefixes.
- Define pathologic conditions affecting the nervous system.
- Describe nervous system–related laboratory tests, clinical procedures, and abbreviations.
- Apply your new knowledge to understanding medical terms in their proper contexts, such as medical reports and records.



Introduction

The nervous system is one of the most complex of all human body systems. More than 100 billion nerve cells operate constantly all over the body to

coordinate the activities we do consciously and voluntarily, as well as those that occur unconsciously or involuntarily. We speak, move muscles, hear, taste, see, and think. Our glands secrete hormones, and we respond to danger, pain, temperature, and touch. All of these functions comprise only a small number of the many activities controlled by the nervous system.

Fibers exiting from microscopic **nerve cells** (**neurons**) are collected into macroscopic bundles called **nerves,** which carry electrical messages all over the body. External stimuli, as well as internal chemicals such as **acetylcholine,** activate the cell membranes of nerve cells, which results in electrical discharges of these cells. These electrical discharges, **nervous impulses**, may then traverse the length of the associated nerves. External **receptors** (sense organs) as well as internal receptors in muscles and blood vessels receive these impulses and may in turn transmit impulses to the complex network of nerve cells in the brain and spinal cord. Within this central part of the nervous system, impulses are recognized, interpreted, and finally relayed to other nerve cells that extend out to all parts of the body, such as muscles, glands, and internal organs.

General Structure of the Nervous System

The nervous system is classified into two major divisions: the **central nervous system (CNS)** and the **peripheral nervous system (PNS).** The central nervous system consists of the **brain** and **spinal cord.** The peripheral nervous system consists of **cranial nerves** and **spinal nerves, plexuses,** and **peripheral nerves** throughout the body (Figure 10-1). Cranial nerves carry impulses between the brain and the head and neck. The one exception is the tenth cranial nerve, called the **vagus nerve.** It carries messages to and from the neck, chest, and abdomen. Figure 10-2 shows cranial nerves, their functions, and the parts of the body that they carry messages to and from. Spinal nerves carry messages between the spinal cord and the chest, abdomen, and extremities.

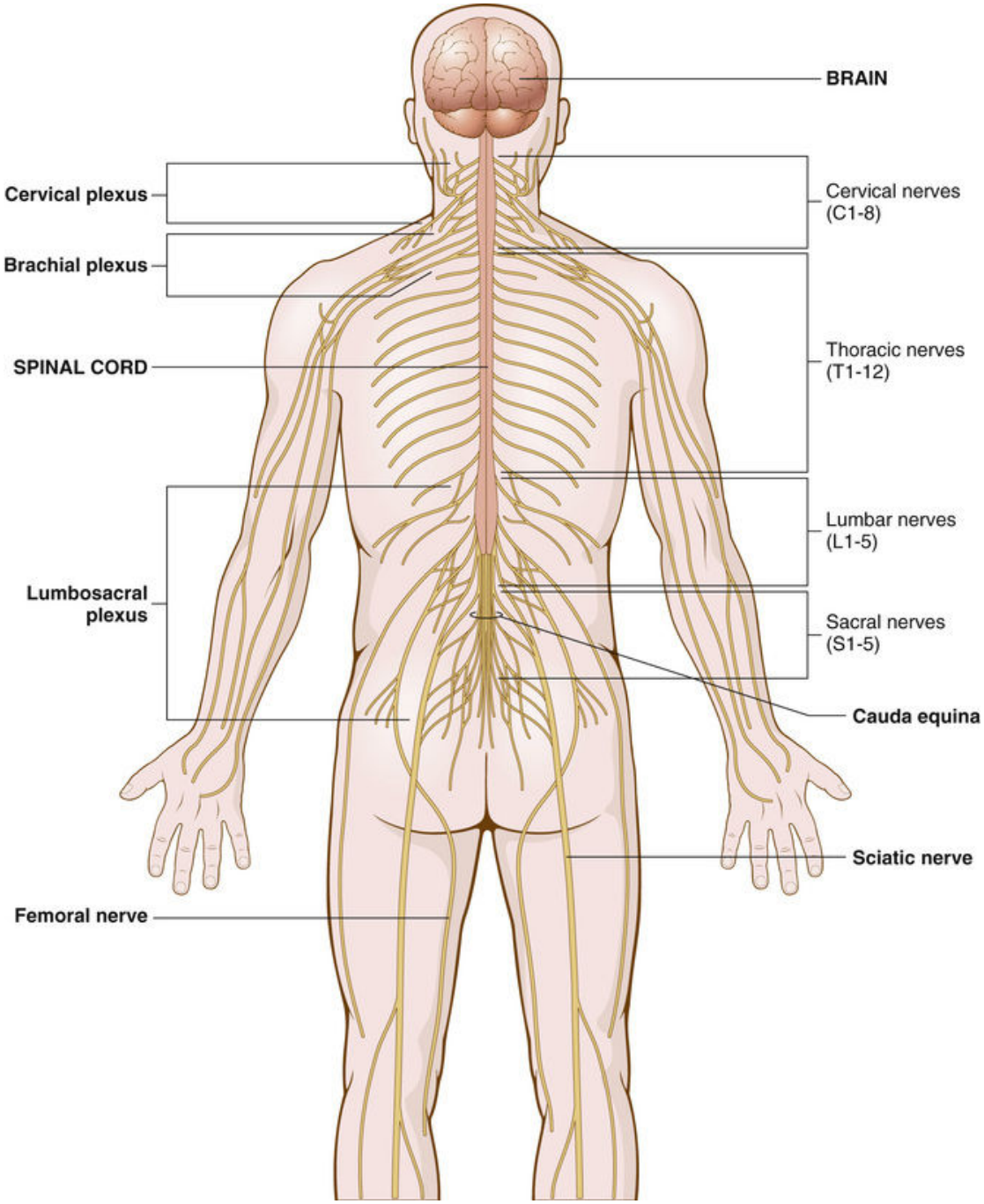


FIGURE 10-1 The brain and the spinal cord, spinal nerves, and spinal plexuses. The **femoral nerve** is a lumbar nerve leading to and from the thigh region (the femur is the thigh bone). The **sciatic nerve** is a nerve beginning in a region of the hip. The **cauda equina** (Latin for "horse's tail") is a bundle of spinal nerves below the end of the spinal cord.

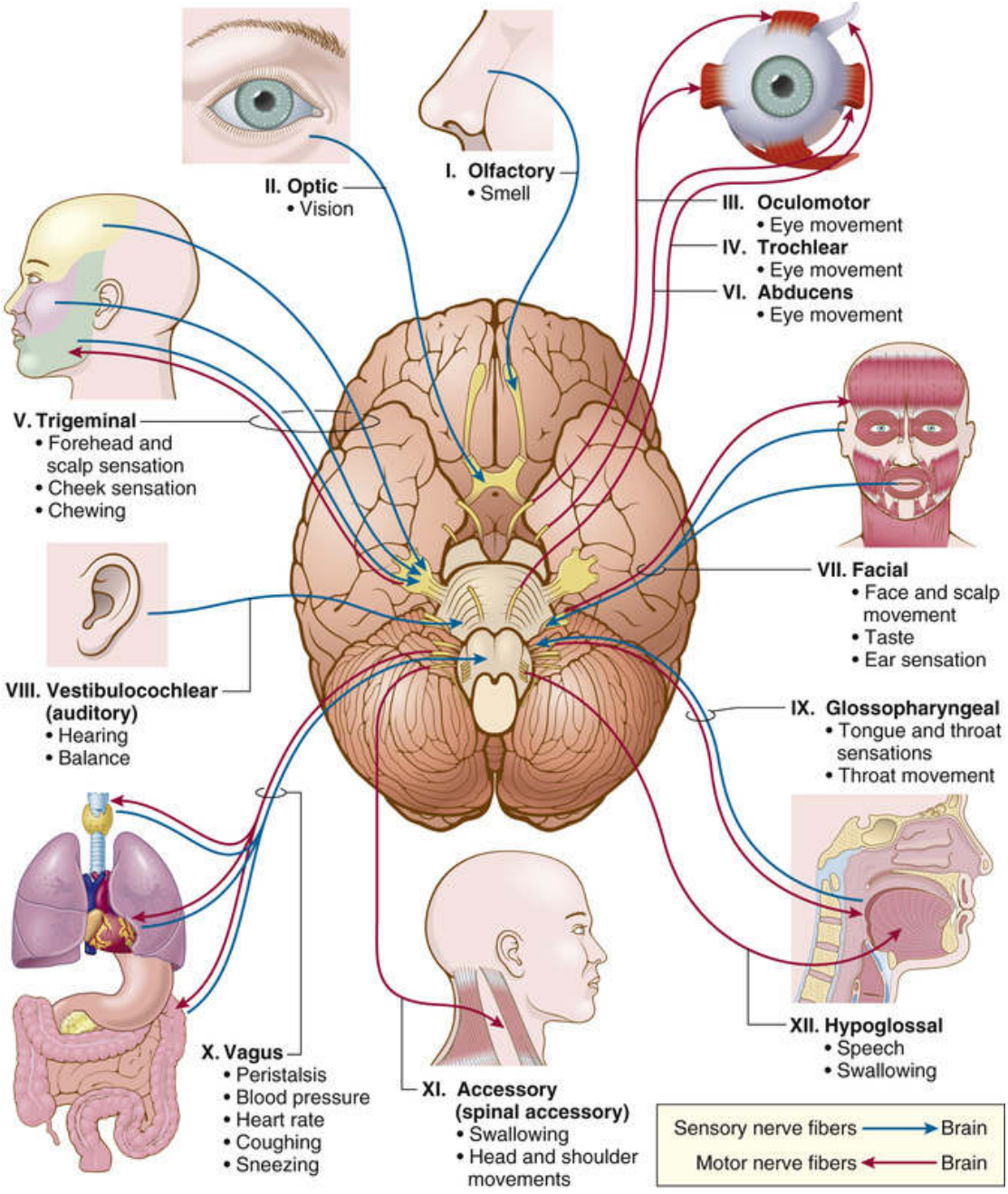


FIGURE 10-2 **Cranial nerves** (I to XII) leading from the base of the brain and showing the parts of the body they affect. **Sensory** or **afferent** nerves are colored *blue* and carry messages *toward* the brain. **Motor** or **efferent** nerves are colored *red* and carry messages *from* the brain to muscles and organs. Some nerves (mixed) carry both sensory and motor fibers. Don't try to memorize this figure! Just get the big picture: Cranial nerves carry messages to and from the brain to all parts of head and neck and also (in the case of the vagus nerve) to other parts of the body.

A **plexus** is a large network of nerves in the peripheral nervous system. The cervical, brachial (brachi/o means arm), and lumbosacral plexuses are examples that include cervical, lumbar, and sacral nerves. Figure 10-1 illustrates the relationship of the brain and spinal cord to the spinal nerves and plexuses.

Plexus

There are other **plexuses** in the body—networks of intersecting blood vessels (vascular) and lymphatic vessels.

- Lymphatic plexus is an interconnecting network of lymph vessels.
- Rectal plexus is a plexus of veins in the rectal region.
- Vertebral plexus is a plexus of veins related to the backbone.

The spinal and cranial nerves are composed of nerves that help the body respond to changes in the outside world. They include sense **receptors** for sight (eye), hearing and balance (ear), smell (olfactory), and touch (skin sensation) and **sensory (afferent) nerves** that carry messages related to changes in the environment *toward* the spinal cord and brain. In addition, **motor (efferent) nerves** travel *from* the spinal cord and brain to muscles of the body, telling them how to respond. For example, when you touch a hot stove, temperature and pain receptors in the skin stimulate afferent nerves, which carry messages toward the spinal cord and brain. Instantaneously, the message is conveyed to efferent nerve cells in the spinal cord, which then activate voluntary muscles to pull your hand away from the stove.

In addition to the spinal and cranial nerves (whose functions are mainly voluntary and involved with sensations of smell, taste, sight, hearing, and muscle movements), the peripheral nervous system also contains a large group of nerves that function involuntarily or automatically, without conscious control. These peripheral nerves belong to the **autonomic nervous system.** This system of nerve fibers carries impulses to glands, heart, blood vessels, involuntary muscles found in the walls of tubes like the intestines, and hollow organs like the stomach and urinary bladder.

Some autonomic nerves are **sympathetic** nerves and others are **parasympathetic** nerves. The sympathetic nerves stimulate the body in times of stress and crisis. They increase heart rate and forcefulness, dilate (relax) airways so more oxygen can enter, and increase blood pressure. In addition, sympathetic neurons stimulate the adrenal glands to secrete epinephrine (adrenaline), while also inhibiting intestinal contractions to slow digestion.

The parasympathetic nerves normally act as a balance for the sympathetic nerves. Parasympathetic nerves slow down heart rate, lower blood pressure, and stimulate intestinal contractions to clear the rectum. Figure 10-3 shows the differences in actions between the sympathetic and parasympathetic nerves.

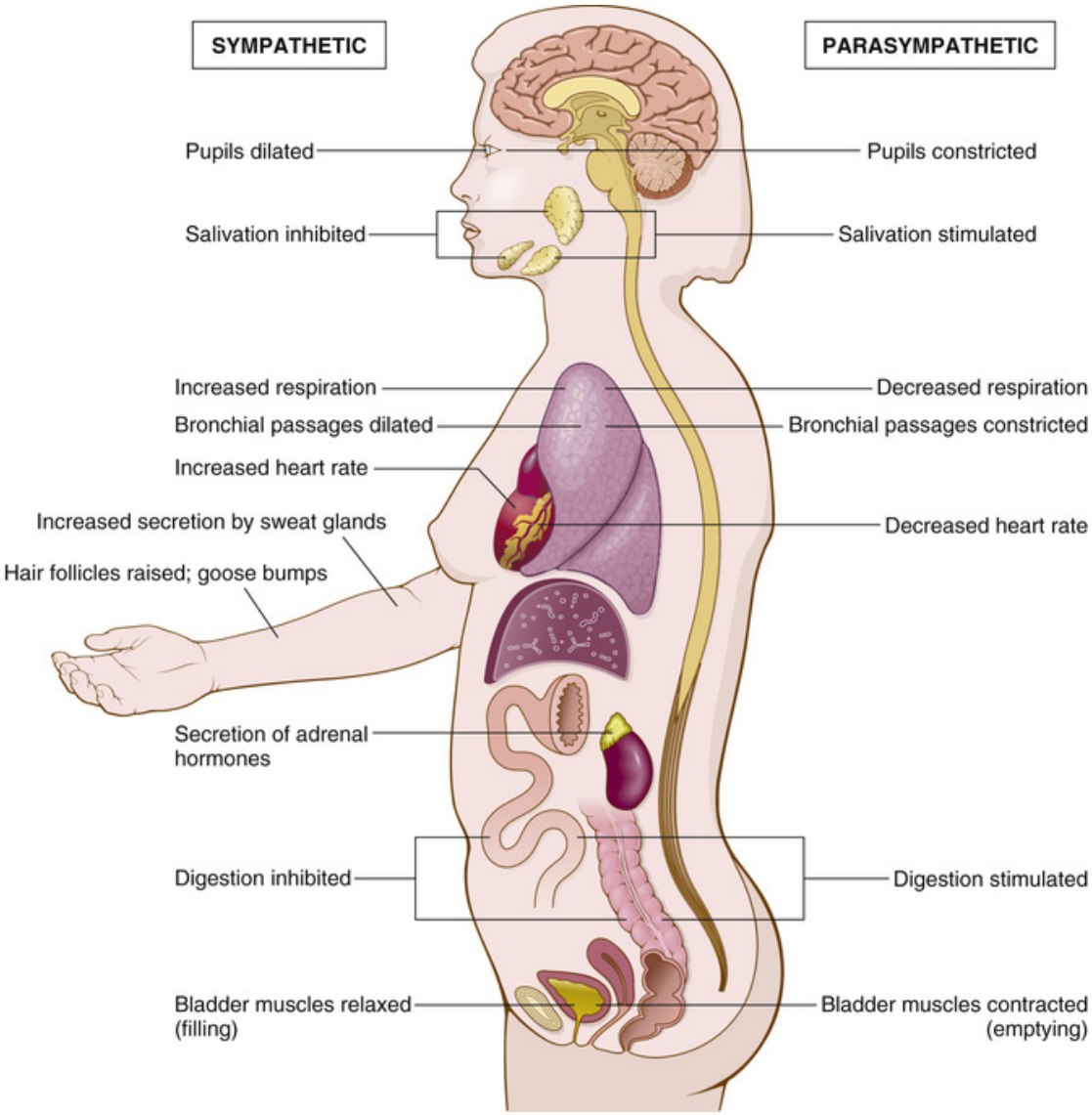


FIGURE 10-3 Actions of parasympathetic and sympathetic nerves.

Figure 10-4 summarizes the divisions of the central and peripheral nervous systems.

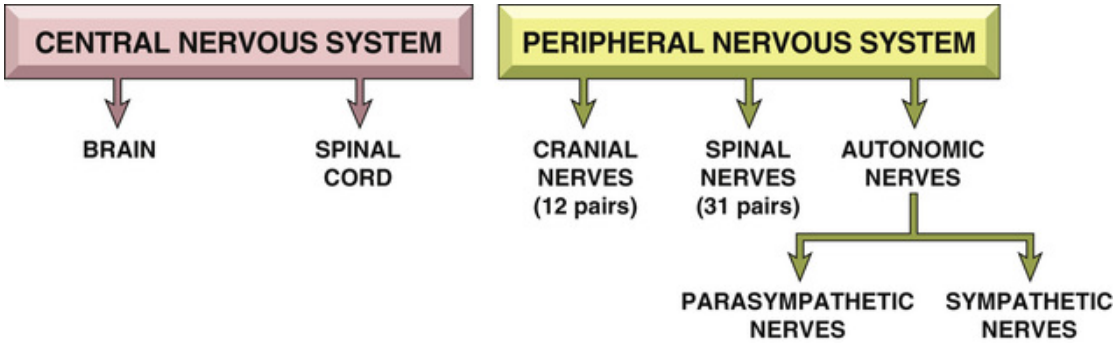


FIGURE 10-4 Divisions of the central nervous system (CNS) and peripheral nervous system (PNS). The autonomic nervous system is a part of the peripheral nervous system.

Neurons, Nerves, and Glial Cells

A neuron is an individual nerve cell, a microscopic structure. Impulses pass along the parts of a nerve cell in a definite manner and direction. The parts of a neuron are pictured in Figure 10-5; label it as you study the following.

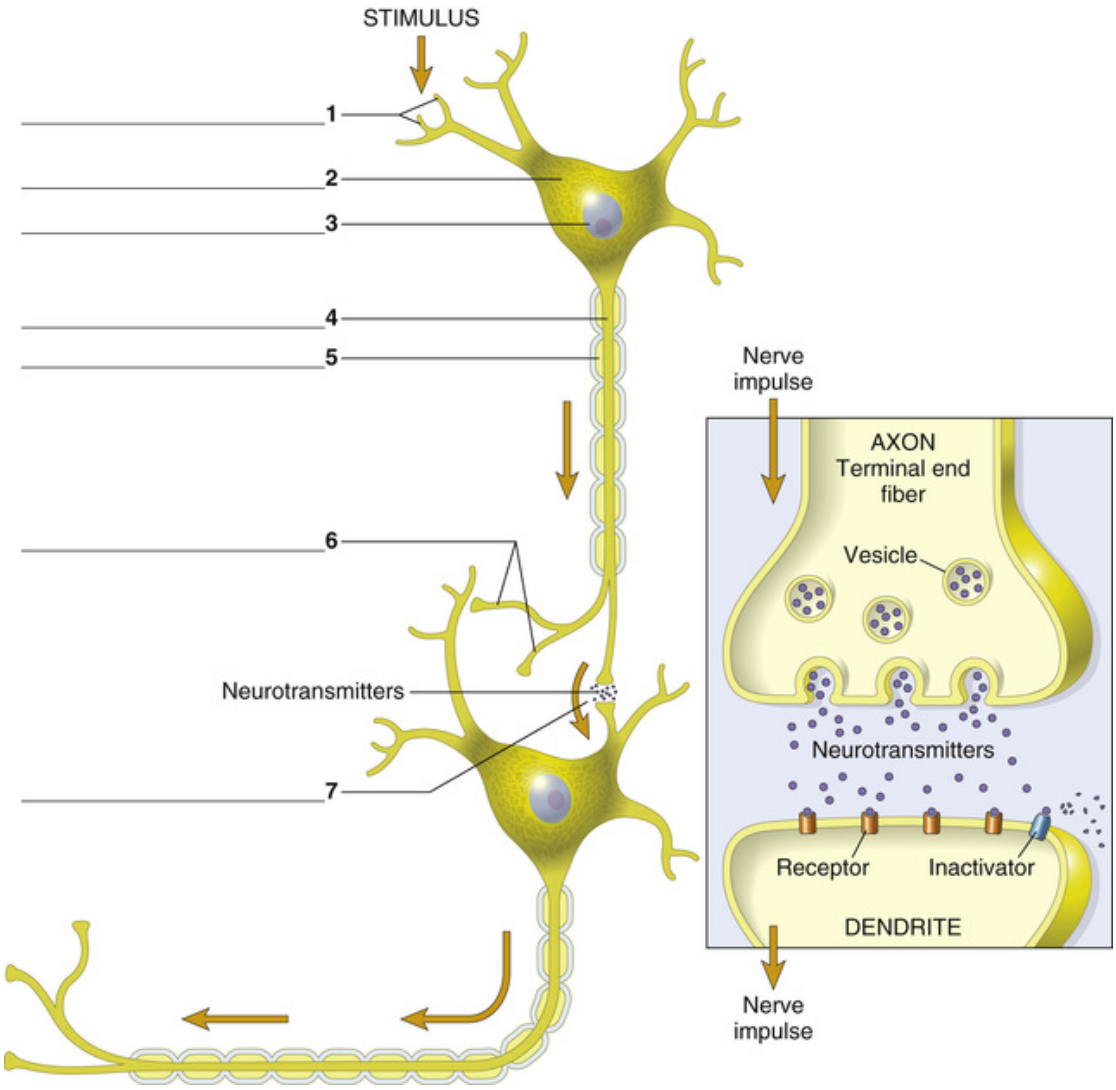


FIGURE 10-5 Parts of a neuron and the pathway of a nervous impulse. Neurons are the **parenchymal** (essential) **cells** of the nervous system. The *boxed drawing* shows what happens in a synapse: Vesicles store neurotransmitters in the terminal end fibers of axons. Receptors on the dendrites pick up the neurotransmitters. Inactivators end the activity of neurotransmitters when they have finished their job.

A **stimulus** begins an impulse in the branching fibers of the neuron, which are called **dendrites** [1]. A change in the electrical charge of the dendrite membranes is thus begun, and the nervous impulse moves along the dendrites like the movement of falling dominoes. The impulse, traveling in only one direction, next reaches the **cell body** [2], which contains the **cell nucleus** [3]. Small collections of nerve cell bodies outside the brain and spinal cord are called **ganglia** (*singular*: **ganglion**). Extending from the cell body is the **axon** [4], which carries the impulse away from the cell body. Axons can be covered with a fatty tissue called myelin. The purpose of this **myelin sheath**

[5] is to insulate the axon and speed transmission of the electrical impulse. Demyelination is loss of the myelin insulating the nerve fiber and is characteristic of multiple sclerosis, an acquired illness affecting the CNS.

The myelin sheath gives a white appearance to the nerve fiber—hence the term white matter, as in parts of the spinal cord and the white matter of the brain and most peripheral nerves. The gray matter of the brain and spinal cord is composed of the cell bodies of neurons that appear gray because they are not covered by a myelin sheath.

The nervous impulse passes through the axon to leave the cell via the **terminal end fibers** [6] of the neuron. The space where the nervous impulse jumps from one neuron to another is called the **synapse** [7]. The transfer of the impulse across the synapse depends on the release of a chemical substance, called a **neurotransmitter,** by the neuron that brings the impulse to the synapse. See the boxed diagram in Figure 10-5. Tiny sacs (vesicles) containing the neurotransmitter are located at the ends of neurons, and they release the neurotransmitter into the synapse. **Acetylcholine, norepinephrine, epinephrine (adrenaline), dopamine, serotonin,** and **endorphins** are examples of neurotransmitters.

Whereas a neuron is a microscopic structure within the nervous system, a **nerve** is macroscopic, able to be seen with the naked eye. A nerve consists of many axons that travel together like strands of rope. Peripheral nerves that carry impulses *to* the brain and spinal cord from stimulus receptors like the skin, eye, ear, and nose are **afferent** or **sensory nerves;** those that carry impulses *from* the CNS to organs that produce responses, such as muscles and glands, are **efferent** or **motor nerves.**

Neurons and nerves are the **parenchyma** of the nervous system. Parenchyma is the essential distinguishing tissue of an organ. In the brain and spinal cord, neurons, which conduct electrical impulses, are the parenchymal tissue. **Stroma** of an organ is the connective and supportive tissue of an organ. The stromal tissue of the central nervous system consists of the **glial (neuroglial) cells,** which make up its supportive framework and help it ward off infection. Glial cells do not transmit impulses. They are far more numerous than neurons and can reproduce.

There are four types of supporting or glial cells (see Figure 10-6). **Astrocytes (astroglial cells)** are star-like in appearance (astr/o means star) and transport water and salts between capillaries and neurons. **Microglial cells** are small cells with many branching processes (dendrites). As phagocytes, they protect neurons in response to inflammation. **Oligodendroglial cells (oligodendrocytes)** have few (olig/o means few or scanty) dendrites. These cells form the myelin sheath in the CNS. By contrast, **ependymal cells** (Greek *ependyma* means upper garment) line membranes within the brain and spinal cord where CSF is produced and circulates.

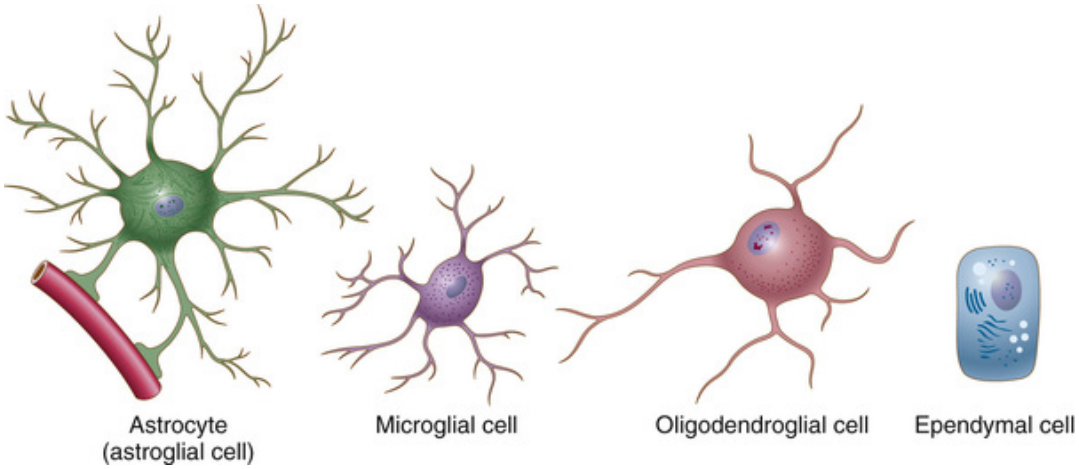


FIGURE 10-6 Glial cells (neuroglial cells). These are the supportive, protective, and connective tissue cells of the CNS. Glial cells are **stromal** (framework) **tissue**, whereas neurons carry nervous impulses.

Glial cells, particularly the astrocytes, are associated with blood vessels and regulate the passage of potentially harmful substances from the blood into the nerve cells of the brain. This protective barrier between the blood and brain cells is called the **blood-brain barrier (BBB).** This barrier consists of special lining (endothelial) cells, which along with astrocytes separate capillaries from nerve cells. Delivery of chemotherapeutic drugs to treat brain tumors is thus difficult, because the BBB blocks drug access to brain tissues. Figure 10-6 illustrates glial cells.

The Brain

The brain controls body activities. In the human adult, it weighs about 3 pounds and has many different parts, all of which control different aspects of body functions.

The largest part of the brain is the "thinking" area, or **cerebrum.** On the surface of the cerebrum, nerve cells lie in sheets, which make up the **cerebral cortex.** These sheets, arranged in folds called **gyri,** are separated from each other by grooves known as **sulci.** The brain is divided in half, a right side and a left side, which are called **cerebral hemispheres.** Each hemisphere is subdivided into four major lobes named for the cranial (skull) bones that overlie them. Figure 10-7 shows these lobes—frontal, parietal, occipital, and temporal—as well as gyri and sulci.

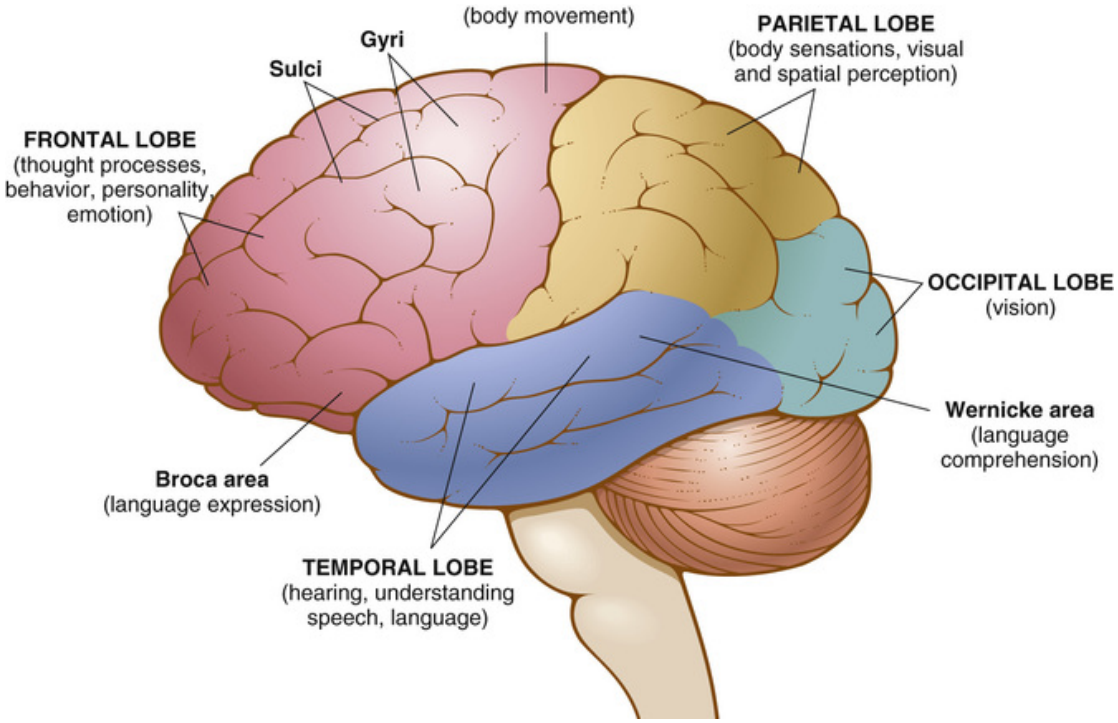


FIGURE 10-7 **Left cerebral hemisphere** (lateral view). **Gyri** (convolutions) and **sulci** (fissures) are indicated. Notice the lobes of the cerebrum and the functional centers that control speech, vision, movement, hearing, thinking, and other processes. Neurologists believe that the two hemispheres have different abilities. The **left brain** is more concerned with language, mathematical functioning, reasoning, and analytical thinking. The **right brain** is more active in spatial relationships, art, music, emotions, and intuition.

The cerebrum has many functions. It is responsible for thought, judgment, memory, association, and discrimination. In addition, sensory impulses are received through afferent cranial nerves, and when registered in the cortex, they are the basis for perception. Nerve impulses from the cerebrum extend to muscles and glands producing movement as well as internal changes in the body. Figure 10-7 shows the location of some of the centers in the cerebral cortex that control speech, vision, smell, movement, hearing, and thought processes.

In the middle of the cerebrum are spaces, or canals, called **ventricles** (pictured in Figure 10-8). They contain a watery fluid that flows throughout the brain and around the spinal cord. This fluid is **cerebrospinal fluid (CSF),** and it protects the brain and spinal cord from shock by acting like a cushion. CSF usually is clear and colorless and contains lymphocytes, sugar, and proteins. Spinal fluid can be withdrawn for diagnosis or relief of pressure on the brain; this is called a **lumbar puncture (LP).** For this procedure, a hollow needle is inserted into the lumbar region of the spinal column below the

region where the nervous tissue of the spinal cord ends, and CSF is withdrawn.

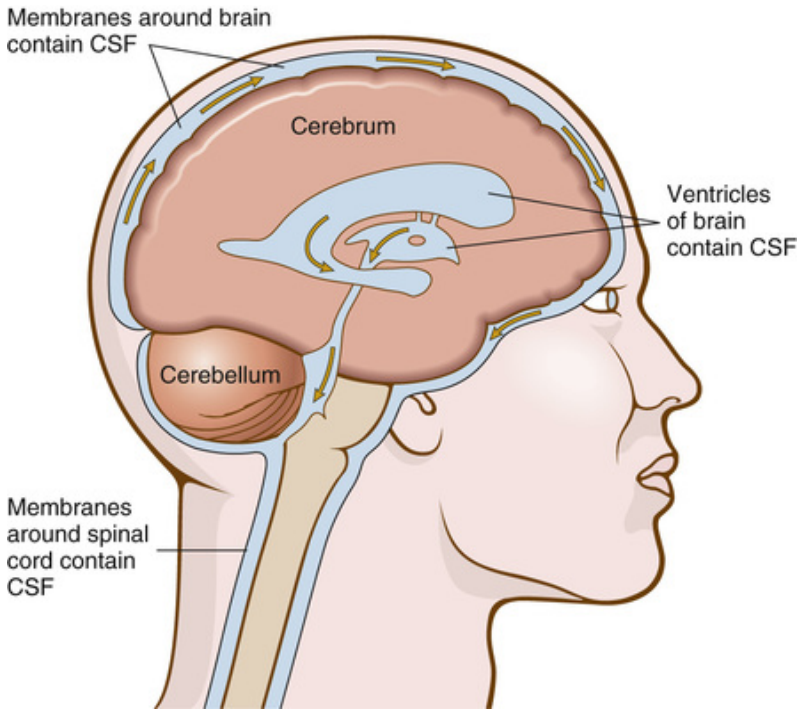


FIGURE 10-8 Circulation of cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) in the brain (ventricles) and around the spinal cord. CSF is formed within the ventricles and circulates between the membranes around the brain and within the spinal cord. CSF empties into the bloodstream through the membranes surrounding the brain and spinal cord.

Two other important parts of the brain are the **thalamus** and the **hypothalamus** (Figure 10-9). The thalamus acts like a triage center. It decides what is important and what is not, selectively processing and relaying sensory information to the cerebral cortex. The thalamus also plays a major role in maintaining levels of awareness and consciousness. The hypothalamus (below the thalamus) contains neurons that control body temperature, sleep, appetite, sexual desire, and emotions such as fear and pleasure. The hypothalamus also regulates the release of hormones from the pituitary gland at the base of the brain and integrates the activities of the sympathetic and parasympathetic nervous systems.

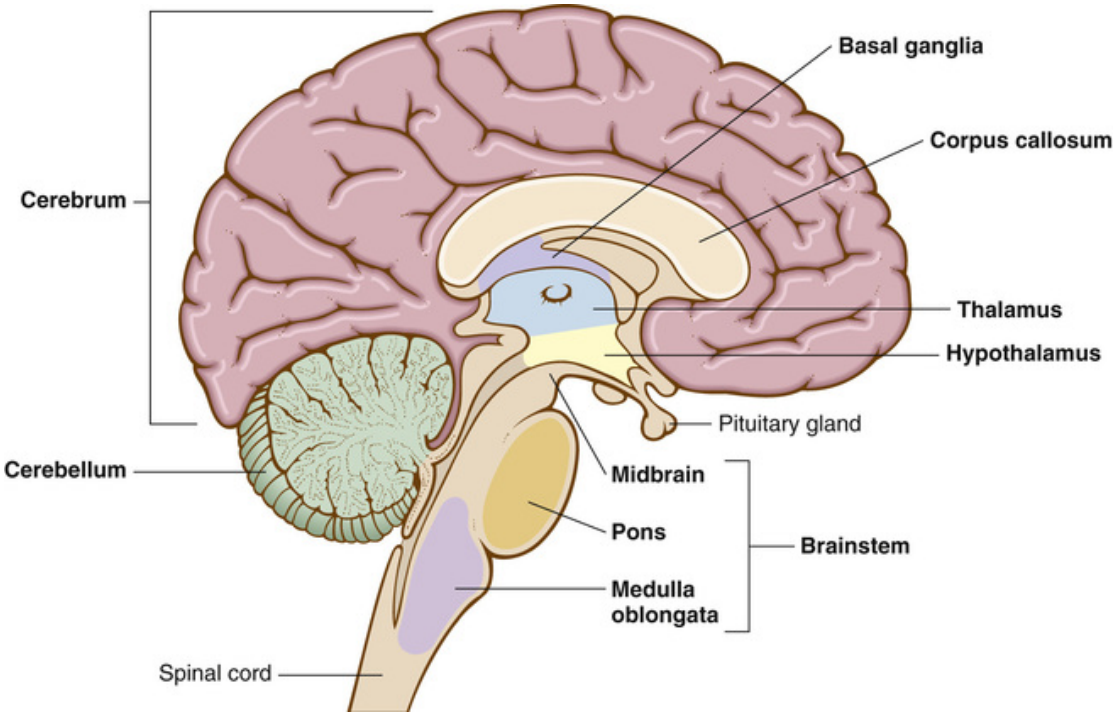


FIGURE 10-9 Parts of the brain: cerebrum, thalamus, hypothalamus, cerebellum, midbrain, pons, and medulla oblongata. Note the location of the pituitary gland below the hypothalamus. The **basal ganglia** (a group of cells) regulate intentional movements of the body. The **corpus callosum** lies in the center of the brain and connects the two hemispheres (halves).

The following structures within the brain lie in the back and below the cerebrum and connect the cerebrum with the spinal cord: **cerebellum, midbrain, pons,** and **medulla oblongata**. The midbrain, pons and medulla are part of the **brainstem.** See Figure 10-9.

The **cerebellum** functions to coordinate voluntary movements and to maintain balance and posture.

The **midbrain** is the uppermost portion of the brainstem. It contains pathways connecting the cerebrum with lower portions of the brain and structures involved with seeing and hearing.

The **pons** is a part of the brainstem that literally means bridge. It contains nerve fiber tracts that connect the cerebellum and cerebrum with the rest of the brain. Nerves affecting the face and eye movement are located here.

The **medulla oblongata,** also in the brainstem, connects the spinal cord with the rest of the brain. Nerve tracts cross from right to left and left to right in the medulla oblongata. For example, nerve cells that control movement of the left side of the body are found in the right half of the cerebrum. These cells send out axons that cross over (decussate) to the opposite side of the brain in the medulla oblongata and then travel down the spinal cord.

In addition, the medulla oblongata contains three important vital centers that regulate internal activities of the body:

1. **Respiratory center**—controls muscles of respiration in response to chemicals or other stimuli
2. **Cardiac center**—slows the heart rate when the heart is beating too rapidly
3. **Vasomotor center**—affects (constricts or dilates) the muscles in the walls of blood vessels, thus influencing blood pressure

Figure 10-9 shows the locations of the thalamus, hypothalamus, cerebellum, pons, and medulla oblongata. Table 10-1 reviews the functions of these parts of the brain.

TABLE 10-1

FUNCTIONS OF THE PARTS OF THE BRAIN

Structure	Function(s)
Cerebrum	**Thinking, personality, sensations, movements, memory**
Thalamus	**Relay station ("triage center") for sensory impulses; control of awareness and consciousness**
Hypothalamus	**Body temperature, sleep, appetite, emotions; control of the pituitary gland**
Cerebellum	**Coordination of voluntary movements and balance**
Pons and Midbrain	**Connection of nerve and nerve fiber pathways, including those to the eyes and face**
Medulla oblongata	**Nerve fibers cross over, left to right and right to left; contains centers to regulate heart, blood vessels, and respiratory system**

The Spinal Cord and Meninges

Spinal Cord

The **spinal cord** is a column of nervous tissue extending from the medulla oblongata to the second lumbar vertebra within the vertebral column. Below the end of the spinal cord is the **cauda equina** (Latin for "horse's tail"), a fan of nerve fibers (see Figure 10-1, page 323). The spinal cord carries all the nerves to and from the limbs and lower part of the body, and it is the pathway for impulses going to and from the brain. A cross-sectional view of

the spinal cord (Figure 10-10) reveals an inner region of **gray matter** (containing cell bodies and dendrites) and an outer region of **white matter** (containing the nerve fiber tracts with myelin sheaths) conducting impulses to and from the brain.

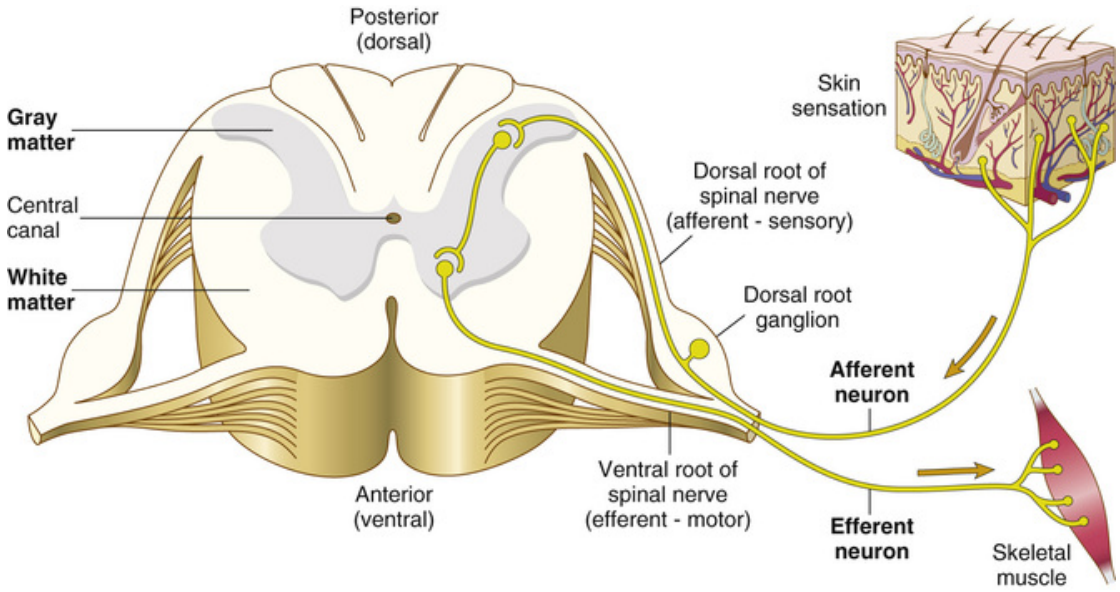


FIGURE 10-10 The spinal cord, showing gray and white matter (transverse view). **Afferent neurons** bring impulses from a sensory receptor (such as the skin) into the spinal cord. **Efferent neurons** carry impulses from the spinal cord to effector organs (such as skeletal muscle). The central canal is the space through which CSF travels.

Meninges

The **meninges** are three layers of connective tissue membranes that surround the brain and spinal cord. Label Figure 10-11 as you study the following description of the meninges.

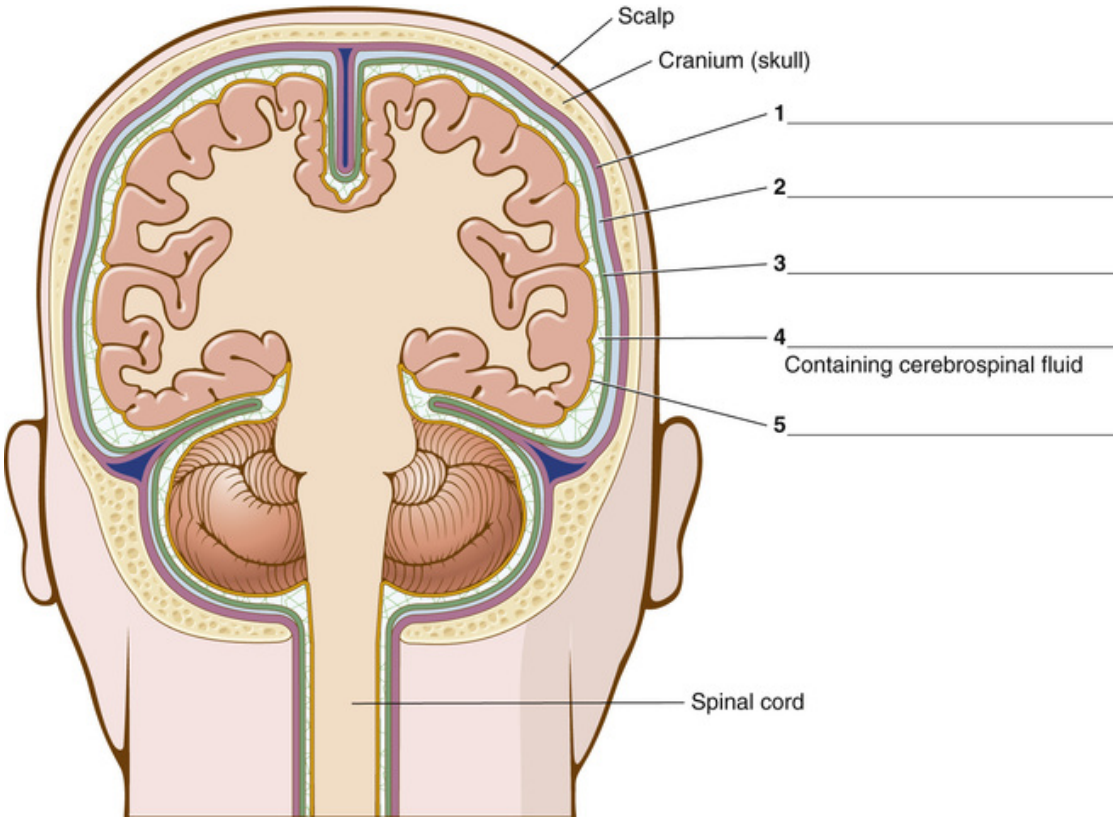


FIGURE 10-11 **The meninges,** posterior view.

The outermost membrane of the meninges is the **dura mater** [1]. This thick, tough membrane contains channels (dural sinuses) that contain blood. The **subdural space** [2] is below the dural membrane. The second layer surrounding the brain and spinal cord is the **arachnoid membrane** [3]. The arachnoid (spider-like) membrane is loosely attached to the other meninges by web-like fibers, so there is a space for fluid between the fibers and the third membrane. This is the **subarachnoid space** [4], containing CSF. The third layer of the meninges, closest to the brain and spinal cord, is the **pia mater** [5]. It contains delicate (Latin *pia*) connective tissue with a rich supply of blood vessels. Most physicians refer to the pia and arachnoid membranes together as the pia-arachnoid.

Vocabulary

This list reviews the new terms introduced in the text. Short definitions reinforce your understanding of the terms. Refer to the Pronunciation of Terms section for help with unfamiliar or more difficult words.

acetylcholine	Neurotransmitter chemical released at the ends of nerve cells.
afferent nerve	Carries messages *toward* the brain and spinal cord (sensory nerve). Afferent comes from *af-* (a form of *ad-*, meaning toward) and *-ferent* (meaning carrying).
arachnoid membrane	Middle layer of the three membranes (meninges) that surround the brain and spinal cord. The Greek *arachne* means spider.
astrocyte	Type of glial (neuroglial) cell that transports water and salts from capillaries in the nervous system.
autonomic nervous system	Nerves that control involuntary body functions of muscles, glands, and internal organs.
axon	Microscopic fiber that is part of a neuron and carries nervous impulse along a nerve cell.
blood-brain barrier	Protective separation between the blood and brain cells. This makes it difficult for substances (such as anticancer drugs) to penetrate capillary walls and enter the brain.
brainstem	Posterior portion of the brain that connects the cerebrum with the spinal cord; includes the midbrain, pons, and medulla oblongata.
cauda equina	Collection of spinal nerves below the end of the spinal cord.
cell body	Part of a nerve cell that contains the nucleus.
central nervous system (CNS)	Brain and spinal cord.
cerebellum	Posterior part of the brain that coordinates muscle movements and maintains balance.
cerebral cortex	Outer region of the cerebrum, containing sheets of nerve cells; gray matter of the brain.
cerebrospinal fluid (CSF)	Circulates throughout the brain and spinal cord.
cerebrum	Largest part of the brain; responsible for voluntary muscular activity, vision, speech, taste, hearing, thought, and memory.
cranial nerves	Nerves carry messages to and from the brain to all parts of head and neck and also (in the case of the vagus nerve) to other parts of the body. There are 12 pairs of cranial nerves.
dendrite	Microscopic branching fiber of a nerve cell (neuron) that is the first part to receive the nervous impulse.
dura mater	Thick, outermost layer of the meninges surrounding and

	protecting the brain and spinal cord. Latin for "hard mother."
efferent nerve	Carries messages *away from* the brain and spinal cord; motor nerve. Efferent comes from *ef-* (meaning away from) and *-ferent* (meaning to carry).
ependymal cell	Glial cell that lines membranes within the brain and spinal cord and helps form cerebrospinal fluid.
ganglion (*plural*: ganglia)	Collection of nerve cell bodies in the peripheral nervous system.
glial cell (neuroglial cell)	Supportive and connective nerve cell that does not carry nervous impulses. Examples are astrocytes, microglial cells, ependymal cells, and oligodendrocytes. Glial cells can reproduce themselves, as opposed to neurons.
gyrus (*plural*: gyri)	Sheet of nerve cells that produces a rounded ridge on the surface of the cerebral cortex; convolution.
hypothalamus	Portion of the brain beneath the thalamus; controls sleep, appetite, body temperature, and secretions from the pituitary gland.
medulla oblongata	Part of the brain just above the spinal cord; controls breathing, heartbeat, and the size of blood vessels; nerve fibers cross over here.
meninges	Three protective membranes that surround the brain and spinal cord.
microglial cell	Phagocytic glial cell that removes waste products from the central nervous system.
midbrain	Uppermost portion of the brainstem.
motor nerve	Carries messages away from the brain and spinal cord to muscles and organs; efferent nerve.
myelin sheath	Covering of white fatty tissue that surrounds and insulates the axon of a nerve cell. Myelin speeds impulse conduction along axons.
nerve	Macroscopic cord-like collection of fibers (axons) that carry electrical impulses.
neuron	Nerve cell that is necessary for impulses to be carried throughout the nervous system; parenchyma of the nervous system.
neurotransmitter	Chemical messenger released at the end of a nerve cell. It stimulates or inhibits another cell, which can be a nerve cell, muscle cell, or gland cell. Examples of neurotransmitters are acetylcholine, norepinephrine, dopamine, and serotonin.

oligodendroglial cell	Glial cell that forms the myelin sheath covering axons. Also called oligodendrocyte.
parasympathetic nerves	Involuntary autonomic nerves that regulate normal body functions such as heart rate, breathing, and muscles of the gastrointestinal tract.
parenchyma	Essential, distinguishing tissue of any organ or system. The parenchyma of the nervous system includes the neurons and nerves that carry nervous impulses. Parenchymal cells of the liver are hepatocytes, and parenchymal tissue of the kidney includes the nephrons, where urine is formed. Note the pronunciation: păr-ĚN-kĭ-mă.
peripheral nervous system	Nerves outside the brain and spinal cord: cranial, spinal, and autonomic nerves.
pia mater	Thin, delicate inner membrane of the meninges.
plexus (*plural*: plexuses)	Large, interlacing network of nerves. Examples are lumbosacral, cervical, and brachial (brachi/o means arm) plexuses. The term originated from the Indo-European *plek*, meaning to weave together.
pons	Part of the brain anterior to the cerebellum and between the medulla and the rest of the midbrain. It is a bridge connecting various parts of the brain. In Latin, *pons* means bridge.
receptor	Organ that receives and transmits a stimulus to sensory nerves. The skin, ears, eyes, and taste buds are receptors.
sciatic nerve	Nerve extending from the base of the spine down the thigh, lower leg, and foot. **Sciatica** is pain or inflammation along the course of the nerve.
sensory nerve	Carries messages toward the brain and spinal cord from a receptor; afferent nerve.
spinal nerves	Pairs of nerves, arising one on each side of the spinal column. They transmit messages to and from the spinal cord.
stimulus (*plural*: stimuli)	Agent of change in the internal or external environment that evokes a response. It may be light, sound, touch, pressure, or pain.
stroma	Connective and supporting tissue of an organ. Glial cells make up the stromal tissue of the brain.
sulcus (*plural*: sulci)	Depression or groove in the surface of the cerebral cortex; fissure.
sympathetic	Autonomic nerves that influence bodily functions

nerves	involuntarily in times of stress.
synapse	Space through which a nervous impulse travels between nerve cells or between nerve and muscle or glandular cells. From the Greek *synapsis,* a point of contact.
thalamus	Main relay center of the brain. It conducts impulses between the spinal cord and the cerebrum; incoming sensory messages are relayed through the thalamus to appropriate centers in the cerebrum. Latin *thalamus* means room. The Romans, who named this structure, thought this part of the brain was hollow, like a little room.
vagus nerve	Tenth cranial nerve (cranial nerve X). Its branches reach to the larynx, trachea, bronchi, lungs, aorta, esophagus, and stomach. Latin *vagus* means wandering. Unlike the other cranial nerves, the vagus leaves the head and "wanders" into the abdominal and thoracic cavities.
ventricles of the brain	Canals in the brain that contain cerebrospinal fluid. Ventricles are also found in the heart—they are the two lower chambers of the heart.

Terminology

This section is divided into terms that describe organs and structures of the nervous system and those that relate to neurologic signs and symptoms. Write the meanings of the medical terms in the spaces provided.

Organs and Structures

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
cerebell/o	cerebellum	cerebellar _____
cerebr/o	cerebrum	cerebrospinal fluid _____
		cerebral cortex _____ *Cortical means pertaining to the cortex or outer area of an organ.*
dur/o	dura mater	subdural hematoma _____ *Remember: Hematomas are not tumors of blood, but are collections of blood.*
		epidural hematoma _____ *Figure 10-12 shows subdural, epidural, and intracerebral hematomas.*
encephal/o	brain	encephalitis _____
		encephalopathy _____ ***Chronic traumatic encephalopathy*** *(CTE) is a progressive degenerative disease associated with repetitive brain trauma (concussion).*
		anencephaly _____ *A congenital brain malformation; not compatible with life and may be detected with amniocentesis or ultrasonography of the fetus.*
gli/o	glial cells	glioblastoma _____ *This is a highly malignant tumor (-blast means immature). Gliomas are tumors of glial (neuroglial) cells.*
lept/o	thin, slender	leptomeningeal _____ *The pia and arachnoid membranes are known as the leptomeninges because of their thin, delicate structure.*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
mening/o, meningi/o	membranes, meninges	meningeal	_____
		meningioma	_____
			Slowly growing, benign tumor.
		myelomeningocele	_____
			Neural tube defect caused by failure of the neural tube to close during embryonic development. This abnormality occurs in infants born with spina bifida. See page 341.
my/o	muscle	myoneural	_____
myel/o	spinal cord (means bone marrow in other contexts)	myelopathy	_____
		poliomyelitis	_____
			Polio- means gray matter. This viral disease affects the gray matter of the spinal cord, leading to paralysis of muscles that rely on the damaged neurons. Effective vaccines developed in the 20th century have made "polio" relatively uncommon.
neur/o	nerve	neuropathy	_____
		polyneuritis	_____
pont/o	pons	cerebellopontine	_____
			The suffix -ine means pertaining to.
radicul/o	nerve root (of spinal nerves)	radiculopathy	_____
			***Sciatica** is a radiculopathy affecting the sciatic nerve root in the back. A herniated disk is a common cause leading to pain, weakness, or numbness down the leg. See **In Person: Sciatica** story on page 356.*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
		radiculitis _____ *This condition often results in pain and loss of function.*
thalam/o	thalamus	thalamic _____
thec/o	sheath (refers to the meninges)	intrathecal injection _____ *Chemicals, such as chemotherapeutic drugs, can be delivered into the subarachnoid space.*
vag/o	vagus nerve (10th cranial nerve)	vagal _____ *This cranial nerve has branches to the head and neck, as well as to the chest.*

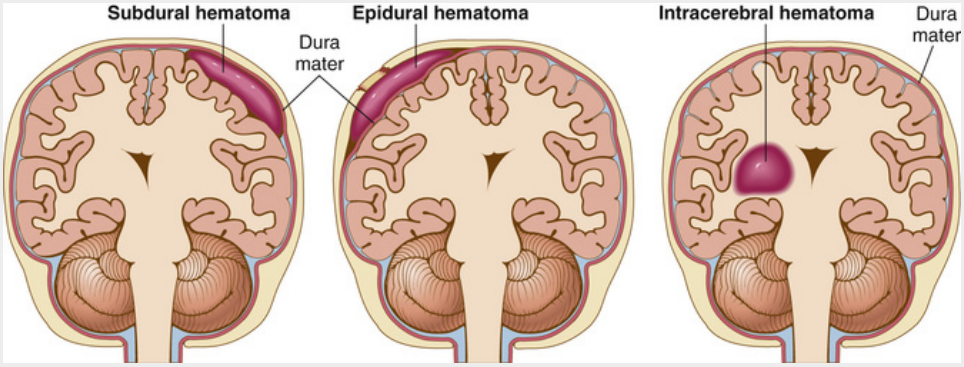


FIGURE 10-12 Hematomas. A **subdural hematoma** results from the tearing of veins between the dura and arachnoid membranes. It often is the result of blunt trauma, such as from blows to the head in boxers or in elderly patients who have fallen out of bed. An **epidural hematoma** occurs between the skull and the dura as the result of a ruptured meningeal artery, usually after a fracture of the skull. An **intracerebral hematoma** is caused by bleeding directly into brain tissue, such as can occur in the case of uncontrolled hypertension (high blood pressure).

Signs and Symptoms

COMBINING FORM OR SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
alges/o, -algesia	sensitivity to pain	analgesia _____	
		hypalgesia _____	*Diminished sensation to pain. (Notice that the o in hypo- is dropped.) Hyperalgesia is increased sensitivity to pain.*
-algia	pain (see page 355 for information on pain medications)	neuralgia _____	***Trigeminal neuralgia** involves flashes of pain radiating along the course of the trigeminal nerve (fifth cranial nerve).*
		cephalgia _____	*Headaches may result from tension in neck and scalp muscles.*
caus/o	burning	causalgia _____	*Intense burning pain following injury to a sensory nerve.*
comat/o	deep sleep (coma)	comatose _____	*A **coma** is a state of unconsciousness from which the patient cannot be aroused. Semicomatose refers to a stupor (unresponsiveness) from which a patient can be aroused. In an irreversible coma (brain death), there is complete unresponsitivity to stimuli, no spontaneous breathing or movement, and a flat electroencephalogram (EEG) tracing.*

COMBINING FORM OR SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
esthesi/o, -esthesia	feeling, nervous sensation	anesthesia	*Lack of normal sensation (e.g., absence of sense of touch or pain). Two common types of regional anesthesia are spinal and epidural (caudal) blocks (Figure 10-13). An **anesthesiologist** is a physician who administers anesthesia. **Anesthetics** are agents that reduce or eliminate sensation. General and local anesthetics are listed in Table 21-2, page 829.*
		hyperesthesia	*Abnormally intense sensation to a particular stimulus, such as a light touch with a pin. Diminished sensitivity to pain is called **hypesthesia**.*
		paresthesia	*Par- (from para-) means abnormal. Paresthesias include tingling, burning, and "pins and needles" sensations.*
kines/o, kinesi/o -kinesia, -kinesis, -kinetic	movement	bradykinesia	
		hyperkinesis	*Amphetamines (CNS stimulants) are used to treat hyperkinesia in children, but the mechanism of their action is not understood.*
		dyskinesia	*Condition marked by involuntary, spasmodic movements. **Tardive** (occurring late) **dyskinesia** may develop in people who receive certain antipsychotic drugs for extended periods.*
		akinetic	

COMBINING FORM OR SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-lepsy	seizure	epilepsy _____ *See page 343.*	
		narcolepsy _____	*Sudden, uncontrollable compulsion to sleep (narc/o = stupor, sleep). Amphetamines and stimulant drugs are prescribed to prevent attacks.*
lex/o	word, phrase	dyslexia _____	*This is a developmental reading disorder occurring when the brain does not properly recognize, process, and interpret language.*
-paresis	weakness	hemiparesis _____	*Affects either right or left side (half) of the body.* ***Paresis*** *also is used by itself to mean partial paralysis or weakness of muscles.*
-phasia	speech	aphasia _____	*Difficulty with speech.* ***Motor*** *(also called Broca or expressive)* ***aphasia*** *is present when the patient knows what he or she wants to say but cannot say it. The patient with* ***sensory aphasia*** *has difficulty understanding language and may pronounce (articulate) words easily but use them inappropriately.*
-plegia	paralysis (loss or impairment of the ability to move parts of the body)	hemiplegia _____	*Affects the right or left half of the body and results from a stroke or other brain injury. The hemiplegia is contralateral to the brain lesion because motor nerve fibers from the right half of the brain cross to the left side of the body (in the medulla oblongata).*

COMBINING FORM OR SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
		paraplegia _____ *Originally, the term paraplegia meant a stroke (paralysis) on one side (para-). Now, however, the term means paralysis of both legs and the lower part of the body caused by injury or disease of the spinal cord or cauda equina.*
		quadriplegia _____ *Quadri- means four. All four extremities are affected. Injury is at the cervical level of the spinal cord.*
-praxia	action	apraxia _____ *Movements and behavior are not purposeful. A patient with motor apraxia cannot use an object or perform a task. Motor weakness is not the cause.*
-sthenia	strength	neurasthenia _____ *Nervous exhaustion and fatigue, often following depression.*
syncop/o	to cut off, cut short	syncopal _____ ***Syncope*** (SIN-ko-pe) *means fainting; sudden and temporary loss of consciousness caused by inadequate flow of blood to the brain. The term comes from a Greek word meaning cutting into pieces—thus, a fainting spell meant one's strength was "cut off."* ***HINT:*** *Syncopal means pertaining to fainting and is an adjective. A patient can experience a syncopal episode.*
tax/o	order, coordination	ataxia _____ *Condition of decreased coordination. Persistent unsteadiness on the feet can be caused by a disorder involving the cerebellum.*

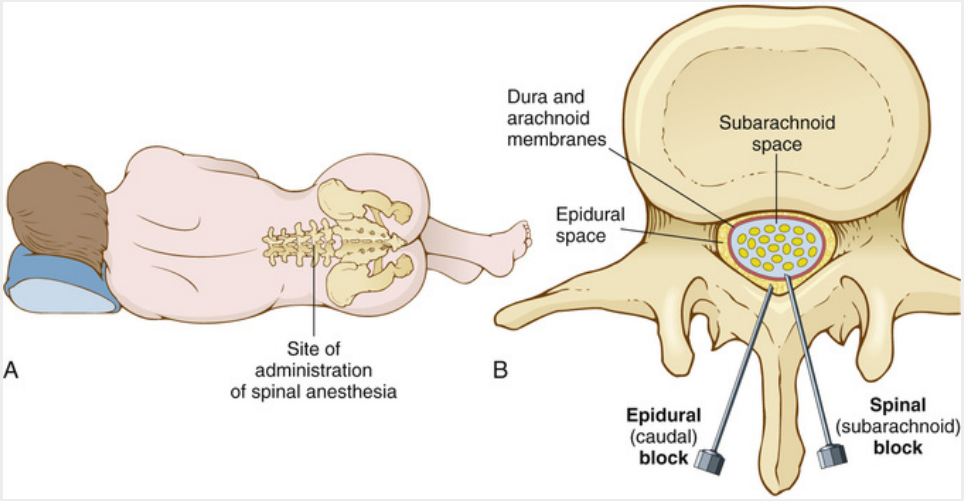


FIGURE 10-13 **A, Positioning of a patient for spinal anesthesia. B,** Cross-sectional view of the spinal cord showing injection sites for **epidural** and **spinal blocks (anesthesia).** Epidural (caudal) anesthesia is achieved by injecting an agent into the epidural space and is commonly used in obstetrics. Spinal anesthesia is achieved by injecting a local anesthetic into the subarachnoid space. Patients may experience loss of sensation and paralysis of feet, legs, and abdomen.

myel/o and my/o

Don't confuse these combining forms. **Myel/o** means spinal cord or bone marrow, while **my/o** means muscle. Another pair to watch out for is **pyel/o** (renal pelvis of the kidney) and **py/o** (pus).

Neuropathies

Neuropathies are diseases of peripheral nerves. They can affect motor, sensory, and autonomic functions. **Polyneuropathies** affect many nerves, while **mononeuropathies** affect individual nerves.

Pathology

The bones of the skull, the vertebral column, and the meninges, containing CSF, provide a hard box with an interior cushion around the brain and spinal cord. In addition, glial cells surrounding neurons form a blood-brain barrier that prevents many potentially harmful substances in the bloodstream from gaining access to neurons. However, these protective factors are

counterbalanced by the extreme sensitivity of nerve cells to oxygen deficiency (brain cells die in a few minutes when deprived of oxygen).

Neurologic disorders may be classified in the following categories:

- Congenital
- Degenerative, movement, and seizure
- Infectious (meningitis and encephalitis)
- Neoplastic (tumors)
- Traumatic
- Vascular (stroke)

Congenital Disorders

hydrocephalus	**Abnormal accumulation of fluid (CSF) in the brain.** If circulation of CSF in the brain or spinal cord is impaired, fluid accumulates under pressure in the ventricles of the brain. To relieve pressure on the brain, a catheter (shunt) can be placed from the ventricle of the brain into the peritoneal space (ventriculoperitoneal shunt) or right atrium of the heart so that the CSF is continuously drained from the brain. Hydrocephalus also can occur in adults as a result of tumors and infections.
spina bifida	**Congenital defects in the lumbar spinal column caused by imperfect union of vertebral parts (neural tube defect).** In **spina bifida occulta,** the vertebral defect is covered over with skin and evident only on x-ray or other imaging examination. **Spina bifida cystica** is a more severe form, with cyst-like protrusions. In **meningocele,** the meninges protrude to the outside of the body, and in **myelomeningocele** (or meningomyelocele), both the spinal cord and meninges protrude (Figure 10-14A and B). The etiology of neural tube defects is unknown. Defects originate in the early weeks of pregnancy as the spinal cord and vertebrae develop. Prenatal diagnosis is helped by imaging methods and testing maternal blood samples for alpha-fetoprotein.

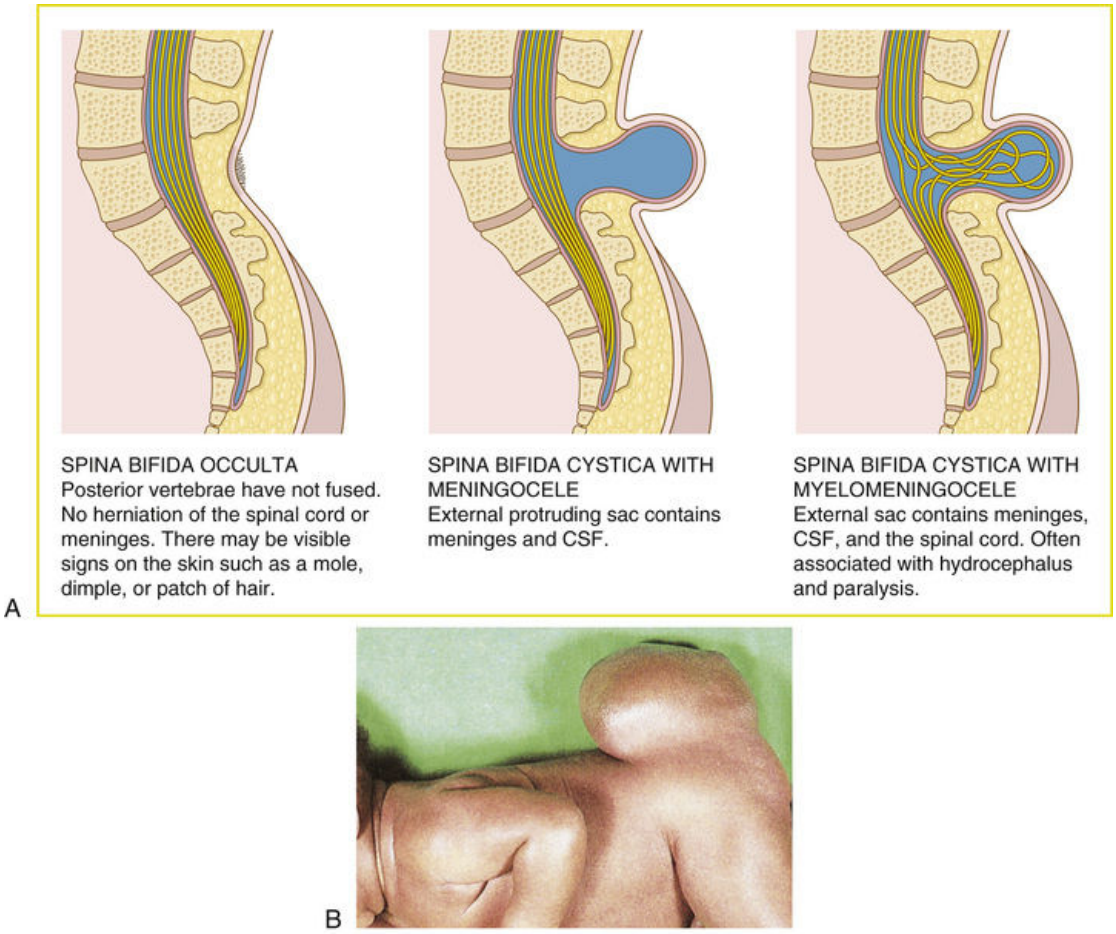

A
SPINA BIFIDA OCCULTA
Posterior vertebrae have not fused. No herniation of the spinal cord or meninges. There may be visible signs on the skin such as a mole, dimple, or patch of hair.
SPINA BIFIDA CYSTICA WITH MENINGOCELE
External protruding sac contains meninges and CSF.
SPINA BIFIDA CYSTICA WITH MYELOMENINGOCELE
External sac contains meninges, CSF, and the spinal cord. Often associated with hydrocephalus and paralysis.
B

FIGURE 10-14 **A, Spina bifida** (neural tube defects). **B, Spina bifida cystica** with **myelomeningocele.**

Degenerative, Movement, and Seizure Disorders

Alzheimer disease (AD) (Alzheimer's)	**Brain disorder marked by gradual and progressive mental deterioration (dementia), personality changes, and impairment of daily functioning.** Characteristics of AD include confusion, memory failure, disorientation, restlessness, and speech disturbances. Anxiety, depression, and emotional disturbances can occur as well. The disease sometimes begins in middle life with slight defects in memory and behavior, but can worsen after the age of 70. On autopsy there is frequently atrophy of the cerebral cortex and widening of the cerebral sulci, especially in the frontal and temporal regions (Figure 10-15A and B). Microscopic examination shows **senile plaques** resulting from degeneration of neurons and **neurofibrillary tangles** (bundles of fibrils in the cytoplasm of a neuron) in the cerebral cortex. Deposits of **amyloid** (a protein) occur in neurofibrillary tangles, senile plaques, and blood vessels. The cause of AD remains unknown, although genetic factors may play a role. A mutation on chromosome 14 has been linked to familial cases. There is as yet no effective treatment.
amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS)	**Degenerative disorder of motor neurons in the spinal cord and brainstem.** ALS manifests in adulthood. Signs and symptoms are weakness and atrophy of muscles in the hands, forearms, and legs; difficulty in swallowing and talking and dyspnea develop as the throat and respiratory muscles become affected. Etiology (cause) and cure for ALS both are unknown. A famous baseball player, Lou Gehrig, became a victim of this disease in the mid-1900s, so the condition became known as **Lou Gehrig disease.**
epilepsy	**Chronic brain disorder characterized by recurrent seizure activity.** Seizures are abnormal, sudden discharges of electrical activity within the brain. Seizures often are symptoms of underlying brain pathologic conditions, such as brain tumors, meningitis, vascular disease, or scar tissue from a head injury. **Tonic-clonic seizures (grand mal** or **ictal events)** are characterized by a sudden loss of consciousness, falling down, and then tonic contractions (stiffening of muscles) followed by clonic

	contractions (twitching and jerking movements of the limbs). These convulsions often are preceded by an **aura,** which is a peculiar sensation experienced by the affected person before onset of a seizure. Dizziness, numbness, and visual or olfactory (sense of smell) disturbances are examples of an aura. **Absence seizures** are a form of seizure consisting of momentary clouding of consciousness and loss of awareness of the person's surroundings. These include **petit mal seizures** in children. Drug therapy (anticonvulsants) is used for control of epileptic seizures. After seizures, there may be neurologic symptoms such as weakness called **postictal events.** In **temporal lobe epilepsy,** seizures begin in the temporal lobe (on each side of the brain near the ears) of the brain. The most common type of seizure is a **complex partial seizure.** Complex means impaired consciousness and partial indicates not generalized. Commonly these patients have seizures that cause them to pause in whatever they are doing, become confused, and have memory problems. The term epilepsy comes from the Greek epilepsis, meaning a laying hold of. The Greeks thought a victim of a seizure was laid hold of by some mysterious force. The word ictal originates from the Latin ictus, meaning a blow or a stroke.
Huntington disease (Huntington's)	**Hereditary disorder marked by degenerative changes in the cerebrum leading to abrupt involuntary movements and mental deterioration.** In this genetic condition, symptoms typically begin in adulthood and include personality changes, along with choreic (meaning dance-like) movements (uncontrollable, irregular jerking movements of the arms and legs and facial grimacing). It is also known as **Huntington chorea.** The genetic defect in patients with Huntington disease is located on chromosome 4. Patients can be tested for the gene; however, no cure exists, and management is symptomatic.
multiple sclerosis (MS)	**Destruction of the myelin sheath on neurons in the CNS and its replacement by plaques of sclerotic (hard) tissue.**

	One of the leading causes of neurologic disability in persons 20 to 40 years of age, MS is a chronic disease often marked by long periods of stability (remission) and worsening (relapse). **Demyelination** (loss of myelin insulation) prevents the conduction of nerve impulses through the axon. See Figure 10-16A. Demyelination causes paresthesias, muscle weakness, unsteady **gait** (manner of walking), and paralysis. There may be visual (blurred and double vision) and speech disturbances as well. Areas of scarred myelin (plaques) can be seen on MRI scans of the brain (Figure 10-16B). Etiology is unknown but probably involves an autoimmune disease of lymphocytes reacting against myelin. There are now many helpful disease-modifying drugs for treating MS. These drugs affect either the inflammation or the immunological abnormalities in the CNS associated with this illness.
myasthenia gravis (MG)	**Autoimmune neuromuscular disorder characterized by weakness of voluntary muscles.** MG is a chronic autoimmune disorder. Antibodies block the ability of acetylcholine (neurotransmitter) to transmit the nervous impulse from nerve to muscle cell. Onset of symptoms usually is gradual. Brainstem signs are prominent and include ptosis of the upper eyelid, double vision (diplopia), and facial weakness. Respiratory paralysis is the main clinical concern. Therapy to reverse symptoms includes anticholinesterase drugs, which inhibit the enzyme that breaks down acetylcholine. Immunosuppressive therapy is used, including medications such as corticosteroids (prednisone) and other immunosuppressive drugs. **Thymectomy** is also a method of treatment and is beneficial to many patients.
palsy	**Paralysis (partial or complete loss of motor function).** **Cerebral palsy** is partial paralysis and lack of muscular coordination caused by loss of oxygen (hypoxia) or blood flow to the cerebrum during pregnancy or in the perinatal period. **Bell palsy** (or Bell's palsy) (Figure 10-17) is paralysis on one side of the face. The likely cause is a viral infection, and therapy is directed against the virus (antiviral drugs) and nerve swelling (corticosteriods).

Parkinson disease (Parkinson's)	**Degeneration of neurons in the basal ganglia, occurring in later life and leading to tremors, weakness of muscles, and slowness of movement.** This slowly progressive condition is caused by a deficiency of **dopamine,** a neurotransmitter made by cells in the basal ganglia (see Figure 10-9). Motor disturbances include stooped posture, shuffling gait, and muscle stiffness (rigidity). Other signs are a typical "pill-rolling" tremor of hands and a characteristic mask-like lack of facial expression. See Figure 10-18. Therapy with drugs such as levodopa plus carbidopa (Sinemet) to increase dopamine levels in the brain is **palliative** (relieving symptoms but not curative). Many patients may have clinical features of Parkinson's (parkinsonism) and yet not have the disease itself. They would not benefit from antiparkinsonian medication. Some patients with Parkinson's may benefit from stimulation by electrodes placed surgically in the brain. Implantation of fetal brain tissue containing dopamine-producing cells is an experimental treatment but has produced uncertain results.
Tourette syndrome (Tourette's)	**Involuntary spasmodic, twitching movements; uncontrollable vocal sounds; and inappropriate words.** These involuntary movements, usually beginning with twitching of the eyelid and muscles of the face accompanied by verbal outbursts, are called **tics.** Although the cause of Tourette syndrome is not known, it is associated with either an excess of dopamine or a hypersensitivity to dopamine. Psychological problems do not cause Tourette syndrome, but physicians have had some success in treating it with the antipsychotic drug haloperidol (Haldol), antidepressants, and mood stabilizers.

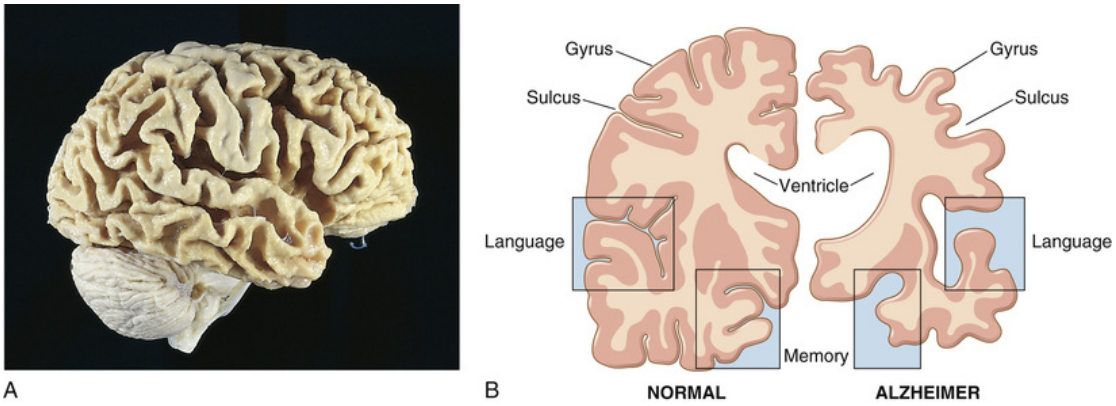


FIGURE 10-15 **A, Alzheimer disease.** Generalized loss of brain parenchyma (neuronal tissue) results in narrowing of the cerebral gyri and widening of the sulci. **B,** Cross-sectional comparison of a normal brain and a brain from a person with Alzheimer disease.

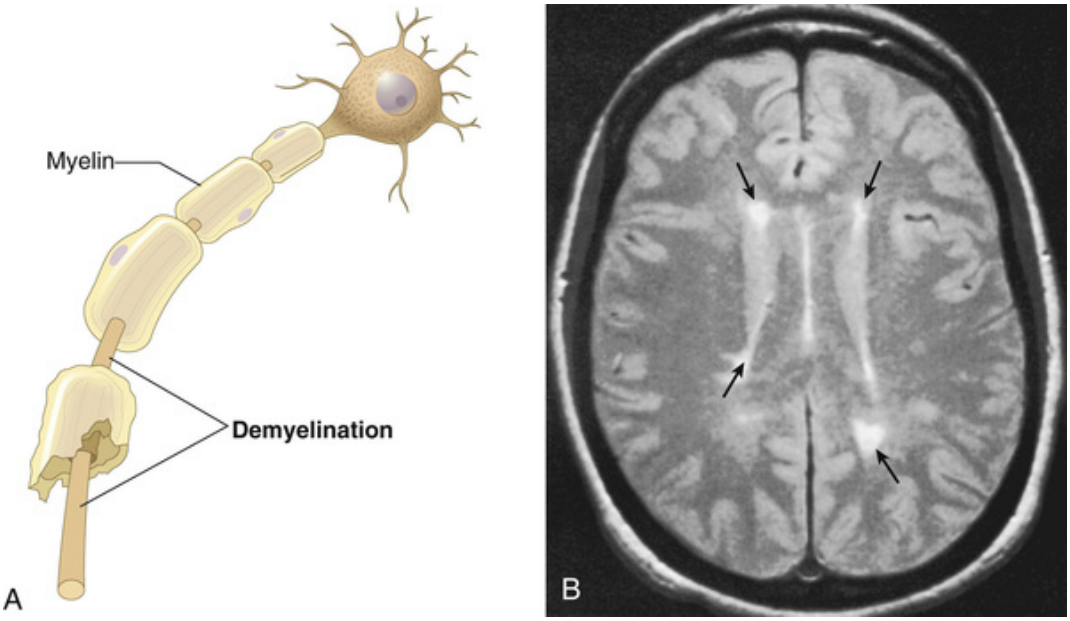


FIGURE 10-16 **Multiple sclerosis. A, Demyelination** of a nerve cell. **B,** This MRI scan shows multiple abnormal white areas that correspond to MS plaques (*arrows*). The plaques are scar tissue that forms when myelin sheaths are destroyed.

FIGURE 10-17 **A, Bell palsy.** Notice the paralysis on the left side of this man's face: The eyelid does not close properly, the forehead is not wrinkled as would be expected, and there is clear paralysis of the lower face. **B,** The palsy spontaneously resolved after 6 months.

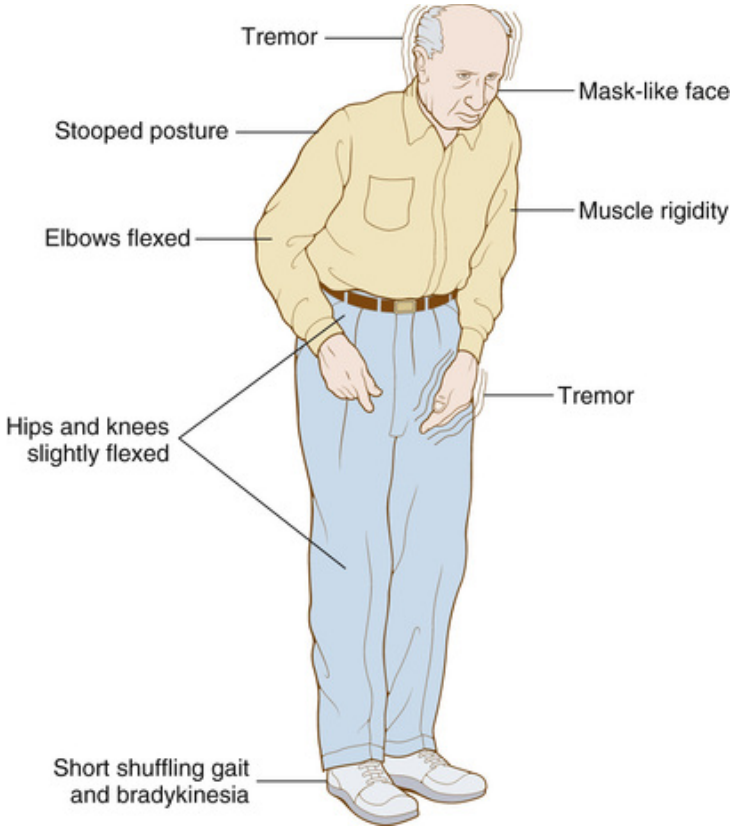


FIGURE 10-18 **Primary symptoms of Parkinson disease** are tremors in hands, arms, legs, jaw, and face; rigidity or stiffness of limbs and trunk; bradykinesia (shuffling gait), stooped posture, and masklike facies.

Epilepsy and Seizures

Epilepsy is a brain disorder in which at least two or more seizures appear spontaneously and recurrently. Having a single seizure does not mean that the affected person has epilepsy.

Infectious Disorders

herpes zoster (shingles)	**Viral infection affecting peripheral nerves.** Blisters and pain spread along peripheral nerves (see Figure 10-19A) and are caused by inflammation due to a herpesvirus **(herpes zoster),** the same virus that causes chickenpox (varicella). Reactivation of the chickenpox virus (herpes varicella-zoster), which remains in the body after the person had chickenpox, occurs. Painful blisters follow the underlying route of cranial or spinal nerves Shingrix is a vaccine to prevent shingles. It is recommended for people 50 years of age and older.
meningitis	**Inflammation of the meninges; leptomeningitis.** This condition can be caused by bacteria (pyogenic meningitis) or viruses (aseptic or viral meningitis). Signs and symptoms are fever and signs of meningeal irritation, such as headache, photophobia (sensitivity to light), and a stiff neck. Lumbar punctures are performed to examine CSF. Physicians use antibiotics to treat the more serious pyogenic form, and antivirals for the viral form.
human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) encephalopathy	**Brain disease and dementia occurring with AIDS.** Many patients with AIDS develop neurologic dysfunction. In addition to encephalitis and dementia (loss of mental functioning), some patients develop brain tumors and other infections.

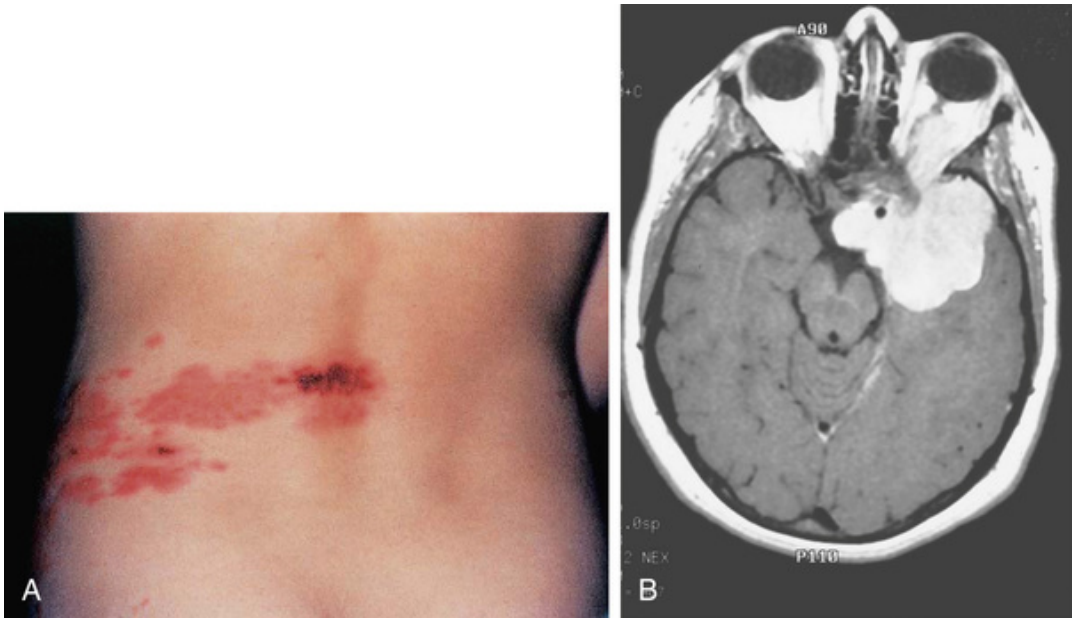


FIGURE 10-19 **A, Herpes zoster (shingles)** in a typical location around the trunk of the body. Zoster in ancient Greek means belt or girdle. **B, Glioblastoma** as seen on MRI.

Neoplastic Disorders

brain tumor	**Abnormal growth of brain tissue and meninges.** Most primary brain tumors arise from glial cells **(gliomas)** or the meninges **(meningiomas).** Types of gliomas include **astrocytoma** (Figure 10-19B), **oligodendroglioma,** and **ependymoma.** The most malignant form of astrocytoma is **glioblastoma multiforme** (-blast means immature) (see Figure 10-19B). Tumors can cause swelling **(cerebral edema)** and hydrocephalus. If CSF pressure is increased, swelling also may occur near the optic nerve (at the back of the eye). Other symptoms include severe headache and new seizures. Gliomas at times can be removed surgically. Brain tumors are also treated with chemotherapy and radiotherapy. Steroids are used to reduce cerebral edema.
	Meningiomas usually are benign and surrounded by a capsule, but they may cause compression and distortion of the brain. Tumors in the brain also may be single or multiple metastatic growths. Most arise from the lung, breast, skin (melanoma), kidney, and gastrointestinal tract and spread to the brain.

Traumatic Disorders

cerebral concussion	**Type of traumatic brain injury caused by a blow to the head.** There is usually no evidence of structural damage to brain tissue, and loss of consciousness may not occur. Rest is very important after a concussion because it allows the brain to heal. Doctors commonly recommend avoiding demanding mental and physical activities until symptoms have fully resolved.
cerebral contusion	**Bruising of brain tissue resulting from direct trauma to the head.** A cerebral contusion may be associated with edema and an increase in intracranial pressure. A skull fracture may be present. Subdural and epidural hematomas occur (see Figure 10-12), leading to permanent brain injury with abnormalities such as altered memory or speech as well as development of epilepsy.

Vascular Disorders

cerebrovascular accident (CVA)	**Disruption in the normal blood supply to the brain; stroke.** This condition, also known as a **cerebral infarction,** is the result of impaired oxygen supply to the brain. There are three types of strokes (Figure 10-20): 1. **Thrombotic**—blood clot **(thrombus)** in the arteries leading to the brain, resulting in occlusion (blocking) of the vessel. Atherosclerosis leads to this common type of stroke as blood vessels become blocked over time. Before total occlusion occurs, a patient may experience symptoms that point to the gradual occlusion of blood vessels. These short episodes of neurologic dysfunction are known as **transient ischemic attacks (TIAs).**
	2. **Embolic**—an **embolus** (a dislodged thrombus) travels to cerebral arteries and occludes a vessel. This type of stroke occurs very suddenly. 3. **Hemorrhagic**—a cerebral artery breaks and bleeding occurs. This type of stroke can be fatal and results from advancing age, atherosclerosis, or high blood pressure, all of which result in degeneration of cerebral blood vessels. With small hemorrhages, the body reabsorbs the blood and the patient makes good recovery with only slight disability. In a younger patient, cerebral hemorrhage usually is caused by mechanical injury associated with skull fracture or rupture of an arterial **aneurysm** (weakened area in the vessel wall that balloons and may eventually burst). See Figure 10-21. The major risk factors for stroke are hypertension, diabetes, smoking, and heart disease. Other risk factors include obesity, substance abuse (cocaine), and elevated cholesterol levels. Thrombotic strokes are treated with antiplatelet or anticoagulant (clot-dissolving) therapy. **Tissue plasminogen activator (tPA)** may be started shortly after the onset of a stroke. Surgical intervention with carotid endarterectomy (removal of the atherosclerotic plaque along with the inner lining of the affected carotid artery) also is possible.
migraine	**Severe, recurring, unilateral, vascular headache.** A migraine may be associated with an aura (peculiar sensations that precede the onset of illness). Symptoms of aura are temporary visual and sensory disturbances,

	including flashes of light and zigzag lines. Sensitivity to sound (phonophobia) and light (photophobia) are associated with the migraine itself. The etiology of pain in migraines is not fully established, but there are clearly changes in cerebral blood vessels. Treatment to prevent a migraine attack includes medications such as sumatriptan succinate (Imitrex) that target serotonin receptors on blood vessels and nerves. Drugs of this type reduce inflammation and restrict dilation of blood vessels.

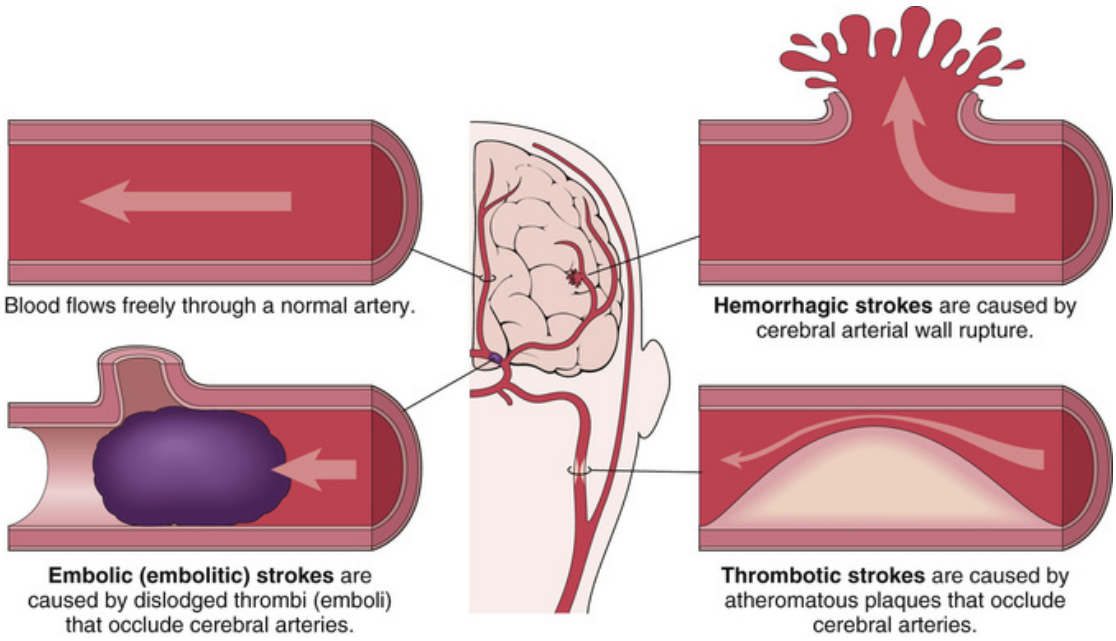

Blood flows freely through a normal artery.
Hemorrhagic strokes are caused by cerebral arterial wall rupture.
Embolic (embolitic) strokes are caused by dislodged thrombi (emboli) that occlude cerebral arteries.
Thrombotic strokes are caused by atheromatous plaques that occlude cerebral arteries.

FIGURE 10-20 Three types of strokes: embolic, hemorrhagic, and thrombotic.

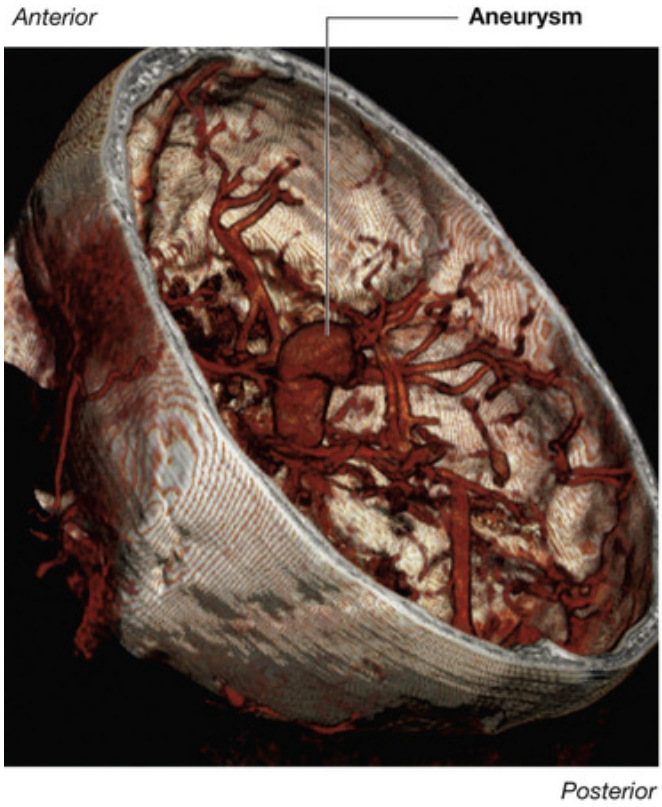


FIGURE 10-21 Cerebral aneurysm.

Study Section

The following list reviews the new terms used in the Pathology section. Practice spelling each term and know its meaning.

absence seizure	Form of seizure consisting of momentary clouding of consciousness and loss of awareness of surroundings.
aneurysm	Enlarged, weakened area in an arterial wall, which may rupture, leading to hemorrhage and CVA (stroke).
astrocytoma	Malignant brain tumor of astrocytes (glial brain cells).
aura	Peculiar symptom or sensation occurring before the onset (prodromal) of an attack of migraine or an epileptic seizure.
dementia	Mental decline and deterioration.
demyelination	Destruction of myelin on axons of neurons (as in multiple sclerosis).
dopamine	CNS neurotransmitter, deficient in patient with Parkinson disease.
embolus	Clot of material that travels through the bloodstream and suddenly blocks a vessel.
gait	Manner of walking.
ictal event	Pertaining to a sudden, acute onset, as with the convulsions of an epileptic seizure.
occlusion	Blockage.
palliative	Relieving symptoms but not curing them.
thymectomy	Removal of the thymus gland (a lymphocyte-producing gland in the chest); used as treatment for myasthenia gravis.
TIA	Transient ischemic attack. TIAs can occur with all three types of strokes: thrombolytic, embolic, and even hemorrhagic (if minor.) They are characterized by a limited time course of neurologic deficits.
tic	Involuntary movement of a small group of muscles, as of the face; characteristic of Tourette syndrome.
tonic-clonic seizure	Major (grand mal) convulsive seizure marked by sudden loss of consciousness, stiffening of muscles, and twitching and jerking movements.

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Laboratory Tests

cerebrospinal fluid analysis	**Samples of CSF are examined.** CSF analysis measures protein, glucose, and red (RBC) and white (WBC) blood cells as well as other chemical contents of the CSF. CSF analysis also can detect tumor cells (by cytology), bacteria, and viruses. These studies are used to diagnose infection, tumors, or multiple sclerosis.

Clinical Procedures

X-Ray Tests

cerebral angiography	**X-ray imaging of the arterial blood vessels in the brain after injection of contrast material.** Contrast is injected into the femoral artery (in the thigh), and x-ray motion pictures are taken. These images diagnose vascular disease (aneurysm, occlusion, hemorrhage) in the brain.
computed tomography (CT) of the brain	**Computerized x-ray technique that generates multiple images of the brain and spinal cord.** Contrast material may be injected intravenously to highlight abnormalities. The contrast leaks through the **blood-brain barrier** from blood vessels into the brain tissue and shows tumors, aneurysms, bleeding, brain injury, skull fractures, and blood clots. Operations are performed using the CT scan as a local road map. CT scans also are particularly useful for visualizing blood and bone.

Magnetic Resonance Techniques

magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)	**Magnetic field and pulses of radiowave energy create images of the brain and spinal cord.** MRI is better than CT at evaluation of brain parenchyma. It is excellent for viewing brain damage related to infection, inflammation or tumors. It also is used to look for causes of headaches, to help diagnose a stroke, and to detect bleeding problems and head injury. Contrast material may be used to enhance images. **Magnetic resonance angiography (MRA)** produces images of blood vessels using magnetic resonance techniques.

Radionuclide Studies

positron emission tomography (PET) scan	**Radioactive glucose is injected and then detected in the brain to image the metabolic activity of cells.** PET scans provide valuable information about the function of brain tissue in patients, to detect malignancy and to evaluate brain abnormalities in Alzheimer disease, stroke, schizophrenia, and epilepsy (Figure 10-22). Combined **PET-CT scanners** provide images that pinpoint the location of abnormal metabolic activity within the brain.

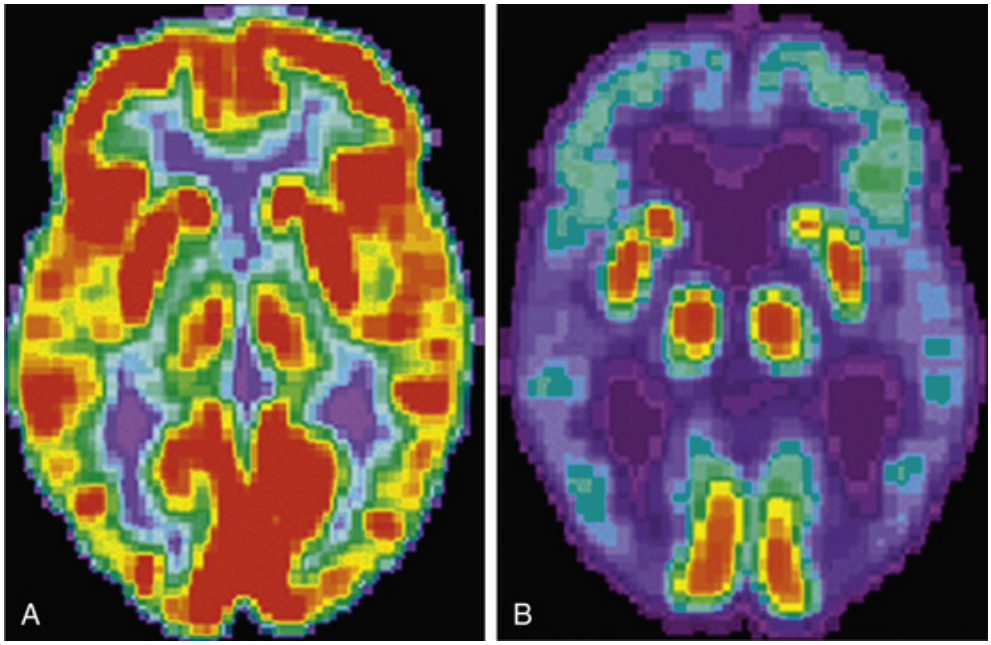


FIGURE 10-22 PET scans. A, Normal brain. B, Brain affected by Alzheimer disease. *Red* and *yellow areas* indicate high neural activity. *Blue* and *purple* indicate low neural activity.

Ultrasound Examination

Doppler ultrasound studies	**Sound waves detect blood flow in the carotid and intracranial arteries.** The carotid artery carries blood to the brain. These studies detect occlusion in blood vessels.

Other Procedures

electroencephalography (EEG)	**Recording of the electrical activity of the brain.** EEG demonstrates seizure activity resulting from brain tumors, other diseases, and injury to the brain. It can also help define diffuse cortical dysfunction (encephalopathies).
lumbar puncture (LP)	**CSF is withdrawn from between two lumbar vertebrae for analysis** (Figure 10-23). A device to measure the pressure of CSF may be attached to the end of the needle after it has been inserted. Injection of intrathecal medicines may be administered as well. Some patients experience headache after LP. An informal name for this procedure is "spinal tap."
stereotactic radiosurgery	**Use of a specialized instrument to locate and treat targets in the brain.** The stereotactic instrument is fixed onto the skull and guides the insertion of a needle by three-dimensional measurement. A **Gamma Knife** (high-energy radiation beam) is used to treat deep and often inaccessible intracranial brain tumors and abnormal blood vessel masses **(arteriovenous malformations)** without surgical incision. **Proton stereotactic radiosurgery (PSRS)** delivers a uniform dose of proton radiation to a target and spares surrounding normal tissue (Figure 10-24 A and B).

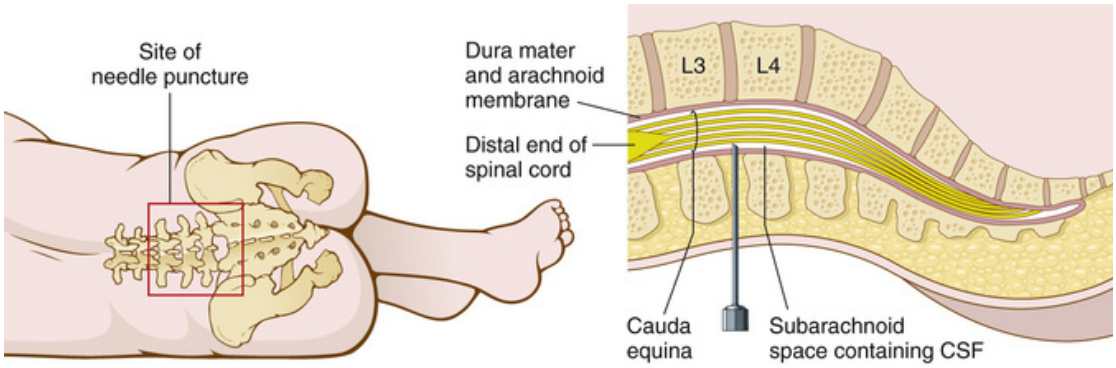


FIGURE 10-23 **Lumbar puncture.** The patient lies laterally, with the knees drawn up to the abdomen and the chin brought down to the chest. This position increases the spaces between the vertebrae. The lumbar puncture needle is inserted between the third and fourth (or the fourth and fifth) lumbar vertebrae and then is advanced to enter the subarachnoid space.

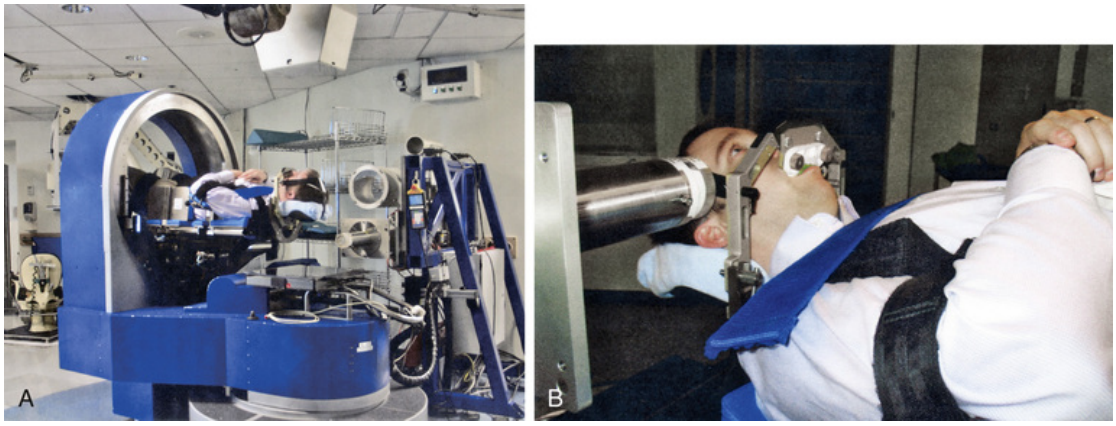


FIGURE 10-24 **A,** Patient in position on **stereotactic proton unit, ready to take an alignment x-ray. B, Stereotactic frame** holds the patient's head in place for treatment with proton beam radiosurgery. (Courtesy Department of Radiation Therapy, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.)

Abbreviations

AD	Alzheimer disease
AFP	alpha-fetoprotein; elevated levels in amniotic fluid and maternal blood are associated with congenital malformations of the nervous system, such as anencephaly and spina bifida
ALS	amyotrophic lateral sclerosis—Lou Gehrig disease
AVM	arteriovenous malformation; congenital tangle of arteries and veins in the cerebrum
BBB	blood-brain barrier
CNS	central nervous system
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid
CTE	chronic traumatic encephalopathy
CVA	cerebrovascular accident
EEG	electroencephalography
GABA	gamma-aminobutyric acid (neurotransmitter)
ICP	intracranial pressure (normal pressure is 5 to 15 mm Hg)
LP	lumbar puncture
MAC	monitored anesthetic care
MG	myasthenia gravis
MRA	magnetic resonance angiography
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
MS	multiple sclerosis
½P	hemiparesis
PCA	patient-controlled analgesia
PET	positron emission tomography
PNS	peripheral nervous system
PSRS	proton stereotactic radiosurgery
Sz	seizure
TBI	traumatic brain injury
TENS	transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation; technique using a battery-powered device to relieve acute and chronic pain
TIA	transient ischemic attack; temporary interference with the blood supply to the brain
TLE	temporal lobe epilepsy
tPA	tissue plasminogen activator; a clot-dissolving drug used as therapy for stroke

Practical Applications

Case Study: A Patient's Account of Ulnar Nerve Neuropathy

I am definitely not one of those ambidextrous people. I am a true righty, so the "experiment" of making me a lefty out of necessity didn't go so well. Over the past decade, I had slowly lost sensation in my right pinky and a fair amount of function in my right hand. You might think that I should have taken care of treating it when it initially presented itself with an electric shock down my arm from hitting my "funny bone" over and over. The "funny bone," of course, is not a bone at all. It is the ulnar nerve, which runs across the medial and posterior aspect of the elbow as it travels to the hand. See Figure 10-25. After multiple injuries to my elbow, my pinky just became useless and numb.

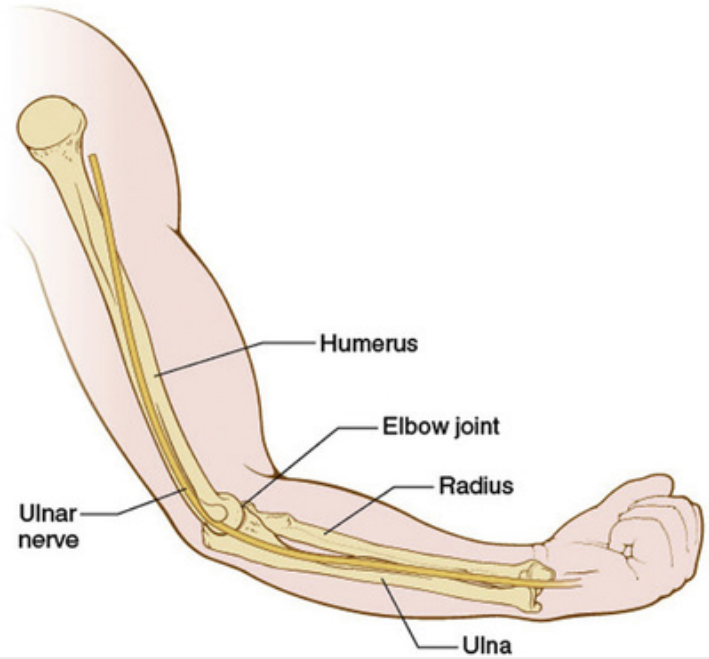


FIGURE 10-25 **Pathway of ulnar nerve** running behind the elbow joint (median epicondyle of the humerus) and toward the hand.

As a physician, I realized that my ulnar nerve had become entrapped and scarred from repeated injury. Over the years, I tolerated this situation because other nerves had remained unaffected, providing sensation and function to my hand. It was only when I saw myself in a video (my hand looked like a claw) that I recognized how compromised the function of the hand had become.

During an exam by an orthopedic elbow specialist, testing revealed poor sensation and atrophy of my right hand muscles. My grip strength was also affected and was now actually stronger on my left rather than my right.

Surgery was scheduled immediately with hopes of halting atrophy and clawing of my hand and regaining sensation in my pinky. My surgeon performed an Eaton procedure. He moved the scarred ulnar nerve from its vulnerable path and placed sutures to hold the ulnar nerve in its new place under the fascia (connective tissue) of my elbow. He created a little "curtain" with the fascia to keep the nerve from moving again. This ultimately allowed the nerve to take a "shortcut" on the way to my hand while taking tension off the injured nerve and keeping it away from the bony prominence of the elbow.

When I awoke from the anesthesia, I could immediately tell that something was different about my hand. I had tingling in my previously numb fingers and soon had a warm sensation and even sweating in my palm. These findings demonstrated the return of the autonomic function of the nerve, something that had also been affected by the long-standing injury.

My arm was in a sling until my post-op appointment. Figure 10-26 shows my arm and scar just after the 2-week postoperative check. A compression sleeve prevented swelling and reminded me not to use my arm too much.

FIGURE 10-26 Post-operative scar from ulnar nerve surgery.

At 3 months postsurgery I was back to my usual routine of typing, writing, and using my hand. Sensation gradually returned to my pinky, and the function in my hand improved as well but very slowly. Injured nerves can regenerate as long as they are not cut or completely crushed. The nerve heals from proximal to distal (starting at the elbow and working toward the tip of the finger). Doctors quote the statistic of a millimeter a day for nerve regeneration, or roughly an inch per month. The feeling in my pinky is still not normal, but it is improving, and it's encouraging to notice the progress. The muscles in my hand are also getting stronger. The true test will be to check my grip strength when I return for my 6-month follow-up appointment.

I am grateful for the brisk action and skilled surgery that was possible before my ulnar nerve was permanently damaged. I am also thankful that the body can heal itself when provided the appropriate help. I had become so used to the numb feeling that I had no idea of what I had been missing!

Answers to the following case report and case study questions are on page 366.

Case Report: Cerebral Infarction

This patient was admitted on January 14 with a history of progressive right hemiparesis for the previous 1 to 2 months; fluctuating numbness of the right arm, thorax, and buttocks; jerking of the right leg; periods of speech arrest; diminished comprehension in reading; and recent development of a hemiplegic gait. Given the gradually progressive development of neurological difficulties, he was suspected of having a left parietal tumor. [The parietal lobes of the cerebrum are on either side under the roof of the skull.]

Examinations done before hospitalization included skull films, EEG, and CSF analysis, which were all normal. After admission, an MRI was abnormal in the left parietal region, as was the EEG.

An MRA study to assess cerebral blood vessels was attempted, but the patient became progressively more restless and agitated after sedation, so the procedure was stopped. During the recovery phase from the sedation, the patient was alternately somnolent [sleepy] and violent, but it was later apparent that he had developed almost a complete aphasia and right hemiplegia.

In the next few days, he became more alert, although he remained dysarthric [from the Greek *arthroun,* to utter distinctly] and hemiplegic.

MRI and MRA with the patient under general anesthesia on January 19 showed complete occlusion of the left internal carotid artery with cross-filling of the left anterior and middle cerebral arteries from the right internal carotid circulation.

Final diagnosis: Left CVA caused by left internal carotid artery occlusion.

[Figure 10-27 shows the common carotid arteries and their branches within the head and brain.]

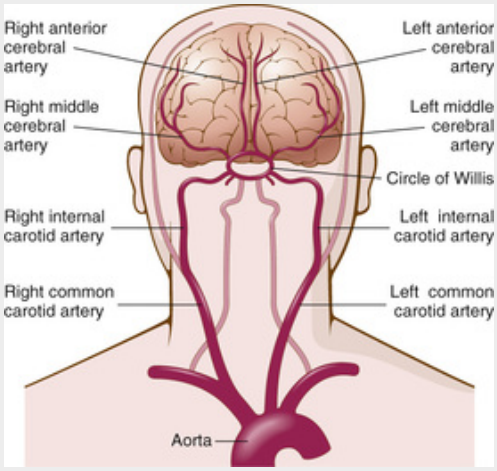


FIGURE 10-27 Common carotid arteries and their branches.

Questions about the Case Report

1. The patient was admitted with a history of:
    a. Right-sided paralysis caused by a previous stroke
    b. Paralysis on the left side of his body
    c. Increasing paresis on the right side of his body
2. The patient also had experienced periods of:
    a. Aphasia and dyslexia
    b. Dysplastic gait
    c. Apraxia and aphasia
3. After his admission to the hospital, where did the MRI show an abnormality?
    a. Right posterior region of the brain
    b. Left and right sides of the brain
    c. Left side of the brain
4. What test determined the final diagnosis?
    a. EEG for both sides of the brain
    b. CSF analysis and cerebral angiography
    c. MRI and MRA
5. What was the final diagnosis?
    a. Stroke; ischemic injury to tissue in the left cerebrum caused by blockage of an artery

b. Cross-filling of blood vessels from the left to the right side of the brain
c. Cerebral palsy on the left side of the brain with cross-filling of two cerebral arteries

Pain Medications

Pain is a major symptom in many medical conditions. Both the area of injury and how the brain deals with it affect the sensations of pain. Medications to relieve pain (analgesics) act in different ways:

- **Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs)** relieve pain by stopping inflammation. Examples are nonprescription drugs such as ibuprofen (Advil, Motrin, Excedrin), aspirin (Anacin, Ascriptin, Bufferin), and naproxen (Aleve). Other NSAIDs that require a prescription are Toradol (ketorolac) and Feldene (piroxicam).
- **Acetaminophen (Tylenol)** relieves fever and mild pain but is not an anti-inflammatory drug. It is not clear how acetaminophen works.
- **Opioids (narcotics)** relieve pain by affecting receptors in the brain to control the perception of pain. Examples are morphine, codeine, oxycodone, and hydrocodone. Combinations of narcotics and acetaminophen are Vicodin (acetaminophen with hydrocodone) and Percocet (acetaminophen with oxycodone). Given the addicting potential for this class of drugs, opioids are, in general, prescribed only in limited quantities and used sparingly.

Neuropathic Pain with a Case Study

Neuropathic pain is a unique type of pain that accompanies illnesses and trauma. Patients may describe this pain as:

- radiating or spreading
- an electric shock–like sensation
- hot or burning
- shooting, piercing, darting, or stabbing (lancinating)
- abnormal skin sensations (paresthesias): numbness, tingling, “pins and needles”
- pain to light touch
- extreme sensitivity to ordinary, innocuous stimuli
- often independent of movement

Case Study:

A 68-year-old man awoke one morning with severe pain in his right shoulder. On turning his head or lifting his shoulder, he experienced extreme discomfort and lancinating pain. The pain was a sharp, burning pain that moved across his shoulder and down into his right arm. Finding a comfortable position lying down was difficult. A cervical MRI study showed no bone abnormalities, whereas a neurologic examination provided evidence of damage to multiple peripheral nerves. He developed weakness of his shoulder muscles and was unable to lift his right arm. Final diagnosis was brachial plexus neuritis [also known as Parsonage-Turner syndrome]. The cause of the condition is unknown, but it may be related to a flu vaccination he received 2 weeks previously. Treatment consisted of pain medication and physical therapy to rehabilitate weakened muscles in his arm and shoulder.

Questions about the Case Study

1. The cervical MRI study showed:
    a. Damage to the vertebrae in the neck
    b. Nerve entrapment in the upper spine
    c. Damage to multiple peripheral nerves
    d. Normal vertebrae in the neck
2. Lancinating pain is:
    a. Pain to light touch
    b. Characterized by paresthesia
    c. Stabbing, piercing, shooting
    d. Characterized by numbness and tingling
3. The patient's diagnosis is best described as:
    a. Inflammation of cervical nerve roots affecting his shoulder and arm
    b. Inflammation of a network of nerves in his shoulder that control muscles in his arm
    c. First stages of a heart attack, marked by radiating arm pain
    d. Autoimmune disorder affecting voluntary muscles in his shoulder and arm

In Person

Sciatica

*This is a first-person account of a woman in her mid-forties living with sciatica.*Twelve years ago, I wouldn't have believed that reaching into a

laundry basket could change my life. But in January 2009, it did.

I had gotten my first-ever backache a few days earlier, after a long car trip. A Google search instructed me to apply ice for the first 48 hours and then heat if the pain persisted. My husband took over the kids' school-day routine while I recuperated. That third morning, I could hear my younger son rifling around for his favorite sweatshirt; I knew it was at the foot of my bed, waiting to be sorted. In the instant it took to reach into the laundry basket for that sweatshirt, my back went from dull ache to a crippling pain that radiated all the way down my left leg to the tip of my left foot.

An MRI scan confirmed the diagnosis: spinal disc herniation, protruding onto the nerve roots affecting the sciatic nerve and causing my leg pain. With surgery presented as a last resort, I embarked on a crash course of physical therapy, NSAIDs, oral steroids, muscle relaxants, epidural steroid injections, and lots and lots of patience. I saw gradual improvement for about three months, to the point that I was able to resume a modified daily routine.

Then, the improvement stopped. Conventional treatment had run its course. I was at the “last resort” stage. So I “cried uncle” and requested a surgical consult. The surgeon ordered a follow-up MRI, which showed good news: There had been much improvement to the herniation. To my surprise, the MRI also revealed that nerve roots supplying the sciatic nerve were now free and clear of impingement. If the nerve was back to normal, why was I still in such pain? Because, it turns out, the nerve was injured by its ordeal. Not uncommon, I was reassured. This development took the surgical option off the table. After all, the goal of the surgery would have been to relieve the affected nerve from compression by the protruding disc. In my case, even the relieved nerve was causing problems, and that meant not surgery, but more patience. The wait began: to see whether the nerve would repair itself—I was told that could take years—or worse, whether I was facing permanent nerve damage.

Three years later the verdict seems clear: my sciatic nerve sustained what appears to be permanent damage. To this day, I have not regained full use of my left leg. Along with chronic, dull pain, there are also paresthesias—simultaneous burning and numbness along the path of the sciatic nerve accompanied by constant involuntary muscle spasms. I've lost my Achilles jerk reflex, and so unresponsive is my left foot that I can't feel it hit the ground when I'm walking.

In those critical first months, I thought my options were either resolving the herniation with surgery or resolving it without surgery. It never once occurred to me that, four years later, the injury would remain unresolved.

There's always a new treatment, specialist, or drug that shows promise or that really worked for a friend of a friend. Until recently, it felt like I was giving up hope if I didn't pursue each lead. Now I'm focusing more on

adapting to my new circumstances than on finding a "cure." I don't want my whole life to revolve around sciatica. I found a medication that reduces the chronic pain to more of an annoyance than a crisis (with occasional flare-ups).

I missed my old life and wanted it back. At the risk of sounding like a late-night pharmaceutical ad, I'm not giving up; I'm going on.

AUTHOR'S NOTE *Everyone's experience with sciatica is unique. I have also experienced the condition myself, resulting from an L4-L5 disk herniation. After 7 months of pain radiating down my right leg, I had microdiskectomy surgery, which fortunately alleviated my pain and sciatica.*

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, page 364.

A **Match the listed neurologic structures with the descriptions/definitions that follow.**

astrocyte

axon

cauda equina

cerebral cortex

dendrite

meninges

myelin sheath

neuron

oligodendroglial cell

plexus

1. microscopic fiber leading from the cell body that carries the nervous impulse along a nerve cell

   _____

2. large, interlacing network of nerves

   _____

3. three protective membranes surrounding the brain and spinal cord _____
4. microscopic branching fiber of a nerve cell that is the first part to receive the nervous impulse _____
5. outer region of the largest part of the brain; composed of gray matter _____
6. glial cell that transports water and salts between capillaries and nerve cells _____
7. glial cell that produces myelin _____
8. a nerve cell that transmits a nerve impulse _____
9. collection of spinal nerves below the end of the spinal cord at the level of the second lumbar vertebra _____
10. fatty tissue that surrounds the axon of a nerve cell _____

B **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. dura mater _____
2. central nervous system _____
3. peripheral nervous system _____
4. arachnoid membrane _____
5. hypothalamus _____
6. synapse _____
7. sympathetic nerves _____
8. medulla oblongata _____
9. pons _____

10. cerebellum _____
11. thalamus _____
12. ventricles of the brain _____
13. brainstem _____
14. cerebrum _____
15. ganglion _____

C **Match the following terms with the meanings or associated terms below.**

glial cells
gyri
motor nerves
neurotransmitter
parenchymal cell
pia mater
sensory nerves
subarachnoid space
sulci

1. innermost meningeal membrane
   _____
2. carry messages away from (efferent) the brain and spinal cord to muscles and glands
   _____
3. carry messages toward (afferent) the brain and spinal cord from receptors _____
4. grooves in the cerebral cortex
   _____

5. contains cerebrospinal fluid
   _____
6. elevations in the cerebral cortex
   _____
7. chemical that is released at the end of a nerve cell and stimulates or inhibits another cell (example: acetylcholine) _____
8. essential cell of the nervous system; a neuron
   _____
9. connective and supportive (stromal) tissue
   _____

D **Circle the correct boldface term for the given definition.**

1. disease of the brain **(encephalopathy, myelopathy)**
2. part of the brain that controls muscular coordination and balance **(cerebrum, cerebellum)**
3. collection of blood above the dura mater **(subdural hematoma, epidural hematoma)**
4. inflammation of the pia and arachnoid membranes **(leptomeningitis, causalgia)**
5. condition of absence of a brain **(hypalgesia, anencephaly)**
6. inflammation of the gray matter of the spinal cord **(poliomyelitis, polyneuritis)**
7. pertaining to the membranes around the brain and spinal cord **(cerebellopontine, meningeal)**
8. disease of nerve roots (of spinal nerves) **(neuropathy, radiculopathy)**
9. hernia of the spinal cord and meninges **(myelomeningocele, meningioma)**

10. pertaining to the tenth cranial nerve **(thalamic, vagal)**

E **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. cerebral cortex

_____
_____

2. intrathecal

_____
_____

3. polyneuritis

_____
_____

4. thalamic

_____
_____

5. myelopathy

_____
_____

6. meningioma

_____
_____

7. glioma

_____
_____

8. subdural hematoma

_____
_____

F **Match the listed neurologic symptoms with the definitions/descriptions that follow.**

aphasia

ataxia
bradykinesia
causalgia
dyslexia
hemiparesis
hyperesthesia
motor apraxia
narcolepsy
neurasthenia
paraplegia
syncope

1. reading disorder _____
2. condition of decreased coordination
   _____
3. condition of slow movement
   _____
4. condition of increased sensation
   _____
5. seizure of sleep; uncontrollable compulsion to sleep
   _____
6. difficulty with speech
   _____
7. inability to perform a task
   _____
8. weakness in the right or left half of the body
   _____
9. severe burning pain due to nerve injury
   _____

10. paralysis in the lower part of the body
_____
11. fainting _____
12. nervous exhaustion (lack of strength) and fatigue
_____

G **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. analgesia
_____
_____
2. motor aphasia
_____
_____
3. paresis
_____
_____
4. quadriplegia
_____
_____
5. asthenia
_____
_____
6. comatose
_____
_____
7. paresthesia
_____
_____
8. hyperkinesis
_____

_____

9. anesthesia

_____

_____

10. causalgia

_____

_____

11. akinetic

_____

_____

12. hypalgesia

_____

_____

13. dyskinesia

_____

_____

14. migraine

_____

_____

H **Match the listed neurologic pathology terms with the descriptions that follow. The terms in** boldface **are clues!**

Alzheimer disease

amyotrophic lateral sclerosis

Bell palsy

epilepsy

Huntington disease

hydrocephalus

multiple sclerosis

myasthenia gravis

Parkinson disease

myelomeningocele

1. Destruction of myelin sheath (demyelination) and its replacement by **hard** plaques:
   _____
2. Sudden, transient disturbances of brain function cause **seizures**: _____
3. The **spinal** column is imperfectly joined (a **split** in a vertebra occurs), and part of the meninges and spinal cord can herniate out of the spinal cavity:
   _____
4. **Atrophy** of muscles and paralysis caused by damage to motor neurons in the spinal cord and brainstem:
   _____
5. Patient displays bizarre, abrupt, involuntary, **dance**-like movements, as well as decline in mental functions:
   _____
6. Cerebrospinal **fluid** accumulates in the **head** (in the ventricles of the brain): _____
7. **Loss of muscle strength** due to the inability of a neurotransmitter (acetylcholine) to transmit impulses from nerve cells to muscle cells:
   _____
8. Degeneration of nerves in the basal ganglia occurring in later life, leading to tremors, shuffling gait, and muscle stiffness; **dopamine** (neurotransmitter) is deficient in the brain: _____
9. Deterioration of mental capacity **(dementia)**; autopsy shows cerebral cortex atrophy, widening of cerebral

sulci, and microscopic neurofibrillary tangles:

_____

10. Unilateral facial **paralysis:**

_____

I **Give the meanings of the following terms for abnormal conditions.**

1. astrocytoma

_____

_____

2. pyogenic meningitis

_____

_____

3. Tourette syndrome

_____

_____

4. cerebral contusion

_____

_____

5. cerebrovascular accident

_____

_____

6. cerebral concussion

_____

_____

7. herpes zoster

_____

_____

8. cerebral embolus

_____

_____

9. cerebral thrombosis

_____

_____

10. cerebral hemorrhage

_____

_____

11. cerebral aneurysm

_____

_____

12. HIV encephalopathy

_____

_____

J Match the term in Column I with the letter of its description or meaning in Column II.

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. ataxia	_____	A. relieving, but not curing
2. aura	_____	B. virus that causes chickenpox and shingles
3. transient ischemic attack	_____	C. uncoordinated gait
4. tonic-clonic seizure	_____	D. neurotransmitter
5. herpes zoster	_____	E. peculiar sensation experienced by patient before onset of seizure
6. palliative	_____	F. malignant brain tumor of immature glial cells
7. dopamine	_____	G. major epileptic seizure; ictal event
8. occlusion	_____	H. blood flow to the brain stops for a brief period of time
9. absence seizure	_____	I. minor epileptic seizure
10. glioblastoma multiforme	_____	J. blockage

K Describe what happens in the following two procedures.

1. MRI of the brain:

_____

_____

2. stereotactic radiosurgery with Gamma Knife:
_____
_____
_____

L **Match these easily confused terms for neurologic pathology with the meanings/descriptions that follow.**

analgesia
anesthesia
aphasia
apraxia
ataxia
dyskinesia
dyslexia
hyperkinesia
neurasthenia
paresis
paresthesia

1. lack of nerve strength _____
2. inability to speak _____
3. inability to perform purposeful actions
_____
4. condition of insensitivity to pain
_____
5. condition of loss of sensation
_____
6. sensations of tingling, numbness, or “pins and needles”
_____
7. lack of coordination _____

8. excessive movement _____

9. abnormal, involuntary, spasmodic movements _____

10. developmental reading disorder _____

11. partial paralysis _____

M **Spell out the abbreviations in Column I, and then select the letter of the best association from Column II for each.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. EEG _____	_____	A. Gradually progressive dementia.
2. PET _____	_____	B. Stroke; embolus, hemorrhage, and thrombosis are etiologic factors.
3. AFP _____	_____	C. Intrathecal medications can be administered through this procedure.
4. MS _____	_____	D. This fluid is analyzed for abnormal blood cells, chemicals, and protein.
5. MRI _____	_____	E. Procedure to diagnose abnormal electrical activity in the brain.
6. LP _____	_____	F. Neurologic symptoms and/or signs due to temporary interference of blood supply to the brain.
7. CVA _____	_____	G. High levels in amniotic fluid and maternal blood are associated with spina bifida.
8. AD _____	_____	H. Diagnostic procedure that allows excellent visualization of soft tissue in the brain.
9. TIA _____	_____	I. Radioactive materials, such as glucose, are taken up by the brain, and images recorded.
10. CSF _____	_____	J. Destruction of the myelin sheath in the CNS occurs with plaques of hard scar tissue.

N **Circle the** boldface **terms that complete the meanings of the sentences.**

1. Maria had such severe headaches that she could find relief only with strong analgesics. Her condition of **(spina bifida, migraine, epilepsy)** was debilitating.

2. Paul was in a coma after his high-speed car accident. His physicians were concerned that he had suffered a **(palsy, myelomeningocele, contusion and subdural hematoma)** as a result of the accident.
3. Dick went to the emergency department complaining of dizziness, nausea, and headache. The physician, suspecting increased ICP, prescribed corticosteroids, and Dick's symptoms disappeared. They returned, however, when the steroids were discontinued. A/an **(MRI study of the brain, electroencephalogram, CSF analysis)** revealed a large brain lesion. It was removed surgically and determined to be a/an **(embolus, glioblastoma multiforme, migraine)**.
4. Dorothy felt weakness in her hand and numbness in her arm, and noticed blurred vision, all signs of **(herpes zoster, meningitis, TIA)**. Her physician requested **(myelography, MRA, lumbar puncture)** to assess any damage to cerebral blood vessels and possible stroke.
5. When Bill noticed ptosis and muscle weakness in his face, he reported these symptoms to his doctor. The doctor diagnosed his condition as **(Tourette syndrome, Huntington disease, myasthenia gravis)** and prescribed **(dopamine, anticonvulsants, anticholinesterase drugs)**, which relieved his symptoms.
6. To rule out bacterial **(epilepsy, encephalomalacia, meningitis)**, Dr. Phillips, a pediatrician, requested that a/an **(EEG, PET scan, LP)** be performed on the febrile (feverish) child.
7. Eight-year-old Barry reversed his letters and had difficulty learning to read and write words. His family

physician diagnosed his problem as **(aphasia, dyslexia, ataxia)**.

8. After his head hit the steering wheel during a recent automobile accident, Clark noticed **(hemiparesis, paraplegia, hyperesthesia)** on the left side of his body. A head CT scan revealed **(narcolepsy, neurasthenia, subdural hematoma)**.
9. For her 35th birthday, Elizabeth's husband threw her a surprise party. She was so startled by the crowd that she experienced a weakness of muscles and loss of consciousness. Friends placed her on her back in a horizontal position with her head low to improve blood flow to her brain. She soon recovered from her **(myoneural, syncopal, hyperkinetic)** episode.
10. Near his 65th birthday, Edward began having difficulty remembering recent events. Over the next 5 years, he developed **(dyslexia, dementia, seizures)** and was diagnosed with **(multiple sclerosis, myasthenia gravis, Alzheimer disease)**.
11. Elderly Mrs. Smith had been taking an antipsychotic drug for 5 years when she began exhibiting lip smacking and darting movements of her tongue. Her doctor described her condition as **(radiculitis, tardive dyskinesia, hemiparesis)** and discontinued her drug. The condition, acquired after use of the drug, would be considered **(iatrogenic, congenital, ictal)**.

O **Complete the spelling of the following terms based on their meanings.**

1. part of the brain that controls sleep, appetite, temperature, and secretions of the pituitary gland:

hypo
_____
2. pertaining to fainting: syn
_____
3. abnormal tingling sensations: par
_____
4. slight paralysis: par
_____
5. inflammation of a spinal nerve root:
_____
itis
6. inability to speak correctly: a
_____
7. movements and behavior that are not purposeful: a
_____
8. lack of muscular coordination: a
_____
9. developmental reading disorder: dys
_____
10. excessive movement: hyper
_____
11. paralysis in one half (right or left) of the body:
_____ plegia
12. paralysis in the lower half of the body:
_____ plegia

13. paralysis in all four limbs: _____ _ plegia
14. nervous exhaustion and fatigue: neur _____

Answers to Exercises

A

1. axon
2. plexus
3. meninges
4. dendrite
5. cerebral cortex
6. astrocyte
7. oligodendroglial cell
8. neuron
9. cauda equina
10. myelin sheath

B

1. outermost meningeal layer surrounding the brain and spinal cord
2. brain and the spinal cord
3. nerves outside the brain and spinal cord; cranial, spinal, and autonomic nerves

4. middle meningeal membrane surrounding the brain and spinal cord

5. part of the brain below the thalamus; controls sleep, appetite, body temperature, and secretions from the pituitary gland

6. space through which a nervous impulse is transmitted from a nerve cell to another nerve cell or to a muscle or gland cell

7. autonomic nerves that influence body functions involuntarily in times of stress

8. part of the brain just above the spinal cord that controls breathing, heartbeat, and the size of blood vessels

9. part of the brain anterior to the cerebellum and between the medulla and the upper parts of the brain; connects these parts of the brain

10. posterior part of the brain that coordinates voluntary muscle movements

11. part of the brain below the cerebrum; relay center that conducts impulses between the spinal cord and the cerebrum

12. canals in the interior of the brain that are filled with CSF

13. lower portion of the brain that connects the cerebrum with the spinal cord (includes the pons and the medulla)

14. largest part of the brain; controls voluntary muscle movement, vision, speech, hearing, thought, memory

15. collection of nerve cell bodies outside the brain and spinal cord

C

1. pia mater
2. motor nerves
3. sensory nerves
4. sulci
5. subarachnoid space
6. gyri
7. neurotransmitter
8. parenchymal cell
9. glial cells

D

1. encephalopathy
2. cerebellum
3. epidural hematoma
4. leptomeningitis
5. anencephaly
6. poliomyelitis
7. meningeal
8. radiculopathy
9. myelomeningocele
10. vagal

E

1. outer region of the cerebrum (contains gray matter)
2. pertaining to within a sheath through the meninges and into the subarachnoid space
3. inflammation of many nerves
4. pertaining to the thalamus
5. disease of the spinal cord
6. tumor of the meninges
7. tumor of neuroglial cells (a brain tumor)
8. mass of blood below the dura mater (outermost meningeal membrane)

F

1. dyslexia
2. ataxia
3. bradykinesia
4. hyperesthesia
5. narcolepsy
6. aphasia
7. motor apraxia
8. hemiparesis
9. causalgia
10. paraplegia
11. syncope
12. neurasthenia

G

1. lack of sensitivity to pain
2. difficulty in speaking (patient cannot articulate words but can understand speech and knows what she or he wants to say)
3. weakness and partial loss of movement
4. paralysis in all four extremities (damage is to the cervical part of the spinal cord)
5. no strength (weakness)
6. pertaining to coma (loss of consciousness from which the patient cannot be aroused)
7. condition of abnormal sensations (prickling, tingling, burning)
8. excessive movement
9. condition of no sensation or nervous feeling
10. severe burning pain from injury to peripheral nerves
11. pertaining to without movement
12. diminished sensation to pain
13. impairment of the ability to perform voluntary movements
14. recurrent vascular headache with severe pain of unilateral onset and photophobia (sensitivity to light)

H

1. multiple sclerosis

2. epilepsy
3. myelomeningocele
4. amyotrophic lateral sclerosis
5. Huntington disease
6. hydrocephalus
7. myasthenia gravis
8. Parkinson disease
9. Alzheimer disease
10. Bell palsy

I

1. tumor of neuroglial brain cells (astrocytes)
2. inflammation of the meninges (bacterial infection with pus formation)
3. involuntary spasmodic, twitching movements (tics), uncontrollable vocal sounds, and inappropriate words
4. bruising of brain tissue as a result of direct trauma to the head
5. disruption of the normal blood supply to the brain; stroke or cerebral infarction
6. traumatic brain injury caused by a blow to the head
7. neurologic condition caused by infection with herpes zoster virus; blisters form along the course of peripheral nerves

8. blockage of a blood vessel in the cerebrum caused by material from another part of the body that suddenly occludes the vessel
9. blockage of a blood vessel in the cerebrum caused by the formation of a clot within the vessel
10. collection of blood in the brain (can cause a stroke)
11. widening of a blood vessel (artery) in the cerebrum; the aneurysm can burst and lead to a CVA
12. brain disease (dementia and encephalitis) caused by infection with AIDS virus

J

1. C
2. E
3. H
4. G
5. B
6. A
7. D
8. J
9. I
10. F

K

1. use of magnetic waves to create an image (in frontal, transverse, or sagittal plane) of the brain

2. an instrument (stereotactic) is fixed onto the skull and locates a target by three-dimensional measurement; gamma radiation or proton beams are used to treat deep brain lesions

L

1. neurasthenia
2. aphasia
3. apraxia
4. analgesia
5. anesthesia
6. paresthesia
7. ataxia
8. hyperkinesia
9. dyskinesia
10. dyslexia
11. paresis

M

1. electroencephalography: E
2. positron emission tomography: I
3. alpha-fetoprotein: G
4. multiple sclerosis: J
5. magnetic resonance imaging: H
6. lumbar puncture: C

7. cerebrovascular accident: B
8. Alzheimer disease: A
9. transient ischemic attack: F
10. cerebrospinal fluid: D

N

1. migraine
2. contusion and subdural hematoma
3. MRI of the brain; glioblastoma multiforme
4. TIA; MRA
5. myasthenia gravis; anticholinesterase drugs
6. meningitis; LP
7. dyslexia
8. hemiparesis; subdural hematoma
9. syncopal
10. dementia; Alzheimer disease
11. tardive dyskinesia; iatrogenic

O

1. hypothalamus
2. syncopal
3. paresthesias
4. paresis
5. radiculitis

6. aphasia
7. apraxia
8. ataxia
9. dyslexia
10. hyperkinesis
11. hemiplegia
12. paraplegia
13. quadriplegia
14. neurasthenia

Answers to Practical Applications

Case Report: Cerebral Infarction

1. c
2. a
3. c
4. c
5. a

Neuropathic Pain and Case Study

1. d
2. c
3. b

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

Vocabulary and Combining Forms and Terminology

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
acetylcholine	a-seh-til-KO-leen
afferent nerves	AH-fer-ent nervz
akinetic	a-kih-NET-ik
analgesia	ah-nal-JE-ze-ah
anencephaly	an-en-SEH-fah-le
anesthesia	an-es-THE-ze-ah
aphasia	ah-FA-ze-ah
apraxia	a-PRAK-se-ah
arachnoid membrane	ah-RAK-noyd MEM-brayn
astrocyte	AS-tro-site
ataxia	a-TAK-se-ah
autonomic nervous system	aw-to-NOM-ik NER-vus SIS-tem
axon	AKS-on
blood-brain barrier	blud-BRAYN BAH-re-er
bradykinesia	bra-de-kih-NE-se-ah
brainstem	BRAYN-stem
cauda equina	KAW-dah eh-KWI-nah
causalgia	kaw-ZAL-jah
cell body	sel BOD-e
central nervous system	SEN-tral NER-vus SIS-tem
cephalgia	seh-FAL-jah
cerebellar	seh-reh-BEL-ar
cerebellopontine	seh-reh-bel-o-PON-teen
cerebellum	seh-reh-BEL-um
cerebral cortex	seh-RE-bral KOR-teks
cerebrospinal fluid	seh-re-bro-SPI-nal FLU-id
cerebrum	seh-RE-brum
coma	KO-mah
comatose	KO-mah-tohs
cranial nerves	KRA-ne-al nervz
dendrite	DEN-drite
dura mater	DUR-ah MAH-ter
dyskinesia	dis-kih-NE-ze-ah
dyslexia	dis-LEK-se-ah
efferent nerves	EH-fer-ent nervz
encephalitis	en-seh-fah-LI-tis
encephalopathy	en-seh-fah-LOP-ah-the
ependymal cell	eh-PEN-dih-mal sel
epidural hematoma	ep-eh-DU-ral he-mah-TO-mah

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
ganglion; *pl.* ganglia	GANG-le-on; GANG-le-ah
glial cell	GLE-al sel
glioblastoma	gli-o-blah-STO-mah
gyrus; *pl.* gyri	JI-rus; JI-re
hemiparesis	hem-e-pah-RE-sis
hemiplegia	hem-e-PLE-jah
hypalgesia	hi-pal-GE-ze-ah
hyperesthesia	hi-per-es-THE-ze-ah
hyperkinesis	hi-per-kih-NE-sis
hypothalamus	hi-po-THAL-ah-mus
intrathecal injection	in-trah-THE-kal in-JEK-shun
leptomeningitis	lep-to-men-in-JE-al
medulla oblongata	meh-DUL-ah ob-lon-GAH-tah
meningeal	meh-NIN-je-al
meninges	meh-NIN-jeez
meningioma	meh-nin-je-O-mah
microglial cell	mi-kro-GLE-al sel
midbrain	MID-brayn
motor nerve	MO-ter nerv
myelin sheath	MI-eh-lin sheeth
myelomeningocele	mi-eh-lo-meh-NIN-jo-seel
myelopathy	mi-el-OP-ah-the
myoneural	mi-o-NUR-al
narcolepsy	NAR-ko-lep-se
nerve	nerv
neuralgia	nu-RAL-jah
neurasthenia	nu-ras-THE-ne-ah
neuroglial cells	nu-ro-GLE-al selz
neuron	NU-ron
neuropathy	nu-ROP-ah-the
neurotransmitter	nu-ro-TRANZ-mit-er
oligodendroglial cell	ol-ih-go-den-dro-GLE-al sel
paraplegia	par-ah-PLE-jah
parasympathetic nerves	par-ah-sim-pah-THET-ik nervz
parenchyma	pah-REN-kih-mah
paresis	pah-RE-sis
paresthesia	pah-res-THE-ze-ah
peripheral nervous system	peh-RIF-er-al NER-vus SIS-tem
pia mater	PE-ah MAH-ter

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
plexus	PLEK-sus
poliomyelitis	po-le-o-mi-eh-LI-tis
polyneuritis	pol-e-nu-RI-tis
pons	ponz
quadriplegia	kwod-rih-PLE-jah
radiculitis	rah-dik-u-LI-tis
radiculopathy	rah-dik-u-LOP-ah-the
receptor	re-SEPT-or
sciatic nerve	si-AH-tik nerv
sciatica	si-AH-tih-kah
sensory nerve	SEN-sor-e nerv
spinal nerves	SPI-nal nervz
stimulus	STIM-u-lus
stroma	STRO-mah
subdural hematoma	sub-DU-ral he-mah-TO-mah
sulcus; *pl.* sulci	SUL-kus; SUL-si
sympathetic nerves	sim-pah-THET-ik nervz
synapse	SIN-aps
syncopal	SIN-ko-pal
syncope	SIN-ko-pe
thalamic	THAL-ah-mik
thalamus	THAL-ah-mus
trigeminal neuralgia	tri-JEM-in-al nu-RAL-jah
vagal	VA-gal
vagus nerve	VA-gus nerv
ventricles of the brain	VEN-trih-kulz of the brayn

Pathology, Laboratory Tests, and Clinical Procedures

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
absence seizure	AB-sens SE-zhur
Alzheimer disease	ALZ-hi-mer dih-ZEEZ
amyotrophic lateral sclerosis	a-mi-o-TRO-fik LAH-ter-al skleh-RO-sis
aneurysm	AN-ur-ih-zim
astrocytoma	as-tro-si-TO-mah
aura	AW-rah
Bell palsy	bel PAWL-ze
brain tumor	BRAYN TU-mor
cerebral angiography	seh-RE-bral an-je-OG-rah-fe
cerebral concussion	seh-RE-bral kon-KUH-shun
cerebral contusion	seh-RE-bral kon-TU-shun
cerebral hemorrhage	seh-RE-bral HEM-or-ij
cerebral palsy	seh-RE-bral PAWL-ze
cerebrospinal fluid analysis	seh-re-bro-SPI-nal FLU-id ah-NAH-lih-sis
cerebrovascular accident	seh-re-bro-VAS-cu-lar AK-sih-dent
computed tomography	kom-PU-ted to-MOG-rah-fe
dementia	de-MEN-she-ah
demyelination	de-mi-eh-lih-NA-shun
dopamine	DO-pah-meen
doppler/ultrasound studies	DOP-ler / UL-trah-sound STUD-eez
electroencephalography	eh-lek-tro-en-sef-al-OG-rah-fe
embolus	EM-bo-lus
epilepsy	EP-ih-lep-se
gait	gate
glioblastoma	gle-o-blah-STO-mah
herpes zoster	HER-peez ZOS-ter
HIV encephalopathy	HIV en-seh-fal-OP-ah-the
Huntington disease	HUN-ting-ton dih-ZEEZ
hydrocephalus	hi-dro-SEH-fah-lus
ictal event	IK-tal e-VENT
lumbar puncture	LUM-bar PUNK-shur
magnetic resonance imaging	mag-NET-ik REH-zo-nants IM-aj-ing
meningitis	meh-nin-JI-tis
meningocele	meh-NIN-jo-seel
migraine	MI-grane
multiple sclerosis	MUL-tih-pel skleh-RO-sis
myasthenia gravis	mi-as-THE-ne-ah GRAV-is
occlusion	o-KLU-zhun
palliative	PAH-le-ah-tiv

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
palsy	PAWL-ze
Parkinson disease	PAR-kin-sun dih-ZEEZ
positron emission tomography	POS-ih-tron e-MIH-shun to-MOG-rah-fe
shingles	SHING-ulz
spina bifida	SPI-na BIF-ih-dah
stereotactic radiosurgery	steh-re-o-TAK-tik ra-de-o-SUR-jer-e
thrombus	THROM-bus
tic	TIK
tonic-clonic seizure	TON-ik-KLON-ik SE-zhur
Tourette syndrome	tur-ET SIN-drohm
transient ischemic attack	TRAN-ze-ent ih-SKE-mik ah-TAK

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of the word parts in the spaces provided. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
alges/o	_____
angi/o	_____
caus/o	_____
cephal/o	_____
cerebell/o	_____
cerebr/o	_____
comat/o	_____
crani/o	_____
cry/o	_____
dur/o	_____
encephal/o	_____
esthesi/o	_____
gli/o	_____
hydr/o	_____
kines/o, kinesi/o	_____
lept/o	_____
lex/o	_____
mening/o, meningi/o	_____
my/o	_____
myel/o	_____
narc/o	_____
neur/o	_____
olig/o	_____
pont/o	_____
radicul/o	_____
spin/o	_____
syncop/o	_____
tax/o	_____
thalam/o	_____
thec/o	_____
troph/o	_____
vag/o	_____

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING
a-, an-	_____
dys-	_____
epi-	_____
hemi-	_____
hyper-	_____
hypo-	_____
intra-	_____
micro-	_____
para-	_____
polio-	_____
poly-	_____
quadri-	_____
sub-	_____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-algesia	_____
-algia	_____
-blast	_____
-cele	_____
-esthesia	_____
-gram	_____
-graphy	_____
-ine	_____
-itis	_____
-kinesia, -kinesis	_____
-kinetic	_____
-lepsy	_____
-oma	_____
-ose	_____
-paresis	_____
-pathy	_____
-phagia	_____
-phasia	_____
-plegia	_____
-praxia	_____
-ptosis	_____
-sclerosis	_____
-sthenia	_____
-tomy	_____
-trophy	_____

Match the neurologic pathology terms and abbreviations in Column I with the descriptions/definitions in Column II.

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. Alzheimer's	_____	A. destruction of myelin sheath on neurons in CNS
2. ALS	_____	B. stroke; disruption in normal blood supply to the brain
3. epilepsy	_____	C. shingles; viral infection affecting peripheral nerves
4. MS	_____	D. progressive dementia; memory failure; senile plaques and neurofibrillary tangles
5. Parkinson's	_____	E. brain tumor; malignant astrocytoma
6. herpes zoster	_____	F. degeneration of neurons in basal ganglia; tremors, bradykinesia, and shuffling gait
7. glioblastoma multiforme	_____	G. recurrent seizure disorder; tonic-clonic and absence types
8. CVA	_____	H. degeneration of motor neurons in spinal cord and brain stem; weakness and muscle atrophy

Books with Neurologic Topics

The following list of books may be of interest to you. They deal with fictional characters or actual individuals who are coping with neurologic illnesses. Oliver Sacks, M.D., the late professor of neurology at the NYU School of Medicine, has written extensively about neurological case histories, including *The Man Who Mistook his Wife for a Hat*. Please contact me with your comments and other suggestions of good reads!

Alzheimer Disease

Still Alice by Lisa Genova (story of a woman and her family understanding and coping with early-onset Alzheimer's; also made into a film).

Elegy for Iris by John Bayley (story of novelist Iris Murdoch; written by her husband, who becomes her caretaker).

Amyotrophic Lateral Sclerosis

I Choose to Live: A Journey Through Life with ALS by William Sinton (a story of coping with this disease).

Tuesdays with Morrie by Mitch Albom (written by a student who spends time with his former teacher and learns valuable life lessons).

Cerebral Palsy

My Left Foot by Christy Brown (Brown was born in Dublin with cerebral palsy, and this is his autobiography, which was later made into a film).

Epilepsy

The Spirit Catches You and You Fall Down by Anne Fadiman (story of the Hmong people and how they deal with epilepsy after coming to the United States).

The Spiral Staircase: My Climb out of Darkness by Karen Armstrong (how author Karen Armstrong deals with temporal lobe epilepsy).

The Idiot by Fyodor Dostoevsky (Russian novel whose main character, Prince Myshkin, like Dostoevsky himself, suffers from epilepsy).

Huntington Disease

Saturday by Ian McEwan (a novel whose primary character suffers from this disease).

Parkinson Disease

Life in the Balance by Thomas Graboys with Peter Zheutlin (memoir of Graboys, a prominent Boston cardiologist dealing with this disease).

Stroke

My Stroke of Insight by Jill Brotle Taylor, PhD (a brain scientist, who had a stroke at age 37, writes about it).

The Diving Bell and the Butterfly, by Jean-Dominque Bauby, is a memoir by a 44-year-old man who struggles with the consequences of a rare type of stroke that leaves him quadriplegic. His mind is unimpaired (also made into a film).

CHAPTER 11

Cardiovascular System

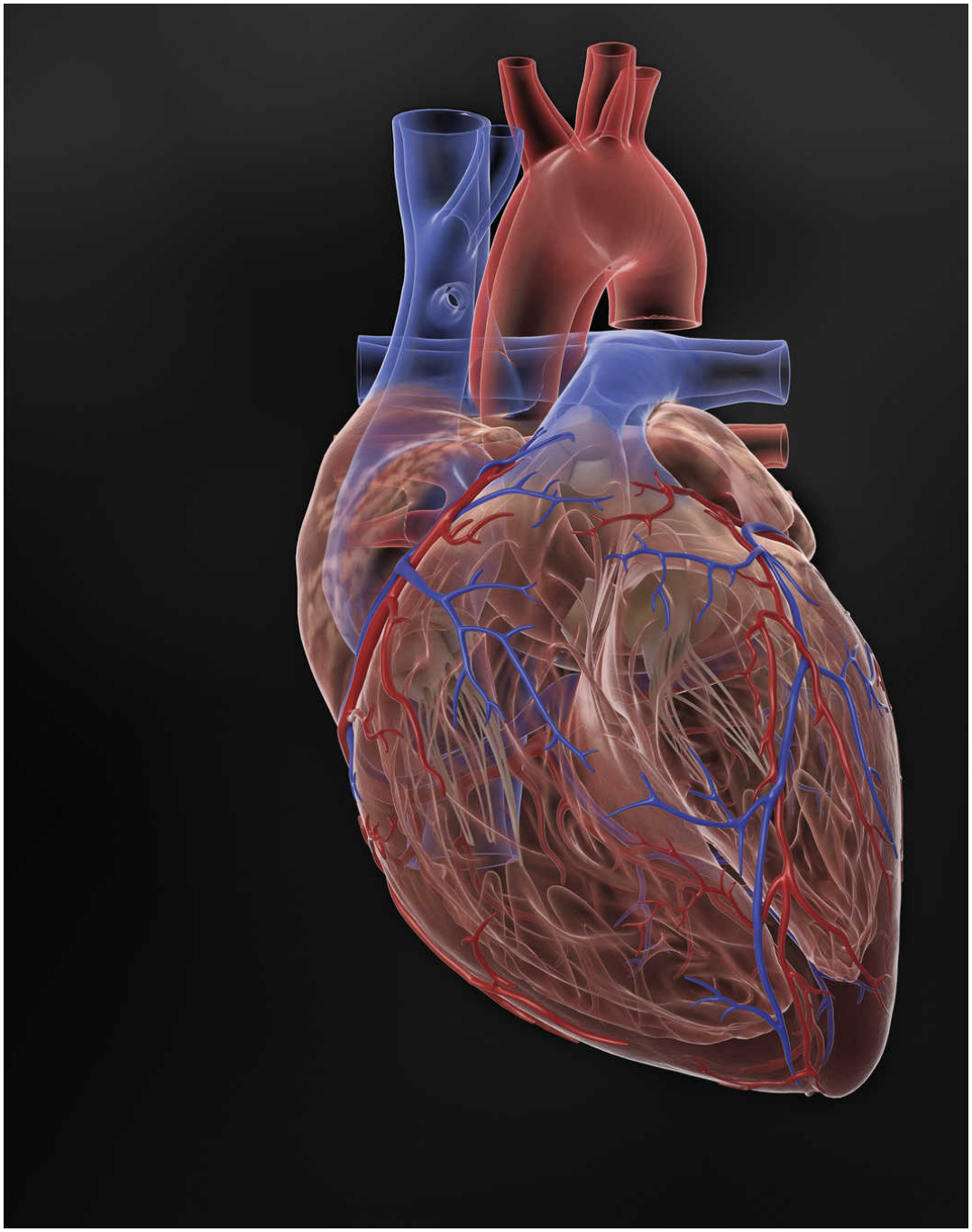
CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 374
Blood Vessels and the Circulation of Blood 374
Anatomy of the Heart 378
Physiology of the Heart 381
Blood Pressure 382
Vocabulary 384
Terminology 385
Pathology: The Heart and Blood Vessels 388
Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures 401
Abbreviations 408
Practical Applications 410
In Person: Coronary Artery Bypass Surgery 412
Exercises 413
Answers to Exercises 422
Pronunciation of Terms425
Review Sheet 429

CHAPTER GOALS

- Name the parts of the heart and associated blood vessels and their functions in the circulation of blood.
- Trace the pathway of blood through the heart.

- Identify and describe major pathologic conditions affecting the heart and blood vessels.
- Define combining forms that relate to the cardiovascular system.
- Describe important laboratory tests and clinical procedures pertaining to the cardiovascular system, and recognize relevant abbreviations.
- Apply your new knowledge to understand medical terms in their proper context, such as in medical reports and records.



Introduction

Body cells are dependent on a constant supply of nutrients and oxygen. When the supplies are delivered and then chemically combined, they release the energy necessary to do the work of each cell. How does the body ensure that oxygen and food will be delivered to all of its cells? The cardiovascular system,

consisting of the heart (a powerful muscular pump) and blood vessels (fuel line and transportation network), performs this important work. This chapter explores terminology related to the heart and blood vessels.

Blood Vessels and the Circulation of Blood

Blood Vessels

There are three types of blood vessels in the body: **arteries, veins, and capillaries.**

Arteries are large blood vessels that carry blood away from the heart. Their walls are lined with connective tissue, muscle tissue, and elastic fibers, with an innermost layer of epithelial cells called **endothelium.** Endothelial cells, found in all blood vessels, secrete factors that affect the size of blood vessels, reduce blood clotting, and promote the growth of blood vessels. Because arteries carry blood away from the heart, they must be strong enough to withstand the high pressure of the pumping action of the heart. Their elastic walls allow them to expand as the heartbeat forces blood into the arterial system throughout the body.

Smaller branches of arteries are **arterioles.** Arterioles are thinner than arteries and carry the blood to the tiniest of blood vessels, the capillaries.

Capillaries have walls that are only one endothelial cell in thickness. These delicate, microscopic vessels carry nutrient-rich, oxygenated blood from the arteries and arterioles to the body cells. Their thin walls allow passage of oxygen and nutrients out of the bloodstream and into cells. There, the nutrients are burned in the presence of oxygen (catabolism) to release energy. At the same time, waste products such as carbon dioxide and water pass out of cells and into the thin-walled capillaries. Waste-filled blood then flows back to the heart in small **venules,** which combine to form larger vessels called veins.

Veins have thinner walls compared with arteries. They conduct blood (that has given up most of its oxygen) toward the heart from the tissues. Veins have little elastic tissue and less connective tissue than that typical of arteries, and blood pressure in veins is extremely low compared with pressure in arteries. In order to keep blood moving back toward the heart, veins have **valves** that prevent the backflow of blood and keep the blood moving in one direction. Muscular action also helps the movement of blood in veins. Figure 11-1 illustrates the differences in blood vessels. Figure 11-2 reviews their characteristics and relationship to one another.

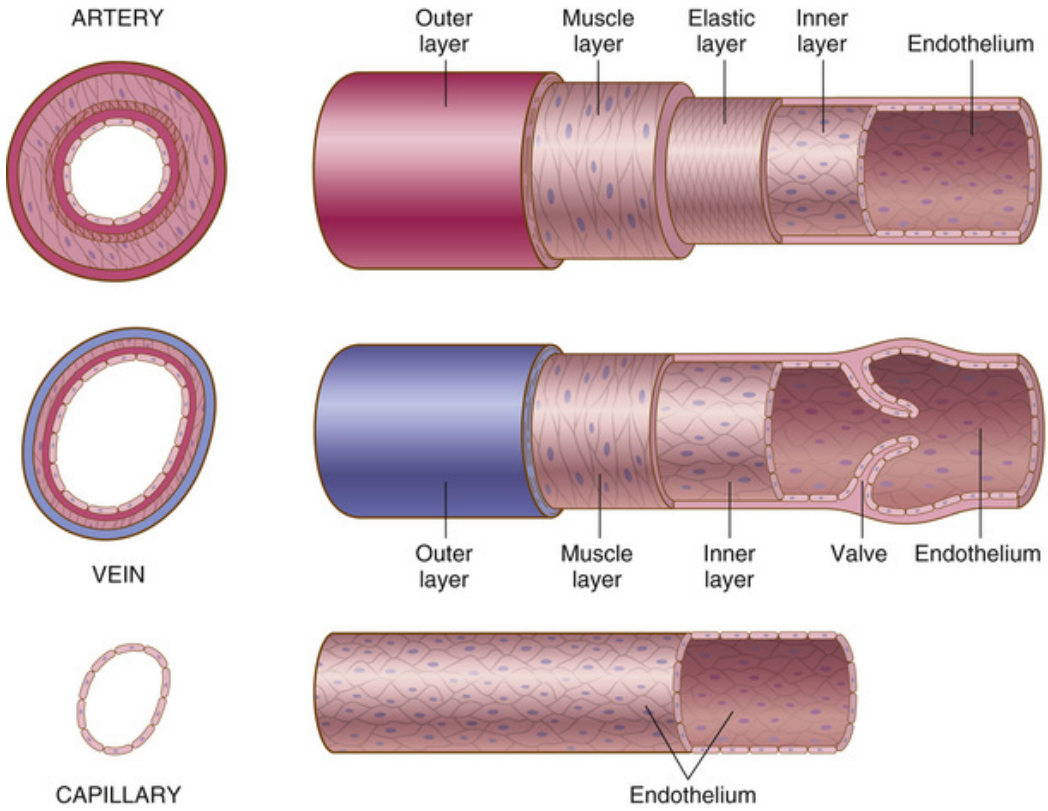


FIGURE 11-1 **Blood vessels.** Observe the differences in thickness of walls among an artery, a vein, and a capillary. All three vessels are lined with endothelium. Endothelial cells actively secrete substances that prevent clotting and regulate the tone of blood vessels. Examples of endothelial secretions are endothelium-derived relaxing factor (EDRF) and endothelin (a vasoconstrictor).

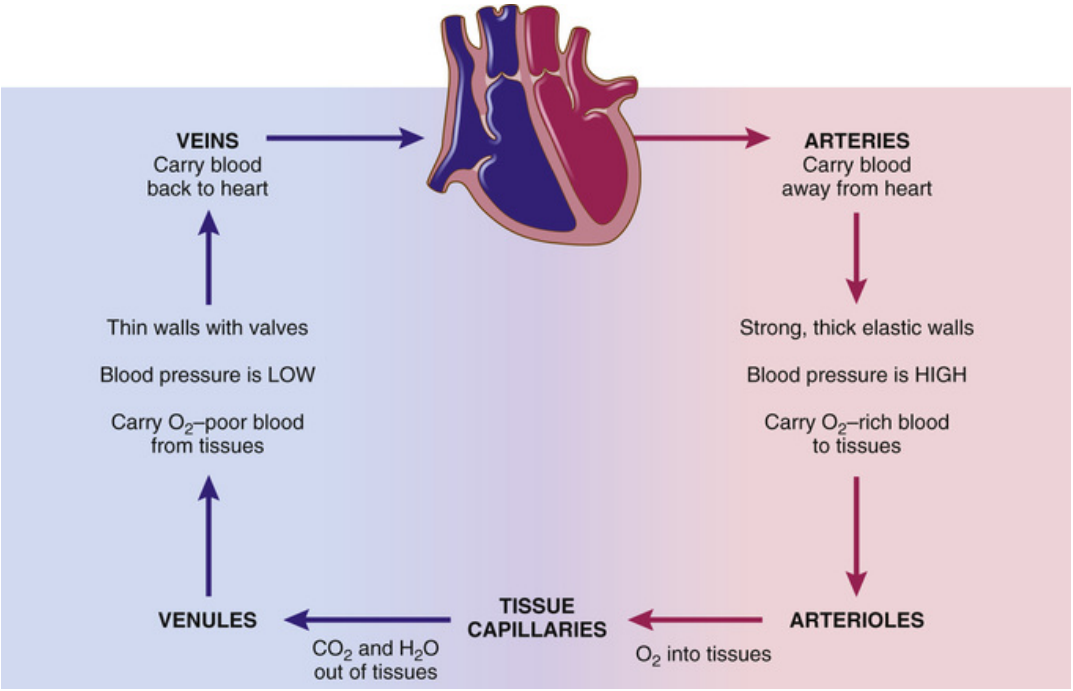


FIGURE 11-2 Relationship and characteristics of blood vessels.

Blood Vessels and Blood

What color is blood? Blood is bright red in arteries (contains oxygen) and dark red (maroon) in veins (contains carbon dioxide). From the outside of the body, blood in veins *appears* blue because the color reflects off the skin.

How much blood is in the body? The average adult has about 5 quarts (4.7 liters) of blood in his or her body.

What is the length of all the blood vessels? The total length of all the blood vessels in the body is 60,000 miles!

Circulation of Blood

Arteries, arterioles, veins, venules, and capillaries, together with the heart, form a circulatory system for the flow of blood. Figure 11-3 is a more detailed representation of the entire circulatory system. Refer to it as you read the following paragraphs. (Note that the bracketed numbers in the following paragraphs correspond with those in Figure 11-3.)

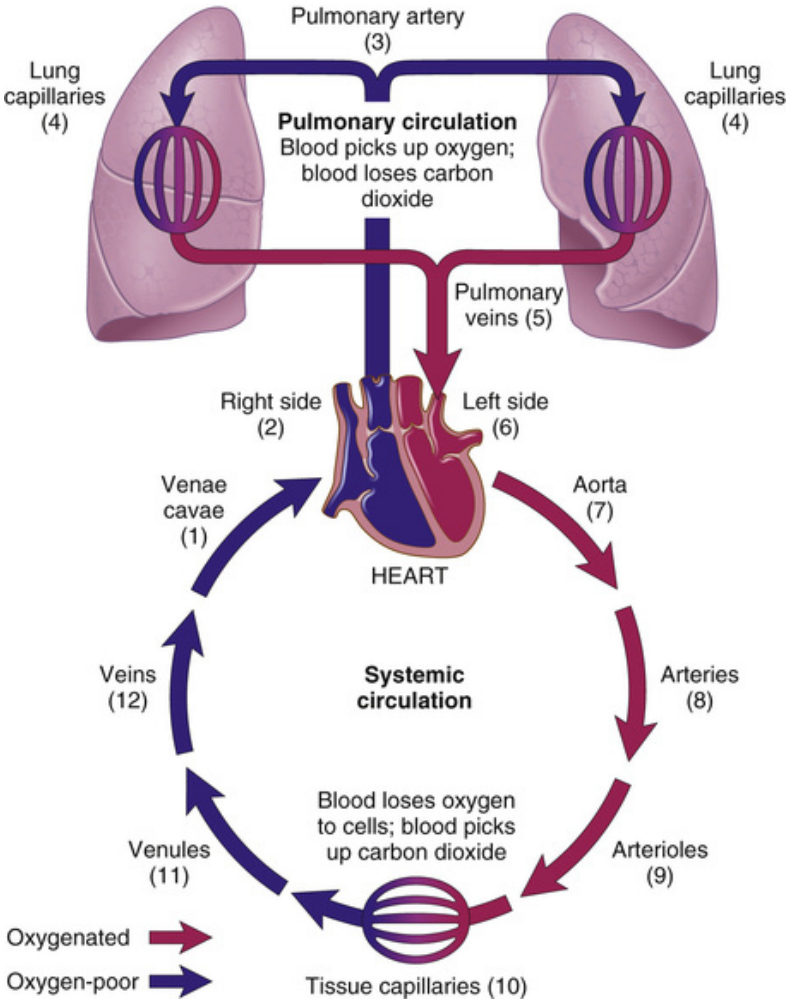


FIGURE 11-3 Schematic diagram of the **pulmonary circulation** (blood flow from the heart to lung capillaries and back to the heart) and **systemic circulation** (blood flow from the heart to tissue capillaries and back to the heart).

Blood that is deficient in oxygen flows through two large veins, the **venae cavae** [1], on its way from the tissue capillaries to the heart. The blood became oxygen-poor at the tissue capillaries when oxygen left the blood and entered the body cells.

Oxygen-poor blood enters the **right side of the heart** [2] and travels through that side and into the **pulmonary artery** [3], a vessel that divides in two: one branch leading to the left lung, the other to the right lung. The arteries continue dividing and subdividing within the lungs, forming smaller and smaller vessels (arterioles) and finally reaching the **lung capillaries** [4]. The pulmonary artery is unusual in that it is the only artery in the body that carries blood deficient in oxygen.

While passing through the lung (pulmonary) capillaries, blood absorbs the oxygen that entered the body during inhalation. The newly oxygenated blood

next returns immediately to the heart through **pulmonary veins** [5]. The pulmonary veins are unusual in that they are the only veins in the body that carry oxygen-rich **(oxygenated)** blood. The circulation of blood through the vessels from the heart to the lungs and then back to the heart again is the **pulmonary circulation.**

Oxygen-rich blood enters the **left side of the heart** [6] from the pulmonary veins. The muscles in the left side of the heart pump the blood out of the heart through the largest single artery in the body, the **aorta** [7]. The aorta moves up at first (ascending aorta) but then arches over dorsally and runs downward (descending aorta) just in front of the vertebral column. The aorta divides into numerous branches called **arteries** [8] that carry the oxygenated blood to all parts of the body. The names of some of these arterial branches will be familiar to you. The **carotid** arteries supply blood to the head and neck. Axillary, brachial (brachi/o means arm), splenic and renal arteries are examples of branching arteries from the aorta.

The relatively large arterial vessels branch further to form smaller **arterioles** [9]. The arterioles, still containing oxygenated blood, branch into smaller **tissue capillaries** [10], which are near the body cells. Oxygen leaves the blood and passes through the thin capillary walls to enter the body cells. There, food is broken down, in the presence of oxygen, and energy is released.

This chemical process also releases **carbon dioxide (CO_2)** as a waste product. Carbon dioxide passes out from the cell into the tissue capillaries at the same time that oxygen enters. Thus the blood returning to the heart from tissue capillaries through **venules** [11] and **veins** [12] is filled with carbon dioxide but is depleted of oxygen.

As this oxygen-poor blood enters the heart from the venae cavae, the circuit is complete. The pathway of blood from the heart to the tissue capillaries and back to the heart is the **systemic circulation.**

Figure 11-4 shows the aorta, selected arteries, and pulse points. The **pulse** is the beat of the heart as felt through the walls of arteries.

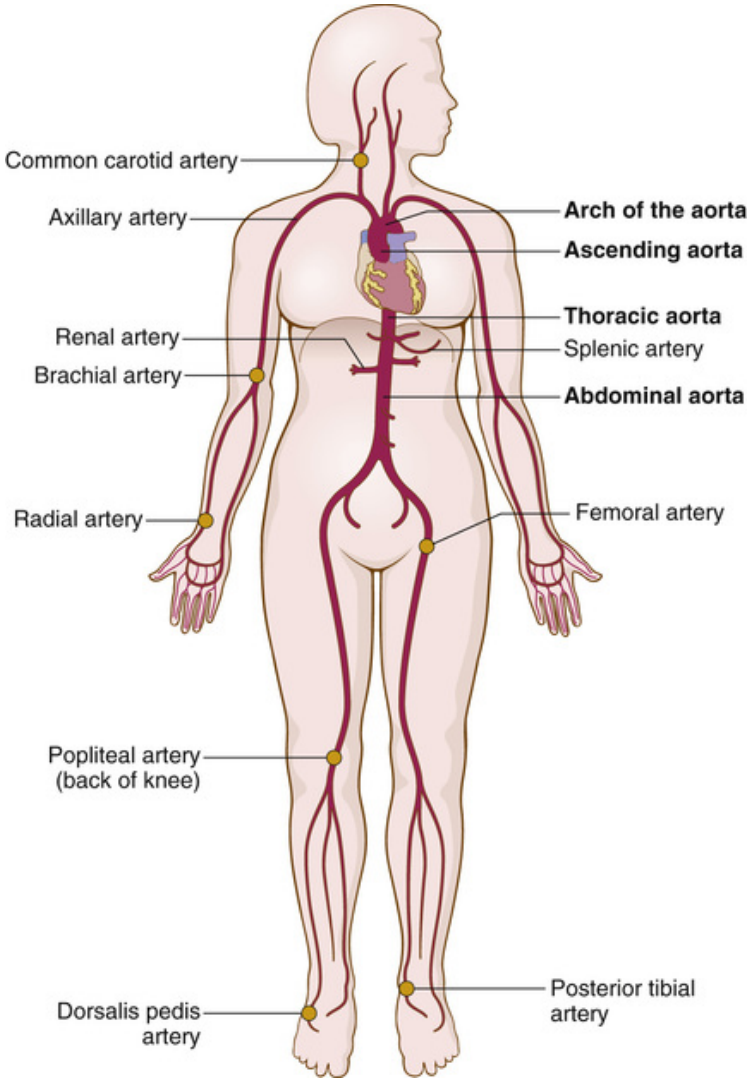


FIGURE 11-4 **The aorta and arteries.** *Solid gold dots* indicate pulse points in arteries. These are areas in which the **pulse** expansion and contraction of a superficial artery can be felt.

Anatomy of the Heart

The human heart weighs less than a pound (300-450 grams), is roughly the size of an adult fist, and lies in the thoracic cavity, just behind the breastbone in the mediastinum (between the lungs).

The heart is a pump consisting of four chambers: two upper chambers called **atria** (*singular*: **atrium**) and two lower chambers called **ventricles.** It is actually a double pump, bound into one organ and synchronized very carefully. Blood passes through each pump in a definite pattern. Pump station number one, on the right side of the heart, sends oxygen-deficient blood to the lungs, where the blood picks up oxygen and releases its carbon dioxide. The newly oxygenated

blood returns to the left side of the heart to pump station number two and does not mix with the oxygen-poor blood in pump station number one. Pump station number two then forces the oxygenated blood out to all parts of the body. At the body tissues, the blood loses its oxygen, and on returning to the heart, to pump station number one, blood poor in oxygen (rich in carbon dioxide) is sent out to the lungs to begin the cycle anew.

Label Figure 11-5 as you learn the names of the parts of the heart and the vessels that carry blood to and from it.

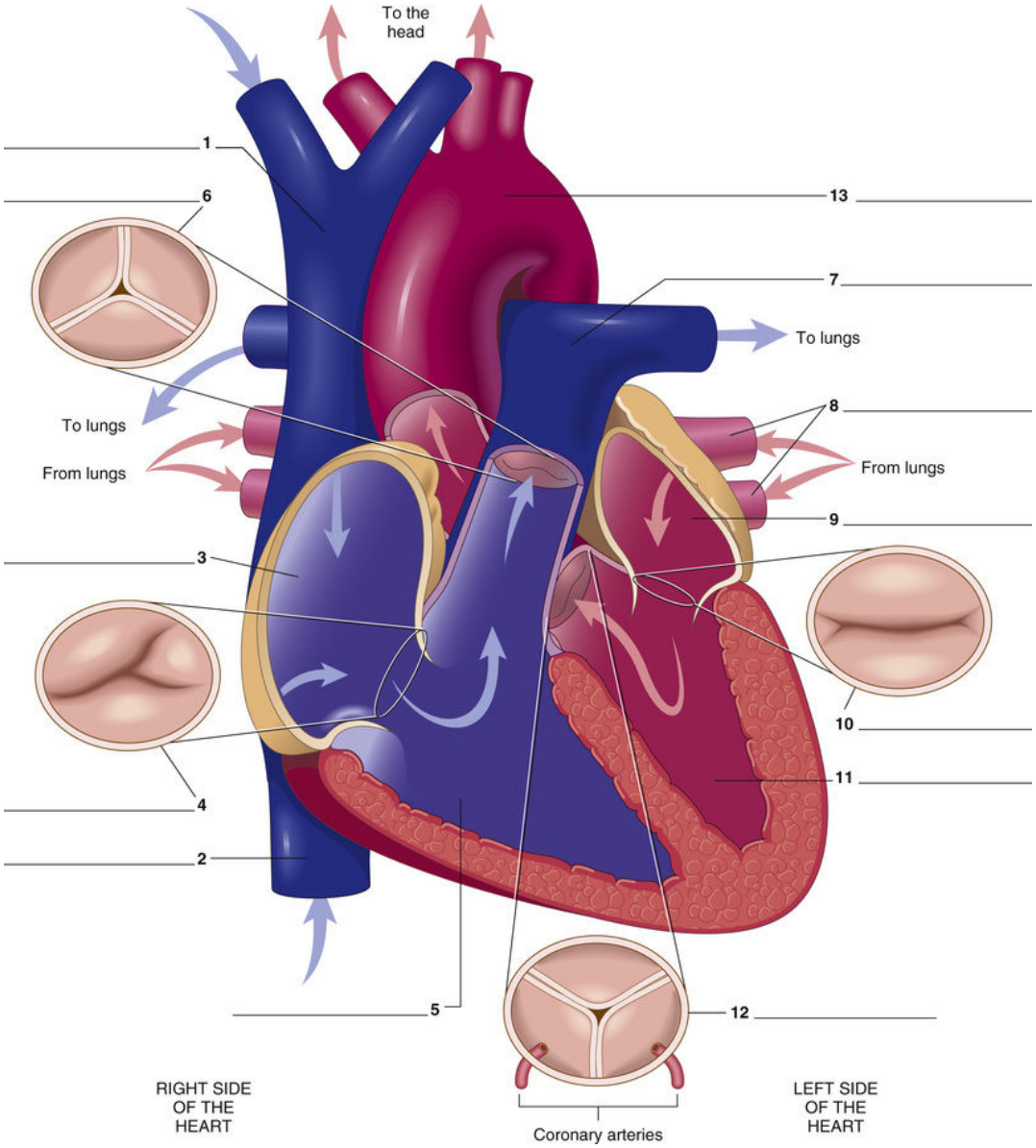


FIGURE 11-5 Structure of the heart. *Blue arrows* indicate oxygen-poor blood flow. *Red arrows* show oxygenated blood flow.

Oxygen-poor blood enters the heart through the two largest veins in the body, the **venae cavae.** The **superior vena cava** [1] drains blood from the upper portion of the body, and the **inferior vena cava** [2] carries blood from the lower part of the body.

The venae cavae bring oxygen-poor blood that has passed through all of the body to the **right atrium** [3], the thin-walled upper right chamber of the heart. The right atrium contracts to force blood through the **tricuspid valve** [4] (cusps are the flaps of the valves) into the **right ventricle** [5], the lower right chamber of the heart. The cusps of the tricuspid valve form a one-way passage designed to keep the blood flowing in only one direction. As the right ventricle contracts to pump oxygen-poor blood through the **pulmonary valve** [6] into the **pulmonary artery** [7], the tricuspid valve stays shut, thus preventing blood from pushing back into the right atrium. The pulmonary artery then branches to carry oxygen-deficient blood to each lung.

The blood that enters the lung capillaries from the pulmonary artery soon loses its large quantity of carbon dioxide into the lung tissue, and the carbon dioxide is expelled. At the same time, oxygen enters the capillaries of the lungs and is brought back to the heart via the **pulmonary veins** [8]. The newly oxygenated blood enters the **left atrium** [9] of the heart from the pulmonary veins. The walls of the left atrium contract to force blood through the **mitral valve** [10] into the **left ventricle** [11].

The left ventricle has the thickest walls of all four heart chambers (three times the thickness of the right ventricular wall). It must pump blood with great force so that the blood travels through arteries to all parts of the body. The left ventricle propels the blood through the **aortic valve** [12] into the **aorta** [13], which branches to carry blood all over the body. The aortic valve closes to prevent return of aortic blood to the left ventricle.

In Figure 11-6, notice that the four chambers of the heart are separated by partitions called **septa** (*singular*: **septum**). (Label Figure 11-6 as you read these paragraphs.) The **interatrial septum** [1] separates the two upper chambers (atria), and the **interventricular septum** [2], a muscular wall, lies between the two lower chambers (ventricles).

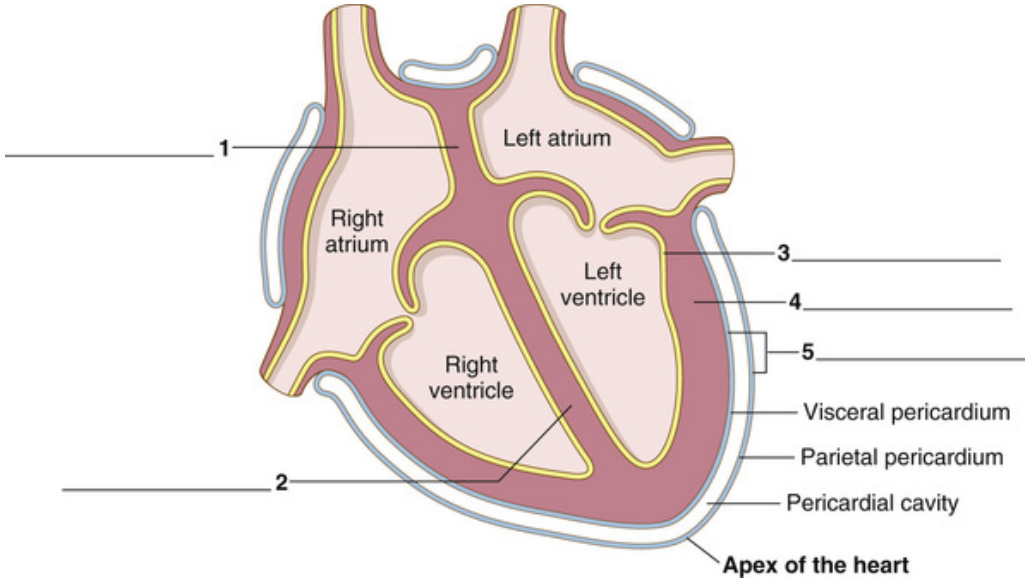


FIGURE 11-6 The septa (walls of the heart) and the 3 layers of the heart. Note that the **apex of the heart** is the conical (shaped like a cone) lower tip of the heart.

Figure 11-6 also shows the three layers of the heart. The **endocardium** [3], a smooth layer of endothelial cells, lines the interior of the heart and heart valves. The **myocardium** [4], the middle, muscular layer of the heart wall, is its thickest layer. The **pericardium** [5], a fibrous and membranous sac, surrounds the heart. It is composed of two layers, the **visceral pericardium,** adhering to the heart, and the **parietal** (parietal means wall) **pericardium,** lining the outer fibrous coat. The **pericardial cavity** (between the visceral and the parietal pericardial layers) normally contains 10 to 15 mL of pericardial fluid, which lubricates the membranes as the heart beats.

Figure 11-7 reviews the pathway of blood through the heart.

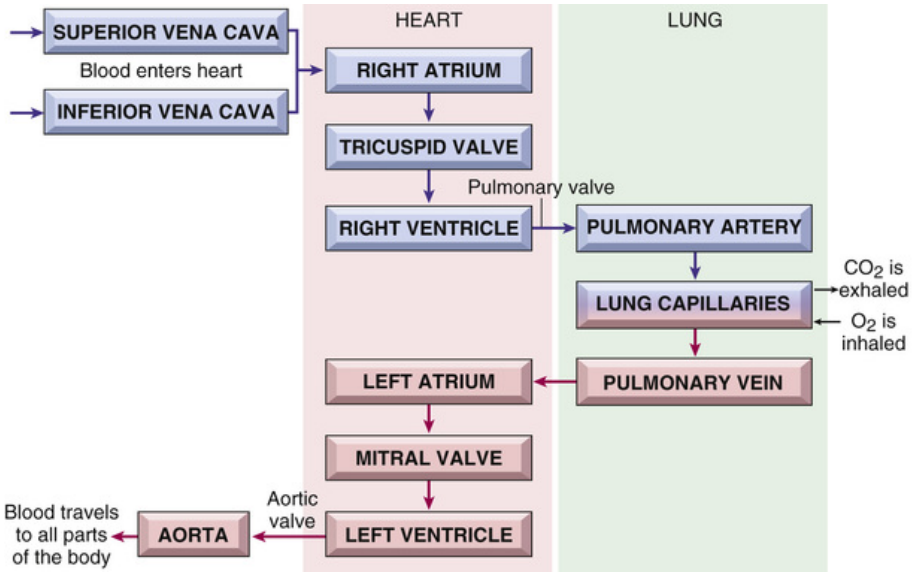


FIGURE 11-7 Pathway of blood through the heart.

Physiology of the Heart

Heartbeat and Heart Sounds

There are two phases of the heartbeat: **diastole** (relaxation) and **systole** (contraction). Diastole occurs when the ventricle walls relax and blood flows into the heart from the venae cavae and the pulmonary veins. The tricuspid and mitral valves open in diastole, as blood passes from the right and left atria into the ventricles. The pulmonary and aortic valves close at beginning of diastole. (Figure 11-8).

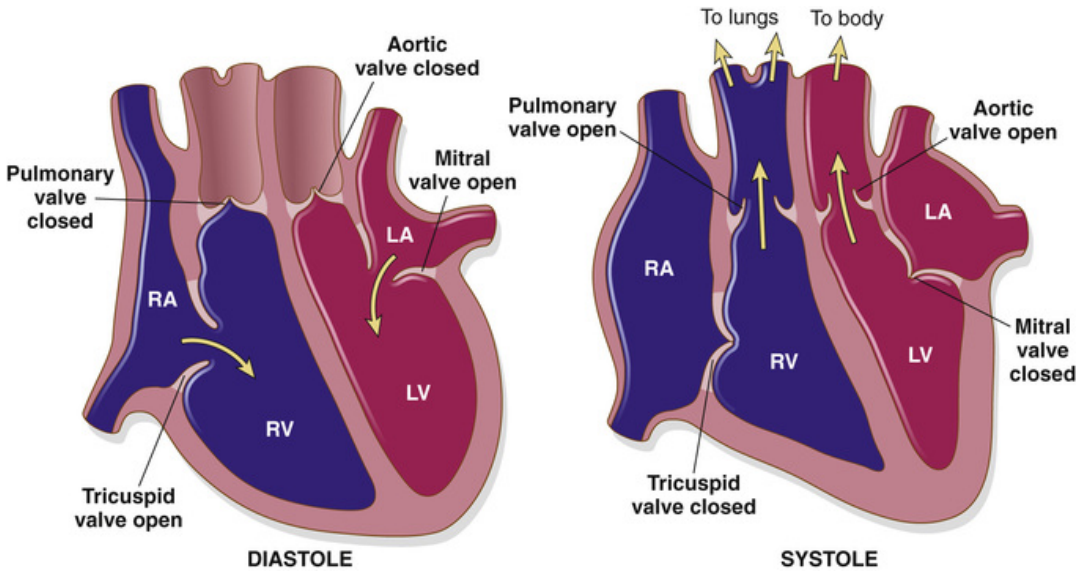


FIGURE 11-8 Phases of the heartbeat: diastole and systole. During diastole, the tricuspid and mitral valves are open as blood enters the ventricles. During systole, the pulmonary and aortic valves are open as blood is pumped to the pulmonary artery and aorta. LA, left atrium; LV, left ventricle; RA, right atrium; RV, right ventricle.

Systole occurs next, as the walls of the right and left ventricles contract to pump blood into the pulmonary artery and the aorta. Both the tricuspid and the mitral valves are closed during systole, thus preventing the flow of blood back into the atria (see Figure 11-8).

This diastole-systole cardiac cycle occurs between 70 and 80 times per minute (100,000 times a day). The heart pumps about 3 ounces of blood with each contraction. This means that about 5 quarts of blood are pumped by the heart in 1 minute (75 gallons an hour and about 2000 gallons a day).

Closure of the heart valves is associated with audible sounds, such as "lubb-dubb," which can be heard on listening to a normal heart with a stethoscope. The "lubb" is associated with closure of the tricuspid and mitral valves at the beginning of systole, and the "dubb" with the closure of the aortic and pulmonary valves at the end of systole. The "lubb" sound is called the first heart sound (S1) and the "dubb" is the second heart sound (S2), because the normal cycle of the heartbeat starts with the beginning of systole. Sometimes the flow of blood through the valves can produce an abnormal swishing sound known as a **murmur.**

Conduction System of the Heart

What keeps the heart at its perfect rhythm? Although the heart has nerves that affect its rate, they are not primarily responsible for its beat. The heart starts beating in the embryo before it is supplied with nerves, and continues to beat in experimental animals even when the nerve supply is cut.

Label Figure 11-9 as you read the following. Primary responsibility for initiating the heartbeat rests with a small region of specialized muscle tissue in the posterior portion of the right atrium, where an electrical impulse originates. This is the **sinoatrial node (SA node),** or **pacemaker** [1] of the heart. The current of electricity generated by the pacemaker causes the walls of the atria to contract and force blood into the ventricles.

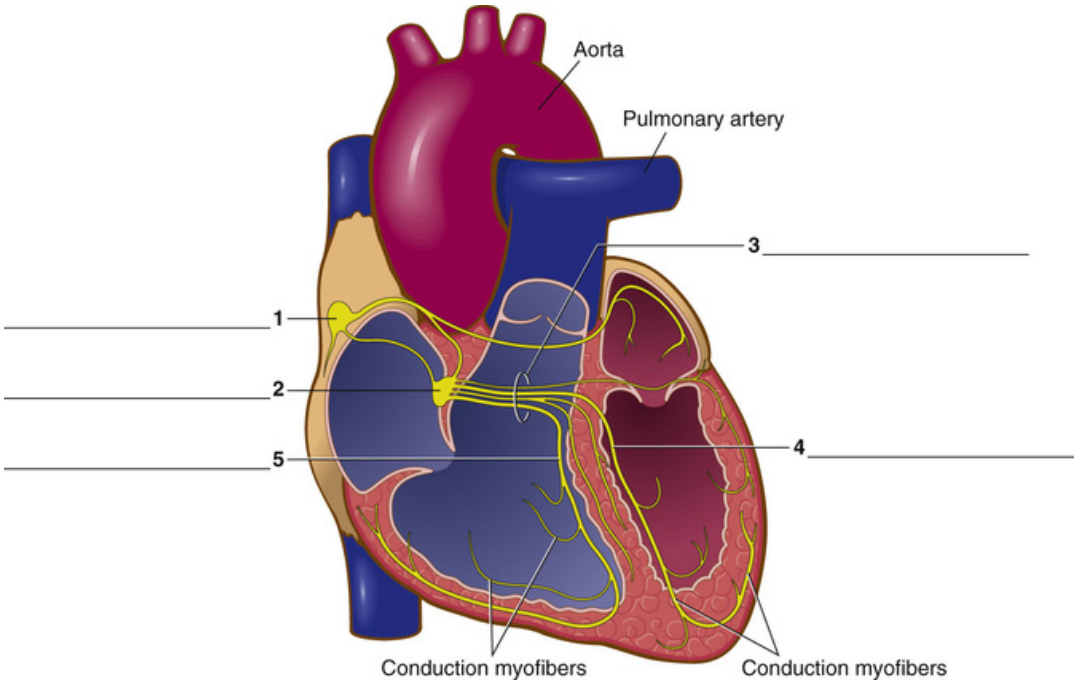


FIGURE 11-9 Conduction system of the heart.

Almost like ripples in a pond of water when a stone is thrown, the wave of electricity passes from the pacemaker to another region of the myocardium. This region is within the interatrial septum and is the **atrioventricular node (AV node)** [2]. The AV node immediately sends the excitation wave to a bundle of specialized muscle fibers called the **atrioventricular bundle,** or **bundle of His** [3]. Within the interventricular septum, the bundle of His divides into the **left bundle branch** [4] and the **right bundle branch** [5], which form the conduction myofibers that extend through the ventricle walls and contract on stimulation. Thus systole occurs and blood is pumped away from the heart. A short rest period follows, and then the pacemaker begins the wave of excitation across the heart again.

The record used to detect these electrical changes in heart muscle as the heart beats is an **electrocardiogram** (**ECG** or **EKG**). The normal ECG tracing shows five waves, or **deflections,** that represent the electrical changes as a wave of excitation spreads through the heart. The deflections are called **P, QRS,** and **T** waves. Figure 11-10 illustrates P, QRS, and T waves on a normal ECG tracing.

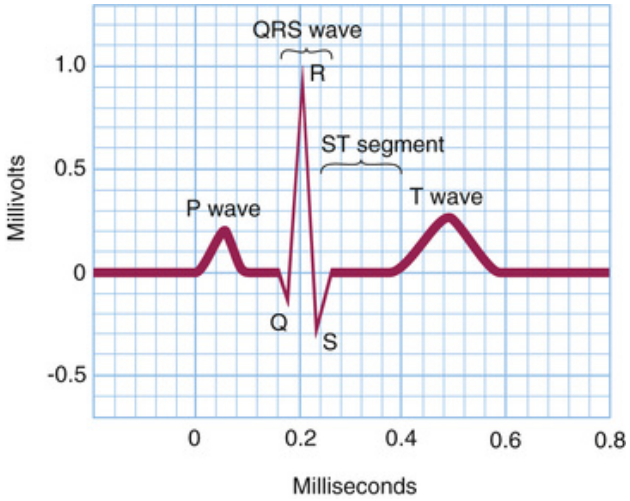


FIGURE 11-10 **Electrocardiogram. P wave** = spread of excitation wave over the atria just before contraction; **QRS wave** = spread of excitation wave over the ventricles as the ventricles contract; **T wave** = electrical recovery and relaxation of ventricles. A heart attack or myocardial infarction (MI) can be recognized by an elevation in the **ST segment** of the electrocardiographic tracing. Thus, one type of MI is an ST elevation MI **(STEMI)**.

Heart rhythm (originating in the SA node and traveling through the heart) is called **normal sinus rhythm (NSR).** Sympathetic nerves speed up the heart rate during conditions of emotional stress or vigorous exercise. Parasympathetic nerves slow the heart rate when there is no need for extra pumping.

Blood Pressure

Blood pressure is the force that the blood exerts on the arterial walls. This pressure is measured with a **sphygmomanometer** (Figure 11-11).

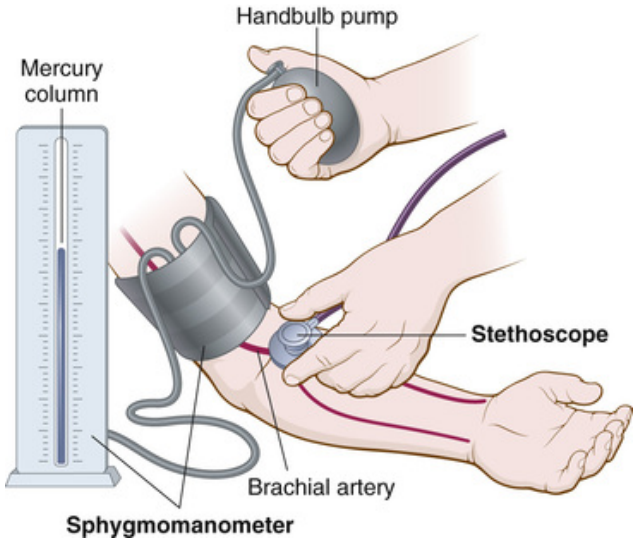


FIGURE 11-11 Measurement of blood pressure with a sphygmomanometer and stethoscope.

The sphygmomanometer consists of a rubber bag inside a cloth cuff that is wrapped around the upper arm, just above the elbow. The rubber bag is inflated with air using a handbulb pump. As the bag is pumped up, the pressure within it increases and is measured on a recording device attached to the cuff.

The brachial artery in the upper arm is compressed by the air pressure in the bag. When there is sufficient air pressure in the bag to stop the flow of blood, the pulse in the lower arm (where the observer is listening with a stethoscope) drops.

Air is then allowed to escape from the bag and the pressure is lowered slowly, allowing the blood to begin to make its way through the gradually opening artery. At the point when the person listening with the stethoscope first hears the sounds of the pulse beats, the reading on the device attached to the cuff shows the higher, systolic blood pressure (pressure in the artery when the left ventricle is contracting to force the blood into the aorta and other arteries).

As air continues to escape, the sounds become progressively louder. Finally, when a change in sound from loud to soft occurs, the observer makes note of the pressure on the recording device. This is the diastolic pressure (pressure in the artery when the ventricles relax and the heart fills, receiving blood from the venae cavae and pulmonary veins).

Blood pressure is expressed as a fraction—for example, 120/80 mm Hg, in which the upper number (120) is the systolic pressure and the lower number (80) is the diastolic pressure. A new guideline lowers the target for hypertension (high blood pressure) treatment to 130/80. Both the systolic and diastolic components of hypertension are associated with increased risk of heart attack and stroke.

Vocabulary

This list reviews new terms introduced in the text. Short definitions reinforce your understanding of the terms. See page 425 of this chapter for pronunciation of terms.

aorta	Largest artery in the body.
apex of the heart	Lower tip of the heart.
arteriole	Small artery.
artery	Largest type of blood vessel; carries blood away from the heart to all parts of the body. Notice that artery and away begin with an "a."
atrioventricular bundle (bundle of His)	Specialized muscle fibers connecting the atria with the ventricles and transmitting electrical impulses between them. His is pronounced "hiss."
atrioventricular node (AV node)	Specialized tissue in the wall between the atria. Electrical impulses pass from the pacemaker (SA node) through the AV node and the atrioventricular bundle or bundle of His toward the ventricles.
atrium (*plural*: **atria**)	One of two upper chambers of the heart.
capillary	Smallest type of blood vessel. Materials pass to and from the bloodstream through the thin capillary walls.
carbon dioxide (CO_2)	Gas (waste) released by body cells, transported via veins to the heart, and then to the lungs for exhalation.
carotid arteries	Two common carotid arteries located on each side of the neck branch from the aorta and provide blood to head, neck and brain. The word carotid comes from a Greek word meaning stupor because pressure on these arteries produced unconsciousness.
coronary arteries	Blood vessels that branch from the aorta and carry oxygen-rich blood to the heart muscle.
deoxygenated blood	Blood that is oxygen-poor.
diastole	Relaxation phase of the heartbeat. (From Greek *diastole,* dilation.)
electrocardiogram	Record of the electrical activity of the heart. The electricity is represented by waves or deflections called P, QRS, or T.
endocardium	Inner lining of the heart.
endothelium	Innermost lining of blood vessels.
mitral valve	Valve between the left atrium and the left ventricle; bicuspid valve.
murmur	Abnormal swishing sound caused by improper closure of the heart valves.
myocardium	Muscular middle layer of the heart.
normal sinus rhythm	Heart rhythm originating in the sinoatrial node with a rate in patients at rest of 60 to 100 beats per minute.
oxygen	Gas that enters the blood through the lungs and travels to the heart to be pumped via arteries to all body cells.

pacemaker (sinoatrial node)	Specialized nervous tissue in the right atrium that begins the heartbeat. An artificial cardiac pacemaker is an electronic apparatus implanted in the chest to stimulate heart muscle that is weak and not functioning.
pericardium	Double-layered membrane surrounding the heart.
pulmonary artery	Artery carrying oxygen-poor blood from the heart to the lungs.
pulmonary circulation	Flow of blood from the heart to the lungs and back to the heart.
pulmonary valve	Valve positioned between the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery.
pulmonary vein	One of two pairs of vessels carrying oxygenated blood from the lungs to the left atrium of the heart.
pulse	Beat of the heart as felt through the walls of the arteries.
septum (*plural*: **septa**)	Partition or wall dividing a cavity; such as between the right and left atria (interatrial septum) and right and left ventricles (interventricular septum).
sinoatrial node (SA node)	Pacemaker of the heart.
sphygmomanometer	Instrument to measure blood pressure.
systemic circulation	Flow of blood from body tissue to the heart and then from the heart back to body tissues.
systole	Contraction phase of the heartbeat. (From Greek *systole*, contraction.)
tricuspid valve	Located between the right atrium and the right ventricle; it has three (tri-) leaflets, or cusps.
valve	Structure in veins or in the heart that temporarily closes an opening so that blood flows in only one direction.
vein	Thin-walled vessel that carries blood from body tissues and lungs back to the heart. Veins contain valves to prevent backflow of blood.
vena cava (*plural*: **venae cavae**)	Largest vein in the body. The superior and inferior venae cavae return blood to the right atrium of the heart.
ventricle	One of two lower chambers of the heart.
venule	Small vein.

Terminology

Write the meaning of the medical term in the space provided.

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
angi/o	vessel	angiogram _____ angioplasty _____
aort/o	aorta	aortic stenosis _____
arter/o, arteri/o	artery	arteriosclerosis _____ arterial anastomosis _____ *From the Greek* anastomoien, *providing a mouth.* arteriography _____ endarterectomy _____ *See page 407.*
ather/o	yellowish plaque, fatty substance (Greek *athere* means porridge)	atheroma _____ *The suffix -oma means mass or collection. Atheromas are collections of plaque that protrude into the* ***lumen*** *(opening) of an artery, weakening the muscle lining.* atherosclerosis _____ *The major form of arteriosclerosis in which deposits of yellow plaque (atheromas) containing cholesterol and lipids are found within the lining of the artery (Figure 11-12).* atherectomy _____
atri/o	atrium, upper heart chamber	atrial _____ atrioventricular _____
brachi/o	arm	brachial artery _____

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
cardi/o	heart	cardiomegaly _____ cardiomyopathy _____ *One type of cardiomyopathy is **hypertrophic cardiomyopathy**—abnormal thickening of heart muscle, usually in the left ventricle. The ventricle has to work harder to pump blood. The condition may be inherited or develop over time because of high blood pressure or aging. Often the cause is unknown (idiopathic).* bradycardia _____ *Slower than 60 beats per minute. Normal pulse is about 60-100 beats per minute. Brady- means slow.* tachycardia _____ *Faster than 100 beats per minute. Supraventricular tachycardia (SVT) involves rapid beats coming from the atria (above the ventricles) and causing palpitation (abnormal sensations in the chest). Tachy- means fast.* cardiogenic shock _____ *Results from failure of the heart in its pumping action. **Shock** is circulatory failure associated with inadequate delivery of oxygen and nutrients to body tissues.*
cholesterol/o	cholesterol (a lipid substance)	hypercholesterolemia _____ *Statins are drugs that work by blocking a key enzyme in the production of cholesterol by the liver.*
coron/o	heart	coronary arteries _____ *These arteries come down over the top of the heart like a crown (corona); see Figure 11-23A, page 402.*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
cyan/o	blue	cyanosis _____ *This bluish discoloration of the skin indicates diminished oxygen content of the blood.*
myx/o	mucus	myxoma _____ *A benign tumor derived from connective tissue, with cells embedded in soft mucoid stromal tissue. These rare tumors occur most frequently in the left atrium.*
ox/o	oxygen	hypoxia _____ *Inadequate oxygen in tissues.* ***Anoxia*** *is an extreme form of hypoxia.*
pericardi/o	pericardium	pericardiocentesis _____ *Removal of excess fluid from the pericardial space.*
phleb/o	vein	phlebotomy _____ *A phlebotomist is trained in opening veins for phlebotomy.* thrombophlebitis _____ *Often shortened to phlebitis. If the affected vein is deep within a muscle, the condition is* ***deep vein thrombosis (DVT)****.*
rrhythm/o	rhythm	arrhythmia _____ **Dysrhythmia** *is also used to describe an abnormal heart rhythm. Notice that one "r" is dropped.*
sphygm/o	pulse	sphygmomanometer _____ *A sphygmomanometer measures pressure.*
steth/o	chest	stethoscope _____ *A misnomer because the examination is by ear, not by eye.* ***Auscultation*** *means listening to sounds within the body, typically using a stethoscope.*
thromb/o	clot	thrombolysis _____

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
valvul/o, valv/o	valve	valvuloplasty _____ *A balloon-tipped catheter dilates a cardiac valve.* mitral valvulitis _____ *Commonly associated with rheumatic fever, an inflammatory disease caused by inadequate treatment of a streptococcal infection. An autoimmune reaction occurs, leading to inflammation and damage to heart valves. (See Figure 11-19, page 396.)* valvotomy _____
vas/o	vessel	vasoconstriction _____ *Constriction means to tighten or narrow.* vasodilation _____
vascul/o	vessel	vascular _____
ven/o, ven/i	vein	venous _____ *A venous cutdown is a small surgical incision to permit access to a collapsed vein. An intravenous infusion is delivery of fluids into a vein.* venipuncture _____ *This procedure is performed for phlebotomy or to start an intravenous infusion.*
ventricul/o	ventricle, lower heart chamber	interventricular septum _____

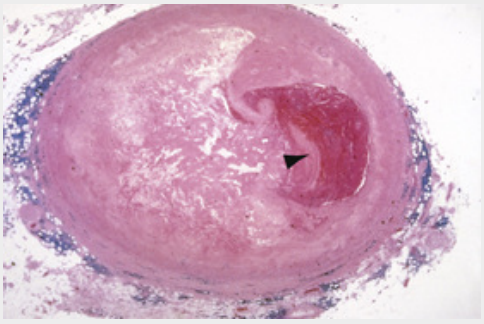


FIGURE 11-12 **Atherosclerosis.** *Arrow* points to accumulated plaque in lumen of an artery. (Courtesy Sid Murphree, MD, Department of Pathology, University of Texas Southwestern Medical School, Dallas, Texas.)

ather/o, arteri/o, arthr/o

These three combining forms are easily confused.

ather/o = yellowish plaque
arteri/o = artery
arthr/o = joint

Pathology: the Heart and Blood Vessels

Heart

arrhythmias	**Abnormal heart rhythms (dysrhythmias).** Arrhythmias are problems with the conduction or electrical system of the heart. More than 4 million Americans have recurrent cardiac arrhythmias.
Examples of cardiac arrhythmias are:	
1. **bradycardia and heart block (atrioventricular block)**	**Failure of proper conduction of impulses from the SA node through the AV node to the atrioventricular bundle (bundle of His).** Damage to the SA node may cause its impulses to be too weak to activate the AV node and impulses fail to reach the ventricles. The heart beats slowly and bradycardia results. If the failure occurs only occasionally, the heart misses a beat in a rhythm at regular intervals (partial heart block). If no impulses reach the AV node from the SA node, the ventricles contract slower than the atria and are not coordinated. This is complete heart block. Right and left bundle branch block **(RBBB** and **LBBB)** are common types of heart block. They involve delay or failure of impulses traveling through the right and left bundle branches to the ventricles.
	Implantation of an artificial **cardiac pacemaker** overcomes arrhythmias and keeps the heart beating at the proper rate. The pacemaker power source is a generator that contains a computer and lithium battery. It is implanted under the skin just below the collarbone, with leads (wires) to both chambers or one chamber, on the right side of the heart. A newer type of pacemaker, called a **biventricular pacemaker,** treats delays and abnormalities in ventricular contractions (dysynergy) and also can relieve symptoms and improve quality of life in patients with congestive heart failure. It reduces exacerbations of heart failure that require hospital admission (Figure 11-13C).
2. **flutter**	**Rapid but regular contractions, usually of the atria.** Heart rate may reach up to 300 beats per minute. Atrial flutter often is symptomatic of heart disease and frequently requires treatment such as medication, electrical cardioversion, or catheter ablation (see below under fibrillation).
3. **fibrillation**	**Very rapid, random, inefficient, and irregular contractions of the heart (350 beats or more per minute).**

Atrial fibrillation (AF) is the most common type of cardiac arrhythmia, affecting 5% to 10% of 70- to 80-year-old people and greater than 15% of individuals in their 80s. Electrical impulses move randomly throughout the atria, causing the atria to quiver instead of contracting in a coordinated rhythm. Common symptoms are **palpitations** (uncomfortable sensations in the chest from missed heartbeats), fatigue, and shortness of breath. Patients with **paroxysmal AF** (irregular heartbeats occur periodically and episodically) and **permanent** or **persistent AF** (irregular heartbeats continue indefinitely) are at a much greater risk for stroke. This is because ineffective atrial contractions can lead to the formation of blood clots in the left atrial appendage (the area where clots form) that may travel to the brain. Also, sometimes AF can make the heart beat very fast for long periods of time, leading to weakening of the heart muscle.

The risk for stroke with AF can be reduced by 80% with the use of anticoagulants (blood thinners such as warfarin) and anticoagulants called DOACs (direct oral anticoagulants). Examples of DOACs are apixaban (Eliquis), dabiatran (Pradaxa), and rivaroxaban (Xarelto). Other medications are used to reset the rhythm of the heart or control its rate.

In **ventricular fibrillation (VF),** electrical impulses move randomly throughout the ventricles. This life-threatening situation may result in sudden cardiac death or **cardiac arrest** (sudden stoppage of heart movement) unless help is provided immediately. If treatment is immediate, VF can be interrupted with **defibrillation** (application of an electrical shock). Defibrillation stops electrical activity in the heart for a brief moment so that normal rhythm takes over.

An **implantable cardioverter-defibrillator (ICD)** is a small electrical device that is implanted inside the chest (near the collarbone) to sense arrhythmias and terminate them with an electric shock. Candidates for ICDs are people who have had or are at high risk for having ventricular tachycardia, ventricular fibrillation, and cardiac arrest. **Automatic external defibrillators (AEDs)** may be found in workplaces, airports, and

	other public places and are used in an emergency situation to reverse ventricular fibrillation. **Catheter ablation** is a minimally invasive treatment to treat cardiac arrhythmias. The technique, using radiofrequency energy delivered from the tip of a catheter inserted through a blood vessel and into the heart, destroys tissue that causes arrhythmias. Supraventricular tachycardia (SVT), atrial flutter, atrial fibrillation, and ventricular tachycardia (VT) may be treated with ablation when clinically indicated. This procedure may provide a permanent cure in many clinical situations.
congenital heart disease	**Abnormalities in the heart at birth.**
The following conditions are congenital anomalies resulting from some failure in the development of the fetal heart.	
1. **coarctation of the aorta (CoA)**	**Narrowing (coarctation) of the aorta.** Figure 11-14A shows coarctation of the aorta. Surgical treatment consists of removal of the constricted region and end-to-end anastomosis of the aortic segments.
2. **patent ductus arteriosus (PDA)**	**Passageway (ductus arteriosus) between the aorta and the pulmonary artery remains open (patent) after birth.** The ductus arteriosus normally closes after birth, but in this congenital condition it remains open (see Figure 11-14B), resulting in the flow of oxygenated blood from the aorta into the pulmonary artery. PDA occurs in premature infants, causing cyanosis, fatigue, and rapid breathing. Although the defect often closes on its own within months after birth, treatment may be necessary if patency continues. Treatments include use of a drug (indomethacin) to promote closure; surgery via catheterization (with coil embolization to "plug" the ductus); and ligation (tying off) performed through a small incision between the ribs.
3. **septal defects**	**Small holes in the wall between the atria (atrial septal defects) or the ventricles (ventricular septal defects).** Figure 11-15A shows a ventricular septal defect. Although many septal defects close spontaneously, others require open heart surgery to close the hole between heart chambers, or they may be repaired through minimally invasive surgery, using a catheter

	inserted through a blood vessel leading to the heart. A **heart-lung machine** is connected to the patient's circulatory system during open heart surgery to relieve the heart and lungs of pumping and oxygenation functions during surgery.
4. **tetralogy of Fallot** (fah-LO)	**Congenital malformation involving four (tetra-) distinct heart defects.** The condition, named for Étienne-Louis Fallot, the French physician who described it in 1888, is illustrated in Figure 11-15B. The four defects are: • **Pulmonary artery stenosis.** Pulmonary artery is narrow or obstructed. • **Ventricular septal defect.** Large hole between two ventricles lets venous blood pass from the right to the left ventricle and out to the aorta without oxygenation. • **Shift of the aorta to the right.** Aorta overrides the interventricular septum. Oxygen-poor blood passes from the right ventricle to the aorta. • **Hypertrophy of the right ventricle.** Myocardium works harder to pump blood through a narrowed pulmonary artery.
	An infant with this condition is described as a "blue baby" because of the extreme degree of **cyanosis** present at birth. Surgery for tetralogy of Fallot includes a patch closure of the ventricular septal defect and removing obstruction to the outflow at the pulmonary artery. Other congenital conditions such as **transposition of the great arteries (TGA)** (pulmonary artery arises from the left ventricle and the aorta from the right ventricle) cause cyanosis and hypoxia as well. Surgical correction of TGA involves an arterial switch procedure (pulmonary artery and aorta are reconnected in their proper positions).
congestive heart failure (CHF)	**Heart is unable to pump its required amount of blood.** There are two types of congestive heart failure: systolic and diastolic. In **systolic CHF,** there is a reduced **ejection fraction** (the amount of blood that leaves the left ventricle). Less blood is pumped from the heart. In **diastolic CHF,** fluid backs up in the lungs and other parts of the body.

	Symptoms of CHF include shortness of breath, exercise intolerance, and fluid retention. **Pulmonary edema** (fluid accumulation in the lungs) and swelling or edema in the legs, feet, and ankles are common. Treatment includes lowering dietary intake of sodium and the use of diuretics to promote fluid loss. For patients with CHF with a reduced ejection fraction and heart bundle branch block cardiac resynchronization therapy (CRT) devices may be used. These implanted devices consist of a pulse generator and thin, insulated wires and function like a normal pacemaker and defibrillation devices. If drug therapy and lifestyle changes fail to control congestive heart failure, heart transplantation may be the only treatment option. While waiting for a transplant, patients may need a device to assist the heart's pumping. A **left ventricular assist device (LVAD)** is a booster pump implanted in the abdomen, with a cannula (tube) inserted into the left ventricle. It pumps blood out of the heart to all parts of the body. LVAD may be used either as a "bridge to transplant" or as a "destination" therapy when heart transplantation is not possible. Because of the severe shortage of donor hearts, research efforts are directed at developing total artificial hearts.
coronary artery disease (CAD)	**Disease of the arteries surrounding the heart.** The coronary arteries are a pair of blood vessels that arise from the aorta and supply oxygenated blood to the heart. After blood leaves the heart via the aorta, a portion is at once led back over the surface of the heart through the coronary arteries. CAD usually is the result of **atherosclerosis.** This is the deposition of fatty compounds on the inner lining of the coronary arteries (any other artery can be similarly affected). The ordinarily smooth lining of the artery becomes roughened as the atherosclerotic plaque collects in the artery.
	The plaque first causes plugging of the coronary artery. Next, the roughened lining of the artery may rupture or cause abnormal clotting of blood, leading to **thrombotic occlusion** (blocking of the coronary artery by a clot). Blood flow is decreased (**ischemia**) or stopped entirely, leading to death (**necrosis**) of a part

	of the myocardium. This sequence of events constitutes a **myocardial infarction,** or heart attack, and the area of dead myocardial tissue is known as an infarct. The infarcted area is eventually replaced by scar tissue. Figure 11-16 shows coronary arteries branching from the aorta and illustrates coronary artery occlusion leading to ischemia and infarction of heart muscle. Figure 11-17 is a photograph of myocardium after an acute myocardial infarction. **Acute coronary syndromes (ACSs)** are conditions caused by myocardial ischemia. These conditions are **unstable angina** (chest pain at rest or chest pain of increasing frequency) and **myocardial infarction** (Figure 11-18).
	Patients with ACSs benefit from early angiography (x-ray imaging of coronary arteries) and PCI (percutaneous coronary intervention with a balloon catheter and stents) or CABG (coronary artery bypass grafting) to improve blood flow to the heart muscle (revascularization). Drugs used to treat ACSs are anticoagulants and antiplatelet agents such as aspirin and clopidogrel (Plavix), prasugrel (Effient), and ticagrelor (Brilinta). For acute attacks of angina, **nitroglycerin** is given sublingually (under the tongue). This drug, one of several called **nitrates,** is a vasodilator that increases coronary blood flow and lowers blood pressure. Nitrates also produce venodilation to reduce venous return and decrease myocardial oxygen consumption, both of which help decrease the work of the heart. Physicians advise patients to avoid risk factors such as smoking, obesity, and lack of exercise, and they prescribe effective drugs to prevent CAD and ACSs. These drugs include **aspirin** (to prevent clumping of platelets), **beta blockers** (to reduce the force and speed of the heartbeat and to lower blood pressure), **ACE inhibitors** (to reduce high blood pressure and the risk of future heart attack even if the patient is not hypertensive), **calcium channel blockers** (to relax muscles in blood vessels), and **statins** (to lower cholesterol levels). Cardiac surgeons perform an open heart operation called **coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG)** to

	treat CAD by replacing clogged vessels. Interventional cardiologists perform **percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI),** in which catheterization with balloons and stents opens clogged coronary arteries.
endocarditis	**Inflammation of the inner lining of the heart.** Damage to the heart valves from infection **(bacterial endocarditis)** produces lesions called **vegetations** (resembling cauliflower) that break off into the bloodstream as **emboli** (material that travels through the blood). The emboli can lodge in other vessels, leading to a **transient ischemic attack (TIA),** or a stroke, or in small vessels of the skin, where multiple pinpoint hemorrhages known as **petechiae** (from the Italian *petechio*, a flea bite) form. Antibiotics can cure bacterial endocarditis.
hypertensive heart disease	**High blood pressure affecting the heart.** This condition results from narrowing of arterioles, which leads to increased pressure in arteries. The heart is affected (left ventricular hypertrophy) because it pumps more vigorously to overcome the increased resistance in the arteries.
mitral valve prolapse (MVP)	**Improper closure of the mitral valve.** This condition occurs because the mitral valve enlarges and prolapses into the left atrium during systole. The physician hears a midsystolic click on **auscultation** (listening with a stethoscope) and occasionally **mitral regurgitation** (backflow of blood into the left atrium). Most people with MVP live normal lives, but severely prolapsed valves can be associated with severe mitral regurgitation and on rare occasions may become infected (endocarditis).
murmur	**Extra heart sound, heard between normal beats.** Murmurs are heard with the aid of a stethoscope and usually are caused by a valvular defect or disease that disrupts the smooth flow of blood in the heart. They also are heard in cases of interseptal defects, in which blood flows abnormally between chambers through holes in the septa. Functional murmurs are not caused by valve or septal defects and do not seriously endanger a person's health. A **bruit** (BRU-e) is a murmur heard on auscultation. It is the turbulent flow of blood through a vessel. A

	thrill, which is a vibration felt on palpation of the chest, often accompanies a murmur.
pericarditis	**Inflammation of the membrane (pericardium) surrounding the heart.** In most instances, pericarditis results from a viral illness or the etiology may be idiopathic. Bacteria and viruses cause the condition, or the etiology may be idiopathic. Malaise, fever, and chest pain occur, and auscultation often reveals a **pericardial friction rub** (heard as a scraping or grating sound). Compression of the heart caused by collection of fluid in the pericardial cavity is **cardiac tamponade** (tăm-pō-NŎD). Treatment includes anti-inflammatory drugs and other agents to manage pain. If the pericarditis is infective, antibiotics or antifungals are prescribed, depending on the microorganisms detected in specimens obtained by pericardiocentesis or using blood tests.
rheumatic heart disease	**Heart disease caused by rheumatic fever.** Rheumatic fever is a childhood disease that follows a streptococcal infection with sore throat (pharyngitis). The heart valves can be damaged by inflammation and scarred with **vegetations** so that they do not open and close normally (Figure 11-19A). Repeat streptococcal infection is thought to be required to produce heart disease, so children with a history of rheumatic fever are treated with monthly penicillin injections given intramuscularly until the age of 21. **Mitral stenosis,** atrial fibrillation, and congestive heart failure, caused by weakening of the myocardium, also can result from rheumatic heart disease. Treatment consists of reduced activity, drugs to control arrhythmia, surgery to repair a damaged valve, and anticoagulant therapy to prevent emboli from forming. Artificial and porcine (pig) valve implants can replace deteriorated heart valves (Figure 11-19B and C).

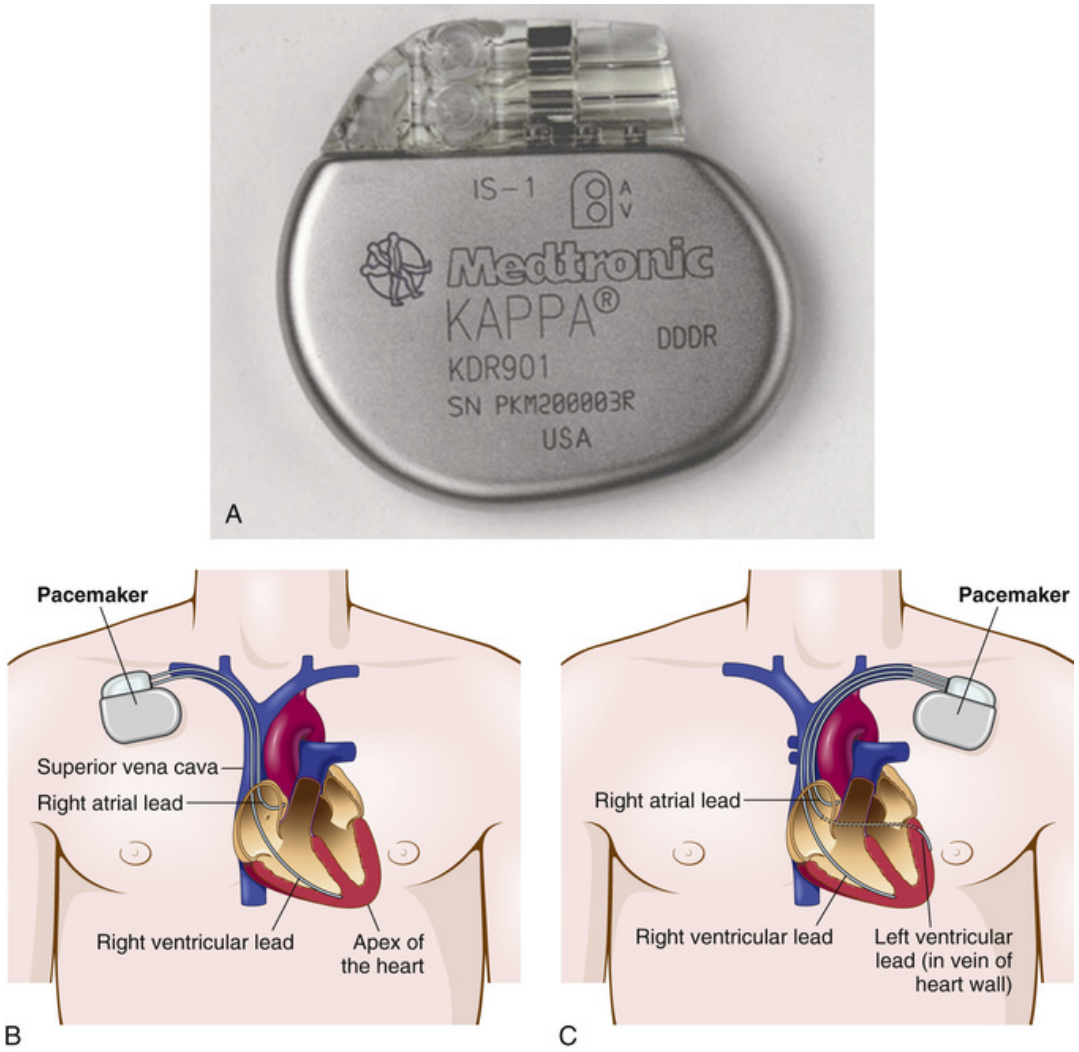


FIGURE 11-13 **A, A dual-chamber, rate-responsive pacemaker** (*actual size shown*) is designed to detect body movement and automatically increase or decrease paced heart rates based on levels of physical activity. **B, Cardiac pacemaker** with leads in the right atrium and right ventricle enable it to sense and pace in both heart chambers. **C, Biventricular pacemaker** with leads in the right atrium and the right and left ventricles to synchronize ventricular contractions.

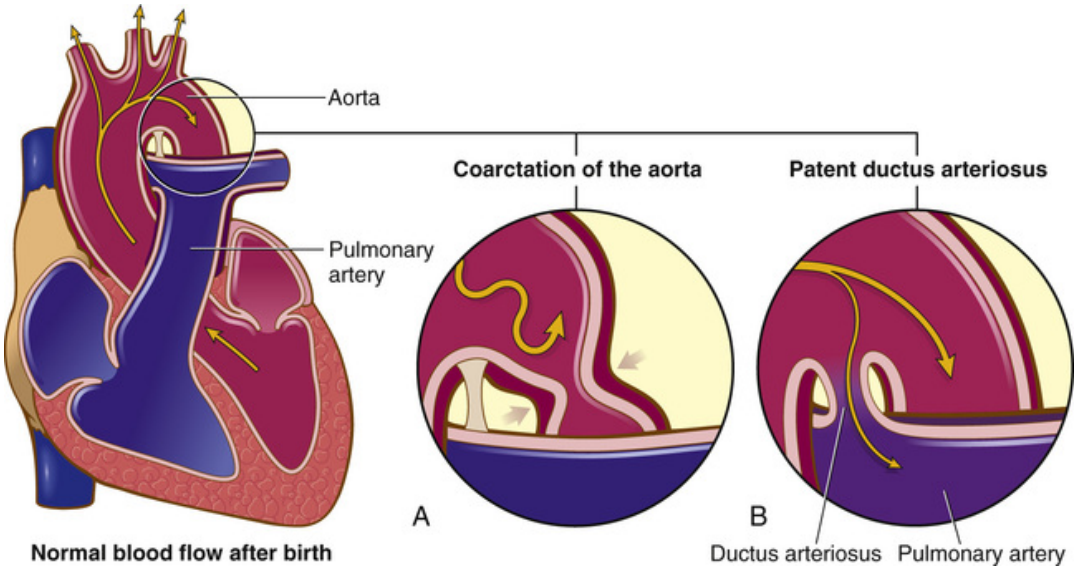


FIGURE 11-14 **A, Coarctation of the aorta.** Localized narrowing of the aorta reduces the supply of blood to the lower part of the body. **B, Patent ductus arteriosus.** The ductus arteriosus fails to close after birth, and blood from the aorta flows through it into the pulmonary artery.

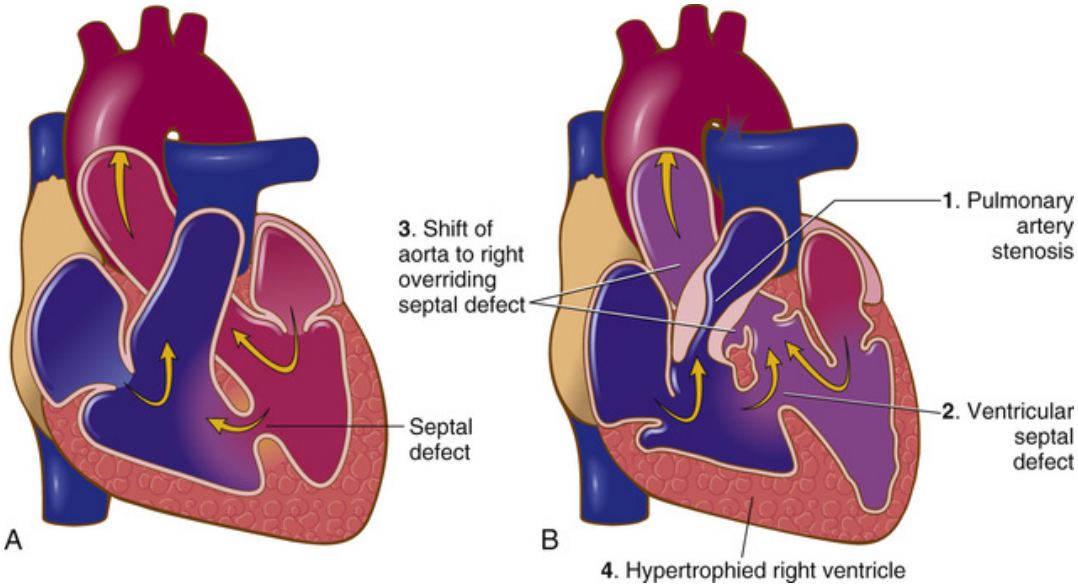


FIGURE 11-15 **A, Ventricular septal defect.** A hole in the ventricular septum causes blood to flow from the left ventricle to the right and into the lungs via the pulmonary artery. **B, Tetralogy of Fallot** showing the four defects. The flow of blood is indicated by the *arrows.*

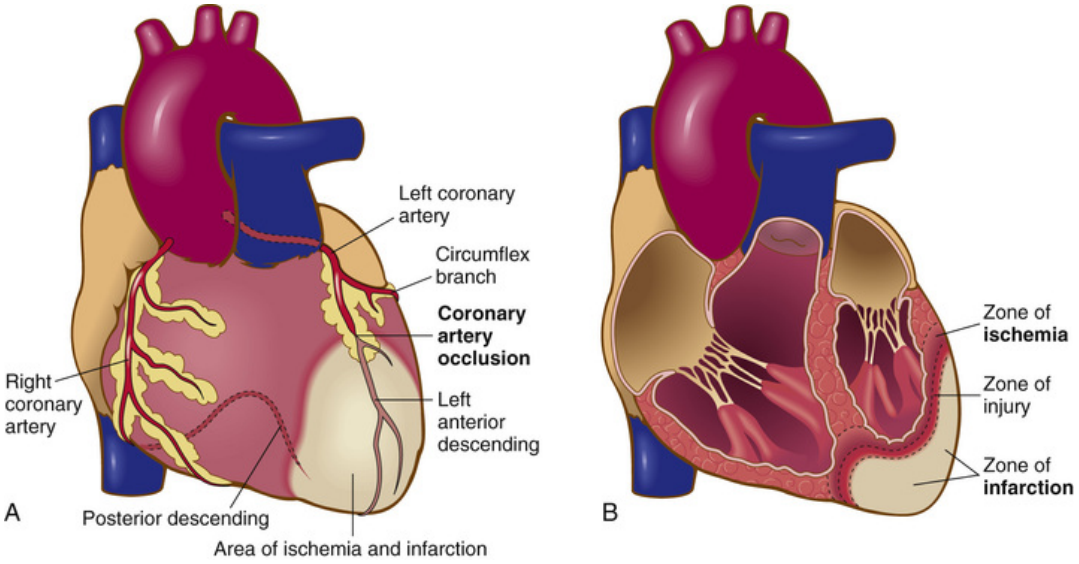


FIGURE 11-16 **A, Ischemia** and **infarction** produced by coronary artery occlusion. **B,** Internal view of the heart showing an area damaged by **myocardial infarction.**

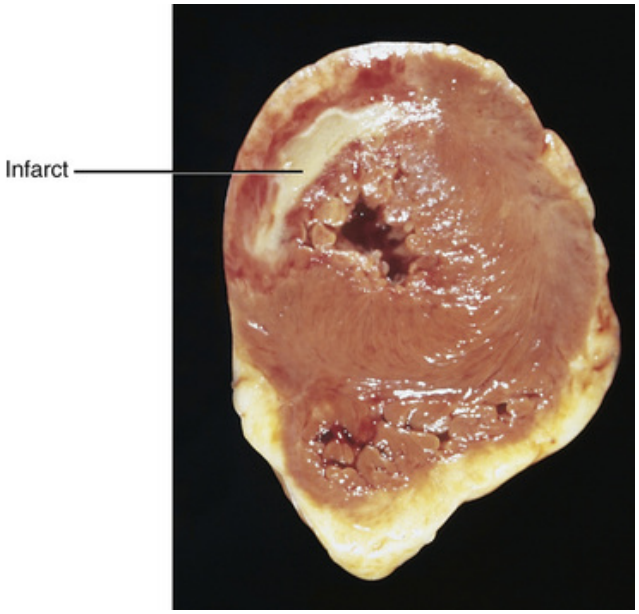


FIGURE 11-17 **Acute myocardial infarction (MI),** 5 to 7 days old. The infarct is visible as a well-demarcated, pale yellow lesion in the posterolateral region of the left ventricle. The border of the infarct is surrounded by a dark red zone of acute inflammation.

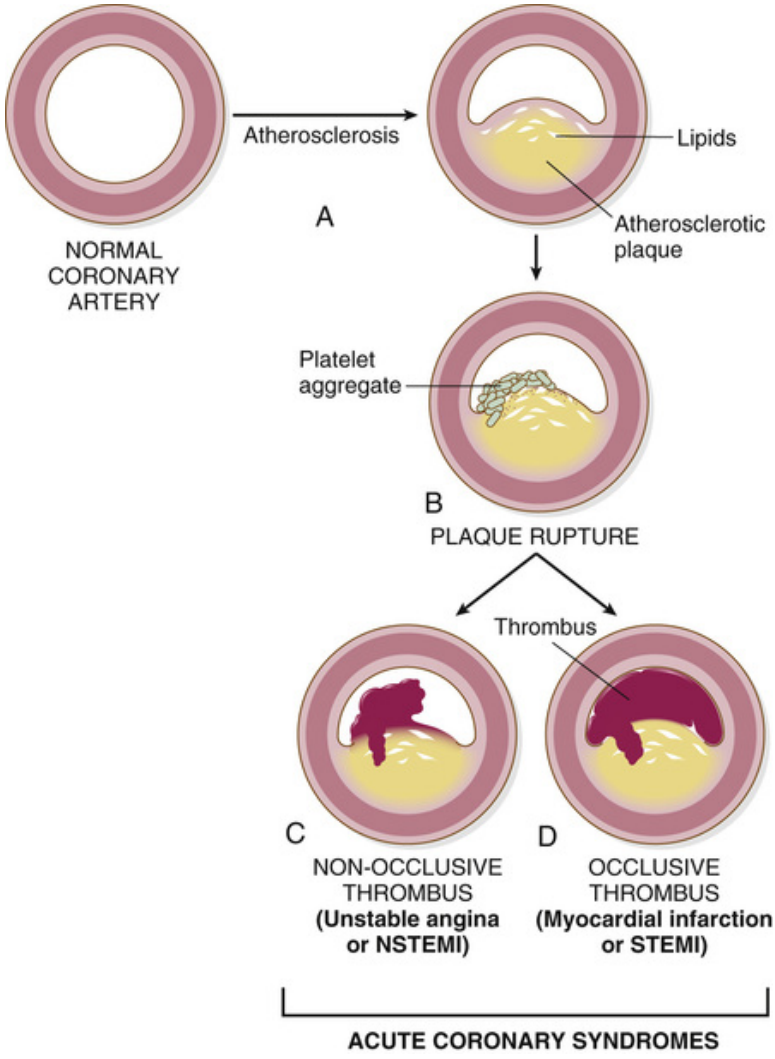


FIGURE 11-18 **Acute coronary syndromes:** sequence of pathologic changes leading to cardiac event. **A, Atherosclerotic plaque** forms from lipid collection. **B, Plaque rupture,** causing platelet aggregation on the plaque. **C, Nonocclusive thrombus** forms, causing **unstable angina** or **NSTEMI** (non–ST elevation myocardial infarction). **D,** Alternatively, formation of an **occlusive thrombus** leads to a **myocardial infarction** or **STEMI** (ST elevation myocardial infarction).

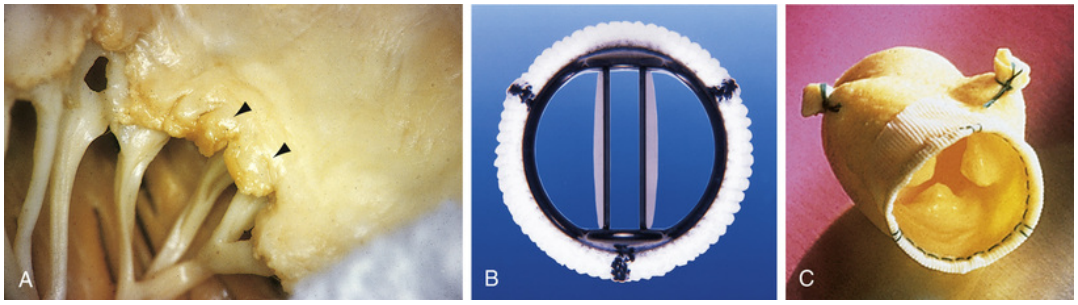


FIGURE 11-19 **A,** Acute rheumatic **mitral valvulitis** with chronic rheumatic heart disease. Small vegetations are visible along the line of closure of the mitral valve leaflet (*arrows*). Previous episodes of rheumatic valvulitis have caused fibrous thickening and fusion of the chordae tendineae of the valves. **B, Artificial heart valve. C, Porcine xenograft** valve. A xenograft valve (Greek *xen/o* means stranger) is tissue that is transferred from an animal of one species (pig) to one of another species (human).

How Does a Pacemaker Work?

The pacemaker leads (wires) detect the heart's own electrical activity and transmit that information to the generator (computer). The computer analyzes the heart's signals and decides when and where to pace. If the rate is slow, the generator emits a signal to stimulate contraction and increase the rate. Pacemakers with multiple leads can pace the atrium and ventricle in proper sequence. Rate-responsive pacemakers have sensors that detect body movement and breathing to then determine the best heart rate.

Palpitation/Palpation

Don't confuse **palpitation** with **palpation,** which means to touch, feel, or examine with the hands and fingers.

Blood Vessels

aneurysm	**Local widening (dilation) of an arterial wall.** An aneurysm (Greek *aneurysma*, widening) usually is caused by atherosclerosis and hypertension or a congenital weakness in the vessel wall. Aneurysms are common in the aorta but may occur in peripheral vessels as well. The danger of an aneurysm is rupture and hemorrhage. Treatment depends on the vessel involved, the site, and the health of the patient. In aneurysms of small vessels in the brain, treatment is occlusion of the vessel with small clips. For larger arteries, such as the aorta, a stent graft may be sewn within the affected vessel. Figure 11-20A shows an abdominal aortic aneurysm (called "**AAA**"), and Figure 11-20B illustrates a stent graft in place. Note that the graft is anastomosed to the normal portion of the aorta, and the aneurysm sac is closed around the graft to prevent fistula formation from graft to bowel.
deep vein thrombosis (DVT)	**Blood clot (thrombus) forms in a large vein, usually in a lower limb.** This condition may result in a **pulmonary embolism** (clot travels to the lung) if not treated effectively. Examples of anticoagulants (blood-thinning drugs) are warfarin (Coumadin) and direct oral anticoagulants (DOACs). They are used to prevent DVTs and pulmonary emboli (PEs).
hypertension (HTN)	**High blood pressure.** Most high blood pressure is **essential hypertension,** with no identifiable cause. Categories of blood pressure readings are shown in Table 11-1. Diuretics, ACE inhibitors, calcium channel blockers, and beta-blockers are used to treat essential hypertension. Losing weight, limiting sodium (salt) intake, stopping smoking, and reducing fat in the diet also can reduce blood pressure. In **secondary hypertension,** the increase in pressure is caused by another associated lesion, such as glomerulonephritis, pyelonephritis, or vascular disease, or disease of the adrenal glands.
peripheral arterial disease (PAD)	**Blockage of arteries carrying blood to the legs, arms, kidneys, and other organs.** Any artery can be affected, such as the **carotid** (neck), **femoral** (thigh), or **popliteal** (back of the knee). A sign of PAD in the lower extremities is **intermittent claudication** (absence of pain or discomfort in a leg at rest, but pain, tension, and weakness after walking has begun). Treatment is exercise, avoidance of nicotine (which causes vessel

	constriction), and control of risk factors such as hypertension, hyperlipidemia, and diabetes. Surgical treatment includes endarterectomy and bypass grafting (from the normal proximal vessel around the diseased area to a normal vessel distally). Percutaneous treatments include balloon angioplasty, atherectomy, and stenting. **Embolic protection devices** are parachute-like filters used to capture embolic debris during stenting.
Raynaud (ra-NO) **disease (Raynaud's)**	**Recurrent episodes of pallor and cyanosis primarily in fingers and toes.** This is a rare disorder of unknown cause that affects blood flow in arteries. Raynaud's is sometimes called a disease, phenomenon, or syndrome. It is marked by brief episodes of intense constriction and vasospasm of arterioles in young, otherwise healthy women. See Figure 11-21. Episodes can be triggered by cold temperatures, emotional stress, or cigarette smoking and caffeine. Raynaud's can be controlled by protecting the body from cold and avoiding other triggers. Medications that increase blood flow to the hands and feet may relieve symptoms.
varicose veins	**Abnormally swollen and twisted veins, usually occurring in the legs.** This condition is caused by damaged valves that fail to prevent the backflow of blood (Figure 11-22A to C). The blood then collects in the veins, which distend to many times their normal size. Because of the slow flow of blood in the varicose veins and frequent injury to the vein, thrombosis may occur as well. **Hemorrhoids** (piles) are varicose veins near the anus. Physicians now treat varicose veins with sclerotherapy (injections with sclerosing solution) or laser and pulsed-light treatments to seal off veins. Surgical interventions such as vein stripping and ligation are used less frequently.

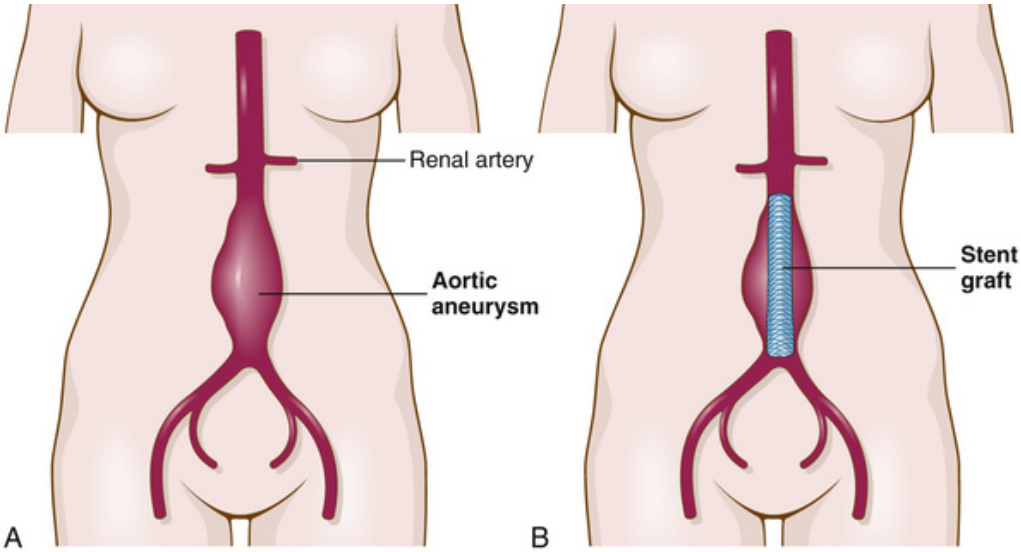


FIGURE 11-20 **A, Abdominal aortic aneurysm** (**AAA**). A **dissecting aortic aneurysm** is a splitting or dissection of the wall of the aorta by blood entering a tear or hemorrhage within the walls of the vessel. **B, Stent graft in place.** This stent graft procedure is an **endovascular aneurysm repair or EVAR.**

FIGURE 11-21 Raynaud disease.

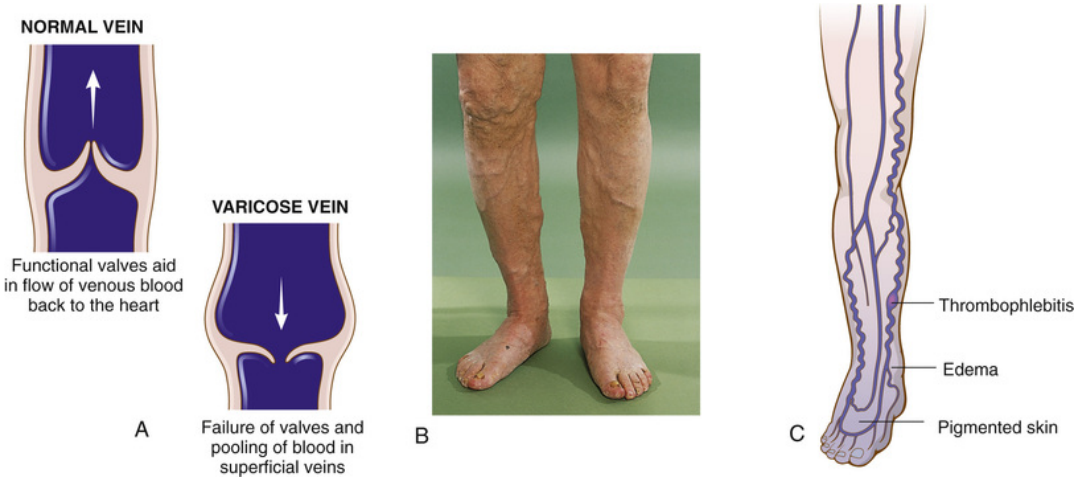


FIGURE 11-22 **A, Valve function in normal vein and varicose vein. B, Varicose veins. C,** The slow flow in veins increases susceptibility to **thrombophlebitis** (clot formation), **edema,** and **pigmented skin** (blood pools in the lower parts of the leg and fluid leaks from distended small capillaries). If a thrombus becomes loosened from its place in the vein, it can travel to the lungs **(pulmonary embolism)** and block a blood vessel there.

TABLE 11-1

Blood Pressure Categories

American Heart Association.

BLOOD PRESSURE CATEGORY	SYSTOLIC mm Hg (upper number)		DIASTOLIC mm Hg (lower number)
NORMAL	LESS THAN 120	and	LESS THAN 80
ELEVATED	120 – 129	and	LESS THAN 80
HIGH BLOOD PRESSURE (HYPERTENSION) STAGE 1	130 – 139	or	80 – 89
HIGH BLOOD PRESSURE (HYPERTENSION) STAGE 2	140 OR HIGHER	or	90 OR HIGHER
HYPERTENSIVE CRISIS (consult your doctor immediately)	HIGHER THAN 180	and/or	HIGHER THAN 120

Aortic Aneurysms and Marfan Syndrome

Aortic aneurysms are often associated with **Marfan syndrome,** a genetic disorder marked by long, thin fingers, great arm span, ocular lens dislocation, and loose joints. Abraham Lincoln is thought to have had Marfan syndrome,

and the syndrome also has been diagnosed in basketball and volleyball players who have died suddenly as a result of ruptured aortic aneurysms.

Warfarin (Coumadin) and DOACs

While the oral anticoagulant **warfarin** is used to prevent or treat thromboembolic diseases, treatment with warfarin requires careful monitoring and is complicated by drug-drug or drug-food interactions. **Direct oral anticoagulants (DOACs)** such as apixaban (Eliquis), edoxaban (Savaysa), dabigatran (Pradaxa), and rivaroxaban (Xarelto) address these limitations and have been approved by the Food and Drug Administration (FDA) for anticoagulation in non-valvular atrial fibrillation and for the prevention and treatment of DVTs and PEs.

Study Section

Practice spelling each term and know its meaning.

acute coronary syndromes (ACSs)	Unstable angina and myocardial infarction (heart attack), which are consequences of plaque rupture in coronary arteries.
angina (pectoris)	Chest pain resulting from myocardial ischemia. Stable angina occurs predictably with exertion; unstable angina is chest pain that occurs more often and with less exertion.
angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitor	Antihypertensive drug that blocks the conversion of angiotensin I to angiotensin II, causing blood vessels to dilate. It prevents heart attacks, CHF, stroke, and death. See Table 21-7 on page 835 for names of ACE inhibitors and other cardiovascular drugs.
auscultation	Listening for sounds in blood vessels or other body structures, typically using a stethoscope.
beta blocker	Drug used to treat angina, hypertension, and arrhythmias. It blocks the action of epinephrine (adrenaline) at receptor sites on cells, slowing the heartbeat and reducing the workload on the heart.
biventricular pacemaker	Device enabling ventricles to beat together (in synchrony) so that more blood is pumped out of the heart.
bruit	Abnormal blowing or swishing sound heard during auscultation of an artery or organ.
calcium channel blocker	Drug used to treat angina and hypertension. It dilates blood vessels by blocking the influx of calcium into muscle cells lining vessels.
cardiac arrest	Sudden, unexpected stoppage of heart action, often leading to sudden cardiac death.
cardiac tamponade	Pressure on the heart caused by fluid in the pericardial space.
claudication	Pain, tension, and weakness in a leg after walking has begun, but absence of pain at rest.
digoxin	Drug that treats arrhythmias and strengthens the heartbeat.
embolus (*plural*: **emboli**)	Clot or other substance that travels to a distant location and suddenly blocks a blood vessel.
infarction	Area of dead tissue.
nitrates	Drugs used in the treatment of angina. They dilate blood vessels, increasing blood flow and oxygen to myocardial tissue.
nitroglycerin	Nitrate drug used in the treatment of angina.
occlusion	Closure of a blood vessel due to blockage.
palpitations	Uncomfortable sensations in the chest related to cardiac arrhythmias, such as premature ventricular contractions (PVCs).
patent	Open.

pericardial friction rub	Scraping or grating noise heard on auscultation of the heart; suggestive of pericarditis.
petechiae	Small, pinpoint hemorrhages.
statins	Drugs used to lower cholesterol in the bloodstream.
thrill	Vibration felt over an area of turmoil in blood flow (as a blocked artery).
vegetations	Clumps of platelets, clotting proteins, microorganisms, and red blood cells on diseased heart valves.

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Laboratory Tests

BNP test	**Measurement of BNP (brain natriuretic peptide) in blood.** BNP is elevated in patients with heart failure, and it is useful in the diagnosis of CHF in patients with dyspnea who come to the emergency department. Its presence also identifies patients at risk for complications when presenting with acute coronary syndromes (e.g., myocardial infarction, unstable angina). It is secreted when the heart becomes overloaded, and it acts as a diuretic to help heart function return to normal. Cardiologists also measure NT-proBNP levels to assess the degree of heart failure. NT stands for N-terminal. The reference to brain in this term originates from the initial identification of the protein in the brain of a pig.
cardiac biomarkers	**Chemicals are measured in the blood as evidence of a heart attack.** Damaged heart muscle releases chemicals into the bloodstream. The substances tested for are **troponin-I (cTnI)** and **troponin-T (cTnT)**. Troponin is a heart muscle protein released into circulation after myocardial injury. C-reactive protein **(CRP)** is a biomarker of inflammation. High-sensitivity CRP **(Hs-CRP)** is useful in predicting risk for heart attack, stroke, or other major heart disease.
lipid tests (lipid profile)	**Measurement of cholesterol and triglycerides (fats) in a blood sample.** High levels of lipids are associated with atherosclerosis. The general guideline for total cholesterol in the blood is less than 200 mg/dL. **Saturated fats** (of animal origin, such as milk, butter, and meats) increase cholesterol in the blood, whereas **polyunsaturated fats** (of vegetable origin, such as corn and safflower oil) decrease blood cholesterol. Treatment of hyperlipidemia includes proper diet (low-fat, high-fiber intake) and exercise. Niacin (a vitamin) also helps reduce lipids. Drug therapy includes **statins,** which reduce the risk of heart attack, stroke, and cardiovascular death. Statins lower cholesterol by reducing its production in the liver. Examples are simvastatin (Zocor), atorvastatin (Lipitor), pravastatin (Pravachol), and rosuvastatin (Crestor).
lipoprotein electrophoresis	**Lipoproteins (combinations of fat and protein) are physically separated and measured in a blood sample.** Examples of lipoproteins are **low-density lipoprotein (LDL)** and **high-density lipoprotein (HDL).** High levels

	of LDL are associated with atherosclerosis. The National Guideline for LDL is less than 130 mg/dL in normal persons and less than 70 mg/dL in patients with CAD, PAD, and diabetes mellitus. High levels of HDL protect adults from atherosclerosis. Factors that increase HDL are exercise and alcohol consumption in moderation.

Clinical Procedures: Diagnostic

X-Ray and Electron Beam Tests

angiography	**X-ray imaging of blood vessels after injection of contrast material.** **Arteriography** is x-ray imaging of arteries after injection of contrast via a catheter into the aorta or an artery.
computed tomography angiography (CTA)	**Three-dimensional x-ray images of the heart and coronary arteries using computed tomography (64-slice CT scanner).** This newer technique takes hundreds of images of the heart per second. Cross-sectional images are assembled by computer into a three-dimensional picture. It is less invasive than angiography (contrast material is injected into a small peripheral vein with a small needle) and provides excellent views of the coronary arteries for diagnosis of coronary artery disease (Figure 11-23A).
digital subtraction angiography (DSA)	**Video equipment and a computer produce x-ray images of blood vessels.** After taking an initial x-ray picture and storing it in a computer, physicians inject contrast material and take a second image of that area. The computer compares the two images and subtracts digital data for the first from the second, leaving an image of vessels with contrast.
electron beam computed tomography (EBCT *or* EBT)	**Electron beams and CT identify calcium deposits in and around coronary arteries to diagnose early CAD.** A coronary artery calcium score is derived to indicate future risk of heart attack and stroke (see Figure 11-23B).

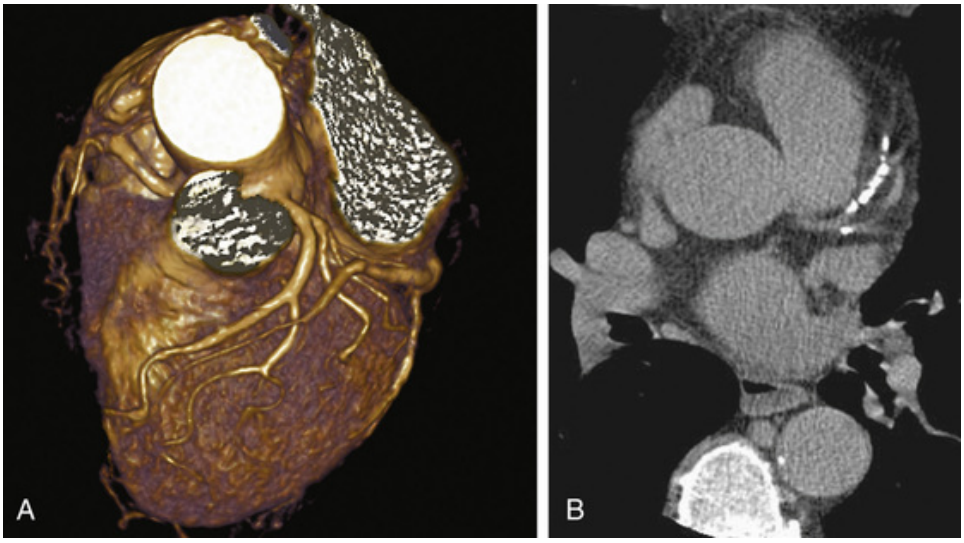


FIGURE 11-23 **A, Computed tomography angiography (CTA) showing coronary arteries. B, Electron beam computed tomography** showing significant calcification (*white areas*) in the coronary arteries, indicating advanced coronary artery disease. (**A,** Courtesy Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.)

Coronary Artery Calcium Score

0-99	low risk
100-399	intermediate risk
>400	high risk

A calcium score >400 is associated with a nearly 25% chance of a heart attack or stroke occurring within 10 years.

Ultrasound Examination

Doppler ultrasound studies	**Sound waves measure blood flow within blood vessels.** An instrument focuses sound waves on blood vessels, and echoes bounce off red blood cells. The examiner can hear various alterations in blood flow caused by vessel obstruction. **Duplex ultrasound** combines Doppler and conventional ultrasound to allow physicians to image the structure of blood vessels and measure the speed of blood flow. Carotid artery occlusion, aneurysms, varicose veins, and other vessel disorders can be diagnosed with duplex ultrasound.
echocardiography (ECHO)	**Echoes generated by high-frequency sound waves produce images of the heart** (Figure 11-24A). ECHOs show the structure and movement of the heart. In **transesophageal echocardiography (TEE),** a transducer placed in the esophagus provides ultrasound and Doppler information (Figure 11-24B). This technique detects cardiac masses, prosthetic valve function, aneurysms, and pericardial fluid.

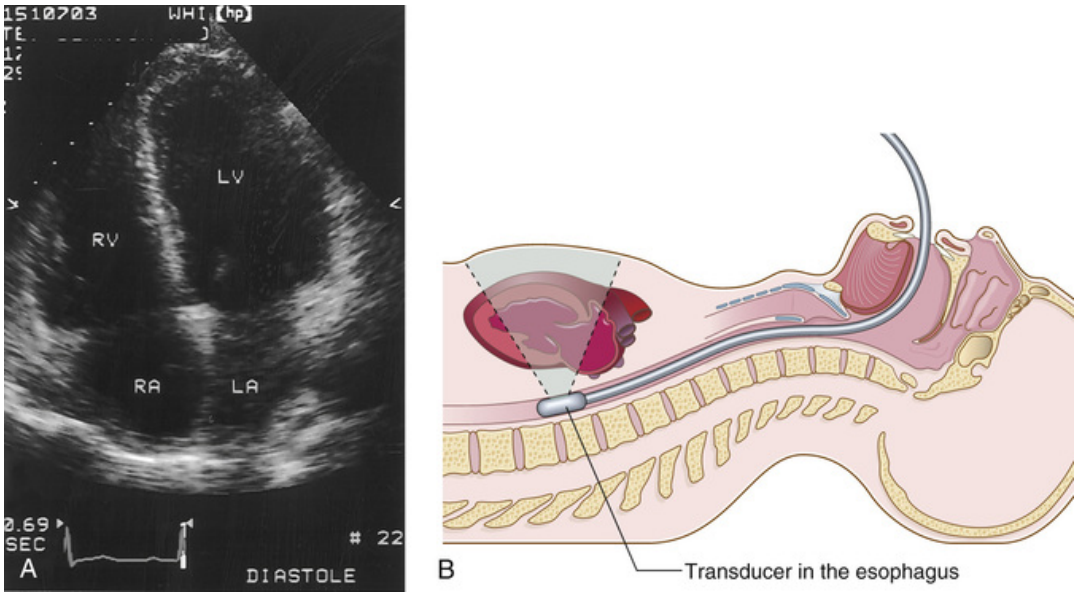


FIGURE 11-24 **A, Echocardiogram.** Notice that in this view, the ventricles are above the atria. **B, Transesophageal echocardiography.**

Nuclear Cardiology

positron emission tomography (PET) scan	**Images show blood flow and myocardial function following uptake of radioactive glucose.** PET scanning can detect CAD, myocardial function, and differences between ischemic heart disease and cardiomyopathy.
technetium Tc 99m sestamibi scan	**Technetium Tc 99m sestamibi injected intravenously is taken up in cardiac tissue, where it is detected by scanning.** This scan is used in persons who have had an MI, to assess the amount of damaged heart muscle. It also is used with an exercise tolerance test (**ETT-MIBI**). Sestamibi is a radioactive tracer compound used to define areas of poor blood flow in heart muscle.
thallium 201 scan	**Concentration of radioactive thallium is measured to give information about blood supply to the heart muscle.** Thallium studies show the viability of heart muscle. Infarcted or scarred myocardium shows up as "cold spots."

Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI)

cardiac MRI	**Images of the heart are produced using radiowave energy in a magnetic field.** These images in multiple planes give information about left and right ventricular function, wall thickness, and fibrosis, aneurysms, cardiac output, and patency of peripheral and coronary arteries. The magnetic waves emitted during MRI could interfere with implanted pacemakers because of their metal content and heat generation, so it is currently contraindicated for a patient with a pacemaker to undergo cardiac MRI. However, new MRI-safe pacemakers have been approved. **Magnetic resonance angiography (MRA)** is a type of MRI that gives highly detailed images of blood vessels. Physicians use MRA to view arteries and blockage inside arteries. **Gadolinium** is the most common contrast agent used for MRI procedures.

Other Diagnostic Procedures

cardiac catheterization	**Thin, flexible tube is guided into the heart via a vein or an artery.** This procedure detects pressures and patterns of blood flow in the heart. Contrast may be injected and x-ray images taken of the heart and blood vessels (Figure 11-25). This procedure may be used in diagnosis and treatment of heart conditions (see under percutaneous coronary intervention [PCI] on page 407). At the time of catheterization, the interventional cardiologist also may perform **intravascular ultrasound** (**IVUS**) to evaluate the severity of vessel narrowing. It also measures fractional flow reserve (FFR) to determine the impact of the coronary artery blockage on blood flow.
electrocardiography (ECG)	**Recording of electricity flowing through the heart.** Continuous monitoring of a patient's heart rhythm in hospitals is performed via **telemetry** (electronic transmission of data—tele/o means distant). Sinus rhythm begins in the SA node, and the normal rate is between 60 to 100 beats per minute. Figure 11-26 shows ECG strips for normal sinus rhythm and several types of dysrhythmias (abnormal rhythms).
Holter monitoring	**An ECG device is worn during prolonged period to detect cardiac arrhythmias.** Rhythm changes are correlated with symptoms recorded in a diary.
stress test	**Exercise tolerance test (ETT) determines the heart's response to physical exertion (stress).** A common protocol uses 3-minute stages at set speeds and elevations of a treadmill. Continual monitoring of vital signs and ECG rhythms is important in the diagnosis of CAD and left ventricular function.

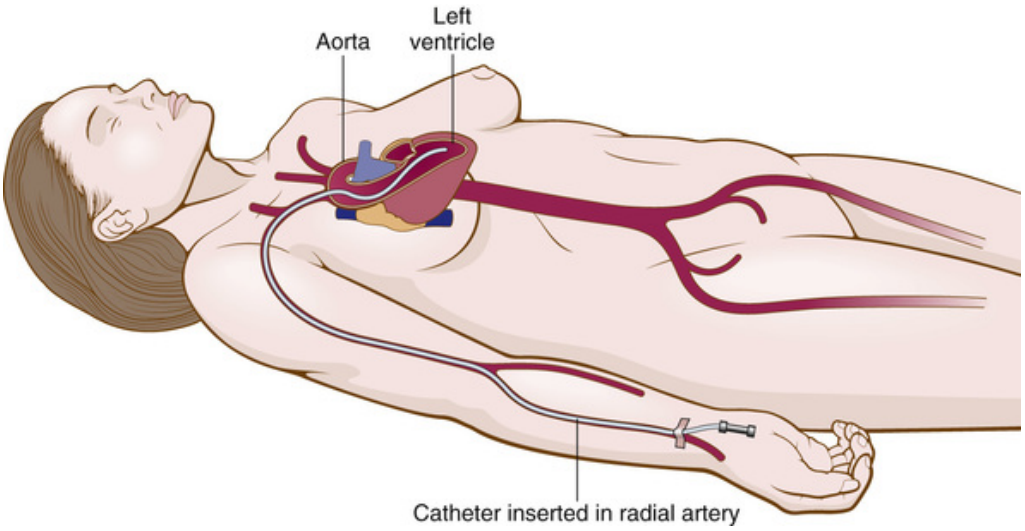


FIGURE 11-25 **Transradial cardiac catheterization.** The catheter is passed retrograde (backward) from the radial artery into the aorta and then into the left ventricle.

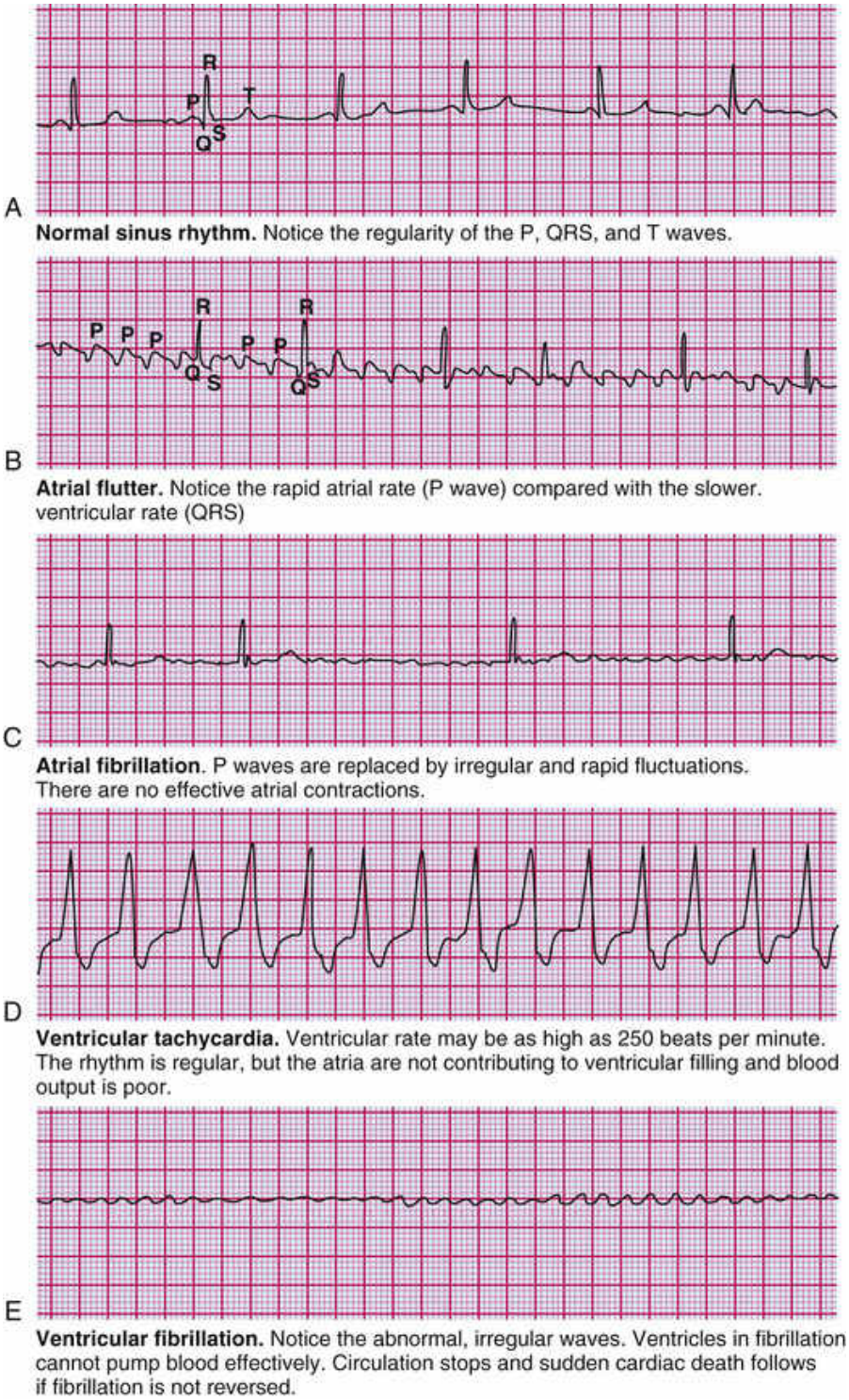

A
R
P
T
Q
S
Normal sinus rhythm. Notice the regularity of the P, QRS, and T waves.
B
P P P R R P P
Q S Q S
Atrial flutter. Notice the rapid atrial rate (P wave) compared with the slower. ventricular rate (QRS)
C
Atrial fibrillation. P waves are replaced by irregular and rapid fluctuations. There are no effective atrial contractions.
D
Ventricular tachycardia. Ventricular rate may be as high as 250 beats per minute. The rhythm is regular, but the atria are not contributing to ventricular filling and blood output is poor.
E
Ventricular fibrillation. Notice the abnormal, irregular waves. Ventricles in fibrillation cannot pump blood effectively. Circulation stops and sudden cardiac death follows if fibrillation is not reversed.

FIGURE 11-26 ECG rhythm strips showing normal sinus rhythm and dysrhythmias (arrhythmias).

Clinical Procedures: Treatment

catheter ablation	**Brief delivery of radiofrequency energy to ablate (remove) areas of heart tissue that may be causing arrhythmias.** A catheter is guided through a vein in the leg to the vena cava and into the heart. The abnormal electrical pathway is located and ablated (destroyed) using energy emitted from the catheter. See Figure 11-27A.
coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG)	**Arteries and veins are anastomosed to coronary arteries to detour around blockages.** Internal mammary (breast) and radial (arm) arteries and saphenous (leg) vein grafts are used to keep the myocardium supplied with oxygenated blood (Figure 11-27B). Cardiac surgeons perform minimally invasive CABG surgery using smaller incisions instead of the traditional sternotomy to open the chest. Vein and artery grafts are removed endoscopically through small incisions as well. Although most operations are performed with a heart-lung machine ("on pump"), an increasing number are performed "off pump" with a beating heart. See ***In Person: Coronary Artery Bypass Surgery,*** page 412.
defibrillation	**Brief discharges of electricity are applied across the chest to stop dysrhythmias (ventricular fibrillation).** For patients at high risk for sudden cardiac death from ventricular dysrhythmias, an **implantable cardioverter-defibrillator (ICD)** or **automatic implantable cardioverter-defibrillator (AICD)** is placed in the upper chest. **Cardioversion** is another technique using lower energy to treat atrial fibrillation, atrial flutter, and supraventricular tachycardia.
endarterectomy	**Surgical removal of plaque from the inner layer of an artery.** Fatty deposits (atheromas) and thromboses are removed to open clogged arteries. **Carotid endarterectomy** is a procedure to remove plaque buildup in the carotid artery to reduce risk of stroke.
extracorporeal circulation	**Heart-lung machine diverts blood from the heart and lungs while the heart is repaired.** Blood leaves the body, enters the heart-lung machine, where it is oxygenated, and then returns to a blood vessel (artery) to circulate through the bloodstream. The

	machine uses the technique of **extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO).**
heart transplantation	**Donor heart is transferred to a recipient.** While waiting for a transplant, a patient may need a **left ventricular assist device (LVAD),** which is a booster pump implanted in the chest or abdomen with cannulae (flexible tubes) from the left ventricle to the ascending aorta.
percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI)	**Balloon-tipped catheter is inserted into a coronary artery to open the artery; stents are put in place.** An interventional cardiologist places the catheter in the femoral or radial artery and then threads it up the aorta into the coronary artery. **Stents** (expandable slotted metal tubes that serve as permanent scaffolding devices) create wide lumens and make restenosis less likely. **Drug-eluting stents (DESs)** are coated with polymers that elute (release) anti-inflammatory and antiproliferative drugs to prevent scar tissue formation leading to restenosis (Figure 11-28). Other devices are bioabsorbable vascular scaffolds (BVSs), made of dissolvable material, and drug-coated balloons (DCBs) that release paclitaxel. PCI techniques include percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA), stent placement, laser angioplasty (a small laser on the tip of a catheter vaporizes plaque), and atherectomy.
thrombolytic therapy	**Drugs to dissolve clots are injected into the bloodstream of patients with coronary thrombosis.** Tissue plasminogen activator **(tPA)** and **streptokinase** restore blood flow to the heart and limit irreversible damage to heart muscle. The drugs are given within 12 hours after the onset of a heart attack. Thrombolytic agents reduce the mortality rate in patients with myocardial infarction by 25%.
transcatheter aortic valve replacement (TAVR)	**Placement of a balloon-expandable aortic heart valve into the body via a catheter.** The catheter is guided into the heart through the femoral artery, and a stent valve device is inserted using the catheter. This is a newer, minimally invasive catheter-based technology used to treat aortic stenosis.

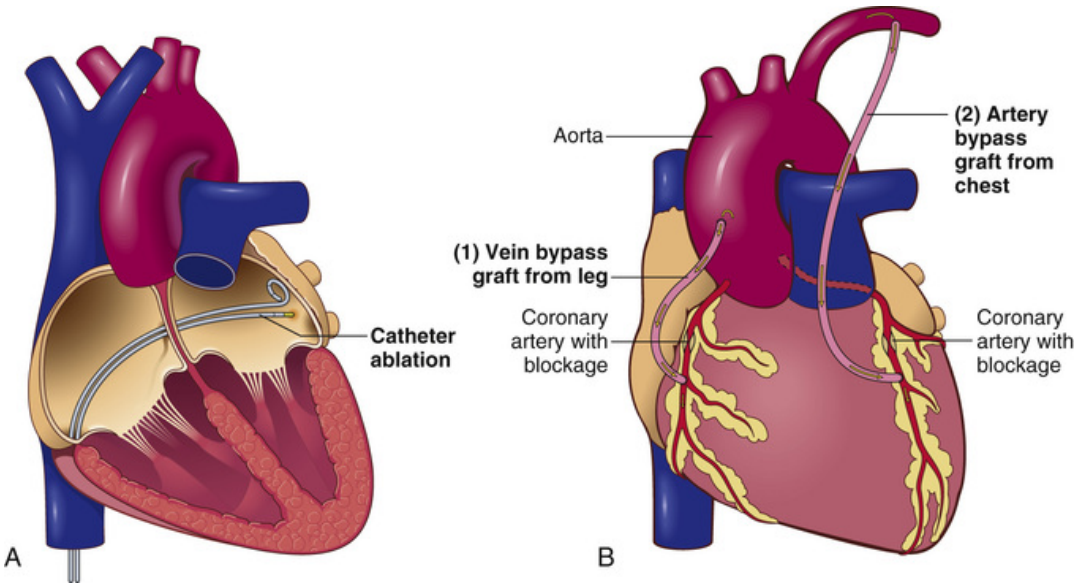


FIGURE 11-27 **A, Catheter ablation.** SVT, atrial flutter, AF, and VT may be treated with ablation when clinically indicated. **B, Coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG)** surgery with anastomosis of vein and arterial grafts. **(1)** A section of a vein is removed from the leg and anastomosed (upside down because of its directional valves) to a coronary artery, to bypass an area of arteriosclerotic blockage. **(2)** An internal mammary artery is grafted to a coronary artery to bypass a blockage.

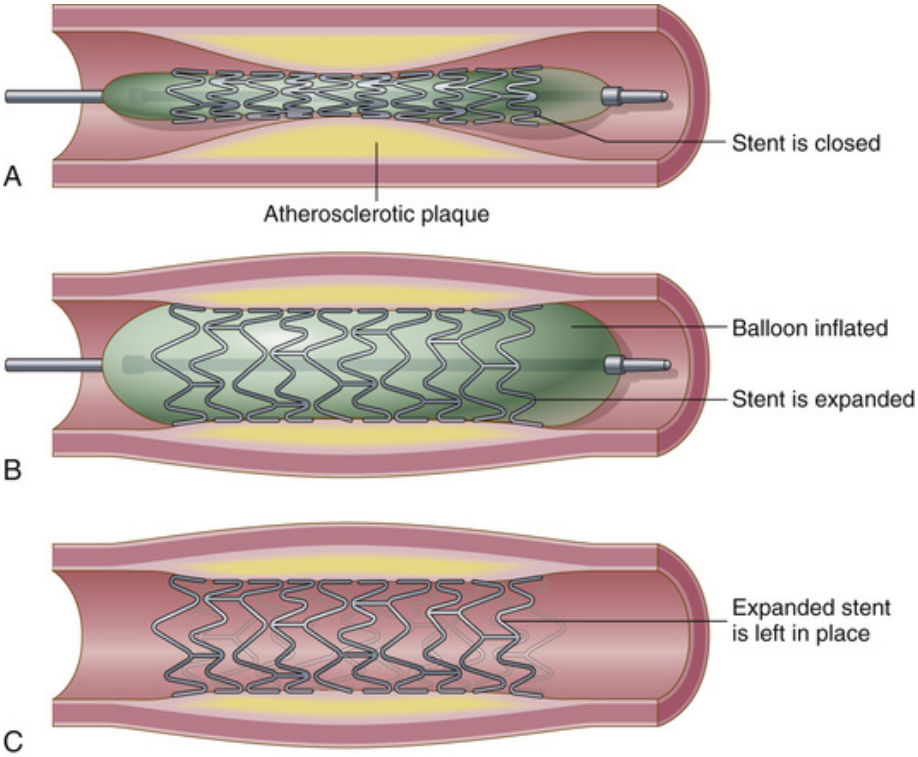


FIGURE 11-28 Placement of an intracoronary artery drug-eluting stent. A, The stent is positioned at the site of the lesion. **B,** The balloon is inflated, expanding the stent and compressing the plaque. **C,** When the balloon is withdrawn, the stent supports the artery and releases a drug to reduce the risk of restenosis. Stents are stainless-steel scaffolding devices that help hold open arteries, such as the coronary, renal, and carotid arteries.

Abbreviations

AAA	abdominal aortic aneurysm
ACE inhibitor	angiotensin-converting enzyme inhibitor
ACLS	advanced cardiac life support; CPR plus drugs and defibrillation
ACS	acute coronary syndrome
ADP	adenosine diphosphate; ADP blockers are used to prevent cardiovascular-related death, heart attack, and strokes and after all stent procedures
AED	automatic external defibrillator
AF, a-fib	atrial fibrillation
AICD	automatic implantable cardioverter-defibrillator
AMI	acute myocardial infarction
ARB	angiotensin II receptor blocker
ARVD	arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia
AS	aortic stenosis
ASD	atrial septal defect
AV, A-V	atrioventricular
AVR	aortic valve replacement
BBB	bundle branch block
BNP	brain natriuretic peptide; elevated in congestive heart failure
BP	blood pressure
CABG	coronary artery bypass grafting
CAD	coronary artery disease
CCTA	coronary computed tomography angiography
CCU	coronary care unit
Cath	catheterization
CHF	congestive heart failure
CK	creatine kinase; enzyme released after injury to heart muscles
CoA	coarctation of the aorta
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation
CRT	cardiac resynchronization therapy; biventricular pacing and defibrillation devices
CTNI *or* **cTnI; CTNT** *or* **cTnT**	cardiac troponin-I and cardiac troponin-T; troponin is a protein released into the bloodstream after myocardial injury
DES	drug-eluting stent
DOAC	direct oral anticoagulant
DSA	digital subtraction angiography
DVT	deep vein thrombosis
ECG; *also seen as*	electrocardiography

EKG	
ECHO	echocardiography
ECMO	extracorporeal membrane oxygenation
EF	ejection fraction; measure of the amount of blood that pumps out of the heart with each beat
EPS	electrophysiology study; electrode catheters inserted in veins and threaded into the heart to measure electrical conduction (tachycardias are provoked and analyzed)
ETT	exercise tolerance test
ETT-MIBI	exercise tolerance test combined with a radioactive tracer (sestamibi) scan
EVAR	endovascular aneurysm repair
FFR	fractional flow reserve
HDL	high-density lipoprotein; high blood levels mean lower incidence of coronary artery disease
hsCRP	high-sensitivity C-reactive protein; biomarker for inflammation in prediction of heart attack risk
HTN	hypertension (high blood pressure)
IABP	intra-aortic balloon pump; used to support patients in cardiogenic shock
ICA	invasive coronary angiography
ICD	implantable cardioverter-defibrillator
IVUS	intravascular ultrasound
LAD	left anterior descending (coronary artery)
LBBB	left bundle branch block
LDL	low-density lipoprotein; high blood levels lead to cholesterol buildup in arteries
LMWH	low-molecular-weight heparin
LV	left ventricle
LVAD	left ventricular assist device
LVEF	left ventricular ejection fraction
LVH	left ventricular hypertrophy
MI	myocardial infarction
MUGA	multiple-gated acquisition scan; a radioactive test of heart function
MVP	mitral valve prolapse
NSR	normal sinus rhythm
NT-proBNP	N-terminal pro-peptide of BNP
NSTEMI	non–ST elevation MI
PAC	premature atrial contraction
PAD	peripheral arterial disease
PCI	percutaneous coronary intervention

PDA	patent ductus arteriosus
PE	pulmonary embolus
PVC	premature ventricular contraction
RBBB	right bundle branch block
SA, S-A node	sinoatrial node
SCD	sudden cardiac death
SOB	shortness of breath
SPECT	single photon emission computed tomography; used for myocardial imaging with sestamibi scans
STEMI	ST elevation myocardial infarction
SVT	supraventricular tachycardia; rapid heartbeats arising from the atria and causing palpitations, SOB, and dizziness
TAVR	transcatheter aortic valve replacement
TEE	transesophageal echocardiography
TEVAR	thoracic endovascular aneurysm repair
TGA	transposition of the great arteries
tPA	tissue-type plasminogen activator; a drug used to prevent thrombosis
UA	unstable angina; chest pain at rest or of increasing frequency
VF	ventricular fibrillation
VSD	ventricular septal defect
VT	ventricular tachycardia
WPW	Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome; abnormal ECG pattern associated with paroxysmal tachycardia

Practical Applications

Answers to Practical Applications are found on page 425.

Operating Room Schedule: General Hospital

Match the operative treatment in Column I with the appropriate surgical indication (diagnosis) in Column II.

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. coronary artery bypass grafting	_____	A. Congestive heart failure B. Cardiac tamponade (fluid in the space surrounding the heart) C. Atherosclerotic occlusion of a main artery leading to the head D. Congenital hole in the wall of the upper chamber of the heart E. Disabling angina and extensive coronary atherosclerosis despite medical therapy F. Peripheral vascular disease G. Heart block H. Varicose veins I. Protrusion of the wall of a lower heart chamber J. Aortic stenosis
2. left carotid endarterectomy	_____	
3. sclerosing injections and laser treatment	_____	
4. LV aneurysmectomy	_____	
5. atrial septal defect repair	_____	
6. left ventricular assist device	_____	
7. pericardiocentesis	_____	
8. aortic valve replacement	_____	
9. pacemaker implantation	_____	
10. femoral-popliteal bypass grafting	_____	

New and Important Cardiovascular Drugs

Antiplatelet agents: These drugs are used after stent placement or after ACS (acute coronary syndromes).

- clopidrogrel (Plavix)
- prasugrel (Effient)
- ticagrelor (Brilinta)

DOACs (direct oral anticoagulant agents): These drugs are used to prevent strokes related to atrial fibrillation and clot formation.

- apixaban (Eliquis)
- dabidatran (Pradaxa)
- edoxaban (Savaysa
- rivaroxaban (Xarelto)

Entresto: Exciting new combination drug to treat heart failure. It has outperformed traditional angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors in a major clinical trial and has been shown to reduce mortality due to heart failure.

- valsartan/sacubitril

Clinical Cases: What's Your Diagnosis?

Case 1: A 24-year-old woman with a history of palpitations [heartbeat is unusually strong, rapid, or irregular, so that patient is aware of it] and vague

chest pains enters the hospital. With the patient supine, you hear a midsystolic click that is followed by a grade 3/6 [moderately loud—6/6 is loud and 1/6 is quiet] honking murmur.

1. Your diagnosis is:
    a. Tetralogy of Fallot
    b. Mitral valve prolapse
    c. Raynaud disease
    d. Congestive heart failure

Case 2: Mr. Smith is brought urgently to the Emergency Room for prolonged chest pain. His ECG showed ST segment elevation in the anterior leads and he was then transferred to the cardiac cath lab. An angiogram reveals 100% blockage of the left anterior descending (LAD) coronary artery. PCI with stent is recommended.

1. What did the ECG reveal?
    a. NSTEMI and unstable angina
    b. Aortic aneurysm
    c. CHF
    d. STEMI
2. Your diagnosis for this patient is:
    a. Heart attack
    b. Rheumatic heart disease
    c. Unstable angina
    d. Patent ductus arteriosus
3. What treatment is recommended?
    a. Coronary artery bypass grafting
    b. Catheterization with drug-eluting stent placement
    c. Defibrillation and cardioversion
    d. Thrombolytic drugs

Case 3: A 42-year-old female runner recovering from an upper respiratory infection comes to the ED complaining of chest pain that is sharp and constant, worse when she is lying down and decreased with sitting up and leaning forward. Serum troponin levels rule out an acute MI. The ED physician auscultates a pericardial friction rub.

1. What's your diagnosis for this patient?
    a. Myocardial ischemia
    b. Unstable angina and NSTEMI
    c. Endocarditis
    d. Pericarditis

2. The danger of this condition is the risk for progression to:
    a. Cardiac tamponade
    b. Aneurysm
    c. Pulmonary embolism
    d. Claudication

In Person

Coronary Artery Bypass Surgery

Possible heart attack? You have to be kidding. I had none of the supposed symptoms—shortness of breath or chest pain. Instead, I had bouts of atrial fibrillation off and on for several months. I got tired easily, and I could feel my blood pressure drop. After lying down for about an hour, I was fine, so in November 2010 I decided to get it checked out.

My cardiologist decided to do a stress test. He put me on a treadmill, which seemed like an eternity, and then did some ultrasound on me. I work out every day on a treadmill and a recumbent bike, so the test on the treadmill wasn't that difficult, although I loved the words “just a couple of seconds to go.”

The cardiologist at Johns Hopkins told me after the stress test that it appeared that I had a slight blockage of an artery. No problem, I thought.

Angioplasty was recommended. During angioplasty, a catheter was inserted up my right arm, and although I was lightly sedated, I still felt it, particularly when the doctor hit a problem and had to make a slight correction. I was certain that they would put in a stent and I'd be home by the weekend. “No,” said my doctor. “You have three blockages and will need bypass surgery.” I thought he must be talking about someone else. That can't be me!

The blockages did not require immediate surgery. After all, I was pain free and asymptomatic. Still, I asked for an early date for surgery, and it was set for January 11, 2011. (That was 1/11/11. How odd.)

The triple coronary artery bypass opened me up like a beached tuna and made me an official member of the “zipper club.” The atrial fibrillation was fixed with radiofrequency ablation.

After surgery I had to lie on my back, which meant minimal sleep for a week. Lasix (a diuretic) was my biggest problem, along with a dozen pills I had to take far too often. According to my surgeon, who visited me a day later, things went well, and I was up and walking the hallways of Hopkins with the help of a nurse and a walker.

I went home in a week. The toughest part of the ordeal, oddly enough, was trying to get to the bathroom in time and the bumpy ride home. Those bumps made me hold that pillow [for abdominal support] as close as I could. Ouch.

After I returned home, two nurses came for home care, and they were fabulous. I lost about 20 pounds before the surgery and another 17 pounds afterward. I went from 210 pounds to around 173 pounds.

Nowadays, I eat no red meat, nothing with butter, and as little fat and salt as possible. In other words, I eat fish primarily. I work out every day (between 30 and 60 minutes), and I have regular checkups with my cardiologist.

I was lucky that the atrial fibrillation alerted my physicians to a deeper problem that may have resulted in a heart attack or even death. Secondly, I was fortunate to have some true professionals on hand to get me through the darkest days of my life. Many people who had bypass surgery told me I would have more energy after surgery due to my new plumbing. That occurred within 6-7 months after my surgery.

Stan Ber was born in Maine and is a graduate of Bowdoin College. He retired from his career as a sports editor and columnist for the Columbia Flier and Howard County Times in December 2014 after 44 years. He was inducted into the Howard County Sports Hall of Fame in 2009 and has been recognized by the Maryland State Legislature.

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, page 422.

A **Match the listed structures with the descriptions that follow.**

aorta

arteriole

atrium

capillary

inferior vena cava

mitral valve

pulmonary artery

pulmonary vein

superior vena cava

tricuspid valve

ventricle

venule

1. valve that lies between the right atrium and the right ventricle _____
2. smallest blood vessel _____
3. carries oxygenated blood from the lungs to the heart _____
4. largest artery in the body _____
5. brings oxygen-poor blood into the heart from the upper parts of the body _____
6. upper chamber of the heart _____
7. carries oxygen-poor blood to the lungs from the heart _____
8. small artery _____
9. valve that lies between the left atrium and the left ventricle _____

10. brings blood from the lower half of the body to the heart _____
11. small vein _____
12. lower chamber of the heart _____

B **Trace the path of blood through the heart. Begin as the blood enters the right atrium from the venae cavae (and include the valves within the heart).**

1. right atrium_____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. capillaries of the lung_____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____
12. aorta_____

C **Complete the following sentences.**

1. The pacemaker of the heart is the _____.
2. The sac-like membrane surrounding the heart is the _____.
3. The wall of the heart between the right and the left atria is the _____.
4. The relaxation phase of the heartbeat is called _____.

5. Specialized conductive tissue in the wall between the ventricles is the _____.
6. The inner lining of the heart is the _____.
7. The contractive phase of the heartbeat is called _____.
8. A gas released as a metabolic product of catabolism is _____.
9. Specialized conductive tissue at the base of the wall between the two upper heart chambers is the _____.
10. The inner lining of the pericardium, closely enveloping the heart, is the _____.
11. An abnormal heart sound due to improper closure of heart valves is a _____.
12. The beat of the heart as felt through the walls of arteries is called the _____.

D **Complete the following terms using the given definitions.**

1. hardening of arteries: arterio _____
2. disease condition of heart muscle: cardio _____
3. enlargement of the heart: cardio _____
4. inflammation of a vein: phleb _____
5. condition of rapid heartbeat: _____ cardia
6. condition of slow heartbeat: _____ cardia
7. high levels of cholesterol in the blood: hyper _____

8. surgical repair of a valve: valvulo _____
9. condition of deficient oxygen: hyp _____
10. pertaining to an upper heart chamber: _____ al
11. narrowing of the mitral valve: mitral _____
12. breakdown of a clot: thrombo _____

E **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. cyanosis _____
2. phlebotomy _____
3. arterial anastomosis _____
4. cardiogenic shock _____
5. atheroma _____
6. arrhythmia _____
7. sphygmomanometer _____
8. stethoscope _____
9. mitral valvulitis _____
10. atherosclerosis _____

11. vasoconstriction

_____

12. vasodilation

_____

F **Match the following pathologic conditions of the heart with their meanings below.**

atrial septal defect

coarctation of the aorta

congestive heart failure

coronary artery disease

endocarditis

fibrillation

flutter

hypertensive heart disease

mitral valve prolapse

patent ductus arteriosus

pericarditis

tetralogy of Fallot

1. inflammation of the inner lining of the heart

   _____

2. rapid but regular atrial or ventricular contractions

   _____

3. small hole between the upper heart chambers; congenital anomaly _____

4. improper closure of the valve between the left atrium and ventricle during systole _____

5. blockage of the arteries surrounding the heart leading to ischemia _____

6. high blood pressure affecting the heart _____
7. rapid, random, ineffectual, and irregular contractions of the heart _____
8. inflammation of the sac surrounding the heart _____
9. inability of the heart to pump its required amount of blood _____
10. congenital malformation involving four separate heart defects _____
11. congenital narrowing of the large artery leading from the heart _____
12. a duct between the aorta and the pulmonary artery, which normally closes soon after birth, remains open _____

G **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. heart block _____ _____
2. cardiac arrest _____ _____
3. palpitations _____ _____
4. artificial cardiac pacemaker _____ _____
5. thrombotic occlusion _____

_____

6. angina

_____
_____

7. myocardial infarction

_____
_____

8. necrosis

_____
_____

9. infarction

_____
_____

10. ischemia

_____
_____

11. nitroglycerin

_____
_____

12. digoxin

_____
_____

13. bruit

_____
_____

14. thrill

_____
_____

15. acute coronary syndromes

_____
_____

16. pericardial friction rub
_____
_____
17. deep vein thrombosis
_____
_____
18. biventricular pacemaker
_____
_____

H **Match the following terms with their descriptions.**

aneurysm
auscultation
claudication
emboli
essential hypertension
murmur
peripheral arterial disease
petechiae
Raynaud disease
rheumatic heart disease
secondary hypertension
vegetations

1. lesions that form on heart valves after damage by infection _____
2. clots that travel to and suddenly block a blood vessel
_____
3. small, pinpoint hemorrhages
_____

4. an extra heart sound, heard between normal beats and caused by a valvular defect or condition that disrupts the smooth flow of blood through the heart

   _____

5. listening with a stethoscope

   _____

6. heart disease caused by rheumatic fever

   _____

7. high blood pressure in arteries when the etiology is idiopathic _____

8. high blood pressure related to kidney disease

   _____

9. episodes of pallor, numbness, and cyanosis in fingers and toes caused by a temporary constriction of arterioles

   _____

10. local widening of an artery

    _____

11. pain, tension, and weakness in a limb after walking has begun _____

12. blockage of arteries in the lower extremities; etiology is atherosclerosis _____

I **Give short answers for the following.**

1. Types of drugs used to treat acute coronary syndromes include

   _____

   _____.

2. When damaged valves in veins fail to prevent the backflow of blood, a condition (swollen, twisted vein) that results is _____.

3. Swollen, twisted veins in the rectal region are called _____.

4. Name the four defects in tetralogy of Fallot from their descriptions:

a. narrowing of the artery leading to the lungs from the heart _____

b. gap in the wall between the ventricles _____

c. the large vessel leading from the left ventricle moves over the interventricular septum _____

d. excessive development of the wall of the right lower heart chamber _____ _____

J **Select from the list of cardiac tests and procedures to complete the definitions that follow.**

angiography (arteriography)

cardiac biomarkers

cardiac MRI

coronary artery bypass grafting

defibrillation

echocardiography

electrocardiography

endarterectomy

lipid tests (profile)

lipoprotein electrophoresis

stress test

thallium 201 scan

1. surgical removal of plaque from the inner lining of an artery _____
2. application of brief electrical discharges across the chest to stop ventricular fibrillation and pulseless ventricular tachycardia _____
3. measurement of levels of fatty substances (cholesterol and triglycerides) in the bloodstream _____
4. measurement of the heart's response to physical exertion (patient monitored while jogging on a treadmill) _____
5. measurement of troponin-T and troponin-I after myocardial infarction _____
6. injection of contrast into vessels and x-ray imaging _____
7. recording of the electricity in the heart _____
8. intravenous injection of a radioactive substance and measurement of its accumulation in heart muscle _____
9. use of echoes from high-frequency sound waves to produce images of the heart _____
10. separation of HDL and LDL from a blood sample _____
11. anastomosis of vessel grafts to existing coronary arteries to maintain blood supply to the myocardium _____
12. beaming of magnetic waves at the heart to produce images of its structure _____

K **Give the meanings for the following terms.**

1. digital subtraction angiography
_____
2. heart transplantation
_____
3. ETT-MIBI
_____
4. Doppler ultrasound
_____
5. Holter monitoring
_____
6. thrombolytic therapy
_____
7. extracorporeal circulation
_____
8. cardiac catheterization
_____
9. percutaneous coronary intervention
_____
10. drug-eluting stent
_____
11. electron beam computed tomography
_____

12. CT angiography

_____

L **Identify the following cardiac dysrhythmias from their abbreviations.**

1. AF _____
2. VT _____
3. VF _____
4. PVC

   _____
5. PAC

   _____

M **Identify the following abnormal cardiac conditions from their abbreviations.**

1. CHF _____
2. VSD _____
3. MI _____
4. PDA _____
5. MVP _____
6. AS _____
7. CAD _____
8. ASD _____

N **Match the listed abbreviations for cardiac tests and procedures with the explanations/descriptions that follow.**

BNP

CRT

cTnI or cTnT

ECHO

ECMO

ETT

ETT-MIBI

ICD

LDL

LVAD

RFA

TEE

1. cardiac serum enzyme test for myocardial infarction _____
2. booster pump implanted in the abdomen with a cannula leading to the heart as a "bridge to transplant" _____
3. ultrasound imaging of the heart using transducer within the esophagus_____
4. device implanted in the chest that senses and corrects arrhythmias by shocking the heart _____
5. catheter delivery of a high-frequency current to damage a small portion of the heart muscle and reverse an abnormal heart rhythm _____
6. procedure to determine the heart's response to physical exertion (stress) _____
7. cardiac imaging using high-frequency sound waves pulsed through the chest wall and bounced off heart structures _____
8. radioactive test of heart function with stress test _____
9. technique using heart-lung machine to divert blood from the heart and lungs while the heart is being repaired

_____

10. biventricular pacing to correct serious abnormal ventricular rhythms _____
11. lipoprotein sample is measured _____
12. brain chemical measured to identify patients at risk for complications after MI and with CHF

_____

O **Spell the term correctly from its definition.**

1. pertaining to the heart: _____ ary
2. not a normal heart rhythm: arr

_____

3. abnormal condition of blueness:

_____ osis

4. relaxation phase of the heartbeat:

_____ tole

5. chest pain: _____ pectoris
6. inflammation of a vein: _____ itis
7. widening of a vessel: vaso _____
8. enlargement of the heart: cardio

_____

9. hardening of arteries with fatty plaque:

_____ sclerosis

10. swollen veins in the rectal region:

_____ oids

P **Match the listed terms for cardiovascular procedures with the meanings/descriptions that follow.**

aneurysmorrhaphy

atherectomy

BNP test

CABG

catheter ablation

embolectomy

endarterectomy

PCI

pericardiocentesis

STEMI

thrombolytic therapy

valvotomy

1. incision of a heart valve _____
2. removal of a clot that has traveled into a blood vessel and suddenly caused occlusion _____
3. coronary artery bypass grafting (to relieve ischemia) _____
4. surgical puncture to remove fluid from the pericardial space _____
5. insertion of a balloon-tipped catheter and stents into a coronary artery _____
6. removal of the inner lining of an artery to make it wider _____
7. suture (repair) of a ballooned-out portion of an artery _____
8. removal of plaque from an artery _____
9. type of acute coronary syndrome _____
10. use of streptokinase and tPA to dissolve clots _____

11. brief delivery of radiofrequency energy to destroy areas of heart tissue for treating arrhythmias _____

12. measures a peptide elevated in patients with heart failure _____

Q **Select the boldface terms that best complete each sentence.**

1. Bill was having pain in his chest that radiated up his neck and down his arm. He called his family physician, who thought Bill should report to the local hospital's emergency department (ED) immediately. The first test performed in the ED was a/an **(stress test, ECG, CABG)**.
2. Dr. Kelly explained to the family that their observation of the bluish color of baby Charles's skin helped her make the diagnosis of a/an **(thrombotic, aneurysmal, septal)** defect in the baby's heart, which needed immediate attention.
3. Mr. Duggan had a fever of unknown origin. When the doctors completed an echocardiogram and saw vegetations on his mitral valve, they suspected **(bacterial endocarditis, hypertensive heart disease, angina)**.
4. Claudia's fingers turned white or bluish whenever she went out into the cold or became stressed. Her physician thought it might be wise to evaluate her for **(varicose veins, Raynaud's, intermittent claudication)**.
5. Daisy's heart felt as if it was skipping beats every time she drank coffee. Her physician suggested that she wear a/an **(Holter monitor, LVAD, CABG)** for 24 hours to assess the nature of the arrhythmia.
6. Paola's father and grandfather died of heart attacks. Her physician tells her that she has inherited a tendency to

accumulate fats in her bloodstream. Blood tests reveal high levels of **(enzymes, lipids, nitroglycerin)**. Discussing her family history with her **(gynecologist, hematologist, cardiologist)**, she understands that she has familial **(hypocholesterolemia, hypercholesterolemia, cardiomyopathy)**.

7. While exercising, Bernard experienced a pain (cramp) in his calf muscle. The pain disappeared when he was resting. After performing **(Holter monitoring, Doppler ultrasound, echocardiography)** on his leg to assess blood flow, Dr. Shaw found **(stenosis, fibrillation, endocarditis)**, indicating poor circulation. She recommended a daily exercise program, low-fat diet, careful foot care, and antiplatelet drug therapy to treat Bernard's intermittent **(palpitations, hypertension, claudication)**.
8. Carol noticed that her 6-week-old son Louis had a slightly bluish or **(jaundiced, cyanotic, diastolic)** coloration to his skin. She consulted a pediatric **(dermatologist, hematologist, cardiologist)**, who performed **(echocardiography, PET scan, endarterectomy)** and diagnosed Louis's condition as **(endocarditis, congestive heart disease, tetralogy of Fallot)**.
9. Seventy-eight-year-old John Smith has had coronary artery disease and high blood pressure for the past 10 years. His history included an acute heart attack, or **(MI, PDA, CABG)**. He often was tired and complained of **(dyspnea, nausea, migraine headaches)** and swelling in his ankles. His physician diagnosed his condition as **(aortic aneurysm, congestive heart failure, congenital heart disease)** and recommended restricted salt intake, diuretics, and an **(ACE inhibitor, antibiotic, analgesic)**.

10. Sarah had a routine checkup that included **(auscultation, vasoconstriction, vasodilation)** of her chest with a **(catheter, stent, stethoscope)** to listen to her heart. Her physician noticed a midsystolic murmur characteristic of **(DVT, MVP, LDL)**. An echocardiogram confirmed the diagnosis.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. tricuspid valve
2. capillary
3. pulmonary vein
4. aorta
5. superior vena cava
6. atrium
7. pulmonary artery
8. arteriole
9. mitral valve
10. inferior vena cava
11. venule
12. ventricle

B

1. right atrium
2. tricuspid valve
3. right ventricle

4. pulmonary valve
5. pulmonary artery
6. capillaries of the lung
7. pulmonary veins
8. left atrium
9. mitral valve
10. left ventricle
11. aortic valve
12. aorta

C

1. sinoatrial (SA) node
2. pericardium
3. interatrial septum
4. diastole
5. atrioventricular bundle or bundle of His
6. endocardium
7. systole
8. carbon dioxide (CO_2)
9. atrioventricular (AV) node
10. visceral pericardium (the outer lining is the parietal pericardium)
11. murmur
12. pulse

D

1. arteriosclerosis
2. cardiomyopathy
3. cardiomegaly
4. phlebitis
5. tachycardia
6. bradycardia
7. hypercholesterolemia
8. valvuloplasty
9. hypoxia
10. atrial
11. mitral stenosis
12. thrombolysis

E

1. bluish discoloration of the skin owing to deficient oxygen in the blood
2. incision of a vein
3. new connection between arteries
4. circulatory failure due to poor heart function
5. mass of yellowish plaque (fatty substance)
6. abnormal heart rhythm
7. instrument to measure blood pressure
8. instrument to listen to sounds within the chest

9. inflammation of the mitral valve
10. hardening of arteries with a yellowish, fatty substance (plaque)
11. narrowing of a vessel
12. widening of a vessel

F

1. endocarditis
2. flutter
3. atrial septal defect
4. mitral valve prolapse
5. coronary artery disease
6. hypertensive heart disease
7. fibrillation
8. pericarditis
9. congestive heart failure
10. tetralogy of Fallot
11. coarctation of the aorta
12. patent ductus arteriosus

G

1. failure of proper conduction of impulses through the AV node to the atrioventricular bundle (bundle of His)
2. sudden unexpected stoppage of heart action
3. uncomfortable sensations in the chest associated with arrhythmias

4. battery-operated device that is placed in the chest and wired to send electrical current to the heart to establish a normal sinus rhythm

5. blockage of a vessel by a clot

6. chest pain resulting from insufficient oxygen being supplied to the heart muscle (ischemia)

7. area of necrosis (tissue death in the heart muscle; heart attack)

8. abnormal condition of death (dead tissue)

9. damage or death of tissue due to deprivation of oxygen

10. blood is held back from an area of the body

11. nitrate drug used in the treatment of angina

12. drug that treats arrhythmias and strengthens the heartbeat

13. abnormal sound (murmur) heard on auscultation

14. vibration felt on palpation of the chest

15. consequences of plaque rupture in coronary arteries; MI and unstable angina

16. scraping or grating noise on auscultation of heart; indicates pericarditis

17. clot formation in a large vein, usually in lower limb

18. device enabling ventricles to beat in synchrony; cardiac resynchronization therapy

H

1. vegetations

2. emboli

3. petechiae

4. murmur

5. auscultation

6. rheumatic heart disease

7. essential hypertension

8. secondary hypertension

9. Raynaud disease

10. aneurysm

11. claudication

12. peripheral arterial disease

I

1. beta blockers, ACE inhibitors, statins, aspirin, calcium channel blockers

2. varicose veins

3. hemorrhoids

4. a.pulmonary artery stenosis

b. ventricular septal defect

c. shift of the aorta to the right

d. hypertrophy of the right ventricle

J

1. endarterectomy

2. defibrillation

3. lipid tests (profile)

4. stress test
5. cardiac biomarkers
6. angiography (arteriography)
7. electrocardiography
8. thallium 201 scan
9. echocardiography
10. lipoprotein electrophoresis
11. coronary artery bypass grafting
12. cardiac MRI

K

1. Video equipment and a computer produce x-ray pictures of blood vessels by taking two pictures (without and with contrast) and subtracting the first image (without contrast) from the second.
2. A donor heart is transferred to a recipient.
3. Exercise tolerance test combined with a radioactive tracer scan.
4. An instrument that focuses sound waves on a blood vessel to measure blood flow.
5. A compact version of an electrocardiograph is worn during a 24-hour period to detect cardiac arrhythmias.
6. Treatment with drugs (streptokinase and tPA) to dissolve clots after a heart attack.
7. A heart-lung machine is used to divert blood from the heart and lungs during surgery. The machine oxygenates the blood and sends it back into the bloodstream.

8. A catheter (tube) is inserted into an artery or vein and threaded into the heart chambers. Contrast can be injected to take x-ray pictures, patterns of blood flow can be detected, and blood pressures can be measured.
9. A balloon-tipped catheter is inserted into a coronary artery to open the artery; stents are put in place.
10. Stents are expandable slotted tubes that are placed in arteries during PCI. They release polymers that prevent plaque from reforming.
11. Electron beams and CT identify calcium deposits in and around coronary arteries to diagnose CAD.
12. X-ray images of the heart and coronary arteries obtained using CT technology.

L

1. atrial fibrillation
2. ventricular tachycardia
3. ventricular fibrillation
4. premature ventricular contraction
5. premature atrial contraction

M

1. congestive heart failure
2. ventricular septal defect
3. myocardial infarction
4. patent ductus arteriosus
5. mitral valve prolapse

6. aortic stenosis
7. coronary artery disease
8. atrial septal defect

N

1. cTnI or cTnT: cardiac troponin-I and troponin-T
2. LVAD: left ventricular assist device
3. TEE: transesophageal echocardiography
4. ICD: implantable cardioverter-defibrillator
5. RFA: radiofrequency catheter ablation
6. ETT: exercise tolerance test
7. ECHO: echocardiography
8. ETT-MIBI: exercise tolerance test with sestamibi scan
9. ECMO: extracorporeal membrane oxygenation
10. CRT: cardiac resynchronization therapy
11. LDL: low-density lipoprotein; high levels indicate risk for CAD
12. BNP: brain natriuretic peptide

O

1. coronary
2. arrhythmia
3. cyanosis
4. diastole
5. angina pectoris

6. phlebitis
7. vasodilation
8. cardiomegaly
9. atherosclerosis
10. hemorrhoids

P

1. valvotomy
2. embolectomy
3. CABG
4. pericardiocentesis
5. PCI
6. endarterectomy
7. aneurysmorrhaphy
8. atherectomy
9. STEMI (ST segment elevation myocardial infarction)
10. thrombolytic therapy
11. catheter ablation
12. BNP test

Q

1. ECG
2. septal
3. bacterial endocarditis
4. Raynaud's

5. Holter monitor
6. lipids; cardiologist; hypercholesterolemia
7. Doppler ultrasound; stenosis; claudication
8. cyanotic; cardiologist; echocardiography; tetralogy of Fallot
9. MI; dyspnea; congestive heart failure; ACE inhibitor
10. auscultation; stethoscope; MVP

Answers to Practical Applications

Operating Room Schedule

1. E
2. C
3. H
4. I
5. D
6. A
7. B
8. J
9. G
10. F

Clinical Cases: What's Your Diagnosis?

Case 1

1. b

Case 2

1. d

2. a
3. b

Case 3

1. d
2. a

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

Vocabulary and Terminology

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
angiogram	AN-je-o-gram
angioplasty	AN-je-o-plas-te
anoxia	ah-NOK-se-ah
aorta	a-OR-tah
aortic stenosis	a-OR-tik steh-NO-sis
apex of the heart	A-pex of the hart
arrhythmia	a-RITH-me-ah
arterial anastomosis	ar-TE-re-al ah-nas-to-MO-sis
arteriography	ar-TE-re-OG-rah-fe
arteriole	ar-TE-re-ohl
arteriosclerosis	ar-te-re-o-skleh-RO-sis
artery	AR-teh-re
atherectomy	ath-eh-REK-to-me
atheroma	ath-er-O-mah
atherosclerosis	ath-er-o-skleh-RO-sis
atrial	A-tre-al
atrioventricular bundle	a-tre-o-ven-TRIK-u-lar BUN-dil
atrioventricular node	a-tre-o-ven-TRIK-u-lar node
atrium; *pl*. atria	A-tre-um; A-tre-ah
brachial artery	BRA-ke-al AR-ter-e
bradycardia	bra-de-KAR-de-ah
bundle of His	BUN-dil of hiss
capillary	KAP-ih-lah-re
carbon dioxide	KAR-bon di-OX-ide
cardiogenic shock	kar-de-o-JEN-ik shok
cardiomegaly	kar-de-o-MEG-ah-le
cardiomyopathy	kar-de-o-mi-OP-ah-the
coronary arteries	KOR-o-nair-e AR-teh-reez
cyanosis	si-ah-NO-sis
deoxygenated blood	de-OX-ih-jeh-NA-ted blud
diastole	di-AS-to-le
electrocardiogram	eh-lek-tro-KAR-de-o-gram
endocardium	en-do-KAR-de-um
endothelium	en-do-THE-le-um
hypercholesterolemia	hi-per-ko-les-ter-ol-E- me-ah
hypoxia	hi-POX-e-ah
interventricular septum	in-ter-ven-TRIK-u-lar SEP-tum
mitral valve	MI-tral valv
mitral valvulitis	MI-tral val-vu-LI-tis
myocardium	mi-o-KAR-de-um

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
myxoma	mik-SO-mah
normal sinus rhythm	NOR-mal SI-nus RIH-thim
oxygen	OX-ih-jen
pacemaker	PACE-ma-ker
pericardiocentesis	peh-rih-kar-de-o-sen- TE-sis
pericardium	peh-rih-KAR-de-um
phlebotomy	fleh-BOT-o-me
pulmonary artery	PUL-mo-nair-e AR-teh-re
pulmonary circulation	PUL-mo-nair-e ser-ku-LA-shun
pulmonary valve	PUL-mo-nair-e valv
pulmonary vein	PUL-mo-nair-e vayn
pulse	puls
septum; *pl.* septa	SEP-tum; SEP-ta
sinoatrial node	si-no-A-tre-al node
sphygmomanometer	sfig-mo-mah-NOM-eh-ter
stethoscope	STETH-o-skope
systemic circulation	sis-TEM-ik ser-ku-LA-shun
systole	SIS-to-le
tachycardia	tah-ke-KAR-de-ah
thrombolysis	throm-BOL-ih-sis
thrombophlebitis	throm-bo-fleh-BI-tis
tricuspid valve	tri-KUS-pid valv
valve	valv
valvotomy	val-VOT-o-me
valvuloplasty	val-vu-lo-PLAS-te
vascular	VAS-ku-lar
vasoconstriction	vaz-o-kon-STRIK-shun
vasodilation	vaz-o-di-LA-shun
vein	vayn
vena cava; *pl.* venae cavae	VE-nah KA-vah; VE-ne KA-ve
venipuncture	ve-nih-PUNK-chur
venous	VE-nus
ventricle	VEN-trih-kel
venule	VEN-ule

Pathology, Laboratory Tests, and Clinical Procedures

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
ACE inhibitor	ACE in-HIB-ih-tor
acute coronary syndromes	a-KYOOT KOR-o-nair-e SIN-drohms
aneurysm	AN-yoo-rih-zim
angina	an-JI-nah
angiography	an-je-OG-rah-fe
atrial fibrillation	A-tre-al fib-rih-LA-shun
atrioventricular block	a-tre-o-ven-TRIK-u-lar blok
auscultation	aw-skul-TA-shun
beta blocker	BA-tah BLOK-er
biventricular pacemaker	bi-ven-TRIK-u-lar PACE-ma-ker
BNP test	BNP test
bruit	BRU-e
calcium channel blocker	KAL-se-um CHA-nel BLOK-er
cardiac arrest	KAR-de-ak
cardiac biomarkers	KAR-de-ak BI-o-mar-kerz
cardiac catheterization	KAR-de-ak kath-eh-ter-ih-ZA-shun
cardiac MRI	KAR-de-ak
cardiac tamponade	KAR-de-ak tam-po-NADE
cardioversion	kar-de-o-VER-zhun
catheter ablation	KATH-eh-ter ab-LA-shun
claudication	klaw-deh-KA-shun
coarctation of the aorta	ko-ark-TA-shun of the a-OR-tah
computerized tomography angiography	kom-PU-ted to-MOG-rah-fe an-je-OG-rah-fe
congenital heart disease	kon-JEN-ih-tal hart dih-ZEEZ
congestive heart failure	kon-JES-tiv hart FAIL-yur
coronary artery bypass grafting	KOR-o-nair-e AR-teh-re BI-pas GRAF-ting
coronary artery disease	KOR-o-nair-e AR-teh-re dih-ZEEZ
deep vein thrombosis	deep vayn throm-BO-sis
defibrillation	de-fib-rih-LA-shun
digital subtraction angiography	DIJ-ih-tal sub-TRAK-shun an-je-OG-rah-fe
digoxin	dih-JOK-sin
Doppler ultrasound	DOP-ler UL-trah-sound
dysrhythmia	dis-RITH-me-ah
echocardiography	ek-o-kar-de-OG-rah-fe
electrocardiography	eh-lek-tro-kar-de-OG- rah-fe
electron beam computed tomography	eh-LEK-tron beem kom-PU-ted to-MOG-rah-fe
embolus; *pl.* emboli	EM-bo-lus; EM-bo-li
endarterectomy	en-dar-ter-EK-to-me
endocarditis	en-do-kar-DI-tis

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
extracorporeal circulation	eks-trah-kor-POR-e-al ser-ku-LA-shun
fibrillation	fib-rih-LA-shun
flutter	FLUH-ter
heart block	hart blok
heart transplantation	hart tranz-plan-TA-shun
hemorrhoids	HEM-uh-roydz
Holter monitoring	HOL-ter MON-ih-teh-ring
hypertension	hi-per-TEN-shun
hypertensive heart disease	hi-per-TEN-siv hart dih-ZEEZ
implantable cardioverter defibrillator	im-PLANT-ah-bul kar-de-o-VER-ter de-FIB-rih-la-tor
infarction	in-FARK-shun
ischemia	is-KE-me-ah
left ventricular assist device	left ven-TRIH-ku-lar ah-SIST de-vise
lipid tests	LIH-pid tests
lipoprotein electrophoresis	li-po-PRO-teen eh-lek-tro-for-E-sis
mitral stenosis	MI-tral steh-NO-sis
mitral valve prolapse	MI-tral valv PRO-laps
murmur	MUR-mer
myocardial infarction	mi-o-KAR-de-al in-FARK-shun
nitrates	ni-TRAYTS
nitroglycerin	ni-tro-GLIS-er-in
occlusion	o-KLU-zhun
palpitations	pal-pih-TA-shunz
patent	PA-tent
patent ductus arteriosus	PA-tent DUK-tus ar-te-re-O-sus
percutaneous coronary intervention	per-ku-TA-ne-us KOR-in-air-e in-ter-VEN-shun
pericardial friction rub	peh-rih-KAR-de-al FRIK-shun rub
pericarditis	peh-rih-kar-DI-tis
peripheral arterial disease	peh-RIH-fer-al ar-TE-re-al dih-ZEEZ
petechiae	peh-TE-ke-i
positron emission tomography of the heart	pos-ih-tron e-MIH-shun to-MOG-rah-fe of the heart
Raynaud disease	ra-NO dih-ZEEZ
rheumatic heart disease	ru-MAT-ik hart dih-ZEEZ
septal defects	SEP-tal DE-fekts
statins	STAT-inz
stress test	STRESS test
technetium Tc99m sestamibi scan	tek-NE-she-um Tc99m ses-tah-MIH-be skan

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
telemetry	tel-EM-et-re
tetralogy of Fallot	teh-TRAH-lo-je of fah-LO
thallium 201 scan	THAL-e-um 201 skan
thrill	thril
thrombolytic therapy	throm-bo-LIT-ik THER-ah-pe
thrombotic occlusion	throm-BOT-ik o-KLU-zhun
transcatheter aortic valve replacement	tranz-KATH-eh-ter a-OR-tik valv re-PLAYS-ment
varicose veins	VAR-ih-kos vaynz
vegetations	vej-eh-TA-shunz

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of each word part in the space provided. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
aneurysm/o	_____
angi/o	_____
aort/o	_____
arter/o, arteri/o	_____
ather/o	_____
atri/o	_____
axill/o	_____
brachi/o	_____
cardi/o	_____
cholesterol/o	_____
coron/o	_____
cyan/o	_____
isch/o	_____
my/o	_____
myx/o	_____
ox/o	_____
pericardi/o	_____
phleb/o	_____
pulmon/o	_____
rrhythm/o	_____
sphygm/o	_____
steth/o	_____
thromb/o	_____
valv/o	_____
valvul/o	_____
vas/o	_____
vascul/o	_____
ven/o, ven/i	_____
ventricul/o	_____

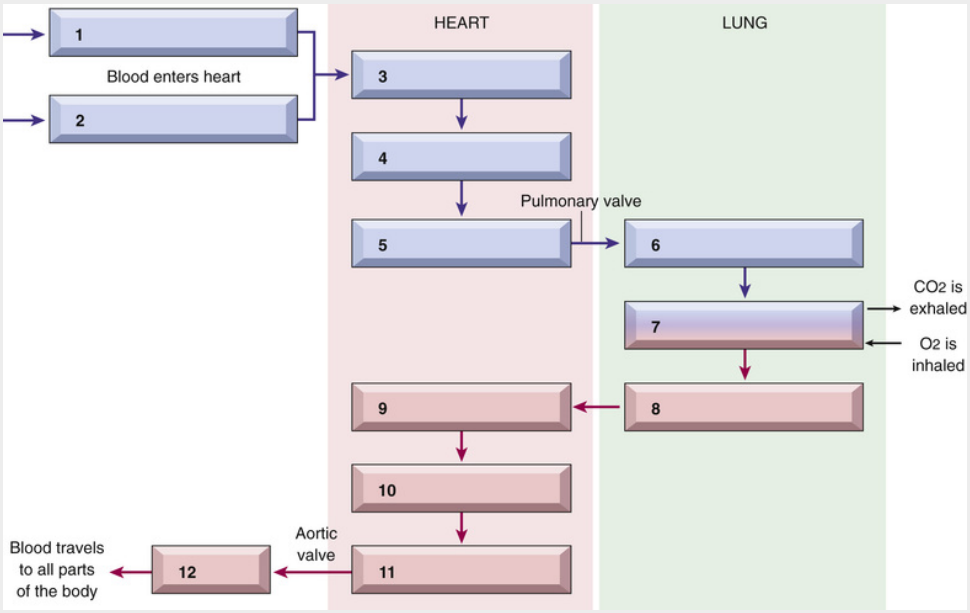
Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-constriction	_____
-dilation	_____
-emia	_____
-graphy	_____
-lysis	_____
-megaly	_____
-meter	_____
-oma	_____
-osis	_____
-plasty	_____
-sclerosis	_____
-stenosis	_____
-tomy	_____

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING
a-, an-	_____
brady-	_____
de-	_____
dys-	_____
endo-	_____
hyper-	_____
hypo-	_____
inter-	_____
peri-	_____
tachy-	_____
tetra-	_____
tri-	_____

Use the listed cardiovascular anatomy terms to complete the accompanying chart.



aorta
inferior vena cava
left atrium
left ventricle
lung capillaries
mitral valve
pulmonary artery
pulmonary vein
right atrium
right ventricle
superior vena cava
tricuspid valve

CHAPTER 12

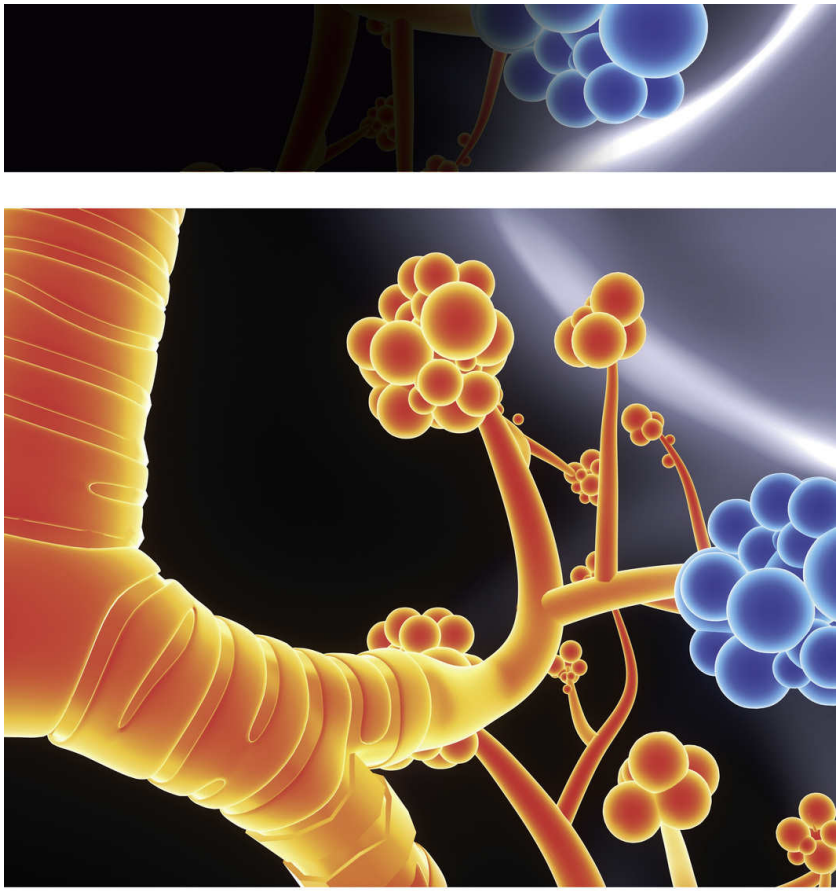
Respiratory System

CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 432
Anatomy and Physiology of Respiration 432
Vocabulary 436
Terminology 437
Pathology 443
Clinical Procedures 450
Abbreviations 455
Practical Applications 457
In Person: Recurrent Pneumonia 458
Exercises 459
Answers to Exercises 466
Pronunciation of Terms 468
Review Sheet 471

CHAPTER GOALS

- Name the organs of the respiratory system and their location and function.
- Identify pathologic conditions that affect the respiratory system.
- Learn medical terms that pertain to respiration.
- Describe important clinical procedures related to the respiratory system, and recognize relevant abbreviations.
- Apply your new knowledge to understanding medical terms in their proper contexts, such as medical reports and records.



Introduction

We usually think of **respiration** as the mechanical process of breathing, the exchange of air between the lungs and the external environment. This exchange of air at the lungs is called **external respiration.** During **inhalation,** oxygen passes from the environment (inhaled air contains about 21%) into the lung air sacs and blood capillaries of lungs. Simultaneously, during **exhalation** carbon dioxide, a gas waste product produced when oxygen and food combine in cells, passes from the capillary blood vessels into the air sacs of the lungs to be exhaled.

Whereas external respiration occurs between the outside environment and the capillary blood of the lungs, another form of respiration occurs between the individual body cells and the tiny capillary blood vessels that surround them. This is **internal (cellular) respiration,** which involves an exchange of gases at the level of the cells within all organs of the body. Here, oxygen passes out of the tissue capillaries into body cells. At the same time, carbon dioxide passes from body cells into the tissue capillaries to travel to the lungs for exhalation. See Figure 12-1.

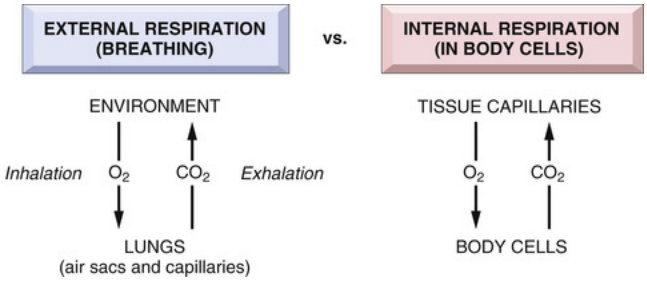


FIGURE 12-1

Anatomy and Physiology of Respiration

Label Figure 12-2 as you read the following paragraphs that describe the respiratory organs and their functions.

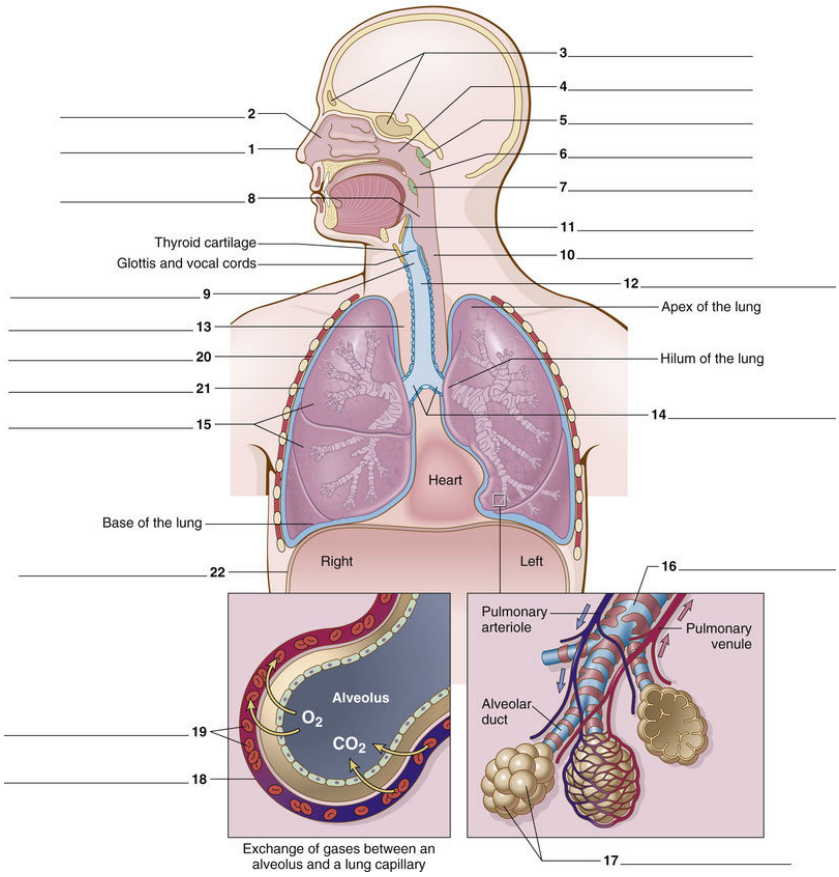


FIGURE 12-2 Organs of the respiratory system.

Air enters the body via the **nose** [1] through two openings called nostrils or **nares.** Air then passes through the **nasal cavity** [2], lined with a mucous membrane and fine hairs **(cilia)** to help filter out foreign bodies, as well as to warm and moisten the air. **Paranasal sinuses** [3] are hollow, air-containing spaces within the skull that communicate with the nasal cavity. They, too, have a mucous membrane lining. Besides producing mucus, a lubricating fluid, the sinuses lighten the bones of the skull and help produce sound.

After passing through the nasal cavity, the air next reaches the **pharynx (throat).** There are three divisions of the pharynx. The first is the **nasopharynx** [4]. It contains the **pharyngeal tonsils,** or **adenoids** [5], which are collections of lymphatic tissue. They are more prominent in children and, if enlarged, can obstruct air passageways. Below the nasopharynx and closer to the mouth is the second division of the pharynx, the **oropharynx** [6]. The **palatine tonsils** [7], two rounded masses of lymphatic tissue, are in the oropharynx. The third division of the pharynx, the **laryngopharynx** [8], serves as a common passageway for food from the mouth and air from the nose. It divides into the **larynx (voice box)** [9] and the **esophagus** [10].

The esophagus leads into the stomach and carries food to be digested. The larynx contains the vocal cords and is surrounded by pieces of cartilage for support and to keep the airway open. The thyroid cartilage is the largest and in men is commonly referred to as the Adam's apple. As expelled air passes the vocal cords, they vibrate to produce sounds. The tension of the vocal cords determines the high or low pitch of the voice.

Because food entering from the mouth and air entering from the nose mix in the pharynx, what prevents food or drink from entering the larynx and respiratory system during swallowing? Even if a small quantity of solid or liquid matter finds its way into the air passages, aspirated food can cause irritation in the lungs and breathing can stop. The **epiglottis** [11], a flap of cartilage attached to the root of the tongue, prevents choking or aspiration of food. It acts as a lid over the opening of the larynx. During swallowing, when food and liquid move through the throat, the epiglottis closes over the larynx, preventing material from entering the lungs. Figure 12-3 shows the larynx from a superior view.

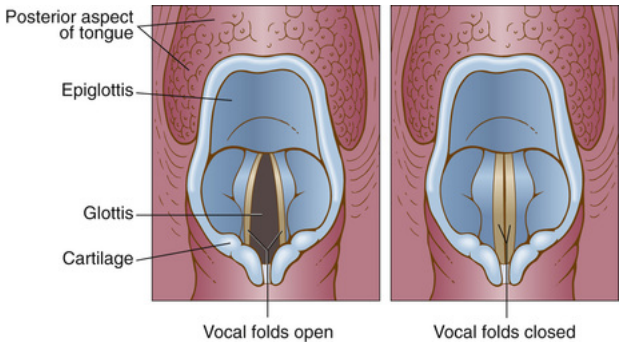


FIGURE 12-3 The larynx, viewed from above (superior view).

On its way to the lungs, air passes through the larynx to the **trachea (windpipe)** [12], a vertical tube about $4\frac{1}{2}$ inches long and 1 inch in diameter. The trachea is kept open by 16 to 20 C-shaped rings of cartilage separated by fibrous connective tissue that stiffen the front and sides of the tube.

The **mediastinum** [13] is a space in the center of the chest. In the region of the mediastinum, the trachea divides into two branches, the right and left **bronchial tubes,** or **bronchi** [14] (*singular*: **bronchus**). The bronchi are tubes composed of delicate epithelium surrounded by cartilage rings and a muscular wall. Each bronchus leads to a separate **lung** [15], where it divides and subdivides into smaller and finer tubes, somewhat like the branches of a tree.

The small bronchial branches are the **bronchioles.** Each **terminal bronchiole** [16] narrows into alveolar ducts, which end in collections of air sacs called **alveoli** [17] (*singular*: **alveolus**). About 300 million alveoli are estimated to be present in both lungs. The total area of the alveoli is approximately the size of a tennis court. Each alveolus is lined with a one-cell-thick layer of epithelium. This very thin wall permits an exchange of gases between the alveolus and the **capillary** [18] surrounding it. Blood flowing through the capillary accepts oxygen from the alveolus while depositing carbon dioxide into the alveolus. **Erythrocytes** [19] in the blood carry oxygen away from the lungs to all parts of the body and carbon dioxide back to the lungs for exhalation.

Each lung is covered by a double-layered membrane called the **pleura.** The outer layer of this membrane, nearer the ribs, is the **parietal pleura** [20], and the inner layer, closer to the lung, is the **visceral pleura** [21]. A serous (thin, watery fluid) secretion moistens the pleura and facilitates movements of the lungs within the chest (thorax).

The two lungs are not quite mirror images of each other. The slightly larger right lung is divided into three **lobes,** whereas the smaller left lung has two lobes. One lobe of the lung can be removed without significantly compromising lung function. The uppermost part of the lung is the **apex,** and the lower area is the **base.** The **hilum** of the lung is the midline region in which blood vessels, nerves, lymphatic tissue, and bronchial tubes enter and exit.

The lungs extend from the collarbone to the **diaphragm** [22] in the thoracic cavity. The diaphragm is a muscular partition separating the thoracic from the abdominal cavity and aiding in the process of breathing. It contracts and descends with each **inhalation (inspiration)** and relaxes and ascends with each **exhalation (expiration).** The downward movement of the diaphragm enlarges the area in the thoracic cavity, decreasing internal air pressure, so that air flows into the lungs to equalize the pressure. When the lungs are full, the diaphragm relaxes and elevates, making the area in the thoracic cavity smaller, thus increasing air pressure in the chest. Air then is expelled out of the lungs to equalize the pressure; this is **exhalation (expiration).**

Figure 12-4 shows the position of the diaphragm in inspiration and in expiration.

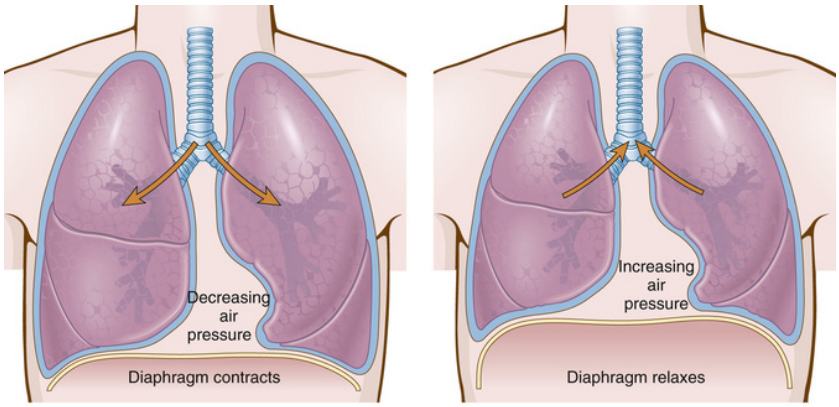


FIGURE 12-4 Position of the diaphragm during inhalation (inspiration) and exhalation (expiration).

Figure 12-5 is a flow diagram of the pathway of air from the nose, where air enters the body, to the capillaries of the lungs, where oxygen enters the bloodstream.

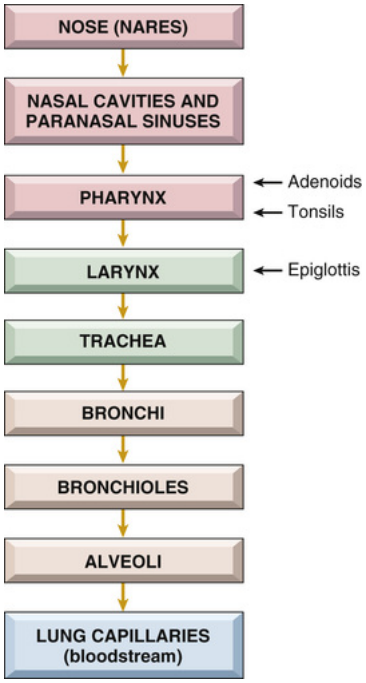


FIGURE 12-5 Pathway of air from the nose to the capillaries of the lungs.

Vocabulary

This list reviews terminology introduced in the preceding section. Short definitions and additional information will reinforce your understanding. Refer to the Pronunciation of Terms on page 468 for help with difficult or unfamiliar words.

adenoids	Lymphatic tissue in the nasopharynx; pharyngeal tonsils.
alveolus (*plural*: alveoli)	Air sac in the lung.
apex of the lung	Tip or uppermost portion of the lung. An apex is the tip of a structure. **Apical** means pertaining to or located at the apex.
base of the lung	Lower portion of the lung; from the Greek *basis*, foundation. **Basilar** means located at or in the base.
bronchioles	Smallest branches of the bronchi. Terminal bronchioles lead to alveolar ducts.
bronchus (*plural*: bronchi)	Branch of the trachea (windpipe) that is a passageway into the lung; bronchial tube.
carbon dioxide (CO_2)	Gas produced by body cells when oxygen and carbon atoms from food combine; exhaled through the lungs.
cilia	Thin hairs attached to the mucous membrane epithelium lining the respiratory tract. They clear bacteria and foreign substances from the lung. Cigarette smoke impairs the function of cilia.
diaphragm	Muscle separating the chest and abdomen. It contracts to pull air into the lungs and relaxes to push air out.
epiglottis	Lid-like piece of cartilage that covers the larynx, preventing food from entering the larynx and trachea during swallowing.
exhalation	Breathing out; expiration.
glottis	Slit-like opening to the larynx.
hilum of the lung	Midline region where the bronchi, blood vessels, and nerves enter and exit the lungs. **Hilar** means pertaining to (at) the hilum.
inhalation	Breathing in; inspiration.
larynx	Voice box; containing the vocal cords.
lobe	Division of a lung.
mediastinum	Region between the lungs in the chest cavity. It contains the trachea, heart, lymph nodes, major blood vessels, esophagus, and bronchial tubes.
nares	Openings through the nose carrying air into the nasal cavities; nostrils.
oxygen (O_2)	Gas that makes up 21 percent of the air that we breathe. It passes into the bloodstream at the lungs and travels to all body cells.
palatine tonsil	One of a pair of almond-shaped masses of lymphatic tissue in the oropharynx (palatine means pertaining to the roof of the mouth).
paranasal sinus	One of the air cavities in the bones near the nose.
parietal pleura	Outer layer of pleura lying closer to the ribs and chest wall.
pharynx	Throat; including the nasopharynx, oropharynx, and laryngopharynx.
pleura	Double-layered membrane surrounding each lung.
pleural cavity	Space between the layers of the pleura.
pulmonary parenchyma	Essential parts of the lung, responsible for respiration; bronchioles and alveoli.
respiration	Exchange of gases (oxygen and carbon dioxide) at the lung capillaries (external respiration or breathing) and at the tissue capillaries (internal respiration).
trachea	Windpipe.
visceral pleura	Inner layer of pleura lying closer to the lung tissue.

Terminology

Write the meanings of the medical terms in the spaces provided.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
adenoid/o	adenoids	adenoidectomy _____ adenoid hypertrophy _____
alveol/o	alveolus, air sac	alveolar _____
bronch/o **bronchi/o**	bronchial tube, bronchus	bronchospasm _____ *This tightening of the bronchi and smaller bronchial tubes (bronchioles) is a chief characteristic of bronchitis.* bronchiectasis _____ *Caused by weakening of the bronchial wall from infection.* bronchodilator _____ *This drug causes dilation, or enlargement, of the opening of a bronchus or bronchiole to improve ventilation to the lungs. An example is albuterol, delivered via an inhaler.* bronchopleural _____ *A **bronchopleural fistula** is an abnormal connection between the bronchial tube and the pleural cavity (space). Occurring as a result of lung disease or surgical complication, this can cause an air leak into the pleural space.*
bronchiol/o	bronchiole, small bronchus	bronchiolitis _____ *This is an acute viral infection occurring in infants younger than 18 months of age.*
capn/o	carbon dioxide	hypercapnia _____
coni/o	dust	pneumoconiosis _____ *See page 447.*
cyan/o	blue	cyanosis _____ *Caused by deficient oxygen in the blood.*
epiglott/o	epiglottis	epiglottitis _____ *Characterized by fever, sore throat, and an erythematous, swollen epiglottis.*
laryng/o	larynx, voice box	laryngeal _____ laryngospasm _____ *Spasm of laryngeal muscles that closes the larynx.* laryngitis
lob/o	lobe of the lung	lobectomy _____ *Figure 12-6 shows four different types of pulmonary resections.*
mediastin/o	mediastinum	mediastinoscopy _____ *An endoscope is inserted through an incision in the chest.*
nas/o	nose	paranasal sinuses _____ *Para- means near in this term. See* Figure 12-7. nasogastric intubation _____
orth/o	straight, upright	orthopnea _____ *An abnormal condition in which breathing (-pnea) is easier in the upright position. A major cause of orthopnea is congestive heart failure. Physicians assess the degree of orthopnea by the number of pillows a patient requires to sleep comfortably (e.g., two-pillow orthopnea).*
ox/o	oxygen	hypoxia _____ *Tissues have a decreased amount of oxygen, and cyanosis can result.*
pector/o	chest	expectoration _____ *Clearing of secretions from the airway by coughing or spitting. This sputum can contain mucus, blood, cellular debris, pus, and microorganisms.*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
pharyng/o	pharynx, throat	pharyngeal _____
phon/o	voice	dysphonia _____ *Hoarseness or other voice impairment.*
phren/o	diaphragm	phrenic nerve _____ *The motor nerve to the diaphragm.*
pleur/o	pleura	pleurodynia _____ *The suffix -dynia means pain. The intercostal muscles or pleura are inflamed, causing pain during breathing.* pleural effusion _____ *An **effusion** is the escape of fluid from blood vessels or lymphatics into a cavity or into tissue spaces.*
pneum/o, pneumon/o	air, lung	pneumothorax _____ *The suffix -thorax means chest. Because of a hole in the lung, air accumulates in the pleural cavity, between the layers of the pleura (Figure 12-8).* pneumonectomy _____
pulmon/o	lung	pulmonary _____ *The pulmonary circulation carries oxygen-poor (deoxygenated) blood from the heart to the lungs and then returns oxygenated blood back to the heart for transportation throughout the body.*
rhin/o	nose	rhinoplasty _____ rhinorrhea _____ *Commonly known as "runny nose."*
sinus/o	sinus, cavity	sinusitis _____
spir/o	breathing	spirometer _____ expiration _____ *Note that the s is omitted (when it's preceded by an x).* respiration _____ ***Cheyne-Stokes respirations** are marked by rhythmic changes in the depth of breathing (rapid breathing and then absence of breathing). The pattern occurs every 45 seconds to 3 minutes. The cause may be heart failure or brain damage, both of which affect the respiratory center in the brain.*
tel/o	complete	atelectasis _____ *Collapsed lung; incomplete expansion (-ectasis) of a lung (Figure 12-9). Atelectasis may occur after surgery when a patient experiences pain and does not take deep breaths, preventing full expansion of the lungs.*
thorac/o	chest	thoracotomy _____ thoracic _____
tonsill/o	tonsils	tonsillectomy _____ *The oropharyngeal (palatine) tonsils are removed.*
trache/o	trachea, windpipe	tracheotomy _____ tracheal stenosis _____ *Injury to the trachea from trauma, a burn, or serious infection can cause scarring and contraction that obstructs the flow of air. For example, having an endotracheal tube in place for a prolonged period may lead to tracheal injury or the formation of scar tissue.*

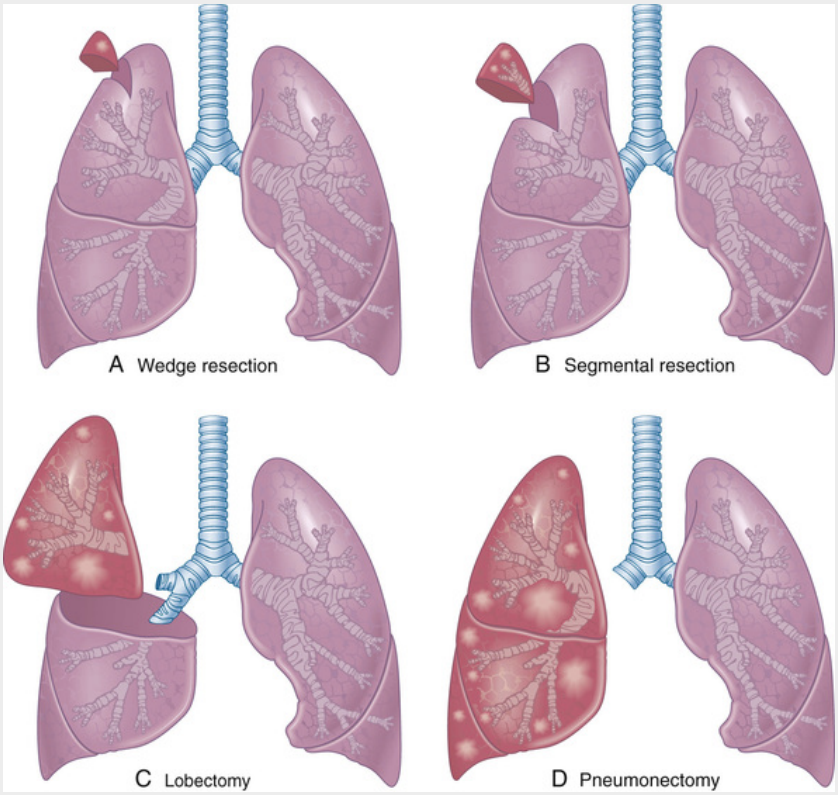


FIGURE 12-6 **Pulmonary resections. A, Wedge resection** is the removal of a small, localized area of diseased tissue near the surface of the lung. Pulmonary function and structure are relatively unchanged after healing. **B, Segmental resection** is the removal of a bronchiole and its alveoli (one or more lung segments). The remaining lung tissue expands to fill the previously occupied space. **C, Lobectomy** is the removal of an entire lobe of the lung. After lobectomy, the remaining lung increases in size to fill the space in the thoracic cavity. **D, Pneumonectomy** is the removal of an entire lung. Techniques such as removal of ribs and elevation of the diaphragm are used to reduce the size of the empty thoracic space.

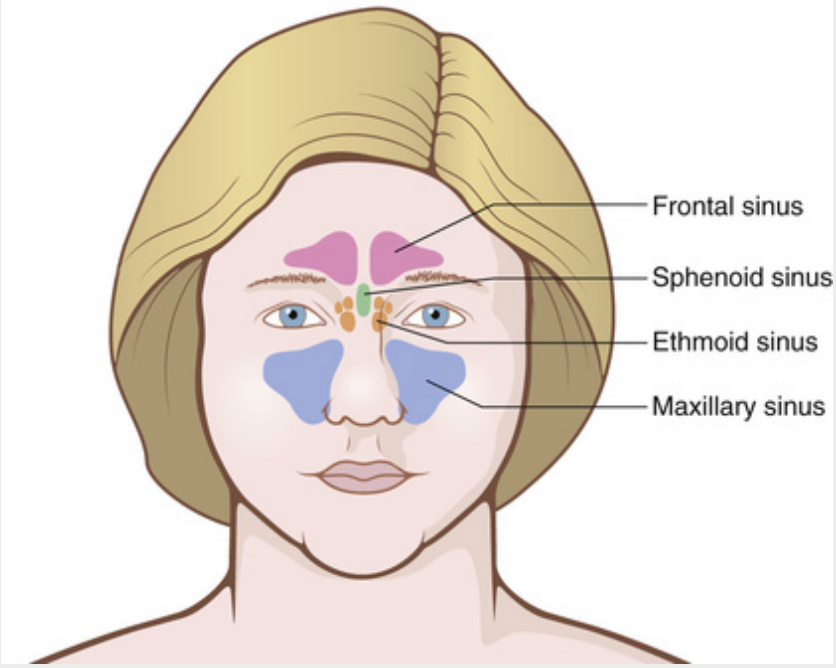


FIGURE 12-7 **Paranasal sinuses.** These are 4-paired, air-filled spaced in the bones of the skull surrounding the nasal cavity. **Sinusitis** is inflammation of the paranasal sinuses due to viral, bacterial, or fungal infections or allergic reactions.

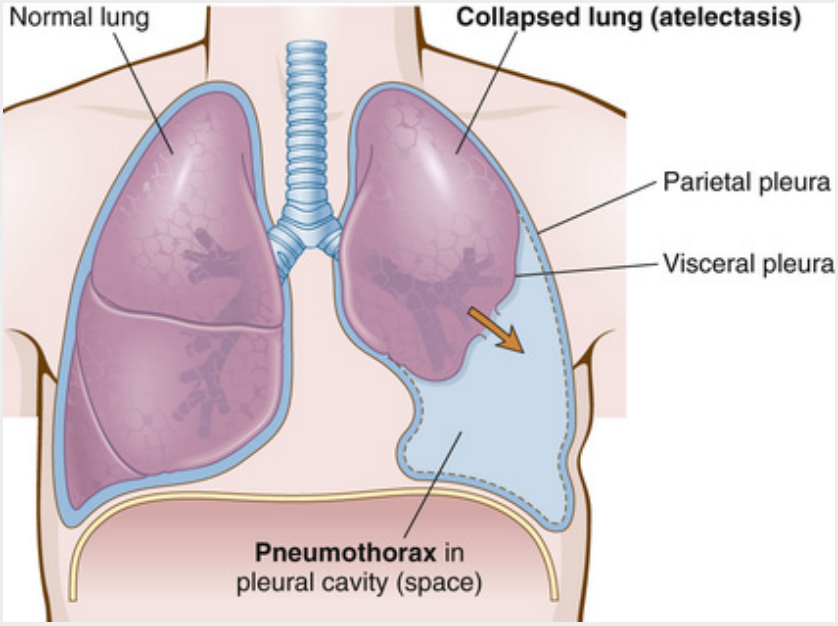


FIGURE 12-8 **Pneumothorax.** Air gathers in the pleural cavity, causing the lung to collapse. When this happens, the lung cannot fill up with air, breathing becomes more difficult, and the body gets less oxygen. Onset of pneumothorax is marked by sudden, sharp chest pain with difficulty breathing.

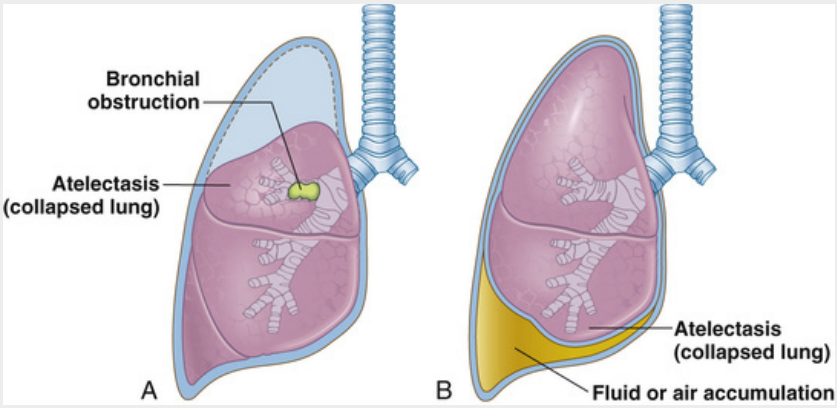


FIGURE 12-9 Two forms of atelectasis. A, Bronchial obstruction prevents air from reaching distal airways, and alveoli collapse. The most frequent cause is blockage of a bronchus by a mucous or mucopurulent (pus-containing) plug, as might occur postoperatively. **B, Accumulations of fluid, blood, or air within the pleural cavity collapse the lung.** This can occur with congestive heart failure (poor circulation leads to fluid buildup in the pleural cavity), pneumonia, trauma, or a pneumothorax.

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
-ema	condition	empyema _____ *Em- at the beginning of this term means in. Empyema (pyothorax) is a collection of pus in the pleural cavity.*
-osmia	smell	anosmia _____
-pnea	breathing	apnea _____ ***Sleep apnea** is sudden cessation of breathing during sleep. It can result in hypoxia, leading to cognitive impairment, hypertension, and arrhythmias. **Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA)** involves narrowing or occlusion in the upper airway. **Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP)** is gentle ventilatory support used to keep the airways open (Figure 12-10).* dyspnea _____ *Dys- means abnormal here and is associated with shortness of breath (SOB). **Paroxysmal** (sudden) **nocturnal** (at night) **dyspnea** may be experienced by patients with congestive heart failure when they recline in bed. Patients often describe the sensation as "air hunger."* hyperpnea _____ *An increase in the depth of breathing, occurring normally with exercise and abnormally with any condition in which the supply of oxygen is inadequate.* tachypnea _____ *Tachy- means fast. Excessively rapid and shallow breathing; hyperventilation.*
-ptysis	spitting	hemoptysis _____ *Blood is coughed up from the bronchial tubes and lungs; occurs with bronchitis or pneumonia, but also with tuberculosis, cancer, bronchiectasis, and pulmonary embolism.*
-sphyxia	pulse	asphyxia _____ *This condition, literally meaning lack of pulse, is severe hypoxia leading to hypoxemia, hypercapnia, loss of consciousness, and death.*
-thorax	pleural cavity, chest	hemothorax _____ pyothorax _____ *Empyema of the chest.*

FIGURE 12-10 This man is sleeping with a **nasal CPAP (continuous positive airway pressure)** mask in place. The pressure supplied by air coming from the compressor opens the oropharynx and nasopharynx.

Pathology

Diagnostic terms

auscultation	**Listening to sounds within the body.** This procedure, performed with a stethoscope, is used chiefly for listening to the passage of air into and out of the lungs and listening to heart sounds. It is helpful to diagnose conditions of the lungs, pleura, heart, and abdomen, as well as to determine the condition of the fetus during pregnancy.
percussion	**Tapping on a surface to determine the difference in the density of the underlying structure.** Tapping over a solid organ produces a dull sound without resonance. Percussion over an air-filled structure, such as the lung, produces a resonant, hollow note. When the lungs or the pleural space are filled with fluid and become more dense, as in pneumonia, resonance is replaced by dullness.
pleural rub	**Scratchy sound produced by pleural surfaces rubbing against each other.** Pleural rub (also called a **friction rub**) occurs when the pleurae are roughened and thickened by inflammation, infection, scarring, or neoplastic cells. It is heard on auscultation and can be felt by placing the fingers on the chest wall.
rales (crackles)	**Fine crackling sounds heard on auscultation (during inhalation) when there is fluid in the alveoli.** These popping or clicking sounds can be heard in patients with pneumonia, bronchiectasis, or acute bronchitis. The French word *rale* means rattle.
rhonchi (*singular*: **rhonchus)**	**Loud rumbling sounds heard on auscultation of bronchi obstructed by sputum.** These coarse rumbling sounds resemble snoring and are usually caused by secretions in larger bronchial tubes.
sputum	**Material expelled from the bronchi, lungs, or upper respiratory tract by spitting.** **Purulent** (containing pus) sputum often is green or brown. It results from infection and may be seen with asthma. Blood-tinged sputum is suggestive of tuberculosis or malignancy. For a **sputum culture,** the specimen is maintained in a nutrient medium to promote growth of a pathogen. **Culture and sensitivity (C&S)** testing identifies the sputum pathogen and determine which antibiotic will be effective in destroying or reducing its growth.
stridor	**Strained, high-pitched sound heard on inspiration caused by obstruction in the pharynx or larynx.** Common causes of stridor include throat abscess, airway injury, croup, allergic reaction, or epiglottitis and laryngitis.
wheezes	**Continuous high-pitched whistling sounds produced during breathing.** Wheezes are heard when air is forced through narrowed or obstructed airways. Patients with asthma or emphysema commonly experience wheezing as bronchi narrow and tighten.

Upper Respiratory Disorders

croup	**Acute viral infection of infants and children with obstruction of the larynx, accompanied by barking cough and stridor.** The most common causative agents are influenza viruses or **respiratory syncytial virus (RSV).**
diphtheria	**Acute infection of the throat and upper respiratory tract caused by the diphtheria bacterium *(Corynebacterium).*** Inflammation occurs, and a leathery, opaque membrane (Greek *diphthera*, leather membrane) forms in the pharynx and trachea. Immunity to diphtheria (by production of antibodies) is induced by the administration of weakened toxins (antigens) beginning between the sixth and eighth weeks of life. These injections usually are given as combination vaccines with pertussis and tetanus toxins and so are called **DPT** injections.
epistaxis	**Nosebleed.** *Epistaxis* is a Greek word meaning a dropping. It commonly results from irritation of nasal mucous membranes, trauma, vitamin K deficiency, clotting abnormalities, blood-thinning medications (such as aspirin and warfarin), or hypertension.
pertussis	**Whooping cough; highly contagious bacterial infection of the pharynx, larynx, and trachea caused by *Bordetella pertussis*.** Pertussis is characterized by **paroxysmal** (violent, sudden) spasms of coughing that ends in a loud "whooping" inspiration.

Bronchial Disorders

asthma	**Chronic inflammatory disorder with airway obstruction due to bronchial and bronchiolar edema and constriction.** Associated signs and symptoms of asthma are dyspnea, wheezing, increased mucus production, and cough. Etiology can involve allergy or infection. Triggers for asthmatic attacks include exercise, strong odors, cold air, stress, allergens (e.g., tobacco smoke, pet dander, dust, molds, pollens, foods), and medications (aspirin, beta blockers). Asthma treatments are: • Fast-acting agents for acute symptoms; example is an albuterol inhaler **(bronchodilator).** • Long-acting agents for long-term control; examples are glucocorticoids (inhaled), oral steroids (anti-inflammatory drugs), and leukotriene blockers such as montelukast (Singulair). Other conditions, such as gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD), sinusitis, and allergic rhinitis, can exacerbate asthma.
bronchiectasis	**Chronic dilation of a bronchus, usually secondary to infection.** This condition is caused by chronic infection with loss of elasticity of the bronchi. Secretions puddle and do not drain normally. Signs and symptoms are cough, fever, and expectoration of foul-smelling, **purulent** (pus-containing) sputum. Treatment is **palliative** (noncurative) and includes antibiotics, mucolytics, bronchodilators, respiratory therapy, and surgical resection if other therapies are not effective.
chronic bronchitis	**Inflammation of bronchi persisting over a long time; type of chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD).** Infection and cigarette smoking are etiologic factors. Signs and symptoms include excessive secretion of often infected mucus, a productive cough, and obstruction
	of respiratory passages. Chronic bronchitis and emphysema (lung disease in which air exchange at the alveoli is severely impaired) are types of **chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD).**
cystic fibrosis (CF)	**Inherited disorder of exocrine glands resulting in thick mucinous secretions in the respiratory tract that do not drain normally.** This is a genetic disorder caused by a mutation in a gene. It can be diagnosed by newborn screening blood test, sweat test, and genetic testing. CF affects the epithelium (lining cells) of the respiratory tract, leading to chronic airway obstruction, infection, bronchiectasis, and sometimes respiratory failure. It also involves exocrine glands, such as the pancreas (insufficient secretion of digestive enzymes leads to poor growth) and sweat glands (salty tasting skin). There is no known cure, but therapy includes antibiotics, aerosolized medications, chest physiotherapy, and replacement of pancreatic enzymes. A new medication called ivacaftor (Kalydeco) helps prevent the buildup of thick mucus in the lungs. Lung transplantation becomes necessary for some patients. It can restore lung function and prolong life.

Lung Disorders

atelectasis	**Collapsed lung; incomplete expansion of alveoli,** (Figure 12-9, **page 441**). In atelectasis, the bronchioles and alveoli (pulmonary parenchyma) resemble a collapsed balloon.
emphysema	**Hyperinflation of air sacs with destruction of alveolar walls** (Figure 12-11A and B). Loss of elasticity and the breakdown of alveolar walls result in expiratory flow limitation. There is a strong association between cigarette smoking and emphysema. As a result of the destruction of lung parenchyma, including blood vessels, pulmonary artery pressure rises and the right side of the heart must work harder to pump blood. This leads to right ventricular hypertrophy and right heart failure **(cor pulmonale).** Emphysema and chronic bronchitis are both forms of **COPD.**
lung cancer	**Malignant tumor arising from the lungs and bronchi** (Figure 12-12). This group of cancers, often associated with cigarette smoking, is the most frequent fatal malignancy. Lung cancers are divided into two general categories: **non–small cell lung cancer (NSCLC**) and **small cell lung cancer (SCLC).**
	NSCLC accounts for 90% of lung cancers and comprises three main types: adenocarcinoma (derived from mucus-secreting cells), squamous cell carcinoma (derived from the lining cells of the upper airway), and large cell lung cancer. When lung cancer is diagnosed, physicians assess the *stage* of the tumor (determined by its size, lymph node involvement, and any distant areas of spread) to prepare a protocol for treatment. For localized tumors, surgery may be curative. Staging of NSCLC by assessing mediastinal lymph nodes is critical. If nodes are negative and there are no other medical problems, the patient is a good candidate for surgery. If nodes are positive, multimodality treatment (chemotherapy and irradiation), with or without surgery, may be an option. Doctors treat metastatic disease (to liver, brain, and bones) with palliative chemotherapy and/or radiation therapy. In some patients, often nonsmokers, NSCLC may be caused by a mutation (change) in epithelial lung tissue. An example is a mutation in the epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), which is sensitive to treatment with EGFR inhibitors (Iressa and Tarceva). This is an example of targeted drug therapy for cancer. Examples of tumors treatable by interfering with mutated gene products are increasing. **SCLC** derives from small, round cells ("oat" cells) found in pulmonary epithelium. It grows rapidly and quickly spreads outside the lung. Treatment with surgery, radiation therapy, and/or chemotherapy may lead to remissions.
pneumoconiosis	**Abnormal lung condition caused by exposure to certain dusts; with chronic inflammation, infection, and bronchitis** (Figure 12-13A). Various forms are named according to the type of dust particle inhaled: **anthracosis**—coal (anthrac/o) dust (black lung disease); **asbestosis**—asbestos (asbest/o) particles (in shipbuilding and construction trades); **silicosis**—silica (silic/o = rocks) or glass (grinder's disease).
pneumonia	**Acute inflammation and infection of alveoli, which fill with pus or products of the inflammatory reaction.** Etiologic agents are pneumococci, staphylococci, and other bacteria, fungi, or viruses. Infection damages alveolar membranes so that an **exudate** (fluid, blood cells, and debris) consolidates the alveoli (sacs become "glued" together, making air exchange less effective). An **infiltrate** is a fluid-filled area within the lungs as seen on a chest x-ray or CT scan. **Lobar pneumonia** (see Figure 12-13B) involves an entire lobe of a lung. **Bronchopneumonia** is a limited form of infection that produces patchy consolidation (abscesses) in the lung parenchyma. Treatment includes appropriate antibiotics and, if necessary, oxygen and mechanical ventilation in severe cases. See ***In Person: Recurring Pneumonia***, page 458. **Community-acquired pneumonia** results from a contagious respiratory infection, caused by a variety of viruses and bacteria (including pneumococci

	and *Mycoplasma* bacteria). It usually is treated at home with oral antibiotics. **Hospital-acquired pneumonia** or **nosocomial pneumonia** is acquired during hospitalization (Greek *nosokomeion* means hospital). For example, patients may contract pneumonia while on mechanical ventilation or as a hospital-acquired infection. **Aspiration pneumonia** is caused by material, such as food or vomitus, lodging in bronchi or lungs. It is a danger in the elderly, Alzheimer disease patients, stroke victims, and people with esophageal reflux and feeding tubes. X-ray images of a normal chest and one with pneumonia are on page 450.
pulmonary abscess	**Large collection of pus (bacterial infection) in the lungs.**
pulmonary edema	**Fluid in the air sacs and bronchioles.** This condition most often is caused by the inability of the heart to pump blood (congestive heart failure). Blood backs up in the pulmonary blood vessels, and fluid seeps out into the alveoli and bronchioles. Acute pulmonary edema requires immediate medical attention, including drugs (diuretics), oxygen in high concentrations, and keeping the patient in a sitting position (to decrease venous return to the heart).
pulmonary embolism (PE)	**Clot or other material lodges in vessels of the lung** (Figure 12-14A and B). The clot (embolus) travels from distant veins, usually in the legs. Occlusion can produce an area of dead (necrotic) tissue; this is a **pulmonary infarction.** PE often causes acute pleuritic chest pain (pain on inspiration) and may be associated with blood in the sputum, fever, and respiratory insufficiency. CT angiography is the primary diagnostic tool for pulmonary emboli.
pulmonary fibrosis	**Formation of scar tissue in the connective tissue of the lungs.** This condition can be primary (idiopathic) or secondary as the result of chronic inflammation or irritation caused by tuberculosis, pneumonia, or pneumoconiosis.
sarcoidosis	**Chronic inflammatory disease in which small nodules (granulomas) develop in lungs, lymph nodes, and other organs.** The cause of sarcoidosis is unknown. Bilateral hilar lymphadenopathy or lung involvement is visible on chest x-ray in most cases. Many patients are asymptomatic and retain adequate pulmonary function. Sarcoidosis may affect the brain, heart, liver, and other organs. Other patients have more active disease and impaired pulmonary function. Glucocorticoids are used to prevent progression of the illness.
tuberculosis (TB)	**Infectious disease caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*; lungs usually are involved, but any organ in the body may be affected.** Rod-shaped bacteria called **bacilli** invade the lungs, producing small tubercles (from Latin *tuber*, a swelling) of infection. Early TB usually is asymptomatic and detected on routine chest x-ray studies. Signs and symptoms of advanced disease are cough, weight loss, night sweats, hemoptysis, and pleuritic pain. Antituberculosis chemotherapy (isoniazid, rifampin) is effective in most cases. Immunocompromised patients are particularly susceptible to antibiotic-resistant TB. It is important and often necessary to treat TB with several drugs at the same time to prevent drug resistance. The PPD skin test (see page 454) is given to most hospital and medical employees because TB is highly contagious. A positive PPD test, indicates exposure to TB, and treatment with isoniazid will be necessary even in the absence of lung infection.

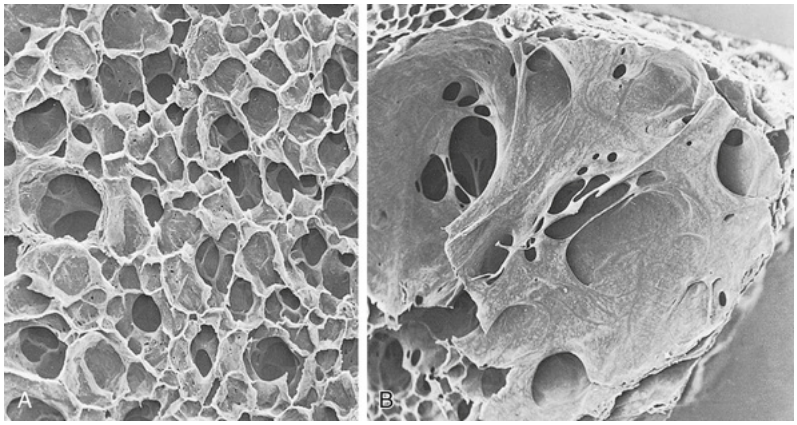


FIGURE 12-11 **A, Normal lung tissue. B, Emphysema.** Notice the overinflation of air sacs and destruction of alveolar walls.

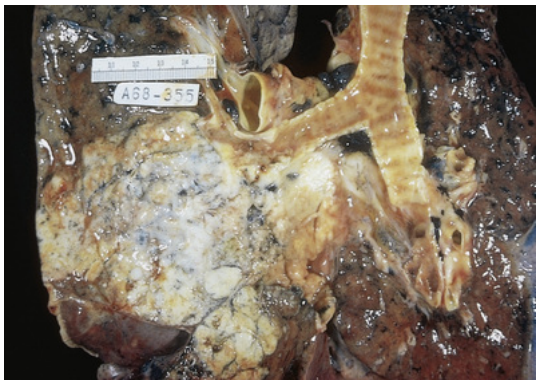


FIGURE 12-12 **Lung cancer.** The gray-white tumor tissue is infiltrating the substance of the lung. This tumor was identified as a squamous cell carcinoma. Squamous cell carcinomas arise in major bronchi and spread to local hilar lymph nodes.

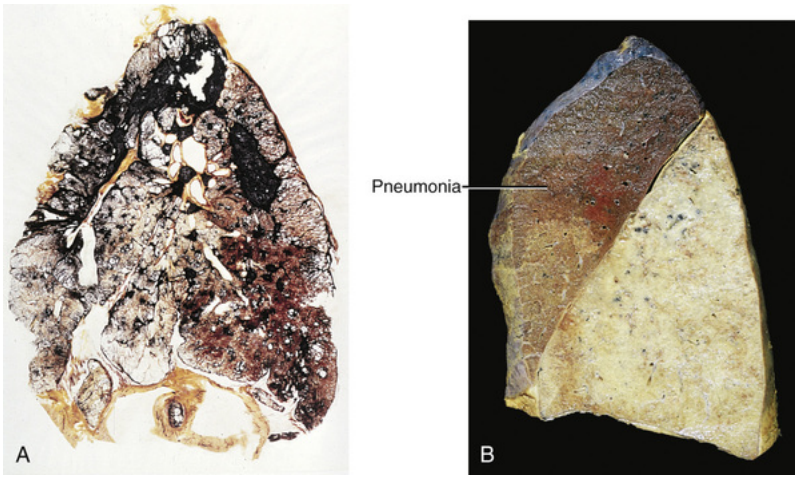


FIGURE 12-13 **A, Anthracosis** or black lung disease. Notice the dark black deposits of coal dust throughout the lung. **B, Lobar pneumonia** (at autopsy). Notice that the condition affects a lobe of the lung. The patient's signs and symptoms included fever, chills, cough, dark sputum, rapid shallow breathing, and hypoxia. If diagnosis is made early, antibiotic therapy is successful.

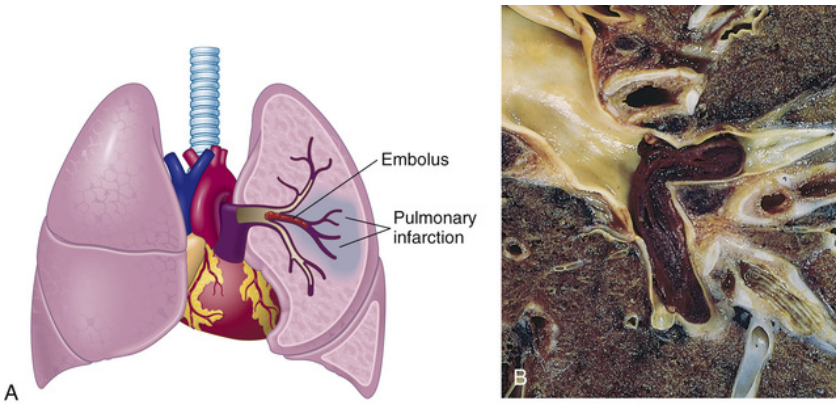


FIGURE 12-14 **Pulmonary embolism** (**A** and **B**).

Atelectasis

Common Causes

- Bronchial obstruction—by secretions or tumor
- Complications following surgery—poor breathing ability
- Chest wounds—air (pneumothorax), fluid (pleural effusion), or blood (hemothorax) accumulate in the pleural cavity

Pleural Disorders

mesothelioma	**Rare malignant tumor arising in the pleura.** Mesotheliomas are derived from mesothelium, which forms the lining of the pleural surface. These tumors usually are caused by asbestos exposure.
pleural effusion	**Abnormal accumulation of fluid in the pleural space (cavity).** Two types of pleural effusions are **exudates** (fluid from tumors and infections) and **transudates** (fluid from congestive heart failure, or cirrhosis).
pleurisy (pleuritis)	**Inflammation of the pleura.** This condition causes pleurodynia and dyspnea and, in chronic cases, pleural effusion.
pneumothorax	**Collection of air in the pleural space.** Pneumothorax may occur in the course of a pulmonary disease (emphysema, carcinoma, tuberculosis, or lung abscess) when a break in the lung surface releases air into the pleural space. This allows communication between an alveolus or bronchus and the pleural cavity. It may also follow trauma and perforation of the chest wall or prolonged high-flow oxygen delivered by a respirator in an intensive care unit (ICU). **Pleurodesis** (-desis means to bind) is the artificial production of adhesions between the parietal and visceral pleura for treatment of persistent pneumothorax and severe pleural effusion. This is accomplished by using talc powder or drugs, such as antibiotics, that cause irritation and scarring of the pleura.

Study Section

Practice spelling each term and know its meaning.

anthracosis	Coal dust accumulates in the lungs.
asbestosis	Asbestos particles accumulate in the lungs.
bacilli (*singular*: bacillus)	Rod-shaped bacteria.
chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD)	Chronic condition of persistent obstruction of air flow through bronchial tubes and lungs. COPD is caused by smoking, air pollution, chronic infection, and, in a minority of cases, asthma. Patients with predominant **chronic bronchitis** COPD may be referred to as "blue bloaters" (cyanotic, stocky build), whereas those with predominant **emphysema** may be called "pink puffers" (short of breath, but with near-normal blood oxygen levels, and no change in skin color).
cor pulmonale	Failure of the right side of the heart to pump a sufficient amount of blood to the lungs because of underlying lung disease.
exudates	Fluid, cells, and other substances (pus) that filter from cells or capillaries ooze into lesions or areas of inflammation.
infiltrate	Collection of fluid or other material within the lung, as seen on a chest film, CT scan, or other radiologic image.
palliative	Relieving symptoms, but not curing the disease.
paroxysmal	Pertaining to a sudden occurrence, such as a spasm or seizure; oxysm/o means sudden.
pulmonary infarction	Area of necrosis (death of lung tissue).
purulent	Containing pus.
silicosis	Disease due to silica or glass dust in the lungs; occurs in mining occupations.

Clinical Procedures

X-Ray Tests

chest x-ray (CXR)	**Radiographic image of the thoracic cavity (chest film).** Chest x-rays are taken in the frontal (coronal) plane as posteroanterior (PA) or anteroposterior (AP) views and in the sagittal plane as lateral views. Figure 12-15A and B shows a normal chest film and an x-ray film of the chest with pneumonia.
computed tomography (CT) scan of the chest	**Computer-generated series of x-ray images show thoracic structures in cross section and other planes.** This test is for diagnosis of lesions difficult to assess by conventional x-ray studies, such as those in the lungs, mediastinum, and pleura. **CT pulmonary angiography (CTPA)** is the combination of CT scanning and angiography. It is useful to examine the pulmonary circulation in the diagnosis of a pulmonary embolism.

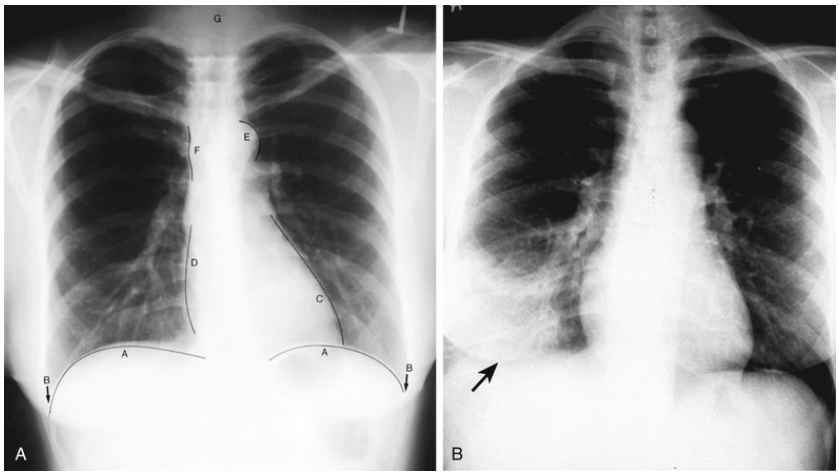


FIGURE 12-15 **A,** A **normal chest x-ray** appearance. The image is taken from the **posteroanterior** (**PA**) view (x-ray passes from back to front). The *backward L* in the upper corner is placed on the film to indicate the left side of the patient's chest. A, Diaphragm; B, costophrenic angle; C, left ventricle of the heart; D, right atrium of the heart; E, aortic arch; F, superior vena cava; G, trachea. Air-filled lung spaces appear black. **B, Pneumonia** of the right lung shown on an x-ray image of the chest.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging

magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) of the chest	**Magnetic waves create detailed images of the chest in frontal, lateral (sagittal), and cross-sectional (axial) planes.** This test is helpful in defining mediastinal tumors (such as those of Hodgkin disease) difficult to assess by CT scan.

Nuclear Medicine Tests

positron emission tomography (PET) scan of the lung	**Radioactive glucose is injected, and images reveal metabolic activity in the lungs.** This scanning technique can identify malignant tumors, which have higher metabolic activity. It is also used to assess small nodules seen on a CT scan.
ventilation-perfusion (V/Q) scan	**Detection device records radioactivity in the lung after intravenous injection of a radioisotope and inhalation of a small amount of radioactive gas (xenon).** This test can identify areas of the lung not receiving adequate air flow (ventilation) or blood flow (perfusion) as well as areas where there is a mismatch in air flow (V) and blood flow (Q). Air flow without matched blood flow suggests a pulmonary embolus.

Other Procedures

bronchoscopy	**Fiberoptic endoscope examination of the bronchial tubes.** A physician places the bronchoscope through the throat, larynx, and trachea into the bronchi for diagnosis, biopsy, or collection of secretions. In **bronchoalveolar lavage (bronchial washing),** fluid is injected and withdrawn. In **bronchial brushing**, a brush is inserted through the bronchoscope and is used to scrape off tissue (Figure 12-16). **Endobronchial ultrasound (EBUS)** is performed during bronchoscopy to diagnose and stage lung cancer. An EBUS-guided biopsy allows for sampling of small (<3 cm) peripheral lesions endoscopically.
endotracheal intubation	**Placement of a tube through the mouth into the pharynx, larynx, and trachea to establish an airway** (Figure 12-17). This procedure also allows the patient to be placed on a mechanical **ventilator** (an apparatus that moves air into and out of the lungs).
laryngoscopy	**Visual examination of the voice box.** A lighted, flexible endoscope is passed through the mouth or nose into the larynx.
lung biopsy	**Removal of lung tissue followed by microscopic examination.** Specimens may be obtained by bronchoscopy, thoracotomy (open-lung biopsy), needle biopsy through the chest wall, or video-assisted thoracoscopic surgery (VATS).
mediastinoscopy	**Endoscopic visual examination of the mediastinum.** An incision is made above the breastbone (suprasternal) for inspection and biopsy of lymph nodes in the underlying space (mediastinum).
pulmonary function tests (PFTs)	**Tests that measure the ventilation mechanics of the lungs: airway function, lung volume, and the capacity of the lungs to exchange oxygen and carbon dioxide efficiently.** See Figure 12-18. PFTs are used for many reasons: (1) to evaluate patients with shortness of breath (SOB); (2) to monitor lung function in patients with known respiratory disease; (3) to evaluate disability; and (4) to assess lung function before surgery. A **spirometer** measures the volume and rate of air passing into and out of the lung. PFTs determine if lung disease is obstructive, restrictive, or both. In **obstructive lung disease,** airways are narrowed, which results in resistance to air flow during breathing. A hallmark PFT abnormality in obstructive disease is decreased expiratory flow rate or **FEV_1** (forced expiratory volume in the first second of expiration). Examples of obstructive lung diseases are asthma, COPD, bronchiectasis, cystic fibrosis, and bronchiolitis. In **restrictive lung disease,** expansion of the lung is limited by disease that affects the chest wall, pleura, or lung tissue itself. A hallmark PFT abnormality in restrictive disease is decreased **total lung capacity (TLC).** Examples of lung conditions that stiffen and scar the lung are pulmonary fibrosis, radiation damage to the lung, and pneumoconiosis. Other causes of restrictive lung disease are neuromuscular conditions that affect the lung, such as myasthenia gravis, muscular dystrophy, and diaphragmatic weakness and paralysis.
	The ability of gas to diffuse across the alveolar-capillary membrane is assessed by determining the diffusion capacity of the lung for carbon monoxide **(DLCO)**. A patient breathes in a small amount of carbon monoxide (CO), and the length of time it takes the gas to enter the bloodstream is measured. A common cause of reduced DLCO is emphysema due to destruction of alveoli.
thoracentesis	**Needle is inserted into pleural space to remove excess fluid.** This minimally invasive procedure is used to obtain pleural fluid for diagnosis or to therapeutically drain a pleural effusion (Figure 12-19). The suffix -centesis means puncture with a needle.
thoracotomy	**Large surgical incision of the chest.**

	The incision is large, cutting into bone, muscle, and cartilage. It is necessary for major resections of the lung (lobectomy and pneumonectomy).
thoracoscopy (thorascopy)	**Visual examination of the chest via small incisions and use of an endoscope. Video-assisted thoracic surgery (VATS)** allows the surgeon to view the chest from a video monitor. The thorascope (thoracoscope) is equipped with a camera that magnifies the image on the monitor. Thoracoscopy can diagnose and treat conditions of the lung, pleura, and mediastinum.
tracheostomy	**Surgical creation of an opening into the trachea through the neck.** A tube is inserted to create an airway. The tracheostomy tube may be permanent as well as an emergency device (Figure 12-20). A **tracheotomy** is the incision necessary to create a tracheostomy.
tuberculin test	**Determines past or present tuberculous exposure based on a positive skin reaction.** Examples are the **Heaf test** and the **tine test,** using purified protein derivative **(PPD)** applied with multiple punctures of the skin, and the **Mantoux test,** using PPD given by intraepidermal injection.
tube thoracostomy	**Flexible, plastic chest tube is passed into the pleural space through an opening in the chest.** This procedure is used to continuously remove air (pneumothorax), fluid (pleural effusion), blood (hemothorax), pus (empyema). See Figure 12-21.

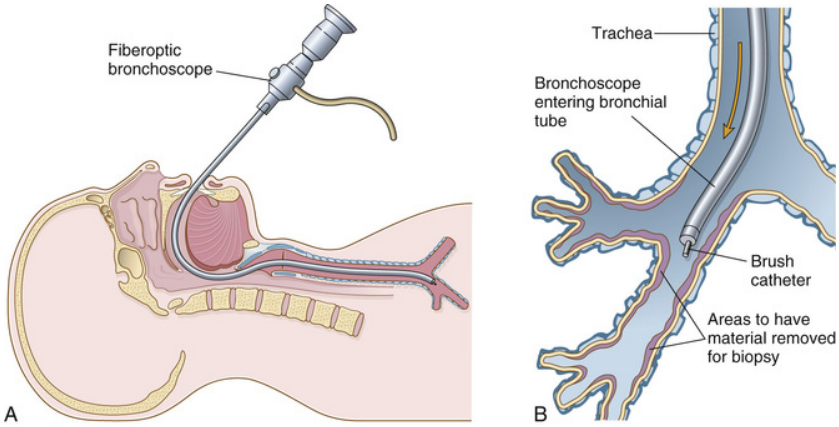


FIGURE 12-16 **A, Fiberoptic bronchoscopy.** A bronchoscope is passed through the nose, throat, larynx, and trachea into a bronchus. **B,** A **bronchoscope,** with brush catheter, in place in a bronchial tube.

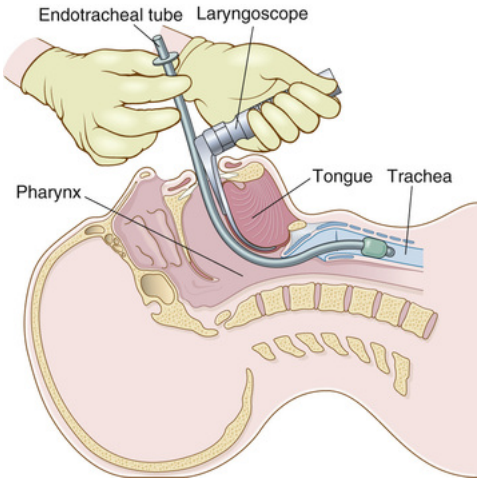


FIGURE 12-17 **Endotracheal intubation.** The patient is in a supine position; the head is hyperextended, the lower portion of the neck is flexed, and the mouth is opened. A **laryngoscope** is used to hold the airway open, to expose the vocal cords, and as a guide for placing the tube into the trachea.

FIGURE 12-18 An individual undergoing a **pulmonary function test**.

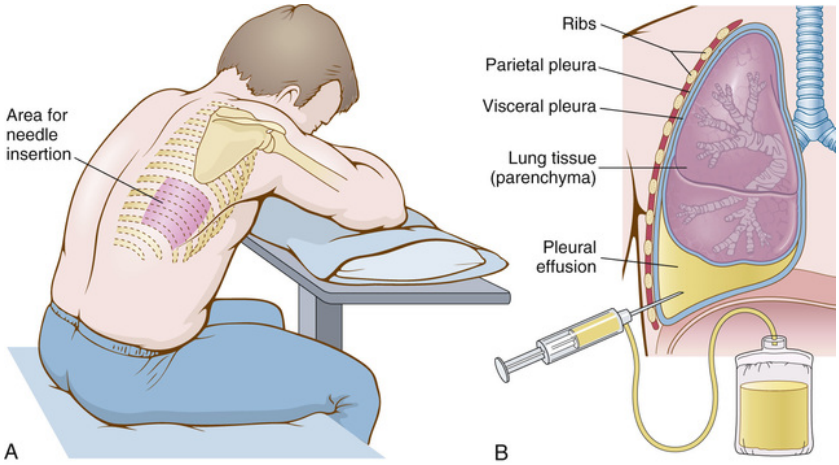


FIGURE 12-19 **Thoracentesis. A,** The patient is sitting in the correct position for the procedure; it allows the chest wall to be pulled outward in an expanded position. **B,** The needle is inserted close to the base of the effusion so that gravity can help with drainage, but it is kept as far away from the diaphragm as possible. The needle is inserted above the appropriate rib to avoid the neurovascular structures that run beneath each rib.

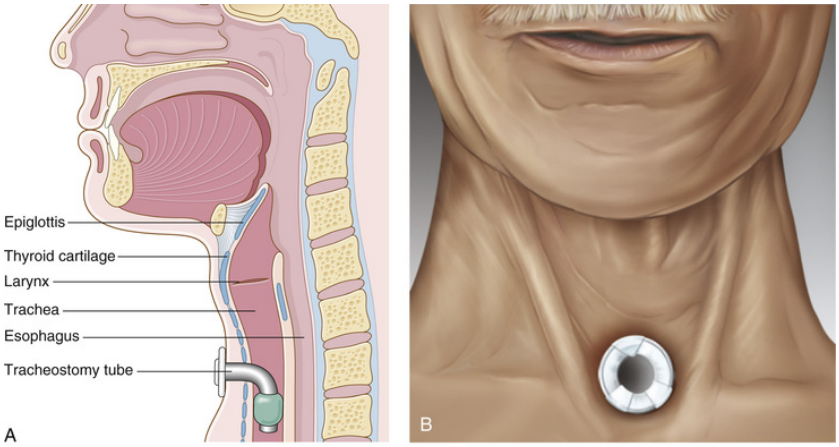


FIGURE 12-20 **A, Tracheostomy tube** in place. **B, Healed tracheostom**y after laryngectomy.

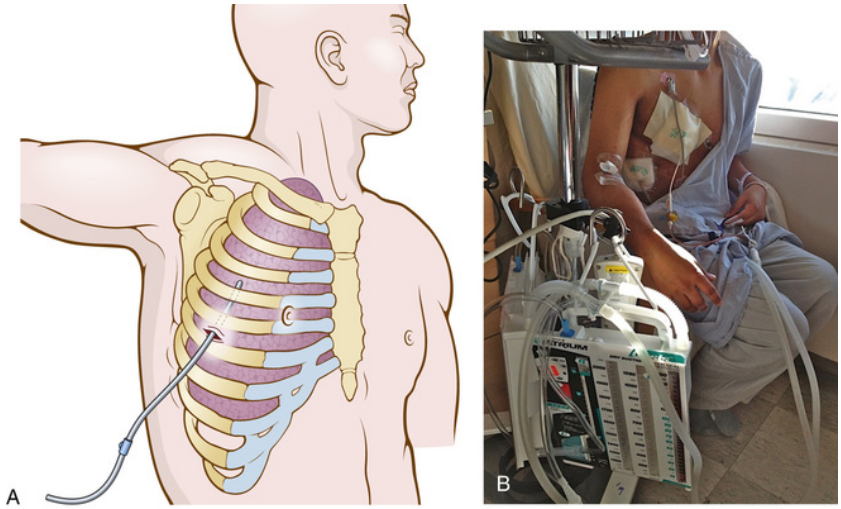


FIGURE 12-21 **A, Tube thoracostomy. B, A patient with two thoracostomy tubes** draining a pleural effusion from two different areas of the chest.

Abbreviations

ABGs	arterial blood gases
AFB	acid-fast bacillus—the type of organism that causes tuberculosis
ARDS	acute respiratory distress syndrome—severe, sudden lung injury caused by acute illness
BAL	bronchoalveolar lavage
Bronch	bronchoscopy
CF	cystic fibrosis
CO_2	carbon dioxide
COPD	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease—airway obstruction associated with emphysema and chronic bronchitis
CPAP	continuous positive airway pressure
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation—three basic steps (CAB): C, *c*irculation restored by external cardiac compression; A, *a*irway opened by tilting the head; B, *b*reathing restored by mouth-to-mouth breathing
C&S	culture and sensitivity testing (of sputum)
CTPA	computed tomography pulmonary angiogram
CT-PE	Chest CT for pulmonary emboli
CXR	chest x-ray [film]
DLCO	diffusion capacity of the lung for carbon monoxide
DOE	dyspnea on exertion
DPT	diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus—toxoids for vaccination of infants, to provide immunity to these diseases
EBUS	endobronchial ultrasound
FEV_1	forced expiratory volume in 1 second
FVC	forced vital capacity—amount of gas that can be forcibly and rapidly exhaled after a full inspiration
ICU	intensive care unit
LLL	left lower lobe (of lung)
LUL	left upper lobe (of lung)
MAC	*Mycobacterium avium* complex—the cause of a noncontagious lung infection related to tuberculosis
MDI	metered-dose inhaler—used to deliver aerosolized medications to patients
NSCLC	non–small cell lung cancer
O_2	oxygen
OSA	obstructive sleep apnea
$PaCO_2$	carbon dioxide partial pressure—measure of the amount of carbon dioxide in arterial blood
PaO_2	oxygen partial pressure—a measure of the amount of oxygen in arterial blood
PCP	*Pneumocystis* pneumonia—a type of pneumonia seen in patients with AIDS or other immunosuppression
PE	pulmonary embolism
PEP	positive expiratory pressure—mechanical ventilator strategy in which the patient takes a deep breath and then exhales through a device that resists air flow (helps refill underventilated areas of the lung)
PEEP	positive end-expiratory pressure—common mechanical ventilator setting in which airway pressure is maintained above atmospheric pressure
PFTs	pulmonary function tests
PND	paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea
PPD	purified protein derivative—substance used in a tuberculosis test
RDS	respiratory distress syndrome—in the newborn infant; marked by dyspnea and cyanosis and related to absence of surfactant (lubricating substance that permits normal expansion of lungs); also called hyaline membrane disease
RLL	right lower lobe (of lung)
RML	right middle lobe (of lung)
RSV	respiratory syncytial virus—common cause of bronchiolitis, bronchopneumonia, and the

	common cold, especially in children (in tissue culture, forms syncytia or giant cells, so that cytoplasm flows together)
RUL	right upper lobe (of lung)
RV	residual volume—amount of air remaining in lungs at the end of maximal expiration
SABA	short-acting beta agonist (for relief of asthma symptoms)
SCLC	small cell lung cancer
SOB	shortness of breath
TB	tuberculosis
TLC	total lung capacity—volume of gas in the lungs at the end of maximal inspiration; equals VC plus RV
URI	upper respiratory infection
V_T	tidal volume—amount of air inhaled and exhaled during a normal ventilation
VATS	video-assisted thoracic surgery (thoracoscopy)
VC	vital capacity—the maximum volume of air expelled from the lung after taking the deepest possible breath
V/Q scan	ventilation-perfusion scan—radioactive test of lung ventilation and blood perfusion throughout the lung capillaries (lung scan)

Practical Applications

Case Study: Targeted Therapy for Lung Cancer

In 2008, Sarah Broom was a 35-year-old literature instructor and poet living in New Zealand. Married with two young sons, she was pregnant with her third child when she noticed shortness of breath accompanied by a persistent cough. An x-ray of her lungs during her 7th month of pregnancy showed a large mass in one lung. After a cesarean section (her daughter was born safely), she had a biopsy and other tests, which revealed NSCLC-advanced lung cancer. Sarah was a nonsmoker.

The doctors in New Zealand told her that her care would be palliative and that she had only a few months to live.

Sarah was desperate to explore every option, and through a personal connection, she sent her biopsy slides to the MGH Cancer Center in Boston. The slides were analyzed using cutting edge technology, and her tumor was found to have a mutation called EML4-ALK, which occurs in only 5% of lung cancers. The doctors at MGH knew of a new drug called crizotinib that was being evaluated to treat lung cancers with this specific mutation. Finding a specific mutation in a tumor and targeting that mutation with particular drug is a cutting edge approach to cancer treatment.

Sarah was given the new drug—and her tumors shrunk! She was in remission for over 2 years. In 2010, the tumors returned, and Sarah traveled back to Boston for further drug treatment, which was not successful. She developed brain metastases.

Her doctors in Boston knew of one more targeted therapy drug called ceritinib that was still in clinical trials and therefore would not be available for patients. However, through coordinated and persistent efforts, the pharmaceutical company (Novartis) allowed her advance, compassionate access to the drug, and it worked for 2 years! Because it was seen that this drug was effective against lung cancer in patients with relapsed disease, the FDA has now given the drug rapid approval.

In April 2013, Sarah lost her battle with lung cancer. But her case serves as an example of the importance of exploring all options and remaining open to new cancer treatments, such as targeted therapy.

Case Report

A 22-year-old man who was a known heroin abuser was admitted to an emergency department comatose, with shallow respirations. Routine laboratory studies and chest x-ray studies were done after the patient was aroused. He was then transferred to the ICU. He complained of left-sided chest pain. Examination of the chest film showed three fractured ribs on the right and a large right pleural effusion. Further questioning of a friend revealed that he had fallen and struck the corner of a table after injecting heroin.

The diagnosis was traumatic hemothorax secondary to rib fractures, and a chest tube was inserted into the right pleural space. No blood could be obtained despite maneuvering of the tube. Another chest x-ray showed that the tube was correctly placed in the right pleural space, but the fractured ribs and pleural effusion were on the left. The radiologist then realized that he had reversed the first film. A second tube was inserted into the left pleural space, and 1500 mL [6 to 7 cups] of blood was evacuated.

X-Ray and Bronchoscopy Reports

1. *CXR*: Complete opacification of left hemithorax with deviation of mediastinal structures of right side. Massive pleural effusion.
2. *Chest tomograms*: Mass most compatible with LUL bronchogenic carcinoma. Possible left paratracheal adenopathy or direct involvement of mediastinum.
3. *Bronchoscopy*: Larynx, trachea, **carina** [area of bifurcation or forking of the trachea], and left lung all within normal limits. On the right side there was irregularity and roughening of the bronchial mucosa on the lateral aspect of the bronchial wall. This irregularity extended into the RUL, and the apical and posterior segments [divisions of lobes of the lung] each contained inflamed irregular mucosa. Conclusion: Suspicious for infiltrating tumor, but may be nonspecific inflammation. Bronchial washings, brushings, and bxs [biopsies] taken. Bronchial biopsy diagnosis: squamous cell carcinoma. Washings and brushings showed no malignant cells.

In Person

Recurrent Pneumonia

While growing up in West Virginia in the 1940s and 50s, I was frighteningly aware of the prevalence of lung diseases. With coal mining at its peak, large numbers of miners suffered and died from black lung disease. Tuberculosis was not uncommon, and neither was pneumonia. Little did I imagine, then or in 1999, when I first contracted the disease, that recurring pneumonia would become my most troublesome medical issue.

As bitter cold temperatures persisted during the winter of 1999, I was not particularly concerned about a lingering cold and cough. But when I developed a low-grade fever and decreased energy, a chest x-ray confirmed that I had pneumonia in my left lung (lower lobe). My doctor prescribed a one-week course of antibiotics and reassured me that the diagnosis was not unusual. I quickly improved and a follow-up x-ray showed that the pneumonia had cleared. My doctor then suggested that I receive the pneumonia vaccine, which produces antibodies against many types of pneumococcal bacteria. End of story. Or so I thought.

In October of 2001, at age 60, I began training to run the Boston Marathon. A few days after a long training run in January of 2002, I could not stop coughing. Once again, a low-grade fever and rather marked fatigue set in. The thought of pneumonia did not cross my mind initially. But, when symptoms didn't improve, a visit to my doctor and a chest x-ray confirmed my second diagnosis of pneumonia, again in my left lower lobe. I felt some relief when my physician, a pulmonologist and a serious runner himself, assured me that cold weather training had not caused the pneumonia. After a course of antibiotics, a follow-up chest CT performed in May showed no abnormal result, and bronchoscopy ruled out any malignancy. Relieved, I assumed I was finished with pneumonia.

However, pneumonia wasn't finished with me. I had periods where I went almost 6 years without a recurrence, but over and over, despite pulmonary function tests that were normal and trials of steroids, I seem to always end up with pneumonia when I develop even the slightest "cold."

With all the information, gathered and evaluated by experts, what happens next? At this point, the doctors conclude that my pneumonia is probably idiopathic. They suggest that I have a follow-up CT scan and additional testing when pneumonia episodes actually occur. They also caution me about exposure around children and hospitalized patients. I asked my lung specialist if he thought this pneumonia puzzle would ever be resolved. His reply was, "Something is going on that we will eventually understand. We just haven't figured it out yet." Unsettling and stress producing as this has been, I know I am fortunate to be dealing with an illness that has, so far, responded to medication. Still, every time I get cold signs and symptoms, I worry. And I never take good health for granted.

Brenda Melson's professional career was in teaching, counseling, and college advising.

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, page 466.

A **Match the listed anatomic structures with the descriptions that follow.**

adenoids

alveoli

bronchi
bronchioles
cilia
epiglottis
hilum
larynx
mediastinum
palatine tonsils
paranasal sinuses
parietal pleura
pharynx
trachea
visceral pleura

1. outer fold of pleura lying closer to the ribs _____.
2. collections of lymph tissue in the nasopharynx _____.
3. windpipe _____.
4. lid-like piece of cartilage that covers the voice box _____.
5. branches of the windpipe that lead into the lungs _____.
6. region between the lungs in the chest cavity _____.
7. air-containing cavities in the bones around the nose _____.
8. thin hairs attached to the mucous membrane lining the respiratory tract _____.
9. inner fold of pleura closer to lung tissue _____.
10. throat _____.
11. air sacs of the lung _____.
12. voice box _____.
13. smallest branches of bronchi _____.
14. collections of lymph tissue in the oropharynx _____.
15. midline region of the lungs where bronchi, blood vessels, and nerves enter and exit the lungs _____.

B **Complete the following sentences.**

1. The apical part of the lung is the _____.
2. The gas that passes into the bloodstream at the lungs is _____.

3. Breathing in air is called _____.
4. Divisions of the lungs are known as _____.
5. The gas produced by cells and exhaled through the lungs is _____.
6. The space between the visceral and the parietal pleura is the _____.
7. Breathing out air is called _____.
8. The term that describes the essential parts of the lung (bronchiole and alveoli), responsible for respiration is pulmonary _____.
9. The exchange of gases in the lung is _____ respiration.
10. The exchange of gases at the tissue cells is _____ respiration.

C **Give meanings for the following terms relating to respiratory disorders and structures.**

1. bronchiectasis
_____
2. pleuritis
_____
3. pneumothorax
_____
4. anosmia
_____
5. laryngectomy
_____
6. nasopharyngitis
_____
7. phrenic
_____
8. alveolar
_____

9. glottis
_____
__
10. tracheal stenosis
_____
__

D **Complete the medical terms for the following respiratory symptoms.**

1. excessive carbon dioxide in the blood: hyper _____
2. breathing is easiest or possible only in an upright position: _____ pnea
3. difficult breathing: _____ pnea
4. condition of blueness of skin: _____ osis
5. spitting up blood: hemo _____
6. deficiency of oxygen: hyp _____
7. condition of pus in the pleural cavity: pyo _____ *or* em _____
8. hoarseness; voice impairment: dys _____
9. blood in the pleural cavity: hemo _____
10. nosebleed: epi _____

E **Give the meanings of the following medical terms.**

1. rales (crackles) _____
2. auscultation _____
3. sputum _____
4. percussion _____
5. rhonchi _____
6. pleural rub _____
7. purulent _____
8. paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea _____
9. expectoration _____
10. pulmonary infarction _____
11. stridor _____
12. wheeze _____

F **Match the lung pathology terms with the descriptions that follow.**

asbestosis
asthma

atelectasis
chronic bronchitis
croup
cystic fibrosis
diphtheria
emphysema
infiltrate
lung cancer
pertussis
sarcoidosis

1. Acute infectious disease of the throat caused by *Corynebacterium*: _____
2. Acute respiratory syndrome in children and infants that is marked by obstruction of the larynx and stridor: _____
3. Hyperinflation of air sacs with destruction of alveolar walls: _____
4. Long-term inflammation of the lining of bronchial tubes; cigarette smoking is a common cause: _____
5. Inflammatory disorder of bronchi and bronchioles; allergy is a common cause: _____
6. Lung or a portion of a lung is collapsed: _____
7. Malignant neoplasm originating in a lung or bronchus: _____
8. Whooping cough: _____
9. A collection of fluid or other material within the lung as seen on chest film, CT scan, or other radiologic study: _____
10. Inherited disease of exocrine glands; mucous secretions lead to airway obstruction: _____
11. Type of pneumoconiosis; dust particles are inhaled: _____
12. Inflammatory disease in which small nodules form in lungs and lymph nodes: _____

G **Use the listed terms and abbreviations to complete the sentences that follow.**

CPAP
DLCO
exudate

FEV1

fibrosis

obstructive lung disease

OSA

PaCO2

PaO2

palliative

restrictive lung disease

rhonchi

1. Sarah had a pulmonary function test in which she inhaled as much air as she could and the air that she expelled in the first second was measured. The result of this PFT is a/an _____.
2. Dr. Smith heard loud _____ when he auscultated Kate's chest. Her bronchial tubes were obstructed with thick mucous secretions.
3. Karl was asked to breathe in a small amount of carbon monoxide and then blood samples were taken to detect the gas in his bloodstream. This PFT assesses how well gases can diffuse across the alveolar membrane, and the result of the test is called _____.
4. Formation of scar tissue in the connective tissue of the lungs is pulmonary _____.
5. A purulent _____ consists of white blood cells, microorganisms (dead and alive), and other debris.
6. Myasthenia gravis and muscular dystrophy are examples of neuromuscular conditions that produce _____.
7. Chronic bronchitis and asthma are examples of _____.
8. Patients with a small pharyngeal airway that closes during sleep may experience _____.
9. With nasal _____, positive pressure (air coming from a compressor) opens the oropharynx and nasopharynx, preventing obstructive sleep apnea.
10. Doctors realized that they could not cure Jean's adenocarcinoma of the lung. They used _____ measures to relieve her uncomfortable symptoms.
11. During an apneic period, a patient experiences severe hypoxemia (decreased _____) and hypercapnia (increased _____).

H **Give the meanings of the following medical terms.**

1. pulmonary abscess

_____

2. pulmonary edema

_____

3. pneumoconiosis

_____

4. pneumonia

_____

5. pulmonary embolism

_____

6. tuberculosis

_____

7. pleural effusion

_____

8. pleurisy

_____

9. anthracosis

_____

10. mesothelioma

_____

11. adenoid hypertrophy

_____

12. pleurodynia

_____

13. expectoration

_____

14. tachypnea

_____

I **Match the clinical procedure or abbreviation with its description.**

bronchoalveolar lavage
bronchoscopy
CT pulmonary angiography
endotracheal intubation
laryngoscopy
mediastinoscopy
pulmonary function tests
thoracentesis
tracheostomy

tube thoracostomy

tuberculin tests

V/Q scan

1. Placement of a tube through the mouth into the trachea to establish an airway: _____
2. Injection or inhalation of radioactive material and recording images of its distribution in the lungs: _____
3. Tine and Mantoux tests: _____
4. Puncture of the chest wall to obtain fluid from the pleural cavity: _____
5. Tests that measure the ventilation mechanics of the lung: _____
6. Creation of an opening into the trachea through the neck to establish an airway: _____
7. Visual examination of the bronchi: _____
8. Injection of fluid into the bronchi, followed by withdrawal of the fluid for examination: _____
9. Insertion of an endoscope into the larynx to view the voice box: _____
10. Combination of computer-generated x-ray images and recording (with contrast) of blood flow in the lung: _____
11. Visual examination of the area between the lungs: _____
12. Continuous drainage of the pleural spaces from a chest tube placed through a small skin incision: _____

J **Spell out the following abbreviations and then select the letter of the description that is the best definition for each.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN
1. DOE _____	_____	A. Patients congest failure a pulmon edema experier sympto they rec bed.
2. PND _____	_____	
3. VATS _____	_____	
4. CPR _____	_____	
5. NSCLC _____	_____	
6. ARDS _____	_____	B. Chronic bronchi emphys example
7. COPD _____		C. Substar in the te tubercu
8. PFTs _____		D. Adenoc and squ cell carc are type
9. PPD _____		E. Visual examina the ches endosco video m
10. DPT _____		F. Injection infant to immuni
		G. A spiro used for respirat
		H. This sy means t patient difficult breathir become breath v exercisi
		I. Three ba A, airwa opened the head breathir restored mouth-t breathir circulati restored external compres
		J. A group sympto resultin acute re failure.

K **Match the respiratory system procedures with their meanings.**

laryngectomy

lobectomy

pneumonectomy
rhinoplasty
thoracentesis
thoracoscopy (thorascopy)
thoracotomy
tonsillectomy

1. removal of lymph tissue in the oropharynx _____
2. surgical puncture of the chest to remove fluid from the pleural space _____
3. surgical repair of the nose _____
4. incision of the chest _____
5. removal of the voice box _____
6. removal of a region of a lung _____
7. endoscopic examination of the chest _____
8. pulmonary resection _____

L **Circle the boldface terms that best complete the meaning of each sentence.**

1. Ruth was having difficulty taking a deep breath, and her chest x-ray showed accumulation of fluid in her pleural spaces. Dr. Smith ordered **(PPD, tracheotomy, thoracentesis)** to relieve the pressure on her lungs.
2. Dr. Wong used her stethoscope to perform **(percussion, auscultation, thoracentesis)** on the patient's chest.
3. Before making a decision to perform surgery on Mrs. Hope, an 80-year-old woman with lung cancer, her physicians ordered **(COPD, bronchoscopy, PFTs)** to determine the functioning of her lungs.
4. Sylvia produced yellow-colored sputum and had a high fever. Her physician told her that she probably had **(pneumonia, pulmonary embolism, pneumothorax)** and needed antibiotics.
5. The night before her thoracotomy for lung biopsy, Mrs. White was told by her anesthesiologist that he would place a/an **(thoracostomy tube, mediastinoscope, endotracheal tube)** down her throat to keep her airway open during surgery.
6. Early in her pregnancy, Sonya had a routine **(PET scan, CXR, MRI)** that revealed a/an **(epiglottic, alveolar, mediastinal)** mass in the area between her lungs. After delivery of her child, the mass was removed, and biopsy revealed a malignant thymoma (tumor of the thymus gland).
7. Five-year-old Seth was allergic to cats and experienced wheezing, coughing, and difficult breathing at night when he was trying to sleep. After careful evaluation by a **(cardiologist, pulmonologist, neurologist)**, his parents

were told that Seth had **(pleurisy, sarcoidosis, asthma)** involving inflammation of his **(nasal passages, pharynx, bronchial tubes)**.

8. Six-year-old Daisy had a habit of picking her nose. During the winter months, heat in her family's house caused drying of her nasal **(mucus, mucous, pleural)** membranes. She had frequent bouts of **(epistaxis, croup, stridor)**.
9. Seventy-five-year-old Beatrice had been a pack-a-day smoker all of her adult life. Over the previous 3 months she noticed a persistent cough, weight loss, blood in her sputum **(hemoptysis, hematemesis, asbestosis)**, and dyspnea. A chest CT scan revealed a mass. Biopsy confirmed the diagnosis of **(tuberculosis, pneumoconiosis, adenocarcinoma)**, which is a type of **(small cell, non–small cell, lymph node)** lung cancer.
10. Carrie's lungs were normal at birth, but thick bronchial secretions soon blocked her **(arterioles, venules, bronchioles)**, which became inflamed. She was losing weight, and tests revealed inadequate amounts of pancreatic enzymes necessary for digestion of fats and proteins. Her pediatrician diagnosed her hereditary condition as **(chronic bronchitis, asthma, cystic fibrosis)**.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. parietal pleura
2. adenoids
3. trachea
4. epiglottis
5. bronchi
6. mediastinum
7. paranasal sinuses
8. cilia
9. visceral pleura
10. pharynx
11. alveoli
12. larynx
13. bronchioles
14. palatine tonsils

15. hilum

B

1. uppermost part
2. oxygen
3. inspiration; inhalation
4. lobes
5. carbon dioxide
6. pleural cavity
7. expiration; exhalation
8. parenchyma
9. external
10. internal

C

1. chronic dilation of a bronchus
2. inflammation of pleura
3. air in the chest (pleural cavity)
4. lack of sense of smell
5. removal of the voice box
6. inflammation of the nose and throat
7. pertaining to the diaphragm
8. pertaining to an air sac
9. opening to the larynx
10. narrowing of the windpipe

D

1. hypercapnia
2. orthopnea
3. dyspnea
4. cyanosis
5. hemoptysis

6. hypoxia
7. pyothorax; empyema
8. dysphonia
9. hemothorax
10. epistaxis

E

1. fine crackling sounds heard during inhalation when there is fluid in the alveoli
2. listening to sounds within the body
3. material expelled from the respiratory tract by deep coughing and spitting
4. tapping on the surface to determine the underlying structure
5. loud rumbling sounds on auscultation of chest; bronchi obstructed by sputum
6. scratching sound produced by pleural surfaces rubbing against each other (caused by inflammation or tumor cells)
7. pus-filled
8. sudden attack of difficult breathing associated with lying down at night (caused by congestive heart failure and pulmonary edema as the lungs fill with fluid)
9. clearing of secretions from the throat or lungs by coughing
10. area of dead tissue in the lung
11. strained, high-pitched inspirational sound
12. continuous high-pitched whistling sound produced during breathing when air is forced through a narrow space; heard in asthma

F

1. diphtheria
2. croup
3. emphysema
4. chronic bronchitis
5. asthma
6. atelectasis
7. lung cancer
8. pertussis

9. infiltrate
10. cystic fibrosis
11. asbestosis
12. sarcoidosis

G

1. PEV1 (forced expiratory volume in first second)
2. rhonchi
3. $D_{L_{CO}}$ (diffusion capacity of the lung for carbon monoxide)
4. fibrosis
5. exudate
6. restrictive lung disease
7. obstructive lung disease
8. OSA: obstructive sleep apnea
9. CPAP: continuous positive airway pressure
10. palliative
11. PaO2, PaCO2

H

1. collection of pus in the lungs
2. swelling, fluid collection in the air sacs and bronchioles
3. abnormal condition of dust in the lungs
4. acute inflammation and infection of alveoli; they become filled with fluid and blood cells
5. floating clot or other material blocking the blood vessels of the lung
6. an infectious disease caused by rod-shaped bacilli and producing tubercles (nodes) of infection
7. collection of fluid in the pleural cavity
8. inflammation of pleura
9. abnormal condition of coal dust in the lungs (black lung disease)
10. malignant tumor arising in the pleura; composed of mesothelium (epithelium that covers the surfaces of membranes such as pleura and peritoneum)

11. excessive growth of cells in the adenoids (lymph tissue in the nasopharynx)
12. pain of the pleura (irritation of pleural surfaces leads to intercostal pain)
13. coughing up of material from the chest
14. rapid breathing; hyperventilation

I

1. endotracheal intubation
2. V/Q scan
3. tuberculin tests
4. thoracentesis
5. pulmonary function tests
6. tracheostomy
7. bronchoscopy
8. bronchoalveolar lavage
9. laryngoscopy
10. CT pulmonary angiography
11. mediastinoscopy
12. tube thoracostomy

J

1. dyspnea on exertion: H
2. paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea: A
3. video-assisted thoracic surgery: E
4. cardiopulmonary resuscitation: I
5. non–small cell lung cancer: D
6. acute (adult) respiratory distress syndrome: J
7. chronic obstructive pulmonary disease: B
8. pulmonary function tests: G
9. purified protein derivative: C
10. diphtheria, pertussis, and tetanus: F

K

1. tonsillectomy
2. thoracentesis
3. rhinoplasty
4. thoracotomy
5. laryngectomy
6. lobectomy
7. thoracoscopy (thorascopy)
8. pneumonectomy

L

1. thoracentesis
2. auscultation
3. PFTs
4. pneumonia
5. endotracheal tube
6. CXR; mediastinal
7. pulmonologist; asthma; bronchial tubes
8. mucous; epistaxis
9. hemoptysis; adenocarcinoma; non–small cell
10. bronchioles; cystic fibrosis

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

Vocabulary and Terminology

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
adenoid hypertrophy	ah-deh-noyd hi-PER-tro-fe
adenoidectomy	ah-deh-noyd-EK-to-me
adenoids	AH-deh-noydz
alveolar	al-ve-O-lar
alveolus; alveoli	al-VE-o-lus; al-VE-o-li
anosmia	an-OZ-me-ah
apex of the lung	A-pex of the lung
apical	A-pih-kal
apnea	AP-ne-ah
asphyxia	as-FIX-se-ah
atelectasis	at-eh-LEK-tah-sis
base of the lung	base of the lung
bronchiectasis	brong-ke-EK-tah-sis
bronchioles	BRONG-ke-ohlz
bronchiolitis	brong-ke-o-LI-tis
bronchodilator	brong-ko-DI-la-tor
bronchopleural	brong-ko-PLU-ral
bronchospasm	BRONG-ko-spaz-im
bronchus; bronchi	BRONG-kus; BRONG-ki
carbon dioxide	KAR-bon di-OX-ide
cilia	SIL-e-ah
cyanosis	si-ah-NO-sis
diaphragm	DI-ah-fram
dysphonia	dis-FO-ne-ah
dyspnea	DISP-ne-ah
empyema	em-pi-E-mah
epiglottis	ep-ih-GLOT-is
epiglottitis	ep-ih-glot-TI-is
exhalation	ex-hal-A-shun
expectoration	ex-spek-tor-RA-shun
expiration	ex-pih-RA-shun
glottis	GLOT-is
hemoptysis	he-MOP-tih-sis
hemothorax	he-mo-THO-rax
hilar	HI-lar
hilum of the lung	HI-lum of the lung
hypercapnia	hi-per-KAP-ne-ah
hyperpnea	hi-PERP-ne-ah
hypoxia	hi-POX-e-ah
inhalation	in-hah-LA-shun
inspiration	in-spih-RA-shun
laryngeal	lah-rin-JE-al
laryngitis	lah-rin-JI-tis
laryngospasm	lah-RING-go-spaz-im
larynx	LAR-inks
lobectomy	lo-BEK-to-me
mediastinoscopy	me-de-ah-sti-NOS-ko-pe
mediastinum	me-de-ah-STI-num
nares	NA-reez
nasogastric intubation	na-zo-GAS-trik in-tu-BA-shun
orthopnea	or-THOP-ne-ah
oxygen	OX-ih-jen

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
palatine tonsil	PAH-lih-tine TON-sil
paranasal sinus	par-ah-NA-zal SI-nus
parietal pleura	pah-RI-eh-tal PLU-rah
pharyngeal	fah-rin-JE-al
pharynx	FAH-rinks
phrenic nerve	FREN-ik nerv
pleura	PLUR-ah
pleural cavity	PLUR-al KAV-ih-te
pleurodynia	plur-o-DIN-e-ah
pneumonectomy	nu-mo-NEK-to-me
pneumothorax	nu-mo-THO-rax
pulmonary	PUL-mo-nair-e
pulmonary parenchyma	pul-mo-NAIR-e pah-RENK-ih-mah
pyothorax	pi-o-THO-rax
respiration	res-pih-RA-shun
rhinoplasty	RI-no-plas-te
rhinorrhea	ri-no-RE-ah
sinusitis	si-nu-SI-tis
spirometer	spi-ROM-eh-ter
tachypnea	tah-KIP-ne-ah
thoracic	thor-AH-sik
thoracotomy	thor-ah-KOT-o-me
tonsillectomy	ton-sih-LEK-to-me
trachea	TRA-ke-ah
tracheal stenosis	TRA-ke-al steh-NO-sis
visceral pleura	VIS-er-al PLUR-ah

Pathologic Conditions, Laboratory Tests, and Clinical Procedures

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
anthracosis	an-thrah-KO-sis
asbestosis	as-bes-TO-sis
asthma	AZ-mah
atelectasis	at-eh-LEK-tah-sis
auscultation	aw-skul-TA-shun
bacilli	bah-SIL-i
bronchoalveolar lavage	BRONG-ko-al-ve-O-lar lah-VAJ
bronchoscopy	brong-KOS-ko-pe
chronic bronchitis	KRON-ik brong-KI-tis
chronic obstructive pulmonary disease	KRON-ik ob-STRUK-tiv PUL-mo-NAIR-e dih-ZEEZ
computed tomography of the chest	kom-PU-tid to-MOG-rah-fe of the chest
cor pulmonale	kor pul-mo-NAH-le
croup	kroop
cystic fibrosis	SIS-tik fi-BRO-sis
diphtheria	dif-THE-re-ah
emphysema	em-fi-ZE-mah
endotracheal intubation	en-do-TRA-ke-al in-tu-BA-shun
epistaxis	ep-ih-STAX-is
exudate	EX-su-dayt
infiltrate	IN-fil-trayt
laryngoscopy	lah-rin-GOS-ko-pe
lung biopsy	lung BI-op-se
lung cancer	lung KAN-ser
magnetic resonance imaging of the chest	mag-NET-ik REH-zo-nants IM-aj-ing of the chest
mesothelioma	mez-o-the-le-O-mah
obstructive lung disease	ob-STRUK-tiv lung dih-ZEEZ
palliative	PAH-le-ah-tiv
paroxysmal	par-ox-IZ-mal
percussion	per-KUH-shun
pertussis	per-TUH-sis
pleural effusion	PLUR-al eh-FU-zhun
pleural rub	PLUR-al rub
pleurisy	PLUR-ih-se
pneumoconiosis	nu-mo-ko-ne-O-sis
pneumonia	nu-MO-nyah
positron emission tomography of the lung	POS-ih-tron e-MIH-shun to-MOG-rah-fe of the lung
pulmonary abscess	PUL-mo-nair-e AB-ses
pulmonary edema	PUL-mo-nair-e eh-DE-mah
pulmonary embolism	PUL-mo-nair-e EM-bo-liz-m
pulmonary fibrosis	PUL-mo-nair-e fi-BRO-sis
pulmonary function tests	PUL-mo-nair-e FUNK-shun tests
pulmonary infarction	PUL-mo-nair-e in-FARK-shun
purulent	PU-ru-lent
rales	raylz
restrictive lung disease	re-STRIK-tiv lung dih-ZEEZ
rhonchi	RONG-ki
sarcoidosis	sar-koy-DO-sis
silicosis	sil-ih-KO-sis
sputum	SPU-tum
sputum culture	SPU-tum KUL-chur
stridor	STRI-dor
thoracentesis	thor-ah-sen-TE-sis

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
thoracoscopy	thor-ah-KOS-ko-pe
thoracotomy	thor-ah-KOT-o-me
tracheostomy	tra-ke-OS-to-me
tracheotomy	tra-ke-OT-o-me
tube thoracostomy	toob thor-ah-KOS-to-me
tuberculin test	tu-BER-ku-lin test
tuberculosis	tu-ber-ku-LO-sis
ventilation-perfusion scan	ven-tih-LA-shun - per-FU-zhun scan
wheezes	WEEZ-ez

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of the word parts in the spaces provided. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
adenoid/o	_____
alveol/o	_____
bronch/o	_____
bronchi/o	_____
bronchiol/o	_____
capn/o	_____
coni/o	_____
cyan/o	_____
epiglott/o	_____
laryng/o	_____
lob/o	_____
mediastin/o	_____
nas/o	_____
or/o	_____
orth/o	_____
ox/o	_____
pector/o	_____
pharyng/o	_____
phon/o	_____
phren/o	_____
pleur/o	_____
pneum/o	_____
pneumon/o	_____
pulmon/o	_____
py/o	_____
rhin/o	_____
sinus/o	_____
spir/o	_____
tel/o	_____
thorac/o	_____
tonsill/o	_____
trache/o	_____

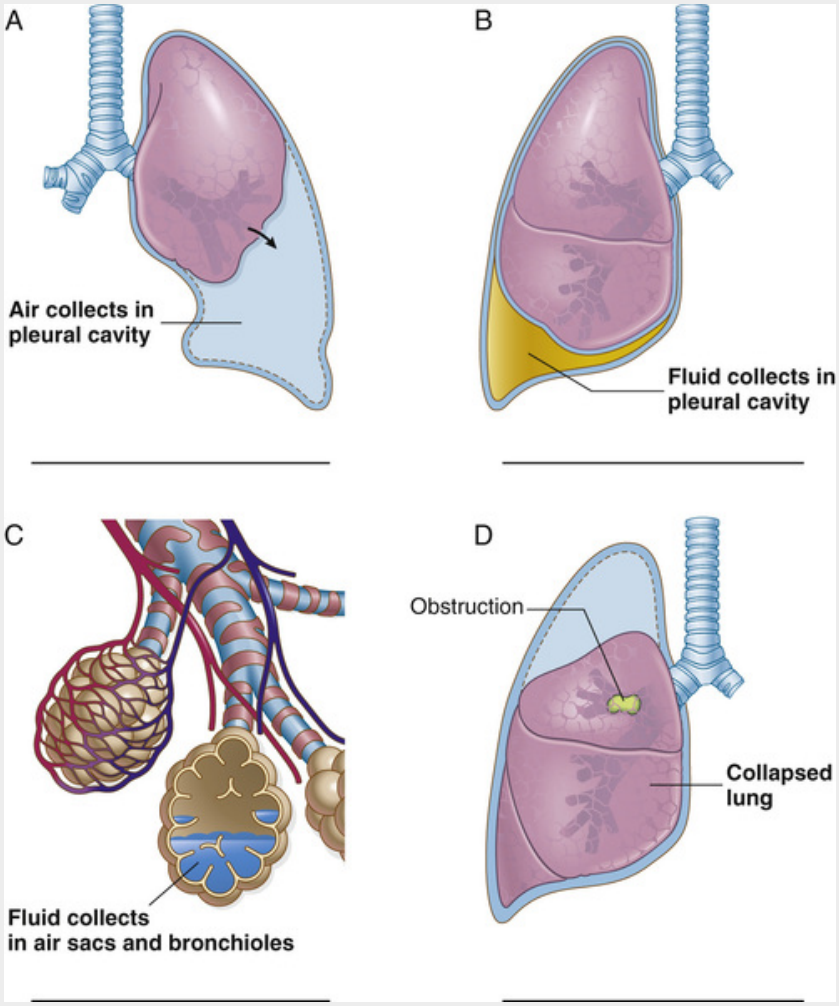
Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-algia	_____
-capnia	_____
-centesis	_____
-dynia	_____
-ectasis	_____
-ectomy	_____
-ema	_____
-lysis	_____
-osmia	_____
-oxia	_____
-phonia	_____
-plasty	_____
-pnea	_____
-ptysis	_____
-rrhea	_____
-scopy	_____
-sphyxia	_____
-stenosis	_____
-stomy	_____
-thorax	_____
-tomy	_____
-trophy	_____

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING
a-, an-	_____
brady-	_____
dys-	_____
em-	_____
eu-	_____
ex-	_____
hyper-	_____
hypo-	_____
para-	_____
per-	_____
re-	_____
tachy-	_____

Label the following lung abnormalities: atelectasis, pleural effusion, pneumothorax, and pulmonary edema.


A
Air collects in
pleural cavity
B
Fluid collects in
pleural cavity
C
Fluid collects
in air sacs and bronchioles
D
Obstruction
Collapsed
lung

CHAPTER 13

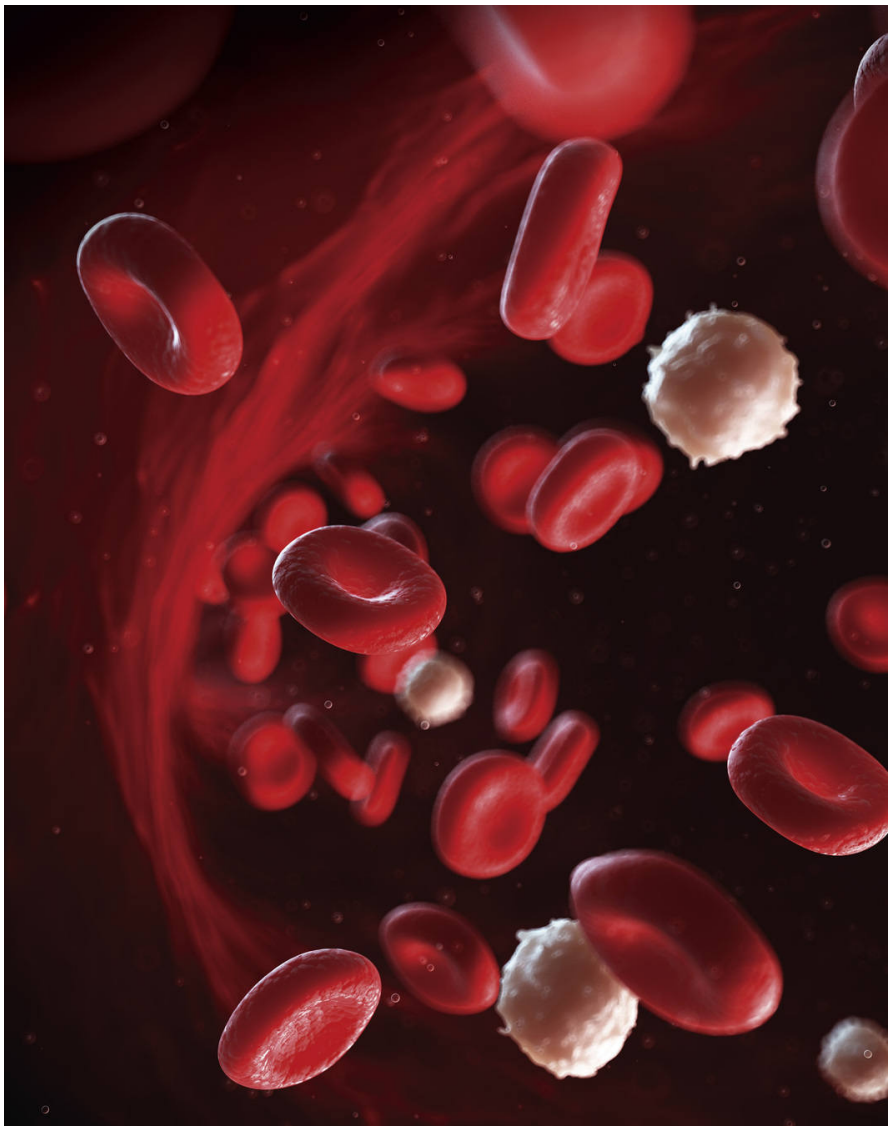
Blood System

CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 474
Composition and Formation of Blood 474
Blood Types 480
Blood Clotting 480
Vocabulary 482
Terminology 484
Pathology 487
Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures 492
Abbreviations 496
Practical Applications 497
In Person: Autologous Stem Cell Transplant 499
Exercises 500
Answers to Exercises 506
Pronunciation of Terms 508
Review Sheet 511

CHAPTER GOALS

- Identify terms relating to the composition, formation, and function of blood.
- Differentiate among the four major blood types.
- Identify terms related to blood clotting.
- Build words and recognize combining forms used in blood system terminology.
- Identify various pathologic conditions affecting blood.
- Describe various laboratory tests and clinical procedures used with hematologic disorders, and recognize relevant abbreviations.
- Apply your new knowledge to understanding medical terms in their proper contexts, such as medical reports and records.



Introduction

The primary function of blood is to maintain a constant environment for the other living tissues of the body. Blood transports nutrients, gases, and wastes to and from the cells of the body. Nutrients from food, digested in the stomach and small intestine, pass into the bloodstream through the lining cells of the small intestine. Blood then carries these nutrients to all body cells. Oxygen enters the body through the air sacs of the lungs. Red blood cells then transport the oxygen to cells throughout the body. Blood also helps remove the waste products released by cells. It carries gaseous waste (such as carbon dioxide) to the lungs to be exhaled. It carries chemical waste, such as urea, to the kidneys to be excreted in the urine.

Blood transports chemical messengers called hormones from their sites of secretion in glands, such as the thyroid or pituitary, to distant sites where they regulate growth, reproduction, and energy production. These hormones are discussed later in the endocrine chapter, page 699.

Finally, blood contains proteins, white blood cells and antibodies that fight infection, and platelets (thrombocytes) and other proteins that help the blood to clot.

Composition and Formation of Blood

Blood is composed of **cells** (45% of blood volume), or formed elements, suspended in a clear, straw-colored liquid called **plasma** (55% of blood volume). The cells are **erythrocytes** (red blood cells or RBCs), **leukocytes** (white blood cells or WBCs), and platelets or thrombocytes (clotting cells). Plasma is a solution of water, proteins, sugar, salts, hormones, lipids, and vitamins.

A Drop of Blood

A small drop of blood normally contains approximately 4-6 million RBCs, 7-10 thousand WBC, 150-450 thousand platelets.

Cells

Beginning at birth, all blood cells originate in the marrow cavity of bones. Both the red blood cells that carry oxygen and the white blood cells that fight infection arise from the same blood-forming or **hematopoietic stem cells.** Under the influence of proteins in the blood and bone marrow, stem cells change their size and shape to become specialized, or **differentiated.** In this process, the cells change in size from large (immature cells) to small (mature forms), and the cell nucleus shrinks (in red cells, the nucleus actually disappears). Figure 13-1 illustrates these changes in the formation of blood cells. Use Figure 13-1 as a reference as you learn the names of mature blood cells and their earlier forms.

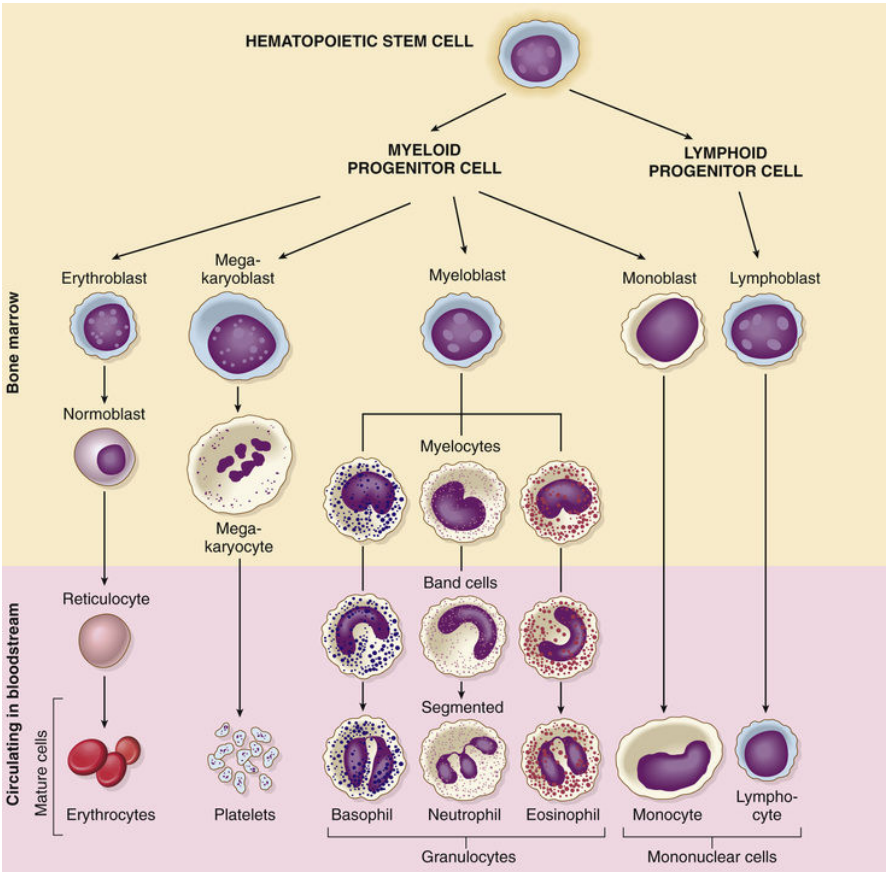


FIGURE 13-1 Stages in blood cell development (hematopoiesis). All blood cells originate from **hematopoietic stem cells.** Progenitor cells are derived from hematopoietic stem cells. **Myeloid progenitor cells** give rise to **erythroblasts, megakaryoblasts, myeloblasts** and **monoblasts. Lymphoid progenitor cells** give rise to **lymphoblasts**. Notice that the suffix **-blast** indicates immature forms of all cells. **Band cells** are identical to **segmented granulocytes** except that the nucleus is U-shaped and it does not have distinct nuclear lobes.

Erythrocytes

As a red blood cell matures (from erythroblast to erythrocyte), it loses its nucleus and assumes the shape of a biconcave disk. This shape (a depressed or hollow surface on each side of the cell, resembling a cough drop with a thin central portion) allows for a large surface area so that absorption and release of gases (oxygen and carbon dioxide) can take place (Figure 13-2A and B). Red cells contain the unique protein **hemoglobin,** composed of **heme** (iron-containing pigment) and **globin** (protein). Hemoglobin enables the erythrocyte to carry oxygen. The combination of oxygen and hemoglobin (oxyhemoglobin) produces the bright red color of blood.

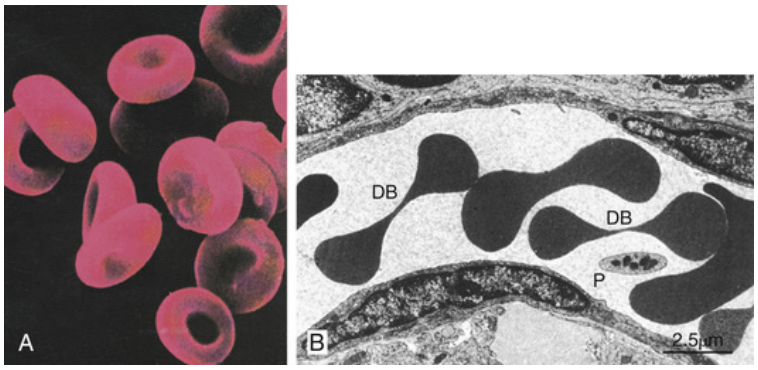


FIGURE 13-2 **A, Normal erythrocytes** (red blood cells). **B, Electron micrograph showing erythrocytes within a capillary.** Note the classic biconcave or "dumbbell" shape (DB) seen when the erythrocyte is cut through its thin central zone. A platelet (P) is seen as well.

Erythrocytes originate in the bone marrow. The hormone called **erythropoietin** (secreted by the kidneys) stimulates their production (**-poiesis** means formation). Erythrocytes live and fulfill their role of transporting gases for about 120 days in the bloodstream. After this time, **macrophages** (in the spleen, liver, and bone marrow) destroy the worn-out erythrocytes. From 2 million to 10 million red cells are destroyed each second, but because they are constantly replaced, the number of circulating cells remains constant at 4 million to 6 million per microliter (μL) of blood.

Macrophages break down erythrocytes and hemoglobin into heme and globin (protein) portions. The heme releases iron and decomposes into a yellow-orange pigment called **bilirubin.** The iron in hemoglobin is used again to form new red cells or is stored in the spleen, liver, or bone marrow. Bilirubin is excreted into bile by the liver, and from bile it enters the small intestine via the common bile duct. Finally it is excreted in the stool, where its color changes to brown. Figure 13-3 reviews the sequence of events in hemoglobin breakdown.

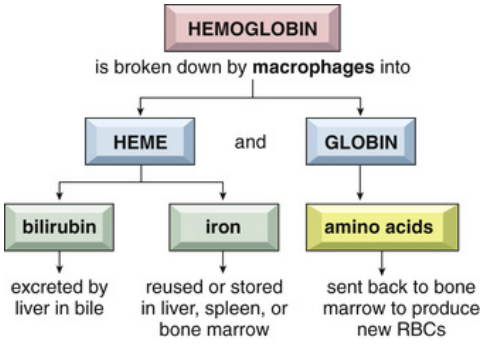


FIGURE 13-3 The breakdown of hemoglobin.

Leukocytes

White blood cells (7000 to 10,000 cells per microliter of blood) are less numerous than erythrocytes, but there are five different types of mature leukocytes, shown in Figure 13-4. These are three polymorphonuclear granulocytes: eosinophil, basophil, and neutrophil; and two mononuclear leukocytes: lymphocyte and monocyte.

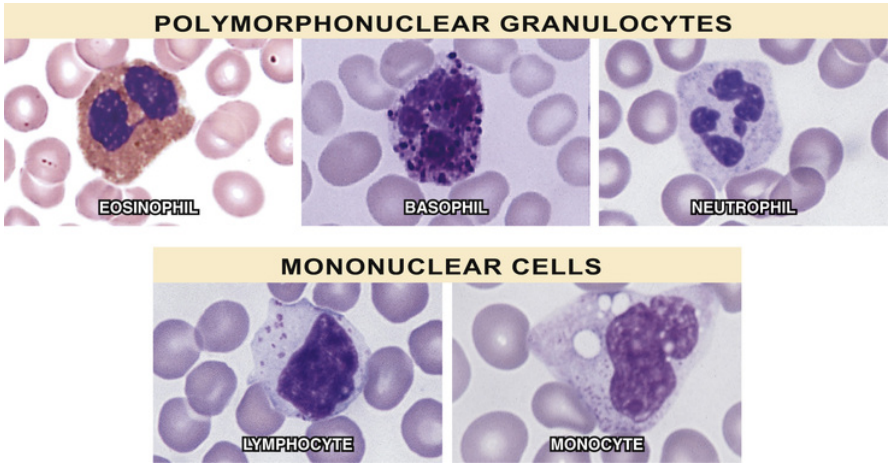


FIGURE 13-4 Leukocytes.

The **granulocytes,** or **polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMNs),** are the most numerous (about 60%). The three granulocytic leukocytes end with the suffix -phil (meaning attraction to). This reflects their affinity for various dyes. **Eosinophils** contain granules that stain with eosin, a red acidic dye. These cells increase in allergic responses and engulf substances that trigger the allergies. **Basophils** contain granules that stain dark blue with a basic (alkaline) dye. These granules contain heparin (an anticlotting substance) and histamine (a chemical released in allergic responses). **Neutrophils** contain granules that are neutral; they do not stain intensely and show only a pale color. Neutrophils are **phagocytes** (**phag/o** means to eat or swallow) that accumulate at sites of infection, where they ingest and destroy bacteria. Figure 13-5 shows phagocytosis by a neutrophil.

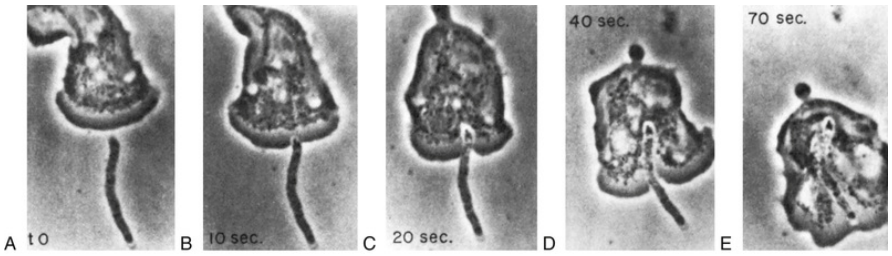


FIGURE 13-5 **Phagocytosis** (ingestion) of a bacterium by a neutrophil.

Specific proteins called **colony-stimulating factors** (CSFs) promote the growth of granulocytes in bone marrow. **G-CSF** (granulocyte CSF) and **GM-CSF** (granulocyte-macrophage CSF) are given to cancer patients to restore granulocyte production. **Erythropoietin,** like CSFs, can be produced by recombinant DNA techniques. It stimulates red blood cell production (erythropoiesis). Normally erythropoietin is made by the kidney. Thus patients with kidney failure can become anemic and are often treated with EPO to stimulate red blood cell production.

Although all granulocytes are **polymorphonuclear** (they have multilobed nuclei), the term **polymorphonuclear granulocytes ("polys")** most often refers to neutrophils, which are the most numerous of the granulocytes.

Mononuclear (containing one large nucleus) **leukocytes** do not have large numbers of granules in their cytoplasm, but they may have a few granules. These are **lymphocytes** and **monocytes** (see Figure 13-1). Lymphocytes are made in bone marrow and lymph nodes and circulate both in the bloodstream and in the parallel circulating system, the lymphatic system.

Lymphocytes play an important role in the **immune response** that protects the body against infection. They can directly attack foreign matter and, in addition, make **antibodies** that neutralize and can lead to the destruction of foreign **antigens** (bacteria and viruses). **Monocytes** are phagocytic cells that also fight disease. As **macrophages**, they move from the bloodstream into tissues and dispose of dead and dying cells and other tissue debris by phagocytosis.

Table 13-1 reviews the different types of leukocytes, their numbers in the blood, and their functions.

TABLE 13-1
LEUKOCYTES

LEUKOCYTE	NORMAL PERCENTAGE IN BLOOD	FUNCTION
Granulocytes		
Basophil	0-1	Responds to allergens; releases histamine and heparin
Eosinophil	1-4	Responds to parasitic infections and is a phagocyte in allergic reactions
Neutrophil	50-70	Major role in fighting bacterial infection; phagocyte
Mononuclear Cells		
Lymphocyte	20-40	Controls the immune response; makes antibodies to antigens
Monocyte	3-8	Phagocytic cell that becomes a macrophage and digests bacteria and tissue debris

Platelets (Thrombocytes)

Platelets, actually blood cell fragments, are formed in bone marrow from giant cells with multilobed nuclei called **megakaryocytes** (Figure 13-6A and B). The main function of platelets is to help blood to clot. Specific terms related to blood clotting are discussed later in this chapter.

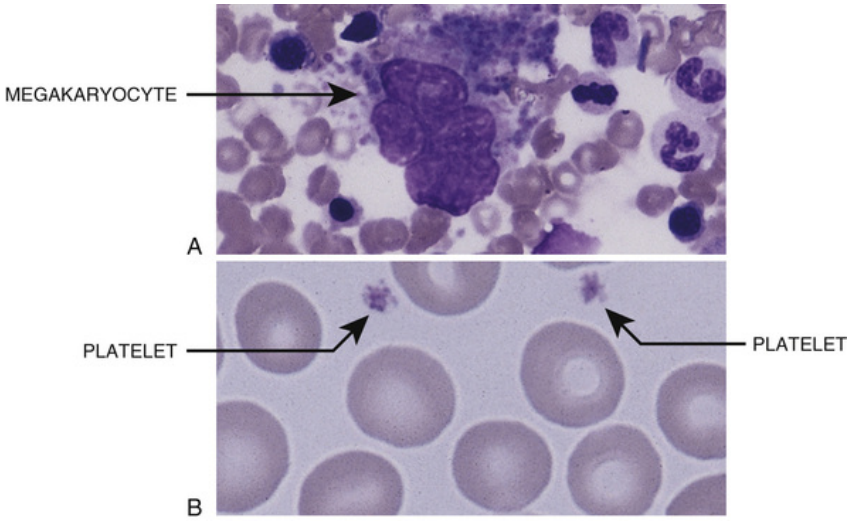


FIGURE 13-6 A, Megakaryocyte. B, Platelets.

Plasma

Plasma, the liquid part of the blood, consists of water, dissolved proteins, nutrients, wastes, salts, hormones, lipids, and vitamins. The four major plasma proteins are **albumin, globulins, fibrinogen,** and **prothrombin** (the last two are clotting proteins).

Albumin maintains the proper proportion (and concentration) of water in the blood. Because albumin cannot pass easily through capillary walls, it remains in the blood and carries smaller molecules bound to its surface. It attracts water from the tissues back into the bloodstream and thus opposes the water's tendency to leave the blood and leak out into tissue spaces. **Edema** (swelling) results when too much fluid from blood "leaks" out into tissues. This happens in a mild form when a person ingests too much salt (water is retained in the blood and seeps out into tissues) and in a severe form when a person is burned in a fire. In this situation, albumin escapes from capillaries as a result of the burn injury. Then water cannot be held in the blood; it escapes through the skin, and blood volume drops.

Globulins are another component of blood and one of the plasma proteins. There are alpha, beta, and gamma globulins. The gamma globulins are **immunoglobulins,** which are antibodies that bind to and sometimes destroy antigens (foreign substances). Examples of immunoglobulin antibodies are **IgG** (found in high concentration in plasma) and **IgA** (found in breast milk, saliva, tears, and respiratory mucus). Other immunoglobulins are **IgM, IgD,** and **IgE.** Immunoglobulins are separated from other plasma proteins by **electrophoresis.** In this process, an electrical current passes through a solution of plasma. The different proteins in plasma separate based mainly on their size and electric charge.

Plasmapheresis (**-apheresis** means removal) is the process of separating plasma from cells. In plasmapheresis, the entire blood sample is spun in a centrifuge machine. Because blood cells are larger and heavier, they move to the bottom of the sample, leaving the plasma on top.

Figure 13-7 reviews the composition of blood.

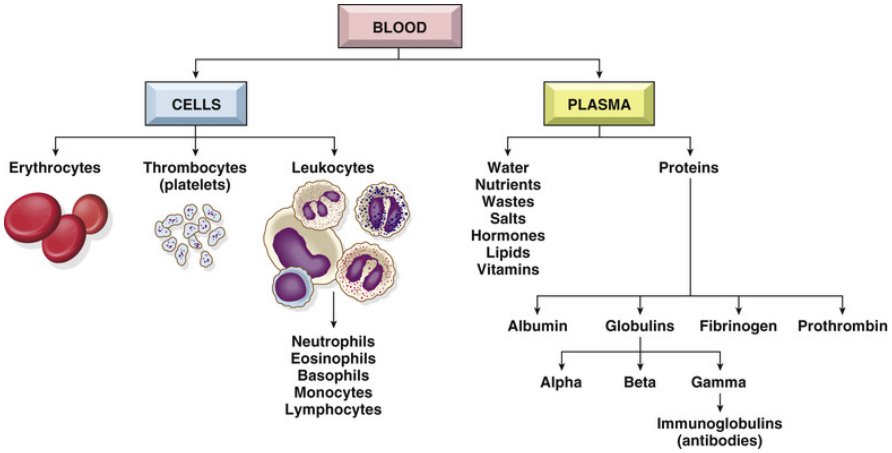


FIGURE 13-7 The composition of blood.

Blood Types

Transfusions of whole blood (cells and plasma) are used to replace blood lost after injury, during surgery, or in severe shock. A patient who is severely anemic and needs only red blood cells will receive a transfusion of **packed red cells** (whole blood with most of the plasma removed). Human blood falls into four main types: A, B, AB, and O. These types are based on the antigens on red blood cells and the antibodies found in each person's serum (Table 13-2).

TABLE 13-2
BLOOD TYPES

TYPE	PERCENTAGE IN POPULATION	RED CELL ANTIGENS	SERUM ANTIBODIES
A	41	A	Yes (anti-B)
B	10	B	Yes (anti-A)
AB	4	A and B	No (anti-A or anti-B)
O	45	No A and B	Yes (anti-A and anti-B)

There are harmful effects of transfusing blood from a donor of one blood type into a recipient who has blood of another blood type. Therefore, before blood is transfused, both the blood donor and the blood recipient are tested, to make sure that the transfused blood will be compatible with the recipient's blood type. During transfusion, if blood is not compatible, then **hemolysis** (breakdown of red blood cells) occurs. This may be followed by excessive clotting in blood vessels (**disseminated intravascular coagulation,** or **DIC**), which is a life-threatening condition.

Besides A and B antigens, many other antigens are located on the surface of red blood cells. One of these is called the **Rh factor** (named because it was first found in the blood of a rhesus monkey). The term Rh positive (Rh+) refers to a person who is born with the Rh antigen on his or her red blood cells. An Rh negative (Rh−) person does not have the Rh antigen. See Chapter 4, page 114, for more information about the Rh factor. In clinical practice, blood types are named to indicate both Rh and ABO antigen status. If a woman has an A+ (A positive) blood type, for example, this means that she was born with both A antigen and Rh antigen on her red blood cells. If a man has a B− (B negative) blood type, this means he was born with the B antigen on his red blood cells but not Rh antigen.

Why is Type O the "Universal Donor" Blood Type?

Type O blood does not contain A or B red cell antigens and therefore will not react with antibodies in any recipient's bloodstream. Anti-A and anti-B antibodies present in type O blood become diluted in the recipient's bloodstream and do not cause an adverse reaction.

Blood Clotting

Blood clotting, or **coagulation,** is a complicated process involving many different substances and chemical reactions. The final result (usually taking less than 15 minutes) is the formation of a **fibrin clot** from the plasma protein **fibrinogen.** The suffix -gen means giving rise to. Platelets are important in beginning the process following injury to tissues or blood vessels. The platelets become sticky and collect, or aggregate, at the site of injury. Then, in combination with tissue and protein clotting factors, plus calcium, vitamin K, prothrombin, and thrombin, fibrinogen is converted to fibrin to form a clot (Figure 13-8). One of the important clotting factors is factor VIII. It is missing in some people who are born with hemophilia. Other hemophiliacs are missing factor IX.

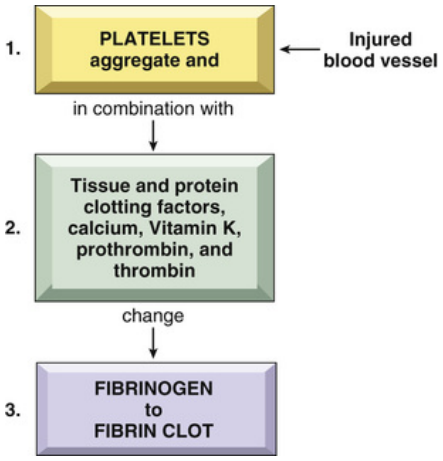


FIGURE 13-8 The sequence of events in blood clotting.

The fibrin threads form the clot by trapping red blood cells (Figure 13-9 shows a red blood cell trapped by fibrin threads). Then the clot retracts into a tight ball, leaving behind a clear fluid called **serum.** Serum is related to plasma. It is plasma after the clotting factors have been removed. Normally, clots (thrombi) do not form in blood vessels unless the vessel is damaged or the flow of blood is impeded. **Anticoagulant substances** in the blood inhibit blood clotting, so clots do not form. **Heparin,** produced by tissue cells (especially in the liver), is an example of an anticoagulant. Other drugs such as **warfarin (Coumadin)** are given to patients with thromboembolic diseases to prevent the formation of clots. **Direct oral anticoagulants (DOACs)** work by inhibiting blood clotting factors such as thrombin.

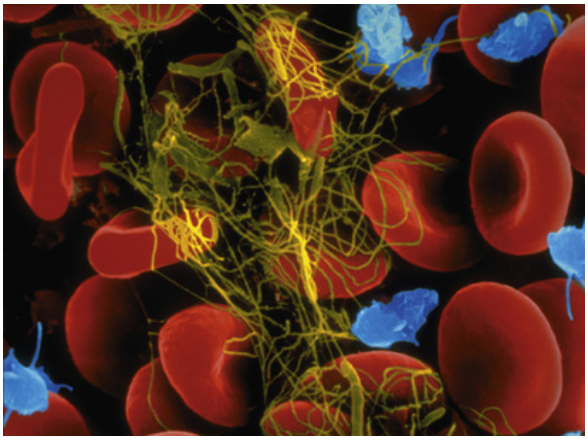


FIGURE 13-9 A red blood cell enmeshed in threads of fibrin.

Vocabulary

This list reviews many of the new terms introduced in the text. Short definitions reinforce your understanding of the terms. Refer to the Pronunciation of Terms on page 508 for help with difficult or unfamiliar words.

albumin	Major protein in blood; maintains the proper amount of water in the blood.
antibody (Ab)	Specific protein (immunoglobulin) produced by lymphocytes in response to bacteria, viruses, or other antigens. An antibody is specific to an antigen and inactivates it.
antigen	Foreign substance or toxin that stimulates the production of an antibody.
basophil	White blood cell containing granules that stain blue (with basic dye) associated with release of histamine and heparin.
bilirubin	Orange-yellow pigment in bile; formed by the breakdown of hemoglobin when red blood cells are destroyed.
coagulation	Blood clotting.
colony-stimulating factor (CSF)	Protein factor that stimulates the growth and differentiation of developing blood cells. Examples are granulocyte CSF, erythropoietin, and thrombopoietin.
differentiation	Change in structure and function of a cell as it matures; specialization.
electrophoresis	Method of separating serum proteins by electrical charge and size.
eosinophil	White blood cell containing granules that stain red; associated with allergic reactions.
erythroblast	Immature red blood cell.
erythrocyte	Red blood cell. There are about 5 million per microliter (μL) or cubic millimeter (mm^3) of blood.
erythropoietin (EPO)	Hormone secreted by the kidneys; stimulates red blood cell formation.
fibrin	Protein that forms the basis of a blood clot.
fibrinogen	Plasma protein that is converted to fibrin in the clotting process.
globulin	Plasma protein; alpha, beta, and gamma (immune) globulins are examples.
granulocyte	White blood cell with cytoplasmic granules: eosinophil, neutrophil, and basophil.
hematopoietic stem cell	Cell in the bone marrow that gives rise to all types of blood cells.
hemoglobin	Blood protein containing iron; carries oxygen in red blood cells.
heparin	Anticoagulant found in blood and tissue cells.
immune reaction	Response of the immune system to foreign invasion.
immunoglobulin	Protein (a globulin) with antibody activity; examples are IgG, IgM, IgA, IgE, IgD. Immun/o means protection.
leukocyte	White blood cell.
lymphocyte	Mononuclear leukocyte that produces antibodies to fight disease.
macrophage	Monocyte that migrates from the blood to tissue spaces. As a phagocyte, it engulfs foreign material and debris. In the liver, spleen, and bone marrow, macrophages destroy worn out red blood cells and also engulf bacteria and other harmful organisms.
megakaryocyte	Large platelet precursor cell found in the bone marrow.
monocyte	Leukocyte with one large nucleus. It is a cell that engulfs foreign material and debris. Monocytes become macrophages as they leave the blood and enter body tissues.
mononuclear	Pertaining to a cell (leukocyte) with a single round nucleus; lymphocytes and monocytes are mononuclear leukocytes.
myeloblast	Immature bone marrow cell that gives rise to granulocytes.
neutrophil	Granulocytic leukocyte formed in bone marrow. It is a phagocytic tissue-fighting cell. Also called a **polymorphonuclear leukocyte.**
plasma	Liquid portion of blood; contains water, proteins, salts, nutrients, wastes,

	lipids, hormones, and vitamins.
plasmapheresis	Removal of plasma from withdrawn blood. Collected cells are retransfused back into the donor. Fresh-frozen plasma or salt solution is used to replace withdrawn plasma.
platelet	Small blood cell fragment that collects at sites of injury to begin the clotting process.
polymorphonuclear	Pertaining to a white blood cell with a multilobed nucleus; neutrophil.
prothrombin	Plasma protein; converted to thrombin in the clotting process.
reticulocyte	Immature erythrocyte. A network (reticulum) of strands is seen after staining the cell with special dyes.
Rh factor	Antigen on red blood cells of Rh-positive (Rh^+) individuals. The factor was first identified in the blood of a rhesus monkey.
serum	Plasma minus clotting proteins and cells. Clear, yellowish fluid that separates from blood when it is allowed to clot. It is formed from plasma, but does not contain protein-coagulation factors.
stem cell	Unspecialized cell that gives rise to mature, specialized forms. A **hematopoietic stem cell** is the progenitor for all different types of blood cells.
thrombin	Enzyme that converts fibrinogen to fibrin during coagulation.
thrombocyte	Platelet.

Terminology

Write the meanings of the medical terms in the spaces provided.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
bas/o	base (*alkaline,* the opposite of acid)	basophil _____	*The suffix -phil means attraction to. Granules in basophils are attracted to a basic dye and stain dark blue.*
chrom/o	color	hypochromic _____	*Hypochromic anemia is marked by a decreased concentration of hemoglobin in red blood cells.*
coagul/o	clotting	anticoagulant _____	
		coagulopathy _____	
cyt/o	cell	cytology _____	
eosin/o	red, dawn, rosy	eosinophil _____	
erythr/o	red	erythroblast _____	*-blast means immature.*
granul/o	granules	granulocyte _____	
hem/o	blood	hemolysis _____	*Destruction or breakdown of red blood cells. See hemolytic anemia, page 488.*
hemat/o	blood	hematocrit _____	*The suffix -crit means to separate. The hematocrit gives the percentage of red blood cells in a volume of blood. See page 492.*
hemoglobin/o	hemoglobin	hemoglobinopathy _____	
is/o	same, equal	anisocytosis _____	*An abnormality of red blood cells; they are of unequal (anis/o) size; -cytosis means an increase in the number of cells.*
kary/o	nucleus	megakaryocyte _____	
leuk/o	white	leukopenia _____	
mon/o	one, single	monocyte _____	*The cell has a single, rather than a multilobed, nucleus.*
morph/o	shape, form	morphology _____	
myel/o	bone marrow	myeloblast _____	*The suffix -blast indicates an immature or embryonic cell.*
		myelodysplasia _____	*This is a preleukemic condition.*
neutr/o	neutral (neither base nor acid)	neutropenia _____	*This term refers to neutrophils.*
nucle/o	nucleus	polymorphonuclear _____	
phag/o	eat, swallow	phagocyte _____	
poikil/o	varied, irregular	poikilocytosis _____	*Irregularity in the shape of red blood cells. Poikilocytosis occurs in certain types of anemia.*
sider/o	iron	sideropenia _____	
spher/o	globe, round	spherocytosis _____	*In this condition, the erythrocyte has a round shape, making the cell fragile and easily able to be destroyed.*
thromb/o	clot	thrombocytopenia _____	

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
-apheresis	removal, a carrying away	plasmapheresis _____ *A centrifuge spins blood to remove plasma from the other parts of blood.* leukapheresis _____ plateletpheresis _____ *Note that the a of apheresis is dropped in this term. Platelets are removed from the donor's blood (and used in a patient), and the remainder of the blood is reinfused into the donor.*
-blast	immature or embryonic cell	monoblast _____
-cytosis	abnormal condition of cells (increase in cells)	macrocytosis _____ *Macrocytes are erythrocytes that are larger (macro-) than normal.* microcytosis _____ *Erythrocytes are smaller (micro-) than normal. Table 13-3 reviews terms related to abnormalities of red blood cell morphology.*
-emia	blood condition	leukemia _____ *See page 490.*
-gen	giving rise to; producing	fibrinogen _____ *Fibrin is a protein that forms the basis of a blood clot.*
-globin	protein	hemoglobin _____
-globulin		immunoglobulin _____
-lytic	pertaining to destruction	thrombolytic therapy _____ *Used to dissolve clots.*
-oid	derived, related to, or originating from	myeloid _____ ***Myeloid progenitor cells** give rise to developing erythrocytes, platelets, granulocytes, and monocytes. See Figure 13-1.* lymphoid _____ **Lymphoid progenitor cells** in bone marrow give rise to developing lymphocytes.
-osis	abnormal condition	thrombosis _____
-penia	deficiency	granulocytopenia _____ pancytopenia _____
-phage	eat, swallow	macrophage _____ *Large phagocyte that destroys worn out RBCs and foreign materials.*
-philia	attraction for (an increase in cell numbers)	eosinophilia _____ neutrophilia _____
-phoresis	carrying, transmission	electrophoresis _____
-poiesis	formation	hematopoiesis _____ erythropoiesis _____ ***Erythropoietin** is produced by the kidneys to stimulate erythrocyte formation.* myelopoiesis _____
-stasis	stop, control	hemostasis _____

TABLE 13-3

ABNORMALITIES OF RED BLOOD CELL MORPHOLOGY

ABNORMALITY	DESCRIPTION
Anisocytosis	Cells are **unequal** in size
Hypo**chromia**	Cells have reduced **color** (less hemoglobin)
Macrocytosis	Cells are **large**
Microcytosis	Cells are **small**
Poikilocytosis	Cells are **irregularly shaped**
Spherocytosis	Cells are **spherical** (loss of normal concave shape)

Don't Confuse -apheresis with -phoresis

The suffix **-apheresis** refers to the removal of blood from a donor with a portion separated and retained and the remainder reinfused into the donor (see page 494). The suffix **-phoresis** indicates transmission (as in **electrophoresis,** the transmission of electricity to separate substances).

Pathology

Any abnormal or pathologic condition of the blood generally is referred to as a blood **dyscrasia** (disease). The blood dyscrasias discussed in this section are organized in the following order: diseases of red blood cells, disorders of blood clotting, diseases of white blood cells, and diseases of the bone marrow.

Diseases of Red Blood Cells

anemia	**Deficiency in erythrocytes or hemoglobin.** The most common type of anemia is **iron deficiency anemia**; it is caused by a lack of iron, which is required for hemoglobin production (Figure 13-10).
	Other types of anemia include:
1. **aplastic anemia**	**Failure of blood cell production in the bone marrow.** The cause of most cases of aplastic anemia is unknown (idiopathic), but some have been linked to benzene exposure and rarely to antibiotics such as chloramphenicol. **Pancytopenia** occurs when stem cells fail to produce leukocytes, platelets, and erythrocytes. Blood transfusions prolong life, allowing the marrow time to resume its normal functioning, and antibiotics control infections. Bone marrow transplantation and regimens of drugs that inhibit the immune system are successful treatments in cases in which spontaneous recovery is unlikely.
2. **hemolytic anemia**	**Reduction in red cells due to excessive destruction.** One example of hemolytic anemia is **congenital spherocytic anemia (hereditary spherocytosis).** Instead of their normal biconcave shape, erythrocytes become spheroidal. This rounded shape makes them fragile and easily destroyed (hemolysis). Shortened red cell survival results in increased reticulocytes in blood as the bone marrow compensates for hemolysis of mature erythrocytes. Because the spleen destroys red cells, removal of the spleen usually improves this anemia. Figure 13-11 shows the altered shape of erythrocytes in hereditary spherocytosis.
3. **sickle cell anemia**	**Hereditary disorder of abnormal hemoglobin producing sickle-shaped erythrocytes and hemolysis.** The crescent, or sickle, shape of the erythrocyte (see Figure 13-11) is caused by an abnormal type of hemoglobin (hemoglobin S) in the red cell. Sickled red blood cells are sticky and form globs that block blood flow. Serious complications include clotting, stroke, and less flow of blood through the lungs with poor oxygenation. Signs and symptoms are arthralgias, acute attacks of abdominal pain, and ulcerations of the extremities. The genetic defect (presence of the hemoglobin S gene) is particularly prevalent among people of African or Hispanic ancestry and appears with different degrees of severity. Persons with the sickle cell trait inherit just one gene for the disorder and usually do not have symptoms. Gene therapy for sickle cell anemia (correcting the mutation in hematopoietic stem and progenitor cells in bone marrow) is an exploratory treatment.
4. **thalassemia**	**Inherited disorder of abnormal hemoglobin production leading to hypochromia.** A defect in a gene affects production of **globin,** the protein that is the major component of hemoglobin. This condition, usually occurring in persons of Mediterranean or Asian background, manifests in varying forms and degrees of severity and usually leads to hypochromic anemia with diminished hemoglobin content in red cells (see Figure 13-11). *Thalassa* is a Greek word meaning sea.
5. **pernicious anemia**	**Lack of mature erythrocytes caused by inability to absorb vitamin B12 into the bloodstream.** Vitamin B12 is necessary for the proper development and maturation of erythrocytes. It is common in a variety of foods, but it cannot be absorbed into the bloodstream without the aid of a special substance called **intrinsic factor,** normally found in gastric juice. People with

	pernicious anemia lack this factor, and the result is unsuccessful maturation of red blood cells, with an excess of large, immature, and poorly functioning cells in the bone marrow and large, often oval, red cells (macrocytes) in the circulation. Treatment is injection or oral administration of vitamin B12 for life. Figure 13-11 illustrates cells in pernicious anemia. Pernicious means harmful or dangerous. This type of anemia was named before we knew its cause and how to treat it. Then, it was nearly always fatal within 6 months.
hemochromatosis	**Excess iron deposits throughout the body.** Common signs and symptoms may include skin pigmentation, joint pain, and fatigue. Without timely treatment, serious problems such as cirrhosis, diabetes, and cardiac failure may occur. This condition can be hereditary or caused by frequent blood transfusions for a chronic blood condition.
polycythemia vera	**General increase in red blood cells (erythremia).** Blood consistency is viscous (thick) because of greatly increased numbers of erythrocytes. The bone marrow is hyperplastic, and leukocytosis and thrombocytosis commonly accompany the increase in red blood cells. Treatment consists of reduction of red cell volume to normal levels by phlebotomy (removal of blood from a vein) and by suppressing blood cell production with myelotoxic drugs.

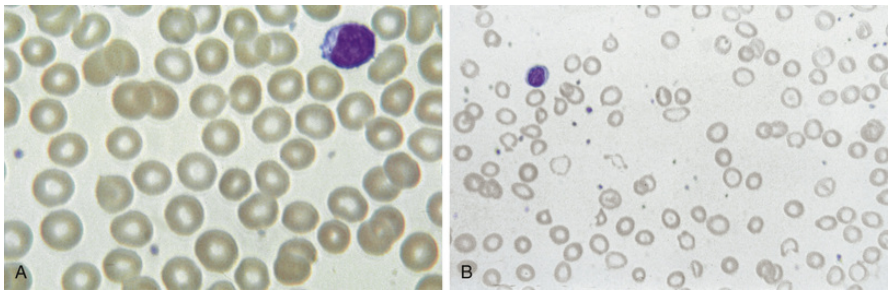


FIGURE 13-10 **Normal red blood cells and iron deficiency anemia. A, Normal red cells.** Erythrocytes are fairly uniform in size and shape. The red cells are normal in hemoglobin content (normochromic) and size (normocytic). **B, Iron deficiency anemia.** Many erythrocytes are small (**microcytic**) and have increased central pallor (**hypochromic**). Red cells in this slide show variation in size (**anisocytosis**) and shape (**poikilocytosis**).

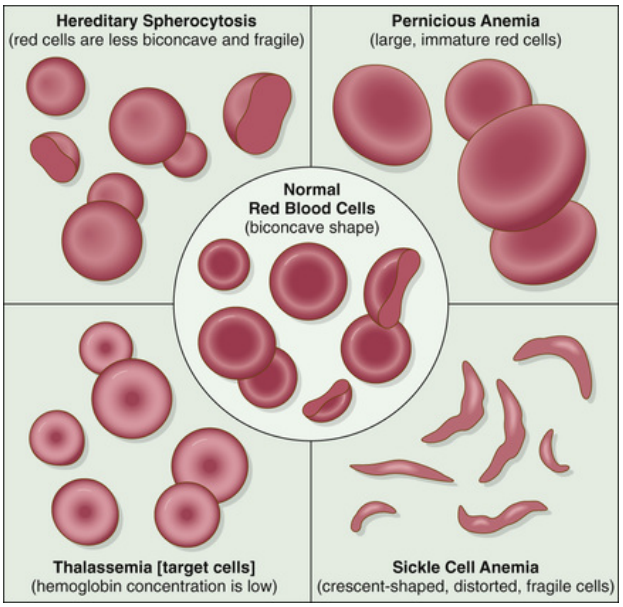


FIGURE 13-11 Normal red blood cells and the abnormal cells in several types of anemia.

Disorders of Blood Clotting

hemophilia	**Excessive bleeding caused by hereditary lack of factors VIII or IX necessary for blood clotting.** Although the platelet count of a hemophiliac patient is normal, deficiency in clotting factors (factor VIII or IX) results in a prolonged coagulation time. Patients with clotting factor deficiencies often bleed into weight-bearing joints, especially ankles and knees. Treatment consists of administration of the deficient factors. Progress is being made in treating hemophilia with gene therapy.
purpura	**Multiple pinpoint hemorrhages and accumulation of blood under the skin.** Hemorrhages into the skin and mucous membranes produce reddish or bluish discoloration of the skin. Lesions appear with increasing volume of bleeding. **Petechiae** are small, pinpoint purple or red spots on the skin while **ecchymoses** are larger, blue or purplish bruises. (See Figure 13-12). Purpura can result from a deficiency of platelets **(thrombocytopenic purpura).** The cause may be immunologic, meaning that the body produces an antiplatelet factor that harms its own platelets **(autoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura).** Treatments are splenectomy (the spleen is the site of platelet destruction) and drug therapy to decrease the immune response.

FIGURE 13-12 **A, Petechiae** result from bleeding from capillaries or small arterioles. **B, Ecchymoses** are larger and more extensive than petechiae.

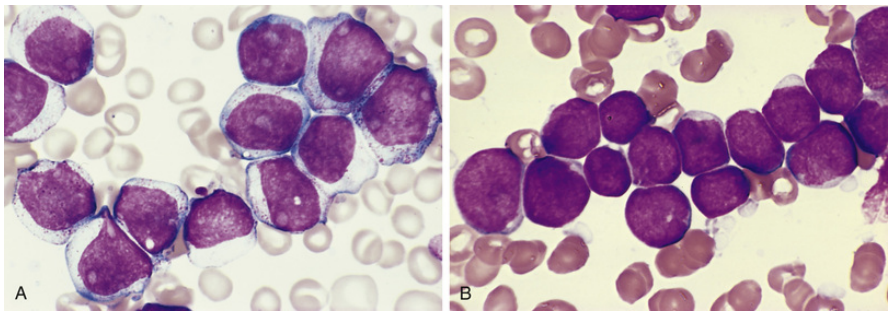
Sickle Cell Trait and Malaria

People who have sickle cell trait (with one mutated gene) are more resistant to malaria than people without the trait. Thus resistance to malaria allows people with the sickle cell trait to live longer, reproduce, and pass the inherited sickle cell trait to future generations.

Why Hemophilia Mainly Affects Males

Because the genes for factors VIII and IX are on the X chromosome, hemophilia mainly affects males. Males only have one X chromosome. In females, hemophilia rarely occurs because typically one of their two X chromosomes is normal and it compensates for the defective gene if it is on the other X chromosome.

Diseases of White Blood Cells

leukemia	**Increase in malignant white blood cells (leukocytes).** Acute leukemias have common clinical characteristics: abrupt onset of signs and symptoms—fatigue, fever, bleeding, bone pain, lymphadenopathy, splenomegaly, and hepatomegaly. If the disease has spread to the spinal canal, headache and vomiting also may occur. In addition, because normal blood cells are crowded out, patients have little defense against infection. Four types of leukemia are: 1. **Acute myeloid (myelocytic) leukemia (AML).** Immature granulocytes (myeloblasts) predominate. Platelets and erythrocytes are diminished because of infiltration and replacement of the bone marrow by large numbers of myeloblasts (Figure 13-13A).  **FIGURE 13-13 Acute leukemia. A, Acute myeloid leukemia (AML).** Myeloblasts (immature granulocytes) predominate. There are large cells with small granules in their cytoplasm. AML affects primarily adults. A majority of patients achieve remission with intensive chemotherapy, but relapse is common. Hematopoietic stem cell transplantation may be a curative therapy. **B, Acute lymphoid leukemia (ALL).** Lymphoblasts (immature lymphocytes) predominate. ALL is a disease of children and young adults. Most children are cured with chemotherapy. (Courtesy Dr. Robert W. McKenna, Department of Pathology, University of Texas Southwestern Medical School, Dallas.)
	2. **Acute lymphoid (lymphocytic) leukemia (ALL).** Immature lymphocytes (lymphoblasts) predominate. This form is seen most often in children and adolescents; onset is sudden (see Figure 13-13B). 3. **Chronic myeloid (myelocytic) leukemia (CML).** Both mature and immature granulocytes are present in large numbers in the marrow and blood. This is a slowly progressive illness with which patients (often adults older than 55) may live for many years without encountering life-threatening problems. New therapies (such as the drug Gleevec) target abnormal proteins responsible for malignancy and produce long-term control. 4. **Chronic lymphoid (lymphocytic) leukemia (CLL).** Abnormal numbers of relatively mature lymphocytes predominate in the marrow, lymph nodes, and spleen. This most common form of leukemia usually occurs in the elderly and follows a slowly progressive course. It often does not require immediate treatment. All forms of leukemia are treated with chemotherapy and targeted therapy. Drugs are used to selectively injure rapidly dividing cells and interfere with signaling pathways in cells. Effective treatment can lead to a **remission** (disappearance of signs and symptoms of disease). **Relapse** occurs when disease symptoms and signs reappear, necessitating further treatment. Transplantation of normal bone marrow from donors of similar tissue type is successful in restoring normal bone marrow function in some patients with acute leukemia. This procedure is performed after high-dose chemotherapy, which is administered to eliminate the leukemic cells.

granulocytosis	**Abnormal increase in granulocytes in the blood.** An increase in neutrophils in the blood may occur in response to infection or inflammation of any type. **Eosinophilia** is an increase in eosinophilic granulocytes, seen in certain allergic conditions, such as asthma, or in parasitic infections (tapeworm, pinworm). **Basophilia** is an increase in basophilic granulocytes seen in certain types of leukemia.
mononucleosis	**Infectious, viral disease marked by increased numbers of mononuclear leukocytes and enlarged cervical lymph nodes.** This disease is transmitted by the **Epstein-Barr virus (EBV).** Lymphadenitis is present, with fever, fatigue, asthenia (weakness), and pharyngitis. Atypical lymphocytes are present in the blood, liver, and spleen (leading to hepatomegaly and splenomegaly). Mononucleosis usually is transmitted by direct oral contact (salivary exchange during kissing) and affects primarily young adults. No treatment is necessary for EBV infections. Antibiotics are not effective for self-limited viral illnesses. Rest during the period of acute symptoms and slow return to normal activities are advised.

Disease of Bone Marrow Cells

multiple myeloma	**Malignant neoplasm of bone marrow.** Malignant cells, lymphocytes called plasma cells, produce antibodies that destroy bone tissue and cause of immunoglobulins, including **Bence Jones protein**, an immunoglobulin fragment found in urine. The condition leads to osteolytic lesions, hypercalcemia, anemia, renal damage, and increased susceptibility to infection. Treatment is with analgesics, various doses of chemotherapy, and special orthopedic supports. Drugs are used as **palliative** treatment (relieving symptoms) and to stop disease progression. **Autologous bone marrow transplantation** (ABMT), in which the patient serves as his or her own donor for stem cells, may lead to prolonged remission.

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Laboratory Tests

antiglobulin (Coombs) test	**Test for the presence of antibodies that coat and damage erythrocytes.** This test determines the presence of antibodies in infants of Rh-negative women or in patients with autoimmune hemolytic anemia. It is also a screening test for blood transfusion compatibility.
complete blood count (CBC)	**Determination of numbers of blood cells, hemoglobin concentration, hematocrit, and red cell values—MCH, MCV, MCHC** (see Abbreviations).
erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)	**Speed at which erythrocytes settle out of plasma.** Venous blood is collected into an anticoagulant, and the blood is placed in a tube in a vertical position. The distance that the erythrocytes sink in a given period of time under the influence of gravity alone is the sedimentation rate. The rate increases with infections, joint inflammation, and tumor, which increase the fibrinogen content of the blood. Also called sed rate for short.
hematocrit (Hct)	**Percentage of erythrocytes in a volume of blood.** A sample of blood is spun in a centrifuge so that the erythrocytes fall to the bottom of the sample.
hemoglobin test (H, Hg, Hgb, HGB)	**Total amount of hemoglobin in a sample of peripheral blood.**
platelet count	**Number of platelets per cubic millimeter (mm^3) or microliter (μL) of blood.** Platelets normally average between 150,000 and 450,000 per mm^3 (cu mm) or μL.
prothrombin time (PT)	**Test of the ability of blood to clot.** Prothrombin is one of the clotting factors (factor II) made by the liver. This test is used to monitor (follow) patients taking certain anticoagulant drugs. The **INR (international normalized ratio)** is the ratio of patient's prothrombin time compared with standard prothrombin time obtained across the United States and the world. It is normally near 1. Patients on the anticoagulant drug warfarin are maintained at INRs of 2 to 3. Another blood clotting test, **partial thromboplastin time (PTT)**, measures other clotting factors. Both PT and PTT are often done at the same time to check for bleeding problems.
red blood cell count (RBC)	**Number of erythrocytes per cubic millimeter (mm^3) or microliter (μL) of blood.** The normal number is 4 million to 6 million per mm^3 (or μL).
red blood cell morphology	**Microscopic examination of a stained blood smear to determine the shape of individual red cells.** Abnormal morphology includes anisocytosis, poikilocytosis, microcytosis, macrocytosis, and sickle cells.
white blood cell count (WBC)	**Number of leukocytes per cubic millimeter (mm^3) or microliter (μL) of blood.** Automated counting devices record numbers within seconds. Normal number of leukocytes averages between 7000 and 10,000 per mm^3 (or μL).
white blood cell differential [count]	**Percentages of different types of leukocytes in the blood.** Some instruments can produce an automated differential count, but otherwise the cells are stained and counted under a microscope by a technician. Percentages of neutrophils, eosinophils, basophils, monocytes, lymphocytes, and immature cells (bands) are determined. See page 498 for the normal differential values. The term **shift to the left** describes an increase in immature neutrophils in the blood.

Shift to the Left

The phrase **"shift to the left"** derives from the early practice of reporting percentages of each WBC type across the top of a page, starting with blasts (immature cells) on the left and more mature cells on the right. An increase in immature neutrophils (as seen with severe infection) would be seen in the left-hand column of the reporting form. This "shift to the left" indicates an infection and reflects the body's effort to fight it by making more neutrophils.

Clinical Procedures

apheresis	**Separation of blood into component parts and removal of a select portion from the blood.** This procedure can remove toxic substances or autoantibodies from the blood and can collect blood cells. Leukapheresis, plateletpheresis, and plasmapheresis are examples (Figure 13-14). If plasma is removed from the patient and fresh plasma is given, the procedure is termed **plasma exchange.**
blood transfusion	**Whole blood or cells are taken from a donor and infused into a patient.** Appropriate testing to ensure a match of red blood cell type (A, B, AB, or O) is essential. Tests also are performed to detect the presence of hepatitis and the acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS) virus (HIV). **Autologous transfusion** is the collection and later reinfusion of a patient's own blood or blood components. **Packed cells** are a preparation of red blood cells separated from liquid plasma and administered in severe anemia to restore levels of hemoglobin and red cells without overdiluting the blood with excess fluid.
bone marrow biopsy	**Microscopic examination of a core of bone marrow removed with a needle.** This procedure is helpful in the diagnosis of blood disorders such as anemia, pancytopenias, and leukemia. Bone marrow also may be removed by brief suction produced by a syringe, which is termed a **bone marrow aspiration.** See Figure 13-15.
hematopoietic stem cell transplantation	**Peripheral stem cells from a compatible donor are administered to a recipient.** Patients with malignancies, such as AML, ALL, CLL, CML, lymphoma, multiple myeloma, as well as patients with severe autoimmune diseases are candidates for this treatment. First the donor is treated with a drug that mobilizes stem cells into the blood. Then stem cells are removed from the donor, a process like leukapheresis in Figure 13-14. Meanwhile, the patient (recipient) undergoes a conditioning process in which radiation and chemotherapy drugs are administered to kill malignant marrow cells and inactivate the patient's immune system so that subsequently infused stem cells will not be rejected. A cell suspension containing the donor's stem cells, which will repopulate the bone marrow, is then given through a vein to the recipient. In **autologous stem cell transplantation,** the patient's own stem cells are collected, stored, and reinfused after potent chemotherapy. See ***In Person: Autologous Stem Cell Transplant,*** page 499.
	Bone marrow transplantation follows the same procedure, except that bone marrow cells are used rather than peripheral stem cells (Figure 13-16). Problems encountered subsequently may include serious infection, **graft-versus-host disease (GVHD),** and relapse of the original disease despite the treatment. In GVHD, the immunocompetent cells in the donor's tissue recognize the recipient's tissues as foreign and attack them. Because the recipient patient is totally immunosuppressed, his or her immune system cannot defend against the attack. Intensive prophylaxis (prevention) with **immunosuppressive drugs** is standard for patients undergoing **allogeneic transplants** (see Figure 13-16). These drugs include cyclosporine, methotrexate, glucocorticoids, sirolimus (Rapamune), and mycophenolate.

FIGURE 13-14 Leukapheresis. This machine is an automated blood cell separator that removes large numbers of white blood cells and returns red cells, platelets, and plasma to the patient.

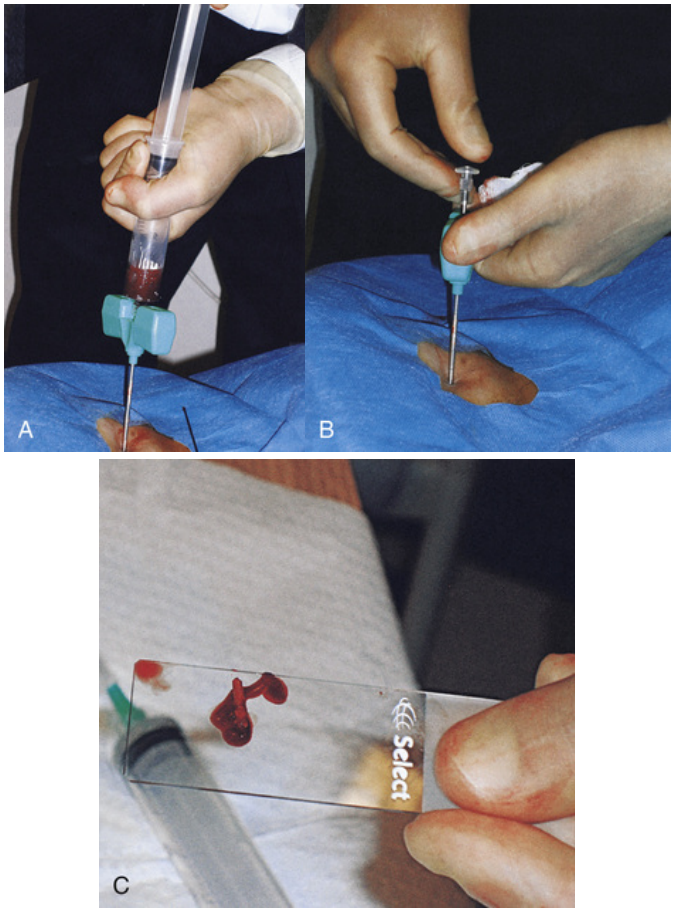


FIGURE 13-15 Bone marrow aspiration and biopsy. A, Placement of a bone marrow needle into the iliac crest (upper portion of hipbone) and aspiration of liquid bone marrow. **B,** Trephine needle is then inserted and anchored in the bone. **C,** A solid piece of bone marrow (biopsy sample) is then extracted through the needle.

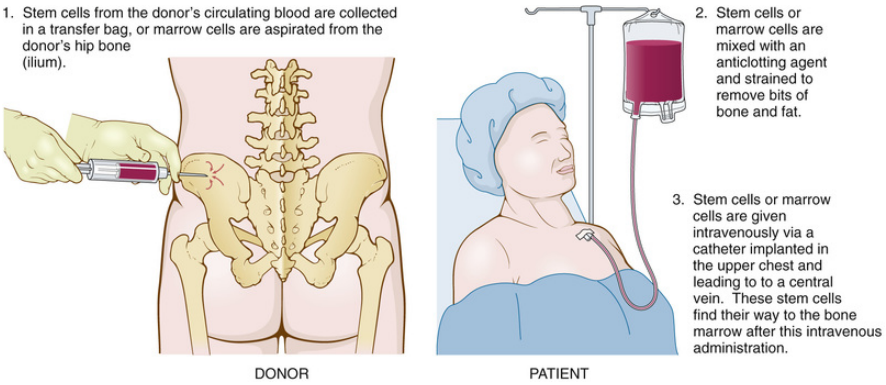

1. Stem cells from the donor's circulating blood are collected in a transfer bag, or marrow cells are aspirated from the donor's hip bone (ilium).
2. Stem cells or marrow cells are mixed with an anticlotting agent and strained to remove bits of bone and fat.
3. Stem cells or marrow cells are given intravenously via a catheter implanted in the upper chest and leading to to a central vein. These stem cells find their way to the bone marrow after this intravenous administration.
DONOR
PATIENT

FIGURE 13-16 Hematopoietic stem cell and bone marrow transplantation. These procedures constitute **allogeneic** (all/o means other, different) **transplantation,** in which a relative or an unrelated person with a close or identical HLA (human leukocyte antigen) type is the donor. It carries a risk of morbidity (disease) and mortality (death) because of complications of incompatibility such as GVHD (graft-versus-host disease). In an **autologous transplantation,** stem cells or bone marrow cells are removed from the patient during a remission phase and given back to the patient after intensive chemotherapy (drug treatment).

Abbreviations

Ab	antibody
ABMT	autologous bone marrow transplantation—patient serves as his or her own donor for stem cells
ABO	four main blood types—A, B, AB, and O
ALL	acute lymphoid leukemia
AML	acute myeloid leukemia
ANC	absolute neutrophil count—total WBC times a measure of the number of bands and segs present in the blood; an ANC less than 1500 cells/uL is neutropenia
ASCT	autologous stem cell transplantation
bands	immature white blood cells (granulocytes)
baso	basophils
BMT	bone marrow transplantation
CBC	complete blood count
CLL	chronic lymphoid leukemia
CML	chronic myeloid leukemia
DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation—bleeding disorder marked by reduction in blood clotting factors
diff	differential count (white blood cells)
EBV	Epstein-Barr virus; cause of mononucleosis
eos	eosinophils
EPO	erythropoietin
ESR	erythrocyte sedimentation rate
Fe	iron
G-CSF	granulocyte colony-stimulating factor—promotes neutrophil production
GM-CSF	granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor—promotes myeloid progenitor cells with differentiation to granulocytes
g/dL	gram per deciliter (1 deciliter = one tenth of a liter or just over 3 ounces.
GVHD	graft-versus-host disease—immune reaction of donor's cells to recipient's tissue
HCL	hairy cell leukemia—abnormal lymphocytes accumulate in bone marrow, leading to anemia, thrombocytopenia, neutropenia, and infection
Hct	hematocrit
Hgb, HGB	hemoglobin
H and H	hemoglobin and hematocrit
HLA	human leukocyte antigen
IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, IgM	immunoglobulins
INR	international normalized ratio--ratio of a patient's prothrombin time compared to a standard prothrombin time, used to monitor anticoagulation (warfarin) therapy.
ITP	idiopathic thrombocytopenic purpura
lymphs	lymphocytes
MCH	mean corpuscular hemoglobin—average amount of hemoglobin per cell
MCHC	mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration—average concentration of hemoglobin in a single red cell; when MCHC is low, the cell is hypochromic
MCV	mean corpuscular volume—average volume or size of a single red blood cell; when MCV is high, the cells are macrocytic, and when low, the cells are microcytic
μL	microliter—one millionth of a liter; 1 liter = 1.057 quarts
MDS	myelodysplastic syndrome—preleukemic condition (anemia, cytopenias, and possible transformation to AML)
mm^3	cubic millimeter—one millionth of a liter; 1 liter = 1.057 quarts
mono	monocyte

polys, PMNs, PMNLs	polymorphonuclear leukocytes; neutrophils, eosinophils, basophils
PT, pro time	prothrombin time
PTT	partial thromboplastin time
RBC	red blood cell; red blood cell count
sed rate	erythrocyte sedimentation rate
segs	segmented, mature white blood cells (neutrophils)
SMAC	Sequential Multiple Analyzer Computer—an automated chemistry system that determines substances in serum
WBC	white blood cell; white blood cell count
WNL	within normal limits

Practical Applications

The cases presented here are based on data from actual medical records. Use the table of normal values on the next page to help you decide on a probable diagnosis. Answers to the questions are on page 508.

Case Report

Four-year-old Sally has been running a low-grade fever for several weeks, with recurrent sore throat, earache, and cough. Her mother takes her to the family physician, who diagnoses her condition as otitis. Sally continues to be fatigued and anorexic. Her mother then notices bruising on her legs and arms. The family physician finally orders blood tests and an antibiotic drug. Peripheral blood tests reveal Hgb 7.4, platelet count 40,000, and WBC count 85,000 with 90% lymphoblasts. A bone marrow biopsy is ordered.

1. What's the likely diagnosis for this patient?
    a. AML
    b. CLL
    c. ALL
    d. CML
2. The probable cause of Sally's ecchymoses is:
    a. Neutropenia
    b. Thrombocytopenia
    c. Anorexia
    d. Otitis
3. The likely explanation for Sally's fatigue is:
    a. Anemia
    b. Sore throat and cough
    c. Thrombocytopenia
    d. Neutropenia
4. Treatment for Sally's condition is likely to be:
    a. Prolonged antibiotic therapy
    b. Intravenous feeding
    c. Surgery to repair the bone marrow
    d. Chemotherapy

Use the table of normal values to help you decide on a probable diagnosis in each case.

Normal Laboratory Values				
WBC 4500-11,000/mm^3 or μL		**RBC**	M:	4.5-6.0 million per mm^3 *or* μL
Differential			F:	4.0-5.5 million per mm^3 *or* μL
Segs (polys)	54-62%	**Hct**	M:	40-50%
Lymphs	20-40%		F:	37-47%
Eos	1-3%	**Hgb**	M:	14-16 g/dL
Baso	0-1%		F:	12-14 g/dL
Mono	3-7%	**Platelets** 150,000-350,000/mm^3 *or* μL		

Five Short Clinical Cases

1. A 65-year-old woman visits her physician complaining of shortness of breath and swollen ankles. Lab tests reveal that her hematocrit is 18.0 and her hemoglobin 5.8. Her blood smear shows macrocytes and her blood level of vitamin B_{12} is very low. What is a likely diagnosis?
    a. Aplastic anemia
    b. Hemochromatosis
    c. Pernicious anemia
2. A 22-year-old college student visits the clinic with a fever, complaining of a sore throat. Blood tests show a WBC of 28,000 per mm^3 with 95% myeloblasts (polys are 5%). Platelet count is 15,000 per mm^3, hemoglobin is 10 g/dL, and hematocrit is 22.5. What is your diagnosis?
    a. Chronic lymphoid leukemia
    b. Acute myeloid leukemia
    c. Thalassemia
3. A 35-year-old woman goes to her physician complaining of spots on her legs and bleeding gums. On examination, she has tiny purple spots covering her legs and evidence of dried blood in her mouth. Her CBC shows hemoglobin 14 g/dL, hematocrit 42%, WBC 5000/mm^3 with normal differential [count], and platelet count 4000/mm^3 (with megakaryocytes in bone marrow). What is your diagnosis?
    a. Sickle cell anemia
    b. Hemolytic anemia
    c. Autoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura
4. A 55-year-old man is admitted to the hospital after a motorcycle crash. He sustained right hemopneumothorax (blood and air in the chest cavity) requiring placement of a chest tube. His admission hemoglobin was 11.4 g/dL and his hematocrit was 33.7%. On the third day of hospitalization, his hemoglobin dropped to 7.5 g/dL and his hematocrit fell to 22.4%. What do you think his physician should order?
    a. Bone marrow aspiration and biopsy
    b. Transfusion of packed red blood cells
    c. Leukapheresis
5. A 45-year-old woman has recently been traveling internationally and comes to the ED complaining of diarrhea, vomiting, and severe abdominal pain lasting for the previous 2 weeks. Her total WBC was elevated. Stool cultures reveal a parasitic infection. Which element of the differential do you expect to be elevated?
    a. Eosinophils
    b. Monocytes
    c. Segs (polys)

In Person

Autologous Stem Cell Transplant

I was scheduled for a stem cell transplant to cure my recurrent primary central nervous system lymphoma, or PCNSL, a rare type of brain cancer. Until around 15 years ago, stem cell transplants depended upon bone marrow from which to harvest the cells. Since then, scientists have discovered that there are actually more cells available in peripheral (circulating) blood than in marrow. I was given two medicines, Mozobil and Neupogen, aimed at stimulating enough stem cells to be collected from that peripheral source. In a peripheral autologous blood stem cell transplant, stem cells are collected from the circulating blood by apheresis, in which blood is withdrawn through a sterile needle, and passed through a machine that harvests stem cells into a container, while the remaining blood components are then transferred back into the patient's bloodstream. The fraction containing the blood stem cells is then frozen until needed for transplantation. Because patients get their own cells back, no chance exists for immune mismatch or graft-versus-host problems.

On the first day of stem cell collection, I produced half of the total stem cells I would need for my treatment. By the end of the third day of collection, I had reached the magic number of stem cells needed, and was able to go home to wait for the hospital to schedule me for the transplant. A representative phoned 2 days later, laying out the next 5 weeks for me: I'd be admitted in 11 days to the transplant division, where I would remain, they hoped, for no more than a month. My (presumably clean) stem cells were safely stored in a freezer while I was to undergo intensive chemotherapy meant to destroy any lurking cancer cells in my brain (and of course, benign others in the medicine's “take-no-prisoners” path).

I was glad when the date arrived, and my husband Dennis moved me into my next month's home on the eighth floor of the hospital. What I had failed to understand is the nature of an autologous stem cell transplant, at least for primary CNS lymphoma. I was to be blasted, rendered helpless, with a trio of chemo agents able to pass through the blood-brain barrier, but not ordinarily available for treatment-as-a-threesome due to their combined viciousness: busulfan, thiotepa (mustard gas–related), and cyclophosphamide (also a nitrogen mustard alkylating agent). I could risk receiving these killers because my uncontaminated stem cells were stored in the freezer. They would eventually replace my currently circulating blood that was being saturated with chemotherapy agents.

After 9 days, my white blood count was as low as it could go: I was at ground zero, “my second birthday.” The blood we'd collected with the help of Mozobil and company was slowly thawed, for a few hours, and soon I was given a transfusion of my previously frozen blood, swarming with stem cells. Before long, I felt so sick I thought I was dying. Wearing diapers that

had to be changed every 20 minutes, having rectal samples taken from my chafed, sometimes bloody "toilet skin" (as the nurse called it), being forced to sit up every minute, even at night, so that I could put the suction tube down my throat to keep from drowning in the rope-like mucositis, which ulcerated the membranes lining my digestive system—I could go on and on.

But as I'd been promised, nearly 5 weeks post-admission for the life-giving stem cell transplant, I was deemed ready to go home. For a month, however, our house operated like a medical office. That first week, I kept down half a shake a day. When I returned for my first checkup, I had to stay an extra 5 hours for a hydration infusion. Four days later, my red blood count was low and I needed a transfusion. By the second week, I'd started eating Cheerios with milk throughout the day, and my weight at least stabilized. I no longer looked like a skeleton.

At 100 days post-transplant, we could make love again. I worried that Dennis would find my scrawniness a turnoff, but he accepted my new "boy's body" and enthusiastically helped me recapture my faith in our oneness. After all, we'd been through the battle and needed now to smell the perennial flowers. Turns out they're as colorful as ever.

Laura Claridge Oppenheimer is a writer with Farrar, Straus and Giroux. She just finished a novel, *Loving Hard.* Her latest non-fiction book is *The Lady with the Borzoi,* a biography of publisher Blanche Knopf.

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, page 506.

A **Match the cells with their definitions.**

basophil
eosinophil
erythrocyte
hematopoietic stem cell
lymphocyte
monocyte
neutrophil
platelet

1. mononuclear white blood cell formed in lymph tissue; it is a phagocyte and the precursor of a macrophage _____
2. thrombocyte or cell fragment that helps blood clot _____
3. cell in the bone marrow that gives rise to different types of blood cells _____
4. mononuclear leukocyte formed in lymph tissue; produces antibodies _____
5. leukocyte with dense, reddish granules having an affinity for red acidic dye; associated with allergic reactions _____
6. red blood cell _____

7. leukocyte (polymorphonuclear granulocyte) formed in the bone marrow; granules do not stain intensely and have a pale color _____
8. leukocyte (granulocyte) with dark-staining blue granules; releases histamine and heparin _____

B **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. coagulation _____
2. granulocyte _____
3. mononuclear _____
4. polymorphonuclear _____
5. globulin _____
6. erythroblast _____
7. megakaryocyte _____
8. macrophage _____
9. hemoglobin _____
10. plasma _____
11. myeloblast _____

C **Match the listed terms with the descriptions/definitions that follow.**

albumin
antibody
antigen
bilirubin
colony-stimulating factor
differentiation

erythropoietin
fibrinogen
globulin
heparin
plasma
serum

1. liquid portion of blood _____
2. orange-yellow pigment produced from hemoglobin when red blood cells are destroyed _____
3. plasma protein converted to fibrin in clotting process _____
4. proteins in plasma; separated into alpha, beta, and gamma types _____
5. hormone secreted by the kidneys to stimulate bone marrow to produce red blood cells _____
6. substance (usually foreign) that stimulates production of an antibody _____
7. protein in blood that maintains the proper amount of water in the blood _____
8. specific protein produced by lymphocytes in response to antigens in the blood _____
9. anticoagulant found in blood and tissue cells _____
10. plasma minus clotting proteins and cells _____
11. change in structure and function of a cell as it matures _____
12. protein that stimulates growth of developing blood cells _____

D **Give short answers for the following.**

1. Name four types of plasma proteins.
   _____
2. What is the Rh factor?
   _____
3. What is hemolysis?
   _____

4. A person with type A blood has _____ antigens and _____ antibodies in his or her blood.
5. A person with type B blood has _____ antigens and _____ antibodies in his or her blood.
6. A person with type O blood has _____ antigens and _____ antibodies in his or her blood.
7. A person with type AB blood has _____ antigens and _____ antibodies in his or her blood.
8. Can you transfuse blood from a type A donor into a type B recipient? _____ Why or why not?
   _____
   _____
9. Can you transfuse blood from a type AB donor into a type O recipient? Why or why not?
   _____
   _____
10. What is electrophoresis?
    _____
11. What is an immunoglobulin?
    _____
12. What is differentiation?
    _____
13. What is plasmapheresis?
    _____
14. Why is a person with type O blood the universal donor?
    _____

E **Match the listed terms related to clotting with the descriptions/definitions that follow.**

coagulation
fibrin
fibrinogen
heparin
prothrombin
serum
thrombin
warfarin (Coumadin)

1. anticoagulant substance found in liver cells, blood, and tissues _____
2. protein thread that forms the basis of a blood clot _____
3. plasma protein that is converted to thrombin in the clotting process _____
4. plasma minus clotting proteins and cells _____
5. drug given to patients to prevent formation of clots _____
6. plasma protein that is converted to fibrin in the clotting process _____
7. process of clotting _____
8. enzyme that helps convert fibrinogen to fibrin _____

F **Divide the following terms into component parts and give the meanings of the complete terms.**

1. anticoagulant _____
2. hemoglobinopathy _____
3. cytology _____
4. leukopenia _____
5. morphology _____
6. megakaryocyte _____
7. sideropenia _____

8. phagocyte
_____
_____
9. myelopoiesis
_____
_____
10. plateletpheresis
_____
____
11. monoblast
_____
_____
12. myelodysplasia
_____
____
13. hemostasis
_____
_____
14. thrombolytic (therapy)
_____
15. hematopoiesis
_____
____

G **Match the hematology terms with their meanings.**

coagulopathy
eosinophilia
hematocrit
leukapheresis
myeloid
neutropenia
thrombocytopenia
thrombosis

1. derived in bone marrow _____
2. deficiency of a type of white blood cell _____
3. percentage of red blood cells in a volume of blood
_____

4. increase in a type of white blood cell (seen in allergies) _____
5. abnormal condition of clot formation _____
6. separation of white blood cells from a blood sample _____
7. disease of clotting process _____
8. deficiency of platelets _____

H **Match the listed terms concerning red blood cells with the descriptions/definitions that follow.**

anemia
anisocytosis
erythropoiesis
hematocrit
hemoglobin
hemolysis
hypochromic
macrocytosis
microcytosis
poikilocytosis
polycythemia vera
spherocytosis

1. any irregularity in the shape of red blood cells _____
2. oxygen-containing protein in red blood cells _____
3. formation of red blood cells _____
4. deficiency in numbers of red blood cells _____
5. destruction of red blood cells _____
6. pertaining to reduction of hemoglobin in red blood cells _____
7. variation in size of red blood cells _____
8. abnormal numbers of round, rather than normally biconcave-shaped, red blood cells _____
9. increase in number of small red blood cells _____

10. general increase in numbers of red blood cells; erythremia

_____

11. increase in numbers of large red blood cells

_____

12. separation of blood so that the percentage of red blood cells in relation to the volume of a blood sample is measured

_____

I **Describe the problem in each of the following forms of anemia.**

1. iron deficiency anemia

_____

2. pernicious anemia

_____

3. sickle cell anemia

_____

4. aplastic anemia

_____

5. thalassemia

_____

J **Give the meanings of the following terms for blood dyscrasias.**

1. purpura

_____

_____

2. granulocytosis

_____

_____

3. hemophilia

_____

_____

4. hemochromatosis

_____

___

5. multiple myeloma

_____

__

6. mononucleosis

_____

_____

K **Match the term in Column I with its meaning in Column II. Write the letter of the meaning in the space provided.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. relapse	_____	A. Deficiency of all blood cells
2. remission	_____	B. Immunoglobulin fragment found in the urine of patients with multiple myeloma
3. palliative	_____	C. Increase in numbers of granulocytes; seen in allergic conditions
4. Bence Jones protein	_____	D. Large blue or purplish patches on skin (bruises)
5. ecchymoses	_____	E. Symptoms of the disease return
6. pancytopenia	_____	F. Tiny purple or flat red spots on skin occurring as a result of small hemorrhages
7. apheresis	_____	G. Symptoms of the disease disappear
8. eosinophilia	_____	H. Separation of blood into its parts
9. petechiae	_____	I. Preparation of erythrocytes separated from plasma
10. packed cells		J. Relieving but not curing

L **Match the laboratory test or clinical procedure with its description.**

antiglobulin (Coombs) test
autologous transfusion
bone marrow biopsy
erythrocyte sedimentation rate
hematocrit
hematopoietic stem cell transplantation
platelet count
red blood cell count
red blood cell morphology
white blood cell differential

1. microscopic examination of a stained blood smear to determine the shape of individual red blood cells
   _____
2. percentage of red blood cells in a volume of blood
   _____
3. determines the number of clotting cells per mm^3 or μL of blood
   _____
4. speed at which erythrocytes settle out of plasma
   _____
5. percentages of different types of leukocytes in the blood
   _____

6. test for the presence of antibodies that coat and damage erythrocytes
_____
7. peripheral stem cells from a compatible donor are infused into a recipient's vein to repopulate the bone marrow
_____
8. microscopic examination of a core of bone marrow removed with a needle
_____
_____
_____
9. number of erythrocytes per mm^3 or μL of blood
_____
10. blood is collected from and later reinfused into the same patient
_____

M **Circle the boldface terms that best complete the meaning of the sentences.**

1. Gary, a 1-year-old African American child, was failing to gain weight normally. He seemed pale and without energy. His blood tests showed a decreased hemoglobin (5.0 g/dL) and decreased hematocrit (16.5%). After a blood smear revealed abnormally shaped red cells, the physician told Gary's parents that their son had **(iron deficiency anemia, hemophilia, sickle cell anemia)**.
2. While in the hospital, Mr. Klein was told he had an elevated **(red blood cell, white blood cell, platelet)** count with a "shift to the left." This was information that confirmed his diagnosis of a systemic infection.
3. While Mr. Chen was taking warfarin (Coumadin), a blood thinner, his physician made sure to check his **(prothrombin time, hematocrit, sed rate)**.
4. Sixty-one-year-old Barbara's laboratory tests showed abnormal proteins in her plasma and Bence Jones protein in her urine. She had osteopenia and a fracture in one of her ribs. Her oncologist diagnosed her condition as **(mononucleosis, thrombocytopenic purpura, multiple myeloma)**. He prescribed analgesics and drugs such as thalidomide and bortezomib (Velcade).
5. Bobby was diagnosed at a very early age with a bleeding disorder called **(hemophilia, thalassemia, eosinophilia)**. He needed factor VIII regularly, especially after even the slightest traumatic injury.

6. Juan was a 9-year-old boy who suddenly noticed many black and blue marks all over his legs. He had a fever and was tired all the time. The physician did a blood test that revealed pancytopenia. A bone marrow biopsy confirmed the diagnosis of **(acute lymphoid leukemia, polycythemia vera, aplastic anemia)**.
7. Alice and her friends had been staying up late for weeks, cramming for exams. She developed a sore throat and swollen lymph nodes in her neck and felt fatigued all the time. Dr. Smith did a blood test, and the results showed lymphocytosis and antibodies to EBV in the bloodstream. His diagnosis was **(leukapheresis, lymphocytopenia, mononucleosis)**.
8. Susan was experiencing heavy menstrual periods **(menorrhea, menorrhagia, hemoptysis)**. Because of the bleeding, she frequently felt tired and weak and probably was sideropenic. Her physician performed blood tests that revealed her problem as **(thrombocytopenia, pernicious anemia, iron deficiency anemia)**.
9. Dr. Harris examined a highly allergic patient and sent a blood sample to a specialist, a **(pulmonary, cardiovascular, hematologic)** pathologist. The specialist stained the blood smear and found an abundance of leukocytes with dense, reddish granules. She made the diagnosis of **(basophilia, eosinophilia, neutrophilia)**.
10. George's blood cell counts had been falling in recent weeks. His scheduled laparotomy was canceled because blood tests revealed **(pancytopenia, plasmapheresis, myelopoiesis)**. Bone marrow biopsy determined that the cause was **(hyperplasia, hypoplasia, differentiation)** of all cellular elements.

N **Spell out the abbreviations in Column I, and then select the best description for each from the definitions in Column II.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. Hgb _____	_____	A. Blood protein that transports oxygen to tissues.
2. GVHD _____	_____	B. Malignant condition of white blood cells; immature granulocytes (myeloblasts) predominate.
3. ALL _____	_____	C. Malignant condition of white blood cells; immature lymphocytes predominate.
4. PT _____	_____	D. Test used to follow patients who are taking certain anticoagulants.
5. CML _____	_____	E. Percentage of red cells in blood volume.
6. EPO _____	_____	F. Malignant condition of white blood cells in which both mature and immature granulocytes are present; a slowly progressive illness.
7. IgA, IgE, IgD _____		G. Immune reaction of donor's cells/tissue to recipient's cells/tissue; a possible outcome of hematopoietic stem cell or bone marrow transplantation.
8. CLL _____		H. Proteins containing antibodies.
9. Hct _____		I. Malignant condition of white blood cells in which relatively mature lymphocytes predominate in lymph nodes, spleen, and bone marrow; usually seen in elderly patients.
10. AML _____		J. Hormone that stimulates the growth of red blood cells.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. monocyte
2. platelet
3. hematopoietic stem cell
4. lymphocyte
5. eosinophil
6. erythrocyte
7. neutrophil
8. basophil

B

1. blood clotting
2. white blood cell with numerous, cytoplasmic granules (neutrophil, basophil, and eosinophil)
3. pertaining to a leukocyte with a single round nucleus; monocytes and lymphocytes are mononuclear leukocytes
4. pertaining to a white blood cell with a multilobed nucleus; neutrophil

5. plasma protein; alpha, beta, and gamma (immune) globulins are examples
6. immature red blood cell
7. large platelet precursor (forerunner) cell found in bone marrow
8. monocyte that migrates from blood to tissue spaces; phagocyte that engulfs foreign material and ingests red blood cells
9. blood protein containing iron; carries oxygen in erythrocytes
10. liquid portion of blood
11. immature bone marrow cell that gives rise to granulocytes

C

1. plasma
2. bilirubin
3. fibrinogen
4. globulin
5. erythropoietin
6. antigen
7. albumin
8. antibody
9. heparin
10. serum
11. differentiation
12. colony-stimulating factor

D

1. albumin, globulins, fibrinogen, and prothrombin
2. an antigen normally found on red blood cells of Rh+ individuals
3. destruction or breakdown of red blood cells
4. A; anti-B
5. B; anti-A

6. no A or B; anti-A and anti-B
7. A and B; no anti-A and no anti-B
8. no; A antigens will react with the anti-A antibodies in the type B recipient's bloodstream
9. no; A and B antigens will react with the anti-A and anti-B antibodies in the type O recipient's bloodstream
10. method of separating serum proteins by electrical charge and size
11. protein with antibody activity; IgG, IgH, IgE
12. change in structure and function of a cell as it matures; specialization
13. removal by centrifuge of plasma from withdrawn blood
14. type O blood does not contain A or B antigens and therefore will not react with antibodies in any recipient's blood

E

1. heparin
2. fibrin
3. prothrombin
4. serum
5. warfarin (Coumadin)
6. fibrinogen
7. coagulation
8. thrombin

F

1. anti/coagul/ant—a substance that prevents clotting
2. hemoglobin/o/pathy—disease (abnormality) of hemoglobin
3. cyt/o/logy—study of cells
4. leuk/o/penia—deficiency of white (blood) cells
5. morph/o/logy—study of the shape or form (of cells)
6. mega/kary/o/cyte—cell with a large (mega-) nucleus (kary); platelet precursor

7. sider/o/penia—deficiency of iron
8. phag/o/cyte—cell that eats or swallows other cells
9. myel/o/poiesis—formation of bone marrow
10. platelet/pheresis—separation of platelets from the rest of the blood
11. mon/o/blast—immature monocyte
12. myel/o/dys/plasia—abnormal (ineffective) production of myeloid cells in bone marrow. Myeloid progenitor cells give rise to erythrocytes, granulocytes, and platelets
13. hem/o/stasis—controlling or stopping the flow of blood
14. thromb/o/lytic (therapy)—pertaining to treatment using drugs to destroy clots
15. hemat/o/poiesis—formation of blood cells

G

1. myeloid
2. neutropenia
3. hematocrit
4. eosinophilia
5. thrombosis
6. leukapheresis
7. coagulopathy
8. thrombocytopenia

H

1. poikilocytosis
2. hemoglobin
3. erythropoiesis
4. anemia
5. hemolysis
6. hypochromic
7. anisocytosis

8. spherocytosis
9. microcytosis
10. polycythemia vera
11. macrocytosis
12. hematocrit

I

1. lack of iron leading to insufficient hemoglobin production
2. lack of mature erythrocytes caused by inability to absorb vitamin B_{12} into the bloodstream (intrinsic factor is missing in gastric juice, so B_{12} is not absorbed)
3. hereditary disorder of abnormal hemoglobin producing sickle-shaped erythrocytes and hemolysis
4. failure of blood cell production in bone marrow
5. inherited disorder of abnormal hemoglobin production leading to hypochromia

J

1. multiple pinpoint hemorrhages and accumulation of blood under the skin (cause may be deficiency of platelets)
2. abnormal increase in granulocytes in the blood (eosinophilia and basophilia)
3. excessive bleeding caused by hereditary lack of blood clotting factors
4. excessive iron deposits throughout the body
5. malignant neoplasm of bone marrow
6. infectious disease marked by increased numbers of mononuclear leukocytes and enlarged cervical lymph nodes

K

1. E
2. G
3. J

4. B
5. D
6. A
7. H
8. C
9. F
10. I

L

1. red blood cell morphology
2. hematocrit
3. platelet count
4. erythrocyte sedimentation rate
5. white blood cell differential
6. antiglobulin (Coombs) test
7. hematopoietic stem cell transplantation
8. bone marrow biopsy
9. red blood cell count
10. autologous transfusion

M

1. sickle cell anemia
2. white blood cell
3. prothrombin time
4. multiple myeloma
5. hemophilia
6. aplastic anemia
7. mononucleosis
8. menorrhagia; iron deficiency anemia
9. hematologic; eosinophilia

10. pancytopenia; hypoplasia

N

1. hemoglobin: A
2. graft-versus-host disease: G
3. acute lymphoid leukemia: C
4. prothrombin time: D
5. chronic myeloid (myelocytic) leukemia: F
6. erythropoietin: J
7. immunoglobulins: H
8. chronic lymphoid leukemia: I
9. hematocrit: E
10. acute myeloid (myelocytic) leukemia: B

Answers to Practical Applications

Case Report

1. c
2. b
3. a
4. d

Five Short Clinical Cases

1. c
2. b
3. c
4. b
5. a

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

Vocabulary and Terminology

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
albumin	al-BU-min
anisocytosis	an-i-so-si-TO-sis
antibody	AN-tih-bod-e
anticoagulant	an-tih-ko-AG-u-lant
antigen	AN-tih-jen
basophil	BA-so-fil
bilirubin	bil-ih-RU-bin
coagulation	ko-ag-u-LA-shun
coagulopathy	ko-ag-u-LOP-ah-the
colony-stimulating factor	KOL-o-ne STIM-u-la-ting FAK-tor
cytology	si-TOL-o-je
differentiation	dif-er-en-she-A-shun
electrophoresis	eh-lek-tro-fo-RE-sis
eosinophil	e-o-SIH-no-fil
eosinophilia	e-o-sih-no-FIL-e-ah
erythroblast	eh-RITH-ro-blast
erythrocyte	eh-RITH-ro-site
erythropoiesis	eh-rith-ro-poy-E-sis
erythropoietin	eh-rith-ro-PO-eh-tin
fibrin	FI-brin
fibrinogen	fi-BRIN-o-jen
globulin	GLOB-u-lin
granulocyte	GRAN-u-lo-site
granulocytopenia	gran-u-lo-si-to-PE-ne-ah
hematopoiesis	he-mah-to-poy-E-sis
hematopoietic stem cell	he-mah-to-poy-EH-tik stem sel
hemoglobin	HE-mo-glo-bin
hemoglobinopathy	he-mo-glo-bin-OP-ah-the
hemolysis	he-MOL-ih-sis
hemostasis	he-mo-STA-sis
heparin	HEP-ah-rin
hypochromic	hi-po-KRO-mik
immune reaction	im-MEWN re-AK-shun
immunoglobulin	im-u-no-GLOB-u-lin
leukapheresis	lu-kah-feh-RE-sis
leukocyte	LU-ko-site
leukopenia	lu-ko-PE-ne-ah
lymphocyte	LIMF-o-site
lymphoid	LIMF-oyd
macrocytosis	mak-ro-si-TO-sis
macrophage	MAK-ro-fayg
megakaryocyte	meg-ah-KAR-e-o-site
microcytosis	mi-kro-si-TO-sis
monoblast	MON-o-blast
monocyte	MON-o-site
mononuclear	mon-o-NU-kle-ar
morphology	mor-FOL-o-je
myeloblast	MI-eh-lo-blast
myelodysplasia	mi-eh-lo-dis-PLA-ze-ah

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
myeloid	MI-eh-loyd
myelopoiesis	mi-eh-lo-poy-E-sis
neutropenia	nu-tro-PE-ne-ah
neutrophil	NU-tro-fil
neutrophilia	nu-tro-FIL-e-ah
pancytopenia	pan-si-to-PE-ne-ah
phagocyte	FA-go-site
plasma	PLAZ-mah
plasmapheresis	plaz-mah-feh-RE-sis
platelet	PLAYT-let
plateletpheresis	playt-let-feh-RE-sis
poikilocytosis	poy-kih-lo-si-TO-sis
polymorphonuclear	pol-e-mor-fo-NU-kle-ar
prothrombin	pro-THROM-bin
reticulocyte	reh-TIK-u-lo-site
Rh factor	R-h FAK-tor
serum	SER-um
sideropenia	si-der-o-PE-ne-ah
spherocytosis	sfer-o-si-TO-sis
stem cell	STEM sel
thrombin	THROM-bin
thrombocyte	THROM-bo-site
thrombocytopenia	throm-bo-si-to-PE-ne-ah
thrombolytic therapy	throm-bo-LIH-tik THER-ah-pe
thrombosis	throm-BO-sis

Pathology, Laboratory Tests, and Clinical Procedures

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
acute lymphoid leukemia	uh-KYOOT LIMF-oyd lu-KE-me-ah
acute myeloid leukemia	uh-KYOOT MI-eh-loyd lu-KE-me-ah
anemia	ah-NE-me-ah
antiglobulin test	an-te-GLOB-u-lin test
apheresis	ah-feh-RE-sis
aplastic anemia	a-PLAS-tik ah-NE-me-ah
autologous transfusion	aw-TOL-o-gus trans-FU-zhun
blood transfusion	blud trans-FU-zhun
bone marrow biopsy	bone MAH-ro BI-op-se
chronic lymphoid leukemia	KRON-ik LIM-foyd lu-KE-me-ah
chronic myeloid leukemia	KRO-nik MI-eh-loyd lu-KE-me-ah
complete blood count	kom-PLEET blud kownt
dyscrasia	dis-KRA-ze-ah
ecchymoses	ek-kih-MO-seez
erythrocyte sedimentation rate	eh-RITH-ro-site sed-ih-men-TA-shun rate
granulocytosis	gran-u-lo-si-TO-sis
hematocrit	he-MAT-o-krit
hematopoietic stem cell transplant	he-mah-to-poy-E-tik stem sel TRANS-plant
hemochromatosis	he-mo-kro-mah-TO-sis
hemoglobin test	HE-mo-glo-bin test
hemolytic anemia	he-mo-LIH-tik ah-NE-me-ah
hemophilia	he-mo-FIL-e-ah
intrinsic factor	in-TRIN-sik FAK-tor
leukemia	lu-KE-me-ah
mononucleosis	mon-o-nu-kle-O-sis
multiple myeloma	MUL-tih-pel mi-eh-LO-mah
palliative	PAH-le-ah-tiv
pernicious anemia	per-NIH-shus ah-NE-me-uh
petechiae	peh-TE-ke-i
platelet count	PLAT-let kownt
polycythemia vera	pol-e-si-THE-me-ah VER-ah
prothrombin time	pro-THROM-bin time
purpura	PUR-pur-ah
red blood cell count	red blud sel kownt
red blood cell morphology	red blud sel mor-FOL-o-je
relapse	RE-laps
remission	re-MIH-shun
sickle cell anemia	SIK-el sel ah-NE-me-uh
thalassemia	thal-ah-SE-me-ah
white blood cell count	wite blud sel kownt
white blood cell differential	wite blud sel dif-er-EN-shul

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of the word parts in the spaces provided. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the Glossary ***(Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
bas/o	_____
chrom/o	_____
coagul/o	_____
cyt/o	_____
eosin/o	_____
erythr/o	_____
fibrin/o	_____
granul/o	_____
hem/o	_____
hemat/o	_____
hemoglobin/o	_____
is/o	_____
leuk/o	_____
kary/o	_____
mon/o	_____
morph/o	_____
myel/o	_____
neutr/o	_____
nucle/o	_____
phag/o	_____
poikil/o	_____
sider/o	_____
spher/o	_____
thromb/o	_____

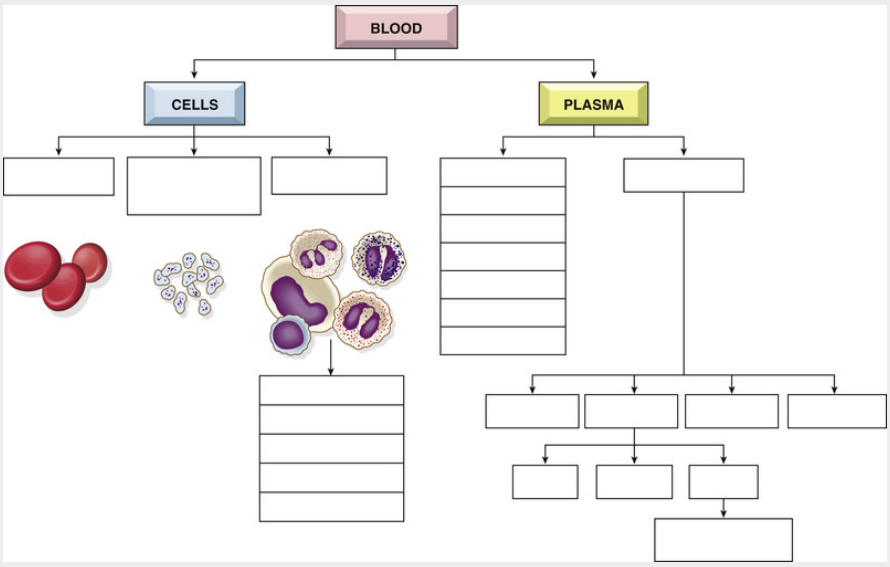
Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-apheresis	_____
-blast	_____
-cytosis	_____
-emia	_____
-gen	_____
-globin	_____
-globulin	_____
-lytic	_____
-oid	_____
-osis	_____
-penia	_____
-phage	_____
-philia	_____
-phoresis	_____
-plasia	_____
-poiesis	_____
-stasis	_____

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING
a-, an-	_____
anti-	_____
hypo-	_____
macro-	_____
mega-	_____
micro-	_____
mono-	_____
pan-	_____
poly-	_____

Components of blood: Study Figure 13-7, page 479, and fill in the blank boxes.



CHAPTER 14

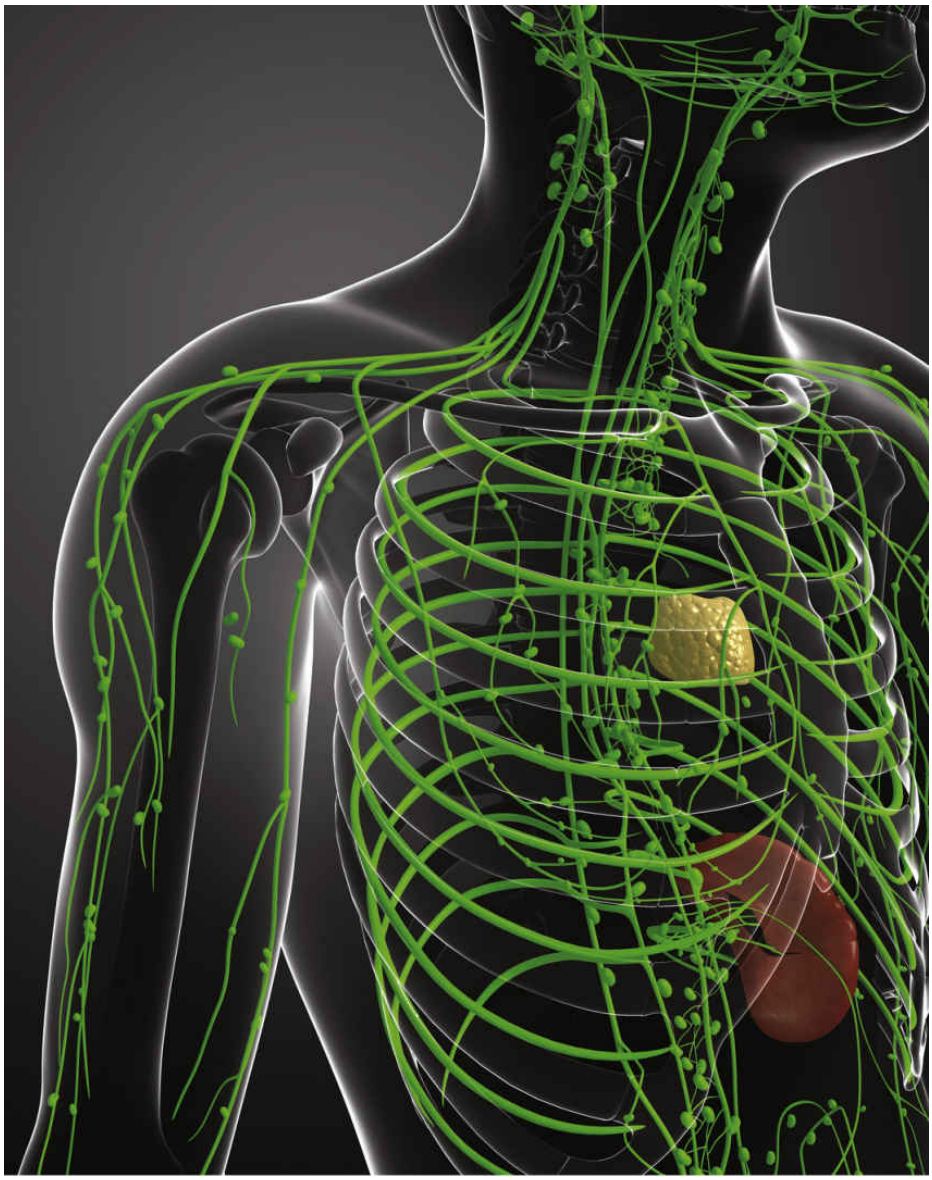
Lymphatic and Immune Systems

CHAPTER SECTIONS

Introduction 514
Lymphatic System 516
Immune System 519
Vocabulary 522
Terminology 524
Pathology Conditions 525
Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures 530
Abbreviations 531
In Person: Hodgkin Lymphoma 532
Practical Applications 533
In Person: Lymphoma Treatment 534
Exercises 535
Answers to Exercises 539
Pronunciation of Terms 540
Review Sheet 542

CHAPTER GOALS

- Identify the structures of the lymphatic and immune systems and understand how the systems work.
- Learn basic terminology, combining forms, and other word parts related to these systems.
- Recognize terms describing pathologic conditions involving components of the lymphatic and immune systems.
- Identify laboratory tests, clinical procedures, and abbreviations relating to the lymphatic and immune systems.
- Apply your new knowledge to understanding medical terms in their proper contexts, such as medical reports and records.



Introduction

The lymphatic system and the immune system are considered together in this chapter because aspects of their functions in the body are very closely related.

Lymph is a clear, watery fluid that surrounds body cells and flows in a system of thin-walled lymph vessels (the lymphatic system) that extends throughout the body.

Lymph differs from blood, but it has a close relationship to the blood system. Lymph fluid does not contain erythrocytes or platelets, but it is rich in two types of white blood cells (leukocytes): **lymphocytes** and **monocytes**. The liquid part of lymph is similar to blood plasma in that it contains water, salts, sugar, and wastes of metabolism such as urea and creatinine, but it differs in that it contains less protein. Lymph actually originates from the blood. It is the same fluid that filters out of tiny blood capillaries into the spaces between cells. This fluid that surrounds body cells is called **interstitial fluid**. Interstitial fluid passes

continuously into specialized thin-walled vessels called **lymph capillaries**, which are found coursing through tissue spaces (Figure 14-1). The fluid in the lymph capillaries, now called **lymph** instead of interstitial fluid, passes through larger lymphatic vessels and through clusters of lymph tissues (**lymph nodes**), finally reaching large lymphatic vessels in the upper chest. Lymph enters these large lymphatic vessels, which then empty into the bloodstream. Figure 14-2 illustrates schematically the relationship between the blood and the lymphatic systems. Table 14-1 reviews the differences between lymph and blood.

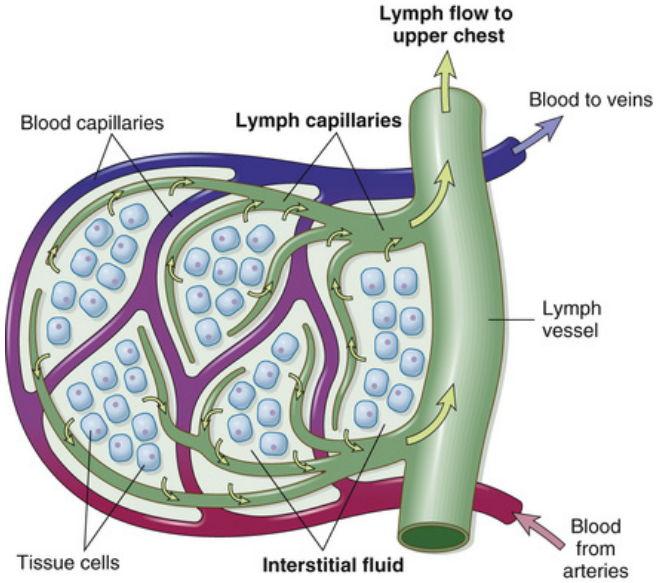


FIGURE 14-1 Interstitial fluid and lymph capillaries.

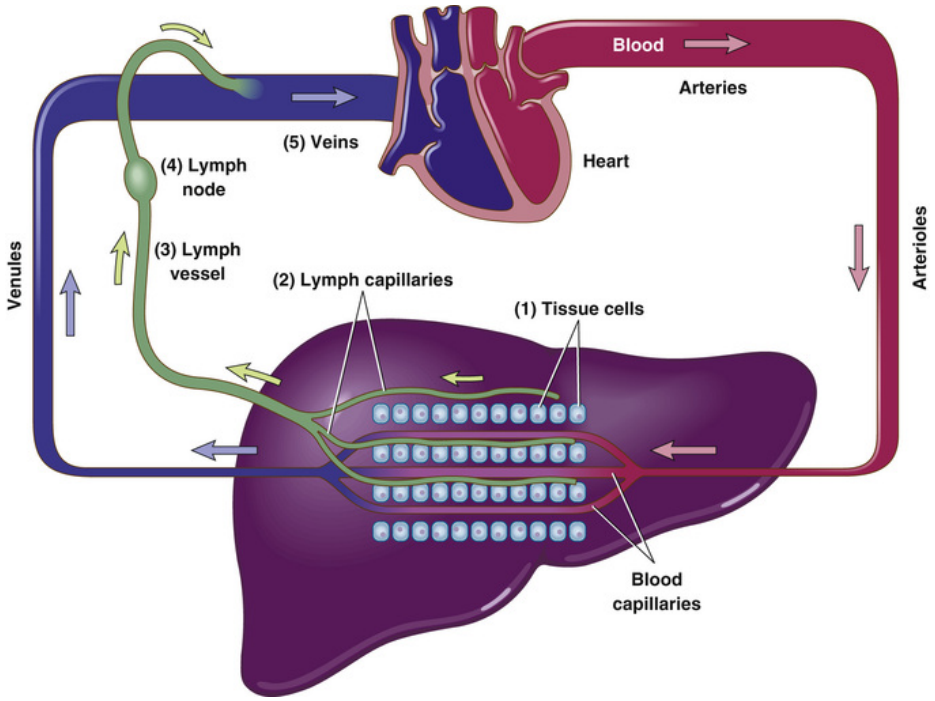


FIGURE 14-2 Relationship between the circulatory systems of blood and lymph.
Start at tissue cells (1) and follow the green arrows which show the flow of lymph into the bloodstream via veins (5).

TABLE 14-1

LYMPH AND BLOOD

LYMPH (colorless)	BLOOD (red)
NO PUMP Fluid moved along by muscle movement and valves	**PUMP** Heart pumps blood through blood vessels
WHITE BLOOD CELLS Lymphocytes Monocytes	**ALL BLOOD CELLS** Erythrocytes (give blood its red color) Leukocytes Platelets
INTERSTITIAL FLUID Water Less protein and other plasma components Lipids (fats) from small intestine	**PLASMA** Water Proteins Salts, nutrients, lipids, and wastes

The lymphatic system has several functions. First, it is a drainage system to transport needed proteins and fluid that have leaked out of the blood capillaries (and into the interstitial fluid) back to the bloodstream via the veins. Second, the lymphatic vessels in the intestines absorb lipids (fats) from the small intestine and transport them to the bloodstream.

A third function of the lymphatic system relates to the **immune system:** the defense of the body against foreign organisms such as bacteria and viruses. Lymphocytes and monocytes, originating in bone marrow, lymph nodes, and organs such as the spleen and thymus gland,

protect the body by producing antibodies and by mounting a cellular attack on foreign cells and organisms.

Lymphatic System

Anatomy

Label Figure 14-3A as you read the following paragraphs.

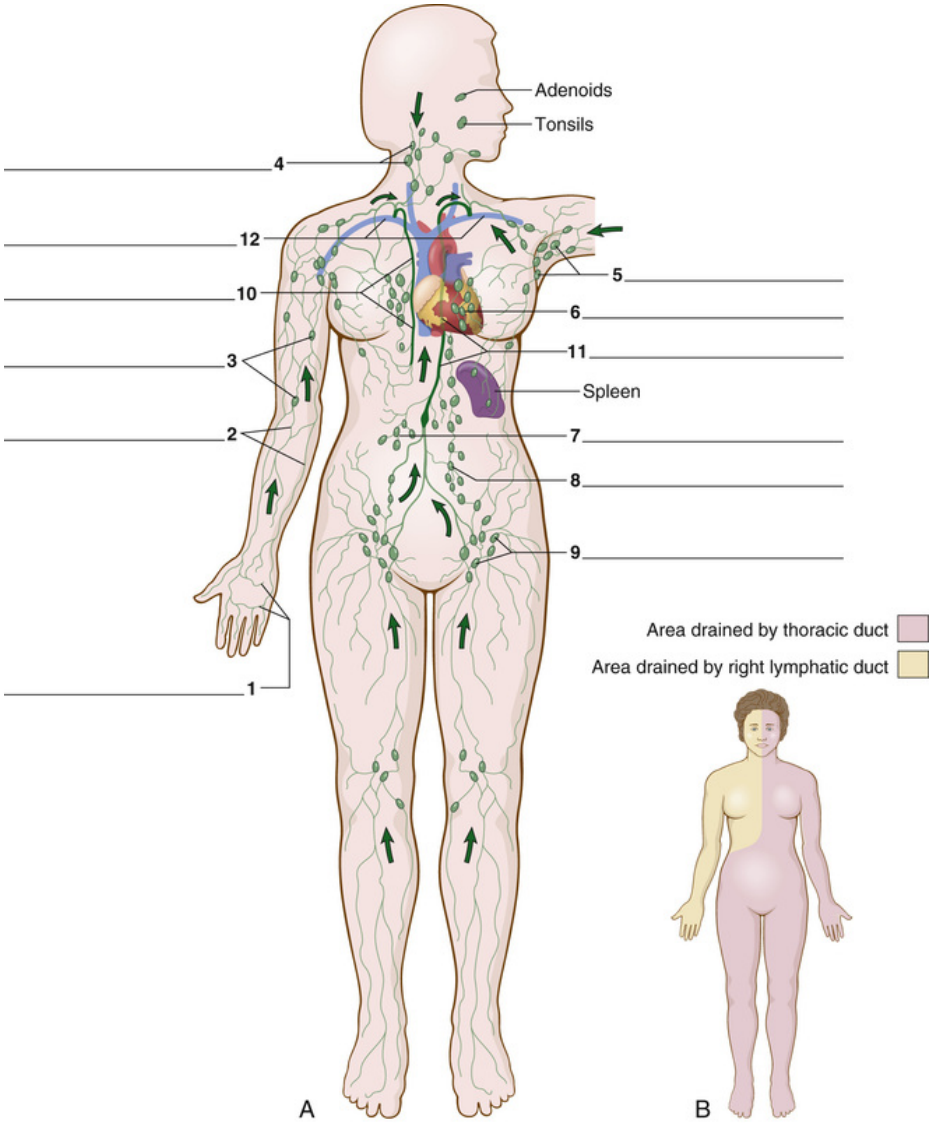


FIGURE 14-3 **Lymphatic system. A,** Label the figure according to the descriptions in the text. **B,** Note the **different regions of the body drained by the right lymphatic duct and the thoracic duct.**

Lymph capillaries [1] begin at the spaces around cells throughout the body. Like blood capillaries, they are thin-walled tubes. Lymph capillaries carry lymph from the tissue spaces to larger **lymph vessels** [2]. Lymph vessels have thicker walls than those of lymph capillaries

and, like veins, contain valves so that lymph flows in only one direction, toward the thoracic cavity. Collections of stationary lymph tissue, called **lymph nodes** [3], are located along the path of the lymph vessels.

Major sites of lymph node concentration are shown in Figure 14-3A. These are the **cervical** (neck) [4], **axillary** (armpit) [5], **mediastinal** (chest) [6], **mesenteric** (intestinal) [7], **paraaortic** (lumbar) [8], and **inguinal** (groin) [9] regions. Remember that **tonsils** are masses of lymph tissue in the throat near the back of the mouth (oropharynx), and **adenoids** are enlarged lymph tissue in the part of the throat near the nasal passages (nasopharynx).

Lymph vessels all lead toward the thoracic cavity and empty into two large ducts in the upper chest. These are the **right lymphatic duct** [10] and the **thoracic duct** [11]. The thoracic duct drains the lower body and the left side of the head, whereas the right lymphatic duct drains the right side of the head and the chest (a much smaller area) (see Figure 14-3B). Both ducts carry the lymph into **large veins** [12] in the neck, where the lymph then enters the bloodstream.

Lymph nodes not only produce lymphocytes but also filter lymph and trap substances from infectious, inflammatory, and cancerous lesions. Special cells called **macrophages**, located in lymph nodes (as well as in the spleen, liver, and lungs), swallow (phagocytose) foreign substances. When bacteria are present in lymph nodes that drain a particular area of the body, the nodes become swollen with collections of cells and their engulfed debris and become tender. Lymph nodes also fight disease when specialized lymphocytes called **B lymphocytes (B cells)**, which are present in the nodes, produce antibodies. Other lymphocytes present in nodes are **T lymphocytes (T cells)**. They attack bacteria and foreign cells by accurately recognizing a cell as foreign and destroying it. T cells also help B cells make antibodies. See Figure 14-4 for an illustration of a lymph node. B cells mature in bone marrow, whereas T cells originate in the thymus gland.

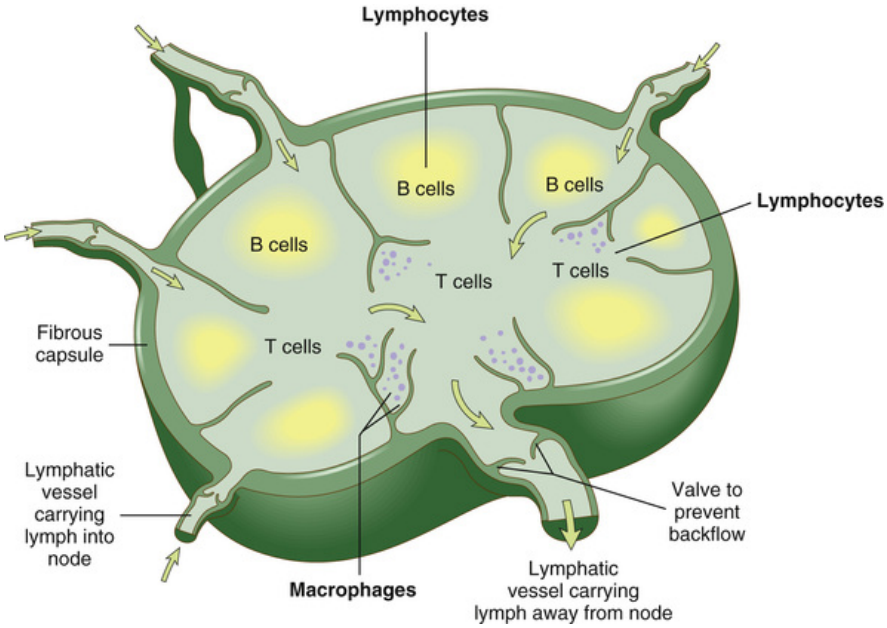


FIGURE 14-4 **Lymph node** containing **lymphocytes (B cells** and **T cells)** and **macrophages.**

Lymph Nodes and Tenderness

Tenderness is related to the speed of swelling of the lymph node and the stretching of the node capsule. More slowly expanding nodes, such as those involved with tumors, are usually non-tender. Tenderness tends to indicate an inflammatory rather than cancerous origin.

Spleen and Thymus Gland

The spleen and the thymus gland are specialized organs that also are a part of the lymphatic system.

The **spleen** (Figure 14-5A) is located in the left upper quadrant of the abdomen, next to the stomach. Although the spleen is not essential to life, it has several important functions:

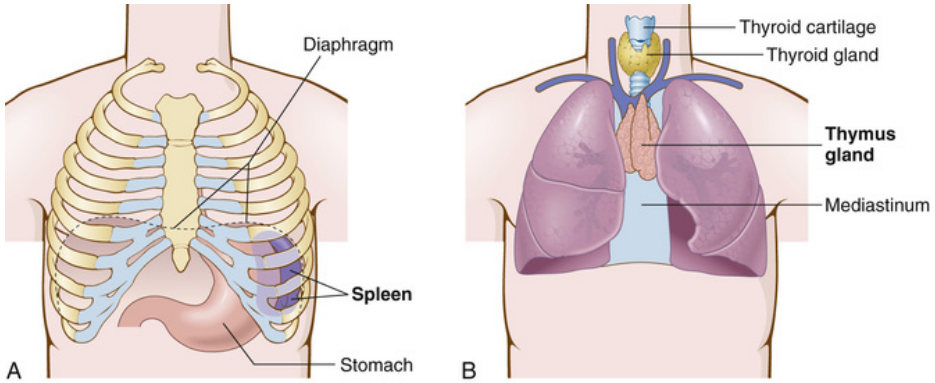


FIGURE 14-5 **A, Spleen** and adjacent structures. **B, Thymus gland** in its location in the mediastinum between the lungs.

1. **Destruction of old erythrocytes by macrophages.** In the slow-moving circulation of the spleen, red cell breakdown liberates hemoglobin, which is converted to bilirubin in the liver and then is excreted into the bile.
2. **Filtration of microorganisms and other foreign material from the blood.**
3. **Activation of lymphocytes.** Activated B lymphocytes (B cells) produce antibodies. Activated T lymphocytes (T cells) attack foreign materials.
4. **Storage of blood**, especially erythrocytes and platelets.

The spleen is susceptible to injury. A sharp blow to the upper abdomen (as from the impact of a car's steering wheel) may cause rupture of the spleen. Massive hemorrhage can occur when the spleen is ruptured, and immediate surgical removal (splenectomy) may be necessary. After splenectomy, the liver, bone marrow, and lymph nodes take over the functions of the spleen.

The **thymus gland** (see Figure 14-5B) is a lymphatic organ located in the upper mediastinum between the lungs. During fetal life and childhood it is quite large, but it becomes smaller with age. The thymus gland is composed of nests of lymphoid cells resting on a platform of connective tissue. It plays an important role in the body's ability to protect itself from disease (immunity), especially in fetal life and during the early years of growth. It is known that a thymectomy (removal of the thymus gland) performed in an animal during

the first weeks of life impairs the ability of the animal to make antibodies and to produce immune cells that fight against foreign antigens such as bacteria and viruses. Thus, the thymus gland is important in development of an effective immune system in childhood.

Early in development, in the thymus, lymphocytes learn to recognize and accept the body's own antigens as "self" or friendly. This acceptance of "self" antigens is called **tolerance.** When the tolerance process fails, immune cells react against normal cells, resulting in various pathologic conditions (autoimmune disease). See page 524, under **autoimmune disease** (aut/o = self).

Immune System

The immune system is specialized to defend the body against **antigens** (such as toxins, bacterial proteins, or foreign blood cells). This system includes **leukocytes** such as **neutrophils**, **monocytes**, and **macrophages,** which are phagocytes found in blood and tissues throughout the body. In addition, **lymphoid organs,** such as the lymph nodes, spleen, thymus gland, tonsils, and adenoids, produce **lymphocytes** and **antibodies.**

Natural and Adaptive Immunity

Immunity is the body's ability to resist foreign organisms and toxins that damage tissues and organs. **Natural immunity** is **resistance present at birth.** It is not dependent on previous exposure to an antigen. With natural immunity, after an initial exposure to to an antigen, there is no memory of the initial encounter. An example of natural immunity is the body's handling of a bacterial infection. White blood cells respond immediately to the intruding antigens. **Neutrophils** travel to the infected area and ingest bacteria. Other white blood cells, such as **monocytes**, **macrophages**, and **lymphocytes (NK** or **natural killer cells),** also participate in the body's natural immunity against infection. Typically, there is no immunological memory (ability to remember antigens on pathogens) with natural immunity.

In addition to natural immunity, a healthy person can develop **adaptive immunity.** This is the body's ability to **recognize** and **remember** specific antigens in an immune response. **Lymphocytes (T and B cells)** are part of adaptive immunity. **T cells recognize** and **remember** specific antigens and produce stronger attacks each time the antigen is encountered. **B cells** secrete **antibodies** against antigens. Think of what happens when you have a cold or the flu: You are exposed to a viral antigen. Your B cells secrete antibodies, which not only destroy the virus but remain in the blood so that when the virus reappears, at a later time, you have adaptive immunity to it! Another example of adaptive immunity is that achieved with **vaccination.** You are given an injection of a killed virus or protein that doesn't make you ill, but stimulates your B cells to secrete antibodies against that virus or protein. If you are exposed to the virus or protein at a later time, you will have a more rapid immunologic response because of the antibodies already made (adaptive immunity).

In certain instances, more immediate adaptive immunity is necessary. Poisons (toxins) that rapidly cause major damage (for example, snake venom) can be counteracted by giving ready-made antibodies, called **antitoxins**, produced in another organism. Injections of other ready-made antibodies, such as **immunoglobulins**, can boost your adaptive immunity before you travel to a foreign country. Infants acquire adaptive immunity when they receive **maternal antibodies** through the placenta, before birth, or in breast milk. Figure 14-6 reviews the general differences between natural and adaptive immunity.

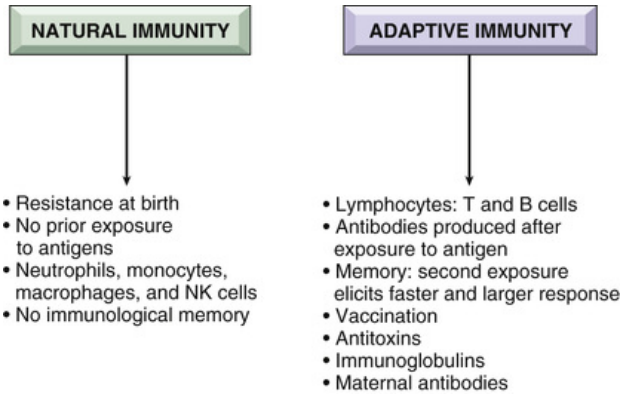

NATURAL IMMUNITY
ADAPTIVE IMMUNITY
• Resistance at birth
• No prior exposure to antigens
• Neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, and NK cells
• No immunological memory
• Lymphocytes: T and B cells
• Antibodies produced after exposure to antigen
• Memory: second exposure elicits faster and larger response
• Vaccination
• Antitoxins
• Immunoglobulins
• Maternal antibodies

FIGURE 14-6 Types of immunity.

Adaptive immunity has two components: **humoral immunity** and **cell-mediated immunity.** Humoral immunity involves **B cells (B lymphocytes),** whereas cell-mediated immunity involves **T cells (T lymphocytes).** In **humoral immunity, B cells** produce **antibodies** after exposure to specific antigens (viruses and bacteria). This is what happens: The B cell matures into another cell called a **plasma cell.** It is the plasma cell that produces antibodies called **immunoglobulins,** which block the effects of antigens. Examples of immunoglobulins **(Ig = immunoglobulin)** are **IgM, IgA, IgG, IgE,** and **IgD.** One maternal immunoglobulin, **IgG,** crosses the placenta to provide immunity for newborns. Another, **IgE,** is important in allergic reactions and in fighting parasitic infections. Figure 14-7 reviews the relationship of a B cell, plasma cell, and immunoglobulins in humoral immunity.

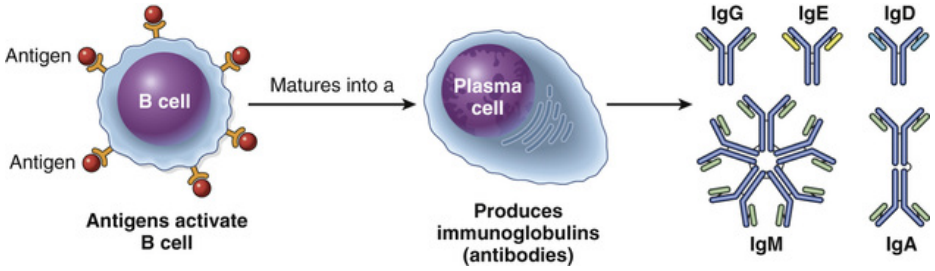


FIGURE 14-7 Humoral immunity: B cell, plasma cell, and immunoglobulins.

Cell-mediated immunity does not involve antibodies. Rather, it involves several types of **T cells** with different functions. For example, **cytotoxic T cells (CD8+ T cells)** attach to antigens and directly kill them. Cytotoxic cells also secrete **cytokines (interferons and interleukins),** which aid other cells in antigen destruction. **Helper T cells (CD4+ T cells)** assist B cells in making antibodies and they stimulate T cells to attack antigens. **Suppressor T cells** (also called **regulatory T cells,** or **Tregs**) inhibit both B and T cells and prevent them from attacking the body's own good cells. Figure 14-8 reviews the types of T cells in cell-mediated immunity.

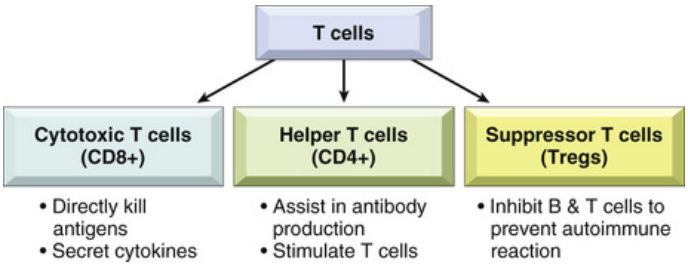

T cells
Cytotoxic T cells (CD8+)
Helper T cells (CD4+)
Suppressor T cells (Tregs)
• Directly kill antigens
• Secret cytokines
• Assist in antibody production
• Stimulate T cells
• Inhibit B & T cells to prevent autoimmune reaction

FIGURE 14-8 Cell-mediated immunity: Types of T cells.

The adaptive immune system is helped by a number of other proteins and cells found in circulating blood. One of these is the **complement system,** a group of proteins that helps antibodies kill their target. Another warrior is the **dendritic cell,** which initiates adaptive immunity by presenting antigens to T and B cells, showing them precisely what they need to counteract. A number of cell types can present antigens to T cells, but dendritic cells are especially efficient at this task. Figure 14-9 reviews the roles of B cells, T cells, complement, and dendritic cells.

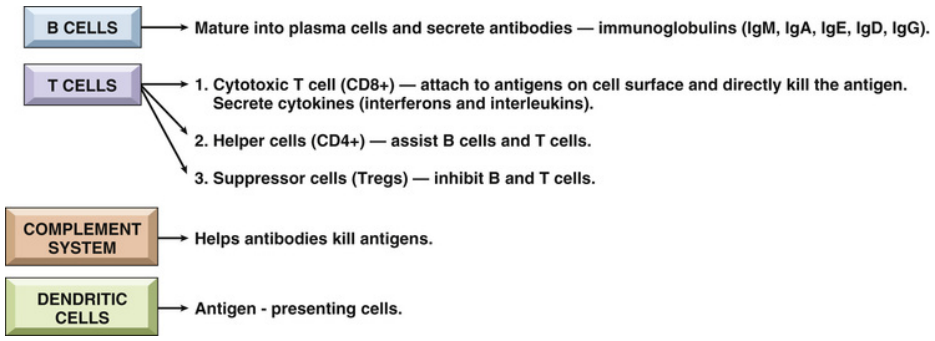

B CELLS
Mature into plasma cells and secrete antibodies — immunoglobulins (IgM, IgA, IgE, IgD, IgG).
T CELLS
1. Cytotoxic T cell (CD8+) — attach to antigens on cell surface and directly kill the antigen. Secrete cytokines (interferons and interleukins).
2. Helper cells (CD4+) — assist B cells and T cells.
3. Suppressor cells (Tregs) — inhibit B and T cells.
COMPLEMENT SYSTEM
Helps antibodies kill antigens.
DENDRITIC CELLS
Antigen - presenting cells.

FIGURE 14-9 Functions of B cells, T cells, complement, and dendritic cells.

Immunotherapy

Immunotherapy is the use of antibodies, B cells (producing antibodies), and T cells to treat disease such as cancer. Types of immunotherapy are:

Monoclonal antibodies (MoAb)—These are antibodies created in a laboratory by special reproductive (cloning) techniques. They are designed to attack specific cancer cells directly or to activate T cells to kill the tumor. An example of monoclonal antibody therapy is use of the drug rituximab (Rituxan), made to kill malignant lymphoma cells. The antibody may be chemically linked to various toxins or radioactive particles and delivered to tumor cells, to enhance the killing effect.

Vaccines—These preparations contain antigens (proteins) from a patient's tumor cells. When they are injected, they stimulate the patient's own T cells to recognize and kill the cancerous cells. Vaccines may be injected or given orally or as a nasal spray.

Transfer of immune cells—In bone marrow transplantation, T lymphocytes from a donor can replace a patient's immune system with new cells that recognize tumor cells as foreign and kill them.

Activated T Cells

CAR-T cells

It is now possible to remove a patient's own T cells and in the laboratory, introduce new molecules that produce receptors called **CARS (chimeric antigen receptors)** on the surface of the T cells. The CARS on the T cells enable them to latch onto the patient's tumor cells to destroy them. See Figure 14-10.

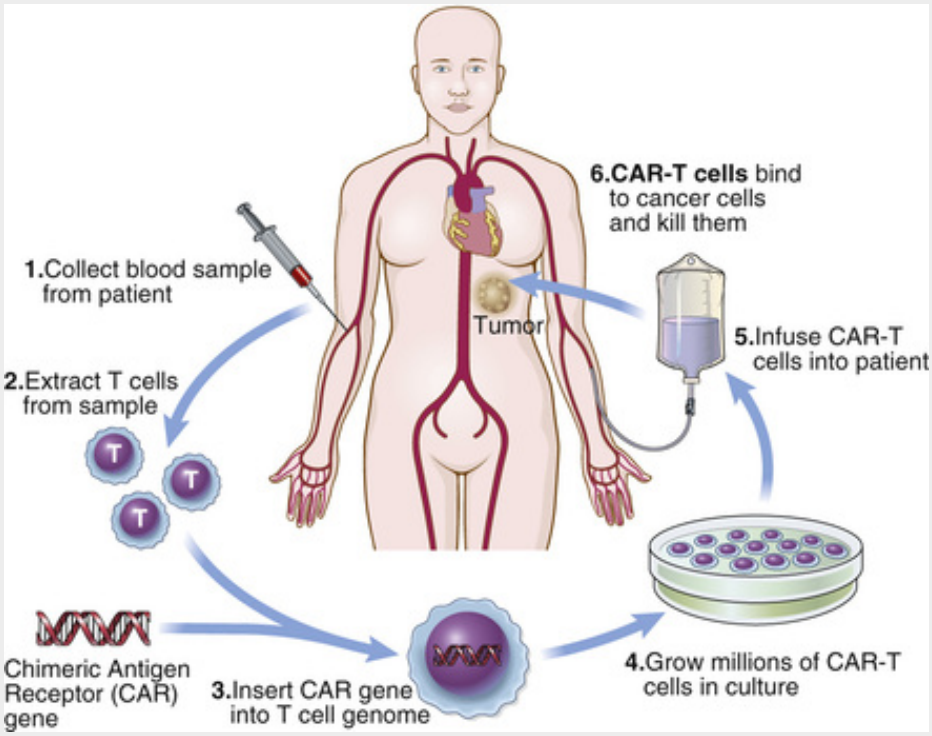

6.CAR-T cells bind to cancer cells and kill them
1.Collect blood sample from patient
Tumor
5.Infuse CAR-T cells into patient
2.Extract T cells from sample
T
T
T
Chimeric Antigen Receptor (CAR) gene
3.Insert CAR gene into T cell genome
4.Grow millions of CAR-T cells in culture

FIGURE 14-10 CAR T-cells.

Monoclonal antibody therapy and transfer of immune cells are passive immunotherapy (immune agents that kill tumor cells directly are given to the patient), whereas vaccination is active immunotherapy (the patient's own immune system is stimulated to do the work).

Vocabulary

This list reviews many of the new terms introduced in the text. Short definitions reinforce your understanding of the terms. Refer to the Pronunciation of Terms on page 540 for help with unfamiliar or difficult words.

adaptive immunity	The ability to recognize and remember specific antigens and mount an attack on them. Humoral (B cells) and cell-mediated immunity (T cells) are examples.
adenoids	Mass of lymphatic tissue in the nasopharynx.
antibody	Protein produced by B cells to destroy antigens.
antigen	Substance that the body recognizes as foreign; evokes an immune response. Most antigens are proteins or protein fragments found on the surface of bacteria, viruses, or organ transplant tissue cells.
axillary nodes	Lymph nodes in the armpit (underarm).
B cell (B lymphocyte)	Lymphocyte that matures into a plasma cell to secrete antibodies. The B refers to the bone marrow, which is where B cells most often originate.
cell-mediated immunity	T cells (cytotoxic, helper and suppressor) respond to antigens and destroy them; a type of adaptive immunity.
cervical nodes	Lymph nodes in the neck region.
complement system	Set of proteins in the blood that help antibodies kill their target.
cytokines	Proteins secreted by cytotoxic T cells to aid in antigen destruction. Examples are interferons and interleukins.
cytotoxic T cell	Lymphocyte that directly kills antigens; called (CD8+) T cell.
dendritic cell	Antigen-presenting cell. Shows T and B cells what to attack.
helper T cell	Lymphocyte that aids B cells and stimulates T cells; (CD4+) T cell.
humoral immunity	B cells produce antibodies after exposure to specific antigens; type of adaptive immunity.
immunity	Body's ability to resist foreign organisms and toxins that damage tissues and organs. This includes natural immunity and adaptive immunity. The word immunity comes from Latin *immunis,* meaning exempt or protected from.
immunoglobulins	Antibodies such as IgA, IgE, IgG, IgM, and IgD; secreted by plasma cells (mature B cells) in response to the presence of an antigen.
immunotherapy	Use of immune cells, antibodies, or vaccines to treat disease.
inguinal nodes	Lymph nodes in the groin region.
interferons	Proteins (cytokines) secreted by T cells and other cells to aid and regulate the immune response.
interleukins	Proteins (cytokines) that stimulate the growth of B and T lymphocytes.
interstitial fluid	Fluid in the spaces between cells. This fluid becomes lymph when it enters lymph capillaries.
lymph	Thin, watery fluid found within lymphatic vessels and collected from tissues throughout the body. Latin *lympha* means clear spring water.
lymph capillaries	Tiniest lymphatic vessels.
lymphoid organs	Lymph nodes, spleen, and thymus gland. Tonsils and adenoids are other examples of lymphoid organs.
lymph node	Collection of stationary solid lymphatic tissue along lymph vessels; contains cells (lymphocytes and macrophages) that fight infection.
lymph vessel	Carrier of lymph throughout the body; lymphatic vessels empty lymph into veins in the upper part of the chest.
macrophage	Large phagocyte found in lymph nodes and other tissues of the body. Phag/o means to eat or swallow.
mediastinal nodes	Lymph nodes in the area between the lungs in the chest cavity.

mesenteric nodes	Lymph nodes in the mesentery (intestinal region).
monoclonal antibody	Antibody produced in a laboratory to attack antigens and to destroy cells; useful in immunotherapy.
natural immunity	Protection that an individual is born with to fight infection such as neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, and NK cells. It is not antigen specific and does not elicit memory.
paraaortic nodes	Lymph nodes near the aorta in the lumbar (waist) area of the body.
plasma cell	Lymphocyte that secretes antibodies. It matures from B lymphocytes.
right lymphatic duct	Lymphatic vessel in the chest that drains lymph from the upper right part of the body. It empties lymph into a large vein in the neck.
spleen	Organ in the left upper quadrant of the abdomen that destroys worn-out red blood cells, activates lymphocytes, and stores blood.
suppressor T cell	Lymphocyte that inhibits the activity of B and T cells. Also called a **Treg (regulatory T cell).**
T cell (T lymphocyte)	Lymphocyte that acts directly on antigens to destroy them or produce chemicals (cytokines) such as interferons and interleukins that are toxic to antigens.
tolerance	Ability of T lymphocytes to recognize and accept the body's own antigens as "self" or friendly. Once tolerance is established, the immune system will not react against the body's own cells.
thoracic duct	Large lymphatic vessel that drains lymph from the lower and left side of the body (head, neck, arm, and chest). It empties lymph into large veins in the neck.
thymus gland	Lymphoid organ in the mediastinum that conditions T cells to react to foreign cells and aids in the immune response.
tonsils	Masses of lymphatic tissue in the back of the oropharynx.
toxin	Poison; a protein produced by certain bacteria, animals, or plants.
vaccination	Exposure of an individual to a foreign protein (antigen) that provokes an immune response. The response will destroy any cell that possesses the antigen on its surface and will protect against infection. The term comes from the Latin *vacca*, cow—the first inoculations were given with organisms that caused the disease cowpox to produce immunity to smallpox.
vaccine	Weakened or dead antigen is given to induce production of antibodies. This results in adaptive immunity.

Terminology

Write the meanings of the medical terms in the spaces provided.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
immun/o	protection	autoimmune disease _____ *Examples are rheumatoid arthritis and systemic lupus erythematosus. These are chronic, disabling diseases caused by the abnormal production of antibodies against normal body tissues. Signs and symptoms are inflammation of joints, skin rash, and fever. Glucocorticoid drugs (prednisone) and other immunosuppressants (azathioprine, methotrexate) are effective as treatment but make patients susceptible to infection.* immunoglobulin _____ immunosuppression _____ *This may occur because of exposure to drugs (corticosteroids) or as the result of disease (AIDS and cancer). Immunosuppressed patients are susceptible to infection with fungi,* Pneumocystis *bacteria, and other pathogens.*	
lymph/o	lymph	lymphopoiesis _____ lymphedema _____ *Interstitial fluid collects within the spaces between cells as a result of obstruction of lymphatic vessels and nodes. Radiation therapy may destroy lymphatics and produce lymphedema, as in breast cancer treatment (Figure 14-11).* lymphocytopenia _____ lymphocytosis _____ lymphoid _____ *The suffix -oid means resembling or derived from. Lymphoid organs include lymph nodes, spleen, and thymus gland.*	
lymphaden/o	lymph node (gland)	lymphadenopathy _____ lymphadenitis _____	
splen/o	spleen	splenomegaly _____ *Note that the combining form for spleen contains only one e.* splenectomy _____ asplenia _____ *The condition may be congenital or result from surgical removal.* hypersplenism _____ *Syndrome marked by splenomegaly and often associated with blood cell destruction, anemia, leukopenia, and thrombocytopenia.*	
thym/o	thymus gland	thymectomy _____	
tox/o	poison	toxic _____	

FIGURE 14-11 **Lymphedema** of right arm secondary to mastectomy, lymphadenectomy, and radiotherapy.

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
ana-	again, anew	anaphylaxis _____ *The suffix -phylaxis means protection. This is an unusual hypersensitivity to previously encountered foreign proteins or other antigens. Vasodilation and a decrease in blood pressure can be life-threatening.*	
inter-	between	interstitial fluid _____ *The suffix -stitial means pertaining to standing or positioned.*	

Pathologic Conditions

Immunodeficiency

Some immunodeficiency disorders are present at birth. An example is **severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID).** Affected infants are born with a deficiency of B cells and T cells, resulting in a lack of immunity. The thymus is small, and children have little or no protection against infection.

acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS)	**Group of clinical signs and symptoms associated with suppression of the immune system and marked by opportunistic infections, secondary neoplasms, and neurologic problems.** AIDS is caused by the **human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)**. HIV destroys **helper T cells** (also known as **CD4+ cells**, containing the CD4 protein antigen). This disrupts the immune response, allowing infections to occur. Infectious diseases associated with AIDS are called **opportunistic infections** because HIV lowers resistance and allows infection by bacteria and parasites that are easily otherwise contained by normal defenses. Table 14-2 lists many of these opportunistic infections; use the table as a reference.
	Malignancies associated with AIDS are **Kaposi sarcoma** (a cancer arising from the lining cells of capillaries that produces dark-purplish skin nodules) and **lymphoma** (cancer of lymph nodes). **Wasting syndrome**, marked by weight loss and decrease in muscular strength, appetite, and mental activity, also may occur with AIDS (Figure 14-12A and B). Persons who were exposed to HIV and now have antibodies in their blood against this virus are **HIV-positive.** HIV is found in blood, semen, vaginal and cervical secretions, saliva, and other body fluids. Transmission of HIV may occur by three routes: sexual contact, blood inoculation (through sharing of contaminated needles, accidental needlesticks, or contact with contaminated blood or blood products), and passage of the virus from infected mothers to their newborns. Table 14-3 summarizes the common routes of transmission of HIV.
	HIV-infected patients may remain asymptomatic for as long as 10 years. Signs and symptoms associated with HIV infection are lymphadenopathy, neurologic disease, oral thrush (fungal infection), night sweats, fatigue, and evidence of opportunistic infections. Some drugs that are used to treat AIDS are inhibitors of the viral enzyme called **reverse transcriptase (RT).** After invading the helper T cell (carrying the CD4+ antigen), HIV releases reverse transcriptase to help it grow and multiply inside the cell. Examples of **reverse transcriptase inhibitors (RTIs)** are zidovudine and lamivudine (Epivir). A second class of anti-HIV drugs is the **protease inhibitors**. These drugs inhibit another viral enzyme called protease. HIV needs protease to reproduce. Use of combinations of protease inhibitors and agents that act by other mechanisms (such as blocking the entry of HIV into T cells) are entry inhibitors and integrase inhibitors. This is called **HAART (highly active antiretroviral therapy)**. This treatment has in many cases eliminated HIV infection in AIDS patients. evidence of viral infection in affected people.

TABLE 14-2

OPPORTUNISTIC INFECTIONS ASSOCIATED WITH AIDS

INFECTION	DESCRIPTION
candidiasis	Yeast-like fungus *(Candida)*, normally present in the mouth, skin, intestinal tract, and vagina, overgrows, causing infection of the mouth (thrush), respiratory tract, and skin.
cryptococcal infection (Crypto)	Yeast-like fungus *(Cryptococcus)* causes lung, brain, and blood infections. Pathogen is found in pigeon droppings and nesting places, air, water, and soil.
cryptosporidiosis	Parasitic infection of the gastrointestinal tract and brain and spinal cord. The pathogen, *Cryptosporidium*, is a one-celled organism commonly found in farm animals.
cytomegalovirus (CMV) infection	Virus causes enteritis and retinitis (inflammation of the retina at the back of the eye). Found in saliva, semen, cervical secretions, urine, feces, blood, and breast milk, but usually causes disease only when the immune system is compromised.
herpes simplex	Viral infection causes small blisters on the skin of the lips or nose or on the genitals. Herpes simplex virus also can cause encephalitis.
histoplasmosis (Histo)	Fungal infection caused by inhalation of dust contaminated with *Histoplasma capsulatum*; causes fever, chills, and lung infection. Pathogen is found in bird and bat droppings.
***Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare* (MAI) complex infection**	Bacterial disease manifesting with fever, malaise, night sweats, anorexia, diarrhea, weight loss, and lung and blood infections.
***Pneumocystis* pneumonia (PCP)**	One-celled organism causes lung infection, with fever, cough, and chest pain. Pathogen is found in air, water, and soil and is carried by animals. Infection is treated with trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole (Bactrim), a combination of several antibiotics, or pentamidine. Aerosolized pentamidine, which is inhaled, can prevent occurrence of PCP.
toxoplasmosis (Toxo)	Parasitic infection involving the central nervous system (CNS) and causing fever, chills, visual disturbances, confusion, hemiparesis (slight paralysis in half of the body), and seizures. Pathogen (*Toxoplasma*) is acquired by eating uncooked lamb or pork, unpasteurized dairy products, or raw eggs or vegetables.
tuberculosis (TB)	Bacterial disease (caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis*) involving the lungs, brain, and other organs. Signs and symptoms are fever, cough, loss of weight, anorexia, and blood in sputum.

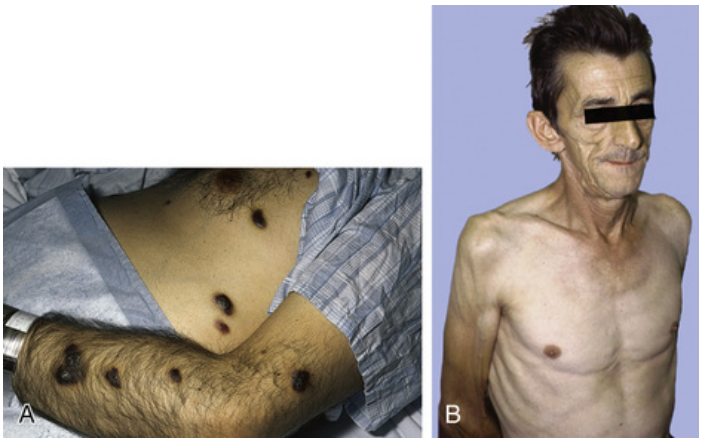


FIGURE 14-12 A, Kaposi sarcoma. B, Wasting syndrome.

TABLE 14-3

COMMON ROUTES OF TRANSMISSION OF AIDS VIRUS

ROUTE	PEOPLE AFFECTED
Receptive oral and anal intercourse	Men and women
Receptive vaginal intercourse	Women
Sharing of needles and equipment (users of intravenous drugs)	Men and women
Contaminated blood (for transfusion) or blood products	Men and women (with hemophilia)
From mother—in utero or by breast feeding	Neonates

Hypersensitivity

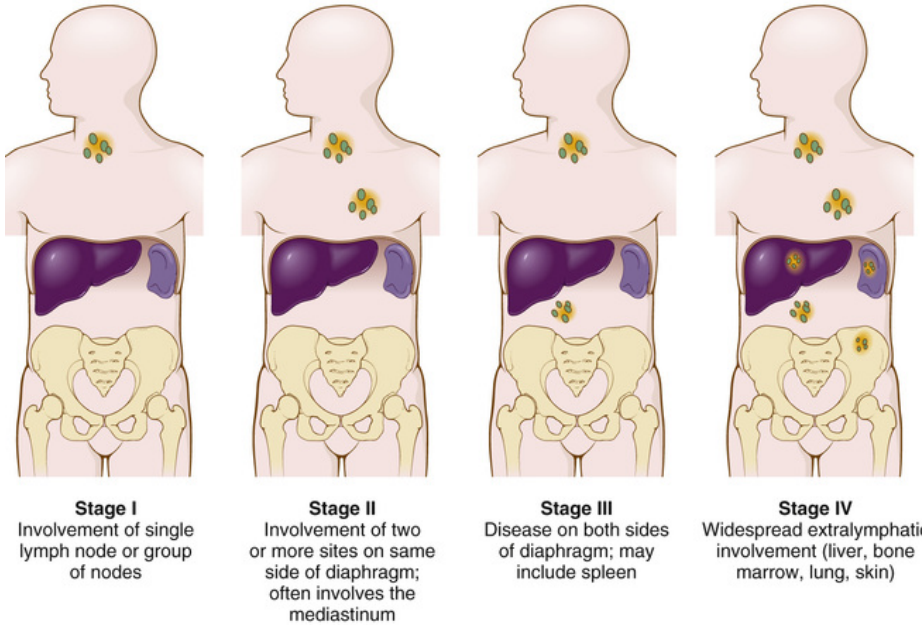
allergy	**Abnormal hypersensitivity acquired by exposure to an antigen.** **Allergic** (all/o = other) reactions occur when a sensitized person, who has previously been exposed to an agent **(allergen),** reacts violently to a subsequent exposure. This reaction varies in intensity from **allergic rhinitis** or hay fever (caused by pollen or animal dander) to **systemic anaphylaxis,** in which an extraordinary hypersensitivity reaction occurs throughout the body, leading to fall in blood pressure (hypotension), shock, respiratory distress, and edema (swelling) of the larynx. Anaphylaxis can be life-threatening, but the patient usually survives if the airways are kept open and treatment is given immediately (epinephrine and antihistamines). Other allergies include **asthma** (pollens, dust, molds), **hives** (caused by food or drugs), and **atopic dermatitis** (rash from soaps, cosmetics, chemicals). Atopic means related to **atopy,** a hypersensitivity or allergic state arising from an inherited predisposition. A person who is atopic is prone to allergies (Figure 14-13). Allergen immunotherapy, also known as allergy shots, is a form of treatment that decreases symptoms for many people with allergic rhinitis, allergic asthma, and other common allergies.

FIGURE 14-13 Atopic dermatitis.

How do Allergy Shots Work?

Allergy shots work like a vaccine. Your body responds to injected trace amounts of a particular allergen given in increasing doses. These injections cause production of antibodies that lead to lessening of allergic symptoms.

Malignancies

lymphoma	**Malignant tumor of lymph nodes and lymph tissue.** There are many types of lymphoma, varying according to the particular cell type and degree of differentiation. Some examples are: **Hodgkin lymphoma**—Malignant tumor of lymphoid tissue in the spleen and lymph nodes. This disease is characterized by **lymphadenopathy** (lymph nodes enlarge), splenomegaly, fever, weakness, and loss of weight and appetite. The diagnosis often is made by identifying a type of malignant cell (**Reed-Sternberg cell**) in the lymph nodes. If disease is localized, the treatment may be radiotherapy or chemotherapy. If the disease is more widespread, chemotherapy is given alone. There is a very high probability of cure with available treatments. Figure 14-14 illustrates staging of Hodgkin lymphoma.  **Stage I** Involvement of single lymph node or group of nodes **Stage II** Involvement of two or more sites on same side of diaphragm; often involves the mediastinum **Stage III** Disease on both sides of diaphragm; may include spleen **Stage IV** Widespread extralymphatic involvement (liver, bone marrow, lung, skin) FIGURE 14-14 **Staging of Hodgkin lymphoma** involves assessing the extent of spread of the disease. Lymph node biopsies, laparotomy with liver and lymph node biopsies, and splenectomy may be necessary for staging. **Non-Hodgkin lymphomas**—These include **follicular lymphoma** (composed of collections of small lymphocytes in a follicle or nodule arrangement) and **large cell lymphoma** (composed of large lymphocytes that infiltrate nodes and tissues diffusely). Non-Hodgkin lymphomas are mostly B cell lymphomas and rarely T cell malignancies. Chemotherapy may cure or stop the progress of this disease.
multiple myeloma	**Malignant tumor of bone marrow cells.** This is a tumor composed of **plasma cells** (antibody-producing B lymphocytes) associated with high levels of one of the specific immunoglobulins, usually IgG. **Waldenström macroglobulinemia** is another disorder of malignant B cells. This disease involves B cells that produce large quantities of IgM (a globulin of high molecular weight). Increased IgM concentration impairs the passage of blood through capillaries in the brain and eyes, causing a hyperviscosity syndrome (thickening of the blood).
thymoma	**Tumor of the thymus gland.**

	Thymoma is associated with myasthenia gravis, a neuromuscular disorder. Many patients with thymoma also have other autoimmune disorders such as systemic lupus erythematosus, rheumatoid arthritis, and red cell aplasia. Although thymomas are rare tumors with benign appearance, malignant potential is present so that tumors may invade local tissues and metastasize regionally. Surgery is the principal method of treating thymoma; postoperative radiation therapy is used for patients with evidence of invasion or spread of the tumor.

Study Section

Practice spelling each term and know its meaning.

allergen	Substance capable of causing a specific hypersensitivity reaction; a type of antigen.
anaphylaxis	Exaggerated or unusual hypersensitivity to foreign protein or other substance.
atopy	Hypersensitive or allergic state involving an inherited predisposition. From the Greek *atopia,* meaning strangeness.
CD4+ cells	Helper T cells that carry the CD4 protein antigen on their surface. HIV binds to CD4 and infects and kills T cells bearing this protein. AIDS patients have an inadequate number of CD4+ cells.
Hodgkin lymphoma	Malignant tumor of lymphoid tissue in spleen and lymph nodes; Reed-Sternberg cells are often found on microscopic analysis.
human immunodeficiency virus (HIV)	Virus (retrovirus) that causes AIDS. Retroviruses are a class of viruses that have RNA, instead of DNA, as their genetic material.
Kaposi sarcoma	Malignant lesion associated with AIDS; arises from the lining of capillaries and appears as red, purple, brown, or black skin nodules. Kaposi sarcoma is caused by a herpesvirus called human herpesvirus 8.
non-Hodgkin lymphomas	Group of malignant tumors involving lymphoid tissue. Examples are follicular lymphoma and large cell lymphoma.
opportunistic infections	Infectious diseases associated with AIDS; they occur because HIV infection lowers the body's resistance and allows infection by bacteria and parasites that normally are easily contained.
protease inhibitor	Drug that treats AIDS by blocking the production of protease, a proteolytic enzyme that helps create new viral pieces for HIV. Other anti-retroviral drugs are entry inhibitors and integrase inhibitors.
reverse transcriptase inhibitor (RTI)	Drug that treats AIDS by blocking reverse transcriptase, an enzyme needed to make copies of HIV.
wasting syndrome	Weight loss, decrease in muscular strength, appetite, and mental activity; associated with AIDS.

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Laboratory Tests

CD4+ cell count	**Measures the number of CD4+ T cells (helper T cells) in the bloodstream of patients with AIDS.** A normal count usually is between 500 and 1500 CD4+ cells per mm^3. If the CD4+ count falls below 250 to 200, it is recommended to start treatment with anti-HIV drugs.
ELISA	**Screening test to detect anti-HIV antibodies in the bloodstream.** Antibodies to HIV begin to appear within 2 weeks of infection with HIV. If the result of this test is positive, it is confirmed with a **Western blot** test, which is more specific. ELISA is an abbreviation for enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay.
immunoelectrophoresis	**Test that separates immunoglobulins (IgM, IgG, IgE, IgA, IgD).** This procedure detects the presence of abnormal levels of antibodies in patients with conditions such as multiple myeloma and Waldenström macroglobulinemia.
viral load test	**Measurement of the amount of AIDS virus (HIV) in the bloodstream.** Two viral load tests are a PCR (polymerase chain reaction) assay and an NASBA (nucleic acid sequence–based amplification) test.

Clinical Procedures

computed tomography (CT) scan	**X-ray imaging produces cross-sectional and other views of anatomic structures.** These x-ray views show abnormalities of lymphoid organs, such as lymph nodes, spleen, and thymus gland.

Abbreviations

AIDS	acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
CAR T-cells	chimeric antigen receptors; activated in laboratory to fight cancer cells
CD4+ cell	helper T cell
CD8+ cell	cytotoxic T cell
CMV	cytomegalovirus—causes opportunistic AIDS-related infection
Crypto	*Cryptococcus*—causes opportunistic AIDS-related infection
ELISA	enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay—test to detect anti-HIV antibodies
G-CSF	granulocyte colony-stimulating factor—cytokine that promotes neutrophil production
GM-CSF	granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor—cytokine secreted by macrophages to promote growth of myeloid progenitor cells and their differentiation to granulocytes
HAART	highly active antiretroviral therapy—use of combinations of drugs that are effective against AIDS
Histo	histoplasmosis—fungal infection seen in AIDS patients
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus—causes AIDS
HSV	herpes simplex virus
IEC	Immunoeffector cells–cells activated to defend the body in an immune response.
IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, IgM	immunoglobulins
IL1 to IL38	interleukins
KS	Kaposi sarcoma
KSHV	Kaposi sarcoma herpesvirus; herpesvirus 8
MAI	*Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare* (MAI) complex—group of pathogens that cause lung and systemic disease in immunocompromised patients
MoAb	monoclonal antibody
NHL	non-Hodgkin lymphoma
PCP	*Pneumocystis* pneumonia—opportunistic AIDS-related infection
PI	protease inhibitor
RTI	reverse transcriptase inhibitor—for example, zidovudine (Retrovir) or lamivudine (Epivir)
SCID	severe combined immunodeficiency disease
Treg	regulatory T cell (suppressor T cell)
Toxo	toxoplasmosis—parasitic infection associated with AIDS

In Person

Hodgkin Lymphoma

When I began noticing persistent back pain and fatigue in 2006, my doctor and I didn't take the symptoms seriously until 2007, when I noticed I was losing weight and short of breath. I saw a lung specialist, who took a chest x-ray and discovered a mass the size of a grapefruit in my mediastinum. Immediately, my stress level went sky high, and being 25 in New York City on my own (my family was in California and my mother was going through metastatic breast cancer treatment), I felt afraid and alone.

I was scheduled for a PET-CT scan and visited a friend who was a radiation oncologist. She was alarmed by my symptoms and appearance and through her father, a medical oncologist, immediately put me in contact with a cancer specialist. The results from the PET-CT plus bronchoscopy with a biopsy, and a bone marrow biopsy confirmed that I had Stage 2B Hodgkin lymphoma with “bulky disease” [large tumor mass] in my mediastinum. This diagnosis was really scary for me. But watching my mother go through her difficult battle with breast cancer made me realize that if I emulated her positive attitude, it would make life easier for my entire family.

The treatment was six cycles of chemotherapy. After two cycles, enough of my hair started falling out that I shaved my head. A Powerport was installed in my upper chest so that I could receive the chemotherapy more quickly and with less pain. Because I was so young, I received hormones to put my body into temporary menopause, to preserve my fertility.

Three months into my treatment a PET-CT showed that the mass was still large, and it was likely that I would need radiation to my chest after the chemotherapy. By the time that I was finishing my chemotherapy, I was having a difficult time coping with the ongoing side effects and time in the hospital. Nevertheless, I rallied and traveled to Boston for 4 weeks of proton [powerful radiation] therapy. I actually felt lucky to be receiving this cutting-edge treatment, delivered by one of the few proton beam machines in the country.

My radiation treatment ended in 2008, and a follow-up PET-CT scan would tell me if I needed further treatment. I remember when the doctor told me that the scan was all clear, I said, “Great!”—and then went outside and cried on a bench for an hour. More recently, I've been getting follow-up scans every year. Honestly, I'm relieved when the scan is clear, but I am also afraid and aware of the possibility of recurrence and of developing a secondary cancer as a result of the extensive radiation treatment. Since my mother passed away in 2013, I've been getting regular mammograms, and because of the radiation effects on my thyroid gland, I'm taking thyroid hormone to treat hypothyroidism.

I know that my Hodgkin lymphoma experience will always be with me, but I still have an inherently positive attitude, which has enabled and empowered me to start a new, exciting business and think optimistically about the future.

Lenore Estrada is the CEO and Co-Founder of Three Babes Bakeshop, a pie business in San Francisco that works to bring awareness to the economic, social and environmental issues at play in working-class American communities. She gave birth to a baby boy in 2018.

Practical Applications

Answers to the questions are on page 540.

Short Clinical Cases

Circle the correct answer in **boldface** for the diagnosis.

1. John was a healthy baby until the age of 22 months, when he developed angioedema [swelling induced while eating a cookie containing peanut butter]. The symptoms disappeared in about an hour. A month later, while eating the same type of cookie, he started to vomit, became hoarse, had great difficulty in breathing, started to wheeze, and developed a swollen face. He was taken immediately to the ED of Children's Hospital, where he was given a subcutaneous injection of epinephrine [adrenaline]. Within minutes of the epinephrine injection, John's hoarseness decreased, the wheezing diminished, and his breathing was less labored. His parents were advised to avoid giving him foods containing peanuts in any form.

   Diagnosis: **(multiple myeloma, acute systemic anaphylaxis, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome)**
2. Mark Scott is a 48-year-old man who has always been in good health. Six months ago he went to the ED at the local hospital complaining of fever and sudden swelling of his right hand from a cat scratch. He was admitted to the hospital for the hand infection. His blood lymphocyte count was very low, so a blood sample was sent to be tested for antibodies against HIV. Both ELISA and a Western blot revealed presence of anti-HIV antibodies. His CD4+ T cell count was very low at 170 [normal is 500 to 1600]. His physician prescribed trimethoprim-sulfamethoxazole for prophylaxis against *Pneumocystis* pneumonia, and Mark also was given HAART. After 5 weeks of therapy, his HIV viral load declined to undetectable levels and his CD4+ T cell count rose. He remains well and active and works full time.

   Diagnosis: **(T cell lymphoma, severe combined immunodeficiency disease, acquired immunodeficiency syndrome)**
3. Mrs. Archer is a 55-year-old housewife who began to experience excessive fatigue. A blood sample revealed mild anemia and slightly lowered white blood cell count. Her sedimentation rate was elevated, and electrophoresis of serum proteins showed marked elevation of IgG. She returned for regular visits to her physician, and on each occasion serum IgG levels were gradually increasing. After she experienced sudden onset of upper back pain, a thoracic spine MRI study was performed and showed destruction of a portion of a vertebra. A bone marrow biopsy specimen showed a proliferation of plasma cells. She was given anticancer drugs bortezomib (Velcave) and lenalinamide (Relimid), but a year later she developed fever and chest pain. Chest x-ray revealed pneumonia, and antibiotics were given. The outlook for her survival is poor.

   Diagnosis: **(Hodgkin lymphoma, hemolytic anemia, multiple myeloma)**

In Person

Lymphoma Treatment

This account was written by a medical oncologist who specializes in the treatment of patients with lymphoma.

Of the many challenges of practicing medical oncology, the treatment of patients with lymphoma is among the most satisfying, and at times the most difficult. Lymphomas were the first common solid tumor to become curable with drugs alone. In 1969, investigators at the National Cancer Institute published their promising results with combination chemotherapy for Hodgkin lymphoma. At that time, this was a tumor that was treatable and curable with radiation therapy in only a small fraction of patients, when disease was limited to involvement of only a few lymph nodes. Very soon thereafter, chemotherapy proved to be curative for almost one half of patients with a more aggressive disease—large B cell lymphocytic lymphoma, a malignancy that affects 20,000 new subjects every year in the United States. In succeeding years, for patients not cured with conventional drugs, bone marrow transplantation following ultra-high-dose chemotherapy salvaged at least half of those patients who experienced a relapse of disease. New drugs, particularly monoclonal antibodies that attack proteins on the surface of tumors and initiate immune destruction of tumors, have added to that success. Thus, at present, with use of chemotherapy, irradiation, and high-dose drug treatment, most patients with lymphoma can be cured.

The experience of treating a patient with lymphoma is not simple. The first step is making the correct diagnosis, which requires obtaining an adequate biopsy specimen from the involved lymph nodes, bone marrow, or other disease sites. Next, the physician must establish the sites and extent of disease. This requires x-ray, MR imaging of the lungs, and spinal cord PET/CT (combination of nuclear medicine and computed tomography tests). The choice of drug regimens and other treatments depends on making a correct assessment of these factors.

The doctor must explain all of this information to the patient so that he or she has a clear understanding of what lies ahead. The long-term plan of management involves numerous

hospital outpatient visits for evaluation and treatment, including possible biopsy and repeat biopsy of sites of disease to establish whether the tumor has been effectively treated. I also spend considerable time with patients explaining the potential side effects of treatments, some of which can affect the lungs, heart, and immune system. In addition, patients need guidance after chemotherapy about susceptibility to serious infections when blood counts are low. Overall, the psychological stress and uncertainty of outcome plus the impact on work and family responsibilities make the need for support from friends and family crucial.

For most patients, all of these issues are successfully managed during treatment, and no experience is more gratifying for me, as an oncologist, than to achieve cure of a potentially lethal disease. All of this is accomplished at a price. For a few patients, the stresses of disease and its impact on family and work prove nearly overwhelming. I call upon the intervention of social workers, nurses, and even psychiatrists to help my patients deal with the difficulty of disease and life-changing experiences. The added rigors of bone marrow transplantation increase the burden on patients who are not cured by conventional treatments. Finally, even more stressful and demanding are the challenges faced by those patients, a minority to be sure, whose disease progresses despite all interventions, and who are destined not to survive. For these patients, experimental treatments at times are the best option and again may reverse the downward course. Through it all, as a physician, I find that we must all work as a team to provide the best medical advice, psychological support, and hope for 60,000 new patients who develop lymphoma each year.

Dr. Bruce A. Chabner is a professor of medicine at Harvard Medical School and the Clinical Director, Emeritus, and Allen Distinguished Investigator Massachusetts General Hospital Cancer Center

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, page 439.

A **Match the listed terms with the descriptions that follow.**

adenoids
interstitial fluid
lymph capillaries
lymph node
right lymphatic duct
spleen
thoracic duct
thymus gland

1. collection of stationary lymphatic tissue along lymph vessels _____
2. large lymphatic vessel that drains lymph from the lower and left side of the body _____
3. organ in the left upper quadrant of the abdomen that destroys worn-out erythrocytes, activates lymphocytes, and stores blood

_____

4. mass of lymphatic tissue in the nasopharynx

_____

5. lymphoid organ in the mediastinum that conditions T cells to react to foreign cells in the immune response

_____

6. tiniest lymphatic vessels _____
7. large lymphatic vessel in the chest that drains lymph from the upper right part of the body

_____

8. fluid in the spaces between cells

_____

B **Give the locations of the following lymph nodes.**

1. inguinal nodes _____
2. axillary nodes _____
3. cervical nodes _____
4. mediastinal nodes _____
5. paraaortic nodes _____
6. mesenteric nodes _____

C **Circle the correct answer in boldface in each sentence.**

1. Cytotoxic T cells are **(CD8+ T cells, helper T cells, suppressor T cells)** and directly kill foreign cells.
2. Lymphocytes that directly act on antigens are **(B cells, T cells, macrophages)**.
3. CD4+ T cells are **(helper T cells, Tregs, B cells)** and are deficient in people with AIDS.
4. Lymphocytes that mature into plasma cells and secrete antibodies are **(B cells, T cells, macrophages)**.
5. The type of immunity in which B cells produce antibodies after exposure to antigens is **(natural immunity, cytotoxic immunity, humoral immunity)**.
6. The type of immunity that is the ability to recognize and remember specific antigens and mount an attack on them is **(adaptive immunity, natural immunity)**.

D **Match the following cell names with their meanings as given below.**

complement system
dendritic cell
helper T cell
macrophage
plasma cell
suppressor T cell

1. lymphocyte that matures from a B lymphocyte and secretes antibodies _____
2. large phagocyte found in lymph nodes and other tissues of the body _____
3. CD4+ T cell that aids B cells in recognizing antigens _____
4. Treg that inhibits the activity of B and T lymphocytes _____
5. proteins in the blood that help antibodies and T cells kill their target _____
6. antigen-presenting cell; shows B cells and T cells what to attack _____

E **Match the terms in Column I with their descriptions in Column II. Write the letter of your answer in the spaces provided.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. immunoglobulins	_____	A. Antibodies—IgA, IgE, IgG, IgM, IgD
2. toxins	_____	B. Lymphocytes that aids B cells; CD4+ T cell
3. helper T cells	_____	C. Poisons (antigens)
4. suppressor T cells	_____	D. T lymphocytes that inhibit the activity of B and T cells
5. cytotoxic T cells	_____	E. Cytokines secreted by cytotoxic T cells
6. plasma cells	_____	F. Transformed B cells that secrete antibodies
7. interferons and interleukins	_____	G. T lymphocytes that directly kill foreign cells (CD8+ T cells)

F **Use the given definitions to build medical terms.**

1. removal of the spleen: _____
2. enlargement of the spleen: _____

3. formation of lymph:
_____

4. tumor of the thymus gland:
_____

5. inflammation of lymph glands (nodes):
_____

6. deficiency of lymph cells:
_____

7. pertaining to poison:
_____

8. disease of lymph glands (nodes):
_____

G **Match the listed terms with the descriptions/definitions that follow.**

AIDS
allergen
anaphylaxis
Hodgkin lymphoma
hypersplenism
lymphedema
lymphoid organs
thymectomy

1. syndrome marked by enlargement of the spleen and associated with anemia, leukopenia, and thrombocytopenia
_____

2. extraordinary hypersensitivity to a foreign protein; marked by hypotension, shock, and respiratory distress
_____

3. antigen capable of causing allergy (hypersensitivity)
_____

4. disorder in which the immune system is suppressed by exposure to HIV _____

5. removal of a mediastinal organ
_____

6. malignant tumor of lymphoid tissue in the lymph nodes and spleen; Reed-Sternberg cells are in lymph nodes

_____

7. spleen, thymus, and tonsils

_____

8. swelling of tissues due to interstitial fluid accumulation

_____

H **Match the listed terms or abbreviations related to AIDS with the descriptions that follow.**

CD4+ T cells

ELISA

HAART

HIV

Kaposi sarcoma

opportunistic infections

protease inhibitor

reverse transcriptase inhibitor

viral load test

wasting syndrome

1. malignant condition associated with AIDS (purplish skin nodules appear) _____
2. human immunodeficiency virus; the retrovirus that causes AIDS

_____

3. white blood cells that are destroyed by the AIDS virus

_____

4. group of infectious diseases associated with AIDS

_____

5. measures the amount of HIV in blood _____
6. weight loss with decreased muscular strength, appetite, and mental activity _____
7. drug used to treat AIDS by blocking an enzyme needed to make copies of HIV _____
8. drug used to treat AIDS by blocking the production of an enzyme that creates new viral pieces for HIV _____

9. use of combinations of drugs to treat AIDS _____

10. test to detect anti-HIV antibodies _____

I **Complete the following terms according to the definitions provided. Pay close attention to the proper spelling of each term.**

1. chronic, disabling diseases caused by abnormal production of antibodies to normal tissue: auto _____ diseases
2. a hypersensitivity or allergic state with an inherited predisposition: a _____
3. a malignant tumor of lymph nodes; follicular and large cell are types of this disease: non _____
4. fluid that lies between cells throughout the body: inter _____ fluid
5. formation of lymphocytes or lymphoid tissue: lympho _____
6. chronic swelling of a part of the body due to collection of fluid between tissues secondary to obstruction of lymph vessels and nodes: lymph _____
7. an unusual or exaggerated allergic reaction to a foreign protein: ana _____
8. introduction of altered antigens to produce an immune response and protection from disease: vac _____
9. test that separates immunoglobulins: immuno _____
10. antibody used in immunotherapy; produced in a laboratory to attack antigens and destroy cells: mono _____ antibody

J **Circle the correct term(s) in boldface to complete each sentence.**

1. Mr. Blake had been HIV-positive for 5 years before he developed (*Pneumocystis* pneumonia, thymoma, multiple myeloma) and was diagnosed with **(Hodgkin lymphoma, non-Hodgkin lymphoma, AIDS).**
2. Mary developed rhinitis, rhinorrhea, and red eyes every spring when pollen was prevalent. She consulted her doctor about her

severe **(hypersplenism, allergies, lymphadenitis).**

3. Paul felt some marble-sized lumps in his left groin. His doctor told him that he had an infection in his foot and had developed secondary **(axillary, cervical, inguinal)** lymphadenopathy.
4. Mr. Jones was referred to a dermatologist and an oncologist when his primary physician noticed purple spots on his arms and legs. Because he had AIDS, his physician was concerned about the possibility of **(Kaposi sarcoma, splenomegaly, thrombocytopenic purpura).**
5. Fifteen-year-old Peter was allergic to peanuts. His allergy was so severe that he carried epinephrine with him at all times to prevent **(adaptive immunity, anaphylaxis, immunosuppression)** in case he came in contact with peanut butter at school.
6. When she was in her mid-20s, Rona was diagnosed with a lymph node malignancy known as **(sarcoidosis, Kaposi sarcoma, Hodgkin lymphoma)**. Because the disease was primarily in her chest, her **(inguinal, mediastinal, axillary)** lymph nodes were irradiated [radiation therapy], and she was cured. When she developed lung cancer in her mid-40s, her oncologist told her she had a/an **(iatrogenic, hereditary, metastatic)** radiation-induced secondary tumor.
7. Mary has suffered from hay fever, asthma, and chronic dermatitis ever since she was a young child. She has been particularly bothered by the severely pruritic [itching], erythematous [reddish] patches on her hands. Her dermatologist gave her topical steroids for her **(toxic, atopic, opportunistic)** dermatitis and told her to avoid soaps, cosmetics, and irritating chemicals.
8. Bernie noticed pain in his pelvis, spine, and ribs and was evaluated by his physician. Blood tests showed high levels of plasma cells and abnormal globulins. Increased numbers of plasma cells were revealed on **(chest x-ray, stem cell transplantation, bone marrow biopsy)**. Radiologic studies showed bone loss. The physician's diagnosis was multiple **(sclerosis, thymoma, myeloma).**
9. AIDS is caused by **(herpes simplex virus, monoclonal antibodies, human immunodeficiency virus).** Lymphocytes called **(CD4+ cells, suppressor cells, B cells)** are destroyed, leading to **(anaphylaxis, atopy, opportunistic infections).**

10. Drugs used to treat AIDS are **(immunosuppressants, protease inhibitors, interferons).** Other anti-AIDS drugs are **(reverse transcriptase inhibitors, monoclonal antibodies, immunoglobulins).**

Answers to Exercises

A

1. lymph node
2. thoracic duct
3. spleen
4. adenoids
5. thymus gland
6. lymph capillaries
7. right lymphatic duct
8. interstitial fluid

B

1. groin region
2. armpit region
3. neck (of the body) region
4. space between the lungs in the chest
5. near the aorta in the lumbar area of the body
6. intestinal region

C

1. CD8+ T cells
2. T cells
3. helper T cells
4. B cells
5. humoral immunity

6. adaptive immunity

D

1. plasma cell
2. macrophage
3. helper T cell
4. suppressor T cell
5. complement system
6. dendritic cell

E

1. A
2. C
3. B
4. D
5. G
6. F
7. E

F

1. splenectomy
2. splenomegaly
3. lymphopoiesis
4. thymoma
5. lymphadenitis
6. lymphocytopenia
7. toxic
8. lymphadenopathy

G

1. hypersplenism
2. anaphylaxis
3. allergen
4. AIDS
5. thymectomy
6. Hodgkin lymphoma
7. lymphoid organs
8. lymphedema

H

1. Kaposi sarcoma
2. HIV
3. CD4+ T cells
4. opportunistic infections
5. viral load test
6. wasting syndrome
7. reverse transcriptase inhibitor
8. protease inhibitor
9. HAART (highly active antiretroviral therapy)
10. ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay)

I

1. autoimmune
2. atopy
3. non-Hodgkin lymphoma
4. interstitial
5. lymphopoiesis
6. lymphedema

7. anaphylaxis
8. vaccination
9. immunoelectrophoresis
10. monoclonal

J

1. *Pneumocystis* pneumonia; AIDS
2. allergies
3. inguinal
4. Kaposi sarcoma
5. anaphylaxis
6. Hodgkin lymphoma; mediastinal; iatrogenic
7. atopic
8. bone marrow biopsy; myeloma
9. human immunodeficiency virus; CD4+ cells; opportunistic infections
10. protease inhibitors; reverse transcriptase inhibitors

Answers to Practical Applications

Short Clinical Cases

1. acute systemic anaphylaxis—Allergic reactions occur when already sensitized people are reexposed to the same allergen. The first exposure generates allergen-specific antibodies and/or T cells, and reexposure to the same allergen can produce a severe allergic reaction or anaphylaxis.
2. acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
3. multiple myeloma

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also

hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

Vocabulary and Terminology

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
adaptive immunity	ah-DAP-tiv ih-MU-nih-te
adenoids	AH-deh-noydz
anaphylaxis	an-ah-fah-LAK-sis
antibody	AN-tih-bod-e
antigen	AN-tih-jen
asplenia	a-SPLEN-e-ah
autoimmune disease	aw-to-ih-MEWN dih-ZEEZ
axillary nodes	AKS-il-ar-e nodes
B cell	B sel
cell-mediated immunity	sel me-de-A-ted ih-MU-nit-e
cervical nodes	SER-vih-kul nodes
complement system	COM-pleh-ment SIS-tem
cytokines	SI-to-kines
cytotoxic T cell	si-to-TOK-sik T sel
dendritic cell	den-DRIH-tik sel
helper T cell	HEL-per T sel
humoral immunity	HU-mer-al im-MU-nih-te
hypersplenism	hi-per-SPLEN-iz-m
immunity	ih-MU-nih-te
immunoglobulins	im-u-no-GLOB-u-linz
immunosuppression	im-u-no-su-PREH-shun
immunotherapy	ih-mu-no-THER-ah-pe
inguinal nodes	ING-win-al node
interferons	in-ter-FE-ronz
interleukins	in-ter-LU-kinz
interstitial fluid	in-ter-STIH-shul FLU-id
lymph	limf
lymph capillaries	limf KAP-il-ar-eez
lymph node	limf node
lymph vessel	limf VES-el
lymphadenitis	limf-ah-deh-NI-tis
lymphadenopathy	limf-ah-deh-NOP-ah-the
lymphedema	limf-eh-DE-mah
lymphocyte	LIMF-o-site
lymphocytopenia	limf-o-si-to-PE-ne-ah
lymphocytosis	limf-o-si-TO-sis
lymphoid organs	LIMF-oyd OR-ganz
lymphopoiesis	limf-o-poy-E-sis
macrophage	MAK-ro-fayj
mediastinal nodes	me-de-ah-STI-nal nodes
mesenteric nodes	mez-en-TER-ik nodes
monoclonal antibody	mon-o-KLO-nal AN-tih-bod-e
natural immunity	NAH-tu-ral ih-MU-nih-te
paraaortic nodes	par-ah-a-OR-tik nodes
plasma cell	PLAZ-mah sel
right lymphatic duct	rite limf-FAH-tik dukt
spleen	spleen

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
splenectomy	spleh-NEK-to-me
splenomegaly	spleh-no-MEG-ah-le
suppressor T cell	suh-PRE-sor T sel
T cell	T sel
thoracic duct	thor-AH-sik dukt
thymectomy	thi-MEK-to-me
thymus gland	THI-mus gland
tolerance	TOL-er-antz
tonsils	TON-silz
toxic	TOK-sik
toxin	TOK-sin
vaccination	vak-sih-NA-shun
vaccine	vak-SEEN

Pathology and Laboratory Tests

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
acquired immunodeficiency syndrome	ah-KWI-erd im-u-no-deh-FIH-shen-se SIN-drohm
allergen	AL-er-jen
allergy	AL-er-je
atopy	AT-o-pe
CD4+ cell	CD4 POS-ih-tiv sel
ELISA	eh-LI-zah
Hodgkin lymphoma	HOJ-kin limf-O-mah
human immunodeficiency virus	HU-man im-u-no-deh-FIH-shen-se VI-rus
immunoelectrophoresis	ih-mu-no-e-lek-tro-phor-E-sis
Kaposi sarcoma	KAH-po-se sar-KO-mah
lymphoma	lim-FO-mah
multiple myeloma	MUL-tih-pel mi-eh-LO-mah
non-Hodgkin lymphoma	non-HOJ-kin lim-FO-mah
opportunistic infections	op-por-tu-NIS-tik in-FEK-shunz
protease inhibitors	PRO-te-ayz in-HIB-ih-torz
reverse transcriptase inhibitor	re-VERS trans-SCRIPT-ayz in-hib-ih-tor
severe combined immunodeficiency disease	seh-VEER kom-BINED ih-mu-no-deh-FIH-shen-se dih-ZEEZ
thymoma	thi-MO-mah
viral load test	VI-ral LOAD test
wasting syndrome	WAYST-ing SIN-drohm
Western blot	WES-tern blot

Review Sheet

Write the meaning of the word parts in the spaces provided. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	COMBINING FORM	MEANING
axill/o	_____	lymphaden/o	_____
cervic/o	_____	splen/o	_____
immun/o	_____	thym/o	_____
inguin/o	_____	tox/o	_____
lymph/o	_____		

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	SUFFIX	MEANING
-cytosis	_____	-pathy	_____
-edema	_____	-penia	_____
-globulin	_____	-phylaxis	_____
-megaly	_____	-poiesis	_____
-oid	_____	-stitial	_____
-oma	_____	-suppression	_____

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING	PREFIX	MEANING
ana-	_____	inter-	_____
auto-	_____	retro-	_____
hyper-	_____		

CHAPTER 15

Musculoskeletal System

CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 544
Bones 544
- **Vocabulary** 558
- **Terminology** 560
- **Pathology** 564

Joints 568
- **Vocabulary** 569
- **Terminology** 570
- **Pathology** 572

Muscles 577
- **Vocabulary** 580
- **Terminology** 581
- **Pathology** 583

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures 583
Abbreviations 587
In Person: Rotator Cuff Tear 588
Practical Applications 589
In Person: Total Hip Arthroplasty 592
Exercises 593
Answers to Exercises 604
Pronunciation of Terms 607
Review Sheet 611

CHAPTER GOALS

- Define terms relating to the structure and function of bones, joints, and muscles.
- Describe the process of bone formation and growth.
- Locate and name the major bones of the body.
- Analyze the combining forms, prefixes, and suffixes used to describe bones, joints, and muscles.
- Explain various musculoskeletal disease conditions and terms related to bone fractures.
- Describe important laboratory tests and clinical procedures relating to the musculoskeletal system, and recognize relevant abbreviations.
- Apply your new knowledge to understanding medical terms in their proper contexts, such as medical reports and records.

Introduction

The musculoskeletal system includes the bones, muscles, and joints. All have important functions in the body.

Bones provide the framework on which the body is constructed and protect and support internal organs. Bones also assist the body in movement, because they serve as a point of attachment for muscles. The inner core of bones is composed of hematopoietic tissue (red bone marrow, which manufactures blood cells), whereas outer parts of bone are storage areas for minerals necessary for growth, such as calcium and phosphorus.

Joints are the places at which bones come together. Several different types of joints are found within the body. The type of joint found in any specific location is determined by the need for greater or lesser flexibility of movement.

Muscles, whether attached to bones or to internal organs and blood vessels, are responsible for movement. Internal movement involves the contraction and relaxation of muscles found in viscera, and external movement is accomplished by the contraction and relaxation of muscles that are attached to the bones. **Tendons** are connective tissue that bind muscles to bones, while **ligaments** bind bones to other bones.

Orthopedists are physicians who treat (surgically and medically) bone, joint, and muscle conditions. Originally, orthopedics was a branch of medicine correcting deformities in children (**orth/o** means straight, **ped/o** means child). **Rheumatologists** are physicians (nonsurgical) who specialize primarily in joint problems, such as arthritis; in this context, **rheumat/o,** meaning watery flow, refers to joint fluid. **Physiatrists** are medical doctors whose focus is on rehabilitation after injury or illness to muscles, bones, and nerves.

Both a **medical doctor (MD)** and an **doctor of osteopathy (DO)** can specialize in orthopedics, rheumatology, or physiatry. MD and DO medical education programs are similar, and both kinds of physicians perform surgery as well as prescribe medication. An osteopath has added training in the musculoskeletal system, with an emphasis on body mechanics to promote good health. A **chiropractor** (**chir/o** means hand) is not a physician but has extensive and specialized training in using physical means to manipulate the spinal column, joints, and soft tissues.

A **physical therapist** is a doctoral degree–prepared health care professional who develops a treatment plan based on a patient's physical impairments with or without a physician diagnosis. The goals of physical therapy (PT) are to restore function, improve mobility, and relieve pain. **Athletic trainers** are health care professionals who, working with a physician, provide therapeutic intervention and rehabilitation of injuries and medical conditions. Training includes a bachelor's or master's degree from an accredited school. Passing a certification examination also is required to work in this field.

Bones

Formation and Structure

Formation

Bones are complete organs composed chiefly of a specialized connective tissue called **osseous** (bony) **tissue,** plus a rich supply of blood vessels and nerves. Osseous tissue consists of a combination of **osteocytes** (bone cells), dense connective tissue strands known as **collagen,** and intercellular **calcium salts.**

During fetal development, the bones of the fetus are composed of **cartilage,** which resembles osseous tissue but is more flexible and less dense because of a lack of calcium salts in its intercellular spaces. As the embryo develops, the process of depositing calcium salts in the soft, cartilaginous tissue occurs and continues throughout the life of the individual after birth. The gradual replacement of cartilage and its intercellular substance by immature bone cells and calcium deposits is called **ossification** (bone formation).

Osteoblasts (**-blast** is from the Greek word meaning to bud or sprout) are the immature osteocytes that produce the bony tissue replacing cartilage during ossification. **Osteoclasts** (**-clast** is from the Greek word meaning to break) are large cells that function to reabsorb, or digest, bony tissue. Osteoclasts (also called **bone phagocytes**) digest bone tissue from the inner sides of bones thus enlarging the inner bone cavity so that the bone does not become overly thick and heavy. When a bone breaks, osteoblasts lay down the mineral bone matter (calcium salts) and osteoclasts remove excess bone debris (smooth out the bone).

Osteoblasts and osteoclasts work together in all bones throughout life, tearing down (osteoclasts) and rebuilding (osteoblasts) bony tissue. This allows bone to respond to mechanical stresses placed on it and thus enables it to be a living tissue, constantly rebuilding and renewing itself. This process is known as bone remodeling.

The formation of bone depends largely on a proper supply of **calcium** and **phosphorus** to the bone tissue. These minerals must be taken into the body along with a sufficient amount of vitamin D. Vitamin D helps calcium to pass through the lining of the small intestine and into the bloodstream. Once calcium and phosphorus are in the bones, osteoblastic activity produces an enzyme that forms calcium phosphate, a substance that gives bone its characteristic hard quality. It is the major calcium salt.

Not only are calcium and phosphorus part of the hard structure of bone tissue, but calcium is also present in the bloodstream. If the proper amount of calcium is lacking in the blood, nerve fibers are unable to transmit impulses effectively to muscles, the heart muscle becomes weak, and muscles attached to bones undergo spasms.

The necessary level of calcium in the blood is maintained by the parathyroid gland, which secretes a hormone that signals the release of calcium from bone storage. An excess of the hormone (caused by tumor or another pathologic

process) will raise blood calcium at the expense of the bones, which become weakened by the loss of calcium.

Structure

There are 206 bones of various types in the body. **Long bones** are found in the thigh, lower leg, and upper and lower arm. These bones are very strong, are broad at the ends where they join with other bones, and have large surface areas for muscle attachment.

Short bones are found in the wrist and ankle and are small with irregular shapes. **Flat bones** are found covering soft body parts. These bones are the skull, shoulder blades, ribs, and pelvic bones. **Sesamoid bones** are small, rounded bones (resembling a sesame seed in shape). They are found near joints, and they increase the efficiency of the tendons at a particular joint. The kneecap is the largest example of a sesamoid bone.

Figure 15-1A shows the anatomic divisions of a long bone such as the thigh bone or upper arm bone. Label the figure as you read the following.

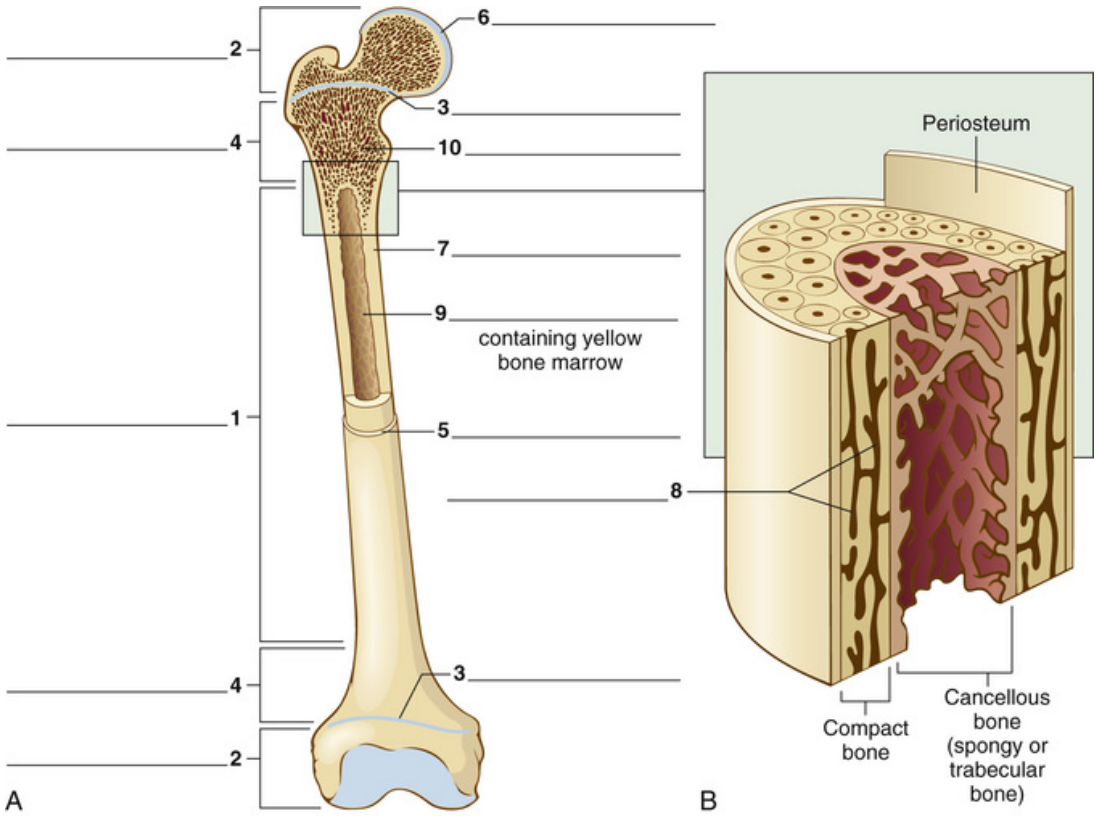


FIGURE 15-1 A, Divisions of a long bone and interior bone structure. B, Composition of compact (cortical) bone.

The shaft, or middle region, of a long bone is called the **diaphysis** [1]. Each end of a long bone is called an **epiphysis** [2]. The **epiphyseal line** or **plate** [3] represents an area of cartilage tissue that is constantly being replaced by new bone tissue as the bone grows; it also is commonly known as the growth plate. Cartilage cells at the edges of the epiphyseal plate form new bone, which is responsible for lengthening bones during childhood and adolescence. The plate calcifies and disappears when the bone has achieved its full growth. The **metaphysis** [4] is the flared portion of the bone; it lies between the epiphysis and the diaphysis. It is adjacent to the epiphyseal plate.

The **periosteum** [5] is a strong, fibrous, vascular membrane that covers the surface of long bones, except at the ends of the epiphyses. It has an extensive nerve supply as well. All bones are covered by the periosteum.

The ends of long bones and the surface of any bone that meets another bone to form a joint are covered with **articular cartilage** [6]. When two bones come together to form a joint, the bones themselves do not touch precisely. The articular cartilage that caps the end of one bone comes into contact with that of the other bone. Articular cartilage is a very smooth, strong, and slick tissue. It cushions the joint and allows it to move smoothly and efficiently. Unlike the cartilage of the epiphyseal plate, which disappears when a bone achieves its full growth, articular cartilage is present throughout life.

Compact (cortical) bone [7] is a layer of hard, dense bone that lies under the periosteum in all bones and is located chiefly around the diaphysis of long bones. Within the compact bone is a system of small canals containing blood vessels that bring oxygen and nutrients to the bone and remove waste products such as carbon dioxide. Figure 15-1B shows these channels, called **haversian canals** [8], in the compact bone. Compact bone is tunneled out in the central shaft of the long bones by a **medullary cavity** [9] that contains **yellow bone marrow.** Yellow marrow is composed chiefly of fat cells.

Cancellous bone [10], sometimes called **spongy** or **trabecular bone,** is much more porous and less dense than compact bone. The mineral matter in it is laid down in a series of separated bony fibers that make up a spongy latticework. These interwoven fibers, called **trabeculae,** are found largely in the epiphyses and metaphyses of long bones and in the middle portion of most other bones of the body as well. Spaces in cancellous bone contain **red bone marrow.** The red marrow consists of immature and mature blood cells in various stages of development. **Hematopoiesis** (-poiesis means formation) is the production of all types of blood cells in the bone marrow.

In an adult, the ribs, pelvic bone, sternum (breastbone), and vertebrae, as well as the epiphyses of long bones, contain red bone marrow within cancellous tissue. Red marrow in the medullary cavity of long bones is plentiful in young children but decreases through the years and is replaced by yellow marrow.

Processes and Depressions in Bones

Bone processes are enlarged areas that extend out from bones and serve as attachments for muscles, tendons, and ligaments. Bone depressions are openings or hollow regions serving as connections between bones, or passageways for blood vessels and nerves. Table 15-1 lists various processes and depressions for your reference.

TABLE 15-1

PROCESSES AND DEPRESSIONS IN BONES

PROCESS (Refer to Figure 15-2)	DESCRIPTION
1. **Bone head**	Rounded end of a bone
2. **Condyle**	Rounded knuckle-like process, at the end of a bone
3. **Epicondyle**	Small rounded process above (epi- means above) the condyle
4. **Trochanters**	Large and small processes for tendon attachments on the femur
5. **Tuberosity (tubercle)**	Round elevation where tendons and muscles attach on the humerus, calcaneous (heel bone), and pelvis

Depression	Description	Example
Fissure	Narrow groove or slit-like opening	Orbital (eye socket) fissure (Figure 15-5)
Foramen	Opening for blood vessels and nerves	Foramen magnum of the skull (Figure 15-4)
Fossa	Shallow cavity in or on a bone	Olecranon (elbow) fossa on humerus (Figure 15-2)
Sinus	Hollow cavity within bone	Sinuses of the skull (Figure 15-6)

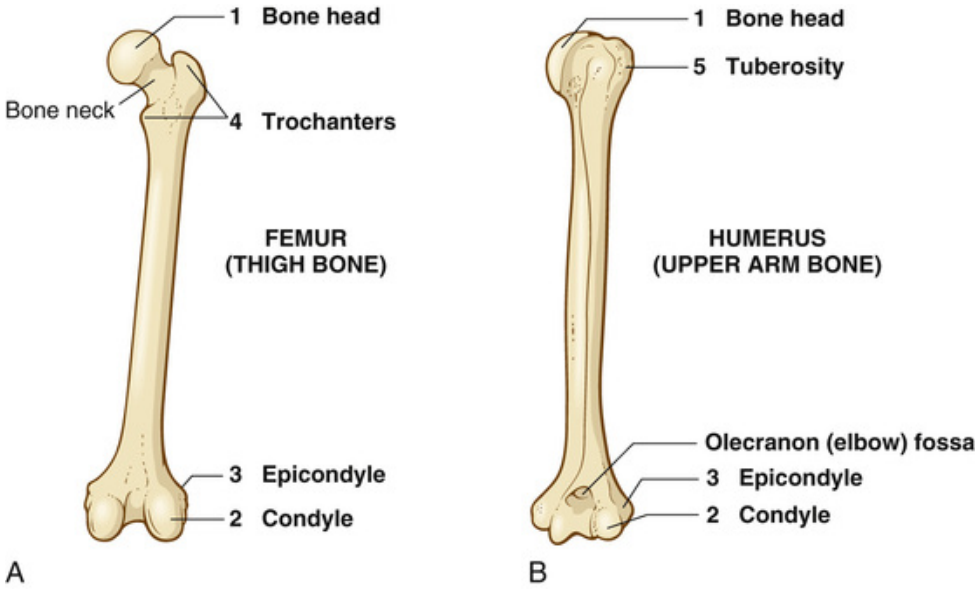


FIGURE 15-2 **Bone processes on the femur** (thigh bone) **(A)** and **humerus** (upper arm bone) **(B)**. The **bone neck** separates the bone head from the rest of the bone. A **fossa** is a shallow depression or cavity in a bone. The fossa on the humerus is a space for the olecranon process on the lower arm bone (ulna) when the elbow is extended.

Cranial Bones

The bones of the skull, or cranium, protect the brain and structures related to it, such as the sense organs. Muscles for controlling head movements and chewing motions are connected to the cranial bones. The cranial bones join each other at joints called **sutures.**

The cranial bones of a newborn child are not completely joined. There are gaps of unossified tissue in the skull at birth. These are called soft spots, or **fontanelles** ("little fountains"). The pulse of blood vessels can be felt (palpated) under the skin in those areas.

Figure 15-3 illustrates the bones of the cranium. Label them as you read the following descriptions:

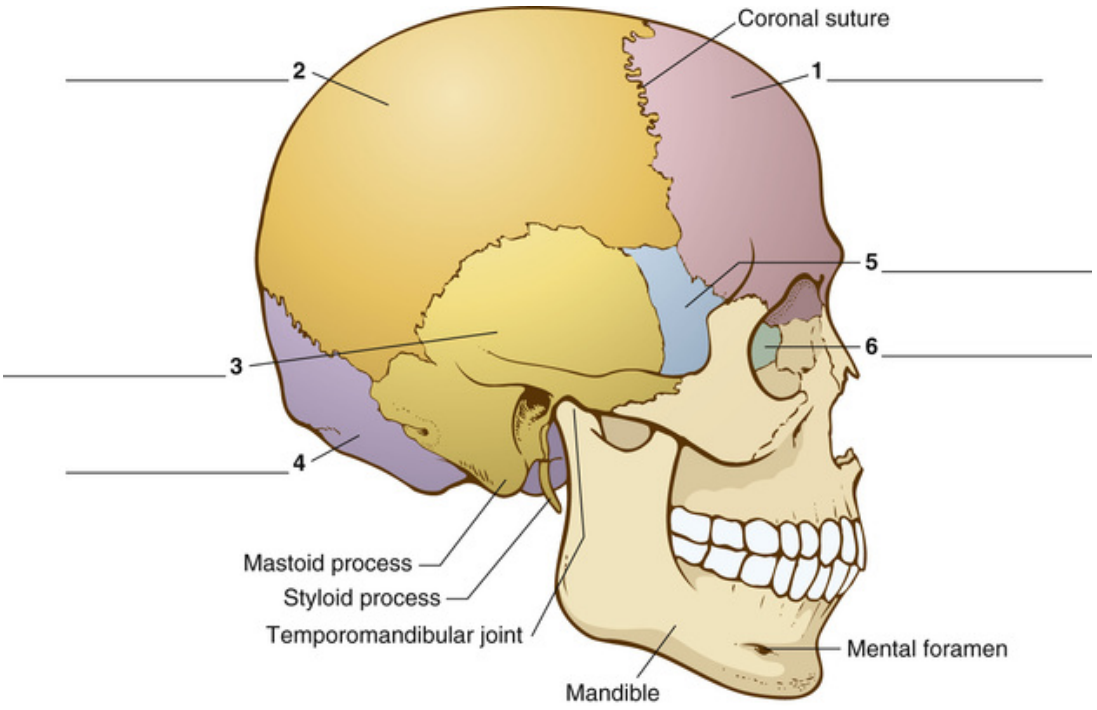


FIGURE 15-3 **Cranial bones,** lateral view. The **mental** (ment/o = chin) **foramen** is the opening in the mandible that allows blood vessels and nerves to enter and leave. The **coronal suture** is the connection across the skull between the two parietal bones and the frontal bone.

Frontal bone [1]—forms the forehead and the roof of the bony sockets that contain the eyes.

Parietal bone [2]—the two bones (one on each side of the skull) that form the roof and upper part of the sides of the cranium.

Temporal bone [3]—the two bones that form the lower sides and base of the cranium. Each bone encloses an ear and contains a fossa for joining with the mandible (lower jawbone). The **temporomandibular joint (TMJ)** is the area of connection between the temporal and mandibular bones. The **mastoid process** is a round (**mast/o** means breast) process of the temporal bone behind the ear. The **styloid process** (**styl/o** means pole or stake) projects downward from the temporal bone.

Occipital bone [4]—forms the back and base of the skull and joins the parietal and temporal bones, forming a suture. The inferior portion of the occipital bone has an opening called the **foramen magnum** through which the spinal cord passes (see Figure 15-4).

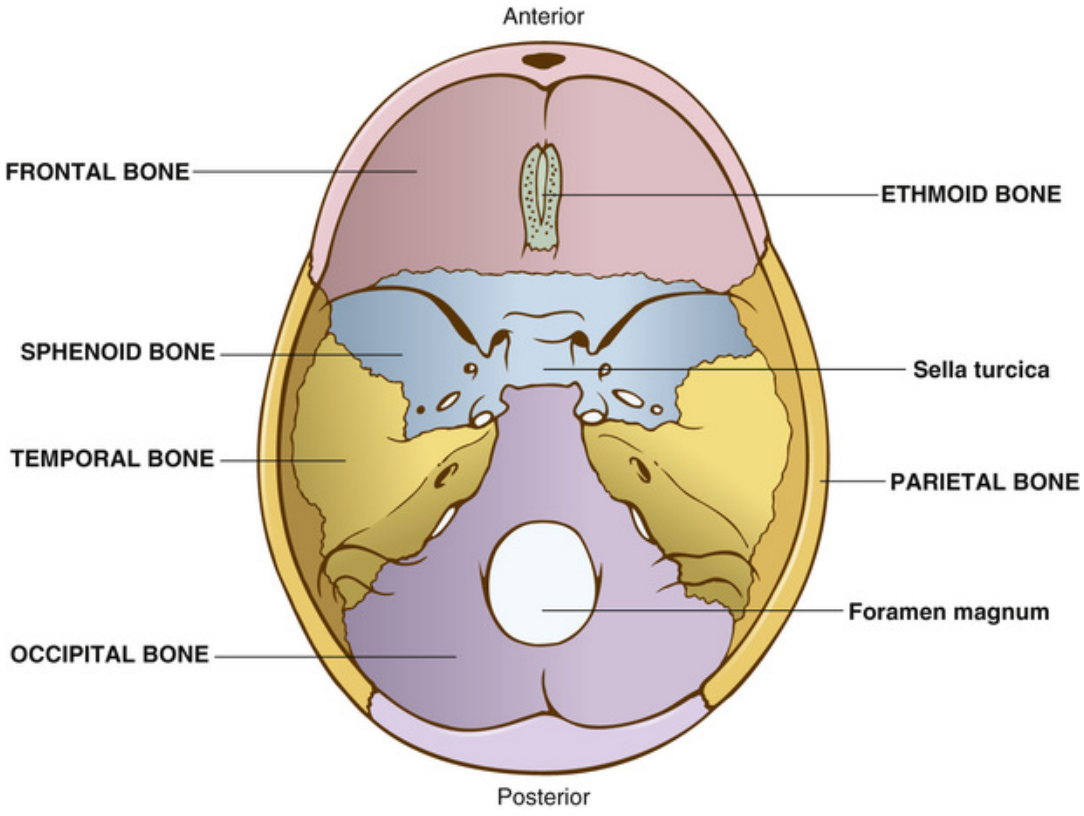


FIGURE 15-4 **Cranial bones,** viewed from above downward, to the floor of the cranial cavity.

Sphenoid bone [5]—the bat-shaped bone that extends behind the eyes and forms part of the base of the skull. Because it joins with the frontal, occipital, and ethmoid bones, it serves as an anchor to hold those skull bones together (**sphen/o** means wedge). The **sella turcica** ("Turkish saddle") is a depression in the sphenoid bone in which the pituitary gland is located (see Figure 15-4).

Ethmoid bone [6]—the thin, delicate bone that supports the nasal cavity and forms part of the sockets of the eyes. It is composed primarily of spongy, cancellous bone, which contains numerous small holes (**ethm/o** means sieve).

Study Figure 15-4, which shows these cranial bones as viewed from above downward, toward the floor of the cranial cavity.

Facial Bones

All of the facial bones except one are joined together by sutures, so they are immovable. The mandible (lower jawbone) is the only facial bone capable of movement. This ability is necessary for activities such as mastication (chewing) and speaking.

Figure 15-5 shows the facial bones; label it as you read the following descriptions of the facial bones:

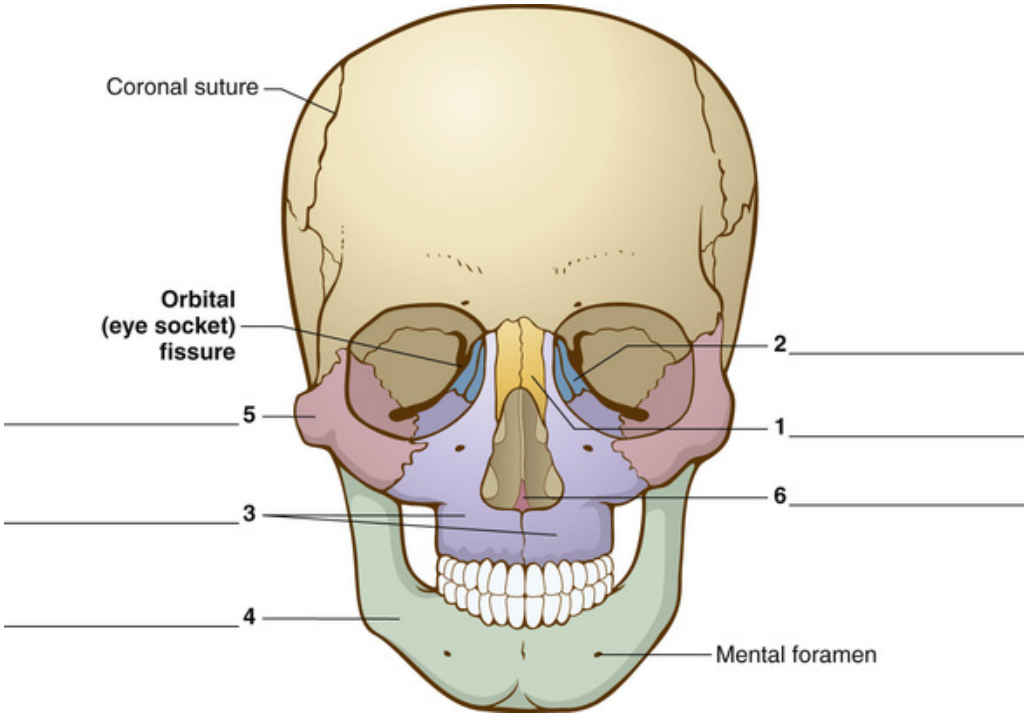


FIGURE 15-5 Facial bones.

Nasal bones [1]—the two slender bones that support the bridge of the nose (**nas/o** means nose). They join with the frontal bone superiorly and form part of the nasal septum.

Lacrimal bones [2]—the two small, thin bones located at the corner of each eye. The lacrimal (**lacrim/o** means tear) bones contain fossae for the lacrimal gland (tear gland) and canals for the passage of the lacrimal duct.

Maxillary bones [3]—the two large bones that compose the massive upper jawbones **(maxillae).** They are joined by a suture in the median plane. If the two bones do not come together normally before birth, the condition known as **cleft palate** results.

Mandibular bone [4]—the lower jawbone **(mandible).** Both the maxilla and the mandible contain the sockets called **alveoli** in which the teeth are embedded. The mandible joins the skull at the region of the temporal bone, forming the TMJ on either side of the skull.

Zygomatic bones [5]—the two bones, one on each side of the face, that form the high portion of the cheek.

Vomer [6]—the thin, single, flat bone that forms the lower portion of the nasal septum.

Sinuses, or air cavities, are located in specific places within the cranial and facial bones to lighten the skull and warm and moisten air as it passes through. Figure 15-6 shows the sinuses of the skull.

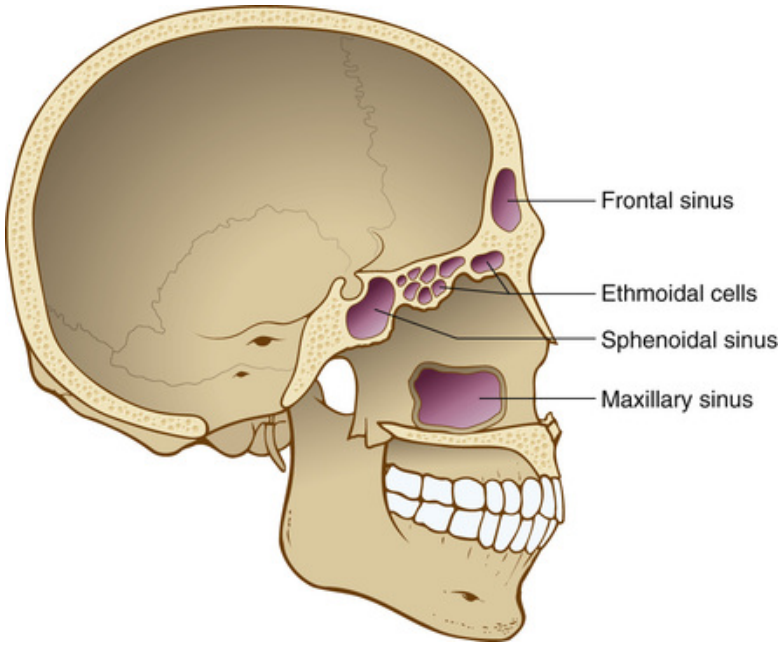


FIGURE 15-6 Sinuses of the skull.

Table 15-2 reviews the cranial and facial bones with the location of each bone.

TABLE 15-2

CRANIAL AND FACIAL BONES

CRANIAL BONES	LOCATION
Ethmoid bone	Supports nasal cavity and eye sockets
Frontal bone	Forehead; part of eye sockets
Occipital bone	Back and base of skull
Parietal bones	Top and sides of skull
Sphenoid bone	Base of skull and behind eyes (bat-shaped bone)
Temporal bones	Lower sides and back of skull
FACIAL BONES	**LOCATION**
Lacrimal bones	Corners of each eye
Mandible	Lower jawbone
Maxillae	Upper jawbones
Nasal bones	Bridge and septum of nose
Vomer	Nasal septum (thin, flat bone)
Zygomatic bones	Cheek bones

Vertebral Column and Structure of Vertebrae

The **vertebral (spinal) column** is composed of 26 bone segments, called **vertebrae,** that are arranged in five divisions from the base of the skull to the tailbone. The bones are separated by pads of cartilage called **intervertebral discs**.

Figure 15-7A illustrates the general structure of a vertebra. Although the individual vertebrae in the separate regions of the spinal column are all slightly different in structure, they do have several parts in common.

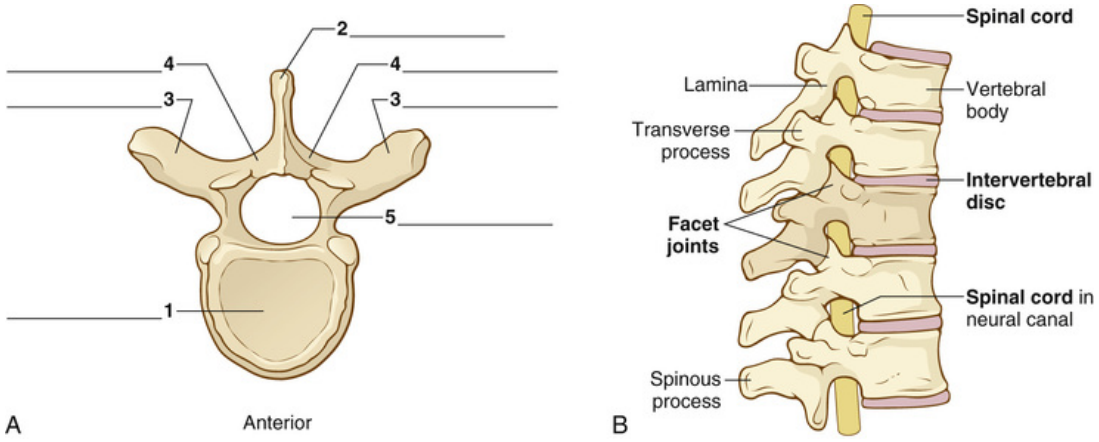


FIGURE 15-7 **A, General structure of a vertebra,** viewed from above**. B, Series of vertebrae,** lateral view, to show the position of the spinal cord running through the spinal canal, behind the vertebral bodies and intervertebral discs. **Facet** (FAH-set) **joints** connect the vertebrae to each other. They are important in guiding and limiting the movement of the spinal column. When facet joints become inflamed and arthritic, they can lead to narrowing of the neural canal, a process known as **spinal stenosis**.

A vertebra is composed of an inner, thick, round anterior portion called the **vertebral body** [1]. Between the body of one vertebra and the body of the vertebra lying beneath or above is an **intervertebral disc.** This is a pad of cartilage that provides flexibility and absorbs shocks to the vertebral column (see Figure 15-7B). A spinal disc herniation occurs when a tear in a disc causes a portion of the disc to bulge out into the neural canal.

The posterior portion of a vertebra (vertebral arch) consists of a single **spinous process** [2], a **transverse process** [3], one on each side of the spinous process, and a bar-like **lamina** [4] between each transverse process and the spinous process. The **neural** or **spinal canal** [5] is the space between the vertebral body and the vertebral arch through which the spinal cord passes. Figure 15-7B shows a lateral view of several vertebrae. Note the location of the spinal cord running through the neural canal.

Figure 15-8 illustrates the divisions of the vertebral column: cervical, thoracic, lumbar, sacrum, and coccyx.

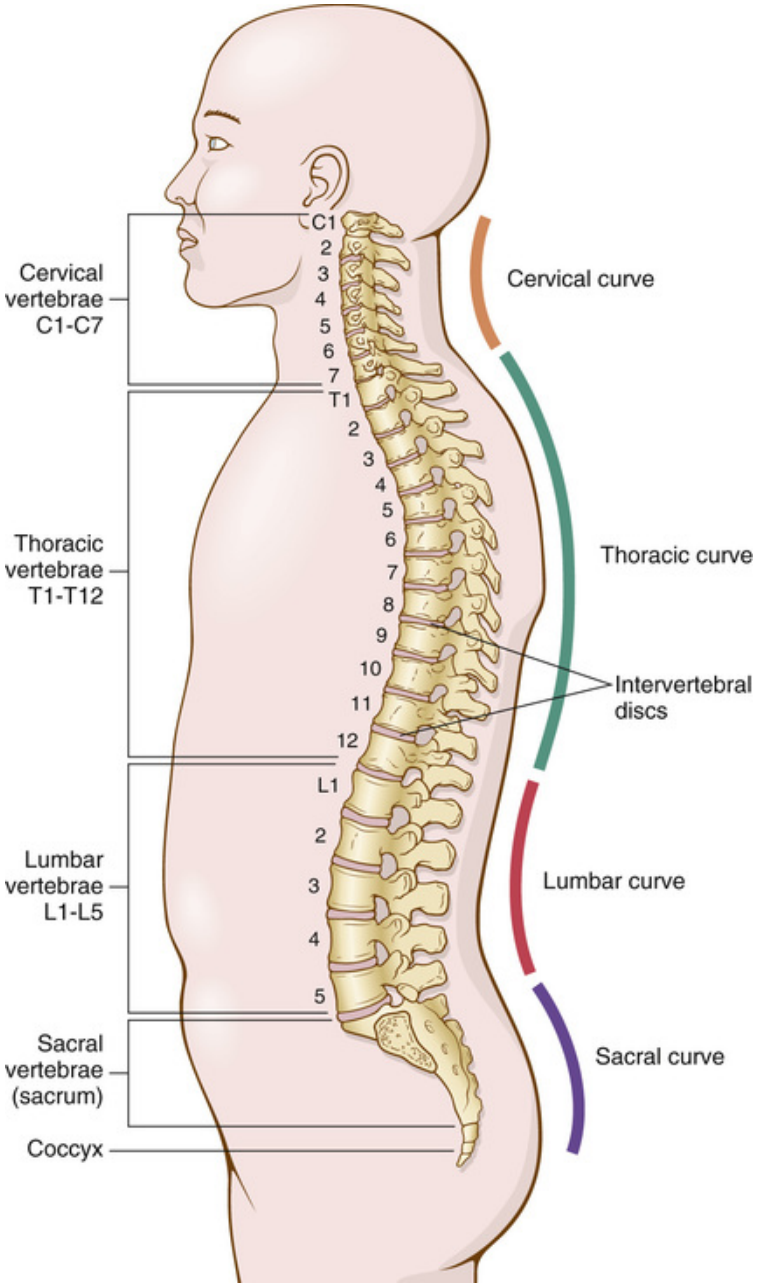


FIGURE 15-8 **Vertebral column.** Notice the four curves of the vertebral column. The sacral and thoracic curvatures are present at birth. The cervical curvature develops when the infant holds the head erect. The lumbar curvature develops as the infant begins to stand and walk.

The first seven bones of the vertebral column, forming the bony aspect of the neck, are the **cervical (C1 to C7) vertebrae.** These vertebrae do not articulate (join) with the ribs.

The second set of 12 vertebrae is known as the **thoracic (T1 to T12) vertebrae.** These vertebrae articulate with the 12 pairs of ribs.

The third set of five vertebral bones is the **lumbar (L1 to L5) vertebrae.** They are the strongest and largest of the vertebrae. Like the cervical vertebrae, these bones do not articulate with the ribs.

The **sacral vertebrae (sacrum)** are five separate bones that fuse in a young child. In an adult, the sacrum is a slightly curved, triangularly shaped bone.

The **coccyx** is the tailbone, and it, too, is a fused bone, having been formed from four small coccygeal bones.

Bones of the Thorax, Pelvis, and Extremities

Label Figure 15-9 as you read the following descriptions of the bones of the thorax (chest cavity), pelvis, and extremities (arms, hands, legs, and feet):

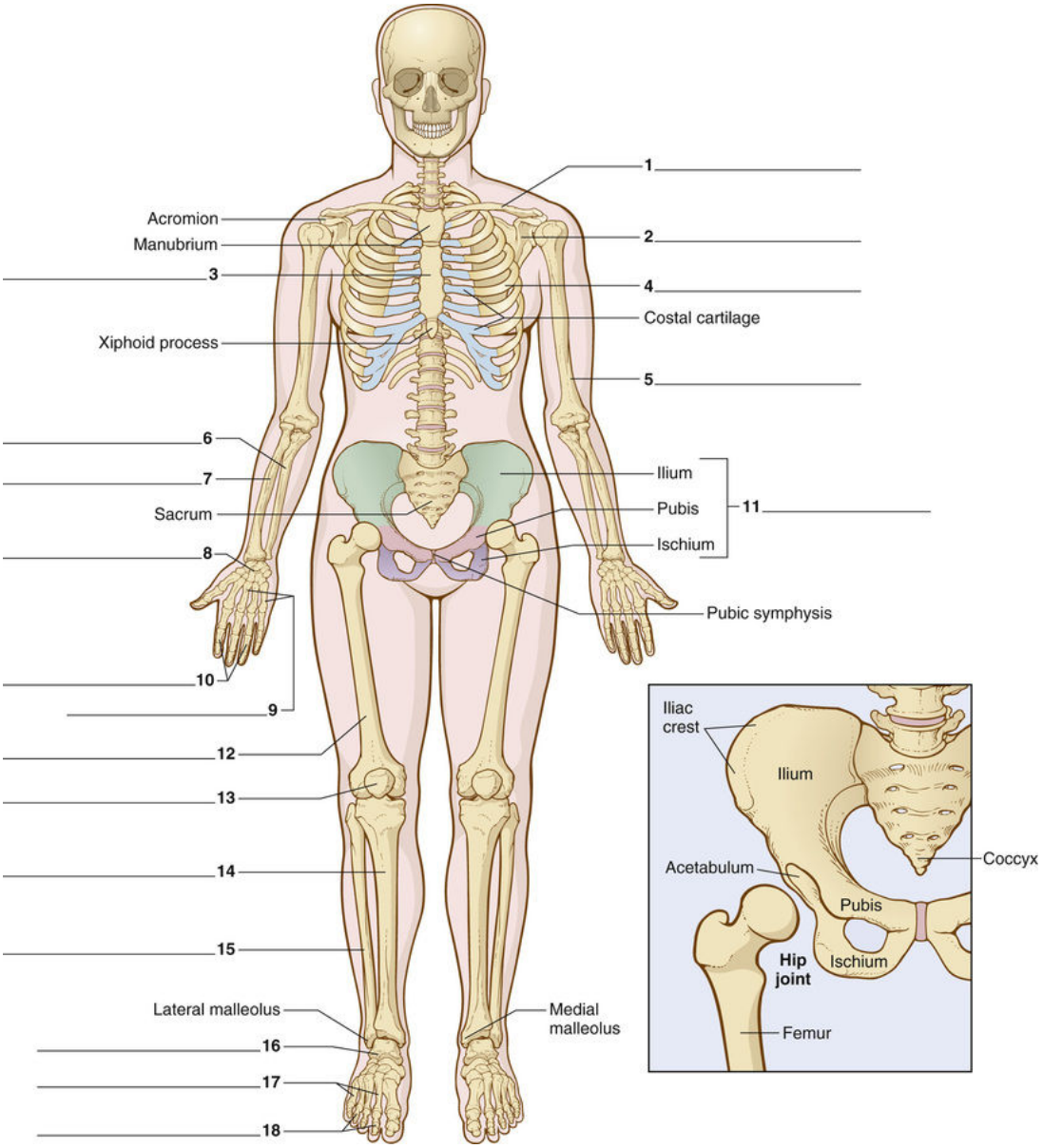


FIGURE 15-9 Bones of the thorax, pelvis, and extremities.

Bones of the Thorax

Clavicle [1]—collar bone; a slender bone, positioned anteriorly (ventrally), one on each side, connecting the breastbone (sternum) to each shoulder blade (scapula).

Scapula [2] (*plural*: **scapulae**)—shoulder blade; one of two flat, triangular bones on each dorsal side of the thorax. The extension of the scapula that joins with the clavicle to form a joint above the shoulder is called the **acromion** (**acr/o** means extremity, **om/o** means shoulder). The joint

formed by these two bones is known as the **acromioclavicular** (**AC**) **joint**. Figure 15-10A shows a posterior view of the scapula. Figure 15-10B shows the anterior view of the acromioclavicular joint and glenohumeral joint (shoulder joint).

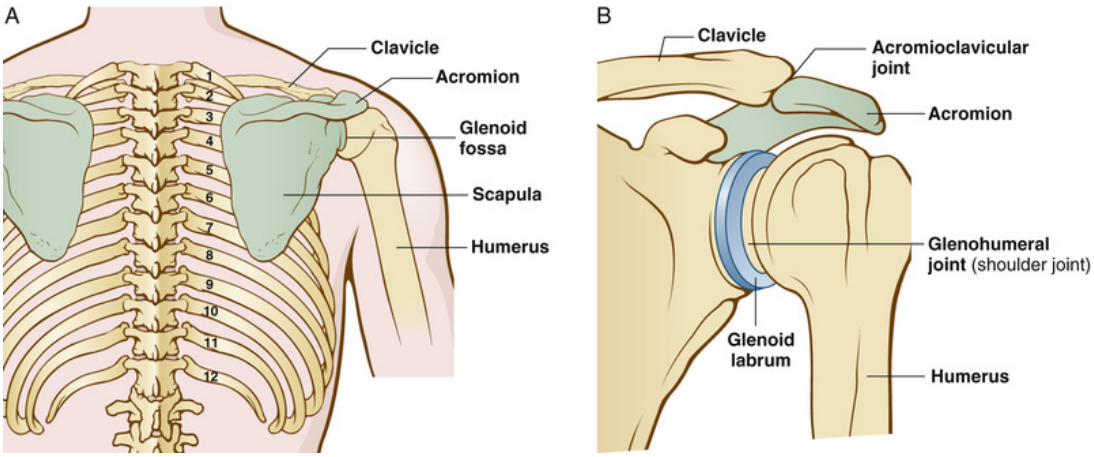


FIGURE 15-10 **A, Scapulae and rib cage,** posterior view. The **glenoid fossa** is the depression in the scapula into which the humerus fits to form the **shoulder (glenohumeral) joint. B,** The **labrum** is a rim of cartilage in the glenoid fossa that forms a suction cup for the end of the humerus to move in. A **labrum tear** can occur with a shoulder injury.

Sternum [3]—breastbone; a flat bone extending ventrally down the midline of the chest. The upper part of the sternum articulates on the sides with the clavicle and ribs, and the lower, narrower portion is attached to the ribs, diaphragm, and abdominal muscles. The lowest portion of the sternum is the **xiphoid process** (**xiph/o** means sword). The uppermost portion is the **manubrium** (from a Latin term meaning handle).

Ribs [4]—There are 12 pairs of ribs. The first 7 pairs join the sternum anteriorly through cartilaginous attachments called **costal cartilages.** Ribs 1 to 7 are called **true ribs.** They join with the sternum anteriorly and with the vertebral column posteriorly. Ribs 8 to 10 are called **false ribs.** They join with the vertebral column posteriorly but join the 7th rib anteriorly instead of attaching to the sternum. Ribs 11 and 12 are the **floating ribs** because they are completely free at their anterior ends. Figure 15-10A shows a posterior view of the rib cage.

Bones of the Arm and Hand

The bones of the arm and hand are described with the subject in the anatomic position—standing, with the arms held at the sides and the palms facing forward.

Humerus [5]—upper arm bone; the large head of the humerus is rounded and joins with the glenoid fossa of the scapula to form the shoulder or glenohumeral joint. A rim of fibrocartilage, called a **labrum,** guides the humerus as it moves in the glenoid fossa (see Figure 15-10 A and B). The **rotator cuff** is a group of muscles with tendons that surround the shoulder joint. See ***In Person: Rotator Cuff Tear,*** page 588.

Ulna [6]—medial lower arm (forearm) bone; the proximal bony process of the ulna at the elbow is called the **olecranon** (elbow bone). The olecranon is the bony point formed when the elbow is bent. See Figure 15-31 on page 579.

Radius [7]—lateral lower arm (forearm) bone (in line with the thumb).

Carpals [8]—wrist bones; there are two rows of four bones in the wrist.

Metacarpals [9]—the five bones of the palm of the hand.

Phalanges [10] (*singular*: **phalanx**)—finger bones. Each finger (except the thumb) has three phalanges: a proximal, a middle, and a distal phalanx. The thumb has only two phalanges: a proximal and a distal phalanx.

Bones of the Pelvis

Pelvic girdle [11]—pelvis. This collection of bones supports the trunk of the body and articulates with the femur to form the hip joint. The adult pelvis is composed of three pairs of fused bones: the ilium, ischium, and pubis. The pelvis joins with the single, posteriorly (dorsally) located sacrum.

Ilium—uppermost and largest portion of the pelvis. Dorsally, the two parts of the ilium do not meet. Rather, they join the sacrum on either side to form the sacroiliac joints. The connection between the iliac bones and the sacrum is very firm, and very little motion occurs at these joints. The superior part of the ilium is the **iliac crest.** It is filled with red bone marrow and serves as an attachment for abdominal wall muscles as well as strong muscles of the hip and buttocks.

Ischium—inferior or lower part of the pelvis. The ischium and ligaments, tendons, and muscles attached to it are what you sit on.

Pubis—anterior part of the pelvis. The two pubic bones join by way of a cartilaginous disc. This is the **pubic symphysis.** Like sacroiliac joints, this area is quite rigid.

Pelvic cavity—region within the ring of bone formed by the pelvic girdle. The rectum, sigmoid colon, bladder, and female reproductive organs lie within the pelvic cavity and are protected by the rigid architecture of the pelvic girdle. See Chapter 2, page 55, for comparison of the male pelvis and the female pelvis.

Bones of the Leg and Foot

Femur [12]—thigh bone; this is the longest bone in the body. At its proximal end it has a rounded head that fits into a depression, or socket, in the pelvis. This socket is called the **acetabulum.** The acetabulum was named because of its resemblance to a rounded cup the Romans used for vinegar *(acetum)*. The head of the femur and the acetabulum form a ball-and-socket joint otherwise known as the **hip joint.** See inset in Figure 15-9.

Patella [13]—kneecap; this is a small, flat bone that lies in front of the articulation between the femur and one of the lower leg bones called the tibia. It is a sesamoid bone surrounded by protective tendons and held in place by muscle attachments. Together with the femur and the tibia, it forms the knee joint.

Tibia [14]—larger of the two bones of the lower leg; the tibia runs under the skin in the front part of the leg. It joins with the femur and patella proximally, and at its distal end (ankle) forms a flare that is the bony prominence (medial **malleolus**) at the inside of the ankle. The tibia commonly is called the **shin bone.**

Fibula [15]—smaller of the two lower leg bones; this thin bone, well hidden under the leg muscles, runs parallel to the tibia. At its distal part, it forms a flare, which is the bony prominence (lateral **malleolus**) on the outside of the ankle. The tibia, fibula, and **talus** (the first of the tarsal bones) come together to form the **ankle joint.**

Tarsals [16]—bones of the hind and mid parts of the foot; these seven short bones resemble the carpal bones of the wrist but are larger. The **calcaneus** is the largest of these bones and also is called the **heel bone** (Figure 15-11). As noted, the **talus** is one of three bones that form the ankle joint.

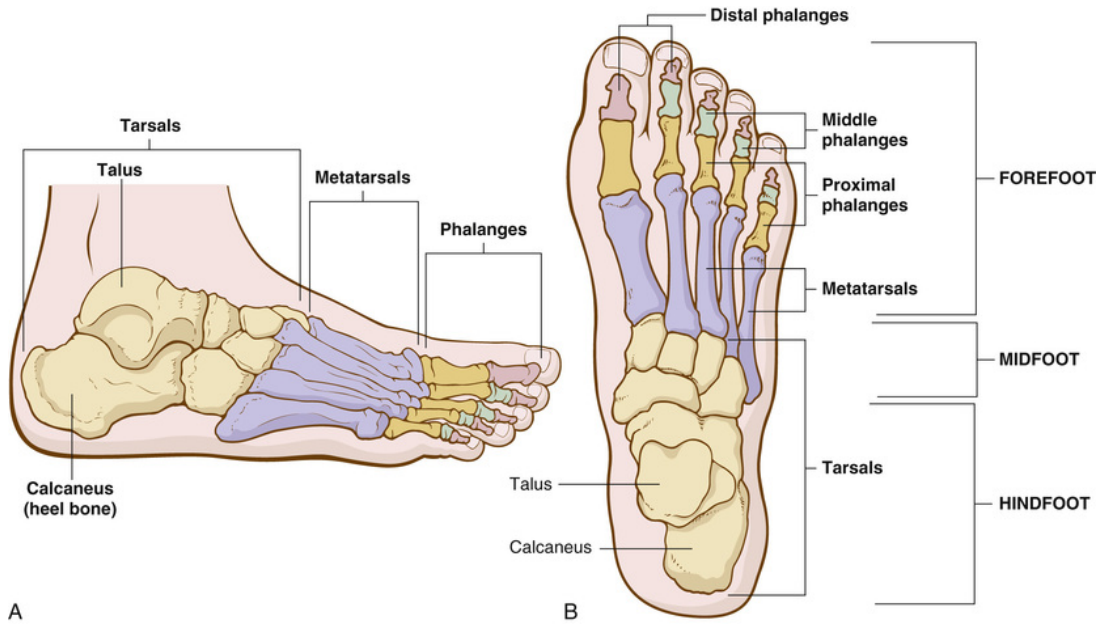


FIGURE 15-11 **A, Bones of the foot,** lateral view. **B, Bones of the foot,** as viewed from above. Note that the big or great toe has only a distal and proximal phalanx.

Metatarsals [17]—bones between the tarsals and phalanges. There are five metatarsal bones, which are similar to the metacarpals of the hand. Each articulates with the phalanges of the toes.

Phalanges of the toes [18]—bones of the forefoot; as in the digits of the hand, there are two phalanges in the big toe and three in each of the other toes.

Figure 15-11 illustrates the bones of the foot. Table 15-3 reviews bones and bone processes and their common names.

TABLE 15-3

BONES OR PROCESSES AND THEIR COMMON NAMES

BONE OR PROCESS	COMMON NAME
Acetabulum	Hip socket
Calcaneus	Heel bone
Carpals	Wrist bones
Clavicle	Collar bone
Coccyx	Tailbone
Cranium	Skull
Femur	Thigh bone
Fibula	Smaller of the two lower leg bones
Humerus	Upper arm bone
Ilium	Upper part of pelvic bone
Ischium	Inferior or lower part of the pelvic bone
Malleolus	Ankle
Mandible	Lower jawbone
Maxilla	Upper jawbone
Metacarpals	Hand bones
Metatarsals	Bones between the tarsals and the toes
Olecranon	Elbow
Patella	Kneecap
Phalanges	Finger and toe bones
Pubis	Anterior part of the pelvic bone
Radius	Forearm bone—thumb side
Scapula	Shoulder blade
Sternum	Breastbone
Tarsals	Hindfoot and midfoot bones
Tibia	Shin bone—larger of the two lower leg bones
Ulna	Forearm bone—little finger side
Vertebra	Backbone/spine

Vocabulary—Bones

This list reviews many of the new terms related to bones introduced in the text. Short definitions reinforce your understanding of the terms. Refer to the Pronunciation of Terms on page 607 for help with unfamiliar or difficult terms.

acetabulum	Rounded depression, or socket, in the pelvis that joins the femur (thigh bone), forming the hip joint.
acromion	Outward extension of the shoulder blade forming the point of the shoulder. It overlies the shoulder joint and articulates with the clavicle.
bone	Dense, hard connective tissue composing the skeleton. Examples are long bones (femur), short bones (carpals), flat bones (scapula), and sesamoid bones (patella).
bone depression	Opening or hollow region serving as a connection for bones, or as passageways for blood vessels and nerves. Examples are **fissure**, **foramen**, **fossa**, and **sinus**.
bone process	Enlarged area that extends from bones, covered in articular cartilage and serves as an attachment for muscles, tendons, and ligaments. Examples are **bone head**, **condyle**, **epicondyle**, **trochanter**, **tubercle**, and **tuberosity**.
calcium	One of the mineral constituents of bone. **Calcium phosphate** is the major calcium salt in bones.
cancellous bone	Spongy, porous, bone tissue in the inner part of a bone.
cartilage	Flexible, connective tissue; found in the immature skeleton, at the epiphyseal growth plate, and on joint surfaces (articular cartilage).
collagen	Dense, connective tissue protein strands found in bone and other tissues, such as ligaments, tendons, and skin.
compact bone	Hard, dense bone tissue, usually found around the outer portion of bones.
cranial bones	Skull bones: **ethmoid, frontal, occipital, parietal, sphenoid,** and **temporal.**
diaphysis	Shaft, or mid-portion, of a long bone.
disc	Flat, round, plate-like structure. An intervertebral disc is a fibrocartilaginous structure between two vertebrae.
epiphyseal plate	Cartilaginous area at the ends of long bones where lengthwise growth takes place in the immature skeleton.
epiphysis	Each end of a long bone; the area beyond the epiphyseal plate.
facial bones	Bones of the face: **lacrimal, mandibular, maxillary, nasal, vomer,** and **zygomatic.**
fontanelle	Soft spot (incomplete bone formation) between the skull bones of an infant.
foramen magnum	Opening of the occipital bone through which the spinal cord passes.

haversian canals	Minute spaces filled with blood vessels; found in compact bone.
ligament	Fibrous connective tissue that binds bones to other bones. Ligaments are bands, sheets, or strands located in and around joints.
malleolus	Round process on both sides of the ankle joint. The lateral malleolus is part of the fibula, and the medial malleolus is part of the tibia.
manubrium	Upper portion of the sternum; joins with the clavicle to form the sternoclavicular joint.
mastoid process	Rounded projection on the temporal bone behind the ear.
medullary cavity	Central, hollowed-out area in the shaft of a long bone.
metaphysis	Flared portion of a long bone, between the diaphysis (shaft) and the epiphyseal plate (in this term, meta- means between).
olecranon	Large process on the proximal end of the ulna at the elbow.
orthopedist	Medical doctor who specializes in bone, joint, and muscle conditions.
osseous tissue	Bone tissue.
ossification	Process of bone formation.
osteoblast	Bone cell that helps form bony tissue.
osteoclast	Bone cell that absorbs and removes unwanted bony tissue.
periosteum	Membrane surrounding bones; rich in blood vessels and nerve tissue.
phosphorus	Mineral substance found in bones in combination with calcium.
physiatrist	Medical doctor specializing in rehabilitation (physi/o means function).
pubic symphysis	Junction of the two public bones in the anterior of the pelvis. They are joined (sym- = together, -physis = to grow) by a fibrocartilaginous disc.
red bone marrow	Soft spongy (cancellous) tissue found in the interior of flat bones, such as the hip and breast bone; site of hematopoiesis (formation of blood cells).
ribs	Twelve pairs of curved bones that form the chest wall. True ribs are the first 7 pairs; false ribs are pairs 8 to 10; floating ribs are pairs 11 and 12.
sella turcica	Depression in the sphenoid bone where the pituitary gland is located.

sinus	Hollow air cavity within a bone.
styloid process	Pole-like process extending downward from the temporal bone on each side of the skull.
suture	Immovable joint between bones, such as the skull (cranium).
temporomandibular joint	Connection on either side of the head between the temporal bone of the skull and mandibular bone of the jaw.
tendon	Fibrous connective tissue that binds muscles to bones.
trabeculae	Supporting latticework of bony fibers in cancellous (spongy) bone.
vertebra	Individual segment of the spine composed of the vertebral body, vertebral arch, spinous process, transverse process, and lamina, enclosing the neural canal and spinal cord.
xiphoid process	Lower, narrow portion of the sternum.
yellow bone marrow	Fatty tissue found in the medullary cavity of most adult long bones.

Terminology—Bones

The following word parts pertaining to bones are divided into two groups: general terms and terms related to specific bones. Write the meanings of the medical terms in the spaces provided.

General Terms

COMBINING FORMS

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
calc/o, calci/o	calcium	hypercalcemia _____ decalcification _____ *de- means less or lack of; -fication is the process of making.*	
kyph/o	humpback, hunchback (posterior curvature in the thoracic region)	kyphosis _____ *This term (from Greek meaning hill or mountain) indicates a hump on the back. The affected person's height is reduced, and kyphosis may lead to pressure on the spinal cord or peripheral nerves (Figure 15-12).*	
lamin/o	lamina (part of the vertebral arch)	laminectomy _____ *An operation often performed to relieve the symptoms of compression of the spinal cord or spinal nerve roots. It involves removal of the lamina and spinous process.*	
lord/o	curve, swayback (anterior curvature in the lumbar region)	lordosis _____ *The normal anterior curvature of the lumbar spine becomes exaggerated (see Figure 15-12). The word lordosis is derived from Greek, describing a person leaning backward in a lordly fashion.*	
lumb/o	loins, lower back	lumbar _____ ***Lumbago** is a term used to describe low back pain.* lumbosacral _____	
myel/o	bone marrow	myelopoiesis _____	
orth/o	straight	orthopedics _____ *Ped/o means child.*	

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
oste/o	bone	osteitis _____ ***Osteitis deformans*** *is better known as* ***Paget's disease.*** *Bones become weak and painful, especially in the spine, skull, pelvis, and legs.* osteodystrophy _____ osteogenesis _____ ***Osteogenesis imperfecta*** *is a genetic disorder involving defective bone development. Bones are brittle and fragile caused by abnormal collagen production; fractures occur with the slightest trauma.*	
scoli/o	crooked, bent (lateral curvature)	scoliosis _____ *The spinal column is bent abnormally to the side. Scoliosis is the most common spinal deformity in adolescent girls* (Figure 15-13).	
spondyl/o (used to make words about conditions of the structure)	vertebra	spondylosis _____ *Degeneration of the intervertebral discs and vertebrae in the cervical, thoracic, and lumbar regions. Signs and symptoms include pain and restriction of movement.*	
vertebr/o (used to describe the structure itself)	vertebra	vertebroplasty _____ *Percutaneous vertebroplasty relieves pain caused by compression fractures of the vertebrae. Medical cement is used to fill in the cracks and strengthen bone.*	

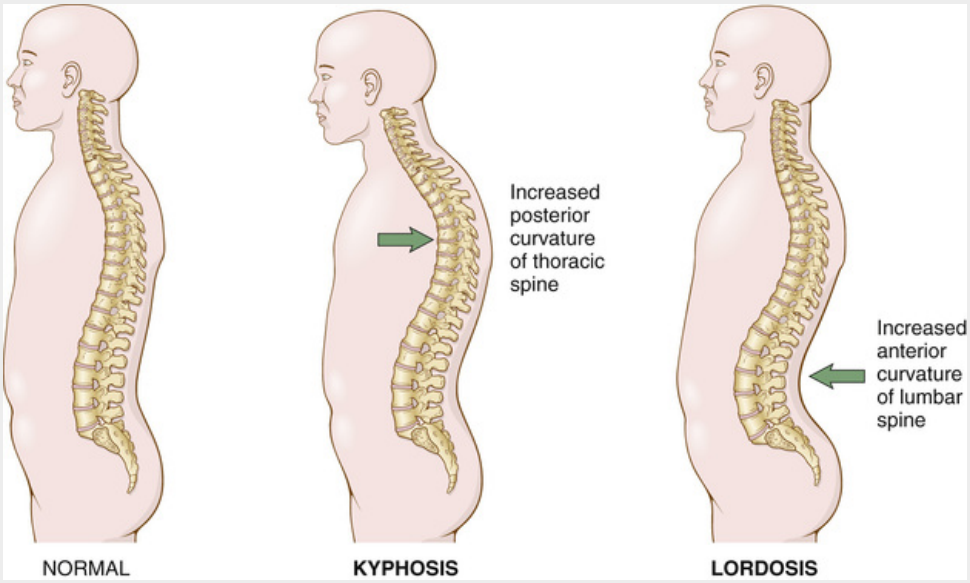


FIGURE 15-12 Kyphosis and lordosis.

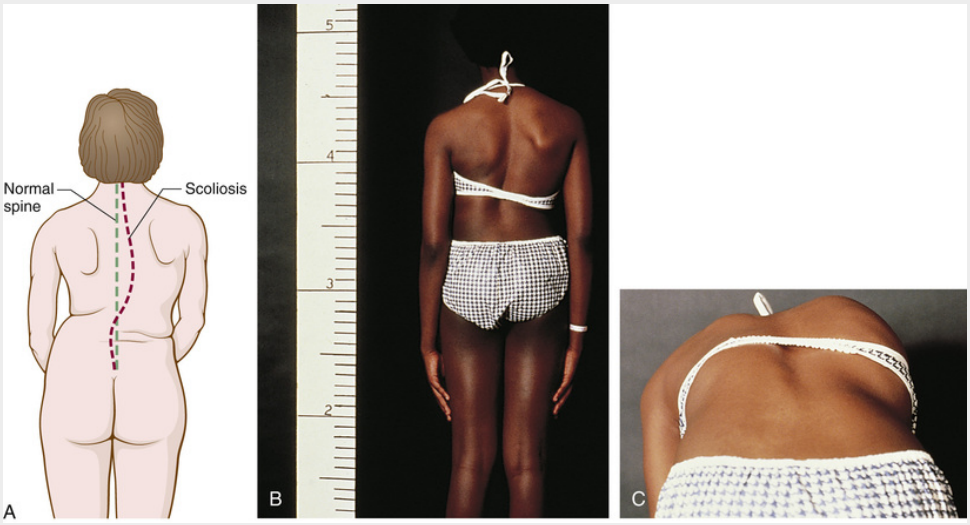


FIGURE 15-13 **Moderate thoracic idiopathic adolescent scoliosis. A, Normal spine** and **scoliosis. B,** Notice the **scapular asymmetry** in the upright position. This results from rotation of the spine and attached rib cage. **C,** Bending forward reveals a mild rib hump deformity.

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-blast	embryonic or immature cell	osteoblast _____ *This cell synthesizes collagen to form bone tissue.*	
-clast	to break	osteoclast _____ *This cell breaks down bone to remove bone tissue.*	
-listhesis	slipping	spondylolisthesis _____ *Pronounced* spon-dih-lo-lis-THE-sis. *The forward slipping (subluxation) of a vertebra over a lower vertebra.*	
-malacia	softening	osteomalacia _____ *A condition in which vitamin D deficiency leads to decalcification of bones; known as rickets in children.*	
-physis	to grow	epiphysis _____ pubic symphysis _____	
-porosis	pore, passage	osteoporosis _____ *Loss of bony tissue with decreased mass of bone. See page 566.*	
-tome	instrument to cut	osteotome _____ *This surgical chisel is designed to cut bone.*	

Terms Related to Specific Bones

COMBINING FORMS

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
acetabul/o	acetabulum (hip socket)	acetabular _____
calcane/o	calcaneus (heel)	calcaneal _____ *The calcaneus is one of the tarsal (hindfoot) bones.*
carp/o	carpals (wrist bones)	carpal _____
clavicul/o	clavicle (collar bone)	supraclavicular _____ *Supra- means above.*
cost/o	ribs (true ribs, false ribs, and floating ribs)	subcostal _____ chondrocostal _____ *Cartilage that is attached to the ribs.*
crani/o	cranium (skull)	craniotomy _____ craniotome _____
femor/o	femur (thigh bone)	femoral _____
fibul/o	fibula (smaller lower leg bone)	fibular _____ *See perone/o.*
humer/o	humerus (upper arm bone)	humeral _____
ili/o	ilium (upper part of pelvic bone)	iliac _____
ischi/o	ischium (posterior part of pelvic bone)	ischial _____
malleol/o	malleolus (process on each side of the ankle)	malleolar _____ *The medial malleolus is at the distal end of the tibia, and the lateral malleolus is at the distal end of the fibula.*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
mandibul/o	mandible (lower jawbone)	mandibular _____	
maxill/o	maxilla (upper jawbone)	maxillary _____	
metacarp/o	metacarpals (hand bones)	metacarpectomy _____	
metatars/o	metatarsals (foot bones)	metatarsalgia _____	
olecran/o	olecranon (elbow)	olecranal _____	
patell/o	patella (kneecap)	infrapatellar _____	
pelv/o	pelvis	pelvimetry _____	
phalang/o	phalanges (finger and/or toe bones)	phalangeal _____	
pub/o	pubis (anterior part of the pelvic bone)	pubic _____	
radi/o	radius (forearm bone—thumb side)	radial _____	
scapul/o	scapula (shoulder blade)	scapular _____	
stern/o	sternum (breastbone)	sternal _____	
tars/o	tarsals (bones of the mid and hindfoot)	tarsectomy _____	
tibi/o	tibia (shin bone)	tibial _____	
uln/o	ulna (forearm bone—little finger side)	ulnar _____	

Pathology—Bones

Ewing sarcoma	**Rare malignant tumor arising in bone; most often occurring in children.** Pain and swelling are common, especially if the tumor involves the shaft (medullary cavity) of a long bone. This tumor usually occurs at an early age between 5 and 15 years, and combined treatment with surgery, radiotherapy, and chemotherapy represents the best chance for cure (60% to 70% of patients are cured if metastasis has not occurred).
exostosis	**Bony growth (benign) arising from the surface of bone.** **Osteochondromas** (composed of cartilage and bone) are benign **exostoses** usually found on the metaphyses of long bones near the epiphyseal plates. Ex- means out; -ostosis is condition of bones. A **bunion** is a swelling of the metatarsophalangeal joint near the base of the big toe and is accompanied by the buildup of soft tissue and underlying bone at the distal medial aspect of the first metatarsal.
fracture	**Traumatic breaking of a bone.** In a **simple (closed) fracture,** the bone is broken but there is no open wound in the skin. In a **compound (open) fracture,** the bone is broken and a fragment of bone protrudes through an open wound in the skin. See Figure 15-14A. **Crepitus** is the crackling sound produced when ends of bones rub each other or rub against roughened cartilage. Figure 15-14B illustrates different types of fractures. Treatment of fractures involves **reduction,** which is restoration of the bone to its normal position. A **closed reduction** is manipulative reduction without a surgical incision; in an **open reduction,** an incision is made for access to the fracture site. A **cast** (solid mold of the body part) is applied to fractures to immobilize the injured bone after a closed reduction. The abbreviation **ORIF** means open reduction/internal fixation. Often this involves insertion of metal plates, screws, rods, or pins to stabilize the bone. See Figure 15-15.
osteogenic sarcoma (osteosarcoma)	**Malignant tumor arising from osteoblasts, found primarily in children and adolescents.** Osteoblasts multiply, forming large, bony tumors, especially at the ends of long bones (half of the lesions are located just below or just above the knee) (Figure 15-

	16). Metastasis (spread of tumor) takes place through the bloodstream, often affecting the lungs. Surgical resection followed by chemotherapy improves the survival rate. Malignant tumors from other parts of the body (breast, prostate, lung, thyroid gland, and kidney) that metastasize to bones are **metastatic bone lesions.**
osteomalacia	**Softening of bone, with inadequate amounts of mineral (calcium) in the bone.** Osteomalacia occurs primarily as a disease of infancy and childhood and is then known as **rickets.** Bones fail to receive adequate amounts of calcium and phosphorus; they become soft, bend easily, and become deformed. In affected patients, vitamin D is deficient in the diet, which prevents calcium and phosphorus from being absorbed into the bloodstream from the intestines. Vitamin D is also formed by the action of sunlight on certain compounds (such as cholesterol) in the skin; thus, rickets is more common in large, smoky cities during the winter months. Treatment most often consists of administration of large daily doses of vitamin D and an increase in dietary intake of calcium and phosphorus. Exposure to sunlight can also be helpful.
osteomyelitis	**Inflammation of the bone and bone marrow secondary to infection.** Bacteria enter the body through a wound and infect the bone. Children are affected most often, and infection usually occurs near the ends of long bones of legs and arms. Adults are affected too, usually as the result of an open fracture. The lesion begins as an inflammation with pus collection. Pus tends to spread down the medullary cavity and outward to the periosteum. Antibiotic therapy corrects the condition if the infection is treated quickly. If treatment is delayed, an **abscess** can form. An abscess is a walled-off area of infection that is difficult to penetrate with antibiotics. Surgical drainage usually is necessary.
osteoporosis	**Decrease in bone density (mass); thinning and weakening of bone.** **Osteopenia** is a condition in which bone mineral density is lower than normal. In some cases, it is a precursor to osteoporosis. In osteoporosis, the interior of bones is

	diminished in structure, as if the steel skeleton of a building had rusted and deteriorated (Figure 15-17). The condition commonly occurs in older women as a consequence of estrogen deficiency with menopause. Lack of estrogen promotes
	excessive bone resorption (osteoclast activity) and less bone deposition. Weakened bones are subject to fracture (common in the hip and spine); loss of height and kyphosis occur as vertebrae collapse (Figure 15-18). Osteoporosis can occur with atrophy caused by disuse, as in a limb that is in a cast, in the legs of a person with paraplegia, or in a bedridden patient. It also may occur in men as part of the aging process and in patients who have received corticosteroids (medication used to treat inflammatory conditions). Treatment and prevention of osteoporosis are critical to maintaining strong bones and avoiding fractures of the spine, hip, or wrist.
talipes	**Congenital abnormality of the hindfoot (involving the talus).** Talipes (Latin *talus* = ankle, *pes* = foot) is a congenital anomaly. The most common form is **talipes equinovarus** (**equin/o** = horse), or **clubfoot.** The infant cannot stand with the sole of the foot flat on the ground. The defect can be corrected by applying orthopedic casts in the early months of infancy or, if that fails, by surgery.

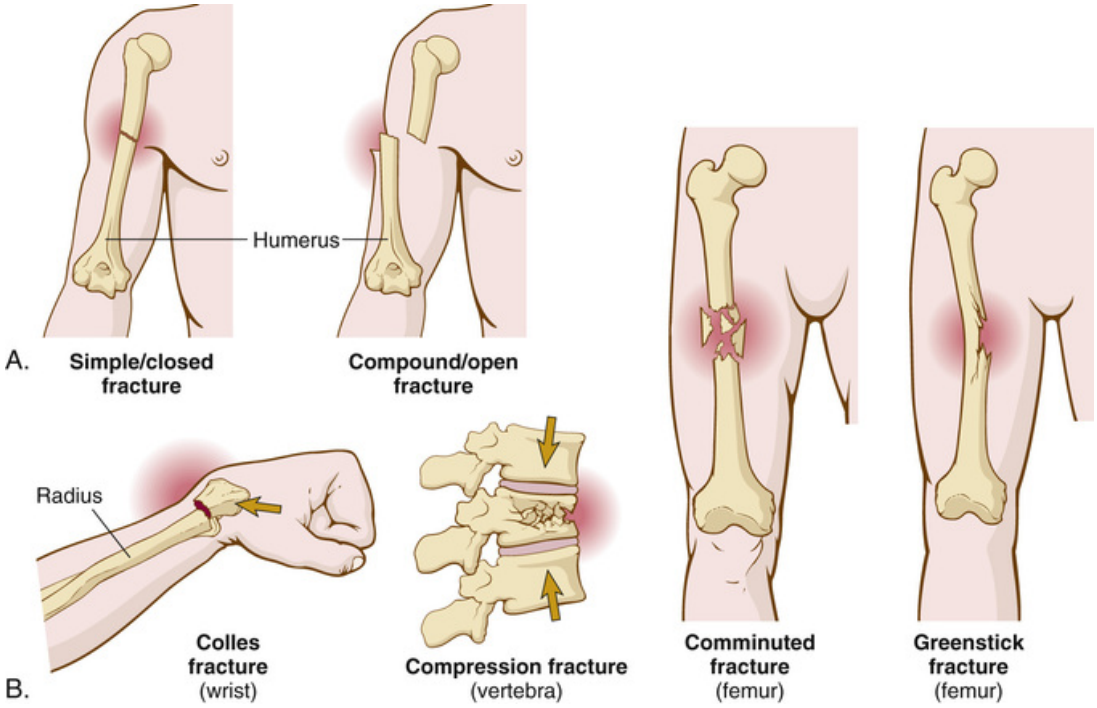


FIGURE 15-14 **A, Simple and compound fractures. B, Types of fractures.** A **pathologic fracture** (not pictured) is caused by disease of bones (tumor, infection, osteoporosis) that causes them to weaken and break more easily. Fracture healing occurs in 4 stages:1. Hematoma formation–blood from the fracture site2. Soft callus formation–blood hematoma becomes soft callus (cartilage)3. Hard callus formation–soft callus becomes hard callus (cartilage)4. Bone formation–hard callus becomes bone.

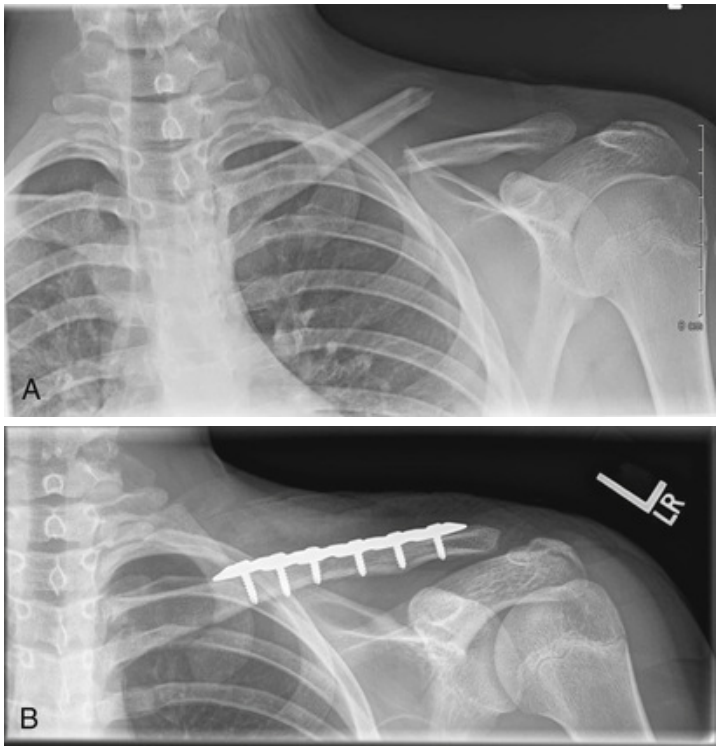


FIGURE 15-15 **Clavicle fracture. A,** This is a clavicle fracture of a 17-year-old rugby player. **B, Open reduction with internal fixation (ORIF)** to align and repair the fracture.

FIGURE 15-16 **Osteosarcoma.** The tumor has grown through the cortex of the bone and elevated the periosteum. (Courtesy Dr. Francis Hornicek, Department of Orthopedics, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.)

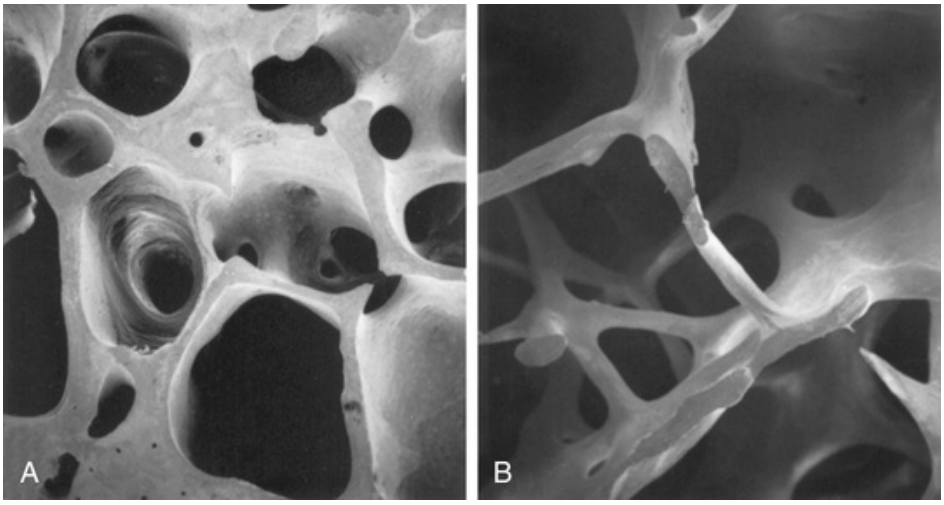


FIGURE 15-17 Scanning electron micrograph of normal bone (A) and **bone with osteoporosis (B).** Notice the thinning and wide separation of the trabeculae in the osteoporotic bone.

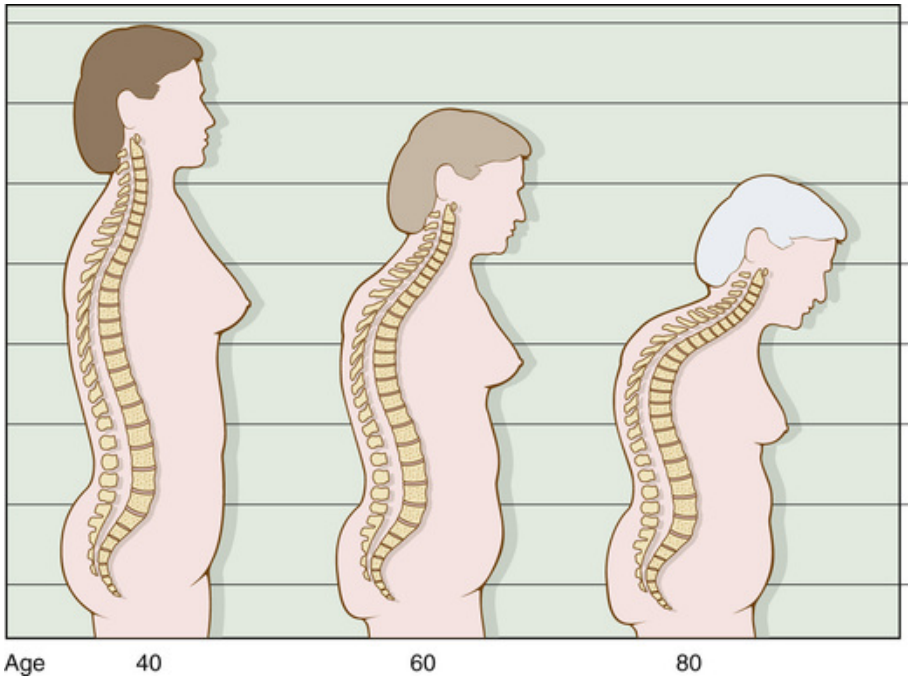


FIGURE 15-18 Kyphosis. Loss of bone mass due to osteoporosis produces posterior curvature of the spine in the thoracic region. A normal spine is shown at the age of 40 years, and osteoporotic changes are illustrated at the ages of 60 and 80 years. The changes in the spine can cause a loss of as much as 6 to 9 inches in height.

Preventing Osteoporosis

Prevention of osteoporosis includes the following:

- Balanced diet rich in calcium and vitamin D
- Weight-bearing and resistance exercise
- Reduction of smoking and alcohol intake
- Checking bone mineral density (BMD) with a DEXA test (see page 585)
- Medications when appropriate—such as bisphosphonates (Fosamax, Boniva) and selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERMs—Raloxifene, Evista) and hormone replacement therapy (HRT)

Joints

Types of Joints

A **joint (articulation)** is a coming together of two or more bones. Some joints are immovable, such as the **suture joints** between the skull bones. Other joints, such as those between the vertebrae, are partially movable. Most joints, however, allow considerable movement. These freely movable joints are called **synovial joints.** Examples of synovial joints are the ball-and-socket type (the hip and shoulder joints) and the hinge type (elbow, knee, and ankle joints). Label the structures in Figure 15-19 as you read about a synovial joint.

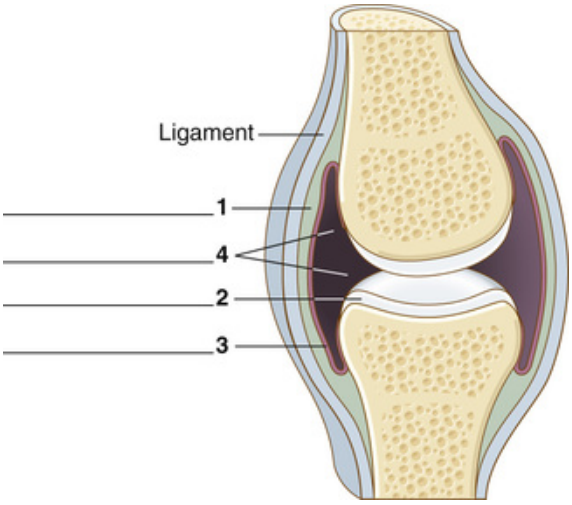


FIGURE 15-19 Structure of a synovial joint.

The bones in a synovial joint are surrounded by a **joint capsule** [1] composed of fibrous tissue. **Ligaments** (thickened fibrous bands of connective tissue) anchor one bone to another and thereby add considerable strength to the joint capsule in critical areas. Bones at the joint are covered with a smooth, glistening white tissue called the **articular cartilage** [2]. The **synovial membrane** [3] lies under the joint capsule and lines the **synovial cavity** [4] between the bones. The synovial cavity is filled with a special lubricating fluid produced by the synovial membrane. This **synovial fluid** contains water and nutrients that nourish articular cartilage so that friction is minimal, allowing joints to move smoothly.

A **meniscus** is a crescent-shaped fibrocartilaginous structure that partly divides a joint cavity and acts as a protective cushion. It helps to evenly transfer weight from one bone to another. Menisci are present in a few joints in the body, but the most well known are in the knee (see Figure 15-20).

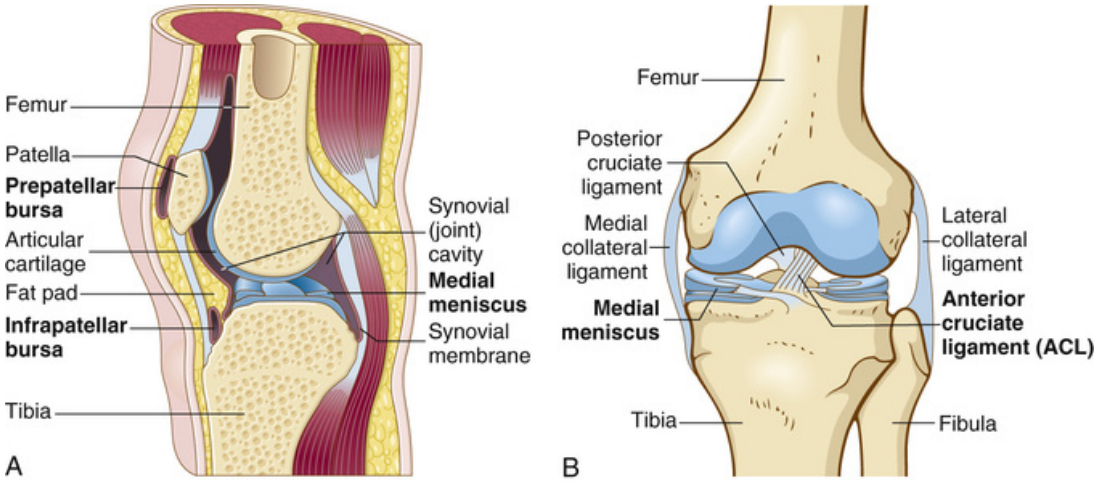


FIGURE 15-20 **A, Sagittal (lateral) section of the knee showing the medial meniscus** (plural menisci), and **bursae.** A "torn cartilage" in the knee is a damaged meniscus and is frequently treated with arthroscopic surgery. **B, Frontal section of the knee.** Notice the **anterior cruciate ligament (ACL),** which may be damaged ("torn ligament") with knee injury. Reconstruction of the ACL can require extensive surgery, and months of physical therapy may be required before return of normal function. See the case study on page 590.

Bursae

Bursae (*singular*: **bursa**) are closed sacs of synovial fluid lined with a synovial membrane and are located near but not within a joint. Bursae are present wherever two types of tissue need to slide past one another with as little

friction as possible. Bursae serve as layers of lubrication between tissues. Common sites are between **tendons** and bones, between **ligaments** and bones, and between skin and bones in areas where bony anatomy is prominent.

Some common locations of bursae are at the elbow joint (olecranon bursa), knee joint (prepatellar bursa), and shoulder joint (subacromial bursa). Figure 15-20A shows a lateral view of the knee joint with bursae. Figure 15-20B is a frontal (anterior/posterior) view of the knee showing ligaments that provide stability for the joint.

Vocabulary—Joints

This list reviews many new terms related to joints introduced in the text. Refer to the Pronunciation of Terms on page 607 for help with unfamiliar or difficult terms.

articular cartilage	Smooth white tissue that covers the ends of bones where they come together at a joint.
articulation	Any type of joint.
bursa (*plural*: bursae)	Sac of fluid near a joint; promotes smooth sliding of one tissue against another.
ligament	Fibrous, connective bands binding bones to other bones; supports, strengthens, and stabilizes the joint.
meniscus	Crescent-shaped fibrocartilaginous structure, which helps provides cushion for a joint (such as the knee).
suture joint	Immovable joint, such as between the bones of the skull.
synovial cavity	Space between bones at a synovial joint; contains synovial fluid produced by the synovial membrane.
synovial fluid	Viscous (sticky) fluid within the synovial cavity. Synovial fluid is similar in viscosity to egg white; this accounts for the origin of the term (syn- = like, ov/o = egg).
synovial joint	A freely movable joint.
synovial membrane	Tissue lining the synovial cavity; it produces synovial fluid.
tendon	Fibrous, connective tissue binding muscles to bones.

Terminology—Joints

Write the meanings of the medical terms in the spaces provided.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
ankyl/o	stiff	ankylosis _____
arthr/o	joint	arthroplasty _____ *Replacement arthroplasty is replacement of one or both bone ends by a prosthesis (artificial part) of metal or plastic. See page 584.* arthrotomy _____ hemarthrosis _____ hydrarthrosis _____ *Synovial fluid collects abnormally in the joint.* polyarthritis _____
articul/o	joint	articular cartilage _____
burs/o	bursa	bursitis _____ *Causes of this periarticular condition may be related to stress placed on the bursa or to diseases such as gout or rheumatoid arthritis. The bursa becomes inflamed and movement is limited and painful. Intrabursal injection of corticosteroids and also rest and splinting of the limb are helpful in treatment.*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
chondr/o	cartilage	achondroplasia _____ *This is an inherited condition in which the bones of the arms and legs fail to grow to normal size because of a defect in cartilage and bone formation. Dwarfism results, characterized by short limbs and a normal-sized head and trunk.* *See page 78.* chondrosarcoma _____ chondromalacia _____ ***Chondromalacia patellae** is a softening and roughening of the articular cartilaginous surface of the kneecap, resulting in pain, a grating sensation, and mechanical "catching" behind the patella with joint movement.*
ligament/o	ligament	ligamentous _____
rheumat/o	watery flow	rheumatologist _____ *Various forms of arthritis are marked by collection of fluid in joint spaces.*
synov/o	synovial membrane	synovitis _____
ten/o	tendon	tenorrhaphy _____ tenosynovitis _____ *Synov/o here refers to the sheath (covering) around the tendon.*
tendin/o	tendon	tendinosis _____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-desis	to bind, tie together	arthrodesis _____ *Bones are fused across the joint space by surgery (artificial ankylosis). This operation is performed when a joint is very painful, unstable, or chronically infected.*	
-stenosis	narrowing	spinal stenosis _____ *Narrowing of the neural (spinal) canal in the lumbar spine. Symptoms (pain, paresthesias, urinary retention, bowel incontinence) come from compression of the cauda equina (nerves that spread out from the lower end of the spinal cord like a horse's tail). See Figure 15-21.*	

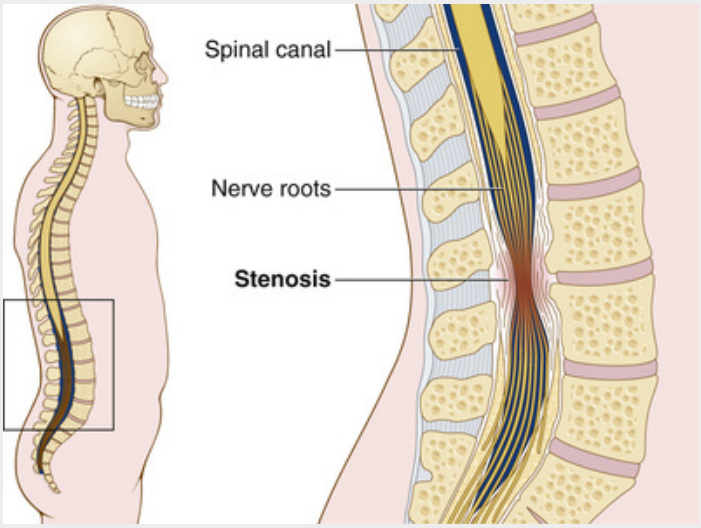


FIGURE 15-21 Spinal stenosis. Wear-and-tear effects of aging can lead to narrowing of the spinal (neural) canal.

Ankylosis/Alkalosis

Ankylosis is a condition of joint stiffening or immobilization. Don't confuse this term with *alkalosis,* meaning increased alkalinity (pH) of blood and tissues.

Pathology—Joints

arthritis	**Inflammation of any joint.** Common forms of arthritis are:
1. **ankylosing spondylitis**	**Chronic, progressive arthritis with stiffening of joints, primarily of the spine.** Bilateral sclerosis (hardening) of the sacroiliac joints is a diagnostic sign. Joint changes are similar to those seen in rheumatoid arthritis, and the condition can respond to corticosteroids and anti-inflammatory drugs.
2. **gouty arthritis (gout)**	**Inflammation and painful swelling in and around joints caused by the deposition of uric acid crystals.** A congenital defect in the metabolism of uric acid causes too much of it to accumulate in blood (**hyperuricemia**). This excess can lead to the formation of uric acid crystals, causing an inflammatory reaction that results in excruciating pain with rapid deterioration of articular cartilage. The joint chiefly affected is the big toe; hence, the condition often is called **podagra** (pod/o = foot, -agra = excessive pain). Treatment consists of drugs to lower uric acid production (allopurinol) and to prevent inflammation (colchicine and indomethacin) and a special diet that avoids foods that are rich in uric acid, such as red meats, red wines, and fermented cheeses.
3. **osteoarthritis (OA)**	**Progressive, degenerative joint disease with loss of articular cartilage and hypertrophy of bone (formation of osteophytes, or bone spurs) at articular surfaces.** This condition, also known as **degenerative joint disease,** can occur in any joint, but occurs mainly in the spine, hips, and knees of older people. It is marked by a narrowing of the joint space (due to loss of cartilage). Treatment consists of aspirin and nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs) to reduce inflammation and pain. Physical therapy may loosen impaired joints. Figure 15-22 compares a normal joint and those with osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis. End-stage osteoarthritis is the most common reason for joint replacement surgery (total joint arthroplasty). See the clinical case on page 584.
4. **rheumatoid arthritis (RA)**	**Chronic joint condition with inflammation and pain; caused by an autoimmune reaction against joint tissue, particularly the synovial membrane.** The small joints of the hands and feet are affected first, and larger joints later. Women are more commonly

	afflicted than men. Synovial membranes become inflamed and thickened, damaging the articular cartilage and preventing easy movement (see Figure 15-22). Sometimes fibrous tissue forms and calcifies, creating a **bony ankylosis** (pathologic union) at the joint and preventing movement. Swollen, painful joints accompanied by **pyrexia** (fever) are symptoms. Diagnosis is by clinical criteria, blood tests, and x-ray images revealing changes around the affected joints. Treatment consists of heat applications and drugs such as aspirin and other NSAIDs and corticosteroids to reduce inflammation and pain. Disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs (DMARDs) such as methotrexate and gold salts also are used, as well as, even more successfully, biologic medications to change the immune response to synovial tissues.
bunion	**Enlargement of bone or tissue around the joint at the base of the big toe (metatarsophalangeal joint).** Chronic irritation from ill-fitting shoes can cause a buildup of soft tissue and underlying bone. Bunionectomy (removal of a bony exostosis and associated soft tissue) is indicated if other measures (changing shoes and use of anti-inflammatory agents) fail. See Figure 15-23. Another name for a bunion is **hallux** (great toe) **valgus** (abnormal angulation of the toe).
carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS)	**Compression of the median nerve as it passes between the transverse ligament, and bones and tendons of the wrist.** CTS is caused by compression of the median nerve (see Figure 15-24) in the carpal tunnel. The compression results from swelling and/or inflammation of the flexor tendons. The thumb, the index and long finger and the radial half of the ring finger become dysesthetic (having abnormal sensation to touch). Treatment consists of splinting the wrist during sleep to immobilize it, use of anti-inflammatory medications, and injection of corticosteroids such as cortisone into the carpal tunnel. If these measures fail, surgical release of the transverse carpal ligament usually is curative.
dislocation	**Displacement of a bone from its joint.**

	Dislocated bones do not articulate with each other. The most common cause of dislocations is trauma. **Shoulder dislocation** (disruption of articulation between the head of the humerus and the glenoid fossa of the scapula) and **hip dislocation** (disruption of articulation between the head of the femur and the acetabulum of the pelvis) are examples. Treatment of dislocations involves **reduction,** which is restoration of the bones to their normal positions. A **subluxation** is a partial or incomplete dislocation.
ganglion cyst	**Fluid-filled sac arising from joint capsules or tendons.** Most common in the wrist, but can occur in the hand, shoulder, knee, hip, or ankle. See Figure 15-25. Treatment ranges from immobilization and reduced activity to aspiration of fluid, to surgical resection, if necessary.
herniation of an intervertebral disc	**Abnormal protrusion of an intervertebral disc into the spinal canal or spinal nerves.** This condition is commonly referred to as a "**slipped disc**." Pain is experienced as the inner portion of the disc (nucleus pulposus) presses on spinal nerves or on the spinal cord. See Figure 15-26A. Low back pain and **sciatica** (pain radiating down the leg) are symptoms when the disc protrudes in the lumbar spine. See Figure 15-26B. Neck pain and burning pain radiating down an arm are characteristic of a herniated disc in the cervical spine. Physical therapy, drugs for pain, and epidural cortisone injections may help initially. In patients with chronic or recurrent disc herniation, **microdiscectomy** (removal of a portion of the protruding disc) may be advised. See Figure 15-27A. In microendoscopic surgery, the disc is removed by inserting a tube through the skin and aspirating the disc through the tube, while the procedure is visualized through a small fiberoptic scope.
Lyme disease (Lyme arthritis)	**Chronic, recurrent disorder marked by severe arthritis, myalgia and malaise; cause is a bacterium carried by a tick.** It was first reported in Old Lyme, Connecticut, and is now found throughout the United States. It is often marked by a "bull's eye" rash at the site of the tick bite. See Figure 15-27B. The condition is treated with

	antibiotics. In some cases, Lyme disease can affect the nervous system.
sprain	**Injury, often the result of trauma, involving overstretching of the ligaments around a joint.** Application of gentle compressive wraps is an immediate measure to relieve pain and minimize swelling. Ice and elevation of the extremity as well as physical therapy are also helpful **HINT:** Don't confuse a **sprain** with a **strain,** which is an injury involving the overstretching of *muscle.*
systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)	**Chronic inflammatory autoimmune disease involving joints, skin, kidneys, central nervous system (CNS), heart, and lungs.** This condition affects connective tissue (specifically the protein component called **collagen**) in tendons, ligaments, bones, and cartilage all over the body. Typically, there is a red, scaly rash over the nose and cheeks ("butterfly" rash) (Figure 15-28). Patients, usually women, experience joint pain in several joints (polyarthralgia), pyrexia (fever), kidney inflammation, and malaise. SLE is an autoimmune disease that is diagnosed by the presence of abnormal antibodies in the blood and characteristic white blood cells called LE cells. Treatment involves giving corticosteroids, hormones made by the adrenal gland that are used to treat inflammatory conditions. New medications that modulate the immune system are being used with increasing success. The name lupus, meaning wolf, has been used since the 13th century, because more severe (erosive) lupus skin lesions were thought to look like the affected person had been attacked by a wolf.

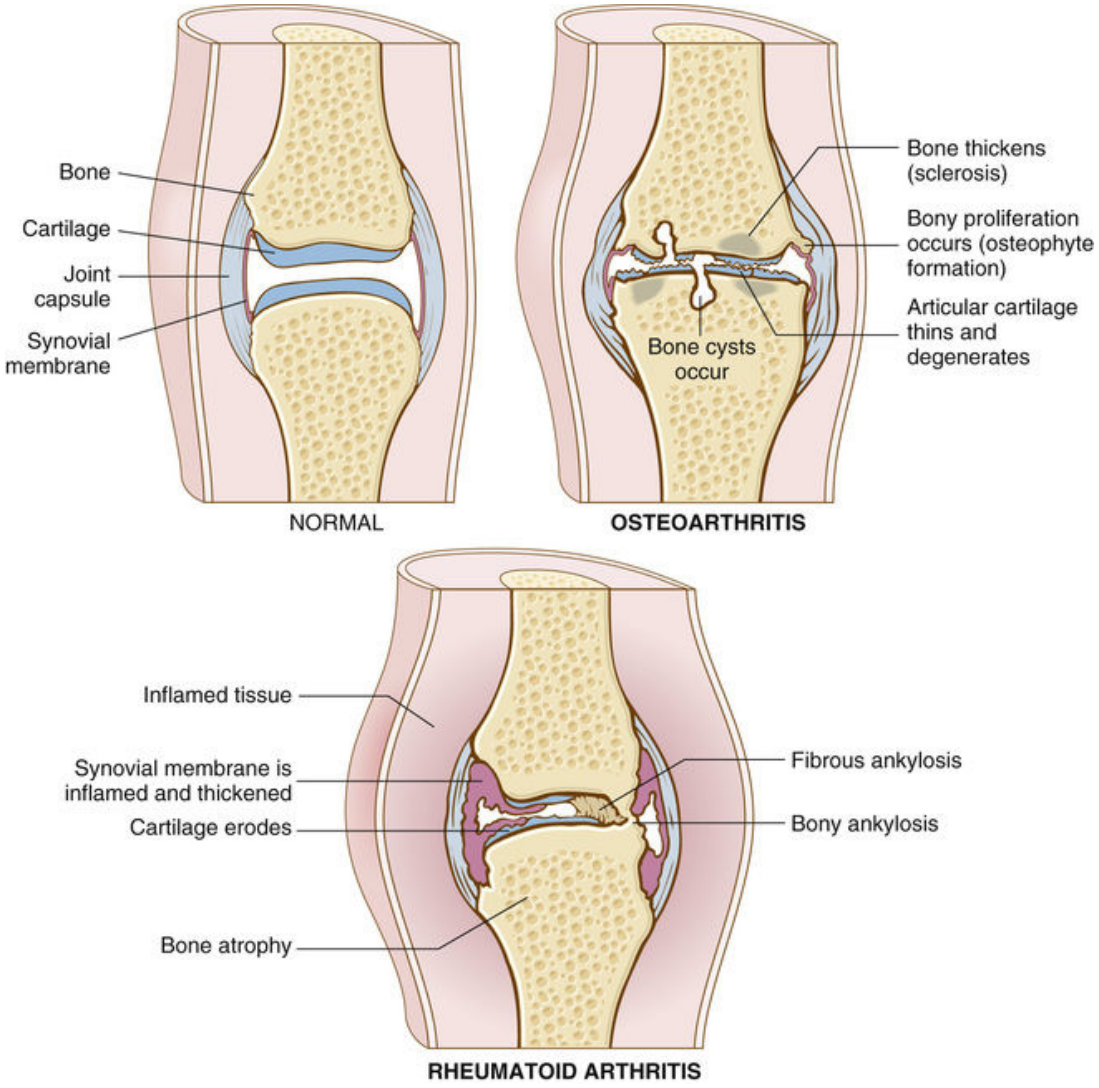


FIGURE 15-22 Changes in a joint with **osteoarthritis (OA)** and **rheumatoid arthritis (RA).**

FIGURE 15-23 The photograph shows a **bunion** of the left foot. The first x-ray image is before **bunionectomy,** and the second is after surgery to remove tissue and realign the bones. (Courtesy Dr. Sidra Ezrahi and Dr. Richard de Asia, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.)

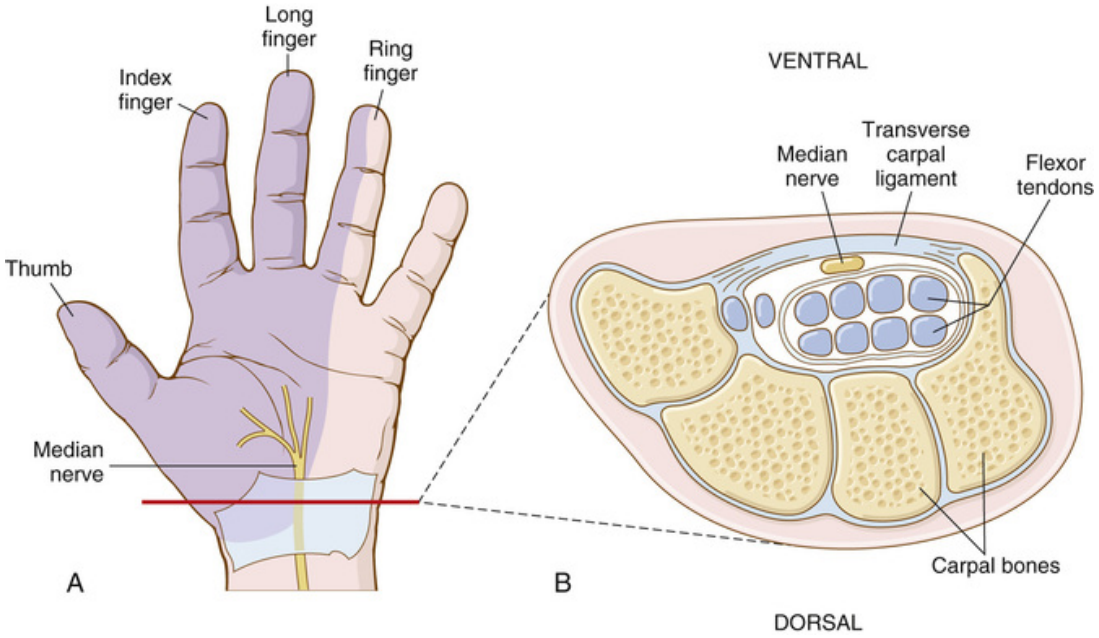


FIGURE 15-24 **Carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS). A,** The median nerve's sensory distribution in the thumb, first three fingers, and palm. **B,** Cross section of a left hand at the level indicated in **(A)**. Note the position of the median nerve between the carpal ligament and the tendons and carpal bones.

FIGURE 15-25 **Ganglion cyst** on the wrist. This is commonly known as a "Bible cyst" because a frequent treatment in the past was to drop the large family Bible on the cyst to rupture it. Success of such treatment usually was only temporary, with reoccurrence of the cyst over time.

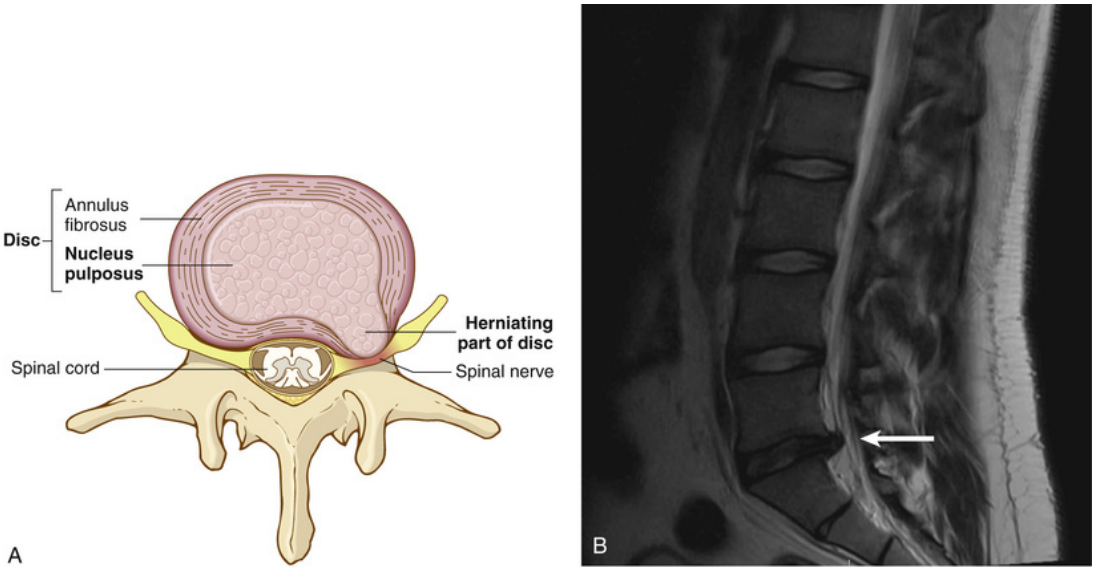


FIGURE 15-26 **A, Herniation of an intervertebral disc** (view from above the vertebra). The inner portion (nucleus pulposus) of the **disc** can be seen pressing on the spinal nerve. The condition also is known as **herniated nucleus pulposus (HNP). B, Sagittal MRI image of a herniated lumbar disk.**

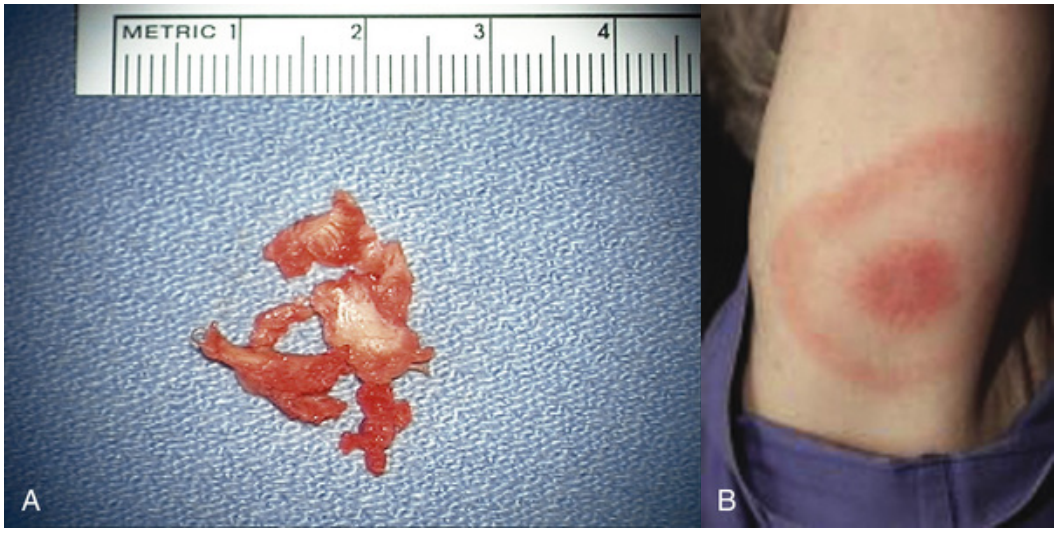


FIGURE 15-27 **A,** In **microdiscectomy** fragments of the herniated disc (*shown here*) are removed. **B, "Bull's eye" rash in Lyme disease.** (**A,** Courtesy of Dr. Jean-Valery Coumans, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.)

FIGURE 15-28 **Butterfly rash** that may accompany systemic lupus erythematosus.

Muscles

Types of Muscles

There are three types of muscles in the body. Label Figure 15-29 as you read the following descriptions of the various types of muscles.

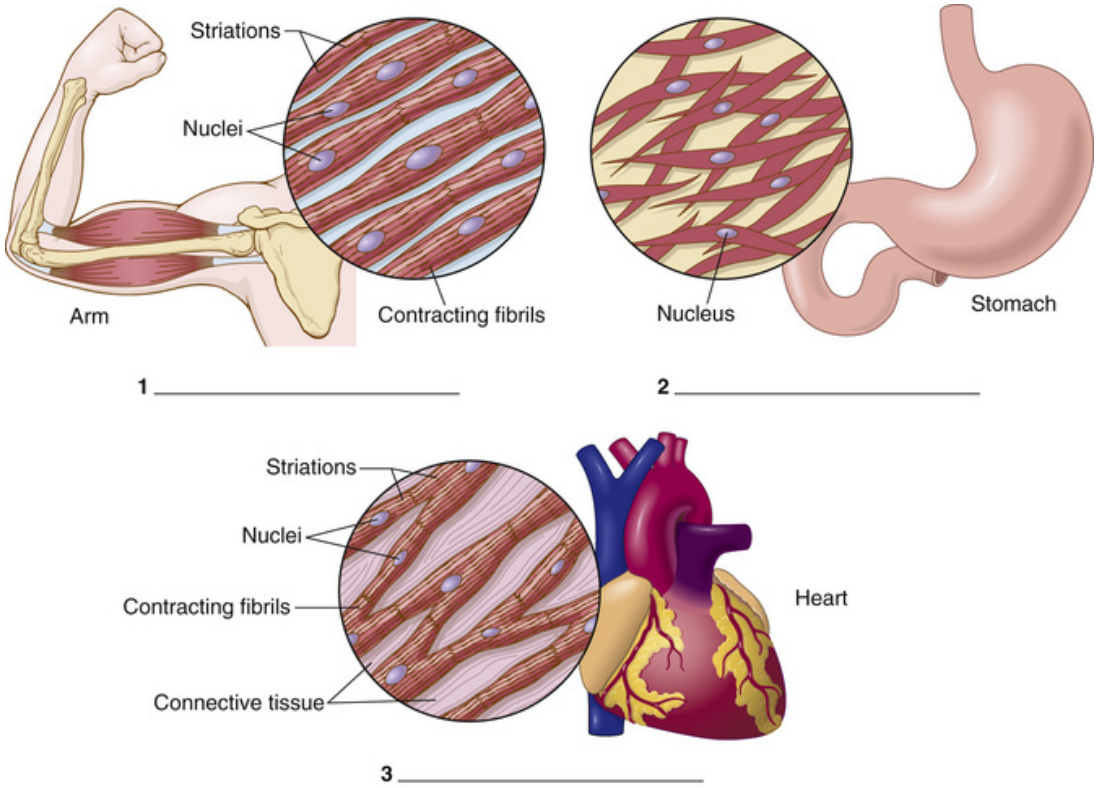


FIGURE 15-29 Types of muscles.

Striated muscle [1] makes up the **voluntary** or **skeletal muscles** that move all bones, as well as controlling facial expression and eye movements. Through the central and peripheral nervous systems, we have conscious control over these muscles. Striated muscle fibers (cells) have a pattern of dark and light bands, or fibrils, in their cytoplasm. Fibrous tissue that envelops and separates muscles is called **fascia**.

Smooth muscle [2] makes up the **involuntary** or **visceral muscles** that contract to move internal organs such as the digestive tract, the walls of blood vessels, and secretory ducts leading from glands. These muscles are involuntarily controlled, meaning they are not controlled by the conscious mind. They are called smooth because they have no dark and light fibrils in their cytoplasm. Smooth muscle forms sheets of fibers that wrap around tubes and vessels while skeletal muscle fibers are arranged in bundles.

Cardiac muscle [3] is striated in appearance but is like smooth muscle in its action. Its movement cannot be consciously controlled. The fibers of cardiac muscle are branching fibers and are found in the heart.

Actions of Skeletal Muscles

Skeletal (striated) muscles (more than 600 in the human body) are the muscles that move bones and joints. Figure 15-30 shows some skeletal muscles of the

head, neck, and torso and muscles of the posterior aspect of the leg. When a muscle contracts, one of the bones to which it is joined remains virtually stationary as a result of other muscles that hold it in place. The point of attachment of the muscle to the stationary bone is called the **origin (beginning)** of that muscle. When the muscle contracts, however, another bone to which it is attached does move. The point of junction of the muscle to the bone that moves is called the **insertion** of the muscle. Most often, the origin of a muscle lies proximal in the skeleton, whereas its insertion lies distal.

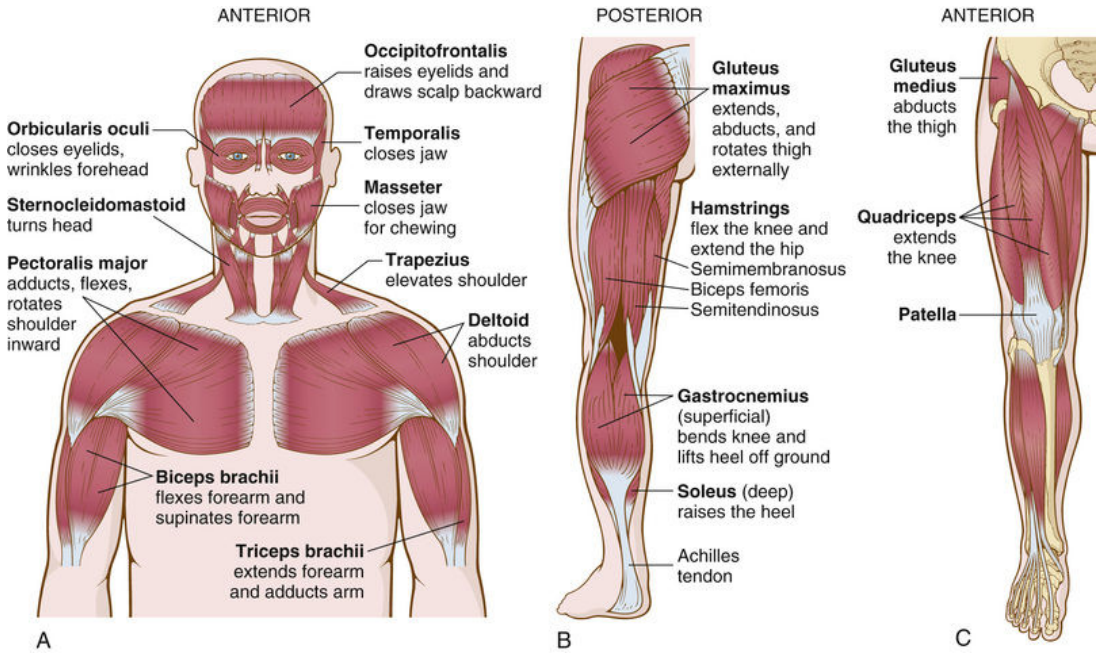


FIGURE 15-30 **A, Selected muscles of the head, neck, torso, and arm and their functions. B, Selected muscles of the posterior and anterior aspect of the leg and their functions.** The Evolve website contains additional anterior and posterior images of major muscles and their functions.

Figure 15-31 shows the biceps and triceps muscles in the upper arm. One origin of the biceps is at the scapula, and its insertion is at the radius. Tendons are the connective tissue bands that connect muscles to the bones.

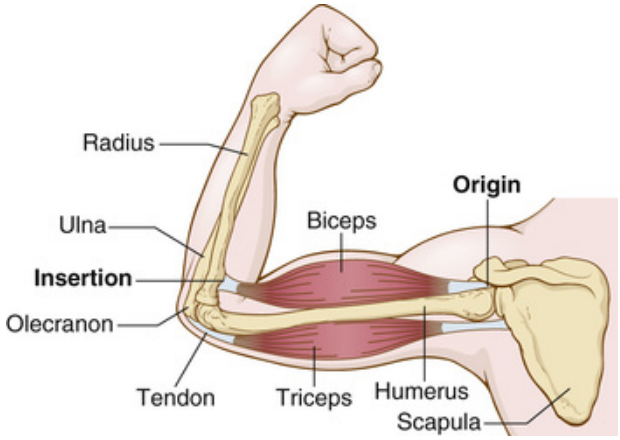


FIGURE 15-31 Origin and insertion of the biceps in the arm. Note also the origin of the triceps at the scapula and the insertion at the olecranon of the ulna.

Muscles can perform a variety of actions. Some of the terms used to describe those actions are listed here, with a short description of the specific type of movement performed (see Figure 15-32 on page 580).

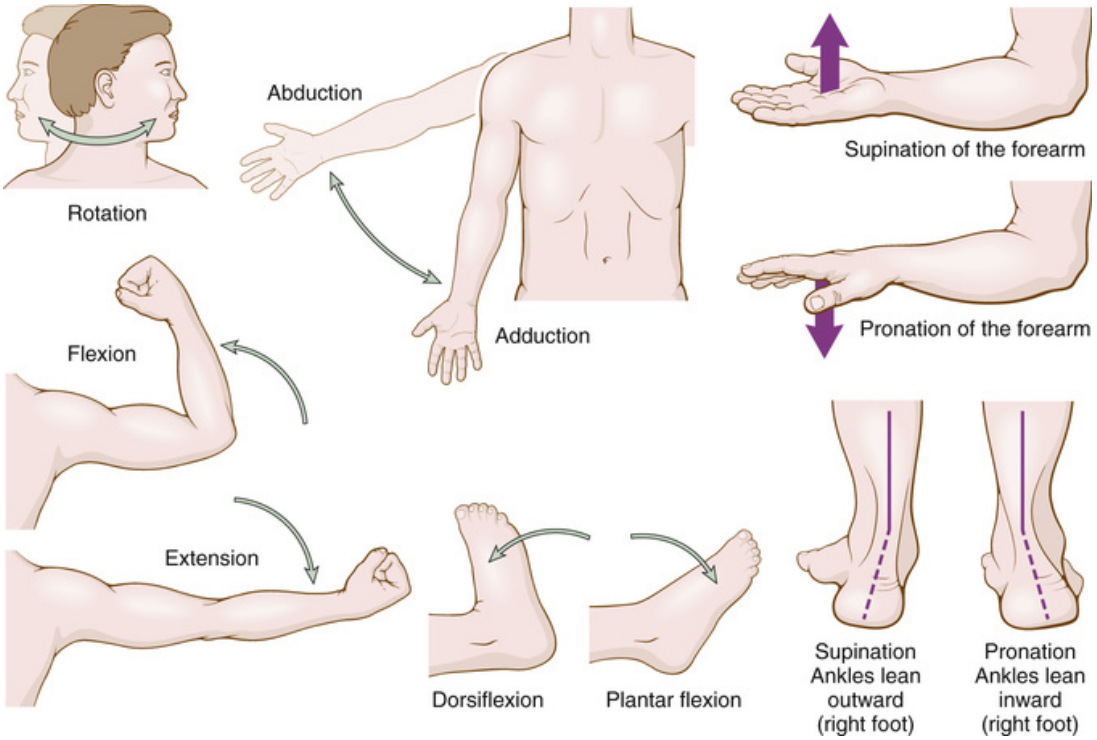


FIGURE 15-32 Types of muscular actions.

Action	Meaning
flexion	Decreasing the angle between two bones; bending a limb.
extension	Increasing the angle between two bones; straightening out a limb.
abduction	Movement away from the midline of the body.
adduction	Movement toward the midline of the body.
rotation	Circular movement around an axis (central point). Internal rotation is toward the center of the body and external rotation is away from the center of the body.
dorsiflexion	Decreasing the angle of the ankle joint so that the foot moves upward, toward the knee or ceiling. This is the opposite movement of stepping on the gas pedal when driving a car.
plantar flexion	Motion that moves the foot downward toward the ground as when pointing the toes or stepping on the gas pedal. Plant/o means sole of the foot.
supination	As applied to the hand and forearm, where the elbow is bent, the act of turning the palm up. As applied to the foot, it is outward roll of the foot/ankle during normal motion.
pronation	As applied to the hand and forearm, where the elbow is bent, the act of turning the palm down. As applied to the foot, it is inward roll of the foot/ankle during normal motion.

Vocabulary—Muscles

This list reviews many of the new terms related to muscles introduced in the text. Refer to the Pronunciation of Terms on page 607 for help with pronunciation of unfamiliar or difficult terms.

abduction	Movement away from the midline of the body.
adduction	Movement toward the midline of the body.
dorsiflexion	Upward movement of the foot; achieved through ankle motion.
extension	Straightening of a flexed limb; increasing the angle between the bones of a joint.
fascia	Fibrous membrane separating and enveloping muscles.
flexion	Bending a limb; decreasing the angle between bones.
insertion of a muscle	Connection of the muscle to a bone that moves; usually distal on the skeleton.
origin of a muscle	Connection of the muscle to a stationary bone; usually proximal on the skeleton.
plantar flexion	Downward movement of the foot; achieved through ankle motion.
pronation	Turning the palm downward.
rotation	Circular movement around a central point. Internal rotation is toward the center of the body. External rotation is away from the center of the body.
striated muscle	Muscle connected to bones; voluntary or skeletal muscle.
supination	Turning the palm upward.
visceral muscle	Muscle connected to internal organs; involuntary or smooth muscle.

Terminology—Muscles

Write the meanings of the medical terms in the spaces provided.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
fasci/o	fascia (forms sheaths enveloping muscles)	fasciotomy _____ *Fascia is cut to relieve tension or pressure on muscles.* *See Figure 15-33.*
fibr/o	fibrous connective tissue	fibromyalgia _____ *Chronic pain and stiffness in muscles, joints, and fibrous tissue, especially of the back, shoulders, neck, hips, and knees. Fatigue is a common complaint. Cause is not completely understood, and treatment includes physical therapy, stress relief methods, and medications such as Cymbalta (duloxetine) and Lyrica (pregabalin).*
leiomy/o	smooth (visceral) muscle that lines the walls of internal organs	leiomyoma _____ leiomyosarcoma _____
my/o	muscle	myalgia _____ electromyography _____ myopathy _____
myocardi/o	heart muscle	myocardial _____
myos/o	muscle	myositis _____
plant/o	sole of the foot	plantar flexion _____

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
rhabdomy/o	skeletal (striated) muscle connected to bones	rhabdomyoma _____ rhabdomyosarcoma _____ rhabdomyolysis _____	*Breakdown of damaged skeletal muscle.*
sarc/o	muscle and flesh	sarcopenia _____	*Loss of muscle mass and strength associated with aging. Exercise and strength training can help preserve and enhance muscle mass.*

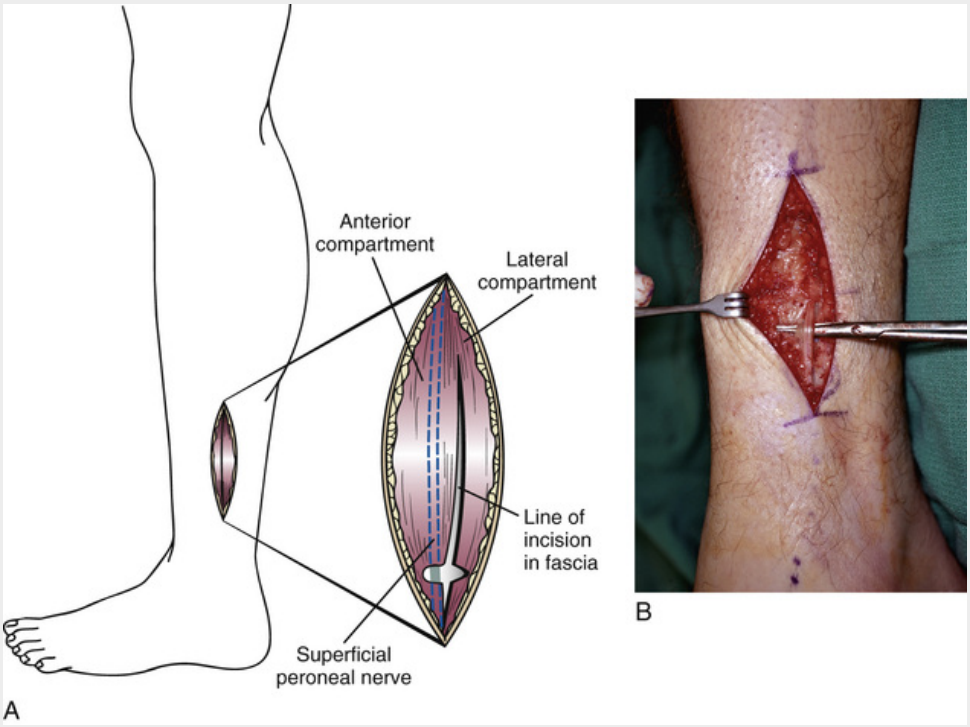


FIGURE 15-33 **A, Fasciotomy** as treatment for **compartment syndrome,** which is the compression of muscle, blood vessels, and nerves inside a closed space (compartment) of the body. It most often involves the lower leg. **B, Clinical photograph of fasciotomy procedure and exposed superficial peroneal nerve.**

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-asthenia	lack of strength	myasthenia gravis _____ *Muscles lose strength because of a failure in transmission of the nervous impulse from the nerve to the muscle cell.*	
-trophy	development, nourishment	atrophy _____ *Decrease in size of an organ or tissue.* hypertrophy _____ *Increase in size of an organ or tissue.* amyotrophic _____ *In **amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (Lou Gehrig disease),** muscles deteriorate (paralysis occurs) as a result of degeneration of nerves in the spinal cord and lower region of the brain.*	

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
ab-	away from	abduction _____ *Duct/o means to lead.*	
ad-	toward	adduction _____	
dorsi-	back	dorsiflexion _____	
poly-	many, much	polymyalgia _____ ***Polymyalgia rheumatica** is an autoimmune disorder marked by aching and morning stiffness in the shoulder, hip, or neck for longer than 1 month.*	

Pathology—Muscles

muscular dystrophy	**Group of inherited diseases characterized by progressive weakness and degeneration of muscle fibers without involvement of the nervous system.** **Duchenne muscular dystrophy** is the most common form. Muscles appear to enlarge **(pseudohypertrophy)** as fat replaces functional muscle cells that have degenerated and atrophied. Onset of muscle weakness occurs soon after birth, and diagnosis can be made by muscle biopsy and electromyography. The disease predominantly affects males; muscle weakness produces stumbling, falling, lordosis, winged (prominent) scapulae, and cardiac problems.
polymyositis	**Chronic inflammatory myopathy.** This condition is marked by symmetric muscle weakness and pain, often accompanied by a rash around the eyes and on the face and limbs. Evidence that polymyositis is an autoimmune disorder is growing stronger, and some patients recover completely with immunosuppressive therapy.

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Laboratory Tests

antinuclear antibody test (ANA)	**Detects an antibody often present in serum of patients with systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE) and other autoimmune diseases.**
erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR)	**Measures time it takes for erythrocytes to settle to the bottom of a test tube.** Elevated ESR is associated with inflammatory disorders such as rheumatoid arthritis, tumors, and infections.
rheumatoid factor test (RF)	**Serum is tested for the presence of an antibody found in many patients with rheumatoid arthritis.**
serum calcium (Ca)	**Measurement of calcium level in serum.** Hypercalcemia may be caused by disorders of the parathyroid gland and malignancy that affects bone metabolism. Hypocalcemia is seen in critically ill patients with burns, sepsis, and acute renal failure.
serum creatine kinase (CK)	**Measurement of the enzyme creatine kinase in serum.** This enzyme normally is present in skeletal and cardiac muscle. Increased levels occur in muscular dystrophy, polymyositis, rhabdomyolysis, and with traumatic injuries.
uric acid test	**Measurement of uric acid in serum.** High levels are associated with gouty arthritis.

Clinical Procedures

arthrocentesis	**Surgical puncture to remove fluid from the joint space.** Synovial fluid is removed for analysis using a needle and syringe.
arthrography	**Taking x-ray images after injection of contrast material into a joint.**
arthroplasty	**Surgical repair or replacement of a joint.** Total hip arthroplasty or **total hip replacement (THR)** is replacement of the femoral head and acetabulum with prostheses that are fastened into the bone (Figure 15-34). The femoral component is made of metal and the acetabular component is made of a plastic liner that sits inside a metal shell. See ***In Person: Total Hip Arthroplasty,*** page 592. In a **total knee replacement (TKR)** a metal prosthesis covers the end of the femur, and a tibial component made of metal and plastic covers the top end of the tibia. See page 591 for a clinical case describing TKR. Other examples of arthroplasties are **resection arthroplasty** (small portion of a bone is removed to repair the joint; acromioclavicular joint is a common location), **interposition arthroplasty** (new tissue is placed between damaged surface of a joint such as the elbow), and **revision arthroplasty** (an operation to replace a failing prosthetic joint).
arthroscopy	**Visual examination of a joint with an arthroscope, which projects an image on a video monitor.** An orthopedist passes small surgical instruments into a joint (knee, shoulder, ankle, wrist, hip) to evaluate and/or remove and repair damaged tissue while viewing the joint simultaneously with a scope. See Figure 15-35.
bone density test (bone densitometry)	**Low-energy x-ray absorption in bones of the spinal column, pelvis, and wrist is used to measure bone mass.** An x-ray detector measures how well x-rays penetrate through bones (Figure 15-36). Areas of decreased density indicate osteopenia and osteoporosis. Also called **dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry** (**DEXA** or **DXA**).
bone scan	**Uptake of a radioactive substance is measured in bone.**

	After a radioactive tracer is injected intravenously into the patient, a nuclear medicine technician uses a special scanning device to detect areas of increased uptake (found with tumors, infection, inflammation, stress fractures) (Figure 15-37).
computed tomography (CT)	**X-ray beam and computer show cross-sectional and other images of body tissues.** CT scans identify bone abnormalities, and musculo-skeletal trauma.
discography	**X-ray examination of cervical or lumbar intervertebral disc after injection of contrast into nucleus pulposus (interior of the disc).**
electromyography (EMG)	**Recording the electrical activity of muscle tissue.**
magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)	**Strong magnetic field and advanced computing technology are used to create high-resolution images of soft tissues inside the body.** MRI shows soft tissue conditions in greater detail than that achieved with CT.
muscle biopsy	**Removal of muscle tissue for microscopic examination to assess for abnormalities or disease.**

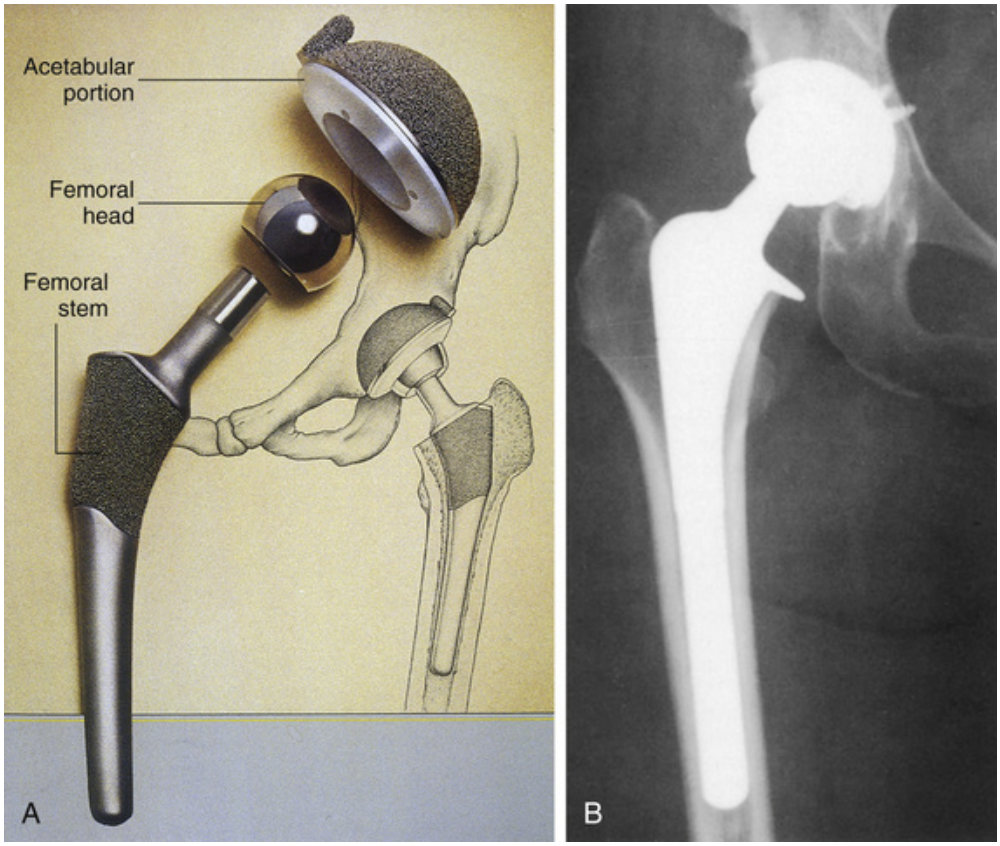


FIGURE 15-34 **A, Acetabular and femoral components of a total hip arthroplasty. B,** Radiograph showing a hip after placement of a cementless Harris-Galante implant. The bone grows into the porous metal to stabilize it to the skeleton.

FIGURE 15-35 **Knee arthroscopy in progress.** Notice the monitor in the background. An arthroscope is used in the diagnosis and treatment of pathologic changes.

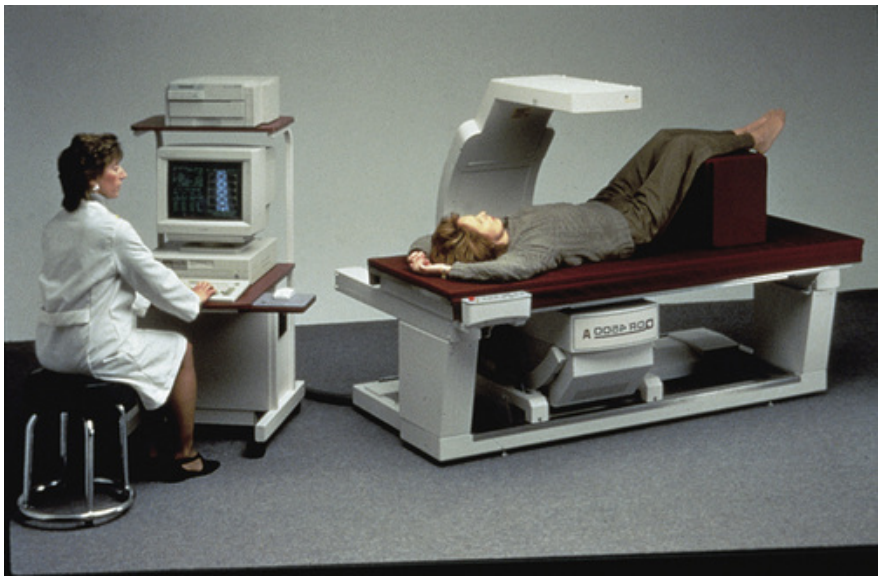


FIGURE 15-36 Patient undergoing **bone density test or dual energy x-ray absorptiometry (DEXA or DXA).**

FIGURE 15-37 A technetium-99m bone scan of a skeleton showing an area of increased radioactive uptake on the right tibia (*arrow*) that indicates a bone tumor.

Abbreviations

AC	acromioclavicular (joint)
ACL	anterior cruciate ligament of the knee
AKA	above knee amputation
ANA	antinuclear antibody—indicator of systemic lupus erythematosus
BKA	below-knee amputation
BMD	bone mineral density
C1 to C7	cervical vertebrae
Ca	calcium
CK	creatine kinase—enzyme elevated in muscle disease
CMC	carpometacarpal (joint)
CTS	carpal tunnel syndrome
DEXA *or* DXA	dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry—a test of bone mineral density
DJD	degenerative joint disease–another term for osteoarthritis
DMARD	disease-modifying antirheumatic drug
DO	doctor of osteopathy
DTRs	deep tendon reflexes
EMG	electromyography
ESR (sed rate)	erythrocyte sedimentation rate—indicates inflammation
Fx	fracture
HNP	herniated nucleus pulposus
IM	intramuscular
L1 to L5	lumbar vertebrae
MCL	medial collateral ligament of the knee
NSAID	nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug—often prescribed to treat musculoskeletal disorders
OA	osteoarthritis
ORIF	open reduction (of fracture)/internal fixation
ortho	orthopedics (*or* orthopaedics)
OT	occupational therapy—helps patients with impaired musculoskeletal function perform activities of daily living and function in work-related situations
P	phosphorus
PT	physical therapy—helps patients with movement disorders regain use of muscles and joints after injury or surgery
RA	rheumatoid arthritis
RF	rheumatoid factor
ROM	range of motion
SC	sternoclavicular joint
SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus

T1 to T12	thoracic vertebrae
TKR/TKA	total knee replacement/arthroplasty
THR/THA	total hip replacement/arthroplasty
TMJ	temporomandibular joint
TSR	total shoulder replacement

In Person

Rotator Cuff Tear

When I took the enormous swing for my drive on the 10th hole and instead of hitting the ball, I hit the ground, I immediately knew that I had done severe damage to my left shoulder. The club flew out of my hands and I felt excruciating pain.

Over the next few weeks, I iced the shoulder and took NSAIDs, but the pain and inability to move my shoulder persisted. After several weeks of physical therapy that didn't improve my mobility or pain, I went to an orthopedic surgeon who specialized in shoulders. He suspected a torn rotator cuff. The rotator cuff is a group of muscles and tendons that stabilize, move, and provide strength to the shoulder joint. [See Figure 15-38A for a diagram of the anatomy of shoulder and rotator cuff tendons and muscles.] An MRI of my shoulder made the diagnosis. [See Figure 15-38B for an MRI scan.]

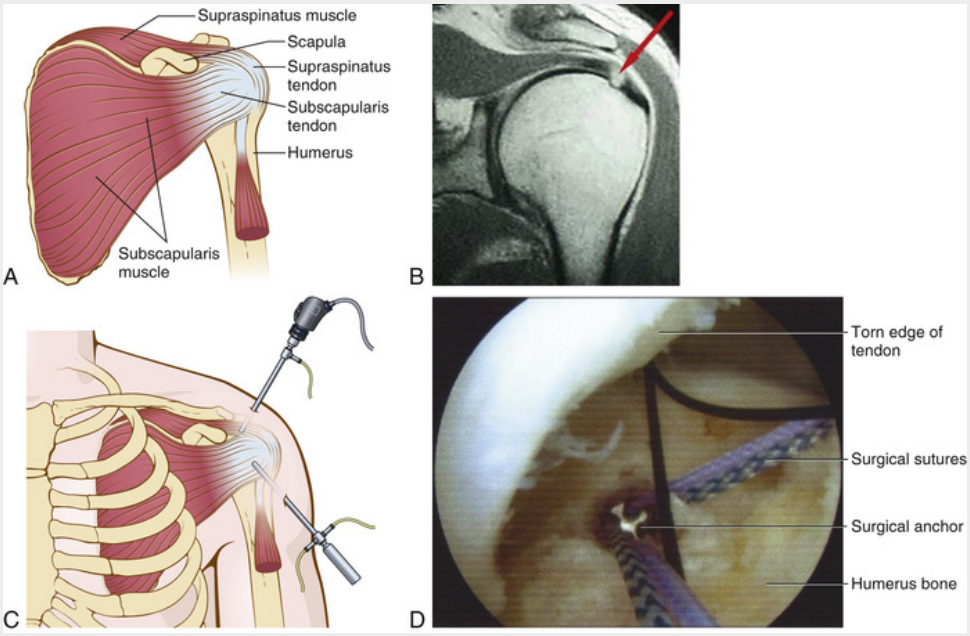


FIGURE 15-38 **A,** Anterior view of anatomy of shoulder and **rotator cuff tendon and muscles. B, MRI showing rotator cuff tear** in tendon of supraspinatus muscle. **C, Arthroscopic surgery** to repair torn tendons. **D,** Arthroscopic view of procedure. B & D Courtesy of Dr. Thomas Holovacs, Massachusets General Hospital, Boston, MA.

I was told that rotator cuff tears rarely repair themselves, but some people gradually get used to the limited mobility, strength, and diminished pain. The other alternative is arthroscopic surgery [see Figure 15-38C] to repair the torn tendons. I decided to have the surgery, which consisted of drilling into the head of the humerus and pulling the tendon (with surgical sutures) to the bone [humerus] to reinsert it in place. [See Figure 15-38D.]

After surgery, I found myself strapped into an elaborate sling to protect my shoulder for over six weeks. The rehabilitation was tough and consisted of physical therapy and slow return to activity, but it was worth it as I can now get back on the golf course!

Davi-Ellen Chabner.

Practical Applications

This section contains an x-ray report, an orthopedic operating room schedule, a case report with findings presented in SOAP format, and a short clinical case. Explanations of more difficult or unfamiliar terms are given in brackets. Answers to the matching questions are found on page 604.

Medical Report: Results of Chest X-Ray Examination

PA [posteroanterior] and lateral chest: The heart is enlarged in its transverse diameter. The lungs are fully expanded and free of active disease.

Thoracic spine shows a scoliosis of the upper thoracic spine convex to the left. There is 50% wedge compression fracture of T6 and slight wedge compression fracture of T5. There is also anterior wedge compression fracture of T12.

Lumbar spine shows 90% compression fractures of L1 and L3 with 30% compression fractures of L2 and L5. All bones are markedly osteoporotic. There is calcification within the aortic arch. There are gallstones in the right upper quadrant. The findings in the spine are most compatible with osteoporotic compression fractures. During the procedure, the patient had a "sickable" [syncopal (means fainting)—this word was incorrectly transcribed!] episode and fell, striking her head. A skull series, done at no cost to the patient, shows no evidence of bony fracture. The pineal gland is calcified and has a midline location. The sella turcica is normal.

Operating Room Schedule

Match the operation in Column I with an accompanying diagnosis or indication for surgery from Column II.

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. Excision, osteochondroma, R calcaneus	_____	A. Fracture of the ankle B. ACL rupture C. Neoplastic lesion in brain D. Exostosis on heel bone E. Pelvic fracture F. Pain and malocclusion of jaw joint G. Lower back pain radiating down one leg H. Pain in shoulder joint with bone spur (exostosis) evident on x-ray
2. TMJ arthroscopy with probable arthrotomy	_____	
3. L4–5 laminectomy and discectomy	_____	
4. Arthroscopy, left knee	_____	
5. Open reduction, malleolar fracture	_____	
6. R occipital craniotomy with tumor resection	_____	
7. Excision, distal end right clavicle, with probable acromioplasty	_____	
8. Open reduction and internal fixation of the acetabulum	_____	

Case Report—SOAP Format: ACL Injury

[*Note*: **SOAP** stands for **S**ubjective, **O**bjective, **A**ssessment, and **P**lan. It is the format for most medical notes.]

S: Patient reports that she fell and twisted her right knee while skiing last month. She notes that she felt a "pop" and experienced immediate pain and swelling of the knee. X-ray was negative for fracture, but MRI revealed a torn ACL [anterior cruciate ligament]. Patient underwent an ACL reconstruction using a patellar tendon autograft 1 week ago. Pain is 3/10 at rest and 6/10 during weight-bearing [on a scale of 0 to 10]. Her goals are to decrease pain, walk normally, and return to prior level of functioning, including skiing and soccer.

O: *Gait*: Ambulates with bilateral axillary crutches.

	Left	**Right**
Range of Motion:		
Extension	0°	0°
Flexion	140°	90°
Strength:		
Quadriceps	5/5	3+/5
Hamstrings	5/5	4−/5
Gluteus medius	5/5	4−/5
Gluteus maximus	5/5	4−/5
Gastroc/soleus	5/5	4−/5
Girth:		
Mid-patella	15″	16″

Radiographs: AP and lateral x-ray views, weight bearing, of the right knee demonstrate reasonable position of femoral and tibial surgical tunnels with expected location of orthopedic hardware (screws). Bony harvest sites of patellar tendon graft harvest are evident and demonstrate no evidence of fracture.

A: Patient is a 20-year-old female presenting with signs and symptoms consistent with status post-ACL reconstruction. Impairments include gait disturbance, edema, pain, and decreased range of motion, strength, and functional activities.

P: Treatment will include manual therapy, therapeutic exercise modalities per protocol, patient education, and gait training. Follow up for re-evaluation in 6 weeks. Repeat radiographs not necessary.

Short Clinical Case: OA of the Knee

A 65-year-old woman has been suffering from right knee joint stiffness, aching pain, and limited movement that is worse when she rises in the morning or after inactivity. She has been taking acetaminophen (Tylenol) and other NSAIDs (Motrin or Advil) to cope with the pain.

An x-ray of her knees laterally and valgus deformity. (Figure 15-39A) shows deterioration of articular cartilage in the right knee with narrowing of the joint space. See left knee for comparison. Surgery is recommended for TKR and is performed (see Figure 15-39B and C). Follow-up x-ray (Figure 15-39D) shows the prosthesis in place and correction of the alignment deformity of the limb. After successful healing of the incision and removal of surgical clips, the patient had several weeks of PT and is walking normally without pain.

FIGURE 15-39 **A,** X-ray image of knees showing **osteoarthritis** in right knee. **B,** Patient undergoing **total knee replacement (TKR). C, Prosthetic device** in place. **D,** X-ray image of knees after TKR. (**A** to **D,** Courtesy Dr. Sidra Ezrahi and Dr. Dennis Burke, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.)

Valgus and Varis

These terms are often used and confused in orthopedics. A **valgus deformity** of the knee means the tibia (below the knee joint) is *deviated outward* in relation to the femur resulting in a knock-kneed appearance. A **varis deformity** at the

knee means the tibia is *deviated inward* in relation to the femur resulting in a bow-legged appearance.

In Person

Total Hip Arthroplasty

I was born with a right congenital hip dysplasia and put into iron braces until I could walk normally. At 11 months, the braces were removed and I was deemed healthy, but my right foot, always turned outward. It never got in my way and held up for over 100 marathons, until 2012 when I developed a deep aching pain in my groin, a telltale sign of hip pathology and my running became more difficult. In the spring of 2016, at the advice of my chiropractor, I had an x-ray of my pelvis with a views of my right hip. The diagnosis was right hip severe osteoarthritis, bone on bone. (Figure 15-40A and B)

The prognosis for this sort of condition can be variable. Some people can avoid joint replacement for years, with limited activity, but I was having pain with any flexion of my hip. In December of 2016, I had a corticosteroid injection into the joint space with the goal of reducing some of the inflammation resulting from the femoral head rubbing against the acetabulum. My only painless motion was lateral, where my hip could rotate without osteophytes and bone spurs limiting motion. Over the years I had worn down my femoral head so that it was no longer round but rather flat from bone

rubbing on bone. (See Figure 15-40C.) Although I took NSAID's for pain, when the pain continued all night, I decided to look into hip replacement.

I selected a surgeon who operated with an anterior approach and used a special Hana table, to position my leg for optimal placement of the femoral stem prosthesis. Artificial hips are comprised of 3 components: the titanium femoral stem, the femoral head either chromium cobalt or ceramic, and the acetabular portion which can be metal with a polyethylene liner. See Figure 15-34 on page 584. Because I wanted an approach that did not cut through any muscle and with the lowest dislocation risk, I decided upon an anterior approach. The entire procedure took about 60 minutes (see post operative x-ray below in Figure 15-40D) and within 6 hours they had me up and walking on my new hip.

The most challenging part of the post-op period was extreme nausea resulting from the anesthesia and narcotics used to curb my postoperative pain. I decided to discontinue the narcotics. Because I was laying in bed for hours on end, in between my PT, I wore compression hose and special boots that inflated and deflated on schedule to move blood through my legs. This prevented deep vein thromboses. I also was put on a blood thinner (anticoagulant) to prevent the dangerous clots which could easily migrate to my lungs (pulmonary emboli).

Over a period of a week, I gradually grew stronger. I progressed from a walker to using a cane in my left hand. I practiced using my stronger left leg first going up stairs and my weaker right leg-cane combination first when going down stairs. I took it slowly. I iced my hip constantly, never going any where or lying down without ice packs to reduce the inflammation, pain and swelling.

Increasing my walking and adding daily PT helped me feel stable on my feet within a few weeks. My surgeon hypothesized that by 6 weeks, I would feel like my new hip was my own and take aerobic exercise gradually from there. I can't wait.

Elizabeth Chabner Thompson is the CEO/Founder of Masthead, a company devoted to bringing innovative products to patients with breast cancer. She is a physician, swimmer, cross country skier and the proud mother of four children ages 16-21.

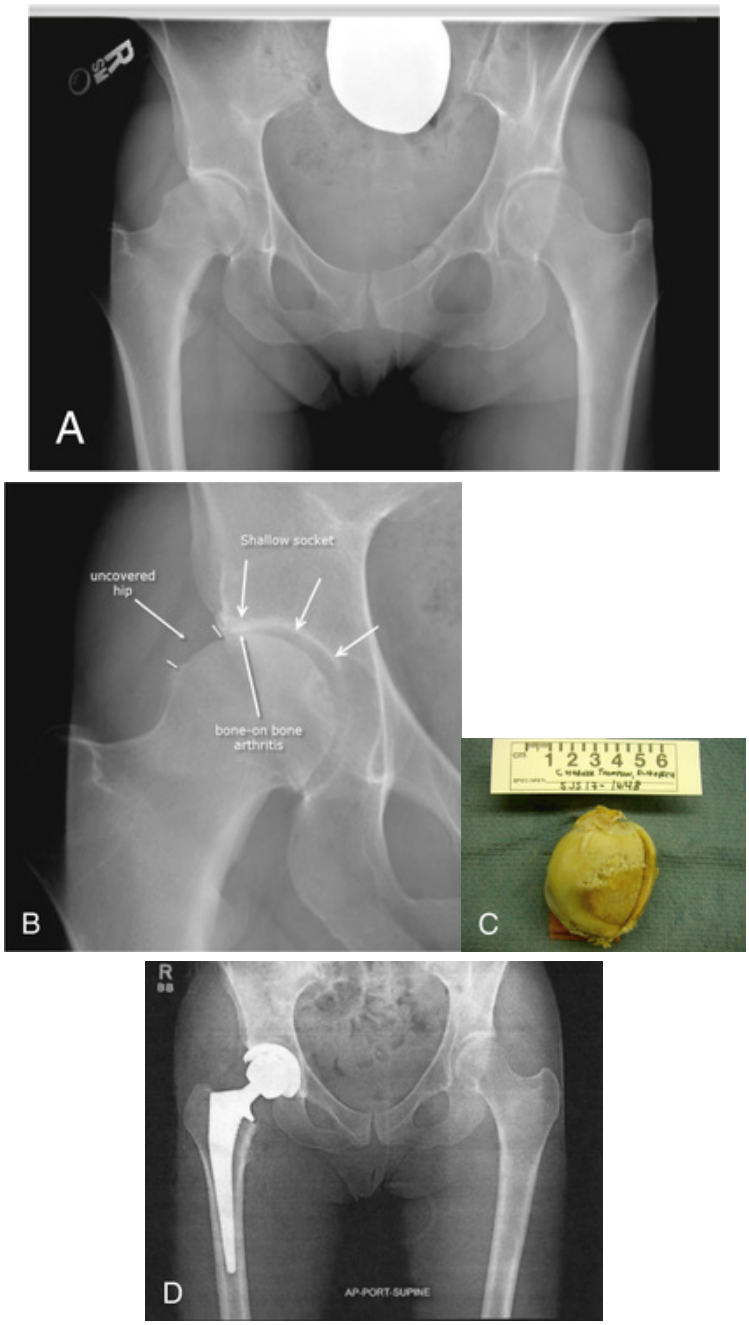


FIGURE 15-40 **A,** X-ray showing osteoarthritis of right hip compared to normal left hip. **B,** X-ray showing detail bone-on-bone osteoarthritis. **C,** Femoral head deterioration post-surgery. **D,** X-ray of right hip prosthesis in place.

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, page 604.

A **Complete the following sentences.**

1. Bones are composed of a type of connective tissue called _____ tissue.
2. Bone cells are called _____.
3. The bones of a fetus are composed mainly of _____.
4. Immature bone cells called _____ produce bony tissue.
5. Large bone cells called _____ digest bone tissue to shape the bone and smooth it out.
6. Mineral substances needed for bone development are _____ and _____.
7. The patella, covering the knee joint, is an example of a/an _____ bone.
8. Shaft of a long bone is the _____.
9. Ends of a long bone are the _____.
10. Cartilaginous area at the end of a long bone where growth takes place is the _____.
11. Red bone marrow is found in spongy or _____bone.
12. Yellow bone marrow is composed of _____ tissue.
13. The strong membrane surrounding the surface of a bone is the _____.
14. Hard, dense bone tissue lying under the periosteum is _____.

15. A series of canals containing blood vessels lie within the outer dense tissue of bone and are called the _____ canals.
16. A thin layer of cartilage covering the ends of bones at the joints is _____.
17. The _____ is a central, hollowed-out area in the shaft of long bones.
18. Two physicians who treat bones and bone diseases are a/an _____ and a/an _____.
19. A practitioner who manipulates the patient's spinal column to relieve pressure on nerves is a/an _____.
20. Medical doctor who specializes in restoring patients to functional activity after injuries to bones, nerves, and muscles is a/an _____.

B **Match the cranial and facial bones with their meanings that follow.**

ethmoid bone

frontal bone

lacrimal bones

mandible

maxilla

nasal bone

occipital bone

parietal bone

sphenoid bone

temporal bone

vomer

zygomatic bone

1. forms the roof and upper side parts of the skull
   _____
2. delicate bone, composed of spongy, cancellous tissue; supports the nasal cavity and orbits of the eye
   _____
3. forms the back and base of the skull
   _____
4. forms the forehead _____
5. bat-shaped bone extending behind the eyes to form the base of the skull _____
6. bone near the ear and connecting to the lower jaw
   _____
7. cheekbone _____
8. bone that supports the bridge of the nose
   _____
9. thin, flat bone forming the lower portion of the nasal septum _____
10. lower jawbone _____
11. upper jawbone _____
12. two paired bones, one located at the corner of each eye
    _____

C **Identify the following parts associated with a vertebra.** **See Figure 15-7, page 552.**

1. space through which the spinal cord passes:
   _____
2. piece of cartilage between two vertebrae:
   _____

3. posterior part of a vertebra:
_____
4. anterior part of a vertebra:
_____

D **Name the five divisions of the spinal column.**

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____

E **Give the medical names of the following bones.**

1. shoulder blade
_____
2. upper arm bone
_____
3. breastbone
_____
4. thigh bone
_____

5. finger bones
_____

6. hand bones
_____

7. forearm bone (little finger side)
_____

8. forearm bone (thumb side)
_____

9. collar bone
_____

10. wrist bones
_____

11. backbone
_____

12. kneecap
_____

13. shin bone (larger of two lower leg bones)
_____

14. smaller of two lower leg bones
_____

15. three parts of the pelvis _____,
_____, and
_____

16. bones between the tarsals and phalanges
_____

F **Give the meanings of the following terms associated with bones.**

1. foramen magnum
_____
_____

2. calcaneus

_____

3. acromion

_____

4. xiphoid process

_____

5. lamina

_____

6. malleolus

_____

7. acetabulum

_____

8. pubic symphysis

_____

9. olecranon

_____

10. fontanelle

_____

11. mastoid process

_____

12. styloid process

_____

G **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. osteogenesis

_____

2. hypercalcemia

_____

3. spondylosis

_____

4. epiphyseal

_____

5. decalcification

_____

6. ossification

_____

7. osteitis

_____

8. costoclavicular

_____

H **Build medical terms for the following definitions.**

1. pertaining to the shoulder blade
   _____
2. instrument to cut the skull
   _____
3. pertaining to the upper arm bone
   _____
4. pertaining to below the kneecap
   _____
5. softening of cartilage
   _____
6. pertaining to a toe bone
   _____
7. removal of hand bones
   _____
8. pertaining to the shin bone
   _____
9. pertaining to the heel bone
   _____
10. poor bone development
    _____
11. removal of the lamina of the vertebral arch
    _____
12. pertaining to the sacrum and ilium
    _____

I **Give medical terms for the following.**

1. formation of bone marrow
   _____
2. clubfoot _____
3. humpback _____

4. high levels of calcium in the blood
   _____
5. benign tumors arising from the bone surface
   _____
6. brittle bone disease
   _____
7. lateral curvature of the spine
   _____
8. anterior curvature of the spine
   _____
9. forward slipping (subluxation) of a vertebra over a lower vertebra _____
10. instrument to cut bone
    _____

J **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. osteoporosis
   _____
   _____
2. osteomyelitis
   _____
   _____
3. osteogenic sarcoma
   _____
   _____
4. crepitus
   _____
   _____
5. osteomalacia
   _____
   _____

6. abscess
_____
_____
7. osteopenia
_____
_____
8. Ewing sarcoma
_____
_____
9. metastatic bone lesion
_____
_____
10. compound/open fracture
_____
_____
11. simple/closed fracture
_____
_____
12. open reduction
_____
_____

K **Complete the following sentences.**

1. Immovable joint, as in the skull bones, is called a _____.
2. Connective tissue that binds muscles to bones is a/an _____.
3. Another term for a joint is a/an _____.
4. Connective tissue that binds bones to other bones is a/an _____.

5. Fluid found in a joint is called _____.
6. The membrane that lines the joint cavity is the _____.
7. Sac of fluid near a joint is a/an _____.
8. Smooth cartilage that covers the surface of bones at joints is _____.
9. Surgical repair of a joint is called _____.
10. Inflammation surrounding a joint is known as _____.

L **Complete the following terms based on the definitions provided.**

1. Abnormal condition of a tendon: _____ osis
2. tumor (benign) of cartilage: _____ oma
3. tumor (malignant) of cartilage: _____ oma
4. incision of a joint: arthr _____
5. softening of cartilage: chondro _____
6. abnormal condition of blood in the joint: _____ osis
7. inflammation of a sac of fluid near the joint: _____ itis
8. doctor who specializes in treatment of joint disorders: _____ logist
9. abnormal condition of a stiffened, immobile joint: _____ osis
10. suture of a tendon: ten _____

M **Select from the list of terms to name the abnormal conditions that follow.**

achondroplasia

ankylosing spondylitis

bunion

carpal tunnel syndrome

dislocation

ganglion cyst

gouty arthritis

Lyme disease

osteoarthritis

rheumatoid arthritis

systemic lupus erythematosus

tenosynovitis

1. an inherited condition in which the bones of the arms and the legs fail to grow normally because of a defect in cartilage and bone formation; type of dwarfism

   _____

2. degenerative joint disease; chronic inflammation of bones and joints

   _____

3. Inflammation in and around joints caused by the deposition of uric acid crystals.

   _____

4. chronic joint disease; inflamed and painful joints owing to autoimmune reaction against normal joint tissue, and synovial membranes become swollen and thickened

   _____

5. tick-borne bacterium causes this condition marked by arthritis, myalgia, malaise, and neurologic and cardiac symptoms _____
6. angulation and swelling of the first metatarsophalangeal joint (big toe) _____
7. cystic mass arising from a joint or tendon in the wrist _____
8. chronic, progressive arthritis with stiffening of joints, especially of the spine (vertebrae) _____
9. chronic inflammatory disease affecting not only the joints but also the skin (butterfly rash on the face), kidneys, heart, and lungs _____
10. inflammation of a tendon sheath _____
11. compression of the median nerve in the wrist as it passes through an area between a ligament, tendons, bones, and connective tissue _____
12. displacement of a bone from its joint _____

N **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. subluxation _____
2. arthrodesis _____

3. pyrexia

_____

4. podagra

_____

5. sciatica

_____

6. herniation of an intervertebral disc

_____

7. laminectomy

_____

8. sprain

_____

9. strain

_____

10. hyperuricemia

_____

11. fasciotomy

_____

O **Circle the boldface term that best fits the given definition.**

1. fibrous membrane separating and enveloping muscles: **(fascia, flexion)**

2. movement away from the midline of the body: **(abduction, adduction)**
3. connection of the muscle to a stationary bone: **(insertion, origin)** of the muscle
4. connection of the muscle to a bone that moves: **(insertion, origin)** of the muscle
5. muscle that is connected to internal organs; involuntary muscle: **(skeletal, visceral)** muscle
6. muscle that is connected to bones; voluntary muscle: **(skeletal, visceral)** muscle
7. pain of many muscles: **(myositis, polymyalgia)**
8. pertaining to heart muscle: **(myocardial, myasthenia)**
9. process of recording electricity within muscles: **(muscle biopsy, electromyography)**
10. increase in development (size) of an organ or tissue: **(hypertrophy, atrophy)**
11. destruction of skeletal muscle tissue: **(leiomyoma, rhabdomyolysis)**

P **Match the term for muscle action in Column I with its meaning in Column II. Write the letter of your answer in the space provided.**

COLUMN I		**COLUMN II**
1. extension	_____	A. movement away from the midline
2. rotation	_____	B. turning the palm downward
3. flexion	_____	C. turning the palm upward
4. adduction	_____	D. straightening of a flexed limb
5. supination	_____	E. downward movement of the foot
6. abduction	_____	F. circular movement around an axis
7. pronation	_____	G. bending a limb
8. dorsiflexion	_____	H. movement toward the midline
9. plantar flexion	_____	I. upward movement of the foot

Q **Give the meanings of the following abnormal conditions affecting muscles.**

1. leiomyosarcoma

   _____
   _____

2. rhabdomyoma

   _____
   _____

3. polymyositis

   _____
   _____

4. fibromyalgia

   _____
   _____

5. muscular dystrophy

   _____
   _____

6. myasthenia gravis

   _____
   _____

7. amyotrophic lateral sclerosis

   _____
   _____

8. sarcopenia

   _____
   _____

R **Match the term in Column I with its meaning in Column II. Write the letter of your answer in the space provided.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. antinuclear antibody test	_____	A. Radioactive substance is injected and traced in dense, hard connective tissue.
2. serum creatine kinase	_____	B. Chemical found in myoneural space.
3. uric acid test	_____	C. Test for presence of an antibody found in the serum of patients with rheumatoid arthritis.
4. rheumatoid factor test	_____	D. Substance necessary for proper bone development.
5. bone scan	_____	E. Visual examination of a joint.
6. muscle biopsy	_____	F. Test tells if patient has gouty arthritis.
7. arthroscopy	_____	G. Test tells if patient has systemic lupus erythematosus.
8. acetylcholine	_____	H. Removal of soft connective tissue for microscopic examination.
9. calcium	_____	I. Process of taking x-ray pictures of a joint.
10. arthrography	_____	J. Elevated blood levels of this enzyme are found in muscular disorders.

S **Circle the terms in boldface that best complete the meaning of the sentences.**

1. Selma, a 40-year-old secretary, had been complaining of wrist pain with tingling sensations in her fingers for months. Dr. Ayres diagnosed her condition as **(osteomyelitis, rheumatoid arthritis, carpal tunnel syndrome)**.
2. Bill was a marathon runner who developed compartment syndrome in his left lower leg (calf). He had severe pain, and his orthopedist recommended **(tenorrhaphy, arthroplasty, fasciotomy)** to cut through the fibrous connective tissue and relieve pressure. A skin graft was needed later to close the wound.
3. Sally was experiencing chronic muscle pain and stiffness in her shoulder, back, knees, and hips. Most of all, she was very tired all the time. Her doctor diagnosed her condition as **(myasthenia gravis, fibromyalgia, sarcopenia)** and prescribed medication for fatigue and pain plus physical therapy.

4. Paul had a skiing accident and tore ligaments in his knee. Dr. Miller recommended **(electromyography, hypertrophy, arthroscopic surgery)** to repair the ligaments.
5. For several months after her first pregnancy Elsie noticed a red rash on her face and cheeks. Her joints were giving her pain and she had a slight fever. Her ANA was elevated, and her doctor suspected that she had **(SLE, polymyositis, muscular dystrophy)**.
6. David injured his left knee while playing basketball. He was scheduled for arthroscopic repair of his **(ACL, SLE, TMJ)**. However, because of his height (6'7") and the length of the ligament, his **(rheumatologist, orthopedist, chiropractor)** decided to do "open" surgery.
7. James has significant lower back pain radiating down his left leg. This condition is called **(fibromyalgia, sciatica, talipes)**. MRI shows an intervertebral **(disc, bunion, exostosis)** impinging on spinal nerves at the **(L5–S1, C2–C3, T3–T5)** level. Bed rest produced no improvement. His orthopedist decided to perform a **(tenorrhaphy, microdiscectomy, bunionectomy)** to relieve pressure on his nerves.
8. Bruce spent 2 weeks hiking and vacationing on Nantucket Island. A week later he developed a "bull's eye" rash on his chest (from a tick bite), fever, muscle pain, and a swollen, tender right ankle. His physician ordered a blood test that revealed **(antigens, antibodies)** to a spirochete bacterium. The physician told Bruce he had contracted **(ankylosing spondylitis, polymyositis, Lyme disease)**.

9. Scott likes to eat rich food. Lately he has noticed pain and tenderness in his right toe, called **(talipes, podagra, rickets),** and also hard, lumpy deposits over his elbows. His doctor orders a serum uric acid test; the result is abnormally high, revealing **(hemarthrosis, hyperuricemia, hypercalcemia)**, consistent with a diagnosis of **(rheumatoid arthritis, gouty arthritis, osteoarthritis)**.

10. Sara, a 70-year-old widow, has persistent midback pain, and her **(CXR, ESR, EMG)** shows compression fractures of her **(scapula, femur, vertebrae)** and thinning of her bones. A bone density scan confirms the diagnosis of **(osteomyelitis, osteomalacia, osteoporosis)**, and her doctor prescribes calcium, vitamin D, and Fosamax.

T **Give meanings for the abbreviations in Column I. Then select the letter in Column II of the best description/definition for each.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. ROM _____	_____	A. Joint between the lower jawbone and a bone of the skull
2. NSAID _____	_____	B. Band of fibrous tissue connecting the femur and tibia in the knee
3. TMJ _____	_____	C. Bones of the spinal column in the chest region
4. EMG _____	_____	D. Test of strength of electrical transmission within muscle
5. ACL _____	_____	E. Autoimmune disease that affects joints, skin, and other body tissues
6. SLE _____	_____	F. Measurement in degrees of a circle assesses the extent a joint can be flexed or extended
7. C1 to C5 _____	_____	G. Bones of the spinal column in the neck region
8. T1 to T12 _____	_____	H. Drug used to treat joint diseases
9. THR _____	_____	I. Procedure to repair compound fracture
10. ORIF _____	_____	J. Arthroplasty

U **Match images A to F in Figure 15-41 with the following descriptions, and give a medical term for the abnormal condition.**

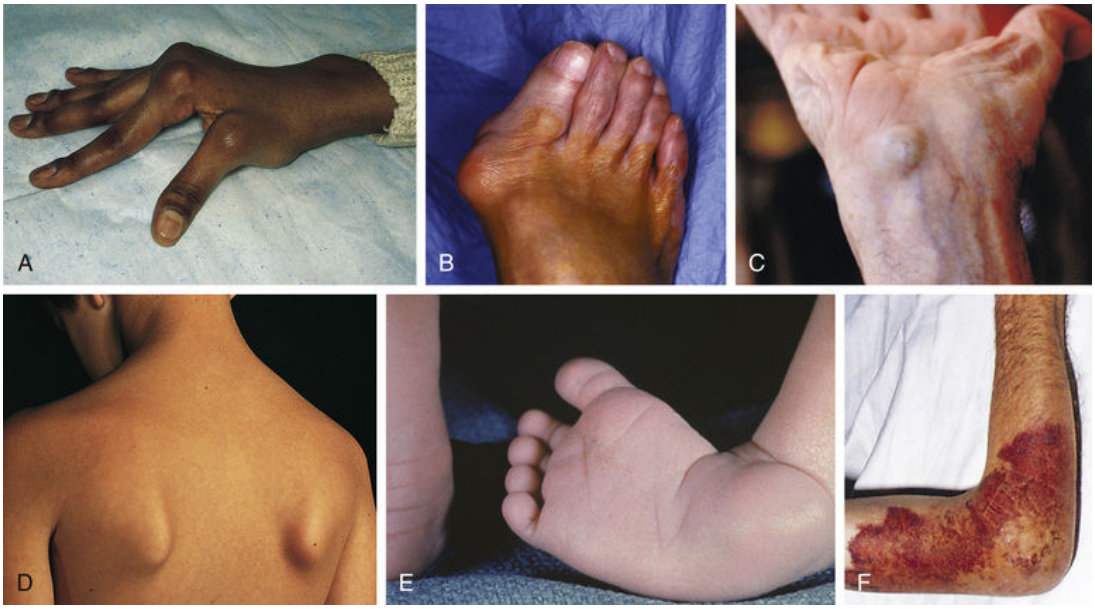


FIGURE 15-41 **A,** From Swartz MH: Textbook of Physical Diagnosis, History and Examination, 5th ed., Philadelphia, Saunders, 2006; **B** and **E,** from Canale ST, Beaty JH: Campbell's Operative Orthopaedics, 11th ed., St. Louis, Mosby, 2008; **C,** courtesy Dr. Norman M. Simon; **D,** from Zitelli BJ, Davis HW: Atlas of Pediatric Physical Diagnosis, 5th ed., St. Louis, Mosby, 2007; **F,** from Moll JM: Rheumatology, 2nd ed., London, Churchill Livingstone, 1997.

1. Children who are born with a condition of muscle deterioration and wasting have winged scapulae:

   _____

   _____

2. Children are born with this deformity of the talus:

   _____

3. This deformity is often the result of a chronic, inflammatory, autoimmune disorder that affects joints, leading to bony ankylosis and inflamed, thickened synovial membranes:

   _____

4. Bleeding disorders can lead to this accumulation of blood in and around a joint:

   _____

5. A bony bump that forms on a joint at the base of the big toe: _____
6. Fluid-filled cyst arising from joint capsules or tendons: _____

Answers to Exercises

A

1. osseous
2. osteocytes
3. cartilage
4. osteoblasts
5. osteoclasts
6. calcium, phosphorus
7. sesamoid
8. diaphysis
9. epiphyses
10. epiphyseal plate
11. cancellous or trabecular
12. fat
13. periosteum
14. compact (cortical) bone
15. haversian
16. articular cartilage
17. medullary cavity

18. orthopedist, osteopath
19. chiropractor
20. physiatrist

B

1. parietal bone
2. ethmoid bone
3. occipital bone
4. frontal bone
5. sphenoid bone
6. temporal bone
7. zygomatic bone
8. nasal bone
9. vomer
10. mandible
11. maxilla
12. lacrimal bones

C

1. neural canal
2. intervertebral disc
3. vertebral arch
4. vertebral body

D

1. cervical
2. thoracic
3. lumbar
4. sacral
5. coccygeal

E

1. scapula
2. humerus
3. sternum
4. femur
5. phalanges
6. metacarpals
7. ulna
8. radius
9. clavicle
10. carpals
11. vertebral column
12. patella
13. tibia
14. fibula
15. ilium, ischium, pubis
16. metatarsals

F

1. opening of the occipital bone through which the spinal cord passes
2. heel bone; largest of the tarsal bones in the hind foot
3. lateral extension of the scapula
4. lowest portion of the sternum
5. portion of the vertebral arch
6. the bulge on either side of the ankle joint; the lower end of the fibula is the lateral malleolus, and the lower end of the tibia is the medial malleolus
7. depression in the pelvis into which the femur fits
8. area of convergence of the two pubis bones, at the midline
9. bony process at the proximal end of the ulna; the point of the elbow joint
10. soft spot between the bones of the skull in an infant
11. round process on the temporal bone behind the ear
12. pole-like process projecting downward from the temporal bone

G

1. formation of bone; osteogenesis imperfecta is known as brittle bone disease
2. excessive calcium in the blood
3. abnormal condition of the vertebrae; degenerative changes in the spine
4. pertaining to the epiphysis

5. removal of calcium from bones
6. formation of bone
7. inflammation of bone; osteitis deformans (Paget disease) causes deformed bones such as an enlarged skull
8. pertaining to the ribs and clavicle

H

1. scapular
2. craniotome
3. humeral
4. infrapatellar or subpatellar
5. chondromalacia
6. phalangeal
7. metacarpectomy
8. tibial
9. calcaneal
10. osteodystrophy
11. laminectomy
12. sacroiliac

I

1. myelopoiesis
2. talipes (equinovarus)
3. kyphosis
4. hypercalcemia

5. exostoses
6. osteogenesis imperfecta
7. scoliosis
8. lordosis
9. spondylolisthesis
10. osteotome

J

1. increased porosity in bone; decrease in bone density
2. inflammation (infection) of bone and bone marrow
3. cancerous tumor of bone; osteoblasts multiply at the ends of long bones
4. crackling sensation as worn out bones move against each other
5. softening of bones; rickets in children due to loss of calcium in bones
6. collection of pus
7. deficiency of bone; precursor of osteoporosis
8. malignant tumor of bone in children, often involving the entire shaft of a long bone
9. malignant tumor that has spread to bone from the breast, lung, thyroid, kidney, or prostate gland
10. break in bone *with* wound in skin
11. break in bone *without* wound in skin

12. bone is put in proper place after surgical incision of the skin

K

1. suture joint; a synovial joint is a freely movable joint
2. tendon
3. articulation
4. ligament
5. synovial fluid
6. synovial membrane
7. bursa
8. articular cartilage
9. arthroplasty; joint replacement is an example
10. periarthritis

L

1. tendinosis
2. chondroma
3. chondrosarcoma
4. arthrotomy
5. chondromalacia
6. hemarthrosis
7. bursitis
8. rheumatologist
9. ankylosis

10. tenorrhaphy

M

1. achondroplasia
2. osteoarthritis
3. gouty arthritis
4. rheumatoid arthritis
5. Lyme disease
6. bunion or hallux valgus
7. ganglion cyst
8. ankylosing spondylitis
9. systemic lupus erythematosus
10. tenosynovitis
11. carpal tunnel syndrome
12. dislocation

N

1. partial or incomplete displacement of a bone from the joint
2. surgical fixation of a joint (binding it together by fusing the joint surfaces)
3. fever; increase in body temperature
4. pain in a big toe from gouty arthritis
5. pain radiating from the back to the leg (along the sciatic nerve); most commonly caused by a protruding intervertebral disc

6. protrusion of a disc into the neural canal or the spinal nerves
7. removal of a portion of the vertebral arch (lamina) to relieve pressure from a protruding intervertebral disc
8. trauma to a joint with pain, swelling, and injury to ligaments
9. overstretching of a muscle
10. high levels of uric acid in the bloodstream; present in gouty arthritis
11. incision of fascia

O

1. fascia
2. abduction
3. origin of the muscle
4. insertion of the muscle
5. visceral muscle
6. skeletal muscle
7. polymyalgia
8. myocardial
9. electromyography
10. hypertrophy
11. rhabdomyolysis

P

1. D
2. F
3. G
4. H
5. C
6. A
7. B
8. I
9. E

Q

1. malignant tumor of smooth (involuntary, visceral) muscle
2. benign tumor of striated (voluntary, skeletal) muscle
3. inflammation of many muscles; polymyositis rheumatica is a chronic inflammatory condition causing muscle weakness and pain
4. pain of muscle and fibrous tissue (especially of the back); also called fibrositis
5. group of inherited muscular diseases marked by progressive weakness and degeneration of muscles without nerve involvement
6. loss of strength of muscles (often with paralysis) because of a defect at the connection between the nerve and the muscle cell
7. muscles degenerate (paralysis occurs) owing to degeneration of nerves in the spinal cord and lower region

of the brain; Lou Gehrig disease

8. deficiency of flesh (muscle mass)

R

1. G
2. J
3. F
4. C
5. A
6. H
7. E
8. B
9. D
10. I

S

1. carpal tunnel syndrome
2. fasciotomy
3. fibromyalgia
4. arthroscopic surgery
5. SLE
6. ACL; orthopedist
7. sciatica; disc; L5–S1; microdiscectomy
8. antibodies; Lyme disease

9. podagra; hyperuricemia; gouty arthritis
10. CXR; vertebrae; osteoporosis

T

1. range of motion: F
2. nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug: H
3. temporomandibular joint: A
4. electromyography: D
5. anterior cruciate ligament: B
6. systemic lupus erythematosus: E
7. first cervical vertebra to fifth cervical vertebra: G
8. first thoracic vertebra to twelfth thoracic vertebra: C
9. total hip replacement: J
10. open reduction, internal fixation: I

U

1. D: winged scapulae in muscular dystrophy
2. E: clubfoot—talipes
3. A: rheumatoid arthritis
4. F: hemarthrosis
5. B: bunion (hallux valgus)
6. C: ganglion cyst

Answers to Practical Applications

Operating Room Schedule

1. D
2. F
3. G
4. B
5. A
6. C
7. H
8. E

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

Terms Related to Bones

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
acetabular	ah-seh-TAB-u-lar
acetabulum	ah-seh-TAB-u-lum
acromion	ak-RO-me-on
articular cartilage	ar-TIK-u-lar KAR-tih-laj
bone	bone
bone depression	bone de-PREH-shun
bone process	bone PROS-es
calcaneal	kal-KA-ne-al
calcaneus	kal-KA-ne-us
calcium	KAL-se-um
cancellous bone	KAN-sel-us bone
carpals	KAR-palz
cartilage	KAR-tih-lij
cervical vertebrae	SER-vih-kul VER-teh-bray
chondrocostal	kon-dro-KOS-tal
clavicle	KLAV-ih-kul
coccyx	KOK-siks
collagen	KOL-ah-jen
compact bone	KOM-pakt bone
cranial bones	KRA-ne-al bones
craniotome	KRA-ne-o-tohm
craniotomy	kra-ne-OT-o-me
crepitus	KREP-ih-tus
decalcification	de-kal-sif-ih-KA-shun
diaphysis	di-AF-ih-sis
disc	disc
epiphyseal plate	ep-ih-FIZ-e-al plate
epiphysis	eh-PIF-ih-sis
ethmoid bone	ETH-moyd bone
Ewing sarcoma	U-wing sar-KO-mah
exostosis	ek-sos-TO-sis
facial bones	FA-shal bones
femoral	FEM-or-al
femur	FE-mur
fibula	FIB-u-lah
fibular	FIB-u-lar
fontanelle	fon-tan-EL
foramen magnum	for-A-men MAG-num
fracture	FRAK-shur
frontal bone	FRON-tal bone

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
haversian canals	hah-VER-zhan kah-NALZ
humeral	HU-mer-al
humerus	HU-mer-us
hypercalcemia	hi-per-kal-SE-me-ah
iliac	IL-e-ak
ilium	IL-e-um
infrapatellar	in-frah-pah-TEL-er
ischial	ISH-e-al
ischium	ISH-e-um
kyphosis	ki-FO-sis
lacrimal bones	LA-krim-al bones
lamina	LAM-in-ah
laminectomy	lam-in-EK-to-me
lordosis	lor-DO-sis
lumbar vertebrae	LUM-bar VER-teh-bray
lumbosacral	lum-bo-SA-kral
malleolar	mah-LE-o-lar
malleolus	mah-LE-o-lus
mandible	MAN-dib-ul
mandibular	man-DIB-u-lar
manubrium	mah-NU-bre-um
mastoid process	MAS-toyd PROS-es
maxilla	max-SIL-ah
maxillary	max-ih-LAIR-e
medullary cavity	MED-u-lair-e KAV-ih-te
metacarpals	met-ah-KAR-palz
metacarpectomy	met-ah-kar-PEK-to-me
metaphysis	meh-TAH-fih-sis
metatarsalgia	met-ah-tar-SAL-jah
metatarsals	met-ah-TAR-salz
myelopoiesis	mi-eh-lo-poy-E-sis
nasal bones	NA-zal bones
occipital bone	ok-SIP-ih-tal bone
olecranal	o-LEK-ran-al
olecranon	o-LEK-ran-on
orthopedics	or-tho-PE-diks
osseous tissue	OS-e-us TIH-shu
ossification	os-if-ih-KA-shun
osteitis	os-te-I-tis
osteoblast	OS-te-o-blast

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
osteoclast	OS-te-o-klast
osteodystrophy	os-te-o-DIS-tro-fe
osteogenesis imperfecta	os-te-o-JEN-eh-sis im-per-FEK-tah
osteogenic sarcoma	os-te-o-JEN-ik sar-KO-mah
osteomalacia	os-te-o-mah-LA-shah
osteomyelitis	os-te-o-mi-eh-LI-tis
osteopenia	os-te-o-PE-ne-ah
osteoporosis	os-te-o-por-O-sis
osteotome	OS-te-o-tome
parietal bone	pah-RI-eh-tal bone
patella	pah-TEL-ah
pelvic	PEL-vik
periosteum	peh-re-OS-te-um
phalangeal	fah-lan-JE-al
phalanges	fah-LAN-jeez
phosphorus	FOS-fo-rus
physiatrist	fih-ZI-ah-trist
pubic	PU-bik
pubic symphysis	PU-bik SIM-fih-sis
pubis	PU-bis
radial	RA-de-al
radius	RA-de-us
red bone marrow	red bone MAH-row
reduction	reh-DUK-shun
ribs	ribz
sacral vertebrae	SA-kral VER-teh-bray
scapula	SKAP-u-lah
scapular	SKAP-u-lar
scoliosis	sko-le-O-sis
sella turcica	SEL-ah TUR-sik-ah
sinus	SI-nus
sphenoid bone	SFEH-noyd bone
spondylolisthesis	spon-dih-lo-lis-THE-sis
spondylosis	spon-dih-LO-sis
sternum	STER-num
styloid process	STI-loyd PROS-es
subcostal	sub-KOS-tal
supraclavicular	su-prah-klah-VIK-u-lar
suture	SU-chur
talipes	TAL-ih-peez

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
tarsals	TAR-salz
tarsectomy	tar-SEK-to-me
temporal bone	TEM-por-al bone
temporomandibular joint	tem-por-o-man-DIB-u-lar joynt
thoracic vertebrae	thor-AH-sik VER-teh-bray
tibia	TIB-e-ah
tibial	TIB-e-al
trabeculae	trah-BEK-u-le
ulna	UL-nah
ulnar	UL-nar
vertebra; *pl*. vertebrae	VER-teh-brah; VER-teh-bray
vertebroplasty	ver-TE-bro-plas-te
vomer	VO-mer
xiphoid process	ZIF-oyd PROS-es
yellow bone marrow	YEL-o bone MAH-ro
zygomatic bones	zi-go-MAT-ik bones

Terms Related to Joints and Muscles

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
abduction	ab-DUK-shun
achondroplasia	a-kon-dro-PLA-ze-ah
adduction	ah-DUK-shun
amyotrophic lateral sclerosis	a-mi-o-TROP-ik LAT-er-al skleh-RO-sis
ankylosing spondylitis	ang-kih-LO-sing spon-dih-LI-tis
ankylosis	ang-kih-LO-sis
arthrodesis	ar-thro-DE-sis
arthrotomy	ar-THROT-o-me
articular cartilage	ar-TIK-u-lar KAR-tih-laj
articulation	ar-tik-u-LA-shun
atrophy	AT-ro-fe
bunion	BUN-yun
bursa; pl. bursae	BUR-sah; BUR-se
bursitis	bur-SI-tis
carpal tunnel syndrome	KAR-pal TUN-nel SIN-drohm
chondromalacia	kon-dro-mah-LA-shah
chondrosarcoma	kon-dro-sar-KO-mah
dislocation	dis-lo-KA-shun
dorsiflexion	dor-se-FLEK-shun
extension	ek-STEN-shun
fascia	FASH-e-ah
fascioctomy	fash-e-OT-to-me
fibromyalgia	fi-bro-mi-AL-jah
flexion	FLEK-shun
ganglion cyst	GANG-le-on sist
gouty arthritis	GOW-te ar-THRI-tis
hemarthrosis	hem-ar-THRO-sis
herniation of a intervertebral disc	her-ne-A-shun of a in-ter-ver-TE-bral disc
hydrarthrosis	hi-drar-THRO-sis
hypertrophy	hi-PER-tro-fe
hyperuricemia	hi-per-u-reh-SE-me-ah
leiomyoma	li-o-mi-O-mah
leiomyosarcoma	li-o-mi-o-sar-KO-mah
ligament	LIG-ah-ment
ligamentous	lig-ah-MEN-tus
Lyme disease	lime dih-ZEEZ
meniscus	meh-NIS-kus
muscular dystrophy	MUS-ku-lar DIS-tro-fe
myalgia	mi-AL-jah

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
myasthenia gravis	mi-as-THE-ne-ah GRAV-is
myopathy	mi-OP-ah-the
myositis	mi-o-SI-tis
osteoarthritis	os-te-o-ar-THRI-tis
plantar flexion	PLAN-tar FLEK-shun
podagra	po-DAG-rah
polyarthritis	pol-e-arth-RI-tis
polymyalgia	pol-e-mi-AL-jah
polymyositis	pol-e-mi-o-SI-tis
pronation	pro-NA-shun
pyrexia	pi-REK-se-ah
rhabdomyolysis	rab-do-mi-OL-ah-sis
rhabdomyoma	rab-do-mi-O-mah
rhabdomyosarcoma	rab-do-mi-o-sar-KO-mah
rheumatoid arthritis	RU-mat-oyd ar-THRI-tis
rheumatologist	ru-mat-OL-o-jist
rotation	ro-TA-shun
sarcopenia	sar-ko-PE-ne-ah
spinal stenosis	SPI-nal steh-NO-sis
sprain	sprayn
strain	strayn
striated muscle	STRI-a-ted MUS-el
subluxation	sub-luk-SA-shun
supination	su-pih-NA-shun
suture joint	SU-chur joint
synovial cavity	sih-NO-ve-al KAV-ih-te
synovial fluid	sih-NO-ve-al FLOO-id
synovial joint	sih-NO-ve-al joynt
synovial membrane	sih-NO-ve-al MEM-brayn
synovitis	sin-o-VI-tis
systemic lupus erythematosus	sis-TEM-ik LU-pus eh-rith-eh-mah-TO-sus
tendinosis	ten-dih-NO-sis
tendon	TEN-dun
tenorrhaphy	ten-OR-ah-fe
tenosynovitis	ten-o-sih-no-VI-tis
visceral muscle	VIS-er-al MUS-el

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
antinuclear antibody test	an-te-NU-kle-ar AN-tih-bod-e test
arthrocentesis	ar-thro-sen-TE-sis
arthrography	ar-THROG-rah-fe
arthroplasty	ar-thro-PLAS-te
arthroscopy	ar-THROS-ko-pe
bone density test	bone DEN-sih-te test
bone scan	bone skan
discography	disc-OG-rah-fe
electromyography	eh-lek-tro-mi-OG-rah-fe
erythrocyte sedimentation rate	eh-RITH-ro-site sed-ih-men-TA-shun rate
muscle biopsy	MUS-el BI-op-se
rheumatoid factor test	RU-mat-oyd FAK-tor test
serum calcium	SER-um KAL-se-um test
serum creatine kinase	SER-um KRE-ah-tine KI-nays
uric acid test	U-rik AS-id test

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of the word parts in the spaces provided. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
acetabul/o	_____
ankyl/o	_____
arthr/o	_____
articul/o	_____
burs/o	_____
calc/o	_____
calcane/o	_____
calci/o	_____
carp/o	_____
cervic/o	_____
chondr/o	_____
clavicul/o	_____
coccyg/o	_____
cost/o	_____
crani/o	_____
fasci/o	_____
femor/o	_____
fibr/o	_____
fibul/o	_____
humer/o	_____
ili/o	_____
ischi/o	_____
kyph/o	_____
lamin/o	_____
leiomy/o	_____
ligament/o	_____
lord/o	_____
lumb/o	_____
malleol/o	_____
mandibul/o	_____
maxill/o	_____
metacarp/o	_____
metatars/o	_____
my/o	_____
myel/o	_____
myocardi/o	_____
myos/o	_____
olecran/o	_____
orth/o	_____
oste/o	_____

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
patell/o	_____
ped/o	_____
pelv/o	_____
phalang/o	_____
plant/o	_____
pub/o	_____
radi/o	_____
rhabdomy/o	_____
rheumat/o	_____
sacr/o	_____
sarc/o	_____
scapul/o	_____
scoli/o	_____
spondyl/o	_____
stern/o	_____
synov/o	_____
tars/o	_____
ten/o	_____
tendin/o	_____
thorac/o	_____
tibi/o	_____
uln/o	_____
vertebr/o	_____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-algia	_____
-asthenia	_____
-blast	_____
-clast	_____
-desis	_____
-emia	_____
-listhesis	_____
-malacia	_____
-penia	_____
-physis	_____
-plasty	_____
-porosis	_____
-stenosis	_____
-tome	_____
-trophy	_____

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING
a-, an-	_____
ab-	_____
ad-	_____
dia-	_____
dorsi-	_____
epi-	_____
exo-	_____
hyper-	_____
infra-	_____
meta-	_____
peri-	_____
poly-	_____
sub-	_____
supra-	_____
sym-	_____

CHAPTER 16

Skin

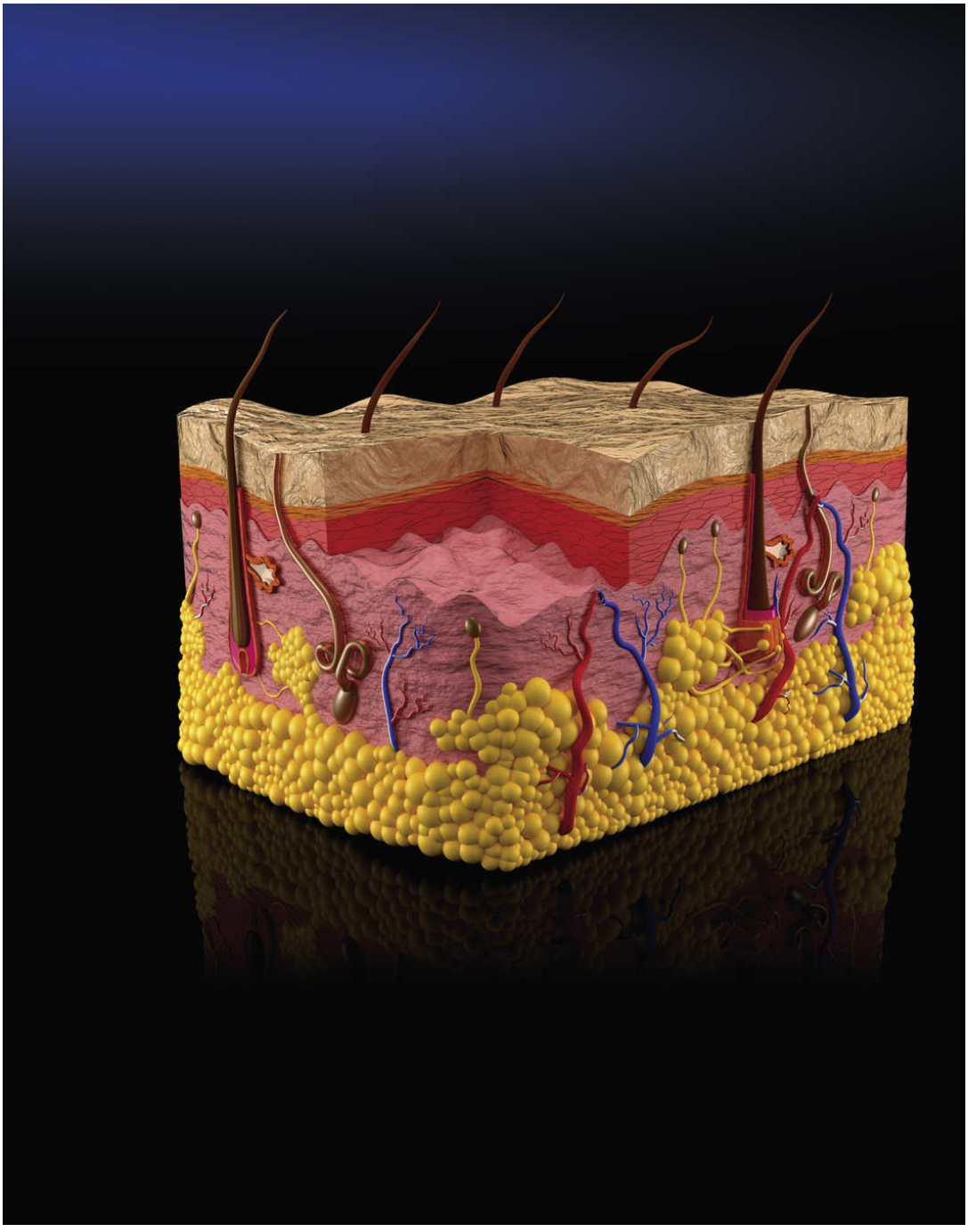
CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 614
Anatomy of the Skin 614
Accessory Structures of the Skin 616
Vocabulary 619
Terminology 620
Pathology 624
Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures 633
Abbreviations 634
Practical Applications 635
In Person: Metastatic Melanoma 636
Exercises 637
Answers to Exercises 643
Pronunciation of Terms 645
Review Sheet 647

CHAPTER GOALS

- Name the layers of the skin and the accessory structures associated with the skin.
- Build medical words using the combining forms that are related to the specialty of dermatology.
- Identify lesions, signs and symptoms, and pathologic conditions that relate to the skin.

- Describe laboratory tests and clinical procedures that pertain to the skin, and recognize relevant abbreviations.
- Apply your new knowledge to understanding medical terms in their proper contexts, such as medical reports and records.



Introduction

The skin and its accessory structures (hair, nails, and glands) make up the **integumentary system** of the body. Integument means covering, and the skin (weighing 8 to 10 pounds and extending over an area of 22 square feet in an

average adult) is the outer covering for the body. It is, however, more than a simple body covering. This complex system of specialized tissues contains glands that secrete several types of fluids, nerves that carry impulses, and blood vessels that aid in the regulation of the body temperature.

The skin has many important functions:

First, as a protective membrane over the entire body, the skin guards the deeper tissues of the body against excessive loss of water, salts, and heat and against invasion of pathogens and their toxins. Specialized cells (Langerhans cells) react to the presence of antigens and have an immune function.

Second, the skin contains two types of glands that produce important secretions. These glands in the skin are the **sebaceous glands** and the **sweat glands.** Sebaceous glands produce **sebum,** an oily secretion, and sweat glands produce **sweat,** a watery secretion. Sebum and sweat pass to the outer edges of the skin through ducts and leave the skin through pores (openings). Sebum lubricates the surface of the skin, and sweat cools the body as it evaporates from the skin surface.

Third, nerve fibers under the skin are receptors for sensations such as pain, temperature, pressure, and touch. Thus, the body's adjustment to the environment depends on sensory messages relayed to the brain and spinal cord by sensitive nerve endings in the skin.

Fourth, different tissues in the skin maintain body temperature (thermoregulation). Nerve fibers coordinate thermoregulation by carrying messages to the skin from heat centers in the brain that are sensitive to increases and decreases in body temperature. Impulses from these fibers cause blood vessels to dilate to bring blood to the surface and cause sweat glands to produce the watery secretion that carries heat away.

Anatomy of the Skin

Figure 16-1A shows three layers of the skin. Label them from the outer surface inward:

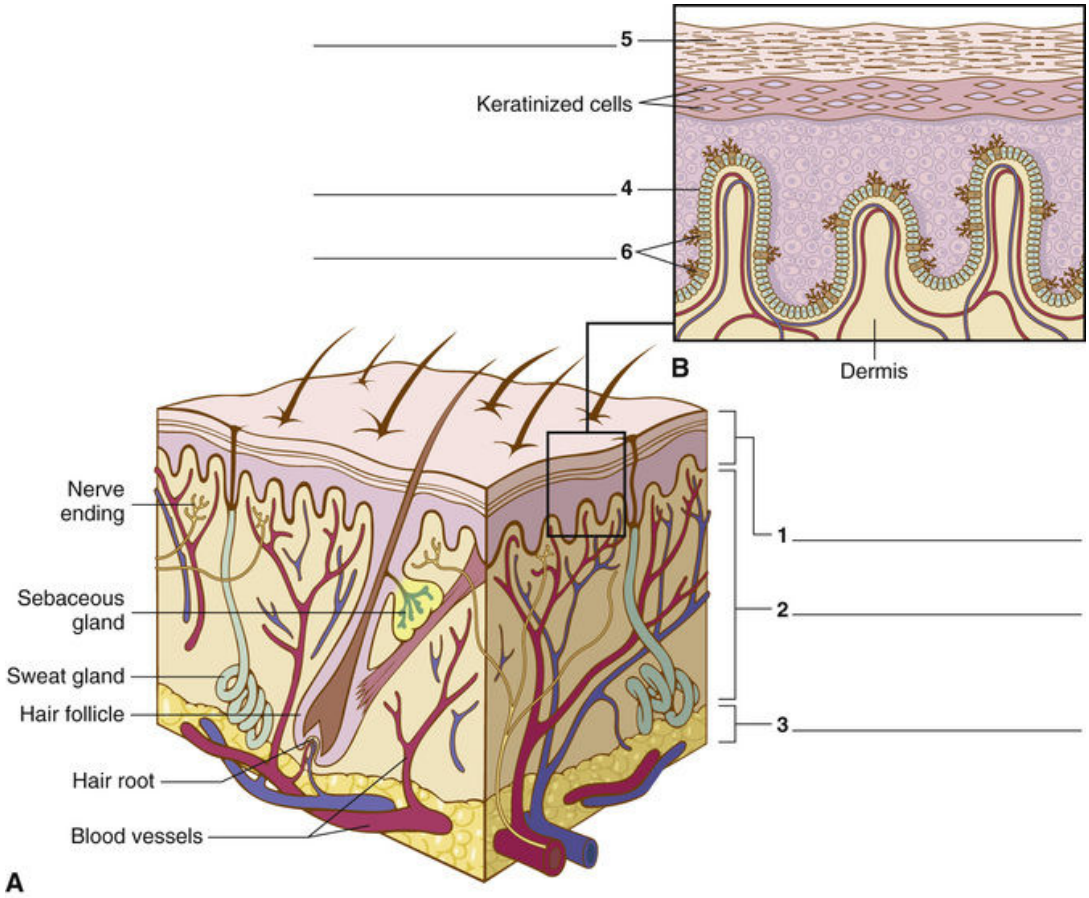


FIGURE 16-1 Skin. A, Three layers of the skin. B, Epidermis.

Epidermis [1]—a thin, cellular membrane layer; containing keratin
Dermis [2]—dense, fibrous, connective tissue layer; containing collagen
Subcutaneous layer [3]—thick, fat-containing tissue

Epidermis

The epidermis is the outermost totally cellular layer of the skin. It is composed of **squamous epithelium.** Epithelium is the covering of both the internal and the external surfaces of the body. Squamous epithelial cells are flat and scale-like. In the outer layer of the skin, these cells are arranged in several layers **(strata)** to form **stratified squamous epithelium.**

The epidermis lacks blood vessels, lymphatic vessels, and connective tissue (elastic fibers, cartilage, fat) and is therefore dependent on the deeper dermis layer and its rich network of capillaries for nourishment. In fact, oxygen and nutrients seep out of the capillaries in the dermis, pass through tissue fluid, and supply nourishment to the lower layers of the epidermis.

Figure 16-1B illustrates the multilayered cells of the epidermis. The deepest layer is called the **basal layer** [4]. The cells in the basal layer are constantly growing and multiplying and are the source of all the other cells in the epidermis. As the basal layer cells divide, they are pushed upward and away from the blood supply of the dermal layer by a steady stream of younger cells. In their movement toward the most superficial layer of the epidermis, called the **stratum corneum** [5], the cells flatten, shrink, lose their nuclei, and die, becoming filled with a hard protein material called **keratin.** The cells are then called keratinocytes, reflecting their composition of keratin. Finally, within 3 to 4 weeks after beginning as a basal cell in the deepest part of the epidermis, the keratinized cell is sloughed off from the surface of the skin. The epidermis is thus constantly renewing itself, with cells dying at the same rate at which they are replaced. This process slows with age.

The basal layer of the epidermis contains special cells called **melanocytes** [6]. Melanocytes contain a pigment called **melanin** that is transferred to other epidermal cells and gives color to the skin. The number of melanocytes in all human races is the same, but the amount of melanin within each cell accounts for the color differences among the races. Individuals with darker skin possess more melanin within the melanocytes, not a greater number of melanocytes. Individuals who are incapable of forming melanin have a condition called **albinism.** Skin and hair are white. In albinism, eye color varies, ranging from red to blue to brown, depending on the amount of melanin present in the iris (pigmented portion of the eye). Occulocutaneous albinism affects eyes, skin, and hair, whereas ocular albinism affects the eyes only.

Types of Melanin

Eumelanin and Pheomelanin

Eumelanin (eu- = true) is more common and is a brown-black pigment. **Pheomelanin** (pheo- = dusky) is a red-yellow pigment. People with darker skin have more eumelanin, whereas people with lighter skin have more pheomelanin. Pheomelanin doesn't protect the skin from damaging ultraviolet rays and makes lighter-skinned people, and especially redheads, more susceptible to skin cancer.

Melanin production increases with exposure to strong ultraviolet light, and this creates a suntan, which is a protective response. When the melanin cannot absorb all of the ultraviolet rays, the skin becomes sunburned and inflamed (redness, swelling, and pain). Over a period of years, excessive exposure to sun tends to cause wrinkles, permanent pigmentary changes, and even cancer of the

skin. Because dark-skinned people have more melanin, they acquire fewer wrinkles and they are less likely to develop the types of skin cancer that are associated with ultraviolet light exposure.

Dermis

The dermis, directly below the epidermis, is composed of blood vessels and lymph and nerve fibers, as well as the accessory organs of the skin, which are the hair follicles, sweat glands, and sebaceous glands. To support the elaborate system of nerves, vessels, and glands, the dermis contains connective tissue cells and fibers that account for the extensibility and elasticity of the skin.

The dermis is composed of interwoven **elastin** (protein that is elastic and helps skin to return to its original position when pinched or poked) and **collagen** fibers. Collagen (**colla** = glue) is a fibrous protein material found in bone, cartilage, tendons, and ligaments, as well as in the skin. It is tough and resistant but also flexible. In the infant, collagen is loose and delicate; it becomes harder as the body ages. During pregnancy, overstretching of the skin with weight gain may break the elastin fibers, resulting in linear markings called **striae** ("stretch marks") on the woman's abdomen and elsewhere. Collagen fibers support and protect the blood and nerve networks that pass through the dermis. Collagen diseases affect connective tissues of the body. An example of a connective tissue collagen disorder is scleroderma.

Subcutaneous Layer

The subcutaneous layer (epidermis and dermis are the cutaneous layers) specializes in the formation of fat. **Adipocytes** (fat cells) are predominant in the subcutaneous layer, and they manufacture and store large quantities of fat. Fat deposition varies in different areas of the body and among individual people. Functionally, this layer of the skin is important in protection of the deeper tissues of the body, as a heat insulator, and for energy storage.

Accessory Structures of the Skin

Hair

A hair fiber is composed of a tightly fused meshwork of cells filled with the hard protein called **keratin.** Hair growth is similar to the growth of the epidermal layer of the skin. Deep-lying cells in the hair root (Figure 16-2) produce keratinized cells that move upward through **hair follicles** (sacs within which each hair fiber grows). Melanocytes (see Figure 16-2) are located at the root of the hair follicle, and they donate the melanin pigment to the cells of the hair fiber.

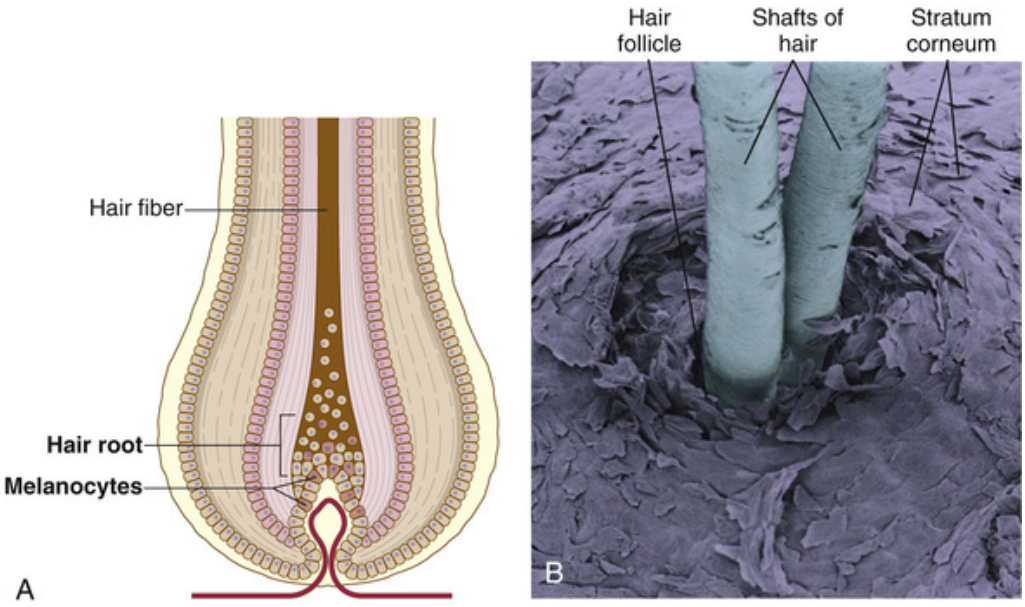


FIGURE 16-2 **A,** Enlargement of a **hair follicle. B,** Scanning electron micrograph of **hair shafts** (visible parts of hair) extending from their hair follicles.

Of the 5 million hairs on the body, about 100,000 are on the head. They grow about ½ inch (1.3 cm) per month. Cutting the hair has no effect on its rate of growth.

What causes hair color?

Concentration of eumelanin and pheomelanin cause the variations in hair color. For example:

- Black hair = high levels of black eumelanin
- Brown hair = high levels of brown eumelanin
- Blond hair = low levels of black eumelanin
- Red hair = high levels of pheomelanin
- Gray hair = low concentration of eumelanin and pheomelanin

Nails

Nails are hard keratin plates covering the dorsal surface of the last bone of each toe and finger. They are composed of keratinocytes that are cemented together tightly and can extend indefinitely unless cut or broken. A nail grows in thickness and length as a result of division of cells in the region of the nail matrix, which is at the base (proximal portion) of the nail plate.

Fingernails grow about 1 mm per week, which means that they can regrow in 3 to 5 months. Toenails grow more slowly than fingernails; it takes approximately 12 months for toenails to be replaced completely.

The **lunula** is a semilunar (half-moon–shaped) whitish region at the base of the nail plate. It generally can be seen in the thumbnail of most people and is evident to varying degrees in other fingernails. Air mixed in with keratin and cells rich in nuclei give the lunula its whitish color. The **cuticle,** a narrow band of epidermis (layer of keratin), is at the base and sides of the nail plate. The **paronychium** is the soft tissue surrounding the nail border. Figure 16-3A illustrates the anatomic structure of a nail.

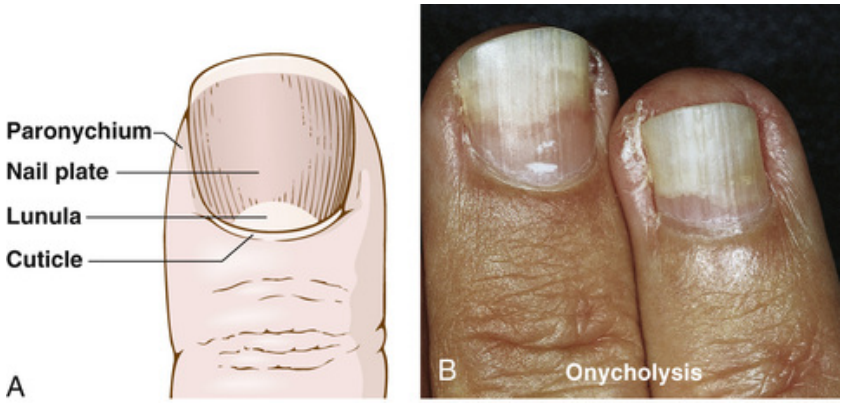


FIGURE 16-3 A, Anatomic structure of a nail. B, Onycholysis. Infection or trauma to the nail may be the cause of the detachment of the nail plate from the nail bed.

Nail growth and appearance commonly alter during systemic disease. For example, grooves in nails may occur with high fevers and serious illness, and spoon nails (flattening of the nail plate) develop in iron deficiency anemia. **Onycholysis** (**onych/o** = nail) is the loosening of the nail plate with separation from the nail bed (Figure 16-3B). It may occur with infection of the nail and is often seen in psoriasis.

Glands

Sebaceous Glands

Sebaceous glands are located in the dermal layer of the skin over the entire body, with the exception of the palms (hands), soles (feet), and lips. They secrete an oily substance called **sebum.** Sebum, containing lipids, lubricates the skin and minimizes water loss. Sebaceous glands are closely associated with hair follicles, and their ducts open into the hair follicle through which the sebum is released. Figure 16-4 shows the relationship of the sebaceous gland to

the hair follicle. The sebaceous glands are influenced by sex hormones, which cause them to hypertrophy at puberty and atrophy in old age. Increased production of sebum during puberty contributes to blackhead (comedo) formation and acne in some people.

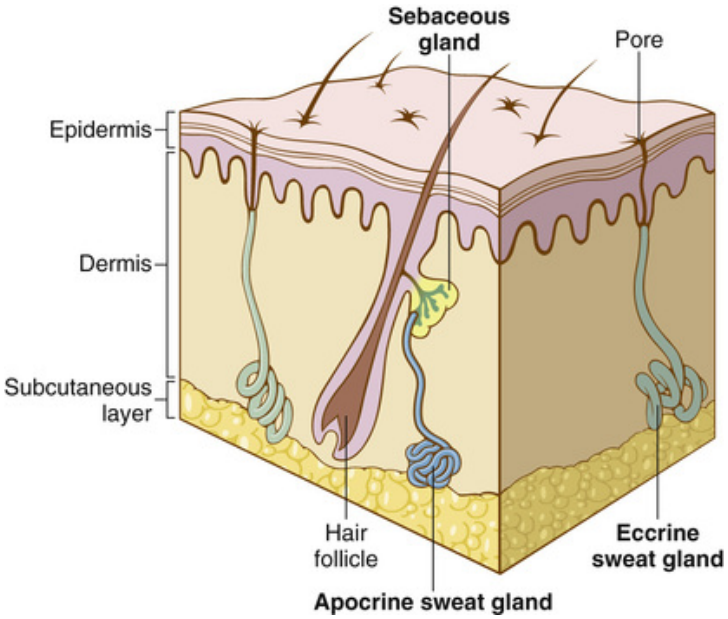


FIGURE 16-4 **Sebaceous gland, eccrine sweat gland,** and **apocrine sweat gland.**

Sweat Glands

Sweat glands (the most common type are **eccrine sweat glands**) are tiny, coiled glands found on almost all body surfaces (about 2 million in the body). They are most numerous in the palm of the hand (3000 glands per square inch) and in the sole of the foot. As illustrated in Figure 16-4, the coiled eccrine sweat gland originates deep in the dermis and straightens out to extend up through the epidermis. The tiny opening on the surface is a **pore.**

Sweat, or perspiration, is almost pure water, with dissolved materials such as salt making up less than 1% of the total composition. It is colorless and odorless. The odor produced when sweat accumulates on the skin is caused by the action of bacteria on the sweat.

Sweat cools the body as it evaporates into the air. Perspiration is controlled by the sympathetic nervous system, whose nerve fibers are activated by the heart regulatory center in the hypothalamic region of the brain, which stimulates sweating.

A special variety of sweat gland, active only from puberty onward and larger than the ordinary kind, is concentrated in a few areas of the body near the reproductive organs and in the armpits. These glands **(apocrine sweat glands)** secrete an odorless sweat, containing substances easily broken down by bacteria on the skin. The bacterial waste products produce a characteristic human body odor. The milk-producing mammary gland is another type of apocrine gland; it secretes milk after the birth of a child.

Vocabulary

This list reviews many of the new terms introduced in the text. Short definitions reinforce your understanding of the terms. Refer to the Pronunciation of Terms on page 645 for help with unfamiliar or difficult words.

adipocyte	Fat cell.
albinism	Condition of skin deficient in pigment (melanin).
apocrine sweat gland	One of the large dermal exocrine glands located in the axilla and genital areas. It secretes sweat that, in action with bacteria, is responsible for human body odor.
basal layer	Deepest region of the epidermis; it gives rise to all the epidermal cells.
collagen	Structural protein found in the skin and connective tissue.
cuticle	Band of epidermis at the base and sides of the nail plate.
dermis	Middle layer of the skin.
eccrine sweat gland	Most numerous sweat-producing exocrine gland in the skin.
epidermis	Outermost layer of the skin.
epithelium	Layer of skin cells forming the outer and inner surfaces of the body.
hair follicle	Sac within which each hair grows.
integumentary system	The skin and its accessory structures such as hair and nails.
keratin	Hard protein material found in the epidermis, hair, and nails. Keratin means horn and commonly is found in the horns of animals.
lunula	Half-moon–shaped, whitish area at the base of a nail.
melanin	Skin pigment. It is formed by melanocytes in the epidermis. **Eumelanin** is brown-black pigment, whereas **pheomelanin** is red-yellow.
paronychium	Soft tissue surrounding the nail border.
pore	Tiny opening on the surface of the skin.
sebaceous gland	Oil-secreting gland in the dermis that is associated with hair follicles.
sebum	Oily substance secreted by sebaceous glands.
squamous epithelium	Flat, scale-like cells composing the epidermis.
stratified	Arranged in layers.
stratum (*plural*: strata)	A layer (of cells).
stratum corneum	Outermost layer of the epidermis, which consists of flattened, keratinized cells.
subcutaneous layer	Innermost layer of the skin, containing fat tissue.

Terminology

Write the meanings of the medical terms in the spaces provided.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
adip/o	fat (*see* **lip/o**)	adipose	
albin/o	white	albinism *See Figure 16-5A. Table 16-1 lists combining forms for colors and examples of terms using those combining forms.*	
caus/o	burn, burning	causalgia *Intensely unpleasant burning sensation in skin and muscles when there is damage to nerves.*	
cauter/o	heat, burn	electrocautery *An instrument containing a needle or blade used during surgery to burn through tissue by means of an electrical current. Electrocauterization is very effective in minimizing blood loss.*	
cutane/o	skin (*see* **derm/o**)	subcutaneous *Epidermis and dermis are the cutaneous layers of the skin.*	
derm/o, dermat/o	skin	epidermoid *An **epidermoid cyst** is a collection of keratinous debris within the epidermis. See Figure 16-5B.* dermatitis dermatologist dermabrasion *Abrasion means a scraping away. Dermabrasion using a sandpaper-like material removes acne scars and fine wrinkles.* epidermolysis *Loosening of the epidermis with the development of large blisters; occurs after injury, or with blister-producing diseases.*	

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
diaphor/o	profuse sweating (*see* **hidr/o**)	diaphoresis *Commonly called sweating.*	
erythem/o, erythemat/o	redness	erythema *Flushing; widespread redness of the skin. Pronunciation is er-ih-THE-mah.* ***Erythematous*** *means pertaining to erythema.*	
hidr/o	sweat	anhidrosis *Do not confuse hidr/o with hydr/o (water)!*	
ichthy/o	dry, scaly (fish-like)	ichthyosis *This is usually a hereditary condition in which the skin is dry, rough, and scaly (resembling fish scales) because of a defect in keratinization. Ichthyosis also can be acquired, appearing with malignancies such as lymphomas and multiple myeloma. Greek* ichthys *means fish (Figure 16-6A).*	
kerat/o	hard	keratosis *See page 631.*	
leuk/o	white	leukoplakia *The suffix -plakia means plaques (Figure 16-6B).*	
lip/o	fat	lipoma liposuction *Removal of subcutaneous fat tissue through a tube that is introduced into the fatty area via a small incision. The fat is aspirated (suctioned out).*	
melan/o	black	melanocyte melanoma *This is a malignant skin tumor. See page 633.*	

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
myc/o	fungus (fungi include yeasts, molds, and mushrooms)	mycosis _____ *An example of a mycosis (fungal infection) is **tinea pedis**, commonly called **"athlete's foot"** (Figure 16-7A). Another fungal infection is tinea corporis (ringworm). See page 631.*	
onych/o	nail (*see* **ungu/o**)	onycholysis _____ *Separation of the nail plate from the nail bed in fungal infections or after trauma. See Figure 16-3, page 617. Onycholysis is often seen in psoriasis.* onychomycosis _____ *Fungal infection of the nails, which become white, opaque, thick, and brittle.* paronychia _____ *Par- means near or beside. Paronychia is inflammation and swelling of the soft tissue around the nail and is associated with torn cuticles or ingrown nails (Figure 16-7B).*	
phyt/o	plant	dermatophytosis _____ *Examples are fungal infections (mycoses) (see Figure 16-7A).*	
pil/o	hair (*see* trich/o), hair follicle	pilosebaceous _____ *Sebace/o indicates a gland that secretes sebum. The pilosebaceous unit is the combination of the hair follicle and attached sebaceous gland.*	
py/o	pus	pyoderma _____ *Pus within the skin (-derma). **Impetigo** is a purulent (pus-containing) skin disease caused by bacterial infection. See page 628.*	

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
rhytid/o	wrinkle	rhytidectomy _____ *Cosmetic plastic surgery to remove wrinkles and excess skin; also called rhytidoplasty or face lift. Laser treatments,* ***Botox Cosmetic*** *(purified botulinum toxin) injections, and injectable fillers are used to soften facial lines and wrinkles.*	
seb/o	sebum (oily secretion from sebaceous glands)	seborrhea _____ *Excessive secretion from sebaceous glands.* ***Seborrheic dermatitis*** *commonly is known as* ***dandruff.***	
squam/o	scale-like	squamous epithelium _____ *Cells are flat and scale-like; "pavement" epithelium.*	
trich/o	hair	hypertrichosis _____	
ungu/o	nail	subungual _____	
xanth/o	yellow	xanthoma _____ *Nodules develop under the skin owing to excess lipid deposits and can be associated with a high cholesterol level. A xanthoma that appears on the eyelids is a* ***xanthelasma*** *(-elasma = a flat plate) (Figure 16-7C).*	
xer/o	dry	xerosis _____ *This is very dry skin.*	

TABLE 16-1

COLORS

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY
albin/o	white	albinism
anthrac/o	black (as coal)	anthracosis
chlor/o	green	chlorophyll
cirrh/o	tawny yellow	cirrhosis
cyan/o	blue	cyanosis
eosin/o	rosy	eosinophil
erythr/o	red	erythema
jaund/o	yellow	jaundice
leuk/o	white	leukoderma
lute/o	yellow	corpus luteum
melan/o	black	melanocyte
poli/o	gray	poliosis (decrease of melanin in hair, eyebrows, and eyelashes)
xanth/o	yellow	xanthoma

FIGURE 16-5 A, Albinism. B, Epidermoid cyst.

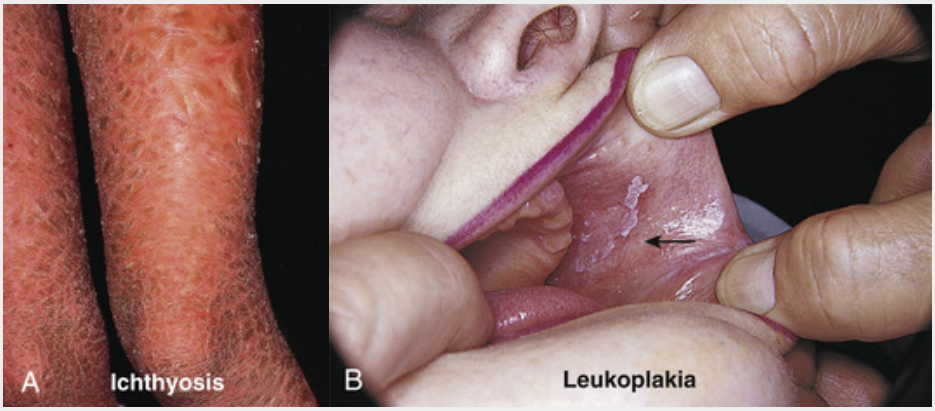


FIGURE 16-6 A, Ichthyosis. B, Leukoplakia.

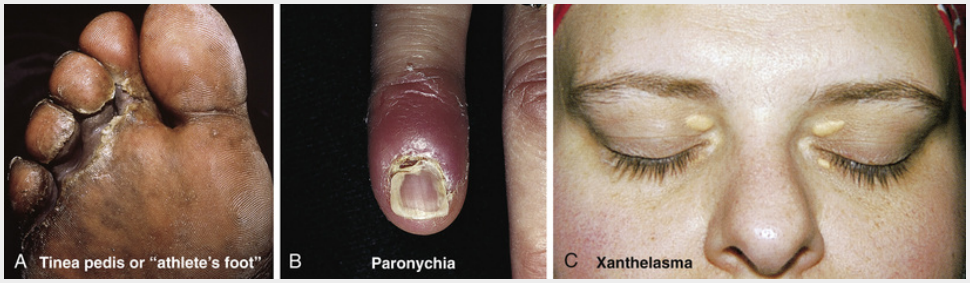


FIGURE 16-7 **A, Mycosis. B, Acute paronychia** most commonly occurs from nail biting, finger sucking, aggressive manicuring, or penetrating trauma. The most common infecting organism is *Staphylococcus aureus.* **C, Xanthelasma.**

Is Botox Cosmetic Safe?

Botox Cosmetic (onabotulinumtoxin A) has been FDA approved since 2002, and provides temporary improvement in frown lines and wrinkles around the eyes. Millions of patients have been treated with Botox Cosmetic and there are extensive data establishing safety. This purified protein works by weakening muscle contraction to soften overlying lines and wrinkles for several months.

The FDA also has approved injectable dermal fillers for deep facial wrinkles and folds. These include Restylane, Perlane, Juvederm, Radiesse, Belotero Balance, and Voluma. New additional neuromodulators similar to Botox Cosmetic are also available: Xeomin (incobotulinumtoxin A) and Dysport (abobotulinumtoxin A).

Pathology

Cutaneous Lesions

A **lesion** is an area of abnormal tissue anywhere on or in the body. It may be caused by disease or trauma (external forces). The following terms describe common skin lesions, which are illustrated in Figure 16-8A-K.

FIGURE 16-8 **Cutaneous lesions. A, Crust**—scab. **B, Cyst**—pilonidal cyst. **C, Erosion**—2nd degree burn. **D, Fissures. E, Macule**—freckles. **F, Nodules. G, Papules**—skin tag. **H, Pustules**—acne. **I, Ulcer**—decubitus ulcer. **J, Vessicles**—Herpes Zoster (shingles). **K, Wheal**—urticaria (hives).

A. **crust**	**Collection of dried serum and cellular debris.** A scab is a crust. It forms from the drying of a body exudate, as in eczema, impetigo, and seborrhea.
B. **cyst**	**Thick-walled, closed sac or pouch containing fluid or semisolid material.** Examples of cysts are the **pilonidal cyst,** which is found over the sacral area of the back in the midline and contains hairs (**pil/o** = hair, **nid/o** = nest); and a **epidermoid cyst,** a collection of yellowish, cheesy sebum commonly found on the scalp, vulva, and scrotum.
C. **erosion**	**Wearing away or loss of epidermis.** Erosions do not penetrate below the dermoepidermal junction. They occur as a result of inflammation or injury and heal without scarring.
D. **fissure**	**Groove or crack-like sore.** An anal fissure is a break in the skin lining of the anal canal.
E. **macule**	**Flat, pigmented lesion measuring less than 1 cm in diameter.** Freckles, tattoo marks, and flat moles are examples. A **patch** is a large macule, greater than 1 cm in diameter.
F. **nodule**	**Solid, round or oval elevated lesion 1 cm or more in diameter.** An enlarged lymph node and solid growths are examples.
G. **papule**	**Small (less than 1 cm in diameter), solid elevation of the skin.** **Skin tags** are small benign growths usually attached to the skin via a stalk (**pedunculated**). **Pimples** (as in acne) are also examples. Papules may become confluent (run together) and form **plaques,** which are elevated flat lesions.
H. **pustule**	**Papule containing pus.** A pustule is a small **abscess** (collection of pus) on the skin.
I. **ulcer**	**Open sore on the skin or mucous membranes (deeper erosion).** **Decubitus ulcers** (bedsores) are caused by pressure that results from lying in one position (Latin *decubitus* means lying down). Pressure ulcers usually involve loss of tissue substance and pus or exudate formation.
J. **vesicle**	**Small collection of clear fluid (serum); blister.** Vesicles form in skin after burns and may be seen with allergies and dermatitis. A **bulla** (*plural*: bullae) is a large vesicle.
K. **wheal**	**Smooth, edematous (swollen) papule or plaque that is centrally redder than the surrounding skin.** Wheals may be papular, as in a mosquito bite, or may involve a wide area, as in some allergic reactions. Wheals often are

	accompanied by itching and are seen in hives (urticaria), anaphylaxis, and insect bites.

Signs and Symptoms

alopecia	**Absence of hair from areas where it normally grows.** Alopecia, or baldness, may be hereditary (usual progressive loss of scalp hair in men) or it may be caused by disease, injury, or treatment (chemotherapy) or may occur with old age. **Alopecia areata** is an autoimmune disease in which hair falls out in round patches without scarring or inflammation as shown in Figure 16-9A.
ecchymosis (*pl.* ecchymoses)	**Bluish-purplish mark (bruise) on the skin.** Ecchymoses (**ec-** = out, **chym/o** = pour) are caused by hemorrhages into the skin from injury or spontaneous leaking of blood from vessels. Figure 16-9B shows high-grade tear at the myotendinous junction in the right pectoralis major muscle.
petechia (*plural:* petechiae)	**Small, pinpoint hemorrhage.** Petechiae (peh-TE-ke-i) are smaller versions of ecchymoses (Figure 16-9C). Both ecchymoses and petechiae are forms of **purpura** (bleeding into the skin).
pruritus	**Itching.** Pruritus is a symptom associated with most forms of dermatitis and with other conditions as well. It arises as a result of stimulation of nerves in the skin by substances released in allergic reactions or by irritation caused by substances in the blood or by foreign bodies.

FIGURE 16-9A

FIGURE 16-9B

FIGURE 16-9C

Pruritus

Be sure to spell **pruritus** correctly. It is a condition, not an inflammation (-itis).

Abnormal Conditions

acne	**Chronic papular and pustular eruption of the skin with increased production of sebum.** **Acne vulgaris** (Latin *vulgaris* means ordinary) is caused by the buildup of sebum and keratin in the pores of the skin. See Figure 16-10A. A **blackhead** is called an open **comedo** or **comedone** (plural **comedones**.) It is a sebum plug that partially blocks the pore (Figure 16-10B). If the pore becomes completely blocked, a **whitehead** (closed comedone) forms. Bacteria in the skin break down the sebum, producing inflammation in the surrounding tissue. Papules, pustules, and cysts can thus form. Treatment can include antibiotic use and medications to decrease inflammation in the skin. Benzoyl peroxide and tretinoin (Retin-A) are topical medications used to prevent comedone formation; isotretinoin (Accutane) is an oral retinoid used in severe cystic or treatment-resistant acne.
burns	**Injury to tissues caused by heat contact.** Burns may be caused by dry heat (fire), moist heat (steam or liquid), chemicals, lightning, electricity, or radiation. Burns usually are classified as follows: **first-degree burns**—superficial epidermal lesions, erythema, hyperesthesia, and no blisters. **second-degree burns (partial-thickness burn injury)**—epidermal and dermal lesions, erythema, blisters, and hyperesthesia. Wound is painful and very sensitive to touch and air currents. See Figure 16-11. **third-degree burns (full-thickness burn injury)**—epidermis and dermis are destroyed (necrosis of skin), and subcutaneous layer is damaged, leaving charred, white tissue. The wound itself is insensate (patient does not respond to pinprick). See Figure 16-11.
cellulitis	**Diffuse, acute infection of the skin marked by local heat, redness, pain, and swelling.** Abscess formation and tissue destruction can occur if appropriate antibiotic therapy is not given. Areas of poor lymphatic drainage are susceptible to this skin infection. A 63-year old man traveling on a safari in Botswana, noticed swelling, redness, and pain in his upper leg. After a local physician prescribed oral antibiotics, he was advised to interrupt his trip to get intravenous antibiotics at a major hospital. His cellulitis eventually cleared. See Figure 16-12A.

eczema (atopic dermatitis)	**Inflammatory skin disease with erythematous, papulovesicular, or papulosquamous lesions.** This is a chronic or acute **atopic dermatitis** (rash often begins on face, hands, and at the elbow crease, or back of the knee crease). It is accompanied by intense pruritus and tends to occur in patients with a family history of allergic conditions. Treatment depends on the cause but usually includes the use of corticosteroids and moisturizers. If one parent has atopic dermatitis, asthma, or hay fever, there's about a 50% chance that a child will have at least one of these conditions. See Figure 16-12B.
exanthematous viral diseases	**Rash (exanthem) of the skin due to a viral infection.** Examples are **rubella** (German measles), **rubeola** (measles), and **varicella** (chickenpox). These conditions are no longer as common in children because of vaccination programs. However, **erythema infectiosum** (fifth disease) is a common exanthematous viral disease. It is marked by fever and an erythematous rash that has a "slapped cheek" appearance on the face and later involving the arms, buttocks, and trunk. It is caused by a parvovirus. **Hand-foot-and-mouth disease** is another common viral illness in children and is caused by an enterovirus. See Figure 16-13.
gangrene	**Death of tissue associated with loss of blood supply.** In this condition, ischemia resulting from injury, inflammation, frostbite, diseases such as diabetes, or arteriosclerosis can lead to necrosis of tissue followed by bacterial invasion and putrefaction (proteins are decomposed by bacteria). See Figure 16-14A.
impetigo	**Bacterial inflammatory skin disease characterized by vesicles, pustules, and crusted-over lesions.** This is a contagious **pyoderma** (**py/o** = pus) and usually is caused by staphylococci or streptococci. Systemic use of antibiotics combined with proper cleansing of lesions is effective treatment. See Figure 16-14B.
psoriasis	**Chronic, recurrent dermatosis marked by itchy, scaly, red plaques covered by silvery gray scales.** Psoriasis commonly involves the forearms, knees, legs, and scalp. See Figure 16-15A. It is neither infectious nor contagious but is caused by an increased rate of growth of the basal layer of the epidermis. It is an autoinflammatory disease that can run in families. Treatment is **palliative** (relieving but not curing) and

	includes topical lubricants, keratolytics, and steroids. Systemic treatments include psoralen–ultraviolet A (PUVA) light therapy and immunomodulators.
scabies	**Contagious, parasitic infection of the skin with intense pruritus** (Figure 16-15B). Scabies (from Latin *scabere*, to scratch) commonly affects areas such as the groin, nipples, and skin between the fingers. Treatment is with topical medicated cream to destroy the scabies mites (tiny parasites).
scleroderma	**Chronic progressive disease of the skin and internal organs with hardening and shrinking of connective tissue.** Fibrous scar-like tissue forms in the skin, and the heart, lungs, kidneys, and esophagus may be affected as well. Skin is thick, hard, and rigid, with areas of both depigmentation and hyperpigmentation. See Figure 16-16A. It is an autoimmune disease for which palliative treatment consists of immunosuppressive and anti-inflammatory agents, antifibrotics, and physical therapy.
systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE)	**Chronic autoimmune inflammatory disease of collagen in skin, joints, and internal organs.** Lupus, meaning wolf-like (the shape and color of the erosive skin lesions and tissue loss resembling a wolf attack), produces a characteristic "butterfly" pattern of redness over the cheeks and nose. See Figure 16-16B. In more severe cases, the extent of erythema increases, and all exposed areas of the skin may be involved. Primarily a disease of females, lupus is an autoimmune disorder. High levels of certain autoantibodies are found in the patient's blood. Corticosteroids and immunosuppressive drugs are used to control symptoms. SLE should be differentiated from chronic **discoid lupus erythematosus (DLE),** which is a photosensitive, scaling, plaque-like eruption of the skin confined to the face, scalp, ears, chest, arms, and back, which heals with scarring. SLE should also be differentiated from **lupus vulgaris**, which refers to a cutaneous form of tuberculosis.
tinea	**Infection of the skin caused by a fungus.** **Tinea corporis**, or ringworm, so called because the infection is in a ring-like pattern (Figure 16-17A), is highly contagious and causes severe pruritus. Other examples are **tinea pedis** (athlete's foot, which affects the

	skin between the toes), **tinea capitis** (on the scalp), **tinea barbae** (affecting the skin under a beard), and **tinea unguium** (affecting the nails). Figure 16-17B shows fungal infection of the nail (onychomycosis) causes the distal nail plate to turn yellow or white. Hyperkeratotic debris accumulates, causing the nail to separate from the nail bed (**onycholysis**). Treatment for tinea is with antifungal agents. (Latin *tinea* means worm or moth—apparently the Romans thought that skin affected with tinea looked "moth-eaten.")
urticaria (hives)	**Acute allergic reaction in which red, round wheals develop on the skin.** Hives often are a reaction to foods (shellfish, nuts, eggs) or to medication. Histamine is released into the bloodstream, causing **pruritus** and **edema** (swelling). **Angioedema** is swelling around the face. Other substances and events that can trigger hives are animal dander, insect bites and stings, and pollen. Notice the erythematous, edematous, often circular plaques as illustrated in Figure 16-18A.
vitiligo	**Loss of pigment (depigmentation) in areas of the skin (milk-white patches).** This is a form of **leukoderma**. The skin changes result from an autoimmune process, and there is an increased association of vitiligo with autoimmune disorders such as thyroiditis, hyperthyroidism, and diabetes mellitus. Figure 16-18B shows **vitiligo** (from Latin *vitium*, blemish) on the hand. Epidermal melanocytes are completely lost in depigmented areas through an autoimmune process.

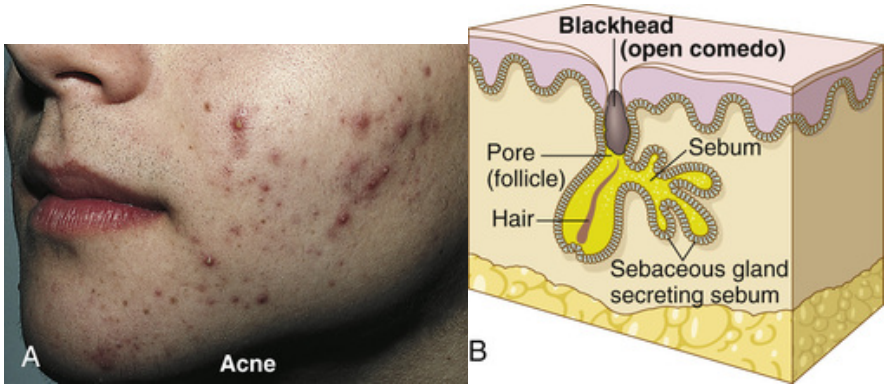


FIGURE 16-10

FIGURE 16-11

FIGURE 16-12A

FIGURE 16-12B

FIGURE 16-13

FIGURE 16-14A

FIGURE 16-14B

FIGURE 16-15A

FIGURE 16-15B

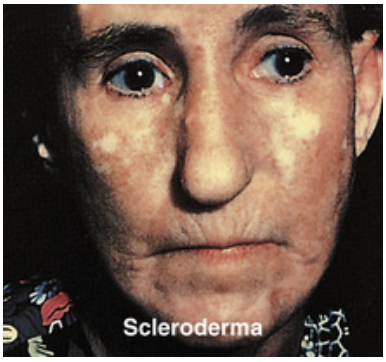


FIGURE 16-16A

FIGURE 16-16B

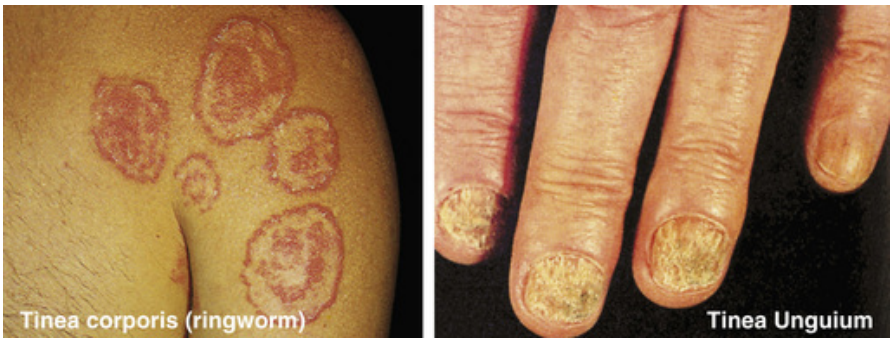


FIGURE 16-17

FIGURE 16-18A

FIGURE 16-18B

Atopic Dermatitis

Atopic means pertaining to **atopy**, which means out of place or unusual (a = no, top = place). It is an inflammatory condition that may be hereditary, but environmental factors can also be a trigger.

Skin Neoplasms

Benign Neoplasms

callus	**Increased growth of cells in the keratin layer of the epidermis caused by pressure or friction.** The feet and the hands are common sites for callus formation. A corn (clavis) is a type of callus that develops a hard core (a whitish, cone-shaped central kernel). Figure 16-19A shows a callus on the sole of the foot.
keloid	**Excess hypertrophied, thickened scar developing after trauma or surgical incision.** Keloids (Figure 16-19B) result from excessive collagen formation in the skin during connective tissue repair. Keloids extend beyond the boundaries of the original injury. See Figure 16-19B showing keloid formation behind the ear. The term comes from the Greek *kelis*, meaning blemish. Surgical excision often is combined with intralesional steroid injections or ablative laser treatments. A normal scar left by a healed wound is called a **cicatrix** (SIK-ah-trix).
keratosis	**Thickened and rough lesion of the epidermis; associated with aging or skin damage.** **Actinic keratosis** is caused by long-term ultraviolet light exposure and is a precancerous lesion that can evolve into squamous cell carcinoma (Figure 16-20A). **Seborrheic keratosis** is a benign lesion that results from overgrowth of the upper epidermis and is dark in color.
leukoplakia	**White, thickened patches on mucous membrane tissue of the tongue or cheek (evolves to squamous cell carcinoma).** One type is a precancerous lesion that is common in smokers and may be caused by chronic inflammation. See Figure 16-20B.
nevus (*plural:* nevi)	**Pigmented lesion of the skin** (See Figure 20-C). Nevi are commonly known as moles. Many are present at birth, but some are acquired. **Dysplastic nevi** are moles that have atypical cells and may progress to form a type of skin cancer called melanoma (see **malignant melanoma**).
verruca (*plural:* verrucae)	**Epidermal growth (wart) caused by a virus.** **Verruca vulgaris** (common wart) is the most frequent type of wart (Figure 16-20D). **Plantar warts** occur on the soles of the feet, juvenile warts occur on the hands and face of children, and venereal warts occur on the genitals and around the anus. Warts are removed with acids, or freezing with liquid nitrogen (cryosurgery), or immune therapy. If the virus remains in the skin, the wart frequently regrows.

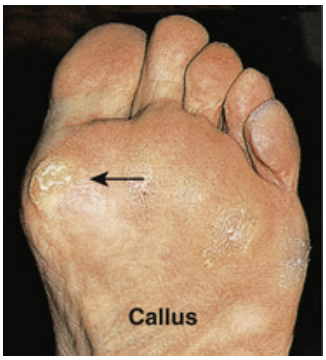


FIGURE 16-19A

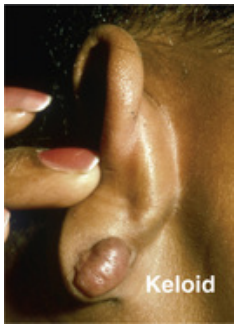


FIGURE 16-19B

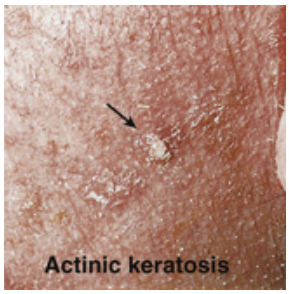


FIGURE 16-20A

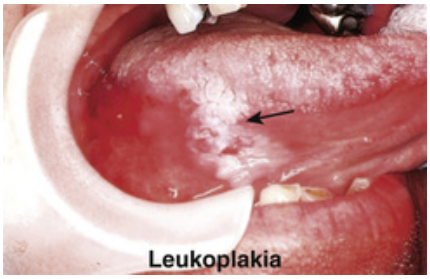


FIGURE 16-20B

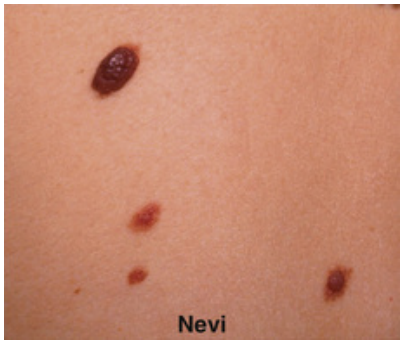


FIGURE 16-20C

FIGURE 16-20D

Cancerous Lesions

basal cell carcinoma	**Malignant tumor of the basal cell layer of the epidermis.** This is the most common cancer in humans and the most common skin cancer. It is a slow-growing tumor that usually occurs on chronically sun-exposed skin, especially near or on the nose (Figure 16-21A). It almost never metastasizes.
squamous cell carcinoma	**Malignant tumor of the squamous epithelial cells in the epidermis.** This tumor may grow in places other than the skin, wherever squamous epithelium is found (mouth, larynx, bladder, esophagus, lungs). **Actinic** (sun-related) **keratoses** are premalignant (precursor) lesions in people with sun-damaged skin. Progression to squamous cell carcinoma may occur if lesions are not removed. Advanced lesions often are nodular and ulcerated. See Figure 16-21B. Treatment is removal by surgical excision, cryotherapy, electrodesiccation and curettage, or radiotherapy.
malignant melanoma	**Cancerous growth composed of melanocytes.** This malignancy usually occurs after prolonged exposure to sunlight in darkly tanned or sunburned areas of skin. Melanoma usually begins as a mottled, light brown to black macule with irregular borders (Figure 16-22). The lesion may turn shades of red, blue, and white and may crust on the surface and bleed. Melanomas may arise in preexisting moles (dysplastic nevi) and frequently appear on the upper back, lower legs, arms, head, and neck. Biopsy is required to confirm the diagnosis of melanoma, and prognosis is best determined by tumor thickness and by the presence of spread to lymph nodes. Melanomas often metastasize to the lung, liver, bone, and brain. Treatment of initial lesions consists of excision of tumors and regional lymphadenectomy. For metastatic disease, patients receive drugs that target B-RAF mutations or immunotherapy. ***In Person: Metastatic Melanoma***, page 636.
Kaposi sarcoma	**Malignant, vascular, neoplastic growth characterized by cutaneous nodules.** Frequently arising on arms and legs, nodules range in color from deep pink to dark blue and purple. One form of this condition is associated with acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS). See Figure 16-23.

FIGURE 16-21A

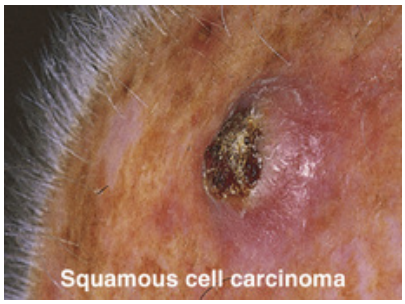


FIGURE 16-21B

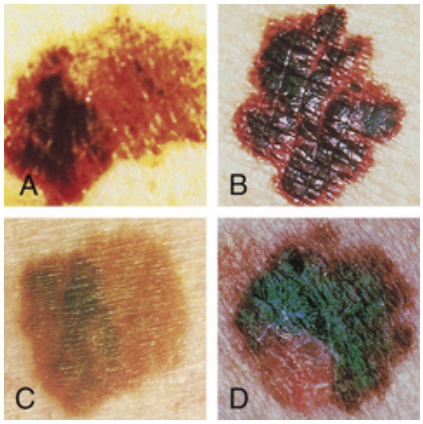


FIGURE 16-22 The ABCDEs of melanoma:

Asymmetry: one half unlike the other half
Border: irregular or poorly circumscribed border
Color: varies from one area to another; shades of tan and brown, black, and sometimes white, red, or blue
Diameter: usually larger than 6 mm (diameter of a pencil eraser)
Evolution: change in the lesion over time

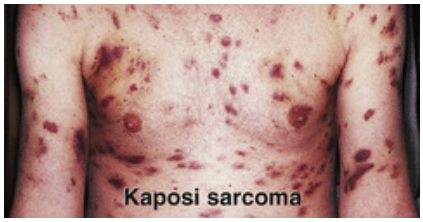


FIGURE 16-23

Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

Laboratory Tests

bacterial analyses	**Samples of skin are examined for presence of microorganisms.** **Purulent** (pus-filled) material or **exudate** (fluid that accumulates) often is taken for examination. Fluid can be stained to determine bacterial morphology and cultured to identify specific species or strain.
fungal tests	**Scrapings from skin lesions, hair specimens, or nail clippings are sent to a laboratory for culture and microscopic identification of fungal infection.** The specimen also may be treated with a potassium hydroxide (KOH) preparation and examined microscopically. Positive result reveals fungal infection.

Clinical Procedures

cryosurgery	**Use of subfreezing temperature achieved with liquid nitrogen application to destroy tissue.**
curettage	**Use of a sharp dermal curette to scrape away a skin lesion.** A curette is shaped like a spoon or scoop.
electrodesiccation	**Tissue is destroyed by burning with an electric spark.** This procedure is used along with curettage to remove and destroy small cancerous lesions with well-defined borders.
Mohs surgery	**Thin layers of malignant tissue are removed, and each slice is examined microscopically to check for adequate extent of the resection.** Mohs surgery (also called Mohs micrographic surgery) is a specialized form of excision to treat basal cell carcinomas, squamous cell carcinomas, and other tumors. It is used in areas in which a wide local excision is not feasible (such as on the face) or tissue sparing is required (as with large skin cancers). See Figure 16-24.
skin biopsy	**Suspicious skin lesions are removed or sampled and examined microscopically by a pathologist.** In a **punch biopsy,** a surgical instrument removes a core of tissue obtained by rotation of its sharp, circular edge. In a shave biopsy, tissue is excised using a cut parallel to the surface of the surrounding skin.
skin test	**Substances are injected intradermally or applied to the skin, and results are observed.** Skin tests are used to diagnose allergies and disease. In the **patch test,** an allergen-treated piece of gauze or filter paper is applied to the skin. If the skin becomes red or swollen, the result is positive. In the **scratch test,** several scratches are made in the skin, and a very minute amount of test material is inserted into the scratches. The Schick test (for diphtheria) and the Mantoux and purified protein derivative (PPD) tests (for tuberculosis) are other skin tests.

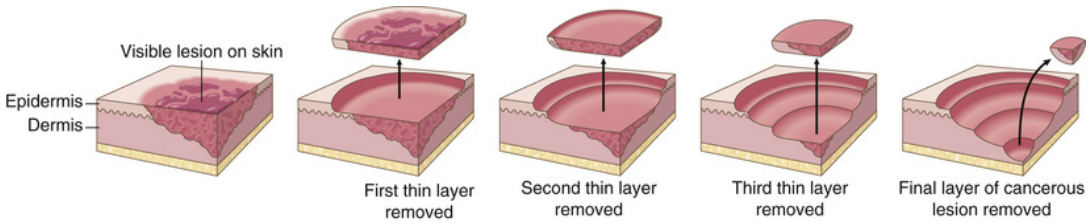


FIGURE 16-24 Mohs surgery is microscopically controlled excision of skin cancer.

Abbreviations

ABCDE	asymmetry (of shape), border (irregularity), color (variation within one lesion), diameter (greater than 6 mm), evolution (change)—characteristics associated with melanoma
BCC	basal cell carcinoma
Bx	biopsy
Derm	dermatology
DLE	discoid lupus erythematosus
PPD	purified protein derivative—used in skin test for tuberculosis
PUVA	psoralen–ultraviolet A light therapy; treatment for psoriasis and other skin conditions
SCC	squamous cell carcinoma
SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus
subQ	subcutaneous

Practical Applications

Disease Descriptions

1. **Candidiasis** (*Candida* is a yeast-like fungus): This fungus is normally found on mucous membranes, skin, and vaginal mucosa. Under certain circumstances (excessive warmth and moisture; administration of antibiotics and corticosteroids; debilitated states; infancy), it can proliferate and cause localized or generalized mucocutaneous disease. Examples are paronychial lesions, lesions in areas of the body where the rubbing of opposed surfaces is common (groin, perianal, axillary, inframammary, and interdigital), thrush (white plaques attached to oral or vaginal mucous membranes), and vulvovaginitis.

2. **Cellulitis:** This is a common nonsuppurative infection of connective tissue with severe inflammation of the dermal and subcutaneous layers of the skin. Cellulitis appears on an extremity as a warm reddish area of tender edematous skin. A surgical wound, puncture, insect bite, skin ulcer, or patch of dermatitis is the usual means of entry for bacteria (most cases are caused by streptococci or Staphylococcus aureus). Therapy includes rest, elevation, hot wet packs, and antibiotics. Any cellulitis on the face should be given special attention because the infection may extend directly to the brain.
3. **Mycosis fungoides (cutaneous T cell lymphoma):** This rare, chronic skin condition is caused by the infiltration of the skin by atypical lymphocytes. Contrary to its name (myc/o = fungus), it is not caused by a fungus but was formerly thought to be of fungal origin. It can manifest with generalized erythroderma or large, reddish, raised tumors that spread and ulcerate. In some cases, the malignant cells may involve lymph nodes and other organs. Treatment with cortisone ointments, topical nitrogen mustard, psoralen–ultraviolet light A (PUVA), and systemic retinoids or immunomodulators can be effective in controlling the disease.

Case Report: Squamous Cell Carcinoma

A 76-year-old woman noticed a 1-inch-diameter flaky patch on her scalp. Over a period of months, the lesion increased in size and became ulcerated, with the skull bone visible (Figure 16-25A). A biopsy was performed and pathologic examination revealed squamous cell carcinoma. Mohs micrographic surgery was attempted but a CT study of the head/brain with contrast showed the likelihood of residual tumor extending into the skull (Figure 16-25B).

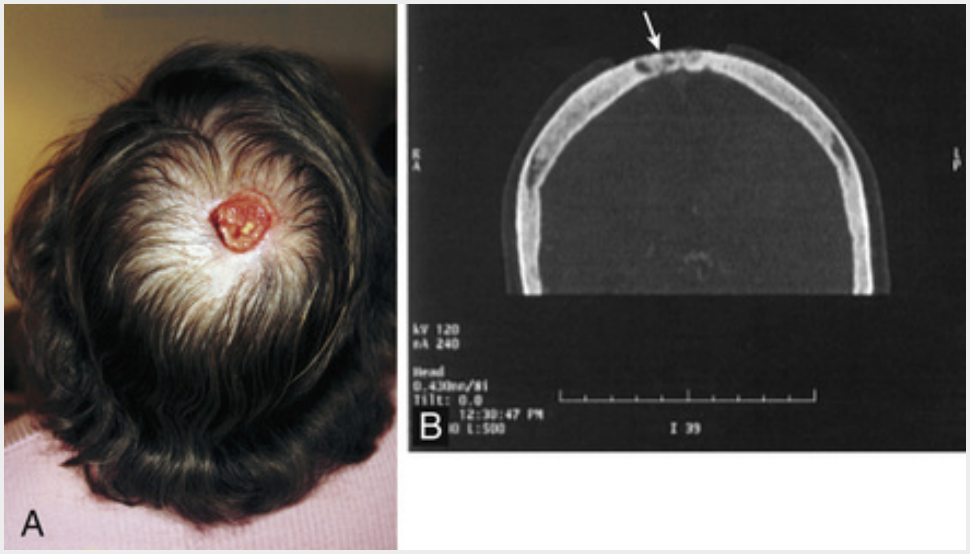


FIGURE 16-25 **A, Squamous cell carcinoma** on scalp. **B,** CT scan showing defect (*arrow*) in skull from tumor invasion.

Major surgery was performed to resect residual malignant tissue. A large portion of skull was removed and replaced with titanium mesh on which muscle from her back and skin from her leg were grafted. The primary surgical area healed well. Pathologic examination confirmed the presence of tumor invading the skull and underlying dura at the surgical margin. The patient is now receiving radiation therapy for 6 weeks to treat the affected area.

In Person

Metastatic Melanoma

This is an account of a patient's course of treatment for metastatic melanoma from 2010 to the present. It was written by the physician of a patient with his permission.

Mr. Murphy noticed a hard mass on his right buttocks. He consulted his doctor who recommended a biopsy, which was initially read as a poorly differentiated soft tissue sarcoma metastatic to lung and bone. Seeking further advice, he came to an East Coast cancer center, where the pathology reading was changed to a malignant melanoma, a skin tumor that rarely responds to conventional chemotherapy. Eight years earlier he had a "dysplastic nevus" removed from his shoulder. A rereading of that material confirmed that the earlier lesion was in fact a melanoma, undoubtedly the source of his new lesions. He was fortunate that genomic analysis revealed that his tumor contained a mutation in the B-RAF oncogene indicating that it would be sensitive to a new "targeted" drug, specific for his kind of B-RAF mutant tumor.

With that experimental treatment, he experienced a five year complete remission. At that point, after stopping his drugs, he quickly had a recurrence of tumor in the form of multiple small lesions in the brain, these were treated with radiation therapy. New tumors were found growing along his spinal cord, indicating that his tumor was no longer responsive to the B-RAF inhibitor. However the spinal metastases responded to treatment with a new immunotherapy, an anti-PD-1 antibody. The antibody caused an auto-immune reaction, a severe colitis, which was controlled with other medication. He is now more than 8 years from his original diagnosis, biking and hiking, and free of symptoms, with no signs of active disease.

The following is an account of the same treatment experience written by the patient.

In the beginning, hearing the words, "Death, numerous lesions, lungs, ilium" and "Not that long before it will take you …" put me in denial and fear and lonesome turning into forsaken. But I had two things going for me, my college sweetheart wife, Mary, who said right off, "You can't die on me," and my brother, Marty, who guided my course to a second opinion at an East Coast cancer center.

After a diagnosis of metastatic melanoma, I became a cohort in the first human trial of targeted drug therapy for my B-RAF mutated tumor. After five years of a wonderful life, sprinkled with occasions of great unpleasantness from feverous side effects, the drug trial concluded, and I soon discovered that cancer was now in my brain. After zapping the lesions with SRS (stereotactic radiosurgery), doctors would have to attack and kill leptomeningeal brain and spine cancer. They switched me to immunotherapy and that's where I remain. I learned first-hand about colitis, a side effect of immunotherapy, but happily, doctors were able to get my bowels put back right to boot. Now, it's just the occasional knife fight with the cancerous "escaped lesions" in my abdomen and leg, but my immunotherapy drug, Opdivo, continues to work.

Along the way, in the hard times, I realized that it takes courage to look for Hope, but if you look hard you will surely find some hope, and it will help you

prolong your life. I think we need Gratitude too. Cancer is an intolerable menace that plagues so many across the globe. Science has fought back with life- saving drugs. I'm a beneficiary. Finally we need Vigilance. I'm still motivated to fight that fierce wolf, the cancer that first came tearing into me. It's still there, limping along with the mange, a notched ear, and eye that doesn't seem to open. Ultimately, I find my greatest source of strength is to be in love with a woman who looks you in the eye and says, "You can't die on me!"

John Murphy is a lawyer who still rides bikes and hikes mountains in Colorado.

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, page 643.

A Select from the listed terms to complete the sentences that follow.

adipocyte
basal layer
collagen
cuticle
dermis
keratin
lunula
melanin
sebum
stratum corneum

1. A fat cell is a/an _____.
2. The half-moon–shaped white area at the base of a nail is the _____.
3. A structural protein found in skin and connective tissue is _____.
4. A pigment found in the epidermis is _____.

5. The deepest region of the epidermis is the _____.
6. The outermost layer of the epidermis, which consists of flattened, keratinized cells, is the _____.
7. An oily substance secreted by sebaceous glands is _____.
8. The middle layer of the skin is the _____.
9. A hard, protein material found in epidermis, hair, and nails is _____.
10. A band of epidermis at the base and sides of the nail plate is the _____.

B **Complete the following terms based on their meanings as given.**

1. the outermost layer of skin: epi _____
2. profuse sweating: dia _____
3. excessive secretion from sebaceous glands: sebo _____
4. inflammation and swelling of soft tissue around a nail: par _____
5. fungal infections of hands and feet: dermato _____
6. burning sensation (pain) in skin: caus _____

C **Match the terms in Column I with the descriptive meanings in Column II. Write the letter of the answer in the space provided.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. squamous epithelium	_____	A. Connective tissue layer of skin
2. sebaceous gland	_____	B. Surgical procedure to scrape away tissue
3. albinism	_____	C. Flat, scale-like cells
4. electrocautery	_____	D. Connective tissue protein
5. subcutaneous tissue	_____	E. Pigment deficiency of the skin
6. collagen	_____	F. Contains a dark pigment
7. dermis	_____	G. Redness of skin
8. melanocyte	_____	H. Contains lipocytes
9. erythema	_____	I. Oil-producing organ
10. dermabrasion	_____	J. Knife used to burn through tissue

D **Build medical terms based on the definitions and word parts given.**

1. pertaining to under the skin: sub
   _____
2. abnormal condition of lack of sweat: an
   _____
3. abnormal condition of proliferation of horny, keratinized cells: kerat _____
4. abnormal condition of dry, scaly skin:
   _____ osis
5. loosening of the epidermis: epidermo
   _____
6. yellow tumor (nodule under the skin):
   _____ oma
7. pertaining to under the nail: sub
   _____
8. abnormal condition of excessive hair growth: hyper
   _____
9. abnormal condition of nail fungus: onycho
   _____

10. removal of wrinkles:
_____ectomy

E **Give the meanings for the following combining forms.**

1. melan/o _____
2. adip/o _____
3. squam/o _____
4. xanth/o _____
5. myc/o _____
6. onych/o _____
7. pil/o _____———___
8. xer/o ___——__——___
9. trich/o ____——__———__
10. erythem/o _____
11. albin/o _____
12. ichthy/o _____
13. hidr/o _____
14. ungu/o _____
15. cauter/o _____
16. rhytid/o _____
17. py/o _____
18. hydr/o _____
19. cutane/o _____

F **Match each of the following lesions with their illustrations in Figure 16-26.**

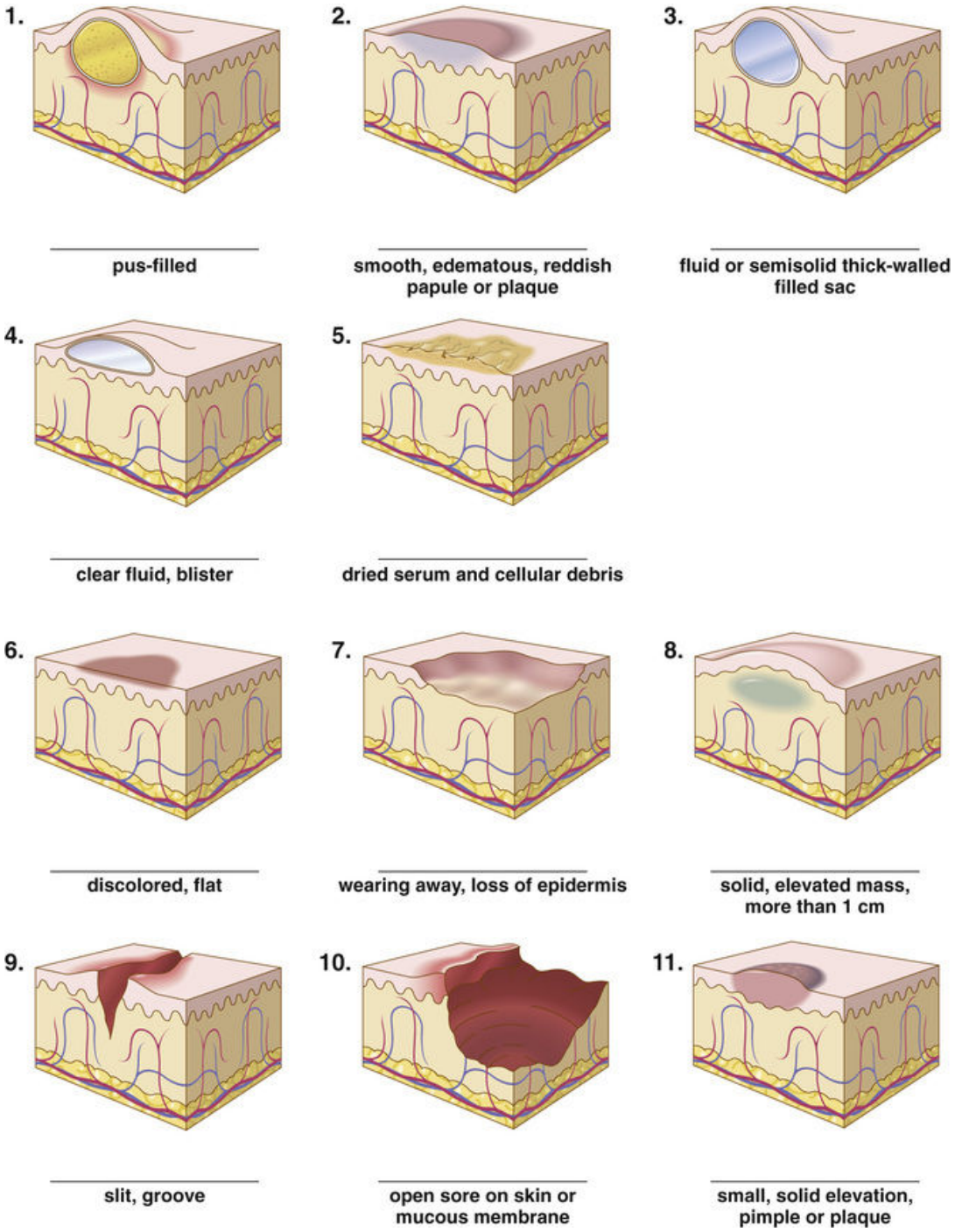


FIGURE 16-26 Cutaneous lesions.

crust (scab)

cyst

erosion

fissure
macule
nodule
papule
pustule
ulcer
vesicle
wheal

G **Give the medical terms for the following.**

1. baldness _____
2. bluish black mark (macule) caused by hemorrhages into the skin _____
3. itching _____
4. acute allergic reaction in which red, round wheals develop on the skin _____
5. blackhead _____
6. small, pinpoint hemorrhages _____

H **Match the pathologic skin condition with its description from the numbered list that follows.**

acne vulgaris
basal cell carcinoma
decubitus ulcer
eczema
gangrene
impetigo
malignant melanoma

psoriasis

scleroderma

squamous cell carcinoma

systemic lupus erythematosus

tinea

1. malignant neoplasm originating in scale-like cells of the epidermis _____
2. buildup of sebum and keratin in pores of the skin leading to papular and pustular eruptions _____
3. fungal skin infection _____
4. chronic disease marked by hardening and shrinking of connective tissue in the skin _____
5. bedsore _____
6. necrosis of skin tissue resulting from ischemia _____
7. chronic or acute inflammatory skin disease with erythematous, pustular, or papular lesions _____
8. widespread inflammatory disease of the joints and collagen of the skin with “butterfly” rash on the face _____
9. cancerous tumor composed of melanocytes _____
10. chronic, recurrent dermatosis marked by silvery-gray scales covering red patches on the skin _____
11. malignant neoplasm originating in the basal layer of the epidermis _____

12. contagious, infectious pyoderma

_____

I **Circle the** boldface **term that best fits the definition given.**

1. contagious parasitic infection with intense pruritus: **(scleroderma, scabies)**
2. measles: **(rubella, rubeola)**
3. chickenpox: **(varicella, eczema)**
4. thickened excess cicatrix (scar): **(tinea, keloid)**
5. white patches on mucous membrane of tongue or inner cheek: **(leukoplakia, albinism)**
6. characterized by a rash: **(gangrene, exanthematous)**
7. thickening of epidermis related to sunlight exposure: **(actinic keratosis, callus)**
8. small, pinpoint hemorrhages: **(psoriasis, petechiae)**
9. large blisters: **(bullae, pustules)**
10. hyperpigmented macule or papule of skin (mole): **(nevus, verruca)**
11. sac of fluid and hair over sacral region: **(ecchymosis, pilonidal cyst)**
12. acute allergic reaction in which hives develop: **(vitiligo, urticaria)**

J **Describe the following types of burns.**

1. second-degree burn:

   _____
   _____

2. first-degree burn:

   _____
   _____

3. third-degree burn:
_____
_____

K **Match the medical terms with the more common names or descriptions provided.**

alopecia
comedones
decubitus ulcer
ecchymosis
exanthem
nevi
pruritus
seborrheic dermatitis
tinea pedis
urticaria
verrucae
vesicles

1. blackheads _____
2. moles _____
3. baldness _____
4. itching _____
5. hives _____
6. bedsore _____
7. warts _____
8. athlete's foot _____
9. “black-and-blue” mark _____
10. dandruff _____

11. blisters _____
12. rash _____

L **Describe how the following conditions affect the skin.**

1. pyoderma:
   _____
   _____
2. xerosis:
   _____
   _____
3. leukoderma:
   _____
   _____
4. erythema:
   _____
   _____
5. callus:
   _____
   _____
6. keloid:
   _____
   _____
7. gangrene:
   _____
   _____

M **Give short answers to complete the following sentences.**

1. Two skin tests for allergy are _____ and _____.
2. The _____ test is an intradermal test for diphtheria.

3. The _____ test and the _____ test are skin tests for tuberculosis.
4. Purulent means _____.
5. A surgical procedure to core out a disk of skin for microscopic analysis is a/an _____.
6. The procedure in which thin layers of a malignant growth are removed and each is examined under the microscope is _____.
7. A type of skin cancer associated with AIDS and marked by dark blue-purple lesions over the skin is _____.
8. Abnormal, premalignant moles are _____.
9. Removal of skin tissue using a cut parallel to the surface of the surrounding skin is called a/an _____.
10. Destruction of tissue using intensely cold temperatures is _____.
11. Scraping away skin to remove acne scars and fine wrinkles on the skin is _____.
12. Removal of subcutaneous fat tissue by aspiration is _____.
13. Destruction of tissue using an electric spark is _____.
14. Use of a sharp, spoon-like instrument to scrape away tissue is _____.

N **Circle the terms in** boldface **that best complete the meaning of the sentences.**

1. Since he was a teenager, Jim had had red, scaly patches on his elbows and the front of his knees. Dr. Horn

diagnosed Jim's dermatologic condition as **(vitiligo, impetigo, psoriasis)** and prescribed a special cream.

2. Clarissa noticed a rash across the bridge of her nose and aching in her joints. She saw a rheumatologist, who did some blood work and diagnosed her condition as **(rheumatoid arthritis, systemic lupus erythematosus, scleroderma)**.
3. Bea had large red plaques develop all over her trunk and neck after eating shrimp. The doctor prescribed hydrocortisone cream to relieve her itching **(seborrhea, acne, urticaria)**.
4. The poison ivy Maggie touched caused very uncomfortable **(pruritus, calluses, keratosis)**, and she was scratching her arms raw.
5. Kelly was fair-skinned with red hair. She had many benign nevi on her arms and legs, but Dr. Keefe was especially worried about one pigmented lesion with an irregular, raised border, which he biopsied and found to be malignant **(melanoma, Kaposi sarcoma, pyoderma)**.
6. After 5 days of high fever, 3-year-old Sadie developed a red rash all over her body. The pediatrician described it as a viral **(eczema, purpura, exanthem)** and told her mother it was a case of **(rubeola, impetigo, scabies)**.
7. Several months after her surgery, Mabel's scar became raised and thickened and grew beyond the boundaries of the incision. It had **(atrophied, stratified, hypertrophied)**, and her physician described it as a **(nevus, verruca, keloid)**.
8. Perry had a bad habit of biting his nails and picking at the **(follicle, cuticle, subcutaneous tissue)** surrounding his nails. Often, he developed inflammation and swelling

of the soft tissue around the nail, a condition known as **(onychomycosis, onycholysis, paronychia)**.

9. Brenda noticed a small papillomatous wart on her hand. Her **(oncologist, dermatologist, psychologist)** explained that it was a **(pustule, fissure, verruca)** and caused by a **(bacterium, virus, toxin)**. The doctor suggested removing it by **(Mohs surgery, cryosurgery, dilation and curettage)**.
10. Sarah, a teenager, was self-conscious about the inflammatory lesions of papules and pustules on her face. She noticed blackheads or **(wheals, bullae, open comedones)** and whiteheads (closed comedones). She was advised to begin taking antibiotics and applying topical medications to treat her **(acne vulgaris, scleroderma, gangrene)**.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. adipocyte
2. lunula
3. collagen
4. melanin
5. basal layer
6. stratum corneum
7. sebum
8. dermis
9. keratin

10. cuticle

B

1. epidermis
2. diaphoresis
3. seborrhea
4. paronychia
5. dermatophytosis or dermatomycosis (tinea)
6. causalgia

C

1. C
2. I
3. E
4. J
5. H
6. D
7. A
8. F
9. G
10. B

D

1. subcutaneous
2. anhidrosis

3. keratosis
4. ichthyosis
5. epidermolysis
6. xanthoma
7. subungual
8. hypertrichosis
9. onychomycosis
10. rhytidectomy

E

1. black
2. fat
3. scale-like
4. yellow
5. fungus
6. nail
7. hair
8. dry
9. hair
10. redness
11. white
12. scaly, dry
13. sweat
14. nail

15. heat, burn
16. wrinkle
17. pus
18. water
19. skin

F

1. pustule
2. wheal
3. cyst
4. vesicle
5. crust (scab)
6. macule
7. erosion
8. nodule
9. fissure
10. ulcer
11. papule

G

1. alopecia
2. ecchymosis
3. pruritus
4. urticaria

5. comedo
6. petechiae

H

1. squamous cell carcinoma
2. acne vulgaris
3. tinea
4. scleroderma
5. decubitus ulcer
6. gangrene
7. eczema
8. systemic lupus erythematosus
9. malignant melanoma
10. psoriasis
11. basal cell carcinoma
12. impetigo

I

1. scabies
2. rubeola
3. varicella
4. keloid
5. leukoplakia
6. exanthematous

7. actinic keratosis
8. petechiae
9. bullae
10. nevus
11. pilonidal cyst
12. urticaria

J

1. damage to the epidermis and dermis with blisters, erythema, and hyperesthesia
2. damage to the epidermis with erythema and hyperesthesia; no blisters
3. destruction of both epidermis and dermis and damage to subcutaneous layer

K

1. comedones
2. nevi
3. alopecia
4. pruritus
5. urticaria
6. decubitus ulcer
7. verrucae
8. tinea pedis
9. ecchymosis

10. seborrheic dermatitis
11. vesicles
12. exanthem

L

1. collections of pus in the skin
2. dry skin
3. white patches of skin (vitiligo)
4. redness of skin
5. increased growth of epidermal horny-layer cells due to excess pressure or friction
6. thickened, hypertrophied scar tissue
7. necrosis (death) of skin tissue

M

1. scratch test; patch test
2. Schick
3. Mantoux; PPD
4. pus-filled
5. punch biopsy
6. Mohs surgery
7. Kaposi sarcoma
8. dysplastic nevi
9. shave biopsy
10. cryosurgery

11. dermabrasion
12. liposuction
13. electrodesiccation
14. curettage

N

1. psoriasis
2. systemic lupus erythematosus
3. urticaria
4. pruritus
5. melanoma
6. exanthem; rubeola
7. hypertrophied; keloid
8. cuticle; paronychia
9. dermatologist; verruca; virus; cryosurgery
10. open comedones; acne vulgaris

Answers to Practical Applications

1. c
2. a
3. b
4. c
5. a

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

Terminology

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
adipocyte	AH-dih-po-site
adipose	AH-dih-pohz
albinism	AL-bih-niz-im
anhidrosis	an-hi-DRO-sis
apocrine sweat gland	AP-o-krin swet gland
basal layer	BA-sal LA-er
causalgia	kaw-ZAL-jah
collagen	KOL-ah-jen
cuticle	KU-tih-kul
dermabrasion	der-mah-BRA-zhun
dermatitis	der-mah-TI-tis
dermatologist	der-mah-TOL-o-jist
dermatophytosis	der-mah-to-fi-TO-sis
dermis	DER-mis
diaphoresis	di-ah-for-E-sis
eccrine sweat gland	EK-rin swet gland
electrocautery	eh-lek-tro-KAW-ter-e
epidermis	ep-ih-DER-mis
epidermoid	ep-ih-DER-moyd
epidermolysis	ep-ih-der-MOL-ih-sis
epithelium	ep-ih-THEEL-e-um
erythema	eh-rih-THE-mah
erythematous	eh-rih-THE-mah-tus
hair follicle	hair FOL-ih-kul
hypertrichosis	hi-per-trih-KO-sis
ichthyosis	ik-the-O-sis
integumentary system	in-teg-u-MEN-tair-e SIS-tem
keratin	KER-ah-tin
keratosis	ker-ah-TO-sis
leukoplakia	lu-ko-PLA-ke-ah
lipoma	li-PO-mah
liposuction	li-po-SUK-shun
lunula	LU-nu-lah
melanin	MEL-ah-nin
melanocyte	me-LAN-o-site
mycosis	mi-KO-sis
onycholysis	on-ih-KOL-ih-sis
onychomycosis	on-ih-ko-mi-KO-sis
paronychia	par-o-NIK-e-ah
paronychium	par-on-NIK-e-um

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
pilosebaceous	pi-lo-seh-BA-shus
pore	por
pyoderma	pi-o-DER-mah
rhytidectomy	rih-tih-DEK-to-me
sebaceous gland	se-BA-shus gland
seborrhea	seb-o-RE-ah
seborrheic dermatitis	seb-o-RE-ik der-mah-TI-tis
sebum	SE-bum
squamous epithelium	SKWA-mus ep-ih-THE-le-um
stratified	STRAH-tih-fide
stratum corneum	STRAH-tum KOR-ne-um
stratum; *pl.* strata	STRAH-tum; STRAT-ah
subcutaneous layer	sub-ku-TA-ne-us LA-er
subungual	sub-UNG-wal
xanthoma	zan-THO-mah
xerosis	zer-O-sis

Pathology; Laboratory Tests and Clinical Procedures

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
abscess	AB-ses
acne	AK-ne
alopecia areata	al-o-PE-she-ah ar-e-AT-ah
atopic dermatitis	a-TOP-ik der-mah-TI-tis
bacterial analyses	bak-TE-re-al ah-NAL-ih-seez
basal cell carcinoma	BA-sal sel kar-sih-NO-mah
bulla; *pl.* bullae	BUL-ah; BUL-e
burns	burnz
callus	KAL-us
cellulitis	sel-u-LI-tis
cicatrix	SIK-ah-triks
comedo; *pl.* comedones	KO-me-do; ko-me-DOHNZ
crust	krust
cryosurgery	kri-o-SUR-jer-e
curettage	ku-re-TAJ
cyst	sist
decubitus ulcer	de-KU-bih-tus UL-ser
dysplastic nevi	dis-PLAS-tik NE-vi
ecchymosis; *pl.* ecchymoses	ek-ih-MO-sis; ek-ih-MO-seez
eczema	EK-zem-ah
electrodesiccation	eh-lek-tro-deh-si-KA-shun
erosion	eh-RO-zhun
exanthematous viral disease	eg-zan-THEM-ah-tus VI-ral dih-ZEEZ
fissure	FISH-ur
fungal tests	FUNG-al tests
gangrene	gang-GREEN
impetigo	im-peh-TI-go
Kaposi sarcoma	KAH-po-se sar-KO-mah
keloid	KE-loyd
macule	MAK-ule
malignant melanoma	mah-LIG-nant mel-ah-NO-mah
Mohs surgery	mohz SUR-jer-e
nevus; *pl.* nevi	NE-vus; NE-vi
nodule	NOD-ule
papule	PAP-ul
petechia; *pl.* petechiae	peh-TE-ke-ah; peh-TE-ke-i
pilonidal cyst	pi-lo-NI-dal sist
pruritus	pru-RI-tus
psoriasis	so-RI-ah-sis
purpura	PUR-pur-ah

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
purulent	PU-ru-lent
pustule	PUS-tule
rubella	ru-BEL-ah
rubeola	ru-be-O-lah
scabies	SKA-beez
scleroderma	skleh-ro-DER-mah
skin biopsy	skin BI-op-se
skin test	skin test
squamous cell carcinoma	SKWA-mus sel kar-sih-NO-mah
systemic lupus erythematosis	sis-TEM-ik LU-pus eh-rith-eh-mah-TO-sus
tinea	TIN-e-ah
ulcer	UL-ser
urticaria	ur-tih-KA-re-ah
varicella	var-ih-SEL-ah
verruca; *pl.* verrucae	veh-RU-kah; veh-RU-ke
vesicle	VES-ih-kl
vitiligo	vit-ih-LI-go
wheal	weel

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of the word parts in the spaces provided, and test yourself. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
adip/o	_____
albin/o	_____
caus/o	_____
cauter/o	_____
cutane/o	_____
derm/o	_____
dermat/o	_____
diaphor/o	_____
erythem/o	_____
erythemat/o	_____
hidr/o	_____
hydr/o	_____
ichthy/o	_____
kerat/o	_____
leuk/o	_____
lip/o	_____
melan/o	_____
myc/o	_____
onych/o	_____
phyt/o	_____
pil/o	_____
py/o	_____
rhytid/o	_____
seb/o	_____
sebace/o	_____
squam/o	_____
trich/o	_____
ungu/o	_____
xanth/o	_____
xer/o	_____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-algia	_____
-derma	_____
-esis	_____
-lysis	_____
-ose	_____
-osis	_____
-ous	_____
-plakia	_____
-plasty	_____
-rrhea	_____

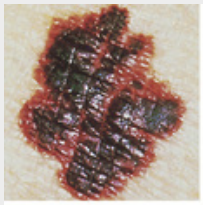
Give combining forms for the following (first letters are given).

fat	a _____ l _____	sweatyellow	d _____ h _____ x _____
white	a _____	dry	x _____
	l _____	dry, scaly (fish-like)	i _____
skin	c _____	redness	e _____
	d _____		e _____
nail	o _____	hard	k _____
	u _____	heat, burn	c _____
hair	p _____	black	m _____
	t _____	fungus	m _____
plant	p _____		

Identify the following skin conditions shown in the accompanying figure:

A._____

B. _____



C. _____

D. _____

E. _____

F. _____

G. _____

H. _____

I. _____

CHAPTER 17

Sense Organs

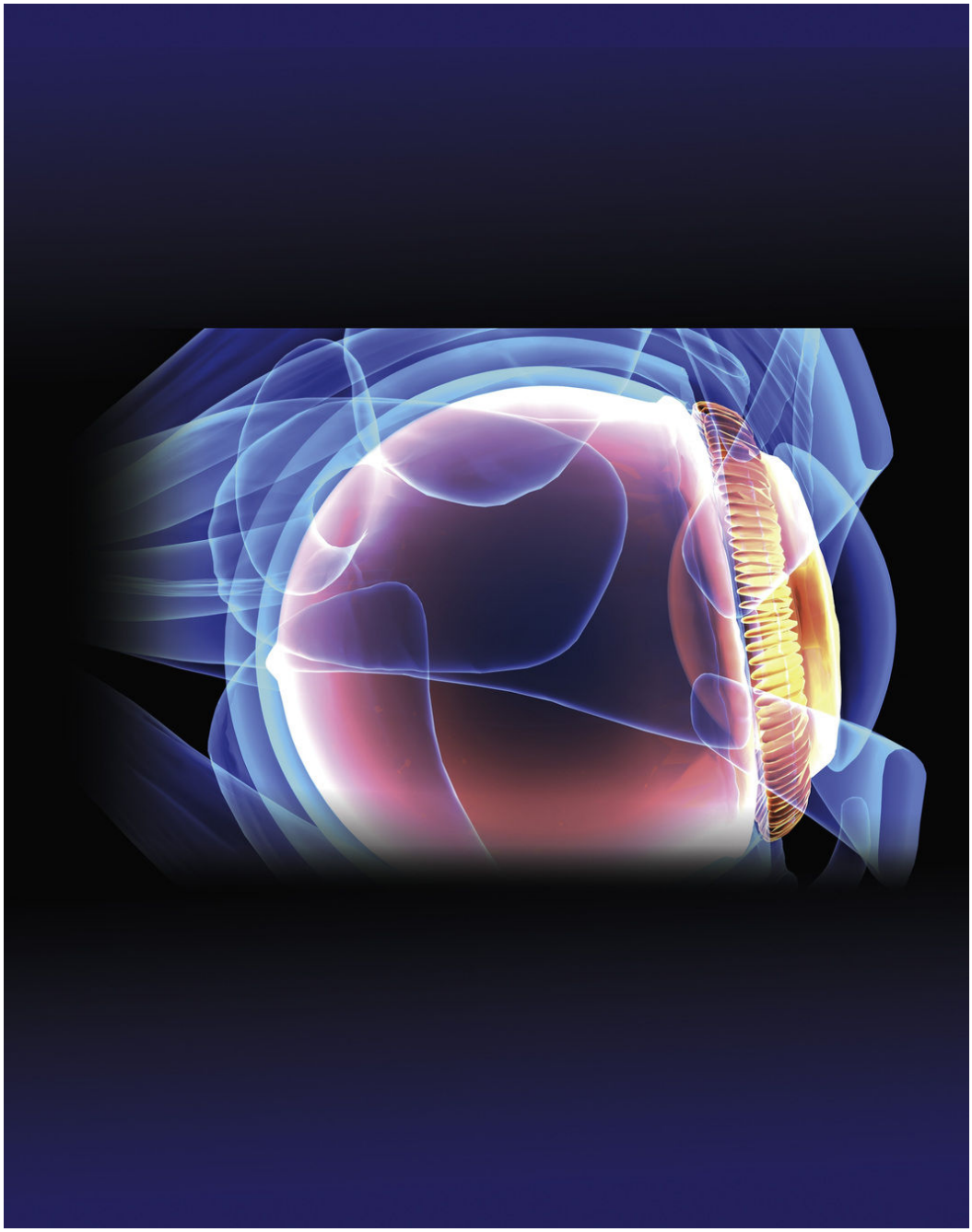
The Eye and the Ear

CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 650
The Eye 650
Vocabulary 654
Terminology 656
Errors of Refraction 660
Pathology 662
Clinical Procedures 666
Abbreviations 670
The Ear 670
Vocabulary 673
Terminology 674
Pathology 676
Clinical Procedures 678
Abbreviations 679
In Person: Retinal Tear 680
Practical Applications 681
Exercises 682
Answers to Exercises 691
Pronunciation of Terms 694
Review Sheet 697

CHAPTER GOALS

- Identify locations and functions of the major parts of the eye and the ear.
- Name the combining forms, prefixes, and suffixes most commonly used to describe these organs and their parts.
- Describe the abnormal conditions that may affect the eye and the ear.
- Identify clinical procedures that pertain to ophthalmology and otology.
- Apply your new knowledge to understanding medical terms in their proper contexts, such as medical reports and records.



Introduction

The **eye** and the **ear** are sense organs, like the skin, taste buds, and **olfactory** (centers of smell in the nose) regions. As such, they are receptors whose sensitive cells may be activated by a particular form of energy or stimulus in the external or internal environment. The sensitive cells in the eye and ear respond to the

stimulus by initiating a series of nerve impulses along sensory nerve fibers that lead to the brain.

No matter what stimulus affects a particular receptor, the resulting sensation is determined by regions in the brain connected to that receptor. Thus, mechanical injury that stimulates receptor cells in the eye and the ear may produce sensations of vision (flashes of light) and sound (ringing in the ears). If a workable connection could be made between the sensitive receptor cells of the ear and the area in the brain associated with sight, it would be possible to "see" sounds.

Figure 17-1 reviews the general pattern of events that occur when such stimuli as light and sound are received by sense organs such as the eye and the ear.

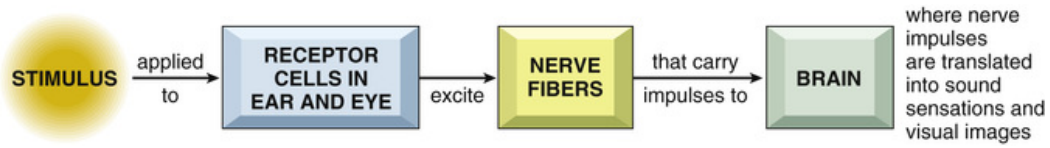


FIGURE 17-1 Pattern of events in the stimulation of a sense organ.

The Eye

Anatomy and Physiology

Label Figure 17-2 as you read the following:

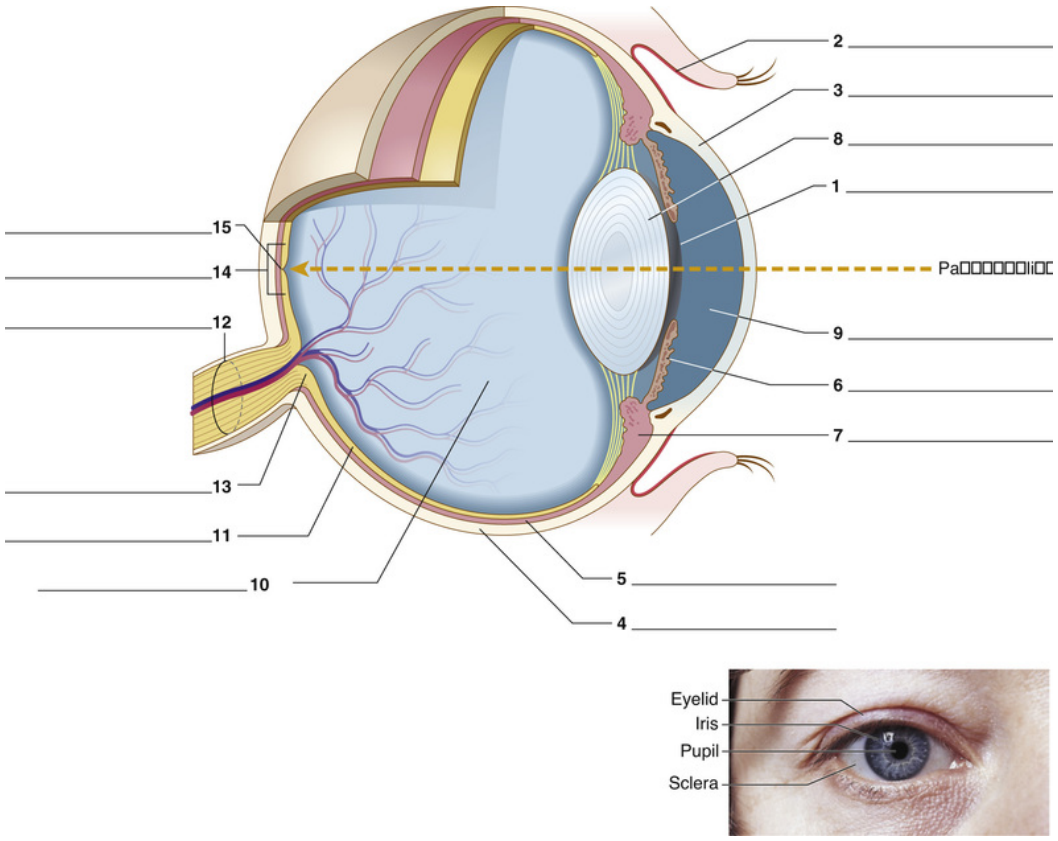


FIGURE 17-2 The structure of the eye.

Light rays enter the central dark opening of the eye, the **pupil** [1], which is surrounded by the colored portion of the eye, or **iris** (see the photo inset). The **conjunctiva** [2] is a membrane lining the inner surfaces of the eyelids and anterior portion of the eyeball over the white of the eye. The conjunctiva is clear and almost colorless except when blood vessels are dilated. Dust and smoke may cause the blood vessels to dilate, giving the conjunctiva a reddish appearance—commonly known as bloodshot eyes. Also, the same blood vessels may dilate when the eye is infected or inflamed by allergies. This condition is known as conjunctivitis.

Before entering the eye through the pupil, light passes through the **cornea** [3]. The cornea is a fibrous, transparent tissue that extends like a dome over the pupil and iris. The function of the cornea is to bend, or **refract,** the rays of light so they are focused properly on the sensitive receptor cells in the posterior region of the eye. The normal, healthy cornea is avascular (has no blood vessels) but receives nourishment from blood vessels near its junction with the opaque white of the eye, the **sclera** [4]. Corneal transplants for people with scarred or opaque corneas are often successful because antibodies responsible for rejection of foreign tissue usually do not reach the avascular, transplanted corneal tissue. The sclera is a fibrous layer under the conjunctiva. It extends from the cornea on the anterior surface of the eyeball to the optic nerve in the posterior of the eye.

The **choroid** [5] is a dark brown membrane inside the sclera. It contains many blood vessels that supply nutrients to the eye. The choroid is continuous with the pigment-containing **iris** [6] and the **ciliary body** [7] in the anterior portion of the eye. The choroid, iris, and ciliary body are known as the **uvea** of the eye.

The iris is the colored portion of the eye (it can appear blue, green, hazel, gray, or brown), which has a circular opening in the center that forms the pupil. Muscles of the iris constrict the pupil in bright light and dilate the pupil in dim light, thereby regulating the amount of light entering the eye.

The ciliary body surrounds the outer rim of the **lens** [8] in circular fashion for a full 360 degrees. There are fine, thread-like attachments (zonules) that connect the ciliary body to the lens, allowing the muscles in the ciliary body to adjust the shape and thickness of the lens. These changes in the shape of the lens cause **refraction** of light rays. Refraction is the bending of rays as they pass through the cornea, lens, and other tissues. Muscles of the ciliary body produce flattening of the lens (for distant vision) and thickening and rounding of the lens (for close vision). This refractory adjustment to focus on an object from far to near is called **accommodation.** When people get older, their eyes' ability to accommodate decreases, so they may need magnifying glasses to see close objects and to read.

Besides regulating the shape of the lens, the ciliary body also secretes a fluid called **aqueous humor,** which is found in the **anterior chamber** [9] of the eye. Aqueous humor maintains the shape of the anterior portion of the eye and nourishes the structures in that region. The fluid is constantly produced and leaves the eye through a canal that carries it into the bloodstream. The posterior cavity of the eye is the **vitreous chamber,** which is the large region behind the lens filled with a soft, jelly-like material, the **vitreous humor** [10]. Vitreous humor (often referred to as the vitrous) maintains the shape of the eyeball and is not constantly re-formed. Its escape (due to trauma or surgical damage) may result in significant damage to the eye, leading to possible retinal damage and blindness. Both the aqueous and the vitreous humors further refract light rays.

The **retina** [11] is the thin, delicate, and sensitive nerve layer of the eye. As light energy, in the form of waves, travels through the eye, it is refracted (by the cornea, lens, and fluids), so that it focuses on sensitive receptor cells of the retina called the **rods** and **cones.** There are approximately 6.5 million cones and 120 million rods in the retina. The cones function in bright levels of light and are responsible for color and central vision. There are three types of cones, each stimulated by one of the primary colors in light (red, green, or blue). Most cases of color blindness affect either the green or the red receptors, so that the two colors cannot be distinguished from each other. Rods function at reduced levels of light and are responsible for peripheral vision and vision in dim light.

When light rays are focused on the retina, a chemical change occurs in the rods and cones, initiating nerve impulses that then travel from the eye to the brain via the **optic nerve** [12]. The region in the eye where the optic nerve meets the retina is called the **optic disc** [13]. Because there are no light receptor cells in the optic disc, it is known as the blind spot of the eye. The **macula** [14] is a small, oval area of the

retina adjacent to the optic disc. It contains a central depression called the **fovea centralis** [15], which is composed largely of cones and is the location of the sharpest vision in the eye. If a portion of the fovea or macula is damaged, vision is reduced and central-vision blindness occurs. Figure 17-3 shows the retina of a normal eye as seen through an ophthalmoscope. The **fundus** of the eye is this posterior, inner part that is visualized through the ophthalmoscope.

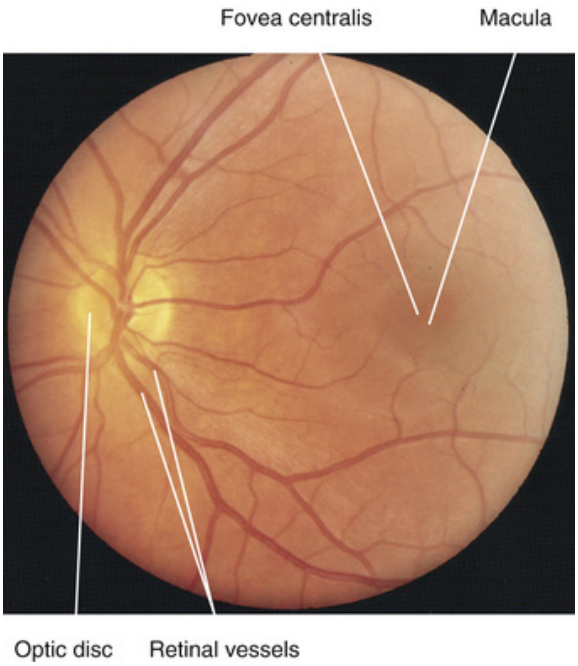


FIGURE 17-3 **The posterior, inner part (fundus) of the eye,** showing the retina as seen through an ophthalmoscope.

Figure 17-4 illustrates what happens when you look at an object and "see" it. If an object is in your **left visual field** (purple area), sensitive cells—rods and cones—in the **right** half of each **retina** (labeled A in the figure) are stimulated. Similarly, if an object is in your **right visual field** (orange color), rods and cones are stimulated in the left half of each retina. Nervous impulses then travel along optic nerve fibers from each retina and then merge to form the **optic chiasm** (B). Here, medial optic nerve fibers cross and temporal fibers do not. Thus, fibers from the right half of each retina (purple color) form an **optic tract** (C) leading, via the **thalamus** (relay center), to the **right visual cerebral cortex** (D). Similarly, fibers from the left half of each retina (orange color) form an optic tract leading to the **left visual cerebral cortex** (D). Images (one from each eye) are then fused in the occipital lobe of the brain, producing a single visual sensation with the three-dimensional effect. This is **binocular vision.**

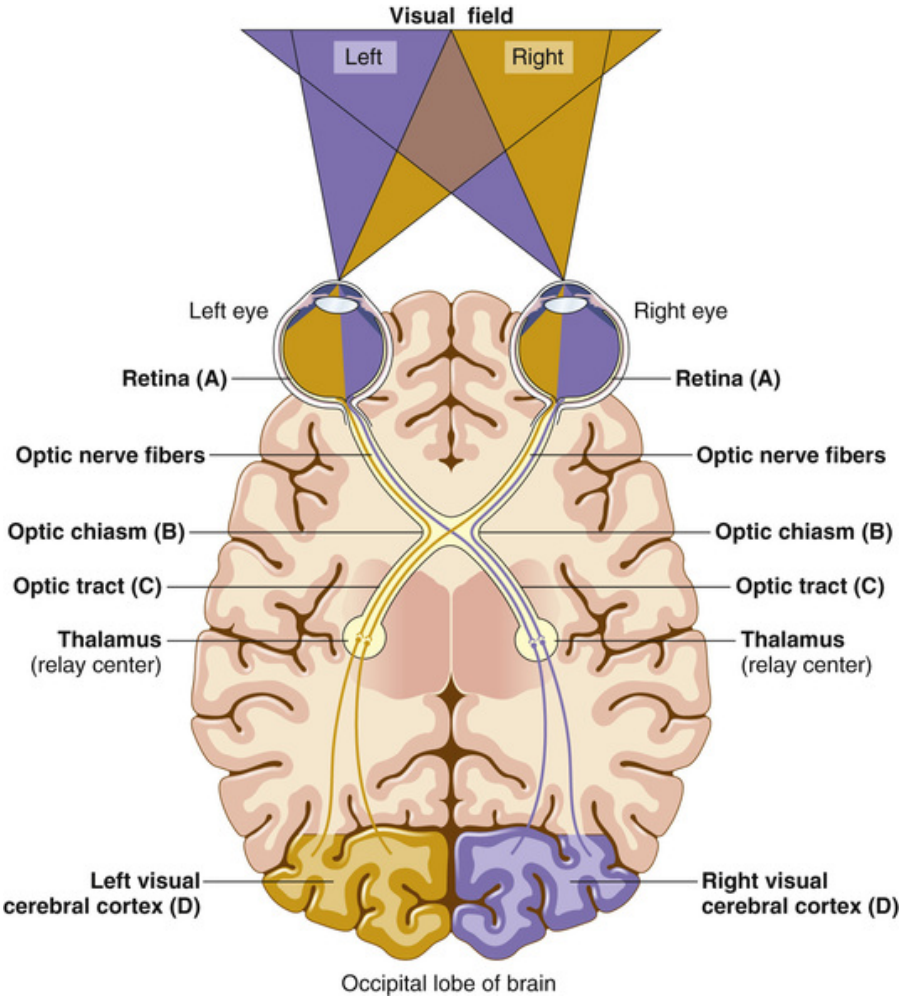


FIGURE 17-4 Visual pathway from the retina *(A)* to the visual cerebral cortex *(D)* (occipital lobe of the brain). Objects in the left visual field are "seen" by the right side of the brain, whereas objects in the right visual field are projected into the left visual cerebral cortex.

Brain damage to nerve cells in the right visual cerebral cortex (such as in a stroke) causes loss of vision in the left visual field (purple), whereas damage in the left cerebral cortex causes loss of vision in the right visual field (gold). This loss of vision, which occurs in both eyes, on the contralateral (opposite side) visual field is called **hemianopsia** (**hemi-** means half, **an-** means without, **-opsia** means vision). In the right eye, the loss is in the left nasal visual field, and in the left eye, the loss is in the left temporal visual field.

Figure 17-5 reviews the pathway of light rays from the cornea to the cerebral cortex of the brain.

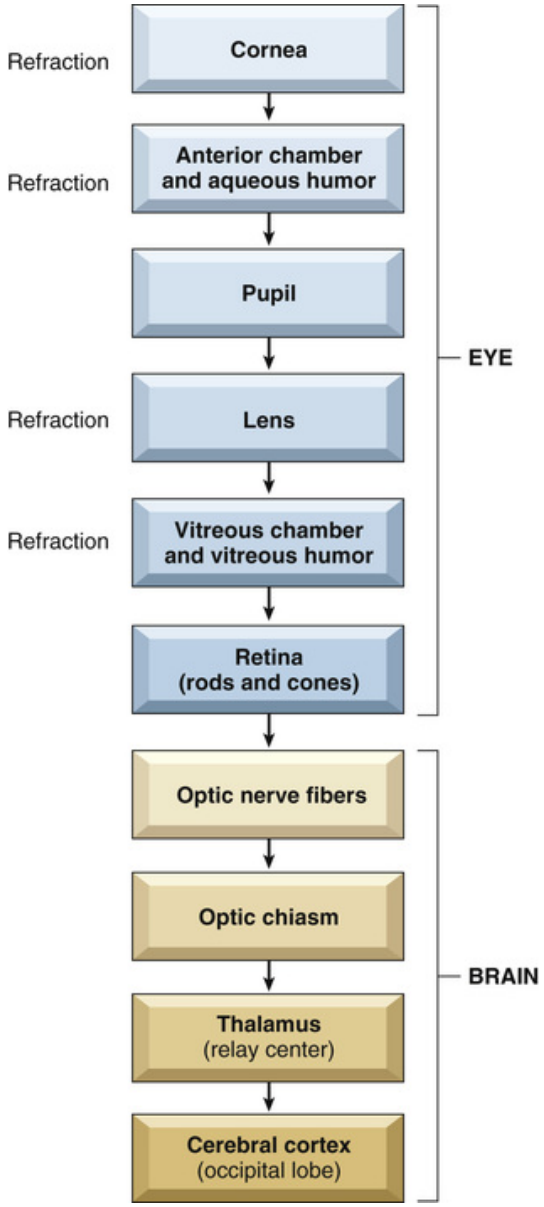


FIGURE 17-5 Pathway of light rays from the cornea of the eye to the cerebral cortex of the brain.

Vocabulary—The Eye

This list reviews many new terms relating to the eye introduced in the text. Short definitions reinforce your understanding of the terms. Refer to the Pronunciation of Terms on page 694 for help with unfamiliar or difficult words.

accommodation	Normal adjustment of the eye to focus on objects from far to near. When this occurs, the ciliary body adjusts the lens (rounding it) and the pupil constricts. When the eye focuses from near to far, the ciliary body flattens the lens and the pupil dilates.
anterior chamber	Area behind the cornea and in front of the lens and iris. It contains aqueous humor.
aqueous humor	Fluid produced by the ciliary body and found in the anterior chamber. A humor (Latin *humidus* means moist) is any body fluid, including blood and lymph.
biconvex	Consisting of two surfaces that are rounded, elevated, and curved evenly, like part of a sphere. The lens of the eye is a biconvex body.
choroid	Middle, vascular layer of the eye, between the retina and the sclera.
ciliary body	Structure surrounding the lens that connects the iris to the choriod. It contains ciliary muscles, which control the shape of the lens, and it secretes aqueous humor.
cone	Photoreceptor cell in the retina that transforms light energy into a nerve impulse. Cones are responsible for color and central vision.
conjunctiva	Delicate membrane lining the eyelids and covering the eyeball up to the cornea.
cornea	Fibrous transparent layer of clear tissue that extends over the anterior portion of the eyeball. Derived from Latin *corneus*, meaning horny, perhaps because as it protrudes outward, it was thought to resemble a horn.
fovea centralis	Tiny pit or depression in the retina that is the region of clearest vision.
fundus of the eye	Posterior, inner part of the eye; visualized with an ophthalmoscope.
iris	Pigmented (colored) layer that opens and closes to allow more or less light into the eye. The central opening of the iris is the pupil.
lens	Transparent, biconvex body behind the pupil of the eye. It bends (refracts) light rays to bring them into focus on the retina.
macula	Small oval region on the retina near the optic disc; contains the fovea centralis, which is the area clearest vision.
optic chiasm	Point at which optic nerve fibers cross in the brain (Latin *chiasma* means crossing).
optic disc	Region at the back of the eye where the optic nerve meets the retina. It is the blind spot of the eye because it contains only nerve fibers, no rods or cones, and is thus insensitive to light.

optic nerve	Cranial nerve carrying impulses from the retina to the brain (cerebral cortex).
pupil	Central opening of the eye, surrounded by the iris, through which light rays pass. It appears dark.
refraction	Bending of light rays by the cornea, lens, and fluids of the eye to bring the rays into focus on the retina. Refract means to break (-fract) back (re-).
retina	Light-sensitive nerve cell layer of the eye containing photoreceptor cells (rods and cones).
rod	Photoreceptor cell of the retina essential for vision in low light and for peripheral vision.
sclera	Tough, white outer coat of the eyeball.
thalamus	Relay center of the brain. Optic nerve fibers pass through the thalamus on their way to the cerebral cortex.
vitreous humor	Soft, jelly-like material behind the lens in the vitreous chamber; helps maintain the shape of the eyeball. Often referred to as the vitreous.

Terminology—The Eye

Write the meanings of the medical terms relating to the eye in the spaces provided.

Combining Forms: Structures and Fluids

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
aque/o	water	aqueous humor _____
blephar/o	eyelid (*see* **palpebr/o**)	blepharitis _____ *See Figure 17-6A.* blepharoptosis _____ *Pronounced (blef-ah-rop-TO-sis). Also called* ***ptosis.*** *This condition may be caused by abnormalities of the eyelid muscle or by nerve damage.*
conjunctiv/o	conjunctiva	conjunctivitis _____ *Commonly called* ***pinkeye*** *(Figure 17-6B). Conjunctivitis occurs when blood vessels dilate from allergens like pollen (allergic conjunctivitis), bacterial infection (bacterial conjunctivitis), or virus (viral conjunctivitis).*
cor/o	pupil (*see* **pupill/o**)	anisocoria _____ *Anis/o means unequal. Anisocoria may be an indication of neurologic injury or disease (Figure 17-7A).*
corne/o	cornea (*see* **kerat/o**)	corneal abrasion _____
cycl/o	ciliary body or muscle of the eye	cycloplegic _____
dacry/o	tears, tear duct (*see* **lacrim/o**)	dacryoadenitis _____ Figure 17-7B *shows the lacrimal gland and lacrimal ducts.*
ir/o, irid/o	iris (colored portion of the eye around the pupil)	iritis _____ *Characterized by pain, sensitivity to light, and lacrimation. A corticosteroid is prescribed to reduce inflammation.* iridic _____ iridectomy _____ *A portion of the iris is removed to improve drainage of aqueous humor or to extract a foreign body.*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
kerat/o	cornea	keratitis _____ *Note that kerat/o here does not refer to keratin (protein in skin tissue).*	
lacrim/o	tears	lacrimal _____ lacrimation _____	
ocul/o	eye	intraocular _____	
ophthalm/o	eye	ophthalmologist _____ *Medical doctor who specializes in treating disorders of the eye.* ophthalmic _____ ophthalmoplegia _____	
opt/o, optic/o	eye, vision	optic _____ optometrist _____ *Nonmedical professional who can examine eyes to determine vision problems and prescribe lenses; a doctor of optometry (O.D.).* optician _____ *Nonmedical professional who grinds lenses and fits glasses but cannot prescribe lenses.*	
palpebr/o	eyelid	palpebral _____	
papill/o	optic disc; nipple-like	papilledema _____ *The suffix -edema means swelling. This condition is associated with increased intracranial pressure and hyperemia (increased blood flow) in the region of the optic disc.*	

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
phac/o, phak/o	lens of the eye	phacoemulsification _____ *Technique of cataract extraction using ultrasonic vibrations to fragment (emulsify) the lens and aspirate the pieces from the eye.* aphakia _____ *This condition may be congenital, but most often it is the result of extraction of a cataract (clouded lens) without placement of an artificial lens (pseudophakia).*
pupill/o	pupil	pupillary _____
retin/o	retina	retinitis _____ ***Retinitis pigmentosa*** *is a genetic disorder (pigmented scar forms on the retina) that destroys retinal rods. Decreased vision and night blindness (nyctalopia) occur.* hypertensive retinopathy _____ *Changes such as narrowing of arterioles, microaneurysms, hemorrhages, and* ***exudates*** *(fluid leakage) are found on examination of the fundus.*
scler/o	sclera (white of the eye); hard	corneoscleral _____ scleritis _____
uve/o	uvea; vascular layer of the eye (iris, ciliary body, and choroid)	uveitis _____
vitre/o	glassy	intravitreal _____ *Intravitreal injections are a method of treatment for ophthalmologic conditions such as diabetic retinopathy and macular degeneration.*

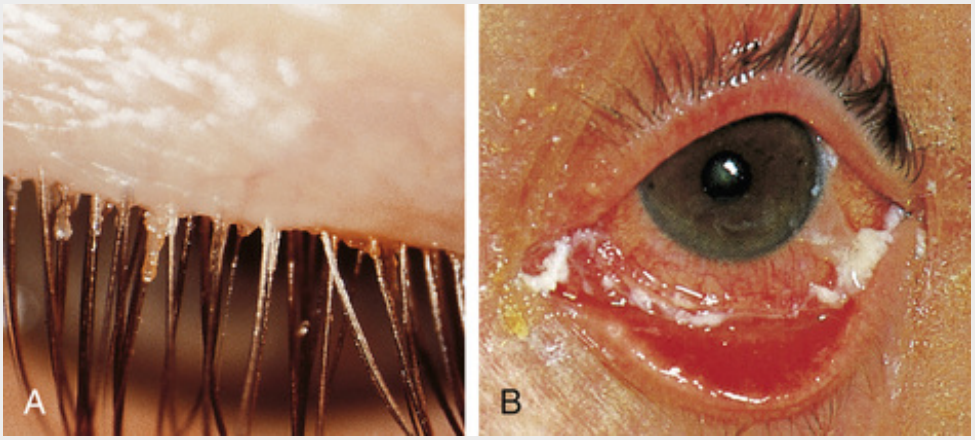


FIGURE 17-6 **A, Blepharitis.** Notice the crusting on the eyelid and eyelashes. **B, Acute bacterial conjunctivitis.** Notice the discharge of pus characteristic of this highly contagious infection of the conjunctiva.

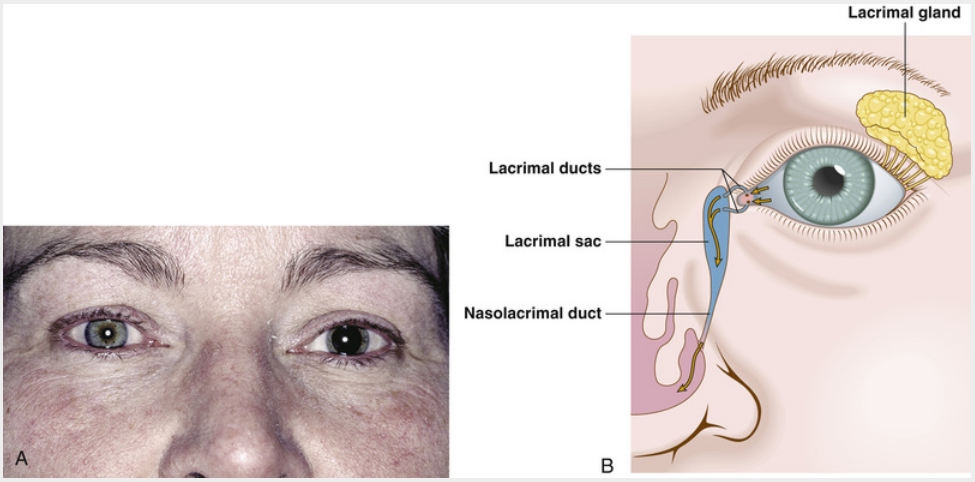


FIGURE 17-7 A, Anisocoria. B, Lacrimal (tear) gland and ducts.

Combining Forms: Conditions

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
ambly/o	dull, dim	amblyopia _____ *The suffix -opia means vision. Amblyopia is decreased visual acuity often in a single eye and appearing in children. It can occur from misalignment of the eyes, such as with strabismus, and it is known as a "lazy eye."*
dipl/o	double	diplopia _____
glauc/o	gray	glaucoma _____ *Here, -oma means mass or collection of fluid (aqueous humor). The term comes from the dull gray-green color of the affected eye in advanced cases. See page 663.*
mi/o	smaller, less	miosis _____ *Contraction of the pupil. A **miotic** is a drug (such as pilocarpine) that causes the pupil to contract.*
mydr/o	widen, enlarge	mydriasis _____ *Enlargement of pupils. Tropicamide, atropine, and cocaine cause dilation, or enlargement, of pupils.*
nyct/o	night	nyctalopia _____ *-opia means vision; -al comes from Greek* ala, *meaning blindness. Night blindness is poor vision at night but good vision on bright days. Deficiency of vitamin A leads to nyctalopia.*
phot/o	light	photophobia _____ *Sensitivity to light.*
presby/o	old age	presbyopia _____ *See page 661.*
scot/o	darkness	scotoma _____ *Area of decreased vision surrounded by an area of normal vision; a blind spot. This can result from damage to the retina or the optic nerve.*
xer/o	dry	xerophthalmia _____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-opia	vision	hyperopia _____ *Hypermetropia (farsightedness).*	
-opsia	vision	hemianopsia _____ *Absence of vision in half of the visual field (space of vision of each eye). Stroke victims frequently have damage to the brain on one side of the visual cortex and experience hemianopsia (the visual loss is in the right or the left visual field of both eyes).*	
-tropia	to turn	esotropia _____ *Inward (eso-) turning of an eye.* ***Exotropia*** *is an outward turning of an eye. These conditions are examples of* ***strabismus*** *(defect in eye muscles so that both eyes cannot be focused on the same point at the same time).*	

Palpebral/Palpable

Don't confuse *palpebral* with *palpable,* which means detectable or distinguishable by touch.

scler/o

The combining form scler/o also means hard, as in **scler**oderma (a hardening and thickening of the skin) and arterio**scler**osis (hardening of arteries with collection of plaque).

Errors of Refraction

astigmatism	**Defective curvature of the cornea or lens of the eye.** This problem results from one or more abnormal curvatures of the cornea or lens. This causes light rays to be unevenly and not sharply focused on the retina, so that the image is distorted. A cylindrical lens placed in the proper position in front of the eye (in glasses) corrects this problem (Figure 17-8A).
hyperopia (hypermetropia)	**Farsightedness.** As Figure 17-8B illustrates, the eyeball in this condition is too short (front to back) or the refractive power of the lens is too weak. Parallel rays of light tend to focus behind the retina, which results in a blurred image. A convex lens (thicker in the middle than at the sides) bends the rays inward before they reach the cornea, and thus the rays can be focused properly on the retina.
myopia	**Nearsightedness.** In myopia the eyeball is too long (front to back) or the refractive power of the lens so strong that light rays do not properly focus on the retina. The image perceived is blurred because the light rays are focused in front of the retina. Concave glasses (thicker at the periphery than in the middle) correct this condition because the lenses spread the rays out before they reach the cornea, so that they can be properly focused directly on the retina (Figure 17-8C).
presbyopia	**Impairment of vision as a result of old age.** With increasing age, loss of elasticity of the ciliary body impairs its ability to adjust the lens for accommodation to near vision. The lens of the eye cannot thicken to bend the rays coming from near objects (less than 20 feet away). The light rays focus *behind* the retina, as in hyperopia. Therefore, a convex lens is needed to refract the rays coming from objects closer than 20 feet.

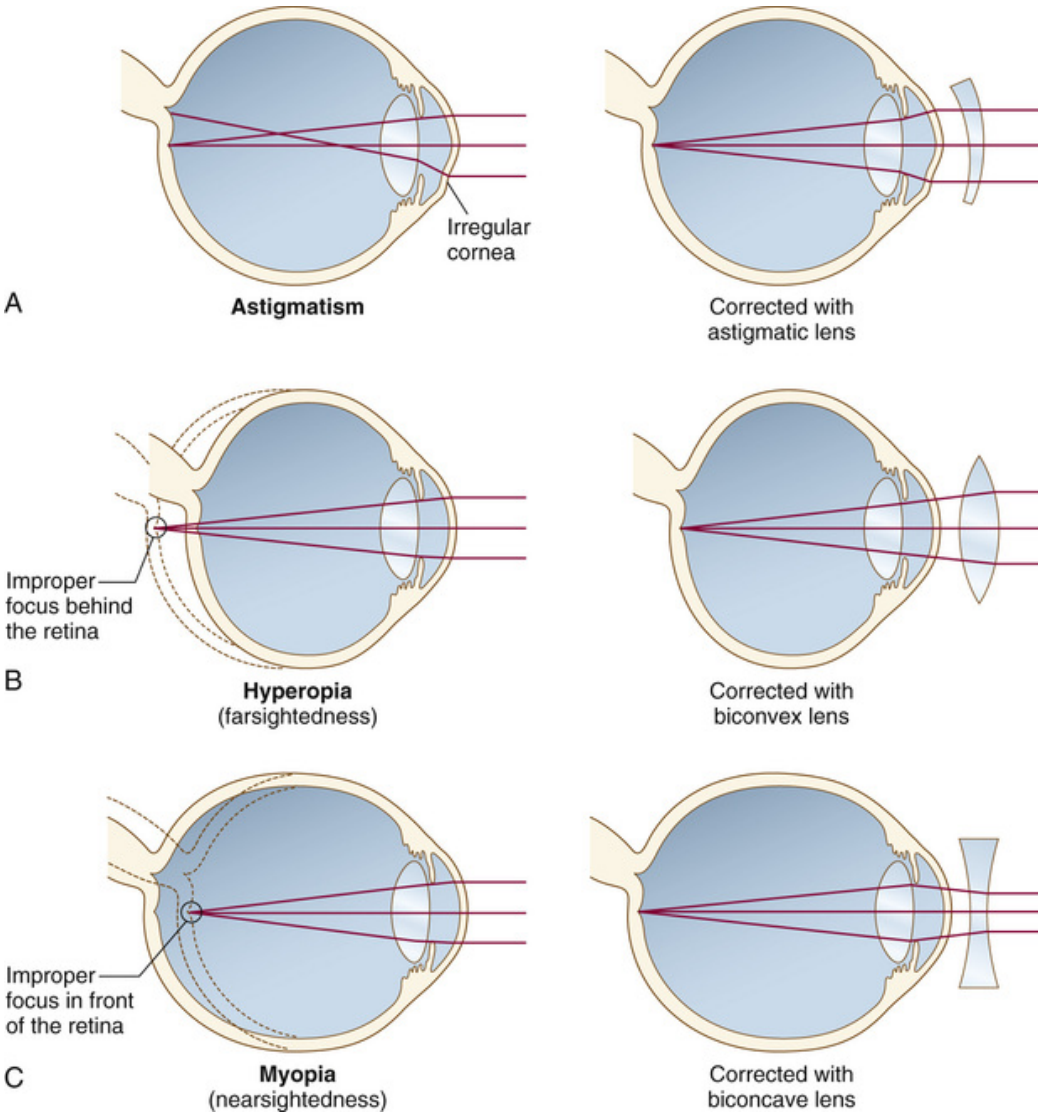


FIGURE 17-8 **Errors of refraction. A, Astigmatism** and its correction. **B, Hyperopia** and its correction. **C, Myopia** and its correction. *Dashed lines* in **B** and **C** indicate the contour and size of the normal eye.

Myopia/Miotic

In myopia, my- comes from Greek *myein,* meaning to shut, referring to the observation that myopic persons frequently peer through half-closed eyelids. Don't confuse **myopia** with **miotic,** which is a drug that contracts the pupil of the eye.

Pathology—the Eye

cataract	**Clouding of the lens, causing decreased vision** (Figure 17-9A). A cataract is a type of degenerative eye disease (protein in the lens aggregates and clouds vision) and is linked to the process of aging (senile cataracts). Some cataracts, however, are present at birth, and others occur with diabetes mellitus, ocular trauma, and prolonged high-dose corticosteroid administration. Vision appears blurred as the lens clouds over and becomes opaque. Lens cloudiness can be seen using an ophthalmoscope or with the naked eye. Surgical removal of the lens with implantation of an artificial lens behind the iris (the preferred position) is the method of treatment. If an intraocular lens cannot be inserted, the patient may wear eyeglasses or contact lenses to help refraction and correct vision.
chalazion	**Small, hard, cystic mass (granuloma) on the eyelid.** Chalazions (kah-LA-ze-onz) are formed as a result of chronic inflammation of a sebaceous gland (meibomian gland) along the margin of the eyelid (Figure 17-9B). Treatment often requires incision and drainage.
diabetic retinopathy	**Disease of the retina caused by diabetes mellitus.** Retinal effects include microaneurysms, hemorrhages, dilation of retinal veins, and neovascularization (new blood vessels) in the retina. **Macular edema** occurs as fluid leaks from blood vessels into the retina and vision is blurred. **Exudates** (fluid leaking from the blood) appear in the retina as yellow-white spots. Laser photocoagulation is helpful for patients in whom hemorrhaging on the retina has been severe. Also, vitrectomy is done to remove nonresolving hemorrhage into the vitreous jelly. The latest treatment for diabetic macular edema involves injecting medications into the vitreous jelly. Anti-angiogenic drugs, such as Avastin, promote regression of abnormal blood vessels, are used to decrease fluid leakage and neovascularization. Intravitreal steroids are helpful in treating the swelling caused by diabetic macular edema.
glaucoma	**Increased intraocular pressure results in damage to the retina and optic nerve with loss of vision.** Intraocular pressure is elevated because of the inability of aqueous humor to drain from the eye and enter the bloodstream. Normally, aqueous humor is formed by the ciliary body, flows into the anterior chamber, and leaves the eye at the angle where the cornea and the iris meet. If fluid

	cannot leave or too much fluid is produced, pressure builds up in the anterior chamber (Figure 17-10). Glaucoma is diagnosed by means of **tonometry** (see page 667), with an instrument applied externally to the eye after administration of local anesthetic. Acute glaucoma is marked by extreme ocular pain, blurred vision, redness of the eye, and dilation of the pupil. If untreated, it causes blindness. Chronic glaucoma may produce no symptoms initially. A patient with glaucoma may experience a gradual loss of peripheral vision, with headaches, blurred vision, and halos around bright lights, or they may experience no symptoms at all. Administration of drugs to lower intraocular pressure can control the condition. Sometimes, laser therapy is used to treat narrow-angle glaucoma by creating a hole in the periphery of the iris (iridotomy), which allows aqueous humor to flow more easily out of the anterior chamber and reduces intraocular pressure. **Trabeculoplasty** (laser therapy) for chronic open-angle glaucoma causes scarring in the drainage angle, improving aqueous humor outflow and reducing intraocular pressure. **Argon laser trabeculoplasty (ALT)** and **selective laser trabeculoplasty (SLT)** are used. SLT, which is as effective as ALT, has become the preferred laser treatment because it causes less scarring and may be repeated every 2 to 3 years if needed.
hordeolum (stye *or* sty)	**Localized, purulent, inflammatory staphylococcal infection of a sebaceous oil-producing gland in the eyelid.** Hot compresses may help localize the infection and promote drainage. In some cases, surgical incision is necessary. In Latin, *hordeolum* (hor-DE-o-lum) means barley. See Table 17-1 for a list of common eyelid abnormalities.
macular degeneration	**Progressive damage to the macula of the retina.** Macular degeneration is one of the leading causes of blindness in the elderly. It causes severe loss of central vision (Figure 17-11). Peripheral vision (using the part of the retina that is outside the macular region) is retained. Macular degeneration occurs in both a "dry" and a "wet" form. The dry form (affecting about 85% of patients) is marked by atrophy and degeneration of retinal cells and deposits of clumps of extracellular debris, or **drusen.** The wet form results from development of new (neovascular) and leaky (exudative) blood vessels close to the macula. Currently there is no standard treatment for the dry form of macular degeneration except attempting to slow the progression of the disease by taking vitamin and mineral

	supplements, and actions such as smoking cessation. Wet macular degeneration may be treated with laser photocoagulation of the leaking vessels and injection of medication into the vitreous jelly that promotes regression of abnormal blood vessels. Unfortunately, in many cases, patients with wet macular
	degeneration have more severe vision loss. Treatment may require injections as frequently as once a month.
nystagmus	**Repetitive rhythmic movements of one or both eyes.** Brain tumors or diseases of the inner ear may cause nystagmus. Nystagmus is occasionally found in newborns and may be congenital.
retinal detachment	**Two layers of the retina separate from each other.** Trauma to the eye, head injuries, bleeding, scarring from infection, or shrinkage of the vitreous humor can produce holes or tears in the retina and result in the separation of layers. Patients often experience **photopsia** (bright flashes of light) and see **floaters** (black spots or filmy shapes), which are vitreous clumps that detach from the retina. Later, they may notice a shadow or curtain falling across the field of vision. In some cases, floaters may be a sign of a retinal hole, tear, or detachment caused by pigmented cells from the damaged retina or bleeding that has occurred as a result of a detachment. See ***In Person: Retinal Tear*** page 680. A macular hole is a small break the macula (central section) of the retina. It may cause blurred and distorted central vision and may be related to aging. Photocoagulation (making pinpoint burns to form scar tissue and seal holes) and cryotherapy (creating a "freezer burn" that forms a scar and knits a tear together) are used to repair smaller retinal tears. For larger retinal detachments, a **scleral buckle** (see page 669) made of silicone is sutured to the sclera directly over the detached portion of the retina to push the two retinal layers together.
strabismus	**Abnormal deviation of the eye.** A failure of the eyes to look in the same direction because of weakness of a muscle controlling the position of one eye (Figure 17-12). Different forms of strabismus include **esotropia** (one eye turns inward; "cross-eyed"), **exotropia** (one eye turns outward; "wall-eye"), **hypertropia** (upward deviation of one eye), and **hypotropia** (downward deviation of one eye). Treatment may include corrective lenses, eye exercises with patching of the normal eye, or surgery to restore muscle balance. Medication in the form of eye drops to

	blur the better-seeing eye can also work to strengthen the weaker eye. In children, strabismus may lead to **amblyopia** (partial loss of vision from "lazy eye"). Amblyopia is reversible until the retina is fully developed, at the age of 7 to 10 years. When strabismus develops in an adult, **diplopia** (double vision) is a common problem.

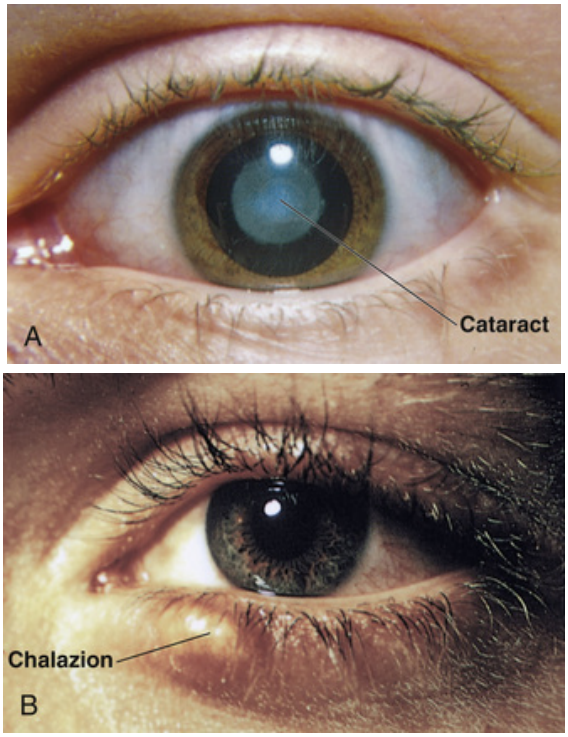


FIGURE 17-9 **A, Cataract.** The lens appears cloudy. **B, Chalazion.** (**A,** Courtesy Ophthalmic Photography at the University of Michigan, WK Kellogg Eye Center, Ann Arbor. From Black JM, Hawks JH: Medical-Surgical Nursing: Clinical Management for Positive Outcomes, 7th ed., Philadelphia, Saunders, 2005. **B,** Courtesy Ophthalmic Photography at the University of Michigan, WK Kellogg Eye Center, Ann Arbor. From Black JM, Hawks JH, Keene AM: Medical-Surgical Nursing, 5th ed., Philadelphia, Saunders, 1997.)

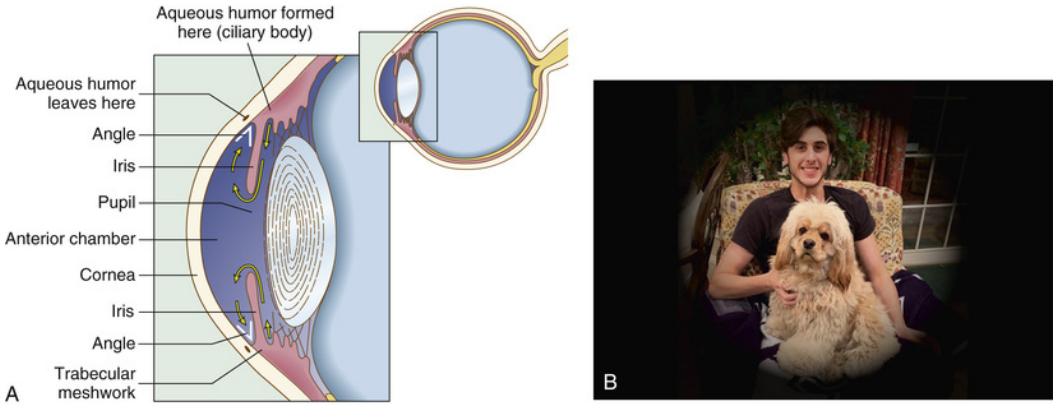


FIGURE 17-10 A, Glaucoma and circulation of aqueous humor. Circulation is impaired in glaucoma, so that aqueous fluid builds up in the anterior chamber, with consequent increase in intraocular pressure. The most common type of glaucoma is **open-angle glaucoma,** in which the chamber angles are open but the underlying problem is resistance to the flow of aqueous humor or too much aqueous production. **B, How a person with glaucoma sees an image.** Damage to the optic nerve usually starts as loss of peripheral vision. (**B,** Courtesy Solomon J. Thompson.)

TABLE 17-1

EYELID ABNORMALITIES

LESION/ABNORMALITY	DESCRIPTION
Blepharitis	Inflammation of eyelid, causing redness, crusting, and swelling along lid margins
Chalazion	Granuloma formed around an inflamed sebaceous gland
Dacryocystitis	Blockage, inflammation, and infection of a nasolacrimal duct and lacrimal sac, causing redness and swelling in the region between the nose and the lower lid
Ectropion	Outward sagging and eversion of the eyelid, leading to improper lacrimation and corneal drying and ulceration
Entropion	Inversion of the eyelid, causing the lashes to rub against the eye; corneal abrasion may result
Hordeolum (stye)	Small, superficial white nodule along lid margin due to infection of a sebaceous gland
Ptosis	Drooping of upper lid margin from neuromuscular problems or trauma
Xanthelasma	Raised yellowish plaque on eyelid caused by lipid disorder (xanth/o = yellow, -elasma = plate)

FIGURE 17-11 **A,** Picture as seen with **normal vision. B,** The same picture as it would appear to a person with **macular degeneration.** (Photograph shows Amari, Gus, Solomon, Ben, Bebe, and Louisa with proud grandparents.)

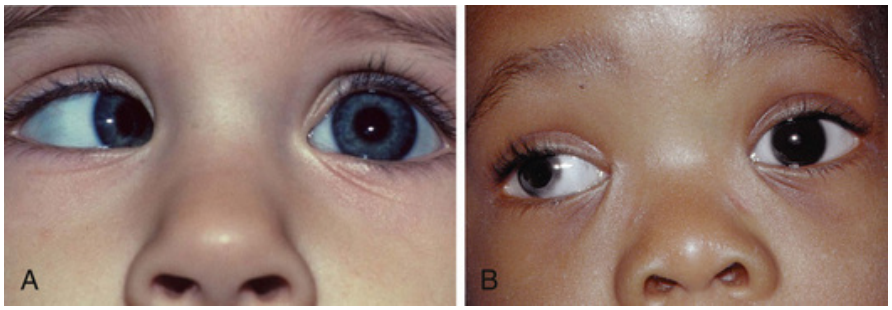


FIGURE 17-12 Strabismus. A, Esotropia. B, Exotropia.

Trabeculoplasty

Trabecul/o means a small beam, rod, or plank of wood.

Macular hole treatment

A macular hole may be related to aging when the vitreous gel shrinks and pulls on its attachment to the retina. Treatment is surgery (vitrectomy) to remove a portion of vitreous and replace it with a bubble containing gas and air. The bubble acts as a bandage, to temporarily hold the edges of the macular hole in place as it heals. After surgery a patient must remain in face-down position for a period of time to allow the bubble to press against the macula. The bubble is gradually absorbed by the eye and replaced as fluid refills the vitreous cavity.

Clinical Procedures—the Eye

Diagnostic

fluorescein angiography	**Intravenous injection of fluorescein (a dye) followed by serial photographs of the retina through dilated pupils.** This test provides diagnostic information about blood flow in the retina, detects vascular changes in diabetic and hypertensive retinopathy, and identifies lesions in the macular area of the retina (Figure 17-13).
ophthalmoscopy	**Visual examination of the interior of the eye.** Ideally, the pupil is dilated and the physician holds the ophthalmoscope close to the patient's eye, shining the light into the back of the eye (Figure 17-14). Ophthalmologists also may use special lenses in conjunction with a head lamp or a slit lamp (Figure 17-15).
optical coherence tomography (OCT)	**Non-invasive imaging technique using light waves to take cross-sectional pictures of the retina.** OCT can be used to examine the optic nerve and retina for glaucoma and other retinal diseases. See Figure 17-13B.
slit lamp microscopy	**Examination of anterior ocular structures under microscopic magnification.** This procedure provides a magnified view of the conjunctiva, sclera, cornea, anterior chamber, iris, lens, and vitreous. Devices attached to a slit lamp expand
	the scope of the examination. Tonometry (ton/o = tension) measures intraocular pressure to detect glaucoma (see Figure 17-15). Special magnifying lenses also permit examination of the fundus, as with a direct ophthalmoscope.
visual acuity test	**Clarity of vision is assessed** (Figure 17-16A)**.** A patient reads from a **Snellen chart** at 20 feet (distance vision test). Visual acuity is expressed as a ratio, such as 20/20. The first number is the distance the patient is standing from the chart. The second number is the distance at which a person with normal vision could read the same line of the chart. If the best a patient can see is the 20/200 line on the chart, then at 20 feet the patient can see what a "healthy" eye sees at 200 feet. Mirrors are used so that measurements can be taken at less than 20 feet and still be equivalent to those for vision measured at 20 feet.
visual field test	**Measurement of the entire scope of vision (peripheral and central).** See Figure 17-16B.

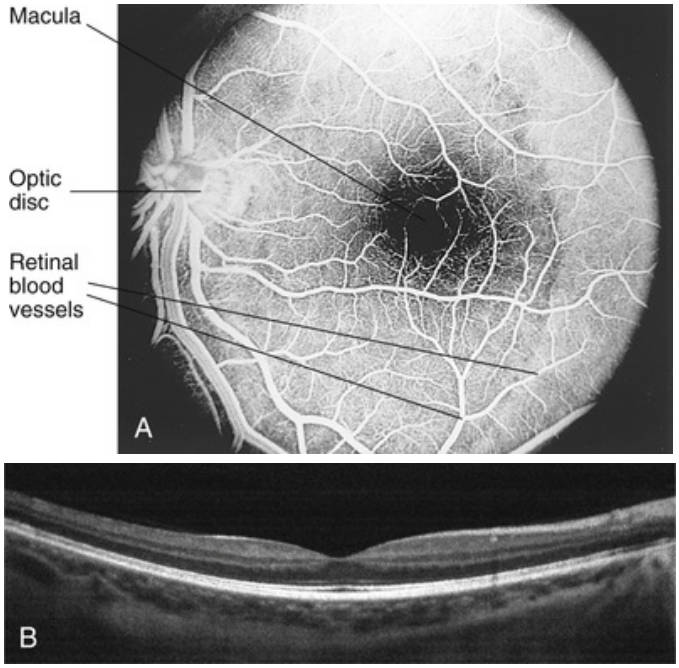


FIGURE 17-13 A, Normal eye seen on fluorescein angiogram. B, Optical coherence tomography (OCT). The image shows the normal retina with each of its distinctive layers.

FIGURE 17-14 Ophthalmoscopy. In addition to inspecting the cornea, lens, and vitreous humor for opacities (cloudiness), the examiner can see the blood vessels at the back of the eye (fundus) and note degenerative changes in the retina.

FIGURE 17-15 Slit lamp examination measuring intraocular pressure by tonometry.

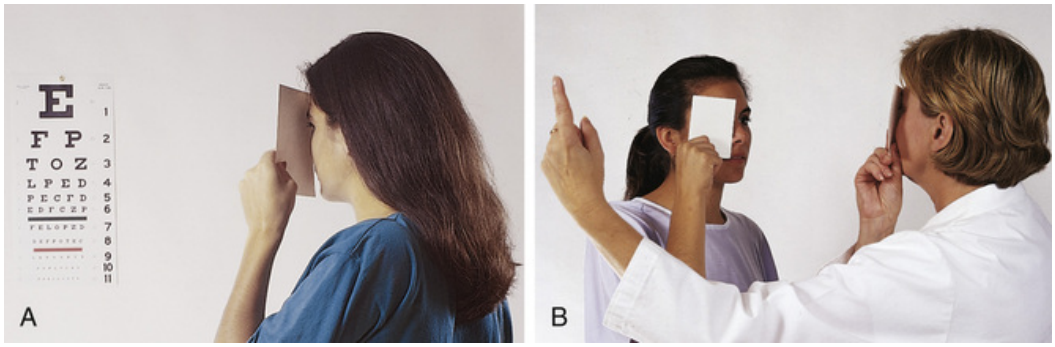


FIGURE 17-16 **A, Snellen chart** assesses visual acuity. **B, Visual field test** is performed with the eyes fixes, looking straight ahead without movement of the head.

Direct Ophthalmoscopy and Slit Lamp Microscopy

As part of a visual examination, both of these procedures are frequently used. **Direct ophthalmoscopy** examines the fundus and interior of the eye, whereas **slit lamp microscopy** visualizes the anterior part of the eye.

Treatment

enucleation	**Removal of the entire eyeball.** This surgical procedure is necessary to treat tumors such as ocular melanoma (malignant tumor of pigmented cells in the choroid layer) or if an eye has become blind and painful from trauma or disease, such as glaucoma.
keratoplasty	**Surgical repair of the cornea.** Also known as a **corneal transplant** procedure (**penetrating keratoplasty**). The ophthalmic surgeon removes the patient's scarred or opaque cornea and replaces it with a donor cornea ("button" or graft), which is sutured into place (Figure 17-17). Newer procedures involve transplanting only partial thickness layers of the cornea when the eye has less damage. This allows for quicker recovery.
laser photocoagulation	**Intense, precisely focused light beam (argon laser) creates an inflammatory reaction that seals retinal tears and leaky retinal blood vessels.** This procedure is useful to treat retinal tears, diabetic retinopathy, and wet macular degeneration. **HINT**: Laser is an acronym for *light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation.*
LASIK	**Use of an excimer laser to correct errors of refraction (myopia, hyperopia, and astigmatism).** Performed as an outpatient procedure with use of local anesthesia. The surgeon lifts the top layer of the cornea (a flap is made) and uses a laser to sculpt the underlying cornea. The corneal flap is then repositioned. LASIK is an acronym for *laser in situ keratomileusis* (shaping the cornea) (Figure 17-18).
phacoemulsification	**Cataract removal surgery in which ultrasonic vibrations break up the lens; the pieces are then aspirated through the ultrasonic probe** (Figure 17-19)**.** This is the typical surgery for **cataract removal**. The ophthalmic surgeon uses a small, scleral tunnel or self-sealing corneal incision. In most patients, a foldable intraocular lens (IOL) is implanted at the time of surgery. Laser-assisted cataract removal may assist in correcting vision. Premium lenses can be implanted which decrease the patient's need for glasses.
scleral buckle	**Suture of a silicone band to the sclera over a detached portion of the retina.** The band pushes the two parts of the retina against each other to bring together the two layers of the

	detached retina (Figure 17-20). **Pneumatic retinopexy** is an outpatient surgical alternative for selected retinal detachment and scleral buckle. A gas bubble is injected into the middle of the eye, and the tear is sealed with a freezing probe or laser beam.
vitrectomy	**Removal of the vitreous humor.** The vitreous is replaced with a clear solution. This is necessary when blood and scar tissue accumulate in the vitreous humor (a complication of diabetic retinopathy). Vitrectomy is also commonly used to provide better access to the retina. Once surgery for removal of scar tissue or repair of retinal detachment is complete, a gas bubble may be injected into the vitreous to help hold the retina in position.

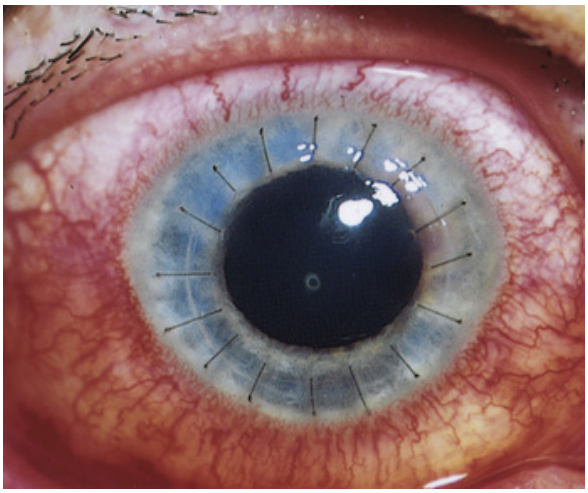


FIGURE 17-17 Clinical appearance of the eye after keratoplasty. (Courtesy Ophthalmic Photography at the University of Michigan, WK Kellogg Eye Center, Ann Arbor. From Black JM, Hawks JH: Medical-Surgical Nursing: Clinical Management for Positive Outcomes, 7th ed., Philadelphia, Saunders, 2005, p. 1958.)

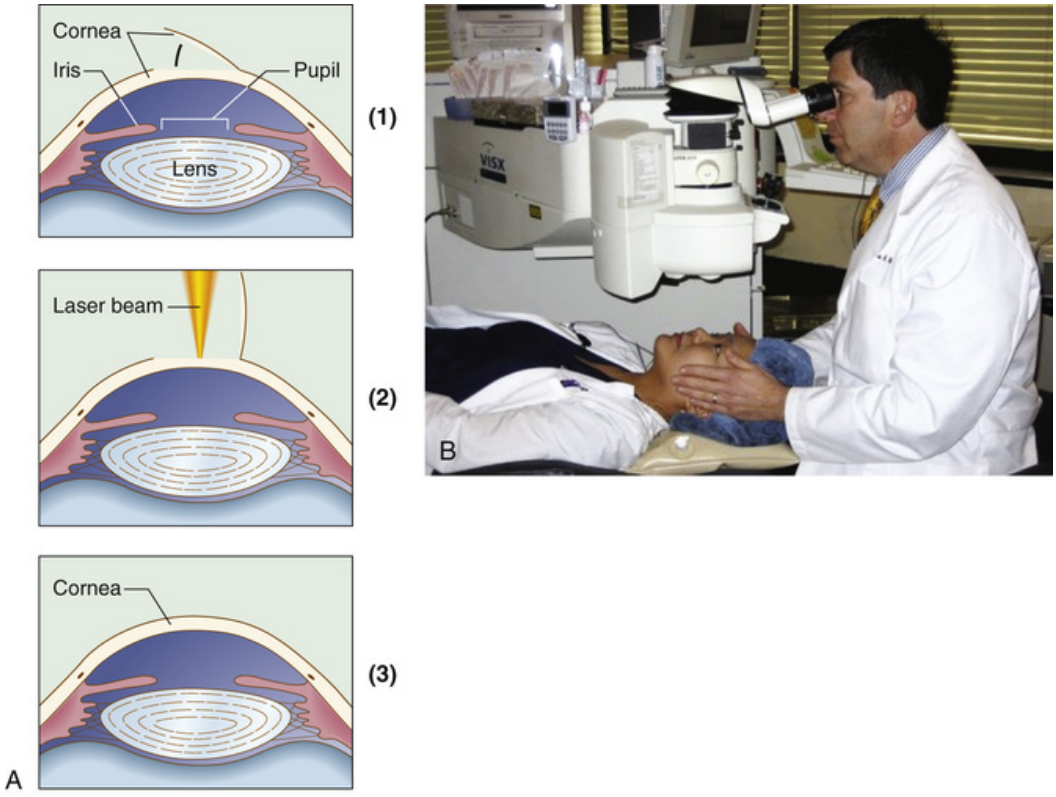


FIGURE 17-18 **A, LASIK refractive surgery:** (1) An instrument to cut the cornea (microkeratome) creates a hinged cap of tissue, which then is lifted off the corneal surface. (2) An excimer laser vaporizes and reshapes the cornea to correct the refraction. (3) The corneal flap is replaced. **B,** Ophthalmologists typically perform LASIK surgery as an office procedure. The patient with corrected vision returns home that day and is visually functioning normally or close to it the next day. (**B,** Courtesy Eric R. Mandel, MD, Mandel Vision, New York.)

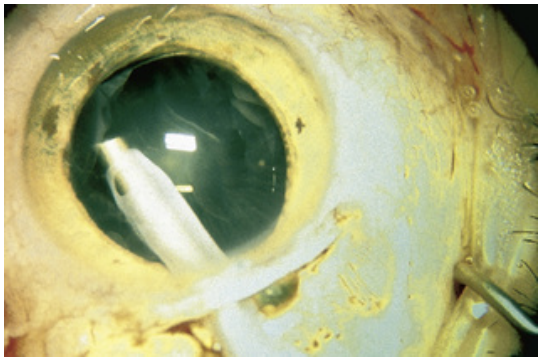


FIGURE 17-19 Phacoemulsification of a cataractous lens through a small scleral tunnel incision.

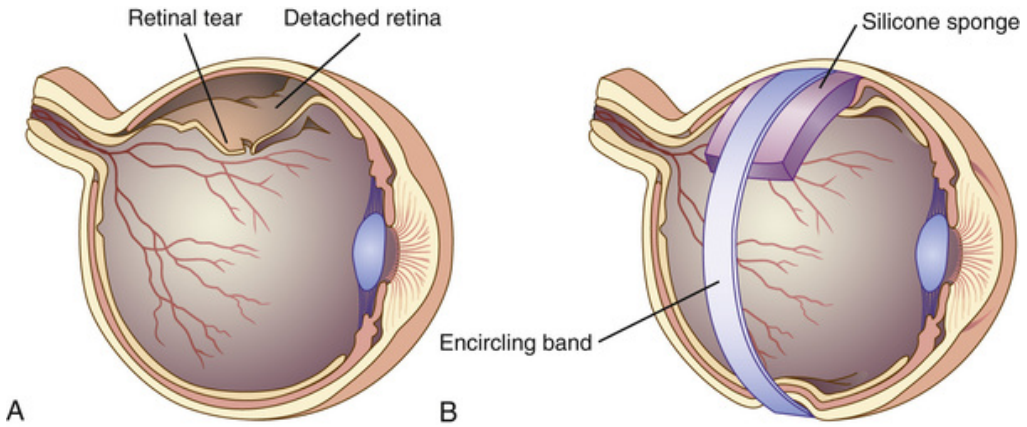


FIGURE 17-20 **A, Detached retina. B, Scleral buckling procedure** to repair retinal detachment.

Abbreviations—The Eye

ALT	argon laser trabeculoplasty
AMD	age-related macular degeneration
HEENT	head, eyes, ears, nose, and throat
IOL	intraocular lens
IOP	intraocular pressure
LASIK	laser in situ keratomileusis
OCT	optical coherence tomography
OS	left eye (Latin, *oculus sinister*)
OU	both eyes (Latin, *oculus uterque*, "each eye")
PERRLA	pupils equal, round, reactive to light and accommodation
POAG	primary open-angle glaucoma
PRK	photorefractive keratectomy—a laser beam flattens the top layer of the cornea to correct myopia
SLT	selective laser trabeculoplasty
VA	visual acuity
VF	visual field

The Ear

Anatomy and Physiology

Sound waves are received by the outer ear, conducted to special receptor cells within the ear, and transmitted by those cells to nerve fibers that lead to the auditory region of the brain in the cerebral cortex. Sensations of sound are

perceived within the nerve fibers of the cerebral cortex. Label Figure 17-21 as you read the following paragraphs describing the anatomy and physiology of the ear.

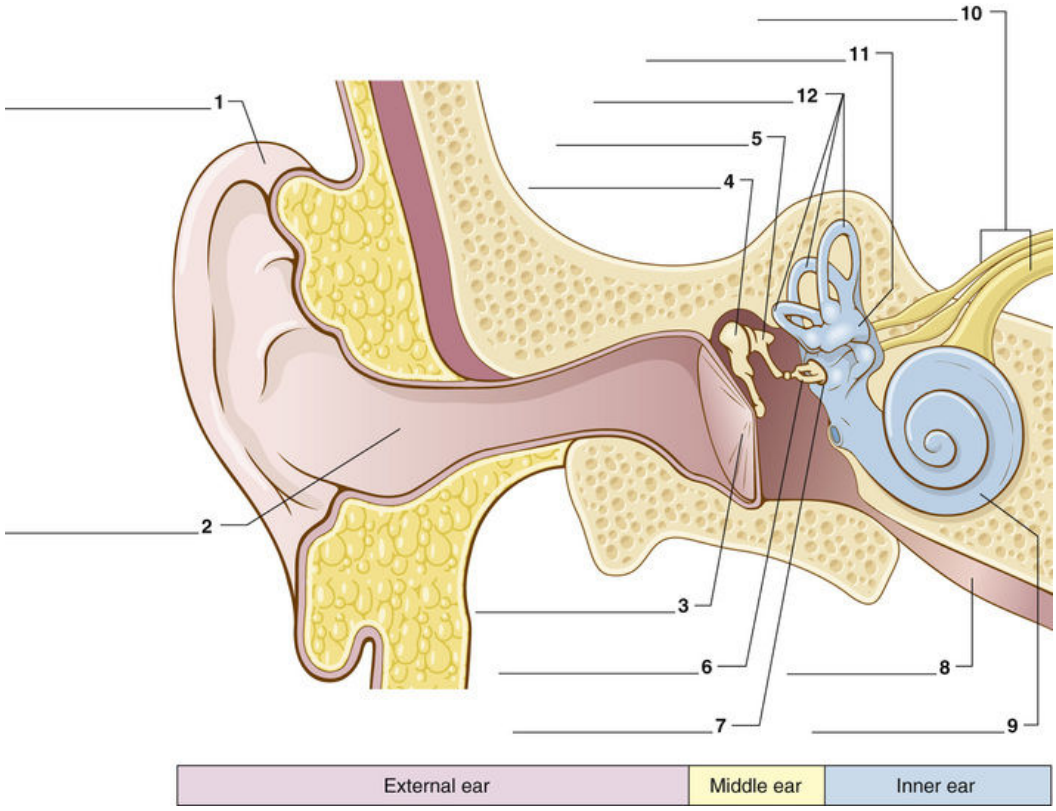


FIGURE 17-21 Anatomy of the ear.

The ear can be divided into three separate regions: outer ear, middle ear, and inner ear. The outer and middle ears function in the conduction of sound waves through the ear, and the inner ear contains structures that receive the auditory waves and relay them to the brain.

Outer Ear

Sound waves enter the ear through the **pinna,** or **auricle** [1], which is the projecting part, or flap, of the ear. The **external auditory meatus (auditory canal)** [2] leads from the pinna and is lined with numerous glands that secrete a yellowish brown, waxy substance called **cerumen.** Cerumen lubricates and protects the ear canal.

Middle Ear

Sound waves travel through the auditory canal and strike a membrane between the outer and the middle ear. This is the **tympanic membrane,** or **eardrum** [3]. As

the eardrum vibrates, it moves three small bones, or **ossicles,** that conduct the sound waves through the middle ear. These bones, in the order of their vibration, are the **malleus** [4], the **incus** [5], and the **stapes** [6]. As the stapes moves, it touches a membrane called the **oval window** [7], which separates the middle from the inner ear.

Before proceeding with the pathway of sound conduction and reception into the inner ear, an additional structure that affects the middle ear should be mentioned. The **auditory** or **eustachian tube** [8] is a canal leading from the middle ear to the pharynx. It normally is closed but opens on swallowing. In an efficient way, this tube can prevent damage to the eardrum and shock to the middle and inner ears. Normally the pressure of air in the middle ear is equal to the pressure of air in the external environment; however, if you ascend in the atmosphere, as in flying in an airplane, climbing a high mountain, or riding a fast elevator, the atmospheric pressure, along with that in the outer ear, drops, while the pressure in the middle ear remains the same—greater than in the outer ear. This inequality of air pressure on the inside and outside of the eardrum forces the eardrum to bulge outward and potentially burst if the difference in pressures increases. Swallowing opens the eustachian tube so that air can leave the middle ear and enter the throat until the atmospheric and middle ear pressures are balanced. The eardrum then relaxes, and the danger of its bursting is averted.

Inner Ear

Sound vibrations, having been transmitted by the movement of the eardrum to the bones of the middle ear, reach the inner ear via the fluctuations of the oval window that separates the middle and inner ears. The inner ear is also called the **labyrinth** because of its circular, maze-like structure. The part of the labyrinth that leads from the oval window is a bony, snail shell–shaped structure called the **cochlea** [9]. The cochlea contains special auditory liquids called **perilymph** and **endolymph** through which the vibrations travel. Also present in the cochlea is a sensitive auditory receptor area called the **organ of Corti.** In the organ of Corti, tiny hair cells receive vibrations from the auditory liquids and relay the sound waves to **auditory nerve fibers** [10], which end in the auditory center of the cerebral cortex, where these impulses are interpreted and "heard."

Study Figure 17-22, which is a schematic representation of the pathway of sound vibrations from the outer ear to the brain.

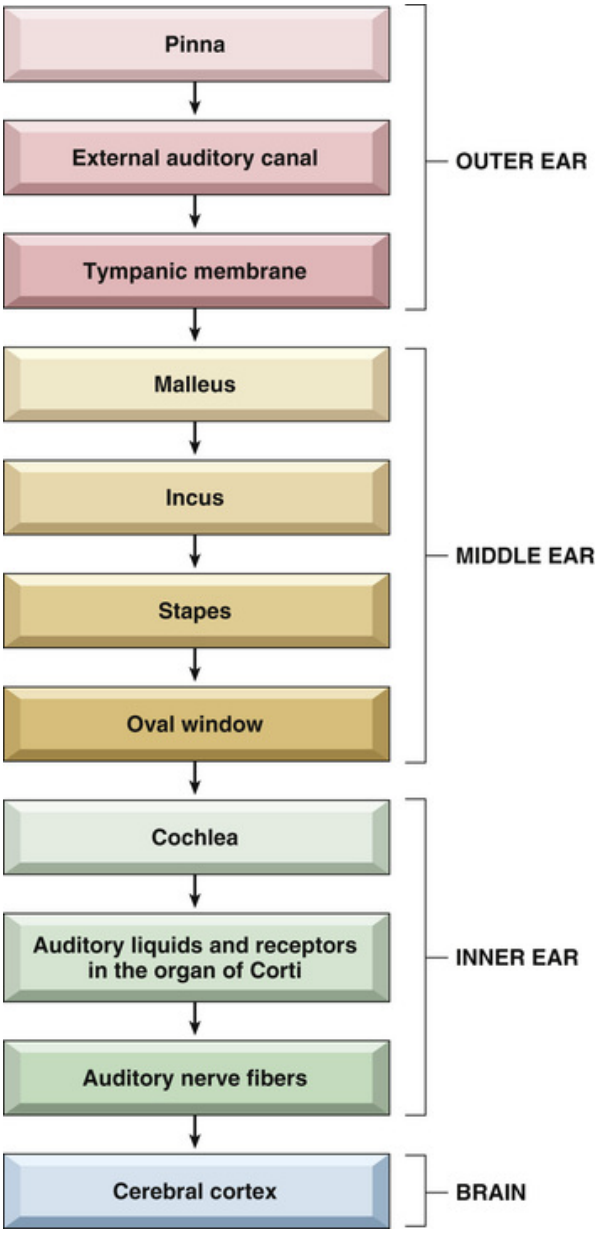


FIGURE 17-22 Pathway of sound vibrations from the outer ear to the brain (cerebral cortex.)

The ear is an important organ of equilibrium (balance), as well as an organ for hearing. Refer back to Figure 17-21. The **vestibule** [11] connects the cochlea (for hearing) to three **semicircular canals** [12] (for balance). The vestibule, including the saccule and utricle, contains a fluid, endolymph, as well as sensitive hair cells. In an intricate manner, the fluid and hair cells fluctuate in response to the movement of the head. This sets up impulses in nerve fibers that lead to the brain. Messages are then sent to muscles in all parts of the body to ensure that equilibrium is maintained.

Vocabulary—The Ear

This list reviews many new terms related to the ear introduced in the text. Short definitions reinforce your understanding of the terms. Refer to the Pronunciation of Terms on page 696 for help with unfamiliar or difficult words.

auditory canal	Channel that leads from the pinna to the eardrum.
auditory meatus	Auditory canal.
auditory nerve fibers	Carry impulses from the inner ear to the brain (cerebral cortex). These fibers compose the vestibulocochlear nerve (cranial nerve VIII).
auditory tube	Channel between the middle ear and the nasopharynx; **eustachian tube.**
auricle	The protruding part of the external ear, or **pinna.**
cerumen	Waxy substance secreted by the external ear; **earwax.**
cochlea	Snail shell–shaped, spirally wound tube in the inner ear; contains hearing-sensitive receptor cells.
endolymph	Fluid within the labyrinth of the inner ear.
eustachian tube	Auditory tube.
incus	Second ossicle (small bone) of the middle ear; incus means **anvil.**
labyrinth	Maze-like series of canals of the inner ear. This includes the cochlea, vestibule, and semicircular canals.
malleus	First ossicle of the middle ear; malleus means **hammer.**
organ of Corti	Sensitive auditory receptor area found in the cochlea of the inner ear.
ossicle	Small bone of the ear; includes the malleus, incus, and stapes.
oval window	Membrane between the middle ear and the inner ear.
perilymph	Fluid contained in the labyrinth of the inner ear.
pinna	Auricle; flap of the ear.
semicircular canals	Passages in the inner ear associated with maintaining equilibrium.
stapes	Third ossicle of the middle ear. Stapes means **stirrup**.
tympanic membrane	Membrane between the outer and the middle ear; also called the **eardrum.**
vestibule	Central cavity of the labyrinth, connecting the semicircular canals and the cochlea. The vestibule contains two structures, the **saccule** and **utricle**, that help to maintain equilibrium.

Cerumen

This normal product of wax glands in the external ear canal protects the ear from dust, water, and infection. However, too much earwax increases the incidence of infection and may lead to hearing loss.

Terminology—The Ear

Write the meanings of the medical terms relating to the ear in the spaces provided.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
acous/o	hearing	acoustic _____
audi/o	hearing; the sense of hearing	audiogram _____ audiologist _____ *A health care professional specializing in the evaluation and rehabilitation of people with hearing loss.*
audit/o	hearing	auditory _____
aur/o, auricul/o	ear (*see* **ot/o**)	aural _____ postauricular _____
cochle/o	cochlea	cochlear _____
mastoid/o	mastoid process	mastoiditis _____ *The **mastoid process** is the posterior portion of the temporal bone extending downward behind the external auditory meatus. Mastoiditis, caused by bacterial infection, spreads from the middle ear.*
myring/o	eardrum, tympanic membrane (*see* **tympan/o**)	myringotomy _____ myringitis _____
ossicul/o	ossicle	ossiculoplasty _____
ot/o	ear	otic _____ otomycosis _____ otopyorrhea _____ otolaryngologist _____ *An otolaryngologist is a medical doctor specializing in the ear, nose, and throat.*
salping/o	eustachian tube, auditory tube	salpingopharyngeal _____ *In the context of female reproductive anatomy, salping/o means the fallopian tubes.*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
staped/o	stapes (third bone of the middle ear)	stapedectomy _____ *After stapedectomy a prosthetic device is used to connect the incus and the oval window (Figure 17-23). Also see otosclerosis, page 677.*	
tympan/o	eardrum, tympanic membrane	tympanoplasty _____ *Surgical reconstruction of the bones of the middle ear with reconnection of the eardrum to the oval window. Figure 17-24 shows a normal tympanic membrane (eardrum).*	
vestibul/o	vestibule	vestibulocochlear _____	

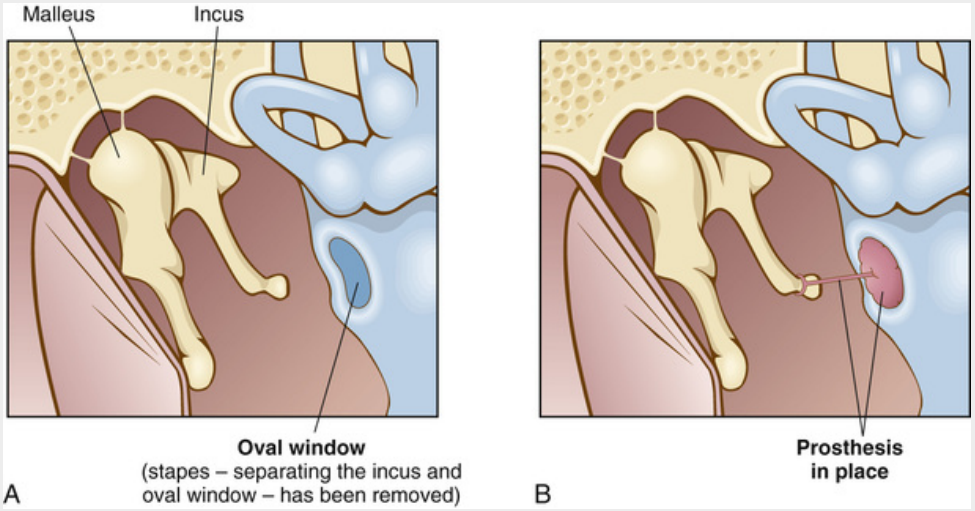


FIGURE 17-23 **A, Stapedectomy.** Using microsurgical technique and a laser, the stapes bone is removed from the middle ear. **B,** A **prosthetic device** (wire, Teflon, or metal) is placed into the incus and attached to a hole in the oval window.

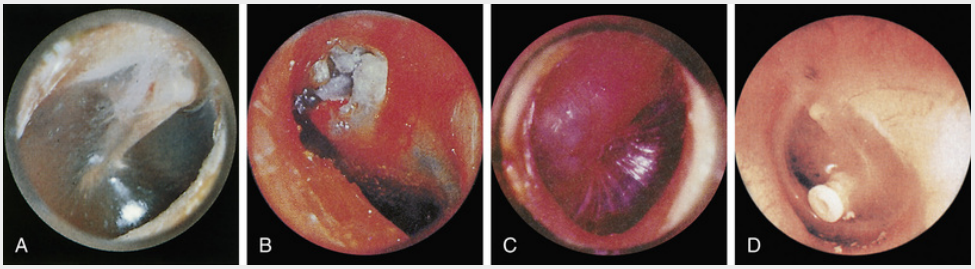


FIGURE 17-24 A, Healthy tympanic membrane. B, Tympanic membrane with cholesteatoma. C, Tympanic membrane with acute otitis media. D, Myringotomy with tympanostomy tube. (**A** to **C,** Courtesy Richard A. Buckingham, Clinical Professor, Otolaryngology, Abraham Lincoln School of Medicine, University of Illinois, Chicago. From Barkauskas VH et al: Health and Physical Assessment, 3rd ed., St. Louis, Mosby, 2002, pp. 278 and 290. **D,** From Fireman P, Slavin RG: Atlas of Allergies, 2nd ed., London, Glower Medical Publishing, 1996.)

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-acusis *or* -cusis	hearing	hyperacusis _____ *Abnormally acute sensitivity to sounds.* presbycusis _____ *This type of nerve deafness occurs with the process of aging.*	
-meter	instrument to measure	audiometer _____	
-otia	ear condition	macrotia _____ *Abnormally large ears; congenital anomaly.*	

Audiogram/Audiometry

An **audiogram** is the record (chart) produced when a person's hearing is tested by **audiometry** (See page 682).

Pathology—the Ear

acoustic neuroma	**Benign tumor arising from the acoustic vestibulocochlear nerve (eighth cranial nerve) in the brain.** Initially, this tumor causes tinnitus (ringing in the ears), vertigo (dizziness), and decreased hearing. Small tumors are resected by microsurgical techniques or ablated (removed) by radiosurgery (using powerful and precise x-ray beams rather than a surgical incision).
cholesteatoma	**Collection of skin cells and cholesterol in a sac within the middle ear.** These cyst-like masses produce a foul-smelling discharge and are most often the result of chronic otitis media. They are associated with perforations of the tympanic membrane (Figure 17-24B). Steat/o means fat.
deafness	**Loss of the ability to hear.** **Nerve deafness (sensorineural hearing loss)** results from impairment of the cochlea or auditory (acoustic) nerve. **Conductive deafness** results from the impairment of sound wave transmission from the external ear to the cochlea. Hearing aids help people with conductive or sensorineural hearing loss. These devices have a microphone to pick up sounds, an amplifier to increase their volume, and a speaker to transmit amplified sounds. See Figure 17-25.
Meniere disease	**Disorder of the labyrinth of the inner ear; elevated endolymph pressure within the cochlea (cochlear hydrops) and semicircular canals (vestibular hydrops).** Signs and symptoms are tinnitus, heightened sensitivity to loud sounds, progressive loss of hearing, headache, nausea, and vertigo. Attacks last minutes or continue for hours. The cause is unknown, and treatment is bed rest, sedation, and drugs to combat nausea and vertigo. Surgery may be necessary to relieve accumulation of fluid from the inner ear.
otitis media	**Inflammation of the middle ear.** **Acute otitis medi**a is infection of the middle ear, often following an upper respiratory infection (URI). Pain and fever with redness and loss of mobility of the tympanic membrane occur (Figure 17-24C). As bacteria invade the middle ear, pus formation occurs (**suppurative otitis media**). It is treated with antibiotics, but if the condition becomes chronic or leads to complications, myringotomy may be required to ventilate the middle ear. **Serous otitis media** is a noninfectious inflammation with accumulation of serous fluid. It often results from a dysfunctional or obstructed auditory tube. Treatment includes myringotomy to aspirate fluid and placement of

	tympanostomy tubes in the eardrum to allow ventilation of the middle ear (Figure 17-24D).
otosclerosis	**Hardening of the bony tissue of the middle ear.** The result of this hereditary condition is that bone forms around the oval window and causes fixation or **ankylosis** (stiffening) of the stapes bone (ossicle). Conduction deafness occurs, as the ossicles cannot pass on vibrations when sound enters the ear. Stapedectomy with replacement by a **prosthesis** (artificial part) is effective in restoring hearing (see Figure 17-23 on page 675). In order to perform this operation, the oval window must be **fenestrated** (opened) using a laser.
tinnitus	**Sensation of noises in the ears without an external source.** Caused by irritation of delicate hair cells in the inner ear, this disease symptom may be associated with presbycusis, Meniere disease, otosclerosis, chronic otitis, labyrinthitis, and other disorders. Tinnitus (ringing, buzzing, whistling, booming) can be persistent and severe and can interfere with the affected person's daily life. Treatment includes medication and biofeedback to manage stress and anxiety if these are contributing factors. Tinnitus, a Latin-derived term, means tinkling. **HINT:** Tinnitus is a condition (-itus), not an inflammation (-itis).
vertigo	**Sensation of irregular or whirling motion either of oneself or of external objects.** Vertigo can result from disease in the labyrinth of the inner ear or in the nerve that carries messages from the semicircular canals to the brain. Equilibrium and balance are affected, and nausea may occur as well. In **benign paroxysmal positional vertigo (BPPV)** a patient experiences repeated, brief episodes (paroxysmal means sudden onset with a short duration) of vertigo. This occurs after movement changes in the position of the head. It is a common a cause of vertigo that may result from calcium crystals **(otoconia)** moving around loose in the vestibule of the inner ear.

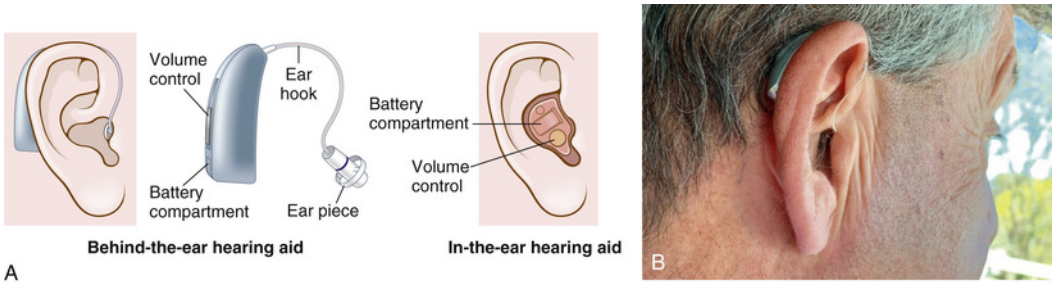


FIGURE 17-25 Hearing aids: A, Two types of hearing aid devices. B, Behind-the-ear hearing aid device in place.

Clinical Procedures—the Ear

audiometry	**Testing the sense of hearing.** An **audiometer** is an electrical device that delivers acoustic stimuli of specific frequencies and decibels (loudness) to determine a patient's hearing level for each frequency (Figure 17-26A). Results are shown on a chart or **audiogram** (Figure 17-26B).
cochlear implant procedure	**Surgical insertion of a device that allows sensorineural hearing–impaired persons to understand speech.** Electrical signals are sent directly into the auditory nerve by means of multiple electrodes inserted into the cochlea. An external microphone and speech processor pick up sound signals and convert them to electrical impulses (Figure 17-27A).
ear thermometry	**Measurement of the temperature of the tympanic membrane by detection of infrared radiation from the eardrum.** A device is inserted into the auditory canal, and results, which reflect the body's temperature, are obtained within 2 seconds.
otoscopy	**Visual examination of the ear canal with an otoscope** (see Figure 17-27B)**.**
tuning fork test	**Test of ear conduction using a vibration source (tuning fork).** To perform the **Rinne test,** the examiner places the base of the vibrating fork against the patient's mastoid bone (bone conduction) and in front of the auditory meatus (air conduction). In the **Weber test,** the tuning fork is placed on the center of the forehead. The perceived loudness of sound is the same in both ears if hearing is normal.

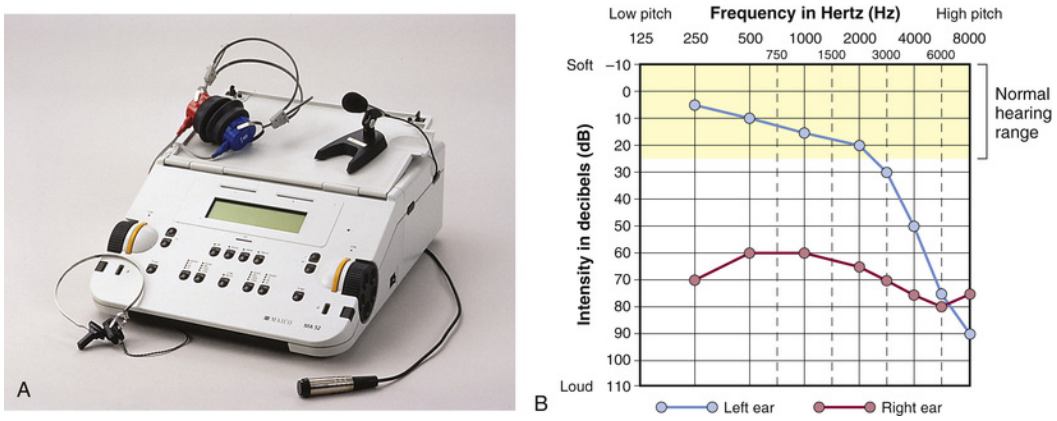


FIGURE 17-26 **A, Pure-tone audiometer. B, Audiogram** for a person with normal hearing in the left ear only for low frequencies (pitch). Notice the *blue line* sloping downward, showing severe high-frequency hearing loss in the left ear. There is moderate to severe hearing loss in the right ear. The decibel (dB) level of the softest sound you are able to hear is called your threshold. Thresholds of 0 to 25 dB (*yellow area*) are considered normal (for adults). (**A,** Courtesy Maico, Inc., Minneapolis, Minnesota. In Ignatavicius DD, Workman ML: Medical-Surgical Nursing: Critical Thinking for Collaborative Care, 5th ed., Philadelphia, Saunders, 2005, p. 1120.)

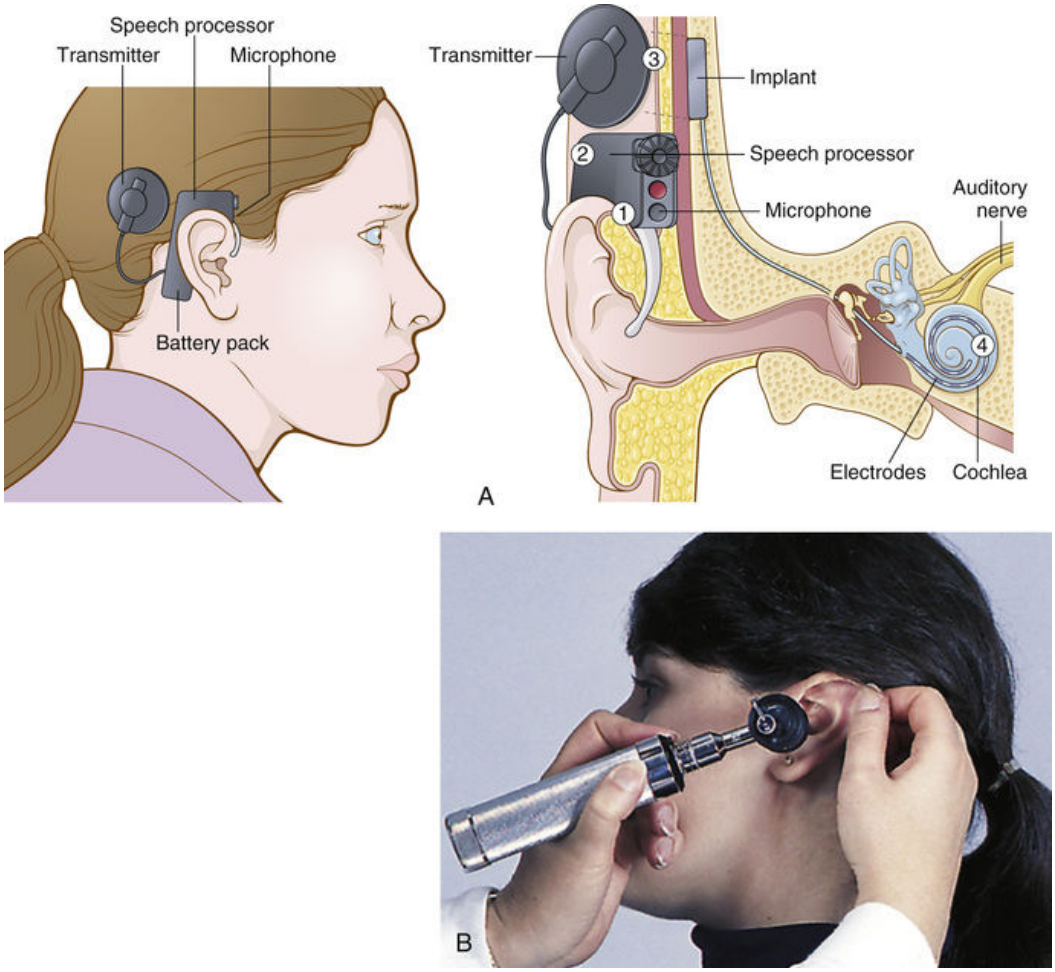


FIGURE 17-27 **A, Cochlear implant.** (1). Microphone receives sound. (2). Speech processor converts sounds into digital signals. (3). Signals are sent to a transmitter that relays them to an implant, where they are converted to electrical impulses. (4). Impulses are sent to electrodes that stimulate nerve cells in the cochlea, which sends them to the auditory nerve and brain. **B, Otoscopic examination.** The auricle is pulled up and back. The examiner's hand holding the otoscope is braced against the patient's face for stabilization.

Abbreviations—The Ear

AD	right ear (Latin, *auris dextra*)
AOM	acute otitis media
AS	left ear (Latin, *auris sinistra*)
BPPV	benign paroxysmal positional vertigo
EENT	eyes, ears, nose, and throat
ENG	electronystagmography—a test of the balance mechanism of the inner ear by assessing eye movements (**nystagmus** is rapidly twitching eye movements)
ENT	ears, nose, and throat
ETD	eustachian tube dysfunction
HEENT	head, eyes, ears, nose, and throat
PE tube	pressure-equalizing tube—a polyethylene ventilating tube placed in the eardrum (to treat recurrent episodes of acute otitis media)
SOM	serous otitis media

In Person

Retinal Tear

One day, while out for my usual walk, I sneezed on account of the higher seasonal pollen in our area. It was not an easy sneeze, and I was aware of the result immediately: I noticed some new floaters in my left eye. No pain, but a little feeling that something wasn't right. I did not see flashes of bright light (a good thing).

I hoped that the floaters would minimize and when they did not, I called my optometrist for an appointment. My appointment was at 10:30, and by 11:00 he had discovered a possible tear in my left retina. He walked me down the hall to an ophthalmologist, who confirmed the tear and suggested cryopexy, which involves numbing the eye, inserting an external probe into the area of the eye and freezing the torn retina to the back of the eye. I was through all of this by 11:30. Timing is everything.

The ophthalmologist explained that waiting two or three days could have allowed the tear to progress to a detachment—which, if not caught, could cause more serious problems.

If you think about a sneeze, it involves the head moving forward and stopping abruptly. As we get older, the clear jell (vitreous) inside the eye may pull away from the retina at the back of the eye. If this pulls away gradually, usually there is no problem. However, if there is a hard pull with a tear, the vitreous can pass through the tear, lifting the retina off the back of the eye, much like the way wallpaper can peel off a wall. There are a number of conditions that may lead to the chance of retinal problems, such as nearsightedness, cataract surgery, glaucoma, or family history.

As explained to me, if you are going to sneeze, grasp your head with both hands (perhaps while holding a tissue to your nose) to prevent the head from moving radically. That may stop a sudden front-to-back movement of your head.

The bad news is that I couldn't play golf for a couple of weeks after the cryopexy. My left eye looked horrible (itching and swollen) and I had a bunch of dark floaters in it. It was like trying to dodge three or four gnats right in front of my face. The good news is that my vision is intact.

My doctor told me that once you have had one episode, there is a 15% chance of developing the same problem in the other eye. Right on schedule, a year later, my right eye had a tear/separation. This time, though, the separation was located on the nasal side of the eye, which precluded using the cryogenic method of sealing the retina. My choice, in his office at least, was for a laser correction. I asked about the particulars, including safety, whether it would correct the problem, and how long the procedure would take. I was given assurances for my first two concerns, and told the procedure might take 5 minutes. I agreed to do it, but had concerns about how I could stay still for 5 minutes while he fired laser shots through my eye to stitch up the tear. After numbing the eye and putting me in the correct position, the doctor proceeded to light up my eye with 30 very bright flashes. He finished in 15 seconds. While I was pulling back from the head rest, I asked why had he told me that it would take 5 minutes. He said, with a little smile, that he didn't want me to starting figuring his fee based on a per second basis while I was undergoing the treatment. Pretty clever, and worth the smile that I gave him.

Needless to say, both eyes are fine. I still have floaters in both eyes and occasionally swipe at nonexistent gnats.

It may have no relation, but my golf handicap has dropped four shots lower since last spring and two below my historical prior low. Isn't technology great or what?!

Mac McGinnis is a retired businessman and dedicated golfer.

Practical Applications

This section contains an operating room schedule and an operative report. Explanations of more difficult terms are added in brackets. Answers to the matching questions are on page 693.

Operating Room Schedule: Eye and Ear Procedures

Match the operation in Column I with a diagnosis/surgical indication in Column II.

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. phacoemulsification with IOL; OS	_____	A. scarred and torn cornea
2. blepharoplasty	_____	B. ptosis of eyelid skin
3. scleral buckle	_____	C. retinal detachment
4. vitrectomy	_____	D. diabetic retinopathy
5. radical mastoidectomy	_____	E. macular degeneration
6. keratoplasty	_____	F. chronic stye
7. cochlear implant	_____	G. chronic infection of a bone behind the ear
8. laser photocoagulation of the macula	_____	H. severe deafness
9. incision and drainage of hordeolum		I. cataracts

Operative Report

Preoperative Diagnosis: Bilateral chronic serous otitis media; tonsilloadenoiditis.
Operation: Bilateral myringotomies and ventilation tube insertion; T&A.
Procedure: With the patient in the supine position and under general endotracheal anesthesia, inspection of AD was made under the operating microscope. The external canal was clear; tympanic membrane was divided. A purulent discharge appeared to be present. This drainage was suctioned out and the ear thoroughly lavaged [washed out]. A ventilating tube was put in place and otic drops were administered. Same procedure for AS.

The patient was placed in the Rose position [supine with the head over the table edge in full extension] and the adenoids were removed with adenoid curettes and adenoid biopsy forceps. A nasopharyngeal sponge was put in place. The right tonsil was then grasped with tonsil forceps, dissected free, and removed with snare. Bleeding was controlled with suction cautery. The nasopharyngeal sponge was removed and no further bleeding noted. The patient tolerated the procedure well and left the OR in good condition.

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, page 691.

A **Match the structure of the eye in Column I with its description in Column II. Write the letter of your answer in the space provided.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. pupil	_____	A. Contains sensitive cells called rods and cones that transform light energy into nerve impulses.
2. conjunctiva	_____	B. Contains muscles that control the shape of the lens and secretes aqueous humor.
3. cornea	_____	C. Transparent structure behind the iris and in front of the vitreous humor; it refracts light rays onto the retina.
4. sclera	_____	D. Jelly-like material behind the lens that helps maintain the shape of the eyeball.
5. choroid	_____	E. Open center of the iris through which light rays enter.
6. iris	_____	F. Vascular layer of the eyeball that is continuous with the iris.
7. ciliary body	_____	G. Delicate membrane lining the eyelids and covering the anterior sclera of the eyeball.
8. lens	_____	H. Fibrous layer of clear tissue that extends over the anterior portion of the eyeball.
9. retina		I. Colored portion of the eye; surrounds the pupil.
10. vitreous humor		J. Tough, white outer layer of the eyeball.

B **Supply the terms that complete the following sentences.**

1. The region at the back of the eye where the optic nerve meets the retina is the _____.
2. The normal adjustment of the lens (becoming fatter) to bring an object into focus for near vision on the retina is _____.
3. A yellowish region on the retina lateral to the optic disc is the _____.
4. The tiny pit or depression in the retina that is the region of clearest vision is the _____.
5. The bending of light rays by the cornea, lens, and fluids of the eye is _____.
6. The point at which the fibers of the optic nerve cross in the brain is the _____.

7. The photoreceptor cells in the retina that make the perception of color possible are the _____.
8. The photoreceptor cells in the retina that make vision in dim light possible are the _____.
9. The _____ is the area behind the cornea and in front of the lens and iris. It contains aqueous humor.
10. The posterior, inner part of the eye is the _____.

C **Arrange the following terms in proper sequence to show the pathway of light rays to the visual region of the brain.**

anterior chamber and aqueous humor

cerebral cortex (occipital lobe)

cornea

lens

optic chiasm

optic nerve fibers

pupil

retina

thalamus

vitreous chamber and vitreous humor

1. _____ fibrous transparent layer of clear tissue over the eyeball
2. _____ space and fluid in the front of the eye
3. _____ central opening of the iris
4. _____ transparent, biconvex body that refracts light rays
5. _____ space and soft, jelly-like material in the posterior (back) of eye

6. _____ light-sensitive inner nerve cell layer; rods and cones
7. _____ cranial nerve
8. _____ area of brain where optic nerve fibers cross
9. _____ relay center of the brain
10. _____ visual region of the brain

D **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. optic nerve
   _____
   _____
2. biconvex
   _____
   _____
3. anisocoria
   _____
   _____
4. cycloplegic
   _____
   _____
5. palpebral
   _____
   _____
6. mydriasis
   _____
   _____
7. miosis
   _____
   _____
8. papilledema
   _____

_____

9. photophobia

_____

_____

10. scotoma

_____

_____

E **Complete the medical terms based on their meanings and the word parts given.**

1. inflammation of an eyelid: _____ itis
2. inflammation of the conjunctiva: _____ itis
3. inflammation of a tear gland: _____ itis
4. inflammation of the iris: _____ itis
5. inflammation of the cornea: _____ itis
6. inflammation of the white of the eye: _____ itis
7. inflammation of the retina: _____ itis
8. prolapse of the eyelid: blephar _____
9. pertaining to tears: _____ al
10. pertaining to within the eye: intra _____

F **Select from the list of terms to match the descriptions/definitions that follow.**

aphakia

corneal ulcer

esotropia

exotropia

hemianopsia

ophthalmologist

optician

optometrist

uveitis

xerophthalmia

1. Fibrous layer of clear tissue over the front of the eyeball has a defect resulting from infection: _____
2. Inflammation of the vascular layer of the eye (iris, ciliary body, and choroid): _____
3. Condition of dry eyes: _____
4. Absence of vision in half of the visual field: _____
5. Eye abnormally turns outward: _____
6. Medical doctor who treats diseases of the eyes: _____
7. Nonmedical professional who can examine eyes and prescribe glasses: _____
8. Nonmedical professional who grinds lenses and fits glasses: _____
9. Absence of the lens of the eye: _____
10. Eye abnormally turns inward: _____

G **Describe the following visual conditions.**

1. amblyopia: _____ _____
2. hyperopia: _____ _____
3. presbyopia: _____

_____

4. myopia:

_____

_____

5. nyctalopia:

_____

_____

6. diplopia:

_____

_____

7. astigmatism:

_____

_____

H **Complete the following sentences.**

1. In the myopic eye, light rays do not focus properly on the _____. Either the eyeball is too _____ or the refractive power of the lens is too _____, so that the image is blurred and comes to a focus in _____ of the retina. The type of lens used to correct this refractive error is called a/an _____ lens.
2. In the hyperopic eye, the eyeball is too _____ or the refractive power of the lens too _____, so that the image is blurred and focused in _____ of the retina. The type of lens used to correct this refractive error is called a/an _____ lens.
3. A miotic is a drug that _____ the pupil of the eye.
4. A mydriatic is a drug that _____ the pupil of the eye.

I **Match the abnormal conditions of the eye with the descriptions/definitions that follow.**

cataract

chalazion

diabetic retinopathy

glaucoma

hordeolum (stye)

macular degeneration

nystagmus

retinal detachment

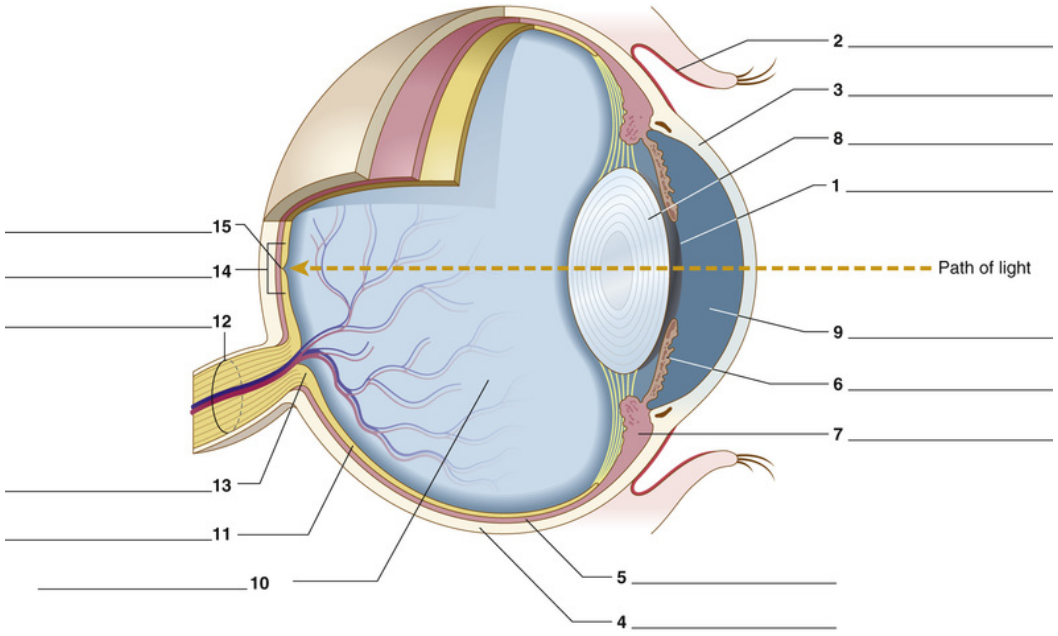
retinitis pigmentosa

strabismus

1. Retinal microaneurysms, hemorrhages, dilation of retinal veins, and neovascularization occur secondary to an abnormal endocrine condition:
   _____
2. Two layers of the retina separate from each other:
   _____
3. Abnormal deviations of the eye occur (esotropia and exotropia): _____
4. Clouding of the lens causes decreased vision:
   _____
5. Loss of central vision caused by deterioration of the macula of the retina: _____
6. Localized, purulent infection of a sebaceous gland in the eyelid: _____
7. Small, firm, cystic mass on the eyelid; formed as a result of chronic inflammation of a sebaceous gland:
   _____

8. Increased intraocular pressure results in optic nerve damage: _____
9. Pigmented scarring forms throughout the retina: _____
10. Repetitive rhythmic movements of one or both eyes: _____

J **Label the drawing of the eye using the list of terms provided.**



anterior chamber
choroid
ciliary body
conjunctiva
cornea
fovea centralis
iris

lens

macula

optic disc

optic nerve

pupil

retina

sclera

vitreous humor

K **Match the pathologic conditions of the eye with the images that follow. Write the letter of the image in the space provided**

1. stroke (hemianopsia) _____
2. glaucoma _____
3. cataract _____

L **Give the meaning of the following combining forms.**

1. lacrim/o

   _____

2. dacry/o

   _____

3. kerat/o

   _____

4. corne/o

_____

5. blephar/o

_____

6. palpebr/o

_____

7. cor/o

_____

8. pupill/o

_____

9. phac/o

_____

10. phak/o

_____

11. ocul/o

_____

12. ophthalm/o

_____

13. opt/o

_____

14. scot/o

_____

M **Give the meanings of the following abbreviations for terms relating to the eye or ear.**

1. OU

_____
_____

2. VA

_____
_____

3. OD

_____
_____

4. OS

_____
_____

5. VF

_____
_____

6. IOL

_____
_____

7. IOP

_____
_____

8. PERRLA

_____
_____

9. OCT

_____
_____

N **Match the clinical procedures with the descriptions/definitions that follow.**

fluorescein angiography
keratoplasty
laser photocoagulation
LASIK
ophthalmoscopy
phacoemulsification
scleral buckle

slit lamp microscopy

tonometry

visual acuity test

visual field test

vitrectomy

1. Ultrasonic vibrations break up the lens, and the fragments are aspirated from the eye: _____
2. Test of clearness of vision: _____
3. Measurement of tension or pressure within the eye; glaucoma test: _____
4. High-energy light radiation beams are used to stop retinal hemorrhaging: _____
5. A laser removes corneal tissue (sculpts it) to correct myopia: _____
6. Intravenous injection of dye followed by photographs of the eye through dilated pupils: _____
7. Suture of a silicone band to the sclera to correct retinal detachment: _____
8. Test to measure central and peripheral vision (area within which objects are seen) when the eyes are looking straight ahead: _____
9. Removal (and replacement) of diseased fluid in the chamber behind the lens of the eye: _____
10. Visual examination of the interior of the eye after dilation of the pupil: _____
11. Use of an instrument for microscopic examination of parts of the eye: _____
12. Corneal transplant surgery: _____

O **Arrange the following terms in the correct order to indicate their sequence in the transmission of sound waves to the brain from the outer ear. See page 672.**

auditory liquids and receptors
auditory nerve fibers
cerebral cortex
cochlea
external auditory canal
incus
malleus
oval window
pinna (auricle)
stapes
tympanic membrane

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____
11. _____

P **Give short definitions for the following medical terms.**

1. labyrinth

_____

_____

2. semicircular canals
_____

3. auditory (eustachian) tube
_____

4. stapes
_____
_____

5. organ of Corti
_____
_

6. perilymph and endolymph
_____

7. cerumen
_____
_____

8. vestibule
_____
_____

9. oval window
_____
__

10. tympanic membrane
_____

Q **Complete the following terms based on their definitions.**

1. instrument to examine the ear: _____ scope
2. removal of the third bone of the middle ear: _____ ectomy
3. pertaining to the auditory tube and throat: _____ pharyngeal

4. flow of pus from the ear: oto _____
5. instrument to measure hearing: _____ meter
6. incision of the eardrum: _____ tomy
7. surgical repair of the eardrum: _____ plasty
8. deafness due to old age: _____ cusis
9. small ear: micr _____
10. inflammation of the middle ear: ot _____

R **Give short definitions for the following medical terms.**

1. vertigo
   _____
   _____
2. Meniere disease
   _____
   _____
3. otosclerosis
   _____
   _____
4. tinnitus
   _____
   _____
5. labyrinthitis
   _____
   _____
6. cholesteatoma
   _____
   _____
7. suppurative otitis media
   _____

_____

8. acoustic neuroma

_____
_____

9. mastoiditis

_____
_____

10. myringitis

_____
_____

S **Give the meanings of the following abbreviations of terms relating to otology.**

1. ENG

_____
_____

2. AS

_____
_____

3. AD

_____
_____

4. EENT

_____
_____

5. ENT

_____
_____

6. PE tube

_____
_____

T **Circle the correct term(s) in boldface to complete each sentence.**

1. Dr. Jones specializes in pediatric ophthalmology. His examination of children with poor vision often leads to the diagnosis of **(cataract, amblyopia, glaucoma)**, or lazy eye.
2. Stella's near vision became progressively worse as she aged. Her physician told her that she had a common condition called **(presbyopia, detached retina, anisocoria)**, which often develops beginning in middle age.
3. Matthew rubbed his itchy eyes constantly and thus spread his "pinkeye" or **(conjunctivitis, blepharitis, myringitis)** from one eye to the other. Dr. Chang prescribed antibiotics for this common condition, because Matthew had a purulent discharge suggestive of an infection.
4. As Paul's **(mastoiditis, otitis media, tinnitus)** became progressively worse, his doctor worried that this ringing in his ears might be caused by a benign brain tumor, a/an **(cholesteatoma, acoustic neuroma, glaucoma)**.
5. Before her second birthday, Sally had so many episodes of **(vertigo, otosclerosis, suppurative otitis media)** that Dr. Sills recommended the placement of PE tubes.
6. Sixty-eight-year-old Bob experienced blurred vision in the central portion of his visual field. After careful examination of his **(cornea, sclera, retina)**, his **(ophthalmologist, optician, optometrist)** diagnosed his condition as **(glaucoma, iritis, macular degeneration)**. The doctor explained that the form of this condition was atrophic or **(dry, wet)**, causing photoreceptor rods and cones to die.
7. If Bob's condition had been diagnosed as the **(dry, wet)** form, it might have been treated with **(cryotherapy, intraocular lenses, laser photocoagulation)** to seal leaky blood vessels.

8. Sarah suddenly experienced bright flashes of light in her right eye. She also told her physician that she had a sensation of a curtain being pulled over part of the visual field in that eye. Her doctor examined her eye with **(keratoplasty, ophthalmoscopy, tonometry)** and determined that she had **(retinal refraction, retinal detachment, diabetic retinopathy)**. Corrective surgery, known as **(enucleation, vitrectomy, scleral buckling),** was recommended.
9. Carol awakened with a sensation of dizziness or **(vertigo, tinnitus, presbycusis)** as she tried to get out of bed. She was totally incapacitated for several days and noticed hearing loss in her left ear. Her physician explained that fluid called **(pus, endolymph, mucus)** had accumulated in her **(auditory tube, middle ear, cochlea)** and her condition was **(otosclerosis, cholesteatoma, Meniere disease)**. He prescribed drugs to control her dizziness and nausea.
10. Patients with conductive hearing loss are helped by reconstruction of the **(labyrinth, tympanic membrane, auditory tube)**, a procedure known as **(myringoplasty, audiometry, otoscopy)**. Patients with sensorineural hearing loss may be helped by a **(hearing aid, cochlear implant, stapedectomy)**.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. E
2. G
3. H
4. J
5. F

6. I
7. B
8. C
9. A
10. D

B

1. optic disc
2. accommodation
3. macula
4. fovea centralis
5. refraction
6. optic chiasm
7. cones
8. rods
9. anterior chamber
10. fundus

C

1. cornea
2. anterior chamber and aqueous humor
3. pupil
4. lens
5. vitreous chamber and vitreous humor
6. retina

7. optic nerve fibers
8. optic chiasm
9. thalamus
10. cerebral cortex (occipital lobe)

D

1. cranial nerve that carries impulses from the retina to the brain
2. having two sides that are rounded, elevated, and curved evenly
3. condition of pupils of unequal (anis/o) size
4. pertaining to paralysis of the ciliary muscles, which would result in dilation or enlargement of the pupil
5. pertaining to the eyelid
6. condition of enlargement of the pupil
7. condition of constriction of the pupil
8. swelling in the region of the optic disc
9. condition of sensitivity to ("fear of") light
10. blind spot; area of darkened (diminished) vision surrounded by clear vision

E

1. blepharitis
2. conjunctivitis
3. dacryoadenitis
4. iritis
5. keratitis

6. scleritis
7. retinitis
8. blepharoptosis
9. lacrimal
10. intraocular

F

1. corneal ulcer
2. uveitis
3. xerophthalmia
4. hemianopsia
5. exotropia
6. ophthalmologist
7. optometrist
8. optician
9. aphakia
10. esotropia

G

1. decreased (dim) vision; lazy eye (resulting from strabismus and uncorrected refractive errors in childhood)
2. farsightedness
3. decreased vision at near, resulting from increasing age
4. nearsightedness
5. night blindness; decreased vision at night
6. double vision

7. defective curvature of the lens and/or cornea leading to blurred vision

H

1. retina; long; strong; front; concave
2. short; weak; back; convex
3. constricts
4. dilates

I

1. diabetic retinopathy
2. retinal detachment
3. strabismus
4. cataract
5. macular degeneration
6. hordeolum (stye)
7. chalazion
8. glaucoma
9. retinitis pigmentosa
10. nystagmus

J

1. pupil
2. conjunctiva
3. cornea
4. sclera

5. choroid
6. iris
7. ciliary body
8. lens
9. anterior chamber
10. vitreous humor
11. retina
12. optic nerve
13. optic disc
14. macula
15. fovea centralis

K

1. C. Stroke (hemianopsia)—loss of half of the visual field caused by a stroke affecting the left visual cortex
2. B. Glaucoma—loss of peripheral vision first (darkness around the edges of the picture)
3. A. Cataract—causes blurred vision

L

1. tears
2. tears
3. cornea
4. cornea
5. eyelid
6. eyelid

7. pupil
8. pupil
9. lens
10. lens
11. eye
12. eye
13. eye
14. darkness

M

1. both eyes
2. visual acuity
3. right eye
4. left eye
5. visual field
6. intraocular lens
7. intraocular pressure
8. pupils equal, round, reactive to light and accommodation
9. optical coherence tomography

N

1. phacoemulsification
2. visual acuity test
3. tonometry
4. laser photocoagulation

5. LASIK
6. fluorescein angiography
7. scleral buckle
8. visual field test
9. vitrectomy
10. ophthalmoscopy
11. slit lamp microscopy
12. keratoplasty

O

1. pinna (auricle)
2. external auditory canal
3. tympanic membrane
4. malleus
5. incus
6. stapes
7. oval window
8. cochlea
9. auditory liquids and receptors
10. auditory nerve fibers
11. cerebral cortex

P

1. cochlea and organs of equilibrium (semicircular canals and vestibule)
2. organ of equilibrium in the inner ear

3. passageway between the middle ear and the throat
4. third ossicle (little bone) of the middle ear
5. region in the cochlea that contains auditory receptors
6. auditory fluids circulating within the inner ear
7. wax in the external auditory meatus
8. central cavity of the inner ear that connects the semicircular canals and the cochlea
9. delicate membrane between the middle and the inner ears
10. eardrum

Q

1. otoscope
2. stapedectomy
3. salpingopharyngeal
4. otopyorrhea
5. audiometer
6. myringotomy (tympanotomy)
7. tympanoplasty (myringoplasty)
8. presbycusis
9. microtia
10. otitis media

R

1. sensation of irregular or whirling motion either of oneself or of external objects

2. disorder of the labyrinth marked by elevation of ear fluids and pressure within the cochlea (tinnitus, vertigo, and nausea result)
3. hardening in the bony tissue of the ossicles of the middle ear
4. noise (ringing, buzzing) in the ears without an external source
5. inflammation of the labyrinth of the inner ear
6. collection of skin cells and cholesterol in a sac within the middle ear
7. inflammation of the middle ear with bacterial infection and pus collection
8. benign tumor arising from the acoustic nerve in the brain
9. inflammation of the mastoid process (behind the ear)
10. inflammation of the eardrum

S

1. electronystagmography; a test of balance
2. left ear
3. right ear
4. eyes, ears, nose, and throat
5. ears, nose, and throat
6. pressure-equalizing tube; ventilating tube placed in the eardrum

T

1. amblyopia
2. presbyopia

3. conjunctivitis

4. tinnitus; acoustic neuroma

5. suppurative otitis media

6. retina; ophthalmologist; macular degeneration; dry

7. wet; laser photocoagulation

8. ophthalmoscopy; retinal detachment; scleral buckling

9. vertigo; endolymph; cochlea; Meniere disease

10. tympanic membrane; myringoplasty; cochlear implant

Answers to Practical Applications

Operating Room Schedule: Eye and Ear Procedures

1. I

2. B

3. C

4. D

5. G

6. A

7. H

8. E

9. F

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897. You can also hear each term pronounced on the Evolve website (http://evolve.elsevier.com/Chabner/language/).

The Eye

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
accommodation	ah-kom-o-DA-shun
amblyopia	am-ble-O-pe-ah
anisocoria	an-i-so-KO-re-ah
anterior chamber	an-TE-re-or CHAYM-ber
aphakia	ah-FA-ke-ah
aqueous humor	AH-kwe-us HU-mor
astigmatism	ah-STIG-mah-tiz-im
biconvex	bi-KON-vex
blepharitis	bleh-fah-RI-tis
blepharoptosis	bleh-fah-rop-TO-sis
cataract	KAT-ah-rakt
chalazion	kah-LA-ze-on
choroid	KOR-oyd
ciliary body	SIL-e-air-e BOD-e
cone	kone
conjunctiva	kon-junk-TI-vah
conjunctivitis	kon-junk-tih-VI-tis
cornea	KOR-ne-ah
corneal abrasion	KOR-ne-al ah-BRA-zhun
corneoscleral	kor-ne-o-SKLER-al
cycloplegic	si-klo-PLE-jik
dacryoadenitis	dak-re-o-ah-deh-NI-tis
diabetic retinopathy	di-ah-BEH-tik reh-tin-OP-ah-the
diplopia	dip-LO-pe-ah
enucleation	e-nu-kle-A-shun
esotropia	es-o-TRO-pe-ah
exotropia	ek-so-TRO-pe-ah
fluorescein angiography	flu-o-RES-e-in an-je-OG-rah-fe
fovea centralis	FO-ve-ah sen-TRAH-lis
fundus of the eye	FUN-dus of the eye
glaucoma	glaw-KO-mah
hemianopsia	hem-e-an-OP-se-ah
hordeolum	hor-DE-o-lum
hyperopia	hi-per-O-pe-ah
hypertensive retinopathy	hi-per-TEN-siv reh-tih-NOP-ah-the
intraocular	in-trah-OK-u-lar
intravitreal	in-trah-VIT-re-al
iridectomy	ir-ih-DEK-to-me
iridic	ir-RID-ik
iris	I-ris
iritis	i-RI-tis

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
keratitis	ker-ah-TI-tis
keratoplasty	ker-ah-to-PLAS-te
lacrimal	LAK-rih-mal
lacrimation	lah-krih-MA-shun
laser photocoagulation	LA-zer fo-to-ko-ag-u-LA-shun
lens	lenz
macula	MAK-u-lah
macular degeneration	MAK-u-lar de-jen-eh-RA-shun
miosis	mi-O-sis
miotic	mi-OT-ik
mydriasis	mih-DRI-ah-sis
myopia	mi-O-pe-ah
nyctalopia	nik-tah-LO-pe-ah
nystagmus	nih-STAG-mus
ophthalmic	of-THAL-mik
ophthalmologist	of-thal-MOL-o-jist
ophthalmoplegia	of-thal-mo-PLE-jah
ophthalmoscopy	of-thal-MOS-ko-pe
optic chiasm	OP-tik KI-az-im
optic disc	OP-tik disc
optic nerve	OP-tik nerv
optical coherence tomography	OP-tih-kal ko-HEAR-antz to-MOH-grah-fe
optician	op-TISH-an
optometrist	op-TOM-eh-trist
palpebral	pal-PE-bral
papilledema	pap-ih-leh-DE-mah
phacoemulsification	fa-ko-eh-mul-sih-fih-KA-shun
photophobia	fo-to-FO-be-ah
presbyopia	prez-be-O-pe-ah
pupil	PU-pil
pupillary	PU-pih-lair-e
refraction	re-FRAK-shun
retina	RET-ih-nah
retinal detachment	RET-ih-nal de-TACH-ment
retinitis pigmentosa	ret-ih-NI-tis pig-men-TO-sah
rod	rod
sclera	SKLEH-rah
scleral buckle	SKLEH-ral BUK-el
scleritis	skleh-RI-tis
scotoma	sko-TO-mah
slit lamp microscopy	slit lamp mi-KROS-ko-pe

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
strabismus	strah-BIZ-mus
thalamus	THAL-ah-mus
tonometry	to-NOM-eh-tre
trabeculoplasty	trah-bek-u-lo-PLAS-te
uveitis	u-ve-I-tis
visual acuity test	VIZ-u-al ah-KU-ih-te test
visual field test	VIZ-u-al feeld test
vitrectomy	vi-TREK-to-me
vitreous humor	VIT-re-us HU-mor
xerophthalmia	zer-of-THAL-me-ah

The Ear

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
acoustic	ah-KOOS-tik
acoustic neuroma	ah-KOOS-tik nu-RO-mah
audiogram	AW-de-o-gram
audiologist	aw-de-OL-o-jist
audiometer	aw-de-OM-eh-ter
audiometry	aw-de-OM-eh-tre
auditory canal	AW-dih-to-re kah-NAL
auditory meatus	AW-dih-to-re me-A-tus
auditory nerve fibers	AW-dih-to-re nerv FI-berz
auditory tube	AW-dih-to-re toob
aural	AW-ral
auricle	AW-rih-kl
cerumen	seh-RU-men
cholesteatoma	ko-le-ste-ah-TO-mah
cochlea	KOK-le-ah
cochlear	KOK-le-ar
deafness	DEF-nes
ear thermometry	ear ther-MOM-eh-tre
endolymph	EN-do-limf
Eustachian tube	u-STA-shun toob
hyperacusis	hi-per-ah-KU-sis
incus	ING-kus
labyrinth	LAB-ih-rinth
macrotia	mak-RO-she-ah
malleus	MAL-e-us
mastoiditis	mas-toy-DI-tis
Meniere disease	men-e-AIR dih-ZEEZ
myringitis	mir-in-JI-tis
myringotomy	mir-in-GOT-o-me
organ of Corti	OR-gan of COR-te
ossicle	OS-ih-kel
ossiculoplasty	os-ih-ku-lo-PLAS-te
otic	O-tik
otitis media	o-TI-tis ME-de-ah
otolaryngologist	o-to-lah-rin-GOL-o-jist
otomycosis	o-to-mi-KO-sis
otopyorrhea	o-to-pi-o-RE-ah
otosclerosis	o-to-skleh-RO-sis
otoscopy	o-TOS-ko-pe
oval window	O-val WIN-do
perilymph	PEH-rih-limf

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
pinna	PIN-ah
postauricular	post-aw-RIK-u-lar
presbycusis	prez-be-KU-sis
salpingopharyngeal	sal-ping-go-fah-IN-ge-al
semicircular canals	seh-me-SER-ku-lar kah-NALZ
stapedectomy	sta-peh-DEK-to-me
stapes	STA-peez
tinnitus	TIN-nih-tus
tuning fork test	TU-ning fork test
tympanic membrane	tim-PAN-ik MEM-brayn
tympanoplasty	tim-pah-no-PLAS-te
vertigo	VER-tih-go
vestibule	VES-tib-yool
vestibulocochlear	ves-tib-u-lo-KO-kle-ar

Review Sheet

Write the meaning of the word parts in the spaces provided and test yourself. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

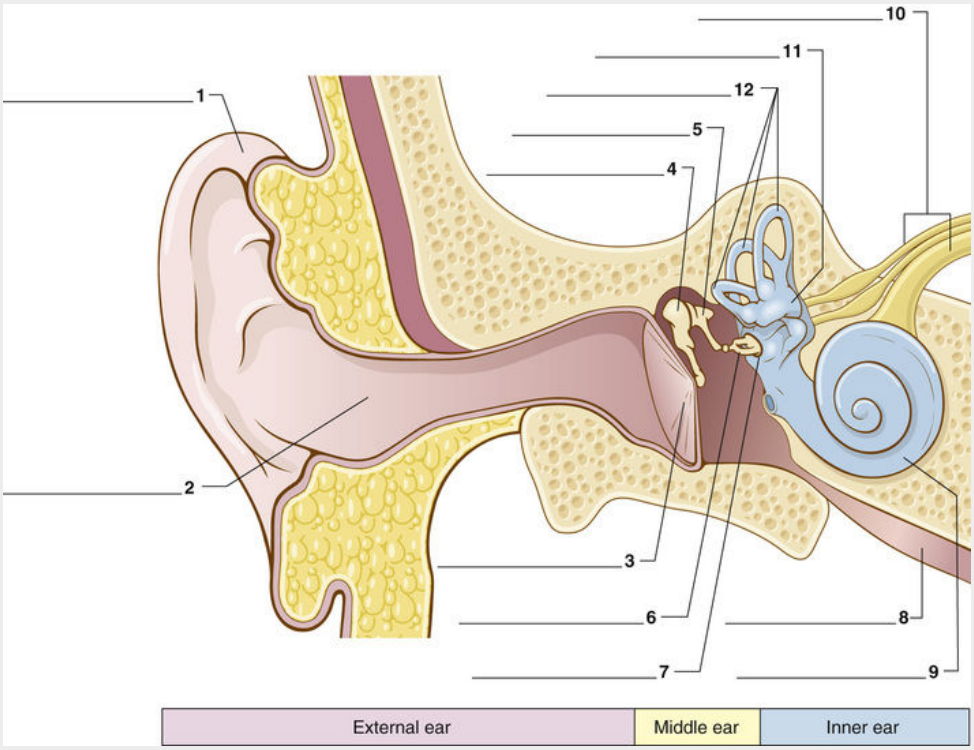
COMBINING FORM	MEANING
acous/o	_____
ambly/o	_____
anis/o	_____
aque/o	_____
audi/o	_____
audit/o	_____
aur/o	_____
auricul/o	_____
blephar/o	_____
cochle/o	_____
conjunctiv/o	_____
cor/o	_____
corne/o	_____
cycl/o	_____
dacry/o	_____
dipl/o	_____
glauc/o	_____
ir/o	_____
irid/o	_____
kerat/o	_____
lacrim/o	_____
mastoid/o	_____
mi/o	_____
myc/o	_____
mydr/o	_____
myring/o	_____
nyct/o	_____
ocul/o	_____
ophthalm/o	_____
opt/o	_____
optic/o	_____
ossicul/o	_____
ot/o	_____
palpebr/o	_____
papill/o	_____
phac/o	_____
phak/o	_____
phot/o	_____
presby/o	_____
pupill/o	_____
retin/o	_____

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
salping/o	_____
scler/o	_____
scot/o	_____
staped/o	_____
tympan/o	_____
uve/o	_____
vestibul/o	_____
vitre/o	_____
xer/o	_____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-acusis	_____
-cusis	_____
-meter	_____
-metry	_____
-opia	_____
-opsia	_____
-otia	_____
-phobia	_____
-plegic	_____
-tropia	_____

Use the following terms to label the accompanying diagram.



auditory nerve fibers
cochlea
eustachian tube
external auditory meatus
incus
malleus
oval window
pinna (auricle)
semicircular canals
stapes
tympanic membrane (eardrum)
vestibule

CHAPTER 18

Endocrine System

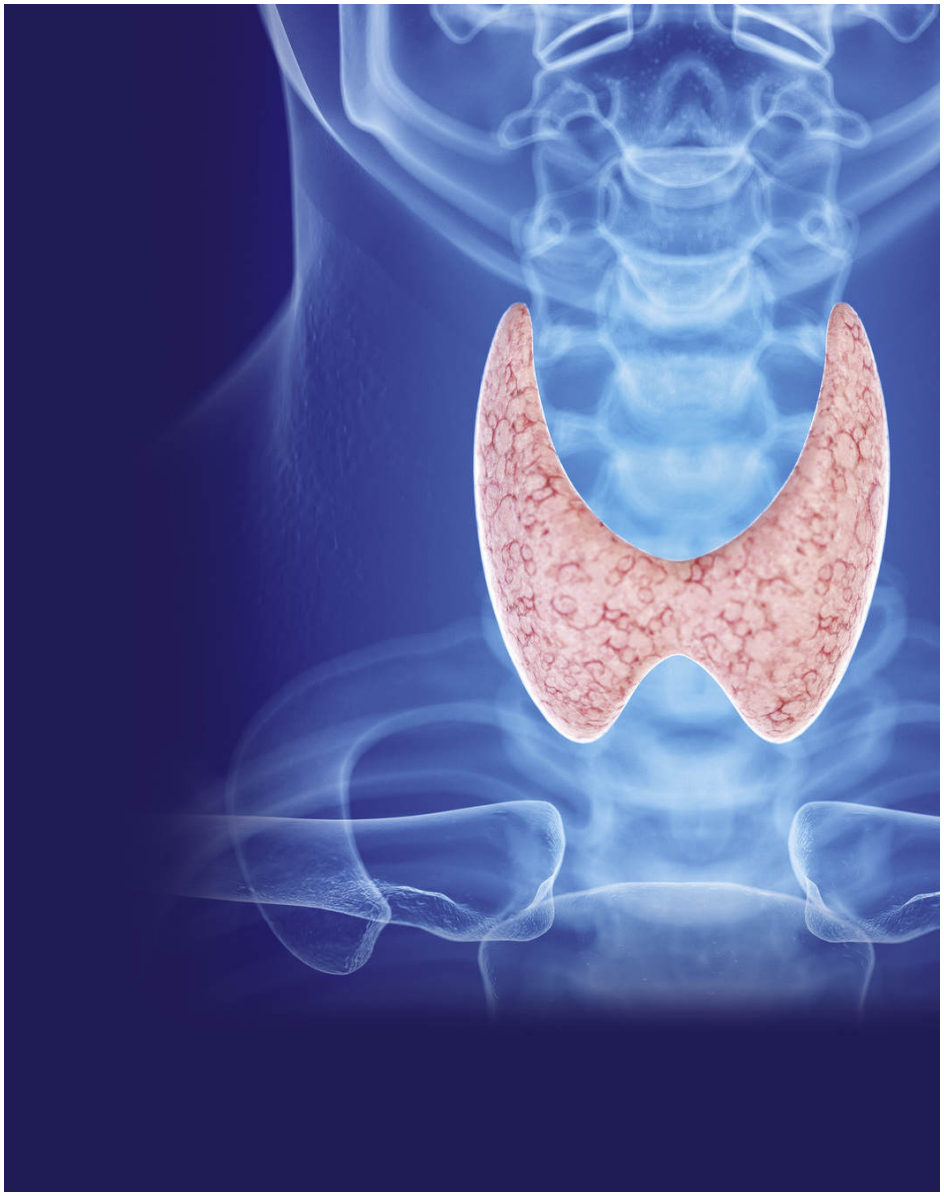
CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 700
Thyroid Gland 702
Parathyroid Glands 703
Adrenal Glands 704
Pancreas 706
Pituitary Gland 707
Ovaries 709
Testes 710
Vocabulary 711
Terminology 714
Pathology 718
Laboratory Tests 727
Clinical Procedures 727
Abbreviations 728
Practical Applications 729
In Person: Living with Diabetes 730
In Person: Diabetes Insipidus 731
In Person: My Cushing's Journey 731
Exercises 732
Answers to Exercises 738
Pronunciation of Terms 740
Review Sheet 743

CHAPTER GOALS

- Identify the endocrine glands and their hormones.
- Gain an understanding of the functions of these hormones in the body.
- Analyze medical terms related to the endocrine glands and their hormones.

- Identify the abnormal conditions resulting from excessive and deficient secretions of the endocrine glands.
- Describe laboratory tests and clinical procedures related to endocrinology, and recognize relevant abbreviations.



Introduction

The endocrine system is an information signaling system much like the nervous system. However, the nervous system uses nerves to conduct information, whereas the endocrine

system uses blood vessels as information channels. **Glands** located in many regions of the body release into the bloodstream specific chemical messengers called **hormones** (from the Greek word *hormōn,* meaning urging on) that regulate the many and varied functions of an organism. For example, one hormone stimulates the growth of bones, another causes the maturation of sex organs and reproductive cells, and another controls the metabolic rate (metabolism) within all the individual cells of the body. In addition, one powerful endocrine gland below the brain secretes a wide variety of different hormones that travel through the bloodstream and regulate the activities of other endocrine glands.

Hormones produce their effects by binding to **receptors,** which are protein recognition sites in the various **target tissues** on which the hormones act. The receptors initiate specific biologic effects when the hormones bind to them. Each hormone has its own receptor, and binding of a receptor by a hormone is much like the interaction of a key and a lock.

Endocrine glands, no matter which hormones they produce, secrete their hormones directly into the bloodstream. **Exocrine glands** send chemical substances (tears, sweat, milk, saliva) via ducts to the outside of the body. Examples of exocrine glands are sweat, mammary, mucous, salivary, and lacrimal (tear) glands.

The ductless, internally secreting **endocrine glands** are listed as follows. Label these glands on Figure 18-1.

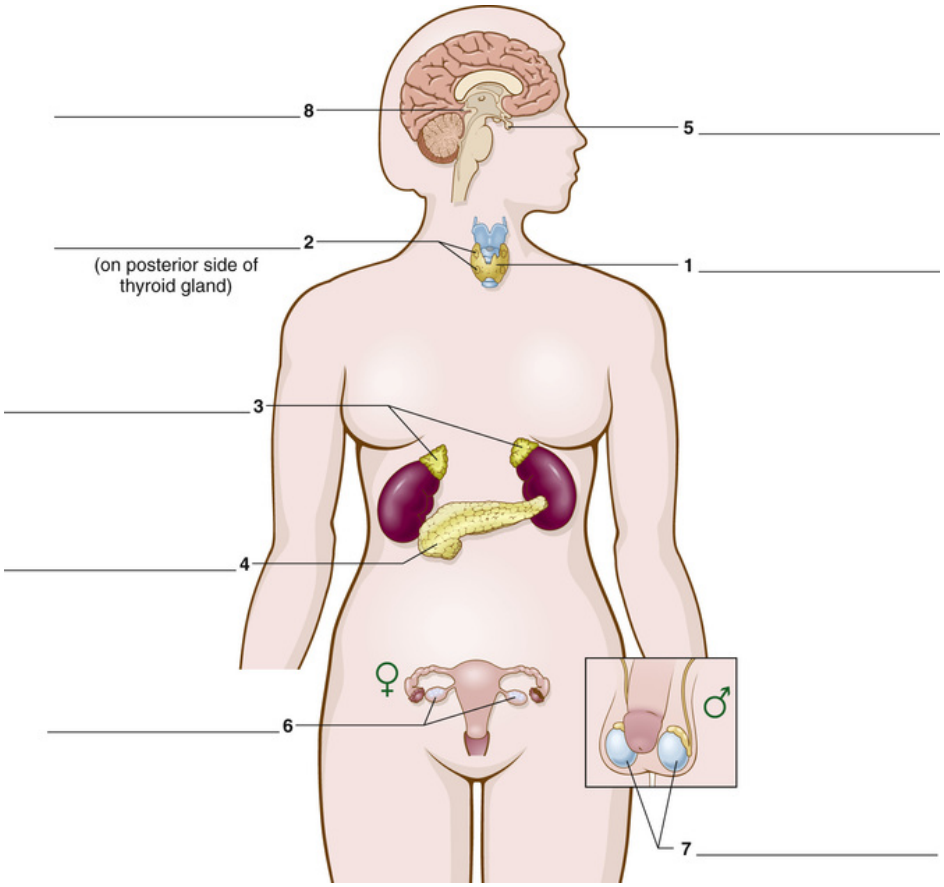


FIGURE 18-1 The endocrine system.

[1] thyroid gland
[2] parathyroid glands (four glands)
[3] adrenal glands (one pair)
[4] pancreas (islets of Langerhans)
[5] pituitary gland
[6] ovaries in female (one pair)
[7] testes in male (one pair)
[8] pineal gland

The last gland on this list, the **pineal gland**, is included as an endocrine gland because it is ductless, although less is known about its endocrine function. Located in the central portion of the brain, the pineal secretes melatonin. **Melatonin** may be linked to the body's "biologic clock" and is thought to induce sleep. The pineal gland has been linked to a mental condition, **seasonal affective disorder** (**SAD**)**,** in which the person suffers from depression in winter months. Melatonin secretion increases with deprivation of light and is inhibited by sunlight. Calcification of the pineal gland can occur and can be an important radiologic landmark when x-rays of the brain are examined.

Hormones are also secreted by endocrine tissue in other organs apart from the major endocrine glands. Examples are **erythropoietin** (kidney), **human chorionic gonadotropin** (placenta), and **cholecystokinin** (gallbladder). **Prostaglandins** are hormone-like substances that affect the body in many ways. First found in semen (produced by the prostate gland) but now recognized in cells throughout the body, prostaglandins have three functions: (1) stimulate the contraction of the uterus; (2) regulate body temperature, platelet aggregation, and acid secretion in the stomach; and (3) have the ability to lower blood pressure.

Endocrine tissue (apart from the major glands) is reviewed in Table 18-1. Use it as a reference.

TABLE 18-1

ENDOCRINE TISSUE (APART FROM MAJOR GLANDS): LOCATION, SECRETION, AND ACTION

LOCATION	SECRETION	ACTION
Body cells	Prostaglandins	Aggregation of platelets
		Contract uterus
		Lower acid secretion in stomach
		Lower blood pressure
Gastrointestinal tract	Cholecystokinin	Contracts gallbladder
	Gastrin	Stimulates gastric secretion
	Secretin	Stimulates pancreatic enzymes
Kidney	Erythropoietin	Stimulates erythrocyte production
Placenta	Human chorionic gonadotropin	Sustains pregnancy
Skin	Vitamin D	Affects absorption of calcium

Thyroid Gland

Location and Structure

Label Figure 18-2.

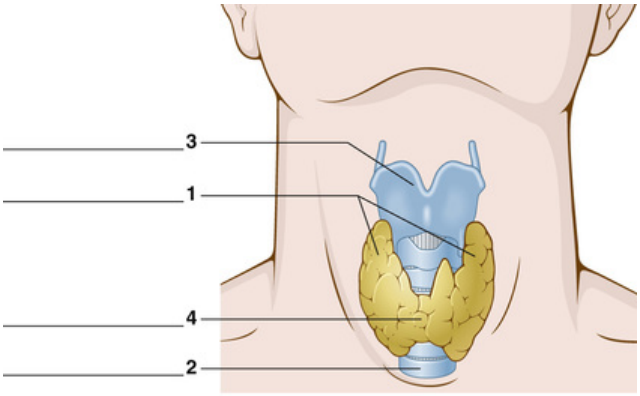


FIGURE 18-2 **The thyroid gland,** anterior view. Notice how the thyroid gland covers the trachea like a shield (*thyr/o* = shield).

The **thyroid gland** [1] is composed of a right and a left lobe on either side of the **trachea** [2], just below a large piece of cartilage called the **thyroid cartilage** [3]. The thyroid cartilage covers the larynx and produces the prominence on the neck known in men as the "Adam's apple." The **isthmus** [4] of the thyroid gland is a narrow strip of glandular tissue that connects the two lobes on the ventral (anterior) surface of the trachea.

Function

Two of the hormones secreted by the thyroid gland are **thyroxine** or **tetraiodothyronine (T4)** and **triiodothyronine (T3).** These hormones are synthesized in the thyroid gland from **iodine,** which is picked up from the blood circulating through the gland, and an amino acid called tyrosine. T4 (containing four atoms of iodine) is much more concentrated in the blood, whereas T3 (containing three atoms of iodine) is far more potent in affecting the metabolism of cells. Most thyroid hormone is bound to protein molecules as it travels in the bloodstream.

T4 and T3 are necessary in the body to maintain a normal level of metabolism in all body cells. Cells need oxygen to carry on metabolic processes, one aspect of which is burning food to release the energy stored within it. Thyroid hormone aids cells in their uptake of oxygen and thus supports the metabolic rate in the body. Injections of thyroid hormone raise the metabolic rate, whereas removal of the thyroid gland, diminishing thyroid hormone content in the body, results in a lower metabolic rate, heat loss, and poor physical and mental development.

A more recently discovered hormone produced by the thyroid gland is **calcitonin.** Calcitonin is secreted when calcium levels in the blood are high. It causes calcium loss in urine, lowering blood calcium back to normal. Calcitonin contained in a nasal spray may be used for treatment of osteoporosis (loss of bone density). By increasing calcium storage in bone, calcitonin strengthens weakened bone tissue and prevents spontaneous bone fractures. Figure 18-3 summarizes the hormones secreted by the thyroid gland.

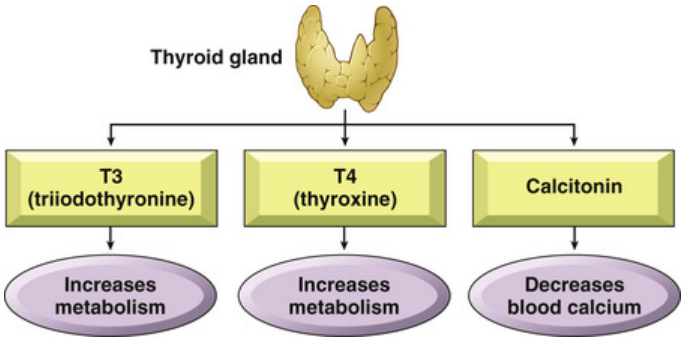


FIGURE 18-3 The thyroid gland: its hormones and actions.

Parathyroid Glands

Location and Structure

Label Figure 18-4.

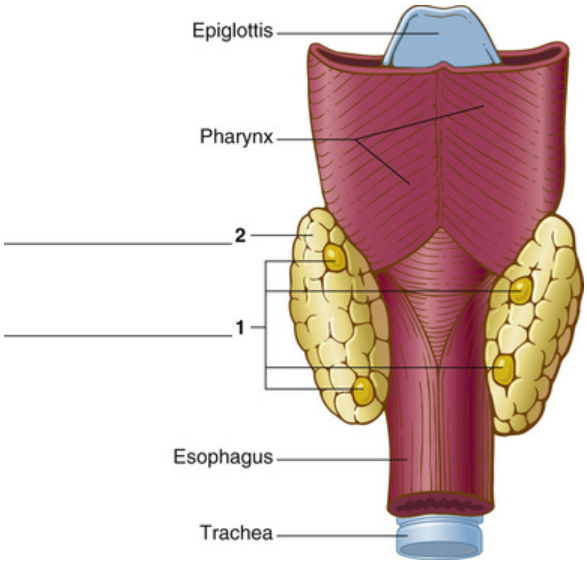


FIGURE 18-4 **The parathyroid glands,** posterior view. The prefix para- means near, or alongside.

The **parathyroid glands** [1] are four small oval bodies located on the dorsal aspect of the **thyroid gland** [2].

Function

Parathyroid hormone (PTH) is secreted by the parathyroid glands. This hormone (also known as **parathormone**) mobilizes **calcium** (a mineral substance) from bones into the bloodstream, where calcium is necessary for proper functioning of body tissues, especially muscles. Normally, calcium in the food we eat is absorbed from the intestine and carried by the blood to the bones, where it is stored. The adjustment of the level of calcium in the blood

is a good example of the way hormones in general control the **homeostasis** (equilibrium or constancy in the internal environment) of the body. If blood calcium decreases (as in pregnancy or with vitamin D deficiency), parathyroid hormone secretion increases, causing calcium to leave bones and enter the bloodstream. In this way, blood calcium levels are brought back to normal (Figure 18-5).

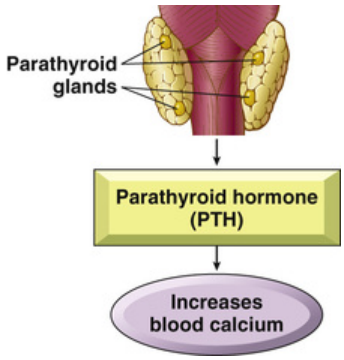


FIGURE 18-5 The parathyroid glands: their hormone and action.

Adrenal Glands

Location and Structure

Label Figure 18-6.

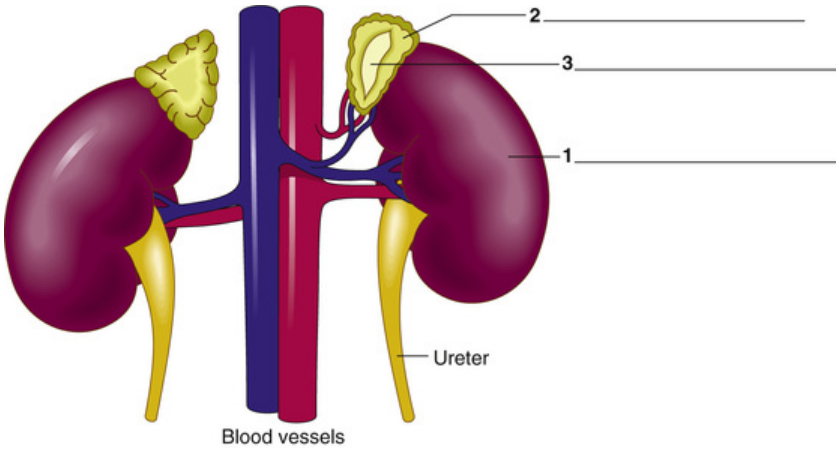


FIGURE 18-6 **The adrenal glands.** The prefix ad- means toward; adrenal glands are located "toward" or near the kidneys.

The **adrenal glands** are two small glands, one on top of each **kidney** [1]. Each gland consists of two parts: an outer portion, the **adrenal cortex** [2], and an inner portion, the **adrenal medulla** [3]. The adrenal cortex and the adrenal medulla are two glands in one, secreting different hormones. The adrenal cortex secretes **steroids** or **corticosteroids**

(complex chemicals derived from cholesterol); the adrenal medulla secretes **catecholamines** (chemicals derived from amino acids).

Function

The **adrenal cortex** secretes three types of **corticosteroids.**

1. **Glucocorticoids**—These steroid hormones have an important influence on the metabolism of sugars, fats, and proteins within all body cells and have a powerful anti-inflammatory effect.
   Cortisol helps regulate glucose, fat, and protein metabolism. It raises blood glucose as part of a response to stress. **Cortisone** is a hormone very similar to cortisol and can be prepared synthetically. Cortisone is useful in treating inflammatory conditions such as rheumatoid arthritis.
2. **Mineralocorticoids**—The major mineralocorticoid is **aldosterone.** It regulates the concentration of mineral **salts (electrolytes)** in the body. Aldosterone acts on the kidney to reabsorb **sodium** (an important **electrolyte**) and water and to excrete **potassium** (another major **electrolyte**). Thus, it regulates blood volume and blood pressure and electrolyte concentration.
3. **Sex hormones—Androgens** (testosterone) and **estrogens** are secreted in small amounts and influence secondary sex characteristics, such as pubic and axillary hair in boys and girls. In females, the masculinizing effects of adrenal androgens (such as increased body hair) may appear when levels of ovarian estrogen decrease after menopause.

Think of the "three S's" to recall the main adrenal cortex hormones, which influence **sugar** (cortisol), **salt** (aldosterone), and **sex** (androgens and estrogens).

The **adrenal medulla** secretes two types of **catecholamine** hormones:

1. **Epinephrine (adrenaline)**—Increases heart rate and blood pressure, dilates bronchial tubes, and releases glucose (sugar) from glycogen (storage substance) when the body needs it for more energy. It is often called the "fight or flight" hormone.
2. **Norepinephrine (noradrenaline)**—Constricts blood vessels to raise blood pressure.

Both epinephrine and norepinephrine are **sympathomimetic** agents because they mimic, or copy, the actions of the sympathetic nervous system. They are released to help the body meet the challenges of stress in response to stimulation by the sympathetic nervous system.

Figure 18-7 summarizes hormones secreted by the adrenal glands and their actions.

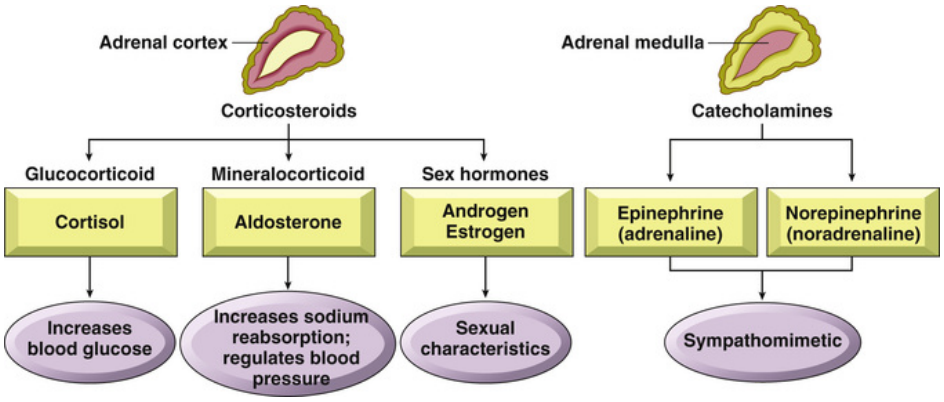


FIGURE 18-7 The adrenal cortex and adrenal medulla: their hormones and actions.

Pancreas

Location and Structures

Label Figure 18-8.

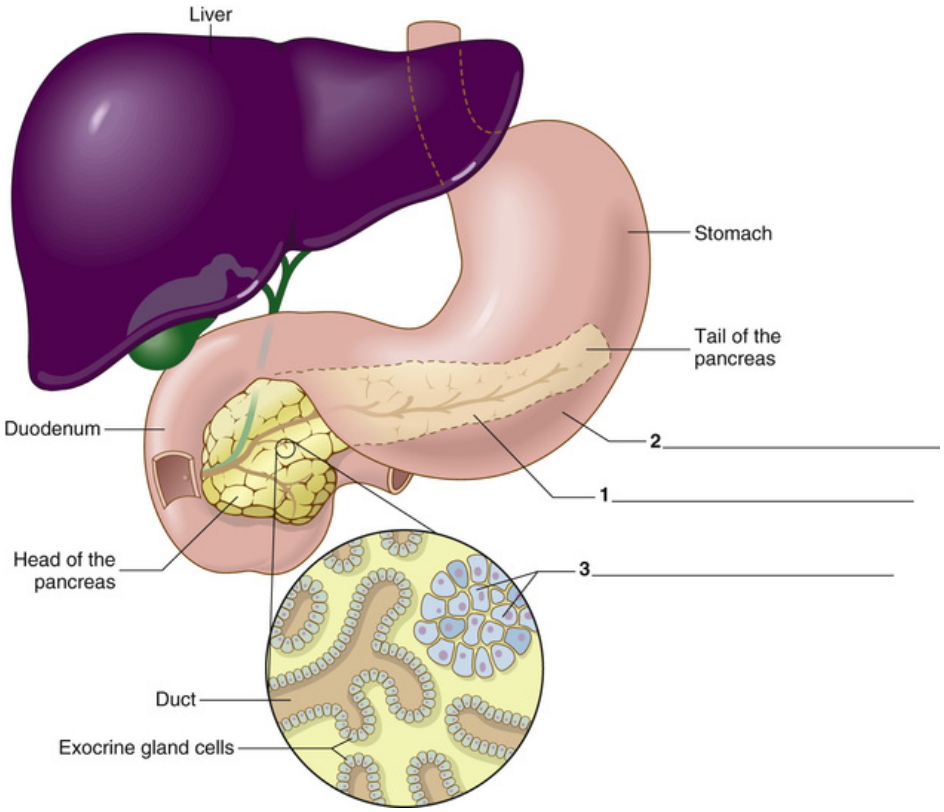


FIGURE 18-8 The **pancreas** and surrounding organs.

The **pancreas** [1] is located near and partly behind the **stomach** [2] at the level of the first and second lumbar vertebrae. The endocrine tissue within the pancreas consists of

specialized hormone-producing cells called the **islets of Langerhans** [3] or **islet cells.** More than 98% of the pancreas consists of exocrine cells (glands and ducts). These cells secrete digestive enzymes into the gastrointestinal tract but not into the bloodstream.

Function

The islets of Langerhans produce **insulin** (produced by beta cells) and **glucagon** (produced by alpha cells). Both play a role regulating blood **glucose** (sugar) levels. When blood glucose rises, insulin lowers blood sugar by helping it enter body cells. Insulin also lowers blood sugar by causing conversion of **glucose** to **glycogen** (a starch storage form of sugar) in the liver. If blood glucose levels fall too low, glucagon raises blood sugar by acting on liver cells to promote conversion of glycogen back to glucose. Thus, the endocrine function of the pancreas is another example of **homeostasis,** the body's ability to regulate its inner environment to maintain stability.

Figure 18-9 reviews the secretions of the islet cells and their actions.

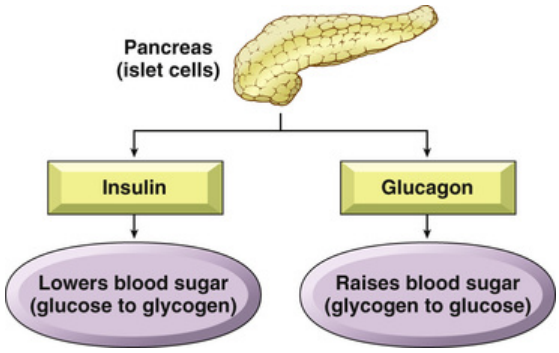


FIGURE 18-9 The pancreas (islet cells): its hormones and actions. Insulin is the only hormone that lowers blood sugar levels.

Pituitary Gland

Location and Structure

Label Figure 18-10.

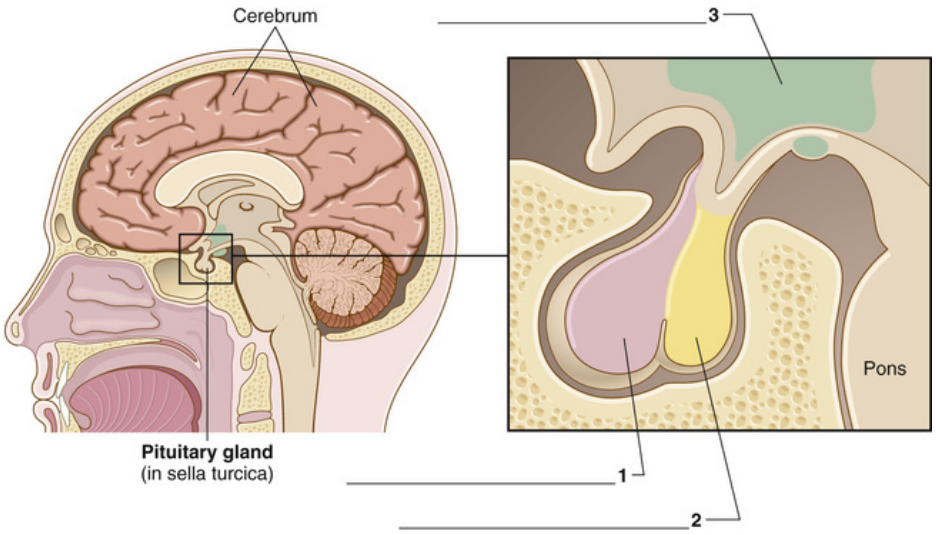


FIGURE 18-10 The pituitary gland.

The **pituitary gland,** also called the **hypophysis,** is a small pea-sized gland located at the base of the brain in a small pocket-like depression of the skull called the **sella turcica.** It is a well-protected gland, with the entire mass of the brain above it and the nasal cavity below. The ancient Greeks incorrectly imagined that its function was to produce *pituita,* or nasal secretion.

The pituitary consists of two distinct parts: an **anterior lobe** or **adenohypophysis** [1], composed of glandular epithelial tissue, and a **posterior lobe** or **neurohypophysis** [2], composed of nervous tissue. The **hypothalamus** [3] is a region of the brain under the thalamus and above the pituitary gland. Signals transmitted from the hypothalamus control secretions by the pituitary gland. Special secretory neurons in the hypothalamus send releasing and inhibiting factors (hormones) via capillaries to the anterior pituitary gland.

These factors stimulate or inhibit secretion of hormones from the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland. The hypothalamus also produces and secretes hormones directly to the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland, where the hormones are stored and then released (Figure 18-11).

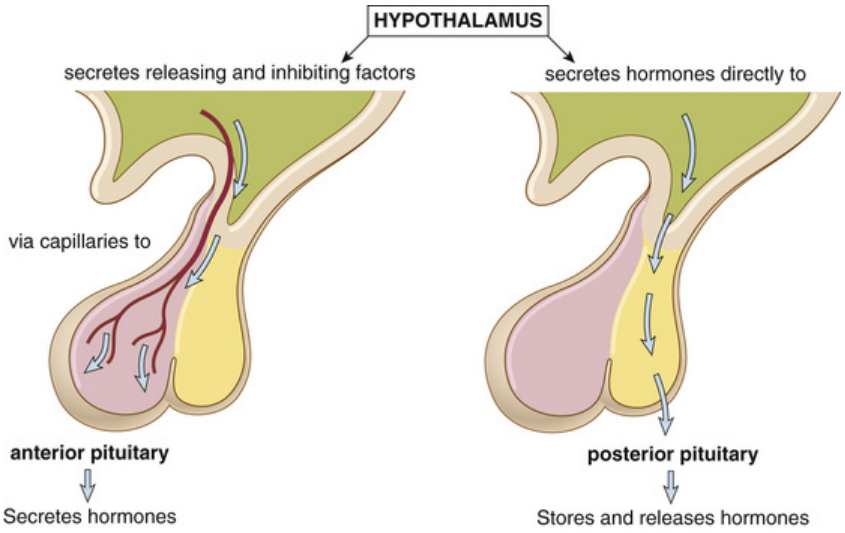


FIGURE 18-11 The relationship of the hypothalamus to the anterior and posterior lobes of the pituitary gland.

Function

Although no bigger than a pea, the **pituitary gland** is often called the **"master gland"** because it makes hormones that control several other endocrine glands.

The major hormones of the **anterior pituitary gland** are:

1. **Growth hormone (GH),** or **somatotropin**—Promotes protein synthesis that results in the growth of bones, muscles, and other tissues. GH also stimulates the liver to make insulin-like growth factor (also called IGF), which stimulates the growth of bones. It increases blood glucose levels and is secreted during exercise, sleep, and hypoglycemia.
2. **Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH),** or **thyrotropin**—Stimulates the growth of the thyroid gland and secretion of thyroxine (T4) and triiodothyronine (T3).
3. **Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH),** or **adrenocorticotropin**—Stimulates the growth of the adrenal cortex and increases its secretion of steroid hormones (primarily cortisol).
4. **Gonadotropic hormones**—Several gonadotropic hormones influence the growth and hormone secretion of the ovaries in females and the testes in males.
   In the female, **follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)** and **luteinizing hormone (LH)** stimulate the growth of eggs in the ovaries, the production of hormones, and ovulation. In the male, FSH influences the production of sperm, and LH (an interstitial cell–stimulating hormone) stimulates the testes to produce testosterone.
5. **Prolactin (PRL)**—Stimulates breast development during pregnancy and sustains milk production after birth.

The **posterior pituitary gland** stores and releases two important hormones that are synthesized in the hypothalamus:

1. **Antidiuretic hormone (ADH),** also called **vasopressin**—Stimulates the reabsorption of water by the kidney tubules. In addition, ADH also increases blood pressure by

constricting arterioles.

2. **Oxytocin (OT)**—Stimulates the uterus to contract during childbirth and maintains labor during childbirth. OT also is secreted during suckling and causes the production of milk from the mammary glands.

Figure 18-12 summarizes hormones secreted by the pituitary gland and their functions.

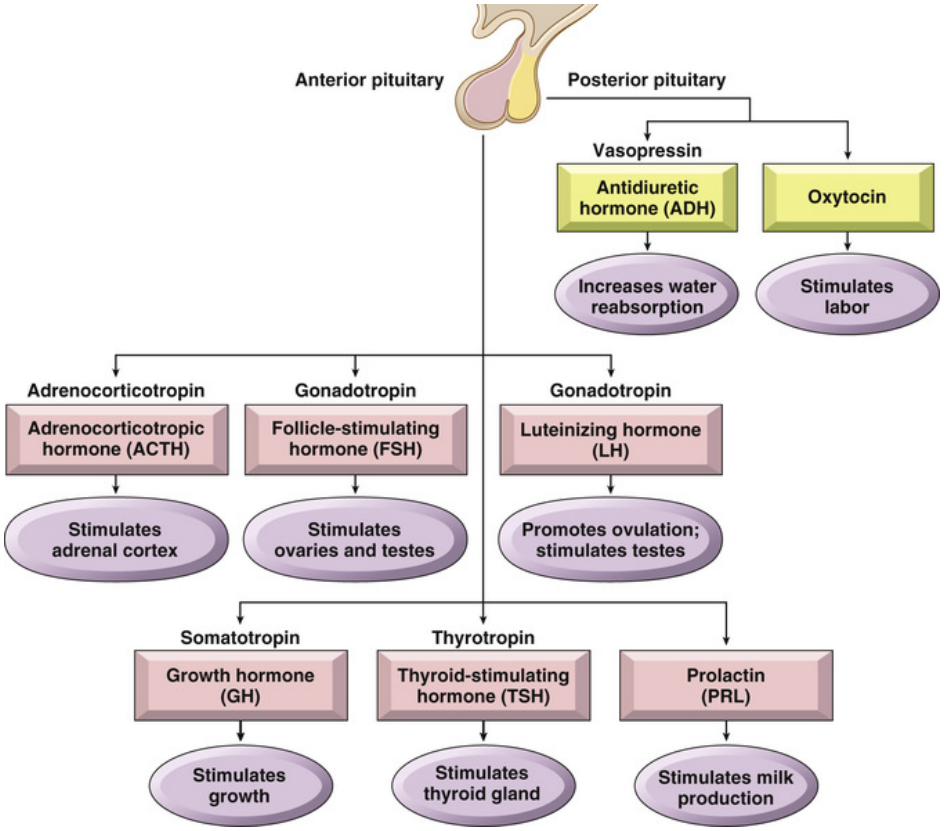


FIGURE 18-12 The pituitary gland: its hormones and actions.

Ovaries

Location and Structure

The **ovaries** are two small glands located in the lower abdominal region of the female. The ovaries produce the female gamete, the ovum, as well as hormones that are responsible for female sex characteristics and regulation of the menstrual cycle.

Function

The ovarian hormones are **estrogens** (**estradiol** and estrone) and **progesterone.** Estrogens stimulate development of ova (eggs) and development of female secondary sex characteristics. Progesterone is responsible for the preparation and maintenance of the uterus in pregnancy.

Testes

Location and Structure

The **testes** are two small ovoid glands suspended from the inguinal region of the male by the spermatic cord and surrounded by the scrotal sac. The testes produce the male gametes, spermatozoa, as well as the male hormone called **testosterone.**

Function

Testosterone is an **androgen** (male steroid hormone) that stimulates development of sperm and secondary sex characteristics in the male (deepening of voice and development of beard and pubic hair).

Figure 18-13 reviews the hormones secreted by the ovaries and testes.

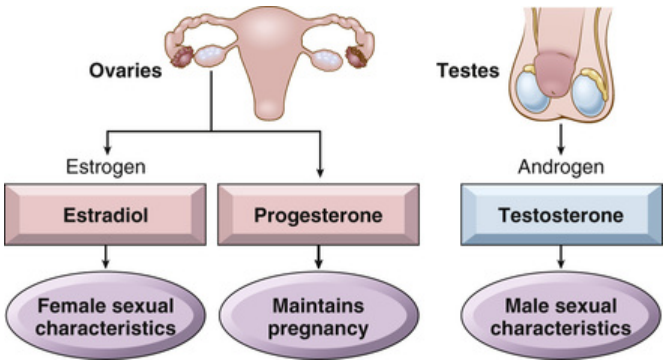


FIGURE 18-13 The ovaries and testes: their hormones and actions.

Table 18-2 lists the major endocrine glands, their hormones, and the actions they produce.

TABLE 18-2

MAJOR ENDOCRINE GLANDS: THE HORMONES THEY PRODUCE AND THEIR ACTIONS

ENDOCRINE GLAND	HORMONE	ACTION
Thyroid	• Thyroxine (T4); triiodothyronine (T3)	• Increases metabolism in body cells
	• Calcitonin	• Decreases blood calcium
Parathyroids	• Parathyroid hormone (PTH)	• Increases blood calcium
Adrenals		
Cortex	• Cortisol (glucocorticoid)	• Increases blood sugar
	• Aldosterone (mineralocorticoid)	• Increases reabsorption of sodium
	• Androgens, estrogens (sex hormones)	• Secondary sex characteristics
Medulla	• Epinephrine (adrenaline)	• Sympathomimetic
	• Norepinephrine (noradrenaline)	• Sympathomimetic
Pancreas		
Islet cells	• Insulin	• Decreases blood sugar (glucose to glycogen)
	• Glucagon	• Increases blood sugar (glycogen to glucose)
Pituitary		
Anterior lobe	• Growth hormone (GH) (somatotropin)	• Increases bone and tissue growth
	• Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)	• Stimulates thyroid gland; T4 and T3
	• Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)	• Stimulates adrenal cortex; cortisol secretion
	• Gonadotropins	
	• Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)	• Oogenesis and spermatogenesis
	• Luteinizing hormone (LH)	• Promotes ovulation; testosterone secretion
	• Prolactin (PRL)	• Growth of breast tissue and milk secretion
Posterior lobe	• Antidiuretic hormone (ADH) (vasopressin)	• Reabsorption of water by kidney tubules
	• Oxytocin	• Contraction of uterus in childbirth
Ovaries	• Estrogens	• Development of ova and female secondary sex characteristics
	• Progesterone	• Prepares and maintains the uterus in pregnancy

ENDOCRINE GLAND	HORMONE	ACTION
Testes	• Testosterone	• Development of sperm and male secondary sex characteristics

Vocabulary

This list reviews many new terms introduced in the text. Short definitions reinforce your understanding of the terms. Refer to the Pronunciation of Terms on page 740 for help with unfamiliar or difficult words.

Major Endocrine Glands

adrenal cortex	Outer section (cortex) of each adrenal gland; secretes cortisol, aldosterone, and sex hormones.
adrenal medulla	Inner section (medulla) of each adrenal gland; secretes epinephrine and norepinephrine.
ovaries	Located in the lower abdomen of a female; responsible for egg production and estrogen and progesterone secretion.
pancreas	Located behind the stomach. Islet (alpha and beta) cells (islets of Langerhans) secrete hormones from the pancreas. The pancreas also contains cells that are exocrine in function. They secrete enzymes, via a duct, into the small intestine to aid digestion.
parathyroid glands	Four small glands on the posterior of the thyroid gland. Some people may have three or five parathyroid glands.
pituitary gland (hypophysis)	Located at the base of the brain in the sella turcica; composed of an **anterior lobe (adenohypophysis)** and a **posterior lobe (neurohypophysis).** It weighs only $\frac{1}{16}$ of an ounce and is a half-inch across.
testes	Two glands enclosed in the scrotal sac of a male; responsible for sperm production and testosterone secretion.
thyroid gland	Located in the neck on either side of the trachea; secretes thyroxine, triiodothyronine, and calcitonin.

Hormones

adrenaline (epinephrine)	Secreted by the adrenal medulla; increases heart rate and blood pressure.
adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)	Secreted by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland; also called **adrenocorticotropin.** ACTH stimulates the adrenal cortex.
aldosterone	Secreted by the adrenal cortex; increases salt (sodium) reabsorption.
androgen	Male hormone secreted by the testes and to a lesser extent by the adrenal cortex; testosterone is an example.
antidiuretic hormone (ADH)	Secreted by the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland. **ADH (vasopressin)** increases reabsorption of water by the kidney.
calcitonin	Secreted by the thyroid gland; decreases blood calcium levels.
cortisol	Secreted by the adrenal cortex; increases blood sugar. It is secreted in times of stress and has an anti-inflammatory effect.
epinephrine (adrenaline)	Secreted by the adrenal medulla; increases heart rate and blood pressure and dilates airways (sympathomimetic). It is part of the body's "fight or flight" reaction.
estradiol	Estrogen (female hormone) secreted by the ovaries.
estrogen	Female hormone secreted by the ovaries and to a lesser extent by the adrenal cortex. Examples are estradiol and estrone.
follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)	Secreted by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland. **FSH** stimulates hormone secretion and egg production by the ovaries and sperm production by the testes.
glucagon	Secreted by alpha islet cells of the pancreas; increases blood sugar by conversion of glycogen (starch) to glucose.
growth hormone (GH); somatotropin	Secreted by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland; stimulates growth of bones and soft tissues.
insulin	Secreted by beta islet cells (Latin *insula* means island) of the pancreas. Insulin helps glucose (sugar) to pass into cells, and it promotes the conversion of glucose to glycogen.
luteinizing hormone (LH)	Secreted by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland; stimulates ovulation in females and testosterone secretion in males.
norepinephrine	Secreted by the adrenal medulla; increases heart rate and blood pressure (sympathomimetic). Nor- in chemistry means a parent compound from which another is derived. Also called noradrenaline.
oxytocin (OT)	Secreted by the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland; stimulates contraction of the uterus during childbirth.
parathormone (PTH)	Secreted by the parathyroid glands; increases blood calcium.
progesterone	Secreted by the ovaries; prepares the uterus for pregnancy.
prolactin (PRL)	Secreted by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland; promotes milk secretion.
somatotropin	Secreted by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland; **growth hormone.**
testosterone	Male hormone secreted by the testes.
thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH); thyrotropin	Secreted by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland. TSH acts on the thyroid gland to promote its functioning. **HINT**: TSH is not secreted by the thyroid gland.
thyroxine (T4)	Secreted by the thyroid gland; also called **tetraiodothyronine.** T4 increases metabolism in cells.

triiodothyronine (T3)	Secreted by the thyroid gland; T3 increases metabolism in cells **HINT**: The extra n in -thyronine (pronounced THI-ro-neen) avoids the combination of two vowels (o and i).
vasopressin	Secreted by the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland; **antidiuretic hormone (ADH).** Vasopressin increases water reabsorption and raises blood pressure.

Related Terms

catecholamines	Hormones derived from an amino acid and secreted by the adrenal medulla. Epinephrine is a catecholamine.
corticosteroids	Hormones (steroids) produced by the adrenal cortex. Examples are cortisol (raises sugar levels), aldosterone (raises salt reabsorption by kidneys), and androgens and estrogens (sex hormones).
electrolyte	Mineral salt found in the blood and tissues and necessary for proper functioning of cells; potassium, sodium, and calcium are electrolytes.
glucocorticoid	Steroid hormone secreted by the adrenal cortex; regulates glucose, fat, and protein metabolism. Cortisol raises blood sugar and is part of the stress response.
homeostasis	Tendency of an organism to maintain a constant internal environment.
hormone	Chemical, secreted by an endocrine gland, that travels through the blood to a distant organ or gland where it influences the structure or function of that organ or gland.
hypothalamus	Region of the brain lying below the thalamus and above the pituitary gland. It secretes releasing factors and hormones that affect the pituitary gland.
mineralocorticoid	Steroid hormone secreted by the adrenal cortex to regulate mineral salts (electrolytes) and water balance in the body. Aldosterone is an example.
receptor	Cellular or nuclear protein that binds to a hormone so that a response can be elicited.
sella turcica	Cavity at the base of the skull; contains the pituitary gland.
sex hormones	Steroids (androgens and estrogens) produced by the adrenal cortex to influence male and female sexual characteristics.
steroid	Complex substance related to fats (derived from a sterol, such as cholesterol), and of which many hormones are made. Examples of steroids are estrogens, androgens, glucocorticoids, and mineralocorticoids. **Ster/o** means solid; **-ol** means oil.
sympathomimetic	Pertaining to mimicking or copying the effect of the sympathetic nervous system. Adrenaline (epinephrine) is a sympathomimetic hormone (it raises blood pressure and heart rate and dilates airways).
target tissue	Cells of an organ that are affected or stimulated by specific hormones.

Terminology

Write the meanings of the medical terms in the spaces provided.

Combining Forms: Glands

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
aden/o	gland	adenitis _____	
adrenal/o	adrenal gland	adrenalectomy _____	
gonad/o	sex glands (ovaries and testes)	gonadotropin _____ *Here, -tropin means to act on. Gonadotropins act on (stimulate) gonads. Examples of gonadotropins are FSH and LH, secreted by the pituitary gland.* hypogonadism _____ *Deficiency of gonadotropins can produce hypogonadism.*	
pancreat/o	pancreas	pancreatectomy _____	
parathyroid/o	parathyroid gland	parathyroidectomy _____	
pituitar/o	pituitary gland; hypophysis	hypopituitarism _____ *Pituitary dwarfism (see page 724) is caused by hypopituitarism.*	
thyr/o, thyroid/o	thyroid gland	thyrotropic hormone _____ *Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH) is a thyrotropic hormone secreted by the pituitary gland.* thyroiditis _____ *May result from bacterial or viral infection, or an autoimmune reaction. Symptoms are throat pain, swelling, tenderness, and signs of hyperthyroidism. The condition may progress to destruction of the thyroid gland and hypothyroidism. In **Hashimoto disease,** or **autoimmune thyroiditis,** antibodies trigger lymphocytes to destroy follicular cells in the thyroid gland, producing hypothyroidism.*	

Combining Forms: Related Terms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
andr/o	male	androgen _____ *Androgens are produced by the testes in males and by the adrenal cortex in males and females.*
calc/o, calci/o	calcium	hypercalcemia _____ hypocalcemia _____ hypercalciuria _____
cortic/o	cortex, outer region	corticosteroid _____
crin/o	secrete	endocrinologist _____
dips/o	thirst	polydipsia _____ *Poly- means many or increased. Uncontrolled diabetes (mellitus or insipidus) causes increased thirst. See page 722.*
estr/o	female	estrogenic _____
gluc/o	sugar	glucagon _____ *In this term, -agon means to assemble or gather together. Glucagon raises blood sugar by stimulating its release from glycogen into the bloodstream.*
glyc/o	sugar	hyperglycemia _____ glycemic _____ *A patient with diabetes mellitus requires glycemic control.* glycogen _____ *Glycogen is animal starch that can be converted to glucose by the liver. Glucagon promotes glycogenolysis.*
home/o	sameness	homeostasis _____ *The suffix -stasis means controlling.*
hormon/o	hormone	hormonal _____
kal/i	potassium	hypokalemia _____ *This condition can occur in dehydration and with excessive vomiting and diarrhea. The heart is particularly sensitive to potassium loss.*
lact/o	milk	prolactin _____ *The suffix -in means a substance.*
myx/o	mucus	myxedema _____ *Mucus-like material accumulates under the skin. See page 718.*
natr/o	sodium	hyponatremia _____ *Occurs with hyposecretion of the adrenal cortex as salts and water leave the body.*
phys/o	growing	hypophysectomy _____ *The hypophysis is the pituitary gland, which is so named because it grows from the undersurface (hypo-) of the brain (Figure 18-14).*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
somat/o	body	somatotropin _____ *Growth hormone.*	
ster/o	solid structure	steroid _____ *This complex, solid, ring-shaped molecule resembles a sterol (such as cholesterol); many hormones (androgens, estrogens, glucocorticoids, and mineralocorticoids) are steroids.*	
toc/o	childbirth	oxytocin _____ *Oxy- means rapid, sharp, or acute.*	
toxic/o	poison	thyrotoxicosis _____ *Condition caused by excessive thyroid gland activity and oversecretion of thyroid hormone. Signs and symptoms are sweating, weight loss, tachycardia, and nervousness.*	
ur/o	urine	antidiuretic hormone _____ *Posterior pituitary hormone that affects the kidneys and reduces water loss.*	

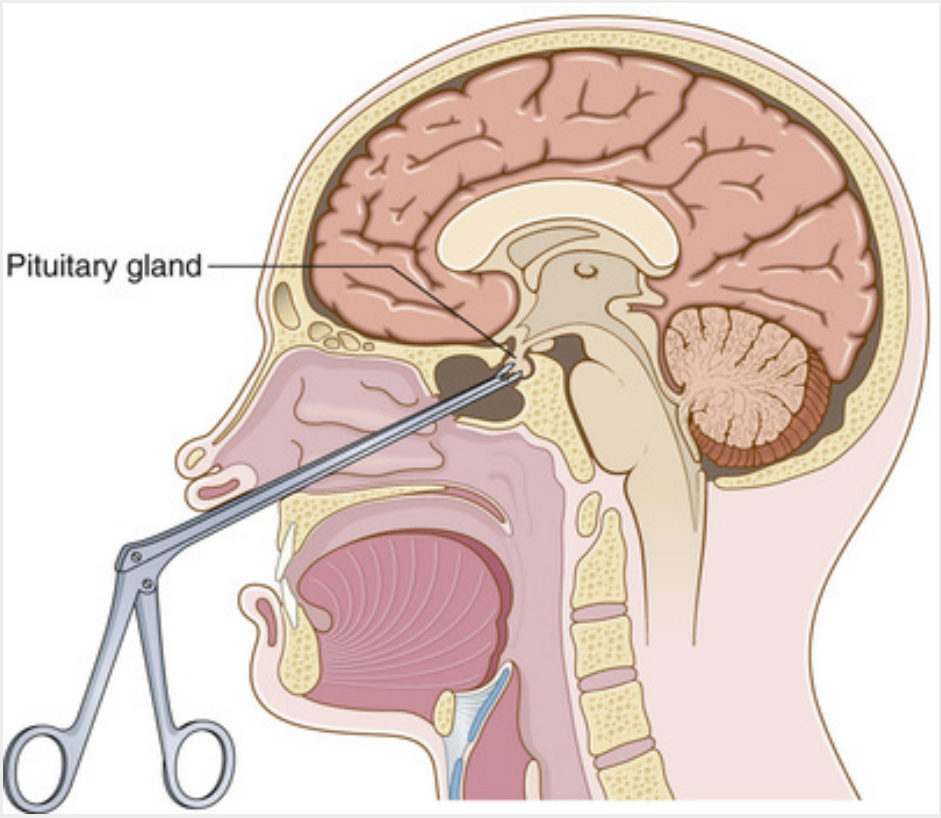


FIGURE 18-14 **Hypophysectomy.** Abnormal pituitary gland tissue is removed with instruments passed through the nasal passages and an opening created in the sphenoid bone (transsphenoidal hypophysectomy). The gland is removed to slow the growth of endocrine-dependent malignant tumors or to excise a pituitary tumor. Other treatments to destroy pituitary tissue include radiation therapy, radioactive implants, and cryosurgery.

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-agon	assemble, gather together	glucagon	
-emia	blood condition	hypoglycemia	
-in, -ine	substance	epinephrine	
-tropin	stimulating the function of (to turn or act on)	adrenocorticotropin *The ending -tropic is the adjective form (adrenocorticotropic hormone).*	
-uria	urine condition	glycosuria *Sign of diabetes mellitus.*	

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
eu-	good, normal	euthyroid	
hyper-	excessive; above	hyperkalemia	*Seen in acute renal failure, massive trauma, and major burns.*
hypo-	deficient; below; under; less than normal	hypoinsulinism	*Deficient secretion of insulin by the pancreas.*
oxy-	rapid, sharp, acid	oxytocin	
pan-	all	panhypopituitarism	
poly-	many or increased	polyuria	*This is a sign of uncontrolled diabetes (mellitus and insipidus).*
tetra-	four	tetraiodothyronine	*Iod/o means iodine.*
tri-	three	triiodothyronine	

Potassium and Sodium

In patients' medical charts, potassium is abbreviated as **K** and sodium is abbreviated as **Na**. As electrolytes, they are written as $\mathbf{K^+}$ and $\mathbf{Na^+}$.

Oxy- Meaning Acid

In 1774, the French scientist Antoine Lavoisier named a new gas **oxygen** because he incorrectly believed that the gas was an essential part of all **acids.**

Pathology

Thyroid Gland

Enlargement of the thyroid gland is **goiter** (Figure 18-15A). **Endemic** (**en-** = in; **dem/o** = people) **goiter** occurs in certain regions where there is a lack of **iodine** in the diet. Goiter develops when low iodine levels lead to low T3 and T4 levels. This causes feedback to the hypothalamus and adenohypophysis, stimulating them to secrete releasing factors and TSH. TSH then promotes the thyroid gland to secrete T3 and T4, but because there is no iodine available, the only effect is to increase the size of the gland (goiter). Prevention includes increasing the supply of iodine (as iodized salt) in the diet.

FIGURE 18-15 **A, Goiter.** Notice the wide neck, indicating enlargement of the thyroid gland. Goiter comes from the Latin *guttur,* meaning throat. **B, Exophthalmos** in **Graves disease.** Note the staring or startled expression resulting from periorbital edema (swelling of tissue around the eyeball or orbit of the eye). Exophthalmos usually persists despite treatment of Graves disease. **C, Myxedema.** Note the dull, puffy, yellowed skin; coarse, sparse hair; prominent tongue. (C, Courtesy Paul W. Ladenson, MD, Johns Hopkins University and Hospital, Baltimore, Maryland.)

Another type of goiter is **nodular** or **adenomatous goiter,** in which hyperplasia occurs as well as formation of nodules and adenomas. Some patients with nodular goiter develop hyperthyroidism with clinical signs and symptoms such as rapid pulse, tremors, nervousness, and excessive sweating. Treatment is with thyroid-blocking drugs or radioactive iodine to suppress thyroid functioning.

Hypersecretion

hyperthyroidism	**Overactivity of the thyroid gland; thyrotoxicosis.** The most common form of this condition is **Graves disease** (resulting from autoimmune processes). Because metabolism is faster, the condition is marked by an increase in heart rate (with irregular beats), higher body temperature, hyperactivity, weight loss, and increased peristalsis (diarrhea occurs). In addition, **exophthalmos** (protrusion of the eyeballs, or **proptosis**) occurs as a result of swelling of tissue behind the eyeball, pushing it forward. Treatment of Graves disease includes management with antithyroid drugs to reduce the amount of thyroid hormone produced by the gland and administration of radioactive iodine, which destroys the overactive glandular tissue. Figure 18-15B shows a patient with Graves disease.

Hyposecretion

hypothyroidism	**Underactivity of the thyroid gland.** Any of several conditions can produce hypothyroidism (thyroidectomy, thyroiditis, endemic goiter, destruction of the gland by irradiation), but all have similar physiologic effects. These include fatigue, muscular and mental sluggishness, weight gain, fluid retention, slow heart rate, low body temperature, and constipation. Two examples of hypothyroid disorders are myxedema and cretinism. **Myxedema** is advanced hypothyroidism in adulthood. Atrophy of the thyroid gland occurs, and practically no hormone is produced. The skin becomes dry and puffy (edema) because of the collection of mucus-like (myx/o = mucus) material under the skin. Many patients also develop atherosclerosis because lack of thyroid hormone increases the quantity of blood lipids (fats). Recovery may be complete if thyroid hormone is given soon after symptoms appear. Figure 18-15C shows a patient with myxedema. In **cretinism,** extreme hypothyroidism during infancy and childhood leads to a lack of normal physical and mental growth. Skeletal growth is more inhibited than soft tissue growth, so the affected person has the appearance of an obese, short, and stocky child. Treatment consists of administration of thyroid hormone, which may be able to reverse some of the hypothyroid effects.

Neoplasms

thyroid carcinoma	**Cancer of the thyroid gland.** More than one half of thyroid malignancies are slow-growing papillary carcinomas, and about one third are slow-growing follicular carcinomas. Others include rapidly growing anaplastic (widely metastatic) tumors. Radioactive iodine scans distinguish hyperfunctioning areas from hypofunctioning areas. “Hot” tumor areas (those collecting more radioactivity than surrounding tissues) usually indicate hyperthyroidism and benign growth; “cold,” nonfunctional nodules can be either benign or malignant. Ultimately, fine needle aspiration, surgical biopsy, or excision is required to make the diagnosis. Total or subtotal thyroidectomy with lymph node removal is indicated for most thyroid carcinomas. Postsurgical treatment with radioactive iodine destroys remaining tissue, and high doses of exogenous thyroid hormone are given to suppress TSH, in an effort to cause regression of residual tumor dependent on TSH.

Parathyroid Glands

Hypersecretion

hyperparathyroidism	**Excessive production of parathormone.** Hypercalcemia occurs as calcium leaves the bones and enters the bloodstream, where it can produce damage to the kidneys and heart. Bones become decalcified with generalized loss of bone density **(osteoporosis)** and susceptibility to fractures and formation of cysts. Kidney stones can occur as a result of hypercalcemia and hypercalciuria. The cause is parathyroid hyperplasia or a parathyroid tumor. Treatment is resection of the overactive tissue. Medical therapy is another option for the patient who is not a surgical candidate. Bisphosphonates, such as alendronate (Fosamax), decrease bone turnover and decrease hypercalcemia.

Hyposecretion

hypoparathyroidism	**Deficient production of parathyroid hormone.** Hypocalcemia results as calcium remains in bones and is unable to enter the bloodstream. This leads to muscle and nerve weakness with spasms of muscles, a condition called **tetany** (constant muscle contraction). Administration of calcium plus large quantities of vitamin D (to promote absorption of calcium) can control the calcium level in the bloodstream.

Adrenal Cortex

Hypersecretion

adrenal virilism	**Excessive secretion of adrenal androgens.** Adrenal hyperplasia or more commonly adrenal adenomas or carcinomas can cause **virilization** in adult women. Signs and symptoms include amenorrhea, **hirsutism** (excessive hair on the face and body), acne, and deepening of the voice. Drug therapy to suppress androgen production and adrenalectomy are possible treatments. See Figure 18-16A.
Cushing syndrome	**Group of signs and symptoms produced by excess cortisol from the adrenal cortex.** A number of signs and symptoms occur as a result of increased cortisol secretion, including obesity, moon-like fullness of the face, excess deposition of fat in the thoracic region of the back (so-called buffalo hump), hyperglycemia, hypernatremia, hypokalemia, osteoporosis, virilization, and hypertension. The cause may be excess ACTH secretion or tumor of the adrenal cortex. Tumors and disseminated cancers can be associated with ectopic secretion of hormone, such as ectopic ACTH produced by nonendocrine neoplasms (lung and thyroid tumors). Figure 18-16B shows a woman with Cushing syndrome. See ***In Person: My Cushing's Journey***, page 731.
	In clinical practice, most cases of Cushing syndrome result from chronic use of cortisone-like drugs, such as steroids. Examples are the cases in young athletes seeking to improve their performance and in patients treated for autoimmune disorders, asthma, colitis, kidney and skin conditions. Steroids (prednisone is an example) are never discontinued abruptly because the adrenal cortex and pituitary gland (ACTH producer) need time to "restart" after long periods of prescribed cortisol use (the adrenal gland stops producing cortisol when cortisol is given as therapy).

FIGURE 18-16 A, Hirsutism. B, Cushing syndrome. Elevated plasma levels of cortisol (steroids) produce obesity, rounded facial appearance (moon-face), thin skin that bruises easily, and muscle weakness.

Cushing Disease

Cushing disease is one cause of Cushing syndrome. In Cushing disease, a benign tumor of the pituitary gland (pituitary adenoma) increases ACTH secretion, stimulating the adrenal cortex to produce excess cortisol. The cure for Cushing disease is removal of the pituitary adenoma. Dr. Harvey Cushing described the condition in 1932.

Hyposecretion

Addison disease	**Hypofunctioning of the adrenal cortex.** The adrenal cortex is essential to life. When aldosterone and cortisol blood levels are low, the patient experiences generalized malaise, weakness, muscle atrophy, and severe loss of fluids and electrolytes (with hypoglycemia, low blood pressure, and hyponatremia). An insufficient supply of cortisol signals the pituitary to secrete more ACTH, which increases pigmentation of skin, scars, and breast nipples (hyperpigmentation) (Figure 18-17). Primary insufficiency is believed to be due to autoimmune adrenalitis. Treatment consists of daily cortisone administration and intake of salts or administration of a synthetic form of aldosterone.

FIGURE 18-17 Addison disease. Skin signs of Addison disease. Diffuse hyperpigmentation (shown in contrast to the physician's hand) is accentuated in sun-exposed skin.

Adrenal Medulla

Hypersecretion

pheochromocytoma	**Benign tumor of the adrenal medulla.** The name of this tumor, pheochromocytoma, derives from the staining of its cells; phe/o means dark or dusky and chrom/o means color. The tumor cells produce excess epinephrine and norepinephrine. Signs and symptoms are hypertension, tachycardia, palpitations, severe headaches, sweating, flushing of the face, and muscle spasms. Surgery to remove the tumor and administration of antihypertensive drugs are possible treatments.

Pancreas

Hypersecretion

hyperinsulinism	**Excess secretion of insulin causing hypoglycemia.** The cause is an overdose of insulin. Hypoglycemia occurs as insulin draws sugar out of the bloodstream. Fainting spells, convulsions, and loss of consciousness are common because a minimal level of blood sugar is necessary for proper mental functioning.

Hyposecretion

diabetes mellitus (DM)	**Lack of insulin secretion or resistance of insulin in promoting sugar, starch, and fat metabolism in cells.** In diabetes mellitus (mellitus means sweet or sugary), insulin insufficiency or ineffectiveness prevents sugar from leaving the blood and entering the body cells, where it is used to produce energy. There are two types of diabetes mellitus. **Type 1 diabetes** is an **autoimmune disease.** Autoantibodies against normal pancreatic islet cells are present. Onset is usually in early childhood but can occur in adulthood, and the etiology involves des truction of the beta islet cells, producing complete deficiency of insulin in the body. Patients usually are thin and require frequent injections of insulin to maintain a normal level of glucose in the blood. Type 1 requires patients to monitor their blood glucose levels several times a day using a glucometer. To test sugar levels with this device, the user pricks a finger to draw blood. At a minimum, patients test before each meal and at bedtime, but many test up to 12 times a day. Patients must continually (every day) balance insulin levels with food and exercise (see ***In Person: Living with Diabetes***, pages 730). In addition to injecting insulin into the body (buttocks, thighs, abdomen and arms), it also is possible to administer insulin through a portable pump, which infuses the drug continuously through a indwelling needle. A **Continuous Glucose Monitoring System (CGMS)** can track glucose levels throughout the day and night and communicate with the insulin pump to deliver insulin as needed. See Figure 18-18AB.
	Type 2 diabetes is a separate disease from type 1. Patients often are older, but can be adolescents, and usually with a family history of type 2 diabetes (T2D). Obesity is very common. The islet cells are not initially destroyed, and there is a relative deficiency of insulin secretion with a resistance by target tissues to insulin. **Insulin resistance** usually develops 5 to 10 years before type 2 diabetes is diagnosed, and is associated with an increased risk of cardiovascular disease. Often, high blood pressure, high cholesterol, and central abdominal obesity are seen in people who have insulin resistance. Treatment of type 2 diabetes is with diet, weight reduction, exercise, and, if necessary, insulin or oral hypoglycemic agents. **Oral hypoglycemic agents** stimulate the release of insulin from the pancreas and improve the body's sensitivity to insulin. Table 18-3 compares the clinical features, symptoms, and treatment of type 1 and type 2 diabetes. Both type 1 and type 2 diabetes are associated with primary and secondary complications. The **primary complication** of type 1 is **hyperglycemia.** Hyperglycemia can lead to **ketoacidosis** (fats are improperly burned, leading to an accumulation of ketones and acids in the body). Ketoacidosis also can result from illness or infection, and initial symptoms may be upset stomach and vomiting. **Hypoglycemia** occurs when too much insulin is taken. **Insulin shock** is severe hypoglycemia caused by an overdose of insulin, decreased intake of food, or excessive exercise. Signs and symptoms are sweating, hunger, confusion, trembling, nervousness, and numbness. Treatment of severe hypoglycemia is with either a shot of glucagon or intravenous glucose to restore normal blood glucose levels. Convulsions, coma, and loss of consciousness can result if treatment is not given.

	Secondary (long-term) **complications** may appear many years after the patient develops diabetes. These include destruction of retinal blood vessels **(diabetic retinopathy),** causing visual loss and blindness; destruction of the kidneys **(diabetic nephropathy),** causing renal insufficiency and often requiring hemodialysis or renal transplantation; destruction of blood vessels, with **atherosclerosis** leading to stroke, heart disease, and peripherovascular ischemia (gangrene, infection, and loss of limbs); and destruction of nerves **(diabetic neuropathy)** involving pain or loss of sensation, most commonly in the extremities. Loss of gastric motility **(gastroparesis)** also occurs. Figure 18-19 reviews the secondary complications of diabetes mellitus. As a result of hormonal changes during pregnancy, **gestational diabetes** can occur in women with a predisposition to diabetes during the second or third trimester of pregnancy. After delivery, blood glucose usually returns to normal. Type 2 diabetes may develop in these women later in life.

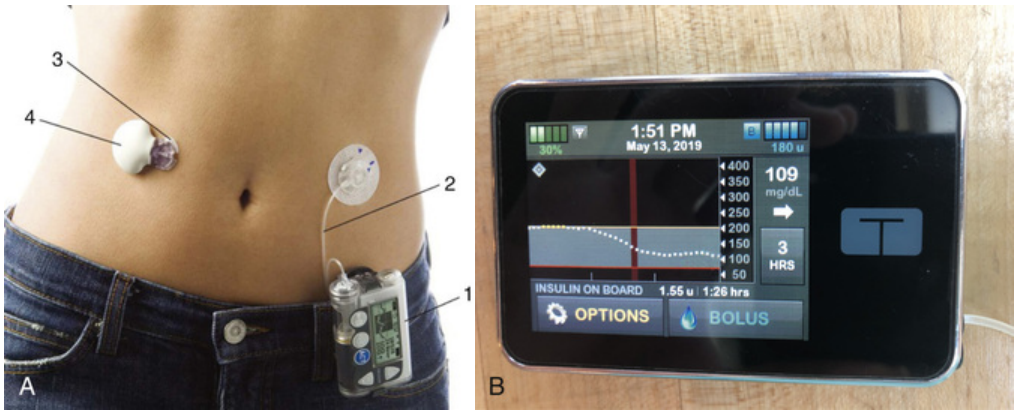


FIGURE 18-18 **A. Insulin pump and continuous glucose monitor system (CGMS)** shows an insulin pump(1), injection cannula (2), glucose sensor (3), and data transmitter (4). The glucose sensor and data transmitter are part of the CGMS. **B. Tandem t:slim X2™ Insulin Pump** that communicates with a CGMS, displaying blood sugar readings over a 3-hour period of time.

TABLE 18-3
COMPARISON OF TYPE 1 AND TYPE 2 DIABETES MELLITUS

CATEGORY	TYPE 1*	TYPE 2†
Clinical features	Usually occurs before age 30	Usually occurs after age 30
	Abrupt, rapid onset of symptoms	Gradual onset; asymptomatic
	Little or no insulin production	Insulin usually present
	Thin or normal body weight at onset	Obesity in 85% of affected persons
	Ketoacidosis often occurs	Ketoacidosis seldom occurs
Symptoms	Polyuria (glycosuria promotes loss of water)	Polyuria sometimes seen
	Polydipsia (dehydration causes thirst)	Polydipsia sometimes seen
	Polyphagia (tissue breakdown causes hunger)	Polyphagia sometimes seen
Treatment	Insulin	Diet (weight loss); oral hypoglycemics or insulin

*Type 1 formerly was called juvenile (juvenile-onset) diabetes.

†Type 2 formerly was called adult-onset diabetes.

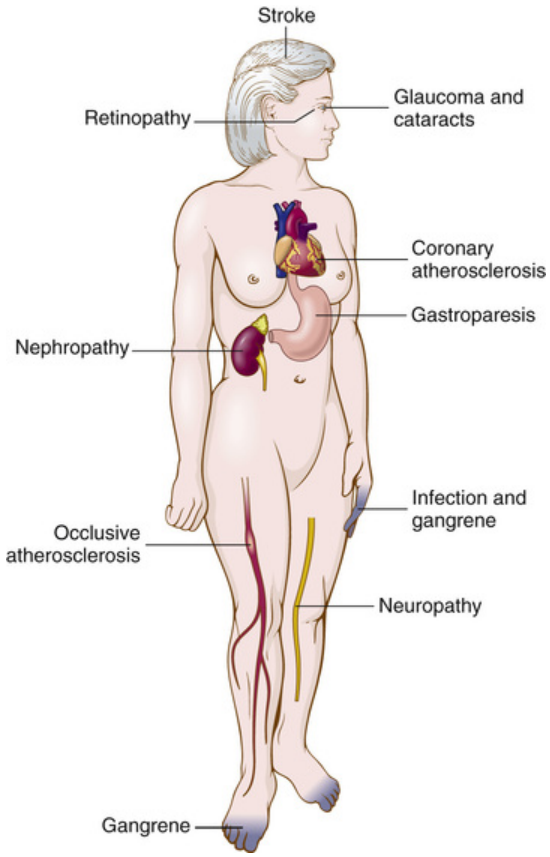


FIGURE 18-19 **Secondary complications of diabetes mellitus.** Complications can be avoided or minimized with optimal glycemic control.

Insulin

There are many different types of insulin. Insulins can be **rapid-acting** (peak at 30 to 60 minutes and last 3 to 5 hours), **short-acting** (peak at ½ to 2 hours and last 6 to 8 hours), **intermediate-acting** (peak at 4 to 12 hours and last 14 to 24 hours), or **long-acting** (last for up to 24 hours). The rapid- and short-acting insulins are taken before a meal to reduce the blood sugar spike that normally occurs after eating. Intermediate- and long-acting insulins mimic the natural production of insulin by the pancreas.

Pituitary Gland: Anterior Lobe

Hypersecretion

acromegaly	**Hypersecretion of growth hormone from the anterior pituitary after puberty, leading to enlargement of extremities.** An excess of growth hormone (GH) is produced by adenomas of the pituitary gland that occur during adulthood. This excess GH stimulates the liver to secrete a hormone (somatomedin C, or insulin-like growth factor [IGF]) that causes the clinical manifestations of acromegaly (acr/o in this term means extremities). Bones in the hands, feet, face, and jaw grow abnormally large, producing a characteristic "coarsened" facial appearance. The pituitary adenoma can be irradiated or surgically removed. Figure 18-20 shows the features of a woman with acromegaly. Measurement of blood levels of somatomedin C as GH fluctuates is a test for acromegaly.
gigantism	**Hypersecretion of growth hormone from the anterior pituitary before puberty, leading to abnormal overgrowth of body tissues.** Benign adenomas of the pituitary gland that occur before a child reaches puberty produce an excess of growth hormone. See Figure 18-21. The underlying hormonal problem caused by gigantism can be corrected by early diagnosis in childhood.

FIGURE 18-20 Early features of acromegaly.

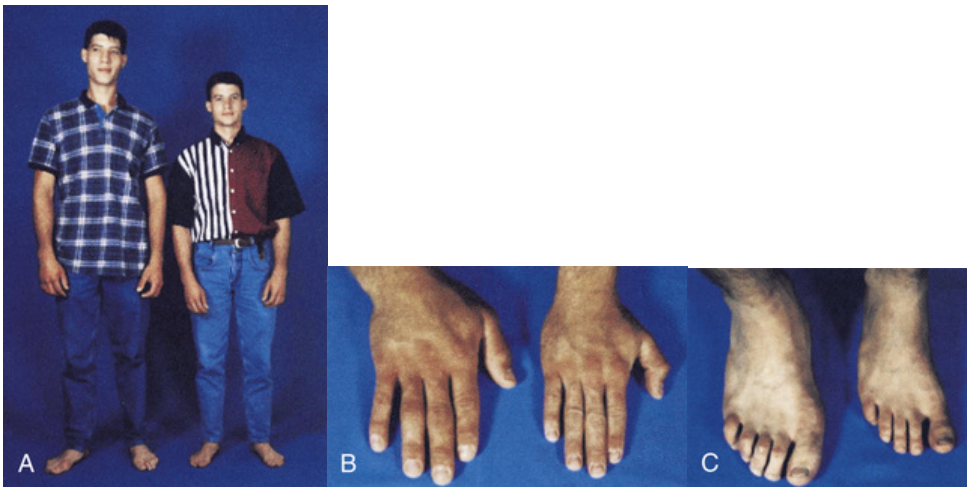


FIGURE 18-21 **Gigantism.** A 22-year-old man with gigantism due to excess growth hormone is standing next to his identical twin. The increased height (**A**) and enlarged hand (**B**) and foot (**C**) of the affected twin are apparent. Their height and features began to diverge at the age of approximately 13 years. (**A** to **C,** Courtesy Robert F. Gagel, MD, and Ian E. McCutcheon, MD, University of Texas M.D. Anderson Cancer Center, Houston, Texas.)

Hyposecretion

dwarfism	**Congenital hyposecretion of growth hormone; hypopituitary dwarfism.** Children who are affected are normal mentally, but their bones remain small. Treatment consists of administration of growth hormone. Achondroplastic dwarfs differ from hypopituitary dwarfs in that they have a genetic defect in cartilage formation that limits the growth of long bones.
panhypopituitarism	**Deficiency of all pituitary hormones.** Tumors of the sella turcica as well as arterial aneurysms may be etiologic factors, causing a failure of the pituitary to secrete hormones that stimulate major glands in the body.

Pituitary Gland: Posterior Lobe

Hypersecretion

syndrome of inappropriate ADH (SIADH)	**Excessive secretion of antidiuretic hormone.** Hypersecretion of ADH produces excess water retention in the body. Treatment consists of dietary water restriction. Tumor, drug reactions, and head injury are some of the possible causes.

Hyposecretion

diabetes insipidus (DI)	**Insufficient secretion of antidiuretic hormone (vasopressin).** Deficiency of antidiuretic hormone causes the kidney tubules to fail to hold back (reabsorb) needed water and salts. Clinical manifestations include polyuria and polydipsia. Synthetic preparations of ADH are administered with nasal sprays or intramuscularly as treatment. **Insipidus** means tasteless, reflecting the condition of dilute urine, as opposed to **mellitus,** meaning sweet or like honey, reflecting the sugar content of urine in diabetes mellitus. The term diabetes comes from the Greek *diabainein*, meaning to pass through. Both diabetes insipidus and diabetes mellitus are characterized by polyuria. See ***In Person: Diabetes Insipidus*** on page 731. Table 18-4 reviews the abnormal conditions associated with hypersecretions and hyposecretions of the endocrine glands.

TABLE 18-4

ABNORMAL CONDITIONS OF ENDOCRINE GLANDS

ENDOCRINE GLAND	HYPERSECRETION	HYPOSECRETION
Adrenal cortex	• Adrenal virilism • Cushing syndrome	• Addison disease
Adrenal medulla	• Pheochromocytoma	
Pancreas	• Hyperinsulinism	• Diabetes mellitus
Parathyroid glands	• Hyperparathyroidism (hypercalcemia, osteoporosis, kidney stones)	• Hypoparathyroidism (tetany, hypocalcemia)
Pituitary—anterior lobe	• Acromegaly • Gigantism	• Dwarfism • Panhypopituitarism
Pituitary—posterior lobe	• Syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone	• Diabetes insipidus
Thyroid gland	• Exophthalmic goiter (Graves disease, thyrotoxicosis) • Nodular (adenomatous) goiter	• Cretinism (children) • Endemic goiter • Myxedema (adults)

Laboratory Tests

fasting plasma glucose (FPG)	**Also known as fasting blood sugar test.** Measures circulating glucose level in a patient who has fasted at least 8 hours. This test can diagnose **diabetes** and **prediabetes** (blood glucose is higher than normal but not high enough for diagnosis of diabetes). A normal fasting result is 99 mg/dL or below. Prediabetes fasting levels are 100 to 125 mg/dL, and diabetes is diagnosed with levels of 126 mg/dL and above. A casual non-fasting plasma glucose level of 200 mg/dL plus the presence of signs and symptoms such as increased urination, increased thirst, and unexplained weight loss also can diagnose diabetes. An oral **glucose tolerance test** is used to diagnose prediabetes and gestational diabetes. The **glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA1C) test** (**A1C** for short), performed by measuring the percentage of red blood cells with glucose attached, monitors long-term glucose control. A high level indicates poor glucose control in diabetic patients.
serum and urine tests	**Measurement of hormones, electrolytes, glucose, and other substances in serum (blood) and urine as indicators of endocrine function.** Serum studies include assays for growth hormone, somatomedin C (insulin-like growth factor or, IGF-1), prolactin level, gonadotropin levels, parathyroid hormone, calcium, and cortisol. A high reading on blood glucose testing by **glucometer** in a doctor's office may be the first indication of a diabetes diagnosis (levels may be as high as 750 mg/dL, whereas normal is about 100 mg/dL). Urine studies include dipstick testing for glucose (Clinistix, Labstix) and ketones (Acetest, Ketostix) and measurement of 17-ketosteroids (to check adrenal and gonadal function). A **urinary microalbumin assay** may detect small quantities of albumin in urine as a marker or harbinger of diabetic nephropathy.
thyroid function tests	**Measurement of T3, T4, and TSH in the bloodstream.**

Clinical Procedures

exophthalmometry	**Measurement of eyeball protrusion (as in Graves disease) with an exophthalmometer.**
computed tomography (CT) scan	**X-ray imaging of endocrine glands in cross-section and other views, to assess size and infiltration by tumor.**
magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)	**Magnetic waves produce images of the hypothalamus and pituitary gland to locate abnormalities.**
thyroid scan	**Scanner detects radioactivity and visualizes the thyroid gland.** Administration of radioactivity is either intravenous (with radioactive technetium) or oral (with radioactive iodine). The latter is called **RAIU (radioactive iodine uptake scan)**. Thyroid function is assessed; nodules and tumors can be evaluated.
ultrasound examination	**Sound waves show images of endocrine organs.** Thyroid ultrasound is the best method to evaluate thyroid structures and abnormalities (nodules).

Abbreviations

A1C	blood test that measures glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA1C) to assess glucose control
ACTH	adrenocorticotropic hormone
ADH	antidiuretic hormone—vasopressin
Ca^{++}	calcium, an important electrolyte
CGMS	continuous glucose monitoring system—senses and records blood glucose levels continuously
DI	diabetes insipidus
DKA	diabetic ketoacidosis
DM	diabetes mellitus
FBG	fasting blood glucose
FBS	fasting blood sugar
FSH	follicle-stimulating hormone
GH	growth hormone
GTT	glucose tolerance test—measures ability to respond to a glucose load; a test for diabetes
HbA1C (test)	test for the presence of glucose attached to hemoglobin (glycosylated hemoglobin)—a high level indicates poor glucose control in diabetic patients; also called A1C
hCG *or* HCG	human chorionic gonadotropin
IGF	insulin-like growth factor
K^+	potassium—an important electrolyte
LH	luteinizing hormone
MDI	multiple daily injection—for delivery of either basal or bolus insulin; a diabetes management regimen
Na^+	sodium—an important electrolyte
OT, OXT	oxytocin
PRL	prolactin
PTH	parathyroid hormone (parathormone)
RAI	radioactive iodine—treatment for Graves disease
RIA	radioimmunoassay—measures hormone levels in plasma
RAIU	radioactive iodine uptake (imaging test or scan)
SIADH	syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone (secretion)
SMBG	self-monitoring of blood glucose
T1D	type 1 diabetes
T2D	type 2 diabetes
T3	triiodothyronine
T4	thyroxine—tetraiodothyronine
TFT	thyroid function test
TSH	thyroid-stimulating hormone—secreted by the anterior pituitary gland

Practical Applications

The following table lists endocrine medicines and how they are used. Answers are found on page 739.

Endocrine Medicines (brand names are in parentheses)	
Antidiabetic Medicines	
• insulin	Injected synthetic hormone; lowers blood sugar; comes in short-acting and long-acting forms; used in type 1 and type 2 diabetes
• metformin	Oral hypoglycemic medication that reduces glucose production by the liver and increases the body's sensitivity to insulin; used in type 2 diabetes
• sulfonylureas glipizide glyburide	Oral hypoglycemic medications that stimulate pancreatic beta cells to produce insulin; used in type 2 diabetes
Thyroid Medicines	
• levothyroxine (Synthroid, Levoxyl)	Oral synthetic thyroid hormone (T4); used in hypothyroidism
• liothyronine (Cytomel)	Oral synthetic thyroid hormone (T3); used in hypothyroidism
• thyroid ISP (Armour thyroid)	Desiccated thyroid extract (combination of T3 and T4); used in hypothyroidism
• methimazole (Tapazole)	Inhibits thyroid hormone production; used in Graves hyperthyroidism
• prophylthiouracil (PTU)	Inhibits thyroid hormone production; used in Graves hyperthyroidism
• beta blockers (atenolol, propranolol)	Reduce the symptoms of hyperthyroidism (palpitations, tachycardia, tremors)
Corticosteroids	
• prednisone • hydrocortisone	Used in the treatment of hypoadrenalism
Bisphosphonates	
• alendronate (Fosamax) • ibandronate (Boniva)	Used to build bone strength in osteoporosis and to treat hyperparathyroidism
Diabetes Insipidus Medicine	
• desmopressin (DDAVP, Stimate)	Intranasal or oral synthetic form of vasopressin (antidiuretic hormone); used to treat diabetes insipidus

Questions:

1. Which endocrine medicine treats hypothyroidism?
    a. Prednisone
    b. Prophylthiouracil
    c. Liothyronine
2. Which endocrine medicine treats type 2 diabetes?

a. Desmopressin
b. Metformin
c. Hydrocortisone

3. Which endocrine medicine treats osteoporosis?
   a. Alendronate
   b. Beta blockers
   c. Insulin

In Person

Living with Diabetes

Jake Sheldon has type 1 diabetes, which was diagnosed when he was 8 years old. The following narrative was written by his mother, Ruthellen Sheldon, based on his teenage years.

On school days, I wake up Jake at 6:30 AM. He tests his blood sugar by pricking his finger until it bleeds and sticking a test strip into the drop of blood. Then he inserts the strip into a small handheld glucometer and waits 3 to 5 seconds for a reading of his blood sugar. If this is 120 mg/dL or higher, he gives himself insulin 10 to 15 minutes before breakfast. The pump calculates how much insulin he needs to cover the carbs and any extra insulin he may need to bring down a high blood sugar. If his blood sugar is less than 120 mg/dL when he wakes up, he will wait until he takes his first bite of food to give himself his insulin to avoid hypoglycemia.

Throughout the school day, if his blood sugar is high or low, he visits the nurse. If it's high, he gives himself an insulin bolus or correction by pump. If his blood sugar is positive for ketones, he is sent home from school. If his blood sugar is low or less than 70, he eats or drinks some fast-acting sugar (Skittles, Smarties, or Sprite) and waits in the healthroom for his blood sugar to rise so he can return to class.

During the night, his dad and I set an alarm to wake up around 3 hours after bedtime. If his blood sugar is high while he sleeps, we use his pump to give him extra insulin, "a correction." If it is low, we wake him and have him drink Sprite or eat Smarties.

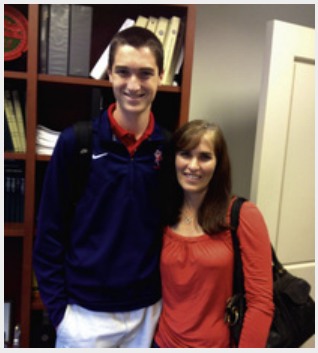
The insulin pump is connected to his body with a small cannula [tube]. It is inserted manually via a needle into his hip region. The needle is then removed and the tiny Teflon cannula remains in his body, delivering fast-acting insulin under the skin. His pump is always connected to him with plastic tubing, and he carries it with him in his pants pocket. When he bathes, he disconnects the pump, and when he sleeps, he places it on the mattress next to his body.

When Jake is playing sports, he times his meals with the start of the activity so his blood sugar is around 150 mg/dL. He disconnects his pump during sports, and at halftime he tests his blood sugar. If it is low, he needs to eat. If it is high, he needs to reconnect his pump and administer more insulin.

In general, Jake's diabetes doesn't disrupt his life other than the nighttime checks, wearing an insulin pump, and paying attention to how many carbs he eats. We encourage him to make good nutritional choices (not always easy for a kid) and to limit certain foods (doughnuts, Slurpees, candy) for special occasions. He must also carry a glucometer with him at all times and sugar to take when his blood glucose is low.

Having a child with diabetes forces me to carefully plan the preparation and timing of meals. I always have certain foods and medical supplies in the house and I also carry snacks and sugar sources wherever I go. My husband and I hope that keeping Jake's blood sugar in tight control will help avoid many of the complications frequently encountered later in life by people with type 1 diabetes.

Throughout high school, Jake took over all diabetes management tasks and managed his diabetes 100 percent independently before his graduation. Moving out of state to college, Jake has had to learned how cafeteria foods, late nights, and new social situations affect his blood sugars. Jake is also learning how to manage ordering and maintaining a vast number of diabetes supplies and prescriptions in his dorm room. Jake will also be transitioning from his pediatric endocrinologist to an adult endocrinologist this year.



Ruthellen Sheldon and her son, Jake, now 18 years old.

In Person

Diabetes Insipidus

Prior a diagnosis of diabetes insipidus, I was drinking what seemed like gallons of water a day. I first thought it was great to always want water because I was aware the daily recommendations. But it quickly became apparent that I couldn't go for more than 30 minutes without drinking at least 8 ounces or more. If I didn't have water every 20-30 minutes, I would produce a foam-like substance in my mouth feel the urge urinate. In fact, as I was drinking so much water I was also producing clear urine very frequently. I was unable to sleep throughout the night awoke with my heart racing, feeling extremely thirsty.

When I went to my physician, she drew blood and the results showed low levels of a hormone called vasopressin or antidiuretic hormone. I was diagnosed with diabetes insipidus and started taking a medication called desmopressin (commonly known as DDVSP) to replace the hormone from pituitary gland. An MRI showed that I had a pituitary adenoma, which was the cause of the decrease in hormone secretion. Three months later I had the transsphenoidal surgery to remove growth on my pituitary gland. Remnants of the tumor were removed through my nasal passages. Now my symptoms have improved, but I continue to take desmopressin as needed.

Kemisha White is a Boston native and beach lover! She loves exploring and experiencing life.

In Person

My Cushing's Journey

This first-person account was written by a young woman about her experience with Cushing syndrome.

I've always been a bit of a "skinny-Minnie" and had no major health issues. But in 1997 I started having irregular periods. Not only that, but I started gaining weight—6 to 9 pounds every month. I knew something was wrong.

This began my year-long journey with Cushing syndrome. Initially, I saw two general practitioners, had blood work done, and was told I was fine. As I gained more weight, Cushing's symptoms became more apparent. I developed striae (purplish marks on my thighs*), a big round "moon face," and a humpback.† I also became extremely fatigued when performing simple tasks. At the time, however, I had no idea or clue of what was happening.

Next, I saw my gynecologist. Again, more blood work, and I was told I'm fine. This process continued on with three other doctors. I pressed on from feeling misunderstood, depressed, and utterly tired and found an endocrinologist. After 3 months of testing, he located the problem: a tumor on my right adrenal gland. A month later I had a right adrenalectomy. Thankfully, my left adrenal works great, and I don't have to take any hormone pills. I was also thrilled that the 72 pounds I gained over the year melted away in a few months.

I'll never forget this experience. Having an unknown medical condition is very stressful. In some ways, I think I was even more stressed and depressed because my doctors seemed to dismiss my symptoms. I didn't own a computer at the time, and I asked a friend to do some online research for me. I really felt I had to educate myself. I still don't know what caused the adrenal gland tumor or if I could have prevented it. But I am pretty much back to normal, and my Cushing's journey taught me to be a better advocate for myself.

Tanzie Johnson is a professional photographer living in New York City.

Note: The diagnosis of Cushing syndrome can take months to years, because its symptoms can be confused with those of many other conditions.

---

*The weight gain in Cushing syndrome stretches the skin, which becomes thin and weakened, allowing small hemorrhages to occur in the thinned-out tissue.

†Fat pads accumulate along the collarbone and on the back of the neck ("buffalo hump").

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, page 738.

A **Match the endocrine gland with its location.**

adrenal cortex

adrenal medulla

ovary

pancreas

parathyroid

pituitary (hypophysis)

testis

thyroid

1. behind the stomach _____
2. posterior side of the thyroid gland _____
3. inner section of glands above each kidney _____
4. in the scrotal sac _____
5. on either side of the trachea _____
6. outer section of gland above each kidney _____
7. lower abdomen of a female _____
8. below the brain in the sella turcica _____

B **Name the endocrine organs (including the appropriate lobe or region) that produce the following hormones.**

1. follicle-stimulating hormone _____
2. vasopressin _____
3. aldosterone _____
4. insulin _____
5. thyroxine _____
6. cortisol _____
7. gonadotropic hormones _____
8. epinephrine _____
9. oxytocin _____
10. prolactin _____
11. growth hormone _____
12. glucagon _____
13. adrenocorticotropic hormone _____
14. estradiol _____
15. progesterone _____
16. testosterone _____
17. thyroid-stimulating hormone _____

C **Spell out the following abbreviations for hormones.**

1. ADH _____
2. ACTH _____
3. LH _____
4. FSH _____
5. TSH _____
6. PTH _____
7. GH _____
8. PRL _____
9. T4 _____
10. T3 _____
11. OT _____
12. HCG _____

D **Match the hormones with their actions.**

ACTH
ADH
aldosterone
cortisol
epinephrine
estradiol
insulin
parathyroid hormone
testosterone
thyroxine

1. sympathomimetic; raises heart rate and blood pressure _____
2. promotes growth and maintenance of male sex characteristics _____
3. stimulates water reabsorption by kidney tubules; decreases urine output _____
4. increases metabolism in body cells _____
5. raises blood calcium _____

6. increases reabsorption of sodium by kidney tubules _____
7. stimulates secretion of hormones from the adrenal cortex _____
8. increases blood sugar _____
9. helps transport glucose to cells; decreases blood sugar _____
10. develops and maintains female sex characteristics _____

E **Indicate whether the following conditions are related to hypersecretion or hyposecretion. Also, select from the following the endocrine glands and hormones involved in each disease.**

Glands		**Hormones**	
adenohypophysis	pancreas	ADH	GH
adrenal cortex	parathyroid gland	aldosterone	insulin
adrenal medulla	testes	cortisol	parathyroid hormone
neurohypophysis	thyroid	epinephrine	thyroxine
ovaries			

Condition	**Hypo or Hyper**	**Gland and Hormone**
1. Cushing syndrome	_____	_____
2. tetany	_____	_____
3. Graves disease	_____	_____
4. diabetes insipidus	_____	_____
5. acromegaly	_____	_____
6. myxedema	_____	_____
7. diabetes mellitus	_____	_____
8. Addison disease	_____	_____
9. gigantism	_____	_____
10. endemic goiter	_____	_____
11. cretinism	_____	_____
12. pheochromocytoma	_____	_____

F **Build medical terms based on the definitions and word parts given.**

1. removal of the pancreas: _____ectomy
2. condition of deficiency or underdevelopment of the sex organs: hypo _____

3. pertaining to producing female (characteristics): _____ genic
4. removal of the pituitary gland: _____ectomy
5. deficiency of calcium in the blood: hypo _____
6. excessive sugar in the blood: _____emia
7. inflammation of the thyroid gland: _____ itis
8. specialist in the study of hormone disorders: _____ ist

G **Give the meanings of the following conditions.**

1. hyponatremia _____ _____
2. polydipsia _____ _____
3. hyperkalemia _____ _____
4. hypercalcemia _____ _____
5. hypoglycemia _____ _____
6. glycosuria _____ _____
7. euthyroid _____ _____
8. hyperthyroidism _____

_____

9. tetany

_____

_____

10. ketoacidosis

_____

_____

H **The following hormones are all produced by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland (note that they all have the same suffix, -tropin). Name the target tissue they act on or stimulate in the body.**

1. gonadotropins: _____
2. somatotropin: _____
3. thyrotropin: _____
4. adrenocorticotropin: _____

I **Give the meanings of the following medical terms.**

1. steroids

_____

_____

2. catecholamines

_____

_____

3. adenohypophysis

_____

_____

4. tetany

_____

_____

5. exophthalmos

_____

_____

6. mineralocorticoids

_____

_____

7. homeostasis

_____

8. sympathomimetic

_____

9. glucocorticoids

_____

10. epinephrine

_____

11. glycogen

_____

12. androgen

_____

13. corticosteroid

_____

14. oxytocin

_____

15. tetraiodothyronine

_____

16. adrenal virilism

_____

17. thyroid carcinoma

_____

18. hirsutism

_____

19. acromegaly

_____

20. estradiol

_____

J **Give the meanings of the following terms related to diabetes mellitus.**

1. type 1

_____

2. diabetic neuropathy

_____

3. ketoacidosis

_____

4. hypoglycemia

_____

5. type 2

_____

6. diabetic retinopathy

_____

7. diabetic coma

_____

8. diabetic nephropathy

_____

9. atherosclerosis

_____

10. hyperglycemia

_____

11. gastroparesis

_____

12. insulin shock

_____

K **Explain the following laboratory tests or clinical procedures related to the endocrine system.**

1. thyroid scan

_____

2. fasting plasma glucose

_____

3. exophthalmometry

_____

4. thyroid function test

_____

L **Circle the** boldface **terms that best complete the meaning of the sentences.**

1. Phyllis was diagnosed with Graves disease when her husband noticed her **(panhypopituitarism, hirsutism, exophthalmos)**. Her eyes seemed to be bulging out of their sockets.
2. Helen had a primary brain tumor called a **(pituitary, thyroid, adrenal)** adenoma. Her entire endocrine system was disrupted, and her physician recommended surgery and radiation therapy to help relieve her symptoms.
3. Bessie's facial features gradually became “rough” in her late thirties and forties. By the time she was 50, her adult children noticed her very large hands and recommended that she see an

endocrinologist, who diagnosed her chronically progressive condition as **(hyperinsulism, gigantism, acromegaly)**.

4. Bobby was brought into the emergency department because he was found passed out in the kitchen. He had not taken his usual dose of insulin and had developed **(Cushing disease, hyperparathyroidism, diabetic ketoacidosis)**.
5. Because her 1-hour test of blood sugar was slightly abnormal, Selma's obstetrician ordered a **(glucose tolerance test, thyroid function test, Pap smear)** to rule out gestational **(hyperthyroidism, chlamydial infection, diabetes)**.
6. Bill noticed that he was passing his urine more frequently, a condition known as **(polyphagia, polyuria, hyperglycemia)**, and was experiencing increased thirst, manifested as **(polydipsia, hypernatremia, polyphagia)**. His wife urged him to see a physician, who performed a **(serum calcium test, urinalysis, serum sodium test)** that revealed inappropriately dilute **(blood, sweat, urine)**. Measurement of the hormone **(PTH, ADH, HCG)** in his blood showed low levels. His diagnosis was **(DI, DM, SIADH)**. Treatment with **(oxytocin, cortisol, vasopressin)** delivered by nasal spray was prescribed, and his condition improved.
7. Mary noticed that she had gained weight recently and that her face had a moon-like fullness with new heavy hair growth. Her blood pressure was high at her doctor's appointment. Blood and urine tests showed high levels of blood sugar and **(cortisol, vasopressin, thyroid hormone)**. Her diagnostic workup included a/an **(CT scan of the abdomen, thyroid ultrasound, thyroid scan)**, which revealed a tumor in the **(pancreas, thyroid gland, adrenal gland)**. Her doctor made the diagnosis of **(hyperthyroidism, Cushing syndrome, Addison disease)**.
8. Jack had several fractures of ribs and vertebrae in a skiing accident. X-ray images of his bones revealed a generalized decrease in bone density, a condition known as **(osteoporosis, tetany, acromegaly)**. A blood test showed high serum **(sodium, calcium, growth hormone)** and high levels of **(mineralocorticoids, somatotropin, parathyroid hormone)**. An ultrasound scan of the neck revealed a **(thymus, parathyroid, thyroid)** adenoma, which was removed surgically. His bone disease and other abnormalities were all

related to **(hypoparathyroidism, hyperparathyroidism, hypothyroidism)**.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. pancreas
2. parathyroid
3. adrenal medulla
4. testis
5. thyroid gland
6. adrenal cortex
7. ovary
8. pituitary (hypophysis)

B

1. anterior pituitary gland (adenohypophysis)
2. posterior pituitary gland (neurohypophysis)
3. adrenal cortex
4. beta islet cells of the pancreas
5. thyroid gland
6. adrenal cortex
7. anterior pituitary gland; these hormones are FSH and LH
8. adrenal medulla
9. posterior pituitary gland
10. anterior pituitary gland
11. anterior pituitary gland
12. alpha islet cells of the pancreas
13. anterior pituitary gland

14. ovaries
15. ovaries
16. testes
17. anterior pituitary gland

C

1. antidiuretic hormone
2. adrenocorticotropic hormone
3. luteinizing hormone
4. follicle-stimulating hormone
5. thyroid-stimulating hormone
6. parathyroid hormone
7. growth hormone
8. prolactin
9. thyroxine; tetraiodothyronine
10. triiodothyronine
11. oxytocin
12. human chorionic gonadotropin

D

1. epinephrine
2. testosterone
3. ADH
4. thyroxine
5. parathyroid hormone
6. aldosterone
7. ACTH
8. cortisol

9. insulin
10. estradiol

E

1. hypersecretion; adrenal cortex; cortisol
2. hyposecretion; parathyroid gland; parathyroid hormone
3. hypersecretion; thyroid gland; thyroxine
4. hyposecretion; neurohypophysis; ADH
5. hypersecretion; adenohypophysis; GH
6. hyposecretion; thyroid gland; thyroxine
7. hyposecretion; pancreas; insulin
8. hyposecretion; adrenal cortex; aldosterone and cortisol
9. hypersecretion; adenohypophysis; GH
10. hyposecretion; thyroid gland; thyroxine
11. hyposecretion; thyroid gland; thyroxine
12. hypersecretion; adrenal medulla; epinephrine

F

1. pancreatectomy
2. hypogonadism
3. estrogenic
4. hypophysectomy
5. hypocalcemia
6. hyperglycemia
7. thyroiditis
8. endocrinologist

G

1. deficient sodium in the blood

2. condition of excessive thirst
3. excessive potassium in the blood
4. excessive calcium in the blood
5. deficient sugar in the blood
6. condition of sugar in the urine
7. normal thyroid function
8. condition of increased secretion from the thyroid gland
9. constant muscle contraction (result of hypoparathyroidism)
10. condition of excessive ketones (acids) in the blood as a result of diabetes mellitus

H

1. the male and female sex organs (ovaries and testes); examples of gonadotropins are FSH and LH
2. bones; another name for somatotropin is growth hormone
3. thyroid gland; another name for thyrotropin is thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)
4. adrenal cortex; another name for adrenocorticotropin is adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH)

I

1. complex substances derived from cholesterol; hormones from the adrenal cortex and sex hormonesare steroids
2. complex substances derived from an amino acid; epinephrine (adrenaline) and norepinephrine (noradrenaline) are examples
3. anterior lobe of the pituitary gland
4. continuous contractions of muscles associated with low levels of parathyroid hormone
5. eyeballs that bulge outward; associated with hyperthyroidism

6. steroid hormones from the adrenal cortex (outer region of the adrenal gland) that influence salt (minerals such as sodium and potassium) metabolism
7. tendency of an organism to maintain a constant internal environment
8. substance that mimics the action of the sympathetic nerves; epinephrine (adrenaline) is an example
9. steroid hormones from the adrenal cortex that influence sugar metabolism in the body
10. catecholamine hormone from the adrenal medulla; adrenaline
11. animal starch; storage form of glucose
12. male hormone; testosterone is an example
13. hormone secreted by the adrenal cortex; cortisol is an example
14. hormone from the posterior lobe of the pituitary that stimulates contraction of the uterus during labor
15. major hormone from the thyroid gland; thyroxine (contains four iodine atoms)
16. abnormal secretion of androgens from the adrenal cortex produces masculine characteristics in a female
17. cancerous tumor of the thyroid gland
18. excessive hair on the body (result of excessive secretion of androgens)
19. enlargement of extremities (excessive secretion of growth hormone after puberty)
20. female hormone; an estrogen

J

1. destruction of the beta cells (islets of Langerhans); insulin is not produced
2. destruction of nerves as a secondary complication of diabetes mellitus

3. abnormal condition of high levels of ketones (acids) in the blood as a result of improper burning of fats; fats are burned because the cells do not have sugar available as a result of lack of insulin or inability of insulin to act
4. too little sugar in the blood; this can occur if too much insulin is taken by a diabetic patient
5. insulin deficiency and resistance by target tissue to the action of insulin
6. destruction of blood vessels in the retina as a secondary complication of diabetes mellitus
7. unconsciousness caused by high levels of sugar in the blood; water leaves cells to balance the large amounts of sugar in the blood, leading to cellular dehydration
8. destruction of the kidneys as a secondary complication of diabetes mellitus
9. collection of fatty plaque in arteries
10. high level of sugar in the blood; insulin is unavailable or unable to transport sugar from the blood into cells
11. decreased gastric motility (-paresis means slight paralysis); secondary complication of diabetes
12. hypoglycemic shock caused by an overdose of insulin, decreased intake of food, or excessive exercise

K

1. Radioactive compound is given, and the thyroid gland is imaged using a scanning device.
2. Measurement of blood sugar levels in a fasting patient (at least 4 hours) and after intervals of 30 minutes and 1, 2, and 3 hours after ingestion of glucose.
3. Measurement of eyeball protrusion (symptom of Graves disease)
4. Measurement of T3, T4, and TSH in the bloodstream

L

1. exophthalmos
2. pituitary
3. acromegaly
4. diabetic ketoacidosis
5. glucose tolerance test; diabetes
6. polyuria; polydipsia; urinalysis; urine; ADH; DI; vasopressin
7. cortisol; CT scan of the abdomen; adrenal glands; Cushing syndrome
8. osteoporosis; calcium; parathyroid hormone; parathyroid; hyperparathyroidism

Answers to Practical Applications

Endocrine Medicines

1. c
2. b
3. a

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897.

Vocabulary and Terminology

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
adenitis	ah-deh-NI-tis
adenohypophysis	ah-deh-no-hi-POF-ih-sis
adrenal cortex	ad-RE-nal KOR-teks
adrenal medulla	ah-DRE-nal me-DU-lah
adrenalectomy	ah-dre-nal-EK-to-me
adrenaline	ah-DREH-nah-lin
adrenocorticotropic hormone	ah-dre-no-kor-tih-ko-TROP-ik HOR-mone
adrenocorticotropin	ah-dre-no-kor-tih-ko-TRO-pin
aldosterone	al-DOS-teh-rone
androgen	AN-dro-jen
antidiuretic hormone	an-tih-di-u-RET-ik HOR-mone
calcitonin	kal-sih-TO-nin
catecholamines	kat-ek-OHL-am-eenz
corticosteroids	kor-tik-o-STER-oydz
cortisol	KOR-tih-sole
electrolyte	eh-LEK-tro-lite
endocrinologist	en-do-crin-OL-o-jist
epinephrine	ep-ih-NEF-rin
estradiol	es-trah-DI-ol
estrogen	ES-tro-jen
estrogenic	es-tro-JEN-ik
euthyroid	u-THI-royd
follicle-stimulating hormone	FOL-ik-il STIM-u-la-ting HOR-mone
glucagon	GLU-kah-gon
glucocorticoid	glu-ko-KOR-tih-koyd
glycemic	gli-SE-mik
glycogen	GLI-ko-jen
glycosuria	gli-kohs-U-re-ah
gonadotropin	go-nad-o-TRO-pin
growth hormone	growth HOR-mone
homeostasis	ho-me-o-STA-sis
hormonal	hor-MO-nal
hormone	HOR-mone
hypercalcemia	hi-per-kal-SE-me-ah
hypercalciuria	hi-per-kal-se-U-re-ah
hyperglycemia	hi-per-gli-SE-me-ah
hyperkalemia	hi-per-ka-LE-me-ah
hypocalcemia	hi-po-kal-SE-me-ah
hypoglycemia	hi-po-gli-SE-me-ah
hypogonadism	hi-po-GO-nad-iz-im
hypoinsulinism	hi-po-IN-su-lin-iz-im
hypokalemia	hi-po-ka-LE-me-ah
hyponatremia	hi-po-na-TRE-me-ah
hypophysectomy	hi-pof-ih-SEK-to-me
hypophysis	hi-POF-ih-sis
hypopituitarism	hi-po-pih-TU-it-ar-izm

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
hypothalamus	hi-po-THAL-ah-mus
insulin	IN-su-lin
luteinizing hormone	LU-teh-ni-zing HOR-mone
mineralocorticoid	min-er-al-o-KOR-tih-koyd
neurohypophysis	nur-o-hi-POF-ih-sis
norepinephrine	nor-ep-ih-NEF-rin
ovaries	O-vah-reez
oxytocin	ox-se-TO-sin
pancreas	PAN-kre-as
pancreatectomy	pan-kre-ah-TEK-to-me
parathormone	par-ah-THOR-mone
parathyroid glands	par-ah-THI-royd glanz
parathyroidectomy	par-ah-thi-roy-DEK-to-me
pineal gland	pi-NE-al gland
pituitary gland	pih-TU-ih-ter-e gland
polydipsia	pol-e-DIP-se-ah
polyuria	pol-e-U-re-ah
progesterone	pro-JES-teh-rone
prolactin	pro-LAK-tin
receptor	re-SEP-tor
sella turcica	SEL-ah TUR-sih-kah
sex hormones	sex HOR-mones
somatotropin	so-mah-to-TRO-pin
steroid	STEH-royd
sympathomimetic	sim-pah-tho-mih-MET-ik
target tissue	TAR-get TIH-shu
testes	TES-teez
testosterone	tes-TOS-teh-rone
tetraiodothyronine	teh-rah-i-o-do-THI-ro-neen
thyroid gland	THI-royd gland
thyroiditis	thi-royd-I-tis
thyrotropin	thi-ro-TRO-pin
thyroxine	thi-ROK-sin
triiodothyronine	tri-i-o-do-THI-ro-neen
vasopressin	vaz-o-PRES-in

Pathology, Laboratory Tests, and Clinical Procedures

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
acromegaly	ak-ro-MEG-ah-le
Addison disease	AD-ih-son dih-ZEEZ
adrenal virilism	ah-DRE-nal VIR-il-izm
cretinism	KRE-tin-izm
Cushing syndrome	KUSH-ing SIN-drohm
diabetes insipidus	di-ah-BE-teez in-SIP-ih-dus
diabetes mellitus	di-ah-BE-teez MEL-ih-tus
dwarfism	DWARF-izm
endemic goiter	em-DEM-ik GOY-ter
exophthalmometry	ek-sof-thal-MOM-eh-tre
exophthalmos	ek-sof-THAL-mose
fasting plasma glucose	FAS-ting PLAS-mah GLU-kose
gastroparesis	gas-tro-par-E-sis
gigantism	JI-gan-tiz-im
glucose tolerance test	GLU-kohs TOL-er-ans test
goiter	GOY-ter
Graves disease	GRAVZ dih-ZEEZ
hirsutism	HER-soot-izm
hyperinsulinism	hi-per-IN-su-lin-izm
hyperparathyroidism	hi-per-par-ah-THI-royd-izm
hyperthyroidism	hi-per-THI-royd-izm
hypoparathyroidism	hi-po-par-ah-THI-royd-iz-im
hypothyroidism	hi-po-THI-royd-izm
ketoacidosis	ke-to-ah-sih-DO-sis
myxedema	mik-seh-DE-mah
nodular goiter	NOD-u-lar GOY-ter
panhypopituitarism	pan-hi-po-pih-TU-ih-tar-iz-im
pheochromocytoma	fe-o-kro-mo-si-TO-mah
syndrome of inappropriate ADH	SIN-drohm of in-ah-PRO-pre-it ADH
tetany	TET-ah-ne
thyroid carcinoma	THI-royd kar-sih-NO-mah
thyroid function tests	THI-royd FUNK-shun tests
thyroid scan	THI-royd skan
thyrotoxicosis	thi-ro-tok-sih-KO-sis

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of the word parts in the spaces provided and test yourself. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
aden/o	_____
adrenal/o	_____
andr/o	_____
calc/o, calci/o	_____
cortic/o	_____
crin/o	_____
dips/o	_____
estr/o	_____
gluc/o	_____
glyc/o	_____
gonad/o	_____
home/o	_____
hormon/o	_____
insulin/o	_____
kal/i	_____
lact/o	_____
myx/o	_____
natr/o	_____
pancreat/o	_____
parathyroid/o	_____
phys/o	_____
pituitar/o	_____
somat/o	_____
ster/o	_____
thyr/o	_____
thyroid/o	_____
toc/o	_____
toxic/o	_____
ur/o	_____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-agon	_____
-ectomy	_____
-emia	_____
-genic	_____
-in, -ine	_____
-megaly	_____
-oid	_____
-osis	_____
-physis	_____
-stasis	_____
-tocin	_____
-tropin	_____
-uria	_____

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING
eu-	_____
hyper-	_____
hypo-	_____
oxy-	_____
pan-	_____
poly-	_____
tetra-	_____
tri-	_____

Fill in the following chart of pathologic conditions of endocrine glands and check your answers with Table 18-4 on p. 777.

ENDOCRINE GLAND	HYPERSECRETION	HYPOSECRETION
Adrenal cortex	_____ _____	_____
Adrenal medulla	_____	
Pancreas	_____	_____
Parathyroid glands	_____	_____
Pituitary—anterior lobe	_____ _____	_____ _____
Pituitary—posterior lobe	_____	_____
Thyroid gland	_____ _____	_____ _____ _____

Give the abbreviations for the following.

1. test to assess glucose control _____
2. sodium; and its electrolyte _____
3. thyroxine _____
4. pregnancy hormone _____
5. potassium; and its electrolyte _____

CHAPTER 19

Cancer Medicine (Oncology)

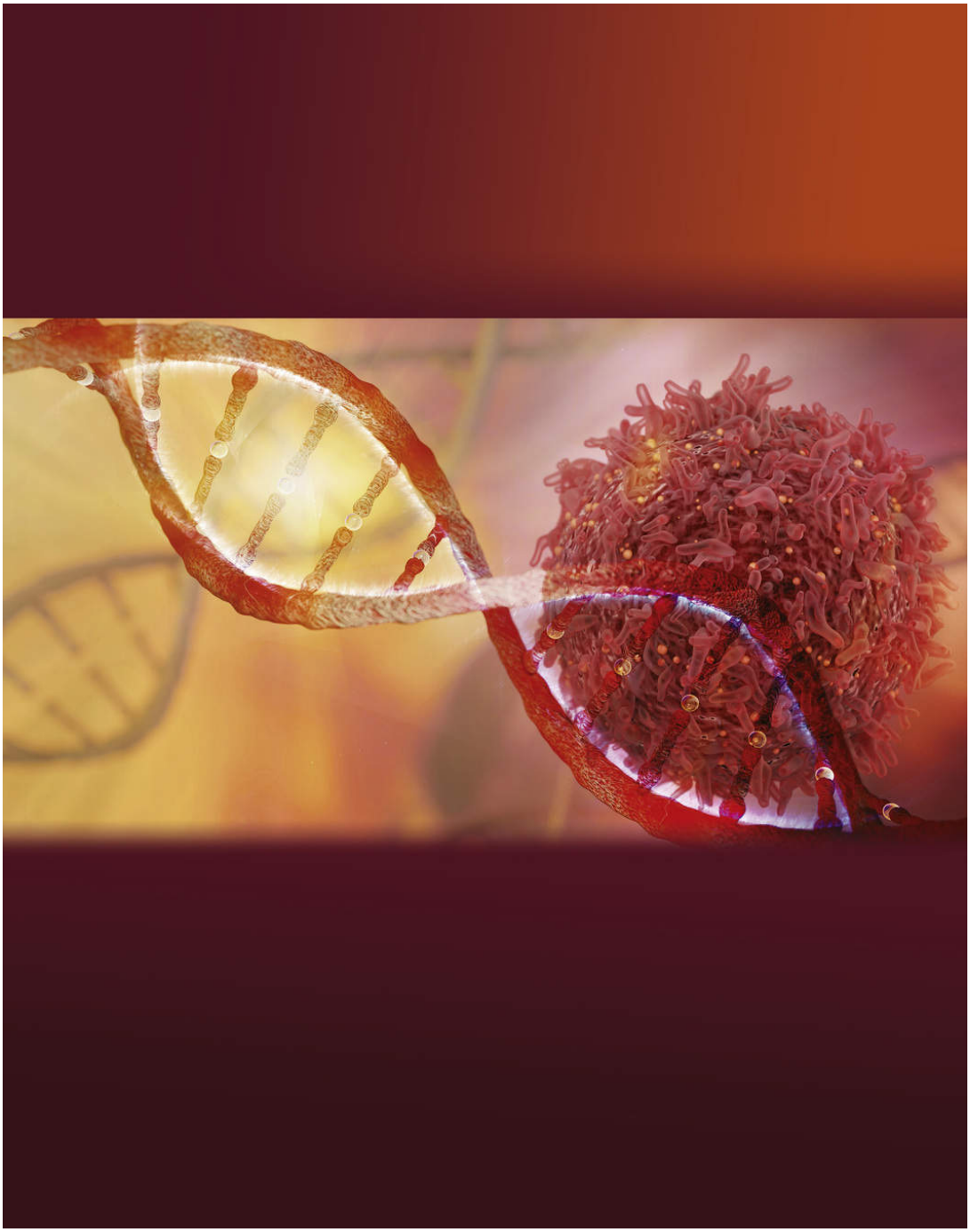
CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 746
Carcinogenesis 748
Classification of Cancerous Tumors 751
Pathologic Descriptions 754
Grading and Staging Systems 757
Cancer Treatment 758
Vocabulary 766
Terminology 769
Laboratory Tests 772
Clinical Procedures 772
Abbreviations 775
In Person: Radiotherapy 776
Practical Applications 777
Exercises 779
Answers to Exercises 786
Pronunciation of Terms 788
Review Sheet 791

CHAPTER GOALS

- Identify medical terms that describe the growth and spread of tumors.
- Recognize terms related to the causes, diagnosis, and treatment of cancer.

- Review how tumors are classified and described by pathologists.
- Describe x-ray studies, laboratory tests, and other procedures used by physicians for determining the presence and extent of spread (staging) of tumors.
- Apply your new knowledge to understanding medical terms in their proper contexts, such as medical reports and records.



Introduction

Cancer is a disease caused by abnormal and excessive growth of cells in the body. It may arise in any tissue and appear at any time of life, although cancer occurs most frequently in older people. Cancer cells accumulate as growths

called malignant tumors that compress, invade, and ultimately destroy the surrounding normal tissue. In addition to their local growth, cancerous cells spread throughout the body by way of the bloodstream or lymphatic vessels. In some patients, the spread of cancers from their site of origin to distant organs occurs early in the course of tumor growth and ultimately results in death.

Although more than one half of all patients who develop cancer are cured of their disease, about 550,000 people die of cancer each year. Lung cancers, followed by breast and colorectal cancers, are the most common causes of cancer death for women, whereas lung, colorectal, and prostate cancers are the leading causes of death due to cancer in men. This chapter explores the terminology related to this common and often fatal group of diseases.

Characteristics of Tumors

Tumors (neoplasms) are new growths that arise from normal tissue. They may be either **malignant** (capable of invasion and spread to surrounding or more distant sites) or **benign** (noninvasive and not spreading to other sites). There are several differences between benign and malignant tumors. Some of these differences are:

1. Benign tumors **grow slowly,** and malignant tumor cells **multiply rapidly.**
2. Benign tumors are often **encapsulated** (contained within a fibrous capsule or cover), so that the tumor cells do not invade the surrounding tissue. Malignant tumors characteristically are **invasive** and **infiltrative,** extending into neighboring normal tissue.
3. Benign tumors are composed of organized and specialized **(differentiated)** cells that closely resemble the normal, mature tissue from which they are derived. For example, benign tumors derived from epithelial cells that line the wall of the gastrointestinal tract look very much like their normal counterparts. Malignant tumors are composed of cancerous cells that resemble primitive cells and lack the capacity to perform mature cell functions. This characteristic of malignant tumors is called **anaplasia.** Anaplasia (ana- means backward and -plasia means growth) indicates that the cancerous cells are **dedifferentiated,** or **undifferentiated** (reverting to a less specialized state), in contrast with the normal, differentiated tissue of their origin. Anaplastic cells lack an orderly arrangement. Thus, tumor cells vary in size and shape and are piled one on top of the other in a disorganized fashion. The nuclei in these cells are large and **hyperchromatic** (stain excessively with dyes that recognize genetic material, DNA). Figure 19-1A and B shows normal skeletal muscle and anaplastic malignant muscle tumor cells.

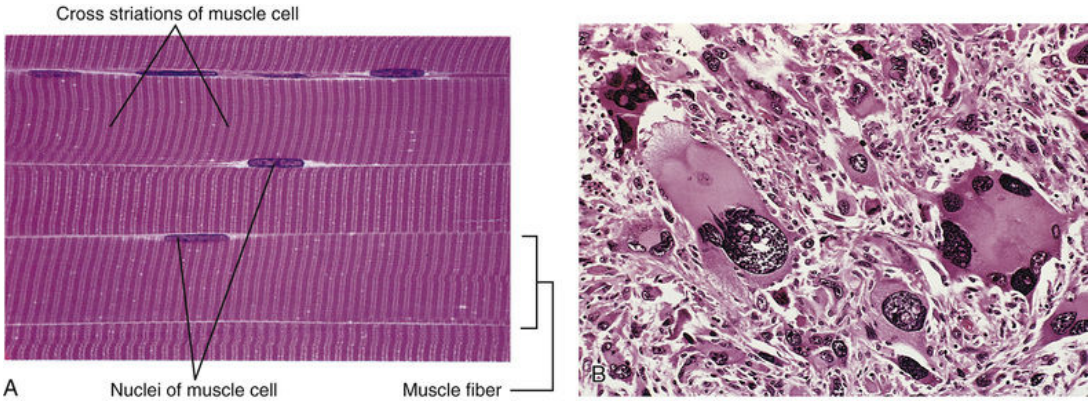


FIGURE 19-1 **A, Photomicrograph of normal skeletal muscle cells (fibers).** Note the orderly arrangement and the long, narrow, threadlike shape of the cells. There are many nuclei per cell and many cross striations. **B, Anaplastic tumor cells of the skeletal muscle (rhabdomyosarcoma).** Note the variation in size and shape of the nuclei (pleomorphism; pleo = many, morph/o = shape), hyperchromatic (intensely staining) nuclei, and large tumor cells (which may possess more than one nucleus). (**B,** Courtesy Trace Worrell, MD, Department of Pathology, University of Texas Southwestern Medical School, Dallas.)

4. Cells from benign tumors do not spread or **metastasize** to form secondary tumor masses in distant places in the body. Cells from malignant tumors, however, can detach themselves from the primary tumor site, penetrate a blood vessel or lymphatic vessel, travel through the bloodstream or lymphatic system, and establish a new tumor site at a distant tissue, such as the lung, liver, or bone marrow. The secondary growth is called a **metastasis.** Figure 19-2 shows metastatic tumors within the liver.

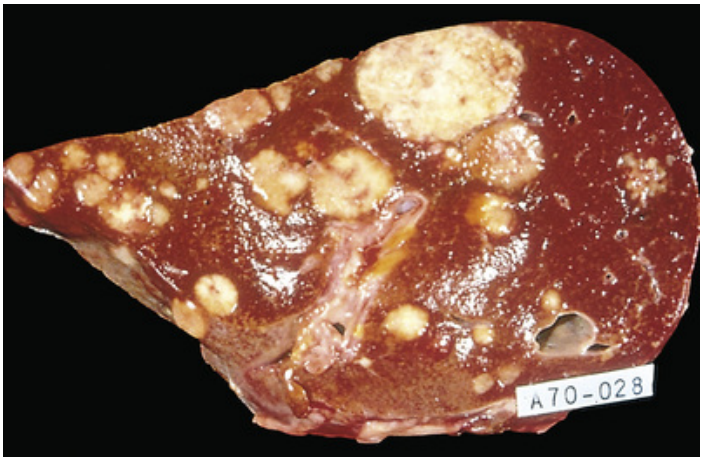


FIGURE 19-2 A liver studded with metastatic cancer.

Figure 19-3 reviews the differences between benign and malignant tumors.

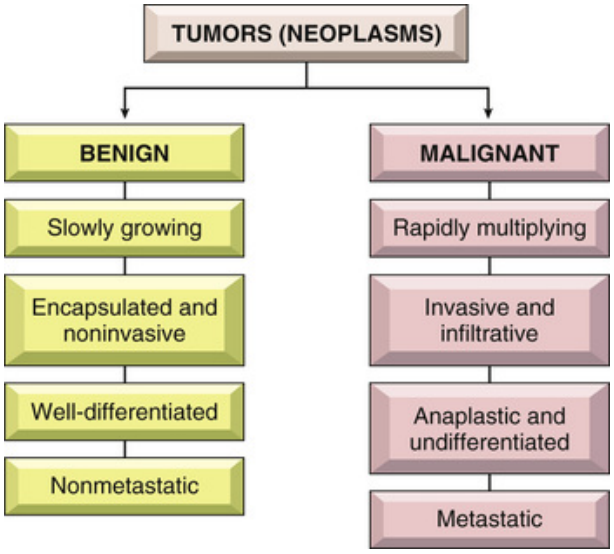


FIGURE 19-3 Differences between benign and malignant tumors.

Carcinogenesis

What Causes Cancer?

The causes of transformation from a normal cell to a cancerous one **(carcinogenesis)** are only partly understood. What is clear is that malignant transformation results from damage to the genetic material, or **DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid),** of the cell. Strands of DNA in the cell nucleus form **chromosomes,** which become readily visible under a microscope when a cell is preparing to divide into two (daughter) cells. In order to understand what causes cancer, it is necessary to learn more about DNA and its functions in a normal cell.

DNA has two main functions in a normal cell. First, DNA controls the production of new cells (cell division). When a cell divides, the DNA material in each chromosome copies itself so that exactly the same DNA is passed to the two new daughter cells that are formed. This process of cell division is called **mitosis** (Figure 19-4A).

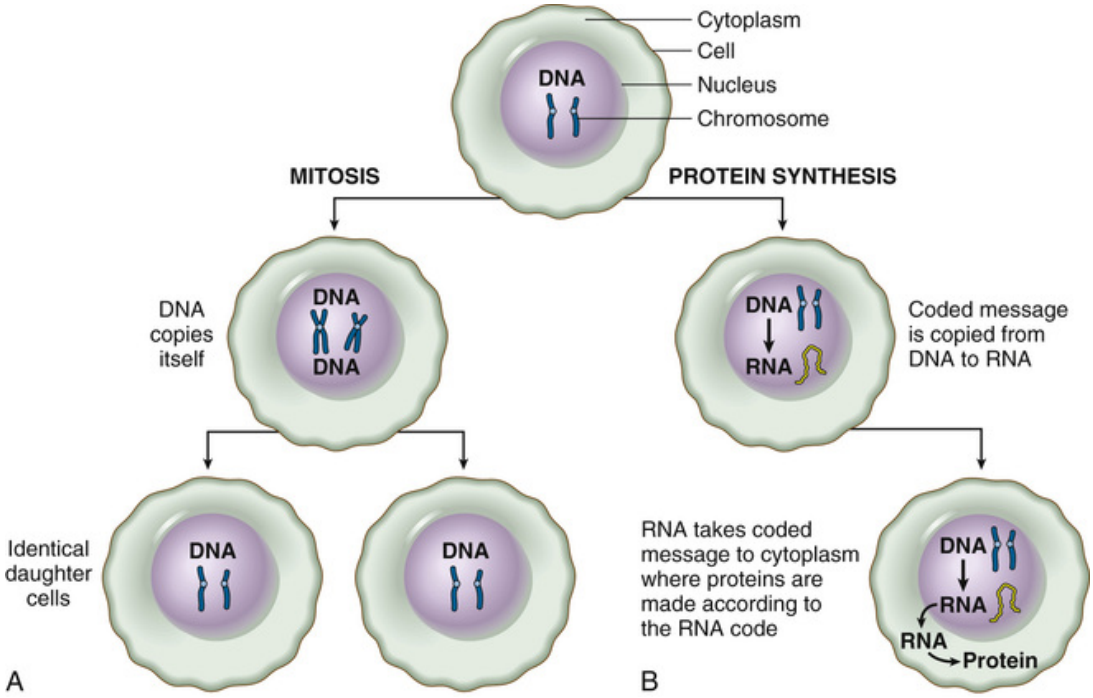


FIGURE 19-4 **Two functions controlled by DNA. A, Mitosis** (the process of cell division). **B, Protein synthesis** (creating new proteins for cellular growth).

Second, DNA controls the production of new proteins (**protein synthesis**) in the cell. Each DNA piece, or **gene**, contains the code for making a single protein. That protein carries out an important specific function in the cell. There are 20,000 to 25,000 human protein-coding genes. Genes are composed of an arrangement of units called **nucleotides** (containing a sugar, phosphate, and a base, such as adenine, guanine, thymine, or cytosine). DNA (as a string of coded nucleotides) sends a molecular message outside the nucleus to the cytoplasm of the cell, directing the synthesis of specific proteins (such as hormones and enzymes) essential for normal cell function and growth. This message is transmitted in the following way: In the nucleus, the coded message with instructions for making a specific protein is copied from DNA onto another molecule called **RNA (ribonucleic acid).** Then RNA travels from the nucleus to the cytoplasm of the cell, carrying the coded message that directs the formation of specific proteins (Figure 19-4B).

When a cell becomes malignant, however, the processes of mitosis and protein synthesis are disturbed. Cancer cells reproduce almost continuously, and abnormal proteins are made. Malignant cells are **anaplastic**; that is, their DNA stops making normal codes that allow the cells to carry on the function of differentiating mature cells. Instead, new signals lead to malignant growth and spread of tumor cells.

Various kinds of damage to DNA result in malignancy. DNA damage may be caused by toxic chemicals, sunlight, tobacco smoke, and viruses. The specific damage usually involves changes in the cell's DNA codes, creating abnormal genes with changes called **mutations**. Mutations interfere with the accurate synthesis of new proteins and can be passed on to new cells during cell division.

Although most DNA changes, or mutations, lead to higher-than-normal rates of growth, some mutations found in cancer cells actually prevent the cells from dying. In recent years, scientists have recognized that in some types of cancers, the normal blueprints that direct aging or damaged cells to die are missing. Normal cells undergo spontaneous disintegration by a process known as **apoptosis,** or programmed cell death. Some cancer cells have lost elements of this program and thus can live indefinitely.

Environmental Agents

Agents from the environment, such as chemicals, drugs, tobacco smoke, radiation, and viruses, can cause damage to DNA and thus produce cancer. These environmental agents are called **carcinogens.**

Chemical carcinogens are found in a variety of products and drugs, including **hydrocarbons**—in cigarette, cigar, and pipe smoke and automobile exhaust—insecticides, dyes, industrial chemicals, asbestos as in insulation, and hormones. Hormones such as estrogens can cause cancer by stimulating growth of cells in the lining of the uterus or in milk glands of the breast.

Radiation, whatever its source—sunlight, x-rays, radioactive substances—consists of waves of energy. This energy causes DNA damage and mutations that lead to cancer. Leukemia used to be an occupational hazard of radiologists, who were routinely exposed to x-rays. There is a high incidence of leukemia and other cancers among survivors of atomic bomb explosions, as at Hiroshima and Nagasaki. Ultraviolet radiation in sunlight can cause skin cancer, especially in persons with lightly pigmented, or fair, skin.

Some **viruses** are carcinogenic. For example, the human T cell leukemia virus (HTLV1) causes a form of leukemia in adults. Kaposi sarcoma is caused by another virus, herpesvirus type 8. Other viruses are known to cause cervical cancer (human papillomavirus or HPV) and liver cancer (hepatitis B and C viruses). See Table 19-1.

TABLE 19-1

ENVIRONMENTAL CARCINOGENS

Chemicals	• asbestos in insulation • dyes and industrial chemicals • hormones • hydrocarbons • insecticides
Radiation	• sunlight (ultraviolet rays) • x-rays • radioactive substances
Viruses	• human T cell leukemia virus (HTLV1) • human papillomavirus (HPV) • hepatitis B and C viruses

Oncogenes

Oncogenes are pieces of normal DNA that, when activated by a mutation, can convert a normal cell to a cancerous cell. Some examples of oncogenes are ***ras*** (colon cancer), ***myc*** (lymphoma), and ***abl*** (chronic myeloid leukemia or CML).

In chronic myeloid leukemia, the gene *abl* is activated to become an oncogene when two different chromosomes switch locations. This mutation is called a **translocation.** What happens is that the gene *abl* on chromosome 9 moves to a new location next to a gene called *bcr* on chromosome 22, (see Figure 19-5). When **bcr** (**b**reakpoint **c**luster **r**egion) and **abl** are near each other, they cause the production of an abnormal protein that makes the leukocyte divide and causes a malignancy (chronic myeloid leukemia). The new chromosome formed from the translocation is called the **Philadelphia chromosome** (it was discovered in 1970 in Philadelphia).

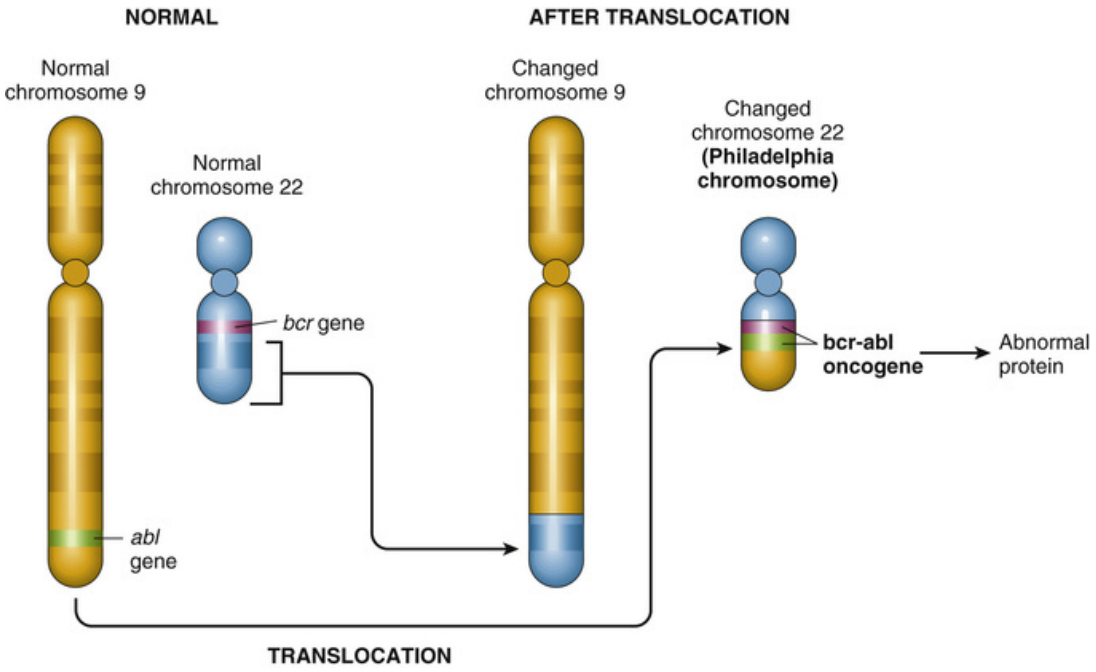


FIGURE 19-5 Oncogene translocation resulting in the Philadelphia chromosome. Notice the translocation of the *abl* gene from the long arm of chromosome 9 to the long arm of chromosome 22 (next to the *bcr* gene). This results in a combination ***bcr-abl* oncogene**, which produces an abnormal protein leading to chronic myeloid leukemia.

Heredity

Cancer also may be caused by transmission of DNA mutations that are associated with cancer susceptibility. These mutations are found in the DNA of the parents egg or sperm cells and are passed from generation to generation. Although most cancers result from chance mutations in body cells during a person's lifetime, examples of known inherited cancers are **retinoblastoma** (tumor of the retina of the eye), **adenomatous polyposis coli syndrome** (premalignant polyps that grow in the colon and rectum), and certain forms of colon, breast, and kidney cancer.

In many cases, it is believed that these tumors arise because of inherited or acquired abnormalities in certain genes called **suppressor genes.** In normal persons, these suppressor genes regulate growth, promote differentiation, and suppress oncogenes from causing cancer. Loss of a normal suppressor gene takes the brake off the process of cell division and leads to cancer. Examples of suppressor genes are the **retinoblastoma (Rb) type 1 gene *(RB1)*** and the ***TP53***gene, which leads to brain tumors or breast cancer.

Because inherited changes can be detected by analyzing DNA in any tissue of the body, not simply cancerous cells, blood cells from a cancer patient or family members tested to determine whether a person has inherited the cancer-

causing gene. This is known as **genetic screening.** Affected patients and family members may be watched carefully to detect tumors at an early stage or elect to have prophylactic removal of organs or tissue that may become cancerous. Table 19-2 lists several hereditary cancers and the name of the responsible gene.

TABLE 19-2

EXAMPLES OF GENES IMPLICATED IN HEREDITARY CANCERS

CANCER	GENE	CHROMOSOMAL LOCATION*
Breast; ovarian	*BRCA1*	17q21
Breast; ovarian	*BRCA2*	3q12-13
Li-Fraumeni syndrome (multiple cancers)	*TP53*	17p13
Polyposis coli syndrome	*APC*	5q21
Renal cell carcinoma	*VHL*	3p21-26
Retinoblastoma	*RB1*	13q14
Wilms tumor	*WT1*	11p13

*The first number is the chromosome; p is the short arm of the chromosome, and q is the long arm of the chromosome. The second number is the region (band) of the chromosome.

Classification of Cancerous Tumors

Almost one half of all cancer deaths are caused by malignancies that originate in lung, breast, or colon; however, in all there are more than 100 distinct types of cancer, each having a unique set of symptoms and requiring a specific type of therapy. It is possible to divide these types of cancer into three broad groups on the basis of **histogenesis**—that is, by identifying the particular type of tissue **(hist/o)** from which the tumor cells arise (-**genesis**). These major groups are **carcinomas, sarcomas,** and **mixed-tissue tumors.**

Carcinomas

Carcinomas, the largest group, are solid tumors that are derived from epithelial tissue that lines external and internal body surfaces, including skin, glands, and digestive, urinary, and reproductive organs. Approximately 90% of all malignancies are carcinomas.

Table 19-3 gives examples of specific carcinomas and the epithelial tissue from which they derive. Benign tumors of epithelial origin are usually designated by the term **adenoma,** which indicates that the tumor is of epithelial or glandular (**aden/o**) origin. For example, a gastric adenoma is a benign tumor

of the glandular epithelial cells lining the stomach. Malignant tumors of epithelial origin are named by using the term **carcinoma** and adding the type of tissue in which the tumor occurs. Thus, a **gastric adenocarcinoma** is a cancerous tumor arising from glandular cells lining the stomach.

TABLE 19-3

CARCINOMAS AND THE EPITHELIAL TISSUES FROM WHICH THEY DERIVE

TYPE OF EPITHELIAL TISSUE	MALIGNANT TUMOR (CARCINOMAS)
Gastrointestinal tract	
Colon	Adeno**carcinoma** of the colon
Esophagus	Esophageal **carcinoma**
Liver	Hepatocellular **carcinoma** (hepatoma)
Stomach	Gastric adeno**carcinoma**
Glandular tissue	
Adrenal glands	**Carcinoma** of the adrenals (adrenocortical **carcinoma**)
Breast	**Carcinoma** of the breast
Pancreas	**Carcinoma** of the pancreas (pancreatic adeno**carcinoma**)
Prostate	**Carcinoma** of the prostate
Salivary glands	Adenoid cystic **carcinoma**
Thyroid	**Carcinoma** of the thyroid
Kidney and bladder	
	Renal cell **carcinoma** (hypernephroma)
	Transitional cell **carcinoma** of the bladder
Lung	
	Adeno**carcinoma** (bronchioloalveolar)
	Large cell **carcinoma**
	Small cell **carcinoma**
	Squamous cell **carcinoma** (epidermoid)
Reproductive organs	
	Adeno**carcinoma** of the uterus
	Squamous cell **carcinoma** of the penis
	Chorio**carcinoma** of the uterus or testes
	Cystadeno**carcinoma** (mucinous or serous) of the ovaries
	Seminoma and embryonal cell **carcinoma** (testes)
	Squamous cell (epidermoid) **carcinoma** of the vagina or cervix
Skin	
Basal cell layer	Basal cell **carcinoma**
Melanocyte	Malignant melanoma

TYPE OF EPITHELIAL TISSUE	MALIGNANT TUMOR (CARCINOMAS)
Squamous cell layer	Squamous cell **carcinoma**

Sarcomas

Sarcomas also are malignant tumors but are less common than carcinomas. They derive from connective tissues in the body, such as bone, fat, muscle, cartilage, and bone marrow and from cells of the lymphatic system. Often, the term **mesenchymal tissue** is used to describe embryonic connective tissue from which sarcomas are derived. The middle, or mesodermal, layer of the embryo gives rise to the connective tissues of the body as well as to blood and lymphatic vessels.

Table 19-4 gives examples of specific types of sarcomas and the connective tissues from which they derive. Benign tumors of connective tissue origin are named by adding the suffix **-oma** to the type of tissue in which the tumor occurs. For example, a benign tumor of bone is called an **osteoma.** Malignant tumors of connective tissue origin are frequently named using the term **sarcoma** (**sarc/o** = flesh). For example, an **osteosarcoma** is a malignant tumor of bone.

TABLE 19-4

SARCOMAS AND THE CONNECTIVE TISSUES FROM WHICH THEY DERIVE

TYPE OF CONNECTIVE TISSUE	MALIGNANT TUMOR (SARCOMA)
Bone	Osteo**sarcoma** (osteogenic sarcoma) Ewing **sarcoma**
Muscle	
Smooth (visceral) muscle	Leiomyo**sarcoma**
Striated (skeletal) muscle	Rhabdomyo**sarcoma**
Cartilage	Chondro**sarcoma**
Fat	Lipo**sarcoma**
Fibrous tissue	Fibro**sarcoma**
Blood vessel tissue	Angio**sarcoma**
Blood-forming tissue	
All leukocytes	Leukemias
Lymphocytes	Lymphomas
	Hodgkin Lymphoma Non-Hodgkin lymphomas 1. follicular 2. diffuse large cell 3. Burkitt 4. anaplastic large cell
Plasma cells (bone marrow)	Multiple myeloma
Nerve tissue	
Embryonic nerve tissue	Neuroblastoma
Glial tissue	Astrocytoma (tumor of glial cells called astrocytes) Glioblastoma multiforme
Nerve cells of the gastrointestinal tract	Gastrointestinal stromal tumor (GIST)

In addition to the solid tumors of connective tissue origin, sarcomas include tumors arising from blood-forming tissue. **Leukemias** and **multiple myeloma** are tumors derived from bone marrow. **Lymphomas**, such as Hodgkin, Burkitt, and follicular types, are derived from immune cells of the lymphatic system. Glial cells within the brain and other cells of the nervous system give rise to malignancies such as **gliomas** and **neuroblastomas**.

Mixed-Tissue Tumors

Mixed-tissue tumors are derived from tissue that is capable of differentiating into both epithelial and connective tissue. These uncommon tumors are thus composed of several different types of cells. Examples of mixed-tissue tumors (Table 19-5) are found in the kidney, ovaries, and testes.

TABLE 19-5

MIXED-TISSUE TUMORS

TYPE OF TISSUE	MALIGNANT TUMOR
Kidney	Wilms tumor (embryonal adenosarcoma)
Ovaries and testes	Teratoma (tumor composed of bone, muscle, skin, gland cells, cartilage, etc.) Germ cell tumor

Pathologic Descriptions

The following terms are used to describe the appearance of a malignant tumor, on either gross (visual) or microscopic examination.

Gross Descriptions

cystic	**Forming large open spaces filled with fluid.** **Mucinous** tumors are filled with mucus (thick, sticky fluid), and **serous** tumors are filled with a thin, watery fluid resembling serum. The most common site of cystic tumors is in ovaries (Figure 19-6A).
fungating	**Mushrooming pattern of growth in which tumor cells pile one on top of another and project from a tissue surface.** Tumors found in the colon are often of this type.
inflammatory	**Having the features of inflammation—that is, redness, swelling, and heat.** Inflammatory changes result from tumor blockage of the lymphatic drainage of the skin, as in breast cancer.
medullary	**Large, soft, fleshy tumors.** Thyroid and breast tumors may be medullary (Figure 19-6B).
necrotic	**Containing dead tissue.** Any type of tumor can outgrow its blood supply with resulting cell death and necrosis of part or all of the tumor.
polypoid	**Growths that form projections extending outward from a base.** **Sessile** polypoid tumors extend from a broad base, and **pedunculated** polypoid tumors extend from a stem or stalk. Both benign and malignant tumors of the colon may grow as polyps. Benign polyps of the colon have a significant risk of becoming malignant over time and should be removed to prevent cancer (Figure 19-7A).
ulcerating	**Characterized by an open, exposed surface resulting from the death of overlying tissue.** Ulcerating tumors often are found in the stomach, breast, colon, and skin (Figure 19-7B).
verrucous	**Resembling a wart-like growth.** Tumors of the gingiva (gum) frequently are verrucous.

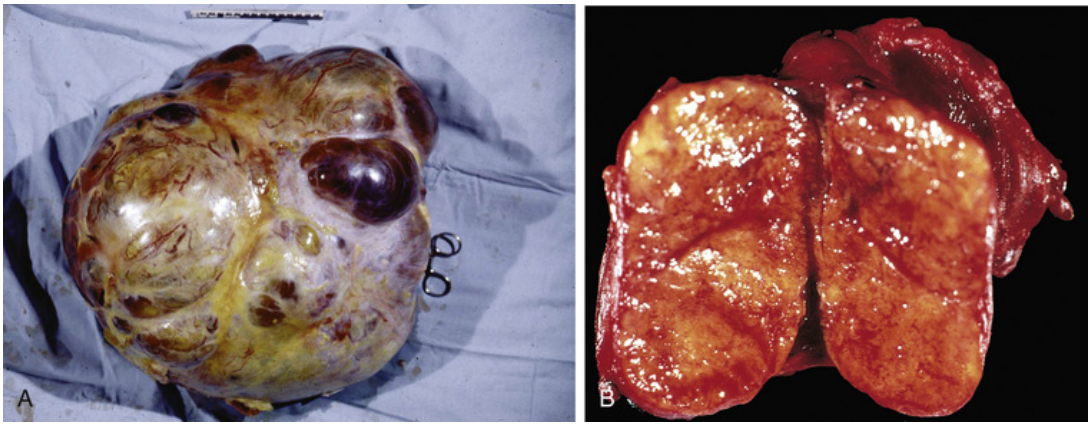


FIGURE 19-6 **A, Cystic ovarian adenocarcinoma.** Note that the tumor has formed fluid-filled cysts and blood-filled sacs. **B, Medullary carcinoma** of the thyroid. Tumor shows a solid pattern of growth. (**A,** Courtesy Dr. Annekathryn Goodman, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.)

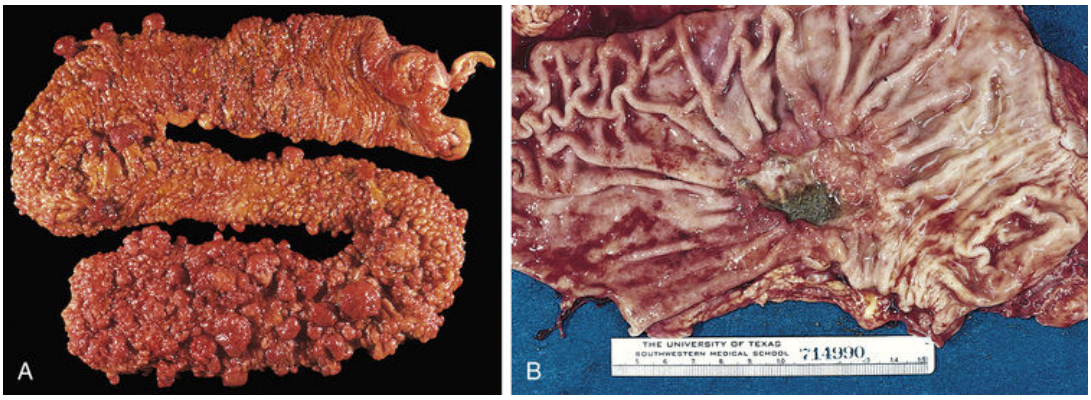


FIGURE 19-7 **A, Adenomatous polyposis of the colon.** These innumerable polypoid adenomas have a strong tendency for progression to colon adenocarcinoma. **B, Gastric (stomach) carcinoma presenting as a large, irregular ulcer.**

Microscopic Descriptions

alveolar	**Tumor cells form patterns resembling small sacs;** commonly found in tumors of muscle, bone, fat, and cartilage.
carcinoma in situ	**Referring to localized tumor cells that have not invaded adjacent structures.** (Latin *in situ* means in place.) Cancer of the cervix may begin as carcinoma in situ.
diffuse	**Spreading evenly throughout the affected tissue.** Malignant lymphomas may display diffuse involvement of lymph nodes.
dysplastic	**Containing abnormal-appearing cells that are not clearly cancerous.** Dysplastic nevi (moles on skin) are an example. They are often forerunners of skin cancers.
epidermoid	**Resembling squamous epithelial cells (thin, plate-like);** often occurring in the respiratory tract.
follicular	**Forming small glandular sacs.** Thyroid gland cancer and lymphomas are examples (Figure 19-8A).
papillary	**Forming small, finger-like or nipple-like projections of cells.** Bladder and thyroid cancers are examples (Figure 19-8B).
pleomorphic	**Composed of a variety of types of cells.** Mixed-cell tumors are examples.
scirrhous	**Densely packed** (scirrhous means hard) **tumors, due to dense bands of fibrous tissue;** commonly found in breast or stomach cancers.
undifferentiated	**Lacking any microscopic structures typical of normal mature cells.**

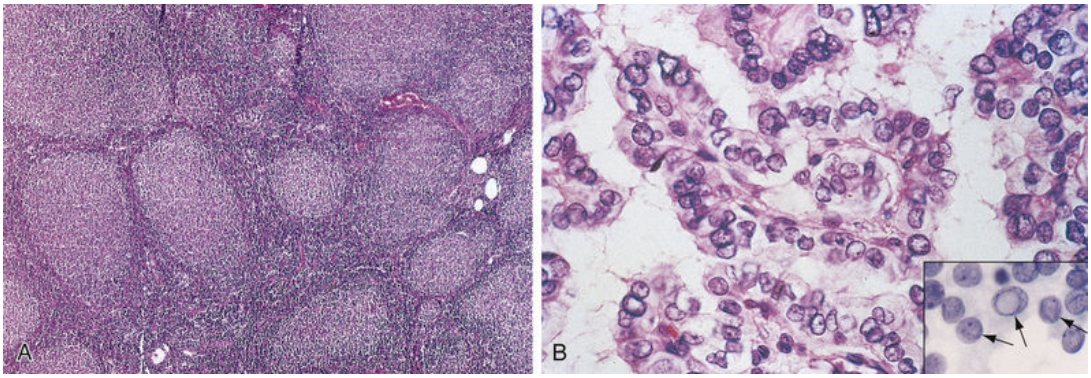


FIGURE 19-8 A, Follicular non-Hodgkin lymphoma involving a lymph node. B, Papillary carcinoma of the thyroid.

Grading and Staging Systems

In grading and staging systems, doctors classify tumors on the basis of **microscopic appearance (grade)** and the **extent of spread (stage).** These two properties influence the diagnosis, treatment, and prognosis for cancer patients.

Grading

When **grading** a tumor, the pathologist is concerned with the microscopic appearance of the tumor cells, specifically with their degree of maturity and differentiation. Often, three or four grades are used. **Grade I** tumors are very well differentiated, so that they closely resemble normal cells. **Grade IV** tumors are so undifferentiated or anaplastic that even recognition of the tumor's tissue of origin may be difficult. **Grades II** and **III** are intermediate in appearance, moderately or poorly differentiated, as opposed to well differentiated (grade I) and undifferentiated (grade IV).

Grading often is of value in determining the prognosis for certain types of cancers, such as cancer of the urinary bladder, prostate gland, and ovary and brain tumors. Patients with grade I tumors have a high survival rate, and patients with grade II, III, and IV tumors have an increasingly poorer survival rate. Grading also is used in evaluating cells obtained from body fluids in preventive screening tests, such as **Papanicolaou (Pap) smears** of the uterine cervix.

Staging

The **staging** of cancerous tumors is based on the extent of spread of the tumor. It relies on careful definition of the size and possible metastatic spread of the tumor, using computed tomography (CT), combination positron emission tomography (PET-CT), and magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) scans and radionuclide (radioactive) bone scans. See Figure 19-14, page 774, for a PET-CT scan showing lymph node metastases. An example of a staging system is the **tumor-node-metastasis (TNM) International Staging System.** It has been applied to malignancies such as lung and breast cancer, as well as to many other tumors.

Notations in a staging system are:

T = **tumor** (size and degree of local extension)
N = **nodes** (number of regional lymph nodes invaded by tumor cells)
M = **metastases** (spread of tumor cells to distant sites)

Stage groupings I-IV indicate tumor progression. Thus a stage II group may be designated as T2, N1, M0. Stage IV group indicates any T, any N, and distant

metastases.

Cancer Treatment

Major approaches to cancer treatment are **surgery, radiation therapy, chemotherapy, molecularly targeted therapy,** and **immunotherapy.** Each **modality** (method) may be used alone, but often they are used together in combined-modality regimens to improve the overall diagnosis and treatment result.

Surgery

In many patients with cancer, the tumor is discovered before it has spread, and it may be cured by surgical excision. Some common cancers in which surgery may be curative are those of the stomach, breast, colon, lung, and uterus (endometrium). In other patients who have metastases, surgical removal of the primary tumor prevents local spread or complications, even in the presence of distant disease. A **debulking procedure** may be used to remove as much of the primary tumor mass as possible, even if the tumor is attached to a vital organ and cannot be completely removed. After removal of the primary tumor, the patient often receives **adjuvant** (assisting) radiation therapy and/or chemotherapy to prevent recurrence at local and distant sites.

The following is a list of terms that describe surgical procedures used in diagnosing and treating cancer.

cauterization	Destruction of tissue by burning. Examples are electrocauterization (using a needle or snare heated by electric current), laser, dry ice, and chemicals.
core needle biopsy	Placement of a large-bore needle that extracts a core of tissue.
cryosurgery	Use of subfreezing temperature to destroy tissue.
en bloc resection	Tumor is removed along with a large area of surrounding tissue containing lymph nodes. Modified radical mastectomy, colectomy, and gastrectomy are examples.
excisional biopsy	Removal of tumor and a margin of normal tissue. This procedure provides a specimen for diagnosis and may be curative for small noninvasive tumors.
exenteration	Wide resection involving removal of the tumor, its organ of origin, and all surrounding tissue in the body space. Pelvic exenteration with removal of the uterus, ovaries, bladder, and segments of the large bowel may be performed to treat large primary tumors of the uterus.
fine needle aspiration	Placement of a very thin needle inside the tumor mass and extracting cells for microscopic evaluation.
fulguration	Destruction of tissue by electric sparks generated by a high-frequency current.
incisional biopsy	Piece of tumor is removed for examination to establish a diagnosis. More extensive surgical procedure or other forms of treatment, such as chemotherapy or radiation therapy, are then used to treat the bulk of the tumor.

Radiation Therapy (Radiation Oncology)

The **goal of radiation therapy (RT)** is to deliver a maximal dose of ionizing radiation to the tumor tissue and a minimal dose to the surrounding normal tissue. High-dose **irradiation** (exposure of tissue to radiation) destroys tumor cells and produces damage to DNA. Newer techniques of irradiation use high-energy beams of **protons** (subatomic particles) to improve the uniformity (conformality) of dose and to limit damage to normal tissues.

Terms used in the field of radiation therapy for cancer are as follows:

brachytherapy	Implantation of small, sealed containers or seeds of radioactive material directly into the tumor (interstitial therapy); or in a cavity of the tumor (intracavitary therapy, as in endometrial cancer). An implant may be temporary (as in treatment for tumors of the head and neck or gynecologic malignancies) or permanent (as with prostatic implants, or "seeds," placed into the affected area of the gland).
electron beams	Low-energy beams for treatment of skin or surface tumors.
external beam irradiation (teletherapy)	Radiation therapy applied to a tumor from a distant source (linear accelerator).
fractionation	A method of dividing radiation into small, repeated doses rather than fewer large doses. Fractionation allows larger total doses to be given while causing less damage to normal tissue.
gray (Gy)	Unit of absorbed radiation dose. Historically, the unit in use was **rad** (100 rad equal 1 Gy).
linear accelerator	Large electronic device that produces high-energy x-ray (or photon) beams for the treatment of deep-seated tumors (Figure 19-9). Intraoperative radiation therapy (IORT) is direct application of radiation during surgery using a linear accelerator in the operating room.
photon therapy	Radiation therapy using x-rays or gamma rays. A linear accelerator produces photon beams to treat tumors. See ***In Person: Radiotherapy,*** page 776.
proton therapy	Small subatomic positively charged particles (protons) produced by a cyclotron deposit all the energy at a focused finite point. This reduces the dose affecting normal surrounding tissues by at least 50% (Figure 19-10A).
radiation fields	Dimensions of the size of radiation area used to treat a tumor from a specific angle. See Figure 19-11.
radiocurable tumor	Tumor that can be completely eradicated by radiation therapy. Usually, this is a localized tumor with no evidence of metastasis. Lymphomas, Hodgkin lymphoma, and seminomas of the testes are examples.
radioresistant tumor	Tumor that requires large doses of radiation to produce death of the cells. Melanoma and renal carcinoma are among the most radioresistant tumors.
radiosensitive tumor	Tumor in which irradiation can cause the death of cells without serious damage to surrounding tissue (morbidity). Tumors of hematopoietic (blood-forming) and lymphatic origins are radiosensitive.

radiosensitizers	Drugs that increase the sensitivity of tumors to x-rays. Many cancer chemotherapy drugs, especially 5-fluorouracil and cisplatin, sensitize tumors and normal tissue to radiation, thereby improving the outcome of treatment.
simulation	An imaging study performed before radiation therapy using CT scan and/or MRI to map the area to receive treatment. Simulation is required for all patients undergoing radiotherapy.
stereotactic radiosurgery	Single large dose of radiation is delivered under precise three-dimensional (3D) guidance (stereotactic) from multiple angles to destroy vascular abnormalities and small brain tumors (see Figure 19-10B).

FIGURE 19-9 Linear accelerator. Radiation therapy (photon therapy) delivered to a patient positioned under a linear accelerator. **Intensity-modulated radiation therapy (IMRT)** is an advanced mode of high-precision radiotherapy that uses computer-controlled linear accelerators to deliver precise radiation doses to a malignant tumor. This is a type of **conformal radiation therapy** that uses computer technology to create a three-dimensional image of a tumor so that rotating beams can shape exactly to the contour of the tumor. (Courtesy Arthur Brimberg, MD, Riverhill Radiation Oncology, Yonkers, New York.)

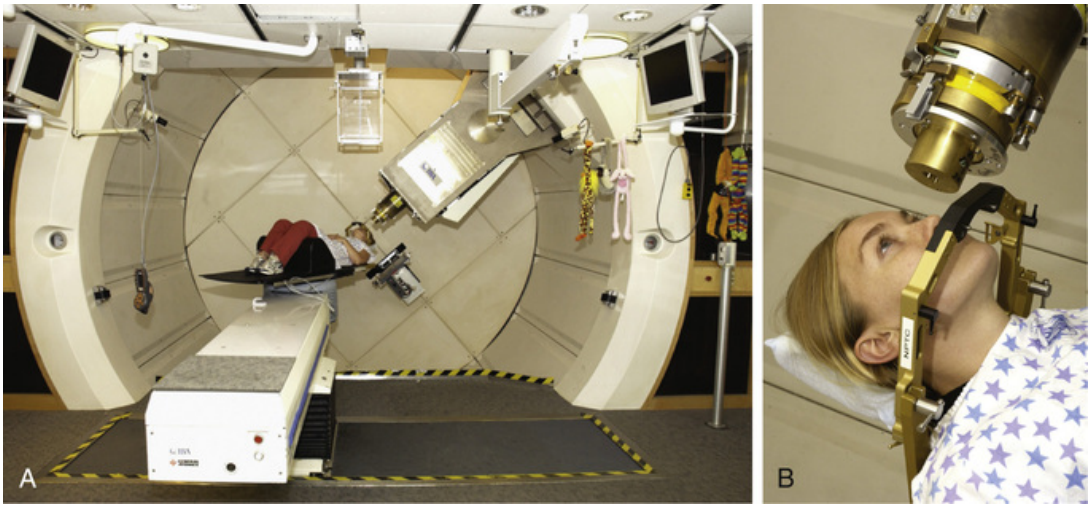


FIGURE 19-10 **A, Proton therapy machine.** Proton beam radiation therapy is useful in treating a variety of cancers including tumors of the head and neck, brain, eye, and prostate. The beam can rotate to different positions around the patient. **B, Proton stereotactic radiosurgery.** A model poses to show how a proton beam device is brought near a patient in preparation for stereotactic radiosurgery. (Courtesy Jay Loeffler, MD, Chief, Radiation Oncology Department, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.)

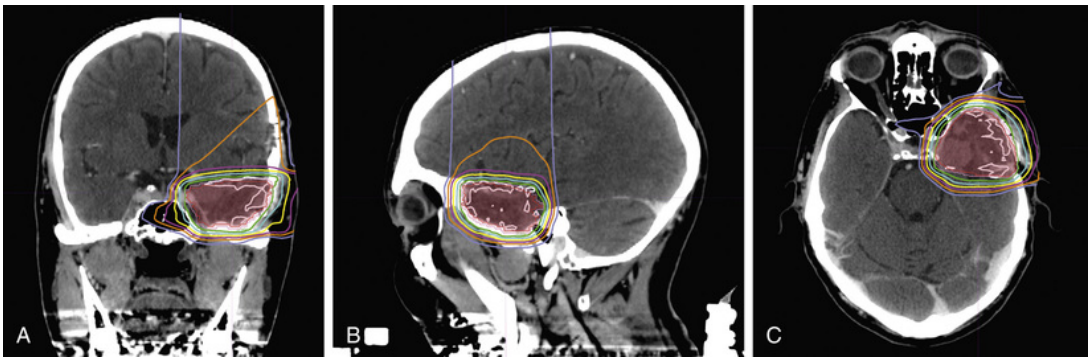


FIGURE 19-11 **Radiation fields.** Three-color radiation dose distribution image showing radiation fields used to treat a brain tumor. (Courtesy of Jay Loeffler, MD, Chief, Radiation Oncology Department, Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston.)

Radiotherapy, although it may be either **palliative** (relieving symptoms) or curative, can produce undesirable side effects to any normal body tissues that are caught in the field of irradiation. Some complications due to irradiation of normal tissue surrounding the tumor and in the path of the beam of photons may be reversible with time, and recovery takes place soon after radiotherapy is completed. Side effects may be acute (days to weeks after first dose),

subacute (several weeks or months later), or late (months to years later). Radiation side effects are listed in Table 19-6.

TABLE 19-6
RADIOTHERAPY SIDE EFFECTS

Acute	
• **mucositis**	inflammation and ulceration of mucous membranes (mouth, pharynx, vagina, bladder, large or small intestine)
• **myelosuppression**	bone marrow depression (anemia, leukopenia, and thrombocytopenia)
• **nausea and vomiting**	uneasiness of the stomach and emptying of its contents—more common with irradiation of the brain and gastrointestinal tract
• **xerostomia**	dryness of the mouth—with salivary gland irradiation
Subacute	
• **alopecia**	baldness (permanent or temporary)
• **cystitis**	inflammation of the urinary bladder
• **pneumonitis**	inflammation of the lungs
• **proctitis**	inflammation of the rectum and anus
Late	
• **fibrosis**	increase of connective tissue (scarring of skin, lungs, kidneys)
• **secondary tumors**	new types of tumors in separate sites (leukemias and solid tumors such as carcinomas and sarcomas)
• **infertility**	loss of reproductive function

Chemotherapy

Cancer chemotherapy is the treatment of cancer using chemicals (drugs). It is the standard treatment for many types of cancer, and is curative in a number of them, such as testicular cancer, acute lymphocytic leukemia (children), and Hodgkin lymphoma, and large cell lymphomas. Chemotherapy may be used alone or in combination with surgery and irradiation to improve cure rates.

Drugs cause tumor cells to die by damaging their DNA. Tumor cells with damaged DNA undergo apoptosis (self-destruction). This means that they have less capacity to repair their DNA and, in general, are less able to survive DNA damage caused by drugs and radiation.

The ideal is to administer drugs that kill large numbers of tumor cells without harming normal cells. However, rapidly dividing normal cells, such as in the bone marrow and gastrointestinal lining, can suffer considerable damage from chemotherapeutic drugs. Research physicians measure drug levels and disappearance from the bloodstream and tissues. They use information from animal experiments and **clinical trials** to design better routes and schedules of administration to achieve the greatest tumor kill with the least toxicity (harm) to normal cells.

Combination chemotherapy is the use of two or more drugs together to kill tumors. Drugs are given according to a written **protocol,** or plan, that details the route, schedule, and frequency of doses. Usually, drug therapy is continued until the patient achieves a complete **remission** (absence of all signs of disease). **Adjuvant chemotherapy** is the administration of drug treatment after surgery to kill any residual cancer cells. **Neoadjuvant chemotherapy** is administrated before surgery to reduce the size of a tumor, such as breast or head and neck cancer. Neoadjuvant drug treatment allows for a lesser surgery and improvement of outcome.

Clinical Trials

Clinical trials are research studies designed to find treatments that work better than the standard therapies for patients. The studies follow a predefined protocol and are divided into four phases:

Phase I: The experimental drug or treatment is tested in a small group of people (20 to 80) for the first time to evaluate its safety. Phase I trials also determine a safe dosage range and schedule of administration (daily, weekly, or every 3 weeks, oral or intravenous, and so on).

Phase II: Experimental treatment is given to a larger group of subjects (100–200) with a specific type of cancer to identify tumor response rate and define safety risks.

Phase III: A larger and more definitive trial is conducted in which hundreds or thousands of subjects take part. Patients are randomly assigned to the new treatment or to a standard, established treatment. The effectiveness and overall risk-versus-benefit ratio for the experimental treatment are compared with the results of those for standard treatment. A new drug may be approved by the FDA (U.S. Food and Drug Administration) based on these results.

Phase IV: Large studies are conducted after the FDA has granted its initial approval of a new treatment for marketing. These trials are designed to monitor safety in large populations and identify new indications and new drug combinations beyond those already approved.

The following are categories of cancer chemotherapeutic agents. Each works by disrupting cell function so that cancer cells die. At the same time, normal cells may be damaged as well. In each category, side effects such as alopecia, nausea and vomiting, and myelosuppression (suppression of bone marrow) can occur.

1. **Alkylating agents.** These drugs cause crosslinks and breaks in DNA that interfere with cell division. **Cisplatin (Platinol)** and **cyclophosphamide (Cytoxan)** are examples.
2. **Antibiotics.** These drugs are produced by bacteria or fungi and inhibit cell division by causing breaks in DNA strands. **Doxorubicin (Adriamycin)** is an example.
3. **Antimetabolites.** These drugs block synthesis of DNA components (nucleotides) and prevent cells from dividing. **Methotrexate** and **5-fluorouracil (5FU)** are examples.
4. **Antimitotics.** These chemicals block the function of a protein that is necessary for mitosis (cell division). Antimitotic drugs are derived from bacteria, fungi or plants, or from small sea animals found on coral reefs. **Paclitaxel (Taxol)** is an example.
5. **Hormonal agents.** These drugs block hormone receptors on cells so that growth is inhibited. An example is **tamoxifen (Novadex)**, which blocks an **estrogen receptor** on breast cancer cells. Aromatase inhibitors, such as **anastrozole (Arimidex)** prevent the conversion of androgen to estrogen and starve breast tumors of their estrogen supply in women who have gone through menopause (age greater than 50).

Figure 19-12 illustrates the mechanisms of action for various types of cancer chemotherapeutic agents. Often, drugs are administered in combination, according to carefully planned **protocols** (regimens). For your reference, see Table 19-7 which lists specific chemotherapeutic drugs in each category and the type of cancer they treat.

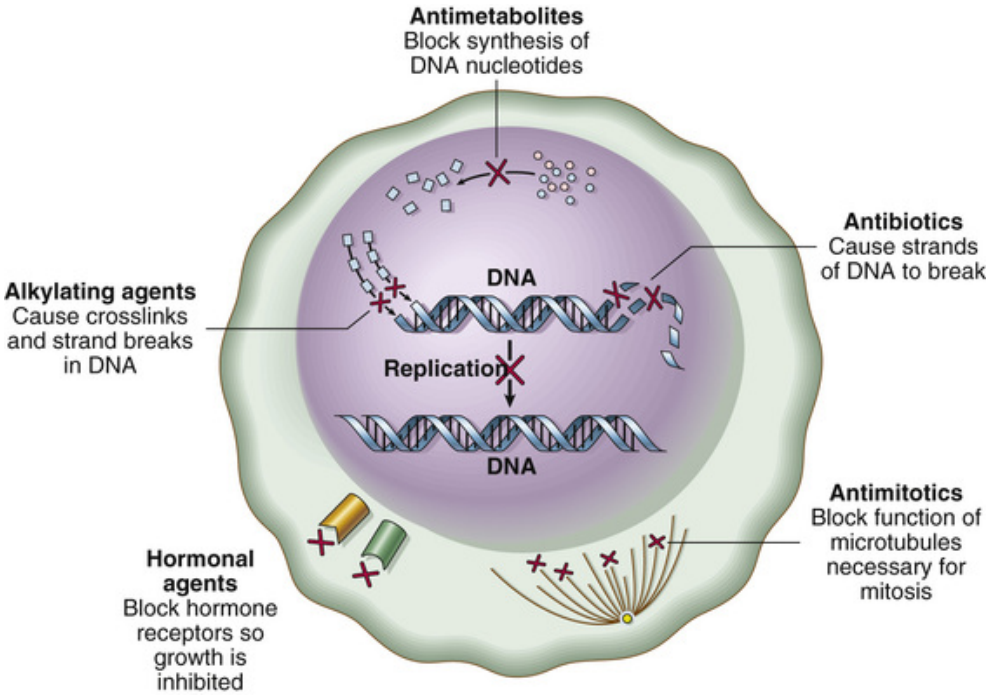


FIGURE 19-12 Mechanisms of action of cancer chemotherapeutic agents.

TABLE 19-7

SELECTED CANCER CHEMOTHERAPEUTIC AGENTS AND THE CANCERS THEY TREAT

CHEMOTHERAPEUTIC AGENT	TYPE OF CANCER
Alkylating Agents	
Bendamustine (Ribomustine)	Non-Hodgkin lymphoma
Cisplatin (Platinol)	Testicular; ovarian
Cyclophosphamide (Cytoxan)	Lymphoma
Temozolomide (Temodar)	Brain (glioma)
Antibiotics	
Bleomycin (Blenoxane)	Testicular, Hodgkin lymphoma
Daunorubicin (Cerubidine)	Acute myeloid leukemia (AML)
Doxorubicin (Adriamycin, Doxil)	Breast
Antimetabolites	
Cytarabine (ara-C, Cytosar-U)	AML
Fludarabine (Fludara)	Chronic lymphoid leukemia (CLL)
5-Fluorouracil (5-FU) (various)	Colon
Methotrexate, MTX (Folex, Mexate)	Acute lymphoid leukemia (ALL)
Pemetrexed (Alimta)	Lung
Antimitotics	
Docetaxel (Taxotere)	Breast, lung
Paclitaxel (Taxol)	Breast, ovarian, lung
Vincristine (Oncovin)	Lymphoma
Hormones and Hormone Antagonists	
Abiraterone (Zytiga)	Prostate
Anastrozole (Arimidex)	Breast
Dexamethasone (Decadron)	Lymphoma
Leuprolide (Lupron)	Prostate
Tamoxifen (Nolvadex)	Breast

Note: Brand names are in parentheses. Often drugs are given in combinations according to carefully planned regimens called **protocols.**

Molecularly Targeted Therapy

Molecularly targeted cancer therapy uses drugs to attack specific oncogenic mutations (targets) that drive cancer cell growth. When these targets are blocked by drugs, the cancer cell dies. Some of the targets are absolutely unique to tumor cells and not found in normal tissues. Thus, in contrast with chemotherapy, blocking these targets will have little or no effect on normal

cells. Chemotherapeutic drugs normally are delivered by intravenous infusion, whereas molecularly targeted drugs often are mostly given in pill form.

Molecularly Targeted Drugs (oncogene inhibitors)

Examples are:

Gleevec (imatinib)—used in chronic myeloid leukemia
Tasigna (nilotinib)—used in chronic myeloid leukemia
Tagrisso (osimertinib)—used in lung cancer
Cabometyx (cabozantinib)—used in hepatocellular carcinoma and renal cell carcinoma
Nexavar (sorafenib)—used in renal cell carcinoma and hepatocellular carcinoma
Imbruvica (ibrutinib)—used in chronic lymphoid leukemia, lymphoma
Votrient (pazopanib)—used in sarcomas
Sutent (sunitinib)—used in renal cell carcinoma and hepatocelluar carcinoma

Immunotherapy

Immunotherapy is the use of immune cells (lymphocytes) or antibodies, to kill tumors. It is now possible to remove a patient's own T cell lymphocytes and, in the laboratory, introduce new receptors, **CARs (chimeric antigen receptors),** on their cell surface. These CAR receptors are designed to bind to the CD19 protein found on the surface of all B-cell tumors. The engineered **CAR T-cells** can then be infused into the patient, where they attack and destroy the patient's B-cell tumors. This therapy is effective against all B-cell tumors, including acute lymphoid leukemia (ALL), chronic lymphoid leukemia (CLL), and lymphomas.

Other immunotherapies depend on laboratory engineered antibodies, called **monoclonal antibodies**. These monoclonal antibodies can kill tumors by blocking growth receptors on their cell surface. One of the most effective of these therapeutic antibodies is **Herceptin,** which inhibits the growth of breast cancer cells. Herceptin blocks HER2 growth receptors on breast cancer cells. Thus, if a patient presents with a HER2 breast cancer, the patient's tumor will respond to treatment with Herceptin.

In another example of immunotherapy, monoclonal antibodies are used to activate T cell lymphocytes. Normal T cell lymphocytes are capable of recognizing and killing tumor cells but in most cancer patients this response is ineffective due to a built-in brake called a checkpoint on the T cell surface. Monoclonal antibodies can block this checkpoint brake and allow the normal T

cell population to expand and destroy the tumor. These antibodies, called **checkpoint inhibitors,** are used to treat melanoma, lymphoma, lung, kidney, bladder and colon cancers. See Table 19-8 for examples of monoclonal antibodies and the cancers they treat.

TABLE 19-8

MONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES AND CANCERS THEY TREAT

*M*ONOCLONAL ANTIBODIES	CANCERS THEY TREAT
Adcetris (brentuximab vedotin)	Hodgkin lymphoma
Avastin (bevacizumab)	colorectal cancer, lung cancer, brain tumors
Erbitux (cetuximab)	colorectal cancer, head and neck cancer
Herceptin (trastuzumab)	breast cancer, gastric cancer
Opdivo (nivolumab)	melanoma, lung cancer, kidney cancer
Keytruda (pembrolizumab)	melanoma, lung cancer, colon cancer, bladder cancer
Rituxan (rituximab)	CLL and lymphomas

Vocabulary

This list reviews many of the new terms introduced in the text. Short definitions reinforce your understanding of the terms. Refer to the Pronunciation of Terms section, page 788, for help with unfamiliar or difficult words.

adjuvant chemotherapy	Drugs are given after primary therapy (surgery or radiation). Adjuvant means to assist.
alkylating agents	Chemotherapeutic synthetic drugs that cause crosslinks and breaks in DNA to stop cells from dividing.
anaplasia	Loss of differentiation of cells; reversion to a more primitive cell type.
antibiotics	Chemotherapeutic drugs found in bacteria and fungi, which cause breaks in DNA strands to inhibit cell division.
antimetabolites	Chemotherapeutic agents that block the synthesis of DNA components (nucleotides) and prevent cells from dividing.
antimitotics	Chemotherapeutic chemicals that block the function of a protein necessary for mitosis.
apoptosis	Programmed cell death. (Apo- means off, away; -ptosis means to fall.) Normal cells undergo apoptosis when damaged or aging. Some cancer cells have lost the ability to undergo apoptosis, and they live forever.
benign tumor	Noncancerous growth (neoplasm).
brachytherapy	Radiotherapy that uses insertion of sealed containers into body cavities or radioactive seeds directly into the tumor.
carcinogens	Agents that cause cancer: chemicals and drugs, radiation, and viruses.
carcinoma	Cancerous tumor made up of cells of epithelial origin.
chemotherapy	Treatment with drugs.
combination chemotherapy	Use of several chemotherapeutic agents together for the treatment of tumors.
dedifferentiation	Loss of differentiation of cells; reversion to a more primitive, embryonic cell type; anaplasia or undifferentiation.
deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA)	Genetic material within the nucleus of a cell; controls cell division and protein synthesis.
differentiation	Specialization of cells.
electron beams	Low-energy beams of radiation for treatment of skin or surface tumors.
encapsulated	Surrounded by a capsule; benign tumors are encapsulated.
external beam irradiation	Radiation is applied to a tumor from a source outside the body.
fractionation	Giving radiation in small, repeated doses.
genetic screening	Patients and family members are tested to determine whether they have inherited a cancer-causing gene.
grading of tumors	Evaluating the degree of maturity of tumor cells or degree of differentiation.
gray (Gy)	Unit of absorbed radiation dose.

gross description of tumors	Visual appearance of tumors to the naked eye: cystic, fungating, inflammatory, medullary, necrotic, polypoid, ulcerating, or verrucous.
immunotherapy	Cancer treatment using immune cells and antibodies to kill tumor cells; **CAR T-cell therapy** and **checkpoint inhibitors** are examples.
infiltrative	Extending beyond normal tissue boundaries into adjacent tissues.
invasive	Having the ability to enter and destroy surrounding tissue.
irradiation	Exposure to any form of radiant energy such as light, heat, or x-rays.
linear accelerator	Large electronic device that produces high-energy x-ray beams for treatment of deep-seated tumors.
malignant tumor	Tumor having the characteristics of continuous growth, invasiveness, and metastasis.
mesenchymal	Embryonic connective tissue (mes = middle, enchym/o = to pour). This is the tissue from which connective tissues (bone, muscle, fat, cartilage, and blood cells) arise.
metastasis	Spread of a malignant tumor to a secondary site; literally, beyond (meta-) control (-stasis).
microscopic description of tumors	Appearance of tumors when viewed under a microscope: alveolar, carcinoma in situ, diffuse, dysplastic, epidermoid, follicular, papillary, pleomorphic, scirrhous, or undifferentiated.
mitosis	Replication of cells; a stage in a cell's life cycle involving the production of two identical cells from a parent cell.
mixed-tissue tumors	Tumors composed of different types of tissue (epithelial as well as connective tissue).
modality	Method of treatment, such as surgery, chemotherapy, or irradiation.
molecularly targeted therapy	Use of drugs to attack specific targets (mutations) that drive cancer cell growth.
monoclonal antibodies	These are antibodies created in a laboratory by special reproductive (cloning) techniques. They are designed to attack specific cancer cells. directly or to activate T cells (or other effector cells) to kill the tumor.
morbidity	Condition of being unwell or deficient in normal function.
mucinous	Containing mucus (a thick whitish secretion).
mutation	Change in the genetic material (DNA) of a cell; may be caused by chemicals, radiation, or viruses or may occur spontaneously.
neoadjuvant	Drugs are given before primary therapy (surgery or

chemotherapy	radiation) to reduce the size of a tumor.
neoplasm	New growth; benign or malignant tumor.
nucleotide	Unit of DNA (gene) composed of a sugar, phosphate, and a base. The sequence or arrangement of nucleotides on a gene is the genetic code.
oncogene	Region of DNA in tumor cells (cellular oncogene) or in viruses that cause cancer (viral oncogene). Oncogenes are designated by a three-letter name, such as *abl*, *erb*, *jun*, *myc*, *ras*, and *src*.
palliative	Relieving but not curing symptoms.
pedunculated	Possessing a stem or stalk (peduncle); characteristic of some polypoid tumors.
photon therapy	Radiation therapy using energy in the form of x-rays or gamma rays.
protocol	Detailed plan for treatment of an illness.
proton therapy	Subatomic positively charged particles (protons) produced by a cyclotron deposit a dose of radiation at a tightly focused point in the body.
radiation	Energy carried by a stream of particles.
radiation fields	Dimensions of the area of the body undergoing irradiation.
radiation therapy	Treatment of tumors using doses of radiation; radiation oncology; radiotherapy.
radiocurable tumor	Tumor that is completely destroyed by radiation therapy. Early Hodgkin lymphoma is an example.
radioresistant tumor	Tumor that surivives large doses of radiation.
radiosensitive tumor	Tumor in which radiation can cause the death of cells without serious damage to surrounding tissue.
radiosensitizers	Drugs that increase the sensitivity of tumors to x-rays.
radiotherapy	Treatment of tumors using doses of radiation; radiation therapy; radiation oncology.
relapse	Recurrence of tumor after treatment.
remission	Partial or complete disappearance of symptoms of disease.
ribonucleic acid (RNA)	Cellular substance that represents a copy of DNA and directs the formation of new protein inside cells.
sarcoma	Cancerous tumor derived from connective or flesh tissue.
serous	Having the appearance of a thin, watery fluid (serum).
sessile	Having no stem; characteristic of some polypoid tumors.
simulation	Study using CT scan or MRI to map the area to receive treatment before radiotherapy is given.
solid tumor	Tumor composed of a mass of cells.
staging of	System of evaluating the extent of spread of tumors. An

tumors	example is the TNM (tumor-node-metastasis) system.
stereotactic radiosurgery	Technique in which a single large dose of radiation is delivered under precise 3D guidance to destroy vascular abnormalities and small brain tumors.
surgical procedures to treat cancer	Methods of removing cancerous tissue: cryosurgery, cauterization, en bloc resection, excisional biopsy, exenteration, fulguration, incisional biopsy.
viral oncogenes	Pieces of DNA from viruses that infect a normal cell and cause it to become malignant.
virus	Infectious agent that reproduces by entering a host cell and using the host's genetic material to make copies of itself.

Terminology

Write the meanings of the medical terms in the spaces provided.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
alveol/o	small sac	alveolar _____ *Microscopic description of tumor cell arrangement (found in connective tissue tumors).*
cac/o	bad	cachexia _____ *General ill health and malnutrition (wasting of muscle and emaciation) associated with chronic, severe disease (-hexia means state or condition).*
carcin/o	cancer, cancerous	carcinoma in situ _____ *Localized cancer; confined to the site of origin.*
cauter/o	burn, heat	electrocauterization _____
chem/o	chemical, drug	chemotherapy _____
cry/o	cold	cryosurgery _____
cyst/o	sac of fluid	cystic tumor _____
fibr/o	fibers	fibrosarcoma _____
follicul/o	small glandular sacs	follicular _____ *A microscopic description of cellular arrangement in glandular tumors.*
fung/i	fungus, mushroom	fungating tumor _____
medull/o	soft, inner part	medullary tumor _____
mucos/o	mucous membrane	mucositis _____
mut/a	genetic change	mutation _____ *-tion means process.*
mutagen/o	causing genetic change	mutagenic _____
necr/o	death	necrotic tumor _____

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
neur/o	nerve	neurofibromatosis _____ *Fibromas are tumors of fibrous connective tissue. Tumors begin in supporting cells of nerves and the myelin sheath around nerve cells. Most tumors are benign but some may become cancerous. It is a genetic disorder occurring in 1 in 3000 births, but some cases arise via spontaneous mutation.*
onc/o	tumor	oncology _____
papill/o	nipple-like	papillary _____ *A microscopic description of tumor cell growth.*
plas/o	formation	dysplastic _____ *Microscopic description of cells that are highly abnormal but not clearly cancerous. The suffix -tic means pertaining to.*
ple/o	many, more	pleomorphic _____ *Microscopic description of tumors that are composed of a variety of cells.*
polyp/o	polyp	polypoid tumor _____ *The suffix -oid means resembling.*
prot/o	first	protocol _____ *The ending -col, from Latin* kolla, *means glued page. A protocol is a written plan detailing the procedures to be followed in research or treatment.*
radi/o	rays	radiation _____ *Use of radioactive substances in the diagnosis and treatment of disease.* ***Irradiation*** *is exposure to any form of radiation (ionizing, heat, light, or x-rays).*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
sarc/o	flesh, connective tissue	osteosarcoma _____	
scirrh/o	hard	scirrhous _____ *Microscopic description of densely packed, fibrous tumor cell composition.*	
xer/o	dry	xerostomia _____	

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-blastoma	immature tumor	retinoblastoma _____ *Childhood cancer arising from immature cells in the retina (posterior, light-sensitive area of the eye).* neuroblastoma _____ *This sarcoma of nervous system origin affects infants and children up to the age of 10 years, usually arising in immature tissues of the autonomic nervous system or adrenal medulla.*	
-genesis	formation	carcinogenesis _____	
-oma	mass, tumor	adenocarcinoma _____	
-plasia	formation, growth	hyperplasia _____	
-plasm	formation, growth	neoplasm _____	
-suppression	to stop	myelosuppression _____	
-therapy	treatment	radiotherapy _____ *Ionizing radiation is used to treat malignancies.*	

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
ana-	backward	anaplasia _____	
apo-	off, away	apoptosis _____	
brachy-	short (distance)	brachytherapy _____ *Radiation delivered in close range to tumor site.*	
epi-	upon	epidermoid _____ *Microscopic description of tumor cells that resemble epidermal tissue.*	
meta-	beyond; change	metastasis _____	
neo-	new	neoadjuvant _____ *Adjuvant means to assist or aid.*	
tele-	far	teletherapy _____ *Also called **external beam radiotherapy.***	

Neoadjuvant and Adjuvant

Don't' confuse these terms. **Neoadjuvant drug therapy** is delivered **before** primary treatment, as a first step to shrink a tumor. **Adjuvant drug therapy** is given **after** primary treatment to kill possible hidden tumor cells.

Laboratory Tests

<table>
<tr><td>cytogenetic analysis</td><td>Chromosomes of normal or tumor cells are examined for breaks, translocations, or deletions of DNA.
The results of cytogenetic analysis can help confirm the diagnosis of a particular form of leukemia or other cancer.</td></tr>
<tr><td>immunohistochemistry</td><td>Localization of antigens or proteins in tissues using labeled (colored or fluorescent) antibodies.
This technique allows for evaluation of the presence and amount of specific molecules in normal and tumor cells.</td></tr>
<tr><td>protein marker tests</td><td>Measure the level of proteins in the blood or on the surface of tumor cells.
These tests diagnose cancer or detect its recurrence after treatment. Examples are:
<table>
<tr><th>Protein</th><th>Where Measured</th><th>Type of Cancer</th></tr>
<tr><td>acid phosphatase</td><td>blood</td><td>prostate</td></tr>
<tr><td>alpha-fetoprotein (AFP)</td><td>blood</td><td>liver, testicular</td></tr>
<tr><td>beta-hCG (human chorionic gonadotropin)</td><td>blood</td><td>choriocarcinoma, testicular</td></tr>
<tr><td>CA-125</td><td>blood</td><td>ovarian</td></tr>
<tr><td>CEA (carcinoembryonic antigen)</td><td>blood</td><td>colorectal, GI</td></tr>
<tr><td>estrogen receptor</td><td>tumor cells</td><td>breast</td></tr>
<tr><td>PSA (prostate-specific antigen)</td><td>blood</td><td>prostate</td></tr>
<tr><td>15.3 and 29.7</td><td>blood</td><td>breast</td></tr>
<tr><td>19.9</td><td>blood</td><td>pancreatic</td></tr>
</table></td></tr>
</table>

Clinical Procedures

The following specialized procedures are used to detect or treat malignancies. X-rays, CT scans, MRI, and ultrasound imaging (described throughout the text and specifically in Chapter 20) also are important diagnostic procedures in oncology.

bone marrow biopsy	**Aspiration of bone marrow tissue and examination under a microscope for evidence of malignant cells.**
bone marrow or stem cell transplantation	**Bone marrow or stem cells are infused intravenously into a patient.** In **autologous marrow transplantation,** marrow previously obtained from the patient and stored is reinfused when needed. In **allogeneic marrow transplantation** (all/o = other), marrow is obtained from a living donor other than the recipient. In **peripheral blood stem cell transplantation,** immature blood cells called stem cells are selected and harvested from the blood of a patient instead of from the bone marrow. After undergoing chemotherapy, the patient gets a reinfusion of the stem cells to repopulate the bone marrow with blood cells.
core needle biopsy	**Insertion of a large-bore needle into tissue to remove a core of cells for microscopic examination.** A needle (aspiration) biopsy is the insertion of a fine needle and aspiration (extraction) of a sample from a fluid-filled cavity or solid mass of tumor.
exfoliative cytology	**Cells are scraped from the region of suspected disease and examined under a microscope.** The Pap test (smear) to detect carcinoma of the cervix and vagina is an example (Figure 19-13).
fiberoptic colonoscopy	**Visual examination of the colon using a fiberoptic instrument.** This is an important screening procedure using an endoscope to detect cancer and remove premalignant polyps.
laparoscopy	**Visual examination of the abdominal cavity using small incisions and a laparoscope.** Also known as peritoneoscopy.
liquid biopsy	**Test done on a sample of blood to look for cancer cells, or pieces of DNA from tumor cells.** A liquid biopsy may be used to detect cancer at an early stage or to find out how well treatment is working.
mammography	**X-ray examination of the breast to detect breast cancer.**
PET-CT scan	**Diagnostic procedure combining CT (computed tomography) and PET (positron emission tomography).** The combination provides a more complete picture of a tumor's location and growth or spread than either done independently. See Figure 19-14. PET-CT uses a combination of two machines: one to examine chemical

	reactions (PET scan) and the other to examine physical structures (CT scan). A **PET-MRI scan** incorporates magnetic resonance imaging (especially good for soft tissues) and positron emission tomography to reveal how an organ functions.
radionuclide scans	**Radioactive substances (radionuclides) are injected intravenously, and scans (images) of organs are obtained.** These tests detect tumor and metastases. Examples of radionuclides are gallium-67 (whole-body scan), rose Bengal (liver), and technetium-99m (liver and spleen).

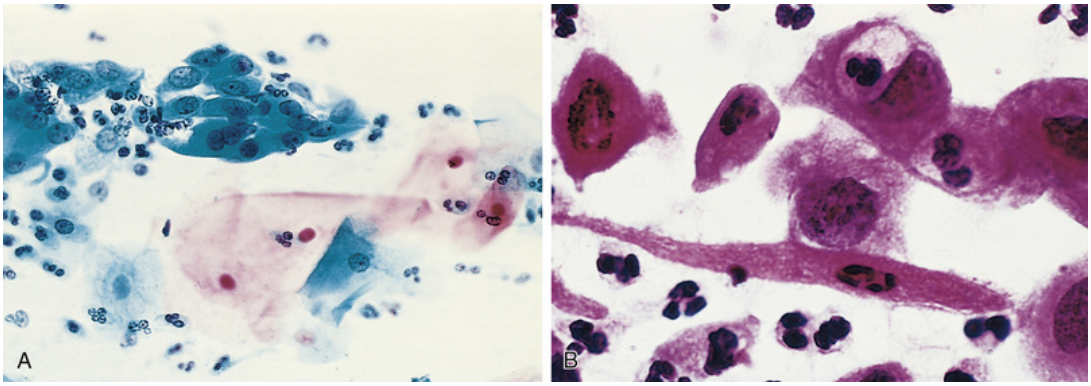


FIGURE 19-13 A, Normal exfoliative cytologic smear (Pap smear) from the cervicovaginal region. It shows flattened squamous cells and some neutrophils as well. **B, Abnormal cervicovaginal smear** shows numerous malignant cells that have pleomorphic (irregularly shaped) and hyperchromatic (stained) nuclei. (**A** and **B,** Courtesy Dr. P.K. Gupta, Department of Pathology and Laboratory Medicine, University of Pennsylvania Medical Center, Philadelphia.)

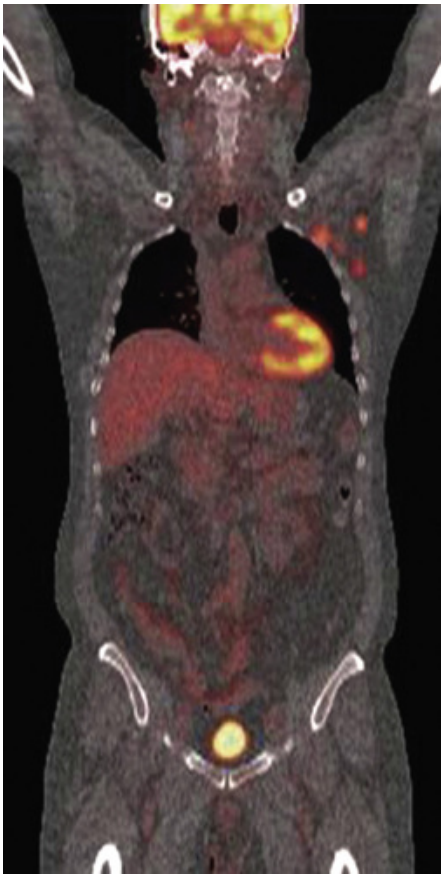


FIGURE 19-14 **PET-CT scan.** The PET-CT scan shown captures three areas of increased radioactivity, seen in the lymph nodes of the left axilla (armpit). By overlaying PET and CT images, physicians can identify spread of malignancy or metastasis. Brain and heart activity are normal. (Courtesy Massachusetts General Hospital, Boston, Massachusetts.)

Abbreviations

AFP	alpha-fetoprotein
bcr	breakpoint cluster region (*bcr-abl* oncogene is a part of the Philadelphia chromosome associated with chronic myeloid leukemia)
BMT	bone marrow transplantation
bx	biopsy
CA	cancer
CAR T-cell	chimeric antigen receptor T cell
CEA	carcinoembryonic antigen
cGy	centigray (one hundredth of a gray) or rad
chemo	chemotherapy
CR	complete response—disappearance of all tumor
CSF	colony-stimulating factor—examples: G-CSF (granulocyte colony-stimulating factor) and GM-CSF (granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor)
DNA	deoxyribonucleic acid
EGFR	epidermal growth factor receptor
ER	estrogen receptor
EPO	erythropoietin; promotes growth of red blood cells
FNA	fine needle aspiration
5-FU	5-fluorouracil
Ga	gallium
GIST	gastrointestinal stromal tumor
Gy	gray—unit of absorbed radiation dose
H&E	hematoxylin and eosin—a dye combination used to stain pathology specimens
HER2	growth factor gene highly activated in cells of certain types of breast cancer
IGRT	intensity-modulated gated radiation therapy—use of imaging mechanism attached to linear accelerator is added to IMRT to gate (track) a tumor moving during respiration
IHC	immunohistochemistry
IMRT	intensity-modulated radiation therapy—high doses of radiation are delivered directly to cancer cells in a targeted way, more precisely than in conventional radiotherapy
IO	Immuno-oncology
IORT	intraoperative radiation therapy
Mets	metastases
mAb (MAB)	monoclonal antibody; -mab indicates that a drug is a monoclonal antibody

NED	no evidence of disease
NF	neurofibromatosis
NHL	non-Hodgkin lymphoma
NSCLC	non–small cell lung cancer
Pap smear	Papanicolaou smear
PD	progressive disease—tumor increases in size
PR	partial response—tumor is one-half its original size
prot.	protocol
PSA	prostate-specific antigen
PSCT	peripheral stem cell transplantation
PSRS	proton stereotactic radiosurgery
RNA	ribonucleic acid
RT	radiation therapy
SD	stable disease—tumor does not shrink but does not grow
TNM	tumor-node-metastasis
VEGF	vascular endothelial growth factor
RT, XRT	radiation therapy

In Person

Radiotherapy

This first-person narrative is by a woman who experienced radiation therapy for breast cancer.

My life changed forever when I got that phone call that no one wants to hear: "Your biopsy is malignant." So after they tell you that you have cancer,

you are scared to death, begin to contemplate your mortality, and wonder how to break the news to your husband, children, loved ones, and friends. You settle down, and marshal up your strength to fight this beast that attacks too many of us.

After my biopsy, I met with a team that included my surgeon, my radiation oncologist, and my medical oncologist. It was decided that the best course of action was to perform a lumpectomy to remove the malignant tissue in my breast. At the same time, I would also have a sentinel node biopsy to check for lymphatic invasion. Surgery would be followed by a course of radiation therapy and then a 5-year regimen of the drug tamoxifen.

Approximately 3 weeks after the surgery, I met with my radiation oncologist. She explained all the benefits and risks associated with radiation. At my first radiotherapy appointment, technicians created a mold to hold my breast in the exact position for treatment. I was marked on both sides of my body with indelible ink to place the mold correctly each visit. I also received a small permanent tattoo on the middle of my breastbone that enabled the machine to correctly target the beams.

On my first day of treatment, as I walked into the radiation room, I noticed hundreds of molds for other patients stacked up against the wall. The technicians positioned me into my mold and calibrated the machine against the markings on my body. When all the bodily GPS settings were in sync, they scurried out of the room to stand behind the giant lead walls (the cowards). A giant circular radiation machine began to move closer, gyrating slowly back and forth until it was properly fixed. A pulse of light shot out and a humming sound began. The machine gradually rotated, sending radiation to my breast. The entire treatment session lasted less than 10 minutes.

My side effects of radiation included fatigue and skin irritation from folliculitis (inflammation of hair follicles). Even after my treatments ended, side effects (blisters and even bleeding) continued. Time, however, brought healing.

I am amazed at what my journey revealed. Most of all, it taught me about how wonderful friends can be, how much of a difference support groups can make, and why dedicated medical professionals deserve so much thanks and praise. A very lovely woman I met along the way shared some wisdom that I will pass along to all of you reading my story. She said, “At first cancer is your whole world, then it becomes a room, then it becomes a drawer in that room, and then it becomes a box in the drawer.” I still take that box out once in a while, but not as often.

Mary Braun is Vice President, Investments at Chapin Davis, Baltimore, Maryland.

Practical Applications

Answers to questions are on page 787.

FYI: Other Malignant Tumors

A number of malignant tumors do not contain the combining form carcin/o or sarc/o in their names:

Malignant Tumor	Description
glioma	primary brain tumor
hepatoma	liver tumor (hepatocellular carcinoma)
hypernephroma	kidney tumor
lymphoma	lymph node tumor
melanoma	tumor of pigmented skin cells
mesothelioma	tumor of cells within the pleura
multiple myeloma	bone marrow cell tumor
thymoma	thymus gland tumor

Questions about FYI: Other Malignant Tumors

1. Which tumor develops from a dysplastic nevus? _____
2. Which tumor arises from an organ located within the mediastinum? _____
3. Which tumor arises from an organ in the RUQ of the abdomen? _____
4. Which tumor has types called astrocytoma, ependymoma, glioblastoma multiforme? _____
5. Which tumor is also known as a renal cell carcinoma? _____
6. Which type of cancer contains large numbers of plasma cells (bone marrow antibody-producing cells)? _____
7. Which tumor arises from membrane cells surrounding the lungs? _____
8. Which tumor is derived from B cell lymphocytes? _____

Case Study: Suspected Breast Cancer

A 52-year-old married woman presented to her physician with a painless mass in her left breast. During breast examination a 1.0-cm, firm, nontender mass was palpated in the upper outer quadrant located at the 2 o'clock position, 3 cm from the areola. The mass was not fixed to the skin, and there was no cutaneous erythema or edema. No axillary or supraclavicular lymphadenopathy was noted.

An excisional biopsy of the mass was performed. The pathology report described a gross specimen of fatty breast tissue. Microscopic evaluation of the nodule revealed an invasive ductal carcinoma. The margins of the lumpectomy specimen were free of tumor. Sentinel node [first lymph node where cancer cells are likely to spread] biopsy revealed no tumor involvement.

A portion of the specimen was sent for estrogen receptor assay and proved to be positive. The patient was informed of the diagnosis and underwent additional studies, including chest x-ray, liver chemistries, CBC, and bone scan; all results were negative.

The patient's tumor was staged as a T1N0M0, stage I carcinoma of the left breast. She was referred to a radiation oncologist for radiation therapy to the lumpectomy site. After completion of radiotherapy, she was treated with tamoxifen. Prognosis is excellent for cure.

Questions about the Case Study

1. Where was the primary breast lesion located?
    a. Under the pigmented area of the breast
    b. About an inch and a half above and to the left of the nipple and pigmented area
    c. Near the axilla and under the shoulder blade
2. Other associated findings were
    a. Redness and swelling
    b. Enlarged lymph nodes under the armpit
    c. None of the above
3. What procedure gave evidence that the tumor had not yet metastasized?
    a. Estrogen receptor assay
    b. Excisional biopsy of the mass
    c. Sentinel node biopsy
4. What additional therapy was undertaken?
    a. Cytotoxic chemotherapy
    b. Radiation to the breast
    c. Radiation to the breast and then treatment with an estrogen blocker
5. Tamoxifen was prescribed because
    a. The tumor was found to be nonresponsive to estrogen
    b. The tumor had an estrogen receptor, and tamoxifen is an antiestrogen
    c. The tumor was at an advanced stage

Short Histories

As you read these actual patient histories, congratulate yourself on your understanding of medical terms!

1. A 28-year-old man feels a hard, nontender mass in his right testicle. He goes to his doctor, who checks his serum human chorionic gonadotropin and alpha-fetoprotein levels and finds both to be quite elevated. The tentative diagnosis is a germ cell tumor of the testis. A CT scan of the abdomen reveals extensive lymphadenopathy along the aorta. A chest CT shows nodes in both lungs suggestive of tumor. An orchiectomy confirms the diagnosis of testicular cancer. He is given four cycles of chemotherapy with vinblastine, cisplatin, and bleomycin, and his serum AFP and HCG markers return to normal. His CT scans reveal no evidence of residual tumor.
2. A 42-year-old woman notices repeated episodes of red blood in her stool with each bowel movement. A colonoscopy reveals a 4-cm mass arising from the wall of the rectum. A biopsy demonstrates a rectal adenocarcinoma. An abdominal CT shows two large metastases in the liver and enlarged lymph nodes. She first receives four cycles of 5-fluorouracil and oxaliplatin, which cause the liver lesions to shrink significantly and the lymph nodes to regress. The remaining liver lesions are surgically resected. Radiation therapy is then administered to shrink the rectal tumor and lymph nodes. A small residual tumor is resected. The lymph nodes are removed and contain no tumor.
3. A 62-year-old man has a routine PSA blood sample drawn. PSA is elevated at 5.8 (normal is less than 4.0). A transrectal biopsy of the prostate reveals a Gleason grade 6 adenocarcinoma in 4 of 12 biopsy pieces. He chooses to be treated with brachytherapy. Treatment causes dysuria, cystitis, and proctitis, but these symptoms disappear 6 weeks after therapy ends, and his PSA is now undetectable.

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with those given in the Answers to Exercises, page 786.

A **Identify the following characteristics of malignant tumors based on their definitions as given below. Word parts are given as clues.**

1. loss of differentiation of cells and reversion to a more primitive cell type: ana _____
2. extending beyond the normal tissue boundaries: in _____

3. having the ability to enter and destroy surrounding tissue: in _____

4. spreading to a secondary site: meta _____

B **Match the terms or abbreviations with the definitions/descriptions that follow.**

chemical carcinogen

DNA

radiation

mitosis

mutation

oncogene

RNA

virus

1. replication of cells; two identical cells are produced from a parent cell _____

2. change in the genetic material of a cell _____

3. genetic material within the nucleus that controls replication and protein synthesis _____

4. cellular substance (ribonucleic acid) that is important in protein synthesis _____

5. energy carried by a stream of particles _____

6. infectious agent that reproduces by entering a host cell and using the host's genetic material to make copies of itself _____

7. region of genetic material found in tumor cells and in viruses that causes cancer _____
8. an agent (hydrocarbon, insecticide, hormone) that causes cancer _____

C **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. solid tumor

   _____
   _____

2. adenoma

   _____
   _____

3. adenocarcinoma

   _____
   _____

4. osteoma

   _____
   _____

5. osteosarcoma

   _____
   _____

6. mixed-tissue tumor

   _____
   _____

7. neoplasm

   _____
   _____

8. neurofibromatosis

   _____
   _____

9. benign
_____
_____

10. differentiation
_____
_____

D **Name the terms that describe tumor growth as seen through a microscope. Definitions and word parts are given.**

1. small nipple-like projections: pap
_____
2. abnormal formation of cells: dys
_____
3. localized growth of cells: carcin
_____
4. densely packed; containing fibrous tissue:
_____ ous
5. pattern resembling small, microscopic sacs: alv
_____
6. small, round, gland-type clusters: foll
_____
7. variety of cell types: pleo _____
8. lacking structures typical of mature cells: un
_____
9. spreading evenly throughout the tissue: di
_____
10. resembling epithelial cells: epiderm
_____

E **Match the gross descriptions of tumors with the descriptions/definitions that follow.**

cystic

fungating

inflammatory

medullary

necrotic

polypoid

ulcerating

verrucous

1. Containing dead tissue: _____
2. Mushrooming pattern of growth: tumor cells pile on top of each other: _____
3. Characterized by large, open, exposed surfaces: _____
4. Characterized by redness, swelling, and heat: _____
5. Growths are projections from a base; sessile and pedunculated tumors are examples: _____
6. Tumors form large, open spaces filled with fluid; serous and mucinous tumors are examples: _____
7. Tumors resemble wart-like growths: _____
8. Tumors are large, soft, and fleshy: _____

F **Circle or supply the appropriate medical terms.**

1. A **(carcinoma/sarcoma)** is a cancerous tumor composed of cells of epithelial tissue. An example of such a cancerous tumor is a/an _____.
2. A **(carcinoma/sarcoma)** is a cancerous tumor composed of connective tissue. An example of such a cancerous tumor is a/an _____.
3. Retinoblastoma and adenomatous polyposis coli syndrome are examples of **(chemical carcinogens/inherited cancers).**
4. The assessment of a tumor's degree of maturity or microscopic differentiation is **(grading/staging)** of the tumor.
5. The assessment of a tumor's extent of spread within the body is known as **(grading/staging).**
6. In the TNM staging system, T stands for **(tissue/tumor)**, N stands for **(node/necrotic)**, and M stands for **(mitotic/metastasis).**
7. Loss of differentiation of cells is called **(hyperplasia/anaplasia).**
8. Programmed call death is known as **(apoptosis/carcinogenesis).**

G **Match the surgical procedure in Column I with its meaning in Column II. Write the letter of the meaning in the space provided.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. fulguration	_____	A. Removal of tumor and a margin of normal tissue for diagnosis and possible cure of small tumors
2. en bloc resection	_____	B. Burning a lesion to destroy tumor cells
3. incisional biopsy	_____	C. Wide resection involving removal of tumor, its organ of origin, and surrounding tissue in the body space
4. excisional biopsy	_____	D. Destruction of tissue by electric sparks generated by a high-frequency current
5. cryosurgery	_____	E. Removal of entire tumor and regional lymph nodes
6. cauterization	_____	F. Freezing a lesion to kill tumor cells
7. exenteration	_____	G. Cutting into a tumor and removing a piece to establish a diagnosis

H **Supply medical terms to complete the following sentences.**

1. The method of treating cancer using high-energy radiation is _____.
2. If tumor tissue survives large doses of radiation, it is a/an _____ tumor.
3. If radiation can cause loss of tumor cells without serious damage to surrounding regions, the tumor is _____.
4. A tumor that is completely destroyed by RT is a/an _____ tumor.
5. The method of giving radiation in small, repeated doses is _____.
6. Drugs that increase the sensitivity of tumors to x-rays are _____.
7. Treatment of cancerous tumors with drugs is _____.
8. A condition of tumors of fibrous supportive nerve cells is _____.

9. The use of two or more drugs to kill tumor cells is _____.
10. A large electronic device that produces high-energy x-ray or photon beams for treatment of deep-seated tumors is a/an _____.
11. Alkylating agents, antimetabolites, hormones, antibiotics, and antimitotics all are types of _____ agents.
12. Implantation of seeds of radioactive material directly into a tumor is _____.
13. The unit of absorbed radiation dose is _____.
14. Radiation applied to a tumor from a distant source is _____.
15. Technique in which subatomic positively charged particles produced by a cyclotron deposit a dose of radiation at a tightly focused point is _____.
16. The dimension of the area of the body that receives radiation is a/an _____.
17. Study performed using CT or MRI to map the area to receive treatment before radiotherapy is given is _____.
18. Technique in which a single large dose of radiation is delivered under precise 3D guidance to destroy vascular abnormalities and small brain tumors is _____.

I **Match the side effects of radiotherapy and chemotherapy with the descriptions/treatments that follow.**

alopecia

cystitis and proctitis

fibrosis

infertility

myelosuppression

nausea

oral mucositis

pneumonitis

secondary tumors

xerostomia

1. Inflammation and ulceration of lining cells in the mouth caused by radiation to the jaw: _____
2. Radiation to the lungs causes inflammation of the lungs: _____
3. Chemotherapy for ovarian cancer causes loss of hair on the head: _____
4. Bone marrow depression with leukopenia, anemia, and thrombocytopenia: _____
5. Radiation to the lungs causes increase in connective tissue: _____
6. Radiation of salivary glands causes dryness of the mouth: _____
7. Chemotherapy may cause this sensation leading to vomiting: _____
8. New type of growths in separate sites from the primary tumor: _____
9. Loss of reproductive function: _____

10. Radiation effects on the urinary bladder and rectum:
_____

J **Give the meanings of the following medical terms.**

1. modality
_____
_____
2. adjuvant chemotherapy
_____
_____
3. protocol
_____
_____
4. remission
_____
_____
5. relapse
_____
_____
6. morbidity
_____
_____
7. neoadjuvant chemotherapy
_____
_____
8. genetic screening
_____
_____
9. external beam irradiation
_____
_____

10. immunotherapy

_____

11. apoptosis

_____

12. cachexia

_____

13. palliative

_____

14. molecularly targeted therapy

_____

15. nucleotide

_____

K **Match the test or procedure with its description/definition.**

beta-hCG test

bone marrow biopsy

CA-125

CEA test

core needle biopsy

estrogen receptor assay

exfoliative cytology

laparoscopy

PSA test

stem cell transplant

1. test for the presence of a portion of human chorionic gonadotropin hormone (a marker for testicular cancer) _____
2. protein marker for ovarian cancer detected in the blood _____
3. visual examination of the abdominal cavity; peritoneoscopy _____
4. test for the presence of a hormone receptor on breast cancer cells _____
5. removal of bone marrow tissue for microscopic examination _____
6. obtaining a plug of tissue for microscopic examination _____
7. blood test for the presence of an antigen related to prostate cancer _____
8. blood test for carcinoembryonic antigen (marker for GI cancer) _____
9. cells are scraped off tissue and microscopically examined _____
10. an intravenous infusion of blood-forming cells _____

L **Circle the correct boldface terms to complete the sentences.**

1. Pauline was found to have a meningioma, which usually is a/an **(benign, anaplastic, necrotic**) tumor. The doctor told her that it was not malignant, but that it should be removed because of the pressure it was causing on the surrounding tissues.

2. Marlene underwent surgical resection of her breast mass. After surgery, Dr. Mendez recommended **(dedifferentiated, modality, adjuvant)** chemotherapy because her tumor had spread to a lymph node.
3. Sam had a lung cancer diagnosis, and the tumor had spread to his liver. It was **(pleomorphic, metastatic, mutagenic)**. The oncologist recommended beginning chemotherapy as soon as possible.
4. The polyp in Lisa's colon was *not* pedunculated, and Dr. Sidney described it as flat and **(fungating, scirrhous, sessile)**.
5. Mr. Elder had difficulty urinating and had an elevated PSA blood level. Dr. Jones examined him and found a hard prostate gland. A needle **(laparoscopy, electrocauterization, biopsy)** demonstrated adenocarcinoma.
6. During the days following her chemotherapy for breast cancer, Mrs. Yang experienced loss of appetite and fever. Blood tests revealed low levels of blood cells, indicating chemotherapy-induced **(hematopoiesis, myeloma, myelosuppression)**.
7. One year after Mr. Smith's diagnosis and treatment for lung cancer, he underwent follow-up **(bone marrow biopsy, PET-CT scan, exfoliative cytology)**, which enabled his doctors to **(restage, regrade)** his disease and give him the good news that his disease was in **(remission, relapse)**.
8. Mrs. Broom's doctor told her she needed **(CA-125, RT, PSA)** because her brain tumor had returned after surgery.

9. Mr. Jones has melanoma which is going to be treated with a type of immunotherapy called **(brachytherapy, radical mastectomy, checkpoint inhibitor)**.
10. CAR T-cell therapy is indication for **(auto accidents, relapsed acute lymphocytic leukemia, fluid overload)**. It is an an effective form of **(chemotherapy, radiotherapy, immunotherapy)**.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. anaplasia
2. infiltrative
3. invasive
4. metastasis

B

1. mitosis
2. mutation
3. DNA
4. RNA
5. radiation
6. virus
7. oncogene
8. chemical carcinogen

C

1. tumor composed of a mass of cells
2. tumor of glandular tissue (benign)
3. cancerous (malignant) tumor of glandular tissue
4. tumor of bone (benign)
5. flesh (connective tissue) tumor of bone (malignant)
6. tumor composed of different types of tissue (both epithelial and connective tissues)
7. new formation (tumor)
8. tumors of fibrous supportive nerve tissue; often benign but may become malignant
9. noncancerous
10. specialization of cells

D

1. papillary
2. dysplastic
3. carcinoma in situ
4. scirrhous
5. alveolar
6. follicular
7. pleomorphic
8. undifferentiated
9. diffuse
10. epidermoid

E

1. necrotic
2. fungating
3. ulcerating
4. inflammatory
5. polypoid
6. cystic
7. verrucous
8. medullary

F

1. carcinoma; thyroid adenocarcinoma, squamous cell carcinoma
2. sarcoma; liposarcoma, chondrosarcoma, osteogenic sarcoma
3. inherited cancers
4. grading
5. staging
6. tumor; node; metastasis
7. anaplasia
8. apoptosis

G

1. D
2. E

3. G
4. A
5. F
6. B
7. C

H

1. radiation therapy
2. radioresistant
3. radiosensitive
4. radiocurable
5. fractionation
6. radiosensitizers
7. chemotherapy
8. neurofibromatosis
9. combination chemotherapy
10. linear accelerator
11. chemotherapeutic agents
12. brachytherapy
13. gray
14. external beam radiation (teletherapy)
15. proton therapy
16. radiation field
17. simulation

18. stereotactic radiosurgery

I

1. oral mucositis
2. pneumonitis
3. alopecia
4. myelosuppression
5. fibrosis
6. xerostomia
7. nausea
8. secondary tumors
9. infertility
10. cystitis and proctitis

J

1. method of treatment
2. assisting primary treatment with drugs. This is given after surgery or radiation to attack small deposits of cancer cells undetected by diagnostic techniques.
3. report or plan of steps taken in an experiment or disease case
4. absence of all signs of disease
5. symptoms of disease return
6. conditions of damage to normal tissue; disease
7. use of drugs to reduce the size of a tumor before surgery. This lessens the extent of surgery and improves outcome.

8. patients and family members are tested to determine whether they have inherited a cancer causing gene
9. radiation applied to a tumor from a source outside the body
10. cancer treatment using immune cells and antibodies to kill tumor cells
11. programmed cell death
12. malnutrition marked by weakness and emaciation; usually associated with later stages of cancer
13. relieving but not curing symptoms of disease
14. use of drugs to attack specific targets (mutations) that drive cancer cell growth
15. unit of DNA composed of a sugar, phosphate, and base (adenine, cytosine, guanine, or thymine)

K

1. beta-hCG test
2. CA-125
3. laparoscopy
4. estrogen receptor assay
5. bone marrow biopsy
6. core needle biopsy
7. PSA test
8. CEA test
9. exfoliative cytology

10. stem cell transplant

L

1. benign
2. adjuvant
3. metastatic
4. sessile
5. biopsy
6. myelosuppression
7. PET-CT scan; restage; remission
8. RT
9. checkpoint inhibitor
10. relapsed acute lymphocytic leukemia

Answers to Practical Applications

FYI: Other Malignant Tumors

1. melanoma (a nevus is a benign pigmented lesion or mole)
2. thymoma
3. hepatoma
4. glioma
5. hypernephroma
6. multiple myeloma
7. mesothelioma
8. lymphoma (previously known as lymphosarcoma)

Case Study

1. b
2. c
3. c
4. c
5. b

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897.

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
adenocarcinoma	ah-deh-no-kar-sih-NO-mah
adjuvant chemotherapy	AD-ju-vant ke-mo-THER-ah-pe
alkylating agents	AL-kih-la-ting A-jents
alopecia	al-o-PE-she-ah
alveolar	al-ve-O-lar
anaplasia	an-ah-PLA-ze-ah
antibiotics	an-tih-bi-OT-iks
antimetabolites	an-te-meh-TAB-o-lites
antimitotics	an-tih-mi-TOT-iks
apoptosis	a-pop-TO-sis
benign tumor	be-NINE TU-mor
bone marrow biopsy	bone MAH-ro BI-op-se
bone marrow transplantation	bone MAH-ro tranz-plan-TA-shun
brachytherapy	bra-ke-THER-ah-pe
cachexia	kah-KEK-se-ah
carcinogens	kar-SIH-no-jenz
carcinoma	kar-sih-NO-mah
carcinoma in situ	kar-sih-NO-mah in SI-tu
cauterization	kaw-ter-ih-ZA-shun
chemotherapy	ke-mo-THER-ah-pe
combination chemotherapy	KOM-bih-NA-shun ke-mo-THER-ah-pe
core needle biopsy	core NE-del BI-op-se
cryosurgery	kri-o-SUR-jer-e
cystic tumor	SIS-tik TU-mor
cytogenetic analysis	si-to-jeh-NET-ik ah-NAL-eh-sis
dedifferentiation	de-dif-er-en-she-A-shun
deoxyribonucleic acid	de-ox-e-ri-bo-nu-KLE-ik AS-id
differentiation	dif-er-en-she-A-shun
diffuse	di-FUS
dysplastic	dis-PLAS-tik
electrocauterization	eh-lek-tro-kaw-ter-eh- ZA-shun
electron beams	eh-LEK-tron beemz
en bloc resection	en blok re-SEK-shun
encapsulated	en-KAP-su-la-ted
epidermoid	ep-ih-DER-moyd
excisional biopsy	ek-SIZH-un-al BI-op-se
exenteration	eks-en-teh-RA-shun
exfoliative cytology	eks-FO-le-a-tiv si-TOL-o-je
external beam radiation	eks-TER-nal beam ra-de-A-shun
fiberoptic colonoscopy	fi-ber-OP-tik ko-lon-OS-ko-pe

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
fibrosarcoma	fi-bro-sar-KO-mah
fibrosis	fi-BRO-sis
fine needle aspiration	fine NE-dil as-peh-RA-shun
follicular	fo-LIK-u-lar
fractionation	frak-shah-NA-shun
fulguration	ful-gu-RA-shun
fungating tumor	fun-GA-ting TU-mor
genetic screening	jeh-NET-ik SCRE-ning
grading of tumors	GRA-ding of TU-morz
gray	gra
hyperplasia	hi-per-PLA-ze-ah
immunohistochemistry	im-u-no-his-to-KEM-is-tre
immunotherapy	im-u-no-THE-rah-pe
incisional biopsy	in-SIZH-un-al BI-op-se
infertility	in-fer-TIL-ih-te
infiltrative	IN-fil-tra-tiv
invasive	in-VA-siv
irradiation	ir-ra-de-A-shun
laparoscopy	lap-ah-ROS-ko-pe
linear accelerator	LIN-e-ar ak-SEL-eh-ra-tor
liquid biopsy	LIK-wid BI-op-se
malignant tumor	mah-LIG-nant TU-mor
mammography	mah-MOG-rah-fe
medullary tumor	MED-u-lair-e TU-mor
mesenchymal	mez-en-KI-mal
metastasis	met-TAS-tah-sis
mitosis	mi-TO-sis
mixed tissue tumors	MIKSD TIH-shu TU-morz
modality	mo-DAL-ih-te
molecularly targeted therapy	mo-LEK-u-lar-le TAR-get-ed THER-ah-pe
monoclonal antibodies	mon-o-CLO-nal ANT-ih-bod-eez
morbidity	mor-BID-ih-te
mucinous	MU-sin-us
mucositis	mu-ko-SI-tis
mutagenic	mu-tah-JEN-ik
mutation	mu-TA-shun
myelosuppression	mi-eh-lo-su-PRE-shun
necrotic tumor	neh-KROT-ik TU-mor
neoadjuvant chemotherapy	ne-o-AD-ju-vant ke-mo-THER-ah-pe
neoplasm	NE-o-plazm

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
neuroblastoma	nu-ro-blas-TO-mah
neurofibromatosis	nu-ro-fi-bro-mah-TO-sis
nucleotide	NU-kle-o-tide
oncogene	ON-ko-jeen
oncology	on-KOL-o-je
osteosarcoma	os-te-o-sar-KO-mah
palliative	PAH-le-ah-tiv
papillary	PAP-ih-lair-e
pedunculated	peh-DUNG-ku-la-ted
PET/CT scan	PET-CT skan
photon therapy	FO-ton THER-ah-pe
pleomorphic	ple-o-MOR-fik
pneumonitis	nu-mo-NI-tis
polypoid tumor	POL-ih-poyd TU-mor
protein marker tests	PRO-teen MARK-er tests
protocol	PRO-to-kol
proton therapy	PRO-ton THER-ah-pe
radiation	ra-de-A-shun
radiation fields	ra-de-A-shun feeldz
radiocurable tumor	ra-de-o-KYUR-a-bl TU-mor
radionuclide scans	ra-de-o-NU-klide skanz
radioresistant tumor	ra-de-o-re-ZIS-tant TU-mor
radiosensitive tumor	ra-do-o-SEN-sih-tiv TU-mor
radiosensitizers	ra-de-o-SEN-sih-ti-zerz
radiotherapy	ra-de-o-THER-ah-pe
relapse	RE-laps
remission	re-MIH-shun
retinoblastoma	reh-tin-o-blas-TO-mah
ribonucleic acid	ri-bo-nu-KLE-ik AS-id
sarcoma	sar-KO-mah
scirrhous	SKIR-us
secondary tumors	SEK-on-dair-e TU-morz
serous	SER-us
sessile	SES-ile
simulation	sim-u-LA-shun
solid tumor	SOL-id TU-mor
staging of tumors	STA-jing of TU-morz
stem cell transplantation	stem sel tranzplan-TA-shun
stereotactic radiosurgery	steh-re-o-TAK-tic ra-de-o-SUR-jeh-re
teletherapy	tel-e-THER-ah-pe

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
ulcerating tumor	UL-ser-a-ting TU-mor
undifferentiated	un-dif-er-EN-she-a-ted
verrucous tumor	veh-RU-kus TU-mor
viral oncogenes	VI-ral ONK-o-jenz
virus	VI-rus
xerostomia	zer-o-STO-me-ah

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of the combining forms in the spaces provided and test yourself. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
aden/o	_____
alveol/o	_____
cac/o	_____
carcin/o	_____
cauter/o	_____
chem/o	_____
cry/o	_____
cyst/o	_____
fibr/o	_____
follicul/o	_____
fung/i	_____
medull/o	_____
mucos/o	_____
mut/a	_____
mutagen/o	_____
necr/o	_____
neur/o	_____
onc/o	_____
papill/o	_____
pharmac/o	_____
plas/o	_____
ple/o	_____
polyp/o	_____
radi/o	_____
sarc/o	_____
scirrh/o	_____
xer/o	_____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-ary	_____
-blastoma	_____
-oid	_____
-oma	_____
-plasia	_____
-plasm	_____
-ptosis	_____
-stasis	_____
-stomia	_____
-suppression	_____
-therapy	_____
-tion	_____

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING
ana-	_____
anti-	_____
apo-	_____
brachy-	_____
dys-	_____
epi-	_____
hyper-	_____
meta-	_____
tele-	_____

Write the terms used in cancer medicine next to their meanings below.

adjuvant chemotherapy
brachytherapy
cachexia
carcinoma
carcinoma in situ
exenteration
external beam radiotherapy
fine needle aspiration
metastasis
myelosuppression
protein markers
protocol

sarcoma
simulation

1. Cancerous tumor composed of cells of epithelial origin _____
2. Drug treatment given after primary treatment _____
3. Detailed plan of treatment _____
4. Study using CT scan or MRI to map the area to receive treatment before radiation therapy _____
5. Wide and complete resection of tumor in a cavity of the body _____
6. Cancerous tumor derived from connective (flesh) tissue _____
7. Chemicals in the blood that measure the presence of tumor in the body _____
8. General ill health and malnutrition associated with disease _____
9. Teletherapy _____
10. Insertion of radioactive seeds or sealed containers into tumor _____
11. Malignancy that is localized and not invasive _____
12. Cancerous tumor that has spread to lymph nodes and other organs _____
13. Stopping the growth of cells in the bone marrow _____
14. Extraction of cells for microscopic (biopsy) evaluation _____

CHAPTER 20

Radiology and Nuclear Medicine

CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 794
Radiology 794
Nuclear Medicine 804
Vocabulary 808
Terminology 810
Abbreviations 811
In Person: CT and MRI 812
Practical Applications 813
Exercises 815
Answers to Exercises 819
Pronunciation of Terms 820
Review Sheet 821

CHAPTER GOALS

- List the physical properties of x-rays.
- Identify diagnostic techniques used by radiologists and nuclear physicians.
- Name the x-ray views and patient positions used in x-ray examinations.
- Describe the role of radioactivity in the diagnosis of disease.
- Recognize medical terms used in the specialties of radiology and nuclear medicine.

- Apply your new knowledge to understanding medical terms in their proper contexts, such as medical reports and records.

Introduction

Radiology is the medical specialty concerned with the study and application of x-rays and other technologies (such as ultrasound and magnetic resonance) to produce and interpret images of the human body for the diagnosis of disease. **X-rays** are invisible waves of energy that are produced by an energy source (such as an x-ray machine or cathode ray tube) and are useful in the diagnosis and treatment of disease.

Nuclear medicine is the medical specialty that uses **radioactive substances** in the diagnosis and treatment of disease. These radioactive substances **(radionuclides)** are materials that emit high-speed particles and energy-containing rays from the interior of their matter. The emitted particles and rays are called **radioactivity** and can be of three types: **alpha particles, beta particles,** and **gamma rays. Gamma rays** are used effectively as a diagnostic label to trace the path and uptake of chemical substances in the body.

The professionals involved in these medical fields differ in practice and level of education or training. A **radiologist** is a physician who specializes in the practice of diagnostic radiology. A **nuclear medicine physician** specializes in diagnostic radionuclide scanning procedures.

Allied health care professionals who work with physicians in the fields of radiology and nuclear medicine are **radiologic technologists.** Different types of radiologic technologists are **radiographers,** who aid physicians in administering diagnostic x-ray procedures; **nuclear medicine technologists,** who attend to patients undergoing nuclear medicine procedures and operate devices under the direction of a nuclear physician; and **sonographers,** who aid physicians in performing ultrasound procedures.

Radiology

Characteristics of X-Rays

Several characteristics of x-rays are useful to physicians in the diagnosis and treatment of disease. Some of these characteristics are the following:

1. **Ability to cause exposure of a photographic plate.** If a photographic plate is placed in front of a beam of x-rays, the x-rays, traveling unimpeded through the air, will expose the silver coating of the plate and cause it to blacken.
2. **Ability to penetrate different substances to varying degrees.** X-rays pass through the different types of substances in the human body (air in the lungs, water in blood vessels and lymph, fat around muscles, and metal such as calcium in bones) with varying ease. Air is the least

dense substance and allows the greatest transmission. Fat is denser, water is next, followed by hard materials, such as calcium in bone, which is the densest and transmits least. If the x-rays are absorbed (stopped) by the denser body substance (e.g., calcium in bones), they do not reach the photographic plate held behind the patient, and white areas are left in the x-ray detector (plate). Figure 20-1 is an example of an x-ray photograph.

A substance is said to be **radiolucent** if it permits passage of most of the x-rays. Lung tissue (containing air) is an example of a radiolucent substance, and it appears dark on an x-ray image. **Radiopaque** substances (bones) are those that absorb most of the x-rays they are exposed to, allowing only a small fraction of the x-rays to reach the x-ray plate. Thus, normally radiopaque, calcium-containing bone appears white on an x-ray image.

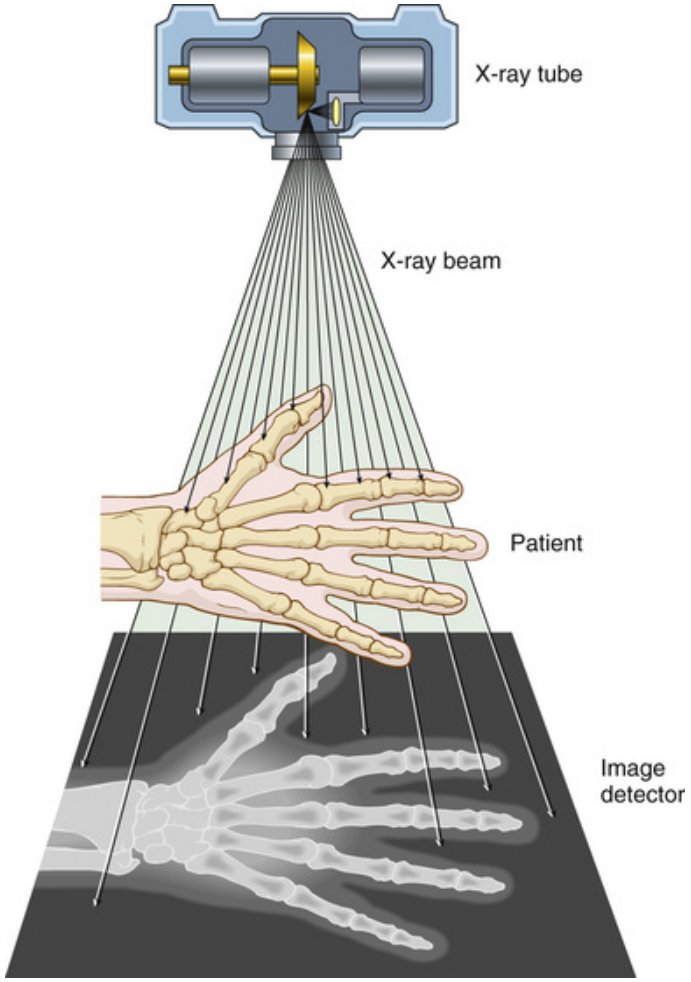


FIGURE 20-1 **X-ray photograph (radiograph) of the hand.** Relative positions of x-ray tube, patient (hand), and image detector necessary to make the x-ray photograph are shown. Bones tend to stop (absorb) diagnostic x-rays, but absorption of the x-ray energy occurs to a lesser degree with soft tissue. This results in the light and dark regions that form the image.

3. **Invisibility.** X-rays cannot be detected by sight, hearing, or touch. Workers exposed to x-rays must wear a **film badge** to detect and record the amount of radiation to which they have been exposed. The film badge contains a special film that reacts when exposed to x-rays. The amount of blackness on the film is an indication of the amount of x-rays or gamma rays received by the wearer.
4. **Travel in straight lines.** This property allows the formation of precise shadow images on the x-ray plate and also permits x-ray beams to be directed accurately at a tissue site during radiotherapy.
5. **Scattering of x-rays.** Scattering occurs when x-rays come into contact with any material. Greater scatter occurs with dense objects and less scatter with those substances that are radiolucent. In addition, because

scatter can cause blurring (radiographic density that serves no useful purpose) on images, a grid (containing thin lead strips arranged parallel to the x-ray beams) is placed in front of the image detector to absorb scattered radiation before it strikes the x-ray film. In digital imaging, an image receptor replaces film.

6. **Ionization.** X-rays have the ability to ionize substances through which they pass. Ionization is a chemical process in which the energy of an x-ray beam causes rearrangement and disruption within a substance, so that previously neutral particles are changed to charged particles called **ions.** This strongly ionizing ability of x-rays is a double-edged sword. In x-ray or radiation therapy, the ionizing effect of high-energy x-ray beams can help kill cancerous cells and stop tumor growth; however, ionizing x-rays in even small doses can affect normal body cells, leading to tissue damage and malignant changes. Thus, persons exposed to high doses of x-rays are at risk for the development of leukemia, thyroid tumors, breast cancer, or other malignancies.

Diagnostic Techniques

X-Ray Studies

X-ray imaging is used in a variety of ways to detect pathologic conditions. **Digital radiography** is a form of x-ray imaging in which digital x-ray sensors are used instead of traditional photographic film. Thus images can be enhanced and transferred easily, and less radiation can be used than in conventional radiography. The chest x-ray is the most commonly performed diagnostic x-ray examination. Another common use of x-rays is in dental practice to locate caries in teeth. **Mammography** uses low-dose x-rays to visualize breast tissue. Some special diagnostic x-ray techniques are described next.

Computed Tomography (CT)

The CT scan, sometimes called "CAT scan" (because the technique originally was known as "computerized axial tomography"), is made by beaming x-rays at multiple angles through a section of the patient's body. The absorption of all of these x-rays, after they pass through the body, is recorded and used by a computer to create multiple cross-sectional images (Figure 20-2). The ability of a CT scanner to detect abnormalities is increased with the use of iodine-containing contrast agents, which outline blood vessels and confer additional density to soft tissues.

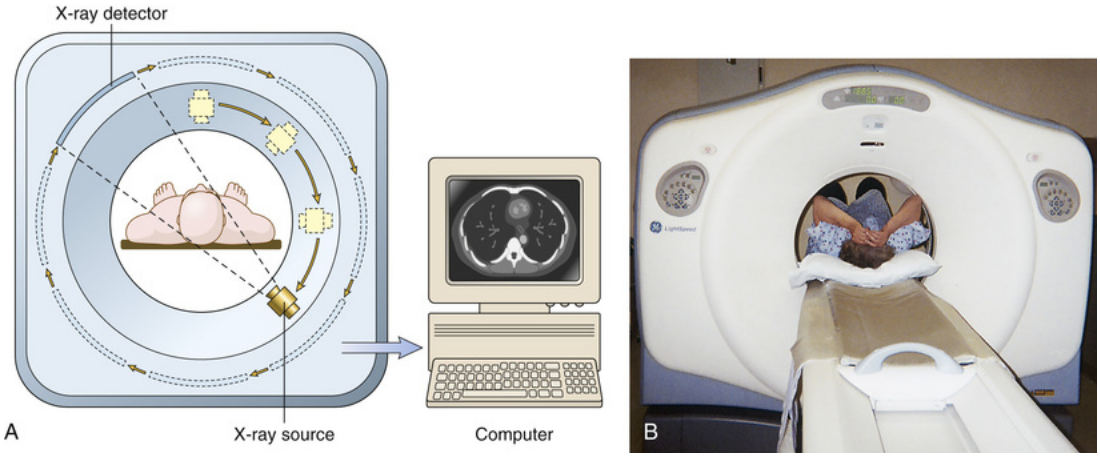


FIGURE 20-2 A, A CT scanner has a rotating x-ray source and set of detectors. B, A patient in a CT scanner. This patient has her arms above her head during a chest CT examination.

CT scanners are highly sensitive in detecting disease in bones and can actually provide images of internal organs that are impossible to visualize with ordinary x-ray technique. Figure 20-3 shows a series of CT scans through various regions of the body. New ultrafast CT scanners can produce a three-dimensional (3D) image of a beating heart and surrounding blood vessels. State-of-the-art scanners produce 64, 128, 256, and 320 images per rotation and are called **multidetector CT** or **MDCT scanners.**

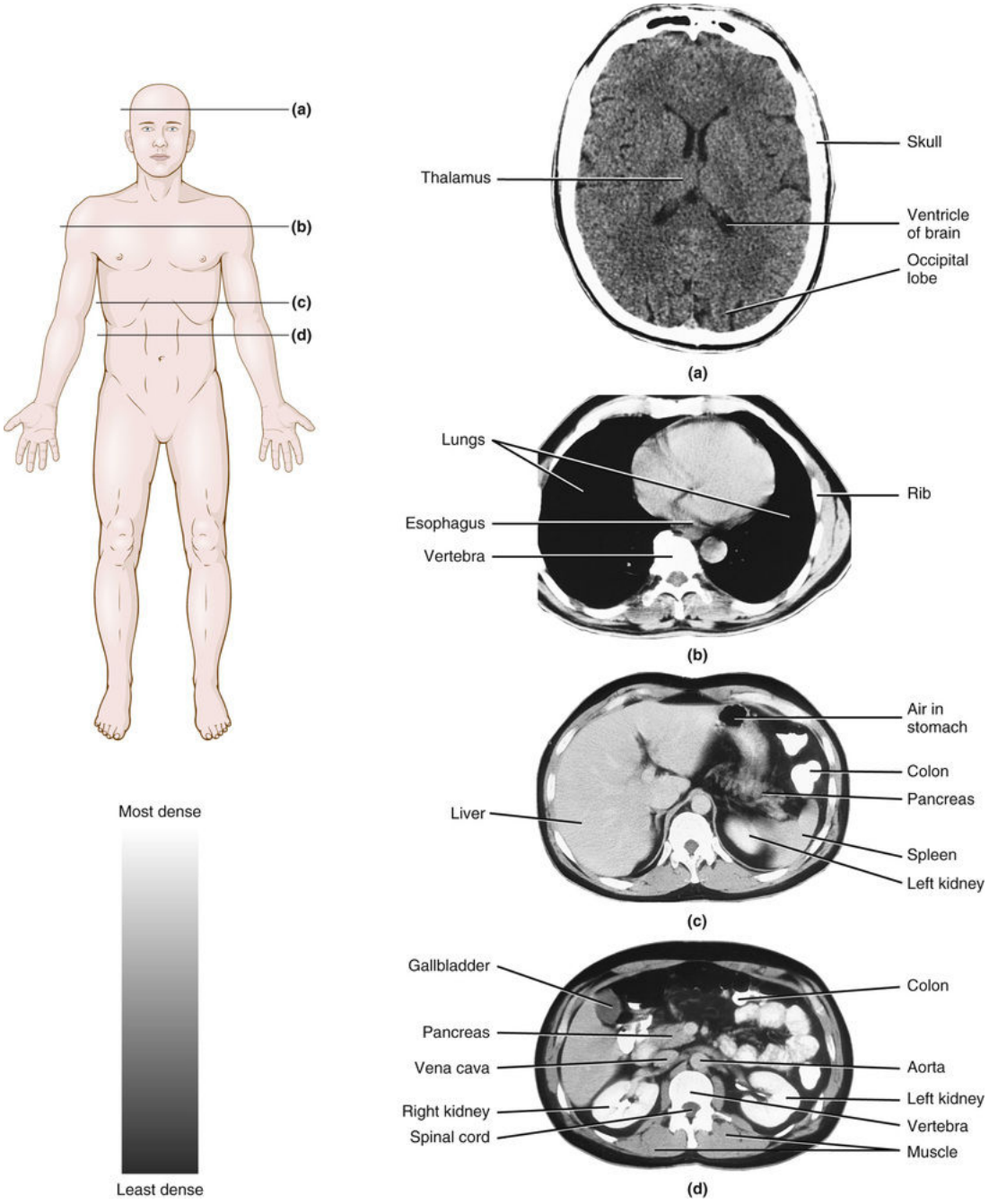


FIGURE 20-3 CT scans through various regions of the body. The level of the scan is indicated on the figure of the body. The *bar* below the figure indicates the gray scale of structure density from black (least dense, such as air) to white (most dense, such as bone).

Contrast Studies

In radiography, the natural differences in the density of body tissues (e.g., from air in lung or from calcium in bone) produce contrasting shadows on the

radiographic image. However, when x-rays pass through two adjacent body parts composed of substances of the same density (e.g., different digestive organs in the abdomen), their shadows cannot be distinguished from one another on the film or on the screen. It is necessary, then, to place a **contrast medium** into the structure or fluid to be visualized so that a specific part, organ, tube, or liquid can be seen as a negative imprint on the dense contrast agent.

The following are contrast materials used in diagnostic radiologic studies:

Barium Sulfate.

Barium sulfate is a radiopaque substance that is mixed in water and used for examination of the upper and lower GI (gastrointestinal) tract. An **upper GI series (UGI)** involves oral ingestion of barium sulfate so that the esophagus, stomach, and duodenum can be visualized. A **small bowel follow-through (SBFT)** series traces the passage of barium in a sequential manner as it moves through the small intestine. A **barium enema (BE)** study is a lower GI series that opacifies the lumen (passageway) of the large intestine using an enema containing barium sulfate. This test has largely been replaced by endoscopy, which allows visualization of the inside of the bowel.

A **double-contrast study** uses both a radiopaque and a radiolucent contrast medium. For example, the walls of the stomach or intestine are coated with barium and the lumen is filled with air. These radiographs show the pattern of mucosal ridges.

Iodine Compounds.

Radiopaque fluids containing up to 50% iodine are used in the following tests:

angiography	**X-ray image (angiogram) of blood vessels and heart chambers is obtained after contrast is injected through a catheter into the appropriate blood vessel or heart chamber.** In clinical practice, the terms angiogram and arteriogram are used interchangeably. Figure 20-4 shows **coronary angiography,** which determines the degree of obstruction of the arteries that supply blood to the heart. Figure 20-5A and B shows coronary angiograms before and after stenting of the artery.
cholangiography	**X-ray imaging after injection of contrast into bile ducts.** This is typically accomplished by injecting contrast directly into the common bile duct in a procedure called **endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP)** or after surgery of the gallbladder or biliary tract **(intraoperative cholangiography).** An alternative route for injection of contrast is via a needle through the skin and into the liver. This is **percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography** (Figure 20-6).
digital subtraction angiography (DSA)	**X-ray image of contrast-injected blood vessels is produced by taking two x-ray pictures (the first without contrast) and using a computer to subtract obscuring shadows from the second image.**
hysterosalpingography	**X-ray record of the endometrial cavity and fallopian tubes is obtained after injection of contrast material through the vagina and into the endocervical canal.** This procedure determines the patency of the fallopian tubes.
myelography	**X-ray imaging of the spinal cord (myel/o) after injection of contrast agent into the subarachnoid space surrounding the spinal cord.** It usually is performed in patients who cannot undergo MRI (magnetic resonance imaging). After injection of contrast, x-ray films and a CT scan are obtained. This procedure is **CT myelography.**

pyelography	**X-ray imaging of the renal pelvis and urinary tract.** In **retrograde pyelography**, a catheter is placed through the urethra, bladder, and ureter and into the renal pelvis to inject contrast. **Urography** also describes the process of recording x-ray images of the urinary tract after the introduction of contrast.

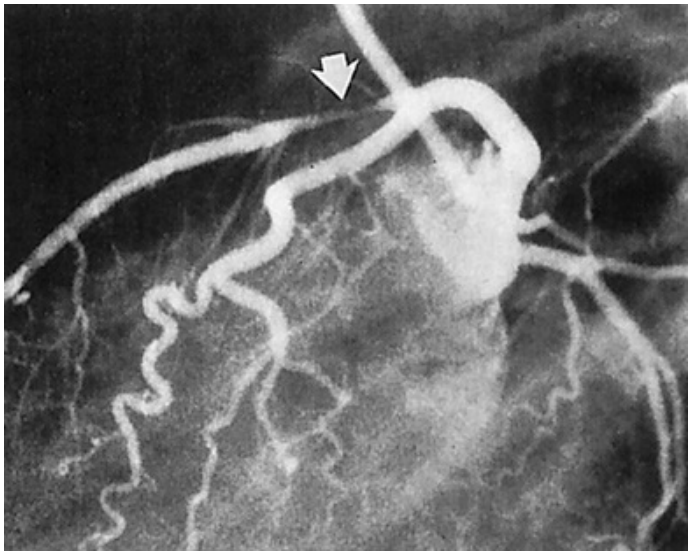


FIGURE 20-4 Coronary angiography shows stenosis (*arrow*) **of the left anterior descending coronary artery.**

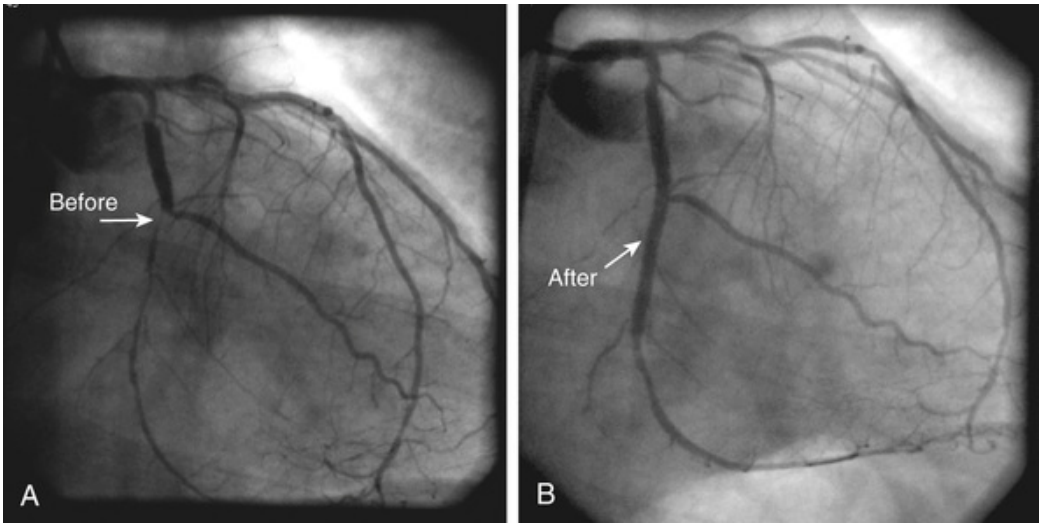


FIGURE 20-5 Coronary angiograms before and after stenting. A, Coronary angiogram before stenting shows narrowed coronary artery (*arrow*) preventing blood flow to the heart muscle. **B,** Coronary angiogram after stenting shows opening of coronary artery (*arrow*). (Courtesy Dr. Daniel Simon and Mr. Paul Zampino.)

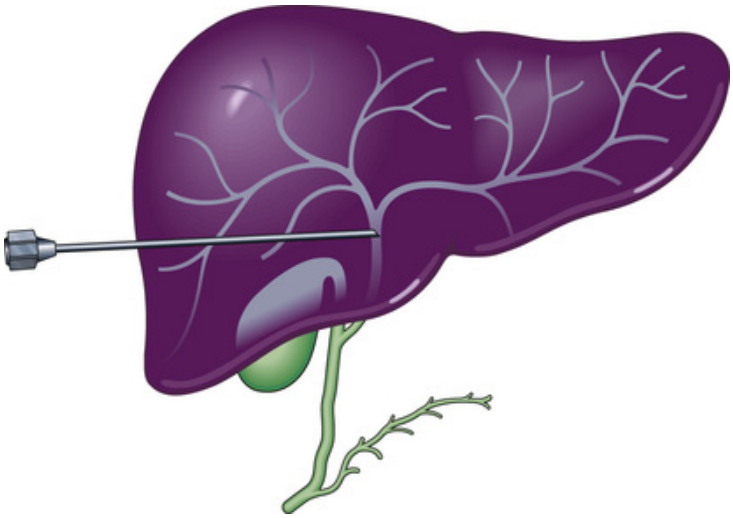


FIGURE 20-6 Percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography. The needle is passed through the abdominal wall into liver tissue until the tip penetrates the hepatic duct. Contrast medium is introduced, and x-ray pictures are taken to visualize the biliary tree.

Patients may experience side effects caused by iodine-containing contrast substances. These effects can range from mild reactions such as flushing, nausea, warmth, tingling sensations, or hives to severe, life-threatening reactions characterized by airway spasm, laryngeal edema (swelling of the

larynx), vasodilation, and tachycardia. Treatment of severe reactions involves immediate establishment of an airway and ventilation followed by injections of epinephrine (adrenaline), corticosteroids, or antihistamines.

Digital imaging techniques can be used to enhance conventional and fluoroscopic x-ray images. A lower dose of x-rays is used to achieve higher-quality images, and digital images can be sent by way of networks to other locations and computer monitors so that many people can share information and assist in the diagnostic process.

Interventional Radiology.

Interventional radiologists perform invasive procedures (therapeutic or diagnostic) usually under CT or ultrasound guidance or with fluoroscopic imaging. **Fluoroscopy** is the use of x-rays and a fluorescent screen to produce real-time video images. Procedures include percutaneous biopsy, placement of drainage catheters, drainage of abscesses, occlusion of bleeding vessels, and catheter instillation of antibiotics or chemotherapy agents. In addition, interventional radiologists perform **radiofrequency ablation** (destruction) of tumors and tissues (liver, kidney, lungs, and adrenals). Neurointerventional radiologists perform endovascular procedures including intracranial thrombolysis; head, neck, and intracranial tumor embolizations; extracranial angioplasty; and stenting. They also perform nonvascular procedures, such as intervertebral facet injections, nerve root blocks, and vertebroplasties. Vascular interventional radiologists perform laser treatments for varicose veins and uterine fibroid embolization.

Ultrasound Imaging

Ultrasound imaging, or **ultrasonography,** uses high-frequency inaudible sound waves that bounce off body tissues and are then recorded to give information about the anatomy of an internal organ. An instrument called a **transducer** or **probe** is placed near or on the skin, which is covered with a thin coating of gel to ensure good transmission of sound waves. The transducer emits sound waves in short, repetitive pulses. The ultrasound waves move through body tissues and detect interfaces between tissues of different densities. An echo reflection of the sound waves is formed as they hit the various body tissues and bounce back to the transducer.

These ultrasonic echoes are then recorded as a composite picture of the area of the body over which the instrument has passed. The record produced by ultrasound imaging is called a **sonogram.**

Ultrasound imaging is used as a diagnostic tool not only by radiologists but also by neurosurgeons and ophthalmologists to detect intracranial and ophthalmic lesions. Cardiologists use ultrasound techniques to detect heart valve and blood vessel disorders **(echocardiography),** and gastroenterologists

use it to locate abdominal masses outside the digestive organs. Similarly, pulmonologists use ultrasound procedures for locating and sampling lesions outside the bronchial tubes. Obstetricians and gynecologists use ultrasound imaging to differentiate single from multiple pregnancies, as well as to help in performing amniocentesis. Other uses are to image benign and malignant tumors and to determine the size and development of the fetus. Measurements of the head, abdomen, and femur are made from ultrasound images obtained in various fetal planes (Figure 20-7).

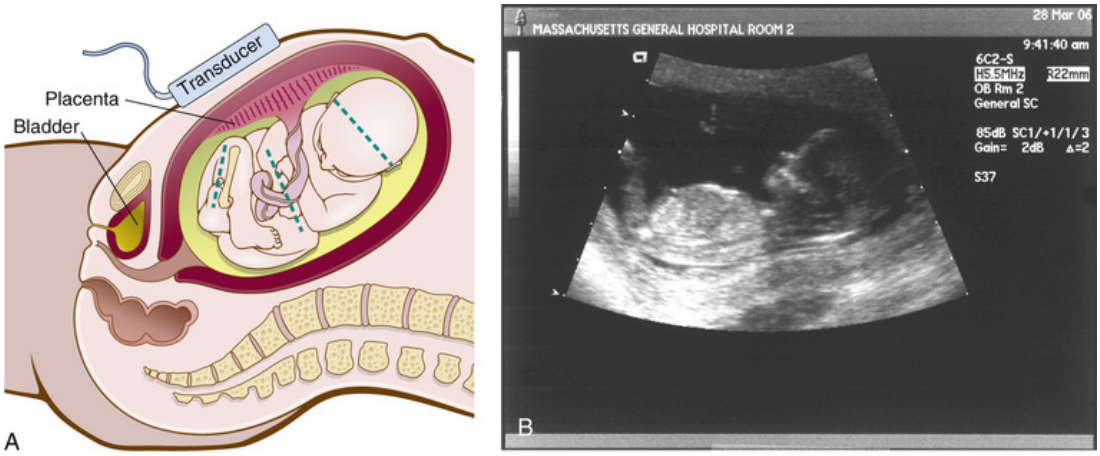


FIGURE 20-7 A, Fetal measurements taken with ultrasound imaging. Dashed lines indicate the image planes for measurements of the fetal head, abdomen, and femur. **B, Fetal ultrasound scan** at 13 weeks gestation. (**B,** Courtesy Joelle Reidy.)

Ultrasound imaging has several advantages in that the sound waves are not ionizing and do not injure tissues at the energy ranges used for diagnostic purposes. Because water is an excellent conductor of the ultrasound beams, patients are requested to drink large quantities of water before examination so that the urinary bladder will be distended, allowing better viewing of pelvic and abdominal organs.

Two ultrasound techniques, **Doppler ultrasound** and **color flow imaging,** make it possible to record blood flow velocity (speed). These techniques are used to image major blood vessels to detect obstructions caused by atherosclerotic plaques in patients at risk for stroke. Figure 20-8A and B shows Doppler ultrasound scanning and color flow imaging.

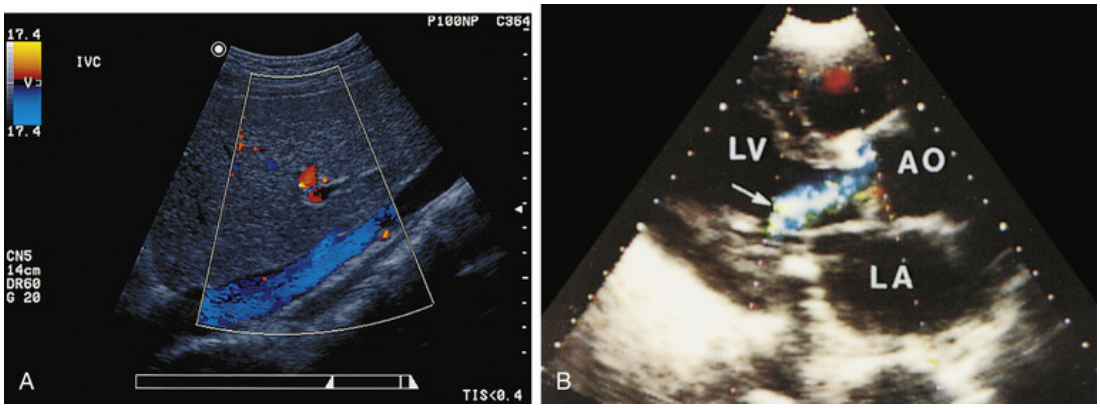


FIGURE 20-8 **A, Doppler ultrasound scan** showing an image of the vena cava (in *blue*). **B, Color flow imaging in a patient with aortic regurgitation.** The brightly colored, high-velocity jet (*arrow*) can be seen passing from the aorta (AO) to the left ventricle (LV). The center of the jet is *white*, and the edges are shades of *blue*.

Ultrasonography is used in interventional radiology to guide needle biopsy for the puncture of cysts, for placing needles during amniocentesis, and for inserting radioactive seeds into the prostate (brachytherapy). In **endoscopic ultrasonography,** a small ultrasound transducer is attached to the tip of an endoscope that is inserted into the body. This technique is used by gastroenterologists and pulmonologists to obtain high-quality and accurate detailed images of the digestive and respiratory systems.

Magnetic Resonance Imaging

Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) uses magnetic fields and radiowaves rather than x-rays. Hydrogen protons are aligned and synchronized by placing the body in a strong magnetic field and exposing it to radiowaves. The rates of alignment and relaxation vary from one tissue to the next, producing a sharply defined picture. Because bone is virtually devoid of water, it is not well visualized on MRI. This technique produces sagittal (lateral), frontal (coronal), and axial (cross-sectional) images (Figure 20-9), as well as images in oblique (slanted) planes. A **functional MRI (fMRI)** measures brain activity by detecting changes associated with blood flow. When a region of the brain is in use, blood flow to that area increases. Functional MRI is used to evaluate the effects of a stroke and other brain diseases. It also can determine which part of the brain is functioning such as in thought, speech, movement, and sensation.

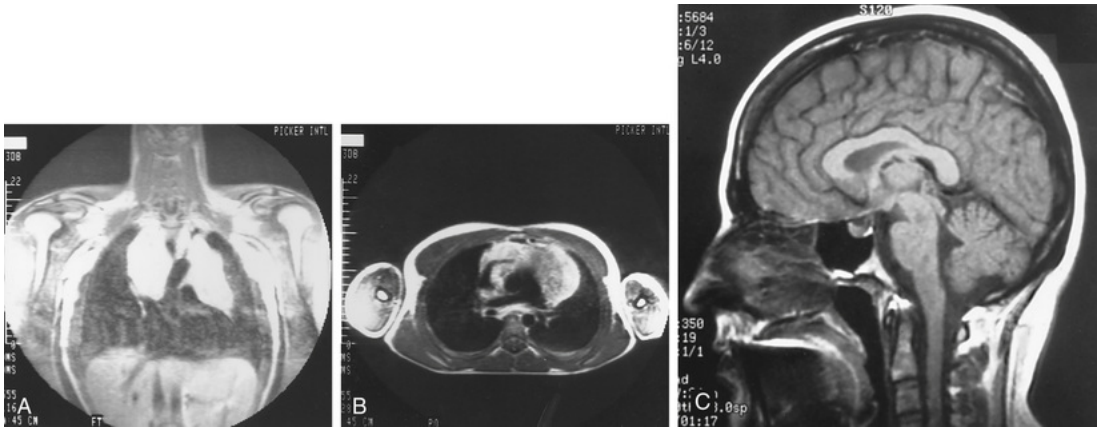


FIGURE 20-9 **Magnetic resonance images. A, Frontal (coronal) view** of the upper body. *White* masses in the chest are Hodgkin lymphoma lesions. **B, Axial (cross-sectional) view** of the upper body in the same patient, who had a chest mass. **C, Sagittal (lateral) view** of the head showing cerebrum, ventricles, cerebellum, and medulla oblongata.

MRI versus CT Scanning

Why do doctors choose MRI or CT scanning? Differences in use depend on the part of the body viewed. In general, CT is useful for visualizing bones, lungs, and solid masses of the chest and abdomen, whereas MRI is better at giving detail in soft tissues that have more water molecules.

CT	MRI
1. bones 2. chest lesions and pneumonia 3. bleeding in the brain from head trauma and ruptured arteries	1. spinal cord and brain tumors 2. joints, tendons, and ligaments 3. liver masses 4. head and neck lesions

MRI examinations are performed with and without contrast. The contrast agent most commonly used is **gadolinium (Gd).** As iodine contrast does with CT, gadolinium enhances vessels and tissues, increases the sensitivity for lesion detection, and helps differentiate between normal and abnormal tissues and structures. MRI provides excellent soft tissue images, detecting edema in the brain, providing direct imaging of the spinal cord, detecting tumors in the chest and abdomen, and visualizing the cardiovascular system.

MRI is contraindicated for patients with pacemakers or metallic implants because the powerful magnet can alter position and functioning of such devices. However, the U.S. Food and Drug Administration (FDA) has recently approved new pacemakers that can be safely used with MRI. The sounds (loud tapping) heard during the test are caused by the pulsing of the magnetic field components as the device scans the body. See ***In Person: CT and MRI,*** page 812.

Figure 20-10 summarizes radiologic diagnostic techniques.

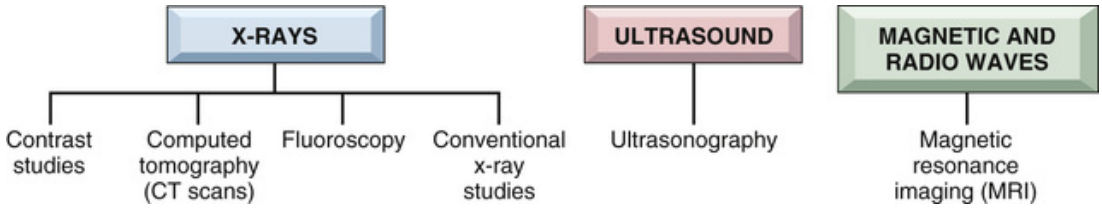


FIGURE 20-10 Summary of radiologic diagnostic techniques.

X-Ray Positioning

In order to take the best picture of the part of the body being radiographed, the patient, detector, and x-ray tube must be positioned in the most favorable alignment possible. Radiologists use special terms to refer to the direction of travel of the x-rays through the patient's body. Listed next are terms for radiographic views that are defined by the direction of the x-ray beam relative to the patient, who is positioned between the source and the detector; the relevant orientations are illustrated in Figure 20-11.

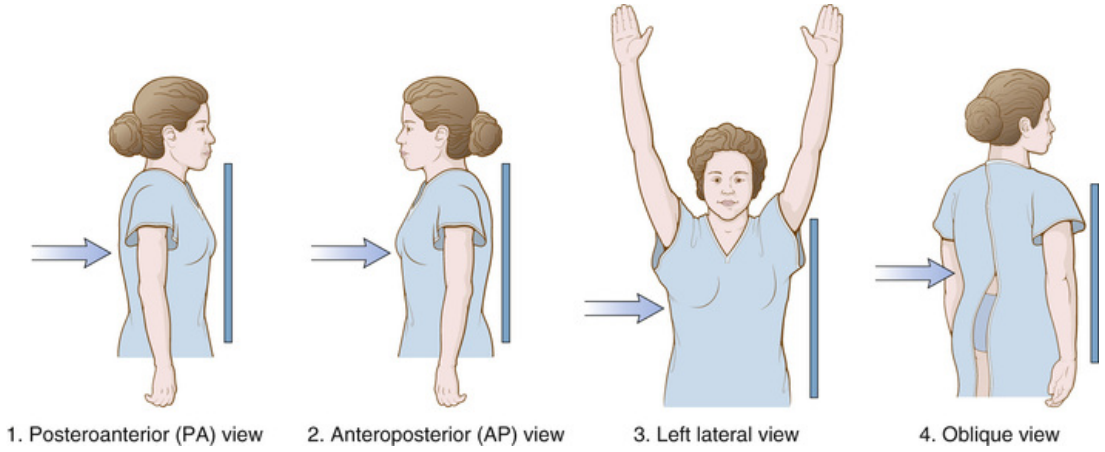


FIGURE 20-11 Positions for x-ray views. The *arrow* denotes the direction of the x-ray beam through the patient's body.

1. **Posteroanterior (PA) view.** In this most commonly requested chest x-ray view, x-rays travel from a posteriorly placed source to an anteriorly placed detector.
2. **Anteroposterior (AP) view.** X-rays travel from an anteriorly placed source to a posteriorly placed detector.
3. **Lateral view.** In a left lateral view, x-rays travel from a source located to the right of the patient to a detector placed to the left of the patient.
4. **Oblique view.** X-rays travel in a slanting direction at an angle from the perpendicular plane. Oblique views show regions or structures ordinarily hidden or superimposed in routine PA and AP views.

The following terms are used to describe the position of the patient or part of the body in the x-ray examination:

abduction	Movement away from the midline of the body.
adduction	Movement toward the midline of the body.
decubitus	Lying down. A **lateral decubitus** position is lying down on the side.
eversion	Turning outward.
extension	Lengthening or straightening a flexed limb.
flexion	Bending a part of the body.
inversion	Turning inward.
prone	Lying on the belly (face down).
recumbent	Lying down (may be prone or supine).
supine	Lying on the back (face up).

Nuclear Medicine

Radioactivity and Radionuclides

The spontaneous emission of energy in the form of particles or rays coming from the interior of a substance is called **radioactivity.** A **radionuclide** (or **radioisotope**) is a substance that gives off high-energy particles or rays as it disintegrates. Radionuclides are produced in either a nuclear reactor or a charged-particle accelerator (cyclotron) or by irradiating stable substances, causing disruption and instability. **Half-life** is the time required for a radioactive substance (radionuclide) to lose half of its radioactivity by disintegration. Knowledge of a radionuclide's half-life is important in determining how long the radioactive substance will emit radioactivity when in the body. The half-life must be long enough to allow for diagnostic imaging but as short as possible to minimize patient exposure to radiation.

Radionuclides emit three types of radioactivity: **alpha particles, beta particles,** and **gamma rays.** Gamma rays, which have greater penetrating ability than alpha and beta particles, and more ionizing power, are especially useful to physicians in both the diagnosis and the treatment of disease. **Technetium-99m** (^{99m}Tc) is essentially a pure gamma emitter with a half-life of 6 hours. Its properties make it the most frequently used radionuclide in diagnostic imaging.

Nuclear Medicine Tests: In Vitro and in Vivo Procedures

Nuclear medicine physicians use two types of tests in the diagnosis of disease: **in vitro** (in the test tube) procedures and **in vivo** (in the body) procedures. **In vitro** procedures involve analysis of blood and urine specimens using radioactive chemicals. For example, a **radioimmunoassay (RIA)** is an in vitro procedure that combines the use of radioactive chemicals and antibodies to detect hormones and drugs in a patient's blood. The test allows the detection of minute amounts of substances or compounds. RIA is used to monitor the amount of digitalis, a drug used to treat heart disease, in a patient's bloodstream and can detect hypothyroidism in newborn infants.

In vivo tests trace the amounts of radioactive substances within the body. They are given directly to the patient to evaluate the function of an organ or to image it. For example, in **tracer studies,** a specific radionuclide is incorporated into a chemical substance and administered to a patient. The combination of the radionuclide and a drug or chemical is called a **radiopharmaceutical** (or **radiolabeled compound**). Each radiopharmaceutical is designed to concentrate in a certain organ. The organ can then be imaged using the radiation given off by the radionuclide.

A sensitive, external detection instrument called a **gamma camera** is used to determine the distribution and localization of the radiopharmaceutical in various organs, tissues, and fluids (Figure 20-12). The amount of radiopharmaceutical at a given location is proportional to the rate at which the gamma rays are emitted. Nuclear medicine studies depict the physiologic behavior (how the organ works) rather than the specific anatomy of an organ.

FIGURE 20-12 A, Patient receiving intravenous injection of radionuclide for detection of heart function. B, Gamma camera moves around the patient, detecting radioactivity in heart muscle.

The procedure of making an image by tracking the distribution of radioactive substance in the body is **radionuclide scanning. Uptake** refers to the rate of absorption of the radiopharmaceutical into an organ or tissue.

Radiopharmaceuticals are administered by different routes to obtain a scan of a specific organ in the body. For example, during a **lung scan,** a radiopharmaceutical is given intravenously (**perfusion study)** so that the radioactive compound travels through the capillaries of the lungs, where it can be imaged. In a **ventilation study**, a radiolabeled gas or aerosol is inhaled to fill the air sacs (alveoli) before imaging. The combination of these tests, a **ventilation-perfusion study,** permits sensitive and specific diagnosis of clots in the lung arteries (pulmonary emboli).

Other diagnostic procedures that use radionuclides include the following:

1. **Bone scan.** Technetium-99m (Tc-99m) is used to label a phosphate-containing substance, which then is injected intravenously. The radioactive phosphate compound is taken up preferentially by bone, and the skeleton is imaged in 2 or 3 hours. Waiting 2 to 3 hours allows

much of the radiopharmaceutical to be excreted in urine and allows for better visualization of the radioactive material remaining in the skeleton. The scan detects infection, inflammation, or tumors involving the skeleton, which appear as areas of high uptake ("hot spots") on the scan. See Figure 15-37 on page 586.

2. **Lymphoscintigraphy.** This type of nuclear medicine imaging provides pictures (scintigrams) of the lymphatic system. A **radiotracer** (radioactive isotope) is injected under the skin, or deeper, using a small needle. A gamma camera then takes a series of images of an area of the body. Physicians perform lymphoscintigraphy to identify a **sentinel lymph node** (the first lymph node to receive lymph drainage from a tumor), identify areas of lymph node blockage, or evaluate lymphedema (accumulation of fluid in soft tissues leading to swelling).

Scintigraphy

Scintigraphy is the process of obtaining an image using a radioisotope. The term is derived from Latin *scintilla,* meaning spark. Bone scintigraphy is commonly called a bone scan, and lung scintigraphy is commonly called a lung scan.

3. **Positron emission tomography (PET** or **PET scan).** This radionuclide technique produces images of the distribution of radioactivity in the body through emission of positrons. It is similar to the CT scan, but radioisotopes are used instead of contrast and x-rays. After intravenous injection, the radionuclides are incorporated into the tissues and an image is made showing where the radionuclide is or is not being metabolized. The most common radionuclide is radiolabeled fluorodeoxyglucose (18F-FDG), but others are in use. PET scanning has determined that schizophrenics do not metabolize glucose equally in all parts of the brain and that drug treatment can bring improvement to these regions. Areas of metabolic deficiency can be pinpointed by PET, making it helpful in diagnosing and treating other neurologic disorders such as stroke, epilepsy, and Alzheimer disease. Areas of infection, inflammation, and tumor demonstrate increased metabolic activity, highlighted as hot spots on the PET scan (Figure 20-13).

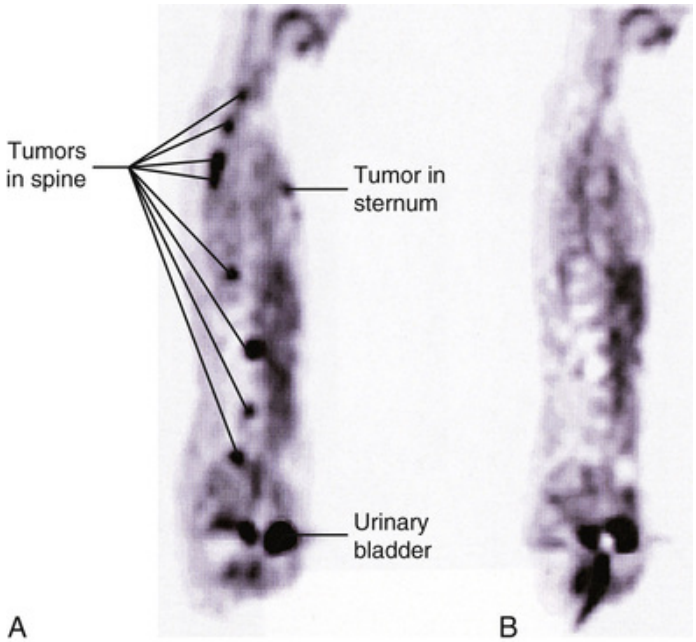


FIGURE 20-13 **Whole-body sagittal PET images. A, 18F-FDG image** obtained in a patient with breast cancer metastases. Numerous tumors (*dark spots*) are seen along the spine and sternum. **B, Image obtained after chemotherapy** shows regression of the cancer.

4. **PET-CT scan.** This scan combines PET and CT techniques to produce a more accurate image than PET or CT alone. See Figure 20-14. It is often used to detect cancer and metastases, especially to determine if the cancer is responding to treatment. **PET-MRI scans** combine magnetic resonance imaging (soft tissue anatomy) with positron emission tomography (functional imaging).

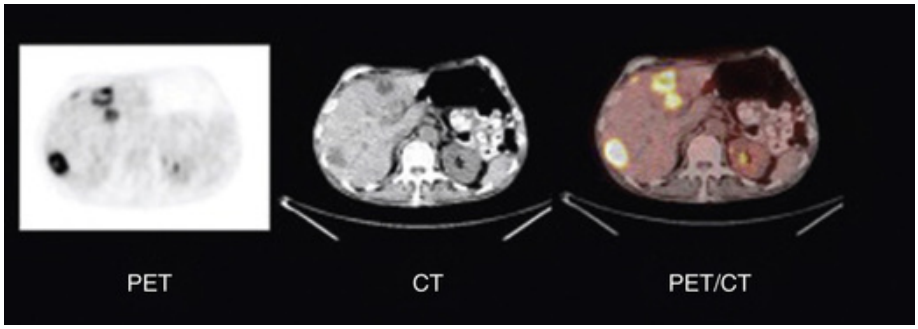


FIGURE 20-14 PET scan, CT scan, and PET-CT scan. (Courtesy UPMC, University of Pittsburgh.)

5. **Single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT).** This technique involves an intravenous injection of radioactive tracer (such as Tc-99m) and the computer reconstruction of a 3D image based on a

composite of many views. Uses include detecting liver tumors, brain function, cardiac ischemia, and bone disease of the spine.

6. **Technetium Tc99m sestamibi (Cardiolite) scan.** For this scan, the technetium radiopharmaceutical is injected intravenously and traced to heart muscle. An exercise tolerance test (ETT) is used with it for an ETT-MIBI scan. In a **mu**ltiple **g**ated **a**cquisition **(MUGA)** scan, Tc-99m is injected intravenously to study the motion of the heart wall muscle and the ventricle's ability to eject blood (ejection fraction).
7. **Thallium scan.** Thallium-201 (Tl-201) is injected intravenously to evaluate myocardial perfusion. A high concentration of Tl-201 is present in well-perfused heart muscle cells, but infarcted or scarred myocardium does not take up any thallium, showing up as "cold spots." If the defective area is ischemic, the cold spots fill in (become "warm") on delayed images (obtained later).
8. **Thyroid scan.** In a thyroid scan, an iodine radionuclide, usually iodine-123 (I-123), is administered orally, and the scan reveals the size, shape, and position of the thyroid gland. Alternatively, radioactive technetium can be administered intravenously. Hyperfunctioning thyroid nodules (adenomas) accumulate higher amounts of radioactivity and are termed "hot." Thyroid carcinoma does not concentrate radioiodine well and is seen as a "cold" spot on the scan. Figure 20-15 shows thyroid scans.

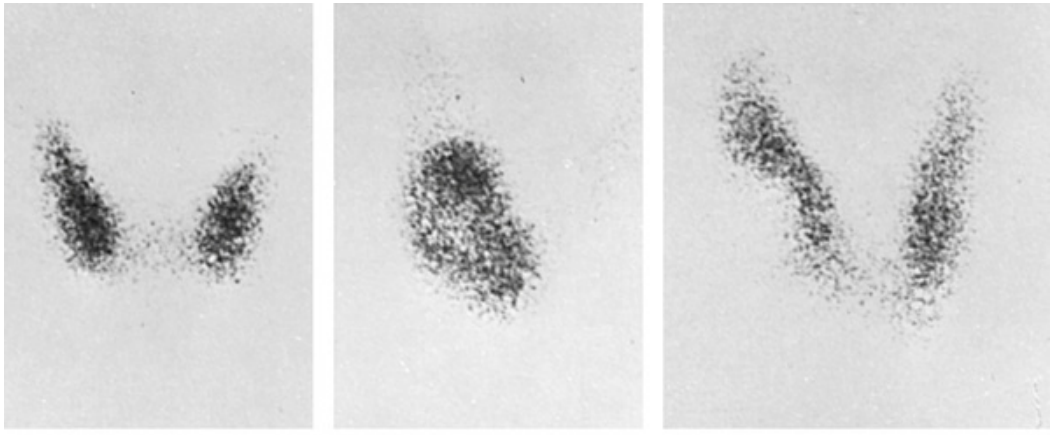


FIGURE 20-15 **I-123 thyroid scans.** The scan of a "hot nodule" shows a darkened area of increased uptake of radioactive iodine, which indicates an active nodule. Chances are very good that the nodule is benign. The scan of a "cold nodule" shows an area of decreased uptake, which indicates a nonfunctioning region, a common occurrence when normal tissue is replaced by malignancy.

A **radioactive iodine uptake (RAIU)** study is performed to assess the function of the thyroid gland (such as hyperthyroidism). The patient is given radioactive iodine (in this case, I-131), also called radioiodine, in liquid or capsule form, and then a sensor is placed over the thyroid gland. It detects gamma rays emitted from the radioactive tracer, which is taken up by the thyroid more readily than by other tissues. Radioiodine also is used in larger doses to treat hyperthyroidism, thyroid nodules, or thyroid cancer. After the patient swallows the I-131, it is absorbed into the bloodstream and then travels to the thyroid gland, where it destroys overactive thyroid tissue.

Figure 20-16 lists in vitro and in vivo nuclear medicine diagnostic tests.

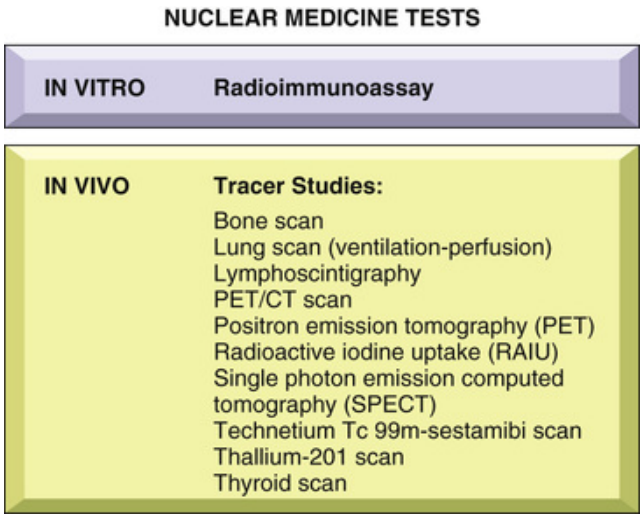


FIGURE 20-16 In vitro and in vivo nuclear medicine diagnostic tests.

Vocabulary

This list reviews many of the new terms introduced in the text. Short definitions reinforce your understanding of the terms. Refer to the Pronunciation of Terms on page 820 for help with unfamiliar or difficult words.

computed tomography (CT)	Diagnostic x-ray procedure whereby a cross-sectional image of a specific body segment is produced. Newer CT scanners can create 3D images as well.
contrast studies	Radiopaque materials (contrast media) are injected to obtain contrast between tissues that would be indistinguishable from one another.
gamma camera	Machine to detect gamma rays emitted from radiopharmaceuticals during scanning for diagnostic purposes.
gamma rays	High-energy rays emitted by radioactive substances used in tracer studies.
half-life	Time required for a radioactive substance to lose half its radioactivity by disintegration.
interventional radiology	Therapeutic or diagnostic procedures performed by a radiologist. Examples are needle biopsy of a mass and drainage of an abscess, typically under the guidance of CT, ultrasound, or fluoroscopy.
in vitro	Process, test, or procedure is performed, measured, or observed outside a living organism, often in a test tube.
in vivo	Process, test, or procedure is performed, measured, or observed within a living organism.
ionization	Transformation of electrically neutral substances into electrically charged particles. X-rays cause ionization of particles within tissues.
magnetic resonance imaging (MRI)	Magnetic field and radio waves produce sagittal, coronal, and axial images of the body.
nuclear medicine	Medical specialty that uses radioactive substances (radionuclides) in the diagnosis and treatment of disease.
positron emission tomography (PET)	Positron-emitting radioactive substances given intravenously create a cross-sectional image of cellular metabolism based on local concentration of the radioactive substance. PET scans give information about metabolic activity.
radioimmunoassay	Test combines radioactive chemicals and antibodies to detect minute quantities of substances in a patient's blood.
radioisotope	Radioactive form of an element substance; radionuclide.
radiolabeled compound	Radiopharmaceutical; used in nuclear medicine studies.

radiology	Medical specialty concerned with the study of x-rays and their use in the diagnosis of disease. It includes other forms of energy, such as ultrasound and magnetic waves. Also called **diagnostic radiology.**
radiolucent	Permitting the passage of x-rays. Radiolucent structures appear black on x-ray images.
radionuclide	Radioactive form of an element that gives off energy in the form of radiation; radioisotope.
radiopaque	Obstructing the passage of x-rays. Radiopaque structures appear white on the x-ray images.
radiopharmaceutical	Radioactive drug (radionuclide plus chemical) that is administered safely for diagnostic and therapeutic purposes; a radiotracer. An example is technetium-99m, which combines with albumin (for lung perfusion) and DTPA (for renal imaging).
scan	Image of an area, organ or tissue of the body obtained from ultrasonography, radioactive tracer studies, computed tomography, or magnetic resonance imaging.
scintigraphy	Diagnostic nuclear medicine test using radiopharmaceuticals and gamma cameras to create images.
single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT)	Radioactive tracer is injected intravenously and a computer reconstructs a 3D image based on a composite of many views.
tagging	Attaching a radionuclide to a chemical and following its path in the body.
tracer studies	Radionuclides are used as tags, or labels, attached to chemicals and followed as they travel through the body.
ultrasonography (US, U/S)	Diagnostic technique that uses high-frequency sound waves to produce images of the body.
ultrasound transducer	Handheld device that sends and receives ultrasound signals.
uptake	Rate of absorption of a radionuclide into an organ or tissue.
ventilation-perfusion study (V/Q scan)	Consists of two scans: a ventilation scan performed using an inhaled radiopharmaceutical and a perfusion scan using an intravenously injected radiopharmaceutical. Used to evaluate for pulmonary embolism.

Terminology

Write the meanings of the medical terms in the spaces provided.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
is/o	same	radioisotope _____ *Top/o means place; isotopes of an element have similar structures but different weights and stability. A radioisotope (radionuclide) is an unstable form of an element that emits radioactivity.*	
pharmaceut/o	drug	radiopharmaceutical _____ *In this term, radi/o stands for radioactive.*	
radi/o	x-rays	radiographer _____ radiology _____	
son/o	sound	hysterosonogram _____ *Saline solution is injected through a catheter inserted into the vagina and cervical canal to the uterus, which is then examined by ultrasound imaging.*	
therapeut/o	treatment	therapeutic _____	
vitr/o	glass	in vitro _____	
viv/o	life	in vivo _____	

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-gram	record	angiogram _____ hysterosalpingogram _____ pyelogram _____	
-graphy	process of recording	computed tomography _____ *Tom/o means to cut, as in viewing in slices.*	
-lucent	to shine	radiolucent _____ *Radiolucent (indicating that x-rays pass through easily) areas on x-ray images appear dark.*	
-opaque	obscure	radiopaque _____ *Radiopaque (indicating that x-rays do not penetrate) areas on x-ray images appear white/light.*	

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
echo-	a repeated sound	echocardiography _____	
ultra-	beyond	ultrasonography _____ *Sound waves are beyond the normal range of those that a human can hear.*	

Abbreviations

Angio	angiography
AP	anteroposterior
Ba	barium
BE	barium enema
C-spine	cervical spine
CT	computed tomography
CXR	chest x-ray
Decub	decubitus—lying down
DICOM	digital image communication in medicine—standard protocol for storage and transmission of images between imaging devices
DI	diagnostic imaging
DSA	digital subtraction angiography
EBUS	endobronchial ultrasound
EBUS-TBNA	endobronchial ultrasound-guided transbronchial needle aspiration
ECHO	echocardiography
EUS	endoscopic ultrasonography
18F-FDG	fluorodeoxyglucose—radiopharmaceutical used in PET scanning; ^{18}F-FDG
fMRI	functional MRI
Gd	gadolinium—MRI contrast agent
I-123	isotope of radioactive iodine—used in thyroid scans
I-131	isotope of radioactive iodine—used in diagnosis (thyroid scan) and treatment for thyroid cancer
IVP	intravenous pyelogram
KUB	kidneys-ureters-bladder—x-ray imaging without contrast
LAT	lateral
LS films	lumbosacral (spine) films
L-spine	lumbar spine
MDCT	multidetector CT scanner
MR, MRI	magnetic resonance, magnetic resonance imaging
MRA	magnetic resonance angiography
MRV	magnetic resonance venography
MUGA	multiple-gated acquisition (scan)—radioactive of heart function
PA	posteroanterior
PACS	picture archival and communications system—medical imaging technology providing storage and access for images from multiple modalities.
PET	positron emission tomography
PET-CT	positron emission tomography–computed tomography—

	performed using a single machine
PET-MRI	positron emission tomography-magnetic resonants imaging
RAIU	radioactive iodine uptake (test)—tests thyroid gland function
RFA	radiofrequency ablation
SBFT	small bowel follow-through
SPECT	single photon emission computed tomography—radioactive substances and a computer are used to create 3D images
Tc-99m	radioactive technetium—common medical isotope used in heart, brain, thyroid, liver, bone, and lung scans
Tl-201	thallium-201—radioisotope used in scanning heart muscle
T-spine	thoracic spine
UGI	upper gastrointestinal (series)
US, U/S	ultrasound; ultrasonography
V/Q scan	ventilation-perfusion scan of the lungs (Q stands for rate of blood flow or blood volume)

In Person

CT and MRI

The following first-person narrative provides a detailed look at two common diagnostic procedures—CT and MRI—from the perspective of the patient. It was written by a 77-year-old woman with head and neck cancer.

CT—Computed Tomography

Before an upcoming surgical procedure, I was told that I would need to have a CT scan. The doctors wanted to see if the cancer on my scalp had spread into the bones in my skull. They explained that these images of my head would be in thin "slices," taken as the CT camera rotated around me.

When I arrived in the room, I saw the CT machine. It was a large, circular hollow tube about 18 inches wide. There was a narrow table through the center. It was clear to me immediately that I would not have to worry about feeling "closed in." I lay down on the table, and the technician explained he would add contrast through an intravenous (IV) line halfway through the procedure.

The table was rolled into the machine to a specific spot where a series of pictures were taken. There were several short periods when I was asked to stay as still as possible and hold my breath. The noise was minimal, just soft whirring and clicking. Halfway through the procedure, I was slid out of the machine on the table so that the contrast could be added to the IV line. Once I was back in the machine, more pictures were taken and the test was completed with a minimum of discomfort, much to my grateful surprise.

MRI—Magnetic Resonance Imaging

Before yet another surgery procedure, my doctors requested an MRI exam. This time, they wanted to get the best possible image of my malignant tumor and the surrounding area. They explained that the MRI and CT procedures are similar in that they both produce images in thin slices, but that MRI shows more detail, especially of soft tissue.

The technician confirmed I had nothing metal (such as a pacemaker or surgical screws) inside or on my body. The magnet that is used in the MRI machine is so strong that it could cause any metal objects to shift. This movement could disrupt the imaging process or cause damage to tissue in my body.

The MRI machine is a 6-foot-long round tube, open on both ends. Because the body part to be examined was my head, a rubber shield was placed over and very close to my face to hold me in the correct position. I was then rolled inside to the middle of the tube. This was really uncomfortable for me because I have mild claustrophobia. I took deep breaths to relax myself.

Although the technicians had told me the procedure would be loud, I was still taken aback by just how loud it was inside the tube. Even though I was wearing earplugs, the sound was like the pounding of huge hammers held by giant arms, or of heavy-duty jackhammers. At the same time, there was an abrupt shaking of the entire machine from side to side. I knew immediately that this could be an overwhelming experience, so I used the "relax-substitution" method to replace these violent sounds with more familiar ones. I remembered a very loud time as my family and I made our way to

Nantucket Island on a ferry for a brief vacation. Now the previously strident and threatening sound was replaced by the welcoming sound of the ferry horn bellowing a happy welcome to the visitors' smiling faces as they came onto the ferry with straw hats, sunscreen, backpacks, and duffel bags. This relaxation method was extremely effective for me. I was then rolled out of the machine for addition of the IV contrast, and the process was repeated.

I am still amazed that the doctors could get such detailed information on what was going on inside my body using these two tests.

Practical Applications

Answers to the questions are found on page 820.

Case Study: Melanoma Follow-Up

Bill Smith, a 51-year-old sales representative, was initially diagnosed with stage III melanoma 4 years ago. He underwent surgery and received interferon treatment at that time. At his 3-month follow-up CT evaluation last year, Mr. Smith received bad news. The CT scan detected a 1 cm nodule that could be a melanoma metastasis. To confirm the diagnosis, Mr. Smith underwent a PET scan.

He was admitted to the nuclear medicine unit of the hospital on the morning of the scan. He had been instructed to fast (no food or beverage 12 hours before the scan). The nuclear medicine physician had told him especially not to eat any type of sugar, which would compete with the radiopharmaceutical 18F-FDG (radiolabeled fluorodeoxyglucose, ^{18}F-FDG), a radioactive glucose molecule that travels to every cell in the body.

The PET scan began with an injection of a trace amount of 18F-FDG by the physician. Bill was asked to lie still for about an hour in a dark, quiet room and to avoid talking to prevent the compound from concentrating in the tongue and vocal cords. The waiting time allowed the 18F-FDG to be absorbed and released from normal tissue. After emptying his bladder, Bill reclined on a bed that moved slowly and quietly through a PET scanner, a large tube similar to a CT scanner. The radioactive glucose emits charged particles called positrons, which interact with electrons, producing gamma rays that are in turn detected by the scanner. Color-coded images indicate the intensity of metabolic activity throughout the body. Cancerous cells absorb more radioactive glucose than noncancerous cells. The malignant cells show up brighter on the PET scan.

Bill's PET scan proved the CT wrong: His melanoma had not metastasized. He returned home quite relieved.

Questions about the Case Study: Melanoma Follow-up

1. In CT scanning:
    a. A radioactive tracer is used
    b. Magnetic images reveal images in all three planes of the body
    c. A nuclear physician performs the ultrasound procedure
    d. X-rays and a computer produce images in the axial plane
2. In PET scanning:
    a. A radioactive tracer is used
    b. X-ray images reveal images in all three planes of the body
    c. A nuclear physician performs the ultrasound procedure
    d. Doppler ultrasound is used
3. Bill's case showed that:
    a. CT scanning and PET scanning are equally effective in diagnosis of metastases
    b. PET scanning is useful in cancer diagnosis and staging
    c. Melanoma never progresses to stage IV
    d. A diet high in glucose helps concentrate the radioactive 18F-FDG before the PET scan

General Hospital: Nuclear Medicine Department

Available Radionuclides			
Radionuclide	**Radiopharmaceutical**	**Administration Route**	**Target Organ**
Xe-133	xenon gas	inhaled	lungs
Tc-99m	albumin microspheres	IV	lungs
Sr-87m (strontium)	solution	IV	bone
Tc-99m	diphosphonate	IV	bone
Tc-99m	pertechnetate	IV	brain
Tc-99m	sulfur colloid	IV	liver/spleen
Tc-99m	HIDA	IV	gallbladder
Tc-99m	DTPA	IV	kidney
Tc-99m	DMSA	IV	kidney
I-123	sodium iodide	PO	thyroid
I-131	sodium iodide	PO	thyroid
TI-201 (thallium)	thallium chloride	IV	heart
Tc-99m	sestamibi	IV	heart
Ga-67 (gallium)	gallium citrate	IV	tumors and abscesses

DMSA, dimercaptosuccinic acid; DTPA, diethylenetriaminepentaacetic acid; HIDA, *N*-(2,6-dimethyl)iminodiacetic acid; IV, intravenous; PO, oral (Latin *per os,* by mouth).

Questions about the General Hospital: Nuclear Medicine Department

1. Which radionuclide is used with sestamibi in an ETT of heart function?
    a. Thallium-201
    b. Iodine-131
    c. Gallium-67
    d. Technetium-99m
2. Which radionuclide would be used to diagnose disease in an endocrine gland?
    a. Ga-67
    b. I-123
    c. Xe-123
    d. Sr-87m

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, page 819.

A **Complete the medical terms based on the definitions and word parts given.**

1. Obstructing the passage of x-rays: radio _____
2. Permitting the passage of x-rays: radio _____
3. Aids physicians in performing ultrasound procedures: _____grapher
4. Transformation of stable substances into charged particles: _____ization
5. Radioactive drug administered for diagnostic purposes: radio _____
6. Radioactive chemical that gives off energy in the form of radiation: radio _____
7. A physician who specializes in diagnostic radiology: radi _____
8. Study of the uses of radioactive substances in the diagnosis of disease: _____ medicine

B **Match the special diagnostic techniques below with their definitions.**

computed tomography

contrast studies

interventional radiology

magnetic resonance imaging

ultrasonograph

1. Radiopaque substances are given and conventional x-rays taken _____.

2. Use of echoes of high-frequency sound waves to diagnose disease _____.
3. A magnetic field and radio waves are used to form images of the body _____.
4. X-ray pictures are taken circularly around an area of the body, and a computer synthesizes the information into composite images _____.
5. Therapeutic procedures are performed by a radiologist under the guidance of CT, MRI, or ultrasonography _____.

C **Match the diagnostic x-ray test in Column I with the part of the body that is imaged in Column II.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. myelography	_____	A. spinal cord
2. retrograde pyelography	_____	B. uterus and fallopian tubes
3. angiography	_____	C. blood vessels
4. upper GI series	_____	D. esophagus, stomach, and small intestine
5. cholangiography	_____	E. lower gastrointestinal tract
6. barium enema	_____	F. urinary tract
7. hysterosalpingography	_____	G. bile vessels (ducts)

D **Match the x-ray views or positions in Column I with their meanings in Column II. Write the letter of the answer in the space provided.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. PA	_____	A. on the side
2. supine	_____	B. turned inward
3. prone	_____	C. movement away from the midline
4. AP	_____	D. lying on the belly
5. lateral	_____	E. x-ray tube positioned on an angle
6. oblique	_____	F. bending a part
7. lateral decubitus	_____	G. straightening a limb
8. adduction	_____	H. lying on the back
9. inversion	_____	I. lying down on the side
10. abduction	_____	J. lying down; prone or supine
11. recumbent	_____	K. anteroposterior view (front to back)
12. eversion	_____	L. turning outward
13. flexion	_____	M. posteroanterior view (back to front)
14. extension	_____	N. movement toward the midline

E **Give the meanings of the following medical terms.**

1. in vitro _____
2. in vivo _____
3. radiopharmaceutical
   _____
4. tracer studies
   _____
5. uptake _____
6. perfusion lung scan
   _____
7. ventilation lung scan
   _____
8. bone scan _____
9. thyroid scan
   _____
10. technetium Tc99m sestamibi scan
    _____

F **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. gamma camera
   _____
2. positron emission tomography (PET)
   _____
3. radioisotope
   _____
4. transducer
   _____
5. echocardiography
   _____
6. lymphoscintigraphy
   _____
7. radioactive iodine uptake test
   _____
8. PET-CT scan
   _____

G **Give the meanings of the following word parts.**

1. -gram _____
2. ultra- _____
3. vitr/o _____
4. viv/o _____
5. pharmaceut/o
   _____
6. son/o _____
7. therapeut/o
   _____

H Give the meanings of the abbreviations in Column I, and then select the best association for each from Column II.

COLUMN I			COLUMN II
1. MRI	_____	_____	A. X-ray examination of the kidney after injection of contrast
2. SPECT	_____	_____	B. Diagnostic procedure frequently used to assess fetal size and development
3. PACS	_____	_____	C. X-ray examination of the esophagus, stomach, and intestines
4. UGI	_____	_____	D. X-ray of blood vessels made by taking two images (with and without contrast) and subtracting the digitized data for one from the data for the other
5. CXR	_____	_____	E. Radioisotope used in nuclear medicine (tracer studies)
6. DSA	_____	_____	F. Radioactive substances and a computer used to create 3D images
7. RP	_____	_____	G. Diagnostic procedure produces magnetic resonance images of all three planes of the body and visualizes soft tissue throughout the body
8. LAT	_____	_____	H. Replacement of traditional films with digital equivalents
9. U/S			I. X-ray view from the side
10. Tc-99m			J. Diagnostic procedure (x-rays are used) necessary to investigate thoracic disease

I **Circle the correct** boldface **terms to complete the sentences.**

1. Mr. Jones was scheduled for ultrasound-guided thoracentesis. He was sent to the **(interventional radiology, radiation oncology, nuclear medicine)** department for the procedure.
2. In order to better visualize Mr. Smith's small intestine, Dr. Wong ordered a **(perfusion study, SBFT, hysterosalpingography).** She hoped to determine why he was having abdominal pain and diarrhea.
3. After a head-on automobile collision, Sam was taken to the emergency department in an unconscious state. The paramedics suspected head trauma, and the doctors ordered an emergency **(PET scan, U/S, CT scan)** of his head.
4. In light of Sue's symptoms of fever, cough, and malaise, the doctors thought that the consolidated, hazy **(radioisotope, radiolucent, radiopaque)** area on the chest x-ray represented a pneumonia.
5. Fred, a lung cancer patient, experienced a seizure recently. His oncologist ordered a brain **(ultrasound, pulmonary angiogram, MRI),** which showed a tumor involving the left frontal lobe of the brain. Fred was treated with Gamma Knife irradiation, and the tumor decreased in size. He has had no further seizures.
6. Tom recently developed a cough and fever. A chest x-ray and **(CT, myelogram, IVP)** of the chest show that a **(pelvic, spinal, mediastinal)** mass is present. **(Mediastinoscopy, Cystoscopy, Lumbar puncture)** and biopsy of the mass reveal Hodgkin disease on histopathologic examination. He is treated with

chemotherapy, and his symptoms disappear. A repeat x-ray shows that the mass has decreased remarkably, and a **(SPECT, MRI, PET)** scan shows no uptake of ^{18}F-FDG in the chest, indicating that the mass is fibrosis and not tumor.

7. Paola, a 50-year-old woman with diabetes, experiences chest pain during a stress test, and her **(U/S, ECG, EEG)** shows evidence of ischemia. A **(contrast agent, transducer, radiopharmaceutical)** called technetium Tc99m sestamibi (Cardiolite) is injected intravenously, and uptake is assessed with a **(probe, CT scanner, gamma camera)**, which shows an area of poor perfusion in the left ventricle.
8. Sally has a routine pelvic examination, and her **(neurologist, gynecologist, urologist)** detects an irregular area of enlargement in the anterior wall of the uterus. A pelvic **(angiogram, U/S study, PET scan)** is performed, which demonstrates the presence of fibroids in the uterine wall. The examination involves placing a gel over her abdominopelvic area and applying a **(ultrasound transducer, radionuclide, MRI scanner)** to send/receive sound vibrations to/from the pelvic region.
9. Sally was having palpitations in the early evening. An ECG revealed possible left ventricular hypertrophy. Her physician ordered an **(ECHO, EUS, UGI)** to rule out valvular heart disease.
10. Joe, a 75-year-old man with a long smoking history, noticed blood in his sputum. His primary care physician ordered a/an **(abdominal CT, chest CT, ultrasound of his heart)** for further evaluation.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. radiopaque
2. radiolucent
3. sonographer
4. ionization
5. radiopharmaceutical
6. radioisotope or radionuclide
7. radiologist
8. nuclear

B

1. contrast studies
2. ultrasonography
3. magnetic resonance imaging
4. computed tomography
5. interventional radiology

C

1. A
2. F
3. C
4. D
5. G

6. E
7. B

D

1. M
2. H
3. D
4. K
5. A
6. E
7. I
8. N
9. B
10. C
11. J
12. L
13. F
14. G

E

1. process, test, or procedure in which something is measured or observed outside a living organism
2. process, test, or procedure in which something is measured or observed in a living organism

3. radioactive drug (radionuclide plus chemical) that is given for diagnostic or therapeutic purposes
4. tests in which radioactive substance (radioisotopes) are administered with chemicals and followed as they travel throughout the body
5. the rate of absorption of a radionuclide into an organ or tissue
6. imaging technique in which a radiopharmaceutical is injected intravenously and traced within the blood vessels of the lung scanned
7. imaging technique in which a radiopharmaceutical is inhaled and its passage through the respiratory tract is traced on a scan
8. imaging technique in which a radiopharmaceutical is given intravenously and taken up by bone tissue, followed by scanning to detect the amount of the radioactive substance in the bone
9. imaging technique in which a radioactive substance is given orally and a scan (image) is made to assess its uptake in the thyroid gland
10. test of heart muscle function

F

1. machine that detects rays emitted by radioactive substances
2. radioactive glucose is injected and traced to body cells
3. a radioactive form (radionuclide) of a substance; gives off radiation

4. handheld device that sends and receives ultrasound signals
5. ultrasound is used to create an image of the heart
6. nuclear medicine imaging of the lymphatic system
7. nuclear medicine test to evaluate the function of the thyroid gland
8. combination of a PET scan and a CT scan to show both structure and function of the body

G

1. record
2. beyond
3. glass
4. life
5. drug
6. sound
7. treatment

H

1. magnetic resonance imaging: G
2. single photon emission computed tomography: F
3. picture archival and communications system: H
4. upper gastrointestinal (series): C
5. chest x-ray: J
6. digital subtraction angiography: D

7. retrograde pyelogram: A
8. lateral: I
9. ultrasound: B
10. radioactive technetium: E

I

1. interventional radiology
2. SBFT (small bowel follow-through)
3. CT scan
4. radiopaque
5. MRI
6. CT, mediastinal, mediastinoscopy, PET
7. ECG, radiopharmaceutical, gamma camera
8. gynecologist, U/S, transducer
9. ECHO
10. chest CT

Answers to Practical Applications

Case Study: Melanoma Follow-up

1. d
2. a
3. b

General Hospital: Nuclear Medicine Department

1. d

2. b

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897.

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
abduction	ab-DUK-shun
adduction	ah-DUK-shun
angiogram	AN-je-o-gram
anteroposterior	an-ter-o-pos-TE-re-or
bone scan	bone skan
cholangiography	ko-lan-je-OG-rah-fe
computed tomography	kom-PU-ted to-MOG-rah-fe
contrast studies	KON-trast STUD-eez
decubitus	deh-KU-bih-tus
echocardiography	ek-o-kar-de-OG-rah-fe
eversion	e-VER-zhun
extension	ek-STEN-shun
flexion	FLEK-shun
fluoroscopy	flu-ROS-ko-pe
gamma camera	GAM-ah KAM-er-ah
gamma rays	GAM-ah rays
half-life	HAF-life
hysterosalpingogram	his-ter-o-sal-PING-go-gram
hysterosonogram	his-ter-o-SON-o-gram
in vitro	in VE-tro
in vivo	in VE-vo
interventional radiology	in-ter-VEN-shun-al ra-de-OL-o-je
inversion	in-VER-zhun
ionization	i-on-ih-ZA-shun
lymphoscintigraphy	limf-o-sin-TIG-rah-fe
magnetic resonance imaging	mag-NET-ik REH-zo-nants IM-aj-ing
myelography	mi-eh-LOG-rah-fe
nuclear medicine	NU-kle-ar MED-ih-sin
oblique	o-BLEEK
PET-CT scan	PET-CT skan
positron-emission tomography	POS-ih-tron e-MIH-shun to-MOG-rah-fe
posteroanterior	pos-te-ro-an-TE-re-or
prone	prone
pyelogram	PI-eh-lo-gram
radiographer	ra-de-OG-rah-fer
radioimmunoassay	ra-de-o-ih-mew-no-AS-a
radioisotope	ra-de-o-I-so-tope
radiolabeled compound	ra-de-o-LA-beld KOM-pownd
radiology	ra-de-OL-o-je
radiolucent	ra-de-o-LU-sent

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
radionuclide	ra-de-o-NU-klide
radiopaque	rad-de-o-PAYK
radiopharmaceutical	ra-de-o-far-mah-SU-tih-kal
recumbent	re-KUM-bent
scan	skan
scintigraphy	SIN-tih-grah-fe
single photon emission computed tomography	SING-il FO-ton e-MIH-shun com-PU-ted to-MOG-rah-fe
sonogram	SON-o-gram
supine	su-PINE
tagging	TAG-ing
technetium Tc99m sestamibi scan	tek-NE-she-um (Tc99m) ses-tah-MIH-be skan
thallium scan	THAL-e-um skan
therapeutic	ther-ah-PU-tik
thyroid scan	THI-royd skan
tracer studies	TRA-ser STU-deez
ultrasonography	ul-trah-so-NOG-rah-fe
ultrasound transducer	ul-trah-SOWND tranz-DU-ser
uptake	UP-take
urography	u-ROG-rah-fe
ventilation-perfusion studies	ven-tih-LA-shun -per-FU-zhun STU-deez

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of the combining forms in the spaces provided, and test yourself. Check your answers with the information in the text or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	COMBINING FORM	MEANING
ion/o	_____	son/o	_____
is/o	_____	therapeut/o	_____
myel/o	_____	vitr/o	_____
pharmaceut/o	_____	viv/o	_____
radi/o	_____		

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	SUFFIX	MEANING
-gram	_____	-lucent	_____
-graphy	_____	-opaque	_____

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING	PREFIX	MEANING
echo-	_____	ultra-	_____

Give meanings for the following patient positions or movements:

1. abduction _____
2. adduction _____
3. decubitus _____
4. eversion _____
5. extension _____
6. flexion _____
7. inversion _____
8. prone _____
9. recumbent _____
10. supine _____

Match the following abbreviations used in nuclear medicine with their diagnostic uses. Write each abbreviation on the line provided. Check your answers on pg 867.

18F-FDG
Tc-99m
Tl-201
MUGA
V/Q scan

RAIU

_____ Lung study to diagnose a pulmonary embolus
_____ Radiopharmaceutical used in a PET scan
_____ Radioisotope used in scanning heart muscle
_____ Study to evaluate the function of the thyroid gland
_____ Study to evaluate the function of the heart muscle
_____ Radioisotope used in multiple organ scans

CHAPTER 21

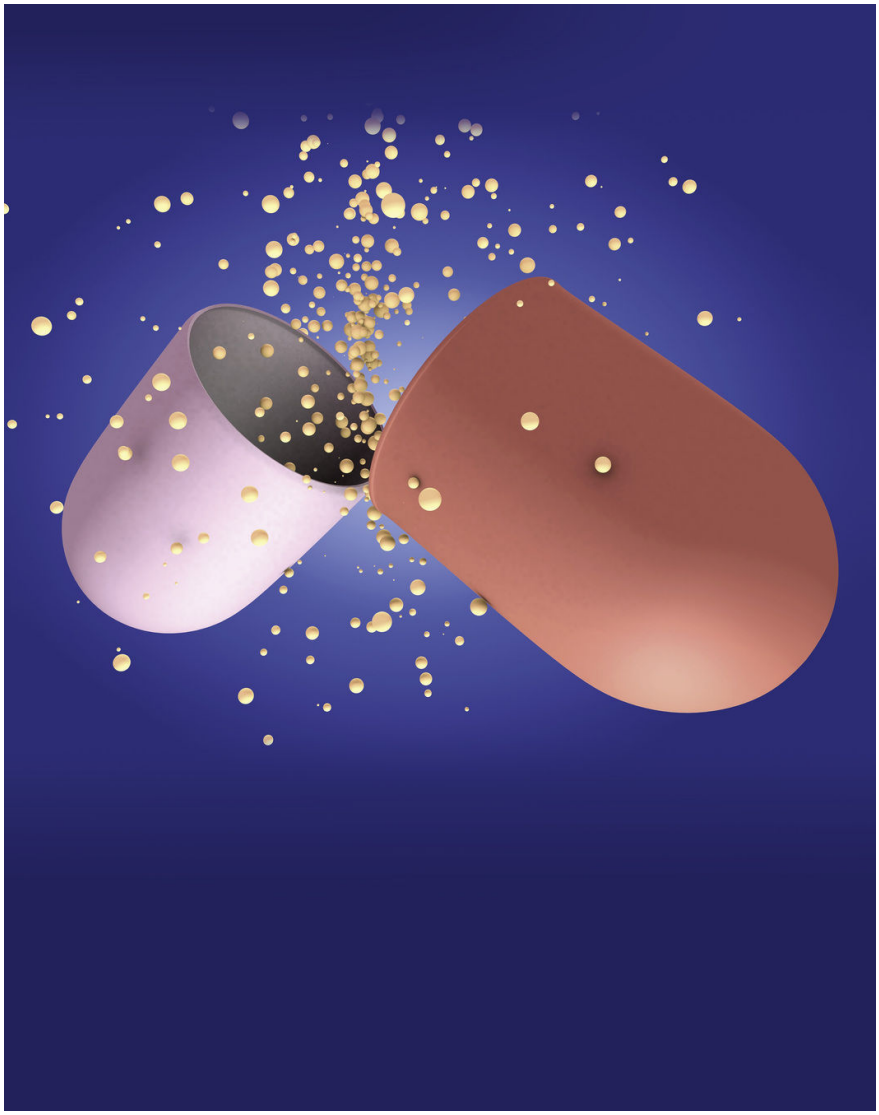
Pharmacology

CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 824
Drug Names, Standards, and References 825
Administration of Drugs 826
Drug Actions and Interactions 828
Drug Toxicity 828
Classes of Drugs 829
Vocabulary 839
Terminology 843
Abbreviations 845
Practical Applications 846
Exercises 850
Answers to Exercises 856
Pronunciation of Terms 858
Review Sheet 860

CHAPTER GOALS

- Describe the various subspecialty areas of pharmacology.
- Identify the various routes and schedules of drug administration.
- Define the various classes of drugs and name their primary actions and side effects.
- Define medical terms using combining forms and prefixes that relate to pharmacology.
- Apply your new knowledge to understanding medical terms in their proper contexts, such as medical reports and records.



Introduction

Drugs (medicines) are substances used to prevent or treat a disease or condition. Some drugs are obtained from **plants** such as the roots, leaves, and fruit. An example of a plant-derived drug is a cardiac medicine, digitalis (from the foxglove plant). Other drugs (antibiotics such as penicillin) are derived from molds. Drugs also are obtained from **animals.** For example, some pharmaceutical hormones are produced by the glands of animals, and antivenoms are prepared from the venom of snakes, spiders, or other species with poisonous bites or stings. Virtually all drugs are **synthesized** for commercial purposes in a laboratory. **Vitamins** are drugs that are isolated from plant or animal sources and are contained in foods.

A **pharmacist** prepares and dispenses drugs through a **pharmacy** (drugstore) on a written order from a physician. The order is called a **prescription**. Currently, most schools or colleges of pharmacy offer a PharmD (doctor of pharmacy) degree after 6 years of study. As a health care professional, a pharmacist cooperates with, consults with, and sometimes advises licensed practitioners concerning drugs. In addition, the pharmacist answers patients' questions about their

prescription. A **pharmacy technician** helps licensed pharmacists provide medication and other health care products to patients.

Pharmacology is the study of the discovery, properties, and uses of drugs. A **pharmacologist** is either an MD (doctor of medicine) or a PhD (doctor of philosophy) who specializes in the study of medicines. Pharmacology contains many subdivisions of study: **medicinal chemistry, pharmacodynamics, pharmacokinetics, molecular pharmacology, chemotherapy,** and **toxicology.**

Medicinal chemistry is the study of new drug synthesis and the relationship between chemical structure and biologic effects. **Pharmacodynamics** involves the study of a drug's effect on its target in the body. **Pharmacokinetics** is the study of a drug's absorption (how drugs pass into the bloodstream), distribution into body compartments, metabolism (changes that drugs undergo within the body), and excretion (removal of the drug from the body) over a period of time.

Molecular pharmacology involves the interaction of drugs and subcellular entities, such as DNA, RNA, and enzymes. It provides important information about the mechanism of action of drugs.

Chemotherapy is the study of drugs that destroy microorganisms, parasites, or malignant cells within the body. Chemotherapy includes treatment of infectious diseases and cancer.

Toxicology is the study of the harmful effects of drugs and chemicals on the body. Toxicologic studies are conducted in animals, as required by law, before new drugs can be tested in humans. A toxicologist also is interested in finding proper **antidotes** to any harmful effects of drugs. Antidotes are substances that prevent or reverse the unwanted effects of drugs.

Figure 21-1 reviews the subspecialty areas of pharmacology.

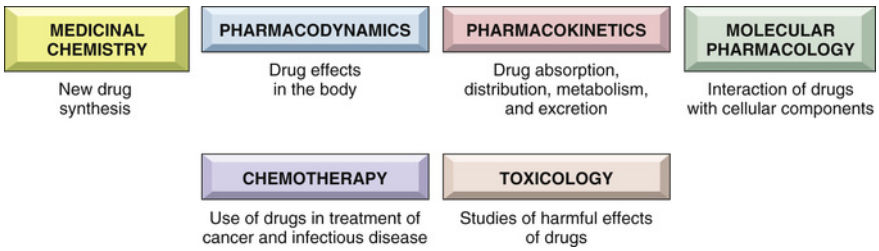


FIGURE 21-1 Subspecialty areas of pharmacology.

Drug Names, Standards, and References

Names

A drug can have three different names. The **chemical name** specifies the exact chemical makeup of the drug. This name often is long and complicated.

The **generic name,** typically shorter and less complicated, identifies the drug legally and scientifically. The generic name becomes public property after 17 years of use by the original manufacturer, and any drug manufacturer may use it thereafter. There is only one generic name for each drug.

The **brand name** or trademark is the private property of the individual drug manufacturer, and no competitor may use it. A brand name (also called trade name) often has the superscript ® after or before the name, indicating that it is a registered brand name. Drugs can have several brand names, because each manufacturer producing the drug gives it a different name. When a specific brand name is ordered on a prescription by a physician, it must be dispensed by the pharmacist; no other brand name may be substituted. It is usual practice to capitalize the first letter of a brand name.

The following example shows the chemical, generic, and brand names for the antibiotic drug amoxicillin; note that the drug has several brand names but only one generic, or official, name:

Chemical Name	Generic Name	Brand Names
[2*S*,5*R*,6*R*]-6-[(*R*)-(–)-2-amino-2-(*p*-hydroxyphenyl) acetamido]-3,3-dimethyl-7-oxo-4-thia-1-azabicyclo[3.2.0] heptane-2-carboxylic acid	amoxicillin	Amoxil Polymox Trimox

Standards

The U.S. **Food and Drug Administration (FDA)** has the legal responsibility for deciding whether a drug may be distributed and sold. It sets strict standards for efficacy (effectiveness), safety, and purity. The FDA requires extensive experimental testing in animals and people before it approves a new drug for sale for a specific medical use. An independent committee of physicians, pharmacologists, pharmacists, and manufacturers, called the **United States Pharmacopeia (USP),** reviews the available commercial drugs and continually reappraises their effectiveness in specific medical conditions.

References

Two large reference listings of drugs are available at libraries and hospitals. The most complete and up-to-date listing is the **hospital formulary,** which gives information about the characteristics of drugs and their clinical usage (application to patient care) as approved by that particular hospital.

The ***Physicians' Desk Reference*** **(PDR)** is published by a private firm, and drug manufacturers pay to have their products listed. The PDR is a useful reference with several different indices to identify drugs, along with a complete description of the drug's properties and approved indications. It also gives precautions, warnings about side effects, and information about the recommended dosage and administration of each drug.

Most drugs are described online in individual product websites. The FDA maintains an extensive website that contains information about drug approvals and warnings about drug side effects.

Administration of Drugs

The route of administration of a drug (how it is taken into the body) determines how well it is absorbed into the blood, and its speed and duration of action.

Various methods of administering drugs are:

Oral administration. Drugs given by mouth are slowly dissolved and then absorbed into the bloodstream through the stomach or intestinal wall. This method, is convenient for the patient, however it has several convenient for the patient, has several disadvantages. If the drug is destroyed in the digestive tract by digestive juices, or if the drug is unable to pass through the intestinal wall, it will be ineffective. Oral administration is also a disadvantage if a rapid onset of action is desired. It takes several hours for oral medication to be fully absorbed into the bloodstream.

Sublingual administration. Drugs placed under the tongue dissolve in the saliva. For some agents, absorption may be rapid. Nitroglycerin tablets are administered in this way to treat attacks of angina (chest pain).

Rectal administration. Suppositories (cone-shaped objects containing drugs) and aqueous solutions are inserted into the rectum. Drugs are given by rectum when oral administration presents difficulties, as when the patient is nauseated and vomiting.

Parenteral administration. Injection of drug from a **syringe** (tube) through a hollow needle placed under the skin, into a muscle, vein, or body cavity. There are several types of parenteral injections and instillations:

1. **Intracavitary instillation.** This injection is made into a body cavity, such as the peritoneal or pleural cavity. For example, drugs may be introduced into the pleural

cavity in people who have pleural effusions due to malignant disease. The drug causes the pleural surfaces to adhere, thereby obliterating the pleural space and preventing the accumulation of fluid. This procedures is known as **pleurodesis.**

2. **Intradermal injection.** This shallow injection is made into the upper layers of the skin and is used chiefly in skin testing for allergic reactions.
3. **Subcutaneous (hypodermic) injection (subQ).** A small hypodermic needle is introduced into the subcutaneous tissue under the skin, usually on the upper arm, thigh, or abdomen. Insulin is injected daily via this route.
4. **Intramuscular injection (IM).** The buttock or upper arm is the usual site for this injection into muscle. This form of drug administration gives rapid absorption of single doses of drugs, but is inconvenient for continuous drug dosing.
5. **Intrathecal instillation.** This instillation is into the space under the membranes (meninges) surrounding the spinal cord and brain. Methotrexate (a cancer chemotherapeutic drug) is introduced intrathecally for treatment of leukemia involving the spinal canal.
6. **Intravenous injection (IV).** This injection is given directly into a vein. It is used when an immediate effect from the drug is desired or when the drug is poorly absorbed into the bloodstream after oral administration. Good technical skill is needed with intravenous injections because leakage of a drug into surrounding tissues may result in irritation and inflammation. Some medicines, such as anticancer drugs, are dissolved in a large volume of fluid and given by a several-hour-long intravenous infusion.

Inhalation. Vapors, or gases, taken into the nose or mouth are absorbed into the bloodstream through the thin walls of air sacs in the lungs. **Aerosols** (particles of drug suspended in air) are administered by inhalation, as are many anesthetics. Aerosolized medicines are used to treat asthma (spasm of the lung airways).

Topical application. Drugs are applied locally on the skin or mucous membranes of the body. **Antiseptics** (against infection) and **antipruritics** (against itching) commonly are used as ointments, creams, and lotions. **Transdermal patches** are used to deliver drugs (such as estrogen for hormone replacement therapy, slow-release pain medications, and nicotine for smoking cessation programs) continuously through the skin.

Table 21-1 summarizes the various routes of drug administration. Figure 21-2 illustrates examples of vehicles for drug administration.

TABLE 21-1

ROUTES OF DRUG ADMINISTRATION

ORAL	SUBLINGUAL	RECTAL	PARENTERAL	INHALATION	TOPICAL
Caplets Capsules Tablets	**Tablets**	**Suppositories**	**Injections and instillations** **Intracavitary** **Intradermal** **Intramuscular (IM)** **Intrathecal** **Intravenous (IV)** **Subcutaneous (subQ)**	**Aerosols**	**Lotions** **Creams** **Ointments** **Transdermal patches**

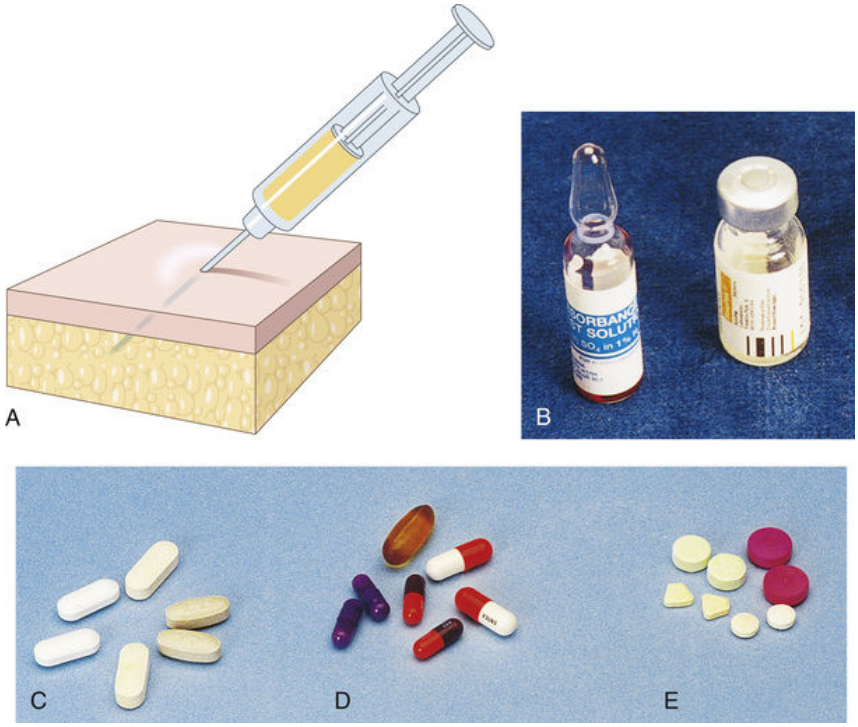


FIGURE 21-2 Examples of vehicles for drug administration. A, Hypodermic syringe. B, Ampule (small, sterile glass or plastic container containing a single dose of drug) and **vial** (glass container with a metal-enclosed rubber seal). **C, Caplets** (coated like a capsule, but solid like a tablet). **D, Capsules** (small soluble containers, usually made of gelatin, with a dose of medication). **E, Tablets** (small solid pills containing a dose of medication).

Drug Actions and Interactions

When a drug enters the body, it produces its effect by interacting with a specific target, or **receptor**. A drug may cross the cell membrane to reach its intracellular receptor or may react with a receptor on the cell's surface. The **dose** of a drug is the amount of drug administered, usually measured in milligrams or grams. **Schedule** is the exact timing and frequency of drug administration.

Various actions and interactions of drugs can occur after they have been absorbed into the bloodstream.

Additive action. If the combination of two similar drugs is equal to the **sum** of the effects of each, then the drugs are called additive. For example, if drug A gives 10% tumor kill as a chemotherapeutic agent and drug B gives 20% tumor kill, using A and B together would give 30% tumor kill.

If two drugs give less than an additive effect, they are called **antagonistic.** If they produce greater than additive effects, they are **synergistic** (as described next).

Synergism. A combination of two drugs sometimes can cause an effect that is **greater** than the sum of the individual effects of each drug given alone. For example, INH (isoniazid) and rifampin, two antibiotic drugs, are given together in the treatment of tuberculosis. Their synergistic action is more effective than the drugs taken individually.

Response. This is a desired and beneficial effect of a drug. Lowering blood pressure by antihypertensive drugs is an example. Reducing the size of a tumor by chemotherapy is

another example.

Tolerance. For some drugs, the effects of a given dose diminish as treatment continues, and increasing amounts are needed to produce the same effect. Tolerance is a feature of addiction to drugs such as morphine and meperidine hydrochloride (Demerol). **Addiction** is the physical and psychological **dependence** on and craving for a drug and the presence of clearly unpleasant effects when that drug or other agent such as a narcotic is stopped. **Controlled substances** are drugs such as opioids or narcotics that produce dependence and have potential for abuse or addiction. See pages 848–849 in the Practical Applications section for information about these drugs.

Drug Toxicity

Drug toxicity is an unpleasant and potentially dangerous effect of a drug. **Idiosyncrasy** is an example of an unpredictable type of drug toxicity. This is any unexpected and uncommon side effect that develops after administration of a drug. For example, in some people, penicillin causes an **idiosyncratic reaction,** such as **anaphylaxis** (acute hypersensitivity with asthma and shock). Anaphylaxis occurs as a result of prior exposure to a drug or foreign substance (antigen).

Other types of drug toxicity are more predictable and expected, such as stomach upset after aspirin use. Physicians are trained to be aware of the potential toxic effects of all drugs that they prescribe. **Iatrogenic** (produced by treatment) disorders can occur, however, as a result of mistakes in drug use or because of individual sensitivity to a given agent.

Side effects are unpleasant effects that routinely result from the use of a drug. They often occur with the usual therapeutic dosage of a drug and generally are tolerable and reversible when the drug is discontinued. For example, nausea, vomiting, and alopecia are common side effects of the chemotherapeutic drugs used to treat cancer. Other, rare side effects may be life-threatening, such as severe allergic reactions.

Contraindications are factors in a patient's condition that make the use of a particular drug dangerous and ill-advised. For example, in the presence of kidney failure, it is unwise to administer a drug, such as methotrexate, that is normally eliminated by the kidneys because excess drug will accumulate in the body and cause adverse effects.

Drug resistance is the loss of effectiveness of a drug. It is seen when drugs are unable to control the disease process in a particular patient. Resistance results from an important mutation (genetic change) in the disease being treated (bacterial, viral, or cancer.)

Classes of Drugs

The following are major classes of drugs with indications for their uses. Specific drugs in each class are included in tables for your reference (note that the brand names are capitalized). Appendix IV presents a complete list of these drugs and their class or type. Notice that many drug types end with the adjectival suffix -ic, meaning pertaining to, although they are used as nouns.

Anti-cancer drugs (chemotherapeutic, molecularly targeted, and immunotherapeutic drugs) is discussed in Chapter 19, pages 762–765.

Analgesics

An **analgesic** (alges/o = sensitivity to pain) is a drug that lessens pain. Mild analgesics relieve mild to moderate pain, such as myalgias, headaches, and toothaches. More potent analgesics are **narcotics** or **opioids,** which are derived from opium. These drugs may induce stupor (a condition of near-unconsciousness and reduced mental and physical activity). They are used only to relieve severe pain because they may produce dependence.

Some non-narcotic analgesics reduce fever, pain, and inflammation and are used for joint disorders (osteoarthritis and rheumatoid arthritis), painful menstruation, and acute pain due to minor injuries or infection. These agents are not steroid hormones (such as cortisone) and are

known as **nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs).** NSAIDs act on tissues to inhibit prostaglandins (hormone-like substances that sensitize peripheral pain receptors). A newer type of stronger NSAID is a COX-2 inhibitor. It relives pain and inflammation as do traditional NSAIDs but produces fewer gastrointestinal side effects. Currently the COX-2 inhibitor, celecoxib (Celebrex), is used but carries an increased risk of clot formation and heart attack. Table 21-2 lists various types of analgesics.

TABLE 21-2

ANALGESICS AND ANESTHETICS

Analgesics
Mild
acetaminophen (Tylenol) aspirin
Narcotic (Opioid)
codeine fentanyl patch (Duragesic) hydrocodone w/APAP* (Lortab, Vicodin) hydromorphone (Dilaudid) meperidine (Demerol) morphine oxycodone (OxyContin, Roxicodone) oxycodone with APAP* (Percocet, Roxicet, Endocet) tramadol (Ultram)
Nonsteroidal Anti-inflammatory Drugs (NSAIDs)
aspirin (Anacin, Ascriptin, Excedrin) celecoxib (Celebrex) diclofenac sodium (Voltaren) ibuprofen (Motrin, Advil) ketorolac (Toradol) naproxen (Aleve)
Anesthetics
General
ketamine (Ketalar) nitrous oxide propofol (Diprivan) thiopental (Pentothal)
Local or Regional
lidocaine (Xylocaine) lidocaine-prilocaine (EMLA—eutectic mixture of local anesthetics) procaine (Novocain)

*APAP, acetyl-*p*-aminophenol—acetaminophen (Tylenol, others).

Note: Brand names are in parentheses.

Anesthetics

An **anesthetic** is an agent that reduces or eliminates sensation. This effect may occur in all tissues of the body **(general anesthetic)** and puts a patient asleep, or may be limited to a particular region **(local or regional anesthetic).** General anesthetics are used for surgical procedures. They depress the activity of the central nervous system, producing loss of consciousness, and block the perception of pain. Local anesthetics inhibit the conduction of pain impulses in sensory nerves in

the region where they are injected or applied. An example is dental anesthesia with a local Novocain injection or nerve block for an orthopedic procedure.

Table 21-2 gives examples of specific anesthetics.

Antibiotics and Other Antimicrobials

Antimicrobial drugs kill or inhibit the growth of microorganisms, such as bacteria, viruses, fungi, and protozoans (one-celled organisms). Examples of antimicrobials are **antibiotics, antifungals, antivirals, and antiprotozoans**. See Table 21-3.

TABLE 21-3

ANTIBIOTICS AND OTHER ANTIMICROBIALS

Antibiotics	**Antifungals**
Antibacterial Drugs	amphotericin B (Fungilin)
Penicillins—amoxicillin with clavulanate (Augmentin)	caspofungin (Cancidas)
Tetracyclines—doxycycline	clotrimazole (Lotrimin, Mycelex)
Cephalosporins—cephalexin (Keflex)	flucytosine (Ancobon)
Quinolones—ciprofloxacin (Cipro)	griseofulvin (Gris-peg)
moxifloxacin (Avelox)	nystatin (Nilstat)
Lincomycins—clindamycin (Cleocin)	terbinafine (Lamisil)
Macrolides—erythromycin (Ery-Tab)	**Antivirals**
azithromycin (Zithromax)	acyclovir (Zovirax)—herpes virus drug
Sulfonamides—sulfamethoxazole (Bactrim)	ganciclovir (Zirgan)—CMV drug
Glycopeptides—vancomycin (Vancocin)	lamivudine (Epivir)—HIV and hepatitis B drug
Aminoglycosides—gentamicin (Garamycin)	oseltamivir (Tamiflu)—flu virus drug
tobramycin (Tobi)	ribavirin (Rebetol)—hepatitis C drug
Antitubercular Drugs	**Antiprotozoans**
ethambutol (Myambutol)	chloroquine (Aralen)
isoniazid [INH] (Nydrazid)	metronidazole (Flagyl)
pyrazinamide (Rifater)	
rifampin (Rifadin)	

Antibiotics—These are chemical agents, produced from molds or bacteria, that inhibit or kill bacteria. Antibiotics are not effective against viruses, like the flu virus. The use of antibiotics (penicillin was the first in the 1940s and now there are well over 100), has made it possible to cure many conditions such as pneumonia, urinary tract infections, and streptococcal pharyngitis ("strep throat"). Antibiotics are powerful drugs and, like all drugs, may have dangerous side effects. Also, with indiscriminate use of antibiotics, bacteria can develop resistance to a particular agent. Infections caused by these resistant bacteria can spread and may be difficult or impossible to cure. Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA) and *Clostridium difficile* (C. difficile) are two antibiotic-resistant bacteria.

Two examples of antibiotics are ***antibacterial*** and ***antitubercular drugs.***

Antibacterial drugs interfere with the growth and reproduction of bacteria. There are many kinds and use depends on the bacteria that they kill. Antibacterials can be grouped in classes that have similar chemical and pharmacologic properties.

Antitubercular drugs treat tuberculosis, a chronic and often drug-resistant bacterial infection.

Antifungals—These drugs treat fungal infections. These commonly occur in the skin (ringworm) vagina (candidiasis), mouth, bloodstream or lungs.

Antivirals—These drugs are used against infections due to viruses, such as the flu virus, herpesvirus, cytomegalovirus (CMV), human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), and hepatitis B and C viruses.

Antiprotozoans—These drugs act against infections caused by protozoans that become parasites (inhabit another organism and take their nutrients) in humans. Examples are malaria, gastrointestinal infections, ringworm, and lice.

Anticoagulants and Antiplatelet Drugs

Anticoagulants prevent clotting (coagulation) of blood. They prevent formation of clots or break up clots in blood vessels in conditions such as thrombosis and embolism. They also are used to prevent coagulation in preserved blood used for transfusions. **Heparin** is a natural anticoagulant purified from pig intestine or bovine (cow) lung. It is found in white blood cells. A more easily administered form of heparin called low-molecular-weight heparin (Fragmin, Lovenox) is self-injected subcutaneously on a daily basis and requires no monitoring of blood clotting ability, as is done with regular heparin. Other anticoagulants, including **warfarin (Coumadin),** are chemically synthesized. Warfarin's effects must be monitored by taking regular blood samples every two to three weeks to test prothrombin-INR time. The INR (International Normalized Ratio) test measures blood clotting time and is kept in a safe range of 2.0–3.0. The INR is kept in a safe range of 2.0–3.0. **Tissue-type plasminogen activator (tPA)** dissolves clots and is used to open vessels after myocardial infarction.

Direct-acting oral anticoagulant drugs that greatly reduce the risk of stroke are called **DOACs** (direct-acting oral anticoagulants). Examples are apixaban (Eliquis), dabigatran (Pradaxa), and rivaroxaban (Xarelto). They require no monitoring of blood coagulation.

Antiplatelet drugs reduce the tendency of platelets to stick together. Aspirin is an example of an antiplatelet drug; daily aspirin prophylaxis is recommended for patients with coronary artery disease and for those who have had heart attacks. Clopidogrel (Plavix) inhibits clumping of platelets and is used to prevent clotting after heart attacks and blood vessel procedures, such as angioplasty.

Table 21-4 lists anticoagulants and antiplatelet drugs.

TABLE 21-4

ANTICOAGULANTS AND ANTIPLATELET DRUGS, ANTICONVULSANTS, ANTIDEPRESSANTS, AND ANTI-ALZEIMER DRUGS

Anticoagulants and Antiplatelet Drugs	**Antidepressants**
apixaban (Eliquis)	amitriptyline (Elavil)‡
aspirin	bupropion (Wellbutrin SR)
clopidogrel (Plavix)	citalopram hydrobromide (Celexa)§
dabigatran (Pradaxa)	duloxetine (Cymbalta)
dalteparin (Fragmin)	escitalopram (Lexapro)§
edoxaban (Savaysa)	fluoxetine (Prozac)§
enoxaparin sodium (Lovenox)	fluvoxamine (Luvox)§
fondaparinux (Arixtra)	mirtazapine (Remeron)‡
heparin	paroxetine (Paxil)§
rivaroxaban (Xarelto)	quetiapine fumarate (Seroquel)
tissue plasminogen activator [tPA] warfarin (Coumadin)	sertraline (Zoloft)§
Anticonvulsants	trazodone (Desyrel)§
carbamazepine (Tegretol)	**Anti-Alzheimer Drugs**
gabapentin (Neurontin)	donepezil (Aricept)
levetiracetam (Keppra)	memantine (Namenda)
phenytoin (Dilantin)	
pregabalin (Lyrica)	
divalproex (Depakote)	
oxcarbazepine (Trileptal)	
clonazepam (Klonopin)	
lamotrigine (Lamictal)	

‡Tricyclic antidepressant drug.

§Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI).

Anticonvulsants

An **anticonvulsant** prevents or reduces the frequency of convulsions in various types of seizure disorders or epilepsy. Ideally, anticonvulsants depress abnormal spontaneous activity of the brain arising from areas of scar or tumor, without affecting normal brain function. Psychiatrists prescribe anticonvulsants for bipolar disorder (depressive and manic episodes) and anxiety. Two anticonvulsant drugs are also commonly used for chronic nerve pain resulting from injury, infection, or cancer. These are gabapentin (Neurontin) and pregabalin (Lyrica). Table 21-4 lists examples of anticonvulsants.

Antidepressants and Anti-Alzheimer Drugs

Antidepressants treat symptoms of depression. They can elevate mood, increase physical activity and mental alertness, and improve appetite and sleep patterns. Many antidepressants also are mild sedatives and treat mild forms of depression associated with anxiety.

The largest class of antidepressants increases the action of neurotransmitters by blocking their removal (reuptake) from the synapses (spaces between nerve cells). These drugs include **tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs)** and **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs).** Other antidepressants are **monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs),** which increase the length of time neurotransmitters work by blocking monoamine oxidase, an enzyme that normally inactivates neurotransmitters.

Lithium is a drug that is used to stabilize the mood swings and unpredictable behavior of people with bipolar disorder (manic-depressive illness).

Anti-Alzheimer drugs, used to treat symptoms of Alzheimer disease, act by aiding brain neurotransmitters (acetylcholine) or shielding brain cells from glutamate, a neurotransmitter that at high levels contributes to death of brain cells. Table 21-4 lists examples of antidepressants and anti-Alzheimer drugs.

Antidiabetics

Antidiabetics are used to treat diabetes mellitus (condition in which either the hormone insulin is not produced, or the body's tissues have developed insensitivity to insulin). Patients with type 1 diabetes have lost the ability to produce insulin as children or young adults and must receive daily injections of **insulin.** Human insulin and synthetic derivations produced by recombinant DNA research have largely replaced animal-derived insulin in the management of diabetes. Rapid-acting insulins peak at 30–60 minutes and last 3–5 hours. Short-acting insulins peak at 1½ to 2 hours and last 6–8 hours. Intermediate-acting insulins peak at 4–12 hours and last 14–24 hours. Long-acting insulins last up to 24 hours.

Patients with type 2 diabetes usually develop the disease later in life and have insensitivity to insulin. Their diabetes may be well controlled by limiting sugars in their diet and by taking **oral antidiabetic drugs.** These include **sulfonylureas** (lower the levels of glucose in the blood by stimulating the production of insulin), **biguanides** (increase the body's sensitivity to insulin and reduce the production of glucose by the liver), **alpha-glucosidase inhibitors** (temporarily block enzymes that digest sugars), **thiazolidinediones** (enhance glucose uptake into tissues), and **meglitinides** (stimulate the beta cells in the pancreas to produce insulin). **DPP4 inhibitors** work by inhibiting an enzyme so that cells make more insulin when glucose levels are high. **SGLT2 inhibitors** cause the body to excrete glucose in the urine. **Non-insulin injectable medications** stimulate cells in the pancreas to make and release insulin. These last longer in the bloodstream and are injected once a week.

An **insulin pump** is a device strapped to the patient's waist that periodically delivers (through a subcutaneous needle inserted in the abdomen) the desired amount of insulin.

Table 21-5 lists antidiabetic drugs.

TABLE 21-5
ANTIDIABETICS

Insulins	**Oral Antidiabetics**
Rapid-Acting	***Sulfonylureas***
insulin aspart (Novolog, Fiasp)	glipizide (Glucotrol XL)
insulin glulisine (Apidra)	glyburide (DiaBeta, Micronase)
insulin lispro (Humalog, Admelog)	glimepiride (Amaryl)
Short-Acting	***Meglitinides***
Regular insulin (Humulin R)	repaglinide (Prandin)
Intermediate-Acting	nateglinide (Starlix)
insulin NPH (Humulin N, Novolin N)	***Biguanides***
insulin combinations (Humalog Mix)	metformin
Long-Acting	***Thiazolidinediones***
insulin detemir (Levemir)	pioglitazone (Actos)
insulin glargine (Lantus,Toujeo)	rosiglitazone (Avandia)
insulin degludec (Tresiba)	***Alpha-Glucosidase Inhibitors***
Non-Insulin Injectables	acarbose (Precose)
GLP-1 Agonist	miglitol (Glyset)
exenatide (Byetta, Bydureon)	***DPP-4 Inhibitors***
dulaglutide (Trulicity)	alogliptin (Nesina)
liraglutide (Victoza)	linagliptin (Tradjenta)
	sitagliptin (Januvia)
	saxagliptin (Onglyza)
	SGLT2 Inhibitors
	dapagliflozin (Farxiga)
	canagliflozin (Invokana)
	empagliflozin (Jardiance)

Antihistamines

Antihistamines block the action of histamine, which normally is released in the body in allergic reactions. Histamine causes allergic symptoms such as hives, bronchial asthma, hay fever, and in severe cases, **anaphylactic shock** (dyspnea, hypotension, and loss of consciousness). Antihistamines cannot cure the allergic reaction, but they relieve its symptoms. Many antihistamines have strong **antiemetic** (prevention of nausea) activity and are used to prevent motion sickness. The most common side effects of antihistamines are drowsiness, blurred vision, tremors, digestive upset, and lack of motor coordination.

Table 21-6 lists common antihistamines.

TABLE 21-6
ANTIHISTAMINES AND ANTIOSTEOPOROSIS DRUGS

Antihistamines
cetirizine (Zyrtec)
chlorpheniramine maleate (Chlor-Trimeton)
diphenhydramine (Benadryl)
fexofenadine (Allegra)
loratadine (Claritin, Alavert)
meclizine (Antivert)
promethazine (Phenergan)
Antiosteoporosis Drugs
Bisphosphonates—prevent bone loss
alendronate (Fosamax)
ibandronate sodium (Boniva)
zoledronic acid (Zometa)
Selective Estrogen Receptor Modulators (SERMs)
raloxifene (Evista)
tamoxifen (Nolvadex)
Other Antiosteoporosis Drugs
denosumab (Prolia)*
teriparatide (Forteo)†

*Monoclonal antibody against a protein that signals bone removal.

†Hormone that stimulates bone formation.

Antiosteoporosis Drugs

Osteoporosis is a disorder marked by loss of bone density. Calcium, vitamin D, and estrogen may increase calcium deposition in bone. Several different drugs are used to treat osteoporosis. **Bisphosphonates** prevent bone loss, and hormone-like drugs called **selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERMs)** increase bone formation. See Table 21-6.

Cardiovascular Drugs

Cardiovascular drugs act on the heart or the blood vessels to treat hypertension, angina (pain due to decreased oxygen delivery to heart muscle), myocardial infarction (heart attack), congestive heart failure, and arrhythmias. **Digoxin (Lanoxin)** helps the heart pump more forcefully in heart failure. Other cardiovascular drugs include:

- **Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors**—dilate blood vessels to lower blood pressure, improve the performance of the heart, and reduce its workload. They prevent the conversion of angiotensin I into angiotensin II, which is a powerful vasopressor (vasoconstrictor). ACE inhibitors reduce the risk of heart attack, stroke, heart failure and death even if a patient is not hypertensive.
- **Angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARBs)**—lower blood pressure by preventing angiotensin from acting on receptors in blood vessels. They are used in patients who do not tolerate ACE inhibitors.
- **Antiarrhythmics**—treat abnormal heart rhythms. They slow the response of heart muscle to nerve stimulation or slow the rate at which impulses are carried throughout the heart.
- **Beta blockers**—slow heart rate, decrease output of the heart, and reduce blood pressure by blocking the action of epinephrine at receptor sites in the heart muscle and in blood vessels.

Beta blockers are prescribed for angina, hypertension, arrhythmias (such as fibrillation), and prevention of a second heart attack.

Calcium channel blockers—dilate blood vessels and lower blood pressure and are used to treat arrhythmias. They inhibit the entry of calcium (necessary for blood vessel contraction) into the muscles of the heart and blood vessels.

Cardiac glycosides—made from digitalis (foxglove plant). These drugs increase the force of contraction of the heart and are used to treat heart failure and atrial fibrillation.

Cholesterol-binding drugs—bind to dietary cholesterol and prevent its uptake from the gastrointestinal tract. PCSK9 inhibitors lower LDL cholesterol in the blood. These drugs, in some cases, can actually prevent heart attacks or strokes.

Cholesterol-lowering drugs—statins block the formation of cholesterol in the liver and treat hypercholesterolemia (high levels of cholesterol in the blood), which is a major factor in the development of heart disease.

Diuretics—reduce the volume of blood in the body by promoting the kidney to remove water and salt through urine (diuresis). They treat hypertension (high blood pressure) and congestive heart failure.

Table 21-7 gives examples of cardiovascular drugs.

TABLE 21-7
CARDIOVASCULAR DRUGS

Angiotensin-Converting Enzyme (ACE) Inhibitors
enalapril maleate (Vasotec) lisinopril (Prinivil, Zestril) quinapril (Accupril) ramipril (Altace)
Angiotensin II Receptor Blockers
irbesartan (Avapro) losartan (Cozaar) valsartan (Diovan)
Antiarrhythmics
amiodarone (Cordarone) ibutilide (Corvert) sotalol (Betapace)
Beta Blockers
atenolol (Tenormin) carvedilol (Coreg) metoprolol (Lopressor, Toprol-XL) propranolol (Inderal)
Calcium Channel Blockers
amlodipine (Norvasc) diltiazem (Cardizem CD) felodipine (Plendil) nifedipine (Adalat CC, Procardia)
Cardiac Glycosides
digoxin (Lanoxin)
Cholesterol-Binding Drugs
alirocumab (Praluent) + cholestyramine (Questran) colestipol (Colestid) evolocumab (Repatha) + ezetimibe (Zetia)
Cholesterol-Lowering Drugs (Statins)
atorvastatin (Lipitor) fluvastatin (Lescol) pravastatin (Pravachol)
Diuretics
furosemide (Lasix) chlorothiazide (Diuril) spironolactone (Aldactone)

Note: +PCSK9 inhibitor.

Endocrine Drugs

Endocrine preparations act in much the same manner as the naturally occurring (endogenous) hormones discussed in Chapter 18. **Androgens,** normally made by the testes and adrenal glands, are used for male hormone replacement and to treat endometriosis and anemia. **Antiandrogens** interfere with the production of androgens or with their binding in tissues. They are prescribed for prostate cancer. **Estrogens** are female hormones, normally produced by the ovaries, that are used

for symptoms associated with menopause (estrogen replacement therapy) and to prevent postmenopausal osteoporosis. **Aromatase inhibitors** also reduce the amount of estrogen (estradiol) in the blood and are effective against breast cancer. They work by decreasing the amount of estrogen in fatty tissue.

Selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERMs) have estrogen-like effects on bone (increase in bone density) and on lipid metabolism (decrease in cholesterol levels). However, they lack estrogenic effects on uterus and breast tissue. SERMs are used to treat postmenopausal osteoporosis and breast cancer. Tamoxifen and raloxifene are SERMs. **Progestins** are prescribed for abnormal uterine bleeding caused by hormonal imbalance and, together with estrogen, in hormone replacement therapy and oral contraceptives.

Thyroid hormone is administered when there is a low output of hormone from the thyroid gland. **Calcitonin** (a thyroid hormone) is used to treat osteoporosis. It increases calcium in the blood and promotes bone deposition. **Glucocorticoids** (adrenal corticosteroids) are prescribed for reduction of inflammation and a wide range of other disorders, including arthritis, severe skin and allergic conditions, respiratory and blood disorders, gastrointestinal ailments, and malignant conditions.

A fragment of human **parathyroid hormone (PTH)** has been approved for osteoporosis treatment. This agent stimulates new bone formation. **Growth hormone release–inhibiting factor (somatostatin)** can be manufactured and given to treat gastrointestinal symptoms associated with acromegaly and other tumors.

Table 21-8 gives examples of endocrine drugs.

TABLE 21-8
ENDOCRINE DRUGS

Androgens
fluoxymesterone (Halotestin) methyltestosterone (Virilon)
Antiandrogens
abiraterone (Zytiga) enzalutamide (XTANDI) flutamide (Eulexin) nilutamide (Casodex)
Aromatase Inhibitors
anastrozole (Arimidex) letrozole (Femara)
Estrogens
estrogens (Premarin, Prempro)
Glucocorticoids
dexamethasone (Decadron) hydrocortisone prednisone (Deltasone) triamcinolone (Aristocort)
Growth Hormone–Release Inhibiting Factor
octreotide (Sandostatin)
Parathyroid Hormone Fragment
teriparatide (Forteo)
Progestins
medroxyprogesterone acetate (Cycrin, Provera) megestrol (Megace)
Selective Estrogen Receptor Modulators (SERMs)
raloxifene (Evista) tamoxifen (Nolvadex)
Thyroid Hormones
calcitonin (Cibacalcin) levothyroxine (Levoxyl, Synthroid) liothyronine (Cytomel) thyroid ISP (Armour Thyroid)

Note: Brand names are in parentheses.

Gastrointestinal Drugs

Gastrointestinal drugs often are used to relieve uncomfortable and potentially dangerous symptoms, rather than as cures for specific diseases. **Antacids** neutralize the hydrochloric acid in the stomach to relieve symptoms of peptic ulcer, esophagitis, and reflux. **Antiulcer** drugs block secretion of acid by cells in the lining of the stomach and are prescribed for patients with gastric and duodenal ulcers and **gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD).** Histamine H_2 receptor blockers such as **cimetidine (Tagamet)** turn off histamine, which promotes secretion of stomach acid. Another drug, **omeprazole (Prilosec),** works by stopping acid production by a different method (proton pump inhibition).

Antidiarrheal drugs relieve diarrhea and decrease the rapid movement (peristalsis) in the muscular walls of the colon. **Cathartics** relieve constipation and promote defecation for diagnostic and operative procedures and are used to treat disorders of the gastrointestinal tract. Some

cathartics increase the intestinal salt content to cause fluid to fill the intestines; others increase the bulk of the feces to promote peristalsis. Another type of cathartic lubricates the intestinal tract to produce soft stools. **Laxatives** are mild cathartics, and **purgatives** are strong cathartics.

Antinauseants (antiemetics) relieve nausea and vomiting and overcome vertigo, dizziness, motion sickness, and similar symptoms due to labyrinthitis (inflammation of the inner ear).

Anti-TNF (tumor necrosis factor) drugs are used to treat **autoimmune diseases** such as **Crohn's.** These drugs also are used against rheumatoid arthritis.

Table 21-9 lists the various types of gastrointestinal drugs and examples of each.

TABLE 21-9
GASTROINTESTINAL DRUGS

Antacids
aluminum and magnesium antacid (Gaviscon) magnesium antacid (milk of magnesia) aluminum antacid (Rolaids)
Antidiarrheals
diphenoxylate + atropine (Lomotil) loperamide (Imodium) paregoric
Antinauseants (Antiemetics)
metoclopramide (Reglan) ondansetron (Zofran) promethazine (Phenergan) prochlorperazine maleate (Compazine)
Anti–Tumor Necrosis Factor (TNF) Drugs
adalimumab (Humira) certolizumab pegol (Cimzia) etanercept (Enbrel) golimumab (Simponi) infliximab (Remicade)
Antiulcer and Anti–Gastrointestinal Reflux Disease (GERD) Drugs
cimetidine (Tagamet) esomeprazole (Nexium) famotidine (Pepcid) lansoprazole (Prevacid) omeprazole (Prilosec)
Cathartics
casanthranol + docusate sodium (Peri-Colace)

Note: Brand names are in parentheses.

Respiratory Drugs

Respiratory drugs are prescribed for the treatment of asthma and COPD (chronic obstructive pulmonary diseases such as emphysema and chronic bronchitis.) **Bronchodilators** open bronchial tubes and are administered by injection or aerosol inhalers. **Steroid drugs** are inhaled or given intravenously and orally to reduce chronic inflammation in respiratory passageways. **Leukotriene modifiers** are recent additions to the anti-inflammatory therapy of asthma. They prevent asthma attacks and bronchospasms by blocking leukotriene (bronchoconstrictor) from binding to receptors in respiratory tissues. Table 21-10 gives examples of respiratory drugs.

TABLE 21-10
RESPIRATORY DRUGS

Bronchodilators
albuterol (Proventil, Ventolin HFA)*
formoterol + budesonide (Symbicort)†
ipratropium + albuterol (Combivent)*
salmeterol + fluticasone (Advair Diskus)†
tiotropium bromide (Spiriva)‡
Leukotriene Modifiers
montelukast (Singulair)
zafirlukast (Accolate)
zileuton (Zyflo)
Steroids: Inhalers
fluticasone (Flovent)
mometasone (Asmanex)
triamcinolone (Azmacort)
Steroids: Intravenous or Oral
dexamethasone (Decadron)
methylprednisolone (Medrol)
prednisone

*Short-acting; inhaled.

†Long-acting.

‡Anticholinergic; bronchodilator enhancers.

Sedative-Hypnotics

Sedative-hypnotics are medications that depress the central nervous system and promote drowsiness (sedatives) and sleep (hypnotics). They are prescribed for insomnia and sleep disorders. These products have a very high abuse potential and should be used only for short periods of time and under close supervision. **Barbiturates** and **benzodiazepines** are the two major categories of sedative-hypnotics.

Low doses of **benzodiazepines** (which influence the part of the brain responsible for emotions) may act as sedatives. In higher doses, benzodiazepines may act as hypnotics (to promote sleep).

Table 21-11 gives examples of sedative-hypnotics.

TABLE 21-11

SEDATIVE-HYPNOTICS, STIMULANTS, AND TRANQUILIZERS

Sedative-Hypnotics
methaqualone (Quaalude)
temazepam (Restoril)*
triazolam (Halcion)*
zolpidem tartrate (Ambien)
Stimulants
caffeine
dextroamphetamine sulfate (Dexedrine)
dextroamphetamine and amphetamine (Adderall)
lisdexamfetamine (Vyvanse)
methylphenidate (Ritalin)
modafinil (Provigil)
Tranquilizers
Minor
alprazolam (Xanax)*
buspirone (BuSpar)
diazepam (Valium)*
lorazepam (Ativan)*
Major
aripiprazole (Abilify)
chlorpromazine (Thorazine)†
haloperidol (Haldol)
lithium carbonate (Eskalith)
olanzapine (Zyprexa)
risperidone (Risperdal)
thioridazine (Mellaril)†
trifluoperazine (Stelazine)†

*Benzodiazepine.

†Phenothiazine.

Stimulants

Stimulants are drugs that act on the brain to speed up vital processes (heart and respiration) in cases of shock and collapse. They also increase alertness and inhibit hyperactive behavior in children. High doses can produce restlessness, insomnia, and hypertension. Examples of stimulants are **amphetamines**—used to prevent narcolepsy (seizures of sleep), to suppress appetite, and to calm hyperkinetic children. **Caffeine** also is a cerebral stimulant. It is used in drugs to relieve certain types of headache by constricting cerebral blood vessels. Table 21-11 lists examples of stimulants.

Tranquilizers

Tranquilizers are useful for controlling anxiety. Minor tranquilizers **(benzodiazepines)** control minor symptoms of anxiety. Major tranquilizers **(phenothiazines)** control more severe disturbances of behavior. Table 21-11 lists examples of minor and major tranquilizers.

Vocabulary

This list reviews many of the new terms introduced in the text. Refer to the Pronunciation of Terms on page 859 for help with unfamiliar or difficult words.

General Terms

addiction	Physical and psychological dependence on and craving for a drug.
additive action	Drug action in which the combination of two similar drugs is equal to the sum of the effects of each.
aerosol	Particles of drug suspended in air and inhaled.
anaphylaxis	Exaggerated hypersensitivity reaction to a previously encountered drug or foreign protein.
antagonistic action	Combination of two drugs gives less than an additive effect (action).
antidote	Agent given to counteract an unwanted effect of a drug.
brand name	Commercial name for a drug; trademark or trade name.
chemical name	Chemical formula for a drug.
contraindications	Factors that prevent the use of a drug or treatment.
controlled substances	Drugs that produce tolerance and dependence and have potential for abuse or addiction. See page 848–849.
dependence	Physiologic need for a drug with prolonged use.
dose	Amount of drug administered, usually measured in milligrams.
Food and Drug Administration (FDA)	Government agency having the legal responsibility for enforcing proper drug manufacture and clinical use.
generic name	Legal noncommercial name for a drug.
iatrogenic	Condition caused by treatment (drugs or procedures) given by physicians or medical personnel.
idiosyncratic reaction	Unexpected effect produced in a particularly sensitive patient but not seen in most people.
inhalation	Administration of drugs in gaseous or vapor form through the nose or mouth.
medicinal chemistry	Study of new drug synthesis; relationship between chemical structure and biological effects.
molecular pharmacology	Study of interaction of drugs and their target molecules such as enzymes, or cell surface receptors.
oral administration	Drugs are given by mouth.
parenteral administration	Drugs are given by injection into the skin, muscles, or veins (any route other than through the digestive tract). Examples are subcutaneous, intradermal, intramuscular, intravenous, intrathecal, and intracavitary injections and instillations.
pharmacist	Specialist in preparing and dispensing drugs.
pharmacy	Location for preparing and dispensing drugs; also the study of preparing and dispensing drugs.
pharmacodynamics	Study of drug effects within the body.
pharmacokinetics	Study of drug absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion over a period of time.
pharmacologist	Specialist in the study of the properties, uses, and side effects of drugs.
pharmacology	Study of the preparation, properties, uses, and side effects of drugs.
Physicians' Desk Reference	Reference book that lists drug products; **PDR.**
receptor	Target substance with which a drug interacts in the body.
rectal administration	Drugs are inserted through the anus into the rectum.
resistance	Lack of beneficial response; seen when drugs are unable to control the disease process.
response	Desired and beneficial effect of a drug.
schedule	Exact timing and frequency of drug administration.
side effect	Adverse reaction, usually minor, that routinely results from the use of a

	drug.
sublingual administration	Drugs are given by placement under the tongue.
synergism	Combination of two drugs causes an effect that is greater than the sum of the individual effects of each drug alone.
syringe	Instrument (tube) for introducing or withdrawing fluids from the body.
tolerance	Larger and larger drug doses must be given to achieve the desired effect. The patient becomes resistant to the action of a drug as treatment progresses.
topical application	Drugs are applied locally on the skin or mucous membranes of the body; ointments, creams, and lotions are applied topically.
toxicity	Harmful effects of a drug.
toxicology	Study of harmful chemicals and their effects on the body.
transport	Movement of a drug across a cell membrane into body cells.
United States Pharmacopeia	Authoritative list of drugs, formulas, and preparations that sets a standard for drug manufacturing and dispensing; **USP.**
vitamin	Substance found in foods and essential in small quantities for growth and good health.
Classes of Drugs and Related Terms	
ACE inhibitor	Lowers blood pressure by dilating blood vessels. Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors block the conversion of angiotensin I to angiotensin II (a powerful vasoconstrictor).
amphetamine	Central nervous system stimulant.
analgesic	Relieves pain.
androgen	Male hormone.
anesthetic	Reduces or eliminates sensation; general and local.
angiotensin II receptor blocker	Lowers blood pressure by preventing angiotensin from acting on receptors in blood vessels.
antacid	Neutralizes acid in the stomach.
antiandrogen	Blocks the formation of androgens or interferes with their effect in tissues.
antiarrhythmic	Treats abnormal heart rhythms.
antibiotic	Chemical substance, produced by a plant or microorganism, that has the ability to inhibit or destroy foreign organisms in the body.
anticoagulant	Prevents blood clotting.
anticonvulsant	Prevents convulsions (abnormal brain activity).
antidepressant	Relieves symptoms of depression.
antidiabetic	Drug given to prevent or treat diabetes mellitus.
antidiarrheal	Prevents diarrhea.
antiemetic	Prevents nausea and vomiting.
antihistamine	Blocks the action of histamine and helps prevent symptoms of allergy.
antimicrobial	Agent that kills microorganisms or stops their growth.
antinauseant	Relieves nausea and vomiting; antiemetic.
antiplatelet	Reduces the tendency of platelets to stick together and form a clot.
antiulcer	Inhibits the secretion of acid by cells lining the stomach.
antiviral	Acts against viruses such as herpesviruses and HIV.
aromatase inhibitor	Reduces estrogen in the blood by blocking the enzyme aromatase.
beta blocker	Blocks the action of epinephrine at sites on receptors of heart muscle cells, the muscle lining of blood vessels, and bronchial tubes; antiarrhythmic, antianginal, and antihypertensive. Can also be written as beta-blocker.
bisphosphonate	Prevents bone loss in osteoporosis.
caffeine	Central nervous system stimulant (found in coffee and tea).

calcium channel blocker	Blocks the entrance of calcium into heart muscle and muscle lining of blood vessels; used as an antiarrhythmic, antianginal, and antihypertensive; also called calcium antagonist.
cardiac glycoside	Drug that treats heart failure by increasing the force of contraction of the heart; digoxin is an example.
cardiovascular drug	Acts on the heart and blood vessels. This category of drug includes ACE inhibitors, beta blockers, calcium channel blockers, cholesterol-lowering drugs or statins, and diuretics.
cathartic	Relieves constipation.
cholesterol-binding drug	Binds to dietary cholesterol and prevents its uptake from the gastrointestinal tract.
cholesterol-lowering drug	Lowers cholesterol by preventing its production by the liver; statin.
diuretic	Increases the production of urine and thus reduces the volume of fluid in the body; antihypertensive.
emetic	Promotes vomiting.
endocrine drug	Hormone or hormone-like drug. Examples are androgens, estrogens, progestins, SERMs, thyroid hormones, and glucocorticoids.
estrogen	Female hormone that promotes development of secondary sex characteristics and supports reproductive tissues.
gastrointestinal drug	Relieves symptoms of diseases in the gastrointestinal tract. Examples are antacids, antiulcer drugs, antidiarrheal drugs, cathartics, laxatives, purgatives, and antinauseants (antiemetics).
glucocorticoid	Hormone from the adrenal cortex that raises blood sugar and reduces inflammation.
hypnotic	Produces sleep or a trance-like state.
laxative	Weak cathartic.
narcotic	Habit-forming drug (potent analgesic) that relieves pain by producing stupor or insensibility; morphine and opium are examples.
progestin	Female hormone that stimulates the uterine lining during pregnancy and is also used in treatment of abnormal uterine bleeding and for hormone replacement therapy.
purgative	Relieves constipation; strong cathartic.
respiratory drug	Treats asthma, emphysema, and infections of the respiratory system. Bronchodilators are examples.
sedative	Mildly hypnotic drug that relaxes without necessarily producing sleep. **Benzodiazepines** are examples.
stimulant	Excites and promotes activity. Caffeine and amphetamines are examples.
thyroid hormone	Stimulates cellular metabolism.
tranquilizer	Controls anxiety and severe disturbances of behavior.

Terminology

Write the meaning of the medical term in the space provided.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
aer/o	air	aerosol _____ *The suffix -sol means solution.*	
alges/o	sensitivity to pain	analgesic _____	
bronch/o	bronchial tube	bronchodilator _____ *Theophylline is a smooth muscle relaxant used to treat asthma, emphysema, and chronic bronchitis.*	
chem/o	drug	chemotherapy _____	
cras/o	mixture	idiosyncrasy _____ *Idi/o means individual, peculiar; syn- means together. An idiosyncrasy is an abnormal, unexpected effect of a drug that is peculiar to an individual patient.*	
cutane/o	skin	subcutaneous _____	
derm/o	skin	hypodermic _____	
erg/o	work	synergism _____	
esthes/o	feeling, sensation	anesthesia _____	
hist/o	tissue	antihistamine _____ *The suffix -amine indicates a nitrogen-containing compound.* ***Histamine*** *is a substance found in all body tissues (it causes capillary dilation and gastric acid secretion and constricts bronchial tube smooth muscle); an excess of histamine is released when the body comes into contact with substances to which it is sensitive.*	
hypn/o	sleep	hypnotic _____	
iatr/o	treatment	iatrogenic _____	
lingu/o	tongue	sublingual _____	
myc/o	mold, fungus	erythromycin _____	
narc/o	stupor	narcotic _____	
or/o	mouth	oral _____	
pharmac/o	drug	pharmacology _____	
prurit/o	itching	antipruritic _____	
pyret/o	fever	antipyretic _____	
thec/o	sheath (of brain and spinal cord)	intrathecal _____	
tox/o	poison	toxic _____	
toxic/o	poison	toxicology _____	
vas/o	vessel	vasodilator _____	
ven/o	vein	intravenous _____	
vit/o	life	vitamin _____ *The term comes from the original thought that vitamins contained amino acids. The first vitamins discovered were nitrogen-containing substances called amines. Table 21-12 lists vitamins, their medical names, and foods that are a major source of each.*	

TABLE 21-12

VITAMINS

VITAMIN	CHEMICAL NAME(S)	FOOD SOURCES
vitamin A	retinol; dehydroretinol	leafy, green and yellow vegetables; liver, eggs, cod liver oil
vitamin B_1	thiamine	yeast, ham, liver, peanuts, milk
vitamin B_2	riboflavin	milk, liver, green vegetables
vitamin B_3	niacin (nicotinic acid)	yeast, liver, peanuts, fish, poultry
vitamin B_6	pyridoxine	liver, fish, yeast
vitamin B_9	folic acid	vegetables, liver, yeast, sunflower seeds, cereals
vitamin B_{12}	cyanocobalamin	milk, eggs, liver
vitamin C	ascorbic acid	citrus fruits, vegetables
vitamin D	calciferol	cod liver oil, milk, egg yolk
vitamin E	alpha-glucosidase	wheat germ oil, cereals, egg yolk
vitamin K	phytonadione; menaquinone	kale, spinach, collards, mustard greens

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
ana-	upward, excessive, again	anaphylaxis _____ *The suffix -phylaxis means protection.*
anti-	against	antidote _____ *The suffix -dote comes from Greek, meaning what is given.* antibiotic _____
contra-	against, opposite	contraindication _____ *Alternatively, **drug indications** are reasons to prescribe a medication; a bacterial infection may be an indication to prescribe a specific antibiotic.*
par-	other than, apart from	parenteral _____ *Enter/o means intestine.*
syn-	together, with	synergistic _____

Abbreviations

Many of the notations used by physicians in writing prescriptions are abbreviations for Latin phrases, which appear in *italics* within parentheses. An Official "Do Not Use" list of abbreviations is on the next page.

a.c., ac	before meals (*ante cibum*)
ACE	angiotensin-converting enzyme
ad lib	freely, as desired (*ad libitum*)
APAP	acetaminophen (Tylenol)
ARB	angiotensin II receptor blocker
b.i.d., bid	two times a day (*bis in die*)
c̄	with
Caps	capsules
cc	cubic centimeter
DOAC	direct-acting oral anticoagulant
FDA	U.S. Food and Drug Administration
gm, g	gram
gtt	drops (*guttae*)
h	hour (*hora*)
h.s., hs	at bedtime (*hora somni*)
H2 blocker	histamine H_2 receptor antagonist
HRT	hormone replacement therapy
IM	intramuscular
INH	isoniazid—antituberculosis agent
IV	intravenous
MAOI	monoamine oxidase inhibitor
mg	milligram
ml, mL	milliliter
NPO	nothing by mouth (*nil per os*)
NSAID	nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug
p̄	after (*post*)
p.c., pc	after meals (*post cibum*)
PCA	patient-controlled analgesia
PDR	*Physicians' Desk Reference*
PICC	peripherally inserted central catheter–intravenous access for over a long period of time
PO, p.o., po	by mouth (*per os*)
p.r.n., prn	as needed (*pro re nata*)
Pt	patient
q	every (*quaque*)
q.h., qh	every hour (*quaque hora*)
q2h	every 2 hours
q.i.d., qid	four times a day (*quater in die*)
q.s., qs	sufficient quantity (*quantum satis*)
qAM	every morning
qPM	every evening
Rx	prescription
s̄	without (*sine*)
SERM	selective estrogen receptor modulator
Sig.	directions—how to take medication
SL	sublingual
s.o.s.	if it is necessary (*si opus sit*)
SSRI	selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor
subQ	subcutaneous
tab	tablet

TCA	tricyclic antidepressant
t.i.d., tid	three times daily (*ter in die*)

Official "Do Not Use" List

Do Not Use	Potential Problem	Use Instead
U, u (unit)	Mistaken for "0" (zero), the number "4" (four), or "cc"	Write "unit"
IU (International Unit)	Mistaken for "IV" (intravenous) or the number "10" (ten)	Write "International Unit"
Q.D., QD, q.d., qd (daily) Q.O.D., QOD, q.o.d., qod (every other day)	Mistaken for each other Period after Q mistaken for "I" and "O" mistaken for "I"	Write "daily" Write "every other day"
Trailing zero (X.0 mg)† Lack of leading zero (.X mg)	Decimal point is missed	Write X mg Write 0.X mg
MS MSO_4 and $MgSO_4$	Can mean morphine sulfate or magnesium sulfate Confused for one another	Write "morphine sulfate" Write "magnesium sulfate"
SQ or SC	Mistaken as SL for sublingual, or "5 every"	Write "Sub-Q", "subQ", or "subcutaneously"

†**Exception:** A "trailing zero" may be used only when required to demonstrate the level of precision of the value being reported, such as for laboratory results, imaging studies that report size of lesions, or catheter/tube sizes. It may not be used in medication orders or other medication-related documentation.

*Applies to all orders and all medication-related documentation that is handwritten (including free-text computer entry) or on pre-printed forms. See the Evolve website for additional abbreviations and symbols that may be included in the future "Do Not Use" list.

Practical Applications

DOs and DON'Ts of Taking Medicines

Check the DO or DON'T box for the following scenarios.

1. If your medicine prescription label says: 1 tab PO a.c., you take it before meals.	DO □ DON'T □
Answer: DO (a.c. means *ante cibum* "before meals". Some medications are better absorbed on an empty stomach, such as 1 hour before eating or 2 hours after eating. READ labels carefully!)	
2. If your medicine prescription label says: 1 PO qPM prn pain, you take it every morning.	DO □ DON'T □
Answer: DON'T (qPM means "every evening" and PRN means "when needed.")	
3. If you feel 100% better, skip the last few doses of antibiotic medication.	DO □ DON'T □
Answer: DON'T (Antibiotics work best when an optimal blood level of the drug is reached and then maintained for a period of time. If you stop your course of treatment early, you may prevent complete eradication of infection. Finish your entire course of medication and call your doctor if you are not feeling better.)	
4. Lend a friend your pills if she has the same condition or is taking the same medication.	DO □ DON'T □
Answer: DON'T (People take different doses of medications and for different reasons. NEVER SHARE. Any mistake could have serious side effects.)	
5. You may take your cholesterol-lowering statin pill with grapefruit juice.	DO □ DON'T □
Answer: DON'T (Grapefruit juice increases blood levels of Lipitor that may lead to toxic side effects such as liver and muscle damage.)	
6. It's a good idea to take your ACE inhibitor (blood pressure medication) with bananas.	DO □ DON'T □
Answer: DON'T (Bananas contain potassium, and ACE inhibitors cause the body to retain potassium. If you combine the two, you may end up with a dangerously high level of potassium in the blood.)	
7. Add vegetables like kale, mustard greens, and spinach to your diet when you are taking the anticoagulant warfarin (Coumadin).	DO □ DON'T □
Answer: DON'T (Kale and similar vegetables are rich in vitamin K. Warfarin works as an anticoagulant by decreasing the activity of vitamin K, which is necessary for clotting. Therefore, kale and other vegetables can counteract the anti-clotting benefits of warfarin.)	
8. After taking your heart medicine digoxin, you may enjoy a treat of black licorice.	DO □ DON'T □
Answer: DON'T (Black licorice, or glycyrrhiza glabra, decreases potassium levels in the body. Low potassium levels can increase the side effects that may occur with digoxin usage. These side effects are nausea, vomiting, headache, loss of appetite and diarrhea.)	
9. Enjoy a glass or two of wine when you are taking the antibiotic Flagyl (metronidazole).	DO □ DON'T □
Answer: DON'T (Flagyl interferes with how alcohol is eliminated from the body and results in gastrointestinal symptoms like nausea and vomiting.)	
10. Eat walnuts, Brazil nuts, soybean flour, or foods with high fiber content when you are	DO □

taking thyroid medication (levothyroxine).	DON'T □
Answer: DON'T (Walnuts, Brazil nuts, soybean flour, and high-fiber foods can prevent your body from absorbing thyroid medication.)	

Prescriptions

The usual order of drug prescription information is as follows: name of the drug, dosage, route of administration, timing of administration. Frequently, the physician will include a qualifying phrase to indicate why the prescription is being written. Not all information is listed with every prescription.

Exercise: Answers are found page 857.

Match the prescriptions as written with the explanations that follow.

a. Fluoxetine (Prozac) 20 mg PO b.i.d.
b. Lisinopril (Zestril) 20 mg 1 cap qAM
c. Ondansetron (Zofran) 4 mg 1 tab/cap t.i.d. p.r.n. for nausea
d. Cimetidine (Tagamet) 200 mg 1 tab p.c. t.i.d.
e. Olanzapine (Zyprexa) 5 mg 1 tab qPM
f. Acetaminophen (300 mg) & codeine (30 mg) 1 tab q.i.d. p.r.n. for pain

1. anti-GERD drug taken after meals 3 times a day	_____
2. Tylenol with a narcotic taken 4 times a day as needed	_____
3. antidepressant taken by mouth twice a day	_____
4. antiemetic taken 3 times a day as needed	_____
5. antihypertensive taken every morning	_____
6. antipsychotic, one tablet every evening	_____

Controlled Substances

Controlled substances are drugs regulated under existing federal law. The substances are divided into five classes (schedules) based on the substance's medicinal value, harmfulness, and potential for abuse or addiction. Schedule I includes the most dangerous drugs that have no recognized medicinal use, and Schedule V includes the least dangerous drugs. The following table lists examples of drugs in each class with their type, trade and/or "street" names, and medical uses.

DRUG	TYPE	TRADE OR OTHER NAME(S)	MEDICAL USE(S)
Class (Schedule) I			
heroin	narcotic	diacetylmorphine, horse, smack	None
LSD (lysergic acid diethylamide)	hallucinogen	acid, microdot	None
mescaline, peyote	hallucinogen	mesc, buttons, cactus	None
methaqualone	depressant	Quaalude,* Parest	sedative-hypnotic
MDMA	hallucinogen	ecstasy/Molly	None
Class (Schedule) II			
Dangerous substances with general medical indications and high potential for abuse and addiction.			
hydromorphone	narcotic	Dilaudid	analgesic
meperidine	narcotic	Demerol	analgesic
cocaine	stimulant	coke, flake, snow	local anesthetic
methylphenidate	stimulant	Ritalin	hyperkinesis
oxycodone	narcotic	Tylox, Percodan, OxyContin, OC, OX, Oxy	analgesic, pain management
crystal methamphetamine	stimulant	crystal meth, ice	weight control
phencyclidine	hallucinogen	PCP, angel dust, hog	veterinary anesthetic
opium	narcotic	Dover's powder, paregoric	analgesic, antidiarrheal
morphine	narcotic	morphine, pectoral syrup	analgesic, antitussive
barbiturates	depressant	amobarbital (Amytal), pentobarbital (Nembutal), secobarbital (Seconal)	anesthetic, anticonvulsant, sedative-hypnotic
amphetamines	stimulant	Dexedrine, Desoxyn	weight control, narcolepsy
Class (Schedule) III			
Carries less potential for abuse, but casual use can lead to psychological addiction and dependence.			
anabolic steroids	male sex hormones	testosterone, Anavar, Winstrol, Dianabol	hormone deficiency, increasing muscle mass
barbiturates	depressant	aprobarbital (Alurate), butalbital (Fiorinal), butabarbital (Butisol)	anesthetic, anticonvulsant, sedative-hypnotic
codeine	narcotic	codeine	analgesic, antitussive
Class (Schedule) IV			
Carries low potential for abuse but a risk of psychological or limited physical dependence.			
barbiturates	depressant	phenobarbital	anesthetic, anticonvulsant, sedative-hypnotic

DRUG	TYPE	TRADE OR OTHER NAME(S)	MEDICAL USE(S)
benzodiazepines	minor tranquilizer	lorazepam (Ativan), diazepam (Valium), chlordiazepoxide (Librium), clonazepam (Klonopin), triazolam (Halcion), alprazolam (Xanax)	antianxiety, sedative-hypnotic, anticonvulsant
nonbenzodiazepine agent	hypnotic	eszopiclone (Lunesta)	insomnia
Class (Schedule) V			
This class includes codeine preparations (Robitussin A-C) *and opium/opioid preparations (Kapectolin PG—antidiarrheal, Lomotil—antidiarrheal, Motofen—antidiarrheal).*			

*Quaaludes have been discontinued in the United States, but methaqualone (ab)use continues owing to Internet availability.

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, page 856.

A **Name the pharmacologic specialty based on its description as given.**

1. use of drugs in the treatment of disease _____
2. study of new drug synthesis _____
3. study of how drugs interact with their target molecules _____
4. study of the harmful effects of drugs _____
5. study of drug effects in the body _____
6. measurement of drug absorption, distribution, metabolism, and excretion over a period of time _____

B **Match the general pharmacology terms with thedefinitions/descriptions that follow.**

antidote
chemical name
Food and Drug Administration
generic name
pharmacist
pharmacologist
Physicians' Desk Reference
toxicologist
trade (brand) name
United States Pharmacopeia

1. Specialist in the study of the harmful effects of drugs on the body is a/an _____.
2. Agent given to counteract harmful effects of a drug is a/an _____.
3. Government agency with legal responsibility for enforcing proper drug manufacture and clinical use is _____.
4. The _____ is the commercial name for a drug.
5. The _____ is the complete chemical formula for a drug.
6. The _____ is the legal noncommercial name for a drug.
7. Professional who prepares and dispenses drugs is a/an _____.
8. Specialist (MD or PhD) who studies the properties, uses, and side effects of drugs is a/an _____.
9. Reference book listing drug products is _____.
10. Authoritative listing of drugs, formulas, and preparations that sets a standard for drug manufacturing and dispensing is _____.

C **Name the route of drug administration based on its description as given.**

1. administered via suppository or fluid into the anus _____
2. administered via vapor or gas into the nose or mouth _____
3. administered under the tongue _____
4. applied locally on skin or mucous membrane _____
5. injected via syringe under the skin or into a vein, muscle, or body cavity _____
6. given by mouth and absorbed through the stomach or intestinal wall _____

D **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. intravenous _____
2. intrathecal _____
3. antiseptic _____
4. antipruritic _____
5. aerosol _____

6. intramuscular _____
7. subcutaneous _____
8. intracavitary _____
9. addiction _____
10. dose _____
11. drug resistance _____
12. response _____
13. schedule _____
14. dependence _____

E **Match the routes of drug administration in Column I with the medications or procedures in Column II. Write the letter of the answer in the space provided.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. intravenous	_____	A. lotions, creams, ointments
2. rectal	_____	B. tablets and capsules
3. oral	_____	C. skin testing for allergy
4. topical	_____	D. lumbar puncture
5. inhalation	_____	E. deep injection, usually in buttock
6. intrathecal	_____	F. suppositories
7. intramuscular	_____	G. blood transfusions
8. intradermal	_____	H. aerosol medications

F **For the following descriptions of drug actions, supply the word that fits the description.**

1. Combination of two drugs is greater than the total effects of each drug by itself: _____
2. Combination of two drugs that is equal to the sum of the effects of each: _____
3. Effects of a given drug dose become less as treatment continues, and larger and larger doses must be given to achieve the desired effect: _____
4. An unexpected effect that may appear in a patient after administration of a drug: _____
5. Two drugs give less than an additive effect (action): _____

G **Give the meanings of the following terms that describe classes of drugs.**

1. antibiotic

_____

_____

2. antidepressant _____
3. antihistamine _____
4. analgesic _____
5. anticoagulant _____
6. anesthetic _____
7. antidiabetic _____
8. sedative _____
9. stimulant _____
10. tranquilizer _____

H **Match the term in Column I with the associated term in Column II. Write the letter of the answer in the space provided.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. antihistamine	_____	A. caffeine or amphetamines
2. analgesic	_____	B. penicillin or erythromycin
3. antidiabetic	_____	C. insulin
4. anticoagulant	_____	D. benzodiazepine
5. antibiotic	_____	E. heparin
6. stimulant	_____	F. nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug
7. sedative-hypnotic	_____	G. phenothiazine
8. tranquilizer	_____	H. anaphylactic shock

I **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. beta blocker
_____
_____

2. androgen _____
3. glucocorticoid _____
4. calcium channel blocker _____
5. estrogen _____
6. antacid _____
7. cathartic _____
8. antiemetic _____
9. bronchodilator _____
10. hypnotic _____
11. diuretic _____
12. cholesterol-lowering drug _____

J **Match the type of drug in Column I with the condition it treats in Column II. Write the letter of the answer in the space provided.**

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. anticonvulsant	_____	A. abnormal uterine bleeding caused by hormonal imbalance
2. anticoagulant	_____	B. severe behavior disturbances and anxiety
3. antacid	_____	C. epilepsy
4. progestins	_____	D. congestive heart failure and hypertension
5. antibiotic	_____	E. epigastric discomfort
6. ACE inhibitor	_____	F. myalgia and neuralgia
7. bronchodilator	_____	G. anaphylactic shock
8. antihistamine	_____	H. thrombosis and embolism
9. tranquilizer	_____	I. streptococcal pharyngitis
10. analgesic	_____	J. asthma

K **Complete the following terms based on definitions given.**

1. agent that reduces fever: anti _____
2. agent that reduces itching: anti _____
3. habit-forming analgesic: _____ tic
4. two drugs cause an effect greater than the sum of each alone: syn _____
5. antibiotic derived from a red mold: _____ mycin
6. legal nonproprietary name of a drug: _____ name
7. factor in a patient's condition that prevents the use of a particular drug: contra _____
8. drug that produces an absence of sensation or feeling: an _____

L **Select from the list of drug terms to complete the following sentences.** Consult Appendix IV (Drugs), pages 1006–1010, for help with this exercise.

ACE inhibitor
anesthetic
antibiotic
anticonvulsant
antidepressant
antiestrogen
antihistamine
antiviral
diuretic

NSAID

oral antidiabetic

SERM

1. Cephalosporins (such as cefuroxime and cefprozil) and penicillins are examples of _____ drugs.
2. Advil (ibuprofen) is an example of a/an _____.
3. Tegretol (carbamazepine) and Dilantin (phenytoin) are examples of a/an _____ drug.
4. Zovirax (acyclovir) and Crixivan (indinavir) are both types of a/an _____ drug.
5. Nolvadex (tamoxifen), used to treat estrogen receptor–positive breast cancer in women, is an example of a/an _____ drug.
6. Patients with high blood pressure may need Vasotec (enalapril) or Zestril (lisinopril). Both of these are examples of a/an _____.
7. Metformin and Avandia (rosiglitazone) are two types of _____ drugs.
8. Evista (raloxifene), used to treat osteoporosis in postmenopausal women, is an example of a selective estrogen receptor modulator, or _____.
9. Elavil (amitriptyline) and Prozac (fluoxetine) are two types of a/an _____ drug.
10. If you have an allergy, your doctor may prescribe Allegra (fexofenadine), which is a/an _____ drug.
11. Two agents that reduce the amount of fluid in the blood and thus lower blood pressure are Lasix (furosemide) and Aldactone (spironolactone). These are _____ drugs.
12. Xylocaine (lidocaine) and Pentothal (thiopental) are examples of a/an _____ drug.

M **Give the meanings of the following abbreviations.**

1. NSAID

   _____
   _____

2. p.r.n. _____
3. q.i.d. _____

4. ad lib _____
5. t.i.d. _____
6. mg _____
7. $\overline{c}$ _____
8. $\overline{s}$ _____
9. NPO _____
10. p.c. _____
11. b.i.d. _____
12. q.h. _____
13. PO _____
14. q _____

N **Translate the following prescription orders.**

1. 1 tab PO q.i.d. p.c. and h.s.
   _____
2. 15-60 mg IM q4-6h _____
3. 2 caps p.o. h.s. _____
4. 1 tab SL p.r.n. _____
5. Apply topically qhs prn _____

O **Circle the boldface terms that best complete the meaning of the sentences.**

1. After his heart attack, Bernie was supposed to take many drugs, including diuretics and a/an **(progestin, laxative, anticoagulant)** to prevent blood clots.
2. Estelle was always anxious and had a hard time sleeping. Dr. Max suggested that a mild **(antacid, anticonvulsant, tranquilizer)** would help her relax and concentrate on her work.
3. During chemotherapy Helen was very nauseated. Dr. Cohen prescribed an **(antihypertensive, antiemetic, antianginal)** to relieve her symptoms of queasy stomach.
4. The two antibiotics worked together and were therefore **(idiosyncratic, generic, synergistic)** in killing the bacteria in Susan's bloodstream.
5. The label warned that the drug might impair fine motor skills. It listed the **(side effects, antidote, pharmacodynamics)** of the sedative.
6. After receiving the results of Judy's sputum culture, her physician, an expert in **(endocrinology, cardiology, infectious disease)**,

recommended Biaxin and other **(antihistamines, antibiotics, antidepressants)** to combat the *Mycobacterium avium* complex disease in her **(heart, thyroid gland, lungs)**.

7. Our dog, Eli, has had seizures since he was hit by a car last year. The veterinarian currently prescribes phenobarbital, an **(anticoagulant, antinauseant, anticonvulsant)**, 45 mg b.i.d. **(every other day, twice a day, every evening)**.
8. To control his type 1 **(heart disease, asthma, diabetes)**, David gives himself daily injections of **(oral drugs, insulin, aromatase inhibitors)**.
9. Many students who want to stay awake to study are taking **(stimulants, sedatives, tranquilizers)** containing **(lithium, caffeine, butabarbital)**.
10. Shelly's wheezing, coughing, and shortness of breath when she is stressed and exposed to animal dander all pointed to a diagnosis of **(pneumonia, asthma, heart disease)**, which required treatment with steroids and **(antivirals, diuretics, bronchodilators)**.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. chemotherapy
2. medicinal chemistry
3. molecular pharmacology
4. toxicology
5. pharmacodynamics
6. pharmacokinetics

B

1. toxicologist
2. antidote
3. (U.S.) Food and Drug Administration
4. trade (brand) name
5. chemical name
6. generic name
7. pharmacist

8. pharmacologist
9. *Physicians' Desk Reference*
10. United States Pharmacopeia

C

1. rectal
2. inhalation
3. sublingual
4. topical
5. parenteral
6. oral

D

1. within a vein
2. within a sheath (membranes around the spinal cord or brain)
3. an agent that works against infection
4. an agent that works against itching
5. particles of drug suspended in air and inhaled
6. within a muscle
7. under the skin
8. within a cavity
9. physical and psychological dependence on a drug
10. amount of drug administered
11. lack of beneficial response
12. desired and beneficial effect of a drug
13. exact timing and frequency of drug administration
14. prolonged use of a drug that may lead to physiologic need for its actions in the body

E

1. G

2. F
3. B
4. A
5. H
6. D
7. E
8. C

F

1. synergism (potentiation)
2. additive action
3. tolerance
4. idiosyncrasy
5. antagonistic

G

1. an agent that inhibits or kills germ life (microorganisms)
2. an agent that relieves the symptoms of depression
3. an agent that blocks the action of histamine and relieves allergic symptoms
4. an agent that relieves pain
5. an agent that prevents blood clotting
6. an agent that reduces or eliminates sensation
7. an agent used to prevent diabetes mellitus
8. an agent (mildly hypnotic) that relaxes and calms nervousness
9. an agent that excites and promotes activity
10. a drug used to control anxiety and severe disturbances of behavior

H

1. H
2. F
3. C

4. E
5. B
6. A
7. D
8. G

I

1. drug that blocks the action of epinephrine at sites of receptors of heart muscles, blood vessels, and bronchial tubes (antihypertensive, antianginal, and antiarrhythmic)
2. a drug that produces male sexual characteristics
3. a hormone from the adrenal glands that reduces inflammation and raises blood sugar
4. a drug that blocks the entrance of calcium into heart muscle and blood vessel walls (antianginal, antiarrhythmic, and antihypertensive)
5. a hormone that produces female sexual characteristics
6. a drug that neutralizes acid in the stomach
7. a drug that relieves constipation
8. a drug that prevents nausea and vomiting
9. a drug that opens air passages
10. an agent that produces sleep
11. a drug that reduces the volume of blood and lowers blood pressure
12. a drug that reduces cholesterol levels (treats hypercholesterolemia)

J

1. C
2. H
3. E
4. A
5. I
6. D

7. J
8. G
9. B
10. F

K

1. antipyretic
2. antipruritic
3. narcotic
4. synergism
5. erythromycin
6. generic
7. contraindication
8. anesthetic

L

1. antibiotic
2. NSAID
3. anticonvulsant
4. antiviral
5. antiestrogen
6. ACE inhibitor
7. oral antidiabetic for type 2 diabetes
8. SERM
9. antidepressant
10. antihistamine
11. diuretic
12. anesthetic

M

1. nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug

2. as needed
3. four times a day
4. freely as desired
5. three times a day
6. milligram
7. with
8. without
9. nothing by mouth
10. after meals
11. twice a day
12. every hour
13. by mouth
14. every

N

1. take one tablet by mouth, four times a day, after meals and at bedtime
2. administer 15 to 60 milligrams intramuscularly, every 4-6 hours
3. take two capsules by mouth at bedtime
4. place one tablet under the tongue, as needed
5. apply to the skin, at bedtime as needed

O

1. anticoagulant
2. tranquilizer
3. antiemetic
4. synergistic
5. side effects
6. infectious disease, antibiotics, lungs
7. anticonvulsant, twice a day
8. diabetes, insulin

9. stimulants, caffeine

10. asthma, bronchodilators

Answers to Practical Applications—Prescriptions

1. d

2. f

3. a

4. c

5. b

6. e

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897.

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
ACE inhibitor	ACE in-HIB-it-or
addiction	ah-DIK-shun
additive action	AD-it-ive AK-shun
aerosol	AIR-o-sol
amphetamine	am-FET-ah-meen
analgesic	an-al-JE-sik
anaphylaxis	an-ah-fah-LAK-sis
androgen	AN-dro-jen
anesthesia	an-es-THE-ze-ah
anesthetic	an-es-THET-ik
angiotensin II receptor blocker	an-je-o-TEN-sin 2 re-CEP-tor BLOK-er
antacid	ant-AS-id
antagonistic action	an-tag-on-NIS-tik AK-shun
antiandrogen	an-te-AN-dro-jen
antiarrhythmic	an-te-a-RITH-mik
antibiotic	an-tih-bi-OT-ik
anticoagulant	an-tih-ko-AG-ul-lant
anticonvulsant	an-tih-kon-VUL-sant
antidepressant	an-tih-de-PRES-ant
antidiabetic	an-tih-di-ah-BET-ik
antidiarrheal	an-tih-di-ah-RE-al
antidote	AN-tih-dote
antiemetic	an-te-eh-MET-ik
antihistamine	an-tih-HIS-tah-meen
antimicrobial	an-tih-mi-KRO-be-al
antinauseant	an-tih-NAW-ze-ant
antiplatelet	an-tih-PLAYT-let
antipruritic	an-tih-pru-RIT-ik
antipyretic	an-tih-pih-RET-ik
antiulcer	an-te-UL-ser
antiviral	an-tih-VI-ral
aromatase inhibitor	ah-RO-mah-tace in-HIB-it-or
beta blocker	BA-tah BLOK-er
bisphosphonate	bis-FOS-fo-nate
brand name	brand name
bronchodilator	brong-ko-DI-la-tor
caffeine	kaf-een
calcium channel blocker	KAL-se-um CHAN-el BLOK-er
cardiac glycoside	KAR-de-ak GLI-ko-side
cardiovascular drug	kar-de-o-VAS-ku-lar drug
cathartic	kah-THAR-tik
chemical name	KEM-ik-al name
chemotherapy	ke-mo-THER-ah-pe
cholesterol-binding drug	ko-LES-ter-ole BIN-ding drug
cholesterol-lowering drug	ko-LES-ter-ole LO-wer-ing drug
contraindications	kon-trah-in-dih-KA-shunz
controlled substances	kon-TROLD SUB-stan-sez
dependence	de-PEND-ents
diuretic	di-u-RET-ik
dose	dose

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
emetic	eh-MET-ik
endocrine drug	EN-do-krin drug
erythromycin	eh-rith-ro-MI-sin
estrogen	ES-tro-jen
gastrointestinal drug	gas-tro-in-TEST-tih-nal drug
generic name	jeh-NER-ik name
glucocorticoid	glu-ko-KOR-tih-koyd
hypnotic	hip-NOT-ik
hypodermic	hi-po-DER-mik
iatrogenic	i-ah-tro-JEN-ik
idiosyncrasy	id-e-o-SIN-krah-se
idiosyncratic reaction	id-e-o-sin-KRAH-tik re-AK-shun
inhalation	in-hah-LA-shun
intrathecal	in-trah-THE-kal
intravenous	in-trah-VE-nus
laxative	LAK-sah-tiv
medicinal chemistry	med-IS-sin-al KEM-is-tre
molecular pharmacology	mo-LEK-u-lar far-mah-KOL-o-je
narcotic	nar-KOT-ik
oral administration	OR-al ad-min-is-TRA-shun
parenteral administration	par-EN-ter-al ad-min-is-TRA-shun
pharmacist	FAR-mah-sist
pharmacodynamics	far-mah-ko-di-NAM-iks
pharmacokinetics	far-mah-ko-kih-NEH-tiks
pharmacologist	far-mah-KOL-o-jist
pharmacology	far-mah-KOL-o-je
pharmacy	FAR-mah-se
progestin	pro-JES-tin
purgative	PUR-gat-ive
receptor	re-SEP-tor
rectal administration	REK-tal ad-min-is-TRA-shun
resistance	re-SIS-tans
respiratory drug	res-pih-rah-TOR-e drug
response	re-SPONS
schedule	SKED-ule
sedative	SED-ah-tiv
side effect	side eh-FEKT
stimulant	STIM-u-lant
subcutaneous	sub-ku-TA-ne-us
sublingual administration	sub-LING-wal ad-min-is-TRA-shun
synergism	SIN-er-jizm
synergistic	sin-er-JIS-tik
syringe	sih-RINJ
thyroid hormone	THI-royd HOR-mone
tolerance	TOL-er-anz
topical application	TOP-ik-el ap-lih-KA-shun
toxic	TOK-sik
toxicity	tok-SIS-ih-te
toxicology	tok-sih-KOL-o-je
tranquilizer	TRAN-kwil-i-zer

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
transport	TRANS-port
vasodilator	vaz-o-DI-la-tor
vitamin	VI-ta-min

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of the word parts in the spaces provided, and test yourself. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
aer/o	_____
alges/o	_____
bronch/o	_____
chem/o	_____
cras/o	_____
cutane/o	_____
derm/o	_____
enter/o	_____
erg/o	_____
esthes/o	_____
hist/o	_____
hypn/o	_____
iatr/o	_____
lingu/o	_____
myc/o	_____
narc/o	_____
or/o	_____
pharmac/o	_____
prurit/o	_____
pyret/o	_____
thec/o	_____
tox/o	_____
toxic/o	_____
vas/o	_____
ven/o	_____
vit/o	_____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-amine	_____
-dote	_____
-genic	_____
-in	_____
-phylaxis	_____
-sol	_____

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING
ana-	_____
anti-	_____
contra-	_____
par-	_____
syn-	_____

CHAPTER 22

Psychiatry

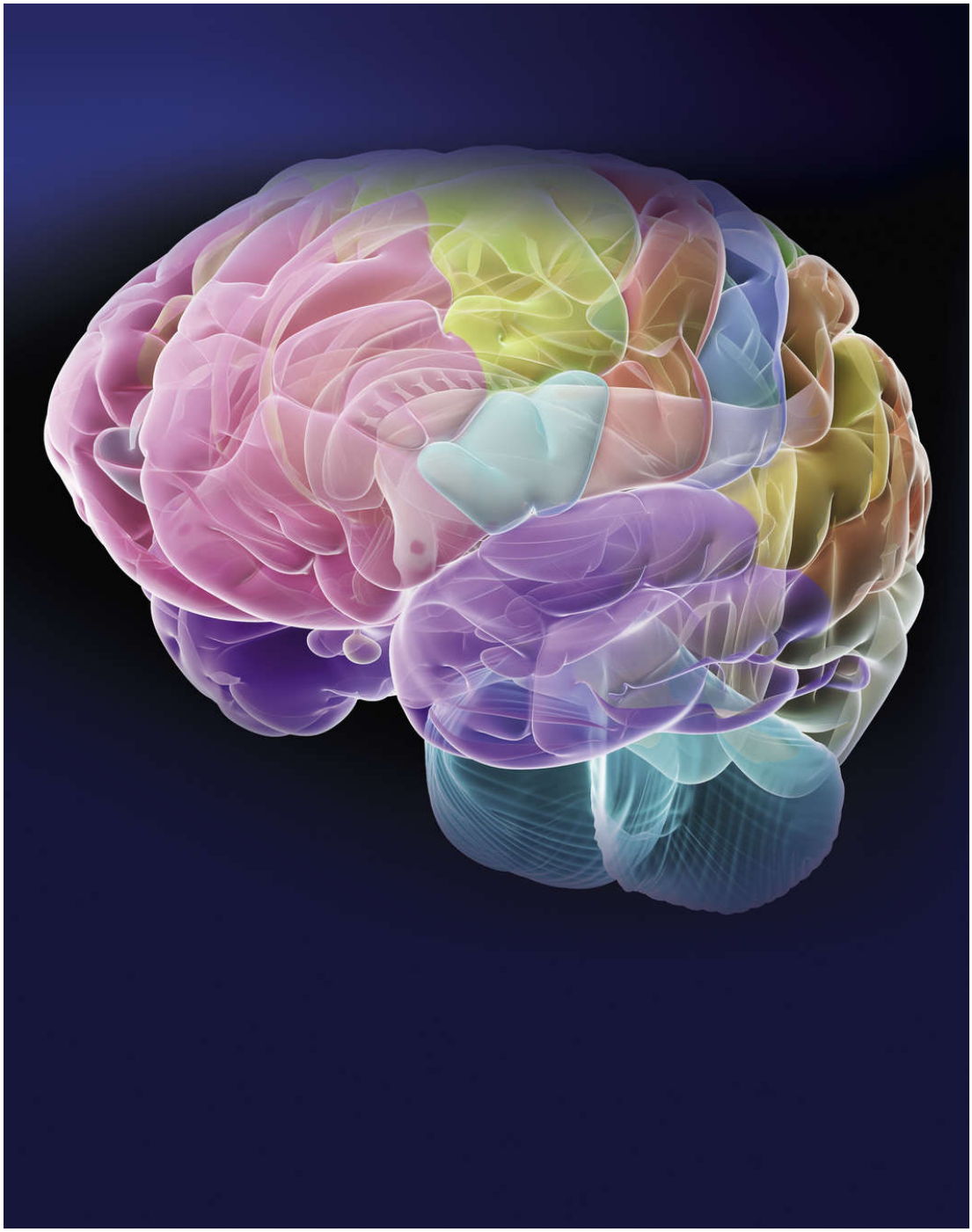
CHAPTER SECTIONS:

Introduction 862
Psychiatric Clinical Symptoms 863
Psychiatric Disorders 864
Therapeutic Modalities 873
Vocabulary 876
Terminology 879
Abbreviations 882
In Person: Living with Autism 883
Practical Applications 884
Exercises 886
Answers to Exercises 892
Pronunciation of Terms 894
Review Sheet 896

CHAPTER GOALS

- Differentiate among psychiatrist, a psychologist, and other mental health specialists.
- Describe tests used by clinical psychologists to evaluate a patient's mental health and intelligence.
- Define terms that describe major psychiatric disorders.
- Identify terms that describe psychiatric symptoms.

- Compare different types of therapy for psychiatric disorders.
- Identify the categories of psychiatric drugs, and name commonly used drugs in each category.
- Define combining forms, suffixes, prefixes, and abbreviations related to psychiatry.
- Apply your new knowledge to understanding medical terms in their proper contexts, such as medical reports and records.



Introduction

You will find this chapter different from others in the book. Many psychiatric disorders are not readily explainable in terms of abnormalities in the structure or chemistry of an organ or tissue, as are other illnesses. In addition, the causes

of mental disorders are complex and include significant psychological and social as well as chemical and structural elements. This chapter provides a simple outline of psychiatric disorders and definitions of major psychiatric terms. For more extensive and detailed information, consult the ***Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders,* fifth edition, (DSM-5),** published by the American Psychiatric Association.

Psychiatry (**psych/o** = mind, **iatr/o** = treatment) is the branch of medicine that deals with the diagnosis, treatment, and prevention of mental illness. It is a specialty of clinical medicine like surgery, internal medicine, pediatrics, and obstetrics.

Psychiatrists complete the same medical training (4 years of medical school) as other physicians and receive an MD (doctor of medicine) or OD (doctor of osteopathy) degree. Then they spend a variable number of years training in the methods and practice of **psychotherapy** (psychological techniques for treating mental disorders) and **psychopharmacology** (drug therapy). Psychiatrists complete 3 years of residency training and then extra years of fellowship training to specialize in various aspects of psychiatry. **Child psychiatrists** specialize in the treatment of children; **forensic psychiatrists** specialize in the legal aspects of psychiatry, such as the determination of mental competence in criminal cases. **Psychoanalysts** complete 3 to 5 additional years of training in a special psychotherapeutic technique called **psychoanalysis** in which the patient freely relates her or his thoughts and associations to the analyst, who does not interfere with the process. Interpretations are offered at appropriate times.

A **psychologist** is a nonmedical professional who is trained in methods of psychological testing, psychotherapy, and research. Psychologists complete a doctor of philosophy (PhD), doctor of psychology (PsyD), or doctor of education (EdD) degree program in a specific field of interest, such as **clinical psychology** (patient-oriented) **experimental research,** or **social psychology** (focusing on social interaction and the ways the actions of others influence the behavior of the individual). A **clinical psychologist,** like a psychiatrist, can use various methods of psychotherapy to treat patients but, unlike a psychiatrist, cannot prescribe drugs or electroconvulsive therapy (ECT). Other nonphysicians trained in the treatment of mental illness include licensed clinical social workers, psychiatric nurses, and licensed mental health clinicians (LMHCs).

Clinical psychologists are trained in the use of tests to evaluate various aspects of a patient's mental health and intelligence. Examples are **intelligence (IQ) tests** such as the **Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale (WAIS)** and the **Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale.** Two **projective personality tests** are the **Rorschach technique,** in which inkblots, as shown in Figure 22-1, are used to bring out associations, and the **Thematic Apperception Test (TAT),** in which

pictures are used as stimuli for making up stories (Figure 22-2). Examples of **graphomotor projection tests** are the **Draw a Person Test,** in which the patient is asked to copy a body, and the **Bender-Gestalt Test,** in which the patient is asked to draw certain geometric designs. The Bender-Gestalt Test picks up deficits in mental processing and memory caused by brain damage and is used to screen children for developmental delays. The **Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory (MMPI)** contains true-false questions that reveal aspects of personality, such as sense of duty or responsibility, ability to relate to others, and dominance (assertiveness, resourcefulness). This test is widely used as a measure of psychological health in adolescents and adults. The patient's responses to questions are compared with responses made by patients with diagnoses of schizophrenia, depression, and other mental disorders.

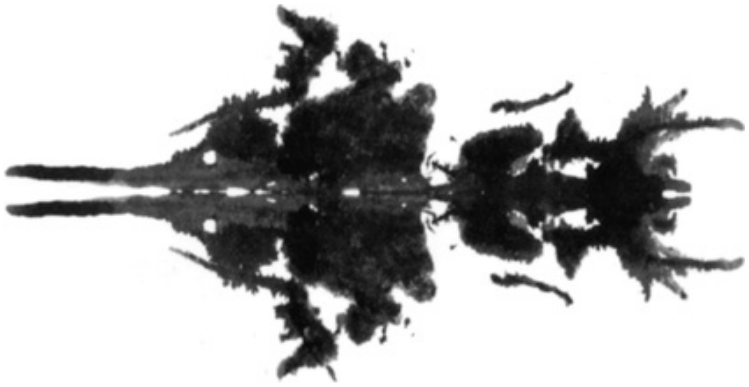


FIGURE 22-1 Inkblots like this one are presented on 10 cards in the Rorschach test. The patient describes images that he or she sees in the blot.

FIGURE 22-2 Sample pictures from the **Thematic Apperception Test.** The patient is asked to tell the story that the picture illustrates.

Psychiatric Clinical Symptoms

The following terms describe abnormalities that are evident to an examining mental health professional. Familiarity with these terms will help you understand the next section, Psychiatric Disorders.

amnesia	Loss of memory.
anxiety	Varying degrees of uneasiness, apprehension, or dread often accompanied by palpitations, tightness in the chest, breathlessness, and choking sensations.
apathy	Absence of emotions; lack of interest, emotional involvement, or motivation.
compulsion	Uncontrollable urge to perform an act repeatedly in an attempt to reduce anxiety.
conversion	Anxiety becomes a bodily symptom, such as blindness, deafness, or paralysis, that does not have a physical basis.
delusion	Fixed, false belief that cannot be changed by logical reasoning or evidence.
dissociation	Uncomfortable thoughts are split off from the person's conscious awareness to avoid mental distress. In extreme cases, dissociation can lead to multiple personalities.
dysphoria	Intense feelings of depression, discontent, and generalized dissatisfaction with life.
euphoria	Intense feelings of well-being, elation, happiness, excitement, and joy.
hallucination	False or unreal sensory perception as, for example, hearing voices when none are present. An **illusion** is a misperception of an actual sensory stimulus, such as hearing voices in the sound of rustling leaves.
labile	Variable; undergoing rapid emotional change.
mania	Elevated, expansive state with talkativeness, hyperactivity, euphoria, and racing thoughts.
mutism	No, or very little, ability to speak.
obsession	Involuntary, persistent idea or emotion; the suffix -mania indicates a strong obsession with something (e.g., pyromania is an obsession with fire).
paranoia	Overly suspicious system of thinking; fixed delusion that one is being harassed, persecuted, or unfairly treated.

Psychiatric Disorders

Sigmund Freud's ideas of personality structure play an important role in the understanding of many types of psychiatric disorders. Freud believed that personality is made up of three major parts: the **id,** the **ego,** and the **superego.** The **id** represents the unconscious instincts and psychic energy present from birth. The id contains basic drives that, operating according to the pleasure principle, seek immediate gratification regardless of the reality of the situation.

The **ego** is the central coordinating branch of the personality. It is the mediator between the id and the outside world. It is the part of the personality that evaluates and assesses the reality of a situation **(reality testing)** and, if necessary, postpones the gratification of a need or drive (id) until a satisfactory object or appropriate situation arises. The ego is perceived as being "self" by the individual.

The **superego** is the internalized conscience and moral part of the personality. It encompasses the sense of discipline derived from parental authority and society. Guilt feelings, for example, arise from behavior and thoughts that do not conform to the standards of the superego.

Freud believed that certain psychological disorders occur when conflicts arise between two or more of these aspects of the personality. **Defense mechanisms,** such as denial, are techniques people use to ward off the anxiety produced by these conflicts. For example, a person afflicted with a serious illness may avoid confronting his or her present or future problems by denial. Thus, he or she may refuse to believe the diagnosis, may miss appointments, may neglect medication, or may ignore symptoms. All people use defense mechanisms to cope with difficult problems. The use of these mechanisms may be regarded as abnormal or normal according to whether that use makes a constructive or destructive contribution to the individual's personality.

The term **psychosis** frequently is used to describe abnormal conditions that affect the mind especially where there has been loss of contact with reality. **Psychotic disorders** involve significant impairment of reality testing and may include **delusions** (false beliefs), **hallucinations** (false sensory perceptions), and bizarre behavior. Patients exhibit a disturbed sense of self, inappropriate affect (emotional reactions), and withdrawal from the external world.

Psychiatric disorders are discussed on the following pages and summarized on Table 22-1 on page 872.

Anxiety Disorders

Anxiety disorders are characterized by the experience of unpleasant tension, distress, troubled feelings, and avoidance behavior. A **panic attack** is an abrupt surge of intense fear or discomfort that reaches a peak within minutes. Symptoms and clinical signs may include the following:

- Palpitations
- Sweating
- Trembling
- Sensations of shortness of breath
- Feeling of choking

- Chest pain or discomfort
- Nausea or abdominal distress
- Feeling dizzy or faint
- Feelings of unreality or being detached from oneself
- Fear of losing control or "going crazy"
- Fear of dying
- Numbness or tingling

Panic disorder is recurrent, unexpected panic attacks and persistent concern about having another panic attack in between episodes. A panic attack can occur in the context of other anxiety disorders, such as phobic, obsessive-compulsive, post-traumatic stress, and generalized anxiety disorders.

Phobic disorders are characterized by irrational or debilitating fears associated with a specific object or situation. The patient with a phobic disorder goes to extreme lengths to avoid the object of her or his fear. The object that is feared often is symbolic of an unconscious conflict that is the cause of the phobia and thus diverts the patient's attention from the conflict, keeping it unconscious. Panic attacks can occur in anticipation of the phobic situation.

Agoraphobia (**agora-** = marketplace) is the fear of being in open, crowded, public places from which escape would be difficult or in which help might not be available, or of going out alone in "unsafe" places. Persons with agoraphobia limit their normal activities to avoid situations that trigger their anxiety. Thus, they may feel comfortable only when at home or in the company of a friend or relative.

A **social phobia (social anxiety disorder)** is the fear of situations in which the affected person is open to public scrutiny, which could result in possible embarrassment and humiliation. For example, the fear may focus on speaking in public, using public lavatories, or eating in public.

Other specific phobias are **claustrophobia** (fear of closed-in places; **claustr/o** = barrier), **acrophobia** (fear of heights; in this term, **acr/o** = a high point), and **zoophobia** (fear of animals; **zo/o** = animals).

Obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD) involves recurrent thoughts **(obsessions)** and repetitive acts **(compulsions)** that dominate the patient's life. The patient experiences anxiety if he or she is prevented from performing special rituals. Often the OCD consumes time and interferes with the person's social or occupational functioning. Several antidepressant drugs, including clomipramine, have been used to treat OCD, with considerable success, particularly when combined with cognitive-behavioral therapy.

Post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) is the development of symptoms (intense fear, helplessness, insomnia, nightmares, and diminished responsiveness to the external world) following exposure to a traumatic event. Flashbacks, bothersome thoughts, and anxiety often triggered by reminders occur in episodes long after a life-threatening or major emotional event. People avoid situations with reminders. Many survivors of the September 11, 2001, attack on the World Trade Center and the Pentagon experience PTSD.

Generalized anxiety disorder (GAD) is characterized by chronic anxiety and exaggerated worry and tension even when there is little or nothing to provoke such feelings.

Bipolar Disorders

Bipolar disorders (**bi-** = two; **pol/o** = extreme) are characterized by one or more **manic episodes** alternating with **depressive episodes.** A manic episode is a period during which the predominant mood is excessively elevated (euphoria), expansive, or irritable. Associated symptoms include inflated self-esteem, or grandiosity, decreased need for sleep, a nearly continuous flow of rapid speech with quick changes of topic, distractibility, an increase in goal-directed activity, and excessive involvement in pleasurable activities that have a high potential for painful consequences. Often there are increased sociability and participation in multiple activities marked by intrusive, domineering, and demanding behavior. **Hypomania** (in this term, **hypo-** = decrease) describes a mood resembling mania, but of lesser intensity. **Bipolar disorder I** is characterized by one or more manic episodes, often alternating with major depressive episodes. **Bipolar disorder II** is characterized by recurrent major depressive episodes alternating with hypomanic episodes.

Cyclothymic disorder (**cycl/o** = cycle, **thym/o** = mind) is a mild form of bipolar disorder characterized by at least 2 years of numerous periods with hypomanic symptoms that do not meet the criteria for mania and depressive symptoms that do not meet the criteria for a major depressive disorder.

Depressive Disorders

Depressive disorders are marked by the occurrence of one or more major depressive episodes without a history of mania or hypomania. **Major depressive disorder** involves episodes of severe **dysphoria** (sadness, hopelessness, worry, discouragement). Other signs and symptoms are appetite disturbances (increase or decrease) and changes in weight; sleep disorders such as insomnia or hypersomnia; fatigue or low energy; feelings of worthlessness, hopelessness, or excessive or inappropriate guilt; difficulty thinking or concentrating; and recurrent thoughts of death or suicide. **Persistent depressive disorder (dysthymia)** is a depressive disorder involving

depressed mood (feeling sad or "down in the dumps") that persists over a 2-year period but is not as severe as major depression. Also, there are no psychotic features (delusions, hallucinations, incoherent thinking) as are sometimes found in major depressive disorder.

Researchers have noted a relationship between the onset of an episode of depressive disorder and a particular period of the year. A regular appearance of depression may occur within a period of approximately 60 days, between the beginning of October and the end of November, every year. This is referred to as **seasonal affective** (mood) **disorder (SAD).** A change from depression to mania or hypomania also may occur within a subsequent 60-day period from mid-February to mid-April.

Dissociative Disorders

A **dissociative disorder** is a condition involving breakdown in memory, identity, or perception. People with dissociative disorder escape reality through amnesia, **fugue** (sudden travel away from home or work), or alternate identities. Examples of dissociative disorders are:

- **Identity disorder**—The presence of two or more distinct personality states.
- **Dissociative amnesia**—Inability to recall autobiographical information.
- **Depersonalization / derealization disorder**—Experiences of unreality, detachment, or being an outside observer with respect to one's thought and surroundings.

Eating Disorders

Eating disorders are severe disturbances in eating behavior. Examples are **anorexia nervosa** and **bulimia nervosa.** Anorexia nervosa is characterized by refusal to maintain a minimal normal body weight. The affected person is intensely afraid of gaining weight and has a disturbance in perception of the shape or size of her or his body. (The term **anorexia,** meaning "lack of appetite," is a misnomer because lack of appetite is rare.) The condition predominantly affects adolescent females, and its principal symptom is a conscious, relentless attempt to diet along with excessive, compulsive overactivity, such as exercise, running, or gymnastics. Most postmenarchal females with this disorder are amenorrheic.

Bulimia nervosa (**bulimia** means abnormal increase in hunger) is characterized by binge eating (uncontrolled indulgence in food) followed by purging (eliminating food from the body). Persons with bulimia maintain normal or nearly normal weight because after bingeing they engage in inappropriate purging. Examples of purging are self-induced vomiting and the misuse of laxatives or enemas.

Neurocognitive Disorders

Neurocognitive disorders are marked by disturbances in **cognition** (thinking, memory, perception, reasoning, and judgment). **Delirium** and **dementia** are their primary features.

Delirium is marked by acute episodes of confused thinking, disorientation, and behavioral changes, such as agitation and fear. It is caused by a variety of conditions, including drug intoxication or withdrawal, seizures or head trauma, and metabolic disturbances such as hypoxia, hypoglycemia, electrolyte imbalances, or hepatic or renal failure. **Delirium tremens** is brought on by stopping alcohol consumption suddenly after prolonged periods of heavy alcohol ingestion. Delirium often responds to treatment and is of short duration.

Dementia is marked by progressive loss of intellectual abilities such as judgment, memory, and reasoning as well as changes in personality. It also includes difficulty with language and with simple acts like dressing or brushing the teeth. Dementia may be caused by conditions, some reversible and some progressive, involving damage to the brain. The most common cause is **Alzheimer disease,** but other causes include cerebrovascular disease (stroke), central nervous system (CNS) infection, certain medications and drugs, brain trauma, tumors, and Parkinson and Huntington diseases. It is important to identify treatable causes of dementia.

Neurodevelopmental Disorders

Neurodevelopmental disorders are a group of childhood disorders characterized by delays in the development of socialization and communication skills. The following are examples of neurodevelopmental disorders:

- **Intellectual disability disorders**—Previously called mental retardation, these disorders include deficits in intellectual functions (reasoning, problem solving,

planning and abstract thinking) and inability to adapt and interact in activities of daily life.

• **Communication disorders**—Persistent difficulties in the acquisition and use of language (spoken or written). This includes reduced vocabulary, limited sentence structure, and impairments in speaking, such as stuttering.

• **Autism spectrum disorder (ASD)—Autism,** commonly becoming evident during the first 3 years of life, is marked by difficulties in verbal and nonverbal communication and social and play interactions. The following are examples of autistic symptoms and signs:

Resistance to change; insistence on sameness
Using gestures or pointing instead of words to communicate needs
Repeating words or phrases
Preference for being alone; aloofness of manner
Tantrums
Difficulty in interacting with others
Not wanting to be touched
Little or no eye contact
Uneven gross/fine motor skills
Sensitivity to sound
Obsessive attachment to objects

Symptoms of autism may lessen as the child develops and receives treatment. See the ***In Person: Living with Autism*** story on page 883.

High functioning ASD is often referred to as **Asperger syndrome**. Children with Asperger syndrome frequently have normal language skills and normal intelligence. They usually want to interact with others but don't know

how to do it. They may have fine rote memory skills but have difficulty with abstract concepts. Repetitive and restricted patterns of behavior also may be part of the picture.

- **Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder ADHD**—This is a persistent pattern of inattention and/or hyperactivity-impulsivity that interferes with functioning or development.
- **Specific learning disorders**—This category includes difficulties in learning and using academic skills.
- **Motor disorders**—Children with these disorders display lack of coordination (such as clumsiness and poor handwriting), movement disorders, and tics (involuntary, sudden, recurrent motor movement or vocalization).

Personality Disorders

A **personality disorder** is an enduring pattern of thinking and behavior contrary to what is culturally acceptable. Pervasive and inflexible, it typically first becomes evident in early adulthood and leads to distress or conflict with others.

Personality disorders are divided into three clusters or categories:

Cluster A

- **Paranoid**—Pattern of distrust and suspiciousness so that motives of others are interpreted as malicious; quick to take offense.
- **Schizoid**—Pattern of detachment from social relationships with restricted range of emotions; cold, aloof, and indifferent to the feelings of others.
- **Schizotypal**—Pattern of acute discomfort in close relationships, accompanied by odd beliefs or magical thinking, clairvoyance, bizarre fantasies or preoccupations.

Cluster B

- **Antisocial**—Pattern of disregard for, and violation of, the rights of others. Affected persons have no loyality or concern for others and act only in response to their own desires and impulses.

- **Borderline**—Pattern of instability in interpersonal relationships and sense of self. Affected persons alternate between intense, impulsive involvement and rejection of other people.
- **Histrionic**—Pattern of excessive emotionality and attention seeking. Affected persons are immature, dependent, flamboyant and theatrical. They often have irrational outbursts and tantrums with general angry feelings about themselves and the world.
- **Narcissistic**—Pattern of grandiosity, need for admiration, and lack of empathy. Affected persons have a preoccupation with their own self importance and fantasies of success and power.

Cluster C

- **Avoidance**—Pattern of social inhibition, feelings of inadequacy, and hypersensitivity to negative evaluation. Affected persons are unwilling to get involved with others for fear of being criticized or rejected.
- **Dependent**—Pattern of submissive and clinging behaviour related to an excessive need to be taken care of. Affected persons have a lack of self-confidence and difficulty making everyday decisions without advice or reassurance from others.
- **Obsessive-compulsive**—Pattern of orderliness, perfectionism, and control. At the expense of flexibility and openness, affected persons are preoccupied with details, rules, lists, organization, and schedules. As compared to patients with obsessive compulsive anxiety disorder (OCD), individuals with obsessive-compulsive personality disorder are not aware that their thoughts and behaviors are unreasonable.

Schizophrenia Spectrum and Other Psychotic Disorders

Schizophrenia spectrum and other psychotic disorders are chronic psychoses marked by disturbed thinking and disorganized speech. Key features that define these disorders are:

Delusions. Fixed beliefs that are not easy to change in light of conflicting evidence. Examples are persecutory delusions ("people are out to get me") or grandiose delusions ("I am the wealthiest, most famous, and important person in the world").

Hallucinations. Hearing voices or sounds that do not exist but seem real.

Disorganized thinking (speech). The person may switch from one topic to another, resulting in incoherent, incomprehensible speech.

Abnormal motor behavior. This disorganized behavior includes involuntary movements and mannerisms from childlike "silliness" to

unpredictable agitation. **Catatonic behavior** is marked by decrease in reactivity to the environment, such as maintaining a rigid, inappropriate, or bizarre posture.

Negative symptoms. Two negative symptoms that are prominent in schizophrenia are flatness of affect (diminished emotional expression) and unwillingness to initiate purposeful activities.

Sexual Dysfunctions and Paraphilias

Sexual dysfunctions are disturbances in a person's ability to respond sexually or to experience sexual pleasure. Examples of sexual dysfunctions are delayed or premature ejaculation, orgasmic disorders, sexual interest/arousal disorders, and pelvic pain disorders.

Paraphilias (para- = abnormal, -philia = attraction to or love of) are characterized by recurrent, intense, sexual urges, fantasies, or behaviors that involve sexual objects, activities, or situations. Examples of paraphilias are:

- **Exhibitionism**—compulsive need to expose one's body, particularly the genitals, to an unsuspecting stranger.
- **Fetishism**—use of nonliving objects (articles of clothing) as substitutes for a human sexual love object.
- **Pedophilia**—sexual urges and fantasies involving sexual activity with a prepubescent child (age 13 or younger).
- **Sexual masochism**—sexual gratification is gained by being humiliated, beaten, bound, or otherwise made to suffer.
- **Sexual sadism**—sexual gratification is gained by inflicting physical or psychological pain or humiliation on others.
- **Transvestic fetishism**—cross-dressing; wearing clothing of the opposite sex accompanied by recurrent and intense sexual arousal.
- **Voyeurism**—sexual excitement is achieved by observing unsuspecting people who are naked, undressing, or engaging in sexual activity.

Somatic Symptom Disorders

In somatic sympton disorders, the patient's psychic (mental) conflicts are expressed as physical symptoms. Abdominal or chest pain, nausea, vomiting, diarrhea, palpitations, deafness, blindness, and paralysis, are not explained by a physical or other mental disorder or by injury and are not side effects of medication, drugs, or alcohol. Examples are:

• **Somatic symptom disorder.** This is classified as the presence of one or more somatic symptoms that are distressing or result in significant disruption of daily life. Typically patients have persistent thoughts and a high level of anxiety about their symptoms.
• **Illness anxiety disorder.** This is marked by preoccupation with having or acquiring a severe illness. Somatic symptoms are not present or if present, only mild in intensity. There is a high level of anxiety about health, and affected people engage in excessive health-related behaviors such as checks on their body for signs of illness. Ruling out a physical abnormality does not reassure the person with an illness anxiety disorder.
• **Conversion disorder.** This is marked by specific neurologic signs or symptoms (such as numbness, paralysis, or blindness) with no actual, organic basis. These symptoms are the result of anxiety and unconscious inner conflict. In a conversion disorder, an unconscious conflict threatens to escape from **repression** (a defense mechanism in which a person removes unacceptable ideas or impulses from consciousness), and is experienced as a physical symptom. The conversion symptom (paralysis, blindness, seizures, and paresthesias) enables the affected person to avoid the conflict and get support from the surrounding environment. For example, a person with repressed anger and desire to physically harm a family member may suddenly develop paralysis of the arm (conversion symptom). Another example of a conversion symptom might be paralysis of the finger used to pull the trigger of a gun if there was internal conflict about firing the weapon.

Substance-Related and Addictive Disorders

Substance-related and addictive disorders are characterized by symptoms and behavioral changes associated with regular use or discontinuation of substances that affect the central nervous system (CNS). Continued or periodic use of certain drugs produces a state of dependence. **Psychological dependence** is a compulsion to continue taking a drug despite adverse consequences, and **physiologic dependence** is characterized by the onset of withdrawal symptoms when the drug is discontinued abruptly. A significant feature of physiologic dependence is **tolerance.** Tolerance is the declining effect of the drug so that the dose must be increased to give the same effect.

Examples of substances that are associated with drug abuse (use of a drug for purposes other than those for which it is prescribed) and dependence are:

Alcohol. Alcohol's effects vary from person to person depending on how much is consumed and how often drinking occurs, and on the drinker's age, health status, and family history. Signs of alcohol dependence and intoxication include slurred speech, incoordination, unsteady gait, nystagmus (rapid, rhythmic movement of the eyeball), impairment in attention or memory, stupor, or coma. Alcohol dependence often is associated with the use and abuse of other psychoactive drugs (cannabis, cocaine, heroin, amphetamines). It also is associated with depression, as either a cause or a consequence of the drinking.

Amphetamines. These CNS stimulants are taken orally or administered intravenously. Examples are amphetamine (Benzedrine), dextroamphetamine (Dexedrine), methamphetamine (Desoxyn, or "speed"), and methylphenidate (Ritalin). Some appetite suppressants (diet pills) are amphetamine-like drugs. Psychological and behavioral changes associated with amphetamine dependence include anger, tension or anxiety, impaired judgment, inability to enjoy what was previously pleasurable, and social isolation. Physical signs and symptoms include tachycardia or bradycardia, dilated pupils, nausea, elevated or low blood pressure, and muscular weakness. Serious depression can occur during withdrawal.

Cannabis. This class of drugs includes all substances with psychoactive properties derived from the cannabis plant plus chemically similar synthetic substances. Examples are **marijuana,** hashish, and purified delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol (THC), the major psychoactive ingredient in these substances. Psychological and physical signs and symptoms after the smoking of cannabis include euphoria, impaired motor coordination, anxiety, sensation of slowed time, social withdrawal, and impaired memory and judgment. Other signs of cannabis intoxication are increased appetite, dry mouth, tachycardia, and paranoia.

Cocaine. Cocaine is a powerfully addictive stimulant drug made from the leaves of the coca plant native to South America. It commonly is inhaled through nostrils or injected intravenously. Short-term effects are euphoria, erratic and violent behavior, vasoconstriction, tachycardia, hypertension, and enlarged pupils. Possible long-term effects are loss of sense of smell, nasal damage and nosebleeds, infection, and bowel necrosis from decreased blood flow. Often, the user of cocaine also is dependent on alcohol or sedatives, which are taken in an attempt to alleviate the unpleasant aftereffects (anxiety, depression, and fatigue) of cocaine intoxication or withdrawal.

Hallucinogens. These drugs produce a state of CNS excitement, hyperactivity, hallucinations, delusions, hypertension, and mood changes. Examples of hallucinogens are **lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD), mescaline (peyote),** and **phencyclidine (PCP).** Other hallucinogens are ayahuasca (hallucinogenic tea) and DMT (*N,N*-dimethyltryptamine, a synthetic drug producing a short-lived hallucinogenic experience). These drugs can disrupt the user's ability to think and communicate rationally. They cause an inability to recognize reality, sometimes resulting in bizarre or dangerous behavior.

Opioids. This group of drugs includes **heroin** and **morphine** and synthetic drugs with morphine-like action, such as **codeine,** meperidine (Demerol), and oxycodone (OxyContin is sustained-release oxycodone). These compounds are prescribed as analgesics (painkillers), anesthetics, or cough suppressants. Typical signs and symptoms of opioid intoxication are pupillary constriction, euphoria, slowness in movement, drowsiness, and slurred speech. Effects of overdose are slow and shallow breathing, convulsions, coma, and possible death.

Sedatives, hypnotics, or anxiolytics. These drugs have a soothing, relaxing, euphoric effect and also can produce sleep (hypnotics). Examples of these drugs are **benzodiazapines** such as diazepam (Valium), lorazapam (Ativan), alprazolam, (Xanax), clonazepam (Klonapin), temazepam (Restoril). Intoxication is characterized by slurred speech and disorientation.

Figure 22-3 reviews the types of psychoactive substances that lead to drug dependence and abuse.

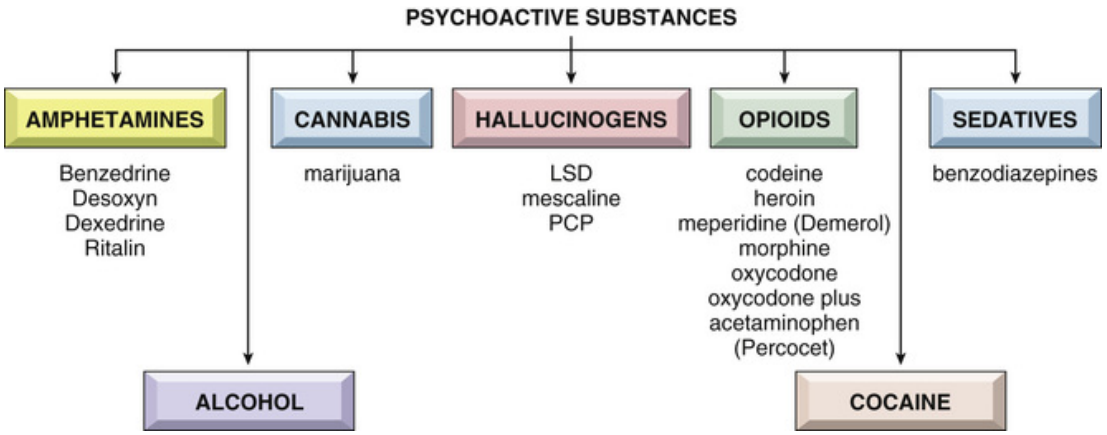


FIGURE 22-3 **Psychoactive substances** that if abused can lead to drug dependence.

Table 22-1 reviews psychiatric disorders and gives examples of each type.

TABLE 22-1
PSYCHIATRIC DISORDERS

CATEGORY	EXAMPLE(S)		
Anxiety disorders	• Panic disorder • Phobic disorders • Obsessive-compulsive disorder	• Post-traumatic stress disorder • Generalized anxiety disorder	
Bipolar disorders	• Bipolar I • Bipolar II • Cyclothymic disorder		
Depressive disorders	• Major depressive disorder • Persistent depressive disorder (dysthymia) • Seasonal affective disorder (SAD)		
Dissociative disorders	• Identity disorder • Dissociative amnesia • Depersonalization/Derealization disorder		
Eating disorders	• Anorexia nervosa • Bulimia nervosa		
Neurocognitive disorders	• Delirium • Dementia		
Neurodevelopmental disorders	• Intellectual disability disorders • Communication disorders	• Autistic spectrum disorder • Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder	
Personality disorders	Cluster A: • paranoid • schizoid • schizotypal	Cluster B: • antisocial • borderline • histrionic • narcissistic	Cluster C: • avoidant • dependent • obsessive-compulsive
Schizophrenia spectrum and other psychotic disorders	Key features: • Delusions • Hallucinations	• Disorganized thinking (speech) • Abnormal motor behavior • Negative symptoms	

CATEGORY	EXAMPLE(S)	
Sexual dysfunctions and paraphilias	• Delayed or premature ejaculation/orgasmic disorders • Exhibitionism • Voyeurism	
Somatic symptom disorders	• Conversion disorder • Illness anxiety disorder	
Substance-related and addictive disorders	Use/Abuse of: • Alcohol • Cannabis • Hallucinogens • Sedatives	• Amphetamines • Cocaine • Opioids

Therapeutic Modalities

Psychotherapy

Psychotherapy is the treatment of emotional problems and disorders using psychological techniques. The following are psychotherapeutic techniques used by psychiatrists, psychologists, and other mental health professionals.

Cognitive-Behavioral Therapy (CBT). This is a relatively short-term, focused psychotherapy for a wide range of psychological problems, including depression, anxiety, anger, marital conflict, fears, and substance abuse. The focus is on how the person who is experiencing difficulty is thinking, behaving, and communicating today, rather than on early childhood experiences. Because CBT is based on the idea that thoughts cause feelings and behaviors (not people, situations, or events), if the person can change established ways of thinking, then he or she can feel better even if the situation does not change. CBT techniques often are used to reduce anxiety.

Family Therapy. Treatment of an entire family can help the individual members resolve and understand their conflicts and problems.

Group Therapy. In a group with a mental health professional leader as a neutral moderator, patients with similar problems gain insight into their own personalities through discussions and interaction with each other. In **psychodrama,** patients express their feelings by acting out family and social roles along with other patient-actors on a stage. After a scene has been presented, the audience (composed of other patients) is asked to make comments and offer interpretations about what they have observed.

Hypnosis. A **trance** (state of altered consciousness) is created to help in recovery of deeply repressed memories. Hypnotic techniques also are used for

anxiety reduction, for creating a sense of psychological safety, and for problem solving.

Insight-Oriented Psychotherapy. This type of psychotherapy uses face-to-face discussion of life problems and associated feelings. The aim is to increase understanding of underlying conflicts, themes, thoughts, and behavior patterns.

Play Therapy. In this form of therapy, the child uses play with toys to express conflicts and feelings that he or she is unable to communicate verbally.

Psychoanalysis. This long-term, intense psychotherapy seeks to influence behavior and resolve internal conflicts by allowing patients to bring their unconscious emotions to the surface. Through techniques such as **free association** (patient speaks his or her thoughts one after another without censorship), **transference** (patient relates to the therapist as if to a person who figured prominently in early childhood, such as a parent or sibling), and **dream interpretation,** the patient is able to bring unconscious emotional conflicts to awareness and thus can overcome these problems.

Sex Therapy. This form of therapy can help people overcome sexual dysfunctions such as **frigidity** (inhibited sexual response in women), **impotence** (inability of a man to achieve and/or maintain an erection), and **premature ejaculation** (release of semen before coitus can be achieved).

Supportive Psychotherapy. The therapist offers encouragement, support, and hope to patients facing difficult life transitions and events.

Electroconvulsive Therapy

In **electroconvulsive therapy (ECT),** an electrical current is applied to the brain (usually to one hemisphere) after the patient is anesthetized, with assisted ventilation, and given a very short-acting muscle paralytic agent. Actual physical convulsions are therefore imperceptible. This therapy is used chiefly for serious depression and the depressive phase of bipolar (manic-depressive) disorder. ECT is a particularly effective treatment for psychotic depression and can be life-saving when a rapid response is needed.

Drug Therapy

The following are categories of drugs used to treat psychiatric disorders. Figure 22-4 reviews these groups and lists specific drugs in each category.

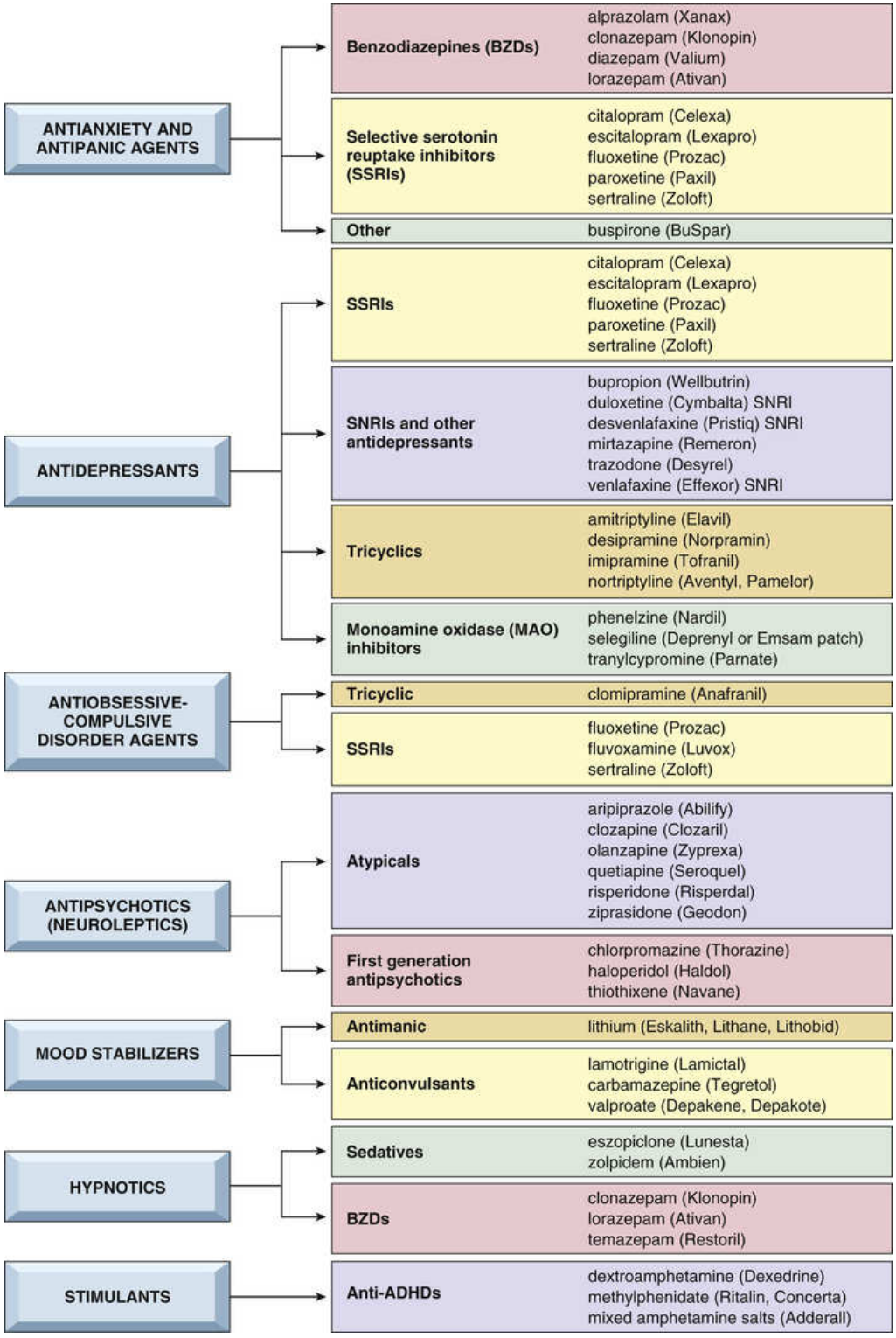


FIGURE 22-4 Psychiatric drug categories and specific drugs.

• **Antianxiety and antipanic agents.** These drugs lessen anxiety, tension, and agitation, especially when they are associated with panic attacks. Examples are **benzodiazepines (BZDs),** which act rapidly as antianxiety angents, sedatives, or anticonvulsants (clonazepam). Benzodiazepines directly affect the brain to stabilize the transmission of excitatory nerve impulses. Other antianxiety and antipanic agents are **selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs).** These agents prevent the reuptake of serotonin (a neurotransmitter) into nerve endings, allowing it to linger in the space between it and the next nerve cell.

• **Antidepressants.** These drugs gradually reverse depression and return the patient to a more even state, with less persistent and less severe depressive symptoms. The basic cause of depression is thought to be related to neurotransmitters in the brain. Several groups of drugs are used as antidepressants. These include:

1. **SSRIs (selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors)** such as fluoxetine (Prozac), paroxetine (Paxil), and sertraline (Zoloft). They improve mood, mental concentration, physical activity, and sleep patterns.
2. **SNRIs (serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors)** are antidepressant drugs that modulate the two neurotransmitters serotonin and norepinephrine in the brain. Examples are venlafaxine (Effexor), desvenlafaxine (Pristiq), and duloxetine (Cymbalta). Other antidepressants that do not fit into defined categories are bupropion (Wellbutrin) and trazodone (Desyrel).
3. **Tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs).** These drugs contain three fused rings in their chemical structure

(hence the designation *tricyclic*). TCAs restore the balance of neurotransmitters in the brain to relieve depression.

4. **Monoamine oxidase (MAO) inhibitors.** These drugs suppress an enzyme, monoamine oxidase, that normally breaks down neurotransmitters. MAO inhibitors are not as widely prescribed as other antidepressants because serious cardiovascular and liver complications can occur with their use. Significant dietary restrictions also are necessary to avoid adverse reactions.

• **Anti–obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD) agents.** These drugs are prescribed to relieve the symptoms of OCD. Tricyclic antidepressants and SSRIs are examples of these agents.

• **Antipsychotics (neuroleptics).** These drugs suppress psychotic symptoms and behavior (Greek *lepsis* means a taking hold). **Atypical antipsychotics** are the major examples. They are used to treat schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, and other mental illnesses. They reduce anxiety, tension, agitation, and aggressiveness and modify psychotic symptoms such as delusions and hallucinations. Older drugs, such as **first generation** (early) **antipsychotics,** such as **phenothiazines,** are still used as well. An important potential adverse effect of older neuroleptic drugs taken over long periods is **tardive dyskinesia (TD);** tardive means late, and dyskinesias are abnormal movements. This is a potentially irreversible condition marked by involuntary movements. Early detection is important. The AIMS (abnormal involuntary movement scale) is used to monitor patients for signs of TD. Weight gain and

increased risk for developing diabetes also are important side effects of atypical antipsychotics.

• **Mood stabilizers.** These drugs are used primarily to treat patients with the mood changes associated with bipolar disorder. **Lithium** is commonly used to reduce the frequency and severity of manic symptoms, such as rapid speech, hyperactive movements, grandiose ideas, agitation and irritability, and impaired sleep patterns (decreased need for sleep is typical). It also is used as an adjunct in the treatment of depression. Lithium is a simple salt that is thought to stabilize nerve membranes. **Anticonvulsant drugs** (valproate and lamotrigine) also are used as mood stabilizers.

• **Hypnotics.** These drugs are used to produce sleep (hypn/o = sleep) and relieve insomnia. Examples are sedatives and benzodiazepines.

• **Stimulants.** These drugs **(amphetamines)** are prescribed for **attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder** in children and, to a lesser extent, adults. Common manifestations of ADHD are a short attention span and easy distractibility, emotional unstability, impulsivity, and moderate to severe hyperactivity.

Vocabulary

This list reviews many of the new terms introduced in the text. Short definitions reinforce your understanding of the terms. Refer to the Pronunciation of Terms on page 894 for help with unfamiliar or difficult words.

General Terminology, Symptoms, And Disorders

affect	External expression of emotion, or emotional response.
amnesia	Loss of memory.
anorexia nervosa	Eating disorder with excessive dieting and refusal to maintain a normal body weight.
anxiety disorders	Characterized by unpleasant tension, distress, and avoidance behavior; examples are panic disorder, phobias, obsessive-compulsive disorder, post-traumatic stress disorder, and generalized anxiety disorder.
apathy	Absence of emotions; lack of interest or emotional involvement.
autism	Neurodevelopmental disorder characterized by inhibited social interaction and communication and by restricted, repetitive behavior.
bipolar disorders	These disorders are marked by alternating periods of mania and depression.
bulimia nervosa	Eating disorder with binge eating followed by vomiting, purging, and depression.
cannabis	Plant substance from which marijuana is obtained.
compulsion	Uncontrollable urge to perform an act repeatedly in an attempt to reduce anxiety.
conversion disorder	Condition marked by neurologic symptoms with no organic (physical) basis, appearing as a result of anxiety and unconscious inner conflict.
defense mechanism	Unconscious technique (coping mechanism) used to resolve or conceal conflicts and anxiety. It protects the person against anxiety and stress; examples are acting out, denial, and repression.
delirium	Acute episodes of confused thinking, disorientation, agitation, and fearfulness. This usually is a reversible impairment. **Delirium tremens** is associated with alcohol withdrawal.
delusion	Fixed, false belief that cannot be changed by logical reasoning or evidence.
dementia	Progressive loss of intellectual abilities such as memory, judgment, and reasoning as well as changes in personality.
depressive disorders	Major psychiatric disorders with chronic sadness, loss of energy, hopelessness, worry, discouragement, and, commonly, suicidal impulses and thoughts.
dissociative	Conditions involving breakdown in memory, identity,

disorders	or perception; examples are identity disorder, dissociative amnesia, and depersonalization/derealization disorder.
ego	Central coordinating branch of the personality or mind.
fugue	Unconscious flight from customary surroundings; a sign of dissociative disorder.
hallucination	False sensory perception (hearing voices and seeing things).
id	Major unconscious part of the personality; energy from instinctual drives and desires.
labile	Unstable; undergoing rapid emotional change.
mania	Elevated expansive state (euphoria) with hyperactivity, talkativeness, and racing thought. **HINT:** Don't confuse with the suffix -mania (see page 880), meaning obsession.
mutism	No, or very little, ability to speak.
neurodevelopmental disorders	Group of childhood disorders characterized by delays in socialization and communication skills; **autism spectrum disorder** is an example.
obsession	Involuntary, persistent idea, urge or emotion.
obsessive-compulsive disorder	Anxiety disorder in which recurrent thoughts and repetitive acts dominate behavior.
paranoia	Overly suspicious system of thinking with fixed delusions of being harassed, persecuted, or unfairly treated.
paraphilia	Recurrent intense sexual urge, fantasy, or behavior that involves unusual objects, activities, or situations.
personality disorders	Lifelong patterns of interacting and behavior marked by inflexibility and impairment of social functioning.
phobia	Irrational or disabling fear (avoidance) of an object or situation.
post-traumatic stress disorder	Anxiety-related symptoms appear after personal experience of a traumatic event.
projective (personality) test	Diagnostic personality test using stimuli (inkblots, pictures, abstract patterns, incomplete sentences) to evoke responses that reflect aspects of an individual's personality.
psychiatrist	Physician (MD degree) or osteopath (DO degree) with medical training in the diagnosis, prevention, and treatment of mental disorders. Examples are a **child psychiatrist** (diagnosing and treating children) and a

	forensic psychiatrist (specializing in legal considerations such as criminal responsibility, guardianship, and competence to stand trial). Forensic comes from the Latin *forum*, meaning public place.
psychologist	Nonmedical professional (often with a PhD, PsyD, or EdD degree) specializing in mental processes and how the brain functions in health and disease. Areas of interest are **clinical psychology** (providing testing and counseling services to patients with mental and emotional disorders), **experimental psychology** (performing laboratory tests and experiments in a controlled environment to study mental processes), and **social psychology** (study of the effects of group membership on behavior and attitudes of individuals).
psychosis	Marked by loss of contact with reality, often associated with delusions and hallucinations.
reality testing	Psychological process that distinguishes fact from fantasy; severely impaired in psychosis.
repression	Defense mechanism by which unacceptable thoughts, feelings, and impulses are automatically pushed into the unconscious, out of awareness.
schizophrenia spectrum disorders	Group of chronic psychotic disorders that may include hallucinations, disorganized speech and behavior, flat affect, and lack of initiative.
sexual dysfunctions	Disturbances in a person's ability to respond sexually or to experience sexual pleasure.
somatic symptom disorders	Presence of physical symptoms (such as pain or fatigue) that cannot be explained by an actual physical disorder or mental condition.
substance-related and addictive disorders	Group of disorders marked by regular overuse of or dependence on psychoactive substances (alcohol, amphetamines, cannabis, cocaine, hallucinogens, opioids, and sedatives) that affect the central nervous system.
superego	Internalized conscience and moral aspect of the personality.

Therapy

amphetamines	Central nervous system stimulants that may be used to treat attention deficit–hyperactivity disorder and depression.
atypical antipsychotics	Drugs that treat psychotic symptoms and behavior (schizophrenia, or bipolar disease; second generation antipsychotics).
benzodiazepines	Drugs that lessen anxiety, tension, agitation, and panic attacks.
cognitive behavioral therapy	Focuses on the connection between behavior and thoughts. Conditioning (changing behavior patterns by training and repetition) is used to relieve anxiety and improve symptoms of illness.
electroconvulsive therapy	Electrical current is used to produce convulsions and loss of consciousness; effective in the treatment of major depression. Modern techniques use anesthesia, so the convulsion is not observable.
family therapy	Treatment of an entire family to resolve and shed light on conflicts.
first generation antipsychotic drugs	Early neuroleptic medications that reduce psychotic symptoms.
free association	Psychoanalytic technique in which the patient verbalizes, without censorship, the passing contents of his or her mind.
group therapy	Group of patients with similar problems gain insight into their personalities through discussion and interaction with each other.
hypnosis	Induced trance (state of altered consciousness).
insight-oriented therapy	Face-to-face discussion of life problems and associated feelings. The patient tells his or her story and has the opportunity to connect emotional patterns in his or her life history with present concerns. Also called psychodynamic therapy.
lithium	Medication used to treat bipolar illness.
neuroleptic drug	Any drug that favorably modifies psychotic symptoms; antipsychotic drug.
play therapy	Treatment in which a child, through use of toys in a playroom setting, expresses conflicts and feelings that cannot be communicated verbally.
psychoanalysis	Treatment that allows the patient to explore inner emotions and conflicts so as to understand and change current behavior.
psychodrama	Group therapy in which a patient expresses feelings

	by acting out family and social roles with other patients.
psychopharmacology	Treatment of psychiatric disorders with drugs.
sedatives	Drugs that induce calmness, promote sleep, and help lessen anxiety.
supportive psychotherapy	Offering encouragement, support, and hope to patients facing difficult life transitions and events.
transference	Psychoanalytic process in which the patient relates to the therapist as though the therapist were a prominent childhood figure.
tricyclic antidepressants	Drugs used to treat severe depression (characterized by a three-ringed fused molecular structure).

Terminology

Write the meanings of the medical terms in the spaces provided.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY MEANING
anxi/o	uneasy, anxious, distressed	anxiolytic _____ *This type of drug relieves anxiety.* ***Benzodiazopines*** *are anxiolytics (Valium and Xanax are examples).*
aut/o	self	autism _____
hallucin/o	hallucination, to wander in the mind	hallucinogen _____ *A* ***hallucination*** *is a sensory perception in the absence of any external stimuli, and an* ***illusion*** *is an error in perception in which sensory stimuli are present but incorrectly interpreted.*
hypn/o	sleep	hypnosis _____ *The Greek god of sleep (Hypnos) put people to sleep by touching them with his magic wand or by fanning them with his dark wings.*
iatr/o	treatment	psychiatrist _____ iatrogenic _____
ment/o	mind	mental _____
neur/o	nerve	neurotransmitter _____ *Examples of neurotransmitters are serotonin and norepinephrine.*
phil/o	attraction to, love	paraphilia _____ *Para- means abnormal.*
phren/o	mind	schizophrenia _____ *Schiz/o means split.*

COMBINING FORM	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
psych/o	mind	psychosis _____ *Loss of contact with reality associated with symptoms such as delusions, hallucinations, and bizarre behavior.* psychopharmacology _____ psychotherapy _____	
schiz/o	split	schizoid _____ *A type of personality disorder; emotionally cold, withdrawn and aloof.*	
somat/o	body	psychosomatic _____	

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
-genic	produced by	psychogenic _____	
-leptic	to seize hold of	neuroleptic drug _____	
-mania	obsessive preoccupation	kleptomania _____ *Klept/o means to steal.* pyromania _____ *Pyr/o means fire, heat.*	
-phobia	fear (irrational and often disabling)	agoraphobia _____ *Agora- means marketplace. Agoraphobics fear leaving home or a safe place.* xenophobia _____ *Xen/o means stranger.* Table 22-2 lists *other phobias.*	
-phoria	feeling, bearing	euphoria _____ *The prefix eu- means good. An excited state of joy; a good feeling.* dysphoria _____ *The prefix dys- means unpleasant. A person with dysphoria experiences uneasiness and dissatisfaction with life, often followed by depression.*	
-thymia	mind	cyclothymia _____ *Cycl/o means circle or recurring. Alternating periods of hypomania and depression; lesser intensity than in bipolar disorder.* dysthymia _____ *Depressed mood that is not as severe as in major depression.* euthymia _____ *Normal, non-depressed, positive mood.*	

TABLE 22-2

PHOBIAS

SOURCE OF FEAR/ANXIETY	MEDICAL TERM
air	aerophobia
animals	zoophobia
bees	apiphobia, melissophobia
blood or bleeding	hematophobia, hemophobia
books	bibliophobia
cats	ailurophobia
corpses	necrophobia
crossing a bridge	gephyrophobia
darkness	nyctophobia, scotophobia
death	thanatophobia
dogs	cynophobia
drugs	pharmacophobia
eating	phagophobia
enclosed places	claustrophobia
hair	trichophobia, trichopathophobia
heights	acrophobia
insects	entomophobia
light	photophobia
marriage	gamophobia
men	androphobia
needles	belonephobia
pain	algophobia
sexual intercourse	coitophobia, cypridophobia
sleep	hypnophobia
snakes	ophidiophobia
spiders	arachnophobia
traveling	hodophobia
vomiting	emetophobia
women	gynephobia, gynophobia
worms	helminthophobia
writing	graphophobia

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING	TERMINOLOGY	MEANING
a-, an-	no, not	anorexia nervosa _____ *-orexia means appetite.*	
cata-	down	catatonia _____ *Ton/o means tension. A state of psychologically induced immobility with muscular rigidity.*	
hypo-	deficient, less than, below	hypomania _____	
para-	abnormal	paranoia _____ *The no- in this term comes from the Greek word* nous, *meaning mind.*	

Abbreviations

AD	Alzheimer disease—a form of dementia
ADHD	attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder
ADLs	activities of daily living
AIMS	abnormal involuntary movement scale—used to monitor signs of tardive dyskinesia
ASD	autism spectrum disorder
BZD	benzodiazepine
CA	chronologic age
CBT	cognitive-behavioral therapy
CNS	central nervous system
DSM-5	*Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, Fifth Edition*
DT	delirium tremens
ECT	electroconvulsive therapy
GAD	generalized anxiety disorder
ID	intellectual disability
IQ	intelligence quotient An IQ test is a standardized test to determine mental age of an individual. The average person is considered to have an IQ of between 90 and 110. Those who score below 70 are considered to have an intellectual disability.
LSD	lysergic acid diethylamide—a hallucinogen
MA	mental age—as determined by psychological tests
MAOI	monoamine oxidase inhibitor; an example is phenelzine (Nardil)
MDD	major depressive disorder
MMPI	Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory
NCD	neurocognitive disorder
OCD	obsessive-compulsive disorder (anxiety disorder)
OCPD	obsessive-compulsive personality disorder
PTSD	post-traumatic stress disorder
Rx	therapy
SAD	seasonal affective disorder
SNRI	serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitor; an example is duloxetine (Cymbalta)
SSRI	selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor; an example is fluoxetine (Prozac)
TAT	Thematic Apperception Test
TCA	tricyclic antidepressant
TD	tardive dyskinesia
THC	delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol—active ingredient in marijuana
WAIS	Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale
WISC	Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children

Ψ	symbol for psych- (the uppercase Greek letter psi)
ΨRx	psychotherapy

In Person

Living with Autism

This first-person account was written by the mother of a young boy diagnosed with autism.

"What you do from now on will determine whether your son will be able to live on his own as an adult or whether he will have to live in a facility."

I was told this by a physician when my son, Jeff, was diagnosed with autism.

It began early on. For the first year of his life, Jeff had difficulty tolerating many situations and often cried. Loud noises such as barking dogs, motorcycles, and the trash truck sent him into a crying frenzy. If he was in a quiet room, in a swing, or being held, he was comfortable. Most other situations he could tolerate for only 60 to 90 minutes, after which he would cry for 20 to 30 minutes as if relieving stress. As Jeff aged, his tolerance slowly increased, but even at the age of 4, overstimulation caused him to cry daily.

Jeff experienced numerous other challenges as well. His ability to play was impaired. If a toy did not light up or play music he was not interested in it. The exception was Matchbox cars, which he did enjoy. However, he did not play with them appropriately. He merely lined them up. Jeff never engaged in imaginative play, nor could he carry on a back-and-forth conversation. His speech was rote, and he had extreme difficulty communicating and relating to peers.

After visiting several doctors in search of a diagnosis, we were told Jeff was autistic. We also learned that his discomfort and crying were a result of sensory integration challenges that children on the autism spectrum experience. Sensory integration is the process of organizing useful perceptions, emotions and thoughts. When sensory integration is whole and balanced, body movements are highly adaptive and good behavior is a natural outcome. This was not the case with Jeff.

It was difficult to accept the diagnosis, but we had to move on. The next step was finding proper treatment for Jeff. After much consideration, we decided on DIR/Floortime [Developmental, Individual Difference, Relationship-Based–Floortime] Therapy ("Floortime"), supplemented with occupational therapy (OT), to address Jeff's sensory integration needs.

Floortime is a play-based treatment, focusing on helping children master the building blocks of relating, communicating, and thinking. Guided interactions between the child and parent, sibling, grandparent, or caregiver move the child through six Floortime developmental stages, which are:

1. Self-Regulation and Shared Attention
2. Engagement and Relating
3. Two-way Intentional Communication
4. Purposeful Complex Problem Solving/Communication
5. Creating Ideas
6. Logical Reasoning, Thinking Logically

I was taught Floortime by a professional and spent nights watching instructional videos and reading Floortime books. I worked with Jeff each day, including Saturday and Sunday. We did Floortime constantly even during meals, riding in the car, and during bath time. I was working for my son's future. The more therapy he received, the better his chances of "recovery." No opportunity was missed.

Each week, over the course of several years, our program leader would assess Jeff's development and determine when he had mastered a skill and when further interventions were needed.

Over several years, Floortime was resolving Jeff's developmental issues, and OT was helping his sensory integration issues, but another problem was becoming more extreme. By first grade, Jeff had developed anxiety that was so irrational and overwhelming that it impaired his school, social and family life. He was very fearful and always thinking about the worst things that could happen. Conversations often would "spin out of control" as Jeff worried irrationally about things that might happen to him. During these times, I would attempt to distract him, only to have the anxiety recur.

As time went on, Jeff not only was verbalizing his anxiety, but manifested other unconscious behaviors such as eye and verbal tics, chewing on his shirt, and pulling on his hair.

Our team of doctors did not have a specific answer for Jeff's anxiety. We tried numerous treatments including psychotherapy, desensitization therapy, applied behavioral therapy, occupational body-regulating therapy, and cognitive-behavioral therapy. None had much effect on reducing anxiety.

Finally, one of our doctors suggested a study at a nearby university, which was funded by the National Institute of Mental Health. The program was specifically designed for children on the autism spectrum suffering from very high levels of anxiety. It was a treatment protocol based on a collaborative, family-based intervention approach using targeted cognitive-behavioral therapy techniques. It took into consideration Jeff's spectrum-based deficits

and taught him how his anxiety could be managed by using a coping plan and actively facing his fears. The program lasted nearly a year. But we used it regularly for months after it ended. It had a noticeable positive impact on Jeff's anxiety.

By his fourth-grade year, Jeff's physical size of 5′0″ and 80 pounds allowed his child psychiatrist to prescribe antianxiety medication. This has made a real difference in his functioning and well-being.

Today Jeff is is a mainstreamed student at a public middle school. He is able to relate to others with real warmth. He has a core group of good friends, a love of learning, and a mischievous sense of humor. His anxiety remains his biggest challenge but is under control with medication and psychotherapy.

Through it all, my family and I have learned that with the proper therapies and treatments, we can define an autistic child's potential not by assumed limitations, but by that child's own growth.

Practical Applications

Case Reports

Case Report 1: Major Depression

Mrs. Carr, a 58-year-old widow, was brought to the emergency department by her daughter, who found her at home in bed in the middle of the day. For a period of months, Mrs. Carr had become increasingly withdrawn and dysphoric, without any precipitating events. She had become progressively less active and even required encouragement to eat and perform her daily tasks. Her daughter and son-in-law became alarmed but did not know what to do. Mrs. Carr's medical history was unremarkable, but her psychiatric history revealed an episode of postpartum depression after the birth of one of her children.

On examination, the ER [emergency room] physician noted that Mrs. Carr was withdrawn and negativistic, refusing to cooperate with the examination, and even refusing to open her mouth. There were signs of acute dehydration and decline in personal hygiene and grooming.

Further questioning of her daughter revealed that Mrs. Carr had become increasingly paranoid and had delusions of sinfulness and guilt. Recently, she had shown signs of increasing mutism.

The physician recognized signs of major depression and arranged for immediate hospitalization. Mrs. Carr responded favorably to combined use of an antipsychotic and an antidepressant drug. An alternative treatment would have been a course of electroconvulsive therapy, which also produces favorable results.

Case Report 2: Somatic Symptom Disorder

A 35-year-old man presented with a 6-year history of abdominal pain that he was convinced was cancer. For most of his life, the patient evidently had been dominated by a tyrannical father who never gave him the love he craved. When the patient was 29, his father died of carcinoma of the colon, and soon afterward, the patient developed abdominal pain. His complaints gradually increased as his identification with his father, as well as his unconscious hostility toward him, increased. The patient came to the clinic almost daily with complaints of bloody stools (the feces were found to be free of blood) and the belief that he had cancer. He felt that none of the clinic doctors listened to him, just as his father had not.

Treatment included development of a longstanding, trusting, positive relationship with one of the clinic physicians, who allowed the patient time to talk about the illness. His symptoms gradually subsided during a 12-month period of a supportive physician-patient relationship.

Case Report 3: Bipolar Disorder

A 30-year-old woman first presented with depression at age 26. Her depression was characterized by sadness lasting most of the day, crying spells, severe irritability, hypersomnia with some periods of insomnia, anergia (low energy), severe inappropriate guilt feelings, and absence of libido (sex drive). The patient also described periods of high energy when her "mind ran away," and her mood was irritable, with a decreased need for sleep. She stated that initially, these times would last 1 or 2 days at the most. Her family would avoid confrontations with her during those periods of energy and activity. The patient had previously been diagnosed as suffering from dysthymic disorder with major depression. A bipolar illness was suspected based on her 1- or 2-day bursts of energy and activity. History from family members confirmed that she had experienced expansive mood states lasting at least 4 consecutive days and present most of the day that met the DSM-5 criteria for hypomanic episodes. Her diagnosis was changed to bipolar II disorder. She was placed on a regimen of bupropion (Wellbutrin), and the dose was increased to 300 mg/day. Her mood improved in a general way, with less irritability, more energy, and less sadness. She continued to have rather pronounced premenstrual worsening of her mood, however, that did not respond to an increase in the dose of bupropion. In the meantime, her physician added lithium to her medical regimen of fluoxetine (Prozac).

Case Report 4: Schizophrenia

Mike is a 33-year-old divorced man with two children, ages 8 and 10, whom he rarely ever sees. He has never been evaluated by a psychiatrist. His family physician has tried to get him to see a local psychiatrist, but Mike refuses to

go. Mike says he knows someone has removed his brain and replaced it with someone else's. He believes that this brain is controlling him and that he is not responsible for his actions. He works every day and has been on his current job for 15 years. He says he has lots of friends, but sometimes he thinks it's one of them who did this to him. He reports incidents in which he has been injected with something while shopping and speaks of a government conspiracy to kill him. He has a college education and has a degree in computer science. His family physician ordered an MRI study, which showed negative findings, and he also had an EEG. The EEG results came back normal.

Movies With Psychiatric Topics

1. **Silver Linings Playbook**, 2012, bipolar disorder.
2. **A Beautiful Mind**, 2001, schizophrenia
3. **The Hours**, 2002, depression and bipolar disorder.
4. **Rain Main,** 1988, Aspergers/High-Functioning Autism
5. **Good Will Hunting,** 1997, depression
6. **Pain and Glory**, 2019, addiction
7. **The Aviator,** 2004, obsessive compulsive disorder

Exercises

Remember to check your answers carefully with the Answers to Exercises, page 892.

A **Give the terms for the following definitions.**

1. physician specializing in treating mental illness
   _____
2. nonphysician professionals trained in the treatment of mental illness _____
3. therapist who practices psychoanalysis
   _____
4. branch of psychiatry dealing with legal matters
   _____
5. unconscious part of the personality
   _____

6. conscious, coordinating part of the personality
_____

7. conscience or moral part of the personality
_____

8. psychological process used to distinguish fact from fantasy _____

9. unconscious technique used to resolve or conceal conflicts and anxiety _____ mechanism.

10. branch of psychology dealing with patient care
_____

B **Match the psychiatric symptoms with their definitions/descriptions that follow.**

amnesia
anxiety
apathy
compulsion
conversion
delusion
dissociation
hallucination
mania
mutism
obsession

1. nonreactive state marked by inability to speak
_____

2. state of excessive excitability; agitation
_____

3. loss of memory _____
4. uncontrollable urge to perform an act repeatedly _____
5. persistent idea, emotion, or urge _____
6. feelings of apprehension, uneasiness, dread _____
7. uncomfortable feelings are separated from their real object and redirected toward a second object or behavior pattern _____
8. anxiety becomes a bodily symptom that has no organic basis _____
9. absence of emotions; lack of motivation or emotional involvement _____
10. fixed false belief that cannot be changed by logical reasoning or evidence _____
11. false or unreal sensory perception _____

C **Give the meanings of the following terms.**

1. dysphoria _____
2. euphoria _____
3. amnesia _____
4. paranoia _____
5. psychosis _____
6. iatrogenic _____
7. phobia _____

8. agoraphobia
_____

9. labile _____

10. affect _____

D **Select from the list of psychiatric conditions to complete the sentences that follow.**

anxiety disorders

delirium

dementia

dissociative disorders

eating disorders

bipolar disorders

personality disorders

sexual dysfunctions

somatic symptom disorders

substance-related and addictive disorders

1. Disturbances of memory and identity that hide the anxiety of unconscious conflicts are _____.
2. Troubled feelings, unpleasant tension, distress, and avoidance behavior describe a/an _____.
3. Conditions related to regular use of drugs and alcohol are _____.
4. Bulimia and anorexia nervosa are examples of _____.
5. A disorder involving paraphilias is a/an _____.

6. Disorders marked by alternating periods of mania and depression are _____.
7. Mental conditions in which physical symptoms cannot be explained by an actual physical disorder or injury are _____.
8. Lifelong patterns of thought and behavior that are inflexible and causes distress, conflict, and impairment of social functioning are _____.
9. Loss of intellectual abilities with impairment of memory, judgment, and reasoning is _____.
10. Confusion in thinking with faulty perceptions and irrational behavior is _____.

E **Provide meanings of the following terms.**

1. obsessive-compulsive disorder _____ _____
2. post-traumatic stress disorder _____
3. bipolar disorder _____
4. fugue _____
5. paranoia _____
6. amphetamines _____
7. cannabis _____
8. schizophrenia _____
9. sexual sadism _____
10. somatic symptom disorder _____

F **Match the general psychiatric disorder in Column I with an association in Column II. Write the letter of the**

answer in the space provided.

COLUMN I		COLUMN II
1. somatic symptom disorder	_____	A. conversion disorder
2. sexual dysfunction	_____	B. cocaine abuse
3. anxiety disorder	_____	C. phobia
4. bipolar disorder	_____	D. negative symptoms such as flat affect and lack of initiative
5. substance-related and addictive disorder	_____	E. pedophilia
6. schizophrenia spectrum	_____	F. autism
7. dissociative disorder	_____	G. alternating mania and depression
8. neurocognitive disorder	_____	H. delirium and dementia
9. neurodevelopmental disorder		I. fugue and identity disorder

G **Provide meanings of the following terms.**

1. anorexia nervosa

   _____

   _____

2. bulimia nervosa

   _____

   _____

3. repression

   _____

   _____

4. dementia

   _____

   _____

5. hypomania

   _____

   _____

6. hallucinogen

   _____

   _____

7. opioids

_____
_____

8. cocaine

_____
_____

9. cyclothymic disorder

_____
_____

10. dysthymia

_____
_____

H **Match the personality disorder with its description.**

Cluster A	**Cluster B**	**Cluster C**
Paranoid	Antisocial	Avoidant
Schizoid	Borderline	Dependent
Schizotypal	Histrionic	Obsessive-compulsive
	Narcissistic	

1. flamboyant, theatrical, emotionally immature

_____

2. no loyalty or concern for others; does not tolerate frustration and blames others when he or she is at fault

_____

3. fantasies of success and power and a grandiose sense of self-importance _____
4. pervasive, unwarranted suspiciousness and mistrust of people _____
5. emotionally cold, aloof, indifferent to praise or criticism or to the feelings of others _____

6. instability in personal relationships and sense of self; alternating overinvolvement with and rejection of people _____
7. pattern of social inhibition, feelings of inadequacy, and hypersensitivity to negative evaluations _____
8. acute discomfort in close relationships with odd beliefs and bizarre fantasies _____
9. needing orderliness, perfectionism and control; preoccupied with details, rules, lists, and schedules _____
10. submissive and clinging behavior related to an excessive need to be taken care of _____

I **Identify the psychotherapeutic technique based on its description provided.**

1. Patients express feelings by acting out roles with other patients: _____
2. A trance helps patients recover deeply repressed feelings: _____
3. Long-term and intense exploration of unconscious feelings uses techniques such as transference and free association: _____ _____
4. Toys help a child express conflicts and feelings: _____
5. Conditioning changes actual behavior patterns rather than focusing on subconscious thoughts and feelings: _____ _____

6. Techniques help patients overcome sexual dysfunctions: _____
7. Electrical current is applied to the brain to reverse major depression: _____
8. Agents (chemicals) relieve symptoms of psychiatric disorders: _____
9. Face-to-face discussion of life's problems and associated feelings: _____
10. Offering encouragement, support, and hope to patients facing difficult life transitions and events: _____ _____

J **Select from the listed terms relating to psychiatric disorders and their treatment to complete the sentences that follow.**

agoraphobia
amphetamines
benzodiazepines
cyclothymia
dysthymia
first generation antipsychotics
kleptomania
lithium
MAO inhibitors
pyromania
tricyclic antidepressants
xenophobia

1. Fear of strangers is _____.

2. Obsessive preoccupation with stealing is _____.
3. Antidepressant agents that work by blocking the action of a specific enzyme are _____.
4. Depression disorder that is milder than major depression is _____.
5. Neuroleptic drugs such as Thorazine and Haldol are _____.
6. Fear of being left alone in unfamiliar surroundings is _____.
7. Stimulants used for treatment of children with attention deficit–hyperactivity disorder are _____.
8. Mild form of bipolar disorder in which hypomanic episodes alternate with depression is _____.
9. Obsessive preoccupation with fire is _____.
10. Drugs (with molecular structure containing three fused rings) used to elevate mood and increase physical activity and mental alertness are _____.
11. Anxiolytic agents that lessen the anxiety associated with panic attacks are _____.
12. Drug that is used to treat bipolar illness is _____.

K **Give the meanings of the following word parts.**

1. phren/o _____
2. hypn/o _____

3. somat/o _____
4. phil/o _____
5. iatr/o _____
6. schiz/o _____
7. -mania _____
8. -phobia _____
9. -thymia _____
10. -tropic _____
11. -genic _____
12. para- _____
13. hypo- _____
14. cata- _____

L **Match the psychiatric drugs with their type and the condition(s) they treat (consult Figure 22-4 on page 875).**

alprazolam (Xanax)
amitriptyline (Elavil)
aripiprazole (Abilify)
escitalopram (Lexapro)
lamotrigine (Lamictal)
methylphenidate (Ritalin, Concerta)
thiothixene (Navane)
zolpidem (Ambien)

1. SSRI; treats anxiety and depression _____
2. atypical antipsychotic; treats schizophrenia and bipolar disorder _____

3. stimulant; treats attention deficit–hyperactivity disorder _____
4. tricyclic antidepressant; treats depression _____
5. benzodiazepine; treats anxiety and panic attacks _____
6. sedative; treats insomnia _____
7. anticonvulsant that also isused to treat bipolar disorders _____
8. first generation antipsychotic that treats schizophrenia _____

M **Circle the** boldface **terms that best complete the meaning of the sentences.**

1. Robin fluctuated between bouts of depression and mania and finally was diagnosed as having a **(xenophobic, histrionic, bipolar)** disorder.
2. Although the root of Jon's problems could hardly be addressed simply with medication, his personality disorder and his depression were treated with a selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (SSRI) called **(lithium, Prozac, Valium)**.
3. Hillary had an enormous fear of open-air markets, shopping malls, and stadiums. She was diagnosed as having **(agoraphobia, xenophobia, pyromania)**.
4. When Sam was admitted to the hospital after his automobile accident, his physicians were told of his alcoholism. They needed to know Sam's history so that they could prevent **(dementia, dysthymia, delirium tremens)**.

5. Hanna was afraid of everyone she met. She had the **(paranoid, narcissistic, schizoid)** delusion that everyone was out to get her.
6. Bill was told that an important potential side effect of taking neuroleptic drugs such as atypical and first-generation antipsychotics was **(amnesia, mutism, tardive dyskinesia)**.
7. Ever since she was trapped in an elevator for 3 hours, Lil experienced a **(social phobia, panic attack, somatic symptom disorder)** marked by palpitations, sweating, and trembling when she was unable to get out of an enclosed space.
8. The few survivors of the nightclub fire were diagnosed with **(OCD, dissociative fugue, post-traumatic stress disorder)**. They regularly experienced insomnia, nightmares, and feelings of helplessness.
9. Sarah couldn't stop herself from eating a half-gallon of ice cream and a box of cookies every evening. She would then feel very anxious and guilty about overeating and induce vomiting. Her mother took her to a/an **(endocrinologist, psychiatrist, gastroenterologist)**, who diagnosed her condition as **(anorexia nervosa, somatic symptom disorder, bulimia nervosa)** and prescribed **(sex therapy, ECT, psychotherapy)**.
10. Bill felt depressed during the months of November through February. In March his **(OCD, ADHD, SAD)** changed and his mood was characterized by **(hypomania, dysphoria, paranoia)**.

Answers to Exercises

A

1. psychiatrist
2. psychologist, psychiatric nurse, licensed clinical social worker
3. psychoanalyst
4. forensic psychiatry
5. id
6. ego
7. superego
8. reality testing
9. defense
10. clinical

B

1. mutism
2. mania
3. amnesia
4. compulsion
5. obsession
6. anxiety
7. dissociation
8. conversion
9. apathy
10. delusion
11. hallucination

C

1. sadness, hopelessness, unpleasant feeling
2. exaggerated feeling of well-being (“high”)
3. loss of memory
4. suspicious system of thinking; fixed delusion that one is being treated unfairly or harassed
5. loss of contact with reality; often delusions and hallucinations
6. pertaining to a disorder caused by a treatment
7. irrational fear (avoidance) of an object or a situation
8. fear of leaving one's home or a safe place
9. unstable; undergoing rapid emotional change; fluctuating
10. expression of emotion

D

1. dissociative disorder
2. anxiety disorder
3. substance-related/addictive disorder
4. eating disorder
5. sexual dysfunction
6. bipolar disorder
7. somatic symptom disorder
8. personality disorder
9. dementia

10. delirium

E

1. recurrent thoughts and repetitive acts that dominate a person's behavior
2. anxiety-related symptoms appear after exposure to personal experience of a traumatic event
3. alternating periods of mania and depression
4. amnesia with flight from customary surroundings
5. delusions of persecution or grandeur
6. CNS stimulants
7. marijuana, hashish; active substance in marijuana; THC
8. psychosis marked by a split from reality; disorganized thinking and behavior
9. achievement of sexual gratification by inflicting physical or psychological pain
10. presence of physical symptoms that cannot be explained by an actual medical disorder or injury

F

1. A
2. E
3. C
4. G
5. B
6. D

7. I

8. H

9. F

G

1. eating disorder marked by excessive dieting related to emotional factors
2. eating disorder characterized by binge eating followed by vomiting, purging, and depression
3. a defense mechanism by which unacceptable thoughts, feelings, and impulses are pushed into the unconscious
4. loss of higher mental functioning, memory, judgment, and reasoning
5. mood disorder resembling mania (exaggerated excitement, hyperactivity) but of lesser intensity
6. drug that produces hallucinations (false sensory perceptions)
7. drugs that are derived from opium (morphine and heroin)
8. stimulant drug that causes euphoria and hallucinations
9. alternating periods of hypomania and depressive episodes of lesser intensity than with bipolar illness
10. depressed mood persisting over a 2-year period but not as severe as a major depression

H

1. histrionic
2. antisocial

3. narcissistic
4. paranoid
5. schizoid
6. borderline
7. avoidant
8. schizotypal
9. obsessive-compulsive
10. dependent

I

1. psychodrama
2. hypnosis
3. psychoanalysis
4. play therapy
5. behavioral therapy
6. sexual therapy
7. electroconvulsive therapy
8. psychopharmacology, or drug therapy
9. insight-oriented psychotherapy
10. supportive psychotherapy

J

1. xenophobia
2. kleptomania

3. MAO inhibitors
4. dysthymia
5. first generation antipsychotics
6. agoraphobia
7. amphetamines
8. cyclothymia
9. pyromania
10. tricyclic antidepressants
11. benzodiazepines
12. lithium

K

1. mind
2. sleep
3. body
4. love, attraction to
5. treatment
6. split
7. obsessive preoccupation
8. fear
9. mind; mood
10. to influence, turn
11. produced by

12. abnormal
13. deficient, less than, below
14. down

L

1. escitalopram (Lexapro)
2. aripiprazole (Abilify)
3. methylphenidate (Ritalin, Concerta)
4. amitriptyline (Elavil)
5. alprazolam (Xanax)
6. zolpidem (Ambien)
7. lamotrigine (Lamictal)
8. thiothixene (Navane)

M

1. bipolar
2. Prozac
3. agoraphobia
4. delirium tremens
5. paranoid
6. tardive dyskinesia
7. panic attack
8. post-traumatic stress disorder
9. psychiatrist; bulimia nervosa; psychotherapy

10. SAD; dysphoria

Pronunciation of Terms

The terms you have learned in this chapter are presented here with their pronunciations. The meanings for all the terms are in the **Mini-Dictionary** beginning on page 897.

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
affect	AF-ekt
agoraphobia	ah-gor-ah-FO-be-ah
amnesia	am-NE-ze-ah
amphetamines	am-FET-ah-meez
anorexia nervosa	an-o-REK-se-ah ner-VO-sah
antisocial personality	an-te-SO-shal per-son-AL-ih-te
anxiety disorders	ang-ZI-et-e dis-OR-derz
anxiolytic	ang-zi-o-LIT-ik
apathy	AH-pah-the
atypical antipsychotics	a-TIP-ik-al an-tih-si-KOT-iks
autism	AW-tizm
avoidant personality	ah-VOY-dant per-son-AL-ih-te
benzodiazepines	ben-zo-di-AZ-eh-penz
bipolar disorders	bi-PO-lar dis-OR-derz
borderline personality	BOR-der-line per-son-AL-ih-te
bulimia nervosa	bu-LE-me-ah ner-VO-sah
cannabis	KAN-ah-bis
catatonia	kat-ah-TO-ne-ah
claustrophobia	klaws-tro-FO-be-ah
cognitive behavioral therapy	KOG-nit-iv be-HAYV-yor-al THER-ah-pe
compulsion	kom-PUL-shun
conversion disorder	kon-VER-zshun dis-OR-der
cyclothymia	si-klo-THI-me-ah
defense mechanism	de-FENS meh-kan-NIZM
delirium	deh-LEER-e-um
delirium tremens	deh-LEER-e-um TRE-menz
delusion	deh-LU-zhun
dementia	de-MEN-she-ah
dependent personality	de-PEN-dant per-son-AL-ih-te
depressive disorders	de-PRES-iv dis-OR-derz
dissociative disorder	dih-SO-she-ah-tiv dis-OR-der
dysphoria	dis-FOR-e-ah
dysthymia	dis-THI-me-ah
ego	E-go
electroconvulsive therapy	eh-lek-tro-kon-VUL-siv THER-ah-pe
euphoria	u-FOR-e-ah
euthymia	u-THI-me-ah
exhibitionism	ek-sih-BISH-un-izm

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
family therapy	FAM-il-e THER-ah-pe
fetishism	FET-ish-izm
free association	free ah-so-she-A-shun
fugue	fewg
group therapy	groop THER-ah-pe
hallucination	hah-lu-sih-NA-shun
hallucinogen	hah-LU-sih-no-jen
histrionic personality	his-tre-ON-ik per-son-AL-ih-te
hypnosis	hip-NO-sis
hypomania	hi-po-MA-ne-ah
iatrogenic	i-ah-tro-JEN-ik
id	id
insight-oriented therapy	IN-site OR-e-en-ted THER-ah-pe
kleptomania	klep-to-MA-ne-ah
labile	LA-bile
lithium	LITH-e-um
mania	MA-ne-ah
mental	MEN-tal
mutism	MU-tiz-im
narcissistic personality	nar-sih-SIS-tik per-son-AL-ih-te
neurocognitive disorders	nu-ro-KOG-nat-iv dis-OR-derz
neurodevelopmental disorders	nu-ro-de-VEL-op-men-tal dis-OR-derz
neuroleptic drug	nu-ro-LEP-tik drug
neurotransmitter	nu-ro-TRANZ-mit-er
obsession	ob-SEH-shun
obsessive- compulsive disorder	ob-SES-iv com-PUL-siv dis-OR-der
opioids	O-pe-oydz
paranoia	par-ah-NOY-ah
paranoid personality	PAR-ah-noyd per-son-AL-ih-te
paraphilia	par-ah-FIL-e-ah
pedophilia	ped-uh-FIL-e-ah
personality disorders	per-son-AL-ih-te dis-OR-derz
phenothiazines	fe-no-THI-ah-zeenz
phobia	FO-be-ah
play therapy	play THER-ah-pe
post-traumatic stress disorder	post-traw-MAH-tik stres dis-OR-der
projective test	pro-JEK-tiv test
psychiatrist	si-KI-ah-trist
psychiatry	si-KI-ah-tre

TERM	PRONUNCIATION
psychoanalysis	si-ko-an-AL-ih-sis
psychodrama	si-ko-dra-mah
psychogenic	si-ko-JEN-ik
psychologist	si-KOL-o-jist
psychopharmacology	si-ko-far-mah-KOL-o-je
psychosis	si-KO-sis
psychosomatic	si-ko-so-MAT-ik
psychotherapy	si-ko-THER-ah-pe
pyromania	pi-ro-MA-ne-ah
reality testing	re-AL-ih-te TEST-ing
repression	re-PREH-shun
schizoid personality	SKIZ-oyd per-son-AL-ih-te
schizophrenia	skiz-o-FREN-e-ah
sedatives	SED-ah-tivz
sexual dysfunctions	SEX-u-al dis-FUNK-shunz
sexual masochism	SEX-u-al MAH-so-kism
sexual sadism	SEX-u-al SA-dizm
somatic symptom disorders	so-MAT-ik SIM-tom dis-OR-derz
substance-related and addictive disorders	SUB-stans re-LA-ted and ah-DIK-tiv dis-OR-derz
superego	su-per-E-go
supportive psychotherapy	suh-POR-tiv si-ko-THER-ah-pe
tolerance	TOL-er-ans
transference	trans-FUR-enz
transvestic fetishism	trans-VES-tik FET-ish-izm
tricyclic antidepressants	tri-SIK-lik an-tih-deh-PRES-antz
voyerism	VOY-yer-izm
xenophobia	zen-o-FO-be-ah

Review Sheet

Write the meanings of the word parts in the spaces provided, and test yourself. Check your answers with the information in the chapter or in the ***Glossary (Medical Word Parts—English)*** at the end of the book.

Combining Forms

COMBINING FORM	MEANING
anxi/o	_____
aut/o	_____
cycl/o	_____
hallucin/o	_____
hypn/o	_____
iatr/o	_____
klept/o	_____
ment/o	_____
neur/o	_____
phil/o	_____
phren/o	_____
psych/o	_____
pyr/o	_____
schiz/o	_____
somat/o	_____
ton/o	_____
xen/o	_____

Suffixes

SUFFIX	MEANING
-form	_____
-genic	_____
-kinesia	_____
-leptic	_____
-mania	_____
-oid	_____
-pathy	_____
-phobia	_____
-phoria	_____
-somnia	_____
-thymia	_____
-tropic	_____

Prefixes

PREFIX	MEANING
a-, an-	_____
agora-	_____
cata-	_____
dys-	_____
eu-	_____
hypo-	_____
para-	_____

Mini-Dictionary

A

Abdomen (AB-do-men): Space in the body below the chest containing organs such as the liver, stomach, gallbladder and intestines; abdominal cavity.

Abdominal cavity (ab-DOM-i-nal KAV-ih-te): Space in the body below the chest containing organs such as the liver, stomach, gallbladder and intestines; abdomen.

Abdominal ultrasonography (ab-DOM-in-al ul-trah-so-NOG-rah-fe): Sound waves are beamed into the abdomen and produce an image of abdominal organs.

Abdominocentesis (ab-dom-in-o-sen-TE-sis): Puncture to remove fluid from the abdomen.

Abdominoplasty (ab-DOM-in-o-plas-te): Surgical repair of the abdomen.

Abduction (ab-DUK-shun): Movement away from the midline of the body.

Abductor (ab-DUK-tor): Muscle that draws a limb away from the body.

Abnormal (ab-NOR-mal): Pertaining to away from the rule or order.

Abortion (ah-BOR-shun): Termination of pregnancy before the embryo or fetus can exist on its own.

Abruptio placentae (ah-BRUP-se-o plah-SEN-te): Premature separation of the normally implanted placenta.

Abscess (AB-ses): Cavity containing pus surrounded by inflamed tissue; usually the result of localized infection.

Absence seizure (AB-sens SE-zhur): Minor form of seizure, consisting of momentary clouding of consciousness and loss of awareness.

Absorption (ab-SORP-shun): Passage of materials through the walls of the small intestine into the bloodstream.

Accommodation (ah-kom-o-DA-shun): Normal adjustment of the eye to focus on objects from far to near.

ACE inhibitor (ACE in-HIB-ih-tor): Drug that lowers blood pressure by dilating blood vessels (antihypertensive).

Acetabular (ah-seh-TAB-u-lar): Pertaining to the acetabulum.

Acetabulum (ah-seh-TAB-u-lum): Rounded depression, or socket, in the pelvis that joins the femur, forming the hip joint.

Acetone (AS-eh-tohn): A type of ketone body formed when fatty acids are broken down in the liver.

Acetylcholine (a-se-til-KO-leen): Neurotransmitter chemical released at the ends of nerve cells.

Achalasia (ak-ah-LA-jah): Failure of the lower esophageal sphincter muscle (LES) to relax.

Achlorhydria (a-chlor-HI-dre-ah): Absence of hydrochloric acid from the gastric juice.

Achondroplasia (a-kon-dro-PLA-ze-ah): Inherited disorder in which the bones of the arms and legs fail to grow to normal size; achondroplastic dwarfism.

Acne (AK-ne): Chronic papular and pustular eruption of the skin with increased production of sebum.

Acoustic (ah-KOOS-tik): Pertaining to hearing.

Acoustic neuroma (ah-KOOS-tik nu-RO-mah): Benign tumor arising from the acoustic nerve.

Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (ah-KWI-erd im-u-no-deh-FIH-shen-se SIN-drohm): Depression or suppression of the immune system after exposure to the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV); marked by opportunistic infections, secondary neoplasms, and neurologic problems.

Acromegaly (ak-ro-MEG-ah-le): Enlargement of extremities due to increased secretion of growth hormone from the pituitary gland after puberty.

Acromion (ak-RO-me-on): Outward extension of the shoulder blade forming the point of the shoulder.

Acrophobia (ak-ro-FO-be-ah): Fear of heights.

Acute (uh-KYOOT): Characterized by severe symptoms and a short course of illness.

Acute coronary syndromes (uh-KYOOT KOR-o-nair-e SIN-drohms): Consequences of plaque rupture in coronary arteries; unstable angina and myocardial infarction (heart attack).

Acute lymphoid leukemia (uh-KYOOT LIMF-oyd lu-KE-me-ah): Malignant, immature lymphocytes (lymphoblasts) multiply

in the blood, bone marrow, and lymphatic system.

Acute myeloid leukemia (uh-KYOOT MI-eh-loyd lu-KE-me-ah): Malignant, immature granulocytes (myeloblasts) multiply in the bone marrow and bloodstream.

Adaptive immunity (ah-DAP-tiv ih-MU-nih-te): The ability to recognize and remember specific antigens and mount an attack on them.

Addiction (ah-DIK-shun): Physical and psychological dependence on and craving for a drug.

Addison disease (AD-ih-son dih-ZEEZ): Hypofunctioning of the adrenal cortex; decreased secretion of aldosterone and cortisol.

Additive action (AD-it-ive AK-shun): Drug action in which the combination of two similar drugs is equal to the sum of the effects of each.

Adduction (ah-DUK-shun): Movement toward the midline of the body.

Adductor (ah-DUK-tor): Muscle that draws a limb toward the body.

Adenitis (ah-deh-NI-tis): Inflammation of a gland.

Adenocarcinoma (ah-deh-no-kar-sih-NO-mah): Cancerous tumor of glandular tissue.

Adenohypophysis (ah-den-o-hi-POF-ih-sis): Anterior lobe of the pituitary gland.

Adenoid hypertrophy (AH-den-oyd hi-PER-tro-fe): Increased development of adenoids.

Adenoidectomy (ah-den-oyd-EK-to-me): Removal of the adenoids.

Adenoids (AH-deh-noydz): Small masses of lymphatic tissue in the throat, close to the nasal (nose) passageway.

Adenoma (ah-deh-NO-mah): Tumor of a gland; benign tumor.

Adenopathy (ah-deh-NOP-ah-the): Disease condition of a "gland", actually refers to disease of lymph nodes; lymphadenopathy.

Adipocyte (AH-dih-po-site): Fat cell.

Adipose (AH-dih-pohz): Pertaining to fat.

Adjuvant chemotherapy (AD-ju-vant ke-mo-THER-ah-pe): Treatment of disease with drugs to assist or enhance after primary treatment.

Adnexa uteri (ad-NEK-sah U-ter-i): Accessory structures associated with the uterus; fallopian tubes and ovaries.

Adrenal cortex (ah-DRE-nal KOR-teks): Outer section (cortex) of each adrenal gland; secretes cortisol, aldosterone, and sex hormones.

Adrenal glands (ah-DRE-nal glanz): Endocrine glands above the kidney.

Adrenal medulla (ah-DRE-nal me-DU-lah): Inner section (medulla) of each adrenal gland; secretes epinephrine and norepinephrine.

Adrenal virilism (ah-DRE-nal VIR-il-izm): Excessive secretion of adrenal androgens.

Adrenalectomy (ah-dre-nal-EK-to-me): Removal of an adrenal gland.

Adrenaline (ah-DREH-nah-lin): Hormone secreted by the adrenal medulla; increases heart rate and blood pressure. Also called epinephrine.

Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ah-dre-no-kor-tih-ko-TROP-ik HOR-mone): Secretion from the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland; stimulates the adrenal cortex; ACTH.

Adrenocorticotropin (ah-dre-no-kor-tih-ko-TRO-pin): Adrenocorticotropic hormone; ACTH.

Aerosol (AIR-o-sol): Particles of drug suspended in air and inhaled.

Affect (AF-ekt): External expression of emotion; emotional response.

Afferent nerves (AF-er-ent nervz): Carry nervous impulses *toward* the brain and spinal cord; sensory nerves.

Agoraphobia (ah-gor-ah-FO-be-ah): Fear of open spaces; an anxiety disorder.

Akinetic (a-kih-NET-ik): Pertaining to loss or absence of voluntary movement.

Albinism (AL-bih-niz-im): Condition of skin deficient in pigment (melanin).

Albumin (al-BU-min): Major protein found in blood.

Albuminuria (al-bu-min-U-re-ah): Protein in the urine.

Aldosterone (al-DOS-teh-rone): Hormone secreted by the adrenal cortex; regulates salt and water balance.

Alkylating agents (AL-kih-la-ting A-jents): Synthetic chemicals used in treatment of cancer. They interfere with DNA synthesis and cell division to prevent cancer cells from increasing in number.

Allergen (AL-er-jen): Substance capable of causing a specific hypersensitivity reaction; a type of antigen.

Allergy (AL-er-je): Abnormal hypersensitivity acquired by exposure to an antigen (allergen).

Alopecia (al-o-PE-she-ah): Partial or complete lack of hair.

Alopecia areata (al-o-PE-she-ah ar-e-AT-ah): Autoimmune disease in which hair falls out in round patches.

Alveolar (al-ve-O-lar): Pertaining to an alveolus.

Alveolus; *pl.* alveoli (al-VE-o-lus; al-VE-o-li): Individualized section of an air sac in the lung.

Alzheimer disease (ALZ-hi-mer dih-ZEEZ): Brain disorder marked by gradual and progressive mental deterioration (dementia), personality changes, and impairment of daily functioning.

Amblyopia (am-ble-O-pe-ah): Decreased visual acuity often in a single eye and appearing in children; lazy eye.

Amenorrhea (a-men-o-RE-ah): Absence of menstrual flow.

Amino acids (ah-ME-no AS-idz): Small building blocks of proteins, released when proteins are digested.

Amnesia (am-NE-ze-ah): Loss of memory.

Amniocentesis (am-ne-o-sen-TE-sis): Puncture with a needle to withdraw fluid from within the amniotic sac.

Amnion (AM-ne-on): Innermost membrane surrounding the embryo and fetus.

Amniotic fluid (am-ne-OT-ik FLU-id): Fluid contained within the amniotic sac surrounding the embryo and fetus.

Amphetamine (am-FET-ah-meen): Central nervous system stimulant.

Amylase (AM-ih-layz): Enzyme that digests (breaks down): starches into simpler substances (such as sugars).

Amylase and lipase tests (am-ih-LAYZ and LI-pays tests): Tests for the levels of amylase and lipase enzymes in the blood.

Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (a-mi-o-TRO-fik LA-ter-al skleh-RO-sis): Degenerative disorder of motor neurons in the spinal cord and brainstem leading to progressive muscular paralysis; Lou Gehrig disease.

Anabolism (ah-NAB-o-liz-im): Process of building up proteins in cells.

Anal fistula (A-nal FIS-tu-la): Abnormal tube-like passageway near the anus.

Analgesia (an-al-JE-ze-ah): Absence of sensitivity to pain.

Analgesic (an-al-JE-sik): Drug that relieves pain.

Analysis (ah-NAL-ih-sis): Separation of a substance into various parts.

Anaphylaxis (an-ah-fih-LAK-sis): Exaggerated hypersensitivity reaction to a previously encountered drug or foreign protein.

Anaplasia (an-ah-PLA-ze-ah): Loss of differentiation of cells and reversion to a more primitive, unspecialized cell type.

Anastomosis (ah-nas-to-MO-sis): Surgical procedure that creates a new opening between two previously unconnected tubular structures in the body.

Androgen (AN-dro-jen): Male hormone secreted by the testes; responsible for developing and maintaining male secondary sex characteristics. Testosterone is an example.

Anemia (ah-NE-me-ah): Condition marked by reduction in the number of erythrocytes or in the amount of hemoglobin in blood.

Anencephaly (an-en-SEF-ah-le): Congenital condition of partial or complete absence of brain matter.

Anesthesia (an-es-THE-ze-ah): Absence of nervous feeling or sensation.

Anesthetic (an-es-THET-ik): Drug that reduces or eliminates nervous sensation; general and local.

Aneurysm (AN-yoo-rih-zim): Weakening of an arterial wall, which may lead to hemorrhage and cerebrovascular accident (stroke).

Angina (an-JI-nah): Chest pain associated with myocardial ischemia (poor blood supply).

Angiogenesis (an-je-o-JEN-ih-sis): Formation of blood vessels.

Angiogram (AN-je-o-gram): X-ray record of blood vessels.

Angiography (an-je-OG-rah-fe): X-ray imaging of blood vessels after injection of contrast material.

Angioplasty (AN-je-o-plas-te): Surgical repair of a blood vessel.

Angiotensin II receptor blocker (an-je-o-TEN-sin 2 re-CEP-tor BLOK-er): Drug that lowers blood pressure by preventing angiotensin from acting on receptors in blood vessels.

Anhidrosis (an-hi-DRO-sis): Absence of sweating.

Anisocoria (an-i-so-KO-re-ah): Inequality in the size of pupils.

Anisocytosis (an-i-so-si-TO-sis): Inequality in the size of red blood cells.

Ankylosing spondylitis (ang-kih-LO-sing spon-dih-LI-tis): Chronic, progressive arthritis with stiffening of joints, primarily of the spine.

Ankylosis (ang-kih-LO-sis): Immobility (fusion) of a joint due to disease, injury, or surgical procedure.

Anorexia (an-or-EK-se-ah): Lack of appetite.

Anorexia nervosa (an-o-REK-se-ah ner-VO-sah): Eating disorder of excessive dieting and refusal to maintain a normal body weight.

Anosmia (an-OZ-me-ah): Loss of the sense of smell.

Anovulatory (an-OV-u-lat-or-e): Pertaining to the absence of ovulation.

Anoxia (ah-NOK-se-ah): Without oxygen.

Antacid (ant-AS-id): Drug that neutralizes acid in the stomach.

Antagonistic action (an-tag-on-NIS-tik AK-shun): Combination of two drugs gives less than the sum of the effects of each together.

Ante cibum (AN-te SE-bum): Before meals; (a.c.).

Anteflexion (an-te-FLEK-shun): Bending forward.

Antepartum (an-te-PAR-tum): Before birth.

Anterior (an-TE-re-or): Pertaining to the front portion of the body; ventral

Anterior chamber (an-TE-re-or CHAYM-ber): Area of the eye behind the cornea and in front of the lens and iris. It contains aqueous humor.

Anteroposterior (an-ter-o-pos-TE-re-or): In this AP x-ray view, x-rays travel from an anteriorly placed source to a posteriorly

placed detector (x-ray beam passes from the front to the back of the body).

Anthracosis (an-thrah-KO-sis): Abnormal condition of coal dust in the lungs; black lung disease.

Antiandrogen (an-te-AN-dro-jen): Drug that blocks the formation of androgens or interferes with their effect in tissues.

Antiarrhythmic (an-te-a-RITH-mik): Drug that treats abnormal heart rhythms.

Antibiotic (an-tih-bi-OT-ik): Chemical substance that has the ability to inhibit or destroy foreign organisms in the body.

Antibody (AN-tih-bod-e): Protein made by white blood cells in response to foreign substances (antigens) in the blood.

Anticoagulant (an-tih-ko-AG-ul-lant): Substance that prevents blood clotting.

Anticonvulsant (an-tih-kon-VUL-sant): Drug that prevents convulsions and seizures.

Antidepressant (an-tih-de-PRES-ant): Drug that relieves symptoms of depression.

Antidiabetic (an-tih-di-ah-BET-ik): Drug given to prevent or treat diabetes mellitus.

Antidiarrheal (an-tih-di-ah-RE-al): Drug that prevents diarrhea.

Antidiuretic hormone (an-tih-di-u-RET-ik HOR-mone): Pituitary gland hormone that stimulates the kidney to decrease production of urine, preventing excess loss of water. Also called vasopressin.

Antidote (AN-tih-dote): Agent given to counteract an unwanted effect of a drug.

Antiemetic (an-te-eh-MET-ik): Drug that prevents nausea and vomiting.

Antigen (AN-tih-jen): Foreign substance or toxin (poison) that stimulates the production of an antibody; evokes an immune response.

Antiglobulin test (an-tih-GLOB-u-lin test): Test for the presence of antibodies that coat and damage erythrocytes; Coombs test.

Antihistamine (an-tih-HIS-tah-meen): Drug that blocks the action of histamine and helps prevent symptoms of allergy.

Antimetabolites (an-tih-meh-TAB-o-lites): Chemicals that prevent cell division by inhibiting formation of substances necessary to make DNA; used in cancer treatment.

Antimicrobial (an-tih-mi-KRO-be-al): Agent that kills microorganisms or stops their growth.

Antimitotics (an-tih-mi-TOT-iks): Drugs that block mitosis (cell division); used to treat cancer.

Antinauseant (an-tih-NAW-ze-ant): Drug that relieves nausea and vomiting; antiemetic.

Antinuclear antibody test (an-te-NU-kle-ar AN-tih-bod-e test): Detects an antibody present in serum of patients with systemic lupus erythematosus and other autoimmune diseases.

Antiplatelet (an-tih-PLAYT-let): Drug that reduces the tendency of platelets to stick together and form a clot.

Antipruritic (an-tih-pru-RIT-ik): Drug that acts against itching (pruritus).

Antipyretic (an-tih-pih-RET-ik): Drug that lowers fever.

Antisepsis (an-tih-SEP-sus): Destruction of microorganisms to prevent infection.

Antisocial personality (an-te-SO-shal per-son-AL-ih-te): Characterized by lack of loyalty or concern for others and lack of moral standards.

Antitoxin (an-tih-TOX-in): Substance produced against a toxin (poison); an antibody.

Antiulcer (an-te-UL-ser): Drug that inhibits the secretion of acid by cells lining the stomach.

Antiviral (an-te-VI-ral): Drug that acts against viruses such as the herpes virus and HIV.

Anuria (an-U-re-ah): Suppression of urine formation.

Anus (A-nus): Opening of the rectum to the outside of the body.

Anxiety disorders (ang-ZI-et-e dis-OR-derz): Characterized by unpleasant tensions, distress, and avoidance behavior; examples are phobias, obsessive-compulsive disorder, and post-traumatic distress disorder.

Anxiolytic (ang-zi-o-LIT-ik): Drug that relieves anxiety and produces a relaxing effect.

Aorta (a-OR-tah): Largest artery in the body

Aortic stenosis (a-OR-tik steh-NO-sis): Narrowing of the aorta.

Apathy (AH-pah-the): Absence of emotions; lack of interest or emotional involvement.

Apex of the heart (A-pex of the hart): Lower tip of the heart.

Apex of the lung (A-pex of the lung): Uppermost portion of the lung.

Apgar score (AP-gar score): System of scoring an infant's physical condition at 1 and 5 minutes after birth; assesses heart rate, respiration, color, muscle tone and response to stimuli.

Aphakia (ah-FA-ke-ah): Absence of the lens of the eye.

Aphasia (ah-FA-ze-ah): Inability to speak; language function is impaired due to injury to the cerebral cortex.

Apheresis (ah-feh-RE-sis): Withdrawal and separation of blood elements.

Aphthous stomatitis (AF-thus sto-mah-TI-tis): Inflammation of the mouth with small ulcers; canker sores.

Apical (A-pih-kal): Pertaining to the tip of an organ.

Aplastic anemia (a-PLAS-tik ah-NE-me-ah): Failure of blood cell production in the bone marrow.

Apnea (AP-ne-ah): Without breathing.

Apocrine sweat gland (AP-o-krin swet gland): One of the large dermal exocrine glands located in the axilla and genital areas. It secretes sweat that, in action with bacteria, is responsible for human body odor.

Apoptosis (a-pop-TO-sis): Programmed cell death.

Appendectomy (ap-en-DEK-to-me): Removal or excision of the appendix.

Appendicitis (ap-en-dih-SI-tis): Inflammation of the appendix.

Appendix (ap-EN-diks): Small, tube-like organ connected to beginning of the large intestine (cecum). It is located in the right lower quadrant (RLQ) of the abdomen.

Apraxia (a-PRAK-se-ah): Inability to perform purposeful acts or manipulate objects.

Aqueous humor (AH-kwe-us HU-mor): Fluid produced by the ciliary body and found in the anterior chamber of the eye.

Arachnoid membrane (ah-RAK-noyd MEM-brayn): Middle layer of the meninges that surrounds the brain and spinal cord.

Areola (air-e-O-lah): Dark, pigmented area surrounding the breast nipple.

Aromatase inhibitor (ah-RO-mah-tace in-HIB-it-or): Drug that reduces estrogen in the blood by blocking the enzyme, aromatase.

Arrhythmia (a-RITH-me-ah): Irregular or abnormal heartbeat; literally without rhythm.

Arterial anastomosis (ar-TE-re-al ah-nas-to-MO-sis): New surgical connection between two arteries.

Arteriography (ar-TE-re-OG-rah-fe): X-ray recording of arteries; contrast is injected.

Arteriole (ar-TE-re-ohl): Small artery.

Arteriosclerosis (ar-te-re-o-skleh-RO-sis): Hardening of an artery with collection of fatty plaque.

Artery (AR-teh-re): Largest type of blood vessel.

Arthralgia (ar-THRAL-jah): Joint pain.

Arthritis (ar-THRI-tis): Inflammation of a joint.

Arthrocentesis (ar-thro-sen-TE-sis): Surgical puncture to remove fluid from the joint space.

Arthrodesis (ar-thro-DE-sis): Surgical fusion of a joint to eliminate movement.

Arthrography (ar-THROG-rah-fe): X-ray imaging of a joint after injection of contrast material.

Arthroplasty (ar-thro-PLAS-te): Surgical repair of a joint; total hip replacement and total knee replacement are examples.

Arthroscopy (ar-THROS-ko-pe): Visual examination of the inside of joint with an endoscope.

Arthrotomy (ar-THROT-o-me): Incision of a joint.

Articular cartilage (ar-TIK-u-lar KAR-tih-laj): Smooth white tissue that covers the ends of bones where they come together at a joint.

Articulation (ar-tik-u-LA-shun): Any type of joint.

Asbestosis (as-bes-TO-sis): Abnormal condition of asbestos fiber particles in the lungs.

Ascites (ah-SI-teez): Abnormal accumulation of fluid in the abdomen.

Aspermia (a-SPERM-e-ah): Failure to produce semen.

Asphyxia (as-FIX-se-ah): Deficient oxygen and increased carbon dioxide in the bloodstream leading to unconsciousness or death.

Asplenia (a-SPLEN-e-ah): Absence of a spleen.

Asthma (AZ-mah): Chronic inflammatory disorder, with airway obstruction due to bronchiolar edema, constriction, and increased mucus production.

Astigmatism (ah-STIG-mah-tiz-im): Defective curvature of the cornea or lens of the eye.

Astrocyte (AS-tro-site): Glial (neuroglial) cell that transports salts and water from capillaries in the central nervous system.

Astrocytoma (as-tro-si-TO-mah): Malignant brain tumor composed of astrocytes (glial cells).

Ataxia (a-TAK-se-ah): Without coordination.

Atelectasis (at-eh-LEK-tah-sis): Collapsed lung.

Atherectomy (ath-eh-REK-to-me): Removal of plaque (lipids and clots) that accumulate in the lining of an artery.

Atheroma (ath-er-O-mah): Mass of fatty plaque that collects in an artery.

Atherosclerosis (ath-er-o-skleh-RO-sis): Fatty plaque deposits in the interior lining of an artery; a form of arteriosclerosis.

Atopic dermatitis (a-TOP-ik der-mah-TI-tis): Inflammation of skin (rash and intense itching) that tends to occur in patients with a family history of allergic reactions.

Atopy (AT-o-pe): Intense allergic reaction (such as asthma) influenced by hereditary tendency or predisposition.

Atresia (a-TRE-ze-ah): Absence of a normal opening.

Atrial (A-tre-al): Pertaining to an atrium (upper chamber of the heart).

Atrial fibrillation (A-tre-al fib-rih-LA-shun): Electrical impulses move randomly throughout the atria, causing the atria to quiver instead of contracting with a normal rhythm.

Atrioventricular block (a-tre-o-ven-TRIK-u-lar blok): Failure of proper conduction of impulses from the SA node through the AV node to the atrioventricular bundle (bundle of His).

Atrioventricular bundle (a-tre-o-ven-TRIK-u-lar BUN-dil): Specialized muscle fibers connecting the atria with the ventricles and transmitting impulses between them; bundle of His.

Atrioventricular node (a-tre-o-ven-TRIK-u-lar node): Specialized tissue in the wall between the atria. Electrical impulses pass from the sino-atrial node (pacemaker) through the atrioventricular node and atrioventricular bundle (bundle of His) toward the ventricles.

Atrium; *pl.* atria (A-tre-um; A-tre-ah): Upper chamber of the heart.

Atrophy (AT-ro-fe): Decrease in size of normally developed organ or tissue of the body; wasting away.

Atypical antipsychotics (a-TIP-ik-al an-tih-si-KOT-iks): Drugs used to treat schizophrenia, bipolar disorder and other serious mental illnesses (psychoses).

Audiogram (AW-de-o-gram): Record of hearing using an audiometer.

Audiologist (aw-de-OL-o-jist): Healthcare professional specializing in the evaluation and rehabilitation of people with hearing loss.

Audiometer (aw-de-OM-eh-ter): Instrument to measure or test hearing.

Audiometry (aw-de-OM-eh-tre): Testing the sense of hearing.

Auditory canal (AW-dih-to-re kah-NAL): Channel that leads from the pinna to the eardrum.

Auditory meatus (AW-dih-to-re me-A-tus): Auditory canal.

Auditory nerve fibers (AW-dih-to-re nerv FI-berz): Carry impulses from the inner ear to the brain (cerebral cortex).

Auditory tube (AW-dih-to-re toob): Channel between the middle ear and the nasopharynx; eustachian tube.

Aura (AW-rah): Peculiar sensation appearing before more definite symptoms.

Aural (AW-ral): Pertaining to the ear.

Auricle (AW-rih-kl): Protruding part of the external ear; pinna.

Auscultation (aw-skul-TA-shun): Listening for sounds in the chest and abdomen using a stethoscope.

Autism (AW-tizm): Neurodevelopmental disorder characterized by inhibited social interaction and communication and by restricted, repetitive behavior.

Autoimmune disease (aw-to-ih-MEWN dih-ZEEZ): Condition in which the immune system (antibodies) attacks nomal, healthy cells producing chronic, disabling diseases.

Autologous transfusion (aw-TOL-o-gus trans-FU-zhun): Removal and then reinfusion of a patient's own blood or blood components.

Autonomic nervous system (aw-to-NOM-ik NER-vus SIS-tem): Nerves that control involuntary body functions of muscles, glands, and internal organs.

Autopsy (AW-top-se): Examination of a body after death (postmortem) to determine the cause of death.

Avoidant personality (ah-VOY-dant per-son-AL-ih-te): Personality disorder marked by a pattern of social inhibition, feelings of

inadequacy, and hypersensitivity to negative evaluation.

Axillary (AK-sil-ar-e): Pertaining to the under arm or armpit.

Axillary nodes (AKS-il-ar-e nodes): Lymph nodes under the arm.

Axon (AKS-on): Microscopic fiber that carries a nervous impulse along a nerve cell.

Azoospermia (a-zo-o-SPERM-e-ah): Lack of sperm in the semen.

Azotemia (az-o-TE-me-ah): Excess nitrogenous waste products in the blood; uremia.

B

B cell (B sel): Lymphocyte that matures into a plasma cell to secrete antibodies.

Bacilli (bah-SIL-i): Rod-shaped bacteria that are the cause of tuberculosis.

Bacterial analyses (bak-TE-re-al ah-NAL-ih-seez): Samples of skin examined for presence of microorganisms.

Bacteriuria (bak-te-re-U-re-ah): Bacteria in the urine.

Balanitis (bal-ah-NI-tis): Inflammation of the glans penis.

Bariatric surgery (bar-e-AT-rik SUR-jer-e): Weight loss surgery including gastric sleeve and gastric bypass procedures.

Bartholin glands (BAR-tho-lin glandz): Two small mucus-secreting glands near the opening of the vagina to the outside of the body.

Bartholinitis (bar-tho-lin-I-tis): Inflammation of Bartholin glands.

Basal cell carcinoma (BA-sal sel kar-sih-NO-mah): Skin cancer arising from cells in the basal layer of the epidermis.

Basal layer (BA-sal LA-er): Deepest region of the epidermis; it gives rise to all the epidermal cells.

Base of the lung (base of the lung): Lower portion of the lung.

Basophil (BA-so-fil): White blood cell containing granules that stain blue (with a basic dye); associated with release of histamine and heparin.

Bell palsy (bel PAWL-ze): Unilateral paralysis of the face caused by a disorder of the facial nerve.

Benign (be-NINE): Non-cancerous.

Benign prostatic hyperplasia (be-NINE pros-TAH-tik hi-per-PLA-ze-ah): Prostatic enlargement; nonmalignant.

Benign tumor (be-NINE TU-mor): Noncancerous growth.

Benzodiazepines (ben-zo-di-AZ-eh-peenz): Drugs used to treat anxiety and panic attacks.

Beta blocker (BA-tah BLOK-er): Drug used to treat high blood pressure and control heart rate.

Biconvex (bi-KON-vex): Consisting of two surfaces that are rounded, elevated, and curved evenly, like part of a sphere. The lens of the eye is a biconvex body.

Bifurcation (bi-fur-KA-shun): Branching into two parts.

Bilateral (bi-LAT-er-al): Pertaining to two or both sides.

Bile (bile): Digestive juice made in the liver and stored in the gallbladder

Biliary (BIH-le-er-e): Pertaining to bile or bile ducts. Bile ducts empty bile into the small intestine (duodenum).

Biliary atresia (BIL-e-ar-e a-TRE-ze-ah): Congenital absence of the opening from the common bile duct into small intestine (duodenum).

Bilirubin (bih-le-RU-bin): Orange-yellow pigment found in bile. It is released from the breakdown of hemoglobin when red blood cells die.

Biology (bi-OL-o-je): Study of life (living organisms).

Biopsy (BI-op-se): Process of removing a small piece of living tissue for microscopic examination.

Bipolar disorders (bi-PO-lar dis-OR-derz): These disorders are marked by alternating periods of mania and depression.

Bisphosphonate (bis-FOS-fo-nate): Drug that prevents bone loss in osteoporosis and osteopenia.

Biventricular pacemaker (bi-ven-TRIK-u-lar PACE-ma-ker): Device enabling ventricles to beat together (in synchrony) so that more blood is pumped out of the heart.

Blepharitis (bleh-fah-RI-tis): Inflammation of an eyelid.

Blepharoptosis (bleh-fah-rop-TO-sis): Sagging or drooping eyelid; ptosis.

Blood transfusion (blud trans-FU-zhun): Blood cells or whole blood from a closely match donor are infused into a patient.

Blood-brain barrier (blud-brayn BAH-re-er): Blood vessels that let certain substances enter the brain tissue and keep other substances out.

BNP test (BNP test): Measurement of BNP (brain natriuretic peptide) in blood; BNP is elevated in heart failure.

Bone (bone): Dense, hard connective tissue composing the skeleton.

Bone density test (bone DEN-sih-te test): Low-energy x-ray absorption in bones of the spinal column, pelvis, and wrist; used to measure bone mass. Also called dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry (DEXA or DXA).

Bone depression (bone de-PREH-shun): Opening or hollow region serving as a connection for bones, or as passageways for blood vessels and nerves.

Bone marrow biopsy (bone MAH-ro BI-op-se): Needle aspiration of a small amount of bone marrow followed by examination under a microscope.

Bone marrow transplantation (bone MAH-row tranz-plan-TA-shun): Bone marrow tissue is infused intravenously into a patient.

Bone process (bone PROS-es): Enlarged area that extends out from bones as an attachment for muscles, tendons, and ligaments.

Bone scan (bone skan): Uptake of a radioactive substance is measured in bone.

Borborygmi (bor-bor-IG-me): Rumbling or gurgling noises produced by hyperactive movement of gas, fluid, or both in the gastrointestinal tract.

Borderline personality (BOR-der-line per-son-AL-ih-te): Instability in interpersonal relationships and sense of self; alternating involvement with and rejection of people.

Bowel (BOW-el): Intestine. The large bowel is called the colon and the small bowel is the small intestine.

Brachial artery (BRA-ke-al AR-ter-e): Artery that carries blood to the arm.

Brachytherapy (bra-ke-THER-ah-pe): Placement of radioactive material (small sealed containers) in contact with or implanted into tumor tissue.

Bradycardia (bra-de-KAR-de-ah): Slow heartbeat.

Bradykinesia (bra-de-kih-NE-se-ah): Slow movement.

Brain tumor (BRAYN TU-mor): Abnormal growth of brain tissue and meninges; may be benign or malignant growth.

Brainstem (BRAYN-stem): Lower portion of the brain that connects the cerebrum with the spinal cord; includes the midbrain, pons, and medulla oblongata.

Brand name (brand name): Commercial name for a drug; trade or trademark name.

Breast cancer (brest KAN-ser): Malignant tumor of the breast (arising from milk glands and ducts).

Bronchiectasis (brong-ke-EK-tah-sis): Abnormal condition of the lung in which bronchi become damaged and widened (dilated); usually secondary to infection.

Bronchioles (BRONG-ke-ohlz): Small bronchial tubes.

Bronchiolitis (brong-ke-o-LI-tis): Inflammation of a bronchiole.

Bronchitis (brong-KI-tis): Inflammation of bronchial tubes.

Bronchoalveolar lavage (BRONG-ko-al-ve-O-lar lah-VAJ): Irrigation or washing of a bronchus by injecting fluid through a bronchoscope and then removing it to analyze the contents.

Bronchodilator (brong-ko-DI-la-tor): Agent that dilates (widens) blood vessels and relieves bronchospasm.

Bronchopleural (brong-ko-PLU-ral): Pertaining to the bronchus and the pleura.

Bronchoscopy (brong-KOS-ko-pe): Visual examination of the bronchial tubes using an endoscope or bronchoscope.

Bronchospasm (BRONG-ko-spaz-im): Involuntary muscular contractions in bronchial tubes leading to narrowing of the bronchi.

Bronchus; *pl.* bronchi (BRONG-kus; BRONG-ki): Branch of the trachea that leads toward the air sacs of the lung.

Bruit (BRU-e): Abnormal blowing or swishing sound heard on auscultation of an artery or an organ.

Buccal (BUK-al): Pertaining to the cheek.

Buccal mucosa (BUK-al mu-KO-sah): Mucous membrane lining the cheek.

Bulbourethral glands (bul-bo-u-RE-thral glandz): Pair of exocrine glands, located on either side of the male urethra, just below the prostate. They secrete fluid that becomes part of semen.

Bulimia nervosa (bu-LE-me-ah ner-VO-sah): Eating disorder marked by binge eating followed by induced vomiting or other forms of purging, such as misuse of laxatives or enemas; also associated with depression.

Bulla; *pl.* bullae (BUL-ah; BUL-e): Large blister.

Bun (B-U-N): Measurement of urea levels in blood.

Bundle of His (BUN-dil of hiss): Atrioventricular bundle.

Bunion (BUN-yun): Enlargement of bone or tissue around the joint at the base of the big toe (metatarsophalangeal joint); hallux valgus.

Burns (burnz): Injuries to tissues caused by heat contact.

Bursa; *pl.* bursae (BUR-sah; BUR-se): Sac of fluid near a joint; promotes smooth sliding of one tissue against another.

Bursitis (bur-SI-tis): Inflammation of a bursa.

C

Cachexia (kah-KEK-se-ah): General ill health (muscle wasting and weight loss) associated with severe, chronic disease, such as cancer.

Caffeine (kaf-een): Central nervous system stimulant.

Calcaneal (kal-KA-ne-al): Pertaining to the calcaneus (heel bone).

Calcaneus (kal-KA-ne-us): Heel bone.

Calciferol (kal-SIF-er-ol): Active form of vitamin D secreted by the kidneys.

Calcitonin (kal-sih-TO-nin): Hormone secreted by the thyroid gland; lowers calcium levels in the blood.

Calcium (KAL-se-um): One of the mineral constituents of bone.

Calcium channel blocker (KAL-se-um CHAN-el BLOK-er): Cardiovascular drug used to treat chest pain (angina) and high blood pressure (hypertension).

Caliceal (ka-lih-SE-al): Pertaining to a calyx (cup-like collecting region of the renal pelvis).

Caliectasis (ka-le-EK-tah-sis): Dilation or widening of a calyx. This occurs when urine is backed up in the kidney as in hydronephrosis.

Callus (KAL-us): Hard, thickened area of skin occurring in areas of the body exposed to friction or pressure.

Calyx; *pl.* calyces (KA-liks; KA-lih-seez): Cup-like collecting region of the renal pelvis (central section of the kidney).

Cancellous bone (KAN-sel-us bone): Spongy, porous bone tissue in the inner part of a bone.

Canine teeth (KA-nine teeth): Pointed dog-like (canine means dog) teeth next to the incisors.

Cannabis (KAN-ah-bis): Plant substance from which marijuana is obtained.

Capillary (KAP-ih-lair-e): Smallest type of blood vessel.

Carbon dioxide (KAR-bon di-OX-ide): Gas produced in tissue cells when oxygen and food combine; exhaled through the lungs.

Carcinogenesis (kar-sih-no-JEN-eh-sis): Formation or production of cancer.

Carcinogenic (kar-sih-no-JEN-ik): Pertaining to producing cancer.

Carcinogens (kar-SIH-no-jenz): Substances that produces cancer.

Carcinoma (kar-sih-NO-mah): Cancerous (malignant): tumor.

Carcinoma in situ (kar-sih-NO-mah in SI-tu): Early, localized form of cancer, confined to its site of origin.

Cardiac (KAR-de-ak): Pertaining to the heart.

Cardiac arrest (KAR-de-ak ah-REST): Sudden, unexpected stoppage of the heart; sudden cardiac death.

Cardiac biomarkers (KAR-de-ak BI-o-mar-kerz): Chemicals are measured in the blood as evidence of a heart attack.

Cardiac catheterization (KAR-de-ak kath-eh-ter-ih-ZA-shun): Thin, flexible tube is guided into the heart via a vein or an artery and after contrast material is introduced, blood pressure is measured, and x-rays taken to image patterns of blood flow.

Cardiac glycoside (KAR-de-ak GLI-ko-side): Drug that treats heart failure by increasing the force of contraction of the heart; digoxin is an example.

Cardiac MRI (KAR-de-ak MRI): Images of the heart are produced with magnetic waves.

Cardiac tamponade (KAR-de-ak tam-po-NADE): Pressure on the heart caused by fluid in the pericardial space.

Cardiogenic shock (kar-de-o-JEN-ik shok): Circulatory failure due to poor heart function.

Cardiology (kar-de-OL-o-je): Study of the heart.

Cardiomegaly (kar-de-o-MEG-ah-le): Enlargement of the heart.

Cardiomyopathy (kar-de-o-mi-OP-ah-the): Disease of heart muscle.

Cardiovascular drug (kar-de-o-VAS-ku-lar drug): Drug that treats the heart and blood vessels; ACE inhibitors, diuretics, beta blockers, and calcium channel blockers.

Cardioversion (kar-de-o-VER-zhun): Treatment for serious arrhythmias using brief discharges of electricity to shock the heart so that a normal rhythm can begin; defibrillation.

Carpal tunnel syndrome (KAR-pal TUN-nel SIN-drohm): Compression (by a wrist ligament) of the median nerve as it passes through bones and tendons of the wrist.

Carpals (KAR-palz): Bones of the wrist.

Cartilage (KAR-tih-lij): Flexible, connective tissue often attached to bones at joints (articular cartilage).

Castration (kas-TRA-shun): Removal of sex glands (gonads); ovaries or testes.

Catabolism (kah-TAB-o-liz-im): Cellular process of breaking down complex nutrients to simpler substances; energy is released to do the work of the cell.

Cataract (KAT-ah-rakt): Clouding of the lens, causing decreased vision.

Catatonia (kat-ah-TO-ne-ah): Immobility, muscular rigidity, and mutism induced by a psychologic disorder such as schizophrenia.

Catecholamines (kat-ek-OHL-am-eenz): Hormones secreted by the adrenal medulla; epinephrine (adrenaline) is an example.

Cathartic (kah-THAR-tik): Drug that relieves constipation.

Catheter (KATH-et-er): Tube for injecting or removing fluids.

Catheter ablation (KATH-eh-ter ab-LA-shun): Brief delivery of radiofrequency energy to destroy areas of heart tissue that may be causing arrhythmias.

Cauda equina (KAW-dah eh-KWI-nah): Collection of spinal nerves below the end of the spinal cord.

Causalgia (kaw-ZAL-jah): Intense burning pain, often resulting from injury to a peripheral nerve.

Cauterization (kaw-ter-ih-ZA-shun): Destruction of tissue by burning.

CD4+ cell (CD4 POS-ih-tiv sel): Helper T-cells that carry the CD4+ protein antigen on their surface.

Ceasarean section (se-ZAIR-e-an SEK-shun): Surgical incision of the abdominal wall and uterus to deliver a fetus.

Cecal (SE-kal): Pertaining to the cecum, which is the first part of the large intestine (colon).

Cecal volvulus (SE-kal VOL-vu-lus): Abnormal twisting of the cecum (first part of the colon).

Cecum (SE-kum): First part of the large intestine (colon).

Celiac (SE-le-ak): Pertaining to the abdomen.

Celiac disease (SE-le-ak dih-ZEEZ): Autoimmune disorder in which villi in the lining of the small intestine are damaged, resulting from dietary glutens, such as wheat, barley, and rye.

Cell body (sel BOD-e): Part of the nerve cell (neuron) that contains the nucleus.

Cell membrane (sel MEM-brayn): Structure surrounding and protecting the cell; allows materials to pass in and out.

Cell-mediated immunity (sel me-de-A-ted ih-MU-nit-e): T cells (cytotoxic, helper and suppressor) respond to antigens and destroy them; a type of adaptive immunity.

Cellulitis (sel-u-LI-tis): Diffuse, acute inflammatory infection of the skin marked by local heat, redness, pain and swelling.

Central nervous system (SEN-tral NER-vus SIS-tem): Brain and spinal cord.

Cephalgia (seh-FAL-jah): Head pain; headache.

Cephalic (seh-FAH-lik): Pertaining to the head.

Cephalic version (seh-FAH-lik VER-zhun): Procedure for turning the fetus so that its head is the presenting part to enter the birth canal first.

Cerebellar (seh-reh-BEL-ar): Pertaining to the cerebellum.

Cerebellopontine (seh-reh-bel-o-PON-teen): Pertaining to the cerebellum and pons.

Cerebellum (seh-reh-BEL-um): Posterior part of the brain that coordinates muscle movements and maintains balance.

Cerebral (seh-RE-bral): Pertaining to the cerebrum (largest part of the brain).

Cerebral angiography (seh-RE-bral an-je-OG-rah-fe): X-ray record of blood vessels in the brain after intravenous injection of contrast material.

Cerebral concussion (seh-RE-bral kon-KUSH-un): Type of traumatic brain injury caused by a blow to the head.

Cerebral contusion (seh-RE-bral kon-TU-shun): Bruising of brain tissue resulting from direct trauma to the head.

Cerebral cortex (seh-RE-bral KOR-teks): Outer region of the cerebrum.

Cerebral hemorrhage (seh-RE-bral HEM-or-ij): Bursting of an artery in the brain.

Cerebral palsy (seh-RE-bral PAWL-ze): Partial paralysis and lack of muscular coordination due to decreased oxygen to a fetus during pregnancy or to the infant shortly after birth.

Cerebrospinal fluid (seh-re-bro-SPI-nal FLU-id): Clear, watery fluid that circulates throughout the brain and spinal cord.

Cerebrospinal fluid analysis (seh-re-bro-SPI-nal FLU-id ah-NAH-lih-sis): Samples of cerebrospinal fluid are examined for blood cells, protein, glucose, tumor cells, bacteria, and other substances.

Cerebrovascular accident (seh-re-bro-VAS-cu-lar AK-sih-dent): Disruption of the normal blood supply to the brain; a stroke or CVA.

Cerebrum (seh-RE-brum): Largest part of the brain; responsible for voluntary muscular activity, vision, speech, taste, hearing, thought and memory, among other functions.

Cerumen (seh-RU-men): Waxy substance secreted by the external ear; earwax.

Cervical (SER-vih-kul): Pertaining to the neck of the body or neck-like lower portion of the uterus.

Cervical cancer (SER-vih-kul KAN-ser): Malignant cells within the cervix; carcinoma of the cervix.

Cervical dysplasia (SER-vih-kul dis-PLA-ze-ah): Abnormal cell growth within the cervix.

Cervical nodes (SER-vih-kul nodes): Lymph nodes in the neck.

Cervical vertebrae (SER-vih-kul VER-teh-bray): Seven backbones in the neck.

Cervicitis (ser-vih-SI-tis): Inflammation of the cervix.

Cervix (SER-viks): Neck-like, lower portion of the uterus.

Chalazion (kah-LA-ze-on): Small, hard, cystic mass (granuloma) on the eyelid.

Chancre (SHANK-er): Genital ulcer commonly formed during the primary stage of syphilis in males and females.

Cheilosis (ki-LO-sis): Abnormal condition of the lip.

Chemical name (KEM-ik-al name): Chemical formula for a drug.

Chemotherapy (ke-mo-THER-ah-pe): Treatment using drugs.

Chlamydia (klah-MID-e-ah): Bacterial infection (by Chlamydia trachomatis) of the urethra and reproductive tract in men and women.

Cholangiectasis (ko-lan-je-EK-tah-sis): Abnormal widening or dilation of a bile vessel (bile duct).

Cholangiocarcinoma (ko-lan-je-o-kar-sih-NO-mah): Malignant tumor of bile vessels (bile ducts).

Cholangiography (ko-lan-je-OG-rah-fe): X-ray recording of the biliary system performed after injection of contrast into the bile ducts.

Cholangiopancreatography (ko-lan-je-o-pan-kre-uh-TOG-rah-fe): X-ray recording of bile vessels (ducts): and the pancreas after administration of contrast material directly into bile and pancreatic ducts.

Cholangitis (ko-lan-JI-tis): Inflammation of bile vessels (bile ducts).

Cholecystectomy (ko-le-sis-TEK-to-me): Removal (excision, resection) of the gallbladder.

Cholecystojejunostomy (ko-le-sis-to-jeh-jun-NOS-to-me): Formation of a new opening between the gallbladder and the jejunum (second part of the small intestine); an anastomosis.

Cholecystolithiasis (ko-le-sis-to-lih-THI-ah-sis): Abnormal condition of stones in the gallbladder.

Choledochal (ko-le-DOK-al): Pertaining to the common bile duct.

Choledochectasia (ko-le-dok-ek-TA-ze-ah): Dilation of the common bile duct.

Choledochojejunostomy (ko-leh-do-ko-jeh-ju-NOS-to-me): Surgical anastomosis (creation of a new opening) between the common bile duct and the jejunum.

Choledocholithiasis (ko-leh-do-ko-lih-THI-ah-sis): Abnormal condition of stones in the common bile duct.

Choledochotomy (ko-leh-do-KOT-o-me): Incision of the common bile duct.

Cholelithiasis (ko-le-lih-THI-ah-sis): Abnormal condition of stones in the gallbladder; gallstones.

Cholestasis (ko-le-STA-sis): Stoppage of bile flow.

Cholesteatoma (ko-le-ste-ah-TO-mah): Collection of skin cells and cholesterol in a sac within the middle ear.

Cholesterol-binding drug (ko-LES-ter-ole BIN-ding drug): Binds to dietary cholesterol and prevents its uptake from the gastrointestinal tract.

Cholesterol-lowering drug (ko-LES-ter-ole LO-wer-ing drug): Lowers cholesterol by preventing its production by the liver; statin.

Chondrocostal (kon-dro-KOS-tal): Pertaining to cartilage that is attached to the ribs.

Chondroma (kon-DRO-mah): Tumor of cartilage; benign (non-cancerous).

Chondromalacia (kon-dro-mah-LA-shah): Softening of cartilage.

Chondrosarcoma (kon-dro-sar-KO-mah): Malignant (cancerous) tumor of cartilage. The root sarc indicates the malignant tumor arises from a type of flesh or connective tissue.

Choriocarcinoma (ko-re-o-kar-sih-NO-mah): Malignant tumor of the placenta.

Chorion (KOR-e-on): Outermost membrane surrounding the developing fetus. It forms the fetal part of the placenta.

Chorionic (kor-e-ON-ik): Pertaining to the chorion.

Chorionic villus sampling (ko-re-ON-ik VIL-us SAMP-ling): Sampling of placental tissues (chorionic villi) for prenatal diagnosis; CVS.

Choroid (KOR-oyd): Middle, vascular layer of the eye, between the retina and the sclera.

Chromosome (KRO-mo-sohm): Rod-shaped structure in the nucleus of a cell; contains genetic material (DNA).

Chronic (KRON-ik): Pertaining to occurring over a long time.

Chronic bronchitis (KRON-ik brong-KI-tis): Inflammation of the bronchi persisting over a long period of time.

Chronic lymphoid leukemia (KRON-ik LIM-foyd lu-KE-me-ah): Type of leukemia in which abnormal numbers of relatively mature lymphocytes predominate in the bone marrow, lymph nodes, and spleen.

Chronic myeloid leukemia (KRON-ik MI-eh-loyd lu-KE-me-ah): Type of leukemia in which both mature and immature granulocytes are present in large numbers in the bone marrow and blood.

Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (KRON-ik ob-STRUK-tiv PUL-mo-NAIR-e dih-ZEEZ): Lung and bronchial tube conditions that block and damage airways and persist over a long period of time. Examples are chronic bronchitis and emphysema.

Cicatrix (SIK-ah-triks): Scar tissue.

Cilia (SIL-e-ah): Thin hairs that are attached to the mucous membrane epithelium lining passageways in the body. Cilia found in respiratory tract and in fallopian tubes of females.

Ciliary body (SIL-e-air-e BOD-e): Structure surrounding the lens that connects the iris to the choroid. It contains ciliary muscles, which control the shape of the lens, and it secretes aqueous humor.

Circumcision (sir-kum-SIZH-un): Surgical removal of the foreskin (prepuce) surrounding the end of penis.

Cirrhosis (sir-RO-sis): Chronic, degenerative disease of the liver.

Claudication (klaw-deh-KA-shun): Pain, tension, and weakness in a leg after walking has begun, but absence of pain at rest.

Claustrophobia (klaws-tro-FO-be-ah): Fear of closed-in places.

Clavicle (KLAV-ih-kul): Collar bone.

Clitoris (KLIH-tor-is): Organ of sensitive erectile tissue anterior to the opening of the female urethra.

Coagulation (ko-ag-u-LA-shun): Process of blood clotting.

Coagulopathy (ko-ag-u-LOP-ah-the): Disease of blood clotting.

Coarctation of the aorta (ko-ark-TA-shun of the a-OR-tah): Congenital anomaly in which a portion of the aorta near the heart is narrowed.

Coccygeal (kok-sih-JE-al): Pertaining to the tailbone or coccyx.

Coccyx (KOK-siks): Tailbone.

Cochlea (KOK-le-ah): Snail-shaped, spirally wound tube in the inner ear; contains hearing- sensitive receptor cells.

Cochlear (KOK-le-ar): Pertaining to the cochlea.

Cognitive behavioral therapy (KOG-nit-iv be-HAYV-yor-al THER-ah-pe): Changing behavior patterns and responses by training and repetition and learning how thinking patterns cause symptoms, such as anger, anxiety, and depression.

Coitus (KO-it-us): Sexual intercourse.

Colectomy (ko-LEK-to-me): Surgical removal (excision) of the colon.

Collagen (KOL-ah-jen): Dense, connective tissue protein strands found in bone and other tissues such as ligaments, tendons, and skin.

Colon (KO-lon): Large intestine.

Colonic (ko-LON-ik): Pertaining to the colon.

Colonic polyps (ko-LON-ik POL-ips): Benign growths protruding from the mucous membrane of the colon.

Colonoscopy (ko-lon-OS-ko-pe): Visual (endoscopic): examination of the colon.

Colony-stimulating factor (KOL-o-ne STIM-u-la-ting FAK-tor): Protein factor that stimulates the growth and differentiation of developing blood cells. Examples are granulocyte CSF, erythropoietin, and thrombopoietin.

Colorectal cancer (ko-lo-REK-tal KAN-ser): Adenocarcinoma of the colon or the rectum or both.

Colostomy (ko-LOS-to-me): New opening of the colon through the abdominal wall to the outside of the body.

Colposcopy (kol-POS-ko-pe): Visual examination of the vagina using an endoscope (colposcope).

Coma (KO-mah): State of unconsciousness from which a patient cannot be aroused.

Comatose (KO-mah-tohs): Pertaining to a coma.

Combination chemotherapy (KOM-bih-NA-shun ke-mo-THER-ah-pe): Use of multiple chemotherapeutic agents together for treatment of tumors.

Comedo; *pl.* comedones (KO-me-do; ko-me-DOHNZ): Clogged hair follicle (pore) in the skin; blackhead (open comedo) or whitehead (closed comedo).

Common bile duct (KOM-on bile dukt): Tube carrying bile from the liver and gallbladder into the duodenum (first part of the small intestine):.

Compact bone (KOM-pakt bone): Hard, dense bone tissue, forming the outer portion of bones.

Complement system (COM-pleh-ment SIS-tem): Set of proteins in the blood that help antibodies kill their target; part of the immune

system.

Complete blood count (kom-PLEET blood kownt): Determination of the number of all blood cells; white blood cells, red blood cells, and platelets.

Compulsion (kom-PUL-shun): Uncontrollable urge to perform an act repeatedly in an attempt to reduce anxiety.

Computed tomography (kom-PU-ted to-MOG-rah-fe): Cross-sectional x-ray imaging of an organ with or without contrast material.

Computerized tomography angiography (kom-PU-ted to-MOG-rah-fe an-je-OG-rah-fe): Computed tomography technique to visualize arterial and venous vessels throughout the body.

Cone (kone): Photoreceptor cell in the retina that transforms light energy into a nerve impulse. Cones are responsible for color and central vision.

Congenital anomaly (con-JEN-it-al ah-NOM-ah-le): Abnormality present at birth; birth defect.

Congenital heart disease (kon-JEN-ih-tal hart dih-ZEEZ): Structural heart defects that appear at birth.

Congestive heart failure (kon-JES-tiv hart FAIL-yur): Heart is unable to pump its required amount of blood.

Conization (ko-nih-ZA-shun): Removal of a cone-shaped section (cone biopsy) of the cervix.

Conjunctiva (kon-junk-TI-vah): Delicate membrane lining the eyelids and covering the eyeball up to the cornea.

Conjunctivitis (kon-junk-tih-VI-tis): Inflammation of the conjunctiva.

Connective tissue (kon-NEK-tiv TIH-shu): Tissue that supports and binds other tissues and parts. Examples are bone, cartilage, muscle, fat, and fibrous tissues.

Constipation (con-stih-PA-shun): Difficulty in passing (eliminating) feces (stool).

Contraindication (kon-trah-in-dih-KA-shun): Factor that indicates against the administration of a drug or procedure in the care of a patient.

Contralateral (kon-trah-LAT-er-al): Affecting the opposite side of a part of the body.

Contrast studies (KON-trast STUD-eez): Radiopaque materials (contrast media) are injected to obtain contrast between tissues that would be indistinguishable from one another.

Controlled substances (kon-TROLD SUB-stan-sez): Drugs that produce tolerance and dependence and have potential for abuse or addiction.

Conversion disorder (kon-VER-zshun dis-OR-der): Physical symptoms appear with no organic basis and as a result of anxiety and inner conflict.

Cor pulmonale (kor pul-mo-NAH-le): Enlargement of the right side of the heart due to lung disease.

Core needle biopsy (core NE-del BI-op-se): Insertion of a needle into tissue to remove a core of cells to examine under a microscope.

Cornea (KOR-ne-ah): Fibrous transparent layer of clear tissue that extends over the anterior portion of the eyeball.

Corneal abrasion (KOR-ne-al ah-BRA-zhun): Superficial scratch on the cornea (front the eye).

Corneoscleral (kor-ne-o-SKLER-al): Pertaining to the cornea and sclera (white of the eye).

Coronary arteries (KOR-o-nair-e AR-teh-reez): Branches of the aorta bringing oxygen-rich blood to the heart muscle.

Coronary artery bypass grafting (KOR-o-nair-e AR-teh-re BI-pas GRAF-ting): Arteries or veins are grafted onto coronary arteries to bypass blocked arteries and bring blood supply to the myocardium.

Coronary artery disease (KOR-o-nair-e AR-teh-re dih-ZEEZ): Arteries that supply blood to the heart muscle become clogged and blocked with deposits of fatty material and cholesterol (plaque).

Corpus luteum (KOR-pus LU-te-um): Empty ovarian follicle that secretes progesterone after release of the egg cell; literally means yellow (luteum) body (corpus).

Cortex (KOR-teks): Outer region of an organ. The renal cortex is the outer region of the kidney.

Cortical (KOR-tik-al): Pertaining to the cortex (outer region of an organ).

Corticosteroids (kor-tik-o-STER-oydz): Hormones secreted by the adrenal cortex; cortisol and aldosterone are examples.

Cortisol (KOR-tih-sole): Hormone secreted by the adrenal cortex; increases blood sugar. It is secreted in times of stress and has an anti-inflammatory effect.

Cranial bones (KRA-ne-al bones): Bones of the skull; ethmoid, frontal, occipital, parietal, sphenoid, and temporal.

Cranial cavity (KRA-ne-al KAV-ih-te): Space in the head containing the brain and surrounded by the skull.

Cranial nerves (KRA-ne-al nervz): Nerves that carry messages to and from the brain; there are 12 pairs of cranial nerves.

Craniotome (KRA-ne-o-tohm): Instrument to cut the skull (cranium).

Craniotomy (kra-ne-OT-o-me): Incision of the skull.

Creatinine (kre-AH-tih-neen): Nitrogenous waste excreted in urine; a product of muscle metabolism.

Creatinine clearance (kre-AH-tih-neen KLE-ranz): Measurement of the rate at which creatinine is cleared from the blood by the kidney.

Crepitus (KREP-ih-tus): Crackling sound produced when ends of bone rub against each other or against roughened cartilage.

Cretinism (KRE-tin-izm): Hypothyroidism during infancy and childhood leading to a lack of normal physical and mental growth.

Crohn disease (KROHN dih-ZEEZ): Chronic inflammation of the intestinal tract.

Croup (kroop): Acute viral infection of infants and children with obstruction of the larynx, accompanied by barking cough and

stridor.

Crust (krust): Collection on the skin of dried sebum and cellular debris; scab.

Cryogenic surgery (kri-o-GEN-ik SUR-jer-e): Use of extremely cold temperatures to freeze or destroy tissue.

Cryosurgery (kri-o-SUR-jer-e): Use of subfreezing temperature to destroy tissue; cryocauterization.

Cryptorchidism (kript-OR-kid-izm): One or both testes fail to descend into the scrotal sac near the time of birth.

CT urography (CT u-ROG-rah-fe): X-ray images using computed tomography show multiple cross-sectional and other views of the kidney.

Cul-de-sac (KUL-de-sak): Region in the lower abdomen, midway between the rectum and the uterus.

Culdocentesis (kul-do-sen-TE-sis): Needle aspiration of fluid from the cul-de-sac.

Curettage (ku-re-TAJ): Scraping of material from the skin or from the wall of a cavity.

Cushing syndrome (KUSH-ing SIN-drohm): Group of symptoms produced by excess cortisol from the adrenal cortex; obesity, hyperglycemia, and excess fat deposition in the body. High levels of exogenous cortisol (cortisone administration) can produce similar results.

Cuticle (KU-tih-kul): Band of epidermis at the base and sides of the nail plate.

Cyanosis (si-ah-NO-sis): Abnormal condition of bluish coloration of the skin.

Cycloplegic (si-klo-PLE-jik): Pertaining to paralysis of the ciliary muscles of the eye.

Cyclothymia (si-klo-THI-me-ah): Patient experiences alternating states of depression and exhilaration; mild form of bipolar disorder.

Cyst (sist): Thick-walled, closed sac or pouch containing fluid or semisolid material.

Cystectomy (sis-TEK-to-me): Excision (removal) of the urinary bladder.

Cystic fibrosis (SIS-tik fi-BRO-sis): Inherited disorder of exocrine glands resulting in thick mucinous secretions in the respiratory tract that do not drain normally.

Cystic tumor (SIS-tik TU-mor): Tumor that forms large open spaces filled with fluid.

Cystitis (sis-TI-tis): Inflammation of the urinary bladder.

Cystocele (SIS-to-seel): Hernia of the urinary bladder.

Cystoscopy (sis-TOS-ko-pe): Visual examination of the urinary bladder.

Cystostomy (sis-TOS-to-me): New opening of the urinary bladder to the outside of the body.

Cytogenetic analysis (si-to-jeh-NET-ik ah-NAH-leh-sis): Chromosomes of normal or tumor cells are examined for breaks, translocations, or deletions of DNA.

Cytokines (SI-to-kines): Proteins secreted by cytotoxic T cells that aid in antigen destruction. Examples are interferons and interleukins.

Cytology (si-TOL-o-je): Study of cells.

Cytoplasm (SI-to-plaz-im): All of the material that is outside the nucleus and yet contained within the cell membrane.

Cytotoxic T cell (si-to-TOK-sik T sel): Lymphocyte that directly kills antigens; called CD8+ T cell.

D

Dacryoadenitis (dak-re-o-ad-eh-NI-tis): Inflammation of tear glands.

Deafness (DEF-nes): Loss of the ability to hear.

Decalcification (de-kal-sif-ih-KA-shun): Loss of calcium from bones.

Decubitus (deh-KU-bih-tus): Lying down; a lateral decubitus position is lying down one's the side.

Decubitus ulcer (de-KU-bih-tus UL-ser): Inflammation, sore, or ulcer in the skin over a bony part of the body; pressure ulcer; bedsore.

Dedifferentiation (de-dif-er-en-she-A-shun): Loss of differentiation of cells; reversion to a more primitive, embryonic cell type.

Deep (deep): Away from the surface of the body or an organ.

Deep vein thrombosis (deep vayn throm-BO-sis): Blood clots form in a large vein, usually in the leg.

Defecation (def-eh-KA-shun): Eliminating of wastes and undigested foods through the anus.

Defense mechanism (de-FENS meh-kan-NIZM): Unconscious technique (coping mechanism) that a person uses to resolve or conceal conflicts and anxiety.

Defibrillation (de-fib-rih-LA-shun): Brief discharges of electricity are applied across the chest to stop dysrhythmias (ventricular fibrillation).

Deglutition (de-glu-TIH-shun): Swallowing.

Dehydration (de-hi-DRA-shun): Excessive loss of water.

Delirium (deh-LEER-e-um): Acute episodes of confused thinking, disorientation, agitation, and fearfulness. This usually is a reversible impairment.

Delirium tremens (deh-LEER-e-um TRE-menz): Anxiety, confusion in thinking, and tremors associated with withdrawal from excessive and habitual use of alcohol.

Delusion (deh-LU-zhun): Fixed, false belief that cannot be changed by logical reasoning or evidence.

Dementia (de-MEN-she-ah): Mental decline and deterioration.

Demyelination (de-mi-eh-lin-A-shun): Destruction of myelin on axons of nerve cells (as in multiple sclerosis).

Dendrite (DEN-drite): Microscopic branching portion of a nerve cell; first part of the nerve cell to receive the nervous impulse.

Dendritic cell (den-DRIH-tik sel): Antigen-presenting cell of the immune system; shows T and B cells what to attack.

Dental caries (DEN-tal KAH-reez): Tooth decay.

Dentalgia (den-TAL-jah): Pain in a tooth.

Dentibuccal (den-tih-BUK-al): Pertaining to the teeth and cheek.

Dentin (DEN-tin): Primary material found in teeth; surrounding the pulp and covered by enamel of the crown.

Deoxygenated blood (de-OX-ih-jeh-NA-ted blud): Blood that is oxygen-poor.

Deoxyribonucleic acid (de-ox-e-ri-bo-nu-KLE-ik AS-id): Genetic material (DNA) within the nucleus of a cell; controls cell division and protein synthesis.

Dependence (de-PEND-ents): Prolonged use of a drug that may lead to physiologic need for its actions in the body.

Dependent personality (de-PEN-dant per-son-AL-ih-te): Personality disorder marked by an excessive need to be taken care of and a pattern of submissive and clinging behavior.

Depressive disorders (de-PRES-iv dis-OR-derz): Group of psychiatric disorders marked by the occurrence of one or more major depressive episodes without a history of mania or hypomania.

Dermabrasion (der-mah-BRA-zhun): Treatment for removal of superficial scars or wrinkles on the skin using sandpaper-like material.

Dermatitis (der-mah-TI-tis): Inflammation of the skin.

Dermatologist (der-mah-TOL-o-jist): Specialist in the study (diagnosis and treatment) of skin disorders.

Dermatology (der-mah-TOL-o-je): Study of the skin.

Dermatophytosis (der-mah-to-fi-TO-sis): Fungal infection of the skin.

Dermis (DER-mis): Middle layer of the skin.

Dermoid cysts (DER-moyd sists): Benign ovarian sacs arising from immature egg cells in the ovary and containing a variety of cell types; benign cystic teratomas.

Diabetes insipidus (di-ah-BE-teez in-SIP-ih-dus): Abnormal condition of inadequate secretion of antidiuretic hormone (ADH) from the pituitary gland. Patients experience polyuria (excessive urination) and polydipsia (excessive thirst).

Diabetes mellitus (di-ah-BE-teez MEL-ih-tus): Lack of insulin secretion (Type 1) or improper utilization of insulin by cells (Type 2) leads to hyperglycemia, glycosuria, polyuria, and polydipsia.

Diabetic retinopathy (di-ah-BEH-tik reh-tin-OP-ath-e): Disease of the retina caused by diabetes mellitus; microaneurysms, hemorrhages, dilation of retinal veins, and neovascularization (new blood vessels) in the retina.

Diagnosis (di-ag-NO-sis): Complete knowledge of a patient's condition.

Dialysis (di-AL-ih-sis): Separation of nitrogenous wastes from the blood when the kidneys no longer function; hemodialysis and peritoneal dialysis are examples.

Diameter (di-AM-eh-ter): Measurement through the center of a circle (for example the size of the opening of a blood vessel).

Diaphoresis (di-ah-for-E-sis): Profuse sweating.

Diaphragm (DI-ah-fram): Muscle separating the abdominal and thoracic cavities. The diaphragm moves up and down and aids in breathing.

Diaphysis (di-AF-ih-sis): Shaft or mid-portion of a long bone.

Diarrhea (di-ah-RE-ah): Frequent passage of loose, watery stools.

Diastole (di-AS-to-le): Relaxation phase of the heartbeat.

Differentiation (dif-er-en-she-A-shun): Specialization of cells from immature to mature forms.

Diffuse (di-FUS): Spread over a wide area.

Digestion (di-JEST-shun): Breakdown of complex foods to simpler forms.

Digital rectal exam (DIJ-eh-tal REK-tal ek-ZAM): Finger palpation through the anus and rectum to examine the prostate gland.

Digital subtraction angiography (DIJ-ih-tal sub-TRAK-shun an-je-OG-rah-fe): Video equipment, computer, and x-ray machine produce images of blood vessels before and after injecting contrast material.

Digoxin (dih-JOK-sin): Drug that increases the strength and regularity of the heartbeat.

Dilatation (dih-lah-TA-shun): Widening of a vessel or an opening.

Dilation and curettage (di-LA-shun and kur-eh-TAZH): Widening the cervix and scraping off the endometrial lining of the uterus; D&C.

Diphtheria (dif-THE-re-ah): Acute infection of the throat and respiratory tract caused by diphtheria bacteria; characterized by

formation of a thick membrane that obstructs the throat and breathing.

Diplopia (dip-LO-pe-ah): Double vision.

Disc (disc): Pad of cartilage between vertebrae.

Discography (disc-OG-rah-fe): X-ray images of cervical or lumbar intervertebral discs after injection of contrast material into the interior of the disc.

Dislocation (dis-lo-KA-shun): Displacement of a bone from its joint.

Dissociative disorder (dih-SO-she-ah-tiv dis-OR-der): Group of psychiatric disorders marked by a breakdown in memory, identity, or perception. Examples are identity disorder and dissociative amnesia.

Distal (DIS-tal): Far from the point of attachment to the trunk of the body or far from the beginning of a structure.

Diuresis (di-u-RE-sis): Increased excretion of urine by the kidneys. A diuretic is an agent, such as tea, coffee or water, that increases diuresis.

Diuretic (di-u-RET-ik): Drug that promotes or increases the production of urine (diuresis).

Diverticula (di-ver-TIH-ku-lah): Small, pouch-like herniations through the muscular wall of a tubular organ such as the colon.

Diverticulosis (di-ver-tih-ku-LO-sis): Abnormal outpouchings (diverticula) in the intestinal wall of the colon.

Dopamine (DO-pah-meen): Neurotransmitter in the central nervous system; deficient in patients with Parkinson disease.

Doppler ultrasound (DOP-ler UL-trah-sound): Method of focusing sound waves on blood vessels to measure blood flow.

Dorsal (DOR-sal): Pertaining to the back, or posterior portion of the body.

Dorsiflexion (dor-se-FLEK-shun): Decreasing the angle of the ankle joint so that the foot moves upward, toward the knee or ceiling.

Dose (dose): Amount of drug administered, usually measured in milligrams.

Down syndrome (Down SIN-drohm): Chromosomal abnormality (trisomy 21) that results in mental retardation, retarded growth, a flat face with a short nose, low-set ears, and slanted eyes.

Duodenal (du-o-DE-nal): Pertaining to the duodenum.

Duodenum (du-o-DE-num): First part of the small intestine.

Dura mater (DUR-ah MAH-ter): Thick, outermost layer of the meninges surrounding the brain and spinal cord.

Dwarfism (DWARF-izm): Short stature; height considerably below average. Congenital hyposecretion of growth hormone from the anterior pituitary gland may be a cause.

Dyscrasia (dis-KRA-ze-ah): Blood disease.

Dysentery (DIS-en-ter-e): Painful, inflamed intestines commonly caused by bacterial infection.

Dyskinesia (dis-kih-NE-ze-ah): Impairment of the ability to perform voluntary movements.

Dyslexia (dis-LEK-se-ah): Difficulty in reading, writing, and learning.

Dysmenorrhea (dis-men-o-RE-ah): Painful, difficult menses (menstruation).

Dyspareunia (dis-pah-RU-ne-ah): Painful sexual intercourse.

Dyspepsia (dis-PEP-se-ah): Painful digestion; indigestion.

Dysphagia (dis-FA-je-ah): Difficulty in swallowing.

Dysphonia (dis-FO-ne-ah): Abnormal voice or sound produced when speaking.

Dysphoria (dis-FOR-e-ah): Sadness, hopelessness, and depressive mood; feeling "low."

Dysplasia (dis-PLA-ze-ah): Condition of abnormal formation.

Dysplastic (dis-PLAS-tik): Pertaining to abnormal formation or development of cells; not clearly malignant.

Dysplastic nevi (dis-PLAS-tik NE-vi): Abnormal moles with irregular borders, indistinct margins, and mixed coloration; often precursors of malignant melanomas.

Dyspnea (DISP-ne-ah): Difficult breathing.

Dysrhythmia (dis-RITH-me-ah): Abnormal heart rhythm.

Dysthymia (dis-THI-me-ah): Depressive episodes, but not of the same intensity or duration as major depression.

Dystocia (dis-TO-se-ah): Difficult childbirth.

Dystrophy (DIS-tro-fe): Condition of abnormal development.

Dysuria (dis-U-re-a): Painful urination.

E

Ear thermometry (ear ther-MOM-eh-tre): Measurement of the temperature of the tympanic membrane by detection of infrared radiation from the eardrum.

Ecchymosis; *pl.* ecchymoses (ek-ih-MO-sis; ek-ih-MO-seez): Bleeding into the skin; a bruise.

Eccrine sweat gland (EK-rin swet gland): Major sweat gland in the skin.

Echocardiography (ek-o-kar-de-OG-rah-fe): Sound waves are used to image the structure of the heart.

Ectopic pregnancy (ek-TOP-ik PREG-nan-se): Pregnancy that is out of place (not in the uterus). A fallopian tube is the most common ectopic site.

Eczema (EK-zem-ah): Chronic dermatitis of unknown etiology, marked by redness, blisters, scales, and scabs; atopic dermatitis.

Edema (eh-DE-mah): Abnormal accumulation of fluid in tissue spaces.

Efferent nerves (EH-fer-ent nervz): Carry messages away from the brain the spinal cord; motor nerves.

Ego (E-go): Central, coordinating branch of the personality.

Ejaculation (eh-jak-u-LA-shun): Ejection of sperm and fluid (semen) from the male urethra as a result of sexual stimulation.

Ejaculatory duct (eh-JAK-u-lah-tor-e dukt): Tube through which semen enters the male urethra.

Electrocardiogram (eh-lek-tro-KAR-de-o-gram): Record of the electricity within the heart.

Electrocardiography (eh-lek-tro-kar-de-OG-rah-fe): Process of recording the electricity within the heart.

Electrocauterization (eh-lek-tro-kaw-ter-eh-ZA-shun): Use of electricity to heat tissue during surgery to remove abnormal tissue growth.

Electrocautery (eh-lek-tro-KAW-ter-e): Use of a needle or snare heated by electric current to destroy or burn tissue (removal of warts, polyps).

Electroencephalograph (eh-lek-tro-en-SEF-al-o-graf): Instrument used to record the electricity in the brain.

Electroconvulsive therapy (eh-lek-tro-kon-VUL-siv THER-ah-pe): Electric current produces a convulsive seizure to treat mood disorders (depression or the depressive phase of bipolar disorder); used in patients who are resistant to drug therapy or when rapid response is needed.

Electrodesiccation (eh-lek-tro-deh-si-KA-shun): Destruction of tissue by burning with an electric spark.

Electroencephalogram (eh-lek-tro-en-SEF-ah-lo-gram): Record of the electricity in the brain.

Electroencephalography (eh-lek-tro-en-sef-al-OG-rah-fe): Process of recording the electricity in the brain.

Electrolyte (eh-LEK-tro-lite): Chemical element that carries an electrical charge when dissolved in water. Examples are sodium (Na+), potassium (K+), and chloride (Cl-).

Electromyography (eh-lek-tro-mi-OG-rah-fe): Recording the electrical activity of muscle tissue.

Electron beam computed tomography (eh-LEK-tron beem kom-PU-ted to-MOG-rah-fe): Electron beams and CT identify calcium deposits in and around coronary arteries to diagnose early coronary artery disease.

Electron beams (eh-LEK-tron beemz): Low-energy beams of radiation for treatment of skin or surface tumors.

Electrophoresis (eh-lek-tro-fo-RE-sis): Technique used to separate serum proteins by electrical charge and size.

Elimination (e-lim-in-A-shun): Removal of materials from the body; in the digestive system, the removal of indigestible materials as feces.

ELIZA (eh-LI-zah): Test to detect anti-HIV antibodies in blood. This is a screening test for AIDS.

Embolus; *pl.* emboli (EM-bo-lus; EM-bo-li): Clot of material that travels through the bloodstream and suddenly blocks a vessel.

Embryo (EM-bre-o): Stage in prenatal development from two to eight weeks.

Embryonal carcinoma (em-bre-ON-al kar-sih-NO-mah): Type of testicular cancer.

Emetic (eh-MET-ik): Drug that promotes vomiting.

Emphysema (em-fi-ZE-mah): Hyperinflation of air sacs with destruction of alveolar walls.

Empyema (em-pi-E-mah): Pus in the pleural space (cavity): surrounding the lungs; pyothorax.

Emulsification (e-mul-sif-ik-A-shun): Breakdown of large fat globules into smaller, digestible particles.

En bloc resection (en blok re-SEK-shun): Removal of a tumor with a large area of surrounding tissue containing lymph nodes.

Enamel (e-NAM-el): Hard, outermost layer of a tooth.

Encapsulated (en-KAP-su-la-ted): Surrounded by a capsule; benign tumors are encapsulated.

Encephalitis (en-seh-fah-LI-tis): Inflammation of the brain.

Encephalopathy (en-seh-fah-LOP-ath-e): Disease of the brain.

Endarterectomy (en-dar-ter-EK-to-me): Surgical removal of plaque from the inner layer of an artery.

Endemic goiter (em-DEM-ik GOY-ter): Enlargement of the thyroid gland due to lack of iodine in the diet.

Endocarditis (en-do-kar-DI-tis): Inflammation of the endocardium (inner lining of the heart).

Endocardium (en-do-KAR-de-um): Inner lining of the heart.

Endocervicitis (en-do-ser-vih-SI-tis): Inflammation of the inner lining of the cervix (lower, neck-like portion of the uterus).

Endocrine drug (EN-do-krin drug): Hormone or hormone-like drug; androgens, estrogens, and glucocorticoids.

Endocrine glands (EN-do-krin glanz): Glands that secrete hormones within the body, directly into the bloodstream.

Endocrinologist (en-do-crin-OL-o-jist): Medical specialist in the diagnosis and treatment of endocrine gland disorders.

Endocrinology (en-do-krin-OL-o-je): Study of the endocrine glands.

Endodontist (en-do-DON-tist): Dentist specializing in the inner parts of a tooth.

Endolymph (EN-do-limf): Fluid within the labyrinth (canals): of the inner ear; conducts sound waves.

Endometrial cancer (en-do-ME-tre-al KAN-ser): Malignant tumor of the uterine lining (adenocarcinoma); carcinoma of the endometrium.

Endometriosis (en-do-me-tre-O-sis): Abnormal condition of endometrial tissue located outside the uterus.

Endometritis (en-do-meh-TRI-tis): Inflammation of the inner lining of the uterus.

Endometrium (en-do-ME-tre-um): Inner, mucous membrane lining of the uterus.

Endoplasmic reticulum (en-do-PLAZ-mik reh-TIK-u-lum): Network of canals within the cytoplasm of the cell; site of protein synthesis.

Endoscope (EN-do-skope): Instrument to visually examine the interior of the body.

Endoscopic ultrasonography (en-do-SKOP-ik ul-trah-so-NOG-rah-fe): Use of an endoscope combined with ultrasound to examine the organs of the gastrointestinal tract.

Endoscopy (en-DOS-ko-pe): Process of visual examination within the body.

Endothelium (en-do-THE-le-um): Innermost lining of blood vessels.

Endotracheal (en-do-TRA-ke-al): Pertaining to within the trachea.

Endotracheal intubation (en-do-TRA-ke-al in-tu-BA-shun): Tube is placed through the mouth and throat into the trachea to establish an airway.

Enteritis (en-teh-RI-tis): Inflammation of the small intestine.

Enterocolitis (en-ter-o-ko-LI-tis): Inflammation of the small intestine and colon.

Enteroenterostomy (en-ter-o-en-ter-OS-to-me): New opening between two previously unconnected parts of the small intestine.

Enucleation (e-nu-kle-A-shun): Removal of the entire eyeball.

Enuresis (en-u-RE-sis): Bedwetting; literally, "in urine."

Enzyme (EN-zime): Chemical that speeds up a reaction between substances.

Eosinophil (e-o-SIH-no-fil): White blood cell (leukocyte) containing dark granules that stain rosy with eosin (a reddish dye); associated with allergic reactions.

Eosinophilia (e-o-sih-no-FIL-e-ah): Increase in numbers of eosinophils in the bloodstream.

Ependymal cell (eh-PEN-dih-mal sel): Glial cell that lines the membranes within the brain and spinal cord and helps form cerebrospinal fluid.

Epidermis (ep-ih-DER-mis): Outer layer of the skin.

Epidermoid (ep-ih-DER-moyd): Resembling epidermis or the outer layer of skin. Epidermoid tumors are composed of thin, plate-like cells.

Epidermolysis (ep-ih-der-MOL-ih-sis): Loosening of outer layer of the skin with formation of large blisters (bullae).

Epididymis (ep-ih-DIH-dih-mis): One of a pair of long, tightly coiled tubes lying on top of each testis. It carries sperm to the vas deferens.

Epididymitis (ep-ih-dih-dih-MI-tis): Inflammation of an epididymis.

Epidural hematoma (ep-eh-DU-ral he-mah-TO-mah): Collection of blood located above the dura mater.

Epigastric (ep-ih-GAS-trik): Pertaining to above or upon the stomach.

Epigastric region (ep-ih-GAS-trik re-jen): Middle upper abdominopelvic region (above the stomach).

Epiglottis (ep-ih-GLOT-is): Lid-like piece of cartilage that covers the voice box and windpipe when a person is swallowing.

Epiglottitis (ep-ih-glot-TI-tis): Inflammation of the epiglottis.

Epilepsy (EP-ih-lep-se): Brain disorder marked by recurrent attacks (seizures) of abnormal nervous impulses.

Epinephrine (ep-ih-NEF-rin): Hormone secreted by the adrenal gland in response to stress and physical injury; adrenaline. It is part of the body's "fight or flight" reaction.

Epiphyseal plate (ep-ih-FIZ-e-al plate): Cartilaginous area at the ends of long bones where lengthwise growth takes place in the immature skeleton.

Epiphysis (eh-PIF-ih-sis): Each end of a long bone.

Episiotomy (ep-is-e-OT-o-me): Incision of the vulva (perineum) to widen the opening of the vagina during a difficult childbirth.

Epistaxis (ep-ih-STAX-is): Nosebleed.

Epithelial cells (ep-ih-THE-le-al sels): Skin cells that cover the outside of the body and line the internal surfaces of organs: epithelium.

Epithelium (ep-ih-THE-le-um): Layer of cells covering the external surface of the body and lining the hollow tubes within the body.

Erectile dysfunction (e-REK-til dis-FUNK-shun): Inability of an adult male to achieve an erection; impotence.

Erosion (eh-RO-zhun): Wearing away or loss of epidermis.

Eructation (e-ruk-TA-shun): Gas expelled from the stomach through the mouth; belching or burping.

Erythema (eh-rih-THE-mah): Condition of redness of the skin.

Erythematous (eh-rih-THE-mah-tus): Pertaining to redness of the skin.

Erythroblast (eh-RITH-ro-blast): Immature, developing red blood cell.

Erythroblastosis fetalis (eh-rith-thro-blast-O-sis fe-TAL-is): Hemolytic disease of the newborn caused by a blood group (Rh factor) incompatibility between the mother and fetus.

Erythrocyte (eh-RITH-ro-site): Red blood cell.

Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (eh-RITH-ro-site sed-ih-men-TA-shun rate): Measures the time it takes for erythrocytes settle to the bottom of a test tube; useful in detection of inflammatory disorders such as rheumatoid arthritis.

Erythromycin (eh-rith-ro-MI-sin): Antibiotic that is extracted from a red (erythr/o): mold (-mycin).

Erythropenia (eh-rith-ro-PE-ne-a): Deficiency of red blood cells.

Erythropoiesis (eh-rith-ro-poy-E-sis): Formation of red blood cells.

Erythropoietin (eh-rith-ro-PO-eh-tin): Hormone secreted by the kidney to stimulate red blood cell production in bone marrow.

Esophageal (eh-sof-ah-JE-al): Pertaining to the esophagus.

Esophageal atresia (eh-sof-ah-JE-al a-TRE-ze-ah): Congenital absence of the normal opening from the esophagus to the stomach.

Esophageal cancer (eh-sof-ah-JE-al KAN-ser): Malignant tumor of the esophagus.

Esophageal varices (eh-sof-ah-JE-al VAR-ih-seez): Swollen, twisted veins at the lower end of the esophagus.

Esophagus (eh-SOF-ah-gus): Tube that carries food from the pharynx (throat) to the stomach.

Esotropia (es-o-TRO-pe-ah): Turning inward of one or both pupils; "cross eyes."

Essential hypertension (e-SEN-shul hi-per-TEN-shun): High blood pressure due to no apparent cause.

Estradiol (es-trah-DI-ol): Estrogen (female hormone) secreted by the ovaries.

Estrogen (ES-tro-jen): Female hormone produced by the ovaries; promotes secondary sex characteristics and supports reproductive tissues.

Estrogenic (es-tro-JEN-ik): Pertaining to producing estrogen.

Ethmoid bone (ETH-moyd bone): Thin, delicate bone that supports the nasal cavity and forms part of the orbits of the eye.

Etiology (e-te-OL-o-je): Study of the cause of disease.

Euphoria (u-FOR-e-ah): Exaggerated feeling of well-being; elevated mood, "high."

Eustachian tube (u-STA-shun toob): Channel between the middle ear and the throat; auditory tube.

Euthymia (u-THI-e-ah): Normal, non-depressed, positive mood.

Euthyroid (u-THI-royd): Normal thyroid function.

Eversion (e-VER-zhun): Turning outward.

Ewing sarcoma (U-wing sar-KO-mah): Rare malignant tumor arising in bone; most often occurring in children.

Exanthematous viral disease (eg-zan-THEM-ah-tus VI-ral dih-ZEEZ): Rash (exanthem) of skin due to viral infection; measles (rubeola) and chicken pox (varicella) are examples.

Excision (ek-SIZH-un): Process of cutting out; removal; resection.

Excisional biopsy (ek-SIZH-un-al BI-op-se): Removal of tumor and a margin of normal tissue.

Exenteration (eks-en-teh-RA-shun): Removal of all internal organs within a cavity, such the pelvis.

Exfoliative cytology (eks-FO-le-a-tiv si-TOL-o-je): Cells are scraped from a region of suspected disease and examined under the microscope.

Exhalation (ex-hal-A-shun): Process of breathing out; expiration.

Exhibitionism (ek-sih-BISH-un-izm): Compulsive need to expose one's body, particularly the genitals, to an unsuspecting stranger.

Exocrine glands (EK-so-krin glanz): Glands that secrete chemicals to the outside of the body.

Exophthalmometry (ek-sof-thal-MOM-eh-tre): Measurement of eyeball protrusion.

Exophthalmos (ek-sof-THAL-mos): Protrusion of the eyeball; sign of hyperthyroidism.

Exostosis (ek-sos-TO-sis): Bony growth (benign) arising from the surface of bone.

Exotropia (ek-so-TRO-pe-ah): Turning to the side or outward of one or both pupils.

Expectoration (ex-pek-tor-RA-shun): Coughing up of sputum (mucus) from the throat and respiratory tract.

Expiration (ex-pih-RA-shun): Process of breathing out; exhalation.

Extension (ek-STEN-shun): Increasing the angle between two bones; straightening out a limb.

External beam radiation (eks-TER-nal beam ra-de-A-shun): Radiation applied to a tumor from a distant source, such a machine (linear accelerator).

Extracorporeal circulation (eks-trah-kor-POR-e-al ser-ku-LA-shun): Use of a heart-lung machine to divert blood from the heart and lungs during open heart surgery.

Exudate (EX-su-dayt): Fluid, cells, and other substance (pus) that filters from cells or capillaries oozes into lesions or areas of inflammation.

F

Facial (FA-shul): Pertaining to the face.

Facial bones (FA-shal bones): Bones of the face; lacrimal, mandibular, maxillary, nasal, vomer, and zygomatic bones.

Fallopian tube (fah-LO-pe-an toob): One of a pair of ducts through which the ovum travels to the uterus; also called oviduct.

Family therapy (FAM-il-e THER-ah-pe): Treatment of an entire family to resolve and understand their conflicts and problems.

Fascia (FASH-e-ah): Fibrous membrane separating and enveloping muscle.

Fasciotomy (fash-e-OT-to-me): Incision of fascia.

Fasting plasma glucose (FAS-ting PLAS-mah GLU-kose): Measures circulating glucose level in a patient who has fasted at least 8 hours. Also known as fasting blood sugar test.

Fatty acids (FAT-te AS-idz): Substances produced when fats are digested.

Fecal transplant (fe-kal tranz-plant): Transfer of stool from a healthy donor into the gastrointestinal tract of a recipient. After transplant, normal stool bacteria populates the colon of the patient.

Feces (FE-seez): Solid wastes; stools.

Femoral (FEM-or-al): Pertaining to the femur.

Femur (FE-mur): Thigh bone.

Fertilization (fer-tih-lih-ZA-shun): Union of the egg (ovum) and sperm.

Fetal monitoring (FE-tal MON-it-or-ing): Continuous recording of the fetal heart rate and maternal uterine contractions to assess fetal status and the progress of labor.

Fetal presentation (FE-tal pres-en-TA-shun): Manner in which the fetus enters the birth canal.

Fetishism (FET-ish-izm): Use of non-living objects, such as articles of clothing, as substitutes for a human sexual love object.

Fetus (FE-tus): Stage in prenatal development from 8 weeks to birth.

Fiberoptic colonoscopy (fi-ber-OP-tik ko-lon-OS-ko-pe): Visual examination of the colon using a fiberoptic instrument (endoscope).

Fibrillation (fib-rih-LA-shun): Random, rapid, inefficient, and irregular contractions of the atria or ventricles.

Fibrin (FI-brin): Protein threads that form the basis of a blood clot.

Fibrinogen (fi-BRIN-o-jen): Plasma protein that is converted to fibrin in the clotting process.

Fibrocystic breast disease (fi-bro-SIS-tik brest dih-ZEEZ): Numerous small sacs of fluid surrounded by dense strands of fibrous tissue in the breast.

Fibroids (FI-broydz): Benign tumors of the uterus; leiomyomas.

Fibromyalgia (fi-bro-mi-AL-jah): Chronic pain and stiffness in muscles and fibrous tissue, especially in the shoulders, neck, hips, and knees.

Fibrosarcoma (fi-bro-sar-KO-mah): Malignant tumor of fibrous or connective tissue.

Fibrosis (fi-BRO-sis): Abnormal condition (proliferation) of fibrous connective tissue; pulmonary fibrosis occurs in the lung as a side effect of radiation for lung cancer.

Fibula (FIB-u-lah): Smaller of the two lower leg bones.

Fibular (FIB-u-lar): Pertaining to the fibula.

Filtration (fil-TRA-shun): Process by which some substances, but not all, pass through a filter or other type of material.

Fimbriae (FIM-bre-e): Finger or fringe-like projections at the end of the fallopian tubes.

Fine needle aspiration (fine NE-dil as-pih-RA-shun): Withdrawal of fluid or tissue from a cyst or solid mass by suction with a needle.

Fissure (FISH-ur): Groove or crack-like sore.

Flagellum (fla-JEL-um): Hair-like projection on a sperm cell that makes it motile.

Flatus (FLA-tus): Gas expelled through the anus.

Flexion (FLEK-shun): Decreasing the angle between two bones; bending a limb.

Fluorescein angiography (flu-o-RES-e-in an-je-OG-rah-fe): Intravenous injection of fluorescein (a dye) followed by serial photographs of the retina through dilated pupils.

Fluoroscopy (flu-ROS-ko-pe): Process of using x-rays to produce an image on a fluorescent screen.

Flutter (FLUH-ter): Rapid, but regular contractions of the heart muscle, usually of the atria.

Follicle-stimulating hormone (FOL-lik-il STIM-u-la-ting HOR-mone): Secreted by the pituitary gland to stimulate stimulate hormone secretion and egg production by the ovaries.

Follicular (fo-LIK-u-lar): Pertaining to forming small, glandular sacs.

Fontanelle (fon-tan-EL): Soft spot between skull bones of an infant.

Foramen magnum (for-A-men MAG-num): Opening of the occipital bone through which the spinal cord passes.

Fovea centralis (FO-ve-ah sen-TRAH-lis): Tiny pit or depression in the retina that is the region of clearest vision.

Fractionation (frak-shah-NA-shun): Method of administering radiation treatment in small, repeated doses rather than in a few large doses.

Fracture (FRAK-shur): Traumatic breaking of a bone.

Fraternal twins (frah-TER-nal twinz): Two infants resulting from fertilization of two separate ova by two separate sperm cells.

Free association (free ah-so-she-A-shun): Psychoanalytic technique in which a patient is encouraged to reveal thoughts one after another without censorship.

Frontal bone (FRUN-tal bone): Skull bone that forms the forehead and bony sockets that contain the eyes.

Frontal plane (FRUN-tal playn): Vertical plane dividing the body or structure into anterior and posterior portions; coronal plane.

Fugue (fuge): Flight from customary surroundings; dissociative disorder.

Fulguration (ful-gu-RA-shun): Destruction of tissue using electric sparks generated by a high- frequency current.

Fundus of the eye (FUN-dus of the eye): Posterior, inner part of the eye; visualized with an ophthalmoscope.

Fungal tests (FUNG-al tests): Scrapings from skin lesions, hair specimens, or nail clippings are sent to a laboratory for culture and microscopic identification of fungal infection.

Fungating tumor (fun-GA-ting TU-mor): Gross description of tumor growth in which cells pile one on top of another and project from the tissue surface.

G

Gait (gate): Manner of walking.

Galactorrhea (gah-lak-to-RE-ah): Excessive or abnormal secretion of milk after breast-feeding has ended.

Gallbladder (GAWL-blah-der): Small sac under the liver; stores bile.

Gamete (GAM-eet): Reproductive cell (ovum or sperm).

Gamma camera (GAM-ah KAM-er-ah): Machine to detect gamma rays given off by radiopharmaceuticals during scanning for diagnostic purposes.

Gamma rays (GAM-ah rays): High-energy rays emitted by radioactive substances in tracer studies.

Ganglion cyst (GANG-le-on sist): Fluid-filled sac arising from joint capsules or tendons; most common in the wrist.

Ganglion; *pl.* ganglia (GANG-le-on): Collection of nerve cell bodies in the peripheral nervous system.

Gangrene (gang-GREEN): Death of tissue associated with loss of blood supply.

Gastrectomy (gas-TREK-to-me): Removal or excision of the stomach.

Gastric (GAS-trik): Pertaining to the stomach.

Gastric cancer (GAS-trik KAN-ser): Malignant tumor of the stomach.

Gastroenteritis (gas-tro-en-teh-RI-tis): Inflammation of the stomach and intestines.

Gastroenterology (gas-tro-en-teh-ROL-o-je): Study of the stomach and intestines.

Gastroesophageal reflux disease: (gas-tro-eh-sof-ah-JE-al RE-flux dih-ZEEZ): Solids and fluids return to the mouth from the stomach; GERD.

Gastrointestinal drug (gas-tro-in-TEST-tih-nal drug): Drug that treats conditions of the stomach and intestinal tract.

Gastrointestinal endoscopy (gas-tro-in-TES-tih-nal en-DOS-ko-pe): Visual examination of the stomach and intestines (GI tract) using an endoscope; esophagogastroduodenoscopy, colonoscopy, and sigmoidoscopy.

Gastrointestinal tract (gas-tro-in-TES-tih-nal trakt): Series of organs that carry food from the mouth to the anus.

Gastrojejunostomy (gas-tro-jeh-ju-NOS-to-me): New surgical connection (anastomosis) between the stomach and the jejunum (second part of the small intestine).

Gastroparesis (gas-tro-par-E-sis): Loss of motility of the stomach muscles, occurring as a long– term secondary complication of diabetes mellitus.

Gastrorrhagia (gas-tro-RA-jah): Hemorrhage of blood (excessive bleeding) from the stomach.

Gastrostomy (gas-TROS-to-me): New opening of the stomach through the abdominal wall to the outside of the body.

Gastrotomy (gas-TROT-o-me): Incision of the stomach.

Generic name (jeh-NER-ik name): Legal, non-commercial name for a drug.

Genes (jeenz): Regions of DNA within each chromosome.

Genetic screening (jeh-NET-ik SCRE-ning): Family members are tested to determine whether they have inherited a cancer-causing gene.

Genitalia (jeh-nih-TA-le-ah): Reproductive organs (genitals).

Gestation (jes-TA-shun): Time period from fertilization of the ovum to birth; pregnancy.

Gigantism (JI-gan-tizm): Hypersecretion of growth hormone from the anterior pituitary gland before puberty, leading to abnormal overgrowth of body tissues.

Gingivectomy (gin-gih-VEK-to-me): Removal of gum disease.

Gingivitis (jin-jih-VIT-tis): Inflammation of gums.

Glans penis (glanz PE-nis): Sensitive tip of the penis.

Glaucoma (glaw-KO-mah): Increased intraocular pressure results in damage to the retina and optic nerve with loss of vision.

Glial cell (GLE-al sel): Supportive and connective nerve cell that does not carry nervous impulses. Examples are astrocytes, microglial cells, ependymal cells, and oligodendrocytes. Glial cells can reproduce themselves, as opposed to neurons.

Glioblastoma (gle-o-blah-STO-mah): Malignant brain tumor of immature glial cells.

Globulin (GLOB-u-lin): Plasma protein; alpha, beta, and gamma (immune) globulins are examples.

Glomerular capsule (glo-MER-u-lar KAP-sul): Cup-like structure that surrounds each glomerulus; collects the material that is filtered from the blood through the walls of the glomerulus.

Glomerulonephritis (glo-mer-u-lo-nef-RI-tis): Inflammation of glomeruli in the kidney.

Glomerulus; *pl.* glomeruli (glo-MER-u-lus; glo-MER-u-li): Tiny ball of capillaries (microscopic blood vessels) in the kidney. As blood flows through each glomerulus, waste materials and other substances are filtered from the bloodstream.

Glossectomy (glos-EK-to-me): Removal of the tongue.

Glottis (GLOT-is): Slit-like opening between the vocal cords of the larynx.

Glucagon (GLU-kah-gon): Hormone secreted by the pancreas (alpha islet cells); increases blood glucose (sugar) by conversion of glycogen to glucose.

Glucocorticoid (glu-ko-KOR-tih-koyd): Hormone from the adrenal cortex that raises blood sugar and reduces tissue inflammation.

Gluconeogenesis (glu-ko-ne-o-JEN-eh-sis): Process of producing new sugar from fats and proteins; occurs mainly in the liver.

Glucose (GLU-kohs): Simple sugar; necessary as a source of energy for body cells.

Glucose tolerance test (GLU-kohs TOL-er-ants test): Measures the glucose levels in a blood sample taken at various intervals from a patient who has previously ingested glucose.

Glycemic (gli-SE-mik): Pertaining to blood sugar.

Glycogen (GLI-ko-jen): Storage form of glucose (sugar); produces glucose when it is broken down (glycogenolysis) in liver cells.

Glycogenolysis (gli-ko-je-NOL-ih-sis): Breakdown of glycogen to release sugar.

Glycosuria (gli-kohs-U-re-ah): Sugar in the urine.

Goiter (GOY-ter): Enlargement of the thyroid gland.

Gonad (GO-nad): Female or male reproductive organ that produces sex cells and hormones.

Gonadotropin (go-nad-o-TRO-pin): Hormone secreted by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland and acting on the ovaries or testes.

Gonorrhea (gon-o-RE-ah): Sexually transmitted infection (STI) involving inflammation of genital tract mucosa, caused by infection with gonococci (berry-shaped bacteria).

Gouty arthritis (GOW-te ar-THRI-tis): Inflammation and painful swelling in and around joints caused by the deposition of uric acid crystals.

Grading of tumors (GRA-ding of TU-morz): Evaluating the microscopic appearance of tumor cells to determine their degree of malignant transformation.

Granulocyte (GRAN-u-lo-site): White blood cell with cytoplasmic granules; neutrophil, eosinophil, and basophil.

Granulocytopenia (gran-u-lo-si-to-PE-ne-ah): Deficiency of granulocytes.

Granulocytosis (gran-u-lo-si-TO-sis): Increased numbers of granulocytes in the blood.

Graves disease (GRAVZ dih-ZEEZ): Hyperfunctioning of the thyroid gland; thyrotoxicosis. This is the most common type of hyperthyroidism.

Gray (gra): Unit of absorbed radiation dose.

Group therapy (groop THER-ah-pe): Patients with similar problems gain insight into their personalities through discussion and interaction together.

Growth hormone (growth HOR-mone): Secreted by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland; somatotropin. It stimulates the growth of bones and soft tissues.

Gynecologist (gi-neh-KOL-o-jist): Specialist in the study of disorders of the female reproductive system.

Gynecology (gi-neh-KOL-o-je): Study of the disorders of the female reproductive system.

Gynecomastia (gi-neh-ko-MAS-te-ah): Female-like breast enlargement in a male.

Gyrus; *pl.* gyri (JI-rus; JI-re): Sheet of nerve cells that produces a rounded ridge on the surface of the cerebral cortex; convolution.

H

Hair follicle (hair FOL-ih-kul): Sac within which each hair grows.

Half-life (HAF-life): Time required for a radioactive substance to lose half its radioactivity by disintegration.

Hallucination (hah-lu-sih-NA-shun): False or unreal sensory perception; hearing voices and seeing things.

Hallucinogen (hah-LU-sih-no-jen): Substance that produces hallucinations.

Haversian canals (hah-VER-zhan kah-NALZ): Minute spaces filled with blood vessels; found in compact bone.

Heart block (hart blok): Abnormal heart rhythm where the heart beats too slowly (bradycardia) because of interruption of electrical signals.

Heart transplantation (hart tranz-plan-TA-shun): Donor heart is transferred to a recipient.

Helper T cell (HEL-per T sel): Lymphocyte that aids B cells and stimulates T cells; CD4+ T cell.

Hemarthrosis (hem-ar-THRO-sis): Condition of blood in a joint.

Hematemesis (he-mah-TEM-eh-sis): Vomiting blood.

Hematochezia (he-mah-to-KE-se-ah): Passage of bright red blood from the rectum.

Hematocrit (he-MAH-to-krit): Percentage of red blood cells in a given volume of blood.

Hematology (he-mah-TOL-o-je): Study of blood and blood disorders.

Hematoma (he-mah-TO-mah): Collection or mass of blood.

Hematopoiesis (he-mah-to-poy-E-sis): Formation of blood cells in bone marrow.

Hematopoietic stem cell (he-mah-to-poy-EH-tik stem sel): Cell in the bone marrow that gives rise to all types of blood cells.

Hematopoietic stem cell transplant (he-mah-to-poy-E-tik stem sel TRANS-plant): Peripheral stem cells found in the blood of a compatible donor are administered into the vein of a recipient.

Hematuria (hem-ah-TU-re-ah): Blood in the urine.

Hemianopsia (hem-e-an-OP-se-ah): Absence of vision for one half, right or left, of an individual's field of vision.

Hemiglossectomy (hem-e-glos-SEK-to-me): Removal (resection) of half the tongue.

Hemiparesis (hem-e-pah-RE-sis): Slight paralysis of the right or left half of the body.

Hemiplegia (hem-e-PLE-jah): Paralysis of the right or left half of the body.

Hemochromatosis (he-mo-kro-mah-TO-sis): Excessive deposits of iron throughout the body.

Hemodialysis (he-mo-di-AL-ih-sis): Removal of nitrogenous waste from the blood in patients whose kidneys have stopped functioning. Blood leaves the body and circulates through a machine that removes wastes before sending the blood back into the body through a vein.

Hemoglobin (HE-mo-glo-bin): Blood protein containing iron; carries oxygen in red blood cells.

Hemoglobin test (HE-mo-glo-bin test): Total amount of hemoglobin in a sample of blood.

Hemoglobinopathy (he-mo-glo-bin-OP-ah-the): Disease or defect of hemoglobin production. Sickle cell anemia is an example.

Hemolysis (he-MOL-ih-sis): Destruction of red blood cells.

Hemolytic anemia (he-mo-LIH-tik ah-NE-me-ah): Reduction in erythrocytes due to excessive destruction of red blood cells.

Hemolytic disease of the newborn (he-mo-LIH-tic dih-ZEEZ of the NU-born): Destruction of red blood cells in the newborn caused by a blood group (Rh factor) incompatibility between the mother and the fetus.

Hemophilia (he-mo-FIL-e-ah): Hereditary disease of blood clotting failure with abnormal bleeding. Affected individuals are lacking a blood clotting factor (VIII or IX).

Hemoptysis (he-MOP-tih-sis): Spitting up blood from the respiratory tract.

Hemorrhage (HEM-or-ij): Bursting forth or excessive flow of blood.

Hemorrhoids (HEM-uh-roydz): Swollen, twisted veins in the rectal and anal region.

Hemostasis (he-mo-STA-sis): Stoppage of bleeding or the flow of blood.

Hemothorax (he-mo-THO-rax): Blood in the chest (pleural cavity) surrounding the lungs.

Heparin (HEP-ah-rin): Anticoagulant found in blood and tissues.

Hepatitis (hep-ah-TI-tis): Inflammation of the liver.

Hepatocellular carcinoma (hep-at-o-SEL-u-lar kar-sih-NO-mah): Malignant tumor of the liver.

Hepatoma (hep-ah-TO-mah): Tumor (cancerous) of the liver; hepatocellular carcinoma.

Hepatomegaly (hep-ah-to-MEG-ah-le): Enlargement of the liver.

Herniation of a intervertebral disc (her-ne-A-shun of a in-ter-ver-TE-bral disc): Abnormal protrusion of an intervertebral disc into the spinal canal or spinal nerves.

Herniorrhaphy (her-ne-OR-ah-fe): Suture (stitching or sewing up) a hernia.

Herpes genitalis (HER-peez jen-ih-TAL-is): Sexually transmitted infection of the skin and genital mucosa, caused by herpes simplex virus; marked by blisters.

Herpes zoster (HER-peez ZOS-ter): Viral infection affecting peripheral nerves; chicken pox virus or its reactivation (shingles).

Herpetic stomatitis (her-PET-ik sto-mah-TI-tis): Inflammation of the mouth caused by infection with the herpesvirus.

Hiatal hernia (hi-A-tal HER-ne-ah): Protrusion of the upper portion of the stomach into the chest through the opening of the diaphragm.

Hida scan (HIH-dah scan): Radioactive imaging of the liver, gallbladder, and intestine.

Hilar (HI-lar): Pertaining to the hilum.

Hilum (HI-lum): Depression or hollow in the surface of an organ, such as the kidney and lung. It is the area where blood vessels and nerves enter and leave the organ.

Hilum of the lung (HI-lum of the lung): Midline region where the bronchi, blood vessels, and nerves enter and exit the lungs.

Hirsutism (HER-soot-izm): Excessive hair growth.

Histology (his-TOL-o-je): Study of tissues.

Histrionic Personality (his-tre-ON-ik per-son-AL-it-e): Highly emotional, immature, and dependent personality type with irrational outbursts, tantrums and flamboyant, and theatrical behavior.

HIV encephalopathy (HIV en-seh-fal-OP-ah-the): Disease of the brain (dementia) caused by infection with the human immunodeficiency virus (HIV).

Hodgkin lymphoma (HOJ-kin lim-FO-mah): Malignant tumor of lymphatic tissue in the spleen and lymph nodes.

Holter monitoring (HOL-ter MON-ih-teh-ring): Compact version of an electrocardiograph is worn during a extended period to detect cardiac arrhythmias.

Homeostasis (ho-me-o-STA-sis): Tendency in an organism to return to a state of constancy and stability.

Hordeolum (hor-DE-o-lum): Small, superficial white nodule along lid margin due to infection of a sebaceous gland; stye.

Hormonal (hor-MO-nal): Pertaining to a hormone.

Hormone (HOR-mone): Chemical secreted by an endocrine gland.

Human chorionic gonadotropin (HU-man ko-re-ON-ik go-nad-o-TRO-pin): Secreted by the placenta to sustain pregnancy.

Human immunodeficiency virus (HU-man im-u-no-deh-FISH-en-se VI-rus): Virus (retrovirus) that causes AIDS; HIV.

Human papillomavirus (HU-man pap-ih-LO-mah-vi-rus): Infection of the skin and mucous membranes in the anogenital region by the human papillomavirus; HPV.

Humeral (HU-mer-al): Pertaining to the humerus (upper arm bone).

Humerus (HU-mer-us): Upper arm bone.

Humoral immunity (HU-mer-al im-MU-nih-te): B cells produce antibodies after exposure to specific antigens; type of adaptive immunity.

Huntington disease (HUN-ting-ton dih-ZEEZ): Hereditary disorder affecting the cerebrum and involving abrupt, involuntary, jerking movements, and mental deterioration in later stages.

Hydrarthrosis (hi-drar-THRO-sis): Condition of water or fluid in a joint.

Hydrocele (HI-dro-seel): Hernia (sac of clear, watery fluid) within the scrotum.

Hydrocephalus (hi-dro-SEF-ah-lus): Abnormal accumulation of cerebrospinal fluid in the ventricles (canals) of the brain.

Hydrochloric acid (hi-dro-KLOR-ik AS-id): Substance (strong acid): produced in the stomach; aids digestion.

Hydronephrosis (hi-dro-nef-RO-sis): Abnormal condition of excess backup of fluid (urine) in the kidney.

Hydrotherapy (hi-dro-THER-ah-pe): Treatment using water; whirlpool baths.

Hymen (HI-men): Mucous membrane partially or completely covering the opening to the vagina.

Hypalgesia (hi-pal-GE-ze-ah): Diminished sensitivity to pain.

Hyperacusis (hi-per-ah-KU-sis): Excessive sensitivity to sounds.

Hyperbilirubinemia (hi-per-bil-e-ru-bin-E-me-ah): High levels of bilirubin (yellow/orange pigment) in the bloodstream; jaundice.

Hypercalcemia (hi-per-kal-SE-me-ah): High levels of calcium in blood.

Hypercalciuria (hi-per-kal-se-U-re-ah): High levels of calcium in urine.

Hypercapnia (hi-per-KAP-ne-ah): Increased levels of carbon dioxide in the bloodstream.

Hypercholesterolemia (hi-per-ko-les-ter-ol-E-me-ah): High levels of cholesterol in the blood.

Hyperesthesia (hi-per-es-THE-ze-ah): Excessive sensitivity or feeling; especially of the skin in response to touch or pain.

Hyperglycemia (hi-per-gli-SE-me-ah): High levels of sugar in the bloodstream; associated with diabetes mellitus.

Hyperinsulinism (hi-per-IN-su-lin-izm): Increased secretion of insulin from the beta islet cells of the pancreas.

Hyperkalemia (hi-per-ka-LE-me-ah): Condition of high concentration of potassium in blood.

Hyperkinesis (hi-per-kih-NE-sis): Excessive movement.

Hypernatremia (hi-per-na-TRE-me-ah): Abnormally high levels of sodium in the bloodstream.

Hyperopia (hi-per-O-pe-ah): Farsightedness; vision condition in which distant objects are seen more clearly than objects that are near.

Hyperparathyroidism (hi-per-par-ah-THI-royd-izm): Increased secretion of parathormone from the parathyroid glands.

Hyperplasia (hi-per-PLA-ze-ah): Condition of increased formation of cells.

Hyperpnea (hi-PERP-ne-ah): Increase in breathing rate.

Hypersplenism (hi-per-SPLEN-iz-m): Syndrome of spleen enlargement (splenomegaly) and destruction of red blood cells (hemolysis).

Hypertension (hi-per-TEN-shun): High blood pressure.

Hypertensive heart disease (hi-per-TEN-siv hart dih-ZEEZ): High blood pressure affecting the heart.

Hypertensive retinopathy (hi-per-TEN-siv reh-tih-NOP-ah-the): Disease of the retina due to high blood pressure.

Hyperthyroidism (hi-per-THI-royd-izm): Condition of increased secretion of thyroid gland hormones.

Hypertrichosis (hi-per-trih-KO-sis): Abnormal condition of excessive hair growth.

Hypertrophy (hi-PER-tro-fe): Increase in size of tissue or an organ due to increase in size of individual cells.

Hyperuricemia (hi-per-u-reh-SE-me-ah): Increase in uric acid in the blood.

Hypnosis (hip-NO-sis): Induction of a trance-like state of consciousness in a patient to increase the pace of psychotherapy.

Hypnotic (hip-NOT-ik): Drug that promotes sleep or a trance-like state (hypnosis).

Hypocalcemia (hi-po-kal-SE-me-ah): Low levels of calcium in blood.

Hypochondriac regions (hi-po-KON-dre-ak RE-jens): Right and left upper abdominopelvic regions (beneath the ribs).

Hypochromic (hi-po-KRO-mik): Pertaining to deficiency in color; decrease in hemoglobin in red blood cells.

Hypodermic (hi-po-DER-mik): Pertaining to under the skin.

Hypodermic injection (hi-po-DER-mik in-JEK-shun): Injection of medication under the skin.

Hypogastric (hi-po-GAS-trik): Pertaining to below the stomach.

Hypogastric region (hi-po-GAS-trik RE-jen): Middle lower abdominopelvic region (below the umbilical region).

Hypoglossal (hi-po-GLOS-al): Pertaining to under the tongue.

Hypoglycemia (hi-po-gli-SE-me-ah): Low/deficient levels of sugar in blood.

Hypogonadism (hi-po-GO-nad-iz-im): Deficient functioning of the gonads (ovaries or testes).

Hypoinsulinism (hi-po-IN-su-lin-iz-im): Deficient production of insulin (pancreatic hormone).

Hypokalemia (hi-po-ka-LE-me-ah): Low levels of potassium in blood.

Hypomania (hi-po-MA-ne-ah): Elevated excitement that is of lesser intensity than mania.

Hyponatremia (hi-po-na-TRE-me-ah): Low levels of sodium in blood.

Hypoparathyroidism (hi-po-par-ah-THI-royd-iz-im): Decreased secretion of parathormone from the parathyroid glands.

Hypophysectomy (hi-pof-ih-SEK-to-me): Removal of the pituitary gland.

Hypophysis (hi-POF-ih-sis): Pituitary gland.

Hypopituitarism (hi-po-pih-TU-it-ar-izm): Deficient secretion of hormones from the pituitary gland.

Hypospadias (hi-po-SPA-de-as): Congenital anomaly in which the opening of the urethra is on the underside of the penis.

Hypothalamus (hi-po-THAL-ah-mus): Region of the brain lying below the thalamus, but above the pituitary gland. It stimulates the pituitary gland to secrete and release hormones.

Hypothyroidism (hi-po-THI-royd-izm): Decreased secretion of hormones from the thyroid gland.

Hypoxia (hi-POX-e-ah): Deficiency of oxygen in tissues.

Hysterectomy (his-ter-EK-to-me): Removal of the uterus.

Hysterosalpingogram (his-ter-o-sal-PING-go-gram): X-ray imaging record of the uterus and fallopian tubes

Hysterosalpingography (his-ter-o-sal-ping-OG-rah-fe): X-ray imaging of the uterus and fallopian tubes after injection of contrast material.

Hysteroscopy (his-ter-OS-ko-pe): Visual examination (endoscopic) of the uterus.

Hysterosonogram (his-ter-o-SON-o-gram): Ultrasound imaging of the uterus.

I

Iatrogenic (i-ah-tro-JEN-ik): Pertaining to produced by a treatment or a procedure.

Ichthyosis (ik-the-O-sis): Hereditary condition in which the skin resembles fish scales and is dry, rough, and scaly.

Ictal event (IK-tal e-VENT): Pertaining to a sudden, acute onset, as the convulsion of an epileptic seizure.

Icterus (IK-ter-us): Jaundice; yellow-orange coloration of the skin and whites of the eyes caused by high levels of bilirubin in the blood.

Id (id): Major unconscious part of the personality; instinctual drives and desires.

Identical twins (i-DEN-tih-kal): Two infants resulting from division of one fertilized egg.

Idiopathic (id-e-o-PATH-ik): Pertaining to unknown cause of disease.

Idiosyncrasy (id-e-o-SIN-krah-se): Unexpected effect produced in a particularly sensitive individual, but not seen in most patients.

Idiosyncratic reaction (id-e-o-sin-KRAH-tik re-AK-shun): Unexpected effect produced in a particularly sensitive patient but not seen in most people.

Ileitis (il-e-I-tis): Inflammation of the ileum (third part of the small intestine).

Ileocecal sphincter (il-e-o-SE-kal SFINK-ter): Ring of muscles between the ileum and cecum (first part of the large intestine).

Ileostomy (il-e-OS-to-me): New opening of the ileum to the outside of the body.

Ileum (IL-e-UM): Third part of the small intestine.

Ileus (IL-e-us): Loss of peristalsis with resulting obstruction of the intestines.

Iliac (IL-e-ak): Pertaining to the ilium; right or left upper most portion of the hip bone.

Ilium (IL-e-um): Upper and largest portion of the hip bone.

Immune reaction (im-MEWN re-AK-shun): Response of the immune system to foreign invasion.

Immunity (ih-MU-nih-te): The body's capability to resist foreign organisms and toxins that can damage tissue and organs.

Immunoelectrophoresis (ih-mu-no-e-lek-tro-phor-E-sis): Laboratory test that separates immunoglobulins (IgG, IgM, IgD, IgE, and IgA).

Immunoglobulin (im-u-no-GLOB-u-lin): Protein (globulin) with antibody activity; examples are IgG, IgM, IgA, IgE, IgD.

Immunohistochemistry (im-u-no-his-to-KEM-is-tre): Localizing antigens or proteins in tissues using labeled (colored or fluorescent) antibodies.

Immunosuppression (im-u-no-su-PREH-shun): Blocking or turning off the normal immune response.

Immunotherapy (im-u-no-THER-ah-pe): Cancer treatment using immune cells and antibodies to kill tumor cells; CAR T-cell therapy and checkpoint inhibitors are examples.

Impetigo (im-peh-TI-go): Bacterial inflammatory skin disease characterized by vesicles, pustules, and crusted-over lesions.

Implantable cardioverter defibrillator (im-PLANT-ah-bul kar-de-o-VER-ter de-FIB-rih-la-tor): Small electric device implanted inside

the chest (near the collarbone) to sense arrhythmias and terminate them to restore normal sinus rhythm; ICD.

Impotence (IM-peh-tents): Inability of an adult male to achieve an erection; erectile dysfunction.

In vitro (in VE-tro): Process, test, or procedure performed, measured, or observed outside a living organism.

In vitro fertilization (in VE-tro fer-til-ih-ZA-shun): Egg and sperm cells are combined outside the body in a laboratory dish (in vitro) to facilitate fertilization.

In vivo (in VE-vo): Process, test, or procedure performed, measured, or observed within a living organism.

Incision (in-SIZH-un): Process of cutting into the body.

Incisional biopsy (in-SIZH-un-al BI-op-se): Piece of tumor is removed for examination to establish a diagnosis.

Incisor (in-SI-zor): One of the four front teeth on either jaw.

Incus (ING-kus): Small, anvil-shaped bone (ossicle) in the middle ear; second ossicle.

Infant respiratory distress syndrome (IN-fant RESP-ir-ah-tory dis-TRES SIN-drohm): Acute lung disease commonly seen in the premature newborn.

Infarction (in-FARK-shun): Area of dead tissue.

Inferior (in-FE-re-or): Below another structure; pertaining to the tail or lower portion of the body.

Infertility (in-fer-til-ih-te): Any problem that lowers the chances of a women becoming pregnant.

Infiltrate (IN-fil-trayt): Collection of fluid or other material within the lung, as seen on a chest film, CT scan, or other radiologic image.

Infiltrative (IN-fil-tra-tiv): Extending beyond normal tissue boundaries.

Inflammatory bowel disease (in-FLAM-ah-tor-e BOW-el dih-ZEEZ): Inflammation of the colon and small intestine; Crohn disease and ulcerative colitis.

Infracostal (in-frah-KOS-tal): Pertaining to below the ribs.

Inframammary (in-frah-MAM-ar-e): Pertaining to below the breast.

Infrapatellar (in-frah-pah-TEL-er): Pertaining to below the patella (kneecap).

Inguinal (ING-win-al): Pertaining to the groin.

Inguinal hernia (ING-win-al HER-ne-ah): Small loop of the bowel protrudes through a weakened lower abdominal muscle.

Inguinal nodes (IN-gwih-nal node): Lymph nodes in the groin region.

Inguinal regions (ING-win-al RE-jens): Right and left lower abdominopelvic regions (near the groin).

Inhalation (in-hah-LA-shun): Act of breathing in; inspiration. Also administration of drugs in gaseous or vapor form through the nose or mouth.

Insight-oriented therapy (IN-site OR-e-en-ted THER-ah-pe): Face-to-face discussion of life problems and feelings to increase understanding of thoughts and behavior patterns; psychodynamic therapy.

Insomniac (in-SOM-ne-ak): Pertaining to without sleep; an insomniac is a person who cannot sleep.

Inspiration (in-spih-RA-shun): Act of breathing in; inhalation.

Insulin (IN-su-lin): Hormone secreted by the endocrine cells of the pancreas. It transports sugar from the blood into cells.

Integumentary system (in-teg-u-MEN-tair-e SIS-tem): Skin and its accessory organs such as hair and nails.

Intercostal (in-ter-KOS-tal): Pertaining to between the ribs.

Interferons (in-ter-FE-ronz): Proteins (cytokines) secreted by T cells and other cells to aid and regulate the immune response.

Interleukins (in-ter-LU-kinz): Proteins (cytokines) that stimulate the growth of B and T lymphocytes.

Interstitial cells of the testes (in-ter-STIH-shul selz of the TES-tis): Cells that lie between the seminiferous tubules and produce testosterone.

Interstitial fluid (in-ter-STIH-shul FLU-id): Fluid in the spaces between cells. This fluid becomes lymph when it enters lymph capillaries.

Interstitial nephritis (in-ter-STIH-shul neh-FRI-tis): Inflammation of the connective tissue that lies between the renal tubules in the kidney.

Interventional radiology (in-ter-VEN-shun-al ra-de-OL-o-je): Therapeutic procedures performed by a radiologist.

Interventricular septum (in-ter-ven-TRIK-u-lar SEP-tum): Wall between the ventricles of the heart.

Intervertebral (in-ter-ver-TE-bral): Pertaining to between the vertebrae (backbones).

Intraocular (in-trah-OK-u-lar): Pertaining to within the eye.

Intrathecal (in-trah-THE-kal): Pertaining to within the membranes (meninges) surrounding the brain and spinal cord.

Intrathecal injection (in-trah-THE-kal in-JEK-shun): Delivery of chemicals within the membranes (meninges) surrounding the brain and spinal cord.

Intrauterine device (in-trah-U-ter-in de-VISE): Device inserted by a physician into the uterus to prevent pregnancy; IUD.

Intravenous (in-trah-VE-nus): Pertaining to within a vein.

Intravesical (in-trah-VES-ih-kal): Within the urinary bladder.

Intravitreal (in-trah-VIT-re-al): Pertaining to within the vitreous humor.

Intrinsic factor (in-TRIN-sik FAK-tor): Substance normally found in gastric (stomach) juice that helps absorption of vitamin B12 into the bloodstream.

Intussusception (in-tus-sus-SEP-shun): Telescoping of the intestines.

Invasive (in-VA-siv): Having the ability to enter and destroy surrounding tissue.

Inversion (in-VER-zhun): Turning inward.

Involution (in-vo-LU-shun): Shrinking of the uterus (womb) to its normal size after childbirth.

Ionization (i-on-ih-ZA-shun): Transformation of electrically neutral substances into electrically charged particles.

Iridectomy (ir-ih-DEK-to-me): Removal of a portion of the iris.

Iridic (ir-RID-ik): Pertaining to the iris.

Iris (I-ris): Pigmented (colored) layer of the eye.

Iritis (i-RI-tis): Inflammation of the iris of the eye.

Irradiation (ir-ra-de-A-shun): Exposure to any form of radiant energy such as light, heat or x-rays.

Irritable bowel syndrome (IR-it-ah-bel BOW-el SIN-drohm): Group of gastrointestinal symptoms (abdominal pain, diarrhea, constipation, and bloating), but without structural abnormalities in the intestines.

Ischemia (is-KE-me-ah): Condition of holding back blood from an organ or tissue.

Ischial (ISH-e-al): Pertaining to the ischium (posterior portion of the hip bone).

Ischium (ISH-e-um): Posterior (back) portion of the hip bone.

J

Jaundice (JAWN-dis): Yellow-orange coloration of the skin and whites of the eyes caused by high levels of bilirubin in the blood; icterus.

Jejunum (je-JU-num): Second part of the small intestine.

K

Kaposi sarcoma (KAH-po-se sar-KO-mah): Malignant tumor of skin and connective tissue; associated with AIDS.

Karyotype (KAR-e-o-type): Picture (classification) of chromosomes in the nucleus of a cell.

Keloid (KE-loyd): Enlarged scar on the skin.

Keratin (KER-ah-tin): Hard protein found in epidermis, hair, and nails.

Keratitis (ker-ah-TI-tis): Inflammation of the cornea of the eye.

Keratoplasty (ker-ah-to-PLAS-te): Surgical repair of the cornea of the eye; corneal transplant.

Keratosis (ker-ah-TO-sis): Excessive development of hard, keratinized tissue on the skin associated with aging or skin damage.

Ketoacidosis (ke-to-ah-sih-DO-sis): Fats are improperly burned, leading to an accumulation of ketones and acids in the body.

Ketonuria (ke-to-NU-re-ah): Presence of ketones in the urine. Common in uncontrolled diabetes mellitus, but can occur in any time the body begins to break down fatty tissue to provide energy as in starvation.

Ketosis (ke-TO-sis): Accumulation of large quantities of ketone bodies (acetones) in the blood; ketoacidosis.

Kidney (KID-ne): One of two bean-shaped organs behind the abdominal cavity on either side of the backbone in the lumbar region.

Kleptomania (klep-to-MA-ne-ah): Strong impulse to steal, often with little actual desire for the stolen item.

KUB (K-U-B): X-ray examination (without contrast) of the kidneys, ureters, and bladder.

Kyphosis (ki-FO-sis): Abnormal condition of outward curvature (convexity) of the thoracic spine; humpback.

L

Labia (LA-be-ah): Lips of the vagina.

Labial (LA-be-al): Pertaining to the lip.

Labile (LA-bile): Unstable; undergoing rapid emotional change.

Labiodental (la-be-o-DEN-tal): Pertaining to lips and teeth.

Labyrinth (LAB-ih-rinth): Maze-like series of canals of the inner ear; cochlea, vestibule, and semicircular canals.

Lacrimal (LAK-rih-mal): Pertaining to tears.

Lacrimal bones (LA-krim-al bones): Two small facial bones that contain tear glands and canals for the passage of tear ducts.

Lacrimation (lah-krih-MA-shun): Production of tears.

Lactation (lak-TA-shun): Production of milk.

Lactiferous ducts (lak-TIF-er-us dukts): Tubes that carry milk from the mammary glands to the nipple.

Lamina (LAM-in-ah): One of two posterior (back) arches of a vertebra.

Laminectomy (lam-in-EK-to-me): Surgical removal of a portion of the vertebral arch (lamina) to relieve pressure on a protruding intervertebral disc.

Laparoscope (LAP-ah-ro-skope): Instrument used to visually examine the abdomen using small incisions and with the aid of a camera.

Laparoscopy (lap-ah-ROS-ko-pe): Process of visually examining the abdomen using an endoscope (laparoscope); minimally invasive

surgery.

Laparotomy (lap-ah-ROT-o-me): Incision (large) of the abdomen for diagnosis and treatment. This is exploratory or open surgery.

Laryngeal (lah-rin-JE-al): Pertaining to the larynx (voice box).

Laryngectomy (lah-rin-JEK-to-me): Removal of the larynx or voice box.

Laryngitis (lah-rin-JI-tis): Inflammation of the larynx (voice box).

Laryngoscopy (lah-rin-GOS-ko-pe): Endoscopic visual examination of the larynx.

Laryngospasm (lah-RING-go-spaz-im): Involuntary contraction of muscles surrounding the voice box.

Larynx (LAR-inks): Voice box; located above the trachea (windpipe).

Laser photocoagulation (LA-zer fo-to-ko-ag-u-LA-shun): Intense, precisely focused light beam (argon laser) creates an inflammatory reaction that seals retinal tears and leaky retinal blood vessels.

Lateral (LAT-er-al): Pertaining to the side.

Laxative (LAK-sah-tiv): Weak cathartic; promotes movement of feces through the colon.

Left ventricular assist device (left ven-TRIH-ku-lar ah-SIST de-vise): Booster pump implanted in the abdomen with a tube inserted into the left ventricle. An LVAD is a "bridge to transplant" or destination therapy when heart transplantation is impossible.

Leiomyoma (li-o-mi-O-mah): Benign tumor of smooth, involuntary muscle; when in the uterus, called a fibroid.

Leiomyosarcoma (li-o-mi-o-sar-KO-mah): Malignant tumor of smooth (involuntary) muscle.

Lens (lenz): Transparent, biconvex body behind the pupil of the eye. It bends (refracts) light rays to bring them into focus on the retina.

Leptomeningitis (lep-to-men-in-JI-tis): Inflammation of the two thinner membranes (arachnoid and pia mater) surrounding the brain and spinal cord.

Leukapheresis (lu-kah-feh-RE-sis): Mechanical separation of white blood cells from the rest of the blood.

Leukemia (lu-KE-me-ah): Blood condition of high numbers of malignant (cancerous) white blood cells.

Leukocyte (LU-ko-site): White blood cell.

Leukocytosis (lu-ko-si-TO-sis): Condition of slight increase in normal white blood cells; often the result of inflammation or infection.

Leukopenia (lu-ko-PE-ne-ah): Deficiency of white blood cells.

Leukoplakia (lu-ko-PLA-ke-ah): White plaques on mucous membranes and surfaces of the body.

Leukorrhea (lu-ko-RE-ah): White to yellow discharge from the vagina.

Ligament (LIG-ah-ment): Fibrous, connective bands binding bones to other bones; supports, strengthens, and stabilizes the joint.

Ligamentous (lig-ah-MEN-tus): Pertaining to a ligament.

Ligation (li-GA-shun): Tying off a tube or blood vessel.

Linear accelerator (LIN-e-ar ak-SEL-eh-ra-tor): Device that produces high-energy x-ray (photon) beams for treatment of deep-seated tumors.

Lipase (LI-payz): Pancreatic enzyme necessary to digest fats.

Lipid Tests (LIH-pid tests): Measurement of cholesterol and triglycerides (fats) in a sample of blood.

Lipoma (li-PO-mah): Benign tumor of fatty tissue.

Lipoprotein electrophoresis (li-po-PRO-teen e-lek-tro-for-E-sis): Lipoproteins (combinations of fat and protein) are physically separated in a blood sample. Examples of lipoproteins are HDL (high density lipoprotein) and LDL (low density lipoprotein).

Liposuction (li-po-SUK-shun): Removal of adipose (fatty) tissue with a suction pump device.

Liquid biopsy (LIK-wid BI-op-se): Test done on a sample of blood to look for cancer cells, or pieces of DNA from tumor cells.

Lithium (LITH-e-um): Drug used to treat the manic episodes in bipolar disorder.

Lithogenesis (lith-o-JEN-eh-sis): Formation of stones (calculi).

Lithotripsy (LITH-o-trip-se): Process of using high-energy sound waves to crush a stone within the kidney or ureter.

Liver (LIV-er): Large, reddish-brown organ in the right upper quadrant (RUQ) of the abdomen.

Liver biopsy (LIV-er bi-OP-se): Removal of liver tissue followed by microscopic examination.

Liver function tests (LIV-er FUNK-shun tests): Tests for the presence of liver enzymes and bilirubin in blood or serum (clear

fluid that remains after blood has clotted).

Lobectomy (lo-BEK-to-me): Removal of a lobe or section of a lung.

Lordosis (lor-DO-sis): Anterior (forward) curvature of the lumbar spinal column. In its extreme form it is known as "swayback."

Lower esophageal sphincter (LO-er eh-sof-ah-JE-al SFINK-ter): Ring of muscles between the esophagus and the stomach.

Lower gastrointestinal series (LO-er gas-tro-in-TES-tin-al SE-reez): X-ray images of the colon and rectum obtained after injection of barium into the rectum; barium enema

Lumbar puncture (LUM-bar PUNK-shur): Withdrawal of cerebrospinal fluid from the subarachnoid space between two lumbar vertebrae; spinal tap.

Lumbar regions (LUM-bar RE-jens): Right and left middle abdominopelvic regions near the waist.

Lumbar spine (LUM-bar spine): Pertaining the lower back

Lumbar vertebrae (LUM-bar VER-teh-bray): Five Backbones in the region of the waist.

Lumbosacral (lum-bo-SA-kral): Pertaining to the lumbar and sacral regions of the back.

Lung biopsy (lung BI-op-se): Surgical removal of lung tissue followed by microscopic examination of cells.

Lung cancer (lung KAN-ser): Malignant tumor arising from the lungs and bronchial tubes.

Lunula (LU-nu-lah): Half-moon–shaped, whitish area at the base of a nail.

Luteinizing Hormone (LU-teh-ni-zing HOR-mone): Secreted by the pituitary gland (anterior lobe); stimulates ovulation in females and testosterone secretion in males.

Lyme Disease (lime dih-ZEEZ): Chronic, recurrent disorder marked by severe arthritis, myalgia, and malaise; cause is a bacterium carried by a tick.

Lymph (limf): Thin, watery fluid that circulates within lymph vessels and lymph nodes.

Lymph capillaries (limf KAP-il-ar-eez): Tiniest lymphatic vessels.

Lymph node (limf node): Collection of stationary solid lymphatic tissue along lymph vessels.

Lymph vessel (limf VES-el): Carrier of lymph throughout the body; lymphatic vessels empty lymph into veins in the upper part of the chest.

Lymphadenitis (limf-ah-deh-NI-tis): Inflammation of lymph nodes.

Lymphadenopathy (limf-ah-deh-NOP-ah-the): Disease of lymph nodes.

Lymphedema (limf-eh-DE-mah): Abnormal collection of fluid in tissue spaces caused by obstruction of lymph vessels and backflow of lymph.

Lymphocyte (LIMF-o-site): Type of white blood cell (leukocyte) found in lymph nodes and blood; part of the immune system that fights disease.

Lymphocytopenia (limf-o-si-to-PE-ne-ah): Deficiency of lymphocytes.

Lymphocytosis (limf-o-si-TO-sis): Increase in numbers of lymphocytes in the blood.

Lymphoid (LIMF-oyd): Gives rise to lymphocytes or to tissue in which lymphocytes develop.

Lymphoid organs (LIMF-oyd OR-ganz): Organs containing and derived from lymphatic tissue; spleen, thymus gland, and lymph nodes.

Lymphoma (limf-O-mah): Malignant tumor of lymph nodes and lymphatic tissue.

Lymphopoiesis (limf-o-poy-E-sis): Formation of lymphocytes.

Lymphoscintigraphy (lim-fo-sin-TIG-rah-fe): Nuclear medicine imaging which provides pictures (scintigrams): of the lymphatic system.

M

Macrocephaly (mak-ro-SEH-fah-le): Condition of a larger than normal head; congenital anomaly.

Macrocytosis (mak-ro-si-TO-sis): Presence of large red blood cells in the blood.

Macrophage (MAK-ro-fayg): Large phagocytic cell migrating from the blood into all tissues to fight disease.

Macrotia (mak-RO-she-ah): Abnormally large ears.

Macula (MAK-u-lah): Small oval region on the retina near the optic disc; contains the fovea centralis, which is the area clearest vision.

Macular degeneration (MAK-u-lar de-jen-eh-RA-shun): Progressive damage to the macula of the retina and resulting in loss of central vision.

Macule (MAK-ul): Flat, pigmented lesion on the skin measuring less than 1 cm in diameter; freckles, tattoo marks, and flat moles are examples.

Magnetic resonance imaging (mag-NET-ik REH-zo-nants IM-aj-ing): Magnetic waves and radio waves produce images of organs and tissues in all three planes of the body; MRI.

Malaise (mal-AYZ): General feeling of bodily discomfort.

Malignant (mah-LIG-nant): Cancerous; harmful.

Malignant melanoma (mah-LIG-nant mel-ah-NO-mah): Cancerous skin growth composed of melanocytes.

Malignant tumor (mah-LIG-nant TU-mor): Cancerous tumor.

Malleolar (mah-LE-o-lar): Pertaining to a malleolus.

Malleolus (mah-LE-o-lus): Round process on both sides of the ankle joint.

Malleus (MAH-le-us): Hammer-shaped, small bone (ossicle) in the middle ear; first ossicle.

Mammary papilla (MAM-ar-e pap-IL-ah): Nipple of the breast.

Mammogram (MAM-o-gram): Record (x-ray) of the breast.

Mammography (mah-MOG-rah-fe): X-ray recording of the breast.

Mammoplasty (MAM-o-plast-e): Surgical repair of the breast (augmentation or reduction surgery).

Mandible (MAN-dib-ul): Lower jaw bone.

Mandibular (man-DIB-u-lar): Pertaining to the lower jaw bone.

Mania (MA-ne-ah): State of excessive excitability, hyperactive elation and agitation.

Manubrium (mah-NU-bre-um): Upper portion of the sternum (breastbone).

Mastectomy (mas-TEK-to-me): Removal (excision) of a breast.

Mastication (mas-tih-KA-shun): Chewing.

Mastitis (mas-TI-tis): Inflammation of a breast.

Mastoid process (MAS-toyd PROS-es): Rounded projection on the temporal bone behind the ear.

Mastoiditis (mas-toy-DI-tis): Inflammation and infection of the mastoid process just behind the ear.

Maxilla (max-SIL-ah): Upper jaw bone.

Maxillary (max-ih-LAIR-e): Pertaining to the upper jaw bones.

Meatal stenosis (me-A-tal sten-O-sis): Narrowing of the meatus (opening) leading from the urethra to the outside of the body.

Meatus (me-A-tus): Opening or canal.

Meconium aspiration syndrome (me-KO-ne-um as-pih-RA-shun SIN-drohm): Abnormal inhalation of meconium produced by a fetus or newborn.

Medial (ME-de-al): Pertaining to the middle or near the medial plane of the body.

Mediastinal nodes (me-de-ah-STI-nal nodes): Lymph nodes in the mediastinum (central area between the lungs in the chest).

Mediastinoscopy (me-de-ah-sti-NOS-ko-pe): Endoscopic visual examination of the mediastinum.

Mediastinum (me-de-ah-STI-num): Centrally located space outside of and between the lungs in the thoracic cavity.

Medicinal chemistry (med-IS-sin-al KEM-is-tre): Study of new drug synthesis and the relationship between the chemical structure of a drug and its biologic effect.

Medulla (meh-DUL-ah): Inner region of an organ.

Medulla oblongata (meh-DUL-ah ob-lon-GAH-tah): Lower part of the brain, closest to the spinal cord; controls breathing heartbeat, and size of blood vessels.

Medullary (MED-u-lair-e): Pertaining to the medulla (inner region) of an organ.

Medullary cavity (MED-u-lair-e KAV-ih-te): Central, hollowed-out area in the shaft of a long bone.

Medullary tumor (MED-u-lair-e TU-mor): Large, fleshy tumor.

Megakaryocyte (meg-ah-KAR-e-o-site): Large, giant cell with a big nucleus; platelet precursor found in the bone marrow.

Melanin (MEL-ah-nin): Skin pigment. It is formed by melanocytes in the epidermis.

Melanocyte (meh-LAN-o-site): Cell in the basal layer of the epidermis that produces melanin.

Melanoma (mah-LIG-nant mel-ah-NO-mah): Cancerous skin growth composed of melanocytes.

Melena (MEL-en-ah): Black, tarry stools; feces containing blood.

Menarche (meh-NAR-ke): Beginning of the first menstrual period.

Meniere disease (men-e-AIR dih-ZEEZ): Disorder of the labyrinth of the inner ear; elevated endolymph pressure within the cochlea (cochlear hydrops) and semicircular canals (vestibular hydrops).

Meningeal (meh-NIN-je-al): Pertaining to the meninges.

Meninges (meh-NIN-jeez): Three membranes surrounding and protecting the brain and spinal cord.

Meningioma (meh-nin-je-O-mah): Tumor (benign) of the meninges.

Meningitis (men-in-JI-tis): Inflammation of the meninges.

Meningocele (meh-NIN-jo-seel): Hernia of the meninges through a defect or space between vertebrae; a form of spina bifida.

Meniscus (meh-NIS-kus): Crescent-shaped fibrocartilaginous structure which provides cushion for a joint (such as the knee).

Menometrorrhagia (men-o-met-ro-RA-jah): Excessive uterine bleeding during menstruation and also between menstrual periods.

Menopause (MEN-o-pawz): Gradual ending of menstruation.

Menorrhagia (men-o-RA-jah): Abnormally heavy or long menstrual periods.

Menorrhea (men-o-RE-ah): Menstruation; monthly discharge of blood from the lining of the uterus.

Menstruation (men-stru-A-shun): Monthly shedding of the lining of the uterus; menses.

Mental (MEN-tal): Pertaining to the mind.

Mesenchymal (mez-en-KI-mal): Pertaining to embryonic connective tissue from which all connective tissues arise. Sarcomas are

tumors of connective tissues that arise originally from mesenchymal cells.

Mesenteric nodes (mez-en-TER-ik nodes): Lymph nodes in the mesentery (intestinal region).

Mesentery (MES-en-ter-e): Membrane that attaches the intestines to the abdominal wall and holds them in place.

Mesothelioma (mez-o-the-le-O-mah): Rare malignant tumor arising in the pleura and associated with asbestos exposure.

Metabolism (meh-TAB-o-lism): Total of the chemical processes in a cell. It includes catabolism and anabolism.

Metacarpal bones (met-ah-KAR-pal bones): Hand bones; literally beyond the wrist.

Metacarpals (met-ah-KAR-palz): Hand bones.

Metacarpectomy (met-ah-kar-PEK-to-me): Removal of hand bones.

Metamorphosis (met-ah-MOR-fuh-sis): Condition of change of shape or form.

Metaphysis (meh-TAH-fih-sis): Flared portion of a long bone, between the diaphysis (shaft) of the bone and the epiphyseal plate at the end of the bone.

Metastasis (meh-TAS-tah-sis): Spread of a malignant tumor beyond its original location to a distant site.

Metatarsalgia (met-ah-tar-SAL-jah): Foot pain.

Metatarsals (met-ah-TAR-salz): Foot bones.

Metrorrhagia (met-ro-RA-jah): Bleeding at irregular intervals; between expected menstrual periods.

Microcephaly (mi-kro-CEF-al-e): Condition of smaller than normal head; a congenital anomaly.

Microcytosis (mi-kro-si-TO-sis): Increased numbers of smaller than normal red blood cells.

Microglial cell (mi-kro-GLE-al sel): Phagocytic glial cell that removes waste products from the central nervous system.

Microscope (MI-kro-skope): Instrument to view small objects.

Midbrain (MID-brayn): Uppermost portion of the brainstem.

Migraine (MI-grane): Severe headache, often unilateral, and sometimes accompanied by nausea and vomiting.

Mineralocorticoid (min-er-al-o-KOR-tih-koyd): Hormone secreted by the adrenal cortex; regulates salts (electrolytes) and water balance in the body. Aldosterone is an example.

Miosis (mi-O-sis): Contraction of the pupil of the eye.

Miotic (mi-OT-ik): Drug that causes the pupil of the eye to contract.

Mitochondria (mi-to-KON-dre-ah): Rod-shaped structures in the cytoplasm of the cell that provide principal source of energy; catabolism occurs in mitochondria.

Mitosis (mi-TO-sis): Cell division or replication of cells; creation of two identical daughter cells from a parent cell.

Mitral stenosis (MI-tral steh-NO-sis): Narrowing of the mitral valve.

Mitral valve (MI-tral valv): Valve between the left atrium and left ventricle of the heart; bicuspid valve.

Mitral valve prolapse (MI-tral valv PRO-laps): Abnormal closure of the mitral valve so that blood refluxes backward into the left

atrium during ventricular contraction.

Mitral valvulitis (MI-tral val-vu-LI-tis): Inflammation of the mitral valve.

Mixed tissue tumors (MIKSD TIH-shu TU-morz): Tumors composed of different types of tissue (epithelial as well as connective tissues).

Modality (mo-DAL-ih-te): Method of treatment.

Mohs surgery (mohz SUR-jer-e): Thin layers of malignant tissue are removed, and each slice is examined microscopically to check for adequate extent of the resection.

Molar teeth (MO-lar teeth): Three large flat teeth at the back of the mouth on either side of the dental arch.

Molecular pharmacology (mo-LEK-u-lar far-mah-KOL-o-je): Study of the interaction of drugs and their target molecules, enzymes, or cell surface receptors.

Molecularly targeted therapy (mo-LEK-u-lar-le TAR-get-ed THER-ah-pe): Anticancer drugs designed to block the function of growth factors, their receptors, and signaling pathways in specific tumor cells.

Monoblast (MON-o-blast): Immature monocyte.

Monoclonal antibody (mon-o-CLO-nal AN-tih-bod-e): Antibody created in a laboratory by special reproductive (cloning) techniques; designed to attack specific cancer cells. It is useful in immunotherapy.

Monocyte (MON-o-site): White blood cell with one large nucleus; capable of engulfing foreign material and debris (phagocytosis).

Monocytes become macrophages as they leave the blood and enter body tissues.

Mononuclear (mon-o-NU-kle-ar): Pertaining to a white blood cell with a single round nucleus; monocyte or lymphocyte.

Mononucleosis (mon-o-nu-kle-O-sis): Infectious, viral disease marked by increased numbers of leukocytes and enlarged cervical lymph nodes.

Morbidity (mor-BID-ih-te): Damage to normal tissue or the state of being diseased.

Morphology (mor-FOL-o-je): Study of the shape or form of cells.

Motor nerve (MO-ter nerv): Carries impulses from the brain and spinal cord to muscles.

MRI urography (MRI u-ROG-rah-fe): Process of taking MRI images of the urinary tract after injecting contrast.

Mucinous (MU-sin-us): Pertaining to cystic tumors filled with mucus.

Mucositis (mu-ko-SI-tis): Inflammation of mucous membranes; often a side effect of radiation therapy or chemotherapy.

Mucous membrane (MU-cus MEM-brayn): Lining of body cavities and tubular organs; secrets mucus.

Mucus (MU-cus): Sticky substance that is secreted from a mucous membrane.

Multigravida (mul-tih-GRAV-ih-dah): Woman who has been pregnant more than once.

Multipara (mul-TIH-pah-rah): Woman who has delivered more than one viable infant.

Multiple gestation (MUL-tih-pel jes-TA-shun): The presence of more than one embryo developing in the uterus during pregnancy.

Multiple myeloma (MUL-tih-pel mi-eh-LO-mah): Malignant tumor of bone marrow cells (plasma cells that produce immunoglobulins).

Multiple sclerosis (MUL-tih-pel skleh-RO-sis): Chronic neurologic disorder marked by destruction of the myelin sheath on axons in the CNS.

Murmur (MUR-mer): Extra sound heard between normal beats during auscultation of the heart.

Muscle biopsy (MUS-el BI-op-se): Removal of muscle tissue for microscopic examination to assess for abnormalities or disease.

Muscular dystrophy (MUS-ku-lar DIS-tro-fe): Group of inherited diseases characterized by progressive weakness and degeneration of muscle fibers without involvement of the nervous system.

Mutagenic (mu-tah-JEN-ik): Pertaining to producing a mutation.

Mutation (mu-TA-shun): Change in genetic material (DNA) of a cell.

Mutism (MU-tizm): No, or very little, ability to speak.

Myalgia (mi-AL-jah): Muscle pain.

Myasthenia gravis (mi-as-THE-ne-ah GRAV-is): Autoimmune neuromuscular disorder characterized by weakness of voluntary muscles. Muscles lose strength because of a failure in transmission of the nervous impulse from the nerve to the muscle cell.

Mycosis (mi-KO-sis): Disease caused by a fungus.

Mydriasis (mih-DRI-ah-sis): Widening of the pupil of the eye.

Myelin sheath (MI-eh-lin sheeth): Fatty, white covering over the axon of a nerve cell.

Myelitis (mi-eh-LI-tis): Inflammation of the spinal cord.

Myeloblast (MI-eh-lo-blast): Immature bone marrow cell that gives rise to granulocytes.

Myelodysplasia (mi-eh-lo-dis-PLA-ze-ah): Group of disorders related to the inability of the bone marrow to produce normal blood cells.

Myelography (mi-eh-LOG-rah-fe): X-ray image of the spinal cord after injection of contrast into the membranes surrounding the spinal cord.

Myeloid (MI-eh-loyd): Relating to bone marrow and growth of cells originating in the bone marrow.

Myeloma (mi-eh-LO-mah): Malignant tumor of bone marrow.

Myelomeningocele (mi-eh-lo-meh-NIN-jo-seel): Congenital hernia (protrusion) of the spinal cord and meninges through a defect (gap) in the vertebral column. This defect is associated with spina bifida.

Myelopathy (mi-el-OP-ah-the): Disease of the spinal cord.

Myelopoiesis (mi-eh-lo-poy-E-sis): Formation of bone marrow.

Myelosuppression (mi-eh-lo-su-PRE-shun): Bone marrow depression or impaired formation of blood cells (leukopenia, anemia, and thrombocytopenia).

Myocardial (mi-o-KAR-de-al): Pertaining to the heart muscle.

Myocardial infarction (mi-o-KAR-de-al in-FARK-shun): Area of dead (necrotic) tissue in the heart muscle; heart attack.

Myocardium (mi-o-KAR-de-um): Muscular layer of the heart.

Myoma (mi-O-mah): Tumor (benign) of muscle.

Myomectomy (mi-o-MEK-to-me): Removal of muscle tumors (fibroids) from the uterus.

Myometrium (mi-o-ME-tre-um): Muscle layer of the uterus.

Myoneural (mi-o-NUR-al): Pertaining to muscle and nerve.

Myopathy (mi-OP-ah-the): Disease of muscles.

Myopia (mi-O-pe-ah): Nearsightedness; vision condition in which close objects are seen more clearly than objects that are far.

Myosarcoma (mi-o-sar-KO-mah): Tumor (malignant) of muscle tissue; a type of sarcoma (tumor of flesh tissue in the body).

Myositis (mi-o-SI-tis): Inflammation of muscles.

Myringitis (mir-in-JI-tis): Inflammation of the eardrum.

Myringotomy (mir-in-GOT-o-me): Incision of the eardrum.

Myxedema (mik-seh-DE-mah): Decreased secretion of the thyroid gland in adults.

Myxoma (mik-SO-mah): Benign tumor of connective tissue in the heart muscle.

N

Narcissistic personality (nar-sih-SIS-tik per-son-AL-ih-te): Characterized by grandiose sense of self-importance or

preoccupation with fantasies of success or power; self-love without empathy for others.

Narcolepsy (NAR-ko-lep-se): Sudden seizures of sleep.

Narcotic (nar-KOT-ik): Habit-forming drug that relieves pain by producing stupor and insensibility; morphine and opium.

Nares (NA-reez): Openings through the nose carrying air into the nasal cavities.

Nasal bones (NA-zal bones): Two facial bones that form the nose.

Nasogastric intubation (na-zo-GAS-trik in-tu-BA-shun): Placement of a tube through the nose into the stomach.

Natural immunity (NAH-tu-ral ih-MU-nih-te): Protection that an individual is born with to fight infection; such as neutrophils, monocytes, macrophages, and NK cells.

Nausea (NAW-ze-ah): Unpleasant sensation in the stomach with a tendency to vomit.

Necropsy (NEH-krop-see): Viewing a dead body; used in veterinary medicine.

Necrosis (neh-KRO-sis): Condition of death of cells.

Necrotic (neh-KROT-ik): Pertaining to death of cells.

Necrotic tumor (neh-KROT-ik TU-mor): Tumor that contains dead cells.

Neoadjuvant chemotherapy (ne-o-AD-ju-vant ke-mo-THER-ah-pe): Treatment of disease with drugs to assist or enhance before primary treatment, to reduce the size of the tumor.

Neonatal (ne-o-NA-tal): Pertaining to a new birth.

Neonatology (ne-o-na-TOL-o-je): Study of the medical care of the newborn (neonate).

Neoplasm (NE-o-plaz-im): New growth.

Nephrectomy (nef-REK-to-me): Removal of a kidney.

Nephritis (nef-RI-tis): Inflammation of a kidney.

Nephrolithiasis (nef-ro-lih-THI-ah-sis): Abnormal condition of kidney stones.

Nephrolithotomy (nef-ro-lih-THOT-o-me): Incision of the kidney to remove a stone.

Nephrologist (nef-ROL-o-jist): A specialist in the study of the kidneys.

Nephrology (nef-ROL-o-je): Study of the kidneys and kidney disease.

Nephron (NEF-ron): Functional unit of the kidney, consisting of a glomerulus, renal tubule, and collecting tubule.

Nephropathy (nef-ROP-ah-the): Disease of the kidneys.

Nephroptosis (nef-rop-TO-sis): Prolapse of a kidney; floating or wandering kidney.

Nephrosis (nef-RO-sis): Abnormal condition of the kidney.

Nephrostomy (nef-ROS-to-me): Opening of the kidney to the outside of the body.

Nephrotic syndrome (nef-ROT-ik SIN-drohm): Group of symptoms that occur due to loss of protein in the urine. Symptoms include edema (swelling of tissues), hypoalbuminemia (loss of protein from the blood), proteinuria, and susceptibility to infection. This condition is also known as nephrosis.

Nerve (nerv): Macroscopic cordlike collection of fibers that carry electrical impulses.

Neural (NU-ral): Pertaining to nerves.

Neuralgia (nu-RAL-jah): Nerve pain.

Neurasthenia (nu-ras-THE-ne-ah): Lack of strength in nerves; a feeling of weakness and exhaustion.

Neuroblastoma (nu-ro-blas-TO-mah): Malignant childhood tumor originating in cells of the nervous system.

Neurocognitive disorders (nu-ro-KOG-nat-iv dis-OR-derz): Group of psychiatric disorders marked by disturbances in thinking, perception, reasoning, and judgment.

Neurodevelopmental disorders (nu-ro-de-VEL-op-men-tal dis-OR-derz): Group of childhood disorders characterized by delays in the development of socialization and communication skills. Examples are autistic spectrum disorders and attention-deficit/ hyperactivity disorder.

Neurofibromatosis (nu-ro-fi-bro-mah-TO-sis): Genetic disorder that causes tumors (usually noncancerous) to form in nerve tissue.

Neuroglial cells (nu-ro-GLE-al selz): Glial cells; Supporting and connective sells of the nervous system.

Neurohypophysis (nu-ro-hi-POF-ih-sis): Posterior lobe of the pituitary gland; secretes oxytocin and vasopressin.

Neuroleptic drug (nu-ro-LEP-tik drug): Suppresses psychotic symptoms and behavior; used in treatment of psychotic symptoms in schizophrenia and bipolar disorder. Examples are aripiprazole (Abilify): and olanzapine (Zyprexa).

Neurologic (nu-ro-LOJ-ik): Pertaining to the study of nerves.

Neurology (nu-ROL-o-je): Study of nerves and nerve disorders.

Neuron (NU-ron): Nerve cell.

Neuropathy (nu-ROP-ah-the): Disease of nerves; primarily in the peripheral nervous system.

Neurotransmitter (nu-ro-TRANZ-mit-er): Chemical messenger released at the end of a nerve cell.

Neutropenia (nu-tro-PE-ne-ah): Deficiency of neutrophils.

Neutrophil (NU-tro-fil): White blood cell (granulocytic leukocyte) containing dark staining granules and protecting the body from infection. Neutrophils are the most abundant type of white blood cell. Also called polymorphonuclear leukocyte.

Neutrophilia (nu-tro-FIL-e-ah): Increased numbers of neutrophils.

Nevus; *pl.* nevi (NE-vus; NE-vi): Mole (pigmented lesion of the skin).

Nitrates (NI-trayts): Drugs used in the treatment of angina. They dilate blood vessels, increasing blood flow and oxygen to myocardial tissue.

Nitrogenous waste (ni-TROJ-en-us waste): Substance containing nitrogen and excreted in urine; examples are urea, creatinine, and uric acid.

Nitroglycerin (ni-tro-GLIS-er-in): Drug used in the treatment of angina. It dilates coronary arteries so that more blood flows to heart muscle.

NK cells (NK sels): Natural killer cells; lymphocytes that are part of the body's natural immunity.

Nocturia (nok-TU-re-ah): Urinary frequency at night.

Nodular goiter (NOD-u-lar GOY-ter): Enlargement of the thyroid gland due to growth of nodules (adenomas) on the thyroid gland.

Nodule (NOD-ule): Solid, round or oval elevated lesion 1 cm or more in diameter.

Non-Hodgkin lymphoma (non-HOJ-kin limf-O-mah): Group of malignant tumors involving lymphoid tissue. Examples are follicular lymphoma and large cell lymphoma.

Norepinephrine (nor-ep-ih-NEF-rin): Hormone secreted by the adrenal medulla; increases heart rate and blood pressure. Also called noradrenaline.

Normal sinus rhythm (NOR-mal SI-nus RIH-thim): Normal heart rhythm originating in the sinoatrial node; usually 60 to 100 beats per minute.

Nuclear medicine (NU-kle-ar MED-ih-sin): Medical specialty that studies the uses of radioactive substances (radionuclides and radiopharmaceuticals).

Nucleic (nu-CLA-ik): Pertaining to the nucleus.

Nucleotide (NU-kle-o-tide): Unit of DNA (gene) composed of a sugar, phosphate, and a base. The sequence of nucleotides composing a gene is the genetic code.

Nucleus (NU-cle-us): Control center of the cell; contains chromosomes and directs activities of the cell.

Nulligravida (nul-leh-GRAV-ih-dah): Woman who has never been pregnant.

Nullipara (nul-LIH-pah-rah): Woman who has never given birth to an infant.

Nyctalopia (nik-tah-LO-pe-ah): Night blindness; difficult, poor vision at night.

Nystagmus (nih-STAG-mus): Repetitive, rhythmic movements of one or both eyes.

O

Oblique (oh-BLEEK): Positioned at an angle; an x-ray view.

Obsession (ob-SEH-shun): Involuntary, persistent idea, urge, or emotion.

Obsessive-compulsive disorder (ob-SES-iv com-PUL-siv dis-OR-der): Anxiety disorder in which recurrent thoughts and repetitive acts dominate behavior.

Obstetrics (ob-STET-riks): Branch of medicine and surgery dealing with the care of women during pregnancy and childbirth.

Obstructive lung disease (ob-STRUK-tiv lung dih-ZEEZ): Narrowed airways result in resistance to airflow during breathing. Examples are asthma, bronchiectasis, COPD, and cystic fibrosis.

Occipital bone (ok-SIP-ih-tal bone): Posterior portion of the skull (cranium).

Occlusion (o-KLU-zhun): Blockage or obstruction.

Olecranal (o-LEK-ran-al): Pertaining to the elbow (olecranon).

Olecranon (o-LEK-ran-on): Large process on the proximal end of the ulna at the elbow.

Oligodendroglial cell (ol-ih-go-den-dro-GLE-al sel): Glial cell that forms the myelin sheath covering the axon of a neuron.

Oligomenorrhea (ol-ig-o-men-o-RE-ah): Scanty menstrual flow.

Oligospermia (ol-ih-go-SPER-me-ah): Scanty sperm count.

Oliguria (ol-ig-U-re-ah): Scanty urination.

Oncogene (ON-ko-jeen): Region of DNA in tumor cells (cellular oncogene) or in viruses (viral oncogene) that cause cancer.

Oncologist (on-KOL-o-gist): Specialist in the study of tumors; particularly malignant (cancerous) tumors.

Oncology (on-KOL-o-je): Study of tumors (malignant tumors).

Onycholysis (on-ih-KOL-ih-sis): Loosening of the nail plate with separation from the nail bed.

Onychomycosis (on-ih-ko-mi-KO-sis): Fungal infection of a nail.

Oocyte (o-o-SITE): Immature egg cell from which an ovum develops.

Oogenesis (o-o-JEN-eh-sis): Formation of ova (egg cells).

Oophorectomy (oo-fo-REK-to-me): Removal of an ovary.

Oophoritis (oo-fo-RI-tis): Inflammation of an ovary.

Ophthalmic (of-THAL-mik): Pertaining to the eye.

Ophthalmologist (of-thal-MOL-o-jist): Medical doctor specializing in the diseases of the eye.

Ophthalmology (of-thal-MOL-o-je): Study of the eye and eye disorders.

Ophthalmoplegia (of-thal-mo-PLE-jah): Paralysis of muscles that move the eyeball.

Ophthalmoscope (of-THAL-mo-scope): Instrument to visually examine the eyes.

Ophthalmoscopy (of-thal-MOS-ko-pe): Visual examination of the interior of the eye.

Opioid (O-pe-oyd): Substance either resembling or derived from opium. Examples are cocaine, morphine, and heroin.

Opportunistic infections (op-por-too-NIS-tik in-FEK-shunz): Infectious diseases associated with AIDS; toxoplasmosis, tuberculosis, herpes simplex, and pneumocystis carinii pneumonia (PCP).

Optic chiasm (OP-tik KI-az-im): Point at which optic nerve fibers cross in the brain.

Optic disc (OP-tik disc): Region at the back of the eye where the optic nerve meets the retina. It is the blind spot of the eye because it contains only nerve fibers, no rods or cones, and is thus insensitive to light.

Optic Nerve (OP-tik nerv): Cranial nerve carrying impulses from the retina to the brain (cerebral cortex).

Optical coherence tomography (OP-tih-kal ko-HEAR-antz to-MOH-grah-fe): Non-invasive imaging technique using light waves to take cross-sectional pictures of the retina.

Optician (op-TISH-an): Non-medical professional trained in grinding lenses and fitting eyeglasses.

Optometrist (op-TOM-eh-trist): Non-medical professional trained to examine and measure the eye to prescribe and fit eyeglasses and contact lenses.

Oral (OR-al): Pertaining to the mouth.

Oral administration (OR-al ad-min-is-TRA-shun): Drugs that are given by mouth.

Oral leukoplakia (OR-al lu-ko-PLA-ke-ah): White plaques or patches on the mucous membranes of the mouth.

Orchiectomy (or-ke-EK-to-me): Removal (excision) of a testis.

Orchiopexy (or-ke-o-PEK-se): Surgical fixation of an undescended testis into the scrotum.

Orchitis (or-KI-tis): Inflammation of a testis.

Organ of Corti (OR-gan of COR-te): Sensitive auditory receptor area found in the cochlea of the inner ear.

Orifice (OR-ih-fis): An opening.

Oropharynx (or-o-FAR-inks): Central portion of the throat, just beyond the mouth.

Orthodontist (or-tho-DON-tist): Dentist specializing in straightening teeth.

Orthopedics (or-tho-PE-diks): Surgical specialty devoted to straightening, correcting and treating deformities and diseases in bones.

Orthopnea (or-THOP-ne-ah): Abnormal condition in which breathing is only comfortable when a patient is in an upright position.

Osseous tissue (OS-e-us TIH-shu): Bone tissue.

Ossicle (OS-ih-kel): Small bone in the middle section of the ear; malleus, incus, and stapes are ossicles.

Ossiculoplasty (os-ih-ku-lo-PLAS-te): Surgical repair of an ossicle (small bone) of the middle ear.

Ossification (os-if-ih-KA-shun): Process of bone formation.

Osteitis (os-te-I-tis): Inflammation of bone.

Osteoarthritis (os-te-o-ar-THRI-tis): Inflammation of bones and joints. This is a progressive, degenerative joint disease with loss of cartilage and hypertrophy of bone within the joint.

Osteoblast (OS-te-o-blast): Bone cell that helps form bony tissue.

Osteoclast (OS-te-o-klast): Bone cell that absorbs and removes unwanted bony tissue.

Osteodystrophy (os-te-o-DIS-tro-fe): Abnormal development of bone.

Osteogenesis imperfecta (os-te-o-JEN-eh-sis im-per-FEK-tah): Genetic disorder involving defective bone development. Bones are brittle and fragile caused by abnormal collagen production; fractures occur with the slightest trauma.

Osteogenic (os-te-o-JEN-ik): Pertaining to produced in or by bone.

Osteogenic sarcoma (os-te-o-JEN-ic sar-KO-mah): Cancerous (malignant) tumor produced in bone; osteosarcoma.

Osteomalacia (os-te-o-mah-LA-shah): Softening of bones.

Osteomyelitis (os-te-o-mi-eh-LI-tis): Inflammation of bone and bone marrow secondary to (following) infection.

Osteopenia (os-te-o-PE-ne-ah): Deficiency of bone; a precursor of osteoporosis.

Osteoporosis (os-te-o-por-O-sis): Decrease in bone density (mass); thinning and weakening of bone.

Osteosarcoma (os-te-o-sar-KO-mah): Malignant tumor of bone.

Osteotome (OS-te-o-tome): Instrument to cut bone.

Osteotomy (os-te-OT-o-me): Incision of a bone.

Otalgia (o-TAL-jah): Ear pain.

Otic (O-tik): Pertaining the ear.

Otitis media (o-TI-tis ME-de-ah): Inflammation of the middle ear.

Otolaryngologist (o-to-lah-rin-GOL-o-jist): Specialist (surgeon) in ear, nose, and throat disorders.

Otomycosis (o-to-mi-KO-sis): Fungal infection of the ear.

Otopyorrhea (o-to-pi-o-RE-ah): Discharge of pus from the ear.

Otosclerosis (o-to-skleh-RO-sis): Hardening of the bony tissue of the middle ear.

Otoscopy (o-TOS-ko-pe): Visual examination of the ear canal using an otoscope.

Oval window (O-val WIN-do): Membrane between the middle ear and the inner ear.

Ovarian (o-VAH-re-an): Pertaining to an ovary.

Ovarian cancer (o-VAH-re-an KAN-ser): Malignant tumor of the ovary (adenocarcinoma); ovarian carcinoma.

Ovarian cysts (o-VAH-re-an sists): Fluid-filled sacs within the ovary.

Ovarian follicle (o-VAH-re-an FOL-lih-kul): Tiny sac in the ovary that contains an egg cell (ovum).

Ovary (O-vah-re): One of two small glands (female reproductive organs) responsible for egg production and hormone (estrogen and progesterone) secretion.

Ovulation (ov-u-LA-shun): Release of the ovum (egg cell) from the ovary.

Ovum; *pl*, ova (O-vum; O-va): Mature egg cell (female gamete).

Oxygen (OX-ih-jen): Gas inhaled and entering the bloodstream through the lungs.

Oxytocia (ox-e-TO-se-ah): Rapid labor and childbirth.

Oxytocin (ox-se-TO-sin): Hormone secreted by the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland; stimulates contractions of the uterus during childbirth.

P

Pacemaker (PACE-ma-ker): Specialized nervous tissue (sinoatrial node) in the right atrial wall; it begins the heartbeat.

Palate (PAH-lat): Roof of the mouth; hard palate is the front bony portion and the soft palate is the posterior fleshy part near the throat.

Palatine tonsil (PAH-lih-tine TON-sil): One of a pair of almond-shaped masses of lymphatic tissue at the back of the mouth (oral pharynx).

Palatopharyngoplasty (pah-lat-o-fah-RIN-jo-plas-te): Surgical repair of the pharynx and palate.

Palatoplasty (pah-LAT-to-plas-te): Surgical repair of the palate (roof of the mouth).

Palliative (PAH-le-ah-tiv): Relieving symptoms, but not curative.

Palpation (pal-PA-shun): Examining by touch.

Palpebral (pal-PE-bral): Pertaining to an eyelid.

Palpitations (pal-pih-TA-shunz): Uncomfortable sensations in the chest related to cardiac arrhythmias; feeling that your heart is fluttering or pounding.

Palsy (PAWL-ze): Paralysis.

Pancreas (PAN-kre-as): Gland located under and behind the stomach; produces the hormone insulin to transport sugar to cells and enzymes to digest foods.

Pancreatectomy (pan-kre-ah-TEK-to-me): Excision of the pancreas.

Pancreatic (pan-kre-AH-tik): Pertaining to the pancreas.

Pancreatic cancer (pan-kre-AH-tik KAN-ser): Malignant tumor of the pancreas.

Pancreatitis (pan-kre-ah-TI-tis): Inflammation of the pancreas.

Pancreatoduodenectomy (pan-kre-ah-to-du-o-deh-NEK-to me): Removal of the pancreas (partial) and duodenum.

Pancytopenia (pan-si-to-PE-ne-ah): Deficiency of all (blood) cells.

Panhypopituitarism (pan-hi-po-pih-TU-ih-tar-iz-im): Deficiency of all pituitary gland hormones.

Pap test (pap test): Microscopic examination of stained cells removed from the vagina and cervix; Pap smear.

Papillae (pap-IL-e): Small elevations on the surface of the tongue; containing taste buds.

Papillary (PAP-ih-lair-e): Pertaining to nipple-like projections. A papillary tumor forms microscopic nipple-like or finger-like projections of cells.

Papilledema (pap-ih-leh-DE-mah): Swelling of the optic disc; associated with increased pressure within the eye.

Papule (PAP-ul): Small (less than 1 cm in diameter), solid elevation of the skin; skin tags and pimples (as in acne) are examples.

Paraaortic nodes (par-ah-a-OR-tik nodes): Lymph nodes near the aorta in the lumbar (waist) area of the body.

Paracentesis (par-ah-sen-TE-sis): Puncture to remove fluid from the abdomen; abdominocentesis.

Paralysis (pah-RAL-ih-sis): Destruction of nerve tissue leading to loss of sensation or motion in a part of the body.

Paranasal sinus (par-ah-NA-zal SI-nus): One of a pair of air cavities in the bones near the nose.

Paranephric (par-ah-NEF-rik): Pertaining to beside or near a kidney.

Paranoia (par-ah-NOY-ah): Overly suspicious system of thinking with fixed delusions that one is being harassed, persecuted, or unfairly treated.

Paranoid personality (PAR-ah-noyd per-son-AL-ih-te): Characterized by recurrent delusions of persecution and jealousy with suspicion and mistrust of other people.

Paraphilia (par-ah-FIL-e-ah): Recurrent, intense sexual urge; fantasy or behavior that involves unusual objects, activities, and situations.

Paraplegia (par-ah-PLE-jah): Paralysis of the lower part of the body and both legs.

Parasympathetic nerves (par-ah-sim-pah-THET-ik nervz): Involuntary, autonomic nerves that regulate normal body functions, such as heart rate, breathing, and muscles of the gastrointestinal tract.

Parathormone (par-ah-THOR-mone): Secreted by the parathyroid glands; increases blood calcium.

Parathyroid glands (par-ah-THI-royd glanz): Four endocrine glands on the posterior (dorsal) side of the thyroid gland; secrete parathormone.

Parathyroidectomy (par-ah-thi-roy-DEK-to-me): Removal of parathyroid glands.

Parenchyma (pah-RENK-ih-mah): Essential, functioning cells of any organ.

Parenchymal tissue (pah-RENK-ih-mal TIH-shu): Functional, essential tissue of an organ.

Parenteral (par-EN-ter-al): Pertaining to by some route other than through the gastrointestinal tract, as by intravenous injection.

Parenteral administration (par-EN-ter-al ad-min-is-TRA-shun): Drugs or nourishment are given intravenously (within a vein), or by any other route besides the intestinal tract.

Paresis (pah-RE-sis): Slight paralysis.

Paresthesia (pah-res-THE-ze-ah): Abnormal nervous sensation occurring without apparent cause. Examples are tingling, numbness or prickling sensations.

Parietal bone (pah-RI-eh-tal bone): One of two bones on either side of the skull.

Parietal pleura (pah-RI-eh-tal PLU-rah): Outer layer of the pleura lying closest to the chest wall.

Parkinson disease (PAR-kin-sun dih-ZEEZ): Degeneration of nerve cells that produce the neurotransmitter dopamine in the brain; leads to tremors, weakness of muscles, and slowness of movement.

Paronychia (par-o-NIK-e-ah): Inflammation and swelling of the skin folds around a nail.

Paronychium (par-on-NIK-e-um): Soft tissue surrounding the nail border.

Parotid gland (par-OT-id gland): Salivary gland within the cheek, just anterior to the ear.

Paroxysmal (par-ox-IZ-mal): Pertaining to a sudden occurrence.

Parturition (par-tu-RIH-shun): Act of giving birth.

Patella (pah-TEL-ah): Kneecap.

Patent (PA-tent): Open.

Patent ductus arteriosus (PA-tent DUK-tus ar-te-re-O-sus): The ductus arteriosus, a small duct that is open during fetal circulation, fails to close at birth.

Pathogenesis (path-o-JEN-eh-sis): Development of disease.

Pathogenic (path-o-jen-ic): Pertaining to producing disease.

Pathologic (path-o-LOJ-ic): Pertaining to the study of disease.

Pathologist (path-OL-o-jist): Specialist in the study of disease; evaluates biopsies, and performs autopsies.

Pathology (path-OL-o-je): Study of disease.

Pediatric (pe-de-AH-trik): Pertaining to treatment of children.

Pedophilia (ped-uh-FIL-e-ah): Need for sexual gratification with a child.

Pedunculated (peh-DUNG-ku-la-ted): Possessing a stem or stalk (peduncle).

Pelvic (PEL-vik): Pertaining to the pelvis.

Pelvic cavity (PEL-vik KAV-ih-te): Space below the abdomen containing portions of the intestines, rectum, urinary bladder, and reproductive organs.

Pelvic inflammatory disease (PEL-vik in-FLAM-mah-tor-e dih-ZEEZ): Inflammation and infection of organs in the pelvis and abdomen; salpingitis, oophoritis, endometritis, endocervicitis; PID.

Pelvic ultrasonography (PEL-vic ul-trah-son-OG-rah-fe): Recording images of sound waves as they bounce off organs in the pelvic region.

Penile (PE-nile): Pertaining to the penis.

Penis (PE-nis): Male genital organ composed of erectile tissue.

Penoscrotal (pe-no-SKRO-tal): Pertaining to the penis and scrotum.

Peptic ulcer (PEP-tic UL-ser): Open sore in the lining of the stomach or duodenum.

Percussion (per-KUH-shun): Tapping on the surface of the body to determine the underlying structure.

Percutaneous (per-ku-TA-ne-us): Pertaining to through the skin.

Percutaneous coronary intervention (per-ku-TA-ne-us KOR-ih-nair-e in-ter-VEN-shun): A catheter with a ballun and stent is inserted into a coronary artery to remove collections of plaque. Drug-eluting stents release chemicals to keep debris and plaque from recollecting.

Perianal (peh-re-A-nal): Pertaining to surrounding the anus.

Pericardial friction rub (peh-rih-KAR-de-al FRIK-shun rub): Scraping or grating sound heard on auscultation of the heart. It is usually symptomatic of pericarditis.

Pericardiocentesis (peh-rih-kar-de-o-sen-TE-sis): Surgical puncture to remove fluid within the pericardial space surrounding the heart.

Pericarditis (peh-rih-kar-DI-tis): Inflammation of the pericardium (double-layered outermost membrane of the heart).

Pericardium (peh-rih-KAR-de-um): Double-layered membrane surrounding the heart.

Perilymph (PEH-rih-limf): Fluid contained in the labyrinth (canals of the inner ear).

Perimetrium (peh-rih-ME-tre-um): outermost layer of the uterus; uterine serosa

Perineorrhaphy (peh-rih-ne-OR-rah-fe): Suture of the perineum (following an episiotomy).

Perineum (peh-rih-NE-um): Area between the anus and vagina in females and the area between the anus and scrotal sac in males.

Periodontal disease (peh-re-o-DON-tal dih-ZEEZ): Inflammation and degeneration of gums, teeth, and surrounding bone.

Periodontal membrane (peh-re-o-DON-tal MEM-brayn): Membrane that surrounds the tooth in the tooth socket.

Periodontist (peh-re-o-DON-tist): Dentist specializing in treating the gums.

Periosteum (peh-re-OS-te-um): Membrane surrounding bones.

Peripheral nervous system (peh-RIF-er-al NER-vus SIS-tem): Nerves outside the brain and spinal cord; cranial, spinal, and autonomic nerves.

Peripheral vascular disease (peh-RIH-fer-al ar-TE-re-al dih-ZEEZ): Blockage of blood vessels outside the heart.

Peristalsis (per-ih-STAHL-sis): Rhythmic contractions of the tubes of the gastrointestinal tract and other tubular structures.

Peritoneal (peh-rih-to-NE-al): Pertaining to the peritoneum (double-layered membrane surrounding the abdomen).

Peritoneal dialysis (peh-rih-to-NE-al di-AL-ih-sis): Separation of nitrogenous wastes from the bloodstream by introducing fluid into the peritoneal cavity. Wastes then leave the bloodstream and enter the fluid, which is drained through an abdominal catheter.

Peritoneum (peh-reh-to-NE-um): Double-folded membrane surrounding the abdominal cavity.

Peritonitis (peh-rih-to-NI-tis): Inflammation of the peritoneum.

Pernicious anemia (per-NIH-shus ah-NE-me-uh): Lack of mature erythrocytes caused by inability to absorb vitamin B12 into the body.

Personality disorders (per-son-AL-ih-te dis-OR-derz): Established, lifelong pattern marked by inflexibility and impairment of social functioning.

Pertussis (per-TUH-sis): Whooping cough; bacterial infection of the throat, larynx, and trachea.

PET/CT Scan (PET-CT skan): Diagnostic procedure combining PET (positron emission tomography) and CT (computed tomography). It is often used to detect metastatic cancer and determine if the cancer is responding to treatment.

Petechia; *pl*. petechiae (peh-TE-ke-ah; peh-TE-ke-i): Small pinpoint hemorrhage under the skin.

Peyronie disease (pah-RO-ne dih-zeez): Abnormal curvature of the penis.

Phacoemulsification (fa-ko-eh-mul-sih-fih-KA-shun): Cataract removal surgery in which ultrasonic vibrations break up a cloudy lens; the pieces are then aspirated through the ultrasonic probe. A new intraocular lens (IOL) is inserted following phacoemulsification.

Phagocyte (FA-go-site): Cell that engulfs another cell or foreign organism and destroys it.

Phalangeal (fah-lan-JE-al): Pertaining to finger and toe bones.

Phalanges (fah-LAN-jeez): Finger and toe bones.

Pharmacist (FAR-mah-sist): Specialist in preparing and dispensing drug.

Pharmacodynamics (far-mah-ko-di-NAM-iks): Study of the effects and strength of a drug within the body.

Pharmacokinetics (far-mah-ko-kih-NEH-tiks): Calculation of drug concentration in tissues and body fluids over a period of time.

Pharmacologist (far-mah-KOL-o-jist): Specialist in the study of the properties, uses, and actions of drugs.

Pharmacology (far-mah-KOL-o-je): Study of the properties, uses, and actions of drugs.

Pharmacy (FAR-mah-se): Location for preparing and dispensing drugs; study of preparing and dispensing drugs.

Pharyngeal (fah-rin-JE-al): Pertaining to the pharynx (throat).

Pharynx (FAH-rinks): Throat.

Phenothiazines (fe-no-THI-ah-zeenz): Drugs used to treat serious mental illnesses or psychoses. They modify psychotic symptoms (delusions and hallucinations) and behavior.

Phenylketonuria (fe-nil-ke-to-NU-re-ah): Excess of phenylketones in the urine; diagnosed by a PKU test at birth.

Pheochromocytoma (fe-o-kro-mo-si-TO-mah): Benign tumor of the adrenal medulla; cells stain a dark or dusky (phe/o) color (chrom/o).

Phimosis (fih-MO-sis): Narrowing of the opening of the foreskin over the glans penis.

Phlebotomy (fleh-BOT-o-me): Incision of a vein (for the removal of blood).

Phobia (FO-be-ah): Irrational fear of an object or a situation; claustrophobia (closed spaces), agoraphobia (leaving home or a safe place), and acrophobia (heights) are examples.

Phosphorus (FOS-fo-rus): Mineral substance found in bones in combination with calcium.

Photon therapy (FO-ton THER-ah-pe): Radiation treatment using x-rays and gamma rays delivered to tumor tissue via a linear accelerator.

Photophobia (fo-to-FO-be-ah): Sensitivity to light.

Photoselective vaporization of the prostate (fo-to-seh-LEK-tiv va-por-ih-ZA-shun of the PROS-tayt): Removal of tissue to treat benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH) using a GreenLight laser.

Phrenic nerve (FREN-ik nerv): Carries impulses between the brain and the diaphragm.

Physiatrist (fih-ZI-ah-trist): Medical doctor specializing in rehabilitation (physi/o means function).

Pia mater (PE-ah MAH-ter): Thin, delicate, and innermost membrane of the meninges.

Pilonidal cyst (pi-lo-NI-dal sist): Abnormal sac containing hair and skin debris located near the tail bone.

Pilosebaceous (pi-lo-seh-BA-shus): Pertaining to hair follicles and sebaceous glands.

Pineal gland (pi-NE-al gland): Small endocrine gland in the center of the brain; secretes melatonin.

Pinna (PIN-ah): Auricle; protruding part of the external ear.

Pituitary gland (pih-TU-ih-ter-e gland): Endocrine gland at the base of the brain.

Placenta (plah-SEN-tah): Vascular organ that develops in the uterine wall during pregnancy.

Placenta previa (plah-sen-tah PRE-ve-ah): Abnormal implantation of the placenta over the cervical opening or in the lower region of the uterus.

Plantar flexion (PLAN-tar FLEK-shun): Motion that extends the foot downward toward the ground.

Plasma (PLAZ-mah): Liquid portion of blood containing proteins, water, salts, nutrients, wastes, hormones, and vitamins.

Plasma cell (PLAZ-mah sel): Lymphocyte that secretes antibodies. It matures from B lymphocytes.

Plasmapheresis (plaz-mah-feh-RE-sis): Removal of plasma from withdrawn blood.

Platelet (PLAYT-let): Clotting cell; thrombocyte.

Platelet count (PLAT-let kownt): Number of platelets per cubic millimeter (mm3) or microliter (mL) of blood.

Plateletpheresis (playt-let-feh-RE-sis): Separation of platelets from the rest of the blood.

Play therapy (play THER-ah-pe): A child, through play, uses toys to express conflicts and feelings that he or she is unable to communicate in a direct manner.

Pleomorphic (ple-o-MOR-fik): Pertaining to a variety of shapes or cell types.

Pleura (PLUR-ah): Double-layered membrane surrounding each lung.

Pleural (PLUR-al): Pertaining to the pleura (double- layered membrane surrounding the lungs).

Pleural cavity (PLUR-al KAV-ih-te): Space between the layers of the pleura.

Pleural effusion (PLUR-al eh-FU-zhun): Collection of fluid in the pleural cavity.

Pleural rub (PLUR-al rub): Scratchy sound produced by inflamed or irritated pleural surfaces rubbing against each other.

Pleurisy (PLUR-ih-se): Inflammation of the pleura; pleuritis.

Pleurodynia (plur-o-DIN-e-ah): Pain associated with the pleura.

Plexus (PLEK-sus): Network of nerves outside of the central nervous system; brachial, cervical, and lumbosacral plexuses are examples.

Pneumoconiosis (nu-mo-ko-ne-O-sis): Abnormal lung condition caused by exposure to certain dusts; with chronic inflammation, infection and bronchitis.

Pneumonectomy (nu-mo-NEK-to-me): Removal of a lung.

Pneumonia (nu-MO-nyah): Acute inflammation and infection of the alveoli of the lungs.

Pneumonitis (nu-mo-NI-tis): Inflammation of the lungs.

Pneumothorax (nu-mo-THO-rax): Collection of air or gas in the pleural cavity between the pleura.

Podagra (po-DAG-rah): Foot pain that occurs in the joint of the big toe in gout (gouty arthritis).

Poikilocytosis (poy-kih-lo-si-TO-sis): Variation in the shape of red blood cells.

Poliomyelitis (po-le-o-mi-eh-LI-tis): Inflammation of the gray matter of the spinal cord.

Polyarthritis (pol-e-arth-RI-tis): Inflammation of many joints.

Polycystic kidney disease (pol-e-SIS-tik KID-ne dih-ZEEZ): Kidneys are filled with cysts that prevent normal kidney function.

Polycythemia vera (pol-e-si-THE-me-ah VER-ah): Increase in numbers of red blood cells (erythremia).

Polydipsia (pol-e-DIP-se-ah): Excessive thirst.

Polymorphonuclear (pol-e-mor-fo-NU-kle-ar): Pertaining to a multi-lobed nucleus (in granulocytic white blood cells).

Polymorphonuclear leukocyte (pol-e-morf-o-NU-kle-ar lu-ko-site): White blood cell with multi-lobe nucleus and dark-staining granules. These cells fight infection.

Polymyalgia (pol-e-mi-AL-jah): Pain of many (several) muscles, especially in the shoulders and hips.

Polymyositis (pol-e-mi-o-SI-tis): Inflammation of many muscles.

Polyneuritis (pol-e-nu-RI-tis): Inflammation of many nerves.

Polyphagia (pol-e-FA-je-ah): Excessive eating.

Polypoid tumor (POL-ih-poyd TU-mor): Type of tumor resembling a polyp (benign growth) that protrudes from a base.

Polyuria (pol-e-U-re-ah): Excessive urination.

Pons (ponz): Part of the brainstem anterior to the cerebellum, between the medulla and the rest of the brain. The pons connects the upper and lower portions of the brain.

Pore (por): Tiny opening on the surface of the skin.

Portal vein (POR-tal vayn): Large vein bringing blood to the liver from the intestines.

Positron Emission Tomography (POS-ih-tron e-MIH-shun to-MOG-rah-fe): Radioactive glucose is injected and then detected in tissues of the body to image the metabolic activity of cells; PET scan.

Positron emission tomography of the heart (POS-ih-tron e-MIH-shun to-MOG-rah-fe): Images show blood flow and myocardial function following uptake of radioactive substances; PET scan of the heart.

Positron emission tomography of the lung (POS-ih-tron e-MIH-shun to-MOG-rah-fe): Radioactive glucose is injected, and images reveal metabolic activity in the lungs; PET scan of the lung.

Postauricular (post-aw-RIK-u-lar): Pertaining to behind the ear.

Posterior (pos-TE-re-or): Back or dorsal surface of the body or structure.

Posteroanterior (pos-te-ro-an-TE-re-or): In this position, x-ray beams pass from the back to the front of the body.

Postmortem (post-MOR-tem): After death.

Postpartum (post-PAR-tum): After birth.

Postprandial (post-PRAN-de-al): After meals.

Post-traumatic stress disorder (post-traw-MAH-tik stres dis-OR-der): Anxiety-related symptoms appear after personal experience of a traumatic event.

Potassium (po-TAS-e-um): Chemical element (K) that forms salts with other minerals such as calcium and is vital for bodily processes. When dissolved in water, it is an electrolyte whose balance is regulated by the kidney.

Precancerous (pre-KAN-ser-us): Pertaining to occurring before a malignant condition.

Preeclampsia (pre-e-KLAMP-se-ah): Abnormal condition associated with pregnancy, marked by high blood pressure, proteinuria, edema, and headache.

Pregnancy (PREG-nan-se): Condition of having a developing embryo and fetus in the body for about 40 weeks; gestation.

Pregnancy test (PREG-nan-se test): Blood or urine test to detect the presence of the hormone HCG.

Premolar teeth (pre-MO-lar teeth): Two teeth before the molars.

Prenatal (pre-NA-tal): Pertaining to before birth.

Prepuce (PRE-pus): Fold of skin covering the glans penis; foreskin.

Presbycusis (prez-be-KU-sis): Progressive loss of hearing, occurring in middle and older age.

Presbyopia (prez-be-O-pe-ah): Impairment of vision as a result of old age.

Primigravida (prih-mih-GRAV-ih-dah): Woman during her first pregnancy.

Primipara (prih-MIH-pah-rah): Woman who has given birth to her first child.

Primiparous (pri-MIH-pah-rus): Pertaining to a woman who has given birth to her first child.

Proctologist (prok-TOL-o-jist): Specialist in the study of the anus and the rectum.

Proctosigmoidoscopy (prok-to-sig-moyd-OS-ko-pe): Visual (endoscopic) examination of the anus, rectum, and sigmoid colon.

Prodrome (PRO-drohm): Sign or symptom that appears before the onset of a more serious illness. An example of a prodrome is the fever that signals the onset of a viral illness.

Progesterone (pro-JES-te-rone): Hormone secreted by the ovaries; maintains the lining of the uterus during pregnancy.

Progestin (pro-JES-tin): Hormone that stimulates the uterine lining during pregnancy and is used in treatment of abnormal uterine bleeding and hormone replacement therapy.

Prognosis (prog-NO-sis): Prediction about the outcome of an illness; knowledge beforehand.

Projective test (pro-JEK-tiv test): Diagnostic personality test using unstructured stimuli (inkblots, pictures, incomplete sentences) to evoke responses that reflect aspects of an individual's personality.

Prolactin (pro-LAK-tin): Secreted by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland; promotes milk secretion.

Prolapse (PRO-laps): Sliding forward or downward.

Pronation (pro-NA-shun): As applied to the hand and forearm, the act of turning the palm down.

Prone (prohn): Lying on the belly (face down, palms down).

Prostate cancer (PROS-tayt KAN-ser): Malignant tumor (adenocarcinoma) of the prostate gland.

Prostate gland (PROS-tayt gland): Gland in men that surrounds the neck of the urinary bladder and urethra. It produces a fluid which, after combining with sperm cells, leaves the body as semen.

Prostatectomy (pros-tah-TEK-to-me): Removal (excision) of the prostate gland.

Prostatitis (pros-tah-TI-tis): Inflammation of the prostate gland.

Prosthesis (pros-THE-sis): Artificial substitute for a missing body part.

Protease (PRO-te-ayz): Enzyme that digests protein.

Protease inhibitors (PRO-te-ayz in-HIB-ih-torz): Drugs that treat AIDS by blocking the production of protease, a proteolytic enzyme that helps create new viral pieces for HIV.

Protein marker tests (PRO-teen MARK-er tests): Measurements of the level of specific proteins in the blood or on the surface of tumor cells; PSA, CA-125, and alpha-fetoprotein are examples.

Prothrombin (pro-THROM-bin): Plasma protein converted to thrombin in the clotting process.

Prothrombin time (pro-THROM-bin time): Test of the ability of blood to clot.

Protocol (PRO-to-kol): Detailed plan for treatment of an illness.

Proton therapy (PRO-ton THER-ah-pe): Subatomic particles (protons) produced by a cyclotron deposit absorbed dose of radiation at a finite, focused point in the body.

Proximal (PROKS-ih-mal): Near the point of attachment or near the beginning of a structure.

Pruritus (pru-RI-tus): Itching.

Pseudocyesis (su-do-si-E-sis): False pregnancy.

Psoriasis (so-RI-ah-sis): Chronic, recurrent dermatosis marked by itchy, scaly, red plaques covered by silvery gray scales.

Psychiatrist (si-KI-ah-trist): Physician who treats the mind and mental disorders.

Psychiatry (si-KI-ah-tre): Treatment of the mind.

Psychoanalysis (si-ko-an-AL-ih-sis): Form of psychotherapy in which the patient explores his or her unconscious emotions and past to understand and change current behavior and feelings.

Psychodrama (si-ko-dra-mah): Group therapy in which a patient expresses feelings by acting out roles with other patients.

Psychogenic (si-ko-JEN-ik): Pertaining to produced within the mind, having emotional and psychologic origin, rather than a physical cause.

Psychologist (si-KOL-o-jist): Individual (Ph.D, Psy.D, or Ed.D) specializing mental processes and how the brain functions in health and disease; treats patients with psychotherapy, but in most states cannot prescribe drugs.

Psychology (si-KOL-o-je): Study of the mind.

Psychopharmacology (si-ko-far-mah-KOL-o-je): Treatment of psychiatric disorders with drugs.

Psychosis (si-KO-sis): Loss of contact with reality; often with delusions and hallucinations.

Psychosomatic (si-ko-so-MAT-ik): Pertaining to the inter-relationship of the mind (psych/o) and body (somat/o).

Psychotherapy (si-ko-THER-ah-pe): Treatment of the mind; talk therapy for mental disorders and emotional difficulties.

Ptosis (TO-sis): Prolapse, drooping, sagging of the upper eyelid.

Puberty (PU-ber-te): Period of adolescence at which secondary sex characteristics appear and gametes are produced.

Pubic (PU-bik): Pertaining to the anterior part of the pelvis.

Pubic symphysis (PU-bik SIM-fih-sis): Junction of the two pubic bones in the anterior of the pelvis.

Pubis (PU-bis): One of two bones forming the front portion of the pelvis.

Pulmonary (PUL-mo-nair-e): Pertaining to the lungs.

Pulmonary parenchyma (pul-mo-NAIR-e pah-RENK-ih-mah): Essential parts of the lungs responsible for respiration; bronchioles and alveoli.

Pulmonary abscess (PUL-mo-nair-e AB-ses): Collection of pus in the lungs.

Pulmonary artery (PUL-mo-ner-e AR-teh-re): Blood vessel carrying oxygen-poor blood from the right ventricle of the heart to the lungs.

Pulmonary circulation (PUL-mo-ner-e ser-ku-LA-shun): Flow of blood from the heart to the lungs and then back to the heart.

Pulmonary edema (PUL-mo-nair-e eh-DE-mah): Collection fluid in air sacs and bronchioles of the lung.

Pulmonary embolism (PUL-mo-nair-e EM-bo-liz-im): Clot or material from a distant vein that blocks a blood vessel in the lung.

Pulmonary fibrosis (PUL-mo-nair-e fi-BRO-sis): Formation of scar tissue in the connective tissue of the lung.

Pulmonary function tests (PUL-mo-nair-e FUNK-shun tests): Tests that measure the ventilation (breathing) mechanics of the lungs.

Pulmonary infarction (PUL-mo-nair-e in-FARK-shun): Area of necrosis (death of cells) in lung tissue.

Pulmonary valve (PUL-mo-nair-e valv): Valve between the right ventricle and the pulmonary artery.

Pulmonary vein (PUL-mo-nair-e vayn): One of two pairs of vessels carrying oxygenated blood from the lungs to the left atrium of the heart.

Pulp (pulp): Soft tissue with a tooth containing nerves and blood vessels.

Pulse (puls): Beat of the heart as felt through the walls of the arteries.

Pupil (PU-pil): Central opening of the eye, surrounded by the iris, through which light rays pass. It appears dark.

Pupillary (PU-pih-lair-e): Pertaining to the pupil of the eye.

Purgative (PUR-gat-ive): Drug that relieves constipation and is a strong cathartic.

Purpura (PUR-pur-ah): Multiple pinpoint hemorrhages and accumulation of blood under the skin caused by deficiency of clotting cells (platelets).

Purulent (PU-ru-lent): Pus-filled; forming or containing pus.

Pustule (PUS-tule): Small abscess (collection of pus) on the skin; a papule containing pus.

Pyelogram (PI-eh-lo-gram): X-ray record of the kidneys (renal pelvis) and urinary tract after contrast is injected (intravenously or retrograde).

Pyelolithotomy (pi-el-o-lith-OT-o-me): Incision to remove a stone from the renal pelvis of the kidney.

Pyelonephritis (pi-el-o-nef-RI-tis): Inflammation of the renal pelvis and kidney; caused by bacterial infection.

Pyloric sphincter (pi-LOR-ik SFINK-ter): Ring of muscles that surrounds the opening of the stomach to the duodenum.

Pyloric stenosis (pi-LOR-ik steh-NO-sis): Narrowing of the pyloric sphincter (opening of the stomach to the duodenum); often occurs in infants between birth and 6 months of age.

Pyloroplasty (pi-LOR-o-plas-te): Surgical repair of the pyloric sphincter.

Pylorospasm (pi-LOR-o-spaz-im): Involuntary contraction of muscles at the pyloric sphincter.

Pylorus (pi-LOR-us): Distal region of the stomach near the duodenum.

Pyoderma (pi-o-DER-mah): Skin disease with formation of pus.

Pyorrhea (pi-or-RE-ah): Discharge of pus from the gums.

Pyosalpinx (pi-o-SAL-pinks): Pus in a fallopian tube.

Pyothorax (pi-o-THO-rax): Pus collection in the pleural cavity; empyema.

Pyrexia (pi-REK-se-ah): Fever.

Pyromania (pi-ro-MA-ne-ah): Strong impulse (obsessive urge) to set objects on fire.

Pyuria (pi-U-re-ah): Pus in urine; sign of urinary tract infection (UTI).

Q

Quadriplegia (kwod-rih-PLE-jah): Paralysis of all four limbs; both arms and both legs.

R

Radial (RA-de-al): Pertaining to the radius, a bone in the lower arm (thumb side of the wrist).

Radiation (ra-de-A-shun): Energy carried by a stream of particles.

Radiation fields (ra-de-A-shun feeldz): Dimensions of the size of radiation area used to treat a tumor from a specific angle.

Radiculitis (rah-dik-u-LI-tis): Inflammation of a spinal nerve root.

Radiculopathy (rah-dik-u-LOP-ah-the): Disease of a spinal nerve root.

Radiocurable tumor (ra-de-o-KYOOR-a-bl TU-mor): Tumor cells that are destroyed with radiotherapy.

Radiographer (ra-de-OG-rah-fer): One who assists a radiologist in performing diagnostic x-ray procedures.

Radioimmunoassay (ra-de-o-ih-mew-no-AS-a): Test combines radioactive chemicals and antibodies to detect minute quantities of substances in a patient's blood.

Radioisotope (ra-de-o-I-so-tope): Radioactive form of an element; radionuclide.

Radiolabeled compound (ra-de-o-LA-beld KOM-pownd): Radiopharmaceutical; used in nuclear medicine studies.

Radiology (ra-de-OL-o-je): Study of x-ray and other energy sources in the diagnosis of disease.

Radiolucent (ra-de-o-LU-sent): Permitting the passage of x-rays.

Radionuclide (ra-de-o-NU-klide): Radioactive form of an element; gives off energy in the form of radiation; radioisotope.

Radionuclide scans (ra-de-o-NU-klide skanz): Radioactive substances (radionuclides) are injected intravenously and scans (images) are taken of organs.

Radiopaque (rad-de-o-PAYK): Obstructing the passage of x- rays.

Radiopharmaceutical (ra-de-o-far-mah-SU-tih-kal): Radioactive drug (radionuclide plus a drug) that is administered safely for diagnostic and therapeutic purposes.

Radioresistant tumor (ra-de-o-re-ZIS-tant TU-mor): Tumor cells that require large doses of radiation to be destroyed.

Radiosensitive tumor (ra-do-o-SEN-sih-tiv TU-mor): Tumor in which radiation can cause death of cells without damage to surrounding tissue.

Radiosensitizers (ra-de-o-SEN-sih-ti-zerz): Drugs that increase the sensitivity of tumor cells to x- rays.

Radiotherapy (ra-de-o-THER-ah-pe): Treatment using radiation, high- energy x-rays or other radiation sources; also called radiation therapy or radiation oncology.

Radius (RA-de-us): Bone in the lower arm on the thumb side of the wrist.

Rales (raylz): Abnormal, fine, crackling sounds heard on auscultation when there is fluid in the alveoli.

Raynaud disease (ra-NO dih-ZEEZ): Recurrent episodes of pallor and cyanosis in fingers and toes caused by blood vessel spasms.

Reabsorption (re-ab-SORP-shun): Process in the kidney by which the renal tubules return materials necessary to the body back into the bloodstream.

Reality testing (re-AL-ih-te): Assessment of ability to perceive fact from fantasy.

Receptor (re-SEP-tor): Organ that receives and transmits a stumuls to sensory nerves; examples are skin, ears, eyes, and taste buds. In pharmacology, a receptor is a target substance with which a drug interacts in the body.

Recombinant DNA (re-KOM-bin-ant DNA): Insertion of a gene (region of DNA) from one organism into the DNA of another.

Rectal administration (REK-tal ad-min-is-TRA-shun): Drugs are inserted through the anus into the rectum.

Rectal carcinoma (REK-tal kar-sih-NO-mah): Cancer of the rectum.

Rectocele (REK-to-seel): Hernia of the rectum.

Rectum (REK-tum): Last section of the large intestine (colon).

Recumbent (re-KUM-bent): Lying down (prone or supine).

Red blood cell count (red blood sel kownt): Number of erythrocytes per cubic millimeter or microliter of blood.

Red blood cell morphology (red blud sel mor-FOL-o-je): Microscopic examination of a stained blood smear to determine the shape of individual red blood cells.

Red bone marrow (red bone MAH-row): Soft spongy tissue found in the interior of flat bones such as the hip and breast bone; site of hematopoiesis (formation of blood cells).

Reduction (reh-DUK-shun): Reconnection of a bone to its normal position after a fracture.

Refraction (re-FRAK-shun): Bending of light rays by the cornea, lens, and fluids of the eye to bring the rays into focus on the retina.

Relapse (RE-laps): Sliding or falling back; as in return of illness after apparent recovery.

Remission (re-MIH-shun): Return to good health; signs and symptoms of disease are gone.

Renal (RE-nal): Pertaining to the kidney.

Renal angiography (RE-nal an-je-OG-rah-fe): X-ray record of blood vessels of the kidney after injecting contrast material.

Renal angioplasty (RE-nal AN-je-o-plas-te): Dilation of narrowed areas in renal arteries.

Renal artery (RE-nal AR-teh-re): Blood vessel that carries blood to the kidney.

Renal calculi (RE-nal KAL-ku-li): Kidney stones.

Renal cell carcinoma (RE-nal sel kar-sih-NO-mah): Malignant tumor of the kidney in an adult.

Renal colic (RE-nal KOL-ik): Severe pain resulting from stones (calculi) in a ureter or in the kidney (renal pelvis).

Renal failure (RE-nal FAYL-yur): Failure of the kidneys to produce and excrete urine.

Renal hypertension (RE-nal hi-per-TEN-shun): High blood pressure resulting from kidney disease.

Renal ischemia (RE-nal is-KE-me-ah): Condition in which blood is held back from the kidney, often by blockage of renal arteries and arterioles.

Renal pelvis (RE-nal PEL-vis): Central collecting chamber of the kidney.

Renal transplantation (RE-nal trans-plan-TA-shun): Surgical transfer of a kidney from a donor to a recipient.

Renal tubule (RE-nal TU-bule): Microscopic tube in the kidney where urine is formed after filtration.

Renal vein (RE-nal vayn): Blood vessel that carries blood away from the kidney and back toward the heart.

Renin (RE-nin): Hormone synthesized, stored and secreted by the kidney to raise blood pressure.

Repression (re-PREH-shun): Defense mechanism by which unacceptable thoughts, feelings, and impulses are automatically pushed into the unconscious.

Resection (re-SEK-shun): Removal (excision) of an organ or part of the body.

Resistance (re-SIS-tans): Lack of beneficial drug response.

Respiration (res-pih-RA-shun): Exchange of gases (oxygen and carbon dioxide): at the lung capillaries (external respiration or breathing) and at the tissue capillaries (internal respiration).

Respiratory drug (res-pih-rah-TOR-e drug): Treats asthma, emphysema, and infections that affect breathing; bronchodilators

are respiratory drugs.

Response (re-SPONS): Desired and beneficial effect of a drug.

Restrictive lung disease (re-STRIK-tiv lung dih-ZEEZ): Condition in which lung expansion is limited by disease that affects the chest wall, pleura or lung tissue itself. Examples are pulmonary fibrosis, radiation damage, and pneumoconiosis.

Reticulocyte (reh-TIK-u-lo-site): Immature erythrocyte; a network (reticulum) of strands is seen after staining the cell with special dyes.

Retina (RET-ih-nah): Light-sensitive nerve cell layer of the eye containing photoreceptor cells (rods and cones).

Retinal detachment (RET-ih-nal de-TACH-ment): Two layers of the retina separate from each other.

Retinitis pigmentosa (ret-ih-NI-tis pig-men-TO-sah): Inflammation of the retina with pigmentation and progressive scarring of tissue.

Retinoblastoma (reh-tin-o-blas-TO-mah): Malignant tumor of the retina of the eye; childhood malignancy.

Retrocardiac (ret-ro-KAR-de-ac): Pertaining to behind the heart.

Retroflexion (re-tro-FLEK-shun): Bending backward.

Retrograde pyelogram (REH-tro-grade PI-el-o-gram): X-ray record of the kidney, ureters, and urinary bladder after injection of contrast material through a urinary catheter into the ureters.

Retroperitoneal (reh-tro-peh-rih-to-NE-al): Pertaining to behind the peritoneum (membrane surrounding the abdominal cavity).

Retroversion (re-tro-VER-zhun): Tipping backward of an organ or a part of the body; as in the uterus.

Reverse transcriptase inhibitor (re-VERS trans-SCRIPT-ayz in-hib-ih-tor): Drug used to treat AIDS by blocking an enzyme (reverse transcriptase), needed to make copies of HIV.

Rh factor (R-h FAK-tor): Antigen (protein) on red blood cells of Rh positive individuals.

Rhabdomyolysis (rab-do-mi-OL-ah-sis): Breakdown of damaged skeletal muscle.

Rhabdomyoma (rab-do-mi-O-mah): Benign tumor of striated, voluntary muscle (attached to bones).

Rhabdomyosarcoma (rab-do-mi-o-sar-KO-mah): Malignant tumor of striated, voluntary muscle.

Rheumatic heart disease (ru-MAT-ik hart dih-ZEEZ): Heart disease caused by rheumatic fever.

Rheumatoid arthritis (RU-mat-oyd ar-THRI-tis): Chronic joint condition with inflammation and pain; caused by autoimmune reaction against joint tissues.

Rheumatoid factor test (RU-mat-oyd FAK-tor test): Serum (blood minus clotting proteins and cells) is tested for the presence of an antibody found in many patients with rheumatoid arthritis.

Rheumatologist (ru-mat-OL-o-jist): Medical doctor specializing in diagnosis and treatment of joint disorders.

Rhinitis (ri-NI-tis): Inflammation of the nose.

Rhinoplasty (RI-no-plas-te): Surgical repair of the nose.

Rhinorrhea (ri-no-RE-ah): Discharge of mucus from the nose.

Rhonchi (RONG-ki): Loud, rumbling sounds heard on auscultation of bronchi that are obstructed by sputum.

Rhytidectomy (rih-tih-DEK-to-me): Plastic surgery to remove wrinkles and other signs of aging.

Ribonucleic acid (ri-bo-nu-KLE-ik AS-id): Cellular substance that, along with DNA, plays a role in protein synthesis.

Ribs (ribz): Twelve pairs of curved bones that form the chest wall.

Right lymphatic duct (rite limf-FAH-tik dukt): Receives lymph from the right side of the body and empties lymph into a vein in the neck.

Rod (rod): Photoreceptor cell of the retina essential for vision in low light and for peripheral vision.

Rotation (ro-TA-shun): Circular movement around an axis (central point).

Rubella (ru-BEL-ah): Exanthemous viral disease; German measles.

Rubeola (ru-be-O-lah): Exanthemous viral disease; measles.

Rugae (RU-guy): Ridges on the hard palate and the wall of the stomach.

S

Sacral (SA-kral): Pertaining to the sacrum.

Sacral vertebrae (SA-kral VER-teh-bray): Bones of the sacrum (lower back below the lumbar region).

Sacrum (SA-krum): Large, triangular bone of the back (spine).

Sagittal plane (SAJ-ih-tal playn): Lengthwise vertical plane dividing the body or structure into a right and left sides; lateral plane.

Saliva (sah-LI-vah): Digestive juice produced by salivary glands.

Salivary glands (SAL-ih-var-e glandz): Three pairs of exocrine glands secreting saliva into the mouth; parotid glands, sublingual glands, and submandibular glands.

Salpingectomy (sal-pin-JEK-to-me): Removal of a fallopian tube.

Salpingitis (sal-pin-JI-tis): Inflammation of a fallopian tube.

Salpingopharyngeal (sal-ping-go-fah-RIN-ge-al): Pertaining to the eustachian tube and the throat.

Sarcoidosis (sar-koy-DO-sis): Chronic inflammatory disease of unknown cause in which small nodules or tubercles develop in lungs, lymph nodes, and other organs.

Sarcoma (sar-KO-mah): Tumor (malignant): of flesh tissue such as bone, muscle, fat, and cartilage.

Sarcopenia (sar-ko-PE-ne-ah): Loss of muscle mass and strength; associated with aging.

Scabies (SKA-beez): Contagious, parasitic infection of the skin with intense pruritus (itching).

Scan (skan): Image of an area, organ, or tissue of the body obtained from ultrasound, radioactive tracer studies, or computed tomography.

Scapula (SKAP-u-lah): Shoulder blade.

Scapular (SKAP-u-lar): Pertaining to the shoulder blade.

Schedule (SKED-ule): The exact timing and frequency of drug administration.

Schizoid personality (SKIT-zoyd): Emotionally cold and aluf, as if split off from other people; indifferent to praise or criticism or to

the feelings of others.

Schizophrenia (skit-zo-FREN-e-ah): Psychosis marked by withdrawal from reality into an inner world of disorganized thinking and conflict.

Sciatic nerve (si-AH-tik nerv): Extends from the base of the spine down the thigh, lower leg, and foot. Sciatica is pain along the course of the nerve.

Sciatica (si-AH-tih-kah): Pain or inflammation along the course of the sciatic nerve.

Scintigraphy (SIN-tih-grah-fe): Diagnostic nuclear medicine test using radiopharmaceuticals and gamma cameras to create images.

Scirrhous (SKIR-us): Pertaining to hard, densely packed tumors, overgrown with fibrous tissue.

Sclera (SKLEH-rah): Tough, white outer coat of the eyeball.

Scleral buckle (SKLEH-ral BUK-el): Suture of a silicone band to the sclera over a detached portion of the retina.

Scleritis (skleh-RI-tis): Inflammation of the sclera.

Scleroderma (skleh-ro-DER-mah): Chronic progressive disease of the skin and internal organs with hardening and shrinking of connective tissue.

Scoliosis (sko-le-O-sis): Abnormal condition of lateral (sideways) curvature of the spine.

Scotoma (sko-TO-mah): Blind spot in the field of vision.

Scrotum (SKRO-tum): Sac that contains the testes and associated organs.

Sebaceous gland (se-BA-shus gland): Oil-secreting gland in the dermis; associated with hair follicles.

Seborrhea (seb-o-RE-ah): Condition marked by excessive secretion from sebaceous glands.

Seborrheic dermatitis (seb-o-RE-ik der-mah-TI-tis): Inflammation of the skin with excessive secretion from sebaceous glands.

Sebum (SE-bum): Oily substance secreted by sebaceous glands in the skin.

Secondary hypertension (SEK-on-dair-e hi-per-TEN-shun): High blood pressure caused by kidney disease or other disorders.

Secondary tumors (SEK-on-dair-e TU-morz): New types of tumors, originating at a site separate from the primary tumor.

Sedative (SED-ah-tiv): Drug that induces calmness, promotes sleep, and helps lessen anxiety.

Sella turcica (SEL-ah TUR-sik-ah): Cavity in the sphenoid bone at the base of the skull where the pituitary gland is located.

Semen (SE-men): Fluid discharged at ejaculation; consisting of sperm cells and secretions from the prostate gland, seminal vesicles, and bulbourethral glands.

Semen analysis (SE-men ah-NAL-ih-sis): Microscopic examination of ejaculated fluid.

Semicircular canals (seh-me-SER-ku-lar kah-NALZ): Passages in the inner ear associated with maintaining equilibrium.

Seminal vesicles (SEH-min-al VES-ik-ils): Pair of male exocrine glands lying behind the urinary bladder and opening into the vas deferens.

Seminiferous tubules (seh-mih-NIF-er-us TOOB-ulez): Narrow, coiled tubules that produce sperm in the testes.

Seminoma (seh-mih-NO-mah): Malignant tumor of a testis.

Sensory nerve (SEN-sor-e nerv): Carries messages to the brain and spinal cord from a receptor; afferent nerve.

Septal defects (SEP-tal DE-fekts): Small holes, present at birth, in the walls between the heart chambers.

Septum; *pl.* septa (SEP-tum; SEP-ta): Wall or partition. The interatrial septum lies between the atria of the heart and the interventricular septum is between the ventricles of the heart.

Serous (SER-us): Pertaining to a clear fluid (serum) that remains after blood has clotted. Serous tumors are cystic tumors filled with a thin, water fluid, resembling serum.

Serum (SER-um): Plasma minus clotting proteins (prothrombin and fibrinogen) and clotting cells.

Serum calcium (SER-um KAL-se-um test): Measurement of calcium level in serum (blood minus clotting proteins and cells).

Serum creatine kinase (SER-um KRE-ah-tine KI-nays): Measurement of the enzyme creatine kinase in serum; increased levels occur in muscular dystrophy, polymyositis, rhabdomyolysis, and traumatic injuries.

Sessile (SEH-sile): Type of polyp that extends from a broad base as opposed to growing on a stalk.

Severe combined immunodeficiency disease (seh-VEER kom-BINED ih-mu-no-deh-FIH-shen-se dih- ZEEZ): Condition

present at birth marked by a deficiency of B cells and T cells resulting in a lack of immunity.

Sex hormones (sex HOR-mones): Steroids (androgens and estrogens) produced by the adrenal cortex to influence male and female sexual characteristics.

Sexual dysfunctions (SEX-u-al dis-FUNK-shunz): Disturbances in a person's ability to respond sexually or to experience sexual pleasure.

Sexual masochism (SEX-u-al): Sexual gratification gained by being mutilated, beaten, or bound or otherwise made to suffer by another person.

Sexual sadism (SEX-u-al SA-dizm): Sexual gratification gained by inflicting physical or psychologic pain or harm on others.

Shingles (SHING-ulz): Viral (herpes zoster) illness that affects peripheral nerves; produces blisters and pain on the skin overlying the path of peripheral nerves.

Sialadenectomy (si-al-ah-deh-NEK-to-me): Removal (excision) of a salivary gland.

Sialadenitis (si-al-ah-deh-NI-tis): Inflammation of a salivary gland.

Sialolith (si-AL-o-lith): Salivary gland stone; lodged in a salivary gland or duct.

Sickle cell anemia (SIK-el sel ah-NE-me-uh): Hereditary of abnormal hemoglobin producing sickle-shaped erythrocytes and hemolysis.

Side effect (side eh-FEKT): Adverse effect that routinely results from the use of a drug.

Sideropenia (si-der-o-PE-ne-ah): Deficiency of iron in the blood.

Sigmoid colon (SIG-moyd KO-lon): Lower, s-shaped segment of the colon, just before the rectum.

Sigmoidoscopy (sig-moyd-OS-ko-pe): Visual endoscopic examination of the sigmoid colon.

Silicosis (sil-ih-KO-sis): Silica glass dust collects in the lungs; a type of pneumoconiosis.

Simulation (sim-u-LA-shun): Study prior to radiation therapy using CT scan or MRI to map treatment. It is required for all patients undergoing radiation therapy.

Single photon emission computed tomography (SING-il FO-ton e-MIH-shun com-PU-ted to-MOG-rah-fe): Radioactive tracer is injected intravenously, and a computer reconstructs a three-dimensional image based on a composite of many views; SPECT.

Sinoatrial node (si-no-A-tre-al node): Sensitive nervous tissue in the wall of the right atrium of the heart; pacemaker.

Sinus (SI-nus): Hollow air cavity within a bone.

Sinusitis (si-nu-SI-tis): Inflammation of paranasal sinuses.

Skin biopsy (skin BI-op-se): Suspicious skin lesions are removed or sampled and examined microscopically by a pathologist.

Skin test (skin test): Substances are injected intradermally or applied to the skin, and results are observed.

Slit lamp microscopy (slit lamp mi-KROS-ko-pe): Examination of anterior ocular (eye) structures under microscopic magnification.

Sodium (SO-de-um): Chemical element (Na) necessary for cellular functioning. As an electrolyte (NA+), its blood and urine levels

are regulated by the kidney.

Solid tumor (SOL-id TU-mor): Tumor composed of a mass of cells.

Somatic symptom disorders (so-MAT-ik SIM-tom dis-OR-derz): Presence of physical symptoms that cannot be explained by an actual physical disorder or mental disorder such as depression.

Somatotropin (so-mah-to-TRO-pin): Hormone secreted by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland; growth hormone.

Sonogram (SON-o-gram): Image of sound waves as they bounce off organs in the body; echogram or ultrasound image.

Spermatogenesis (sper-mah-to-JEN-eh-sis): Formation of sperm cells.

Spermatozoon, *pl.* spermatozoa (sper-mah-to-ZO-en; sper-mah-to-ZO-ah): Single sperm cell.

Spermolytic (sper-mo-LIH-tik): Pertaining to destruction of sperm.

Sphenoid bone (SFEH-noyd bone): Bat-shaped bone that forms part of the base of the skull.

Spherocytosis (sfer-o-si-TO-sis): Increase in numbers of sphere-shaped red blood cells, as in a type of anemia (hemolytic anemia).

Sphincter (SFINK-ter): Circular ring of muscle that constricts a passage or closes a natural opening.

Sphygmomanometer (sfig-mo-mah-NOM-eh-ter): Instrument to measure blood pressure.

Spina bifida (SPI-na BIF-ih-dah): Congenital defect in the lumbar spinal column caused by imperfect union of vertebral parts; spinal cord and meninges may herniate through the vertebral gap.

Spinal cavity (SPI-nal KAV-ih-te): Space within the spinal column (backbones) containing the spinal cord.

Spinal column (SPI-nal KOL-um): Bone tissue surrounding the spinal cavity.

Spinal cord (SPI-nal kord): Nervous tissue within the spinal cavity.

Spinal nerves (SPI-nal nervz): Pairs of nerves, arising one on each side of the spinal column. They transmit messages to and from the spinal cord.

Spinal stenosis (SPI-nal steh-NO-sis): Narrowing of the neural (spinal) canal in the lumbar spine.

Spirometer (spi-ROM-eh-ter): Instrument that measures breathing.

Spleen (spleen): Organ in the left upper quadrant of the abdomen that destroys wornout red blood cells, activates lymphocytes, and stores blood.

Splenectomy (spleh-NEK-to-me): Removal of the spleen.

Splenic flexure (SPLEN-ik FLEK-shur): Normal downward bend of the colon on the left side of the body toward the descending colon.

Splenomegaly (spleh-no-MEG-ah-le): Enlargement of the spleen.

Spondylolisthesis (spon-dih-lo-lis-THE-sis): Forward slipping (subluxation) of one vertebra over another.

Spondylosis (spon-dih-LO-sis): Abnormal condition of the spine (vertebral column) characterized by stiffness and fixation of vertebral joints.

Sprain (sprayn): Injury, often the result of trauma, involving overstretching of ligaments around a joint.

Sputum (SPU-tum): Material expelled from the chest by coughing or by clearing the throat; phlegm.

Sputum culture (SPU-tum KUL-chur): Sputum is collected and placed in a growth medium to analyze the type of microorganisms that may be present.

Squamous cell carcinoma (SKWA-mus sel kar-sih-NO-mah): Malignant tumor of the squamous epithelial cells in the epidermis.

Squamous epithelium (SKWA-mus ep-ih-THE-le-um): Flat, scale-like cells composing the epidermis (outer layer of the skin).

Staging of tumors (STA-jing of TU-morz): System of evaluating the extent of spread of tumors.

Stapedectomy (sta-peh-DEK-to-me): Removal of the stapes (third middle ear bone).

Stapes (STA-peez): Small, stirrup-shaped bone in the middle ear; third ossicle.

Staphylococci (staf-il-o-KOK-si): Berry or spherical shaped bacteria arranged in clusters.

Statins (STAT-inz): Drugs given to lower cholesterol in the bloodstream.

Steatorrhea (ste-ah-to-RE-ah): Discharge of fat in the feces due to improper digestion and malabsorption of fat.

Stem cell (STEM sel): Unspecialized cell that gives rise to mature, specialized forms. A hematopoietic stem cell is the progenitor for all different types of blood cells.

Stem cell transplantation (stem sel tranzplan-TA-shun): Stem cells (immature blood cells) are harvested from the bloodstream of a patient and then reinfused after the patient has received chemotherapy.

Stereotactic radiosurgery (steh-re-o-TAK-tik ra-de-o-SUR-jer-e): Single large dose of radiation delivered under stereotactic (highly precise) guidance to destroy a vascular abnormality or treat small brain tumors.

Sterilization (ster-ih-lih-ZA-shun): Procedure that removes an individual's ability to produce or release reproductive cells.

Sternum (STER-num): Breast bone.

Steroid (STEH-royd): Complex, naturally occurring chemical, such as a hormone.

Stethoscope (STETH-o-skope): Instrument for listening to sounds in the chest.

Stimulant (STIM-u-lant): Drug that excites and promotes activity.

Stimulus (STIM-u-lus): Agent of change (light, sound, and touch) that evokes a response.

Stomach (STUM-ak): Muscular organ that receives food from the esophagus; composed of three main parts: fundus (upper portion), body (middle section), and antrum (lower portion).

Stomatitis (sto-mah-TI-tis): Inflammation of the mouth.

Stool culture (stool KUL-chur): Test for microorganisms, such as bacteria, in feces.

Stool guaiac (stool GWI-ak): Test for detection of occult (hidden) blood in feces.

Strabismus (strah-BIZ-mus): Abnormal deviation of the eye; esotropia or exotropia are examples.

Strain (strayn): Muscle injury involving overstretching of muscle.

Stratified (STRAH-tih-fide): Arranged in layers.

Stratum corneum (STRAH-tum KOR-ne-um): Outermost layer of the epidermis, consisting of flattened, keratinized cells.

Stratum; *pl.* strata (STRAH-tum; STRAH-tah): A layer (of cells).

Streptococcus; *pl.* streptococci (strep-to-KOK-sis; strep-to-KOK-si): Berry or spherical shaped bacterium in a twisted chain formation.

Stress test (STRESS test): Exercise tolerance test (ETT) is used to determine the heart's response to physical exertion.

Striated muscle (STRI-a-ted MUS-el): Muscle attached to bones; composed of bands of fibers that make the muscle look striped or (striated). Also called voluntary or skeletal muscle.

Stricture (STRIK-shur): Narrowing of a tubular structure in the body.

Stridor (STRI-dor): Strained, high-pitched sound heard on inspiration caused by obstruction in the pharynx or larynx.

Stroma (STRO-mah): Connective and supportive tissue of an organ.

Stromal tissue (STRO-mal TIH-shu): Supportive, connective tissue of an organ.

Styloid process (STI-loyd PROS-es): Pole-like process extending downward from the temporal bone on each side of the skull.

Subcostal (sub-KOS-tal): Pertaining to under the ribs.

Subcutaneous (sub-ku-TA-ne-us): Pertaining to under the skin.

Subcutaneous layer (sub-ku-TA-ne-us LA-er): Innermost layer of the skin, containing fat tissue.

Subdural hematoma (sub-DU-ral he-mah-TO-mah): Collection of blood in the space below the dura mater surrounding the brain.

Subhepatic (sub-heh-PAT-ik): Pertaining to below the liver.

Sublingual (sub-LING-wal): Pertaining to under the tongue.

Sublingual administration (sub-LING-wal ad-min-is-TRA-shun): Drugs are given by placement under the tongue.

Subluxation (sub-luk-SA-shun): Partial or incomplete dislocation of a bone from its normal position; often a misalignment of vertebrae.

Submandibular (sub-man-DIB-u-lar): Pertaining to under the lower jaw (mandible).

Substance-related and addictive disorders (SUB-stans re-LA-ted and ah-DIK-tiv dis-OR-derz): Group of disorders marked by regular overuse of or dependence on psychoactive substances that affect the central nervous system.

Subungual (sub-UNG-wal): Pertaining to under a nail.

Sulcus; *pl.* sulci (SUL-kus; SUL-si): Depression or groove in the surface of the cerebral cortex; fissure.

Superego (su-per-E-go): Internalized conscience and moral aspect of the personality.

Superficial (su-per-FIH-shul): Pertaining to on the surface of the body.

Superior (su-PE-re-ur): Above another structure.

Supination (su-pih-NA-shun): As applied to the hand and forearm, the act of turning the palm upward.

Supine (su-PINE): Lying on the back (face up, palms up).

Supportive Psychotherapy (suh-POR-tiv si-ko-THER-ah-pe): Treatment that involves offering encouragement, and hope to patients facing difficult life transitions and events.

Suppressor T Cell (suh-PRE-sor T sel): Lymphocyte that inhibits the activity of B and T cell lymphocytes. Also called a Treg (regulatory T cell).

Supraclavicular (soo-prah-klah-VIK-u-lar): Pertaining to above the clavicle (collar bone).

Suprapubic (su-prah-PU-bik): Pertaining to above the pubic bones.

Suture (SU-chur): Immovable joint between bones, such as the skull (cranium).

Suture Joint (SU-chur joint): Immovable joint, such as between the bones of the skull.

Symbiosis (sim-be-O-sis): Close interaction between two organisms living in close association.

Symmetry (SIM-met-re): Measurement together; similarity of parts as in mirror images of each other.

Sympathetic Nerves (sim-pah-THET-ik nervz): Autonomic nerves that activate responses in times of stress; heartbeat, respiration, and blood pressure are affected.

Sympathomimetic (sim-pah-tho-mih-MET-ik): Pertaining to mimicking or copying the effect of the sympathetic nervous

system; adrenaline and norepinephrine are sympathomimetic hormones.

Symphysis (SIM-fih-sis): Bones that grow together separated by a piece of fibrocartilage. The pubic symphysis of the pelvis is an example.

Symptom (SIMP-tum): Subjective change in a condition as perceived by the patient.

Synapse (SIN-aps): Space through which a nervous impulse travels between nerve cells or between nerve and muscle or glandular cells.

Syncopal (SIN-ko-pal): Pertaining to syncope (fainting).

Syncope (SIN-ko-pe): Fainting; temporary loss of consciousness.

Syndactyly (sin-DAK-til-e): Fusion of fingers or toes; congenital anomaly.

Syndrome (SIN-drohm): Signs and symptoms that occur together indicating a particular condition or disorder.

Syndrome of inappropriate ADH (SIN-drohm of in-ah-PRO-pre-it ADH): Excessive secretion of antidiuretic hormone (ADH, vasopressin) leading to water retention.

Synergism (SIN-er-jizm): Drug action in which the combination of two drugs causes an effect that is greater than the sum of the individual effects of each drug.

Synergistic (sin-er-JIS-tik): Pertaining to synergism.

Synovial cavity (sih-NO-ve-al KAV-ih-te): Space between bones at a synovial joint; contains synovial fluid produced by the synovial membrane.

Synovial fluid (sih-NO-ve-al FLU-id): Viscous (sticky) fluid within the synovial cavity.

Synovial joint (sih-NO-ve-al joynt): Freely movable joint.

Synovial membrane (si-NO-ve-al MEM-brayn): Tissue lining the synovial cavity; it produces synovial fluid.

Synovitis (sin-o-VI-tis): Inflammation of the synovial membrane lining the synovial joint.

Synthesis (SIN-theh-sis): Putting together of simple substances to create something new and often more complex.

Syphilis (SIF-ih-lis): Sexually transmitted infection caused by bacteria (spirochetes). A chancre (ulcer) on the genitalia is a characteristic lesion.

Syringe (sih-RINJ): Instrument for introducing or withdrawing fluids from the body.

Systemic circulation (sis-TEM-ik ser-ku-LA-shun): Flow of blood from body tissues to the heart and from the heart back to the tissues.

Systemic lupus erythematosus (sis-TEM-ik LU-pus eh-rith-eh-mah-TO-sus): Chronic inflammatory autoimmune disease of collagen in skin, joints, and internal organs.

Systole (SIS-to-le): Contraction phase of the heartbeat.

T

T cell (T sel): Lymphocyte that acts directly on antigens to destroy them or produce chemicals (cytokines) such as interferons and interleukins that are toxic to antigens.

Tachycardia (tah-ke-KAR-de-ah): Rapid heartbeat.

Tachypnea (tah-KIP-ne-ah): Abnormally rapid breathing.

Tagging (TAG-ing): Attaching a radionuclide to a chemical and following its path in the body.

Talipes (TAL-ih-peez): Congenital abnormality of the hindfoot (involving the talus); clubfoot

Target tissue (TAR-get TIH-shu): Cells of an organ that are affected or stimulated by specific hormones.

Tarsals (TAR-salz): Ankle bones.

Tarsectomy (tar-SEK-to-me): Removal of an ankle bone.

Technetium Tc99M sestamibi scan (tek-NE-she-um TC99m ses-tah-MIH-be skan): Technetium Tc99m sestamibi injected intravenously is taken up in cardiac tissue, where it is detected by scanning.

Telemetry (tel-EM-et-re): Continuous monitoring of a patient's heart rhythm in a hospital.

Teletherapy (tel-e-THER-ah-pe): Radiation delivered to a tumor from a distant source, such as a linear accelerator or cyclotron.

Temporal bone (TEM-por-al bone): One of two bones on each side of the skull near the ear.

Temporomandibular joint (tem-por-o-man-DIB-u-lar joynt): Connection on either side of the head between the temporal bone of the skull and mandibular bone of the jaw.

Tendinosis (ten-dih-NO-sis): Abnormal condition of tendons.

Tendon (TEN-dun): Fibrous, connective tissue binding muscles to bones.

Tenorrhaphy (ten-OR-ah-fe): Suture of a tendon.

Tenosynovitis (ten-o-sih-no-VI-tis): Inflammation of a tendon and its sheath or covering.

Teratoma (ter-ah-TO-mah): Malignant tumor of a testis or ovary; composed of embryonic cells that develop into different types of tissue.

Testes (TES-teez): Two glands enclosed in the scrotal sac of a male; responsible for sperm production and testosterone secretion.

Testicular (tes-TIK-u-lar): Pertaining to a testis or testicle.

Testicular cancer (tes-TIK-u-lar KAN-ser): Malignant tumor of the testicles.

Testicular torsion (tes-TIK-u-lar TOR-shun): Twisting of the spermatic cord and blood vessels of the testes.

Testis (TES-tis): Male gonad that produces sperm and the hormone, testosterone.

Testosterone (tes-TOS-teh-rone): Male hormone secreted by the testes.

Tetany (TET-ah-ne): Constant muscle contractions; associated with hypocalcemia and hypoparathyroidism.

Tetraiodothyronine (teh-rah-i-o-do-THI-ro-neen): Hormone secreted by the thyroid gland that increases body metabolism; thyroxine (T4).

Tetralogy of Fallot (teh-TRAH-lo-je of fah-LO): Four separate defects of the heart occurring at birth.

Thalamic (THAL-ah-mik): Pertaining to the thalamus.

Thalamus (THAL-ah-mus): Main relay center of the brain. Optic nerve fibers pass through the thalamus on their way to the cerebral cortex.

Thalassemia (thal-ah-SE-me-ah): Inherited defect in the ability to produce hemoglobin, usually seen in persons of Mediterranean background.

Thallium scan (THAL-e-um skan): Thallium 201 is injected intravenously to allow for myocardial perfusion and assess damage to heart muscle from heart attacks.

Therapeutic (ther-ah-PU-tik): Pertaining to treatment or therapy.

Thoracentesis (thor-ah-sen-TE-sis): Surgical puncture to remove fluid from the chest.

Thoracic (thor-AH-sik): Pertaining to the chest.

Thoracic cavity (thor-AH-sik KAV-ih-te): Space in the chest containing the heart, lungs, bronchial tubes, trachea, esophagus, and other organs.

Thoracic duct (thor-AH-sik dukt): Large lymphatic vessel in the upper chest.

Thoracic vertebrae (thor-AH-sik VER-teh-bray): Twelve backbones in the region of the chest.

Thoracoscopy (thor-ah-KOS-ko-pe): Visual examination of the chest using small incision and an endoscope.

Thoracotomy (thor-ah-KOT-o-me): Incision of the chest.

Thrill (thril): Vibration felt over an area of turmoil in blood flow (as a blocked artery).

Thrombin (THROM-bin): Enzyme that converts fibrinogen to fibrin during coagulation.

Thrombocyte (THROM-bo-site): Clotting cell; platelet.

Thrombocytopenia (throm-bo-si-to-PE-ne-ah): Deficiency of clotting cells.

Thrombolysis (throm-BOL-ih-sis): Destruction of a clot.

Thrombolytic therapy (throm-bo-LIH-tik THER-ah-pe): Treatment with drugs to break down clots that may abnormally form in blood vessels.

Thrombophlebitis (throm-bo-fleh-BI-tis): Inflammation of a vein associated with formation of a thrombus or clot.

Thrombosis (throm-BO-sis): Abnormal condition of clot formation in a blood vessel.

Thrombotic occlusion (throm-BOT-ik ok-LU-zhen): Blockage of a blood vessel caused by thrombosis or clot formation.

Thrombus (THROM-bus): Abnormal clot formation in a blood vessel; a blood clot.

Thymectomy (thi-MEK-to-me): Removal of the thymus gland.

Thymoma (thi-MO-mah): Tumor of the thymus gland.

Thymus gland (THI-mus gland): Lymphoid organ in the mediastinum that produces T cell lymphocytes and aids in the immune response.

Thyroid carcinoma (THI-royd kar-sih-NO-mah): Malignant tumor of the thyroid gland.

Thyroid function tests (THI-royd FUNK-shun tests): Measurement of thyroxine, triiodothyronine, and thyroid-stimulating hormone

in the bloodstream.

Thyroid gland (THI-royd gland): Endocrine gland that surrounds the trachea in the neck; secretes the hormone, thyroxine.

Thyroid hormone (THI-royd HOR-mone): Secretion from the thyroid gland that stimulates cellular metabolism.

Thyroid scan (THI-royd skan): Administration of a radioactive compound and visualization of the thyroid gland with a scanning device.

Thyroiditis (thi-royd-I-tis): Inflammation of the thyroid gland.

Thyrotoxicosis (thi-ro-tok-sih-KO-sis): Hyperthyroidism (overactivity of the thyroid gland).

Thyrotropin (thi-ro-TRO-pin): Hormone secreted by the anterior lobe of the pituitary gland; stimulates the thyroid gland to secrete its hormones. Also called thyroid-stimulating hormone or TSH.

Thyroxine (thi-ROK-sin): Hormone secreted by the thyroid gland to increase body metabolism; T4.

Tibia (TIB-e-ah): Larger of the two lower leg bones.

Tibial (TIB-e-al): Pertaining to the larger of the two lower leg bones.

Tic (TIK): Involuntary movement of a small group of muscles.

Tinea (TIN-e-ah): Infection of the skin caused by a fungus; tinea corporis (ringworm) and tinea pedis (athlete's foot) are examples.

Tinnitus (TIN-nih-tus): Sensation of noises (ringing, buzzing, whistling, booming) in the ears without an external source.

Tolerance (TOL-er-antz): Ability of T lymphocytes to recognize and accept the body's own antigens as “self” or friendly. Once tolerance is established, the immune system will not react against

the body's own cells. Also in pharmacology tolerance is a drug action in which larger and larger doses must be given to achieve a desired effect.

Tonic-clonic seizure (TON-ik-KLON-ik SE-zhur): Major seizure affecting the brain in epilepsy; grand-mal seizure.

Tonometry (to-NOM-eh-tre): Measurement of tension and pressure within the eye; glaucoma test.

Tonsillar (TON-sih-lar): Pertaining to the tonsils.

Tonsillectomy (ton-sih-LEK-to-me): Removal of tonsils.

Tonsillitis (ton-sih-LI-tis): Inflammation of tonsils.

Tonsils (TON-silz): Masses of lymphatic tissue in the back of the oropharynx.

Topical application (TOP-ik-el ap-lih-KA-shun): Drugs are applied locally on the skin or mucous membranes of the body; ointments, lotions, and creams are examples.

Tourette syndrome (tur-ET SIN-drohm): Involuntary, spasmodic movements; uncontrollable vocal sounds; and inappropriate words.

Toxic (TOK-sik): Pertaining to a toxin (a poisonous or harmful substance).

Toxicity (tok-SIS-ih-te): Harmful effect of a drug.

Toxicology (tok-sih-KOL-o-je): Branch of pharmacology that studies harmful chemicals and their effects on the body.

Toxin (TOK-sin): Poison or harmful substance.

Trabeculae (trah-BEK-u-le): Supporting latticework of bony fibers in cancellous, spongy (soft) bone.

Trabeculoplasty (trah-bek-u-lo-PLAS-te): Procedure using a laser beam to reduce intraocular pressure in patients with glaucoma.

Tracer studies (TRA-ser STUD-eez): Radionuclides are attached to chemicals, used as tags or markers, and followed as they travel through the body.

Trachea (TRA-ke-ah): Windpipe; tube leading from the pharynx (throat) and larynx (voice box) to the bronchial tubes.

Tracheal (TRA-ke-al): Pertaining to the trachea.

Tracheal stenosis (TRA-ke-al steh-NO-sis): Narrowing of the trachea.

Tracheostomy (tra-ke-OS-to-me): New opening of the trachea to the outside of the body.

Tracheotomy (tra-ke-OT-o-me): Incision of the trachea.

Tranquilizer (TRAN-kwil-i-zer): Drug that controls anxiety and severe disturbances of behavior.

Transcatheter aortic valve replacement (tranz-KATH-eh-ter a-OR-tik valv re-PLAYS-ment): Placement of a balloon-expandable aortic heart valve into the body via a catheter; TAVR.

Transference (trans-FUR-enz): Process by which a patient relates to a therapist as though the therapist were a prominent childhood figure.

Transfusion (tranz-FU-zhun): Transfer of blood from one person to another.

Transhepatic (tranz-heh-PAT-ik): Pertaining to through or across the liver.

Transient ischemic attack (TRAN-ze-ent is-KE-mik ah-TAK): Fleeting episode of ischemia (holding back blood) in the brain; TIA.

Transport (TRANS-port): Movement of a drug across a cell membrane into body cells.

Transurethral (tranz-u-RE-thral): Pertaining to across or through the urethra.

Transurethral resection of the prostate (tranz-u-RE-thral re-SEK-shun of the PROS-tayt): Removal of portions of prostate gland through the urethra; TURP.

Transverse plane (tranz-VERS playn): Horizontal (cross-sectional) plane dividing the body into upper and lower portions; axial plane.

Transvestic fetishism (trans-VES-tik FET-ish-izm): Wearing clothing of the opposite sex accompanied by recurrent and intense sexual arousal.

Tricuspid valve (tri-KUS-pid valv): Valve located between the right atrium and right ventricle of the heart.

Tricyclic antidepressants (tri-SIK-lik an-tih-deh-PRES-antz): Group of drugs used to treat severe depression; TCAs.

Trigeminal neuralgia (tri-JEM-in-al nur-AL-jah): Flashes of stab-like pain along the trigeminal nerve (5th cranial nerve). The trigeminal nerve has branches to the eye, upper jaw, and lower jaw.

Triglycerides (tri-GLIS-eh-ridez): Fat molecules composed of three parts fatty acids and one part glycerol; chief form of lipids.

Trigone (TRI-gohn): Triangular area in the urinary bladder where the ureters enter and the urethra exits.

Trigonitis (tri-go-NI-tis): Inflammation of the trigone of the urinary bladder.

Triiodothyronine (tri-i-o-do-THI-ro-neen): Hormone secreted by the thyroid gland; stimulates body metabolism; T3.

Tubal ligation (TOOB-al li-GA-shun): Blocking the fallopian tubes to prevent fertilization from occurring.

Tube thoracostomy (toob thor-ah-KOS-to-me): Flexible, plastic chest tube is passed into the pleural space through an opening in the chest.

Tuberculin test (tu-BER-ku-lin test): Determines past or present exposure to tuberculosis based on a positive skin test.

Tuberculosis (tu-ber-ku-LO-sis): Infectious disease caused by *Mycobacterium tuberculosis.* Lungs are usually involved but other organs may be affected.

Tuning fork test (TU-ning fork test): Test of ear conduction using a vibration source (tuning fork).

Tympanic membrane (tim-PAN-ik MEM-brayn): Membrane between the outer and middle ear; eardrum.

Tympanoplasty (tim-pah-no-PLAS-te): Surgical repair of the eardrum.

U

Ulcer (UL-ser): Open sore on the skin or mucous membranes of the body.

Ulcerating tumor (UL-ser-A-ting TU-mor): Tumor growth that has open, exposed surfaces resulting from death of overlying tissue.

Ulcerative colitis (UL-ser-ah-tiv ko-LI-tis): Chronic inflammation of the colon with the presence of ulcers.

Ulna (UL-nah): One of two bones in the lower arm; connects to the wrist on the little finger side.

Ulnar (UL-nar): Pertaining to the ulna.

Ultrasonography (ul-trah-so-NOG-rah-fe): Use of high frequency sound waves to produce a record or picture of an organ or tissue.

Ultrasound transducer (ul-trah-SOWND tranz-DU-ser): Handheld device that sends and receives ultrasound signals.

Umbilical region (um-BIL-ih-kal RE-jen): Central abdominopelvic region near the navel; umbilical means pertaining to the navel.

Undifferentiated (un-dif-er-EN-she-a-ted): Description of cells or tissues that do not have specialized ("mature") structures or functions. Undifferentiated cancer cells often grow and spread quickly.

Unilateral (u-nih-LAT-er-al): Pertaining to one side.

Upper gastrointestinal series (UP-er gas-tro-in-TEST-in-al SER-eez): X-ray images of the esophagus, stomach, and small intestine obtained after administering barium by mouth.

Uptake (UP-take): Rate of absorption of a radionuclide into an organ or tissue.

Urea (u-RE-ah): Major nitrogenous waste in urine.

Uremia (u-RE-me-ah): Excessive amount of urea and other nitrogenous wastes in the blood.

Ureter (U-reh-ter): One of two tubes carrying urine from the kidneys to the urinary bladder.

Ureteroileostomy (u-re-ter-o-il-OS-to-me): New opening of the ureters to a portion of the ileum, removed from its normal location and connected to the outside of the body. It serves as a passageway for urine to leave the body when the urinary bladder is removed.

Ureteroneocystostomy (u-re-ter-o-ne-o-sis-TOS-to-me): Surgical transplantation of a ureter to a new site in the urinary bladder. This occurs with a kidney transplant.

Ureteroplasty (u-re-ter-o-PLAS-te): Surgical repair of ureter.

Urethra (u-RE-thrah): Tube leading from the urinary bladder to the outside of the body.

Urethral stricture (u-RE-thral STRIK-shur): Narrowing of the urethra.

Urethritis (u-re-THRI-tis): Inflammation of the urethra.

Urethroplasty (u-re-thro-PLAS-te): Surgical repair of the urethra.

Uric acid (U-rik acid): Nitrogenous waste formed when proteins are used in cells. It is excreted by the kidneys in urine.

Uric Acid Test (U-rik AS-id test): Measurement of uric acid in serum; high levels are associated with gouty arthritis.

Urinalysis (u-rin-AL-ih-sis): Series of tests to evaluate the composition of urine. It includes tests to determine color, appearance, sugar, bacteria, and protein in urine.

Urinary bladder (U-rin-ar-e BLAD-er): Hollow, muscular sac that holds and stores urine.

Urinary catherization (U-rin-ar-e kath-et-er-ih-ZA-shun): Passage of a catheter into the urinary bladder for temporary or permanent drainage of urine.

Urinary incontinence (U-rin-ar-e in-KON-tin-entz): Involuntary passage of urine.

Urinary retention (U-rin-ar-e re-TEN-shun): Inability to pass urine, which is held back in the urinary bladder.

Urination (u-rin-A-shun): Process of expelling urine; voiding; micturition.

Urography (u-ROG-rah-fe): Taking x-ray images of the urinary tract after injecting contrast.

Urologist (u-ROL-o-gist): Specialist in the study of the urinary tract. Physician specializing in operating on the urinary tract in males and females and on the reproductive tract in males.

Urticaria (ur-tih-KA-re-ah): Acute allergic reaction in which red, round wheals develop on the skin; hives.

Uterine prolapse (U-ter-ine PRO-laps): Sagging or drooping of the uterus.

Uterus (U-ter-us): Muscular organ in a female that holds the embryo/fetus as it develops; womb.

Uveitis (u-ve-I-tis): Inflammation of the uvea, which is the vascular layer of the eye (including the iris, choroid, and ciliary body).

Uvula (U-vu-lah): Soft tissue hanging from the middle of the soft palate, at the back of the mouth.

Uvulectomy (u-vu-LEK-to-me): Removal (excision) of the uvula.

V

Vaccination (vak-sih-NA-shun): Exposure of an individual to a foreign protein (antigen) that provokes an immune response. It is a type of acquired immunity.

Vaccine (vak-SEEN): Weakened or dead antigen is administered to induce production of antibodies resulting in immunity.

Vagal (VA-gal): Pertaining to the vagus nerve.

Vagina (vah-JI-nah): Muscular, mucosal canal extending from the uterus and the cervix to the exterior of the body.

Vaginal orifice (VAH-jih-nal OR-ih-fis): Opening of the vagina to the exterior of the body.

Vaginitis (vah-jih-NI-tis): Inflammation of the vagina.

Vagus nerve (VA-gus nerv): Tenth cranial nerve with branches to the chest and abdominal organs.

Valve (valv): Structure in a vein or in the heart that temporarily closes an opening so that blood flows in the proper direction.

Valvotomy (val-VOT-o-me): Incision of a valve.

Valvuloplasty (val-vu-lo-PLAS-te): Surgical repair of a valve.

Varicella (var-ih-SEL-ah): Exanthematous viral disease marked by itchy red rash (herpes zoster) that develops into blisters and pustules and then scabs; chicken pox.

Varicocele (VAR-ih-ko-seel): Enlarged, dilated veins near a testicle.

Varicose veins (VAR-ih-kos vaynz): Swollen, twisted veins, often occurring in the legs.

Vas deferens (vas DEF-er-enz): Narrow tube (one on each side) that carries sperm from the epididymis into the body, around the urinary bladder toward the urethra.

Vascular (VAS-ku-lar): Pertaining to a blood vessels.

Vasectomy (vas-EK-to-me): Bilateral surgical removal of a part of the vas deferens; male sterilization.

Vasoconstriction (vaz-o-kon-STRIK-shun): Narrowing of a blood vessel.

Vasodilation (vaz-o-di-LA-shun): Widening of a blood vessel; vasodilatation.

Vasodilator (vaz-o-DI-la-tor): Drug that widens blood vessels.

Vasopressin (vaz-o-PRES-in): Hormone secreted by the posterior lobe of the pituitary gland; stimulates the kidneys to reabsorb water. Also called antidiuretic hormone or ADH.

Vasovasostomy (vas-o-vas-OS-to-me): Rejoining the cut ends of the vas deferens to restore male fertility; reversal of vasectomy.

Vegetations (vej-eh-TA-shunz): Collections of clotted material that accumulate on endocardium and valves of the heart in conditions such as endocarditis and rheumatic heart disease.

Vein (vayn): Thin-walled blood vessel that carries oxygen-poor (deoxygenated) blood from body tissues back to the heart.

Vena cava; *pl.* venae cavae (VE-nah KA-vah; VE-ne KA-ve): Largest vein in the body. Venae cavae (inferior and superior) return blood to the heart from the body tissues.

Venipuncture (ve-nih-PUNK-chur): Incision of a vein to remove blood.

Venous (VE-nus): Pertaining to a vein.

Ventilation-perfusion scan (ven-tih-LA-shun per-FU-zhun scan): Nuclear medicine lung scan using radioactive material to evaluate air flow (ventilation) and blood flow (perfusion) in the lungs; V/Q scan.

Ventral (VEN-tral): Pertaining to the front or anterior portion of the body.

Ventricle (VEN-trih-kel): One of two lower chambers of the heart.

Ventricles of the brain (VEN-trih-kulz of the brayn): Canals in the brain that contain cerebrospinal fluid.

Venule (VEN-ule): Small vein.

Verruca; *p*. verrucae (veh-RU-kah; veh-RU-ke): Small benign growth (wart) in the skin; caused by a virus.

Verrucous tumor (veh-RU-kus TU-mor): Tumor whose growth pattern resembles a wart.

Vertebra (VER-teh-brah): Single backbone; individual segment of the spine.

Vertebrae (VER-teh-bray): Backbones.

Vertebral (ver-TE-bral): Pertaining to backbones.

Vertebroplasty (ver-TE-bro-plas-te): Surgical repair of a vertebra.

Vertigo (VER-tih-go): Sensation of irregular or whirling motion either of oneself or of external objects.

Vesicle (VES-ih-kl): Small collection of clear fluid (serum); blister.

Vesicoureteral reflux (ves-ik-o-u-RE-ter-al RE-fluks): Backflow of urine from the urinary bladder to the ureters.

Vestibule (VES-tib-ule): Central cavity of the labyrinth in the inner ear; connecting the cochlea and semicircular canals.

Vestibulocochlear (ves-tib-u-lo-KO-kle-ar): Pertaining to the vestibule and cochlea of the inner ear.

Villi (VIL-i): Microscopic projections in the wall of the small intestine that absorb nutrients into the bloodstream.

Viral hepatitis (VI-ral heh-pah-TI-tis): Inflammation of the liver caused by a virus.

Viral load test (VI-ral LOAD test): Measures the amount of HIV in the blood stream.

Viral oncogenes (VI-ral ONK-o-jenz): Pieces of DNA from viruses that infect a normal cell and cause it to become malignant.

Virus (VI-rus): Infectious agent that reproduces by entering a host cell and using the host's genetic material to make copies of itself.

Viscera (VIS-er-ah): Internal organs.

Visceral (VIS-er-al): Pertaining to internal organs.

Visceral muscle (VIS-er-al MUS-el): Muscle that lines the walls of internal organs; smooth, involuntary muscle.

Visceral pleura (VIS-er-al PLUR-ah): Innermost membrane of the pleura, lying closest to the lung tissue itself.

Visual acuity test (VIZ-u-al ah-KYOO-ih-te test): Eye exam that measures clarity of vision

Visual field test (VIZ-u-al field test): Eye examination that measure of the entire scope of vision (peripheral and central).

Vitamin (VI-ta-min): Substance found in foods and essential in small quantities for growth and good health.

Vitiligo (vit-ih-LI-go): Patches of white, unpigmented skin surrounded by areas of normal skin; leukoderma.

Vitrectomy (vi-TREK-to-me): Removal of vitreous humor.

Vitreous humor (VIT-re-us HU-mor): Soft, jelly-like material behind the lens in the vitreous chamber; helps maintain the shape of the eyeball.

Voiding (VOY-ding): Urination.

Voiding cystourethrogram (VOY-ding sis-to-u-RE-thro-gram): X-ray record of the urinary bladder and urethra taken while patient is urinating and after contrast material is injected retrograde through the urethra.

Volvulus (VOL-vu-lus): Twisting of the intestine on itself.

Vomer (VO-mer): Thin plate of bone that forms part of the nasal septum, which is the wall separating the nostrils.

Voyerism (VOY-yer-izm): Abnormal desire to look at sexual organs or watch sexual acts.

Vulva (VUL-vah): External genitalia of the female.

Vulvodynia (vul-vo-DIN-e-ah): Pain in the female genitalia.

Vulvovaginitis (vul-vo-vah-jah-NI-tis): Inflammation of the vulva and vagina.

W

Wasting syndrome (WAYST-ing SIN-drohm): Weight loss and decrease in muscle strength, appetite, and mental activity that occurs with AIDS.

Western blot (WES-tern blot): Specific test to detect presence of anti-HIV antibodies in the bloodstream.

Wheal (weel): Smooth, edematous (swollen): papule or plaque that is centrally redder than the surrounding skin; often accompanied by itching.

Wheezes (WEEZ-ez): Continuous high-pitched whistling sounds produced during breathing.

White blood cell count (wite blood sel kownt): Number of leukocytes per cubic millimeter or microliter of blood.

White blood cell differential (wite blood sel dif-er-EN-shul): Percentages of different types of leukocytes in the blood.

Wilms tumor (wilmz TU-mur): Malignant neoplasm (tumor) of the kidney that occurs in childhood.

X

Xanthoma (zan-THO-mah): Soft, yellowish, round nodule found on the eyelids; xanthelasma.

Xenophobia (zen-o-FO-be-ah): Fear of strangers.

Xerophthalmia (zer-of-THAL-me-ah): Condition of excessive dryness of the eye.

Xerosis (zer-O-sis): Very dry skin.

Xerostomia (zer-o-STO-me-ah): Dryness of the mouth.

Xiphoid process (ZIF-oyd PROS-es): Lower, narrow portion of the sternum (breastbone).

Y

Yellow bone marrow (YEL-o bone MAH-ro): Fatty tissue found in the medullary cavity (shaft) of most adult long bones.

Z

Zygomatic bones (zi-go-MAT-ik bones): Cheekbones of the face.

Zygote (ZI-gote): Stage in prenatal development from fertilization and implantation to two weeks.

Glossary

Medical Word Parts—English*

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
a-, an-	no; not; without
ab-	away from
abdomin/o	abdomen
-ac	pertaining to
acanth/o	spiny; thorny
acetabul/o	acetabulum (hip socket)
acous/o	hearing
acr/o	extremities; top; extreme point
acromi/o	acromion (extension of shoulder bone)
actin/o	light
acu/o	sharp; severe; sudden
-acusis	hearing
ad-	toward
-ad	toward
aden/o	gland
adenoid/o	adenoids
adip/o	fat
adren/o	adrenal gland
adrenal/o	adrenal gland
aer/o	air
af-	toward
agglutin/o	clumping; sticking together
-agon	assemble, gather
agora-	marketplace
-agra	excessive pain
-al	pertaining to
alb/o	white
albin/o	white
albumin/o	albumin (protein)
alges/o	sensitivity to pain
-algesia	sensitivity to pain
-algia	pain
all/o	other

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
alveol/o	alveolus; air sac; small sac
ambly/o	dim; dull
-amine	nitrogen compound
amni/o	amnion (sac surrounding the embryo)
amyl/o	starch
an/o	anus
-an	pertaining to
ana-	up; apart; backward; again, anew
andr/o	male
aneurysm/o	aneurysm (widened blood vessel)
angi/o	vessel (blood)
anis/o	unequal
ankyl/o	stiff
ante-	before; forward
anter/o	front
anthrac/o	coal
anthr/o	antrum of the stomach
anti-	against
anxi/o	uneasy; anxious
aort/o	aorta (largest artery)
-apheresis	removal
aphth/o	ulcer
apo-	off, away
aponeur/o	aponeurosis (type of tendon)
append/o	appendix
appendic/o	appendix
aque/o	water
-ar	pertaining to
-arche	beginning
arter/o	artery
arteri/o	artery
arteriol/o	arteriole (small artery)
arthr/o	joint

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
-arthria	articulate (speak distinctly)
articul/o	joint
-ary	pertaining to
asbest/o	asbestos
-ase	enzyme
-asthenia	lack of strength
atel/o	incomplete
ather/o	plaque (fatty substance)
-ation	process; condition
atri/o	atrium (upper heart chamber)
audi/o	hearing
audit/o	hearing
aur/o	ear
auricul/o	ear
aut/o	self, own
aut-, auto-	self, own
axill/o	armpit
azot/o	urea; nitrogen
bacill/o	bacilli (bacteria)
bacteri/o	bacteria
balan/o	glans penis
bar/o	pressure; weight
bartholin/o	Bartholin glands
bas/o	base; opposite of acid
bi-	two
bi/o	life
bil/i	bile; gall
bilirubin/o	bilirubin
-blast	embryonic; immature cell
-blastoma	immature tumor (cells)
blephar/o	eyelid
bol/o	cast; throw
brachi/o	arm

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
brachy-	short
brady-	slow
bronch/o	bronchial tube
bronchi/o	bronchial tube
bronchiol/o	bronchiole
bucc/o	cheek
bunion/o	bunion
burs/o	bursa (sac of fluid near joints)
byssin/o	cotton dust
cac/o	bad
calc/o	calcium
calcane/o	calcaneus (heel bone)
calci/o	calcium
cali/o, calic/o	calyx (cup-shaped)
capillar/o	capillary (tiniest blood vessel)
capn/o	carbon dioxide
-capnia	carbon dioxide
carcin/o	cancerous; cancer
cardi/o	heart
carp/o	wrist bones (carpals)
cata-	down
caud/o	tail; lower part of body
caus/o	burn; burning
cauter/o	heat; burn
cec/o	cecum (first part of the colon)
-cele	hernia
celi/o	belly; abdomen
-centesis	puncture to remove fluid
cephal/o	head
cerebell/o	cerebellum (posterior part of the brain)
cerebr/o	cerebrum (largest part of the brain)
cerumin/o	cerumen
cervic/o	neck; cervix (neck of uterus)

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
-chalasia	relaxation
-chalasis	relaxation
cheil/o	lip
chem/o	drug; chemical
-chezia	defecation; elimination of wastes
chir/o	hand
chlor/o	green
chlorhydr/o	hydrochloric acid
chol/e	bile; gall
cholangi/o	bile vessel
cholecyst/o	gallbladder
choledoch/o	common bile duct
cholesterol/o	cholesterol
chondr/o	cartilage
chore/o	dance
chori/o	chorion (outermost membrane of the fetus)
chorion/o	chorion
choroid/o	choroid layer of eye
chrom/o	color
chron/o	time
chym/o	to pour
cib/o	meal
-cide	killing
-cidal	pertaining to killing
cine/o	movement
cirrh/o	orange-yellow
cis/o	to cut
-clasis	to break
-clast	to break
claustr/o	enclosed space
clavicul/o	clavicle (collar bone)
-clysis	irrigation; washing
coagul/o	coagulation (clotting)

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
-coccus (-cocci, *pl.*)	berry-shaped bacterium
coccyg/o	coccyx (tailbone)
cochle/o	cochlea (inner part of ear)
col/o	colon
coll/a	glue
colon/o	colon (large intestine)
colp/o	vagina
comat/o	deep sleep
comi/o	to care for
con-	together, with
coni/o	dust
conjunctiv/o	conjunctiva (lines the eyelids)
-constriction	narrowing
contra-	against; opposite
cor/o	pupil
core/o	pupil
corne/o	cornea
coron/o	heart (crown or circle)
corpor/o	body
cortic/o	cortex, outer region
cost/o	rib
crani/o	skull
cras/o	mixture; temperament
crin/o	secrete
-crine	secrete; separate
-crit	separate
cry/o	cold
crypt/o	hidden
culd/o	cul-de-sac
-cusis	hearing
cutane/o	skin
cyan/o	blue
cycl/o	ciliary body of eye; cycle; circle

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
-cyesis	pregnancy
cyst/o	urinary bladder; cyst; sac of fluid
cyt/o	cell
-cyte	cell
-cytosis	abnormal condition of cells; slight increase in numbers
dacry/o	tear
dacryoaden/o	tear gland
dacryocyst/o	tear sac; lacrimal sac
dactyl/o	fingers; toes
de-	lack of; down; less; removal of
dem/o	people
dent/i	tooth; teeth
derm/o	skin
-derma	skin
dermat/o	skin
desicc/o	drying
-desis	bind, tie together
dia-	complete; through
diaphor/o	sweat
-dilation	widening; stretching; expanding
dipl/o	double
dips/o	thirst
dist/o	far; distant
dors/o	back (of body)
dorsi-	back
-dote	to give
-drome	to run
duct/o	to lead, carry
duoden/o	duodenum
dur/o	dura mater
-dynia	pain
dys-	abnormal, bad, difficult, painful
-eal	pertaining to

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
ec-	out; outside
echo-	reflected sound
-ectasia	dilation; dilatation; widening
-ectasis	dilation; dilatation; widening
ecto-	out; outside
-ectomy	removal; excision; resection
-edema	swelling
-elasma	flat plate
electr/o	electricity
em-	in
-ema	condition
-emesis	vomiting
-emia	blood condition
-emic	pertaining to blood condition
emmetr/o	in due measure
en-	in; within
encephal/o	brain
end-	in; within
endo-	in; within
enter/o	intestines (usually small intestine)
eosin/o	red; rosy; dawn-colored
epi-	above; upon; on
epididym/o	epididymis
epiglott/o	epiglottis
episi/o	vulva (external female genitalia)
epitheli/o	skin; epithelium
equin/o	horse
-er	one who
erg/o	work
erythem/o	flushed; redness
erythr/o	red
-esis	action; condition; state of
eso-	inward

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
esophag/o	esophagus
esthes/o	feeling (nervous sensation)
esthesi/o	feeling (nervous sensation)
-esthesia	feeling (nervous sensation)
estr/o	female
ethm/o	sieve
eti/o	cause
eu-	good; normal; true
-eurysm	widening
ex-	out; away from
exanthemat/o	rash
exo-	out; away from
extra-	outside
faci/o	face
fasci/o	fascia (membrane supporting muscles)
femor/o	femur (thigh bone)
-ferent	to carry
fibrin/o	fiber
fibr/o, fibromat/o	fiber
fibros/o	fibrous connective tissue
fibul/o	fibula
-fication	process of making
-fida	split
flex/o	bend
fluor/o	luminous
follicul/o	follicle; small sac
-form	resembling; in the shape of
fung/i	fungus; mushroom (lower organism lacking chlorophyll)
furc/o	forking; branching
-fusion	to pour; to come together
galact/o	milk
ganglion/o	ganglion; collection of nerve cell bodies
gastr/o	stomach

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
-gen	substance that produces
-genesis	producing; forming
-genic	produced by or in
ger/o	old age
geront/o	old age
gest/o	pregnancy
gester/o	pregnancy
gingiv/o	gum
glauc/o	gray
gli/o	glial cells; neuroglial cells (supportive tissue of nervous system)
-globin	protein
-globulin	protein
glomerul/o	glomerulus
gloss/o	tongue
gluc/o	glucose; sugar
glyc/o	glucose; sugar
glycogen/o	glycogen; animal starch
glycos/o	glucose; sugar
gnos/o	knowledge
gon/o	seed
gonad/o	sex glands
goni/o	angle
-grade	to go
-gram	record
granul/o	granule(s)
-graph	instrument for recording
-graphy	process of recording
gravid/o	pregnancy
-gravida	pregnant woman
gynec/o	woman; female
hallucin/o	hallucination
hem/o	blood
hemat/o	blood

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
hemi-	half
hemoglobin/o	hemoglobin
hepat/o	liver
herni/o	hernia
-hexia	state of
hidr/o	sweat
hist/o, histi/o	tissue
home/o	sameness; unchanging; constant
hormon/o	hormone
humer/o	humerus (upper arm bone)
hydr/o	water
hyper-	above; excessive
hypn/o	sleep
hypo-	deficient; below; under; less than normal
hypophys/o	pituitary gland
hyster/o	uterus; womb
-ia	condition
-iac	pertaining to
-iasis	abnormal condition
iatr/o	physician; treatment
-ic	pertaining to
-ical	pertaining to
ichthy/o	dry; scaly
-icle	small
idi/o	unknown; individual; distinct
-ile	pertaining to
ile/o	ileum
ili/o	ilium
immun/o	immune; protection; safe
in-	in; into; not
-in, -ine	substance
-ine	pertaining to
infra-	below; inferior to; beneath

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
inguin/o	groin
insulin/o	insulin (pancreatic hormone)
inter-	between
intra-	within; into
iod/o	iodine
ion/o	ion; to wander
-ion	process
-ior	pertaining to
ipsi-	same
ir-	in
ir/o	iris (colored portion of eye)
irid/o	iris (colored portion of eye)
is/o	same; equal
isch/o	hold back; back
ischi/o	ischium (part of hip bone)
-ism	process; condition
-ist	specialist
-itis	inflammation
-itus	condition
-ium	structure; tissue
jaund/o	yellow
jejun/o	jejunum
kal/i	potassium
kary/o	nucleus
kerat/o	cornea; hard, horny tissue
kern-	nucleus (collection of nerve cells in the brain)
ket/o	ketones; acetones
keton/o	ketones; acetones
kines/o	movement
kinesi/o	movement
-kinesia	movement
-kinesis	movement
klept/o	to steal

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
kyph/o	humpback
labi/o	lip
lacrim/o	tear; tear duct; lacrimal duct
lact/o	milk
lamin/o	lamina (part of vertebral arch)
lapar/o	abdominal wall; abdomen
-lapse	slide, fall, sag
laryng/o	larynx (voice box)
later/o	side
leiomy/o	smooth (visceral) muscle
-lemma	sheath, covering
-lepsy	seizure
lept/o	thin, slender
-leptic	pertaining to seizing, taking hold of
leth/o	death
leuk/o	white
lex/o	word; phrase
-lexia	word; phrase
ligament/o	ligament
lingu/o	tongue
lip/o	fat (a type of lipid)
lipid/o	lipid
-listhesis	slipping
lith/o	stone; calculus
-lithiasis	condition of stones
-lithotomy	incision (for removal) of a stone
lob/o	lobe
log/o	study
-logy	study (process of)
lord/o	curve; swayback
-lucent	to shine
lumb/o	lower back; loin
lute/o	yellow

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
lux/o	slide
lymph/o	lymph
lymphaden/o	lymph gland (node)
lymphangi/o	lymph vessel
-lysis	breakdown; separation; destruction; loosening
-lytic	reducing, destroying; separating; breakdown
macro-	large
mal-	bad
-malacia	softening
malleol/o	malleolus
mamm/o	breast
mandibul/o	mandible (lower jaw bone)
-mania	obsessive preoccupation
mast/o	breast
mastoid/o	mastoid process (behind the ear)
maxill/o	maxilla (upper jaw bone)
meat/o	meatus (opening)
medi/o	middle
mediastin/o	mediastinum
medull/o	medulla (inner section); middle; soft, marrow
mega-	large
-megaly	enlargement
melan/o	black
men/o	menses; menstruation
mening/o	meninges (membranes covering the spinal cord and brain)
meningi/o	meninges
ment/o	mind; chin
meso-	middle
meta-	change; beyond
metacarp/o	metacarpals (hand bones)

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
metatars/o	metatarsals (foot bones)
-meter	measure
metr/o	uterus (womb); measure
metri/o	uterus (womb)
mi/o	smaller; less
micro-	small
-mimetic	mimic; copy
-mission	send
mon/o	one; single
morph/o	shape; form
mort/o	death
-mortem	death
-motor	movement
muc/o	mucus
mucos/o	mucous membrane (mucosa)
multi-	many
mut/a	genetic change
mutagen/o	causing genetic change
my/o	muscle
myc/o	fungus
mydr/o	wide
myel/o	spinal cord; bone marrow
myocardi/o	myocardium (heart muscle)
myom/o	muscle tumor
myos/o	muscle
myring/o	tympanic membrane (eardrum)
myx/o	mucus
narc/o	numbness; stupor; sleep
nas/o	nose
nat/i	birth
natr/o	sodium
necr/o	death
nect/o	bind, tie, connect

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
neo-	new
nephr/o	kidney
neur/o	nerve
neutr/o	neither; neutral; neutrophil
nid/o	nest
noct/o	night
norm/o	rule; order
nos/o	disease
nucle/o	nucleus
nulli-	none
nyct/o	night
obstetr/o	pregnancy; childbirth
ocul/o	eye
odont/o	tooth
odyn/o	pain
-oid	derived from, related to, resembling or originating from
-ole	little; small
olecran/o	olecranon (elbow)
olig/o	scanty
om/o	shoulder
-oma	tumor; mass; fluid collection
omphal/o	umbilicus (navel)
onc/o	tumor
-one	hormone
onych/o	nail (of fingers or toes)
o/o	egg
oophor/o	ovary
-opaque	obscure
ophthalm/o	eye
-opia	vision condition
opi/o	opium
-opsia	vision condition
-opsy	view of

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
opt/o	eye; vision
optic/o	eye; vision
-or	one who
or/o	mouth
orch/o	testis
orchi/o	testis
orchid/o	testis
-orexia	appetite
orth/o	straight
-ose	full of; pertaining to; sugar
-osis	condition, usually abnormal
-osmia	smell
ossicul/o	ossicle (small bone)
oste/o	bone
-ostosis	condition of bone
ot/o	ear
-otia	ear condition
-ous	pertaining to
ov/o	egg
ovari/o	ovary
ovul/o	egg
ox/o	oxygen
-oxia	oxygen
oxy-	rapid; sharp; acid
oxysm/o	sudden
pachy-	heavy; thick
palat/o	palate (roof of the mouth)
palpebr/o	eyelid
pan-	all
pancreat/o	pancreas
papill/o	nipple-like; optic disc (disk)
par-	other than; abnormal
para-	near; beside; abnormal; apart from; along the side of

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
-para	to bear, bring forth (live births)
-parous	to bear, bring forth
parathyroid/o	parathyroid glands
-paresis	weakness
-pareunia	sexual intercourse
-partum	birth; labor
patell/a	patella
patell/o	patella
path/o	disease
-pathy	disease; emotion
pector/o	chest
ped/o	child; foot
pelv/i	pelvis; hip region
pelv/o	pelvis; hip region
pend/o	hang
-penia	deficiency
pen/o	penis
-pepsia	digestion
per-	through
peri-	surrounding
perine/o	perineum
peritone/o	peritoneum
perone/o	fibula
-pexy	fixation; to put in place
phac/o	lens of eye
phag/o	eat; swallow
-phage	eat; swallow
-phagia	condition of eating; swallowing
phak/o	lens of eye
phalang/o	phalanges (of fingers and toes)
phall/o	penis
pharmac/o	drug
pharmaceut/o	drug

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
pharyng/o	throat (pharynx)
phas/o	speech
-phasia	speech
phe/o	dusky; dark
-pheresis	removal
phil/o	like; love; attraction to
-phil	attraction for
-philia	attraction for
phim/o	muzzle
phleb/o	vein
phob/o	fear
-phobia	fear
phon/o	voice; sound
-phonia	voice; sound
phor/o	to bear
-phoresis	carrying; transmission
-phoria	to bear, carry; feeling (mental state)
phot/o	light
phren/o	diaphragm; mind
-phthisis	wasting away
-phylaxis	protection
physi/o	nature; function
phys/o	growing
-physis	to grow
phyt/o	plant
-phyte	plant
pil/o	hair
pineal/o	pineal gland
pituitar/o	pituitary gland
-plakia	plaque
plant/o	sole of the foot
plas/o	development; formation; growth
-plasia	development; formation; growth

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
-plasm	formation; structure
-plastic	pertaining to formation
-plasty	surgical repair
ple/o	more; many; varied
-plegia	paralysis; palsy
-plegic	pertaining to paralysis; palsy
pleur/o	pleura
plex/o	plexus; network (of nerves)
-pnea	breathing
pneum/o	lung; air; gas
pneumon/o	lung; air; gas
pod/o	foot
-poiesis	formation
-poietin	substance that forms
poikil/o	varied; irregular
pol/o	extreme
polio-	gray matter (of brain or spinal cord)
poly-	many; much; increased
polyp/o	polyp; small growth
pont/o	pons (a part of the brain)
-porosis	condition of pores (spaces)
post-	after; behind
poster/o	back (of body); behind
-prandial	pertaining to eating or mealtime
-praxia	action
pre-	before; in front of
presby/o	old age
primi-	first
pro-	before; forward
proct/o	anus and rectum
pros-	before; forward
prostat/o	prostate gland
prot/o	first

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
prote/o	protein
proxim/o	near
prurit/o	itching
pseudo-	false
psych/o	mind
-ptom	happening
-ptosis	falling; drooping; prolapse
-ptysis	spitting
pub/o	pubis (anterior part of hip bone)
pulmon/o	lung
pupill/o	pupil (dark center of the eye)
purul/o	pus
py/o	pus
pyel/o	renal pelvis
pylor/o	pylorus; pyloric sphincter
pyr/o	fever; fire
pyret/o	fever
pyrex/o	fever
quadri-	four
rachi/o	spinal column; vertebrae
radi/o	x-rays; radioactivity; radius (lateral lower arm bone)
radicul/o	nerve root
re-	back; again; backward
rect/o	rectum
ren/o	kidney
reticul/o	network
retin/o	retina
retro-	behind; back; backward
rhabdomy/o	striated (skeletal) muscle
rheumat/o	watery flow
rhin/o	nose
rhytid/o	wrinkle
roentgen/o	x-rays

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
-rrhage	bursting forth (of blood)
-rrhagia	bursting forth (of blood)
-rrhaphy	suture
-rrhea	flow; discharge
-rrhexis	rupture
rrhythm/o	rhythm
sacr/o	sacrum
salpinx	fallopian tube (oviduct); auditory (eustachian) tube
-salpinx	fallopian tube; oviduct
sarc/o	flesh (connective tissue)
scapul/o	scapula; shoulder blade
-schisis	split
schiz/o	split
scint/i	spark
scirrh/o	hard
scler/o	sclera (white of eye); hard
-sclerosis	hardening
scoli/o	crooked; bent
-scope	instrument for visual examination
-scopy	visual examination
scot/o	darkness
seb/o	sebum
sebace/o	sebum
sect/o	to cut
semi-	half
semin/i	semen; seed
seps/o	infection
sial/o	saliva; salivary
sialaden/o	salivary gland
sider/o	iron
sigmoid/o	sigmoid colon
silic/o	glass
sinus/o	sinus

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
-sis	state of; condition
-sol	solution
somat/o	body
-some	body
somn/o	sleep
-somnia	sleep
son/o	sound
-spadia	to tear, cut
-spasm	sudden contraction of muscles
sperm/o	spermatozoa; sperm cells
spermat/o	spermatozoa; sperm cells
sphen/o	wedge; sphenoid bone
spher/o	globe-shaped; round
sphygm/o	pulse
-sphyxia	pulse
splanchn/o	viscera (internal organs)
spin/o	spine (backbone)
spir/o	to breathe
splen/o	spleen
spondyl/o	vertebra (backbone)
squam/o	scale
-stalsis	contraction
staped/o	stapes (middle ear bone)
staphyl/o	clusters; uvula
-stasis	stopping; controlling; placing
-static	pertaining to stopping or controlling
steat/o	fat, sebum
sten/o	narrowing
-stenosis	tightening; stricture
ster/o	solid structure; steroid
stere/o	solid; three-dimensional
stern/o	sternum (breastbone)
steth/o	chest

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
-sthenia	strength
-stitial	pertaining to standing or positioned
stomat/o	mouth
-stomia	condition of the mouth
-stomy	new opening (to form a mouth)
strept/o	twisted chains
styl/o	pole or stake
sub-	under; below
submaxill/o	mandible (lower jaw bone)
-suppression	stopping
supra-	above, upper
sym-	together; with
syn-	together; with
syncop/o	to cut off, cut short; faint
syndesm/o	ligament
synov/o	synovia; synovial membrane; sheath around a tendon
syring/o	tube
tachy-	fast
tars/o	tarsus; hindfoot or ankle (7 bones between the foot and the leg)
tax/o	order; coordination
tel/o	complete
tele/o	distant
ten/o	tendon
tendin/o	tendon
-tension	pressure
tens/o	force, strain, stretch
terat/o	monster; malformed fetus
test/o	testis (testicle)
tetra-	four
thalam/o	thalamus
thalass/o	sea
the/o	put; place

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
thec/o	sheath
thel/o, theli/o	nipple
therapeut/o	treatment
-therapy	treatment
therm/o	heat
thorac/o	chest
-thorax	chest; pleural cavity
thromb/o	clot
thym/o	thymus gland
-thymia	mind (condition of)
-thymic	pertaining to mind
thyr/o	thyroid gland; shield
thyroid/o	thyroid gland
tibi/o	tibia (shin bone)
-tic	pertaining to
toc/o	labor; birth
-tocia	labor; birth (condition of)
-tocin	labor; birth (a substance for)
tom/o	to cut
-tome	instrument to cut
-tomy	process of cutting
ton/o	tension
tone/o	to stretch
tonsill/o	tonsil
top/o	place; position; location
-tory	pertaining to
tox/o	poison
toxic/o	poison
trache/o	trachea (windpipe)
trans-	across; through
-tresia	opening
tri-	three
trich/o	hair

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
trigon/o	trigone (area within the bladder)
-tripsy	crushing
troph/o	nourishment; development
-trophy	nourishment; development (condition of)
-tropia	to turn
-tropic	pertaining to stimulating
-tropin	stimulate; act on
tympan/o	tympanic membrane (eardrum); middle ear
-type	classification; picture
-ule	little; small
uln/o	ulna (medial lower arm bone)
ultra-	beyond; excess
-um	structure; tissue; thing
umbilic/o	umbilicus (navel)
ungu/o	nail
uni-	one
ur/o	urine; urinary tract
ureter/o	ureter
urethr/o	urethra
-uria	urination; condition of urine
urin/o	urine
-us	structure; thing
uter/o	uterus (womb)
uve/o	uvea, vascular layer of eye (iris, choroid, ciliary body)
uvul/o	uvula
vag/o	vagus nerve
vagin/o	vagina
valv/o	valve
valvul/o	valve
varic/o	varicose veins
vas/o	vessel; duct; vas deferens
vascul/o	vessel (blood)

Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix	Meaning
ven/o, ven/i	vein
vener/o	venereal (sexual contact)
ventr/o	belly side of body
ventricul/o	ventricle (of heart or brain)
venul/o	venule (small vein)
-verse	to turn
-version	turning (condition of)
vertebr/o	vertebra (backbone)
vesic/o	urinary bladder
vesicul/o	seminal vesicle
vestibul/o	vestibule of the inner ear
viscer/o	internal organs
vit/o	life
vitr/o	vitreous body (of the eye)
vitre/o	glass
viv/o	life
vol/o	to roll
vulv/o	vulva (female external genitalia)
xanth/o	yellow
xen/o	stranger
xer/o	dry
xiph/o	sword
-y	condition; process
zo/o	animal life

English—Medical Word Parts

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
abdomen	abdomin/o (*use with* -al, -centesis) celi/o (*use with* -ac) lapar/o (*use with* -scope, -scopy, -tomy)
abdominal wall	lapar/o
abnormal	dys- par- para-
abnormal condition	-iasis -osis
above	epi- hyper- supra-
acetabulum	acetabul/o
acetones	ket/o keton/o
acid	oxy-
acromion	acromi/o
across	trans-
action	-praxia
action	-esis
act on	-tropin
adenoids	adenoid/o
adrenal glands	adren/o adrenal/o
after	post-
again	ana-, re-
against	anti- contra-
air	aer/o pneum/o pneumon/o
air sac	alveol/o
albumin	albumin/o
all	pan-
along side of	para-

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
alveolus	alveol/o
anew	ana-
amnion	amni/o
aneurysm	aneurysm/o
angle	goni/o
animal life	zo/o
animal starch	glycogen/o
ankle	tars/o
antrum (of stomach)	anthr/o
anus	an/o
anus and rectum	proct/o
anxiety	anxi/o
aorta	aort/o
apart	ana-
apart from	para-
aponeurosis	aponeur/o
appendix	append/o (*use with* -ectomy) appendic/o (*use with* -itis)
appetite	-orexia
arm	brachi/o
arm bone, lower lateral	radi/o
arm bone, lower, medial	uln/o
arm bone, upper	humer/o
armpit	axill/o
arteriole	arteriol/o
artery	arter/o arteri/o
articulate (speak distinctly)	-arthria
asbestos	asbest/o
assemble	-agon
atrium	atri/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
attraction for	-phil -philia
attraction to	phil/o
auditory tube	salping/o -salpinx
away from	ab- apo- ex- exo-
bacilli (rod-shaped bacteria)	bacill/o
back	re- retro-
back, lower	lumb/o
back portion of body	dorsi- dors/o poster/o
backbone	spin/o (*use with* -al) spondyl/o (*use with* -itis, -lithesis, -osis, -pathy) vertebr/o (*use with* -al)
backward	ana- retro-
bacteria	bacteri/o
bacterium (berry-shaped)	-coccus (-cocci, *pl.*)
bad	cac/o dys- mal-
barrier	claustr/o
base (not acidic)	bas/o
Bartholin glands	bartholin/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
bear, to	para- -parous -phobia phor/o
before	ante- pre- pro- pros-
beginning	-arche
behind	post- poster/o retro-
belly	celi/o
belly side of body	ventr/o
below, beneath	hypo- infra- sub-
bend, to	flex/o
bent	scoli/o
beside	para-
between	inter-
beyond	hyper- meta- ultra-
bile	bil/i chol/e
bile vessel	cholangi/o
bilirubin	bilirubin/o
bind	-desis nect/o
birth	nat/i -partum toc/o -tocia

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
birth, substance for	-tocin
births, live	-para
black	anthrac/o melan/o
bladder (urinary)	cyst/o (*use with* -ic, -itis, -cele, -gram, -scopy, -stomy, -tomy) vesic/o (*use with* -al)
blood	hem/o (*use with* -dialysis, -globin, lysis, -philia, -ptysis, -rrhage, -stasis, -stat) hemat/o (*use with* -crit, -emesis, -logist, -logy, -oma, -poiesis, -uria)
blood condition	-emia -emic
blood vessel	angi/o (*use with* -ectomy, -genesis, -gram, -graphy, -oma, -plasty, -spasm) vas/o (*use with* -constriction, -dilation, -motor) vascul/o (*use with* -ar, -itis)
blue	cyan/o
body	corpor/o somat/o -some
bone	oste/o
bone condition	-ostosis
bone marrow	myel/o
brain	encephal/o
branching	furc/o
break	-clasis -clast
breakdown	-lysis
breast	mamm/o (*use with* -ary, -gram, -graphy, -plasty) mast/o (*use with* -algia, -dynia, -ectomy, -itis)

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
breastbone	stern/o
breathe	spir/o
breathing	-pnea
bring forth	-para -parous
bronchial tube (bronchus)	bronch/o bronchi/o
bronchiole	bronchiol/o
bunion	bunion/o
burn	caus/o cauter/o
bursa	burs/o
bursting forth	-rrhage -rrhagia
calcaneus	calcane/o
calcium	calc/o calci/o
calyx	cali/o calic/o
cancerous	carcin/o
capillary	capillar/o
carbon dioxide	capn/o -capnia
care for, to	comi/o
carry	duct/o -phoresis -phoria
carrying	-ferent
cartilage	chondr/o
cast; throw	bol/o
cause	eti/o
causing genetic change	mutagen/o
cecum	cec/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
cell	cyt/o -cyte
cells, condition of	-cytosis
cerebellum	cerebell/o
cerebrum	cerebr/o
cerumen	cerumin/o
cervix	cervic/o
change	meta-
cheek	bucc/o
chemical	chem/o
chest	pector/o steth/o thorac/o
child	ped/o
childbirth	obstetr/o
chin	ment/o
cholesterol	cholesterol/o
chorion	chori/o chorion/o
choroid layer (of the eye)	choroid/o
ciliary body (of the eye)	cycl/o
circle or cycle	cycl/o
classification	-type
clavicle	clavicul/o
clot	thromb/o
clumping	agglutin/o
clusters	staphyl/o
coagulation	coagul/o
coal dust	anthrac/o
coccyx	coccyg/o
cochlea	cochle/o
cold	cry/o
collar bone	clavicul/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
colon	col/o (*use with* -ectomy, -itis, -pexy, -stomy) colon/o (*use with* -ic, -pathy, -scope, scopy)
color	chrom/o
come together	-fusion
common bile duct	choledoch/o
complete	dia- tel/o
condition	-ation -ema -esis -ia -ism -itus -sis -y
condition, abnormal	-iasis -osis
conjunctiva	conjunctiv/o
connect	nect/o
connective tissue	sarc/o
constant	home/o
control	-stasis, -stat
contraction	-stalsis
contraction of muscles, sudden	-spasm
coordination	tax/o
copy	-mimetic
cornea (of the eye)	corne/o kerat/o
cortex	cortic/o
cotton dust	byssin/o
crooked	scoli/o
crushing	-tripsy
cul-de-sac	culd/o
curve	lord/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
cut	cis/o sect/o, -section tom/o
cut off	syncop/o
cutting, process of	-tomy
cycle	cycl/o
cyst (sac of fluid)	cyst/o
dance	chore/o
dark	phe/o
darkness	scot/o
dawn-colored	eosin/o
death	leth/o mort/o, -mortem necr/o
deep sleep	comat/o
defecation (elimination of wastes)	-chezia
deficiency	-penia
deficient	hypo-
derived from	-oid
destroying	-lytic
destruction	-lysis
development	plas/o -plasia troph/o -trophy
diaphragm	phren/o
difficult	dys-
digestion	-pepsia
dilation	-ectasia -ectasis
dim	ambly/o
discharge	-rrhea

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
disease	nos/o path/o -pathy
distant	dist/o tele/o
distinct	idi/o
double	dipl/o
down	cata- de-
drooping	-ptosis
drug	chem/o pharmac/o pharmaceut/o
dry	ichthy/o xer/o
drying	desicc/o
duct	vas/o
dull	ambly/o
duodenum	duoden/o
dura mater	dur/o
dusky	phe/o
dust	coni/o
ear	aur/o (*use with* -al, -icle) auricul/o (*use with* -ar) ot/o (*use with* -algia, -ic, -itis, -logy, - mycosis, -rrhea, -sclerosis, -scope, -scopy
ear condition	-otia
eardrum	myring/o (*use with* -ectomy, -itis, -tomy) tympan/o (*use with* -ic, -metry, -plasty)
eat	phag/o -phage
eating	-phagia
egg cell	o/o ov/o ovul/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
elbow	olecran/o
electricity	electr/o
elimination of wastes	-chezia
embryonic	-blast
enclosed space	claustr/o
enlargement	-megaly
enzyme	-ase
epididymis	epididym/o
epiglottis	epiglott/o
equal	is/o
esophagus	esophag/o
eustachian tube	salping/o
excess	-ultra
excessive	hyper-
excessive pain	-agra
excision	-ectomy
expansion	-ectasia -ectasis
extreme	pol/o
extreme point	acr/o
extremities	acr/o
eye	ocul/o (*use with* -ar, -facial, -motor) ophthalm/o (*use with* -ia, -ic, -logist, -logy, -pathy, -plasty, -plegia, -scope, -scopy) opt/o (*use with* -ic, -metrist) optic/o (*use with* -al, -ian)
eyelid	blephar/o (*use with* -chalasis, -itis, -plasty, -plegia, -ptosis, -tomy) palpebr/o (*use with* -al)
face	faci/o
faint	syncop/o
falling	-ptosis
fallopian tube	salping/o -salpinx

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
false	pseudo-
far	dist/o
fascia	fasci/o
fast	tachy-
fat	adip/o (*use with* -ose, -osis) lip/o (*use with* -ase, -cyte, -genesis, -oid, -oma) steat/o (*use with* -oma, -rrhea)
fear	phob/o -phobia
feeling	esthesi/o -phoria
female	estr/o (*use with* -gen, -genic) gynec/o (*use with* -logist, -logy, -mastia)
femur	femor/o
fever	pyr/o pyret/o pyrex/o
fiber	fibr/o, fibromat/o, fibrin/o
fibrous connective tissue	fibros/o
fibula	fibul/o (*use with* -ar) perone/o (*use with* -al)
finger and toe bones	phalang/o
fingers	dactyl/o
fire	pyr/o
first	primi- prot/o
fixation	-pexy
flat plate	-elasma
flesh	sarc/o
flow	-rrhea
fluid collection	-oma
flushed	erythem/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
follicle	follicul/o
foot	pod/o
foot bones	metatars/o
force	tens/o
forking	furc/o
form	morph/o
formation	plas/o -plasia -plasm -poiesis
forming	-genesis
forward	ante-, pro-, pros-
four	quadri- tetra-
front	anter/o
full of	-ose
fungus	fung/i (*use with* -cide, -oid, -ous, -stasis) myc/o (*use with* -logist, -logy, -osis, -tic)
gall	bil/i (*use with* -ary) chol/e (*use with* -lithiasis)
gallbladder	cholecyst/o
ganglion	gangli/o ganglion/o
gas	pneum/o pneumon/o
gather	-agon
genetic change	mut/a mutagen/o
give, to	-dote
gland	aden/o
glans penis	balan/o
glass	silic/o vitre/o
glial cells	gli/o
globe-shaped	spher/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
glomerulus	glomerul/o
glucose	gluc/o glyc/o glycos/o
glue	coll/a gli/o
glycogen	glycogen/o
go, to	-grade
good	eu-
granule(s)	granul/o
gray	glauc/o
gray matter	polio-
green	chlor/o
groin	inguin/o
grow	-physis
growing	phys/o
growth	-plasia
gum	gingiv/o
habit	-hexia
hair	pil/o trich/o
half	hemi- semi-
hallucination	hallucin/o
hand	chir/o
hang	pend/o
happening	-ptom
hard	scirrh/o
hand bones	metacarp/o
hang, to	pend/o
hard	kerat/o scirrh/o
hardening	-sclerosis scler/o
head	cephal/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
hearing	acous/o audi/o audit/o -acusis -cusis
heart	cardi/o (*use with* -ac, -graphy, -logy, -logist, -megaly, -pathy, -vascular) coron/o (*use with* -ary)
heart muscle	myocardi/o
heat	cauter/o therm/o
heavy	pachy-
heel bone	calcane/o
hemoglobin	hemoglobin/o
hernia	-cele herni/o
hidden	crypt/o
hip region	pelv/i, pelv/o
holding back	isch/o
hormone	hormon/o -one
horn-like	kerat/o
horse	equin/o
humerus	humer/o
humpback	kyph/o
hydrochloric acid	chlorhydr/o
ileum	ile/o
ilium	ili/o
immature cells	-blast
immature tumor (cells)	-blastoma
immune	immun/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
in, into, within	em- en- endo- in- intra- ir-
in due measure	emmetr/o
in front of	pre-
incomplete	atel/o
increased	poly-
increase in cell numbers (blood cells)	-cytosis
individual	idi/o
infection	seps/o
inferior to	infra-
inflammation	-itis
instrument for recording	-graph
instrument for visual examination	-scope
instrument to cut	-tome
insulin	insulin/o
internal organs	spanchn/o viscer/o
intestine, small	enter/o
inward	eso-
iodine	iod/o
ion	ion/o
iris	ir/o irid/o
iron	sider/o
irregular	poikil/o
irrigation	-clysis

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
ischium	ischi/o
itching	prurit/o
jaw, lower	mandibul/o submaxill/o
jaw, upper	maxill/o
jejunum	jejun/o
joint	arthr/o articul/o
ketones	ket/o keton/o
kidney	nephr/o (*use with* -algia, -ectomy, -ic, -itis, -lith, -megaly, -oma, -osis, -pathy, -ptosis, -sclerosis, -stomy, -tomy) ren/o (*use with* -al, -gram, -vascular)
killing	-cidal -cide
knowledge	gnos/o, gno/o
labor	-partum toc/o -tocia
labor, substance for	-tocin
lack of	de-
lack of strength	-asthenia
lacrimal duct	dacry/o lacrim/o
lacrimal sac	dacryocyst/o
lamina	lamin/o
large	macro- mega-
larynx	laryng/o
lead	duct/o
lens of eye	phac/o phak/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
less	de- mi/o
less than normal	hypo-
life	bi/o vit/o viv/o
ligament	ligament/o syndesm/o
light	actin/o phot/o
like	phil/o
lip	cheil/o labi/o
lipid	lipid/o
little	-ole -ule
liver	hepat/o
lobe	lob/o
location	top/o
loin	lumb/o
loosening	-lysis
love	phil/o
luminous	fluor/o
lung	pulmon/o
lung	pneum/o (*use with* -coccus, -coniosis, -thorax) pneumon/o (*use with* -ectomy, -ia, -ic, -itis, -lysis) pulmon/o (*use with* -ary)
lymph	lymph/o
lymph gland	lymphaden/o
lymph vessel	lymphangi/o
make, to	-fication
male	andr/o
malformed fetus	terat/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
malleolus	malleol/o
mandible (lower jaw bone)	mandibul/o submaxill/o
many	multi- ple/o poly-
marketplace	agora-
marrow	medull/o
mass	-oma
mastoid process	mastoid/o
maxilla	maxill/o
meal	cib/o -prandial
measure	-meter metr/o
meatus	meat/o
mediastinum	mediastin/o
medulla oblongata	medull/o
meninges	mening/o meningi/o
menstruation; menses	men/o
metacarpals	metacarp/o
metatarsals (foot bones)	metatars/o
middle	medi/o medull/o meso-
middle ear	tympan/o
milk	galact/o lact/o
mimic	-mimetic

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
mind	ment/o phren/o psych/o -thymia -thymic
mixture	cras/o
monster	terat/o
mood	-thymia -thymic
more	ple/o
mouth	or/o (*use with* -al) stomat/o (*use with* -itis) -stomia
movement	cine/o kines/o kinesi/o -kinesia -kinesis -motor
much	poly-
mucous membrane	mucos/o
mucus	muc/o myx/o
muscle	muscul/o (*use with* -ar, -skeletal) my/o (*use with* -algia, -ectomy, -oma, -neutral, -pathy, -rrhaphy, -therapy) myos/o (*use with* -in, -itis)
muscle, smooth (visceral)	leiomy/o
muscle, striated (skeletal)	rhabdomy/o
muscle tumor	myom/o
muzzle	phim/o
myocardium	myocardi/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
nail	onych/o ungu/o
narrowing	-constriction sten/o -stenosis
nature	physi/o
navel	omphal/o umbilic/o
near	para- proxim/o
neck	cervic/o
neither	neutr/o
nerve	neur/o
nerve root	radicul/o
nervous sensation	esthes/o esthesi/o -esthesia
nest	nid/o
network	reticul/o
network of nerves	plex/o
neutral	neutr/o
neutrophil	neutr/o
new	neo-
night	noct/o nyct/o
nipple	thel/o, theli/o
nipple-like	papill/o
nitrogen	azot/o
nitrogen compound	-amine
no, not	a-, an-
none	nulli-
normal	eu-
nose	nas/o (*use with* -al) rhin/o (*use with* -itis, -rrhea, -plasty)

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
nourishment	troph/o -trophy
nucleus	kary/o nucle/o
nucleus (collection of nerve cells in the brain)	kern-
numbness	narc/o
obscure	-opaque
obsessive preoccupation	-mania
off	apo-
old age	ger/o geront/o presby/o
olecranon (elbow)	olecran/o
on	epi-
one	mon/o mono- uni-
one's own	aut/o auto-
one who	-er -or
opening	-tresia
opening, new	-stomy
opium	opi/o
opposite	contra-
optic disc (disk)	papill/o
orange-yellow	cirrh/o
order	norm/o tax/o
organs, internal	viscer/o
originating from	-oid

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
ossicle	ossicul/o
other	all/o
other than	par-
out, outside	ec- ex- exo- extra-
outer region	cortic/o
ovary	oophor/o (*use with* -itis, -ectomy, -pexy) ovari/o (*use with* -an)
own	aut-
oxygen	ox/o -oxia
pain	-algia (*use with* arthr/o, cephal/o, gastr/o, mast/o, my/o, neur/o, ot/o) -dynia (*use with* coccyg/o, pleur/o) odyn/o
pain, excessive	-agra
pain, sensitivity to	-algesia algesi/o
painful	dys-
palate	palat/o
palsy	-plegia -plegic
pancreas	pancreat/o
paralysis	-plegia -plegic
paralysis, slight	-paresis
parathyroid glands	parathyroid/o
patella	patell/a (*use with* -pexy) patell/o (*use with* -ar, -ectomy, -femoral)
pelvis	pelv/i pelv/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
penis	pen/o phall/o
people	dem/o
perineum	perine/o
peritoneum	peritone/o
pertaining to	-ac (*as in* cardiac) -al (*as in* inguinal) -an (*as in* ovarian) -ar (*as in* palmar) -ary (*as in* papillary) -eal (*as in* pharyngeal) -iac (*as in* hypochondriac) -ic (*as in* nucleic) -ical (*as in* psychological) -ile (*as in* penile) -ine (*as in* equine) -ior (*as in* superior) -ose (*as in* adipose) -ous (*as in* mucous) -tic (*as in* necrotic) -tory (*as in* secretory)
phalanges	phalang/o
pharynx (throat)	pharyng/o
phrase	-lexia
physician	iatr/o
pineal gland	pineal/o
pituitary gland	hypophys/o pituit/o pituitar/o
place	-stasis the/o top/o
plant	phyt/o -phyte

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
plaque	ather/o -plakia
pleura	pleur/o
pleural cavity	-thorax
plexus	plex/o
poison	tox/o toxic/o
pole	styl/o
polyp	polyp/o
pons	pont/o
pores, condition of	-porosis
position	top/o
potassium	kal/i
pour	chyme/o -fusion
pregnancy	-cyesis gest/o gester/o gravid/o -gravida obstetr/o
pressure	bar/o -tension
process	-ation -ion -ism -y
produced by *or* in	-genic
producing	-gen -genesis
prolapse	-ptosis
prostate gland	prostat/o
protection	immun/o -phylaxis

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
protein	albumin/o -globin -globulin prote/o
pubis	pub/o
pulse	sphygm/o -sphyxia
puncture to remove fluid	-centesis
pupil	cor/o core/o pupill/o
pus	purul/o py/o
put	the/o
put in place	-pexy
pyloric sphincter, pylorus	pylor/o
radioactivity	radi/o
radius (lower arm bone)	radi/o
rapid	oxy-
rash	exanthemat/o
record	-gram
recording, process of	-graphy
rectum	rect/o
recurring	cycl/o
red	eosin/o erythr/o
redness	erythem/o erythemat/o
reduce	-lytic
reflected sound	echo-
related to	-oid

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
relaxation	-chalasia -chalasis
removal	-apheresis -ectomy -pheresis
renal pelvis	pyel/o
repair	-plasty
resembling	-form -oid
retina	retin/o
rhythm	rrhythm/o
rib	cost/o
roll, to	vol/o
rosy	eosin/o
round	spher/o
rule	norm/o
run	-drome
rupture	-rrhexis
sac, small	alveol/o follicul/o
sac of fluid	cyst/o
sacrum	sacr/o
safe	immun/o
sag, to	-ptosis
saliva	sial/o
salivary gland	sialaden/o
same	ipsi- is/o
sameness; unchanging; constant	home/o
scaly	ichthy/o squam/o
scanty	olig/o
scapula	scapul/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
sclera	scler/o
scrotum	scrot/o
sea	thalass/o
sebum	seb/o sebace/o steat/o
secrete	crin/o -crine
seed	gon/o semin/i
seizure	-lepsy
seizing, taking hold of (pertaining to)	-leptic
self	aut- auto-
semen	semin/i
seminal vesicle	vesicul/o
send, sending	-mission
sensation (nervous)	-esthesia
sensitivity to pain	alges/o -algesia
separate	-crine -crit -lytic
separation	-lysis
set, to	-stitial
severe	acu/o
sex glands	gonad/o
sexual intercourse	-pareunia
shape	-form morph/o
sharp	acu/o oxy-

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
sheath	-lemma thec/o
shield	thyr/o
shin bone	tibi/o
shine	-lucent
short	brachy-
shoulder	om/o
side	later/o
sieve	ethm/o
sigmoid colon	sigmoid/o
single	mon/o
sinus	sinus/o
skin	cutane/o (*use with* -ous) derm/o (*use with* -al) -derma (*use with* erythr/o, leuk/o) dermat/o (*use with* -itis, -logist, -logy, -osis) epitheli/o (*use with* -al, -lysis, -oid, -oma, -um)
skull	crani/o
sleep	hypn/o somn/o -somnia
sleep, deep	comat/o
slender	lept/o
slide, to	lux/o
sliding, condition of	-lapse
slipping	-listhesis
slow	brady-
small	-icle micro- -ole -ule
small intestine	enter/o
smaller	mi/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
smell	-osmia
smooth (visceral) muscle	leiomy/o
sodium	natr/o
soft	medull/o
softening	-malacia
sole (of the foot)	plant/o
solid	ster/o stere/o
solution	-sol
sound	echo- phon/o -phonia son/o
spark	scint/i
specialist	-ist
speech	phas/o -phasia
sperm cells (spermatozoa)	sperm/o spermat/o
spinal column (spine)	rachi/o spin/o vertebr/o
spinal cord	myel/o
spiny	acanth/o
spitting	-ptysis
spleen	splen/o
split	-fida -schisis schiz/o
stake (pole)	styl/o
stapes	staped/o
starch	amyl/o
state of	-hexia -sis

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
steal	klept/o
sternum	stern/o
steroid	ster/o
sticking together	agglutin/o
stiff	ankyl/o
stimulate	-tropic -tropin
stomach	gastr/o
stone	lith/o
stones, condition of	-lithiasis
stop	-suppression
stopping	-stasis -static
straight	orth/o
strain	tens/o
stranger	xen/o
strength	-sthenia
stretch	tone/o, tens/o
stretching	-ectasia -ectasis
striated muscle	rhabdomy/o
stricture	-stenosis
structure	-ium -plasm -um -us
structure, solid	ster/o
study of	log/o -logy
stupor	narc/o
substance	-in -ine
substance that forms	-poietin

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
substance that produces	-gen
sudden	acu/o oxysm/o
sugar	gluc/o glyc/o glycos/o -ose
surgical repair	-plasty
surrounding	peri-
suture	-rrhaphy
swallow	phag/o
swallowing	-phagia
swayback	lord/o
sweat	diaphor/o (*use with* -esis) hidr/o (*use with* -osis)
swelling	-edema
sword	xiph/o
synovial (fluid)	synov/o
synovial membrane	synov/o
tail	caud/o
tailbone	coccyg/o
tarsus (ankle)	tars/o
tear	dacry/o (*use with* -genic, -rrhea) lacrim/o (*use with* -al, -ation)
tearing (cutting)	-spadia
tear gland	dacryoaden/o
tear sac	dacryocyst/o
temperament	cras/o
tendon	ten/o tend/o tendin/o
tension	ton/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
testis	orch/o (*use with* -itis) orchi/o (*use with* -algia, -dynia, -ectomy, -pathy, -pexy, -tomy) orchid/o (*use with* -ectomy, -pexy, -plasty, -ptosis, -tomy) test/o (*use with* -sterone)
thick	pachy-
thigh bone	femor/o
thalamus	thalam/o
thin	lept/o
thing	-um -us
thing that produces	-gen
thirst	dips/o
thorny	acanth/o
three	tri-
throat (pharynx)	pharyng/o
through	dia- per- trans-
throw, to	bol/o
thymus gland	thym/o
thyroid gland	thyr/o thyroid/o
tibia (shin bone)	tibi/o
tie	nect/o
tie together	-desis
tightening	-stenosis
time	chron/o
tissue	hist/o histi/o -ium -um

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
together	con- sym- syn-
tongue	gloss/o (*use with* -al, -dynia, -plasty, plegia, -rrhaphy, -spasm, -tomy) lingu/o (*use with* -al)
tonsil	tonsill/o
tooth	dent/i odont/o
top	acr/o
toward	ad- af- -ad
trachea (windpipe)	trache/o
transmission	-phoresis
treatment	iatr/o therapeut/o -therapy
trigone	trigon/o
true	eu-
tube	syring/o
tumor	-oma onc/o
turn	-tropia -verse -version
twisted chains	strept/o
two	bi-
tympanic membrane (eardrum)	myring/o tympan/o
ulcer	aphth/o
ulna	uln/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
umbilicus (navel)	omphal/o (*use with* -cele, -ectomy, -rrhagia, -rrhexis) umbilic/o (*use with* -al)
unchanging	home/o
under	hypo- sub-
uneasy	anxi/o
unequal	anis/o
unknown	idi/o
up	ana-
upon	epi-
urea	azot/o
ureter	ureter/o
urethra	urethr/o
urinary bladder	cyst/o (*use with* -cele, -ectomy, -itis, -pexy, -plasty, -plegia, -scope, -scopy, -stomy, -tomy) vesic/o (*use with* -al)
urinary tract	ur/o
urination	-uria
urine	ur/o -uria urin/o
uterus (womb)	hyster/o (*use with* -ectomy, -gram, -graphy, -tomy) metr/o (*use with* -rrhagia, -rrhea, -rrhexis) metri/o (*use with* -osis) uter/o (*use with* -ine)
uvea	uve/o
uvula	staphyl/o (*use with* -ectomy, -plasty, -tomy) uvul/o (*use with* -ar, -itis, -ptosis)
vas deferens	vas/o
vagina	colp/o (*use with* -pexy, -plasty, -scope, -scopy, -tomy) vagin/o (*use with* -al, -itis)

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
vagus nerve	vag/o
valve	valv/o valvul/o
varicose veins	varic/o
varied	ple/o poikil/o
vein	phleb/o (*use with* -ectomy, -itis, -tomy) ven/o (*use with* -ous, -gram) ven/i (*use with* -puncture)
vein, small	venul/o
venereal (sexual contact)	vener/o
ventricle	ventricul/o
vertebra (backbone)	rachi/o (*use with* -itis, -tomy) spondyl/o (*use with* -itis, -listhesis, -osis, -pathy) vertebr/o (*use with* -al)
vessel (blood)	angi/o (*use with* -ectomy, genesis, -gram, -graphy, -oma, -plasty, -spasm) vas/o (*use with* -constriction, -dilation, -motor) vascul/o (*use with* -ar, -itis)
vestibule of the inner ear	vestibul/o
view of	-opsy
viscera	splanchn/o
vision condition	-opia -opsia opt/o optic/o
visual examination	-scopy
vitreous body	vitr/o
voice	phon/o -phonia

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
voice box (larynx)	laryng/o
vomiting	-emesis
vulva	episi/o (*use with* -tomy) vulv/o (*use with* -ar)
wander	ion/o
washing	-clysis
wasting away	-phthisis
water	aque/o hydr/o
watery flow	rheumat/o
weakness	-paresis
wedge	sphen/o
weight	bar/o
white	alb/o albin/o leuk/o
wide	mydr/o
widening	-dilation -ectasia -ectasis -eurysm
windpipe (trachea)	trache/o
with	con- sym- syn-
within	en- end- endo- intra-
woman	gynec/o
womb	hyster/o metr/o metri/o uter/o

Meaning	Combining Form, Suffix, or Prefix
word	lex/o -lexia
work	erg/o
wrinkle	rhytid/o
wrist bones (carpals)	carp/o
x-rays	radi/o roentgen/o
yellow	lute/o jaund/o xanth/o

*Page references for all word parts are listed in the Index.

APPENDIX I

Plurals

The rules commonly used to form plurals of medical terms are as follows:

1. For words ending in **a**, retain the **a** and add **e**.
   Examples:

Singular	**Plural**
bulla	bullae
bursa	bursae
vertebra	vertebrae

2. For words ending in **is**, drop the **is** and add **es**.
   Examples:

Singular	**Plural**
anastomosis	anastomoses
epiphysis	epiphyses
metastasis	metastases
prosthesis	prostheses
pubis	pubes

3. For words ending in **ex** and **ix**, drop the **ex** or **ix** and add **ices**.
   Examples:

Singular	**Plural**
apex	apices
varix	varices

4. For words ending in **on**, drop the **on** and add **a**.
   Examples:

Singular	Plural
ganglion	ganglia
spermatozoon	spermatozoa

5. For words ending in **um**, drop the **um** and add **a**.
   Examples:

Singular	Plural
bacterium	bacteria
diverticulum	diverticula
ovum	ova

6. For words ending in **us**, drop the **us** and add **i**.
   Examples:

Singular	Plural
bronchus	bronchi
calculus	calculi
nucleus	nuclei

   Two exceptions to this rule are viruses and sinuses.

7. Additional rules are used to form plurals in other word families.
   Examples:

Singular	Plural
anomaly	anomalies
biopsy	biopsies
femur	femora
foramen	foramina
iris	irides
phalanx	phalanges
thorax	thoraces

APPENDIX II

Abbreviations, Acronyms, Eponyms, and Symbols

Abbreviations

Many of these abbreviations may appear with or without periods and with either a capital or a lowercase first letter. (Latin abbreviations are spelled out in *italics* in parentheses.)

A, B, AB, O	blood types; may have subscript numbers
A1C	blood test that measures glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA1C) to assess glucose control
A2	aortic valve closure (a heart sound)
@	at
AAA	abdominal aortic aneurysm
AAL	anterior axillary line
AB, ab	abortion
Ab	antibody
ABCDE	asymmetry (of shape), border (irregularity), color (variation with one lesion), diameter (greater than 6 mm), evolution (change)—characteristics associated with melanoma
abd	abdomen; abduction
ABGs	arterial blood gases
AC	acromioclavicular (joint)
ac, a.c.	before meals (*ante cibum*)
ACE	angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE inhibitors treat hypertension)
ACh	acetylcholine (a neurotransmitter)
ACL	anterior cruciate ligament (of knee)
ACLS	advanced cardiac life support
ACS	acute coronary syndrome(s)
ACTH	adrenocorticotropic hormone (secreted by the anterior pituitary gland)
AD	Alzheimer disease
AD	right ear (*auris dextra*); better to specify "right ear" rather than abbreviating
ad lib.	as desired (*ad libitum,* "freely")
ADAT	advance diet as tolerated
ADD	attention deficit disorder
add	adduction
ADH	antidiuretic hormone; vasopressin (secreted by posterior pituitary gland)
ADHD	attention deficit–hyperactivity disorder

ADL	activities of daily living
AED	automated external defibrillator
AF	atrial fibrillation
AFB	acid-fast bacillus/bacilli—the TB organism
AFO	ankle-foot orthosis (device for stabilization)
AFP	alpha-fetoprotein
Ag	silver (*argentum*)
AGC	absolute granulocyte count; atypical glandular cells (on Pap smear)
AHF	antihemophilic factor (same as coagulation factor XIII)
AICD	automated implantable cardioverter-defibrillator
AIDS	acquired immunodeficiency syndrome
AIHA	autoimmune hemolytic anemia
AIS	adenocarcinoma in situ (precancerous cells are seen on Pap smear)
AKA	above-knee amputation
AKI	acute kidney injury
alb	albumin (protein)
alk phos	alkaline phosphatase (elevated in liver disease)
ALL	acute lymphoid leukemia
ALP	alkaline phosphatase
ALS	amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (Lou Gehrig disease)
ALT	alanine aminotransferase (elevated in liver and heart disease); formerly called serum glutamic-pyruvic transaminase (SGPT)
ALT	argon laser trabeculoplasty
AM, a.m., AM	in the morning *or* before noon (*ante meridiem*)
AMA	against medical advice; American Medical Association
amb	ambulate, ambulatory (walking)
AMD	age-related macular degeneration
AMI	acute myocardial infarction
AML	acute myeloid leukemia
ANA	antinuclear antibody
ANC	absolute neutrophil count
AP, A/P	anteroposterior

A&P	assessment and plan
APAP	acetyl-*para*-aminophenol
APC	acetylsalicylic acid/aspirin, phenacetin, caffeine
aq.	water (*aqua*); aqueous
ARB	angiotensin II receptor blocker
ARDS	acute respiratory distress syndrome
AROM	active range of motion
ART	assisted reproductive technology
AS	aortic stenosis
AS	left ear (*auris sinistra*); better to specify "left ear," rather than abbreviating
ASA	acetylsalicylic acid (aspirin)
ASCUS	atypical squamous cells of undetermined significance (abnormal Pap smear finding that does not fully meet the criteria for a cancerous lesion)
ASD	atrial septal defect
ASD	autistic spectrum disorder
ASHD	arteriosclerotic heart disease
AST	aspartate aminotransferase (elevated in liver and heart disease); formerly called serum glutamic-oxaloacetic transaminase (SGOT)
AU	both ears (*auris uterque*); better to specify "in each ear/for both ears," rather than abbreviating
Au	gold (*aurum*)
AUB	abnormal uterine bleeding
AV	arteriovenous; atrioventricular
AVM	arteriovenous malformation
AVR	aortic valve replacement
AZT	azidothymidine
B cells	lymphocytes produced in the bone marrow
Ba	barium
BAL	bronchoalveolar lavage
bands	immature white blood cells (granulocytes)
baso	basophils
BBB	bundle branch block
BC	bone conduction

bcr	breakpoint cluster region
BE	barium enema
bid, b.i.d.	twice a day (*bis in die*)
BKA	below-knee amputation
BM	bowel movement
BMD	bone mineral density
BMR	basal metabolic rate
BMS	bare metal stent
BMT	bone marrow transplantation
BNP	brain natriuretic peptides (blood test that measures levels of a protein elevated in heart failure)
BP, B/P	blood pressure
BPH	benign prostatic hyperplasia/hypertrophy
BPPV	benign paroxysmal positional vertigo
BRBPR	bright red blood per rectum (hematochezia)
BRCA1, BRCA2	breast cancer 1, breast cancer 2 (genetic markers for disease risk)
bs	blood sugar; breath sound(s)
BSE	breast self-examination
BSO	bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy
BT	bleeding time
BUN	blood urea nitrogen
bw, BW	birth weight
Bx, bx	biopsy
C	carbon; calorie
°C	degrees Celsius (on "metric" temperature scale); degrees centigrade
$\overline{c}$	with (*cum*)
C1, C2	first cervical vertebra, second cervical vertebra (and so on)
CA	cancer; carcinoma; cardiac arrest; chronologic age
Ca	calcium
CABG	coronary artery bypass graft/grafting (cardiovascular surgery)
CAD	coronary artery disease
CAO	chronic airway obstruction

cap	capsule
CAP	community acquired pneumonia
CAPD	continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis
Cath	catheter; catheterization
CAUTI	catheter associated urinary tract infection
CBC	complete blood (cell) count
CBT	cognitive behavioral therapy
CC	chief complaint
cc	cubic centimeter (same as mL: 1/1000 of a liter)
CCr, CrCl	creatinine clearance
CCTA	coronary computed tomography angiography
CCU	coronary care unit; critical care unit
CDC	Centers for Disease Control and Prevention
CDH	congenital dislocated hip
CEA	carcinoembryonic antigen
cf.	compare (*confer*)
CF	cystic fibrosis; complement fixation (test)
c.gl	with (*cum*) glasses
CGMS	continuous glucose monitoring system
cGy	centigray (1/100 of a gray; a rad)
CHD	congenital heart defect/disease
chemo	chemotherapy
CHF	congestive heart failure
chol	cholesterol
chr	chronic
μCi	microcurie
CIN	cervical intraepithelial neoplasia
CIS	carcinoma in situ
CK	creatine kinase
CKD	chronic kidney disease
Cl	chlorine
CLL	chronic lymphocytic leukemia
cm	centimeter (1/100 of a meter)
CMA	certified medical assistant
CMC	carpometacarpal (joint)
CMG	cystometrogram

CML	chronic myelogenous leukemia
CMV	cytomegalovirus
CNS	central nervous system
CO	carbon monoxide; cardiac output
CO2	carbon dioxide
Co	cobalt
c/o	complains of
COPD	chronic obstructive pulmonary disease
CP	cerebral palsy; chest pain
CPA	costophrenic angle
CPAP	continuous positive airway pressure
CPD	cephalopelvic disproportion
CPR	cardiopulmonary resuscitation
CR	complete response; cardiorespiratory
CRBSI	catheter-related bloodstream infection
CRF	chronic renal failure
C&S	culture and sensitivity (of sputum)
C-section	cesarean section
CSF	cerebrospinal fluid; colony-stimulating factor
C-spine	cervical spine (x-ray film)
CT	computed tomography (x-ray imaging in axial and other planes)
ct.	count
CTPA	CT pulmonary angiography
CTPE	CT scan for pulmonary emboli
CTS	carpal tunnel syndrome
Cu	copper (*cuprum*)
CVA	cerebrovascular accident; costovertebral angle
CVP	central venous pressure
CVS	cardiovascular system; chorionic villus sampling
c/w	consistent with
CX, CXR	chest x-ray (film)
Cx	cervix
cysto	cystoscopy
D&C	dilatation/dilation and curettage
DCIS	ductal carcinoma in situ

DD	discharge diagnosis
DDx	differential diagnosis
Decub.	decubitus (lying down)
Derm.	dermatology
DES	drug eluting stent
DEXA ***or*** **DXA**	dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry (a test of bone mineral density)
DI	diabetes insipidus; diagnostic imaging
DIC	disseminated intravascular coagulation
DICOM	digital image communication in medicine
diff.	differential count (of kinds of white blood cells)
DIG	digoxin; digitalis
DKA	diabetic ketoacidosis
dL, dl	deciliter (1/10 of a liter)
DLco	diffusion capacity of the lung for carbon monoxide
DLE	discoid lupus erythematosus
DM	diabetes mellitus
DNA	deoxyribonucleic acid
DNR/DNI	do not resuscitate/do not intubate
D.O.	doctor of osteopathy
DOA	dead on arrival
DOAC	direct-acting oral anticoagulant (drug)
DOB	date of birth
DOE	dyspnea on exertion
DPT	diphtheria-pertussis-tetanus (vaccine)
DRE	digital rectal examination
DRG	diagnosis-related group
DSA	digital subtraction angiography
DSM	*Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*
DT	delirium tremens (caused by alcohol withdrawal)
DTR	deep tendon reflex(es)
DUB	dysfunctional uterine bleeding
DVT	deep vein thrombosis
D/W	dextrose in water
Dx	diagnosis
EBV	Epstein-Barr virus (cause of mononucleosis)

ECC	endocervical curettage; extracorporeal circulation; emergency cardiac care
ECF	extended care facility
ECG	electrocardiogram
ECHO	echocardiography
ECMO	extracorporeal membrane oxygenation
ECT	electroconvulsive therapy
ED	erectile dysfunction; emergency department
EDC	estimated date of confinement
EEG	electroencephalogram
EENT	eyes, ears, nose, throat
EGD	esophagogastroduodenoscopy
EGFR	epidermal growth factor receptor
EKG	electrocardiogram
ELISA	enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay
EM	electron microscope
EMB	endometrial biopsy
EMG	electromyogram
EMLA	eutectic mixture of local anesthetics
EMT	emergency medical technician
ENT	ear, nose, throat (refers to specialists as well)
EOM	extraocular movement; extraocular muscles
eos	eosinophils (type of white blood cell)
EPI	exocrine pancreatic insufficiency
EPO	erythropoietin
ER	emergency room; estrogen receptor
ERCP	endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography
ERT	estrogen replacement therapy
ESLD	end-stage liver disease
ESR (sed rate)	erythrocyte sedimentation rate (increase indicates inflammation)
ESRD	end-stage renal disease
ESWL	extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy
ETOH	ethyl alcohol
ETT	exercise tolerance test
EUS	endoscopic ultrasonography

F, ° F	Fahrenheit, degrees Fahrenheit
FB	fingerbreadth; foreign body
FBS	fasting blood sugar
FDA	U.S. Food and Drug Administration
FDG-PET	2-deoxy-2[F-18]fluoro-D-glucose positron emission tomography
Fe	iron (Latin, *ferrum*)
FEF	forced expiratory flow
FEV1	forced expiratory volume in first second
FFR	fractional flow reserve
FH	family history
FHR	fetal heart rate
FNA	fine needle aspiration
FPG	fasting plasma glucose
FROM	full range of movement/motion
FSH	follicle-stimulating hormone
F/U	follow-up
5-FU	5-fluorouracil (a chemotherapy drug)
FUO	fever of undetermined origin
Fx	fracture
G	gravida (pregnant)
g, gm	gram
μg	microgram (one millionth of a gram)
g/dL	grams per deciliter
Ga	gallium
GABA	gamma-aminobutyric acid; also spelled γ-aminobutyric acid—a neurotransmitter
GB	gallbladder
GBS	gallbladder series (an x-ray study)
GC	gonococcus
G-CSF	granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (promotes neutrophil production)
Gd	gadolinium
GERD	gastroesophageal reflux disease
GFR	glomerular filtration rate
GH	growth hormone

GI	gastrointestinal
GIST	gastrointestinal stromal tumor
G6PD	glucose-6-phosphate dehydrogenase (enzyme missing in an inherited red blood cell disorder)
GP	general practitioner
GM-CSF	granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (promotes myeloid progenitor cells with differentiation to granulocytes)
grav. 1, 2, 3	*gravida* 1, 2, 3—first, second, third pregnancy
gt, gtt	drop (*gutta*), drops (*guttae*)
GTT	glucose tolerance test
GU	genitourinary
Gy	gray—unit of radiation absorption (exposure); equal to 100 rad
GYN, gyn	gynecology
H	hydrogen
h., hr	hour
H2 blocker	histamine type 2 receptor antagonist (inhibitor of gastric acid secretion)
HAART	highly active antiretroviral therapy (for AIDS)
HAI	hemagglutination inhibition
Hb, hgb	hemoglobin
HbA1c, HgbA1c	glycosylated hemoglobin test (for diabetes)
HBV	hepatitis B virus
HCC	hepatocellular carcinoma
hCG, HCG	human chorionic gonadotropin
HCl	hydrochloric acid
HCO3	bicarbonate
Hct, HCT	hematocrit
HCV	hepatitis C virus
HCVD	hypertensive cardiovascular disease
HD	hemodialysis (performed by artificial kidney machine)
HDL	high-density lipoprotein

He	helium
HEENT	head, eyes, ears, nose, throat
H&E	hematoxylin and eosin
HFpEF	heart failure with preserved ejection fraction
HFrEF	heart failure with reduced ejection fraction
Hg	mercury (Latin *hydragyrum,* "liquid silver")
H&H	hematocrit and hemoglobin (measurement)—red blood cell tests
HIPAA	Health Insurance Portability and Accountability Act (of 1996)
HIV	human immunodeficiency virus
HLA	histocompatibility locus antigen (identifies cells as "self ")
HNP	herniated nucleus pulposus
h/o	history of
H2O	water
H&P	history and physical (examination)
HPF; hpf	high-power field (in microscopy)
HPI	history of present illness
HPV	human papillomavirus
HRT	hormone replacement therapy
h.s.	at bedtime (*hora somni*)—write out so as not to confuse with hs (half-strength)
hsCRP	high-sensitivity C-reactive protein
HSG	hysterosalpingography
HSV	herpes simplex virus
ht	height
HSM	hepatosplenomegaly
HTN	hypertension (high blood pressure)
Hx	history
I	iodine
^{131}I	a radioactive isotope of iodine
I-123	isotope of radioactive iodine—used in thyroid scans
IBD	inflammatory bowel disease (Crohn's and ulcerative colitis)
ICA	invasive coronary angiography

ICD	implantable cardioverter-defibrillator
ICP	intracranial pressure
ICSH	interstitial cell–stimulating hormone
ICU	intensive care unit
ID	infectious disease
ID	intellectual disability
IDC	invasive ductal carcinoma
I&D	incision and drainage
IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, IgM	immunoglobulins (type of antibodies)
IGF	insulin-like growth factor
IGRT	intensity-modulated gated radiation therapy
IHC	immunohistochemistry
IHD	ischemic heart disease
IHSS	idiopathic hypertrophic subaortic stenosis
IL-1 to IL-15	interleukins
IM	intramuscular; infectious mononucleosis
IMRT	intensity-modulated radiation therapy
inf.	infusion; inferior
INH	isoniazid (a drug used to treat tuberculosis)
inj.	injection
INR	international normalized ratio (measures the time it takes for blood to clot and compares it to an average)
I&O	intake and output (measurement of patient's fluids)
IOL	intraocular lens (implant)
IOP	intraocular pressure
IORT	intraoperative radiation therapy
IPPB	intermittent positive-pressure breathing
IQ	intelligence quotient
IRDS	infant respiratory distress syndrome
ITP	idiopathic thrombocytic purpura
IUD	intrauterine device
IUP	intrauterine pregnancy
IV	intravenous

IVP	intravenous pyelogram
IVUS	intravascular ultrasound
J-tube	jejunostomy tube
K	potassium
kg	kilogram (equal to 1000 g)
KJ	knee jerk
KS	Kaposi sarcoma
KUB	kidneys, ureters, bladder (x-ray study)
L, l	liter; left; lower
μL	microliter (one millionth of a liter)
L1, L2	first lumbar vertebra, second lumbar vertebra (and so on)
LA	left atrium
LAD	left anterior descending (coronary artery); lymphadenopathy
LADA	latent autoimmune diabetes in adults
laser	light amplification by stimulated emission of radiation
lat	lateral
LB	large bowel
LBBB	left bundle branch block (a form of heart block)
LBW	low birth weight
LD	lethal dose
LDH	lactate dehydrogenase
LDL	low-density lipoprotein (high levels are associated with heart disease)
L-dopa	levodopa (a drug used to treat Parkinson disease)
LE	lupus erythematosus
LEEP	loop electrocautery excision procedure
LES	lower esophageal sphincter
LFTs	liver function tests
LH	luteinizing hormone
LLL	left lower lobe (of lung)
LLQ	left lower quadrant (of abdomen)
LMP	last menstrual period
LMWH	low-molecular-weight heparin
LOC	loss of consciousness

LOS	length of (hospital) stay
LP	lumbar puncture
lpf	low-power field (in microscopy)
LPN	licensed practical nurse
LS	lumbosacral (spine)
LSD	lysergic acid diethylamide (a hallucinogen)
LSH	laparoscopic supracervical hysterectomy
LSK	liver, spleen, kidneys
LTB	laryngotracheal bronchitis (croup)
LTC	long-term care
LTH	luteotropic hormone (same as prolactin)
LUL	left upper lobe (of lung)
LUQ	left upper quadrant (of abdomen)
LV	left ventricle
LVAD	left ventricular assist device
LVEF	left ventricular ejection fraction
L&W	living and well
lymphs	lymphocytes
lytes	electrolytes
MA	mental age
MAC	monitored anesthesia care; *Mycobacterium avium* complex (a common cause of opportunistic pneumonia)
MAI	*Mycobacterium avium-intracellulare*
MAOI	monoamine oxidase inhibitor (a type of antidepressant)
MBD	minimal brain dysfunction
mcg	microgram—also abbreviated μg; equal to one millionth of a gram
MCH	mean corpuscular hemoglobin (average amount in each red blood cell)
MCHC	mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration (average concentration in a single red cell)
mCi	millicurie
μCi	microcurie
MCP	metacarpophalangeal (joint)
MCV	mean corpuscular volume (average size of a single red

	blood cell)
M.D., MD	doctor of medicine
MDD	major depressive disorder
MDI	multiple daily injections; metered-dose inhaler (used to deliver aerosolized medication to a patient)
MDR	minimum daily requirement
MDS	myelodysplastic syndrome (bone marrow disorder)
MED	minimum effective dose
mEq	milliequivalent
mEq/L	milliequivalent per liter (unit of measure for the concentration of a solution)
mets	metastases
MG	myasthenia gravis
Mg	magnesium
mg	milligram (1/1000 of a gram)
mg/cc^3	milligram per cubic centimeter
mg/dL	milligram per deciliter
MH	marital history; mental health
MI	myocardial infarction; mitral insufficiency
mL, ml	milliliter (1/1000 of a liter)
mm	millimeter (1/1000 of a meter); 0.039 inch
mm Hg, mmHg	millimeters of mercury
MMPI	Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory
MMR	measles-mumps-rubella (vaccine)
MMT	manual muscle testing
μm	micrometer (one millionth of a meter, or 1/1000 of a millimeter); sometimes seen in older sources as μ (for "micron," an outdated term)
MoAb	monoclonal antibody
MODS	multiple organ dysfunction syndrome
monos	monocytes (type of white blood cells)
MR	mitral regurgitation; magnetic resonance
MRA	magnetic resonance angiography
MRI	magnetic resonance imaging
mRNA	messenger RNA

MRSA	methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus*
MS	multiple sclerosis; mitral stenosis; morphine sulfate
MSL	midsternal line
MSSA	methicillin-suspectible *Staphylococcus aureus*
MTD	maximum tolerated dose
MTX	methotrexate
MUGA	multiple-gated acquisition scan (of heart)
multip	multipara; multiparous
MVP	mitral valve prolapse
myop	myopia (nearsightedness)
N	nitrogen
NA, N/A	not applicable; not available
Na	sodium (*natrium*)
NASH	nonalcoholic steatohepatitis
NB	newborn
NBS	normal bowel sounds; normal breath sounds
NCD	neurocognitive disorder
ND	normal delivery; normal development
NED	no evidence of disease
neg.	negative
NF	neurofibromatosis
NG tube	nasogastric tube
NHL	non-Hodgkin lymphoma
NICU	neonatal intensive care unit
NK cells	natural killer cells
NKA	no known allergies
NKDA	no known drug allergies
NOAC	non-vitamin K anticoagulant drug
NOTES	natural orifice transluminal endoscopic surgery
NPO	nothing by mouth (*nil per os*)
NSAID	nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drug (often prescribed to treat musculoskeletal disorders)
NSCLC	non–small cell lung cancer
NSR	normal sinus rhythm (of heart)
NTP	normal temperature and pressure
O, O2	oxygen

OA	osteoarthritis
OB/GYN	obstetrics and gynecology
OCPs	oral contraceptive pills
O.D.	doctor of optometry
OD	right eye (*oculus dexter*); better to specify "right eye," rather than abbreviating
OD	overdose
OMT	osteopathic manipulative treatment
OR	operating room
ORIF	open reduction plus internal fixation
ORTH; Ortho.	orthopedics
OS	left eye (*oculus sinister*); better to specify "left eye," rather than abbreviating
os	opening; bone
OT	occupational therapy (helps patients perform activities of daily living and function in work-related situations)
OU	both eyes (*oculus uterque*); better to specify "both eyes," rather than abbreviating
oz	ounce
P	phosphorus; posterior; pressure; pulse; pupil
$\overline{\text{p}}$	after (post)
P2	pulmonary valve closure (a heart sound)
PA	pulmonary artery; posteroanterior
P-A	posteroanterior
P&A	percussion and auscultation
PAC	premature atrial contraction
Pa_{CO_2}	partial pressure of carbon dioxide in arterial blood
PACS	picture archival communications system
PAD	peripheral arterial disease
palp.	palpable; palpation
PALS	pediatric advanced life support
Pa_{O_2}	partial pressure of oxygen in blood
Pap smear	Papanicolaou smear (from cervix and vagina)
para 1, 2, 3	unipara, bipara, tripara (number of viable births)
pc, p.c.	after meals (*post cibum*)

PCA	patient-controlled anesthesia
PCI	percutaneous coronary intervention
P_{CO2}, pCO2	partial pressure of carbon dioxide
PCP	*Pneumocystis* pneumonia; phencyclidine (a hallucinogen)
PCR	polymerase chain reaction (process that allows making copies of genes)
PD	peritoneal dialysis
PD	progressive disease
PDA	patent ductus arteriosus
PDR	*Physicians' Desk Reference*
PE	physical examination; pulmonary embolus
PEEP	positive end-expiratory pressure
PEG	percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (feeding tube placed in stomach)
PEJ	percutaneous endoscopic jejunostomy (feeding tube placed in small intestine)
per os	by mouth
PERRLA	pupils equal, round, reactive to light and accommodation
PET	positron emission tomography
PE tube	ventilating tube for eardrum
PFT	pulmonary function test
PG	prostaglandin
PH	past history
pH	potential hydrogen (scale to indicate degree of acidity or alkalinity)
PI	present illness
PICC	peripherally inserted central catheter
PID	pelvic inflammatory disease
PIN	prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia
PIP	proximal interphalangeal (joint)
PKU	phenylketonuria
PM, p.m.	in the afternoon (*post meridiem*)
PMH	past medical history

PMN	polymorphonuclear leukocyte
PMS	premenstrual syndrome
PND	paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea
PNS	peripheral nervous system
PO, p.o.	by mouth (*per os*)
p/o	postoperative
PO2, pO2	partial pressure of oxygen
poly	polymorphonuclear leukocyte
postop	postoperative (after surgery)
PPBS	postprandial blood sugar
PPD	purified protein derivative (used in test for tuberculosis)
preop	preoperative
prep	prepare for
PR	partial response
primip	primipara
PRL	prolactin
p.r.n.	as needed; as necessary (*pro re nata*)
procto	proctoscopy
prot.	protocol
Pro. time	prothrombin time (test of blood clotting)
PSA	prostate-specific antigen
PSCT	peripheral stem cell transplantation
PSRS	proton stereotactic radiosurgery
PT	prothrombin time; physical therapy (helps patients regain use of muscles and joints after injury or surgery)
pt.	patient
PTA	prior to admission (to hospital)
PTC	percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography
PTCA	percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty
PTH	parathyroid hormone
PTHC	percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography
PTSD	post-traumatic stress disorder
PTT	partial thromboplastin time (a test of blood clotting)
PU	pregnancy urine
PUVA	psoralen ultraviolet A (a treatment for psoriasis)

PVC	premature ventricular contraction
PVD	peripheral vascular disease
PVT	paroxysmal ventricular tachycardia
PWB	partial weight-bearing
Px	prognosis
Q	blood volume; rate of blood flow (daily)
q	every (*quaque,* "each")
qAM	every morning; better to specify than to abbreviate
qd, q.d.	every day (*quaque die*); better to specify "each/every day," rather than confusing with qid or qod
qh	every hour (*quaque hora*); better to specify than to abbreviate
q2h	every 2 hours; better to specify than to abbreviate
qid, q.i.d.	four times daily (*quater in die*); better to specify than to abbreviate
q.n.s.	quantity not sufficient (*quantum non sufficit*)
qPM	every evening; better to specify than to abbreviate
QRS	a wave complex in an electrocardiographic study
q.s.	sufficient quantity (*quantum sufficit*)
qt	quart
R	respiration; right
RA	rheumatoid arthritis; right atrium
Ra	radium
rad	radiation absorbed dose
RAIU	radioactive iodine uptake test
RBBB	right bundle branch block
RBC, rbc	red blood count; red blood cell
RDDA	recommended daily dietary allowance
RDS	respiratory distress syndrome
REM	rapid eye movement
RF	rheumatoid factor
Rh (factor)	rhesus (monkey) factor in blood
RhoGAM	drug to prevent Rh factor reaction in Rh-negative women
RIA	radioimmunoassay (test for measuring minute

	quantities of a substance)
RLL	right lower lobe/lung
RLQ	right lower quadrant (abdomen)
RML	right middle lobe
RNA	ribonucleic acid
R/O	rule out
ROM	range of motion
ROS	review of systems
RRR	regular rate and rhythm (of heart)
RT	right; radiation therapy
RUL	right upper lobe (of lung)
RUQ	right upper quadrant (of abdomen)
RV	right ventricle
Rx	treatment; therapy; prescription
$\overline{s}$	without (*sine*)
S1, S2	first sacral vertebra, second sacral vertebra (and so on)
S-A node	sinoatrial node (pacemaker of heart)
SAD	seasonal affective disorder
SARS	severe acute respiratory syndrome
SBE	subacute bacterial endocarditis
SBFT	small bowel follow-through (x-ray study of small intestine function)
SD	stable disease—tumor does not shrink but does not grow
segs	segmented, mature white blood cells (neutrophils)
SERM	selective estrogen receptor modulator
s.gl	without (*sine*) glasses
SGOT	see AST
SGPT	see ALT
SIADH	syndrome of inappropriate antidiuretic hormone
SIDS	sudden infant death syndrome
Sig.	directions—medication instructions (*signa,* "mark")
SIRS	systemic inflammatory response syndrome (severe bacteremia)
SL	sublingual
SLE	systemic lupus erythematosus

SLT	selective laser trabeculoplasty
SMA-12	blood chemistry profile including 12 different studies/assays
SMAC	sequential multiple analyzer computer (automated analytical device for testing blood)
SMBG	self-monitoring of blood glucose
SOAP	subjective, objective, assessment, plan (format used for patient notes)
SOB	shortness of breath
s.o.s.	if necessary (*si opus sit,* "if there should be [such a] necessity")
S/P	status post (previous disease, condition, or procedure)
sp. gr.	specific gravity
SPECT	single photon emission computed tomography
subQ	subcutaneous
S/S, Sx	signs and symptoms
SSCP	substernal chest pain
SSRI	selective serotonin reuptake inhibitor (a type of antidepressant)
Staph.	staphylococci (berry-shaped bacteria occurring in clusters)
stat., stat	immediately (*statim*)
STD	sexually transmitted disease
STH	somatotropic hormone (somatotropin) (a growth hormone)
STI	sexually transmitted infection
Strep.	streptococci (berry-shaped bacteria occurring in twisted chains)
subcu, subcut	subcutaneous
SQ	subcutaneous
subQ, sub-Q	subcutaneous
SVC	superior vena cava
SVD	spontaneous vaginal delivery
Sx	symptoms; signs and symptoms

Sz	seizure
T	temperature; time
T cells	lymphocytes produced in the thymus gland
T tube	tube placed in biliary tract for drainage
T1, T2	first thoracic vertebra, second thoracic vertebra (and so on)
T3	triiodothyronine (test)
T4	thyroxine (test)
TA	therapeutic abortion
T&A	tonsillectomy and adenoidectomy
TAB	therapeutic abortion
TAH/BSO	total abdominal hysterectomy/bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy
TAT	Thematic Apperception Test
TB	tuberculosis
Tc	technetium
TEE	transesophageal echocardiogram
TENS	transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation
TFT	thyroid function test
THR	total hip replacement (an arthroplasty procedure)
TIA	transient ischemic attack
tid, t.i.d.	three times daily (*ter in die*)
TKR	total knee replacement (an arthroplasty procedure)
TLC	total lung capacity
TLE	temporal lobe epilepsy
TM	tympanic membrane
TMJ	temporomandibular joint
TNF	tumor necrosis factor
TNM	tumor-node-metastasis (cancer staging system)
tPA	tissue plasminogen activator
TPN	total parenteral nutrition
TPR	temperature, pulse, respirations
TRUS	transrectal ultrasound (examination) (test to access the prostate and guide precise placement of a biopsy needle)
TSH	thyroid-stimulating hormone

TSS	toxic shock syndrome
TTE	transthoracic echocardiogram
TUR, TURP	transurethral resection of the prostate
TVH	total vaginal hysterectomy
Tx	treatment
UA	urinalysis
UAO	upper airway obstruction
UC	uterine contraction(s)
UE	upper extremity
UGI	upper gastrointestinal
umb.	navel (umbilicus)
U/O	urinary output
URI	upper respiratory infection
U/S	ultrasound; ultrasonography
UTI	urinary tract infection
UV	ultraviolet
VA	visual acuity
VATS	video-assisted thoracic surgery (a thorascopy procedure)
VC	vital capacity (of lungs)
VCUG	voiding cystourethrogram
VDRL	Venereal Disease Research Laboratory (test for syphilis)
VEGF	vascular endothelial growth factor
VF	visual field; ventricular fibrillation
V/Q scan	ventilation-perfusion scan (of lung)
V/S	vital signs; versus
VSD	ventricular septal defect
VT	ventricular tachycardia (an abnormal heart rhythm)
VTE	venous thromboembolism
WAIS	Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale
WBC, wbc	white blood cell; white blood count
WDWN	well developed and well nourished
WISC	Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children
WNL	within normal limits

wt	weight
XRT	radiation therapy
y/o, yr	year(s) old

Acronyms

An *acronym* is the name for an abbreviation that forms a pronounceable word.

ACE (“ace”) **a**ngiotensin-**c**onverting **e**nzyme
AIDS (aydz) **a**cquired **i**mmuno**d**eficiency **s**yndrome
APGAR (AP-gar) **a**ppearance, **p**ulse, **g**rimace, **a**ctivity, **r**espiration
BUN (“bun” *or* bē-yū-ĔN) **b**lood **u**rea **n**itrogen
CABG (“cabbage”) **c**oronary **a**rtery **b**ypass **g**raft/**g**rafting
CAT (“cat”) **c**omputerized **a**xial **t**omography (*outdated term; use* CT)
CPAP (SEE-pap) **c**ontinuous **p**ositive **a**irway **p**ressure
CRISPR (KRIS-per) CRISPR-Cas9
DEXA (DEKS-ah) **d**ual **e**nergy **x**-ray **a**bsorptometry
ELISA (“eliza”) **e**nzyme-**l**inked **i**mmuno**s**orbent **a**ssay
GERD (gerd) **g**astro**e**sophageal **r**eflux **d**isease
GIST (jist) **g**astro**i**ntestinal **s**tromal **t**umor
HAART (“heart”) **h**ighly **a**ctive **a**ntiretroviral **t**herapy
HIPAA (HIP-ah) **H**ealth **I**nsurance **P**ortability and **A**ccountability **A**ct of 1996
LASER (LA-zer) **l**ight **a**mplification by **s**timulated **e**mission of **r**adiation
LASIK (LA-sik) **l**aser **i**n **s**itu **k**eratomileusis
LEEP (“leap”) **l**oop **e**lectrocautery **e**xcision **p**rocedure
MAC (mak) **m**onitored **a**nesthesia **c**are; **M***ycobacterium* **a***vium* **c**omplex
MERS (merz) **M**iddle **E**ast **r**espiratory **s**yndrome
MICU (MIK-u) **m**edical **i**ntensive **c**are **u**nit
MIS (“miss”) **m**inimally **i**nvasive **s**urgery
MODS (mohdz) **m**ultiple **o**rgan **d**ysfunction **s**yndrome

MUGA (MUG-AH) **mu**ltiple-**g**ated **a**cquisition (scan)
NSAID (EN-sayd) **n**onsteroidal **a**nti-**i**nflammatory **d**rug
NICU (NIK-u) **n**eonatal **i**ntensive **c**are **u**nit
PACS (paks) **p**icture **a**rchival **c**ommunications **s**ystem
PALS (palz) **p**ediatric **a**dvanced **l**ife **s**upport
PANDAS (PAN-daz) **P**ediatric **A**utoimmune **N**europsychiatric **D**isorder(s) **A**ssociated with **S**treptococcal Infection(s)
PEEP ("peep") **p**ositive **e**nd-**e**xpiratory **p**ressure
PEG ("peg") **p**ercutaneous **e**ndoscopic **g**astrostomy
PERRLA (PER-lah) **p**upils **e**qual, **r**ound, **r**eactive to **l**ight and **a**ccommodation
PET ("pet") **p**ositron **e**mission **t**omography
PICU (PIK-u) **p**ediatric **i**ntensive **c**are **u**nit
PIP ("pip") **p**roximal **i**nter**p**halangeal (joint)
PUVA (poo-vah) **p**soralen **u**ltra**v**iolet **A**
REM (rem) **r**apid **e**ye **m**ovement
SAD ("sad") **s**easonal **a**ffective **d**isorder
SARS (sars) **s**evere **a**cute **r**espiratory **s**yndrome
SERM (serm) **s**elective **e**strogen **r**eceptor **m**odulator
SIDS (sidz) **s**udden **i**nfant **d**eath **s**yndrome
SIRS (serz) **s**ystemic **i**nflammatory **r**esponse **s**yndrome
SMAC ("smack") **s**equential **m**ultiple **a**nalyzer **c**omputer (blood testing)
SOAP ("soap") **s**ubjective, **o**bjective, **a**ssessment, **p**lan
SPECT (spekt) **s**ingle **p**hoton **e**mission **c**omputed **t**omography
TENS (tenz) **t**ranscutaneous **e**lectrical **n**erve **s**timulation
TRUS ("truss") **t**rans**r**ectal **u**ltra**s**ound
TURP (turp) **t**rans**u**rethral **r**esection of the **p**rostate
VATS (vatz) **v**ideo-**a**ssisted **t**horacic **s**urgery

Eponyms

An *eponym* is a designation for a disorder, structure, or other medical entity derived from a person or place.

Achilles tendon (Achilles, Greek mythological hero)	This tendon connects the calf muscles to the heel. It lies at the only part of Achilles' body that was still vulnerable after his mother dipped him as an infant into the river Styx, when she held him by the heel.
Alzheimer disease (Alois Alzheimer, MD, German neurologist, 1864-1915)	Progressive mental deterioration marked by confusion, memory failure, and disorientation.
Apgar score (Virginia Apgar, MD, American anesthesiologist, 1909-1974)	Evaluation of an infant's physical condition, usually performed at 1 minute and then 5 minutes after birth. Highest score is 10. An Apgar rating of 9/10 is a score of 9 at 1 minute and 10 at 5 minutes.
Asperger syndrome (Hans Asperger, Austrian psychiatrist, 1906-1980)	A developmental disorder characterized by impairment of social interactions (resembling autism) but lacking in delays in language development and mental functioning.
Barrett esophagus (Norman Barrett, English physician, 1903-1979)	The lining of the esophagus is damaged by acid reflux. and may be a precancerous condition.
Bell palsy (Charles Bell, Scottish surgeon, 1774-1842)	Unilateral (one-sided) paralysis of the facial nerve.
Burkitt lymphoma (Denis Burkitt, English surgeon	Malignant tumor of lymph nodes; chiefly seen in central Africa. The Epstein-Barr virus is associated with this lymphoma.

in Africa, 1911-1993)	
Cheyne-Stokes respiration (John Cheyne, Scottish physician, 1777-1836; William Stokes, Irish physician 1804-1878)	Abnormal pattern of respirations with alternating periods of stoppage of breathing and deep, rapid breathing.
Colles fracture (Abraham Colles, Irish surgeon, 1773-1843)	A break (fracture) of the radius (outer forearm bone) near the wrist.
Crohn disease (Burrill B. Crohn, American physician, 1884-1983)	Chronic inflammatory bowel disease of unknown origin; usually affecting the ileum (last part of the small intestine), colon, or any part of the gastrointestinal tract.
Cushing syndrome (Harvey W. Cushing, American surgeon, 1869-1939)	A disorder resulting from chronic, excessive production of cortisol from the adrenal cortex. It also can result from administration of glucocorticoids (cortisone) in large doses for long periods.
Duchenne muscular dystrophy (Guillaume Benjamin Amand Duchenne, French	Abnormal, inherited condition marked by progressive hardening of muscles in the legs and hips (pelvis) beginning in infancy.

neurologist, 1806-1875)	
Epstein-Barr virus (Michael A. Epstein, English pathologist, born 1921; Yvonne M. Barr, English virologist, born 1932)	The herpesvirus that causes infectious mononucleosis and is associated with malignant conditions such as nose and throat cancer, Burkitt lymphoma, and Hodgkin disease.
eustachian tube (Bartolomeo Eustachio, Italian anatomist, 1524-1574)	Anatomic passageway that joins the throat and the middle ear cavity.
Ewing sarcoma (James Ewing, American pathologist, 1866-1943)	Malignant tumor that develops from bone marrow, usually in long bones or the hip (pelvis).
fallopian tube (Gabriele Falloppio, Italian anatomist, 1523-1562)	One of a pair of tubes or ducts leading from the ovary to the upper portion of the uterus.
Foley catheter (Frederic Foley, American physician, 1891-1966)	Rubber tube that is placed in the urethra to provide drainage of urine.
Giardia (Alfred Giardia, French biologist, 1846-1908)	One-celled organism (protozoan) that causes gastrointestinal infection with diarrhea, abdominal cramping, and weight loss. Cause

	of infection usually is fecally contaminated water.
Hodgkin lymphoma (Thomas Hodgkin, English physician, 1798-1866)	Malignant tumor of the lymph nodes.
Huntington disease (George S. Huntington, American physician, 1851-1916)	Rare hereditary condition marked by chronic, progressively worsening dance-like movements (chorea) and mental deterioration, resulting in dementia.
Kaposi sarcoma (Moricz Kaposi, Austrian dermatologist, 1837-1902)	Malignant neoplasm of cells that line blood and lymph vessels. Soft brownish or purple papules appear on the skin. The tumor can metastasize to lymph nodes and internal organs. It is often associated with AIDS.
Marfan syndrome (Bernard-Jean A. Marfan, French pediatrician, 1858-1942)	Hereditary condition that affects bones, muscles, the cardiovascular system (leading to aneurysms), and eyes (lens dislocation). Affected people have overlong extremities with "spider-like" fingers (arachnodactyly), underdeveloped muscles, and easily movable joints.
Meniere disease (Prosper Ménière, French physician, 1799-1862)	Chronic disease of the inner ear with recurrent episodes of dizziness (vertigo), hearing loss, and ringing in the ears (tinnitus).
Neisseria gonorrhoeae (Albert L. S. Neisser, Polish	A type of bacterium that causes gonorrhea (a sexually transmitted disease).

dermatologist, 1855-1916)	
Paget disease (James Paget, English surgeon, 1814-1899)	Disease of bone, often affecting middle-aged or elderly people; marked by bone destruction and poor bone repair.
Pap test (George Papanicolaou, Greek physician in the United States, 1883-1962)	Method of examining stained cells obtained from the cervix and vagina. It is a common way to detect cervical cancer.
Parkinson disease (James Parkinson, English physician, 1755-1824)	Slowly progressive degenerative neurologic disorder marked by tremors, mask-like facial appearance, shuffling gait (manner of walking), and muscle rigidity and weakness.
Raynaud phenomenon (Maurice Raynaud, French physician, 1834-1881)	Intermittent attacks of loss of blood flow (ischemia) of the extremities of the body (fingers, toes, ears, and nose). Episodes most often are caused by exposure to cold.
Reye syndrome (R. Douglas Reye, Austrian pathologist, 1912-1978)	Acute brain disease (encephalopathy) and disease of internal organs following an acute viral infection.
Rinne test (Heinrich A. Rinne, German otologist, 1819-1868)	Hearing test using a vibrating tuning fork placed against a bone behind the patient's ear (mastoid bone).

Rorschach test (Herman Rorschach, Swiss psychiatrist, 1884-1922)	Personality test based on a patient's interpretation of 10 standard ink blots.
Salmonella (Daniel E. Salmon, American pathologist, 1850-1914)	Type of bacteria (rod-shaped) that causes typhoid fever and types of gastroenteritis (inflammation of the stomach and intestines).
Schatzki ring (Richard Schatzki, MD German-American physician, 1901-92)	
Shigella (Kiyoshi Shiga, Japanese bacteriologist, 1870-1957)	Type of bacteria that causes severe infectious gastroenteritis (inflammation of stomach and intestines) and dysentery (diarrhea, abdominal pain, and fever).
Sjögren syndrome (Heinrik S.C. Sjögren, Swedish ophthalmologist, 1899-1986)	Abnormal dryness of the mouth, eyes, and mucous membranes, caused by deficient fluid production. It is a disorder of the immune system.
Snellen test (Herman Snellen, Dutch ophthalmologist, 1834-1908)	Test of visual clarity (acuity) using a special chart. Letters, numbers, or symbols are arranged on the chart in decreasing size from top to bottom.
Tay-Sachs disease	Inherited disorder of nerve degeneration caused by deficiency of an enzyme. Most

(Warren Tay, English ophthalmologist, 1843-1927; Bernard Sachs, American neurologist, 1858-1944)	affected children die between the ages of 2 and 4 years.
Tetrology of Fallot (Étienne-Louis Fallot, French physician, 1850-1911).	Four separate defects of the heart occurring at birth.
Tourette syndrome (Georges Gilles de la Tourette, French neurologist, 1857-1927)	Condition marked by abnormal facial grimaces, inappropriate speech, and involuntary movements of eyes, arms, and shoulders (tics).
von Willebrand disease (Erick A. von Willebrand, Finnish physician, 1870-1949)	Inherited blood disorder marked by abnormally slow blood clotting; caused by deficiency in a blood clotting factor (factor VIII).
Weber tuning fork test (Hermann D. Weber, English physician, 1823-1918)	Test of hearing using a vibrating tuning fork with the stem placed in the center of the patient's forehead.
Whipple procedure	A surgical procedure to remove a portion of the pancreas and the stomach and the entire first part of the small intestine (duodenum).

(Allen O. Whipple, American surgeon, 1881-1963)	Used in the treatment of pancreatic cancer and other conditions.
Wilms tumor (Max Wilms, German surgeon, 1867-1918)	Malignant tumor of the kidney occurring in young children.

Symbols

=	equals
≠	does not equal
+	positive
−	negative
↑	above, increase
↓	below, decrease
♀	female
♂	male
→	to (in direction of)
>	is greater than
<	is less than
1°	primary to
2°	secondary to
ℨ	dram
℥	ounce
%	percent
°	degree; hour
:	ratio; “is to”
±	plus or minus (either positive or negative)
′	foot
″	inch
∴	therefore
@	at, each
c̄	with
s̄	without
#	pound; number
≅	approximately equals, “is about”
Δ	change
p	short arm of a chromosome
q	long arm of a chromosome

APPENDIX III

Normal Hematologic Reference Values and Implications of Abnormal Results

The implications of abnormal results included in this Appendix are major ones in each category. SI units are those used in the International System of Units, which generally are accepted for all scientific and technical uses. All laboratory values should be interpreted with caution because normal values differ widely among clinical laboratories. The following units are commonly seen in hematologic test reports.

dL = deciliter (1/10 of a liter *or* 100 mL)
g = gram
L = liter
mg = milligram (1/1000 of a gram)
mL = milliliter
mEq = milliequivalent
mm = millimeter (1/1000 of a meter)
mm^3 = cubic millimeter (cu mm)
mmol = millimole
U = unit
µL = microliter
µmol = micromole (one millionth of a mole)

Blood Cell Counts

Cell Category	Conventional Units	Si Units	Implications	
Erythrocytes (RBCs)				
Females	4.0-5.5 million/mm^3 *or* µL	4.0-5.5 × 10^{12}/L	*High*	♦ Polycythemia ♦ Dehydration
Males	4.5-6.0 million/mm^3 *or* µL	4.5-6.0 × 10^{12}/L	*Low*	♦ Iron deficiency anemia ♦ Blood loss
Leukocytes (WBCs)				
Total	5000-10,000/mm^3 *or* µL	5.0-10.0 × 10^9/L	*High*	♦ Bacterial infection ♦ Leukemia ♦ Eosinophils high in allergy
Differential (%)				
Neutrophils	54-62			
Lymphocytes Monocytes Eosinophils	20-40 3-–7 1-3		*Low*	♦ Viral infection ♦ Aplastic anemia ♦ Chemotherapy
Basophils	0-1			
Platelets	150,000-350,000/mm^3 *or* µL	200-400 × 10^9/L	*High*	♦ Hemorrhage ♦ Infections ♦ Malignancy ♦ Splenectomy
			Low	♦ Aplastic anemia ♦ Chemotherapy ♦ Hypersplenism

Coagulation Tests

Test	Conventional Units	Si Units	Implications	
Bleeding time (template method)	2.75-8.0 min	2.7-8.0 min	*Prolonged*	♦ Aspirin ingestion ♦ Low platelet count
Coagulation time	5-15 min	5-15 min	*Prolonged*	♦ Heparin therapy
Prothrombin time (PT)*	11-12.5 sec	11-12.5 sec	*Prolonged*	♦ Vitamin K deficiency ♦ Hepatic disease ♦ Oral anticoagulant therapy (warfarin)
Partial thromboplastin time (PTT)	25-34 sec	25-37 sec	*Prolonged*	♦ Intravenous heparin therapy

*The INR (international normalized ratio) is a standard tool for monitoring the effects of an anticoagulant, warfarin; the normal INR value is <1.5.

Red Blood Cell Tests

Test	Conventional Units	Si Units	Implications	
Hematocrit (Hct)				
Females	37%-47%	0.37-0.47	*High*	♦ Polycythemia ♦ Dehydration
Males	40%-54%	0.40-0.54	*Low*	♦ Loss of blood ♦ Anemia
Hemoglobin (Hb, Hgb)				
Females	12.0-14.0 g/dL *or* 120-140 g/L	1.86-2.48 mmol/L	*High*	♦ Polycythemia ♦ Dehydration
Males	14.0-16.0 g/dL	2.17-2.79 mmol/L	*Low*	♦ Anemia ♦ Blood loss

Serum Tests

Test	Conventional Units	Si Units	Implications	
Alanine aminotransferase (ALT; SGPT)	5-30 U/L	5-30 U/L	*High*	♦ Hepatitis
Albumin	3.5-5.5 g/dL	35-55 g/L	*Low*	♦ Hepatic disease ♦ Malnutrition ♦ Nephritis and nephrosis
Alkaline phosphatase (ALP)	20-90 U/L	20-90 U/L	*High*	♦ Bone disease ♦ Hepatitis or tumor infiltration of liver ♦ Biliary obstruction
Aspartate aminotransferase (AST; SGOT)	10-30 U/L	10-30 U/L	*High*	♦ Hepatitis ♦ Cardiac and muscle injury
Bilirubin			*High*	♦ Hemolysis ♦ Neonatal hepatic immaturity ♦ Cirrhosis ♦ Biliary tract obstruction
Total	0.3-1.0 mg/dL	5.1-17 μmol/L		
Neonates	1-12 mg/dL	17-205 μmol/L		
Blood urea nitrogen (BUN)	10-20 mg/dL	3.6-7.1 mmol/L	*High*	♦ Renal disease ♦ Reduced renal blood flow ♦ Urinary tract obstruction
			Low	♦ Hepatic damage ♦ Malnutrition
Calcium	9.0-10.5 mg/dL	2.2-2.6 mmol/L	*High*	♦ Hyperparathyroidism ♦ Multiple myeloma ♦ Metastatic cancer
			Low	♦ Hypoparathyroidism ♦ Total parathyroidectomy
Cholesterol (desirable range)				

Test	Conventional Units	Si Units	Implications	
Total	<200 mg/dL	<5.2 mmol/L	*High*	♦ High-fat diet ♦ Inherited hypercholesterolemia
LDL cholesterol	<130 mg/dL	<3.36 mmol/L		
HDL cholesterol	>60 mg/dL	>1.55 mmol/L		
			Low	♦ Starvation
Creatine kinase (CK)				
Females	30-135 U/L	30-135 U/L	*High*	♦ Myocardial infarction ♦ Muscle disease
Males	55-170 U/L	55-170 U/L		
Creatinine	<1.5 mg/dL	<133 μmol/L	*High*	♦ Renal disease
Glucose (fasting)	75-115 mg/dL	4.2-6.4 mmol/L	*High*	♦ Diabetes mellitus
			Low	♦ Hyperinsulinism ♦ Fasting ♦ Hypothyroidism ♦ Addison disease ♦ Pituitary insufficiency
Iron (Fe)				
Females	30-160 μg/dL	5.4-31.3 μmol/L	*High*	♦ Hemochromatosis ♦ Transfusions
Males	45-160 μg/dL	8.1-31.3 μmol/L	*Low*	♦ Anemia ♦ Bleeding
Lactate dehydrogenase (LDH)	100-190 U/L	100-190 U/L	*High*	♦ Tissue necrosis ♦ Lymphomas ♦ Muscle disease
Phosphate (PO_4^-)	3.0-4.5 mg/dL	1.0-1.5 mmol/L	*High*	♦ Renal failure ♦ Bone metastases ♦ Hypoparathyroidism

Test	Conventional Units	Si Units	Implications	
			Low	♦ Malnutrition ♦ Malabsorption ♦ Hyperparathyroidism
Potassium (K^+)	3.5-5.0 mEq/L	3.5-5.0 mmol/L	*High*	♦ Burn injury ♦ Renal failure ♦ Diabetic ketoacidosis
			Low	♦ Cushing syndrome ♦ Loss of body fluids
Sodium (Na^+)	136-145 mEq/L	136-145 mmol/L	*High*	♦ Inadequate water intake ♦ Water loss in excess of sodium
			Low	♦ Adrenal insufficiency ♦ Inadequate sodium intake ♦ Excessive sodium loss
Thyroxine (T4)	5-12 μg/dL	64-154 nmol/L	*High*	♦ Graves disease (hyperthyroidism)
			Low	♦ Hypothyroidism
Uric acid				
Females	2.5-8.0 mg/dL	150-480 μmol/L	*High*	♦ Gout ♦ Leukemia
Males	1.5-6.0 mg/dL	90-360 μmol/L		

APPENDIX IV

Drugs

Following is an alphabetized list of the drugs referred to in Chapter 21 (tables), with brand name(s) in parentheses and explanation of their use, including drug category and/or class. This Appendix, along with drugs listed alphabetically by brand name, also appears on the Evolve website.

Generic Name (Brand Name)	Explanation of Use
abiraterone (Zytiga)	Endocrine/antiandrogen
acarbose (Precose)	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes)/alpha-glucosidase inhibitor
acetaminophen (Tylenol)	Analgesic/mild
acyclovir (Zovirax)	Antiviral/herpes virus drug
adalimumab (Humira)	Gastrointestinal/anti-TNF
albuterol (Proventil, Ventolin, HFA)	Bronchodilator
alendronate (Fosamax)	Antiosteoporosis/bisphosphonate
alirocumab (Praluent)	Cardiovascular/cholesterol-binding PCSK9 inhibitor
alogliptin	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes) DPP-4 inhibitor
alprazolam (Xanax)	Tranquilizer/minor/benzodiazepine
aluminum antacid (Rolaids)	GI/antacid
aluminum + magnesium antacid (Gaviscon)	GI/antacid
amitriptyline (Elavil)	Antidepressant/tricyclic
amiodarone (Cordarone)	Cardiovascular/antiarrhythmic
amlodipine (Norvasc)	Cardiovascular/calcium blocker
amoxicillin + clavulanate (Augmentin)	Antibiotic/penicillin
amphotericin B (Fungilin)	Antifungal
anastrozole (Arimidex)	Endocrine/aromatase inhibitor
apixaban (Eliquis)	Anticoagulant
aripiprazole (Abilify)	Tranquilizer/major
aspirin (Anacin, Ascription, Excedrin)	Analgesic/NSAID
atenolol (Tenormin)	Cardiovascular/beta blocker
atorvastatin (Lipitor)	Cardiovascular/cholesterol-lowering statin
azithromycin (Zithromax)	Antibiotic/macrolide
bupropion (Wellbutrin SR)	Antidepressant
buspirone (BuSpar)	Tranquilizer/minor

Generic Name (Brand Name)	Explanation of Use
caffeine	Stimulant
calcitonin (Cibacalcin)	Endocrine/thyroid
carbamazepine (Tegretol)	Anticonvulsant
canagliflozin (Invokana)	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes) SGLT2 inhibitor
carvedilol (Coreg)	Cardiovascular/beta blocker
casanthranol + docusate sodium (Peri-Colace)	GI/cathartic
caspofungin (Cancidas)	Antifungal
celecoxib (Celebrex)	Analgesic/NSAID
cephalexin (Keflex)	Antibiotic/cephalosporin
certolizumab pegol (Cimzia)	Gastrointestinal/anti-TNF
cetirizine (Zyrtec)	Antihistamine
chloroquine (Araten)	Antiprotozoan
chlorothiazide (Diuril)	Cardiovascular/diuretic
chlorpheniramine maleate (Chlor-Trimeton)	Antihistamine
chlorpromazine (Thorazine)	Tranquilizer/major/phenothiazine
cholestyramine (Questran)	Cardiovascular/cholesterol-binding agent
cimetidine (Tagamet)	GI/antiulcer/anti-GERD
ciprofloxacin (Cipro)	Antibiotic/quinolone
citalopram hydrobromide (Celexa)	Antidepressant/SSRI
clindomycin (Cleocin)	Antibiotic/lincomycin
clonazepam (Klonopin)	Anticonvulsant
clopidogrel (Plavix)	Antiplatelet
clotrimazole (Lotrimin, Mycelex)	Antifungal
codeine	Analgesic/narcotic
colestipol (Colestid)	Cardiovascular/cholesterol-binding agent
dabigatran (Pradaxa)	Anticoagulant
dalteparin (Fragmin)	Anticoagulant

Generic Name (Brand Name)	Explanation of Use
dapagliflozin (Farxiga)	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes) SGLT2 inhibitor
denosumab (Prolia)	Antiosteoporosis
dexamethasone (Decadron)	Respiratory/steroid, intravenous or oral
dextroamphetamine + amphetamine (Adderall)	Stimulant
dextroamphetamine sulfate (Dexedrine)	Stimulant
diazepam (Valium)	Tranquilizer/minor/benzodiazepine
diclofenac sodium (Voltaren)	Analgesic/NSAID
digoxin (Lanoxin)	Cardiovascular/cardiac glycoside
diltiazem (Cardizem CD)	Cardiovascular/calcium channel blocker
diphenhydramine (Benadryl)	Antihistamine
diphenoxylate + atropine (Lomotil)	GI/antidiarrheal
divalproex (Depakote)	Anticonvulsant
donepezil (Aricept)	Anti-Alzheimer disease
doxycycline	Antibiotic/tetracycline
dulaglutide (Trulicity)	Antidiabetic GLP-1 agonist
duloxetine (Cymbalta)	Antidepressant
edoxaban (Savaysa)	Anticoagulant
empagliflozin (Jardiance)	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes) SGLT2 inhibitor
enalapril maleate (Vasotec)	Cardiovascular/ACE inhibitor
enoxaparin sodium (Lovenox)	Anticoagulant
enzalutamide (XTANDI)	Endocrine/antiandrogen
erythromycin (Ery-Tab)	Antibiotic/macrolide
escitalopram (Lexapro)	Antidepressant/SSRI
esomeprazole (Nexium)	GI/antiulcer/anti-GERD
estrogen (Premarin, Prempro)	Endocrine/estrogen

Generic Name (Brand Name)	Explanation of Use
etanercept (Enbrel)	Gastrointestinal/anti-TNF
ethambutol (Myambutol)	Antitubercular
evolocumab (Repatha)	Cardiovascular/cholesterol-binding PCSK9 inhibitor
exenatide (Byetta, Bydureon)	Antidiabetic GLP-1 agonist
ezetimibe (Zetia)	Cardiovascular/cholesterol-binding agent
famotidine (Pepcid)	GI/antiulcer/anti-GERD
felodipine (Plendil)	Cardiovascular/calcium channel blocker
fentanyl patch (Duragesic)	Analgesic/narcotic
fexofenadine (Allegra)	Antihistamine
flucytosine (Ancobon)	Antifungal
fluoxetine (Prozac)	Antidepressant SSRI
fluoxymesterone (Halotestin)	Endocrine/androgen
flutamide (Eulexin)	Endocrine/antiandrogen
fluticasone (Flovent)	Respiratory/steroid inhaler
fluvastatin (Lescol)	Cardiovascular/cholesterol-lowering statin
fluvoxamine (Luvox)	Antidepressant SSRI
fondparinux (Arixtra)	Anticoagulant
formoterol + budesonide (Symbicort)	Bronchodilator
furosemide (Lasix)	Cardiovascular/diuretic
gabapentin (Neurontin)	Anticonvulsant
ganciclovir (Zirgan)	Antiviral
gentamicin (Garamycin)	Antibiotic/aminoglycoside
glimepiride	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes/sulfonylurea)
glipizide (Glucotrol XL)	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes)/sulfonylurea
glyburide (Diabeta, Micronase)	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes)/sulfonylurea
golimumab (Simponi)	Anti-TNF

Generic Name (Brand Name)	**Explanation of Use**
griseofulvin (Gris-peg)	Antifungal
haloperidol (Haldol)	Tranquilizer/major
heparin	Anticoagulant
hydrocodone w/APAP (Lortab, Vicodin)	Analgesic/narcotic
hydrocortisone	Glucocorticoid
hydromorphone (Dilaudid)	Analgesic/narcotic
ibandronate sodium (Boniva)	Antiosteoporosis bisphosphonate
ibuprofen (Motrin, Advil)	Analgesic/NSAID
ibutilide (Corvert)	Cardiovascular/antiarrhythmic
infliximab (Remicade)	Gastrointestinal/anti-TNF
insulin aspart (NovoLog)	Antidiabetic (type 1 diabetes)
insulin combinations (Humalog Mix)	Antidiabetic (type 1 diabetes)
insulin degludec (Tresiba)	Antidiabetic
insulin detemir (Levemir)	Antidiabetic (type 1 diabetes)
insulin glargine (Lantus)	Antidiabetic (type 1 diabetes)
insulin glulisine (Apidra)	Antidiabetic (type 1 diabetes)
insulin lispro (Humalog)	Antidiabetic (type 1 diabetes)
insulin NPH (Humulin N)	Antidiabetic (type 1 diabetes)
insulin regular (Humulin R)	Antidiabetic (type 1 diabetes)
ipratropium bromide + albuterol (Combivent)	Bronchodilator
irbesartan (Avapro)	Cardiovascular/angiotensin II receptor blocker
isoniazid *or* INH (Nydrazid)	Antitubercular
ketamine (Ketalar)	Anesthetic/general
ketorolac (Toradol)	Analgesic/NSAID
lamivudine (Epivir)	Antiviral/reverse transcriptase inhibitor/anti-HIV
lamotrigine (Lamictal)	Anticonvulsant
lansoprazole (Prevacid)	GI/antiulcer/anti-GERD
letrozole (Femara)	Endocrine/aromatase inhibitor
levetiracetam (Keppra)	Anticonvulsant

Generic Name (Brand Name)	Explanation of Use
levothyroxine (Levothroid, Synthroid)	Endocrine/thyroid hormone
lidocaine (Xylocaine)	Anesthetic/local or regional
lidocaine + prilocaine (EMLA)	Anesthetic/local or regional
liothyronine (Cytomel)	Endocrine/thyroid hormone
liraglutide (Victoza)	Antidiabetic GLP-1 agonist
lisdexamfetamine (Vyvanse)	Stimulant
lisinopril (Prinivil, Zestril)	Cardiovascular/ACE inhibitor
lithium carbonate (Eskalith)	Tranquilizer/major
loperamide (Imodium)	GI/antidiarrheal
loratadine (Claritin, Alavert)	Antihistamine
lorazepam (Ativan)	Tranquilizer/minor/benzodiazepine
losartan (Cozaar)	Cardiovascular/angiotensin II receptor blocker
lovastatin (Mevacor)	Cardiovascular/cholesterol-lowering statin
magnesium antacid (milk of magnesia)	GI/antacid
meclizine (Antivert)	Antihistamine
medroxyprogesterone acetate (Cycrin, Provera)	Endocrine/progestin
megestrol (Megace)	Endocrine/progestin
memantine (Namenda)	Anti-Alzheimer disease
meperidine (Demerol)	Analgesic/narcotic
metformin (Glucophage)	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes)/biguanide
methaqualone	Sedative-hypnotic
methylphenidate (Ritalin)	Stimulant
methylprednisolone (Medrol)	Respiratory/steroid, intravenous or oral
methyltestosterone (Virilon)	Endocrine/androgen
metoclopramide (Reglan)	GI/antinauseant

Generic Name (Brand Name)	Explanation of Use
metoprolol (Lopressor, Toprol-XL)	Cardiovascular/beta blocker
metronidazole (Flagyl)	Antiprotozoan
miglitol (Glyset)	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes)/alpha-glucosidase inhibitor
mirtazapine (Remeron)	Antidepressant/tricyclic
modafinil (Provigil)	Stimulant/sleep antagonist
mometasone (Asmanex)	Respiratory/inhaler
montelukast sodium (Singulair)	Respiratory/leukotriene modifier
morphine	Analgestic/narcotic
moxifloxacin (Avelox)	Antibiotic/quinolone
naproxen (Aleve)	Analgesic/NSAID
nateglinide (Starlix)	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes)/meglitinide
nifedipine (Adalat CC, Procardia)	Cardiovascular/calcium channel blocker
nilutamide (Casodex)	Endocrine/antiandrogen
nitroglycerin	Cardiovascular/antianginal
nitrous oxide	Anesthetic/general
nystatin (Nilstat)	Antifungal
octreotide (Sandostatin)	Endocrine/growth
olanzapine (Zyprexa)	Tranquilizer/major/antipsychotic
omeprazole (Prilosec)	GI/antiulcer/anti-GERD
ondansetron (Zofran)	GI/antinauseant
oseltamivir (Tamiflu)	Antiviral/flu virus drug
oxcarbazepine (Trilettal)	Anticonvulsant
oxycodone (OxyContin, Roxicodone)	Analgesic/narcotic
oxycodone with APAP (Roxicet, Endocet, Percocet)	Analgesic/narcotic
paregoric	GI/antidiarrheal
paroxetine (Paxil)	Antidepressant/SSRI
phenytoin sodium (Dilantin)	Anticonvulsant

Generic Name (Brand Name)	Explanation of Use
pioglitazone (Actos)	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes/thiazolidinedione)
pravastatin (Pravachol)	Cardiovascular/cholesterol-lowering statin
prednisone	Respiratory/steroid, intravenous or oral
pregabalin (Lyrica)	Anticonvulsant
promethazine (Phenergan)	Antihistamine
procaine (Novocain)	Anesthetic/local or regional
prochlorperazine maleate (Compazine)	GI/antinauseant
propofol (Diprivan)	Anesthetic/general
propranolol (Inderal)	Cardiovascular/beta blocker
pyrazinamide (Rifater)	Antibubercular
quetiapine fumarate (Seroquel)	Antidepressant
quinapril (Accupril)	Cardiovascular/ACE inhibitor
raloxifene (Evista)	Endocrine/SERM/antiosteoporosis
ramipril (Altace)	Cardiovascular/ACE inhibitor
ranitidine (Zantac)	GI/antiulcer/anti-GERD
repaglinide (Prandin)	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes)/meglitinide
ribavirin (Rebetol)	Antiviral
rifampin (Rifadin)	Antitubercular
risperidone (Risperdal)	Tranquilizer/major
rivaroxaban (Xarelto)	Anticoagulant
rosiglitazone (Avandia)	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes)/thiazolidinedione)
salmeterol + fluticasone (Advair Diskus)	Corticosteroid anti-inflammatory–bronchodilator combination
saxagliptin (Onglyza)	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes) DPP-4 inhibitor
sertraline (Zoloft)	Antidepressant SSRI

Generic Name (Brand Name)	**Explanation of Use**
sitagliptin (Januvia)	Antidiabetic (type 2 diabetes) DPP-4 inhibitor
sotalol (Betapace)	Cardiovascular/antiarrhythmic
spironolactone (Aldactone)	Cardiovascular/diuretic
sulfamethoxazole (Bactrim)	Antibiotic/sulfonamide
tamoxifen (Nolvadex)	Endocrine/SERM/antiosteoporosis
temazepam (Restoril)	Sedative-hypnotic/benzodiazepine
terbinafine (Lamisil)	Antifungal
teriparatide (Forteo)	Antiosteoporosis
teriparatide (Forteo)	Endocrine/parathyroid
thiopental (Pentothal)	Anesthetic/general
thioridazine (Mellaril)	Tranquilizer/major/phenothiazine
thyroid ISP (Armour Thyroid)	Endocrine/thyroid hormone
tiotropium (Spiriva)	Bronchodilator
tissue plasminogen activator *or* tPA	Anticoagulant
tobramycin (Tobi)	Antibiotic/aminoglycoside
tramadol (Ultram)	Analgesic/narcotic
trazodone (Desyrel)	Antidepressant SSRI
triamcinolone (Aristocort)	Glucocorticoid
triamcinolone (Azmacort)	Respiratory/steroid inhaler
triazolam (Halcion)	Sedative-hypnotic/benzodiazepine
trifluoperazine (Stelazine)	Tranquilizer/major/phenothiazine
valsartan (Diovan)	Cardiovascular/angiotensin II receptor blocker
vancomycin (Vancocin)	antibiotic/glycopeptide
warfarin (Coumadin)	Anticoagulant
zafirlukast (Acolate)	Respiratory/leukotriene modifier
zileuton (Zyflo)	Respiratory/leukotriene modifier
zoledronic acid (Zometa)	Antiosteoporosis/bisphosphonate
zolpidem tartrate (Ambien)	Sedative-hypnotic

Illustrations Credits

Figure 10-19B, from Albert D: *Albert & Jakobiec's Principles & Practice of Ophthalmology*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2008, Saunders.

Figure 11-10, from Applegate E: *The Anatomy and Physiology Learning System*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 2000, Saunders.

Figure 16-9A, from Barkauskas VH et al: *Health and Physical Assessment*, ed 2, St. Louis, 1998, Mosby.

Figure 20-15, from Beare PG, Myers JL: *Adult Health Nursing*, ed 3, St. Louis, 1998, Mosby.

Figure 5-20F, from Bird D, Robinson D: *Modern Dental Assisting*, ed 10, Philadelphia, 2012, Saunders.

Unnumbered Figure 2-3, Figures 6-8B, 12-14A, 12-19B, 13-14, 16-11, 16-12A, 17-13, 20-9C, from Black J, Hawks J: Medical-Surgical Nursing, 8th ed., Philadelphia, 2009, Elsevier/Saunders.

Figures 16-6A, 16-8F, 18-17, from Bolognia J: *Dermatology essentials*, Philadelphia, 2014, Saunders.

Figure 12-17, from Bonewit-West K: *Today's medical assistant*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 2017, Saunders.

Figures 20-4, 20-8B, from Braunwald E: *Heart Disease: A Textbook of Cardiovascular Medicine*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 1992, Saunders.

Figure 8-24B, from Bushong S: *Radiological science for technologists*, ed 10, Philadelphia, 2012, Saunders.

Figures 5-20E, 9-6A, 10-19A, 16-5B, 16-6B, 16-8D, 16-10B, 16-12B, 16-13A, from Callen JP et al: *Color Atlas of Dermatology*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 2002, Saunders.

Figure 15-38B & E, from Canale ST, Beaty JH: *Campbell's Operative Orthopaedics*, ed 11, St. Louis, 2008, Mosby.

Figures 13-4, 13-6, from Carr JH, Rodak BF: *Clinical Hematology Atlas*, ed 2, St. Louis, 2004, Mosby.

Figures 1-3B, 2-7, 2-13, 3-5AB, 4-3, 5-15ABC, 5-18B, from Chabner DE: *Medical Terminology: A Short Course*, ed 8, Philadelphia, 2017, Saunders.

Figure 16-16A, reprinted from Clinical Slide Collection on the Rheumatic Diseases.

Figure 16-8C, from Cohen BA: *Atlas of Pediatric Dermatology*, London, 1993, Wolfe.

Figure 5-20A, from Christensen GJ: *A Consumer's Guide to Dentistry*, St. Louis, 2002, Mosby.

Figure 18-20, from Clinical Pathological Conference, *Am J Med* 20:133, 1956.

Figure 15-33, from Coughlin M et al: *Surgery of the Foot and Ankle*, ed 8, St. Louis, 2007, Mosby.

Figure 11-23B, from Crawford MH, DiMarco JP, Paulus WJ: *Cardiology*, ed 2, St. Louis, 2004, Mosby.

Figures 5-14, 5-21A, 5-23, 5-24, 5-26, 5-29B, 7-7, 7-12A, 8-15, 8-16A, 11-1, from Damjanov I: *Pathology for the Health-Related Professions*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 2012, Elsevier/Saunders.

Figure 15-17, from Dempster DW, Shane E, Horbert W, et al: A Simple Method for Correlative Light and Scanning Electron Microscopy Of Human Iliac Crest Bone Biopsies: Qualitative Observations in Normal and Osteoporotic Subjects, *J Bone Miner Res* 1:15, 1986.

Figure 10-21, from Drake RL et al: Gray's Anatomy for Students, Philadelphia, Churchill Livingstone, 2005.

Figure 16-8K, from Farrar WE: *Atlas of Infections of the Nervous System*, London, 1993, Mosby-Wolfe.

Figure 5-20B, from Feldman M et al: *Sleisenger and Fordtran's Gastrointestinal and Liver Disease*, ed 8, Philadelphia, 2006, Saunders.

Figure 17-24D, from Fireman P, Slavin RG: *Atlas of Allergies*, ed 2, London, 1996, Glower Medical Publishing.

Figure 11-22B, from Forbes CD, Jackson WF: *Color Atlas and Text of Clinical Medicine*, ed 3, London, 2003, Mosby.

Figure 20-13, from Frank ED et al: *Merrill's Atlas of Radiographic Positioning & Procedures*, ed 11, St. Louis, 2007, Mosby.

Figures 10-14B, 12-9, 17-6A, from Frazier MS, Drzymkowski JW: *Essentials of Human Diseases and Conditions*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2004,

Saunders.

Figure 9-1B, from Gartner L: *Color Textbook of Histology*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 2007, Saunders.

Figure 20-8A, from Gill KA: *Abdominal Ultrasound: A Practitioner's Guide*, Philadelphia, 2001, Saunders.

Figure 22-2, from Gleitman H: *Psychology*, New York, 1991, WW Norton.

Figure 3-2, from Goering R et al: *Mims' Medical Microbiology*, ed 4, Edinburgh, 2008, Elsevier/Mosby Ltd.

Figures 2-3, 6-2A, 11-24A, from Goldman L, Schafer A: *Goldman's Cecil Medicine*, ed 24, Philadelphia, 2012, Elsevier/Saunders.

Figures 5-21B, 13-12, 16-8I, from Gould BE, Dyer R: *Pathophysiology for Health Professions*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 2011, Elsevier/Saunders.

Figure 15-36, from Greer I et al: *Mosby's Color Atlas and Text of Obstetrics and Gynecology*, London, 2001, Mosby.

Figures 2-15B, 10-16B, from Haaga J: *CT and MR Imaging of the Whole Body*, ed 4, St. Louis, 2003, Elsevier/Mosby.

Figures 16-8F, 16-15A, 16-18A, from Habif TP: *Clinical Dermatology*, ed 4, St. Louis, 2004, Mosby.

Figure 11-26, from Hicks GH: *Cardiopulmonary Anatomy and Physiology*, Philadelphia, 2000, Saunders.

Figure 13-5, from Hirsch JG: Cinemicrophotographic Observations of Granule Lysis in Polymorphonuclear Leucocytes during Phagocytosis, *J Exp Med*;116:827, 1962, by copyright permission of Rockefeller University Press.

Figure 1-5, from His E: *Hematopathology*, ed 1, Philadelphia, 2007, Elsevier/Churchill Livingstone.

Figures 6-3, 6-4A, 6-5, from Heuman DM, Mills AS, McGuire HH: *Gastroenterology*, Philadelphia, 1997, Elsevier/Saunders.

Figures 2-4B, 16-14A, from Huether S, McCance K: *Understanding Pathophysiology*, ed 5, St. Louis, 2012, Elsevier/Mosby.

Figures 10-20, 16-19B, 16-20A, 16-23, 17-20, 18-18A, from Ignatavicius DD, Workman ML: *Medical-Surgical Nursing: Critical Thinking for Collaborative Care*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 2002, Saunders.

Figure 16-15B, from James W et al: *Andrews' Diseases of the Skin*, ed 11, Philadelphia, 2012, Saunders.

Figures 5-20D, 16-8E,G,I, 16-12AB, 16-18B, 16-19AB, 16-20, 17-14, 17-16, 18-15A, from Jarvis C: *Physical Examination and Health Assessment*, ed 8, Philadelphia, 2019, Saunders.

Figure 15-34A, from Jebson LR, Coons DD: Total Hip Arthroplasty, *Surg Technol* October: 30(10):12-21, 1998.

Figure 7-5, from Joffe SA et al. *Radiographics* 23(6):1441-1455, 2003.

Figure 17-12A, from Kanski J, Bowling B: *Clinical Ophthalmology*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2012, Saunders.

Figure 16-6A, from Kanski JJ: *Systemic Diseases and the Eye*, St. Louis, 2001, Mosby.

Figures 4-9, 6-8A, from Kliegman R et al: *Nelson Textbook of Pediatrics*, ed 19, Philadelphia, 2012, Elsevier/Saunders.

Figures 9-7, 10-15A, 11-17, 11-19A, 12-11, 12-12B, 12-13B, 19-2, 19-7B, from Kumar V, Cotran RS, Robbins SL: *Basic Pathology*, ed 8, Philadelphia, 2007, Saunders.

Figures 5-25C, 5-28B, 6-1, 7-12B, 8-18, 12-12A, 16-20C, 16-21B, 19-6B, 19-7A, 19-8, from Kumar V, Abbas A, Aster J: *Robbins & Cotran Pathologic Basis of Disease*, ed 8, Philadelphia, 2010, Elsevier/Saunders.

Figure 14-12B, from Lemmi FO, Lemmi CAE: *Physical Assessment Findings* CD-ROM, Philadelphia, 2000, Saunders.

Figures 5-18, 7-15A, 11-13, 11-19B & C, 12-9, 15-28, 16-17A, 16-22, 17-15, 17-19, 17-27B, from Lewis SM et al: *Medical-Surgical Nursing*, ed 8, St. Louis, 2011, Elsevier/Mosby.

Figure 10-22, from Lundy-Ekman L: *Neuroscience*, ed 3, St. Louis, 2008, Mosby.

Figure 16-16B, from Marcdante K et al: *Nelson Essentials of Pediatrics*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2006, Saunders.

Figure 16-20B, from Marks J and Miller J: *Lookingbill and Marks' Principles of Dermatology*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 2007, Saunders.

Figure 15-34B, from Mercier LR: *Practical Orthopedics*, ed 5, St. Louis, 2000, Mosby.

Figure 20-3, from Mettler FA: *Essentials of Radiography*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 2004, Saunders.

Figure 15-35, from Miller MD, Howard RF, Plancher KD: *Surgical Atlas of Sports Medicine*, Philadelphia, 2003, Saunders.

Figures 15-38F, 18-17, from Moll JMH: *Rheumatology*, ed 2, London, 1997, Churchill Livingstone.

Figure 9-12A, from Morse SA et al: *Atlas of Sexually Transmitted Diseases and AIDS*, ed 2, 2003, London, Gower.

Figures 4-10B, 16-5A, 16-8B, 16-9C, 16-16AB, 16-19A, 16-21A, 18-16A, from *Mosby's Medical, Nursing and Allied Health Dictionary*, ed 5, St. Louis, 1998, Mosby.

Figure 17-6B, from Newell FW: *Ophthalmology: Principles and Concepts*, ed 8, St. Louis, 1996, Mosby.

Figure 5-29A, from Odze R, Goldblum J: *Surgical Pathology of the GI Tract, Liver, Biliary Tract and Pancreas*, ed 2, Philadelphia, Saunders, 2009.

Figure 8-22, from O'Toole M [ed]: *Miller-Keane Encyclopedia & Dictionary of Medicine, Nursing & Allied Health*, ed 7, Philadelphia, 2003, Saunders.

Figure 17-12B, from Palay D and Krachmer J: *Primary Care Ophthalmology*, ed 2, St. Louis, 2006, Mosby.

Figure 16-14B, from Phipps WJ et al: *Medical-Surgical Nursing*, ed 7, St. Louis, 2003, Mosby.

Figure 16-8K, from Potter P, Perry A: *Fundamentals of nursing*, ed 9, St. Louis, 2017, Elsevier.

Figures 16-8J, 16-18AB, from Proctor D: *Kinn's medical assistant*, 13e, St Louis, 2016, Elsevier.

Figures 6-2B, 7-10B, from Roberts J, Hedges J: *Clinical Procedures in Emergency Medicine*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2010, Elsevier/Saunders.

Figure 8-16B, from Salvo S: *Mosby's Pathology for Massage Therapists*, ed 2, St. Louis, 2009, Mosby.

Figures 3-4, 16-3B, 16-8B, 16-8A, 18-15B, 18-16, 18-20, from Seidel HM, et al: *Mosby's Guide to Physical Examination*, ed 5, St. Louis, 2003, Elsevier/Mosby.

Figure 1-3, from Soyer HP et al: *Dermoscopy*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 2012, Elsevier/Saunders.

Figures 9-12B, 14-11, 14-12A, 15-38A, from Swartz MH: *Textbook of Physical Diagnosis, History and Examination*, ed 5, Philadelphia, 2006, Saunders.

Figures 13-2A, 13-9, 16-2B, 17-2, 17-3, 17-7A, 19-1A, from Thibodeau GA, Patton KT: *Anatomy &Physiology*, ed 6, St. Louis, 2007, Mosby.

Figures 8-4, 12-10, from Thibodeau G, Patton K: *The Human Body in Health & Disease*, ed 4, St. Louis, 2005, Mosby.

Figure 4-10A, from Thureen P: *Assessment and care of the newborn*, ed 2, Saunders, 2004, Philadelphia.

Figure 13-10, from Tkachuk DC, Hirschmann JV, McArthur JR: *Atlas of Clinical Hematology*, Philadelphia, 2002, Saunders.

Figure 15-27B, US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention.

Figure 15-37, from Walter JB: *An Introduction to the Principles of Disease*, ed 3, Philadelphia, 1992, Saunders.

Figure 7-10A, from Warekois R and Robinson R: *Phlebotomy*, ed 2, Philadelphia, 2008, Saunders.

Figure 7-14B, from Wein A et al: *Campbell-Walsh Urology*, ed 10, Philadelphia, 2012, Saunders.

Figure 6-10, from Weinstein WM, Hawkey CJ, Bosch J: *Clinical Gastroenterology and Hepatology*, St. Louis, 2005, Mosby.

Unnumbered Figure 2-1, from Weir J et al: *An Imaging Atlas of Human Anatomy*, ed 4, Philadelphia, 2011, Elsevier/Mosby.

Figure 11-26, from Wesley: *Huzar's ECG and 12 lead interpretation*, ed 5, St Louis, 2016, Elsevier.

Figure 16-8E & H, from Weston WL et al: *Color Textbook of Pediatric Dermatology*, ed 3, 2002, St. Louis, Mosby.

Figure 16-8J, from White GM: *Color Atlas of Regional Dermatology*, London, 1994, Times-Mirror.

Figure 21-2, B to E, from Young AP, Kennedy DB: *Kinn's The Medical Assistant*, ed 9, Philadelphia, 2003, Saunders.

Figures 3-8, 9-6B, 14-13, 15-13B & C, 15-40D, 16-7A, 16-8B, 16-13, from Zitelli BJ, Davis HW: *Atlas of Pediatric Physical Diagnosis*, ed 2, St. Louis, 1992, Mosby.

Index

Page numbers followed by f indicate figures; t, tables; b, boxes

A

A-, 15, 105, 881

AAAs (Abdominal aortic aneurysm), 397, 397f, 408

Ab-, 105, 582

AB (abortion), 115, 247, 269, 269f, 270, 272

Ab (antibody), Antibodies (Ab)

Abbreviations

- for blood system, 496–497
- for cardiovascular system, 408–409
- for digestive system, 190
- "Do Not Use" list of, 846
- for ears, 679
- for endocrine system, 728
- for eyes, 670
- for female reproductive system, 272
- for lymphatic and immune systems, 531
- for male reproductive system, 306
- for musculoskeletal system, 587
- for nervous system, 352
- for oncology, 775
- for pharmacology, 845–846

for psychiatry, 882
for radiology and nuclear medicine, 811
for respiratory system, 455–456
for skin, 634
for urinary system, 225
ABCDEs of melanoma (asymmetry, border, color, diameter, evolution), 633f, 634
Abdomen, 45, 46–47, 151
combining forms for, 53, 72, 145, 148
laparoscopy of, 189
Abdominal, 53
Abdominal aortic aneurysm (AAA), 397, 397f, 408
Abdominal cavity, 40f, 42f, 45, 243, 243f, 270, 270f
Abdominal ultrasonography, 186
Abdominal viscera, 38, 186
Abdomin/o, 53, 72
Abdominocentesis, 74, 189
Abdominopelvic cavity, 42, 44f, 45f, 68, 72
Abdominopelvic quadrants, 47, 47f, 49, 68, 72
Abdominopelvic regions, 46, 46f, 49, 68, 72
Abdominoplasty, 78, 178
Abducens nerve (CN VI), 324f
Abduction, 579, 580, 580f, 582, 804
Abductor, 105
ABGs (arterial blood gases), 455
Abilify, Aripiprazole
Abiraterone, 764t, 836t

Abl oncogene, 750, 767
Ablation
    catheter, 390, 406, 406f
    radiofrequency, 800, 811
ABMT (autologous bone marrow transplantation), 492, 495f, 496, 772
Abnormal, 105
    prefix for, 105, 108, 110, 869, 880, 882
    suffix for, 486
Abnormal involuntary movement scale (AIMS), 876, 882
Abnormal motor behavior, 869, 872t
ABO (blood types), 480, 496
Abortion (AB), 115, 247, 269, 269f, 270, 272
Above knee amputation (AKA), 587
Abrasion, 620
    corneal, 657
Abruptio placentae, 264
Abscess, 83, 156
    pulmonary, 447
    of skin (papule), 624, 625f
Absence seizures, 343, 349
Absolute neutrophil count (ANC), 496
Absorption, 132, 142
-ac, 13, 81
A.c., ac (*ante cibum;* before meals), 106, 845
AC (acromioclavicular) joint, 555, 584, 587
Acarbose, 833t
Accessory nerve (CN XI), 324f

Accessory organs of reproduction, 245, 245f
Accessory structures of skin, 616–619, 617f, 618f
Accommodation, 651, 654
Accupril, Quinapril
ACE (angiotensin-converting enzyme) inhibitors, 393, 395, 400, 408, 834, 835t, 841
Acetabular, 562
Acetabular components of total hip arthroplasty, 584f
Acetabul/o, 562
Acetabulum, 556, 557t, 558, 562
Acetaminophen (APAP), 355, 829t, 845
Acetone, 214, 217
Acetylcholine, 322, 327, 333
Achalasia, 154
Achilles tendon, 578f
Achlorhydria, 150
Achondroplasia, 78, 78f, 570
Acid phosphatase, 772
Acid-fast bacillus (AFB), 455
ACL (anterior cruciate ligament), 569f, 587, 590
ACLS (advanced cardiac life support), 408
Acne, 618, 624, 625f, 627, 627f
Acne vulgaris, 627, 627f
Acous/o, 674
Acoustic, 674
Acoustic neuroma, 676

Acquired immunodeficiency syndrome (AIDS), 346, 525–527, 527f, 527t, 530, 531, 633
opportunistic infections with, 526t
Acr/o, 72, 555, 865
Acromegaly, 77, 86, 86f, 725, 725f
Acromioclavicular (AC) joint, 555, 584, 587
Acromion, 555, 558
Acrophobia, 77, 865, 881t
ACSs (acute coronary syndromes), 394, 395f, 400, 408
ACTH (adrenocorticotropic hormone), 708, 709f, 710t, 711, 720–721, 728
Actinic keratosis, 631, 631f
Activated T cells, 521
Activities of daily living (ADLs), 882
Actos, Pioglitazone
-acusis, 675
Acute, 81
Acute bacterial conjunctivitis, 656f
Acute coronary syndromes (ACSs), 394, 395f, 400, 408
Acute cystitis, 211, 211f
Acute lymphoid leukemia (ALL), 491, 491f, 494, 496, 764t, 765
Acute myeloid leukemia (AML), 490, 490f, 494, 496, 764t
Acute myocardial infarction (AMI), 394, 394f, 408
Acute otitis media (AOM), 676f, 677, 679
Acute paronychia, 623f
Acute renal failure (ARF), 219
Acute respiratory distress syndrome (ARDS), 455

Acute rheumatic mitral valvulitis, 396f
Acyclovir, 831t
Ad-, 106, 582, 704
AD (Alzheimer disease), 342, 342f, 350f, 352, 372, 867, 882
Ad lib (freely, as desired; ad libitum), 845
Ad libitum (freely, as desired; ad lib), 845
AD (right ear), 679
Adalimumab, 837t
Adaptive immunity, 519f, 519–520, 520f, 521f, 522
Adcetris, Brentuximab vedotin
Adderall, Dextroamphetamine and amphetamine
Addiction, 828, 839
Addictive disorders, substance-related and, 870–871, 872f, 872t, 878
Addison disease, 721, 721f
Additive action of drugs, 828, 839
Adduction, 579, 580, 580f, 582, 804
Adductor, 106
Adenitis, 7, 714
Aden/o, 7, 72, 714, 752
Adenocarcinoma, 771
    of colon and/or rectum, 156, 157f, 186f
    cystic ovarian, 260, 261, 754f
    gastric, 752
Adenohypophysis, 707, 707f, 711
Adenoid hypertrophy, 437
Adenoidectomy, 437
Adenoid/o, 437

Adenoids, 80, 87, 87f, 432, 433f, 436, 437, 516f, 517, 522
Adenoma, 7, 186f, 752
Adenomatous goiter, 718
Adenomatous polyposis coli syndrome, 750–751
Adenomatous polyposis of colon, 755f
Adenopathy, 14
Adenosine diphosphate (ADP), 408
ADH (antidiuretic hormone), 215, 219, 225, 235, 708, 709f, 710t, 712, 713, 716, 726, 728
ADHD (attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder), 868, 872t, 876, 882
Adip/o, 53, 72, 620
Adipocytes, 616, 619
Adipose, 53, 81, 620
Adipose tissue, 37, 39
Adjective suffixes, 81, 101
Adjuvant chemotherapy, 262, 758, 762, 766, 771
ADLs (activities of daily living), 882
Administration of drugs, 826–827, 827f, 827t, 840
Adnexae, 244
Adnexae uteri, 250
ADP (adenosine diphosphate), 408
Adrenal cortex, 704f, 704–705, 711
    hormones produced by, 705, 705f, 710t
    hypersecretion, 720f, 720–721
    hyposecretion, 721, 721f
    pathology of, 720–721, 726t
Adrenal glands, 106, 106f, 700, 701f, 704–705, 710t, 752t

combining form for, 714
function of, 705, 705f
location and structure of, 3f, 704f, 704–705
Adrenal hormones, 710t
Adrenal medulla, 704, 704f, 705, 705f, 711, 713
hormones produced by, 710t
hypersecretion, 721
pathology of, 721, 726t
Adrenal virilism, 720, 726t
Adrenalectomy, 714
Adrenaline, 56, 324, 705, 705f, 710t, 711, 712
Adrenal/o, 714
Adrenocorticotropic hormone (ACTH), 708, 709f, 710t, 711, 720–721, 728
Adrenocorticotropin, 708, 711, 717
Adriamycin, Doxorubicin
Advair Diskus, Salmeterol + fluticasone
Advanced cardiac life support (ACLS), 408
AEDs (automatic external defibrillators), 390, 408
Aer/o, 843
Aerophobia, 881t
Aerosols, 770, 839, 843
Af-, 333
AF (atrial fibrillation), 390, 405f, 408
AFB (acid-fast bacillus), 455
Affect, 876
Afferent nerves, 322, 323f, 324f, 327, 333

Afferent neurons, 331f
A-fib (atrial fibrillation), 390, 405f, 408
AFP (alpha-fetoprotein), 161, 190, 272, 300, 352, 772, 775
After meals (*post cibum;* p.c., pc), 150, 845
After (p)
  abbreviation for, 845
  prefix for, 111
Afterbirth, 248, 248f
Age-related macular degeneration (AMD), 670
Aging
  osteoporotic changes in spine in, 567f
  presbycusis and, 675
  presbyopia and, 661
  sarcopenia and, 582
-agon, 715, 717
Agora-, 880
Agoraphobia, 77, 865, 880
-agra, 572
AICDs (automatic implantable cardioverter-defibrillators), 406, 408
AIDS (acquired immunodeficiency syndrome), 346, 525–527, 527f, 527t, 530, 531, 633
  opportunistic infections with, 526t
Ailurophobia, 881t
AIMS (abnormal involuntary movement scale), 876, 882
Airway, 452
AKA (above knee amputation), 587
Akinetic, 338
-al, 13, 81

Alanine transaminase (ALT), 183, 190
Albinism, 615, 619, 620, 620f, 621t
Albin/o, 620, 621t
Albumin, 214, 216, 478, 482
Albumin/o, 214
Albuminuria, 214, 216
Albuterol, 437, 444, 838t
Alcohol dependence, 870–871, 872f, 872t
Alcoholic cirrhosis, 160, 160f
Aldosterone, 705, 705f, 710t, 712, 721
Alendronate, 719, 834t
-algesia, 337
Alges/o, 337, 843
-algia, 13, 74, 338
Algophobia, 881t
Alimta, Pemetrexed
Alirocumab, 835t
Alk phos (alkaline phosphatase), 183, 190
Alkaline, 216, 484
Alkaline phosphatase (alk phos), 183, 190
Alkalosis, 570
Alkylating agents, 763, 763f, 764t, 766
ALL (acute lymphoid leukemia), 491, 491f, 494, 496, 764t, 765
Allegra, Fexofenadine
Allergens, 528, 530
Allergic rhinitis, 528

Allergies, 528, 528f
All/o, 528, 772
Allogeneic marrow transplantation, 772
Allogeneic transplants, 495, 495f
Alogliptin, 833t
Alopecia, 626, 626f, 761t
Alopecia areata, 626, 626f
Alpha cells, 706
Alpha particles, 794, 804
Alpha-fetoprotein (AFP), 161, 190, 272, 300, 352, 772, 775
Alpha-glucosidase inhibitors, 833, 833t
Alprazolam, 839t, 871, 875f
ALS (amyotrophic lateral sclerosis), 342, 352, 372, 582
ALT (alanine transaminase), 183, 190
ALT (argon laser trabeculoplasty), 663, 670
Altace, Ramipril
Aluminum and magnesium antacid, 837t
Aluminum antacid, 837t
Alveolar, 437, 755, 769
Alveolar duct, 433f, 434
Alveolar tumor cells, 755
Alveoli, 433f, 434, 436, 445, 445f, 447, 550
Alveol/o, 437, 769
Alzheimer disease (AD), 342, 342f, 350f, 352, 372, 867, 882
Ambien, Zolpidem tartrate
Ambly/o, 659

Amblyopia, 659, 665
AMD (age-related macular degeneration), 670
Amenorrhea, 254
AMI (acute myocardial infarction), 394, 394f, 408
-amine, 843
Amino acids, 132, 142
Aminoglycosides, 831t
Amiodarone, 835t
Amitriptyline, 832t, 875f
AML (acute myeloid leukemia), 490, 490f, 494, 496, 764t
Amlodipine, 835t
Amnesia, 863, 867, 872t, 876
Amni/o, 72, 252
Amniocentesis, 74, 75f, 252, 271, 271f
Amnion, 72, 247, 247f, 250, 252
Amniotic cavity, 247f
Amniotic fluid, 247, 252, 271
Amoxicillin with clavulanate, 831t
Amphetamines, 838, 841, 848, 876, 878
    dependence on, 871, 872f, 872t
Amphotericin B, 831t
Amprenavir, 527
Ampule, 827f
Ampulla of Vater, 139f
Amylase, 141, 142, 149, 183
Amylase and lipase tests, 183

Amyl/o, 149
Amyloid, 342
Amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS), 342, 352, 372, 582
An-, 15, 105, 653, 881
Ana-, 35, 56, 106, 147, 525, 747, 771, 844
ANA (antinuclear antibody test), 583, 587
Anabolic steroids, 35, 308, 849
Anabolism, 34, 35, 56, 106
Anafranil, Clomipramine
Anal fissure, 156, 624
Anal fistula, 156, 156f
Analgesics, 829, 829t, 841, 843
Analysis, 106
Anaphylactic shock, 828, 834
Anaphylaxis, 525, 530, 828, 839, 844
    systemic, 528
Anaplasia, 747, 749, 766, 771
Anaplastic malignant cells, 749
    of skeletal muscle, 746f
Anastomoses, 147, 147f
    arterial, 385
Anastrozole, 263, 763, 764t, 836t
Anatomic position, 51f, 52f
ANC (absolute neutrophil count), 496
Ancobon, Flucytosine
Andr/o, 297, 714
Androgens, 297, 302, 705, 705f, 710, 710t, 712, 714, 720, 836, 836t, 841

Androphobia, 881t
Anemia, 15, 75, 487f, 487–489, 488f, 492, 494
abnormal cell in, 487f
hemolytic, 76
hypochromic, 484, 487f, 489
iron deficiency, 75, 487, 487f
Anencephaly, 336
Anesthesia, 338, 843
spinal, 339f
Anesthesiologist, 338
Anesthetics, 338, 829t, 830, 841, 871
Aneurysms, 348, 349, 397
aortic, 397, 397f
cerebral, 348f
Angina, unstable, 394, 395f, 400
Angina pectoris, 400
Angi/o, 72, 385
Angio (angiography), Angiography (Angio)
Angioedema, 630
Angiogenesis, 76
Angiogram, 385, 810
coronary, 798, 798f, 799f
fluorescein, 666, 666f
Angiography (Angio), 395, 401, 798, 811
cerebral, 349
computed tomography (CT), 450
coronary, 798, 798f, 799f
CT pulmonary, 450

digital subtraction (DSA), 402, 408, 799, 811
fluorescein, 666, 666f
magnetic resonance (MRA), 350, 352, 404, 811
renal, 220
Angioplasty, 78, 385, 398, 407, 412
renal, 223
Angiosarcomas, 753t
Angiotensin II receptor blockers (ARBs), 408, 834, 835t, 841, 845
Angiotensin-converting enzyme (ACE) inhibitors, 393, 395, 400, 408, 834, 835t, 841
Anhidrosis, 621
Animals, 767
Anis/o, 484, 656
Anisocoria, 656, 657f
Anisocytosis, 484, 487f, 487t
Ankle, 557t
Ankle joint, 556
Ankyl/o, 570
Ankylosing spondylitis, 572
Ankylosis, 570, 572, 573f, 677
Annulus fibrosus, 575f
An/o, 145
Anorexia, 151, 867
Anorexia nervosa, 151, 867, 872t, 876, 881
Anoscopy, 188
Anosmia, 441
Anovulatory, 254

Anoxia, 105, 387
Antacids, 837, 837t, 841
Antagonistic action of drugs, 828, 839
Ante-, 106, 107
Ante cibum (a.c., ac; before meals), 106, 845
Anteflexion, 106
Antepartum, 106
Anterior, 50, 53
Anterior chamber of eye, 651, 651f, 654
Anterior cruciate ligament (ACL), 569f, 587, 590
Anterior lobe of pituitary, 707, 707f, 711
    hormones produced by, 707f, 708, 708f, 709f, 710t
    pathology of, 725f, 725–726
Anterior (ventral), 45, 50
Anter/o, 53
Anteroposterior (AP), 803, 803f, 811
Anthrac/o, 446, 621t
Anthracosis, 446, 447f, 449, 621t
Anti-, 107, 844
Anti-Alzheimer drugs, 832, 832t
Antiandrogens, 836, 836t, 841
Antianxiety agents, 874, 875f
Antiarrhythmics, 835, 835t, 841
Antibacterial drugs, 830, 831t
Antibiotic resistant infection, 83
Antibiotics, 107, 830, 831, 841, 844
    chemotherapeutic, 763, 763f, 764t, 766

Antibodies (Ab̄), 107, 114–115, 477, 479, 480, 480t, 482, 496, 519f, 519–520, 521f, 522, 523
labeled, 772
monoclonal, Monoclonal antibodies (MoAb)
Anticholinesterase drugs, 344
Anticoagulants, 395, 398, 481, 482, 484, 492, 493, 831, 832t, 841
Anticonvulsants, 343, 832, 832t, 841, 874, 875f, 876
Antidepressants, 345, 832, 832t, 841, 874, 875f, 879
Antidiabetics, 832t, 833, 841
Antidiarrheal drugs, 837, 837t, 841
Antidiuretic hormone (ADH), 215, 219, 225, 235, 708, 709f, 710t, 712, 713, 716, 726, 728
Antidotes, 767, 839, 844
Antiemetics, 834, 837, 837t, 841
Antifungal medications, 830, 831
Anti-gastrointestinal reflux disease drugs, 837, 837t
Antigen-antibody reaction, Rh condition as, 115, 115f
Antigens, 107, 114–115, 444, 477, 478t, 479, 480, 480t, 482, 518, 519, 519f, 520, 520f, 521f, 522, 528
blood types with, 480, 480t
Antiglobulin test, 492
Antihistamines, 834, 834t, 841, 843
Anti-inflammatory drugs, for asthma, 444
Antimetabolites, 763, 763f, 764t, 766
Antimicrobial, 841
Antimitotics, 763, 763f, 764t, 766
Antinauseants, 837, 837t, 841

Antinuclear antibody test (ANA), 583, 587
Anti-obsessive–compulsive disorder agents, 874, 875f
Antiosteoporosis drugs, 834, 834t
Antipanic agents, 874, 875f
Antiplatelet drugs, 410, 831, 832t, 841
Antiprotozoans, 830, 831t
Antipruritics, 827, 843
Antipsychotics, 874, 875f, 878
Antipyretic, 843
Antirheumatic drugs, 572
Antiseptics, 827
Antisocial personality disorder, 868, 872t
Antitoxins, 107, 519
Antitubercular drugs, 831
Anti-tumor necrosis factor (TNF) drugs, 837, 837t
Antiulcer drugs, 837, 837t, 841
Antivert, Meclizine
Antivirals, 830, 831, 841
Antrum of stomach, 137, 137f
Anuria, 215
Anus, 82f, 132, 138–139, 141f, 142, 145, 149
Anvil bone, 673
Anxiety, 863, 865, 879
    source of, 881t
Anxiety disorders, 865–866, 872t, 876
Anxi/o, 879

Anxiolytics, 879
dependence on, 871
AOM (acute otitis media), 676f, 677, 679
Aorta, 377, 377f, 378, 379f, 384, 385, 391
shift to right, 392
Aortic aneurysms, 397, 397f
Aortic stenosis, 385, 408
Aortic valve, 378, 379f, 380f, 381f
Aortic valve replacement (AVR), 408
Aort/o, 385
AP (anteroposterior), 803, 803f, 811
APAP (acetaminophen), 355, 829t, 845
Apart, preface for, 106, 844
Apathy, 863, 876
Apex of heart, 380f, 384, 389f
Apex of lung, 433f, 434, 436
Apgar scoring chart, 265, 265f
Aphakia, 658
Aphasia, 339
Apheresis, 494, 494f
-apheresis, 479, 485
Aphthous stomatitis, 153, 153f, 182
Apical, 436
Apiphobia, 881t
Apixaban, 410, 832t
Aplastic anemia, 75, 487

Apnea, 105, 442
sleep, 105, 442
Apo-, 771
Apocrine sweat glands, 618f, 619
Apoptosis, 749, 762, 766, 771
Appearance
of prostate biopsy specimen, 301
of urine, 216
Appendectomy, 145
Appendicitis, 145, 145f
Appendic/o, 145
Appendix, 138, 142, 145
Append/o, 145
Appetite, lack of, 151
Apraxia, 340
Aque/o, 656
Aqueous humor, 651, 654, 654f, 656, 659, 663f
-ar, 81
ara-C, Cytarabine
Arachnoid membrane, 332, 332f, 333
Arachnophobia, 881t
Aralen, Chloroquine
ARBs (angiotensin II receptor blockers), 408, 834, 835t, 841, 845
-arche, 255
ARDS (acute respiratory distress syndrome), 455
Areola, 245, 245f, 250
ARF (acute renal failure), 219

Argon laser, 669
Argon laser trabeculoplasty (ALT), 663, 670
Arimidex, Anastrozole
Aripiprazole, 839t, 875f
Armour Thyroid, Thyroid ISP
Armpits, 72, 74
Arms
biceps, 578, 578f, 579f
bones of, 554f, 555–556
Aromatase inhibitors, 263, 763, 836, 836t, 841
Arrhythmias, 387, 388–390, 405, 405f, 406
Arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia (ARVD), 408
ART (assisted reproductive techniques), 272
Arterial anastomosis, 385
Arterial blood gases (ABGs), 455
Arteries, 72, 354f, 374, 375f, 376f, 376–378, 377f, 379f, 384, 385, 393–395, 394f, 395f, 407
renal, 205f, 206, 206f, 210, 223, 397f
Arteri/o, 72, 386
Arteriography, 386, 401
Arterioles, 80, 206, 209, 374, 375f, 376f, 377, 377f, 384
Arteriosclerosis, 78, 386, 658
Arteriovenous fistula, 222, 222f
Arteriovenous malformations, 351, 352
Arter/o, 386
Arthralgia, 13, 74
Arthritis, 7, 570, 571, 572

Lyme, 576, 576f
rheumatoid, 107, 524, 529, 570, 572, 573f, 583, 587, 829, 837
Arthr/o, 7, 72, 386, 570
Arthrocentesis, 584
Arthrodesis, 571
Arthrography, 584
Arthroplasty, 570, 584
total hip, 584f
Arthroscopy, 58, 585
knee, 584f, 585f
Arthrotomy, 570
Articular cartilage, 546, 546f, 558, 568, 568f, 569, 570, 572
Articulation, 568, 569
Articul/o, 570
Artificial heart valves, 396f
ARVD (arrhythmogenic right ventricular dysplasia), 408
-ary, 81
Aryepiglottic fold, 434f
AS (aortic stenosis), 385, 408
As desired (ad lib; *ad libitum)*, 845
AS (left ear), 679
As needed (*pro re nata*, p.r.n., prn), 845
Asbest/o, 446
Asbestos, exposure to, 448
Asbestosis, 446, 449
Ascending aorta, 377, 377f
Ascending colon, 138, 142

Ascites, 45, 151, 151f, 260
Ascorbic acid, 844t
ASCT (autologous stem cell transplantation), 494, 496, 499
ASDs (atrial septal defects), 392, 408
ASDs (autism spectrum disorders), 868, 872t, 882
-ase, 150
Aspartate transaminase (AST), 183, 190
Asperger syndrome, 868
Aspermia, 298, 299
Asphyxia, 442
Aspirate, bone marrow, 494, 495f, 772
Aspiration, 268, 758
Aspiration needle biopsy, 268, 758
Aspiration pneumonia, 447
Aspirin, 355, 395, 572, 829t, 832t
Asplenia, 525
Assemble, suffix for, 717
Assisted reproductive techniques (ART), 272
AST (aspartate transaminase), 183, 190
-asthenia, 582
Asthma, 443, 444, 528
Astigmatism, 660, 661f, 669
Astrocytes, 327, 333
Astrocytomas, 346, 349, 753t
Astroglial cells, 327, 327f
Asymmetry, scapular, 561f

Asymptomatic, 218
At bedtime (*hora somni;* h.s., hs), 845
Ataxia, 340
Atelectasis, 440f, 441, 441f, 445
Atenolol, 729, 835t
Atherectomy, 386, 398
Ather/o, 386
Atheroma, 386
Atherosclerosis, 78, 347, 386, 387f, 393
    occlusive, 724f
Athlete's foot, 622, 623f, 630
Athletic trainers, 544
Ativan, Lorazepam
Atopic dermatitis, 528, 528f, 628, 628f
Atopy, 528, 530, 628
Atorvastatin, 401, 835t
Atresia, 180, 180f, 181
Atrial, 386
Atrial fibrillation (AF, a-fib), 390, 405f, 408
Atrial flutter, 390, 405f
Atrial septal defects (ASDs), 392, 408
Atri/o, 386
Atrioventricular (AV, A-V), 386, 408
Atrioventricular block, 386
Atrioventricular bundle, 382, 382f, 384, 388
Atrioventricular node (AV node), 382, 382f, 384, 388

Atrium(a), 378, 379f, 384, 386, 392
Atrophy, 79, 109f, 582
    bone, 573f
Atropine, 657
Attention-deficit/hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), 868, 872t, 876, 882
Attraction, 486, 869, 880
Atypical antidepressants, 874, 875f
Atypical antipsychotics, 874, 875f, 878
Audi/o, 674
Audiograms, 674, 678, 678f
Audiologists, 674
Audiometers, 675, 678
    pure-tone, 678f
Audiometry, 674, 678, 678f
Audit/o, 674
Auditory, 674
Auditory canal, 670, 671f, 673
Auditory meatus, 670, 671f, 673
Auditory nerve fibers, 671, 671f, 673
Auditory tubes, 671, 671f, 673, 674
Augmentin, Amoxicillin with clavulanate
Aura, 343, 348, 349
Aural, 674
Auricle, 670, 671f, 673
Auricul/o, 674
Auris dextra (right ear; AD), 679

Auris sinistra (left ear; AS), 679
Aur/o, 674
Auscultation, 387, 396, 400, 443
Aut-, 15
Autism, 868, 876, 879, 883–884
Autism spectrum disorders (ASDs), 868, 872t, 882
Auto-, 15, 107
Aut/o, 518, 879
Autoimmune disease, 107, 518, 524, 583, 722, 837
    SLE, 524, 576, 577f, 583, 587, 629, 629f, 634
    type 1 diabetes mellitus, 10, 722, 723f, 723t, 723–724, 724f
Autoimmune thrombocytopenic purpura, 490
Autoimmune thyroiditis, 714
Autologous bone marrow transplantation (ABMT), 492, 495f, 496, 772
Autologous stem cell transplantation (ASCT), 494, 496, 499
Autologous transfusion, 494
Automatic external defibrillators (AEDs), 390, 408
Automatic implantable cardioverter-defibrillators (AICDs), 406, 408
Autonomic nervous system, 323, 333
Autopsy, 15
AV, A-V (atrioventricular), 386, 408
AV node (atrioventricular node), 382, 382f, 384, 388
Avanafil, 294
Avandia, Rosiglitazone
Avapro, Irbesartan
Avastin, Bevacizumab

Avelox, Moxifloxacin
Aventyl, Nortriptyline
AVM (arteriovenous malformation), 351, 352
Avoidance personality, 869, 872t
AVR (aortic valve replacement), 408
Away, prefix for, 771
Axial plane, 52, 52f, 53
Axillary, 81, 516f, 517
Axillary lymph nodes, 81, 522
Axill/o, 72
Axons, 326, 326f, 333
Azathioprine, 524
Azithromycin, 831t
Azoospermia, 299
Azotemia, 214
Azot/o, 214

B

B cells (lymphocytes), 84, 517, 517f, 518, 519, 520, 520f, 521f, 522, 529
B lymphocytes (B cells), 84, 517, 517f, 518, 519, 520, 520f, 521f, 522, 529
Bacilli, 448, 449
Back (positional term), 55
Back (spinal column), divisions of, 48f, 48–49
Backbone, 557t
Backward, prefix for, 112, 257, 771

Bacteria
berry-shaped, 74, 302
coccal, 83f
lymphocytes and, 514
phagocytosis of, 477f
spiral-shaped, 304
Bacterial analyses of skin, 633
Bacterial endocarditis, 396
Bacterial infection, dysentery, 157
Bacteri/o, 214
Bacteriuria, 214
Bactrim, Sulfamethoxazole
Bad, prefix for, 108, 110
BAL (bronchioalveolar lavage), 455
Balance, 672
Balanitis, 297, 297f
Balan/o, 297
Balloon catheters, 388, 395, 407, 407f
in renal angioplasty, 223
Band cells, 475f
Bands (immature white blood cells), 496
Barbiturates, 838, 848, 849, 871, 872f
Bariatric surgery, 187, 187f
Barium enema (BE), 184, 184f, 190, 798, 811
Barium sulfate, 798
Bar/o, 187
Barrett esophagus, 154

Bartholin glands, 243, 243f, 250, 252
Bartholinitis, 252
Bartholin/o, 252
Basal cell carcinomas (BCC), 7f, 632, 632f, 634, 752t
Basal ganglia, 330f, 345
Basal layer, 614–615, 615f, 619
Base, combining form for, 484
Base of lung, 433f, 434, 436
Basilar, 436
Bas/o, 484
Baso (basophils), 84, 84t, 85f, 475f, 476, 478t, 479f, 482, 484, 496
Basophilia, 491
Basophils (baso), 84, 84t, 85f, 475f, 476, 478t, 479f, 482, 484, 496
BBB (blood brain barrier), 327, 333, 350, 352
BBB (bundle branch block), 388, 408
BCC (basal cell carcinoma), 7f, 632, 632f, 634, 752t
Bcr (breakpoint cluster region), 750, 775
Bcr-abl tyrosine kinase, 763
BE (barium enema), 184, 184f, 190, 798, 811
Bedsores, 624, 625f
Before meals (*ante cibum;* a.c., ac), 106, 845
Beginning, suffix for, 255
Behind, prefix for, 111, 112
Bell palsy, 344, 344f
Belonephobia, 881t
Below-knee amputation (BKA), 587

Benadryl, Diphenhydramine
Bence Jones protein, 492
Bendamustine, 764t
Bender-Gestalt Test, 862
Beneath, prefix for, 110
Benign, 110
Benign neoplasms of skin, 631, 631f, 632, 632f
Benign paroxysmal positional vertigo (BPPV), 677, 679
Benign prostatic hyperplasia (BPH), 301, 301f, 305, 306
Benign tumors, 746, 766
    characteristics of, 746–747
    comparison with malignant tumors, 747f
    in uterus, 260, 260f
Benzodiazepines (BZDs), 838, 842, 849, 871, 872f, 874, 875f, 876, 878, 879, 882
Benzoyl peroxide, 627
Beside, prefix for, 110
Beta blockers, 390, 393, 395, 400, 729, 835, 835t, 841
Beta particles, 794, 804
Beta-hCG, 772
Betapace, Sotalol
Between, prefix for, 110, 525
Bevacizumab, 765t
Bextra, Valdecoxib
Beyond, prefix for, 110, 114, 771, 811
Bi-, 107, 866
Bibliophobia, 881t

Bicarbonate (HCO_3-), 225
Biceps brachii, 578f
origin and insertion of, 578, 579f
Biconvex, 655
B.i.d., bid (two times daily; *bis in die)*, 845
Bifurcated synthetic graft, 397f
Bifurcation, 107
Biguanides, 833, 833t
Bilateral, 107
Bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy (BSO), 255, 255f
Bile, 137, 139, 140, 142, 149, 152
Bile bag, 190
Bile ducts, 139, 142, 146, 159f, 184, 798
Bil/i, 149
Biliary, 149
Biliary atresia, 180
Biliary colic, 159
Biliary system, x-ray examination of, 184
Biliary tract, 149
Bilirubin (BILI), 115, 139, 140f, 142, 149, 152, 183, 217, 476, 482
serum, 183
Bilirubin/o, 149
Bilirubinuria, 217
Binding, 571
Binocular vision, 653
Bi/o, 7, 72

Biology, 7
Biomarkers, cardiac, 401
Biopsy (Bx), 13, 77, 775
aspiration needle, 268, 758
bone marrow, 494, 495f, 772
cone, 269f
core needle, 758, 773
excisional, 758
incisional, 758
liquid, 773
liver, 189
lung, 452
muscle, 586
renal, 223
skin, 634
Bipolar disorder I, 866, 872t
Bipolar disorder II, 866, 872t, 885
Bipolar disorders, 866, 872t, 876, 885
Birth, 104, 105, 248, 248f, 254, 256
Birth control measures, 249
Birth control pills, 249
Bis in die (two times daily; b.i.d., bid), 845
Bisphosphonates, 729, 834, 834t, 841
Biventricular pacemakers, 389, 389f, 400
Biventricular pacing, 408
BKA (below-knee amputation), 587
Black, combining form for, 621, 621t
Black lung disease, 446, 447f

Blackheads (in acne; open comedones), 627, 627f
Bladder cancer, 219, 752t
-blast, 475f, 485, 562
-blastoma, 771
Blenoxane, Bleomycin
Bleomycin, 764t
Blepharitis, 656, 656f, 664t
Blephar/o, 72, 656
Blepharoptosis, 78, 78f, 656
Blind spot, 652, 655, 657
Blisters
    in herpes genitalis, 303f
    with shingles, 346, 625f
Blood
    circulation of, 376f, 376–377, 377f, 380f, 515f, 515t
    combining forms for, 10, 72, 484
    composition of, 474, 475f, 476f, 476–479, 477f, 478f, 478t, 479f
    hemorrhage, 179
    occult, 183
    passage from rectum, 158
    pathway through heart, 376, 376f, 380f
    root for, 4
    root plus combining vowel for, 5
    vomiting of, 178
Blood brain barrier (BBB), 327, 333, 350, 352
Blood cells
    developmental stages, 475f
    types of, 84, 85f, 474, 476f, 476–478, 477f, 478f, 478t

Blood clotting, 408, 480–481, 481f, 485, 493
disorders of, 489f, 489–490, 490f
Blood condition, 13, 75, 486, 717
Blood flow after birth, 391f
Blood pressure (BP), 265, 382–383, 383f, 396, 398, 408
high, Hypertension (HTN)
Blood system, 473–512
abbreviations, 496–497
blood clotting, 480–481, 481f
blood types, 480, 480t, 496
clinical procedures for, 494f, 494–495, 495f
combining forms for, 10, 484–485, 511
composition and formation of blood, 474, 475f, 476f, 476–479, 477f, 478f, 478t, 479f
laboratory tests for, 492–493
pathology/diseases
bone marrow cells, 492
clotting, 489f, 489–490, 490f
red blood cells, 487f, 487t, 487–489, 488f
white blood cells, 490–492, 491f
prefixes for, 512
pronunciation of terms for, 508–510
suffixes for, 485–486, 511
vocabulary related to, 482–483
Blood transfusion, 480, 494
Blood types, 480, 480t
ABO, 480t, 496
Blood urea nitrogen (BUN), 214, 220, 225
Blood vessels, 374, 375f
angiosarcoma and, 753t
dental, 134f

maternal, 247f
pathology of, 397f, 397–399, 399f
retinal, 666f
in skin, 615f
types of, 374, 375f
variations among, 375f
in villi, 138f
Blue, combining forms for, 387, 438, 621t
BM (bowel movement), 190
BMD (bone mineral density), 587
BMT (bone marrow transplantation), 492, 494, 495, 495f, 496, 521, 772, 775
BNP (brain natriuretic peptide), 401, 408
BNP (brain natriuretic peptide) test, 401
Body
cavities, 40f, 40–43, 41f, 42f, 44f, 45f
combining forms for, 716, 880
CT scans through regions of, 797f
parts of body ending in x, 73
planes of, 52
sensations from cerebral area for, 8f
of stomach, 137, 137f
structural organization of, 32–34
Bolus of food, 136
Bone(s), 544–568
of arm and hand, 554f, 555–556
clinical procedures, 585f, 585–586, 586f
combining forms for, 11, 560–564
common names of, 557t
cranial, 548f, 548–549, 549f, 551t, 558

definition of, 544, 558
facial, 133f, 550, 550f, 551t, 558
formation of, 544–545
laboratory tests for, 583–584
of leg and foot, 556, 557f, 557t
malignant tumors, 566, 566f
metacarpal, 110, 554f, 556, 557t, 563
pathology of, 564, 565f, 566f, 566–568, 567f
pelvis, 148, 554f, 556
processes and depressions in, 547, 547t, 548f, 558
pubic, 112, 113f
spinal column, 552f, 552–553, 553f
structure of, 545–547, 546f
suffixes for, 562
supporting tooth, 134f
of thorax, 554f, 554–555
vocabulary related to, 558–559
Bone densitometry, 585, 585f
Bone density, 566–567, 567f
Bone density tests, 585, 585f
Bone depressions, 547, 547t, 558
Bone head, 547, 547t, 548f, 558
Bone marrow, 73
aspirate, 494, 495f, 772
biopsy, 494, 495f, 772
combining forms for, 73, 485, 561
malignant neoplasm of, 492
red, 547, 559
yellow, 547, 559
Bone marrow biopsy, 494, 495f, 772

Bone marrow transplantation (BMT), 492, 494, 495, 495f, 496, 521, 772, 775
Bone mass, measurement of, 585
Bone mineral density (BMD), 587
Bone phagocytes, 545
Bone processes, 547, 547t, 548f, 558
    common names of, 557t
Bone scans, 586, 586f, 805
Boniva, Ibandronate sodium
Bony ankylosis, 572, 573f
Borborygmus, 151
Borderline personality disorder, 868, 872t
Bordetella pertussis, 444
Bortezomib, multiple myeloma treated with, 492
Both eyes (OU), 670
Botox Cosmetic, 623
Botulinum toxin, 622
Bowel
    large, 138–139
    small, 137–138, 138f
Bowel movement (BM), 190
Bowel sounds, 151
Bowman's capsule, Glomerular capsule
BP (blood pressure), 265, 382–383, 383f, 396, 398, 408
BPH (benign prostatic hyperplasia), 301, 301f, 305, 306
BPPV (benign paroxysmal positional vertigo), 677, 679
Brachial artery, 383, 383f, 386

Brachial plexus, 323f
Brachial plexus neuritis, 355
Brachi/o, 386
Brachy-, 771
Brachytherapy, 309, 759, 766, 771
Brady-, 107
Bradycardia, 107, 386, 388
Bradykinesia, 338

Brain
combining forms for, 9, 72, 336
CT scan of, 350, 797f
hydrocephalus, 266, 340
lobes, 328, 328f
MRI of, 350
pathway of sound vibrations to, 672f
PET scan of, 350f
spinal cord and, 322, 323f
structures and functions of, 328f, 328–330, 329f, 330f, 330t, 335
Brain natriuretic peptide (BNP), 401, 408
Brain natriuretic peptide (BNP) test, 401
Brain tumors, 346f, 346–347
Brainstem, 329, 333
Brand names of drugs, 768, 839
BRBPR (bright red blood per rectum), 190
BRCA1 (breast cancer 1 gene) mutation, 260, 263, 272
BRCA2 (breast cancer 2 gene) mutation, 260, 263, 272
Break, suffix for, 562
Breakpoint cluster region (bcr), 750, 775
Breast(s), 73
as accessory organ of reproduction, 245, 245f
combining forms for, 73, 254
mammography of, 267, 267f
ultrasound imaging and MRI, 267
Breast cancer, 81, 262f, 262–263, 263f, 778–779
chemotherapeutic regimens for, 764t
estrogen receptors for, 763

Breast reconstruction, 263f
Breast self-examination (BSE), 272
Breastbone, 547, 554, 557t, 564
Breathing, 105, 432, 432f, 437, 440, 442
Breech presentation, 256
Brentuximab vedotin, 765t
Bright red blood per rectum (BRBPR), 190
Broca aphasia, 339
Broca area, 328f
Bronch (bronchoscopy), 451, 451f
Bronchi, 433f, 434, 436, 437, 444–445, 446
Bronchial disorders, 444–445
Bronchial passages, 325f
Bronchial tubes, 72, 433f, 434, 437, 451, 843
Bronchiectasis, 437, 444
Bronchi/o, 437
Bronchioalveolar lavage (BAL), 455
Bronchioles, 433f, 434, 436, 437
Bronchiolitis, 437
Bronchiol/o, 437
Bronchitis, 76
    chronic, 444–445, 449
    pneumoconiosis associated with, 446
Bronch/o, 72, 437, 843
Bronchoalveolar lavage, 451
Bronchodilators, 437, 444, 838, 838t, 843

Bronchopleural, 437
Bronchopleural fistula, 437
Bronchopneumonia, 447
Bronchoscopy (Bronch), 451, 451f
Bronchospasm, 179, 437
Bruises, 626, 626f
Bruits, 396, 400
BSE (breast self-examination), 272
BSO (bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy), 255, 255f
Buccal, 181
Buccal surface of tooth, 133f
Bucc/o, 145, 181
Bulbourethral glands, 293f, 294, 295
Bulimia, 867
Bulimia nervosa, 867, 872t, 876
Bullae, 624
BUN (blood urea nitrogen), 214, 220, 225
Bundle branch block (BBB), 388, 408
Bundle of His, 382, 382f, 384, 388
Bunionectomy, 573, 573f
Bunions, 564, 573, 573f
Bupropion, 832t, 875f
Burkitt lymphoma, 753t
Burning, combining forms for, 338, 620, 769
Burns, 624, 625f, 627, 627f
Bursae, 568–569, 569f, 570

Bursitis, 570

Burs/o, 570

Bursting, suffix for, 179

Buspar, Buspirone

Buspirone, 839t, 875f

Butterfly rash, systemic lupus erythematosus associated with, 576, 577f, 629, 629f

Bx (biopsy), Biopsy (Bx)

By mouth (*per os;* PO, p.o., po), 845

Bydureon, Exenatide

Byetta, Exenatide

Bypass, gastric, 148, 187, 187f

Bypass surgery, 412

BZDs (benzodiazepines), 838, 842, 849, 871, 872f, 874, 875f, 876, 878, 879, 882

C

C. difficile, 83, 187

CA 125 (protein marker), 272, 772

Ca (calcium), Calcium (Ca)

CA (cancer), Cancer (CA)

CA (chronological age), 882

CABG (coronary artery bypass grafting), 395, 406, 406f, 408

Cabometyx, Cabozantinib

Cabozantinib, 765t

Cachexia, 769

Cac/o, 769

CAD (coronary artery disease), 393–395, 394f, 395f, 408
Caffeine, 838, 839t, 842
Calcaneal, 562
Calcane/o, 562
Calcaneus, 556, 557t, 562
Calciferol, 204, 209, 844t
Calci/o, 560, 714
Calcitonin, 703, 703f, 710t, 712, 836, 836t
Calcium (Ca), 558, 587
    in bone formation, 545, 558
    combining forms for, 560, 714
    osteomalacia and, 566
    PTH and, 704, 704f
Calcium channel blockers, 390, 395, 400, 835, 835t, 842
Calcium phosphate, 558
Calcium salts, 544
Calc/o, 560, 714
Calculi
    dental, 154
    in gallbladder, 159
    renal, 218
Caliceal, 211
Calic/o, 211
Caliectasis, 211
Cali/o, 211
Calix (calices), 209
Callus, 631, 631f

Calluses, 565f
Calyx (calyces), 208f, 209, 211
Canagliflozin, 833t
Canals
auditory, 670, 671f, 673
haversian, 546f, 547, 559
neural, 552, 552f, 571
root, 134, 134f
semicircular, 671f, 672, 673, 676
spinal, 45, 552, 552f, 571f, 575, 575f
Cancellous bone, 546f, 547, 558
Cancer (CA)
bladder, 219, 752t
breast, Breast cancer
chemotherapeutic agents for, Chemotherapy (chemo)
colorectal, 156
combining forms for, 7, 72, 769
endometrial, 259
esophageal, 154
gastric, 154
hereditary, 750–751, 751t
liver, 161, 747f
lung, 446, 446f, 457, 752t, 764t
medicine, Oncology
pancreatic, 161, 192, 764t
prostate, 301f, 301–302, 309, 764t
protein marker tests, 772
testicular, 299f, 299–300, 764t
thyroid gland, 719
Cancer medicine, Oncology

Cancer treatment, 758–765
chemotherapy, Chemotherapy (chemo)
immunotherapy, 765, 767
molecularly targeted therapy, 764, 767
monoclonal antibodies, 765, 765t
radiation therapy, 758–761, 759f, 760f, 761f, 761t, 768
surgery, 758, 768
Cancidas, Caspofungin
Candidiasis, 526t, 635
C&S (culture and sensitivity) testing, 214, 443, 455
Canine teeth, 133f, 142
Canker sores, 153, 153f
Cannabis, 848, 871, 872f, 872t, 876
Cannula, uterine, 86f
CAPD (continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis), 223f, 225
Capillaries, 374, 377, 384, 433f, 434, 475f
lung, 376, 376f, 434, 435, 435f
lymph, 514, 514f, 515f, 516, 516f, 522
tissue, 375f, 376f, 377, 377f
Caplets, 827f
Capn/o, 437
Caps (capsules), 827f, 845
Capsules (Caps), 827f, 845
CAR T-cells (chimeric antigen receptor T cell), 521, 521f, 531, 765, 767, 775
Carbamazepine, 832t, 875f
Carbidopa, Parkinson disease treated with, 345
Carbon dioxide (CO_2), 377, 384, 436, 437, 455

Carbon dioxide partial pressure ($PaCO_2$), 456
Carbon monoxide, DL_{co}, 453, 455
Carcin/o, 7, 72, 769
Carcinoembryonic antigen (CEA), 772, 775
Carcinogenesis, 76, 748f, 748–751, 749t, 750f, 751t, 771
Carcinogenic, 13, 81
Carcinogens, 749, 749t, 766
Carcinoma(s), 7, 751, 766
  basal cell, 7f, 632, 632f, 752t
  of cervix, 258, 258f, 259f, 752t
  definition of, 752
  embryonal, 299, 299f
  epithelial tissue-derived, 752t
  esophageal, 7
  hepatocellular, 13, 148, 161
  ovarian, 260, 754f, 764t
  of prostate, 301f, 301–302
  renal cell, 218f, 219
  squamous cell, 632, 632f, 635, 635f, 752t
  thyroid, 719, 754f
Carcinoma in situ (CIS), 258, 272, 755, 769
Cardiac arrest, 390, 400
Cardiac biomarkers, 401
Cardiac catheterization, 404, 404f
Cardiac center, regulation of, 330
Cardiac cycle, diastole-systole, 381, 381f
Cardiac glycosides, 835, 835t, 842
Cardiac MRI, 404

Cardiac muscle, 577f, 578
Cardiac pacemakers, 382, 382f, 384, 389, 389f
Cardiac resynchronization therapy (CRT), 408
Cardiac sphincter, 143
Cardiac tamponade, 396, 400
Cardi/o, 7, 72, 386
Cardiogenic shock, 386
Cardiologists, 26
Cardiology
    definition of, 7
    nuclear, 403
Cardiomegaly, 386
Cardiomyopathy, 77, 386
Cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR), 408, 455
Cardiovascular (CV) drugs, 410, 834–835, 835t, 842
Cardiovascular system, 347–404
    abbreviations for, 408–409
    blood pressure and, 382–383, 383f
    blood vessels and, 374, 375f
        pathology, 397f, 397–399, 399f
    circulation of blood in, 376f, 376–377, 377f
    clinical procedures for
        diagnostic, 401–405, 402f, 403f, 404f, 405f
        treatment, 406f, 406–408, 407f
    combining forms for, 385–388, 429
    heart
        anatomy, 378, 379f, 380, 380f
        pathology, 388–397, 389f, 391f, 392f, 394f, 395f, 396f
        physiology of, 381f, 381–382, 382f, 383f
    laboratory tests for, 401

prefixes for, 430
pronunciation of terms for, 425–428
suffixes for, 429
vocabulary related to, 384–385
Cardioversion, 406
Cardizem CD, Diltiazem
Caries, dental, 153, 153f
Carotid artery, 348, 376–377, 377f, 384
branches, 354f
Carotid endarterectomy, 407
Carpal tunnel syndrome (CTS), 574, 574f, 587
Carpals, 554f, 555, 557t, 562
Carp/o, 104, 562
Carpometacarpal arthroplasty, 570
Carpometacarpal joint (CMC), 585, 587
CARs (chimeric antigen receptors), 521, 521f, 531, 765
Cartilage, 39, 545, 558
articular, 546, 546f, 558, 568, 568f, 569, 570, 572
combining forms for, 54, 72, 570
costal, 555
laryngeal, 434f
malignant tumors and, 753t
in OA and RA, 573f
in spinal column, 48f
thyroid, 433f, 454f, 702, 702f
Cartilaginous tissue, 545, 558
Carvedilol, 835t
Casanthranol + docusate sodium, 837t

Caspofungin, 831t
Castration, 305
Casts
for fractures, 564
in urine, 217
Cata-, 56, 107, 881
Catabolism, 34, 35, 56, 107
Cataracts, 662, 662f
phacoemulsification for, 658
Catatonia, 881
Catatonic behavior, 869
Catecholamines, 705, 705f, 713
Cath (catheterization), Catheterization (Cath)
Cathartics, 152, 837, 837t, 842
Catheter(s), 209, 222
balloon, 223, 388, 395, 407, 407f
definition of, 205
Foley, 224, 224f
suprapubic, 113f
urinary, 205, 206f
Catheter ablation, 390, 406, 406f
Catheterization (Cath), 408
cardiac, 404, 404f
urinary, 224, 224f
Cauda equina, 323f, 331, 333
Caudal block, 339f
Causalgia, 338, 620
Caus/o, 338, 620

Cauterization, 268
Cauterization in cancer treatment, 758
Cauter/o, 620, 769
Cavities
body, 40f, 40–43, 41f, 42f, 44f, 45f
medullary, 210, 546f, 547, 559
nasal, 432, 433f
oral, 132–134, 133f, 153f, 153–154
pericardial, 380, 380f
pleural, 41, 41f, 45, 437, 442, 449, 453
synovial, 568, 568f, 569
CBC (complete blood count), 492, 496
CBT (cognitive behavioral therapy), 873, 878, 882, 884
Cc (cubic centimeter), 845
CCTA (coronary computed tomography angiography), 408
CCU (coronary care unit), 408
CD (celiac disease), 145, 181, 190
CD4+ T cells (helper T cells), 520, 520f, 522, 525, 530, 531
CD8+ T cells (cytotoxic T cells), 520, 520f, 522, 531
CEA (carcinoembryonic antigen), 772, 775
Cecal, 145, 181
Cec/o, 145, 181
Cecum, 138, 142, 145
-cele, 74
Celebrex, Celecoxib
Celecoxib, 829t
Celexa, Citalopram hydrobromide

Celiac disease (CD), 145, 181, 190
Celiac sprue, 181
Celi/o, 145, 181
Cell(s)
blood, 84, 85f, 474, 475f, 476f, 476–478, 477f, 478f, 478t
combining forms for, 9, 54, 484
differences in, 36
exocrine gland, 706f
similarities in, 32–34
suffixes for, 13, 75
types of, 36f, 36–37
Cell body, 326, 326f, 333
Cell membrane, 32, 35
Cell nucleus, 32, 35, 326, 326f
Cell-mediated immunity, 520, 520f, 522
Cellulitis, 627, 627f, 635
Cementum, 134, 134f
-centesis, 74
Centigray (cGy), 775
Central incisors, 133f
Central nervous system (CNS), 322, 333, 352, 882
divisions of, 325f
Cephalexin, 831t
Cephalgia, 3, 338
Cephalic, 7
Cephalic presentation, 7, 248f, 256
Cephalic version, 256

Cephal/o, 7, 72
Cephalosporins, 831t
Cerebellar, 335
Cerebell/o, 335
Cerebellopontine, 337
Cerebellum, 329, 330f, 330t, 333, 335
Cerebral, 8
Cerebral aneurysm, 348f
Cerebral angiography, 349
Cerebral concussions, 347
Cerebral contusions, 347
Cerebral cortex, 328, 333, 335, 672f
    visual, 653, 653f, 654f
Cerebral edema, 346
Cerebral hemispheres, 328
    left, 328f
Cerebral infarction, 347f, 347–348, 348f, 354
Cerebral palsy, 344, 372
Cerebr/o, 8, 72, 335
Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF), 328, 333, 335, 340, 349, 352
    circulation of, 329f
    withdrawn by lumbar puncture, 351
Cerebrospinal fluid (CSF) analysis, 349
Cerebrovascular accident (CVA), 8f, 347f, 347–348, 348f, 352
Cerebrum, 8, 8f, 328, 330f, 330t, 333, 335, 343
Certolizumab pegol, 837t
Cerubidine, Daunorubicin

Cerumen, 670, 673
Cervical, 48, 49, 54
Cervical cancer, 258, 258f, 259f
Cervical curve, 553f
Cervical division of back, 48
Cervical intraepithelial neoplasia (CIN), 258, 258f, 272
Cervical loop electrocautery excision procedure, 269f
Cervical lymph nodes, 516f, 517, 522
Cervical nerves, 323f
Cervical plexus, 323f
Cervical spine (C-spine), 811
Cervical vertebrae (C1 to C7), 553, 553f, 587
Cervicitis, 259
Cervic/o, 54, 253
Cervicovaginal smear, abnormal, 773f
Cervix, 54, 54f, 244, 244f, 250, 253, 259, 259f, 269
    carcinoma of, 258, 258f, 259f, 752t
    LEEP for cone biopsy, 269f
    Pap test, 266, 266f
Cesarean section (C-section, CS), 271, 272
Cetirizine, 834t
Cetuximab, 765t
CF (cystic fibrosis), 445, 455
CGMS (continuous glucose monitoring system), 728
CGy (centigray), 775
-chalasia, 154
Chalazions, 662, 662f, 664t

Chancre, 304
Change, prefix for, 110, 771
Checkpoint inhibitors, 765
Cheeks, 132, 145
Cheil/o, 146, 181
Cheilosis, 146, 181
Chemical names of drugs, 768, 839
Chem/o, 72, 769, 843
Chemotherapy (chemo), 79, 762–763, 763f, 766, 767, 767f, 769, 843
  adjuvant, 262, 758, 762, 766, 771
  antituberculosis, 448
  cancers treated by, 764t
  mechanisms of action of, 763f
  neoadjuvant, 262
Chest, combining forms for, 55, 73, 387, 439, 441, 442, 454
Chest CT for pulmonary emboli (CT-PE), 455
Chest tube, thoracostomy with, 454, 455f
Chest x-rays (CXRs), 57, 450, 450f, 455, 589, 811
Cheyne-Stokes respirations, 440
-chezia, 150
CHF (congestive heart failure), 393, 408
Chiasm, optic, 653, 653f, 655
Chickenpox, 346, 628
Child, combining form for, 11
Child psychiatrists, 862, 877
Childbirth, 254, 271, 716

Chimeric antigen receptor T cell (CAR T-cell), 521, 521f, 531, 765, 767, 775

Chimeric antigen receptors (CARs), 521, 521f, 531, 765

Chir/o, 544

Chiropractors, 544

Chlamydia trachomatis, 302

Chlamydia, 261, 302

Chlorhydr/o, 150

Chloride (Cl-), 225

Chlor/o, 621t

Chlorophyll, 621t

Chloroquine, 831t

Chlorothiazide, 835t

Chlorpheniramine maleate, 834t

Chlorpromazine, 839t, 875f

Chlor-Trimeton, Chlorpheniramine maleate

Cholangiectasis, 178

Cholangi/o, 178, 181

Cholangiocarcinomas, 161, 181

Cholangiography, 184, 798, 799f

Cholangiopancreatography, endoscopic retrograde, 184, 185f, 190, 798

Chol/e, 149, 181

Cholecystectomy, 159, 160f, 181, 191

Cholecystitis, 159

Cholecyst/o, 146, 181

Cholecystojejunostomy, 182

Cholecystokinin, 700, 701t
Cholecystolithiasis, 182
Choledochal, 181
Choledochectasia, 181
Choledoch/o, 146, 181
Choledochojejunostomy, 148
Choledocholithiasis, 150, 185f
Choledochotomy, 146
Cholelithiasis, 149, 159, 181
Cholescintigraphy, 187
Cholestasis, 179
Cholesteatoma, 676, 676f
Cholesterol-binding drugs, 835, 835t, 842
Cholesterol-lowering drugs, 386, 400, 401, 835, 835t, 842
Cholesterol/o, 387
Cholestyramine, 835t
Chondr/o, 54, 72, 570
Chondrocostal, 563
Chondromalacia patellae, 570
Chondromas, 54
Chondrosarcomas, 54, 570, 753t
Chori/o, 253
Choriocarcinoma
    placental, 264
    testicular, 299
Chorion, 247, 247f, 250, 253

Chorionic, 253
Chorionic villus sampling (CVS), 271, 272
Chorion/o, 253
Choroid, 650, 651f, 655
Chrom/o, 54, 484, 721
Chromosomal translocation, 750f
Chromosomes, 35, 54, 748, 750, 750f
    bcr region, 750, 750f
    cytogenetic analysis, 772
Chronic, 81
Chronic bronchitis, 444–445, 449
Chronic idiopathic constipation (CIC), 152, 190
Chronic inflammatory myopathy, 583
Chronic kidney disease (CKD), 219, 225
Chronic lymphoid leukemia (CLL), 491, 496, 764t, 765
Chronic myeloid leukemia (CML), 491, 496
Chronic obstructive pulmonary disease (COPD), 444–445, 449, 455
Chronic pain, 581
Chronic renal failure (CRF), 219, 222, 225
Chronic rheumatic heart disease, 396f
Chronic traumatic encephalopathy (CTE), 14, 14f
Chron/o, 72
Chronological age (CA), 882
Chym/o, 626
CIC (chronic idiopathic constipation), 152, 190
Cicatrix, 631

Cigarette smoking, bronchitis associated with, 444
Cilia, 432, 436
lining fallopian tube, 244, 244f
Ciliary body, 650, 651f, 655, 657, 661
Cimetidine, 837, 837t
CIN (cervical intraepithelial neoplasia), 258, 258f, 272
Cipro, Ciprofloxacin
Ciprofloxacin, 831t
Circulation
of aqueous humor, 651, 654, 654f, 656, 663f
of blood, 376f, 376–377, 377f, 515f
of CSF in brain, 329f
pulmonary, 376, 376f, 440
systemic, 376f, 377, 385
Circulatory system
organs of, 38
relationship to blood and lymph, 515f
Circumcision, 295, 302, 303, 303f, 305
Circumflex branch, 394f
Cirrh/o, 160, 621t
Cirrhosis, 160, 621t
alcoholic, 160, 160f
CIS (carcinoma in situ), 258, 272, 755, 769
Cis/o, 8, 104
Cisplatin, 763, 763f, 764t
Citalopram hydrobromide, 832t, 875f
CK (creatine kinase), 408, 583, 587
CKD (chronic kidney disease), 219, 225

Cl- (chloride), 225
Claritin, Loratadine
Classes of drugs, 829t, 829–838, 831t, 832t, 834t, 835t, 836t, 837t–838t, 839t, 841–842
-clast, 545, 562
Claudication, 400
  intermittent, 398
Claustr/o, 865
Claustrophobia, 865, 881t
Clavicle, 554, 554f, 557t, 562, 565f
Clavicul/o, 562
Cleft palate, 550
Cleocin, Clindamycin
Clindamycin, 831t
Clinical procedures
  for blood system, 494f, 494–495, 495f
  for cardiovascular system
    diagnostic, 401–405, 402f, 403f, 404f, 405f
    treatment, 406f, 406–408, 407f
  for digestive system, 184f, 184–189, 185f, 186f, 187f, 188f, 189f
  for ears, 678, 678f, 679f
  for endocrine system, 727
  for eyes
    diagnostic, 666f, 666–667, 667f
    treatment, 668f, 668–670, 669f
  for female reproductive system, 266f, 266–271, 267f, 268f, 269f, 270f, 271f
  for lymphatic and immune systems, 531
  for male reproductive system, 305f, 305–306, 306f
  for musculoskeletal system, 584f, 584–586, 585f, 586f, 610
  for nervous system, 349–351, 350f, 351f

for oncology, 772–774, 773f, 774f
for respiratory system, 450f, 450–455, 451f, 452f, 453f, 454f, 455f
for skin, 633–634, 634f
for urinary system, 220f, 220–224, 221f, 222f, 223f, 224f
Clinical psychologists, 862
Clinical psychology, 862, 878
Clinical symptoms, psychiatric, 863–864
Clinical trials, 762
Clitoris, 243, 243f, 250
CLL (chronic lymphoid leukemia), 491, 496, 764t, 765
Clomipramine, 875f
Clonazepam, 832t, 871, 875f
Clopidogrel, 832t
Closed fractures, 564, 565f
Closed reduction, 564
Clostridium difficile, 83, 187
Clot(s)
combining forms for, 12, 73, 387
fibrin, 480–481, 481f
Clotrimazole, 831t
Clotting, combining form for, 484
Clotting cells, Platelets
Clotting factor, hemophilia and, 489
Clubfoot, 116f, 568
CMC (carpometacarpal joint), 585, 587
CML (chronic myeloid leukemia), 491, 496
CMV (cytomegalovirus), 526t, 531

CNS (central nervous system), 322, 333, 352, 882
divisions of, 325f
CO2 (carbon dioxide), 377, 384, 436, 437, 455
CoA (coarctation of the aorta), 391, 391f, 408
Coagulation, 480–481, 481f, 482
Coagul/o, 484
Coagulopathy, 484
Coarctation of the aorta (CoA), 391, 391f, 408
Cocaine, 848
dependence on, 871, 872f, 872t
-coccus (-cocci), 74
Coccygeal, 48, 54
Coccygeal division of back, 48, 49
Coccyg/o, 54
Coccyx, 48, 54, 73, 553, 553f, 557t
Cochlea, 671, 671f, 673, 674, 678
Cochlear, 674
Cochlear hydrops, 676
Cochlear implant procedure, 678, 679f
Cochlear implants, 678, 679f
Cochle/o, 674
Codeine, 80, 355, 829t, 849, 871, 872f
Cognition, 867
Cognitive behavioral therapy (CBT), 873, 878, 882, 884
Coitophobia, 881t
Coitus, 250

-col, 770
Cold, combining forms for, 297, 769
Cold sores, 154
Colectomy, 181, 190
Colestipol, 835t
Colic
  biliary, 159
  renal, 213
Colitis, ulcerative, 158
Collagen, 544, 558, 576, 619, 629
Collagen fibers, 614, 616
Collapsed lung, 440f, 441, 441f, 445
Collar bone, 557t, 562
Colles fractures, 565f
Col/o, 72, 146, 149, 181
Colon, 44f, 45f, 72, 144, 146
  adenomatous polyposis of, 755f
  ascending, 138, 142
  descending, 138, 147f
  sigmoid, 137, 137f, 138, 144, 147f, 149
  transverse, 138, 147, 147f
  tumors of, 752t
  x-ray images of, 184
Colonic, 146
Colonic adenocarcinomas, 156, 157f, 186f
Colonic polyps, 156, 156f
Colon/o, 146, 181
Colonoscopy, 14, 146, 181, 188, 188f, 189f, 773

Colony-stimulating factors (CSFs), 476, 482, 775
Color
combining forms for, 54, 484, 621t
of neonates, 265, 265f
of urine, 216
Color flow imaging, 801, 801f
Colorectal cancer, 156
Colostomy, 79, 146
care of, 146f
sigmoid, 147f
Colp/o, 253
Colposcopy, 253, 268, 268f
Coma, 338
Comat/o, 338
Comatose, 338
Combination chemotherapy, 762, 766
Combining forms
for blood system, 10, 484–485, 511
for bones, 11, 560–564
for cardiovascular system, 385–388, 429
for digestive system, 181–182
parts of body, 145–149
substances, 149–150
for ears, 674–675
for endocrine system, 743
glands, 714
related terms, 714–716
for eyes, 11, 73
conditions, 659
structures and fluids, 656–659
for female reproductive system, 252–255

for joints, 7, 72, 570–571
for lymphatic and immune systems, 524–525, 542
for male reproductive system, 297–299
for muscles, 73, 254, 337, 581–582
for nervous system, 335–340, 370
for oncology, 769–770, 791
for oral cavity, 133f
for pharmacology, 843–844, 860
for psychiatry, 879–880, 896
for radiology and nuclear medicine, 810, 821
relating to
basic word structure, 6
body as whole, 53–55, 67
for respiratory system, 437–441, 471
for sense organs, 697
for skin, 9, 104, 620–623, 621t, 648
in study of
prefixes, 104
suffixes, 72–73, 101–102
Combining vowels, 4–6
Combivent, Ipratropium + albuterol
Comedones, 627, 627f
Comminuted fractures, 565f
Common bile duct, 139, 146, 798
Communication disorders, 867, 872t
Community-acquired pneumonia, 447
Compact bone, 546f, 547, 558
Compartment syndrome, 581f
Complement system, 520, 521f, 522
Complete blood count (CBC), 492, 496

Complete response (CR), 775
Completion, prefix for, 106, 108
Complex partial seizure, 343
Complications of types 1 and 2 diabetes, 723–724, 724f
Compound fractures, 564, 565f
Compression fractures, 565f
Compulsions, 863, 865, 876
Computed tomography (CT), 185, 190, 352, 402, 402f, 774, 797f, 803f, 806, 807f, 808, 810, 811, 812
  of brain, 350
  characteristics of, 185, 796, 796f
  of chest, 450
  of endocrine glands, 727
  of gallbladder, 185f
  of kidney, 220, 220f
  of liver, 185f
  of lungs, 797f
  of lymphoid organs, 531
  MRI vs., 802
  for musculoskeletal system, 586
  in virtual colonoscopy, 188
Computed tomography angiography (CTA), 402, 402f
Computed tomography myelography, 799
Computed tomography pulmonary angiography (CTPA), 450, 455
Con-, 107
Concerta, Methylphenidate
Concussions, cerebral, 347
Conduction myofibers, 382f

Conduction system of heart, 381–382, 382f, 383f
Conductive deafness, 676
Condyle, 547t, 548f, 558
Cone biopsy, 268, 269, 269f
Cones, 652, 655
Conformal radiation therapy, 759f
Congenital anomaly, 107, 116, 116f
Congenital disorders
  of nervous system, 340–341, 341f
  spherocytic anemia, 488, 488f
Congenital heart disease, 391
Congestive heart failure (CHF), 393, 408
Coni/o, 437
Conization, 258, 268
Conjoined twins, 296
Conjugated bilirubin, 139, 140f
Conjunctiva, 650, 651f, 655, 656
Conjunctivitis, 656
  acute bacterial, 656f
Conjunctiv/o, 656
Connective, 107
Connective tissue, 37
  combining form for, 770
  fibrous, 581
  hardening of, 629
  sarcomas derived from, 12f, 566, 753t, 753–754
Constipation, 152, 190

Continuous ambulatory peritoneal dialysis (CAPD), 223f, 225
Continuous glucose monitoring system (CGMS), 728
Continuous positive airway pressure (CPAP), 442, 442f, 455
Contra-, 108, 844
Contraceptive choices, 249, 274
Contracting fibrils, 577f
Contraction, suffix for, 179
Contraindications, 108, 828, 839, 844
Contralateral, 108
Contrast medium, 184, 796
    in cerebral angiography, 349
Contrast studies, 796, 798f, 798–800, 799f, 803f, 808
Control, suffix for, 79, 105, 179, 486
Controlled substances, 828, 839, 848–849
Contusions, cerebral, 347
Conversion, 863
Conversion disorder, 870, 872t, 876
Coombs test, 492
Coordination, combining form for, 340
COPD (chronic obstructive pulmonary disease), 444–445, 449, 455
Cor pulmonale, 445, 449
Cordarone, Amiodarone
Core needle biopsy, 758, 773
Coreg, Carvedilol
Cornea, 650, 651f, 654f, 655, 657, 660, 668, 668f
Corneal abrasion, 657

Corneal transplantation, 668, 668f
Corne/o, 657
Corneoscleral, 658
Corns, 631
Cor/o, 656
Coronal plane, 52, 52f
Coronal suture, 548f
Coronary angiography, 798, 798f, 799f
Coronary arteries, 384, 393–395, 394f
Coronary artery bypass grafting (CABG), 395, 406, 406f, 408
Coronary artery calcium score, 402
Coronary artery disease (CAD), 393–395, 394f, 395f, 408
Coronary care unit (CCU), 408
Coronary computed tomography angiography (CCTA), 408
Coron/o, 387
Corpor/o, 222
Corpus callosum, 330f
Corpus luteum, 244, 244f, 246f, 250, 621t
Cortex
    adrenal, 704f, 704–705, 705f, 710t, 711, 720f, 720–721, 721f, 726t
    cerebral, Cerebral cortex
    combining form for, 715
    renal, 204, 209
Cortical, 209, 335
Cortical bone, 546f, 547
Cortic/o, 715
Corticosteroids, 662, 704–705, 705f, 713, 715, 729

Cortisol, 705, 705f, 710t, 712, 720f, 720–721
Cortisone, 705
Corvert, Ibutilide
Corynebacterium, 444
Costal cartilages, 555
Cost/o, 104, 563
Coughing, paroxysmal, 444
Coumadin, Warfarin
COX-2 (cyclooxygenase-2) inhibitors, 829
Cozaar, Losartan
CPAP (continuous positive airway pressure), 442, 442f, 455
CPR (cardiopulmonary resuscitation), 408, 455
CR (complete response), 775
Crackles, 443
Cranial bones, 548f, 548–549, 549f, 551t, 558
Cranial cavity, 40, 40f, 42, 45
Cranial nerves, 322–323, 323f, 324f, 333
Crani/o, 54, 72, 563
Craniotome, 563
Craniotomy, 54, 58, 563
Cranium, 557t
    combining form for, 563
Cras/o, 843
CrCl (creatinine clearance), 209, 220, 225
Creatine kinase (CK), 408, 583, 587
Creatinine, 204, 207, 209

Creatinine clearance (CrCl), 209, 220, 225
Crepitus, 564
Crestor, Rosuvastatin
Cretinism, 719
CRF (chronic renal failure), 219, 222, 225
-crine, 105
Crin/o, 8, 715
CRISPR, 116
Crixivan, Indinavir
Crohn disease, 156, 162, 837
Croup, 444
Crown of tooth, 134, 134f
CRT (cardiac resynchronization therapy), 408
Crushing, combining form for, 215
Crust, 624, 625f
Cry/o, 297, 769
Cryocauterization, 259
Cryosurgery, 268, 633, 769
    in cancer treatment, 758
Crypt/o, 297
Crypto (cryptococcal infections), 526t, 531
Cryptococcal infections (Crypto), 526t, 531
Cryptorchidism, 297, 297f, 300
Cryptosporidiosis, 526t
Crystal methamphetamine, 848
CS (cesarean section), 271, 272

C-section (cesarean section), 271, 272
CSF (cerebrospinal fluid), 328, 333, 335, 352
abnormal accumulation of, 340
circulation of, 329f
withdrawn by lumbar puncture, 351
CSF (cerebrospinal fluid) analysis, 349
CSFs (colony-stimulating factors), 476, 482, 775
C-spine (cervical spine), 811
CT (computed tomography), 185, 190, 352, 402, 402f, 797f, 803f, 806, 807f, 808, 810, 811, 812
of brain, 350, 797f
characteristics of, 185, 796, 796f
of chest, 450
of endocrine glands, 727
of gallbladder, 185f
of kidney, 220, 220f
of liver, 185f
of lungs, 797f
of lymphoid organs, 531
MRI vs., 802
for musculoskeletal system, 586
in virtual colonoscopy, 188
CT myelography, 799
CTA (computed tomography angiography), 402, 402f
CTA showing, 402f
left anterior descending, 394f, 409
CTE (chronic traumatic encephalopathy), 14
CTnI (troponin-I), 401, 408
CTnT (troponin-T), 401, 408

CTPA (computed tomography pulmonary angiography), 450, 455
CT-PE (chest CT for pulmonary emboli), 455
CTS (carpal tunnel syndrome), 574, 574f, 587
Cubic centimeter (cc), 845
Cubic millimeter (mm^3), 497
Cul-de-sac, 250, 253, 269
Culd/o, 253
Culdocentesis, 253, 269
Culture and sensitivity (C&S) testing, 214, 443, 455
Curettage, 633
Cushing syndrome, 720f, 720–721, 731
Cutane/o, 104, 620, 843
Cutaneous lesions, 624, 625f
Cuticles, 617, 619
CVA (cerebrovascular accident), 8f, 347f, 347–348, 348f, 352
CVS (chorionic villus sampling), 271, 272
CXRs (chest x-rays), 57, 450, 450f, 455, 589, 811
Cyan/o, 387, 438, 621t
Cyanosis, 387, 393, 398, 438, 621t
Cycl/o, 657, 866, 881
Cyclooxygenase-2 (COX-2) inhibitors, 829
Cyclophosphamide, 764t
Cycloplegic, 657
Cyclosporine, 495
Cyclothymia, 881
Cyclothymic disorder, 866, 872t

-cyesis, 255
Cymbalta, Duloxetine
Cyst(s)
epidermoid, 620, 620f
fluid filled (ganglion), 574, 575f
ganglion, 574, 575f
ovarian, 259, 261, 261f
pilonidal, 624, 625f
Cystadenocarcinomas, 260, 261
Cystectomy, 211
Cystic duct, 139
Cystic fibrosis (CF), 445, 455
Cystic ovarian adenocarcinomas, 260, 754f
Cystic tumors, 752t, 754, 754f, 769
Cystitis, 13, 211, 211f, 761t
Cyst/o, 8, 72, 211, 769
Cysto (cystoscopic examination), 225
Cystocele, 74, 82, 82f
Cystoscopic examination (cysto), 225
Cystoscopy, 8, 221, 221f
Cystostomy, 211
Cystourethrogram, voiding, 220f, 221, 225
Cytarabine, 764t
-cyte, 13, 75
Cyt/o, 54, 484
Cytogenetic analysis, 772
Cytokines, 520, 522

Cytomegalovirus (CMV), 526t, 531
Cytoplasm, 34, 35, 54
Cytosar-U, Cytarabine
-cytosis, 484, 486
Cytotoxic T cells (CD8+ T cells), 520, 520f, 522, 531
Cytoxan, Cyclophosphamide

D

Dabigatran, 410, 831, 832t
Dacry/o, 657
Dacryoadenitis, 657
Dacryocystitis, 664t
Dactyl/o, 104
Dalteparin, 832t
Dandruff, 623
Dapagliflozin, 833t
Daunorubicin, 764t
D&C (dilation and curettage), 259, 269, 269f, 272
DCIS (ductal carcinoma in situ), 262, 272
De-, 108, 560
Deafness, 676
    nerve, 675, 676
Death, combining forms for, 73, 104, 769
Debulking procedure, 758
Decadron, Dexamethasone
Decalcification, 560

Decub (decubitus), 804, 811
Decubitus (Decub), 804, 811
Decubitus ulcers, 624, 625f
Dedifferentiated cancerous cells, 747
Dedifferentiation, 36, 766
Deep (positional term), 50, 53
Deep tendon reflexes (DTRs), 587
Deep vein thrombosis (DVT), 387, 398, 408
Defecation, 138–139, 142
Defense mechanisms, 864, 876
Defibrillation, 390, 406
Defibrillators, automatic external, 390, 408
Deficiency, 77
    prefix for, 109, 717, 882
    suffix for, 77, 486
Deflections, 382
Degenerative disorders, 342–345, 343f, 344f, 345f
    joint disease, 572
    muscular dystrophy, 583
Degenerative joint disease (DJD), 587
Deglutition, Swallowing

Delirium, 867, 872t, 877
Delirium tremens (DT), 867, 877, 882
Delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol (THC), 882
Deltoids, 578f
Delusions, 864, 865, 869, 872t, 877
Dementia, 342, 349, 867, 872t, 877
    with AIDS, 346
    with Alzheimer disease, 342
Dem/o, 718
Demyelination, 349
Dendrites, 326, 326f, 333
Dendritic cells, 520, 521f, 522
Denosumab, 834t
Dental arch, 133, 133f
Dental caries, 153, 153f
Dentalgia, 181
Dent/i, 146, 181
Dentin, 134, 134f, 142
Deoxygenated blood, 384
Deoxyribonucleic acid (DNA), DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid)
Depakene, Valproate
Dependence, 828, 839, 870–871
Dependent personality, 869, 872t
Depersonalization/derealization disorder, 867, 872t
Depigmentation, 630, 630f
Depressive disorders, 866, 872t, 877

Depressive episodes, 866
Derealization/depersonalization disorder, 867, 872t
Derivation, suffix for, 81, 486
Derm (dermatology), 634
-derma, 622
Dermabrasion, 620
Dermatitis, 620
    atopic, 528, 528f, 628, 628f
    seborrheic, 623
Dermat/o, 620
Dermatology (Derm), 634
Dermatophytosis, 622
Dermis, 614, 615f, 616, 619, 620
Derm/o, 620, 843
Dermoid cysts, 261, 261f
-desis, 571
Desmopressin, 729
DESs (drug-eluting stents), 407, 407f, 408
Destruction, suffix for, 76, 105, 486
Desvenlafaxine, 875f
Desyrel, Trazodone
DEXA (dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry), 585, 585f, 587
Dexamethasone, 764t, 836t
Dexedrine, Dextroamphetamine
Dextroamphetamine, 839t, 872f, 875f
Dextroamphetamine and amphetamine, 839t

DI (diabetes insipidus), 219, 726, 726t, 728, 731

DI (diagnostic imaging), 811

Dia-, 15, 108

Diabetes insipidus (DI), 219, 726, 726t, 728, 731

Diabetes mellitus (DM), 10, 217, 219, 662, 717, 722–724, 723f, 723t, 724f, 727, 728, 730–731

- complications of, 723–724, 724f
- gestational, 724
- indicated by glycosuria, 217

Diabetic ketoacidosis (DKA), 728

Diabetic nephropathy, 724, 724f

Diabetic neuropathy, 724

Diabetic retinopathy, 662, 724

Diagnoses, 10, 15

Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders, fifth edition (DSM-V), 862, 882

Diagnostic imaging (DI), 811

Diagnostic procedures

- for cardiovascular system, 401–405, 402f, 403f, 404f, 405f
- for eyes, 666f, 666–667, 667f
- MRI, 802f, 802–803, 803f
- ultrasound imaging, 800–801, 801f, 803f
- x-ray studies, 796, 796f, 797f, 798f, 798–800, 799f, 803f

Dialysis, 108, 222, 222f

Diaphor/o, 620

Diaphragm, 42, 45, 433f, 434, 435f, 436, 439

Diaphysis, 546, 546f, 558

Diarrhea, 152, 179

Diastole, 381, 381f, 384
Diastolic CHF, 393
Diazepam, 871, 875f
DIC (disseminated intravascular coagulation), 480, 496
Diclofenac sodium, 829t
DICOM (digital image communication in medicine), 811
Diff (differential count), 496
Differential count (diff), 496
Differentiated cells, 474
    tumors composed of, 746–747
Differentiation, 474, 482, 766
Diffuse, 756
Diffusion capacity of lung for CO (DLCO), 453, 455
Digestion, 132, 142, 178
Digestive system, 131–176
    abbreviations for, 190
    anatomy and physiology of, 138–150
    clinical procedures for, 184f, 184–189, 185f, 186f, 187f, 188f, 189f
    colonoscopy report, 189f
    combining forms for, 181–182
        parts of body, 145–149
        substances, 149–150
    laboratory tests for, 183, 183f
    MRI of, 186, 186f
    organs of, 38
    pancreatic cancer and, 161, 192
    pathologic conditions, 143–153
        liver, gallbladder, and pancreas, 159–161
        lower GI tract, 156f, 156–159, 157f, 158f
        oral cavity and teeth, 153f, 153–154

signs and symptoms of, 151–153
pronunciation of terms for, 173–176, 199–200
suffixes for, 150, 178–180
ultrasound examination of, 186
vocabulary related to, 142–145
Digital image communication in medicine (DICOM), 811
Digital imaging techniques, 800
Digital radiography, 796
Digital rectal examination (DRE), 301, 301f, 305, 306
Digital subtraction angiography (DSA), 402, 408, 799, 811
Digoxin, 390, 393, 400, 834, 835t
Dilantin, Phenytoin sodium
Dilatation, -ectasia suffix, 178
Dilation and curettage (D&C), 259, 269, 269f, 272
Dilaudid, Hydromorphone
Diltiazem, 835t
Dim, combining form for, 659
Diovan, Valsartan
Diphenhydramine, 834t
Diphenoxylate + atropine, 837t
Diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus (DPT), 444, 455
Dipl/o, 659
Diplococci, 83, 83f
Diplopia, 659, 665
Diprivan, Propofol
Dips/o, 214, 715
Direct bilirubin test, 183

Direct ophthalmoscopy, 667
Direct oral anticoagulants (DOACs), 390, 398, 408, 410, 481, 831, 845
Discharge, suffix for, 105, 179, 256
Discoid lupus erythematosus (DLE), 629, 634
Discs, 49
herniated, 48f, 575, 575f, 576f
intervertebral, 552, 558, 575, 575f, 576f
slipped, 49, 575, 575f
Disease
autoimmune, 107
of bone marrow cells, 492
combining form for, 11
exanthematous viral, 628, 669f
graft-versus-host, 495, 496
no evidence of (NED), 775
periodontal, 154
of red blood cells, 487f, 487t, 487–489, 488f
of white blood cells, 490–492, 491f
Disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs (DMARDs), 572, 587
Disorganized thinking, 869, 872t
Disseminated intravascular coagulation (DIC), 480, 496
Dissociation, 864
Dissociative amnesia, 867, 872t
Dissociative disorders, 866–867, 872t, 877
Distal, definition of, 50
Distal phalanges, 557f
Distal (positional term), 53
Distal surface of tooth, 133f

Dist/o, 54
Diuresis, 215, 235
Diuretics, 215, 235, 835, 835t, 842
Divalproex, 832t
Diverticula, 157, 157f
Diverticulitis, 157, 157f
Diverticulosis, 157, 157f
DJD (degenerative joint disease), 587
DKA (diabetic ketoacidosis), 728
DLCO (diffusion capacity of lung for CO), 453, 455
DLE (discoid lupus erythematosus), 629, 634
DM (diabetes mellitus), Diabetes mellitus (DM)
DMARDs (disease-modifying antirheumatic drugs), 572, 587
DNA (deoxyribonucleic acid), 35, 750, 766, 775
    damage to, 749
    functions of, 748, 748f
    recombinant, 112, 116, 117f
"Do Not Use" list of abbreviations, 846
DOACs (direct oral anticoagulants), 390, 398, 408, 410, 481, 831, 845
Docetaxel, 764t
Doctor of optometry (OD), 658
Doctor of osteopathy (DOs), 544
DOE (dyspnea on exertion), 455
Donepezil, 832t
Donors, 407, 494
Dopamine, 327, 345, 349
Doppler ultrasound studies, 801, 801f

of brain, 350
of cardiovascular system, 402
Dorsal, 50, 53
Dorsal cavities, 40f
Dorsal lithotomy position, 62f
Dorsal (posterior), 45, 50
Dorsal root of spinal nerve, 331f
Dorsi-, 582
Dorsiflexion, 579, 580, 580f, 582
Dors/o, 54
DOs (osteopathic physicians), 544
Dose of drug, 828, 839
-dote, 844
Double, combining form for, 659
Double-contrast study, 798
Down, prefix for, 107, 108, 881
Down syndrome, 34, 265
karyotype of, 34f
Doxil, Doxorubicin
Doxorubicin, 763, 764t
Doxycycline, 831t
DPP-4 inhibitors, 833t
DPT (diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus), 444, 455
Draw a Person Test, 862
DRE (digital rectal examination), 301, 301f, 305, 306
Dream interpretation, 873

-drome, 105
Drooping, suffix for, 78, 105
Drops (*guttae;* gtt), 845
Drug(s)
actions and interactions, 828
administration routes of, 826–827, 827f, 827t, 840
anticholinesterase, 344
classes of, 829t, 829–838, 831t, 832t, 834t, 835t, 836t, 837t–838t, 839t, 841–842
combining forms for, 72, 769, 810, 843
controlled substances, 828, 839, 848–849
definition of, 767
DMARDs, 572, 587
miotic, 657
molecularly targeted, 764, 767
names, standards, and references, 768
NSAIDs, 355, 572, 587, 829, 829t, 845
psychotherapeutic, 874, 875f, 876
toxicity of, 828–829
vehicles for drug administration, 827f
Drug abuse, 870–871
Drug-eluting stents (DESs), 407, 407f, 408
Drusen, 664
Dry macular degeneration, 664
Dryness, combining form for, 620, 623, 657, 770
DSA (digital subtraction angiography), 402, 408, 799, 811
DSM-V (*Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorders*, fifth edition), 862, 882
DT (delirium tremens), 867, 877, 882
DTRs (deep tendon reflexes), 587

Dual-chamber rate-responsive pacemakers, 389f
Dual-energy x-ray absorptiometry (DEXA), 585, 585f, 587
DUB (dysfunctional uterine bleeding), 272
Duchenne muscular dystrophy, 583
Duct, combining form for, 298
Ductal carcinoma in situ (DCIS), 262, 272
Ductless endocrine glands, 700, 701f
Duct/o, 104, 582
Ductus deferens, 294, 296
Dulaglutide, 833t
Duloxetine, 832t, 875f
Duodenal, 146, 181
Duoden/o, 146, 181
Duodenum, 137, 139, 142, 146, 155
Duplex ultrasound, 402
Dura mater, 332, 332f, 333, 336
Dur/o, 336
Dust, 437, 446
DVT (deep vein thrombosis), 387, 398, 408
Dwarfism, 726
    hypopituitary, 726
    pituitary, 714
-dynia, 75, 439
Dys-, 108, 256, 880
Dysentery, 108, 157
Dysfunctional uterine bleeding (DUB), 272

Dyskinesia, 338
Dyslexia, 339
Dysmenorrhea, 254
Dyspareunia, 256
Dyspepsia, 178
Dysphagia, 152, 178
Dysphasia, 178
Dysphonia, 439
Dysphoria, 864, 866, 869–870, 872t, 880
Dysplasia, 108, 178, 258
    arrhythmogenic right ventricular, 408
Dysplastic, 756, 770
Dysplastic nevi, 632
Dysplastic tumor cells, 756
Dyspnea, 108, 442
Dyspnea on exertion (DOE), 455
Dysrhythmias, 387, 405f, 406
Dysthymia, 866, 872t, 881
Dystocia, 256
Dystrophy, 108, 583
Dysuria, 215

E

-eal, 56
Ear(s)
    abbreviations for, 679
    anatomy and physiology of, 670–672, 671f, 672f

clinical procedures for, 678, 678f, 679f
combining forms for, 674–675
external, middle, and inner, 670–672, 671f, 672f
pathology, 676f, 676–677, 677f
pronunciation of terms for, 745–746
suffixes for, 675
vocabulary related to, 673
Ear canal, visual examination of, 678, 679f
Eardrums, 670, 671f, 673, 674, 675, 678
Earwax, 670, 673
Eating disorders, 867, 872t
EBCT (electron beam computed tomography), 402
EBUS (endobronchial ultrasound), 451, 455, 811
EBUS-TBNA (endobronchial ultrasound-guided transbronchial needle aspiration), 811
EBV (Epstein-Barr virus), 492, 496
Ec-, 108, 626
Ecchymoses, 490, 490f, 626, 626f
Ecchymosis, 490, 490f, 626, 626f
Eccrine sweat glands, 618, 618f, 619
ECG (electrocardiogram), 4, 9, 382, 383f, 384
ECG (electrocardiography), 404–405, 405f, 408
Echo-, 811
ECHO (echocardiography), 800, 811
transesophageal, 403, 403f, 409
Echocardiograms, 118, 403f
Echocardiography (ECHO), 800, 811
transesophageal, 403, 403f, 409

ECMO (extracorporeal membrane oxygenation), 407, 409
ECT (electroconvulsive therapy), 874, 878, 882
-ectasia, 178
-ectasis, 178
-ectomy, 13, 75
Ectropion, 664t
Eczema, 628, 628f
ED (erectile dysfunction), 294, 295, 306
Edema, 479
    cerebral, 346
    macular, 662
    in nephrotic syndrome, 218
    pulmonary, 393, 447
    varicose veins and, 399f
-edema, 658
Edoxaban, 410, 832t
EEG (electroencephalography), 76, 351, 352
EENT (eyes, ears, nose, and throat), 679
EF (ejection fraction), 393, 409
Efferent nerves, 322–323, 324f, 327, 333
Efferent neurons, 331f
Effexor, Venlafaxine
Effusion, pleural, 439, 445, 449, 453f
EGD (esophagogastroduodenoscopy), 188, 188f, 190
EGFR (epidermal growth factor receptor), 775
Egg, 35f, 254
Egg cell, 35f

Ego, 864, 877
Ejaculation, 292, 295, 873
Ejaculatory duct, 293f, 294, 295
Ejection fraction (EF), 393, 409
EKG, Electrocardiography (ECG)
-elasma, 623
Elastic layer of artery, 375f
Elastin, 616
Elavil, Amitriptyline
Elbow bone, 555, 557t
Electricity, 4
    combining form for, 9
Electr/o, 9
Electrocardiogram (ECG), 4, 9, 76, 382, 383f, 384
Electrocardiography (ECG), 404–405, 405f, 408
Electrocauterization, 769
Electrocautery, 620
Electroconvulsive therapy (ECT), 874, 878, 882
Electrodesiccation, 634
Electroencephalogram (EEG), 9, 13
Electroencephalograph, 76
Electroencephalography (EEG), 76, 351, 352
Electrolytes, 204, 209, 705, 713, 727
Electromyography (EMG), 582, 586
Electron beam computed tomography (EBCT), 402
Electron beams in cancer therapy, 759, 766

Electronystagmography (ENG), 679
Electrophoresis, 479, 482, 486
    lipoprotein, 401
Electrophysiology study (EPS), 408
Eliquis, Apixaban
ELISA (enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay), 530, 531
-ema, 441
Embolic stroke, 348
Embolus, 348, 349, 396, 400
Embryo, 242, 247f, 250
-emesis, 178
Emetic, 842
EMG (electromyography), 582, 586
-emia, 13, 75, 486, 717
EMLA (eutectic mixture of local anesthetics), Lidocaine-prilocaine
Empagliflozin, 833t
Emphysema, 445, 445f, 449
Empyema, 441
Emulsification, 140, 142
En-, 718
En bloc resection, 758
Enalapril maleate, 835t
Enamel, 134, 134f, 143
Encapsulated, 746, 766
Encephalitis, 336
Encephal/o, 9, 72, 336

Encephalopathy, 346
HIV, 346
Endarterectomy, 386, 407
Endemic goiters, 718
Endo-, 15, 109, 256
Endobronchial ultrasound (EBUS), 451, 455, 811
Endobronchial ultrasound-guided transbronchial needle aspiration (EBUS-TBNA), 811
Endocarditis, 396
Endocardium, 109, 380, 380f, 384
Endocervicitis, 253, 261
Endocet, Oxycodone with APAP
Endocrine drugs, 729, 836, 836t, 842
Endocrine glands, 8, 106f, 700, 701f, 711
combining forms for, 714
hormones and their actions, 710t, 711–713
pathology of, 726t
Endocrine system, 699–744
abbreviations for, 728
action of endocrine tissue, 701t
adrenal cortex pathology and, 720f, 720–721, 721f, 726t
adrenal glands and, 704f, 704–705, 705f
adrenal medulla pathology and, 721, 726t
clinical procedures for, 727
combining forms for, 743
glands, 714
related terms, 714–716
hormone secretion by, 700, 710t
laboratory tests for, 727

organs of, 38
ovaries, 709
pancreas, 706, 706f, 707f
pathology of, 722–724, 723f, 723t, 724f, 726t
parathyroid glands and, 703f, 703–704, 704f
pathology of, 719–720, 726t
pathology of, 725f, 725–727, 726t
pituitary gland, 707f, 707–709, 708f, 709f
prefixes for, 717, 744
pronunciation of terms for, 740–742
suffixes for, 717, 743
testes, 710, 710t, 711f
thyroid gland and, 702f, 702–703, 703f
pathology of, 718f, 718–719, 720f, 726t
vocabulary related to, 711–713
Endocrinologists, 15, 715
Endocrinology, 13
Endodontist, 148
Endolymph, 671, 673, 676
Endometrial cancer, 259
Endometrial cavity, x-ray of, 799
Endometriosis, 259
Endometritis, 256, 261
Endometrium, 244, 244f, 246f, 251, 259
Endoplasmic reticulum, 34, 35
Endorphins, 327
Endoscopes, 14, 109, 186, 188
Endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography (ERCP), 184, 185f, 190, 798

Endoscopic ultrasonography (EUS), 186, 190, 802, 811
Endoscopy, 14, 188, 188f
    gastrointestinal, 186
Endothelium, 374, 375f, 384
Endotracheal intubation, 452, 452f
Endotracheal tube, 109
Endovascular aneurysm repair (EVAR), 397f, 409
End-stage liver disease (ESLD), 190
End-stage renal disease (ESRD), 225
Enema, barium, 184, 184f, 798
ENG (electronystagmography), 679
Enlargement, 77, 659
Enoxaparin sodium, 832t
ENT (ears, nose, and throat), 679
Enteritis, 9
Enter/o, 9, 146, 181, 844
Enterocolitis, 146
Enteroenterostomy, 147
Entomophobia, 881t
Entresto, Valsartan/sacubitril
Entropion, 664t
Enucleation of eye, 668
Enuresis, 215
Environmental agents, cancer-causing, 749, 749t
Enzalutamide, 836t
Enzyme(s), 143

-ase suffix, 150
digestive, 132
pancreatic, 141f
salivary, 134
Enzyme-linked immunosorbent assay (ELISA), 530, 531
Eos (eosinophils), 84, 84t, 85f, 476, 478t, 482, 484, 496, 621t
Eosin/o, 484, 621t
Eosinophilia, 486, 491
Eosinophils (eos), 84, 84t, 85f, 476, 478t, 482, 484, 496, 621t
Ependymal cells, 327, 327f, 333
Ependymomas, 346
Epi-, 15, 56, 109, 771
EPI (exocrine pancreatic insufficiency), 190
Epicondyle, 547t, 558
Epidermal growth factor receptor (EGFR), 775
Epidermis, 15, 614–616, 615f, 619
Epidermoid, 620
Epidermoid cyst, 620, 620f, 624
Epidermoid tumor cells, 756, 771
Epidermolysis, 620
Epididymis, 293, 293f, 294f, 295, 297
Epididymitis, 297
Epididym/o, 297
Epidural block, 339f
Epidural hematoma, 336, 336f
Epidural space, 339f
Epigastric, 15, 49

Epigastric region, 46, 49
Epiglottis, 135, 135f, 433, 433f, 436, 438
Epiglottitis, 438
Epiglott/o, 438
Epilepsy, 338, 343, 372
Epinephrine, 56, 324, 327, 705, 705f, 710t, 711, 712, 717
Epiphyseal line, 546, 546f
Epiphyseal plate, 546, 546f, 558
Epiphysis, 546, 546f, 558, 562
Episi/o, 253
Episiotomy, 253
Epistaxis, 444
Epithelial cells, 36, 36f, 39, 55
Epithelial tissues, 37, 37f
    carcinomas derived from, 752t
Epithelium, 109, 619
    squamous, 614, 619, 623, 632
Epivir, Lamivudine
EPO (erythropoietin), 204, 209, 476, 482, 486, 496, 700, 701t, 775
EPS (electrophysiology study), 408
Epstein-Barr virus (EBV), 492, 496
Equal, combining form for, 484
Equin/o, 568
-er, 80
Erbitux, Cetuximab
ERCP (endoscopic retrograde cholangiopancreatography), 184, 185f, 190, 798

Erectile dysfunction (ED), 294, 295, 306
Erg/o, 843
Erosions
cervical, 259
cutaneous, 624, 625f
ERs (estrogen receptors), 262–263, 763, 772, 775
Eructation, 152
Ery-Tab, Erythromycin
Erythema, 621
Erythema infectiosum, 628, 628f
Erythemat/o, 621
Erythematous, 621
Erythem/o, 621
Erythremia, 489
Erythr/o, 9, 72, 484, 621t
Erythroblastosis fetalis, 115, 265
Erythroblasts, 475f, 482, 484
Erythrocyte sedimentation rate (ESR), 492, 497, 583, 587
Erythrocytes, 9, 9f, 13, 84, 433f, 434, 474, 475f, 476, 481f, 482, 487f, 487t, 487–489, 488f, 492, 493, 518, 583, 621t
Erythromycin, 831t, 843
Erythropenia, 77
Erythropoietin (EPO), 204, 209, 476, 482, 486, 496, 700, 701t, 775
Escitalopram, 832t, 875f
ESLD (end-stage liver disease), 190
Eso-, 80, 143
Esomeprazole, 837t

Esophageal, 148
Esophageal atresia, 180, 180f, 181
Esophageal cancer, 154
Esophageal carcinoma, 7, 7f
Esophageal varices, 144, 154, 155f
Esophag/o, 148, 181
Esophagogastroduodenoscopy (EGD), 188, 188f, 190
Esophagus, 135, 135f, 136, 143, 148, 154, 188f, 432, 433f, 752t
    x-ray images of, 184
Esotropia, 660, 665, 665f
ESR (erythrocyte sedimentation rate), 492, 497, 583, 587
ESRD (end-stage renal disease), 225
Essential hypertension, 219, 398
-esthesia, 338
Esthesi/o, 338
Esthes/o, 843
Estradiol, 709, 712
Estr/o, 715
Estrogen, 242, 246, 250t, 251, 705, 705f, 709, 710t, 712, 836, 836t, 842
Estrogen receptors (ERs), 262–263, 763, 772, 775
Estrogenic, 715
Estrone, 709
ESWL (extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy), 222, 225
Etanercept, 837t
ETD (eustachian tube dysfunction), 679
Ethambutol, 831t

Ethm/o, 549
Ethmoid bone, 548f, 549, 549f, 558
Ethmoidal cells, 551f
Eti/o, 151
Etiology, 151
ETT (exercise tolerance test), 405, 409, 807
ETT-MIBI (exercise tolerance test with sestamibi), 403, 409
Eu-, 109, 717, 880
Eulexin, Flutamide
Eumelanin, 615, 619
Euphoria, 109, 864, 880
EUS (endoscopic ultrasonography), 186, 190, 802, 811
Eustachian tube dysfunction (ETD), 679
Eustachian tubes, 671, 671f, 673, 674
Eutectic mixture of local anesthetics (EMLA), Lidocaine-prilocaine
Euthymic, 881
Euthyroid, 109, 717
EVAR (endovascular aneurysm repair), 397f, 409
Eversion, 804
Every (*quaque;* q), 845
Every 2 hours (q2h), 845
Every evening (qPM), 845
Every hour (*quaque hora;* q.h., qh), 845
Every morning (qAM), 845
Evista, Raloxifene
Evolocumab, 835t

Ewing sarcoma, 564, 753t
Ex-, 15, 109
Examination, visual, suffix for, 14, 79
Exanthematous viral diseases, 628, 628f, 669f
Excess, prefix for, 109, 114, 717, 844
Excessive, prefix for, 717
Excision, 8, 13, 15, 75
Excisional biopsy, 758
Excretory system, organs of, 38
Exenatide, 833t
Exenteration, 270, 758
Exercise tolerance test (ETT), 405, 409, 807
Exercise tolerance test with sestamibi (ETT-MIBI), 403, 409
Exfoliative cytology, 773, 773f
Exhalation, 432, 432f, 434–435, 435f, 436
Exhibitionism, 869, 872t
Exo-, 15
Exocrine gland cells, 706f
Exocrine glands, 8, 15, 445, 700
Exocrine pancreatic insufficiency (EPI), 190
Exophthalmic goiters, 726t
Exophthalmometry, 727
Exophthalmos, 15, 109, 718, 718f
Exostoses, 564
Exotropia, 660, 665, 665f
Expectoration, 439

Experimental psychology, 878
Experimental research in psychology, 862
Expiration, 432, 432f, 434–435, 435f, 436, 440
Expressive aphasia, 339
Extension, 579, 580, 580f, 804
External auditory meatus, 670, 671f
External beam irradiation, 759, 766
External ear, 671f
External genitalia, female, 243f
External respiration, 432, 432f
Extracorporeal, 222
Extracorporeal circulation, 407
Extracorporeal membrane oxygenation (ECMO), 407, 409
Extracorporeal shock wave lithotripsy (ESWL), 222, 225
Extremities, 72, 554f
Exudates, 447, 449, 658, 662
Eye(s)
    abbreviations for, 670
    anatomy and physiology of, 650–653, 651f, 652f, 653f, 654f
    clinical procedures
        diagnostic, 666f, 666–667, 667f
        treatment, 668f, 668–670, 669f
    combining forms for, 11, 73
        conditions, 659
        structures and fluids, 656–659
    errors of refraction and, 660–661, 661f
    movement, cerebral area for, 8f
    pathology, 662f, 662–665, 663f, 664f, 664t, 665f
    pronunciation of terms for, 694–696

structure of, 651f
suffixes for, 660
vocabulary related to, 654–655
Eyeballs
enucleation, 668
protrusion, 718, 718f, 727
Eyelids, 651f
abnormalities, 664, 664t
in Bell palsy, 344f
chalazions on, 662, 662f
combining form for, 656, 658
ptosis of, 78f
Ezetimibe, 835t

F

Face, 148
Facet joints, 552f
Facial, 148
Facial bones, 133f, 550, 550f, 551t, 558
Facial nerve (CN VII), 324f
Facial surface of tooth, 133f
Faci/o, 148
Factor IX, 489
Factor VIII, 480, 489
Fainting, 340
Falling, suffix for, 78, 105
Fallopian tubes, 242, 244, 244f, 251, 255, 256, 267, 270
ectopic pregnancy in, 108f

pathology of, 261
False ribs, 555, 563
Family therapy, 873, 878
Famotidine, 837t
Far, prefix for, 771
Farsightedness, 660, 661f
Farxiga, Dapagliflozin
Fascia, 577, 580, 581
Fasci/o, 581
Fasciotomy, 581, 581f
Fast, prefix for, 114
Fasting blood glucose (FBG), 727, 728
Fasting blood sugar (FBS), 728
Fasting blood sugar test (FBS), 727, 728
Fasting plasma glucose (FPG), 727
Fat cells, 36, 616
Fat pad of knee, 569f
Fats
combining forms for, 53, 72, 150, 386, 621
deposition in artery, 79
emulsification by bile, 142
in feces, 153
liposarcomas and, 753t
saturated and polyunsaturated, 401
Fatty acids, 132, 143
Fatty liver, 185f
Fatty tissue of breast, 245, 245f

FBG (fasting blood glucose), 727, 728
FBS (fasting blood sugar), 728
FDA (Food and Drug Administration), 623, 768, 839, 845
Fe (iron), Iron (Fe)
Fear, phobic disorders, 77, 865, 880, 881t
Fecal, 143
Fecal occult blood test (FOBT), 190
Fecal transplant, 83, 187
Feces, 132, 138–139, 143, 151, 153, 183
Feeling, suffix for, 105, 338, 880
Felbamate, 832t
Felbatol, Felbamate
Felodipine, 835t
Female reproductive system, 241–290, Pregnancy
- abbreviations for, 272
- clinical tests and procedures for, 266f, 266–271, 267f, 268f, 269f, 270f, 271f
- combining forms for, 10, 252–255, 715
- gynecologic/breast pathology, 258f, 258–265, 259f, 260f, 261f, 262f, 263f, 264f
- hormonal interactions and, 248–250, 250t
- menstrual cycle and, 246f, 246–247
- organs of, 242–245, 243f, 244f, 245f
- prefixes for, 256–257
- pronunciation of terms for, 286–289
- suffixes for, 255–256
- vocabulary related to, 250–252

Female urinary system, 206f
Femara, Letrozole
Femoral, 563

Femoral artery, 398, 404f
Femoral components of total hip arthroplasty, 584
Femoral head, 548f
Femoral nerve, 323f
Femor/o, 563
Femur, 548f, 554f, 556, 557t, 563
Fenestrated, 677
Fentanyl, 80, 829t
-ferent, 333
-ferous, 298
Fertilization, 242, 245f, 251
    in vitro, 264, 271
Fetal alcohol syndrome, 116f
Fetal heart rate (FHR), 272
Fetal monitoring, 271
Fetal presentation, 256
Fetishism, 869, 870
Fetus, 242, 251, 256, 264, 271, 545, 801f
FEV1 (forced expiratory volume in 1 second), 452, 455
Fever, combining form for, 843
Fever blisters, 154
Fexofenadine, 834t
18F-FDG (fluorodeoxyglucose), 806, 806f, 811
FFR (fractional flow reserve), 404, 409
FGID (functional gastrointestinal disorder), 158
FHR (fetal heart rate), 272

Fiberoptic bronchoscopy, 451f
Fiberoptic colonoscopy, 773
Fibers, combining form for, 769
Fibrillation, 390
  atrial, 390, 405f, 408
  ventricular, 390, 405f, 406, 409
Fibrils, contracting, 577f
Fibrin, 481, 481f, 482
Fibrin clots, 480–481, 481f
Fibrinogen, 478, 479f, 480, 481f, 482, 486
Fibr/o, 581, 769
Fibrocystic disease, 264
Fibroids, 254
  uterine, 260, 260f
Fibromyalgia, 74, 581
Fibrosarcomas, 753t, 769
Fibrosis, 761t
  pulmonary, 448
Fibrous connective tissue, 581
Fibrous tissue of breast, 245, 245f
Fibula, 554f, 556, 557t, 563
Fibular, 563
Fibul/o, 563
-fication, 560
Fifth disease (erythema infection), 628, 628f
Film badges, 794–795
Filtration, 207, 209, 518

glomerular, 207, 207f
Fimbriae, 244, 244f, 251
Fine needle aspiration (FNA), 270, 272, 758, 775
Finger bones, 554f, 556, 557t, 563
First, 257, 770
First generation antipsychotic drugs, 874, 878
First molar, 133f
First premolar, 133f
First-degree burns, 627
Fissure, 547t, 558, 624, 625f
anal, 156, 624
bone, 547t, 558
cutaneous, 625f
Fistula
anal, 156, 156f
arteriovenous, 222, 222f
bronchopleural, 437
tracheoesophageal, 180, 180f
Fixation, suffix for, 299
Flagellum, 292, 295
Flagyl, Metronidazole
Flat bones, 545
Flatulence, 152
Flatus, 152
Flesh, combining forms for, 12, 753, 770
Flesh wounds, 114f
Flexion, 579, 580, 580f, 804

Flex/o, 104
Flexor tendons, 574f
Floaters, 665
Floating ribs, 555, 563
Floortime Therapy, 883
Flow, -rrhea suffix, 105, 179
Flucytosine, 831t
Fludara, Fludarabine
Fludarabine, 764t
Fluid
  abnormal accumulation in abdomen, 151
  accumulation in spaces of brain, 266
  aqueous humor, 651, 654f
  combining forms for, 72, 297
  interstitial, 514, 514f, 515f, 515t, 522, 524, 525
  in lung, 441f
  removal from abdomen, 189
  synovial, 568, 568f, 569, 584
Fluid sac, combining form for, 769
Fluorescein angiography, 666, 666f
Fluorodeoxyglucose (18F-FDG), 806, 806f, 811
Fluoroscopy, 800, 803f
5-fluorouracil (5-FU), 763, 764t, 775
Fluoxetine, 832t, 875f
Fluoxymesterone, 836t
Flushing, 621
Flutamide, 763, 836t

Fluticasone, 838t
Flutter, 390
atrial, 390, 405f
Fluvastatin, 835t
Fluvoxamine, 832t, 875f
fMRI (functional magnetic resonance imaging), 802, 811
FNA (fine needle aspiration), 270, 272, 758, 775
FODMAPs, 158
FOBT (fecal occult blood test), 190
Folex, Methotrexate (MTX)
Foley catheters, 224, 224f
Folic acid, 844t
Follicles
hair, 325f, 616, 617f, 619, 622
ovarian, 244, 244f, 251
Follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH), 249, 250t, 251, 272, 708, 709f, 710t, 712, 728
Follicular, 769
Follicular lymphomas, 529, 756, 756f
Follicular non-Hodgkin lymphoma, 756f
Follicul/o, 769
Fondaparinux, 832t
Fontanelles, 266, 548, 558
Food and Drug Administration (FDA), 623, 768, 839, 845
Food pathway through GI tract, 136f, 141f
Foot bones, 556, 557f, 557t, 563
Foramen, 548f, 558

Foramen magnum, 547t, 549, 558
Force, 104
Forced expiratory volume in 1 second (FEV_1), 452, 455
Forced vital capacity (FVC), 455
Forceps, 86f
Forearm bone, 554f, 555, 557t, 564
Forensic psychiatrists, 862, 877
Foreskin, 293f, 294, 295, 296, 303f, 305
Formation
    of bone, 544–545
    combining forms for, 73, 104, 484, 770, 771
Formoterol + budesonide, 838t
Forteo, Teriparatide
Forum, 877
Forward, prefix for, 111, 112
Fosamax, Alendronate
Fossa, 548f, 558
Four, prefix for, 717
Four times a day (*quater in die;* q.i.d., qid), 845t
Fovea centralis, 651f, 652, 652f, 655
FPG (fasting plasma glucose), 727
-fract, 655
Fractional flow reserve (FFR), 404, 409
Fractionation, 759, 766
Fracture (Fx), 587
    types of, 564, 565f

Fraternal twins, 292, 295, 295f
Free association, 873, 878
Freud, Sigmund, 864
Friction rub, 396, 443
Frigidity, 873
Frontal bone, 548f, 549, 549f, 551t, 558
Frontal (coronal) plane, 52, 52f, 53
Frontal lobe, 328f
Frontal sinus, 551f
FSH (follicle-stimulating hormone), 249, 250t, 251, 272, 708, 709f, 710t, 712, 728
5-FU (5-fluorouracil), 5-fluorouracil (5-FU)
Fugue, 866, 877
Fulguration, 758
Full-thickness burn injuries, 627, 627f
Functional gastrointestinal disorder (FGID), 158
Functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI), 802, 811
Fundus, 244
    of eye, 652, 652f, 655
    of stomach, 137, 137f
Fungal infections, 526t, 622, 623f, 630, 630f, 635, 669
Fungal tests, 633
Fungating tumors, 755, 769
Fung/i, 769
Fungilin, Amphotericin B
Furc/o, 104
Furosemide, 835t

-fusion, 105
FVC (forced vital capacity), 455
Fx (fracture), 587
    types of, 564, 565f

G

G (gravida), 272
G tubes (gastrostomy tubes), 181, 190
Ga (gallium), 775
GABA (gamma-aminobutyric acid), 352
Gabapentin, 832t
GAD (generalized anxiety disorder), 866, 872t, 882
Gadolinium (Gd), 404, 802, 811
Gait, 349
    unsteady, 343
Galact/o, 253
Galactorrhea, 253
Gallbladder (GB), 137, 139f, 139–141, 143, 146, 190
    CT scan of, 185f
    pathologic conditions of, 159f, 159–161
Gallium (Ga), 775
Gallstones, 159, 159f, 160f
Gametes, 242, 251
Gamma camera, 805, 805f, 806, 808
Gamma globulins, 479
Gamma Knife, 351
Gamma rays, 794, 804, 808

Gamma-aminobutyric acid (GABA), 352
Gamophobia, 881t
Ganciclovir, 831t
Ganglia, 326, 334, 345
    basal, 330f
Ganglion cysts, 574, 575f
Gangrene, 628, 628f
Garamycin, Gentamicin
Gardasil, 258
Gas, expelled, 152
Gastrectomy, 9
    sleeve, 187, 187f
Gastric, 13
Gastric adenocarcinomas, 752
Gastric antral vascular ectasia (GAVE), 190
Gastric bypass, 148, 187, 187f
Gastric cancer, 154
Gastrin, 701t
Gastritis, 4
Gastr/o, 9, 148, 181
Gastrocnemius, 578f
Gastroenteritis, 181
Gastroenterologists, 26
Gastroenterology, 4, 5, 14
Gastroesophageal reflux disease (GERD), 154, 188f, 190, 837, 837t
Gastrointestinal drugs, 837, 837t, 842

Gastrointestinal endoscopy, 188
Gastrointestinal (GI), 190

Gastrointestinal (GI) tract, 132
carcinomas, 752t
endocrine tissue in, 701t
pathologic conditions of
lower, 156f, 156–159, 157f, 158f, 184
signs and symptoms of, 151–153
upper, 154–155, 155f, 184
pathway of food through, 136f, 141f
Gastrointestinal stromal tumors (GISTs), 753t, 775
Gastrojejunostomy, 181, 187, 187f
Gastroparesis, 724
Gastrorrhagia, 179
Gastrostomy, 148, 181
Gastrostomy tubes (G tubes), 181, 190
Gastrotomy, 9
GAVE (gastric antral vascular ectasia), 190
GB (gallbladder), 137, 139f, 139–141, 143, 146, 190
CT scan of, 185f
pathologic conditions of, 159f, 159–161
G-CSF (granulocyte colony-stimulating factor), 476, 496, 531
Gd (gadolinium), 404, 802, 811
G/dL (gram per deciliter), 496
-gen, 105, 486
General anesthetics, 829t, 830
Generalized anxiety disorder (GAD), 866, 872t, 882
Generic names of drugs, 768, 839
Genes, 35, 748
suppressor, 751

-genesis, 76, 299, 751, 771
Genetic change, combining form for, 769
Genetic screening, 751, 766
-genic, 13, 81, 880
Genital herpes, 261
Genital warts, 258, 261, 304, 304f
Genitalia, 251
    female external, 243f
Genitourinary (GU), 306
Gentamicin, 831t
Geodon, Ziprasidone
Gephyrophobia, 881t
GERD (gastroesophageal reflux disease), 154, 188f, 190, 837, 837t
German measles, 628
Gestation, 242, 251
    multiple, 264
Gestational diabetes, 724
GFR (glomerular filtration rate), 220
GH (growth hormone), Growth hormone (GH)
GI (gastrointestinal), 190
GI tract, Gastrointestinal (GI) tract
Gigantism, 86, 725, 725f
Gingiva, 134f
Gingivectomy, 154, 182
Gingivitis, 148, 153f, 154
Gingiv/o, 148, 182

GISTs (gastrointestinal stromal tumors), 753t, 775
Glands
adrenal, Adrenal glands
combining forms for, 7, 72, 714
endocrine, Endocrine glands.
exocrine, 8, 15, 445, 700
parathyroid, Parathyroid glands
pituitary, Pituitary gland
prostate, Prostate gland
salivary, 134, 135f, 144, 149
sebaceous, 614, 615f, 618, 618f, 619
sweat, 325f, 614, 615f, 616, 618f, 618–619
thyroid, Thyroid gland
Glandular tissue carcinomas, 752t
of breast, 245, 245f
Glans penis, 293f, 294, 296, 297, 297f
Glass, combining form for, 810
Glassy, combining form for, 659
Glauc/o, 659
Glaucoma, 659, 663, 663f
POAG, 670
Gleason score, 308
Glenoid fossa, 555f
Glenoid labrum, 555f
Glial cells, 327, 327f, 334, 336, 753t
Gli/o, 336
Glioblastoma, 336
Glioblastoma MRI, 346f

Glioblastoma multiforme, 753t
Gliomas, 346, 754, 764t, 777
Glipizide, 729
Globe, combining form for, 485
Globin, 474, 476, 489
-globin, 13, 486
-globulin, 486
Globulins, 478, 479, 482
Glomerular capsule, 206f, 207, 209, 211
Glomerular filtration, 207, 207f
Glomerular filtration rate (GFR), 220
Glomeruli, 206f, 207, 209, 211, 217
Glomerul/o, 211
Glomerulonephritis, 217
Glossectomy, 182
Gloss/o, 104, 148, 182
Glossopharyngeal nerve (CN IX), 324f
Glottis, 436
Glucagon, 706, 707f, 710t, 712, 715, 717
Gluc/o, 150, 182, 715
Glucocorticoids, 705, 705f, 710t, 713, 836, 836t, 842
Glucometers, 722, 727
Gluconeogenesis, 140, 150, 182
Glucophage, Metformin
Glucose, 132, 140, 143, 706, 727
    blood levels of, 706

fasting plasma glucose test, 727
in urine, 217
Glucose tolerance test, 727
Gluteus maximus, 578f
Gluteus medius, 578f
Glyburide, 729
Glycemic, 715
Glyc/o, 10, 104, 150, 182, 715
Glycogen, 140, 143, 150, 182, 706, 715
Glycogen/o, 150
Glycogenolysis, 140, 150, 715
Glycopeptides, 831t
Glycosides, cardiac, 835, 835t, 842
Glycosuria, 215, 217, 717
Glycosylated hemoglobin (HbA1c) test, 727, 728
Glyset, Miglitol
Gm, g (gram), 845
GM-CSF (granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor), 476, 496, 531
Gnos/o, 10
GnRH (gonadotropin-releasing hormone), 272
Goiters, 718, 718f
Gold salts, 572
Golimumab, 837t
Gonad/o, 714
Gonadotropic hormones, 708, 710t
Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH), 272

Gonadotropins, 714
Gonads, 242, 251
Gon/o, 297
Gonococci, 83
Gonorrhea, 261, 297, 302–303, 303f
Gout, 572
Gouty arthritis, 572
Grading of tumors, 757, 766
Graft
    bifurcated synthetic, 397f
    CABG, 395, 406, 406f, 408
Grafts, skin, 634f
Graft-versus-host disease (GVHD), 495, 496
-gram, 13, 76, 810
Gram (gm, g), 845
Gram per deciliter (g/dL), 496
Gram-negative bacteria, 83f
Gram-positive bacteria, 83f
Grand mal seizures, 343, 349
Granules, 484
Granul/o, 484
Granulocyte colony-stimulating factor (G-CSF), 476, 496, 531
Granulocyte-macrophage colony-stimulating factor (GM-CSF), 476, 496, 531
Granulocytes, 80, 84, 84t, 475f, 476, 477, 478t, 482, 484, 491
Granulocytopenia, 486
Granulocytosis, 491

Granulomas, 448
on eyelids, 662, 662f, 664t
-graph, 76
Graphomotor projection tests, 862
Graphophobia, 881t
-graphy, 76, 810
Graves disease, 107, 718, 718f, 727
-gravida, 255
Gravida (G), 272
Gray (Gy), 659, 759, 767, 775
Gray matter, 331, 331f
Greater trochanter, 547t, 548f
Greek, medical terminology associated with, 6
GreenLight PVP (photoselective vaporization of prostate), 305, 306
Greenstick fractures, 565f
Grinder's disease, 446
Griseofulvin, 831t
Gris-peg, Griseofulvin
Groin, 54, 72
Gross descriptions of tumors, 754f, 754–755, 755f, 767
Group therapy, 873, 878
Growth, suffix for, 78, 105, 562, 716, 771
Growth hormone (GH), 708, 709f, 710t, 712, 725, 728
hypersecretion of, 725f, 725–726
Growth hormone-release inhibiting factor, 836, 836t
Gtt (drops; *guttae)*, 845

GU (genitourinary), 306
Guaiac tests, 183, 183f
Gums, 133, 148, 153f
    tumors of, 755
Guttae (drops; gtt), 845
GVHD (graft-versus-host disease), 495, 496
Gy (gray), 659, 759, 767, 775
GYN (gynecology), 10, 242, 251, 268f, 268–270, 269f, 270f, 272
Gynec/o, 10, 253
Gynecologists, 26
Gynecology (GYN), 10, 242, 251, 268f, 268–270, 269f, 270f, 272
Gynecomastia, 253
Gynephobia, 881t
Gynophobia, 881t
Gyri, 334
    in Alzheimer disease, 342f
    brain function and, 328, 328f

H

H (hour; *hora)*, 845
H and H (hemoglobin and hematocrit), 496
H2 blockers (histamine H_2 receptor antagonists), 837, 845
HAART (highly active antiretroviral therapy), 527, 531
Hair, 616, 617f, 622, 623, 626, 626f
Hair follicles, 325f, 616, 617f, 619, 622
Hair root, 615f, 617f

Hairy cell leukemia (HCL), 496, 764t
Halcion, Triazolam
Haldol, Haloperidol
Half, prefix for, 109
Half-life, 804, 808
Hallucinations, 864, 865, 869, 872t, 877, 879
Hallucin/o, 879
Hallucinogens, 848, 879
    dependence on, 871, 872f, 872t
Hallux valgus, 573, 573f
Haloperidol, 345, 839t, 875f
Hammer bone, 673
Hamstrings, 578f
Hand bones, 554f, 555–556, 557t, 574
Hand-foot-mouth disease, 628, 628f
Hands, radiograph of, 795f
Happening, 105
Hard, combining forms for, 621, 658, 770
Hard callus, 565f
Hard palate, 132, 133f
Hardening, suffix for, 79
Hardness, combining form for, 621
Hashimoto disease, 714
Hashish, dependence on, 871
HAV (hepatitis A virus), 161
Haversian canals, 546f, 547, 558

HbA1c (glycosylated hemoglobin) test, 727, 728
HBV (hepatitis B virus), 161, 190
HCCs (hepatocellular carcinomas), 13, 148, 161
HCG (human chorionic gonadotropin), 247, 250t, 251, 272, 300, 700, 701t, 728
HCL (hairy cell leukemia), 496, 764t
HCO_3- (bicarbonate), 225
Hct (hematocrit), 484, 492, 493, 496
HCV (hepatitis C virus), 161
HD (hemodialysis), 108, 222, 222f, 225
HDL (high-density lipoprotein), 401, 409
HDN (hemolytic disease of the newborn), 115, 265, 272
H&E (hematoxylin and eosin), 775
Head
    of bone, 547, 547t, 548f, 558
    combining form for, 7
    planes of, 69, 73
Headaches, 265, 348
Heaf test, 454
Hearing
    cerebral area for, 8f
    combining form for, 674
    suffix, 675
    testing, 678, 678f
Hearing aids, 677f
Heart, 41f, 45f
    anatomy of, 378, 379f, 380, 380f
    combining forms for, 7, 72, 386

conduction system of, 381–382, 382f, 383f
pathology of, 388–397, 389f, 391f, 392f, 394f, 395f, 396f
pathway of blood through, 376, 376f, 380f
physiology of, 381f, 381–382, 382f, 383f
right and left sides of, 376, 376f
root for, 4
root plus combining vowel for, 6
structure of, 379f
walls and pericardium of, 380f
Heart attack, chemical evidence of, 401
Heart block, 388
Heart disease
chronic rheumatic, 396f
congenital, 391
hypertensive, 396
rheumatic, 397
Heart failure, congestive (CHF), 393
Heart function, radionuclide detection of, 805f
Heart muscle, 582
Heart rate, Apgar score for, 265, 265f
Heart rhythms, abnormal, 388–390
Heart sounds, 381
Heart transplantation, 407
Heartbeat, 381, 381f
Heartburn, 154
Heart–lung machines, 392, 407
Heat, combining forms for, 621, 769
Heel bone, 556, 557t, 562

HEENT (head, eyes, ears, nose, and throat), 670, 679
Helicobacter pylori, 155
Helminthophobia, 881t
Helper T cells (CD4+ T cells), 520, 520f, 522, 525, 530, 531
Hematemesis, 178, 179
Hemat/o, 10, 484
Hematochezia, 150, 152
Hematocrit (Hct), 484, 492, 493, 496
Hematologists, 26
Hematology, 4, 10
Hematomas, 10, 11f, 77, 336, 336f, 565f
    subdural, 336, 336f
Hematophobia, 881t
Hematopoiesis, 475f, 486, 547, 559
Hematopoietic stem cells, 474, 475f, 482, 483, 491f, 494
    transplantation, 495f
Hematoxylin and eosin (H&E), 775
Hematuria, 215, 235
Heme, 474, 476, 476f
Hemi-, 109
Hemianopsia, 653, 660
Hemiglossectomy, 109
Hemiparesis, 339, 352
Hemiplegia, 339
Hem/o, 10, 72, 484
Hemoccult test, 183

Hemochromatosis, 489
Hemodialysis (HD), 108, 222, 222f, 225
Hemoglobin and hematocrit (H and H), 496
Hemoglobin (Hgb, HGB), 10, 13, 84, 474, 482, 484, 486, 488, 489, 492, 493, 496
  breakdown of, 476f
Hemoglobin test, 493
Hemoglobin/o, 484
Hemoglobinopathy, 484
Hemolysis, 76, 152, 480, 484
Hemolytic anemia, 76, 488
Hemolytic disease of the newborn (HDN), 115, 265, 272
Hemophilia, 480, 489, 489f
Hemophobia, 881t
Hemoptysis, 179, 442
Hemorrhages, 179, 490, 490f
Hemorrhagic stroke, 347f, 348
Hemorrhoids, 157, 398
Hemostasis, 79, 486
Hemothorax, 442
Heparin, 476, 481, 482, 831, 832t
Hepatic duct, 139
Hepatic flexure, 136f, 182
Hepatitis, 2, 10, 161
Hepatitis A virus (HAV), 161
Hepatitis B virus (HBV), 161, 190

Hepatitis C virus (HCV), 161
Hepat/o, 10, 72, 148, 182
Hepatobiliary iminodiacetic acid scan, 187
Hepatocellular carcinomas (HCCs), 13, 148, 161
Hepatomas, 13, 148
Hepatomegaly, 148, 182
HER2, 775
HER2 receptor protein, 263
Herceptin, Trastuzumab
Hereditary cancers, 750–751, 751t
Hereditary spherocytosis, 485, 488, 488f
Hernias, 82, 82f, 155, 155f
Herniated disc, 48f
Herniated disc fragments, 576f
Herniated nucleus pulposus (HNP), 575f, 587
Herniation of intervertebral discs, 575, 575f, 576f
Herni/o, 182
Hernioplasty, 179
Herniorrhaphy, 179, 182
Heroin, 80, 848, 871, 872f
Herpes genitalis, 261, 303, 303f
Herpes simplex virus (HSV), 261, 303, 303f, 306, 526t, 531
Herpes zoster, 346, 346f, 625f
Herpesvirus, 154, 346
Herpetic stomatitis, 153f, 154
-hexia, 769

HGB (hemoglobin), 10, 13, 84, 474, 482, 484, 486, 488, 489, 492, 493, 496

HgB (hemoglobin), 10, 13, 84, 474, 482, 484, 486, 488, 489, 492, 493, 496

Hiatal hernias, 82, 82f, 155, 155f

HIDA scan, 187

Hidden, combining form for, 297

Hidr/o, 621

High-density lipoprotein (HDL), 401, 409

Highly active antiretroviral therapy (HAART), 527, 531

High-sensitivity C-reactive protein (hsCRP), 409

Hilar, 436

Hilum, 204, 210, 434, 436

Hindfoot

- bones of, 557, 557f, 557t, 564
- congenital abnormality of, 568

Hip dislocations, 574

Hip joint, 554f, 556

Hip socket, 557t, 562

Hip bone, 562, 563

Hirsutism, 720, 720f

Histamine, 476, 843

Histamine H2 receptor antagonists (H2 blockers), 837, 845

Hist/o, 54, 751, 843

Histo (histoplasmosis), 526t, 531

Histogenesis, 751

Histologists, 36, 39

Histoplasmosis (Histo), 526t, 531
Histrionic personality disorder, 868, 872t
HIV (human immunodeficiency virus), 525, 526, 530, 531
routes of transmission, 526
HIV (human immunodeficiency virus) encephalopathy, 346
Hives, 528, 624, 625f, 630, 630f
HLA (human leukocyte antigen), 496
HNP (herniated nucleus pulposus), 575f, 587
Hodgkin lymphoma, 528, 529f, 530, 532, 534, 753t, 764t
Hodophobia, 881t
Holter monitoring, 405
Home/o, 715
Homeostasis, 204, 704, 706, 713
Hora (hour; h), 845
Hora somni (at bedtime; h.s., hs), 845
Hordeolum, 664, 664t
Hormonal, 715
Hormonal chemotherapeutic agents, 763, 763f, 764t
Hormone replacement therapy (HRT), 250, 272, 567, 845
Hormones, 700, 711–713, *See also* specific hormones
actions of, 710t
adrenal cortex, 705, 705f
combining form for, 715
in menstruation and pregnancy, 248–250, 250t
pituitary gland, 708–709, 709f
suffix for, 299
Hormon/o, 715

Hospital formulary, 768
Hospital-acquired pneumonia, 447
Hour (*hora;* h), 845
How to take medication (Sig.), 845
HPV (human papillomavirus), 258, 261, 272, 304, 306
HRT (hormone replacement therapy), 250, 272, 567, 845
H.s., hs (at bedtime; *hora somni)*, 845
HsCRP (high-sensitivity C-reactive protein), 409
HSG (hysterosalpingography), 267, 272, 799
HSV (herpes simplex virus), 261, 303, 303f, 306, 526t, 531
HTN, Hypertension (HTN)
Human chorionic gonadotropin (hCG, HCG), 247, 250t, 251, 272, 300, 700, 701t, 728
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV), 525, 526, 530, 531
    routes of transmission, 526
Human immunodeficiency virus (HIV) encephalopathy, 346
Human leukocyte antigen (HLA), 496
Human papillomavirus (HPV), 258, 261, 272, 304, 306
Human T cell leukemia virus, 750
Humeral, 563
Humer/o, 563
Humerus, 548f, 554f, 555, 557t, 563
Humira, Adalimumab
Humoral immunity, 520, 520f, 522
Hunchback, 560
Huntington disease, 343, 372

Hyaline membrane disease, 265
Hydr/o, 72, 297
Hydrocarbons, 749
Hydroceles, 297, 300, 300f
Hydrocephalus, 266, 340
Hydrochloric acid, 137, 143, 150
Hydrocodone, 80
Hydrocodone with APAP, 355, 829t
Hydrocortisone, 836t
Hydromorphone, 829t, 848
Hydronephrosis, 77, 212, 212f
Hydrotherapy, 79
Hydroureter, 212f
Hymen, 243, 243f, 251
Hypalgesia, 337
Hyper-, 15, 109, 717
Hyperacusis, 675
Hyperalgesia, 337
Hyperbilirubinemia, 139, 149, 152
Hypercalcemia, 560, 714, 719
Hypercalciuria, 714
Hypercholesterolemia, 387
Hyperchromatism, 747
Hyperesthesia, 338
Hyperglycemia, 10, 109, 150, 715, 723
Hyperinsulinism, 722

Hyperkalemia, 214, 235, 717
Hyperkinesis, 338
Hyperlipidemia, 401
Hypermetropia, 660, 661f
Hypernephromas, 777
Hyperopia, 660, 661f, 669
Hyperparathyroidism, 719
Hyperplasia, 109, 109f, 771
    adrenal, 720
    prostatic, 305f
Hyperpnea, 442
Hypersecretion
    by adrenal cortex, 720f, 720–721
    by adrenal medulla, 721
    by pancreas, 722
    by parathyroid glands, 719
    by pituitary gland
        anterior lobe, 725f, 725–726
        posterior lobe, 726, 726t
    by thyroid gland, 718, 718f
Hypersensitivity, 528, 528f
Hypersplenism, 525
Hypertension (HTN), 109, 219, 398, 409
    portal, 154
    renal, 219
Hypertensive heart disease, 396
Hypertensive retinopathy, 658
Hyperthyroidism, 15, 718, 718f

Hypertrichosis, 623
Hypertrophic cardiomyopathy, 386
Hypertrophy, 109, 109f, 582
of right ventricle, 392
Hypertropia, 665
Hyperuricemia, 572
Hypesthesia, 338
Hypn/o, 843, 879
Hypnophobia, 881t
Hypnosis, 873, 878, 879
Hypnotics, 842, 843, 849, 871, 875f, 876
Hypo-, 15, 56, 110, 717, 866, 882
Hypoalbuminemia, 218
Hypocalcemia, 714, 720
Hypochondriac region, 46, 49, 56
Hypochromia, 487t, 489
Hypochromic anemia, 484, 487f, 489
Hypodermic, 9, 843
Hypodermic injections, 110
Hypodermic syringes, 827f
Hypogastric, 15, 49
Hypogastric region, 46, 49
Hypoglossal, 148
Hypoglossal nerve (CN XII), 324f
Hypoglycemia, 15, 110, 717, 722, 723
Hypogonadism, 714

Hypoinsulinism, 717
Hypokalemia, 715
Hypomania, 866, 881, 882
Hyponatremia, 214, 235, 715
Hypoparathyroidism, 720
Hypophysectomy, 716, 716f
Hypophysis, 707, 711, 714, Pituitary gland
Hypopituitarism, 714
Hypopituitary dwarfism, 726
Hyposecretion
    by adrenal cortex, 721, 721f
    by pancreas, 722–724, 723f, 723t, 724f
    by parathyroid glands, 720
    by pituitary gland
        anterior lobe, 726
        posterior lobe, 726, 726t
    by thyroid gland, 719, 720f
Hypospadias, 302, 303f
Hypothalamus, 329, 329f, 330f, 330t, 334, 707, 707f, 708, 708f, 713
Hypothyroidism, 719, 720f
Hypotropia, 665
Hypoxia, 387, 439
Hysterectomy, 253, 253f, 272
    radical, 258
    TAH-BSO, 253, 253f, 272
    robotic (da Vinci surgery), 253
Hyster/o, 253
Hysterosalpingogram, 810

Hysterosalpingography (HSG), 267, 272, 799
Hysteroscopy, 253
Hysterosonogram, 810

I

-ia, 80
IABP (intra-aortic balloon pump), 409
-iac, 56, 81
-iasis, 150
Iatr/o, 10, 187, 843, 862, 880
Iatrogenic, 10, 828, 840, 843, 880
Ibandronate sodium, 834t
IBD (inflammatory bowel disease), 156, 158, 190
Ibrutinib, 765t
IBS (irritable bowel syndrome), 158
Ibuprofen, 355, 829t
Ibutilide, 835t
-ic, 13, 81
IC (interstitial cystitis), 225
ICA (invasive coronary angiography), 409
-ical, 13, 81
ICDs (implantable cardioverter-defibrillators), 390, 406, 409
Ichthy/o, 621
Ichthyosis, 621, 621f
ICP (intracranial pressure), 352, 663
ICSI (intracytoplasmic sperm injection), 271

Ictal events, 343, 349
ICU (intensive care unit), 455
Id, 864, 877
ID (intellectual disability), 882
Identical twins, 292, 296
Identity disorder, 867, 872t
Idi/o, 151, 843
Idiopathic, 151
Idiopathic thrombocytic purpura (ITP), 496
Idiosyncrasy, 828, 843
Idiosyncratic reaction, 828, 840
IEC (immunoeffector cells), 531
If it is necessary (*si opus sit;* s.o.s.), 845
IgA, 496, 520, 520f, 521f, 522, 531
IgD, 479, 482, 496, 520, 520f, 521f, 522, 531
IgE, 479, 482, 496, 520, 520f, 521f, 522, 531
IGF (insulin-like growth factor), 728
IgG, 479, 482, 496, 520, 520f, 521f, 522, 531
IgM, 479, 482, 496, 520, 520f, 521f, 522, 531
IGRT (intensity-modulated gated radiation therapy), 775
IHC (immunohistochemistry), 772, 775
Ileal conduit, illustration of, 213f
Ileitis, 148
Ile/o, 148, 182
Ileocecal sphincter, 148
Ileocecal valve, 136f

Ileostomy, 146f, 213f
Ileum, 2, 2f, 137, 143, 148
Ileus, 158
Iliac, 54, 563
Iliac crest, 556
Iliac region, 46
Ili/o, 54, 563
Ilium, 2, 2f, 54, 148, 556, 557t, 563
Illness anxiety disorder, 870, 872t
Illusions, 864, 879
IM (intramuscular), 587, 845
IM (intramuscular) injections, 769
Imatinib, 765
Imbruvica, Ibrutinib
Imipramine, 875f
Immature tumor, 771
Immune cell transfer, 521
Immune reaction, 482
Immune response, 114, 114f, 477
Immune system, 514
    abbreviations for, 531
    combining forms for, 524–525, 542
    immunotherapy, 521
    laboratory tests and clinical procedures for, 530–531
    natural and adaptive immunity, 519f, 519–520, 520f, 521f
    pathology, 525–529, 526t, 527f, 527t
    prefixes for, 525, 542

pronunciation of terms for, 540–541
vocabulary related to, 522–523
Immunity, 520
cell-mediated, 520, 520f, 522
natural and adaptive, 519f, 519–520, 520f, 521f, 523
Immun/o, 104, 524
Immunodeficiency, 525–527, 526t, 527f, 527t
Immunoeffector cells (IEC), 531
Immunoelectrophoresis, 531
Immunoglobulins (IgA, IgD, IgE, IgG, and IgM), 479, 482, 486, 496, 519, 520, 520f, 522, 524, 531
Immunohistochemistry (IHC), 772, 775
Immuno-oncology (IO), 775
Immunosuppression, 495, 524
Immunosuppressive drugs, 495
Immunotherapy, 521, 522, 765, 767
Imodium, Loperamide
Impetigo, 622, 628, 628f
Implantable cardioverter-defibrillators (ICDs), 390, 406, 409
Implantation
ectopic pregnancy and, 108f, 264
of embryo, 247f
Impotence, 294, 296, 873
IMRT (intensity-modulated radiation therapy), 759f
In-, 15, 110, 256
-in, 715, 717
In situ, 755

In vitro, 271, 804, 808, 810
In vitro fertilization (IVF), 264, 271, 272
In vitro nuclear medicine tests, 804–808, 808f
In vivo, 804, 808, 810
In vivo nuclear medicine tests, 804–808, 808f
Incisal edge of tooth, 133f
Incisional biopsy, 758
Incisions, 8, 14, 15, 79, 110
    transurethral, of prostate, 306
Incisors, 133f, 143
Incontinence, urinary, 215
Increase, prefix for, 717
Incus, 670, 671f, 673
Inderal, Propranolol
Indications, drug, 844
Indinavir, 831t
Indirect bilirubin, 140f
Indirect bilirubin test, 183
-ine, 337, 717
Infant respiratory distress syndrome (IRDS), 265, 272
Infarction, 400
    cerebral, 347f, 347–348, 348f, 354
    myocardial, Myocardial infarction (MI)
    pulmonary, 448, 449
    zone of, 394f
Infections
    bacterial, 157

combining form for, 104
fungal
Candida, 526t, 635
tinea, 622, 623f, 630, 630f
MRSA, 83
opportunistic, 525, 526t, 530
of skin, 629, 629f
STIs, 261, 302–304, 303f, 304f, 306
UTIs, 214, 216, 225
Infectious diseases, mononucleosis, 492
Infectious disorders, of nervous system, 346, 346f
Inferior (positional term), 50, 53
Inferior vena cava, 378, 379f, 380f, 381f
Infertility, 761t
male, 294, 296, 299
Infiltrate, 447, 449, 767
Infiltrative tumors, 746, 747f
Inflammation
of bone, 566
of cervix, 259
of joints, 572, 573f
of liver, 2, 161
of mouth, 153, 154
of pancreas, 161
suffix for, 4, 13, 76
Inflammatory bowel disease (IBD), 156, 158, 190
Inflammatory tumors, 755
Infliximab, 837t
Infra-, 110, 254

Infracostal, 110
Inframammary, 253
Infrapatellar, 563
Infrapatellar bursae, 569f
Infusions, intravenous, 388, 772
Ingestion, 132
Inguinal, 54, 81
Inguinal hernias, 82, 155, 155f
Inguinal lymph nodes, 516f, 517, 522
Inguinal region, 46, 49
Inguin/o, 54, 72
INH (isoniazid), 831t, 845
Inhalation, 432, 432f, 434, 435f, 436, 872t
    of drugs, 770, 840
Inhalers, 838, 838t
Injections
    Botox Cosmetic, 623
    DPT, 444
    intrathecal, 337
    parenteral administration of drugs via, 827
Inkblots, 862, 863f
Inner ear, 671f, 671–672, 672f, 676
INR (international normalized ratio), 493
Insertion of muscle, 578, 579f, 580
Insight-oriented psychotherapy, 873, 879
Insipidus, 726
Insomniac, 110

Inspiration, 432, 432f, 434, 435f, 436
Instillations, 827
Instruments, 14, 562, 675
Insulin, 143, 219, 706, 712, 722, 729, 833, 833t
    actions of, 710t
    long-acting, 722, 833t
    production of, 117f, 141, 706
    rapid-acting, 722, 833t
    short-acting, 722, 833t
    types of, 722
Insulin pumps, 723f, 833
Insulin resistance, 722
Insulin shock, 723
Insulin-like growth factor (IGF), 728
Integumentary system, 613–648, Skin
Intellectual disability (ID), 882
Intellectual disability disorders, 867, 872t
Intelligence (IQ) tests, 862
Intelligence quotient (IQ), 882
Intensity-modulated gated radiation therapy (IGRT), 775
Intensity-modulated radiation therapy (IMRT), 759f
Intensive care unit (ICU), 455
Inter-, 56, 110, 525
Interatrial septum, 378, 380f
Intercostal, 110
Interferons, 520, 522
Interleukins (IL1 to IL15), 520, 522, 531

Intermediate-acting insulin, 722
Intermittent claudication, 398
Internal respiration, 432, 432f
International normalized ratio (INR), 493
Interposition arthroplasty, 584
Interstitial cells, 218, 293
Interstitial cells of the testes, 296
Interstitial cystitis (IC), 225
Interstitial fluid, 514, 514f, 515f, 515t, 522, 524, 525
Interstitial nephritis, 218
Interventional radiology, 800, 808
Interventricular septum, 378, 380f
Intervertebral, 56
Intervertebral discs, 552, 558
    herniation of, 575, 575f, 576f
Intestinal tract, inflammation of, 158
Intestines, 45f, 146
    combining forms for, 9, 146
    during pregnancy, 248f
    root for, 4
    telescoping of, 158
Intra-, 56, 110, 256
Intra-aortic balloon pump (IABP), 409
Intracavitary instillations, 827
Intracerebral hematoma, 336f
Intracranial pressure (ICP), 352, 663
Intracytoplasmic sperm injection (ICSI), 271

Intradermal injections, 634, 827
Intramural mass, 260f
Intramuscular (IM), 587, 845
Intramuscular (IM) injections, 827
Intraocular, 657
Intraocular lens (IOL), 669, 670
Intraocular pressure (IOP), 663, 667, 667f, 670
Intraoperative cholangiography, 798
Intraoperative radiation therapy (IORT), 759, 775
Intrathecal instillations, 827
Intrauterine device (IUD), 249, 256, 257f, 272
Intravascular ultrasound (IVUS), 404, 409
Intravenous (IV), 56, 110, 844, 845
Intravenous (IV) injections, 827
Intravenous pyelogram (IVP), 225, 800, 811
Intravenous steroids, 838, 838t
Intravitreal, 659
Intravitreal steroids, 662
Intrinsic factor, 488
Intron, Interferons
Intubation
    endotracheal, 452, 452f
    nasogastric, 189, 189f, 439
Intussusception, 158, 158f
Invasive, 746, 767
Invasive coronary angiography (ICA), 409

Invasive ductal carcinoma, 262, 262f
Invasive tumors, 746
Inversion, 804
Invisibility of x-rays, 794–795
Invokana, Canagliflozin
Involuntary muscles, 578
Involution of uterus, 256
IO (immuno-oncology), 775
Iodine, 702, 717, 718
Iodine compounds, 798f, 798–800, 799f
Iodine-123 (I-123), 807, 807f
Iodine radionuclide, 807
Iod/o, 717
IOL (intraocular lens), 669, 670
-ion, 13
Ionization, 795, 809
Ionizing radiation, 771
Ions, 795
IOP (intraocular pressure), 663, 667, 667f, 670
-ior, 56
IORT (intraoperative radiation therapy), 759, 775
Ipratropium + albuterol, 838t
IQ (intelligence quotient), 882
IQ (intelligence) tests, 862
Irbesartan, 835t
IRDS (infant respiratory distress syndrome), 265, 272

Iridectomy, 657
Iridic, 655
Irid/o, 657
Iris, 650, 651f, 655, 657
Iritis, 657
Ir/o, 657
Iron (Fe), 496
    combining form for, 485
    excess deposits in body, 489
Iron deficiency anemia, 75, 487, 487f
Irradiation, 758, 767, 770
    external beam, 759, 766
Irritable bowel syndrome (IBS), 158
Ischemia, 75, 81, 394
    coronary, 394, 394f
    gangrene and, 628, 628f
    renal, 213
Ischial, 563
Ischi/o, 563
Ischium, 556, 557t, 563
Isch/o, 72
Islet cells, 706, 706f, 707f, 710t
Islets of Langerhans, 700, 701f, 706, 706f
-ism, 56
Is/o, 484, 810
Isoniazid (INH), 831t, 845
-ist, 13, 80

Isthmus of thyroid gland, 702, 702f
Itching, 626, 843
-itis, 2, 13, 76, 626, 677
ITP (idiopathic thrombocytic purpura), 496
-itus, 677
IUD (intrauterine device), 249, 256, 257f, 272
-ium, 80
IV (intravenous), 56, 110, 844, 845
IV (intravenous) injections, 827
IVF (in vitro fertilization), 264, 271, 272
IVP (intravenous pyelogram), 225, 800, 811
IVUS (intravascular ultrasound), 404, 409

J

Januvia, Sitagliptin
Jardiance, Empagliflozin
Jaundice, 139, 152, 152f, 621t
    in HDN, 115
Jaund/o, 621t
Jaw bone, 148, 557t
Jejun/o, 148, 182
Jejunostomy tubes (J-tubes), 190
Jejunum, 137, 143, 148, 187, 187f
Joint(s), 544, 568–577
    clinical procedures for, 584f, 584–585, 585f
    combining forms for, 7, 72, 570–571
    hip, 554f, 556

laboratory tests for, 583
pathology of, 572–576, 573f, 574f, 575f, 576f, 577f
suffixes for, 571
temporomandibular, 549, 559, 587
types of, 568, 568f, 569f
vocabulary related to, 569
Joint capsule, 568, 568f, 574
J-tubes (jejunostomy tubes), 190

K

K^+ (potassium), 204, 209, 210, 214, 225, 705, 715, 728
Kal/i, 715
Kal/o, 214
Kaposi sarcoma (KS), 526, 527f, 530, 531, 633, 633f
Kaposi sarcoma herpesvirus (KSHV), 531
Kary/o, 54, 484
Karyotype, 35–36
of Down syndrome female, 34f
of normal male, 35f
Keflex, Cephalexin
Keloid, 631, 631f
Keratectomy, photorefractive, 670
Keratin, 615, 616, 619
Keratinized (horny) cells, 615f
Keratitis, 657
Kerat/o, 621, 657
Keratoplasty, 668, 668f

Keratosis(es), 621, 631, 631f
Ketalar, Ketamine
Ketamine, 829t
Ket/o, 214
Ketoacidosis, 214, 217, 723, 723t
Ketone bodies, 214, 217
Keton/o, 214
Ketonuria, 217
Ketorolac, 355, 829t
Ketosis, 214
Keytruda, Pembrolizumab
Kidney(s), 3f, 42f, 44f, 206f, 210, 701t
    adrenal glands and, 704, 704f
    anatomy of, 204, 207
    carcinomas, 752t, 754t
    combining form for, 10, 12, 73, 212, 213
    functions of, 204b
    pathologic conditions of, 217–219, 218f
    production of urine, 206f, 206–207, 207f, 208f, 209
    section of, 206f
    transplantation, 224, 224f, 228
Kidney stones, 218
Kidney transplantation, 224, 224f, 228
Kidneys, ureters, and bladder (KUB), 220, 225, 811
-kinesia, 338
Kinesi/o, 338
-kinesis, 338
Kines/o, 338

-kinetic, 338
Klept/o, 880
Kleptomania, 880
Klonopin, Clonazepam
Knee arthroscopy, 584f, 585f
Kneecaps, 554f, 556, 557t, 563, 569f
Knees, structures of, 569, 569f, 584, 585f, 591, 591f
Knowledge, combining form for, 10
KOH (potassium hydroxide), 633
KS (Kaposi sarcoma), 526, 527f, 530, 531, 633, 633f
KSHV (Kaposi sarcoma herpesvirus), 531
KUB (kidneys, ureters, and bladder), 220, 225, 811
Kyph/o, 560
Kyphosis, 70f, 560, 560f, 567f

L

Labia, 251
Labia majora, 243, 243f
Labia minora, 243, 243f
Labial, 148
Labial surface of tooth, 133f
Labile, 864, 877
Labi/o, 148, 182
Labiodental, 182
Laboratory tests
    for blood system, 492–493

for cardiovascular system, 401
for digestive system, 183, 183f
for endocrine system, 727
for lymphatic and immune systems, 530–531
for male reproductive system, 304
for musculoskeletal system, 583–584, 610
for oncology, 772
for skin, 633
for urinary system, 220
Labrum, 555, 555f
Labrum tears, 555f
Labyrinth, 671, 673, 676
LAC (laparoscopic-assisted colectomy), 181, 190
Lacrimal, 657
Lacrimal bones, 550, 550f, 551t, 558
Lacrimal gland and ducts, 657, 657f

Lacrimation, 657
Lacrim/o, 550, 657
Lactation, 245, 254
Lactiferous ducts, 245, 245f, 251
Lact/o, 254, 715
LAD (left anterior descending) coronary artery, 394, 409, 798f
Lamictal, Lamotrigine
Lamina, 552, 552f, 560
Laminectomy, 560
Lamin/o, 560
Lamisil, Terbinafine
Lamivudine, 831t
Lamotrigine, 832t, 875f, 876
Lanoxin, Digoxin
Lansoprazole, 837t
LAP (laparoscopic), 190
Lapar/o, 72, 148
Laparoscopes, 78, 79f, 189, 270, 773
Laparoscopic cholecystectomy, 159, 160f
Laparoscopic (LAP), 190
Laparoscopic oophorectomy, 270f
Laparoscopic supracervical hysterectomy (LSH), 253, 253f
Laparoscopic-assisted colectomy (LAC), 181, 190
Laparoscopy, 79f, 86, 148, 189, 270, 270f, 773
    abdominal, 189
    for tubal ligation, 86f

Laparotomy, 79, 79f
-lapse, 105
Large cell lymphomas, 529
Large intestine, 45f, 138–139
Laryngeal, 81, 438
Laryngectomy, 58, 75
Laryngitis, 39, 438
Laryng/o, 73, 438
Laryngopharynx, 432, 433f
Laryngoscopes, 452f
Laryngoscopy, 452
Laryngospasm, 438
Larynx, 39, 73, 432, 433f, 434f, 436, 438
Laser in situ keratomileusis (LASIK), 668f, 669, 670
Laser (light amplifications by stimulated emission of radiation), 669
Laser photocoagulation, 662, 669
Laser therapy for glaucoma, 663
Laser TURP, 301, 305
LASIK (laser in situ keratomileusis), 668f, 669, 670
Lasix, Furosemide
Last menstrual period (LMP), 272
LAT (lateral), 811
Lateral incisors, 133f
Lateral (LAT), 811
Lateral malleolus, 554f, 556, 559, 563
Lateral plane, 52, 52f

Lateral (positional term), 50, 51f, 52, 53, 54
Lateral view, 803, 803f
Later/o, 54
Latin, medical terminology associated with, 6
Laxatives, 152, 837, 842
LBBB (left bundle branch block), 388, 409
LDL (low-density lipoprotein), 401, 409
Leading, combining form for, 104
LEEP (loop electrocautery excision procedure), 268, 269f, 272
Left anterior descending (LAD) coronary artery, 394, 409, 798f
Left atrium, 378, 379f, 380f, 381f
Left bundle branch, 382, 382f
Left bundle branch block (LBBB), 388, 409
Left ear (AS), 679
Left eye (OS), 653f, 670
Left lower lobe of lung (LLL), 455
Left lower quadrant (LLQ), 47, 49
Left upper lobe of lung (LUL), 455
Left upper quadrant (LUQ), 47, 49
Left ventricle (LV), 378, 379f, 380f, 381f, 409
Left ventricular assist devices (LVADs), 393, 407, 409
Left ventricular ejection fraction (LVEF), 409
Left ventricular hypertrophy (LVH), 409
Left visual cerebral cortex, 653, 653f
Leg bones, 556, 557t
Lei/o, 260

Leiomy/o, 581
Leiomyomas, 260, 260f, 581
Leiomyosarcomas, 581, 753t
Lens, 651, 651f, 654f, 655, 658, 660, 661, 662, 662f, 669, 669f
-lepsy, 338
-leptic, 880
Lept/o, 336
Leptomeningeal, 336
Leptomeningitis, 346
LES (lower esophageal sphincter), 137, 143, 154
Lescol, Fluvastatin
Lesions, 624
  bone, metastatic, 566
  cancerous, 632f, 632–633, 633f
  cutaneous, 624, 625f
  papulovesicular, 628
  skin, 633, 634, 636
Lesser trochanter, 548f
Letrozole, 263, 836t
Leukapheresis, 485, 494f
Leukemias, 13, 14, 490–491, 491f, 753t, 754, 765
Leuk/o, 10, 73, 484, 621, 621t
Leukocytes, 9f, 10, 84, 84t, 85f, 474, 476–477, 477f, 478t, 479f, 483, 490–492, 491f, 493, 519
Leukocytosis, 14, 77
Leukoderma, 621t, 630
Leukopenia, 484

Leukoplakia, 153f, 154, 621, 621f, 631, 631f
Leukorrhea, 179, 256
Leukotriene modifiers, 838, 838t
Leuprolide, 764t
Levetiracetam, 832t
Levodopa plus carbidopa, 345
Levothyroxine, 729, 836t
Lexapro, Escitalopram
Lex/o, 339
Leydig cells, 296
LFTs (liver function tests), 183, 190
LH (luteinizing hormone), 249, 250t, 251, 272, 708, 709f, 710t, 712, 728
Lidocaine, 829t
Lidocaine-prilocaine, 829t
Life, combining forms for, 7, 810, 844
Ligament/o, 570
Ligamentous, 570
Ligaments, 544, 559, 568, 568f, 569
Ligation
    tubal, 86f, 270
    in vasectomy, 306
Light rays, pathway from cornea to brain, 654f
Linagliptin, 833t
Lincomycins, 831t
Linear accelerator, 759, 759f, 767
Lingual surface of tooth, 133f

Lingu/o, 148, 182, 843
Liothyronine, 729, 836t
Lipase, 141, 143, 150, 182, 183
Lipid profile, 401
Lipids, 145, 150, 401, 483
    in coronary artery, 395f
Lipitor, Atorvastatin
Lip/o, 150, 182, 621, 622
Lipoma, 150, 619, 622
Lipoprotein electrophoresis, 401
Liposarcomas, 753t
Lips, 132, 146, 148
Liquid biopsy, 773
Liraglutide, 833t
Lisdexamfetamine, 839t
Lisinopril, 835t
-listhesis, 562
Lithium, 839t, 875f, 876, 879
Lith/o, 150, 182, 214
Lithotomy position, 62f
Lithotripsy, 215, 218, 222
Liver, 137, 139f, 139–141, 143, 161, 752t
    with alcoholic cirrhosis, 160, 160f
    biopsy of, 189
    combining forms for, 10, 72, 148
    CT scan of, 185f
    metastatic cancer in, 747f

pathologic conditions of, 152, 152f, 159–161, 160f
in relation to pancreas, 706f
Liver function tests (LFTs), 183, 190
LLL (left lower lobe of lung), 455
LLQ (left lower quadrant), 47, 49
LMP (last menstrual period), 272
LMWH (low-molecular-weight heparin), 409
Lobar pneumonia, 447, 447f
Lobe(s)
brain, 328, 328f
left cerebral hemisphere, 328f
lung, 434, 435, 436, 438, 455
pituitary gland, 707f, 711, 725f, 725–727, 726t
Lobectomy, 437, 437f
Lob/o, 438
Lobular carcinoma of breast, 262
Local anesthetics, 829t, 830
Location, combining form for, 104
Log/o, 10
-logy, 8, 13, 76
Lomotil, Diphenoxylate + atropine
Long bones, 545
Long-acting insulin, 722, 833t
Loop electrocautery excision procedure (LEEP), 268, 269f, 272
Loperamide, 837t
Loratadine, 834t
Lorazepam, 839t, 875f

Lord/o, 560
Lordosis, 70f, 560, 560f
Lortab, Hydrocodone with APAP
Losartan, 835t
Lotrimin, Clotrimazole
Lou Gehrig disease, 342, 352, 372, 582
Love, combining forms for, 869, 880
Low back pain, 575
Low-density lipoprotein (LDL), 401, 409
Lower esophageal sphincter (LES), 137, 143, 154
Lower gastrointestinal series, 184
Lower gastrointestinal tract, pathologic conditions of, 156f, 156–159, 157f, 158f
Low-molecular-weight heparin (LMWH), 409
LP (lumbar puncture), 328–329, 351, 351f, 352
LS films (lumbosacral [spine] films), 811
LSD (lysergic acid diethylamide), 848, 871, 872f, 882
LSH (laparoscopic supracervical hysterectomy), 253, 253f
L-spine (lumbar spine), 811
Lubb-dubb, 381
-lucent, 810
LUL (left upper lobe of lung), 455
Lumbago, 561
Lumbar, 561
Lumbar curve, 553f
Lumbar division of back, 48, 49

Lumbar nerves, 323f
Lumbar puncture (LP), 328–329, 351, 351f, 352
Lumbar region, 46, 49
Lumbar spine (L-spine), 811
Lumbar vertebrae (L1 to L5), 553, 553f, 587
Lumb/o, 54, 561
Lumbosacral, 54, 561
Lumbosacral plexus, 323f
Lumbosacral spine (LS) films, 811
Lumen, 259, 386
Lumpectomy, 262
Lung(s), 44f, 45f, 433f, 434, 436
    combining forms for, 438, 440
    disorders of, 445f, 445–448, 446f, 447f, 448f
    normal tissue of, 445f
    PET scan of, 451
Lung biopsy, 452
Lung cancer, 446, 446f, 457, 752t, 764t
Lung capillaries, 376, 376f, 434, 435, 435f
Lung scans, 805
Lunula, 617, 619
Lupron, prostate cancer treated with, 302
Lupus, 576, 577f
Lupus vulgaris, 629
LUQ (left upper quadrant), 47, 49
Luteinizing hormone (LH), 249, 250t, 251, 272, 708, 709f, 710t, 712, 728

surge, 249
Lute/o, 621t
LV (left ventricle), 378, 379f, 380f, 381f, 409
LVADs (left ventricular assist devices), 393, 407, 409
LVEF (left ventricular ejection fraction), 409
LVH (left ventricular hypertrophy), 409
Lyme disease, 576, 576f
Lyme disease “bull's eye” rash, 576f
Lymph, 73, 514, 515f, 515t, 522
combining forms for, 73, 524
Lymph capillaries, 514, 514f, 515f, 516, 516f, 523
Lymph cells, 84
Lymph nodes, 81, 492, 514, 516, 516f, 517, 517f, 523, 525, 528–529, 529f
sentinel, 806
sentinel node biopsy, 262
tenderness of, 517
Lymph vessels, 516, 516f, 517, 517f, 523
in villi, 138f
Lymphadenitis, 492, 525
Lymphaden/o, 525
Lymphadenopathy, 14, 525, 528
Lymphatic system
abbreviations for, 531
anatomy of, 516f, 516–517, 517f
combining forms for, 524–525, 542
functions of, 514, 514f, 515f
laboratory tests and clinical procedures for, 530–531

pathology, 528f, 528–529, 529f
prefixes for, 525, 542
pronunciation of terms for, 540–541
spleen and thymus gland, 518, 518f
vocabulary related to, 522–523
Lymphedema, 524, 524f
Lymph/o, 73, 524
Lymphoblasts, 475f
Lymphocytes (lymphs), 84, 84t, 85f, 477, 477f, 483, 496, 514, 517, 517f, 518, 519
Lymphocytopenia, 524
Lymphocytosis, 524
Lymphoid, 486, 524
Lymphoid organs, 519, 523, 524
Lymphoid progenitor cells, 475f, 486
Lymphomas, 499, 526, 528–529, 529f, 530, 532, 534, 753t, 754, 764t
cutaneous T cell, 635
Lymphopoiesis, 524
Lymphoscintigraphy, 806
Lymphs (lymphocytes), 84, 84t, 85f, 477, 477f, 483, 496, 514, 517, 517f, 518, 519
Lyrica, Pregabalin
Lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD), 848, 871, 872f, 882
-lysis, 76, 105, 298
-lytic, 486

M

MA (mental age), 882

MAC (monitored anesthetic care), 352
MAC (*Mycobacterium avium* complex), 455
Macro-, 110, 486
Macrocephaly, 110
Macrocytosis, 486, 487t
Macrolides, 831t
Macrophages, 84, 476, 476f, 477, 483, 486, 517, 517f, 518, 519, 523
Macrotia, 675
Macula, 651f, 652, 652f, 655, 664f, 664–665
Macular degeneration, 664f, 664–665
Macular edema, 662
Macules, 624, 625f
Magnesium antacid, 837t
Magnetic resonance angiography (MRA), 350, 352, 404, 811
Magnetic resonance imaging (MRI), 186, 186f, 190, 352, 404, 803f, 809, 811, 812
  of brain and spinal cord, 350
  of breast, 267
  cardiac, 404
  characteristics of, 802f, 802–803
  of chest, 450
  CT scan vs., 802
  of endocrine glands, 727
  functional, 802
  of kidneys, 221
  of musculoskeletal system, 586
Magnetic resonance venography (MRV), 811
MAI *(Mycobacterium avium intracellulare)*, 526t, 531

Major depression, 884
Major depressive disorder (MDD), 866, 872t, 882
Mal-, 110
-malacia, 76, 562
Malaise, 110, 576
Male infertility, 294, 296, 299
Male reproductive system, 271–300
abbreviations for, 306
anabolic steroids and, 308
anatomy of, 292–294, 293f, 294f
clinical procedures for, 305f, 305–306, 306f
combining forms for, 297–299, 714
Gleason score and, 308
laboratory tests for, 304
organs of, 38
pronunciation of terms for, 318–319
sexually transmitted diseases, 302–304, 303f, 304f
suffixes for, 299
tumors and anatomic/structural disorders, 299f, 299–302, 300f, 301f
vocabulary related to, 295–296
Male urinary system, 205f
Malignant, 110
Malignant melanoma, 632, 633, 633f, 752t
Malignant tumors, 746f, 746–747, 747f, 754t, 767, Cancer (CA), Carcinoma(s)
characteristics of, 746–747
comparison with benign tumors, 747f
connective tissue-derived, 753t
gross descriptions of, 754f, 754–755, 755f, 767

mesothelioma, 448
microscopic descriptions of, 755–756, 756f, 767
treatment of, Cancer treatment
Malleolar, 563
Malleol/o, 563
Malleolus, 556, 557t, 559, 563
Malleus, 670, 671f, 673
Mammary glands, 245
Mammary papilla, 245, 245f, 251
Mamm/o, 73, 254
Mammogram, 76, 262f, 267, 267f
Mammography, 267, 267f, 773, 796
Mammoplasty, 78, 254
Mandible, 148, 548f, 549, 550, 551t, 557t, 558, 563
Mandible lower, 551t
Mandibular, 563
Mandibular bone, 550
Mandibul/o, 148, 563
Mania, 864, 877
-mania, 877, 880
Manic, 866
Mantoux test, 454
Manubrium, 555, 559
Many, prefix for, 111, 257, 583, 770
MAOIs (monoamine oxidase inhibitors), 832, 845, 874, 875f, 882
Marfan syndrome, 117, 117f, 397

Marijuana, 848, 871, 872f, 872t
Masochism, sexual, 869
Mass, suffix for, 13, 771
Masseter, 578f
Mastectomy, 75, 262, 263f, 275
Mastication, 132, 143
Mastitis, 254
Mast/o, 73, 254, 549
Mastoid process, 549, 559, 674
Mastoiditis, 674
Mastoid/o, 674
Maternal antibodies, 519
Mature teratoma, 261
Maxillae, 550, 550f, 551t, 557t, 558, 563
Maxillae upper, 551t
Maxillary, 563
Maxillary bones, 550, 550f
Maxillary sinus, 551f
Maxill/o, 563
MCH (mean corpuscular hemoglobin), 496
MCHC (mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration), 496
MCL (medial collateral ligament of the knee), 569f, 587
MCV (mean corpuscular volume), 496
MDCT scanners, 796, 811
MDD (major depressive disorder), 866, 872t, 882
MDIs (metered-dose inhalers), 456

MDIs (multiple daily injections), 728
MDs (medical doctors), 544
MDS (myelodysplastic syndrome), 497
Mean corpuscular hemoglobin concentration (MCHC), 496
Mean corpuscular hemoglobin (MCH), 496
Mean corpuscular volume (MCV), 496
Measles, 628
Measurement, suffix for, 675
Measuring, suffix for, 105
Meatal stenosis, 211
Meat/o, 211
Meatus
    auditory, 670, 671f, 673
    combining form for, 211
    external auditory, 670, 671f
    urinary, 205, 206f, 208f, 210
Meclizine, 834t
Meconium, 266
Meconium aspiration syndrome, 266
Medial (positional term), 50, 51f, 53, 55
Medial collateral ligament of the knee (MCL), 569f, 587
Medial malleolus, 554f, 556, 563
Medial meniscus, 569f
Median nerve, compression in CTS, 574, 574f
Mediastinal lymph nodes, 516f, 517, 523
Mediastin/o, 438
Mediastinoscopy, 438, 452

Mediastinum, 41, 41f, 45, 433f, 434, 436, 438
Medical doctors (MDs), 544
Medical language, study objectives, 2–3
Medication, endocrine, 729
Medicinal chemistry, 767, 767f, 840
Medi/o, 55
Medroxyprogesterone acetate, 836t
Medulla, 204, 210
  adrenal, 704, 704f, 705, 705f, 710t, 711, 713, 721, 726t
  renal, 204, 205f, 210
Medulla oblongata, 329, 330f, 330t, 334
Medullary carcinoma
  of breast, 262
  of thyroid, 754f
Medullary cavity, 210, 546f, 547, 559
Medullary tumors, 754f, 755, 769
Medull/o, 769
Megace, Megestrol
Megakaryoblasts, 475f
Megakaryocytes, 478, 478f, 483, 484
-megaly, 77
Megestrol, 836t
Meglitinides, 833, 833t
Meibomian gland, 662
Melanin, 615–616, 619
Melan/o, 621t, 622
Melanocytes, 615, 615f, 621t, 622, 633, 633f

Melanoma, 622, 633, 633f, 813
ABCDEs of, 633f
malignant, 632, 633, 633f
metastatic, 636
Melatonin, 700
Melena, 153
Melissophobia, 881t
Mellaril, Thioridazine
Mellitus, 726
Memantine, 832t
Membranes, combining form for, 336
Memory, loss of, 863
Menadione, 844t
Menaquinone, 844t
Menarche, 242, 246, 251, 255
Ménière disease, 676
Meningeal, 336
Meninges, 45, 332, 332f, 334, 336, 346
Meningi/o, 336
Meningiomas, 336, 346, 347
Meningitis, 346
Mening/o, 336
Meningocele, 341, 341f
Meningomyelocele, 341
Meniscus, 568, 569, 569f
Men/o, 254
Menometrorrhagia, 254

Menopause, 242, 249, 251
Menorrhagia, 254
Menorrhea, 179, 256
Menses, 251, 254
Menstrual cycle, 242, 246f, 246–247
Menstruation, 242, 246f, 246–247, 251, 254
Mental age (MA), 882
Mental foramen, 548f
Mental illness, 862
Mental retardation, Intellectual disability disorders
Ment/o, 880
Meperidine, 829t, 848, 871, 872f
Mes-, 147
Mescaline, 848, 871, 872f
Mesenchymal tissue, 753, 767
Mesenteric nodes, 516f, 517, 523
Mesentery, 147, 147f
Mesial surface of tooth, 133f
Mesocolon, 147f
Mesothelioma, 448
Meta-, 56, 110, 771
Metabolism, 34, 35, 56
Metacarpal bones, 110, 554f, 555, 557t, 563
Metacarpectomy, 563
Metacarp/o, 563
Metamorphosis, 110

Metaphysis, 546, 546f, 559
Metastases (Mets), 79, 110, 747, 747f, 767, 771, 775
Metastasize, 747
Metastatic bone lesions, 566
Metastatic melanoma, 636
Metatarsalgia, 563
Metatarsals, 554f, 556, 557t, 563
Metatars/o, 563
Metatarsophalangeal joints, 573, 573f
-meter, 105, 675
Metered-dose inhalers (MDIs), 456
Metformin, 729, 833t
Methamphetamine, 848, 871
Methaqualone, 839t, 848
Methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus* (MRSA), 83
Methimazole, 729
Methotrexate (MTX), 495, 524, 572, 763, 764t
Methylphenidate, 839t, 848, 871, 872f, 875f
Methylprednisolone, 838t
Methyltestosterone, 836t
Metoclopramide, 837t
Metoprolol, 835t
Metri/o, 254
Metr/o, 254
Metronidazole, 831t
Metrorrhagia, 254

Mets (metastases), 79, 110, 747, 747f, 767, 771, 775
Mexate, Methotrexate (MTX)
Mg (milligram), 845
MG (myasthenia gravis), 344, 349, 352, 529, 582
MI (myocardial infarction), Myocardial infarction (MI)
Micro-, 110
Microalbuminuria, 214, 217
Microcephaly, 110
Microcytosis, 486, 487t
Microdiscectomy, 575, 576f
Microglial cells, 334
Microhematuria, 215
Microliter (μL), 496
Microscope, 110
Microscopic descriptions of tumors, 755–756, 756f, 767, 770
Microscopy, slit lamp, 666–667, 667f
Micturition, 210
Midbrain, 329, 330f, 330t, 334
Middle ear, 670–671, 671f, 672f, 675, 676, 677
Midfoot bones, 557, 557f, 557t
Miglitol, 833t
Migraines, 348
Milk, 245, 253, 254, 715
Milk of magnesia, 837t
Milligram (mg), 845
Milliliter (ml, mL), 845

Mind, 12, 866, 880, 881
Mineralocorticoids, 705, 705f, 710t, 713
Minimally invasive surgery (MIS), 86, 148, 159, 270
Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory (MMPI), 862, 882
Mi/o, 659
Myocardial, 81
Miosis, 659
Miotic, 659, 660
Miotic drugs, 657
Mirtazapine, 832t, 875f
MIS (minimally invasive surgery), 86, 148, 159, 270
-mission, 105
Mitochondria, 34, 35
Mitosis, 748, 748f, 767
Mitral stenosis, 397
Mitral valve, 378, 379f, 381f, 384
Mitral valve prolapse (MVP), 396, 409
Mitral valvulitis, 388, 396f
Mixed-tissue tumors, 751, 754, 754t, 767
Mixture, combining form for, 843
Ml, mL (milliliter), 845
MM3 (cubic millimeter), 497
MMPI (Minnesota Multiphasic Personality Inventory), 862, 882
MoAb (monoclonal antibodies), 521, 523, 531, 765t, 775
Modafinil, 839t
Modality, 767

Mohs surgery, 634, 634f
Molars, 133f, 143
Mold, 843
Molecular pharmacology, 767, 767f, 840
Molecularly targeted therapy, 764, 767
Moles, 632
Mometasone, 838t
Monitored anesthetic care (MAC), 352
Mon/o, 484
Mono (monocytes), 84, 84t, 85, 85f, 477, 477f, 483, 484, 497, 514, 519
Monoamine oxidase inhibitors (MAOIs), 832, 845, 874, 875f, 882
Monoblasts, 475f, 485
Monoclonal antibodies (MoAb), 521, 523, 531, 765, 765t, 775
Monocytes (mono), 84, 84t, 85, 85f, 477, 477f, 483, 484, 497, 514, 519
Mononeuropathies, 337
Mononuclear, 84t, 483
Mononuclear cells, 84, 84t, 85f, 478t
Mononucleosis, 492
Monster, combining form for, 298
Montelukast, 838t
Mood stabilizers, 875f, 876
Morbidity, 767
More, combining form for, 770
Morphine, 80, 355, 829t, 848, 871, 872f
Morph/o, 73, 104, 484
Morphology, 76, 484, 486

red blood cell, 493
Mort/o, 104
Motor aphasia, 339
Motor apraxia, 340
Motor behavior, abnormal, 869, 872t
Motor disorders, 868
Motor nerves, 322–327, 324f, 327, 334
Motrin, Ibuprofen
Mouth, 132–134
combining forms for, 149, 843
ulcers in, 153, 154
Movement
cerebral area for, 8f
combining form for, 338
Movement disorders, 342–345, 344f, 345f
Moxifloxacin, 831t
MRA (magnetic resonance angiography), 350, 352, 404, 811
MRI (magnetic resonance imaging), 186, 186f, 190, 352, 404, 803f, 809, 811, 812
of brain and spinal cord, 350
of breast, 267
cardiac, 404
characteristics of, 802f, 802–803
of chest, 450
CT scan vs., 802
of endocrine glands, 727
of kidneys, 221
of musculoskeletal system, 586
MRI glioblastoma, 346f

MRI herniated discs, 575f
MRI sciatic nerve root, 575f
MRSA (methicillin-resistant *Staphylococcus aureus)*, 83
MRV (magnetic resonance venography), 811
MS (multiple sclerosis), 343, 344f, 352
MTX, Methotrexate (MTX)
Mucinous, 767
Mucinous tumors, 754
Muc/o, 73
Mucosa, 137
    buccal, 145
Mucositis, 761t, 769
Mucos/o, 769
Mucous membrane, 81, 137
    colonic, 156
    combining form for, 769
    leukoplakia on, 631
Mucus, 73, 80, 387, 715
MUGA (multiple-gated acquisition scan), 409, 807, 811
μL (microliter), 496
Multi-, 257
Multidetector CT, 796, 811
Multigravida, 257
Multip (multipara; multiparous), 257, 272
Multipara, 257, 272
Multiple daily injections (MDIs), 728
Multiple gestations, 264

Multiple myelomas, 492, 529, 753t, 754, 777
Multiple sclerosis (MS), 343, 344f, 352
Multiple-gated acquisition scan (MUGA), 409, 807, 811
Murmurs, 381, 384, 396
Muscle(s), 544, 577–583
actions of skeletal muscles, 578f, 578–579, 579f, 580f
clinical procedures for, 584f, 584–586, 585f, 586f
combining forms for, 73, 254, 337, 581–582
involuntary contraction of, 179
laboratory tests for, 583–584
malignant tumors and, 753t
pathology of, 583
prefixes for, 582–583
suffixes for, 582
types of, 577f, 577–578
vocabulary related to, 580
Muscle biopsy, 586
Muscle cells, 36, 746f
Muscle layer of artery, 375f
Muscle tissue, 37, 37f
Muscle tone, Apgar score for, 265, 265f
Muscular dystrophy, 108, 583
Musculoskeletal system, 543–612
abbreviations for, 587
bones, Bones
clinical procedures for, 584f, 584–586, 585f, 586f, 610
joints, Joints
laboratory tests for, 583–584, 610
muscles, Muscle(s)

organs of, 38
pronunciation of terms for, 607–610
Mut/a, 769
Mutagenic, 769
Mutagen/o, 769
Mutations, 749, 767
BRCA1 and BRCA2, 260
Mutism, 864, 877
MVP (mitral valve prolapse), 396, 409
Myalgia, 74, 576, 581, 582
Myambutol, Ethambutol
Myasthenia gravis (MG), 344, 349, 352, 529, 582
Myc oncogene, 750, 767
Mycelex, Clotrimazole
Myc/o, 622, 843
Mycobacterium avium complex (MAC), 455
Mycobacterium avium intracellulare (MAI), 526t, 531
Mycobacterium tuberculosis, 448
Mycosis, 622, 623f
Mycosis fungoides, 635
Mydriasis, 659
Mydr/o, 659
Myelin sheath, 326f, 326–327, 334, 343
Myelitis, 76
Myel/o, 73, 76, 337, 485, 561, 799
Myeloblasts, 475f, 483, 485, 490, 490f

Myelocytes, 475f
Myelodysplasia, 485
Myelodysplastic syndrome (MDS), 497
Myelography, 799
Myeloid, 80, 486
Myeloid progenitor cells, 475f, 486
Myelomeningocele, 336, 341, 341f
Myelopathy, 337
Myelopoiesis, 486, 561
Myelosuppression, 761t, 771
My/o, 73, 254, 260, 337, 582
Myocardial, 582
Myocardial infarction (MI), 81, 383f, 394, 394f, 409
    acute, 394, 394f, 408
    NSTEMI, 395f, 409
    STEMI, 395f, 409
Myocardi/o, 582
Myocardium, 380, 380f, 384
Myofibers, conduction, 382f
Myomas, 77, 254
Myomectomy, 254
Myometrium, 244, 244f, 251, 254
Myom/o, 254
Myoneural, 337
Myopathy, chronic inflammatory, 583
Myopia, 660, 661f, 669
Myosarcomas, 77

Myositis, 582
Myos/o, 582
Myringitis, 674
Myring/o, 674
Myringotomies, 674, 676f, 681
Myxedema, 715, 718f, 719
Myx/o, 387, 715
Myxoma, 387

N

Na^+ (sodium), 204, 209, 210, 225, 705, 705f, 713, 728
  combining forms for, 214, 715
Nail(s), 617
  anatomic structure of, 617f
  combining forms for, 622, 623
  fungal infection of, 622, 623f, 630, 630f
Nail plate, 617f
Naloxone, 80
Namenda, Memantine
Names of drugs, 768, 839
Naproxen, 355, 829t
Narcissistic personality disorder, 869, 872t
Narc/o, 80, 338, 843
Narcolepsy, 338
Narcotics, 80, 355, 829, 829t, 842, 843, 848, 849
Nardil, Phenelzine
Nares, 432, 436

Narrowing, suffix for, 179, 571
Nasal bones, 550, 550f, 551t, 558
Nasal cavity, 432, 433f
Nasal passages, 87f
Nasal polyp, 625f
NASH (nonalcoholic steatohepatitis), 161, 190
Nas/o, 439
Nasogastric (NG) intubation, 189, 189f, 439
Nasogastric tubes (NG tubes), 189, 190
Nasolacrimal duct, 657f
Nasopharynx, 432, 433f
Nat/i, 104, 254
Natr/o, 214, 715
Natural immunity, 519, 519f, 523
Natural killer (NK) cells, 519
Nausea, 153, 761t
Navane, Thiothixene
Navel, combining form for, 55
NCDs (neurocognitive disorders), 867, 872t, 882
Nearsightedness, 660, 661f
Neck
    of bone, 548f
    combining form for, 54
Necr/o, 73, 769
Necrophobia, 881t
Necropsy, 77

Necrosis, 77, 394
Necrotic, 81, 755
Necrotic tumors, 755, 769
NED (no evidence of disease), 775
Needle (core) biopsy, 773
Negative symptoms in schizophrenia, 869, 872t
Neo-, 110, 771
Neoadjuvant, 771
Neoadjuvant chemotherapy, 262, 762, 767
Neonatal, 110, 254
Neonatal pathology, 265f, 265–266
Neonates, 265f, 265–266
Neonatology, 242, 251
Neoplasia, cervical intraepithelial, 258f
Neoplasms, 110, 767, Tumor(s)
    combining form for, suffix for, 771
    skin, 631f, 631–633, 632f–633f, 633f
    thyroid gland, 719
Neoplastic disorders, of nervous system, 346, 346f
Nephrectomy, 13
Nephritis, 10
    interstitial, 218
Nephr/o, 10, 73, 212
Nephrolithiasis, 214, 218
Nephrolithotomy, 212
Nephrologists, 12, 26, 80
Nephrology, 10

Nephrons, 207, 207f
Nephropathy, 80, 212
diabetic, 724, 724f
Nephropexy, 212
Nephroptosis, 212
Nephrosis, 14, 218
Nephrostomy, 212
Nephrotic syndrome, 218
Nerve(s), 326f, 326–327, 327f, 334
combining forms for, 10, 73, 337, 770, 880
spinal, 331f
in teeth, 134f
Nerve cells, 36, 326f, 326–327, 333
Nerve deafness, 675, 676
Nerve root, 337
Nerve tissue tumors, 753t
Nervous impulse, 322, 326f, 327
Nervous system, 299–350
abbreviations for, 352
brain and, 328f, 328–330, 329f, 330f, 330t
clinical procedures for, 349–351, 350f, 351f
combining forms for, 370
organs and structures, 335–337
signs and symptoms, 337–340
CSF analysis, 349
divisions of CNS and PNS in, 325f
general structure of, 322–325, 323f, 324f, 325f
meninges, 332, 332f, 334
neurons, nerves, and glial cells in, 326f, 326–327, 327f

organs of, 38
pathology, 340–348, 341f, 342f, 344f, 345f, 346f, 347f, 348f, 372
prefixes for, 370
pronunciation of terms for, 367–369
spinal cord and, 322, 331, 331f
suffixes for, 337–340, 371
vocabulary related to, 333–335
Nesina, Alogliptin
Neural, 13
Neural canal, 552, 552f, 571
spinal cord in, 553f
Neural tube defects, 336, 341, 341f
Neuralgia, 13, 74, 338
Neurasthenia, 340
Neur/o, 10, 73, 337, 770, 880
Neuroblastomas, 753t, 754, 771
Neurocognitive disorders (NCDs), 867, 872t, 882
Neurodevelopmental disorders, 867–868, 872t, 877
Neurofibrillary tangles, 342
Neurofibromatosis (NF), 770, 775
Neuroglial cells, 327, 327f, 334, 336
Neurohypophysis, 707, 707f, 711
Neuroleptic drugs, 879, 880
Neurologic, 13
Neurologists, 26
Neurology, 10
Neuroma, acoustic, 676

Neurons, 322, 326f, 326–327, 331f, 334, 343, 345
Neurontin, Gabapentin
Neuropathic pain, 355
Neuropathies, 337
    diabetic, 724
    ulnar nerve, 352–353, 353f
Neuropathy, 337
Neurotransmitters, 327, 334, 880
Neutral, combining form for, 485
Neutr/o, 73, 485
Neutropenia, 77, 485
Neutrophilia, 486
Neutrophils, 73, 84, 84t, 85f, 476, 477f, 478t, 483, 485, 519
Nevi, 632, 632f
Nevus, 632, 632f
New, prefix for, 110, 771
Newborn, hemolytic disease of, 115, 265
Nexavar, Sorafenib
Nexium, Esomeprazole
NF (neurofibromatosis), 770, 775
NG (nasogastric) intubation, 189, 189f, 439
NG tubes (nasogastric tubes), 189, 190
NHL (non-Hodgkin lymphomas), 529, 530, 531, 753t, 756f, 764t, 775
Niacin, 401, 844t
Nicotinic acid, 844t
Nid/o, 624

Nifedipine, 835t
Night blindness, 659
Nil per os (nothing by mouth; NPO), 190, 845
Nilotinib, 765t
Nilstat, Nystatin
Nilutamide, 836t
Nipple, 55, 104
Nipple-like, 658, 770
Nitrates, 395, 400
Nitrogen, combining form for, 214
Nitrogenous waste, 210
Nitroglycerin, 395, 400, 835
Nitrous oxide, 829t
Nivolumab, 765t
NK (natural killer) cells, 519
No-, 881, 882
No evidence of disease (NED), 775
Noct/o, 214
Nocturia, 214, 215
Nodular goiters, 718
Nodules, 623, 624, 625f
Nolvadex, Tamoxifen
Nonalcoholic steatohepatitis (NASH), 161, 190
Nonbenzodiazepines, 849
Non-Hodgkin lymphomas (NHL), 529, 530, 531, 753t, 764t, 775
    follicular, 753t, 756f

Nonocclusive thrombus, 393f
Non-small cell lung cancer (NSCLC), 446, 456, 775
Nonspecific urethritis (NSU), 306
Non-ST elevation myocardial infarction (NSTEMI), 395f, 409
Nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs (NSAIDs), 355, 572, 587, 829, 829t, 845
Nor-, 712
Noradrenaline, 327, 705, 705f, 710t
Norepinephrine, 327, 705, 705f, 710t, 712
Normal, prefix for, 109, 717
Normal sinus rhythm (NSR), 382, 384, 409
Norm/o, 104
Normoblasts, 475f
Nortriptyline, 875f
Norvasc, Amlodipine
Nose, 12, 432, 433f
    combining forms for, 12, 439, 440
Nosebleed, 444
Nosocomial pneumonia, 447
Not, prefix for, 109, 881
Nothing by mouth (nil per os; NPO), 190, 845
Noun suffixes, 70–76, 100
Novocain, Procaine
NPO (nothing by mouth; nil per os), 190, 845
NSAIDs (nonsteroidal anti-inflammatory drugs), 355, 572, 587, 829, 829t, 845
NSCLC (non-small cell lung cancer), 446, 456, 775

NSR (normal sinus rhythm), 382, 384, 409
NSTEMI (non-ST elevation myocardial infarction), 395f, 409
NSU (nonspecific urethritis), 306
N-terminal pro-peptide of BNP (NT-proBNP), 409
NT-proBNP (N-terminal pro-peptide of BNP), 409
Nuclear cardiology, 403
Nuclear medicine, 794, 804–808, 809, 814
  abbreviations for, 811
  combining forms for, 810, 821
  prefixes for, 811, 822
  pronunciation of terms for, 820–821
  radioactivity and radionuclides in, 804–808, 805f
  suffixes for, 810, 822
  in vitro and in vivo tests, 804–808, 805f, 806f, 807f, 808f
  vocabulary related to, 808–809
Nuclear medicine physicians, 794
Nuclear medicine technologists, 794
Nuclear medicine tests, 187, 451, 804–808, 805f, 806f, 807f, 808f
Nucleic, 55
Nucle/o, 55, 73, 485
Nucleotides, 748, 767
Nucleus pulposus, 575f
Nucleus(i)
  cell, 32, 35, 326, 326f
  combining forms for, 54, 55, 73, 484, 485
  in monocytes, 84
  muscle cell, 577f
Nulli-, 257

Nulligravida, 257
Nullipara, 257
Nutrition, enteral, 147
Nyctalopia, 659
Nyct/o, 659
Nyctophobia, 881t
Nydrazid, Isoniazid (INH)
Nystagmus, 665
Nystatin, 831t

O

O2 (oxygen), 104, 105, 384, 387, 436, 439, 456
OA (osteoarthritis), 11, 572, 573f, 587, 829
    TKR/arthroplasty and, 591, 591f
Oat cells, 446
OB (obstetrics), 242, 251, 254, 272
Obesity, bariatric surgery for, 187
Oblique view, 803, 803f
Obscure, 810
Obsessions, 864, 865, 877, 880
Obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD), 865, 869, 872t, 874, 875f, 877, 882
Obsessive-compulsive personality, 869, 872t, 874, 875f
Obstetrics (OB), 242, 251, 254, 272
Obstetr/o, 254
Obstructive lung disease, 452
Obstructive sleep apnea (OSA), 442, 456
Occipital bone, 548f, 549, 549f, 551t, 558
Occipital lobe, 328f, 653f
Occipitofrontalis, 578f
Occlusion, 349, 400
    coronary artery, 394, 394f
    thrombotic, 394
Occurrence, 105
OCD (obsessive-compulsive disorder), 865, 869, 872t, 874, 875f, 877, 882
OCT (optical coherence tomography), 666, 666f, 670
Octreotide, 836t

Ocul/o, 657
Oculomotor nerve (CN III), 324f
OD (doctor of optometry), 658
OD (right eye), 653, 670
Odont/o, 148, 182
-oid, 81, 486, 524
-ol, 713
Olanzapine, 839t, 875f
Old age, 657, 661
-ole, 80
Olecranal, 563
Olecran/o, 563
Olecranon, 554f, 555, 557t, 559, 563
Olfactory nerve (CN I), 324f
Olig/o, 214
Oligoasthenozoospermia, 299
Oligodendrocytes, 327
Oligodendroglial cells, 327, 327f, 334
Oligodendrogliomas, 346
Oligomenorrhea, 254
Oligospermia, 298
Oliguria, 214
-oma, 13, 77, 386, 659, 753, 771
Omentum, 147f
Omeprazole, 837, 837t
Om/o, 555

Omphal/o, 82
Omphaloceles, 82, 82f
Onc/o, 11, 770
Oncogenes, 750, 767
translocation, 750, 750f
viral, 768
Oncologists, 11, 26
Oncology, 11, 745–792, 770
abbreviations for, 775
cancer treatment, 758–765
chemotherapy, 762–763, 763f, 764t, 766, 767
immunotherapy, 765, 767
molecularly targeted therapy, 764, 767
monoclonal antibodies, 765t
radiation therapy, 758–761, 759f, 760f, 761f, 761t, 768
surgery, 758, 768
carcinogenesis and, 748f, 748–751, 749t, 750f, 751t
characteristics of tumors, 746f, 746–747, 747f
classification of cancerous tumors, 751–754, 752t, 753t, 754t
clinical procedures in, 772–774, 773f, 774f
combining forms for, 769–770, 791
grading and staging systems in, 757, 767, 768
gross descriptions of tumors in, 754f, 754–755, 755f, 767
laboratory tests in, 772
microscopic descriptions of tumors in, 755–756, 756f, 767
prefixes for, 771, 848
pronunciation of terms for, 788–790
suffixes for, 771, 791
vocabulary related to, 766–768
Oncovin, Vincristine
Ondansetron, 837t

One, 114, 484
-one, 299
Onglyza, Saxagliptin
Onych/o, 617, 622
Onycholysis, 617, 617f, 622, 630f
Onychomycosis, 622, 630, 630f
O/o, 254
Oocyte, 254
Oogenesis, 254
Oophorectomy, 254, 260
    laparoscopic, 270f
Oophoritis, 255, 261
Oophor/o, 254
-opaque, 810
Opdivo, Nivolumab
Open comedo, 627f
Open fractures, 564, 565f
Open reduction, 564
Open reduction/internal fixation (ORIF), 564, 565f, 587
Open-angle glaucoma, 663f
Opening, suffix for, 180, 299
Operating room, example of schedule for, 274, 410, 589, 681
Ophidiophobia, 881t
Ophthalmic, 658
Ophthalm/o, 11, 73, 658
Ophthalmologists, 3, 13, 26, 658

Ophthalmoplegia, 658
Ophthalmoscopes, 11
Ophthalmoscopy, 666, 666f
    direct, 667
-opia, 659, 660
Opi/o, 73
Opioids, 80, 829, 829t, 849
    dependence on, 871, 872f, 872t
Opium, 848, 849
Opportunistic infections, 525, 526t, 530
Opposite, prefix for, 108, 844
-opsia, 653, 660
-opsy, 8, 13, 77
Optic, 658
Optic chiasm, 653, 653f, 655
Optic disc, 651f, 652, 652f, 655, 658
Optic nerve (CN II), 324f, 651f, 652, 653f, 655, 663
Optic tract, 653, 653f
Optical coherence tomography (OCT), 666, 666f, 670
Opticians, 13, 658
Optic/o, 656
Opt/o, 658
Optometrists, 13, 658
-or, 105
Oral, 149, 843
Oral administration, 827, 827t, 840
    antidiabetic drugs, 833, 833t

Oral cavity, 132–134, 133f
pathologic conditions of, 153f, 153–154
Oral contraceptives, 249
Oral leukoplakia, 153f, 154
Orbicularis oculi, 578f
Orchidectomy, 298
Orchid/o, 298
Orchiectomy, 298
Orchi/o, 298
Orchiopexy, 299
Orchitis, 298
Orch/o, 298
-orexia, 151, 881
Organ of Corti, 671, 672f, 673
Organs, 38, Sense organs
of female reproductive system, 38, 242–245, 243f, 244f, 245f
internal, 55
of male reproductive system, 38
of nervous system, 335–336
of respiratory system, 433f
ORIF (open reduction/internal fixation), 564, 565f, 587
Orifice, 251
vaginal, 255
Origin of muscle, 578, 578f, 579f, 580
Or/o, 149, 182, 843
Oropharynx, 182, 432, 433f
Orth/o, 439, 544, 561

Ortho (orthopedics; orthopaedics), 561, 587
Orthodontist, 148
Orthopedics (ortho), 561, 587
Orthopedists, 544, 559
Orthopnea, 439
OS (left eye), 653f, 670
OSA (obstructive sleep apnea), 442, 456
-ose, 56, 81
Oseltamivir, 831t
Osimertinib, 765t
-osis, 14, 77, 486
-osmia, 441
Osseous tissue, 544, 559
Ossicles, 670, 673, 674, 677
Ossicul/o, 674
Ossiculoplasty, 674
Ossification, 545, 559
Osteitis, 11, 561
Osteitis deformans, 561
Oste/o, 11, 73, 561
Osteoarthritis (OA), 11, 572, 573f, 587, 593f, 829
    THR/arthroplasty and, 593f
    TKR/arthroplasty and, 591, 591f
Osteoblasts, 545, 559, 562, 566
Osteochondromas, 564
Osteoclasts, 545, 559, 562

Osteocytes, 544
Osteodystrophy, 561
Osteogenesis, 561
Osteogenesis imperfecta, 561
Osteogenic, 81
Osteogenic sarcomas, 13, 566, 566f
Osteoma, 753
Osteomalacia, 76, 562, 566
Osteomyelitis, 566
Osteophytes, 572
Osteoporosis, 562, 566–567, 567f
    antiosteoporosis drugs for, 834, 834t
    prevention of, 567
Osteosarcomas, 566, 566f, 753, 753t, 770
Osteotomes, 562
Osteotomy, 14
-ostosis, 564
OT (oxytocin), 256, 709, 709f, 710t, 712, 716, 717, 728
Otalgia, 74
-otia, 675
Otic, 674
Otitis media, 677, 681
    acute, 676f, 677, 679
    chronic, 681
Ot/o, 73, 674
Otolaryngologists, 674
Otomycosis, 674

Otopyorrhea, 674
Otosclerosis, 677
Otoscopy, 678, 679f
OU (both eyes), 670
-ous, 81
Outer ear, 670, 671f
Outpouchings, intestinal, 157
Outside, prefix for, 108, 109
Oval window, 670, 671f, 673, 675f
Ovarian, 254
Ovarian carcinoma, 260
    chemotherapeutic regimens for, 764t
    cystic adenocarcinomas, 260, 754f
    cystadenocarcinomas, 260, 261
Ovarian follicles, 244, 244f, 251
Ovaries, 242–243, 243f, 244, 244f, 246f, 251, 305, 700, 701f, 709, 711, 752t
    combining forms for, 254, 714
    function of, 709
    hormones produced by, 710t, 711f
    location and structure of, 709
    pathology of, 260–261, 261f
    teratoma, 754, 754t
Ovari/o, 254
Ov/o, 254
Ovulation, 244, 246, 251
    home kits for, 249
Ovul/o, 254

Ovum(a), 242, 244, 244f, 251, 254, 709
Oxcarbazepine, 832t
-oxia, 105
Ox/o, 104, 387, 439
Oxy-, 716, 717
Oxycodone, 80, 355, 829t, 848, 871, 872f
Oxycodone with APAP, 829t
Oxygen (O_2), 104, 105, 384, 387, 436, 439, 456
Oxygen partial pressure (PaO_2), 456
Oxygenated blood, 376, 376f
Oxygenation, extracorporeal membrane, 407
Oxytocia, 256
Oxytocin (OT), 256, 709, 709f, 710t, 712, 716, 717, 728

P

P (phosphorus), 545, 559, 587
P waves, 382, 383f, 405f
PA (posteroanterior), 803, 803f, 811
PAC (premature atrial contraction), 409
Pacemaker, 382, 382f, 385, 389, 389f, 400
Packed red cells, 480, 494
Paclitaxel, 763, 764t
PACO2 (carbon dioxide partial pressure), 456
PACS (picture archival and communications system), 811
PAD (peripheral arterial disease), 398, 409
Paget disease, 561

Pain
chronic, 581
medications for, 355
neuropathic, 355
suffix for, 13, 74, 75, 338
Palate, hard and soft, 132, 133f, 143, 149
Palatine tonsils, 432, 433f, 436, 441
Palat/o, 149, 182
Palatopharyngoplasty, 149
Palatoplasty, 149, 182
Palatorrhaphy, 182
Palliative therapy, 345, 349, 449, 768
for bronchiectasis, 444
for multiple myelomas, 492
for psoriasis, 629
radiotherapy as, 761
Pallor, Raynaud's disease associated with, 399
Palpable, 658
Palpation, 390
of cervix, 261
Palpebral, 658
Palpebr/o, 656, 658
Palpitations, 390, 400
Palsy, 344
Pamelor, Nortriptyline
Pan-, 110, 717
Pancreas, 137, 139f, 139–141, 143, 161, 700, 701f, 706, 711, 752t
combining forms for, 149, 714

function of, 140f, 141, 141f, 706, 707f
hormones produced by, 710t
location and structures of, 706, 706f
pathology of, 159–161, 722–724, 726t
hypersecretion, 722
hyposecretion, 722–724, 723f, 723t, 724f
and surrounding organs, 706f
Pancreatectomy, 714
Pancreatic, 182
Pancreatic cancer, 161, 192, 764t
Pancreatic duct, 139
Pancreatitis, 149, 161
Pancreat/o, 149, 182, 714
Pancreatoduodenectomy, 161, 182
Pancytopenia, 110, 486, 487
Panhypopituitarism, 717, 726
Panic attacks, 865
Panic disorder, 865, 872t
PaO_2 (oxygen partial pressure), 456
Pap test, 266, 266f, 272, 773, 773f
Papanicolaou smear (Pap smear), 266, 266f, 773, 773f, 775
Papilla, mammary, 245f, 251
Papillae, 132, 143
Papillary tumors, 756, 770
of thyroid, 756f
Papilledema, 658
Papill/o, 658, 770
Papules, 624, 625f

Par-, 338, 622, 844
Para-, 110, 338, 339, 439, 869, 880, 882
Para (denoting reproductive history), 256, 272
Paraaortic nodes, 516f, 517, 523
Paracentesis, 74, 189
Paralysis, 110, 339, 344
Paralytic ileus, 158
Paranasal sinuses, 432, 433f, 436, 439, 439f
Paranephric, 212
Paranoia, 864, 877, 882
Paranoid personality disorder, 868, 872t
Paraphilias, 869, 872t, 877, 880
Paraplegia, 339
Parasitic infections, 629, 629f
Parasympathetic nerves, 324–325, 325f, 334
Parathyroid glands, 110, 545, 703–704, 711, 714
    function of, 704, 704f
    hormones produced by, 710t
    location and structure of, 703, 703f
    pathology of, 719–720, 726t
        hypersecretion, 719
        hyposecretion, 720
Parathyroid hormone (PTH), 704, 704f, 710t, 712, 719, 720, 728, 836, 836t
Parathyroidectomy, 714
Parathyroid/o, 714
Paregoric, 837t
Parenchyma, 218, 293, 334

brain, 326f
nervous system, 327
pulmonary, 437
renal, 218
Parenchymal tissue, 293, 296
Parenteral, 147, 844
Parenteral administration, 827, 827t, 840
Parenteral nutrition, 147
Paresis, 339
-paresis, 339
Paresthesia, 338
Parietal bone, 548f, 549, 549f, 551t, 558
Parietal lobe, 328f
Parietal pericardium, 380, 380f
Parietal pleura, 433f, 434, 436, 440f, 453f
Parkinson disease, 345, 345f, 372
Parkinsonism, 345
Parnate, Tranylcypromine
Paronychia, 622
acute, 623f
Paronychium, 617, 619
Parotid gland, 134, 135f, 143
-parous, 256
Paroxetine, 832t, 875f
Paroxysmal, 449
Paroxysmal AF, 390
Paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea (PND), 442, 456

Parsonage-Turner syndrome, 355
Partial thromboplastin time (PTT), 493, 497
Partial-thickness burn injuries, 627, 627f
-partum, 105
Parturition, 245, 251
Passage, suffix for, 562
Patch test, 634
Patches, 624, 625f, 827, 827t
Patella, 554f, 556, 557t, 563, 578f
Patell/o, 563
Patent, 400
Patent ductus arteriosus (PDA), 391, 391f, 409
Path/o, 11, 73
Pathogenesis, 76
Pathogenic, 13
Pathologic, 81
Pathologic fractures, 565f
Pathologists, 11
Pathology, 11
    adrenal cortex, 720f, 720–721, 721f, 726t
    adrenal medulla, 721, 726t
    blood system, 487f, 487t, 487–492, 488f, 489f, 490f, 491f
    blood vessels, 397f, 397–399, 399f
    bones, 564, 565f, 566f, 566–568, 567f
    digestive system, 143–153, 153f, 156f, 157f, 158f
    ear, 676f, 676–677, 677f
    eye, 662f, 662–665, 663f, 664f, 664t, 665f
    female reproductive system, 258f, 258–265, 259f, 260f, 261f, 262f, 263f, 264f

heart, 388–397, 389f, 391f, 392f, 394f, 395f, 396f
joints, 572–576, 573f, 574f, 575f, 576f, 577f
lymphatic and immune systems, 525–529, 526t, 527f, 527t, 528f, 529f
male reproductive system, 299f, 299–302, 300f, 301f
muscles, 583
neonatal, 265f, 265–266
nervous system, 340–348, 341f, 342f, 344f, 345f, 346f, 347f, 348f, 372
pancreas, 722–724, 723f, 723t, 724f, 726t
parathyroid glands, 719–720, 726t
pituitary gland, 725f, 725–727, 726t
respiratory system, 443–449, 445f, 446f, 447f, 448f
skin, 624–633
thyroid gland, 718f, 718–719, 720f, 726t
tumors
gross descriptions, 754f, 754–755, 755f, 767
microscopic descriptions, 755–756, 756f, 767
-pathy, 14, 77
Patient (Pt), 845
Patient-controlled analgesia (PCA), 352, 845
Paxil, Paroxetine
Pazopanib, 765t
P.c., pc (*post cibum;* after meals), 150, 845
PCA (patient-controlled analgesia), 352, 845
PCI (percutaneous coronary intervention), 395, 407, 407f, 409
PCP (phencyclidine), 848, 871, 872f
PCP *(Pneumocystis pneumonia)*, 456, 526t, 531
PD (peritoneal dialysis), 108, 222, 223f, 225
PD (progressive disease), 775
PDA (patent ductus arteriosus), 391, 391f, 409

PDR *(Physicians' Desk Reference)*, 768, 840, 845
PE (pulmonary embolism), 398, 399f, 409, 448, 448f, 456
PE tubes (pressure-equalizing tubes), 679
Pectoralis major, 578f
Pector/o, 439
Pediatric, 11
Ped/o, 11, 544, 561
Pedophilia, 869
Pedunculated growths (fibroids), 260f
Pedunculated polypoid tumors, 755, 768
Pedunculated tumors, 768
PEEP (positive end-expiratory pressure), 456
PEG (percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy) tubes, 181, 190
PEJ tubes (percutaneous endoscopic jejunostomy tubes), 190
Pelv/i, 55
Pelvic bone, 557t, 563
Pelvic cavity, 45, 556
Pelvic exenteration, 270
Pelvic girdle, 554f, 556
Pelvic inflammatory disease (PID), 261, 272, 306
Pelvic ultrasonography, 268
Pelvis, 45, 55, 55f, 563
    bones of, 148, 554f, 556
    renal, 207f, 208f, 209, 210, 212, 213, 218, 221, 337, 800
Pelv/o, 563
Pembrolizumab, 765t

Pemetrexed, 764t
Pend/o, 142
Penetrating keratoplasty, 668, 668f
-penia, 77, 486
Penicillin, 304, 831t
Penile, 298
Penis, 293f, 294, 296, 302, 752t
    anatomical disorders of, 302
    balanitis of, 297, 297f
    combining form for, 298
Pen/o, 298
Pentothal, Thiopental
PEP (positive expiratory pressure), 456
-pepsia, 178
Pepsin, 137
Peptic ulcer disease (PUD), 190
Peptic ulcers, 155
Per-, 110
Per os (by mouth; PO, p.o., po), 845
Percocet, Oxycodone with APAP
Percussion, 443
Percutaneous, 110
Percutaneous coronary intervention (PCI), 395, 407, 407f, 409
Percutaneous endoscopic gastrostomy (PEG) tubes, 181, 190
Percutaneous endoscopic jejunostomy tubes (PEJ tubes), 190
Percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography (PTHC), 184, 190, 798, 799f

Percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty (PTCA), 407
Percutaneous ultrasound lithotripsy (PUL), 225
Perfusion studies, 805
Peri-, 15, 111
Perianal, 145
Pericardial cavity, 380, 380f
Pericardial friction rub, 396, 400
Pericardi/o, 387
Pericardiocentesis, 387
Pericarditis, 396
Pericardium, 15, 111, 380, 380f, 385, 387, 396
Perilymph, 671, 673
Perimetrium, 244, 244f, 252
Perine/o, 254
Perineorrhaphy, 253, 254
Perineum, 243, 243f, 251, 254, 293, 293f, 296
Periodontal disease, 154
Periodontal membrane, 134, 182
Periodontist, 148
Periosteum, 45, 546, 546f, 559
Peripheral arterial disease (PAD), 398, 409
Peripheral blood stem cell transplantation, 772
Peripheral nervous system (PNS), 322, 334, 352
    divisions of, 325f
Peripheral stem cell transplantation (PSCT), 775
Peripherally inserted central catheter (PICC), 845

Peristalsis, 136, 143, 158
Peritoneal, 81
Peritoneal dialysis (PD), 108, 222, 223f, 225
Peritone/o, 73, 149
Peritoneoscopy, 58
Peritoneum, 42f, 45, 149, 296
Peritonitis, 149
Permanent AF, 390
Pernicious anemia, 488f, 489
Peroneal nerve, 581f
PERRLA (pupils equal, round, reactive to light and accommodation), 670
Persistent AF, 390
Persistent depressive disorder, 866, 872t
Personality, Freud's theory of, 864
Personality disorders, 868–869, 872t, 877
Personality tests, 862, 877
Perspiration, 618
Pertussis, 444
PET (positron emission tomography), 352, 806, 806f, 807f, 809, 811
    of brain, 350, 350f
    of cardiovascular system, 403
    of lungs, 451
PET/CT scan, 350, 774, 774f, 806, 807f, 811
Petechiae, 396, 400, 490, 490f, 626, 626f
Petit mal seizures, 343

PET-MRI (positron emission tomography-magnetic resonance imaging), 811
-pexy, 299
Peyote, 848, 871
Peyronie disease, 302
PFTs (pulmonary function tests), 452–453, 453f, 456
PH (potential hydrogen), 216, 216f, 225
pH scale, 216f
Phac/o, 658
Phacoemulsification, 658, 669, 669f
-phage, 486
-phagia, 178
Phag/o, -77, 476, 485
Phagocytes, 84, 476, 485
    bone, 545
Phagocytosis, 477f
Phagophobia, 881t
Phak/o, 658
Phalangeal, 563
Phalanges
    fingers, 554f, 556, 557t, 563
    toes, 554f, 556, 557f, 557t, 563
Phalang/o, 563
Pharmaceut/o, 810
Pharmacists, 767, 840
Pharmac/o, 843
Pharmacodynamics, 767, 767f, 840

Pharmacokinetics, 767, 767f, 840
Pharmacologists, 767, 840
Pharmacology, 766–803
abbreviations for, 845–846
actions and interactions of drugs in, 828
administration of drugs in, 826–827, 827f, 827t, 840
classes of drugs in, 829t, 829–838, 831t, 832t, 834t, 835t, 836t, 837t–838t, 839t, 841–842
combining forms for, 843–844, 860
controlled substances, 828, 839, 848–849
definition of, 767, 840
drug names, standards, and references in, 768
drug toxicity and, 828–829
prefixes for, 844, 860
pronunciation of terms for, 858–859
subspecialties of, 767, 767f
suffixes for, 860
vocabulary related to, 839–842
Pharmacophobia, 881t
Pharmacy, 767, 840
Pharmacy technicians, 767
Pharyngeal, 55, 149, 439
Pharyngeal tonsils, 432
Pharyng/o, 149, 439
Pharynx, 39, 73, 135f, 135–136, 144, 432, 437, 439
Phases of clinical trials, 762
-phasia, 339
Phas/o, 178
Phencyclidine (PCP), 848, 871, 872f

Phenelzine, 875f
Phenergan, Promethazine
Phenothiazines, 838, 874
Phenylketonuria (PKU), 217, 235
Phenytoin sodium, 832t
Pheochromocytomas, 721
Pheomelanin, 615, 619
Pheo/o, 721
-phil, 484
Philadelphia chromosome, 750, 750f
-philia, 486, 869
Phil/o, 880
Phim/o, 302
Phimosis, 302, 303f
Phlebitis, 76
Phleb/o, 73, 387
Phlebotomy, 79, 387
-phobia, 77, 877, 880
Phobias, 865, 877, 881t
Phobic disorders, 865, 872t
Phon/o, 439
-phoresis, 486
-phoria, 105, 880
Phor/o, 255
Phosphatase, 772
Phosphorus (P), 545, 559, 587

Phot/o, 659
Photocoagulation, laser, 662, 669
Photographic plates, x-rays and, 794
Photon therapy, 759, 768
Photophobia, 659, 881t
Photopsia, 665
Photorefractive keratectomy (PRK), 670
Photoselective vaporization of prostate (GreenLight PVP), 305, 306
Phototherapy, 115
Phrenic nerve, 439
Phren/o, 439, 880
-phylaxis, 525, 844
Physiatrists, 544, 559
Physical dependence, 870
Physical therapists, 544
Physical therapy (PT), 587
Physicians' Desk Reference (PDR), 768, 840, 845
-physis, 105, 562
Phys/o, 716
Phyt/o, 622
Phytonadione, 844t
Pia mater, 332, 332f, 334
PICC (peripherally inserted central catheter), 845
Picture archival and communications system (PACS), 811
PID (pelvic inflammatory disease), 261, 272, 306
Pigmented lesion of skin, 630, 632

Pigmented skin with varicose veins, 399f
Pil/o, 622, 624
Pilocarpine, 659
Pilonidal cysts, 624, 625f
Pilosebaceous, 622
Pimples, 624
PIN (prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia), 306
Pineal gland, 700, 701f
Pinkeye, 656, 656f
Pinna, 670, 671f, 673
Pioglitazone, 833t
Piroxicam, pain treated with, 355
PIs (protease inhibitors), 527, 530, 531
Pituitar/o, 714
Pituitary gland, 39, 86, 242, 248, 251, 700, 701f, 707–709, 711, 716f
    combining form for, 714
    function of, 708–709, 709f
    hormones produced by, 708f, 708–709, 709f, 710t
    location and structure of, 707f, 707–708, 708f
    pathology of, 86, 725–727, 726t
        anterior lobe, 725f, 725–726
        posterior lobe pathology, 726, 726t
PKD (polycystic kidney disease), 218, 218f, 225
PKU (phenylketonuria), 217, 235
Place, combining form for, 104
Placenta, 242, 247, 247f, 248, 248f, 249f, 251, 701t
    pathology of, 264, 264f
Placenta previa, 264, 264f

-plakia, 621
Planes of body, 52f
Planes of head, 69, 73
Plantar flexion, 579, 580, 580f, 582
Plantar warts, 632
Plant/o, 582
Plants, 622, 767
Plaques
  atherosclerotic, 395f
  dental, 153, 154
  formed by papules, 624, 625f
  oral mucosal, 154
  in psoriasis, 629, 629f
  rupture of, 395f
  senile, 342
  yellowish, 386
-plasia, 78, 105, 747, 771
-plasm, 56, 105, 771
Plasma, 474, 478–479, 479f, 483, 492, 515t, 753t
Plasma cells, 520, 520f, 523, 529
Plasma exchange, 494, 494f
Plasmapheresis, 479, 483, 485
Plas/o, 73, 770
-plasty, 78, 178
Platelet aggregate, 395f
Platelet count, 493
Plateletpheresis, 485

Platelets, 9f, 84, 474, 478, 478f, 483
Platinol, Cisplatin
Plavix, Clopidogrel
Play therapy, 873, 879
-plegia, 339
Plendil, Felodipine
Ple/o, 770
Pleomorphic tumors, 756, 770
Pleura, 41, 45, 81, 434, 436, 437, 439, 448–449
Pleural, 45, 81
Pleural cavity, 41f, 45, 437, 442, 449, 453
Pleural disorders, 448–449
Pleural effusion, 45, 439, 445, 449, 453f
Pleural rub, 443
Pleurisy, 449
Pleuritis, 449
Pleur/o, 73, 439
Pleurodesis, 449, 827
Pleurodynia, 75, 439
Plexuses, 322, 334
    spinal, 323f
Plurals, formation of, 15, 74
PMNLs (polymorphonuclear leukocytes), 84, 476, 477, 483, 485, 497
PMNs (polymorphonuclear leukocytes), 84, 476, 477, 483, 485, 497
PMS (premenstrual syndrome), 246, 272
PND (paroxysmal nocturnal dyspnea), 442, 456

-pnea, 105, 439, 442
Pneumatic retinopexy, retinal detachment treated with, 669
Pneum/o, 440
Pneumococci, 83
Pneumoconiosis, 437, 446
Pneumocystis pneumonia (PCP), 456, 526t, 531
Pneumonectomy, 437f, 440
Pneumonia, 450f, 456, 526t
    lobar, 447, 447f
    recurring, 458
Pneumonitis, 761t
Pneumon/o, 73, 440
Pneumothorax, 440, 440f, 449
PNS (peripheral nervous system), 322, 334, 352
    divisions of, 325f
PO, p.o., po (*per os;* by mouth), 845
POAG (primary open-angle glaucoma), 670
Podagra, 572
Pod/o, 572
-poiesis, 476, 486
-poietin, 215
Poikil/o, 485
Poikilocytosis, 485, 487f, 487t
Poison, 104, 525, 716, 844
Polio-, 337
Poli/o, 621t
Poliomyelitis, 337

Pol/o, 866
Poly-, 111, 583, 715, 717
Polyarthritis, 570
Polycystic kidney disease (PKD), 218, 218f, 225
Polycythemia vera, 489
Polydipsia, 214, 715, 723t
Polymorphonuclear granulocytes, 476, 477, 485
Polymorphonuclear leukocytes (PMNs, PMNLs), 84, 476, 477, 483, 485, 497
Polymyalgia rheumatica, 583
Polymyositis, 583
Polyneuritis, 111, 337
Polyneuropathies, 337
Polyp(s)
    colonic, 156, 156f
    combining form for, 770
    pedunculated, 156, 156f
Polypectomy, 188f
Polyphagia, 178, 723t
Polyp/o, 770
Polypoid tumors, 755, 755f, 770
Polyposis coli syndrome, 751t
    adenomatous, 750–751
Polyunsaturated fats, 401
Polyuria, 215, 717, 723t
Pons, 329, 330f, 330t, 334, 337
Pont/o, 337

Popliteal artery, 398
Pores, 618, 619
-porosis, 562
Portal hypertension, 154
Portal vein, 141, 144, 144f
Position(s)
combining form for, 104
dorsal lithotomy, 62f
of gallstones, 159f
for spinal anesthesia, 339f
for x-ray views, 803f, 803–804
Positional and directional terms, 50, 51f, 69, 73
Positioning for x-rays, 803f, 803–804
Positive end-expiratory pressure (PEEP), 456
Positive expiratory pressure (PEP), 456
Positron emission tomography (PET), 352, 806, 806f, 807f, 809, 811
of brain, 350, 350f
of cardiovascular system, 403
of lungs, 451
Positron emission tomography-magnetic resonance imaging (PET-MRI), 811
Post-, 111
Post (after), 845
Post cibum (after meals; p.c., pc), 150, 845
Postauricular, 674
Posterior, 50, 53, 55
Posterior (dorsal), 50
Posterior cruciate ligaments, 569f

Posterior lobe of pituitary, 707, 707f, 711
hormones produced by, 708f, 708–709, 709f, 710t
pathology of, 726, 726t
Poster/o, 55
Posteroanterior (PA), 803, 803f, 811
Postictal events, 343
Postmortem, 111
Postpartum, 111
Postprandial, 150
Post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD), 866, 872t, 877, 882
Potassium hydroxide (KOH), 633
Potassium (K^+), 204, 209, 210, 214, 225, 705, 728
combining form for, 214, 715
Potential hydrogen (pH), 216, 216f, 225
PPD (purified protein derivative), 454, 456, 634
PPD skin test, 448
Pradaxa, Dabigatran
Praluent, Alirocumab
-prandial, 150
Prandin, Repaglinide
Prasugrel, 395
Pravachol, Pravastatin
Pravastatin, 835t
-praxia, 340
Pre-, 111, 257
Precancerous, 111

Precose, Acarbose
Prediabetes, 727
Prednisone, 729, 836t
Preeclampsia, 265
Prefixes, 103–130
in basic word structures, 5, 6, 15–16
for blood system, 512
for cardiovascular system, 430
combining forms and, 104
for endocrine system, 717, 744
for female reproductive system, 256–257
for lymphatic and immune systems, 525, 542
for muscles, 582–583
for oncology, 771, 848
for pharmacology, 844, 860
for psychiatry, 881–882, 896
for radiology and nuclear medicine, 811, 822
in relation to body as a whole, 56, 67
for respiratory system, 472
suffixes in combination with, 105
terminology and, 99–108
Pregabalin, 832t
Pregnancy, 242, 247f, 247–248, 248f, 251, 254
-cyesis suffix, 255
ectopic, 108f, 264
hormonal interaction in, 248–250, 250t
pathologic conditions of, 264f, 264–265
procedures related to, 270–271, 271f
Rh condition and, 115f
tests, 247, 266

Premature atrial contraction (PAC), 409
Premature ejaculation, 873
Premature ventricular contraction (PVC), 409
Premenstrual syndrome (PMS), 246, 272
Premolars, 133f, 143
Prenatal, 111, 257
Prepatellar bursae, 568, 569f
Prepuce, 293f, 294, 295, 296, 305
Presbycusis, 675
Presby/o, 657
Presbyopia, 657, 661
Prescription (Rx), 767, 845, 847
Pressure-equalizing tubes (PE tubes), 679
Prevacid, Lansoprazole
Prilosec, Omeprazole
Primary complications of diabetes, 723
Primary open-angle glaucoma (POAG), 670
Primary syphilis, 304, 304f
Primi-, 257
Primigravida, 255
Primip (primipara; primiparous), 257, 272
Primipara, 257, 272
Primiparous, 257, 272
Prinivil, Lisinopril
Pristiq, Desvenlafaxine
PRK (photorefractive keratectomy), 670

PRL (prolactin), 708, 709f, 710t, 712, 715, 728
P.r.n., prn (*pro re nata;* as needed), 845
Pro-, 16, 111
Pro re nata (p.r.n., prn; as needed), 845
Probes in ultrasonography, 800
Procaine, 829t
Procardia, Nifedipine
Process, suffix for, 13, 14, 80
Prochlorperazine maleate, 837t
Proctitis, 761t
Proct/o, 149, 182
Proctologists, 149
Proctoscopy, 188
Proctosigmoidoscopy, 182
Prodrome, 111
Production, 13, 76, 81, 105, 486, 880
Progenitor cells, 475f
Progesterone, 242, 246, 250t, 252, 709, 710t, 712
Progestins, 836, 836t, 842
Prognosis, 10
Progressive disease (PD), 775
Projective (personality) test, 877
Prolactin (PRL), 708, 709f, 710t, 712, 715, 728
Prolapse, 78, 105
    of uterus, 111, 111f, 255
Prolia, Denosumab

Promethazine, 834t, 837t
Pronation, 579, 580, 580f
Prone (positional term), 50, 53, 804
Pronunciation of terms
for blood system, 508–510
for cardiovascular system, 425–428
for digestive system, 173–176, 199–200
for ears, 745–746
for endocrine system, 740–742
for eyes, 694–696
for female reproductive system, 286–289
for lymphatic and immune systems, 540–541
for male reproductive system, 318–319
for musculoskeletal system, 607–610
for nervous system, 367–369
for oncology, 788–790
for pharmacology, 858–859
problems with, 2–3
for psychiatry, 894–895
for radiology and nuclear medicine, 820–821
relating to
basic word structure, 27–28
body as a whole, 65–66
for respiratory system, 468–470
for skin, 645–646
in study of
prefixes, 126–128
suffixes, 98–99
for urinary system, 236–238
Propofol, 829t
Propranolol, 835t

Proptosis, 718, 718f
Propylthiouracil, 729
Pros-, 112
Prostaglandins, 700, 701t
Prostate cancer, 301f, 301–302, 309, 764t
Prostate gland, 16, 292, 293f, 294, 296, 301f, 301–302, 305, 307–309, 752t, 764t
  combining form for, 298
  location of, 118f
  transurethral resection of, 118, 118f, 301, 305, 305f, 306, 307–308
  tumors of, 301–302
Prostatectomy, 298, 302
Prostate-specific antigen (PSA), 301, 304, 306, 772, 775
Prostate-specific antigen (PSA) test, 301, 304, 772
Prostatic intraepithelial neoplasia (PIN), 306
Prostatitis, 298
Prostat/o, 298
Prosthesis, 112, 112f
  stapedectomy and, 675, 675f, 677
Prosthetic devices, 591f, 675f
Prostrate, 296
Prot. (protocol), 762, 763, 768, 770, 775
Protease, 141, 144, 150
Protease inhibitors (PIs), 527, 530, 531
Protection, combining forms for, 104, 524
Protein(s), 13, 478, 486, 492, 772
  combining form for, 150
  in urine, 216–217

Protein marker tests, 772
Protein synthesis, 748, 748f
Proteinuria, preeclampsia and, 265
Prote/o, 150
Prothrombin, 478, 483
Prothrombin time (PT), 493, 497
Prot/o, 770
Protocol (prot.), 768, 770, 775
    for chemotherapy, 762, 763
Proton beam radiosurgery, 351f
Proton stereotactic radiosurgery (PSRS), 351, 351f, 352, 760, 760f, 775
Proton therapy, 760, 760f, 768
Protons, 758
Provera, Medroxyprogesterone acetate
Proximal phalanges, 557f
Proximal (positional term), 50, 53, 55
Proxim/o, 55
Prozac, Fluoxetine
Prurit/o, 843
Pruritus, 626, 629, 630
PSA (prostate-specific antigen), 301, 304, 306, 772, 775
PSA (prostate-specific antigen) test, 301, 304, 772
PSCT (peripheral stem cell transplantation), 775

Pseudo-, 255
Pseudocyesis, 255
Pseudohypertrophy, 583
Psoralen-ultraviolet A (PUVA), 629, 634
Psoriasis, 629, 629f
PSRS (proton stereotactic radiosurgery), 351, 351f, 352, 760, 760f, 775
Psych-, symbol for, 882
Psychiatric clinical symptoms, 863–864
Psychiatric disorders, 864–871, 872t
  anxiety disorders, 865–866, 872t, 876
  bipolar disorders, 866, 872t, 876, 885
  depressive disorders, 866, 872t, 877
  dissociative disorders, 866–867, 872t, 877
  eating disorders, 867, 872t
  neurocognitive disorders, 867, 872t, 882
  neurodevelopmental disorders, 867–868, 872t, 877
  personality disorders, 868–869, 872t, 877
  schizophrenia spectrum and other psychotic disorders, 869, 872t, 878, 885
  sexual dysfunctions, and paraphilias, 869–870, 872t, 878
  somatic symptom disorders, 870, 872t, 878, 884
  substance-related and addictive disorders, 870–871, 872f, 872t, 878
Psychiatrists, 12, 26, 862, 877, 880
Psychiatry, 861–896
  abbreviations for, 882
  case reports in, 884–885
  combining forms for, 879–880, 896
  definition of, 862
  prefixes for, 881–882, 896
  pronunciation of terms for, 894–895

psychiatric clinical symptoms in, 863–864
psychiatric disorders in, 864–871, 872f, 872t
suffixes for, 880–881, 896
therapeutic modalities in, 873–874, 875f, 876, 878–879
vocabulary related to, 876–879
Psych/o, 12, 72, 862, 880
Psychoactive substances, 872f
Psychoanalysis, 862, 873, 879
Psychoanalysts, 862
Psychodrama, 873, 879
Psychogenic, 880
Psychological dependence, 870
Psychologists, 862, 878
Psychology, 12, 862, 878
Psychopharmacology, 862, 879, 880
Psychosis, 865, 878, 880
Psychosomatic, 880
Psychotherapy, 862, 873, 880, 882
Pt (patient), 845
PT (physical therapy), 587
PT (prothrombin time), 493, 497
PTCA (percutaneous transluminal coronary angioplasty), 407
PTH (parathyroid hormone), 704, 704f, 710t, 712, 719, 720, 728, 836, 836t
PTHC (percutaneous transhepatic cholangiography), 184, 190, 798, 799f
-ptom, 105

Ptosis, 78, 78f, 656, 664t
-ptosis, 78, 105
PTSD (post-traumatic stress disorder), 866, 872t, 877, 882
PTT (partial thromboplastin time), 493, 497
-ptysis, 179, 442
Puberty, 252
Pubic bones, 112, 113f
Pubic symphysis, 113f, 556, 559, 562
Pubis, 104, 556, 557t, 564
Pub/o, 104, 564
PUD (peptic ulcer disease), 190
PUL (percutaneous ultrasound lithotripsy), 225
Pulmonary, 81, 440
Pulmonary abscesses, 447
Pulmonary arteriole, 433f
Pulmonary artery, 376, 376f, 378, 379f, 380f, 381f, 385, 391
Pulmonary artery stenosis, 392, 392f
Pulmonary circulation, 376, 376f, 385, 440
Pulmonary edema, 393, 447
Pulmonary embolism (PE), 398, 399f, 409, 448, 448f, 456
Pulmonary fibrosis, 448
Pulmonary function tests (PFTs), 452–453, 453f, 456
Pulmonary infarction, 448, 449
Pulmonary parenchyma, 437
Pulmonary resections, 437f
Pulmonary valve, 378, 379f, 380f, 381f, 385

Pulmonary veins, 376, 376f, 378, 379f, 381f
Pulmonary venule, 433f
Pulmon/o, 73, 440
Pulp, dental, 134, 134f, 144
Pulse, 377, 377f, 385, 442
    combining form for, 387
Punch biopsy, 634
Pupillary, 658
Pupill/o, 656, 658
Pupils, 650, 651f, 654f, 655, 656, 658
Pure-tone audiometers, 678f
Purgatives, 837, 842
Purified protein derivative (PPD), 454, 456, 634
Purpura, 490, 490f, 626
Purulent, 302, 443, 449, 633
Pus
    combining forms for, 150, 215, 337, 622
    in exudate, 449
    in osteomyelitis, 566
    in pulmonary abscesses, 447
Pustules, 624, 625f, 669
PUVA (psoralen-ultraviolet A), 629, 634
PVC (premature ventricular contraction), 409
PVP (photoselective vaporization of prostate), 306
Pyel/o, 213, 337
Pyelogram, 810
    intravenous, 225, 800, 811

retrograde, 221, 225, 800
Pyelography, 800
Pyelolithotomy, 213
Pyelonephritis, 218
Pyloric sphincter, 137, 149
Pyloric stenosis, 179, 182, 266
Pylor/o, 149, 182
Pyloroplasty, 149
Pylorospasm, 179
Pylorus, 144
Py/o, 150, 215, 337, 622, 669
Pyoderma, 622, 628, 628f
Pyogenic meningitis, 346
Pyorrhea, 150
Pyosalpinx, 256
Pyothorax, 442
Pyrazinamide, 831t
Pyret/o, 843
Pyrexia, 572
Pyridoxine, 844t
Pyr/o, 880
Pyromania, 880
Pyuria, 150, 215, 216

Q

Q (*quaque;* every), 845

QAM (every morning), 845
Q.h., qh (*quaque hora;* every hour), 845
Q2h (every 2 hours), 845
Q.i.d., qid (*quater in die;* four times a day), 845
QPM (every evening), 845
QRS waves, 382, 383f, 405f
Q.s., qs (*quantum satis;* sufficient quantity), 845
Quaalude, Methaqualone
Quadri-, 339
Quadriceps, 578f
Quadriplegia, 339
Quantum satis (q.s., qs; sufficient quantity), 845
Quaque (every; q), 845
Quaque hora (every hour; q.h., qh), 845
Quater in die (q.i.d., qid; four times a day), 845
Questran, Cholestyramine
Quetiapine, 832t, 875f
Quinapril, 835t
Quinolones, 831t

R

RA (rheumatoid arthritis), 107, 524, 529, 570, 572, 573f, 583, 587, 829, 837
Radial, 564
Radiation, 768, 770
    causing DNA damage, 749, 749t
Radiation fields, 760, 7661f, 768

Radiation therapy (RT), 758–761, 759f, 760f, 761f, 761t, 768, 775, 776
intensity-modulated (IMRT), 759f, 775
Radiculitis, 337
Radicul/o, 337
Radiculopathy, 337
Radi/o, 12, 73, 564, 770, 810
Radioactive iodine (RAI), 728
Radioactive iodine uptake (RAIU) scan, 727, 728, 808, 811
Radioactivity, 794, 804
Radiocurable tumors, 760, 768
Radiofrequency ablation (RFA), 800, 811
Radiographers, 80, 794, 810
Radiography, digital, 796
Radioimmunoassay (RIA), 804, 809
Radioisotope scan of kidneys, 221
Radioisotopes, 804, 809, 810
Radiolabeled compounds, 805, 809
Radiologic technologists, 794
Radiologists, 794
Radiology, 12, 794–804, 809
abbreviations for, 811
characteristics of x-rays, 794–795, 795f
combining forms for, 810, 821
diagnostic techniques in, 796, 796f, 797f, 798f, 798–803, 799f, 801f, 802f, 803f
prefixes for, 811, 822
pronunciation of terms for, 820–821
suffixes for, 810, 822
vocabulary related to, 808–809

x-ray positioning in, 803f, 803–804
Radiolucent substances, 794, 809
Radionuclide scans, 774, 805, 805f, 807
Radionuclide studies, PET scan of brain, 350
Radionuclides, 794, 804, 809, 814
Radiopaque substances, 794, 809
Radiopharmaceuticals, 805, 808, 809, 810
Radioresistant tumors, 760, 768
Radiosensitive tumors, 760, 768
Radiosensitizer drugs, 760, 768
Radiosurgery, stereotactic, 351, 351f, 760, 760f, 768, 775
Radiotherapy, 79, 761t, 768, 771, 776
Radiotracer, 806
Radius, 554f, 555, 557t, 564
RAI (radioactive iodine), 728
RAIU (radioactive iodine uptake) scan, 727, 728, 808, 811
of thyroid gland, 727
Rales, 443
Raloxifene, 834t, 836t
RALP (robotic assisted laparoscopic prostatectomy), 298, 306
Ramipril, 835t
Range of motion (ROM), 587
Rapid, prefix for, 717
Rapid plasma reagin (RPR), 306
Rapid-acting insulin, 722, 833t
Ras oncogene, 750, 767

Rashes, 628, 669f
erythematous, 576, 576f
in SLE, 576, 576f
Ray, combining form for, 770
Raynaud's disease, 399, 399f
Rb1 (retinoblastoma type 1) gene, 751, 751t
RBBB (right bundle branch block), 388, 409
RBC (red blood cell count), 493, 497
RDS (respiratory distress syndrome of the newborn), 265, 456
Re-, 16, 112
Reabsorption, tubular, 207, 207f, 210
Reading, cerebral area for, 8f
Reality testing, 864, 878
Rebetol, Ribavirin
Receptors, 322, 335, 700, 713, 763
drug, 828, 840
external (sense organs), 322
hormone binding, 700, 713
Recombinant DNA, 112, 116, 117f
Reconstruction breast surgery, 263f
Record, suffixes for, 13, 76, 810
Rectal administration, 827, 827t, 840
Rectal carcinoma, 182
Rectal MRI, 186f
Rect/o, 73, 149, 182
Rectocele, 74, 82, 82f, 149
Rectum, 73, 138, 144, 149, 156, 157

Recumbent, 804
Recurring pneumonia, 458
Red, combining forms for, 72, 484, 621t
Red blood cell count (RBC), 493, 497
Red blood cells, 9, 9f, 84, 115, 474, 476, 482
diseases of, 487f, 487t, 487–489, 488f
enmeshed in fibrin, 481f
morphology of, 493
normal, 475f, 488f
Red bone marrow, 547, 559
Redness, combining form for, 621
Reduction
for dislocations, 574
for fractures, 564, 565f
Reed-Sternberg cells, 528
References, drug, 768
Reflexes, deep tendon (DTRs), 587
Reflux
GERD, 154, 190
vesicoureteral, 214
Reflux esophagitis, 154
Refract, 650, 655
Refraction, 651, 655
errors of, 660–661, 661f, 668f, 669
Reglan, Metoclopramide
Regulatory T cells (Tregs), 520, 520f, 523, 531
Relapse, 112, 491, 768
Remeron, Mirtazapine

Remicade, Infliximab
Remission, 112, 491, 762, 768
Removal, suffix for, 485
Renal, 12
Renal angiography, 220
Renal angioplasty, 223
Renal arteries, 205f, 206, 206f, 210, 223, 397f
Renal cell carcinomas, 218f, 219
Renal failure, acute or chronic, 219
Renal hypertension, 219
Renal ischemia, 213
Renal pelvis, 207f, 208f, 209, 210, 212, 213, 218, 221, 337, 800
Renal scan, 221
Renal transplantation, 224, 224f, 228
Renal tubules, 207, 210, 218
Renal vein, 205f, 210
Renin, 204, 206, 210
Ren/o, 12, 73, 213
Renogram, 221
Repaglinide, 833t
Repatha, Evolocumab
Repression, 870, 878
Reproductive system
    carcinomas of, 752t
    female, Female reproductive system
    male, Male reproductive system
Resection, 12, 75

en bloc, 758
transurethral, of prostate gland, 118, 118f, 301, 305, 305f
Resection arthroplasty, 584
Resections, pulmonary, 437f
Resectoscopes, 305, 305f
Residual volume (RV), 456
Resistance drug, 829, 830, 840
Respiration, 265, 330t, 432–435, 435f, 437, 440
Respiratory distress syndrome of the newborn (RDS), 265, 456
Respiratory drugs, 838, 838t, 842
Respiratory effort, Apgar score for, 265f
Respiratory syncytial virus (RSV), 444, 456
Respiratory system, 431–472
abbreviations for, 455–456
anatomy and physiology of, 432–435, 433f, 434f, 435f
clinical procedures for, 450f, 450–455, 451f, 452f, 453f, 454f, 455f
combining forms for, 437–441, 471
organs of, 38, 433f
pathology, 443–449
bronchial disorders, 444–445
diagnostic terms, 443
lung disorders, 445f, 445–448, 446f, 447f, 448f
pleural disorders, 448–449
upper respiratory disorders, 444
prefixes for, 472
pronunciation of terms for, 468–470
suffixes for, 441–442, 471–472
vocabulary related to, 436–437
Response, drug action and, 828, 840
Restoril, Temazepam

Restrictive lung disease, 452
Retention, urinary, 215
Reticulocytes, 483
Retina, 651f, 652f, 652–653, 653f, 654f, 655, 658, 662, 663, 664f, 664–665, 669f, 680
Retinal detachment, 665, 669, 669f, 680
Retinitis, 658
Retinitis pigmentosa, 658
Retin/o, 658
Retinoblastoma, 750–751, 751t, 771
Retinoblastoma (Rb) type 1 gene, 751, 751t
Retinol, 844t
Retinopathy
    diabetic, 662, 724
    hypertensive, 658
Retinopexy, retinal detachment treated with, 669
Retro-, 16, 112, 257
Retrocardiac, 16
Retroflexion, 112
Retrograde pyelogram (RP), 221, 225, 800
Retroperitoneal, 112
Retroperitoneal area, 42f
Retroversion, 257
Return, prefix for, 112
Reverse transcriptase (RT), 527
Reverse transcriptase inhibitors (RTIs), 527, 530, 531
Revision arthroplasty, 584

Reye syndrome, 117
RF (rheumatoid factor test), 583
RFA (radiofrequency ablation), 800, 801
Rh condition, 114–115, 115f
Rh factor, 265, 480, 483
Rhabdomy/o, 582
Rhabdomyolysis, 582
Rhabdomyoma, 582
Rhabdomyosarcoma, 582, 746f
Rheumatic fever, 397
Rheumatic heart disease, 397
Rheumat/o, 544, 571
Rheumatoid arthritis (RA), 107, 524, 529, 570, 572, 573f, 583, 587, 829, 837
Rheumatoid factor test (RF), 583
Rheumatologists, 544, 571
Rhinitis, 12
    allergic, 528
Rhin/o, 12, 73, 440
Rhinoplasty, 78, 178, 440
Rhinorrhea, 78, 179, 440
Rhonchi, 443
Rhythm, combining form for, 387
Rhythms, abnormal heart, 388–390
Rhytidectomy, 623
Rhytid/o, 623

RIA (radioimmunoassay), 804, 809
Rib cage, 555f
Ribavirin, 831t
Riboflavin, 844t
Ribomustine, Bendamustine
Ribonucleic acid (RNA), 748, 748f, 768
Ribosomes, 32f, 34
Ribs, 104, 554f, 555, 555f, 559, 563
Rickets, 566
Rifadin, Rifampin
Rifampin, 831t
Rifater, Pyrazinamide
Right atrium, 378, 379f, 380f, 381f
Right bundle branch, 382, 382f
Right bundle branch block (RBBB), 388, 409
Right ear (AD), 679
Right eye (OD), 653, 670
Right lower lobe of lung (RLL), 456
Right lower quadrant (RLQ), 47, 49
Right lymphatic duct, 516f, 517, 523
Right middle lobe of lung (RML), 456
Right upper lobe of lung (RUL), 456
Right upper quadrant (RUQ), 47, 49, 139
Right ventricle, 378, 379f, 380f, 381f
    hypertrophy of, 392
Right visual cerebral cortex, 653, 653f

Ringworm, 623, 630, 630f
Rinne test, 678
Risk factors
for CAD, 395
for stroke, 348
Risperdal, Risperidone
Risperidone, 839t, 875f
Ritalin, Methylphenidate
Rituxan, Rituximab
Rituximab, 765t
Rivaroxaban, 398, 410, 831, 832t
RLL (right lower lobe of lung), 456
RLQ (right lower quadrant), 47, 49
RML (right middle lobe of lung), 456
RNA (ribonucleic acid), 748, 748f, 768
Robotic assisted laparoscopic prostatectomy (RALP), 306
Robotic hysterectomy, 253
Rods, 652, 655
Roferon, Interferons
Rolaids, Aluminum antacid
ROM (range of motion), 587
Root(s), 6
hair, 615f
of spinal nerve, 331f
of tooth, 134
of words, 4, 6
Root canal, 134, 134f

Rorschach technique, 862, 863f
Rose Bengal, 774
Rosiglitazone, 833t
Rosuvastatin, 835t
Rotation, 579, 580, 580f
Rotator cuff, 555
Rotator cuff tear, 588, 588f
Routes of administration of drugs, 826–827, 827f, 827t, 840
Roux-en-Y gastric bypass, 187
Roxicet, Oxycodone with APAP
Roxicodone, Oxycodone
RP (retrograde pyelogram), 221, 225, 800
RPR (rapid plasma reagin), 306
-rrhage, 179
-rrhagia, 179
-rrhaphy, 179
-rrhea, 78, 105, 179, 256
Rrhythm/o, 387
RSV (respiratory syncytial virus), 444, 456
RT (radiation therapy), 758–761, 759f, 760f, 761f, 761t, 768, 775, 776
RT (reverse transcriptase), 527
RTIs (reverse transcriptase inhibitors), 527, 530, 531
Rubella, 628
Rubeola, 628
Rugae, 132, 137, 144
RUL (right upper lobe of lung), 456

Rule, combining form for, 104
RUQ (right upper quadrant), 47, 49, 139
RV (residual volume), 456
Rx (prescription), 767, 845, 847

S

SA node (sinoatrial node), 382, 382f, 385, 388, 409
SABAs (short acting beta agonists), 456
Sac, 8
    combining forms for, 769
    hydrocele, in scrotum, 300, 300f
    lacrimal, 657f
Saccule, 672, 673
Sacral, 48, 55
Sacral curve, 553f
Sacral division of back of, 48, 49
Sacral nerves, 323f
Sacral vertebrae, 553, 553f
Sacr/o, 55
Sacrum, 48, 55, 55f
SAD (seasonal affective disorder), 700, 866, 872t, 882
Sadism, sexual, 870
Sagittal (lateral) plane, 52, 52f, 53
Saliva, 134, 144, 150
Salivary glands, 134, 135f, 144, 149
Salivation, 325f
Salmeterol + fluticasone, 838t

Salpingectomy, 255
Salpingitis, 261
Salping/o, 255, 674
Salpingopharyngeal, 674
-salpinx, 256
Salts (electrolytes), 705
Sameness, combining forms for, 715, 810
Sandostatin, Octreotide
Sarc/o, 12, 55, 73, 582, 753, 770
Sarcoidosis, 448
Sarcomas, 12, 751, 768
    connective tissue-derived, 12f, 566, 753t, 753–754
    Ewing, 564, 753t
    osteogenic, 566, 566f
Sarcopenia, 582
Saturated fats, 401
Savaysa, Edoxaban
Saxagliptin, 833t
SBFT (small-bowel follow-through), 184, 184f, 798, 811
SC (sternoclavicular joint), 587
SC (subcutaneous), 112, 621, 634, 843
SC (subcutaneous [hypodermic] injections), 843
Scab, 624, 625f
Scabies, 629, 629f
Scale-like, combining forms for, 621, 623
Scalp, 332f
Scan, definition of, 809

Scanning electron micrographs, of bone, 567f
Scapulae, 554f, 555, 555f, 557t, 564
Scapular, 564
Scapular asymmetry, 561f
Scapul/o, 564
Scattering of x-rays, 795
SCC (squamous cell carcinoma), 632, 632f, 634, 635, 635f, 752t
SCD (sudden cardiac death), 409
Schedule, drug administration and, 828, 840
Schick test, 634
Schiz/o, 880
Schizoid, 868, 880
Schizoid personality disorder, 868, 872t
Schizophrenia spectrum, 869, 872t, 878, 885
Schizotypal personality disorder, 868, 872t
Sciatic nerve, 335
Sciatica, 337, 356, 575, 575f
Sciatica MRI, 575f
SCID (severe combined immunodeficiency disease), 525, 531
Scintigraphy, 806, 809
Scirrh/o, 770
Scirrhous tumors, 756, 770
SCLC (small cell lung cancer), 446, 456
Sclera, 650, 651f, 655, 658
Scleral buckle, 665f, 669, 669f
Scleritis, 658

Scler/o, 658
Scleroderma, 616, 629, 629f
-sclerosis, 78
Sclerosis of sacroiliac joints, 572
Scoli/o, 561
Scoliosis, 70f, 561, 561f
-scope, 14, 79f
-scopy, 8, 14, 79
Scot/o, 657
Scotoma, 657
Scratch test, 634
Screening, genetic, 751, 766
Scrotal sac, 306f
Scrotum, 293, 293f, 296
    hydrocele in, 300, 300f
SD (stable disease), 775
Seasonal affective disorder (SAD), 700, 866
Sebace/o, 623
Sebaceous cysts, 624
Sebaceous glands, 614, 615f, 618, 618f, 619
Seb/o, 623
Seborrhea, 623
Seborrheic dermatitis, 623
Seborrheic keratoses, 631
Sebum, 614, 618, 619, 623
Second molar, 133f

Second premolar, 133f
Secondary complications of diabetes, 724, 724f
Secondary hypertension, 219, 398
Secondary syphilis, 304, 304f
Secondary tumors, 761t
Second-degree burns, 624, 625f, 627, 627f
Secrete, 715
Secretin, 701t
Secretion, 8, 105, 207, 715
    in production of urine, 209
    by sweat glands, 325f
Sect/o, 12
Sed rate (erythrocyte sedimentation rate), 492, 497, 583, 587
Sedative-hypnotics, 838, 839t
    dependence on, 871, 872f, 872t
Sedatives, 842, 871, 872f, 872t, 875f, 876, 879
Sediments in urine, 217
Seed, combining form for, 297
Segmental resection, 437f
Segs (segmented, mature white blood cells), 497
Seizures (Sz), 338, 349
    in epilepsy, 343
Seizure disorders, 343, 345
Selective estrogen receptor modulators (SERMs), 834t, 835, 836, 836t, 845
Selective laser trabeculoplasty (SLT), 663, 670

Selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors (SSRIs), 832, 845, 874, 875f, 882
Selegiline, 875f
Self-antigens, 518
Self-monitoring of blood glucose (SMBG), 728
Sella turcica, 549, 559, 707, 713
Semen, 294, 296, 298, 304
Semen analysis, 304
Semicircular canals, 671f, 672, 673, 676
Semicomatose, 338
Seminal fluid, 296
Seminal vesicles, 292, 293f, 294, 296
Semin/i, 298
Seminiferous tubules, 293, 293f, 296, 298
Seminoma, of testis, 299, 299f
Senile plaques, 342
Sensations
    from body, cerebral area for, 8f
    combining form for, 843
    nervous, suffix for, 337
Sense organs, 38, 649–698
    combining forms for, 697
    ear, Ear(s)
    external receptors, 322
    eyes, Eye(s)
    stimulation of, 650f
    suffixes for, 698
Sense receptors, 322–323

Sensitization in Rh condition, 115
Sensorineural hearing loss, 676
Sensory aphasia, 339
Sensory nerves, 322–324, 327, 335
Sentinel axillary lymph node, 81
Sentinel lymph node, 806
Sentinel lymph node biopsy (SLN), 272
Sentinel node biopsy (SNB), 262, 263f, 272
Separation, suffix for, 76, 105
Seps/o, 104
Septal defects, 392
Septum(a), 378, 380f, 385
Sequential Multiple Analyzer Computer (SMAC), 497
SERMs (selective estrogen receptor modulators), 834t, 835, 836, 836t, 845
Seroquel, Quetiapine
Serotonin, 327, 880
Serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors (SNRIs), 874, 875f, 882
Serous, 768
Serous otitis media (SOM), 677, 681
Serous tumors, 754
Sertraline, 832t, 875f
Serum, 481, 483, 583
Serum bilirubin, 183
Serum calcium, 583
Serum creatine kinase, 583

Serum tests for endocrine function, 727
Sesamoid bones, 545
Sessile, 768
Sessile polypoid tumors, 755
Sessile polyps, 156f
Severe combined immunodeficiency disease (SCID), 525, 531
Sex hormones, 705, 705f, 713
Sex therapy, 873
Sexual dysfunctions, 869–870, 872t, 878
Sexual masochism, 869
Sexual sadism, 870
Sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), Sexually transmitted infections (STIs)
Sexually transmitted infections (STIs), 261, 302–304, 303f, 304f, 306
SGLT2 inhibitors, 833t
Shape, combining forms for, 73, 104, 484
Shave biopsy, 634
Sheath, combining forms for, 337, 843
Shift to the left, 493
Shin bone, 554f, 556, 557t, 564
Shine, suffix for, 810
Shingles, 346, 346f, 625f
Shock, 386
    anaphylactic, 828, 834
    cardiogenic, 386
    insulin, 723
Short acting beta agonists (SABAs), 456

Short bones, 545
Short-acting insulin, 722, 833t
Shortness of breath (SOB), 409, 442, 456
Shoulder blades, 555, 557t, 564
Shoulder dislocations, 574
Si opus sit (s.o.s.; if it is necessary), 845
SIADH (syndrome of inappropriate ADH), 726, 728
Sialadenectomy, 182
Sialadenitis, 149
Sialaden/o, 149, 182
Sial/o, 150
Sialolith, 150
Sickle cell anemia, 75, 488, 488f
Side effects
    of drugs, 828, 840
    of radiotherapy, 761t
Sider/o, 485
Sideropenia, 485
Sig. (directions–how to take medication), 845
Sigmoid colon, 137, 137f, 138, 144, 147f, 149
Sigmoid colostomy, 146f
Sigmoid/o, 149
Sigmoidoscopy, 149, 188
Signs, Signs and symptoms
    objective nature of, 109, 151
    prodromal, 111
Signs and symptoms

of asthma, 444
of digestive system pathology, 151–153
of Meniere disease, 676
nervous system, 337
of panic disorder, 865
produced by excess cortisol, 720
of renal pathology, 214–215
of skin disorders, 626, 626f
of TB, 448
urinary, 214–215
Sildenafil, 294
Silic/o, 446
Silicosis, 446, 449
Simple fractures, 564, 565f
Simple/closed fractures, 564, 565f
Simponi, Golimumab
Simulation, 760, 768
Simvastatin, 835t
Sine (without), 845
Single photon emission computed tomography (SPECT), 409, 806, 809, 811
Singulair, Montelukast
Sinoatrial node (SA node), 382, 382f, 385, 388, 409
Sinus rhythms, 405f, 409
Sinuses, 547t, 550, Cavities
bone, 547t, 558, 559
of breast, 245, 245f
combining form for, 440
cranial and facial bones, 551f

paranasal, 432, 433f, 436, 439, 439f
of skull, 551f
Sinusitis, 439, 440
Sinus/o, 440
-sis, 14, 147, 298
Sitagliptin, 833t
Skeletal muscles, 577, 578f, 578–579, 579f, 580f, 582
normal and malignant cells, 746f
Skin, 613–648
abbreviations for, 634
accessory structures of, 616–619, 617f, 618f
anatomy of, 614–616, 615f
basal cell carcinoma, 7f, 632, 632f, 752t
bluish discoloration of, 387
as body system, 38
carcinomas, 7, 7f, 752t
clinical procedures for, 633–634, 634f
combining forms for, 9, 104, 620–623, 621t, 648, 843
endocrine tissue in, 701t
laboratory tests for, 633
layers of, 615f
pathology
abnormal conditions, 627f, 627–630, 628f, 629f, 630f, 669f
candidiasis, 526t, 635
cellulitis, 628, 628f, 635
cutaneous lesions, 624, 625f
neoplasms, 631–633, 632f–633f, 633f
signs and symptoms of, 626, 626f
pronunciation of terms for, 645–646
suffixes for, 648
vocabulary related to, 619
Skin biopsy, 634

Skin tag, 624, 625f

Skin tests, 634

Skull, 54, 551f, 557t

combining forms for, 54, 563

SL (sublingual), 148, 182, 843, 845

SLE (systemic lupus erythematosus), 524, 576, 577f, 583, 587, 629, 629f

Sleep, combining forms for, 104, 338, 843, 879

Sleep apnea, 105, 442

Sleeve gastrectomy, 187, 187f

Sliding, suffix for, 105

Slipped disc, 49, 575, 575f

Slipping, suffix for, 562

Slit lamp eye examinations, 667

Slit lamp microscopy, 666–667, 667f

SLN (sentinel lymph node biopsy), 272

Slow, prefix for, 107

SLT (selective laser trabeculoplasty), 663, 670

SMAC (Sequential Multiple Analyzer Computer), 497

Small cell lung cancer (SCLC), 446, 456

Small intestine, 9, 45f, 137–138, 138f, 146, 158

x-ray images of, 184

Small-bowel follow-through (SBFT), 184, 184f, 798, 811

SMBG (self-monitoring of blood glucose), 728

Smell, suffix for, 441

Smooth muscle, 577f, 578, 581

SNB (sentinel node biopsy), 262, 263f, 272

Snellen chart, 667, 667f
SNRIs (serotonin-norepinephrine reuptake inhibitors), 874, 875f, 882
SOB (shortness of breath), 409, 442, 456
Social anxiety disorder, 865
Social phobia, 865
Social psychology, 862, 878
Sodium (Na^+), 204, 209, 210, 225, 705, 705f, 713, 728
    combining forms for, 214, 715
Soft callus, 565f
Soft palate, 132, 133f
-sol, 843
Sole of foot, 582
Soleus, 578f
Solid tumors, 768
SOM (serous otitis media), 679, 681
Somatic symptom disorders, 870, 872t, 878, 884
Somat/o, 716, 880
Somatostatin, 836
Somatotropin, 708, 709f, 712, 716, 728
-somes, 56
Somn/o, 104
Sonata, Zaleplon
Son/o, 104, 810
Sonograms, 118, 118f, 800
Sonographers, 794
Sorafenib, 765t

S.o.s. (*si opus sit;* if it is necessary), 845
Sotalol, 835t
Sound vibration pathway, 672f
Sound wave, ultrasound and, 186
Sp gr (specific gravity), 217, 225
-spadias, 302
Spasm, 180
-spasm, 179
Specialist, suffix for, 13, 80
Specific gravity (sp gr), 217, 225
SPECT (single photon emission computed tomography), 409, 806, 809, 811
Speculums, 266
    vaginal, 86f
Sperm, 35f, 242, 272, 292, 292f, 293, 295f
Spermatic cord, twisting of, 300, 300f
Spermat/o, 298
Spermatogenesis, 293, 299
Spermatozoa, 292, 292f, 293–294, 296, 298
Sperm/o, 298
Spermolytic, 298
Sphen/o, 549
Sphenoid bone, 548f, 549, 549f, 551t, 558
Sphenoidal sinus, 551f
Spher/o, 485
Spherocytosis, 485, 487t
    hereditary, 485, 488, 488f

Sphincter, 144
of stomach, 137, 137f, 144
Sphygm/o, 387
Sphygmomanometers, 382–383, 383f, 385, 387
-sphyxia, 442
Spina bifida, 341, 341f
Spina bifida cystica, 341, 341f
Spina bifida occulta, 341, 341f
Spinal, 55
Spinal anesthesia, 339f
Spinal block, 339f
Spinal canal, 45, 552, 552f, 571f, 575, 575f
Spinal cavity, 40f, 41, 42, 45, 45f
Spinal column, 49, 552f, 552–553, 553f
abnormalities of, 70f
divisions of, 48f, 48–49
Spinal cord, 49, 322, 323f, 331, 331f, 337, 797f
combining form for, 73
Spinal nerves, 322–325, 335
Spinal stenosis, 552f, 571, 571f
Spinal tap, 351, 351f
Spine, 55, 557t, 561f
Spin/o, 55
Spinous process, 552, 552f
Spiriva, Tiotropium bromide
Spir/o, 440
Spirochete, 304

Spirometers, 440, 452
Spironolactone, 393, 835t
Spitting, -ptysis suffix, 179, 442
Spleen, 518, 518f, 519, 523, 525
Splenectomy, 518, 525
Splenic flexure, 182
Splen/o, 73, 182, 525
Splenomegaly, 77, 525
Spondyl/o, 562
Spondylolisthesis, 562
Spondylosis, 562
Spongy bone, 546f, 547, 559
Sprains, 576
Sputum, 443
Sputum culture, 443
Squam/o, 623
Squamous cell carcinoma (SCC), 632, 632f, 634, 635, 635f, 752t
Squamous epithelium, 614, 619, 623, 632
SSRIs (selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors), 832, 845, 874, 875f, 882
ST elevation myocardial infarction (STEMI), 395f, 409
ST segments, 383f
Stable disease (SD), 775
Staging
    of Hodgkin lymphoma, 529f
    of tumors, 757, 768
-stalsis, 144

Standards, drug, 768
Stanford-Binet Intelligence Scale, 862
Stapedectomy, 675, 675f
Staped/o, 675
Stapes, 670, 671f, 672f, 673, 675, 677
Staphyl/o, 73
Staphylococcal infections, 664, 664t
Staphylococci/Staphylococcus, 74, 83, 83f
Staphylococcus aureus, 83
Starch, combining form for, 149
Stasis, 180
-stasis, 79, 105, 179, 486
Statins, 387, 400, 401, 835, 835t
STDs (sexually transmitted diseases), STIs (sexually transmitted infections)
Steat/o, 150, 182
Steatorrhea, 150, 153, 182
Stelazine, Trifluoperazine
Stem cell transplantation, 494, 495f, 496, 499, 772, 775
Stem cells, 110, 483, 499, 772
    hematopoietic, 474, 475f, 482, 491, 494, 495f
STEMI (ST elevation myocardial infarction), 395f, 409
Stenosis, 179, 180
    aortic, 385, 408
    meatal, 211
    mitral, 397
    pulmonary artery, 392, 392f

pyloric, 179, 182, 266
spinal, 552f, 571, 571f
tracheal, 441
-stenosis, 179, 571
Stents
coronary angiograms before and after stenting, 798, 799f
drug-eluting, 407, 407f
Stereotactic core needle biopsy, 262
Stereotactic frame, 351f
Stereotactic photon unit, 351f
Stereotactic radiosurgery, 351, 351f, 760, 760f, 768, 775
Sterilization, 270, 294, 296
Sternal, 564
Stern/o, 564
Sternoclavicular joint (SC), 587
Sternocleidomastoid, 578f
Sternum, 554f, 555, 557t, 564
Ster/o, 299, 713, 716
Steroids, 713, 716, 838
anabolic, 35, 308, 849
chronic use of, 721
inhalers, 838, 838t
intravenous or oral, 838, 838t
intravitreal, 662
Steth/o, 387
Stethoscopes, 383f, 387
-sthenia, 340
Stimulants, 838, 839t, 842, 848, 875f, 876

Stimuli, 265, 326, 335
Stirrup, 673
STIs (sexually transmitted infections), 261, 302–304, 303f, 304f, 306
-stitial, 525
Stomach, 4, 5, 9, 137, 137f, 144, 148, 155, 752t, 755f
  combining form for, 148
  malignant tumor of, 154
  in relation to pancreas, 706, 706f
  root for, 4
  root plus combining vowel for, 5, 6
  surgical procedures of, 187, 187f
  x-ray images of, 184
Stomach tubes, 190
Stomas, 146, 146f
Stomatitis, 149, 153, 153f, 154, 182
Stomat/o, 149, 182
-stomy, 79, 146, 299
Stones
  combining form for, 214
  kidney, 218
  in ureter, 212f
  urinary tract, 222
Stool(s), 138–139, 151, 153
  meconium, 266
Stool cultures, 183, 183f
Stool guaiac tests, 183, 183f
Strabismus, 660, 665f
Strain, 104

Strains, 576
Strata, 619
Stratified, 619
Stratified squamous epithelium, 614
Stratum corneum, 615, 615f, 619
Strength, 340, 582
Strept/o, 73
Streptococcus, 74, 83, 83f
Streptokinase, 408
Stress incontinence, 215
Stress test, 405
Stretch, 104
Stretch marks, 616
Striae, 616
Striated muscle, 577, 578f, 578–579, 579f, 580, 582
Striations, 577f
Stricture, 179, 213
Stridor, 443
Stroke, 347–348, 372
    defined, 8f
    types of, 347f
Stroma, 293, 296, 327, 335
Stromal tissue, 293, 296
Stupor, combining form for, 843
Stuttering, 867
Stye, 664, 664t

Styl/o, 549
Styloid process, 549, 559
Sub-, 16, 112
Subarachnoid space, 332, 332f, 799
Subcostal, 563
Subcutaneous (hypodermic) injections (subQ), 827, 845

Subcutaneous layer, 614, 615f, 616, 619
Subcutaneous (subQ), 112, 621, 634, 843
Subdural hematomas, 336, 336f
Subdural space, 332, 332f
Subhepatic, 16
Sublingual (SL), 148, 182, 843, 845
Sublingual administration, 827, 840
Sublingual gland, 134, 135f
Subluxation, 574
Submandibular, 148
Submandibular gland, 134, 135f
Submucosal leiomyoma, 260f
SubQ (subcutaneous), 634, 827, 845
Subserosal mass, 260f
Substance-related and addictive disorders, 870–871, 872f, 872t, 878
Subungual, 623
Sudden cardiac death (SCD), 409
Sufficient quantity (*quantum satis;* q.s., qs), 845
Suffixes, 72–102
  adjective, 81, 101
  in basic word structures, 4, 6, 13–14
  for blood system, 485–486, 511
  for bones, 562
  for cardiovascular system, 429
  in combination with prefixes, 105
  combining forms and, 72–73, 101–102
  for digestive system, 150, 178–180

for ear, 675
for endocrine system, 717, 743
for eye, 660
for female reproductive system, 255–256
for joints, 571
for male reproductive system, 299
for muscles, 582
for nervous system, 337–340, 371
noun, 70–76, 100
for oncology, 771, 792
for pharmacology, 860
for psychiatry, 880–881, 896
for radiology and nuclear medicine, 810, 822
in relation to body as a whole, 56, 68, 72
for respiratory system, 441–442, 471–472
for sense organs, 698
for skin, 648
Sugar, 10, 104, 150, 705, 715
Sulci, 328, 328f, 335
Sulfa drugs, 831t
Sulfamethoxazole, 831t
Sulfonamides, 831t
Sulfonylureas, 729, 833, 833t
Sumatriptan succinate, 348
Sun-damaged skin, 632
Sunitinib, 765t
Superego, 864, 878
Superficial (positional term), 50, 53
Superior (positional term), 50, 53

Superior vena cava, 378, 379f, 380f, 381f, 389f
Supination, 579, 580, 580f
Supine (positional term), 50, 53, 804
Supportive psychotherapy, 873, 879
-suppression, 771
Suppressor genes, 751
Suppressor T cells, 520, 520f, 523, 531
Suppurative otitis media, 677
Supra-, 112, 562
Supraclavicular, 562
Suprapubic, 112
Suprapubic catheter, 113f
Suprarenal glands, 704f
Supraventricular tachycardia (SVT), 386, 409
Surfactant, neonatal respiratory distress syndrome and, 265
Surgical procedures, Clinical procedures
  in cancer treatment, 758, 768
  minimally invasive, 86, 148, 159, 270
  in relation to body as a whole, 58
Sutent, Sunitinib
Suture joints, 568, 569
Sutures
  cranial bones, 548, 559
  -rrhaphy suffix, 179
SVT (supraventricular tachycardia), 386, 409
Swallowing, 135, 135f, 485
  difficulty in, 152

-phagia suffix, 178, 486
Swayback, 560
Sweat, 614, 618
Sweat glands, 325f, 614, 615f, 616, 618f, 618–619
Sweating, 621
Sym-, 113
Symbicort, Formoterol + budesonide
Symbiosis, 113
Symmetry, 113
Sympathetic nerves, 324, 325f, 335
Sympathomimetic agents, 705, 705f, 713
Symphysis, 113, 113f
Symptoms
clinical, psychiatric, 863–864
prodromal, 111
signs and, Signs and symptoms
subjective nature of, 109, 151
Syn-, 113, 843, 844
Synapse, 326f, 327, 335
Syncopal, 340
Syncope, 340
Syncop/o, 340
Syndactyly, 113, 113f
Syndrome of inappropriate ADH (SIADH), 726, 728
Syndromes, 113, 117
Synergism, 828, 840, 843
Synergistic, 828, 844

Synovial cavity, 568, 568f, 569
Synovial fluid, 568, 568f, 569, 584
Synovial joints, 568, 568f, 569
Synovial membrane, 568, 568f, 569, 571, 572
Synovitis, 571
Synov/o, 571
Synthesis, 113
Synthroid, Levothyroxine
Syphilis, 261, 304, 304f
Syringes, 827, 827f, 840
Systemic anaphylaxis, 528
Systemic circulation, 376f, 377, 385
Systemic lupus erythematosus (SLE), 524, 576, 577f, 583, 587, 629, 629f
Systems, 38, 39f
Systole, 381, 381f, 385
Systolic CHF, 393
Systolic pressure, 383
Sz (seizures), Seizures (Sz)

T

T3, Triiodothyronine (T3)
T4, Thyroxine (T4)
T cell lymphoma, cutaneous, 635
T cells (T lymphocytes), 517, 517f, 518, 519, 520, 520f, 521f, 523, 525, 765, 767

T lymphocytes (T cells), 517, 517f, 518, 519, 520, 520f, 521f, 523, 525, 765, 767

T waves, 382, 383f, 405f

Tab (tablet), 827f, 845

Tablet (tab), 827f, 845

Tachy-, 114, 386

Tachycardia, 15, 386, 405f

Tachypnea, 114, 442

Tadalafil, 294

Tagamet, Cimetidine

Tagging, 809

Tagrisso, Osimertinib

TAH (total abdominal hysterectomy), 253, 253f

TAH-BSO (total abdominal hysterectomy with bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy), 253, 253f, 272

Tailbone, 48, 73, 557t

Talipes (equinovarus), 568

Talus, 556, 568

Tamiflu, Oseltamivir

Tamoxifen, 263, 763, 764t, 834t, 836t

Tamponade, cardiac, 396, 400

Tardive dyskinesia (TD), 338, 874, 876, 882

Target cells, 488f

Target tissues, 700, 713

Tarsal bone, 554f, 556, 557t, 564

Tarsectomy, 564

Tars/o, 564

Tartar, 154
Tasigna, Nilotinib
Taste buds, oral cavity and, 132
TAT (Thematic Apperception Test), 862, 863f, 882
TAVR (transcatheter aortic valve replacement), 408, 409
Tax/o, 340
Taxol, Paclitaxel
Taxotere, Docetaxel
TB (tuberculosis), 448, 456, 526t
TBI (traumatic brain injury), 347, 352
Tc (technetium), 403, 804, 805
TCAs (tricyclic antidepressants), 832, 845, 874, 875f, 879, 882
TD (tardive dyskinesia), 338, 874, 876, 882
T1D (type 1 diabetes), 10, 722, 723f, 723t, 723–724, 724f, 728
T2D (type 2 diabetes), 722, 723, 723t
Tear ducts, 657, 657f
Tears, 657
Technetium (Tc) 99m, 403, 804, 805
    bone scan, 586f
    in liver and spleen scans, 774
    sestamibi scan, 403, 807, 807f
TEE (transesophageal echocardiography), 403, 403f, 409
Teeth, 133f, 134, 142, 143, 146, 148
    anatomy of, 134, 134f
    pathologic conditions of, 153f, 153–154
Tegretol, Carbamazepine
Tele-, 771

Telemetry, 404
Teletherapy, 759, 771
Tel/o, 441
Temazepam, 839t, 871, 875f
Temodar, Temozolomide
Temozolomide, 764t
Temperature of tympanic membrane, 678
Temporal bone, 548f, 549, 549f, 551t, 558, 674
Temporal lobe, 328f
Temporal lobe epilepsy, 343, 352
Temporalis, 578f
Temporomandibular joint (TMJ), 549, 559, 587
Tenaculum, 86f
Tendinosis, 571
Tendin/o, 571
Tendons, 544, 559, 568, 569, 571, 574
Ten/o, 571
Tenormin, Atenolol
Tenosynovitis, 571
TENS (transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation), 352
Tens/p, 104
Ter in die (three times daily; t.i.d., tid), 845
Terat/o, 298
Teratomas, 261, 298, 299, 754, 754t
Terbinafine, 831t
Teriparatide, 834t

Terminal bronchioles, 433f, 434, 436
Terminal end fibers, 326f, 327
Tertiary syphilis, 304
Testes, 242, 292, 293, 293f, 296, 305, 700, 701f, 710, 711, 714, 752t, 764t
    combining forms for, 298, 300, 714
    function of, 710
    hormones produced by, 710, 710t, 711f
    internal structure of, 294f
    location and structure of, 710
    teratoma, 754, 754t
    tumors of, 299f, 299–300
    undescended, 300
Testicles, Testes
Testicular, 298
Testicular cancer, 299f, 299–300, 764t
Testicular torsion, 300, 300f
Test/o, 298
Testosterone, 292, 293, 296, 299, 705, 710, 710t, 712
Tetany, 720
Tetra-, 717
Tetracyclines, 831t
Tetraiodothyronine (T4), Thyroxine (T4)
Tetralogy of Fallot, 392f, 392–393
TEVAR (thoracic endovascular aneurysm repair), 409
TFT (thyroid function test), 727, 728
TGA (transposition of the great arteries), 393, 409
Thalam/o, 337

Thalamus, 329, 330f, 330t, 335, 337, 653, 655
Thalassemia, 488f, 489
Thallium-201 scan, 403, 807
THC (delta-9-tetrahydrocannabinol), 882
Thec/o, 337, 843
Thel/o, 55, 104
Thematic Apperception Test (TAT), 862, 863f, 882
The/o, 104
Theophylline, 843
Therapeutic, 810
Therapeutic modalities in psychiatry
    drug therapy, 873–874, 875f, 876
    electroconvulsive therapy, 874
    psychotherapy, 873
    vocabulary related to, 878–879
Therapeut/o, 810
-therapy, 79, 771
Thiazolidinediones, 833, 833t
Thiopental, 829t
Thioridazine, 839t
Thiothixene, 875f
Third molar, 133f
Third-degree burns, 627, 627f
Thoracentesis, 74, 453, 453f
Thoracic, 55, 441
Thoracic adolescent scoliosis, 561, 561f
Thoracic cavity, 40, 40f, 41f, 42, 44f, 45, 45f

x-ray tests of, 450, 450f
Thoracic curve, 553f
Thoracic division of back, 48, 49
Thoracic duct, 516f, 517, 523
Thoracic endovascular aneurysm repair (TEVAR), 409
Thoracic nerves, 323f
Thoracic spine (T-spine), 811
Thoracic vertebrae (T1 to T12), 553, 553f, 587
Thorac/o, 55, 73, 441
Thoracoscopy, 454
Thoracostomy, 454, 455f
Thoracotomy, 55, 58, 441, 454
-thorax, 442
Thorax, bones of, 554f, 554–555
Thorazine, Chlorpromazine
Thought processes, cerebral area for, 8f
THR (total hip replacement), 584, 584f, 587, 592, 593f
Three times daily (*ter in die;* t.i.d., tid), 845
Thrills, 396, 400
Throat, 135f, 135–136, 149, 439
Thrombin, 483
Thromb/o, 12, 73, 387, 485
Thrombocytes, 9f, 12, 84, 474, 478, 478f, 483
Thrombocytopenia, 77, 485
Thrombolysis, 387
Thrombolytic therapy, 408, 486

Thrombophlebitis, 76, 387, 399f
Thrombosis, 12, 486
Thrombotic occlusion, 394
Thrombotic stroke, 347, 347f
Thrombus, 347, 395f, 398
THR/THA (total hip replacement/arthroplasty), 584, 592, 593f
Thymectomy, 344, 349, 525
-thymia, 881
Thym/o, 525, 866
Thymomas, 529, 777
Thymus gland, 517, 518, 518f, 519, 523, 525, 529
Thyr/o, 104, 714
Thyroid cartilage, 433f, 454f, 702, 702f
Thyroid function test (TFT), 727, 728
Thyroid gland, 39, 702–703, 711, 752t
    combining forms for, 104, 714
    function of, 702–703, 703f
    hormones produced by, 710t
    location and structure of, 702, 702f, 703f
    medullary carcinoma of, 754f
    metabolism and, 35
    papillary carcinoma of, 756f
    pathology of, 718–719, 726t
        hypersecretion, 718, 718f
        hyposecretion, 719, 720f
        neoplasms, 719
Thyroid hormones, 35, 702–703, 703f, 836, 836t, 842
Thyroid ISP, 836t
Thyroid scan, 727, 807, 807f

Thyroiditis, 714
Thyroid/o, 714
Thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH), 708, 709f, 710t, 712, 714, 719, 728
Thyrotoxicosis, 716
Thyrotropin, 708, 709f, 712
Thyroxine (T4), 702, 703f, 710t, 713, 717, 728
TIA (transient ischemic attacks), 75, 347, 349, 352, 396
Tibia, 554f, 556, 557t, 564
Tibi/o, 564
-tic, 81, 298, 770
Tics, 349
T.i.d., tid (*ter in die;* three times daily), 845
Tidal volume (VT), 456
Tightening, suffix for, 179
Tine test, 454
Tinea barbae, 630
Tinea capitis, 630
Tinea corporis, 630, 630f
Tinea pedis, 622, 623f, 630
Tinea unguium, 630, 630f
Tinnitus, 677
-tion, 769
Tiotropium bromide, 838t
Tissue(s)
    blood-forming, tumors of, 753t
    cartilaginous, 545, 558

combining forms for, 54, 843
connective, 37, 581, 629, 770
endocrine, 701t
endometrial, outside uterus, 259
epithelial, 37, 37f, 752t
fibrous connective, 581
mesenchymal, 753, 767
muscle, 37, 37f
nerve, 37, 37f
normal lung, 445f
osseous, 544, 559
stromal, 293, 296
target, 700, 713
Tissue capillaries, 375f, 376f, 377, 377f
Tissue plasminogen activator (tPA), 348, 352, 408, 409, 831, 832t
TKR (total knee replacement), 584, 587, 591, 591f
TKR/TKA (total knee replacement/arthroplasty), 584
TLC (total lung capacity), 452, 456
TLE (temporal lobe epilepsy), 352
TMJ (temporomandibular joint), 549, 559, 587
TNM (tumor-node-metastasis) International Staging System, 756
Tobi, Tobramycin
Tobramycin, 831t
-tocia, 256
-tocin, 256
Toc/o, 716
Toes, 104, 573, 573f
phalanges of, 554f, 556, 557f, 557t, 563
syndactyly, 113, 113f

Tofranil, Imipramine
Tolerance, 518, 523, 870
drug, 828, 840
-tome, 562
Tom/o, 185, 810
Tomography, 185
Tomosynthesis, digital, 267, 267f
-tomy, 14, 79
Tongue, 104, 132, 148, 843
Tonic-clonic seizures, 343, 349
Ton/o, 881
Tonometry, 663, 667, 667f
Tonsillar, 81
Tonsillectomy, 76, 441
Tonsillitis, 76, 76f
Tonsill/o, 73, 441
Tonsils, 87, 87f, 133, 432, 433f, 436, 516f, 517, 519, 523
combining forms for, 73, 441
palatine, 432, 433f, 436, 441
pharyngeal, 432
Tooth decay, 153
Topical application, 827, 827t, 840
Top/o, 104, 810
Toprol-XL, Metoprolol
Toradol, Ketorolac
Total abdominal hysterectomy (TAH), 253, 253f

Total abdominal hysterectomy with bilateral salpingo-oophorectomy (TAH-BSO), 253, 253f, 272
Total hip arthroplasty (THA), 584, 584f, 592, 593f
Total hip replacement (THR), 584, 584f, 587
Total hip replacement/arthroplasty (THR/THA), 584, 584f, 492, 593f
Total knee replacement (TKR), 584, 587, 591, 591f
Total knee replacement/arthroplasty (TKR/TKA), 584
Total lung capacity (TLC), 452, 456
Total parenteral nutrition (TPN), 190
Total shoulder replacement (TSR), 587
Tourette syndrome, 345
Toxicity, drug, 828–829, 840
Toxic/o, 716, 844
Toxicology, 767, 767f, 841, 844
Toxins, 523
Tox/o, 104, 525, 844
Toxo (toxoplasmosis), 526t, 531
Toxoplasmosis (Toxo), 526t, 531
TP53 gene, 751, 751t
TPA (tissue plasminogen activator), 348, 352, 408, 409, 831, 832t
TPN (total parenteral nutrition), 190
Trabeculae, 547, 559
Trabecular bone, 546f, 547
Trabecul/o, 663
Trabeculoplasty, 663
Tracer studies, 805, 808, 809

Trachea, 39, 55, 104, 433f, 434, 437, 441, 702, 702f
Tracheal, 55
Tracheal stenosis, 441
Trache/o, 55, 73, 104, 441
Tracheoesophageal fistula, 180, 180f
Tracheostomy, 79, 87, 87f, 454, 454f
Tracheotomy, 58, 79, 87, 87f, 441, 454
Tradjenta, Linagliptin
Tramadol, 829t
Trance, 873
Tranquilizers, 838, 839t, 842, 849
Trans-, 16, 114
Transcatheter aortic valve replacement (TAVR), 408, 409
Transcutaneous electrical nerve stimulation (TENS), 352
Transdermal patches, 827, 827t
Transducers, 800, 809
Transesophageal echocardiography (TEE), 403, 403f, 409
Transference, 873, 879
Transfusion, 114
    of blood cells, 480, 494
Transhepatic, 16
Transient ischemic attacks (TIAs), 75, 347, 349, 352, 396
Translocation, 750, 750f
Transplantation
    bone marrow, 492, 494, 495, 495f, 496, 521, 772, 775
    corneal, 668, 668f
    heart, 407

hematopoietic stem cells, 494, 495f
kidney, 224, 224f, 228
stem cell, 494, 496, 499, 772, 775
Transport, 841
Transposition of the great arteries (TGA), 393, 409
Transrectal ultrasound (TRUS), 302, 306
Transurethral, 114
Transurethral incision of prostate (TUIP), 306
Transurethral microwave thermotherapy (TUMT), 306
Transurethral needle ablation (TUNA), 306
Transurethral resection of the prostate gland (TURP), 118, 118f, 301, 305, 305f, 306, 307–308
Transvaginal ultrasound, 268
Transverse carpal ligament, 574, 574f
Transverse colon, 138, 147, 147f
Transverse (cross-sectional or axial) plane, 52, 53
Transverse process, 552, 552f
Transvestic fetishism, 870
Tranylcypromine, 875f
Trapezius, 578f
Trastuzumab, 765t
Traumatic brain injury (TBI), 347, 352
Traumatic disorders of nervous system, 347
Trazodone, 832t, 875f
Tregs (regulatory T cells), 520, 520f, 523, 531
-tresia, 180
Tretinoin, 627

Tri-, 717
Triamcinolone, 836t, 838t
Triazolam, 839t
Triceps brachii, 578, 579f
Trich/o, 623
Trichopathophobia, 881f
Trichophobia, 881t
Tricuspid valve, 378, 379f, 381f, 385
Tricyclic antidepressants (TCAs), 832, 845, 874, 875f, 879, 882
Trifluoperazine, 839t
Trigeminal nerve (CN V), 324f, 338
Trigeminal neuralgia, 338
Triglycerides, 132, 145, 401
Trigone, 204, 210, 213
Trigonitis, 213
Trigon/o, 213
Triiodothyronine (T3), 702, 703f, 713, 717, 728
Trileptal, Oxcarbazepine
Triple negative tumors, 263
-tripsy, 215
Trisomy 21, 265
Trocars, 160f
Trochanter, 547t, 548f, 558
-trophy, 79, 105, 582
-tropia, 660
-tropic, 717

-tropin, 714, 717
Troponin, 401, 408
Troponin-I (cTnI), 401, 408
Troponin-T (cTnT), 401, 408
True ribs, 555, 563
Trulicity, Dulaglutide
TRUS (transrectal ultrasound), 302, 306
TSH (thyroid-stimulating hormone), 708, 709f, 710t, 712, 714, 719, 728
T-spine (thoracic spine), 811
TSR (Total shoulder replacement), 587
T-tubes (tube placed in bile duct for drainage), 190
Tubal ligation, 86f, 270
Tubal pregnancy, 108f, 264
Tube thoracostomy, 454, 455f
Tubercle (tuberosity), 547t, 558
Tuberculin test, 454
Tuberculosis (TB), 448, 456, 526t
Tuberosity (tubercle), 547t, 558
TUIP (transurethral incision of prostate), 306
Tumor(s), Neoplasms
- benign, 746, 766
  - characteristics of, 746–747
  - comparison with malignant tumors, 747f
  - in uterus, 260, 260f
- brain, 346f, 346–347
- cancerous, classification of, 751–754, 752t, 753t, 754t
- characteristics of, 746f, 746–747, 747f
- combining forms for, 11, 770

grades I through IV, 757, 767
malignant, 746, 767, Cancer (CA), Carcinoma(s)
characteristics of, 746–747, 747f
connective tissue-derived, 753t
gross descriptions of, 754f, 754–755, 755f, 767
mesothelioma, 448
microscopic descriptions of, 755–756, 756f, 767
mixed-tissue, 751, 754, 754t, 767
prostate gland, 301–302
suffixes for, 13, 77, 771
testicular, 299f, 299–300
Wilms, 219
Tumor markers, 300
Tumor-node-metastasis (TNM) International Staging System, 756
TUMT (transurethral microwave thermotherapy), 306
TUNA (transurethral needle ablation), 306
Tuning fork test, 678
TURP (transurethral resection of the prostate gland), 118, 118f, 301, 305, 305f, 306, 307–308
Twins, 292, 295, 295f, 296
Two times a day (*bis in die;* b.i.d., bid), 845
Tylenol, Acetaminophen (APAP)
Tympanic membrane, 670, 671f, 673, 674, 675, 676, 676f, 678
Tympan/o, 674, 675
Tympanoplasty, 675, 676f
-type, 56
Type 2 diabetes mellitus, 10, 723t, 723–724, 724f
Type 1 diabetes (T1D), 10, 722, 723f, 723t, 723–724, 724f, 728
Type 2 diabetes (T2D), 722, 723, 723t
Type O universal blood donors, 480

U

UA (unstable angina), 395f, 400, 409

UA (urinalysis), 216f, 216–217, 225, 227

UAE (uterine artery embolization), 260, 272

UGI (upper GI series), 798, 811

Ulcer(s), 624

- decubitus, 624, 625f
- of mouth, 153, 154
- peptic, 155

Ulcerating tumors, 755, 755f

Ulcerative colitis, 158

-ule, 80

Ulna, 554f, 555, 557t, 564

Ulnar, 564

Ulnar nerve neuropathy, 352–353, 353f

Uln/o, 564

Ultra-, 114, 811

Ultram, Tramadol

Ultrasonography (US, U/S), 114, 118, 118f, 186, 800, 803f, 809, 811

- abdominal, 186
- pelvic, 268
- of urinary tract structures, 221

Ultrasound imaging, 186, 302, 451, 727, 803f

- of breast, 267
- of cardiovascular system, 402–403, 403f
- of endocrine organs, 727
- of fetus, 801f
- intravascular, 404, 409

in studies of brain, 350
Ultrasound transducers, 800, 809
-um, 80
Umbilical cord, 247f, 249f
Umbilical region, 46, 49
Umbilic/o, 55
Umbilicus, 55
Undescended testicles, 300
Undifferentiated, 747, 756
Ungu/o, 623
Uni-, 114
Unilateral, 114
United States Pharmacopeia (USP), 768, 841
Universal blood donors, type O, 480
Unstable angina (UA), 395f, 400, 409
Upper gastrointestinal series, 184, 811
Upper gastrointestinal tract (GI), pathologic conditions of, 154–155, 155f
Upper GI series (UGI), 798, 811
Upper respiratory disorders, 444
Upper respiratory infections (URIs), 456, 677
Uptake, 805, 807f, 809
Urea, 204, 207, 210, 215, 220
Uremia, 215, 235
Ureter/o, 213
Ureteroileostomy, 213

Ureteroneocystostomy, 224f
Ureteroplasty, 213
Ureters, 3, 3f, 39, 44f, 106f, 204, 205f, 206f, 208f, 209, 210, 213, 213f, 220, 221, 704f
Urethra, 3, 3f, 39, 104, 205, 209, 210, 213, 221, 293f, 294, 302, 305
Urethral stricture, 213
Urethritis, 213, 298
Urethr/o, 104, 213
Urethroplasty, 213
Urgency incontinence, 215
-uria, 215, 717
Uric acid, 204, 207, 210
    in gouty arthritis, 572
Uric acid test, 584
Urinalysis (UA), 216f, 216–217, 225, 227
Urinary bladder, 8, 72, 204, 209, 210, 211, 213, 219, 221
Urinary catheter, 205, 206f
Urinary catheterization, 224, 224f
Urinary incontinence, 215
Urinary meatus, 205, 206f, 208f, 210
Urinary microalbumin assay, 727
Urinary retention, 215
Urinary system, 203–240
    abbreviations for, 225
    anatomy of major organs of, 204–205
    clinical procedures for, 220f, 220–224, 221f, 222f, 223f, 224f
    female, 206f

laboratory tests for, 220
male, 205f
organs of, 38, 204–205
pathologic terminology, 217–219
physiology of urine production, 206f, 206–207, 207f, 208f, 209
pronunciation of terms for, 236–238
terminology for, 211–215
urinalysis, 216f, 216–217
vocabulary related to, 209–210
Urinary tract, 3f, 12, 221, 222, 800
Urinary tract infections (UTIs), 214, 216, 225
Urination, 205, 210, 215
Urine
appearance of, 216
combining forms for, 12, 215, 716
formation and expulsion of, 207f, 208f
production by kidneys, 204, 206f, 206–207, 207f, 208f, 209
Urine tests for endocrine function, 727
Urin/o, 215
URIs (upper respiratory infections), 456, 677
Ur/o, 12, 215, 716
Urography, 220, 220f, 800
Urologists, 12, 26
Urology, 12
Urticaria (hives), 528, 624, 625f, 630, 630f
US, Ultrasonography (US, U/S)
-us, 80
U/S, Ultrasonography (US, U/S)

USP (United States Pharmacopeia), 768, 841
Uterine artery embolization (UAE), 260, 272
Uterine dilators, 269f
Uterine prolapse, 111, 111f, 255
Uterine serosa, 244, 244f, 252
Uterine sound, 269f
Uter/o, 255
Utero-ovarian ligament, 244, 244f
Uterus, 39, 111f, 242–243, 243f, 244, 244f, 246f, 252, 253, 253f, 267, 269, 269f, 752t
  changes during pregnancy, 248f
  combining forms for, 253, 254, 255
  involution of, 256
  pathology of, 258f, 258–260, 259f, 260f
UTIs (urinary tract infections), 214, 216, 225
Utricle, 672, 673
Uvea, 650, 659
Uveitis, 659
Uve/o, 659
Uvula, 132, 145, 149
Uvulectomy, 149
Uvul/o, 149

V

VA (visual acuity), 670
Vaccinations, 519, 521, 523
Vaccines, 114, 521, 523

DPT, 444
HPV, 258
to prevent shingles, 346
Vagal, 337
Vagina, 243, 243f, 244, 244f, 252, 752t
combining forms for, 253, 255
Vaginal hysterectomy (VH), 253, 272
Vaginal orifice, 255
Vaginitis, 255
Vagin/o, 255
Vag/o, 337
Vagus nerve, 322, 324f, 335, 337
Valdecoxib, 829t
Valgus deformity, 591
Valium, Diazepam
Valproate, 875f, 876
Valsartan, 835t
Valsartan/sacubitril, 410
Valves, 374, 378, 379f, 381f, 385, 408
combining form for, 388
porcine xenograft, 396f
Valv/o, 388
Valvulitis, rheumatic mitral, 388, 396f
Valvul/o, 388
Valvuloplasty, 388
Vancocin, Vancomycin
Vancomycin, 831t

Varicella, 625f, 628
Varices, esophageal, 144, 154, 155f
Varic/o, 298
Varicocele, 298, 300, 300f
Varicose veins, 399, 399f
  combining form for, 298
  esophageal, 154
  rectal, 157
Varis deformity, 591
Vas deferens, 293f, 294, 294f, 296, 298, 306, 306f
Vascular, 388
Vascular disorders of nervous system, 347f, 347–348, 348f
Vascular endothelial growth factor (VEGF), 775
Vascul/o, 388
Vasectomy, 294, 298, 306, 306f
Vas/o, 298, 388, 844
Vasoconstriction, 388
Vasodilation, 388
Vasodilators, 844
Vasomotor center of medulla oblongata, 330
Vasopressin, 215, 708, 709f, 710t, 712, 713, 726
Vasovasostomy, 299
VATS (video-assisted thoracic surgery), 452, 454, 456
VC (vital capacity), 456
VCUG (voiding cystourethrogram), 220f, 221, 225
Vegetations, 396, 397, 400
VEGF (vascular endothelial growth factor), 775

Veins, 141, 144, 144f, 374, 375f, 376, 376f, 377, 378, 379f, 385, 387
combining forms for, 73, 387, 844
in neck, 516f, 517
renal, 210
varicose, 154, 157, 298, 399, 399f
Venae cavae, 376, 376f, 378, 379f, 385
Venereal disease, 302
Ven/i, 388
Venipuncture, 388
Venlafaxine, 875f
Ven/o, 73, 388, 844
Venous, 388
Ventilation studies, 805
Ventilation-perfusion study (V/Q scan), 809, 811
of lungs, 451, 456, 805
Ventilators, 452–453, 456
Ventral, 50, 53, 55
Ventral (anterior), 45, 50
Ventral cavities, 40f
Ventral root of spinal nerve, 331f
Ventricles, 328, 335, 378, 379f, 385, 388, 392
of brain, 328–329, 329f, 335
of heart, 376
mid-cerebrum, 328–329
Ventricular fibrillation (VF), 390, 405f, 406, 409
Ventricular septal defects (VSDs), 392, 392f
Ventricular tachycardia (VT), 405f, 409

Ventricul/o, 388
Ventr/o, 55
Venules, 374, 375f, 376f, 377, 385
Vernix, 249f
Verruca vulgaris, 632, 632f
Verrucae, 632, 632f
Verrucous tumors, 755
-version, 256
Vertebrae, 48, 49, 552f, 552–553, 553f, 557t, 559, 562
    cervical (C1 to C7), 48
    combining form for, 55, 562
    lumbar (L1 to L5), 48
    thoracic (T1 to T12), 48
Vertebral, 55
Vertebral body, 552, 552f
Vertebral column, 552f, 552–553, 553f
Vertebr/o, 55, 562
Vertebroplasty, 562
Vertigo, 677
Vesicles, 624, 625f, 669
Vesic/o, 213
Vesicoureteral reflux, 214
Vessel, combining forms for, 72, 298, 385, 388, 844
Vestibular hydrops, 676
Vestibule, 671f, 672, 673, 675
Vestibul/o, 675
Vestibulocochlear, 675

Vestibulocochlear nerve (CN VIII), 324f, 676
VF (ventricular fibrillation), 390, 405f, 409
VF (visual field), 670
VH (vaginal hysterectomy), 253, 272
Vicodin, Hydrocodone with APAP
Victoza, Liraglutide
Video-assisted thoracic surgery (VATS), 452, 454, 456
Villi, 138, 138f, 145
Vincristine, 764t
Viral hepatitis, 161
Viral load test, 531
Viral meningitis, 346
Viral oncogenes, 768
Virilism, adrenal, 720, 726t
Virilization, 720
Virtual colonoscopy, 188
Viruses, 768, *See also* specific viruses
    carcinogenic, 749, 749t
Viscera, 38, 39, 186
Visceral, 55
Visceral muscles, 578, 580
Visceral pericardium, 380, 380f
Visceral pleura, 433f, 437, 440f
Viscer/o, 55
Vision
    binocular, 653
    cerebral area for, 8f

combining form for, 658
suffix for, 660
Visual acuity test, 667, 667f
Visual acuity (VA), 670
Visual field test, 667, 667f
Visual field (VF), 670
Vital capacity (VC), 456
Vitamin(s), 767, 841, 844
food sources of, 844t
Vitamin A, 844t
Vitamin B1, 844t
Vitamin B2
deficiency, 181
description of, 844t
Vitamin B3, 844t
Vitamin B6, 844t
Vitamin B9, 844t
Vitamin B12
food sources of, 844t
pernicious anemia and, 489
Vitamin C, 844t
Vitamin D, 545, 701t, 844t
deficiency of, 562
Vitamin E, 844t
Vitamin K, 844t
Vitiligo, 630, 630f
Vit/o, 844

Vitrectomy, 670
Vitre/o, 659
Vitreous chamber, 651, 654f
Vitreous humor, 651, 651f, 655, 659, 670
Vitr/o, 810
Viv/o, 810
Vocal cords, 432
Vocal folds, 434f
Voice box, 73, 438, 452
Voiding, 205, 210
Voiding cystourethrogram (VCUG), 220f, 221, 225
Voltaren, Diclofenac sodium
Voluntary muscles, 577
Volvulus, 158f
Vomer, 550, 550f, 551t, 558
Vomiting, 178, 761t
    projectile, 180
Votrient, Pazopanib
Vowels, combining, 4–6
Voyeurism, 870, 872t
V/Q scan (ventilation-perfusion study), 451, 809, 811
    of lung, 449, 454, 456, 805
VSDs (ventricular septal defects), 392, 392f
VT (tidal volume), 456
VT (ventricular tachycardia), 405f, 409
Vulva, 243, 243f, 252, 253, 255

Vulv/o, 255
Vulvodynia, 255
Vulvovaginitis, 255
Vyvanse, Lisdexamfetamine

W

WAIS (Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale), 862, 882
Waldenström macroglobulinemia, 529
Warfarin, 398, 481, 831, 832t
Warts, 632, 632f
    genital, 258, 261, 304, 304f
    plantar, 632
Wasting syndrome, 526, 527f, 530
Water, 72, 297
    combining form for, 656
WBC (white blood cell count), 493, 497
Weber test, 678
Wechsler Adult Intelligence Scale (WAIS), 862, 882
Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children (WISC), 882
Wedge resection, 437f
Wellbutrin SR, Bupropion
Wernicke area, 328f
Western blot, 530
Wet macular degeneration, 664
Wheals, 624, 625f, 630
Wheezes, 443
Whipple procedure, 161, 182, 190

White blood cell count (WBC), 493, 497
White blood cells, 9f, 10, 73, 84, 474, 476–477, 477f, 478t, 515t
diseases of, 490–492, 491f
types of, 84t
White matter, 331, 331f
Whiteheads (in acne; closed comedones), 627
Whole-body PET images, 806, 806f
Whooping cough, 444
Wilms tumor, 219
Windpipe, 55, 104, 433f, 434, 437, 441
WISC (Wechsler Intelligence Scale for Children), 882
Wisdom teeth, 133f, 134, 135f
With, abbreviation for, 845
Withdrawal symptoms, 870
Within normal limits (WNL), 497
Without, abbreviation for, 845
WML (within normal limits), 497
Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome (WPW), 409
Womb, 253
Word analysis, 3–6
Word structure, 1–30
Wounds, flesh, 114f
WPW (Wolff-Parkinson-White syndrome), 409
Wrist bones, 104, 554f, 555, 562, 574
Writing, cerebral area for, 8f

X

Xanax, Alprazolam

Xanthelasma, 623, 623f, 664t

Xanth/o, 621t, 623

Xanthoma, 621t, 623, 623f

Xarelto, Rivaroxaban

Xen/o, 880

Xenograft valves, porcine, 396f

Xenophobia, 880

Xer/o, 623, 657, 770

Xerophthalmia, 657

Xerosis, 623

Xerostomia, 761t, 770

Xiph/o, 555

Xiphoid process, 555, 559

X-ray(s)
- characteristics of, 794–795, 795f, 803f
- chest, 57
- combining forms for, 12, 73, 810
- of hand, 795f

X-ray studies
- computed tomography (CT), 796, 796f, 797f
- contrast studies, 796, 798f, 798–800, 799f
- of female reproductive system, 267, 267f
- positioning for, 803f, 803–804
- of urinary system, 220f, 220–221

X-ray tests
- for cardiovascular system, 401–402, 402f

for digestive system, 184f, 184–185, 185f
for nervous system, 349–351
for respiratory system, 450, 450f
XRT, Radiation therapy (RT)
XTANDI, Enzalutamide
Xylocaine, Lidocaine

Y

-y, 14, 80
Yellow bone marrow, 547, 559
Yolk sac tumors, 299

Z

Zafirlukast, 838t
Zaleplon, 875f
Zestril, Lisinopril
Zetia, Ezetimibe
Zileuton, 838t
Zika virus infection, 110
Ziprasidone, 875f
Zirgan, Ganciclovir
Zoledronic acid, 834t
Zoloft, Sertraline
Zolpidem tartrate, 839t, 875f
Zometa, Zoledronic acid
Zone of ischemia, 394f
Zo/o, 299, 865

Zoophobia, 865, 881t
Zostavax, 346
Zovirax, Acyclovir
Zygomatic bones, 550, 550f, 551t, 558
Zygote, 242, 252
Zyprexa, Olanzapine
Zyrtec, Cetirizine
Zytiga, Abiraterone

Chabner makes medical terminology MEMORABLE…

Students…

Make the most of your study time with these companion resources! Chabner's **new interactive learning tools** address how today's students want to learn and ensure that they will remember and know how to apply medical language for effective communication.

Study Tools

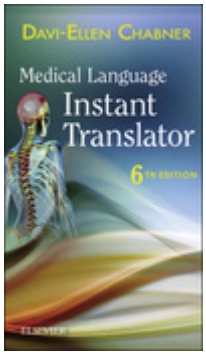
Student Resources on Evolve

- Accessible interactive exercises, games, and animations programmed for use on all digital devices.
- Mobile-optimized content, including:
  - Flash cards
  - Quick quizzes
- Career videos
- Pronunciation exercises
- Body Spectrum electronic anatomy coloring book
- Audio glossary

- Answers to textbook exercises

Included with each new text!

Medical Language Instant Translator, 6th Edition



Help your students communicate more effectively with this handy pocket reference that provides quick access to key information on common diagnostic tests and procedures, the top 100 prescription drugs, medical abbreviations, symbols, acronyms, and much more.

February 2016 • Approx. 338 pp.
ISBN: 978-0-323-37843-7
Sold separately.

Instructors…

Bring lessons to life with these ready-to-use teaching tools!

Evolve Educator Support

Educator Resources on Evolve

- TEACH Resources

- Lesson plans
- Over 1,700 PowerPoint® slides
- Instructor's Manual featuring handouts and other teaching materials
- ExamView test bank with over 5,500 questions
- Image collection

Included with qualified adoptions to save you course preparation time.

Contact your Elsevier Education Solutions Consultant or visit elsevieradvantage.com/chabner.

Order Now!

Order online at elsevierhealth.com
Call 1-800-545-2522
Visit your local bookstore

ELSEVIER

Instructions for online access

Thank you for your purchase. Please note that your purchase of this Elsevier eBook also includes access to an online version. Please click here (or go to http://ebooks.elsevier.com) to request an activation code and registration instructions in order to gain access to the web version.